# FortiOS - Administration Guide

Version 6.4.1

**FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY**
https://docs.fortinet.com

**FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE**
https://video.fortinet.com

**FORTINET BLOG**
https://blog.fortinet.com

**CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT**
https://support.fortinet.com

**FORTINET TRAINING & CERTIFICATION PROGRAM**
https://www.fortinet.com/training-certification

**NSE INSTITUTE**
https://training.fortinet.com

**FORTIGUARD CENTER**
https://www.fortiguard.com

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**
https://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf

**FEEDBACK**
Email: techdoc@fortinet.com

June 3, 2021
FortiOS 6.4.1 Administration Guide
01-641-607590-20210603

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


**Change Log** ..... **16**
**Getting started** ..... **18**
Differences between models ..... 18
Using the GUI ..... 18
Connecting using a web browser ..... 18
Menus ..... 19
Tables ..... 20
Entering values ..... 22
Using the CLI ..... 23
Connecting to the CLI ..... 23
CLI basics ..... 26
Command syntax ..... 32
Subcommands ..... 35
Permissions ..... 37
FortiExplorer for iOS ..... 37
Getting started with FortiExplorer ..... 38
Connecting FortiExplorer to a FortiGate via WiFi ..... 41
Running a security rating ..... 42
Upgrading to FortiExplorer Pro ..... 43
Basic administration ..... 43
Registration ..... 44
FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud login ..... 46
Transfer a device to another FortiCloud account ..... 49
Troubleshooting your installation ..... 51
Zero touch provisioning ..... 53
Zero touch provisioning with FortiDeploy ..... 53
Zero touch provisioning with FortiManager ..... 55
**Dashboards and widgets** ..... **58**
Using dashboards ..... 58
Viewing device dashboards in the security fabric ..... 60
Creating a fabric system and license dashboard ..... 61
Using widgets ..... 63
Changing the default dashboard template ..... 64
Monitor dashboards and widgets ..... 65
Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor ..... 66
DHCP monitor ..... 68
IPSEC monitor ..... 69
SSL VPN monitor ..... 71
Firewall Users Monitor ..... 72
Device inventory ..... 72
FortiView ..... 77
FortiView monitors and widgets ..... 77
Adding FortiView widgets ..... 79
VDOMs and dashboards ..... 81

FortiView interface 82
FortiView from disk 89
FortiView from FortiAnalyzer 91
FortiView from FortiGate Cloud 92
FortiView sources 94
Viewing top websites and sources by category 95
Cloud application view 99
Viewing session information for a compromised host 110
Configuration backups 112
**Fortinet Security Fabric 116**
Security Fabric settings and usage 116
Components 117
Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates 119
Configuring FortiAnalyzer 124
Configuring other Security Fabric devices 125
Using the Security Fabric 148
Deploying the Security Fabric 162
Synchronizing objects across the Security Fabric 170
Security Fabric over IPsec VPN 174
Leveraging LLDP to simplify security fabric negotiation 180
Configuring the Security Fabric with SAML 183
Configuring single-sign-on in the Security Fabric 183
CLI commands for SAML SSO 188
SAML SSO with pre-authorized FortiGates 189
Navigating between Security Fabric members with SSO 189
Integrating FortiAnalyzer management using SAML SSO 192
Integrating FortiManager management using SAML SSO 194
Advanced option - FortiGate SP changes 195
Advanced option - unique SAML attribute types 196
Security rating 199
Security Fabric score 202
External connectors 203
SDN connectors 204
Kubernetes (K8s) SDN connectors 253
Endpoint/Identity connectors 266
Threat feeds 282
Automation stitches 295
Creating automation stitches 296
Triggers 309
Actions 313
Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds 344
Troubleshooting 349
Viewing a summary of all connected FortiGates in a Security Fabric 349
Diagnosing automation stitches 352
**Network 356**
Interfaces 356
Interface settings 357
Aggregation and redundancy 360

VLANs 362
Enhanced MAC VLANs 368
Inter-VDOM routing 371
Software switch 376
Zone 377
Virtual Wire Pair 379
Virtual switch support for FortiGate 300E series 381
Failure detection for aggregate and redundant interfaces 383
VLAN inside VXLAN 383
Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN 386
Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service 388
DNS 394
Important DNS CLI commands 395
DNS domain list 396
FortiGate DNS server 398
DDNS 400
DNS latency information 403
DNS over TLS 405
DNS troubleshooting 405
Explicit and transparent proxies 406
Explicit web proxy 407
FTP proxy 409
Transparent proxy 411
Proxy policy addresses 414
Proxy policy security profiles 422
Explicit proxy authentication 428
Transparent web proxy forwarding 433
Upstream proxy authentication in transparent proxy mode 434
Multiple dynamic header count 436
Restricted SaaS access (Office 365, G Suite, Dropbox) 439
Explicit proxy and FortiSandbox Cloud 441
Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers) 444
Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy 449
DHCP server 452
Configure DHCP on the FortiGate 452
DHCP options 453
IP address assignment with relay agent information option 454
DHCP client options 456
Static routes 457
Policy routes 458
RIP 458
OSPF 458
BGP 458
Direct IP support for LTE/4G 459
LLDP reception 462
Route leaking between VRFs 465

**SD-WAN** ... **468**
SD-WAN quick start ... 468
Configuring the SD-WAN interface ... 469
Adding a static route ... 470
Selecting the implicit SD-WAN algorithm ... 470
Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN ... 471
Link monitoring and failover ... 472
Results ... 473
Configuring SD-WAN in the CLI ... 477
SD-WAN zones ... 479
WAN path control ... 484
Performance SLA - link monitoring ... 484
Performance SLA - SLA targets ... 486
Factory default health checks ... 487
Implicit rule ... 490
SD-WAN rules - best quality ... 493
SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA) ... 496
SD-WAN rules - maximize bandwidth (SLA) ... 499
Application steering using SD-WAN rules ... 501
SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS ... 513
DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN ... 518
Advanced configuration ... 529
Self-originating traffic ... 529
SDN dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN rules ... 531
Forward error correction on VPN overlay networks ... 534
Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules ... 537
BGP multiple path support ... 540
Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules ... 542
Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors ... 549
IBGP and EBGP support in VRF ... 555
ADVPN and shortcut paths ... 557
SD-WAN monitor on ADVPN shortcuts ... 570
SD-WAN integration with OCVPN ... 571
DSCP matching (shaping) ... 578
SD-WAN health check packet DSCP marker support ... 582
Dual VPN tunnel wizard ... 582
SD-WAN with FGCP HA ... 584
Dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN policies ... 589
SD-WAN configuration portability ... 590
Example 1 ... 591
Example 2 ... 594
Interface speedtest ... 596
SD-WAN cloud on-ramp ... 598
Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and cloud FortiGate-VM ... 599
Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and AWS native VPN gateway ... 604
Configuring the VIP to access the remote servers ... 607
Configuring the SD-WAN to steer traffic between the overlays ... 610

Verifying the traffic 615
Hub and spoke SD-WAN deployment example 622
Datacenter configuration 622
Branch configuration 627
Validation 631
Dynamic definition of SD-WAN routes 632
Adding another datacenter 633
Configuring SD-WAN in an HA cluster using internal hardware switches 634
Troubleshooting SD-WAN 637
Understanding SD-WAN related logs 637
SD-WAN related diagnose commands 641
SLA logging 645
SLA monitoring using the REST API 646
SD-WAN bandwidth monitoring service 648
**System 652**
Basic system settings 652
Advanced system settings 652
Operating modes 653
Administrators 654
Administrator profiles 654
Add a local administrator 656
Remote authentication for administrators 656
Password policy 658
Admin profile option for diagnose access 659
Firmware 660
Firmware upgrade notifications 661
Downloading a firmware image 662
Testing a firmware version 664
Upgrading the firmware 665
Downgrading to a previous firmware version 666
Installing firmware from system reboot 667
Restoring from a USB drive 668
Controlled upgrade 669
Settings 669
Default administrator password 669
Changing the host name 670
Setting the system time 670
Configuring ports 674
Setting the idle timeout time 675
Setting the password policy 675
Changing the view settings 675
Setting the administrator password retries and lockout time 676
Virtual Domains 677
Split-task VDOM mode 678
Multi VDOM mode 682
Configure VDOM-A 685
Configure VDOM-B 687
Configure the VDOM link 689

Configure VDOM-A ... 694
Configure VDOM-B ... 696
High Availability ... 698
Introduction to the FGCP cluster ... 698
Failover protection ... 699
FGSP (session synchronization) peer setup ... 701
UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic in FGSP ... 702
UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic on L3 ... 704
Encryption for L3 on asymmetric traffic in FGSP ... 706
Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters ... 706
Using standalone configuration synchronization ... 708
Troubleshoot an HA formation ... 710
Check HA sync status ... 710
Disabling stateful SCTP inspection ... 711
Upgrading FortiGates in an HA cluster ... 712
HA cluster setup examples ... 713
Routing data over the HA management interface ... 722
Override FortiAnalyzer and syslog server settings ... 724
Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations ... 728
Querying autoscale clusters for FortiGate VM ... 731
SNMP ... 732
Interface access ... 732
MIB files ... 733
SNMP agent ... 733
SNMP v1/v2c communities ... 734
SNMP v3 users ... 736
Important SNMP traps ... 737
SNMP traps and query for monitoring DHCP pool ... 739
Replacement messages ... 740
Replacement message images ... 740
Modifying replacement messages ... 741
Replacement message groups ... 743
Example ... 744
FortiGuard ... 746
IPv6 FortiGuard connections ... 747
Configuring antivirus and IPS options ... 748
Manual updates ... 748
Automatic updates ... 749
Sending malware statistics to FortiGuard ... 751
Update server location ... 752
Filtering ... 752
Override FortiGuard servers ... 753
Online security tools ... 754
FortiGuard anycast and third-party SSL validation ... 754
Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server ... 757
Cloud service communication statistics ... 758
IoT detection service ... 759
Feature visibility ... 761

Security feature presets 761
Certificates 762
Microsoft CA deep packet inspection 762
Purchase and import a signed SSL certificate 767
Configuration scripts 770
Workspace mode 771
**Policy and Objects 773**
Policies 773
Firewall policy parameters 774
Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW 775
NGFW policy mode application default service 779
Policy views and policy lookup 781
Policy with source NAT 782
Policy with destination NAT 795
Policy with Internet Service 808
NAT64 policy and DNS64 (DNS proxy) 826
NAT46 policy 829
Multicast processing and basic Multicast policy 833
Local-in policies 834
IPv4/IPv6 access control lists 836
Mirroring SSL traffic in policies 837
Inspection mode per policy 840
OSPFv3 neighbor authentication 842
Firewall anti-replay option per policy 844
Enabling advanced policy options in the GUI 845
Recognize anycast addresses in geo-IP blocking 846
Matching GeoIP by registered and physical location 847
Authentication policy extensions 848
HTTP to HTTPS redirect for load balancing 849
GTPv2 in policies 851
Use active directory objects directly in policies 852
FortiGate Cloud / FDN communication through an explicit proxy 856
No session timeout 857
MAP-E support 858
Objects 862
Address group exclusions 862
MAC addressed-based policies 864
ISDB well-known MAC address list 866
Dynamic policy — fabric devices 868
FSSO dynamic address subtype 870
ClearPass integration for dynamic address objects 873
Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager 878
Using wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies 880
IPv6 geography-based addresses 882
Array structure for address objects 884
Traffic shaping 886
Determining your QoS requirements 887
Packet rates 888

Changing traffic shaper bandwidth unit of measurement 890
Shared traffic shaper 890
Per-IP traffic shaper 895
Type of Service-based prioritization and policy-based traffic shaping 897
Interface-based traffic shaping profile 900
Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration 909
Classifying traffic by source interface 910
Configuring traffic class IDs 911
Traffic shaping schedules 914
QoS assignment and rate limiting for quarantined VLANs 915
Weighted random early detection queuing 916
**Security Profiles 923**
Inspection modes 923
Flow mode inspection (default mode) 924
Proxy mode inspection 924
Inspection mode feature comparison 926
Antivirus 928
Protocol comparison between antivirus inspection modes 929
Other antivirus differences between inspection modes 929
Databases 930
Content disarm and reconstruction for antivirus 931
FortiGuard outbreak prevention 934
External malware block list for antivirus 936
Checking flow antivirus statistics 939
CIFS support 942
Using FortiSandbox appliance with antivirus 946
Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus 956
Web filter 964
URL filter 965
FortiGuard filter 971
Credential phishing prevention 978
Usage quota 980
Web content filter 983
Advanced filters 1 986
Advanced filters 2 990
External resources for web filter 995
Reliable web filter statistics 1001
Flow-based web filtering 1004
URL certificate blocklist 1005
DNS filter 1006
How to configure and apply a DNS filter profile 1007
FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering 1009
Botnet C&C domain blocking 1013
DNS safe search 1017
Local domain filter 1018
DNS translation 1021
Using a FortiGate as a DNS server 1024
Troubleshooting for DNS filter 1026

Application control 1028
Basic category filters and overrides 1029
Port enforcement check 1033
Protocol enforcement 1033
SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic in a sandwich topology 1035
Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures 1036
Intrusion prevention 1039
Botnet C&C IP blocking 1039
Detecting IEC 61850 MMS protocol in IPS 1043
File filter 1044
Log samples 1047
Supported file types 1048
Email filter 1050
Protocol comparison between Email filter inspection modes 1051
Local-based filters 1051
FortiGuard-based filters 1055
Protocols and actions 1055
Configuring webmail filtering 1056
Data leak prevention 1057
Protocol comparison between DLP inspection modes 1058
Basic DLP filter types 1058
DLP fingerprinting 1061
DLP watermarking 1065
VoIP solutions 1068
General use cases 1068
SIP message inspection and filtering 1072
SIP pinholes 1074
SIP over TLS 1075
Custom SIP RTP port range support 1076
Voice VLAN auto-assignment 1078
ICAP 1079
ICAP configuration example 1080
ICAP response filtering 1082
Web application firewall 1085
Protecting a server running web applications 1085
SSL & SSH Inspection 1088
Certificate inspection 1089
Deep inspection 1090
Protecting an SSL server 1092
Ignoring the AUTH TLS command 1093
SSH traffic file scanning 1094
Redirect to WAD after handshake completion 1095
Custom signatures 1096
Application groups in policies 1096
Overrides 1099
Web rating override 1099
Web profile override 1102

**VPN** ... **1107**
IPsec VPNs ... 1107
General IPsec VPN configuration ... 1107
Site-to-site VPN ... 1132
Remote access ... 1177
Aggregate and redundant VPN ... 1211
Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) ... 1246
ADVPN ... 1277
Other VPN topics ... 1310
VPN IPsec troubleshooting ... 1336
SSL VPN ... 1343
SSL VPN best practices ... 1344
SSL VPN quick start ... 1346
SSL VPN tunnel mode ... 1353
SSL VPN web mode for remote user ... 1360
SSL VPN authentication ... 1363
SSL VPN to IPsec VPN ... 1445
SSL VPN protocols ... 1456
SSL VPN troubleshooting ... 1457
**User & Authentication** ... **1461**
Endpoint control and compliance ... 1461
Per-policy disclaimer messages ... 1461
Compliance ... 1464
FortiGuard distribution of updated Apple certificates ... 1470
User Definition ... 1471
User types ... 1471
Removing a user ... 1471
User Groups ... 1472
Configuring POP3 authentication ... 1472
Guest Management ... 1473
Configuring guest access ... 1473
Retail environment guest access ... 1475
LDAP Servers ... 1476
Configuring an LDAP server ... 1476
FSSO polling connector agent installation ... 1478
Enabling Active Directory recursive search ... 1483
Configuring LDAP dial-in using a member attribute ... 1484
Configuring wildcard admin accounts ... 1485
Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory ... 1487
RADIUS Servers ... 1487
Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication ... 1487
RSA ACE (SecurID) servers ... 1493
Support for Okta RADIUS attributes filter-Id and class ... 1498
TACACS+ servers ... 1500
SAML ... 1501
SAML SP for VPN authentication ... 1501
Authentication Settings ... 1504

FortiTokens 1505
Configuring FortiTokens 1507
FortiToken Cloud 1510
Configuring FortiToken Mobile 1510
FortiToken maintenance 1511
FortiToken Mobile Push 1512
Configuring the maximum log in attempts and lockout period 1512
PKI 1513
Creating a PKI/peer user 1513
Configuring firewall authentication 1514
Creating a locally authenticated user account 1514
Creating a RADIUS-authenticated user account 1515
Creating an FSSO user group 1516
Creating a firewall user group 1518
Defining policy addresses 1518
Creating security policies 1519
**Wireless configuration 1521**
**Switch Controller 1522**
FortiLink setup 1522
Viewing managed FortiSwitches 1523
VLAN interface templates for FortiSwitches 1525
Create VLAN interface templates 1526
Example 1527
FortiLink auto network configuration policy 1529
FortiLink network sniffer extension 1530
FortiLink MCLAG configuration 1532
Standalone FortiGate as switch controller 1533
Standalone FortiGate as switch controller 1533
Multiple FortiSwitches managed via hardware/software switch 1537
Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with redundant link enabled 1541
Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled only on distribution 1545
HA (A-P) mode FortiGate pairs as switch controller 1549
Multiple FortiSwitches managed via hardware/software switch 1549
Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with redundant link enabled 1553
Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled only on distribution 1557
Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled on all tiers 1561
Authentication and security 1566
MAC-based 802.1X authentication 1566
Port-based 802.1X authentication 1569
MAC layer control - Sticky MAC and MAC Learning-limit 1572
Quarantine 1573
Flow and device detection 1578
Data statistic 1578
Security Fabric showing 1580

NAC policies on switch ports 1580
Use FortiSwitch to query FortiGuard IoT service for device details 1584
Voice device detection 1586
FortiSwitch multi-tenant support 1590
Persistent MAC learning 1593
Split port mode (for QSFP / QSFP28) 1594
Dynamic VLAN name assignment from RADIUS attribute 1596
MSTI support 1596
Netflow and IPFIX support 1597
**Log and Report 1600**
Viewing event logs 1600
Sample logs by log type 1601
Log buffer on FortiGates with an SSD disk 1620
Checking the email filter log 1623
Supported log types to FortiAnalyzer, syslog, and FortiAnalyzer Cloud 1624
Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate 1624
Checking FortiAnalyzer connectivity 1626
Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers (or syslog servers) per VDOM 1627
Source and destination UUID logging 1628
Logging the signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength per client 1630
RSSO information for authenticated destination users in logs 1633
Scenario 1 1633
Scenario 2 1634
Scenario 3 1635
Troubleshooting 1636
Log-related diagnose commands 1636
Backing up log files or dumping log messages 1642
SNMP OID for logs that failed to send 1644
**VM 1648**
Amazon Web Services 1648
Microsoft Azure 1648
Google Cloud Platform 1648
Oracle OCI 1648
AliCloud 1648
Private cloud 1648
VM license 1648
Uploading a license file 1649
Types of VM licenses 1650
CLI troubleshooting 1651
FortiGate multiple connector support 1652
Adding VDOMs with FortiGate v-series 1655
Terraform: FortiOS as a provider 1657
Troubleshooting 1662
PF SR-IOV driver support 1662

**Troubleshooting** **1664**
Troubleshooting methodologies 1664
Verify user permissions 1665
Establish a baseline 1665
Create a troubleshooting plan 1667
Troubleshooting scenarios 1668
Checking the system date and time 1669
Checking the hardware connections 1670
Checking FortiOS network settings 1671
Troubleshooting CPU and network resources 1674
Troubleshooting high CPU usage 1675
Checking the modem status 1679
Running ping and traceroute 1680
Checking the logs 1684
Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode 1684
Verifying the correct route is being used 1685
Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used 1685
Checking the bridging information in transparent mode 1686
Checking wireless information 1687
Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture) 1688
Debugging the packet flow 1691
Testing a proxy operation 1694
Displaying detail Hardware NIC information 1694
Performing a traffic trace 1697
Using a session table 1698
Finding object dependencies 1701
Diagnosing NPU-based interfaces 1702
Identifying the XAUI link used for a specific traffic stream 1703
Running the TAC report 1703
Other commands 1704
FortiGuard troubleshooting 1705
Additional resources 1708
Technical documentation 1708
Fortinet video library 1708
Release notes 1709
Knowledge base 1709
Fortinet technical discussion forums 1709
Fortinet training services online campus 1709
Fortinet Support 1709

# Change Log

| Date | Change Description |
|---|---|
| 2020-06-04 | Initial release. |
| 2020-06-05 | Added Integrating FortiManager management using SAML SSO on page 194. |
| 2020-06-08 | Added Changing the default dashboard template on page 64. |
| 2020-06-12 | Updated VLAN inside VXLAN on page 383.<br>Added Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory on page 1487. |
| 2020-06-16 | Added MAP-E support on page 858.<br>Added SD-WAN cloud on-ramp on page 598. |
| 2020-06-18 | Updated DHCP options on page 453. |
| 2020-06-19 | Updated DNS over TLS on page 405. |
| 2020-06-22 | Updated SSL VPN multi-realm on page 1438. |
| 2020-06-23 | Added Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers) on page 444.<br>Added SSL VPN for remote users with MFA and user case sensitivity on page 1379. |
| 2020-07-03 | Updated FortiClient EMS on page 136. |
| 2020-07-07 | Updated Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers) on page 444. |
| 2020-07-17 | Added DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN on page 518. |
| 2020-08-14 | Added Self-originating traffic on page 529. |
| 2020-08-20 | Updated Cisco ACI SDN connector on page 240 and Nuage SDN connector on page 244. |
| 2020-08-20 | Updated Reliable web filter statistics on page 1001. |
| 2020-08-25 | Updated FortiSwitch multi-tenant support on page 1590. |
| 2020-08-31 | Updated Add FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1188, SSL VPN best practices on page 1344, Set up FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1351, and Configuring FortiToken Mobile on page 1510. |
| 2020-09-02 | Updated Encryption algorithms on page 1320. |
| 2020-09-04 | Added General IPsec VPN configuration on page 1107. |
| 2020-09-25 | Updated SSL VPN best practices on page 1344 and SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1424. |
| 2020-10-02 | Added VM license on page 1648. |
| 2020-10-05 | Updated Threat feeds on page 282 and External resources for DNS filter on page 290. |

| Date | Change Description |
| --- | --- |
| 2020-10-22 | Updated Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy on page 449 and LLDP reception on page 462. |
| 2021-01-08 | Updated FortiGuard outbreak prevention on page 934. |
| 2021-01-21 | Updated Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures on page 1036. |
| 2021-02-17 | Updated Antivirus on page 928. |
| 2021-06-03 | Updated Adding FortiView widgets on page 79. |

# Getting started

This section explains how to get started with a FortiGate.

## Differences between models

Not all FortiGates have the same features, particularly entry-level models (models 30 to 90). A number of features on these models are only available in the CLI.



Consult your model's QuickStart Guide, hardware manual, or the Feature / Platform Matrix for further information about features that vary by model.

FortiGate models differ principally by the names used and the features available:

- Naming conventions may vary between FortiGate models. For example, on some models the hardware switch interface used for the local area network is called *lan*, while on other units it is called *internal*.
- Certain features are not available on all models. Additionally, a particular feature may be available only through the CLI on some models, while that same feature may be viewed in the GUI on other models.
  If you believe your FortiGate model supports a feature that does not appear in the GUI, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and confirm that the feature is enabled. For more information, see Feature visibility on page 761.

# Using the GUI

This section presents an introduction to the graphical user interface (GUI) on your FortiGate.

The following topics are included in this section:

- Connecting using a web browser
- Menus
- Tables
- Entering values

For information about using the dashboards, see Dashboards and widgets on page 58.

## Connecting using a web browser

In order to connect to the GUI using a web browser, an interface must be configured to allow administrative access over HTTPS or over both HTTPS and HTTP. By default, an interface has already been set up that allows HTTPS access with the IP address 192.168.1.99.

Browse to https://192.168.1.99 and enter your username and password. If you have not changed the admin account's password, use the default user name, `admin`, and leave the password field blank.

The GUI will now be displayed in your browser.

**To use a different interface to access the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the interface you wish to use for access. Take note of its assigned IP address.
2. In *Administrative Access*, select *HTTPS*, and any other protocol you require. You can also select *HTTP*, although this is not recommended as the connection will be less secure.
3. Click *OK*.
4. Browse to the IP address using your chosen protocol.
   The GUI will now be displayed in your browser.

## Menus



If you believe your FortiGate model supports a menu that does not appear in the GUI, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and ensure the feature is enabled. For more information, see Feature visibility on page 761.

The GUI contains the following main menus, which provide access to configuration options for most FortiOS features:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Dashboard** | The dashboard displays various widgets that display important system information and allow you to configure some system options.<br>For more information, see Dashboards and widgets on page 58. |
| **Security Fabric** | Access the physical topology, logical topology, automation, and settings of the Fortinet Security Fabric.<br>For more information, see Fortinet Security Fabric on page 116. |
| **Network** | Options for networking, including configuring system interfaces and routing options.<br>For more information, see Network on page 356. |
| **System** | Configure system settings, such as administrators, FortiGuard, and certificates.<br>For more information, see System on page 652. |
| **Policy & Objects** | Configure firewall policies, protocol options, and supporting content for policies, including schedules, firewall addresses, and traffic shapers.<br>For more information, see Policy and Objects on page 773. |
| **Security Profiles** | Configure your FortiGate's security features, including Antivirus, Web Filter, and Application Control.<br>For more information, see Security Profiles on page 923. |
| **VPN** | Configure options for IPsec and SSL virtual private networks (VPNs).<br>For more information, see IPsec VPNs on page 1107 and SSL VPN on page 1343. |
| **User & Authetication** | Configure user accounts, groups, and authentication methods, including external authentication and single sign-on (SSO). |

| | |
|---|---|
| **WiFi & Switch Controller** | Configure the unit to act as a wireless network controller, managing the wireless Access Point (AP) functionality of FortiWiFi and FortiAP units.<br>On certain FortiGate models, this menu has additional features allowing for FortiSwitch units to be managed by the FortiGate.<br>For more information, see Wireless configuration on page 1521 and Switch Controller on page 1522. |
| **Log & Report** | Configure logging and alert email as well as reports.<br>For more information, see Log and Report on page 1600. |

# Tables

Many GUI pages contain tables of information that can be filtered and customized to display specific information in a specific way. Some tables allow content to be edited directly on that table, or rows to be copied and pasted.

## Navigation

Some tables contain information and lists that span multiple pages. Navigation controls will be available at the bottom of the page.

## Filters

Filters are used to locate a specific set of information or content in a table. They can be particularly useful for locating specific log entries. The filtering options vary, depending on the type of information in the log.

Depending on the table content, filters can be applied using the filter bar, using a column filter, or based on a cell's content. Some tables allow filtering based on regular expressions.

Administrators with read and write access can define filters. Multiple filters can be applied at one time.

**To manually create a filter:**

1. Click *Add Filter* at the top of the table. A list of the fields available for filtering is shown.
2. Select the field to filter by.
3. Enter the value to filter by, adding modifiers as needed.
4. Press *Enter* to apply the filter.

**To create a column filter:**

1. Click the filter icon on the right side of the column header
2. Choose a filter type from the available options.
3. Enter the filter text, or select from the available values.
4. Click *Apply*.

**To create a filter based on a cell's content:**

1. Right click on a cell in the table.
2. Select a filtering option from the menu.

## Column settings

Columns can be rearranged, resized, and added or removed from tables.

**To add or remove columns:**

1. Right a column header, or click the gear icon on the left side of the header row that appears when hovering the cursor over the headers.
2. Select columns to add or remove.
3. Click *Apply*.

**To rearrange the columns in a table:**

1. Click and drag the column header.

**To resize a column:**

1. Click and drag the right border of the column header.

**To resize a column to fit its contents:**

1. Click the dots or filter icon on the right side of the column header and select *Resize to Contents*.

**To resize all of the columns in a table to fit their content:**

1. Right a column header, or click the gear icon on the left side of the header row that appears when hovering the cursor over the headers.
2. Click *Best Fit All Columns*.

**To reset a table to its default view:**

1. Right a column header, or click the gear icon on the left side of the header row that appears when hovering the cursor over the headers.
2. Click *Reset Table*.
   Resetting a table does not remove filters.

## Editing objects

In some tables, parts of a configuration can be edited directly in the table. For example, security profiles can be added to an existing firewall policy by clicking the edit icon in a cell in the *Security Profiles* column.

## Copying rows

In some tables, rows can be copied and pasted using the right-click menu. For example, a policy can be duplicated by copying and pasting it.

# Entering values

Numerous fields in the GUI and CLI require text strings or numbers to be entered when configuring the FortiGate. When entering values in the GUI, you will be prevented from entering invalid characters, and a warning message will be shown explaining what values are not allowed. If invalid values are entered in a CLI command, the setting will be rejected when you apply it.


- Text strings on page 22
- Numbers on page 23


## Text strings

Text strings are used to name entities in the FortiGate configuration. For example, the name of a firewall address, administrator, or interface are all text strings.

The following characters cannot be used in text strings, as they present cross-site scripting (XSS) vulnerabilities:

- `"` - double quotes
- `'` - single quote
- `>` - greater than
- `<` - less than

Most GUI text fields prevent XSS vulnerable characters from being added.



VDOM names and hostnames can only use numbers (0-9), letters (a-z and A-Z), dashes, and underscores.

The `tree` CLI command can be used to view the number of characters allowed in a name field. For example, entering the following commands show that a firewall address name can contain up to 80 characters, while its FQDN can contain 256 characters:

```
config fire address
(address) # tree
    -- [address] --*name     (80)
              |- uuid
              |- subnet
              |- type
              |- start-mac
              |- end-mac
              |- start-ip
              |- end-ip
              |- fqdn     (256)
              |- country     (3)
              |- wildcard-fqdn     (256)
              |- cache-ttl     (0,86400)
              |- wildcard
              |- sdn     (36)
              |- interface     (36)
              |- tenant     (36)
              |- organization     (36)
              |- epg-name     (256)
              |- subnet-name     (256)
```

```
|- sdn-tag    (16)
|- policy-group    (16)
|- comment
|- visibility
|- associated-interface    (36)
|- color    (0,32)
|- filter
|- sdn-addr-type
|- obj-id
|- [list] --*ip    (36)
          |- obj-id    (128)
          +- net-id    (128)
|- [tagging] --*name    (64)
             |- category    (64)
             +- [tags] --*name    (80)
+- allow-routing
```

### Numbers

Numbers are used to set sizes, rated, addresses, port numbers, priorities, and other such numeric values. They can be entered as a series of digits (without commas or spaces), in a dotted decimal format (such as IP addresses), or separated by colons (such as MAC addresses). Most numeric values use base 10 numbers, while some use hexadecimal values.

Most GUI and CLI fields prevent invalid numbers from being entered. The CLI help text includes information about the range of values allowed for applicable settings.

# Using the CLI

The Command Line Interface (CLI) can be used in lieu of the GUI to configure the FortiGate. Some settings are not available in the GUI, and can only be accessed using the CLI.

This section briefly explains basic CLI usage. For more information about the CLI, see the FortiOS CLI Reference.


- Connecting to the CLI on page 23
- CLI basics on page 26
- Command syntax on page 32
- Subcommands on page 35
- Permissions on page 37


## Connecting to the CLI

You can connect to the CLI using a direct console connection, SSH, the FortiExplorer app on your iOS device, or the CLI console in the GUI.

You can access the CLI outside of the GUI in three ways:

- Console connection: Connect your computer directly to the console port of your FortiGate.
- SSH access: Connect your computer through any network interface attached to one of the network ports on your FortiGate.

- FortiExplorer: Connect your device to the FortiExplorer app on your iOS device to configure, manage, and monitor your FortiGate. See FortiExplorer for iOS on page 37 for details.

## Console connection

A direct console connections to the CLI is created by directly connecting your management computer or console to the FortiGate unit, using its DB-9 or RJ-45 console port.

Direct console access to the FortiGate may be required if:

- You are installing the FortiGate for the first time and it is not configured to connect to your network.
- You are restoring the firmware using a boot interrupt. Network access to the CLI will not be available until after the boot process has completed, making direct console access the only option.

To connect to the FortiGate console, you need:

- A console cable to connect the console port on the FortiGate to a communications port on the computer. Depending on your device, this is one of:
  - null modem cable (DB-9 to DB-9)
  - DB-9 to RJ-45 cable (a DB-9-to-USB adapter can be used)
  - USB to RJ-45 cable
- A computer with an available communications port
- Terminal emulation software

**To connect to the CLI using a direct console connection:**

1. Using the console cable, connect the FortiGate unit's console port to the serial communications (COM) port on your management computer.
2. Start a terminal emulation program on the management computer, select the COM port, and use the following settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Bits per second** | 9600 |
| **Data bits** | 8 |
| **Parity** | None |
| **Stop bits** | 1 |
| **Flow control** | None |

3. Press Enter on the keyboard to connect to the CLI.
4. Log in to the CLI using your username and password (default: *admin* and no password).
   You can now enter CLI commands, including configuring access to the CLI through SSH.

## SSH access

SSH access to the CLI is accomplished by connecting your computer to the FortiGate unit using one of its network ports. You can either connect directly, using a peer connection between the two, or through any intermediary network.



If you do not want to use an SSH client and you have access to the GUI, you can access the CLI through the network using the CLI console in the GUI.

The CLI console can be accessed from the upper-right hand corner of the screen and appears as a slide-out window. For policies and objects, the CLI can be also be accessed by right clicking on the element and selecting *Edit in CLI*.

SSH must be enabled on the network interface that is associated with the physical network port that is used.

If your computer is not connected either directly or through a switch to the FortiGate, you must also configure the FortiGate with a static route to a router that can forward packets from the FortiGate to the computer. This can be done using a local console connection, or in the GUI.

To connect to the FortiGate CLI using SSH, you need:

- A computer with an available serial communications (COM) port and RJ-45 port
- An appropriate console cable
- Terminal emulation software
- A network cable
- Prior configuration of the operating mode, network interface, and static route.

**To enable SSH access to the CLI using a local console connection:**

1. Using the network cable, connect the FortiGate unit's port either directly to your computer's network port, or to a network through which your computer can reach the FortiGate unit.
2. Note the number of the physical network port.
3. Using direct console connection, connect and log into the CLI.
4. Enter the following command:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface_str>
        append allowaccess ssh
    next
end
```

   Where `<interface_str>` is the name of the network interface associated with the physical network port, such as `port1`.
5. Confirm the configuration using the following command to show the interface's settings:

```
show system interface <interface_str>
```

   For example:

```
show system interface port1
    config system interface
        edit "port1"
            set vdom "root"
            set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess ping https ssh
            set type hard-switch
            set stp enable
            set role lan
            set snmp-index 6
        next
    end
```

### Connecting using SSH

Once the FortiGate unit is configured to accept SSH connections, use an SSH client on your management computer to connect to the CLI.

The following instructions use PuTTy. The steps may vary in other terminal emulators.

**To connect to the CLI using SSH:**

1. On your management computer, start PuTTy.
2. In the *Host Name (or IP address)* field, enter the IP address of the network interface that you are connected to and that has SSH access enabled.
3. Set the port number to 22, if it is not set automatically.
4. Select *SSH* for the *Connection type*.
5. Click *Open*. The SSH client connect to the FortiGate.
   The SSH client may display a warning if this is the first time that you are connecting to the FortiGate and its SSH key is not yet recognized by the SSH client, or if you previously connected to the FortiGate using a different IP address or SSH key. This is normal if the management computer is connected directly to the FortiGate with no network hosts in between.
6. Click *Yes* to accept the FortiGate unit's SSH key.
   The CLI displays the log in prompt.
7. Enter a valid administrator account name, such as `admin`, then press *Enter*.
8. Enter the administrator account password, then press *Enter*.
   The CLI console shows the command prompt (FortiGate hostname followed by a `#`). You can now enter CLI commands.



If three incorrect log in or password attempts occur in a row, you will be disconnected. If this occurs, wait for one minute, then reconnect and attempt to log in again.

## CLI basics

Basic features and characteristics of the CLI environment provide support and ease of use for many CLI tasks.

### Help

Press the question mark (?) key to display command help and complete commands.

- Press the question mark (?) key at the command prompt to display a list of the commands available and a description of each command.
- Enter a command followed by a space and press the question mark (?) key to display a list of the options available for that command and a description of each option.
- Enter a command followed by an option and press the question mark (?) key to display a list of additional options available for that command option combination and a description of each option.
- Enter a question mark after entering a portion of a command to see a list of valid complete commands and their descriptions. If there is only one valid command, it will be automatically filled in.

## Shortcuts and key commands

| Shortcut key | Action |
|---|---|
| **?** | List valid complete or subsequent commands.<br>If multiple commands can complete the command, they are listed with their descriptions. |
| **Tab** | Complete the word with the next available match.<br>Press multiple times to cycle through available matches. |
| **Up arrow or Ctrl + P** | Recall the previous command.<br>Command memory is limited to the current session. |
| **Down arrow, or Ctrl + N** | Recall the next command. |
| **Left or Right arrow** | Move the cursor left or right within the command line. |
| **Ctrl + A** | Move the cursor to the beginning of the command line. |
| **Ctrl + E** | Move the cursor to the end of the command line. |
| **Ctrl + B** | Move the cursor backwards one word. |
| **Ctrl + F** | Move the cursor forwards one word. |
| **Ctrl + D** | Delete the current character. |
| **Ctrl + C** | Abort current interactive commands, such as when entering multiple lines.<br>If you are not currently within an interactive command such as `config` or `edit`, this closes the CLI connection. |
| **\ then Enter** | Continue typing a command on the next line for a multiline command.<br>For each line that you want to continue, terminate it with a backslash ( \ ). To complete the command, enter a space instead of a backslash, and then press *Enter*. |

## Command tree

Enter `tree` to display the CLI command tree. To capture the full output, connect to your device using a terminal emulation program and capture the output to a log file. For some commands, use the `tree` command to view all available variables and subcommands.

## Command abbreviation

You can abbreviate words in the command line to their smallest number of non-ambiguous characters.

For example, the command `get system status` could be abbreviated to `g sy stat`.

## Adding and removing options from lists

When configuring a list, the `set` command will remove the previous configuration.

For example, if a user group currently includes members A, B, and C, the command `set member D` will remove members A, B, and C. To avoid removing the existing members from the group, the command `set members A B C D` must be used.

To avoid this issue, the following commands are available:

| | |
|---|---|
| **append** | Add an option to an existing list.<br>For example, `append member D` adds user D to the user group without removing any of the existing members. |
| **select** | Clear all of the options except for those specified.<br>For example, `select member B` removes all member from the group except for member B. |
| **unselect** | Remove an option from an existing list.<br>For example, `unselect member C` removes only member C from the group, without affecting the other members. |

## Environment variables

The following environment variables are support by the CLI. Variable names are case-sensitive.

| | |
|---|---|
| **$USERFROM** | The management access type (`ssh`, `jsconsole`, and so on) and the IPv4 address of the administrator that configured the item. |
| **$USERNAME** | The account name of the administrator that configured the item. |
| **$SerialNum** | The serial number of the FortiGate unit. |

For example, to set a FortiGate device's host name to its serial number, use the following CLI command:

```
config system global
   set hostname $SerialNum
end
```

## Special characters

The following characters cannot be used in most CLI commands: `<`, `>`, `(`, `)`, `#`, `'`, and `"`

If one of those characters, or a space, needs to be entered as part of a string, it can be entered by using a special command, enclosing the entire string in quotes, or preceding it with an escape character (backslash, \).

To enter a question mark (`?`) or a tab, *Ctrl* + *V* or *Ctrl* + *Shift* + - must be entered first.



Question marks and tabs cannot be copied into the CLI Console or some SSH clients. They must be types in.

| Character | Keys |
|---|---|
| ? | Ctrl + V or Ctrl + Shift + - then ? |

| Character | Keys |
|---|---|
| Tab | Ctrl + V then Tab |
| Space<br>(as part of a string value, not to end the string) | Enclose the string in single or double quotation marks: `"Security Administrator"`. or `'Security Administrator'`.<br>Precede the space with a backslash: `Security\ Administrator`. |
| '<br>(as part of a string value, not to begin or end the string) | \' |
| "<br>(as part of a string value, not to begin or end the string) | \" |
| \ | \\ |

## Using grep to filter command output

The `get`, `show`, and `diagnose` commands can produce large amounts of output. The `grep` command can be used to filter the output so that it only shows the required information.

The grep command is based on the standard UNIX grep, used for searching text output based on regular expressions.

For example, the following command displays the MAC address of the internal interface:

```
get hardware nic internal | grep Current_HWaddr
    Current_HWaddr        00:09:0f:cb:c2:75
```

The following command will display all TCP sessions that are in the session list, including the session list line number in the output:

```
get system session list | grep -n tcp
```

The following command will display all of the lines in the HTTP replacement message that contain `URL` or `url`:

```
show system replacemsg http | grep -i url
```

The following options can also be used:

```
-A <num> After
-B <num> Before
-C <num> Context
```

The `-f` option is available to support contextual output, in order to show the complete configuration. The following example shows the difference in the output when `-f` is used versus when it is not used:

Without `-f`:

```
show | grep ldap-group1
    edit "ldap-group1"
        set groups "ldap-group1"
```

With `-f`:

```
show | grep -f ldap-group1
    config user group
        edit "ldap-group1"
            set member "pc40-LDAP"
        next
    end
    config firewall policy
```

```
        edit 2
            set srcintf "port31"
            set dstintf "port32"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set identity-based enable
            set nat enable
            config identity-based-policy
                edit 1
                    set schedule "always"
                    set groups "ldap-group1"
                    set dstaddr "all"
                    set service "ALL"
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

## Language support and regular expressions

Characters such as ñ and é, symbols, and ideographs are sometimes acceptable input. Support varies depending on the type of item that is being configured. CLI commands, objects, field names, and options must use their exact ASCII characters, but some items with arbitrary names or values can be input using your language of choice. To use other languages in those cases, the correct encoding must be used.

Input is stored using Unicode UTF-8 encoding, but is not normalized from other encodings into UTF-8 before it is stored. If your input method encodes some characters differently than in UTF-8, configured items may not display or operate as expected.

Regular expressions are especially impacted. Matching uses the UTF-8 character values. If you enter a regular expression using a different encoding, or if an HTTP client sends a request in a different encoding, matches may not be what is expected.

For example, with Shift-JIS, backslashes could be inadvertently interpreted as the symbol for the Japanese yen ( ¥ ), and vice versa. A regular expression intended to match HTTP requests containing monetary values with a yen symbol may not work it if the symbol is entered using the wrong encoding.

For best results:

- use UTF-8 encoding, or
- use only characters whose numerically encoded values are the same in UTF-8, such as the US-ASCII characters that are encoded using the same values in ISO 8859-1, Windows code page 1252, Shift-JIS, and other encoding methods, or
- for regular expressions that must match HTTP requests, use the same encoding as your HTTP clients.



HTTP clients may send requests in encodings other than UTF-8. Encodings usually vary based on the client's operating system or input language. If the client's encoding method cannot be predicted, you might only be able to match the parts of the request that are in English, as the values for English characters tend to be encoded identically, regardless of the encoding method.

If the FortiGate is configured to use an encoding method other than UTF-8, the management computer's language may need to be changed, including the web browse and terminal emulator. If the FortiGate is configured using non-ASCII characters, all the systems that interact with the FortiGate must also support the same encoding method. If possible, the same encoding method should be used throughout the configuration to avoid needing to change the language settings on the management computer.

The GUI and CLI client normally interpret output as encoded using UTF-8. If they do not, configured items may not display correctly. Exceptions include items such as regular expression that may be configured using other encodings to match the encoding of HTTP requests that the FortiGate receives.

**To enter non-ASCII characters in a terminal emulator:**

1. On the management computer, start the terminal client.
2. Configure the client to send and receive characters using UTF-8 encoding.
   Support for sending and receiving international characters varies by terminal client.
3. Log in to the FortiGate unit.
4. At the command prompt, type your command and press *Enter*.
   Words that use encoded characters may need to be enclosed in single quotes ( ' ).
   Depending on your terminal client's language support, you may need to interpret the characters into character codes before pressing *Enter*. For example, you might need to enter: `edit '\743\601\613\743\601\652'`
5. The CLI displays the command and its output.

## Screen paging

By default, the CLI will pause after displaying each page worth of text when a command has multiple pages of output. this can be useful when viewing lengthy outputs that might exceed the buffer of terminal emulator.

When the display pauses and shows `--More--`, you can:

- Press *Enter* to show the next line,
- Press *Q* to stop showing results and return to the command prompt,
- Press an arrow key, *Insert*, *Home*, *Delete*, *End*, *Page Up*, or *Page Down* to show the next few pages,
- Press any other key to show the next page, or
- Wait for about 30 seconds for the console to truncate the output and return to the command prompt.

When pausing the screen is disable, press *Ctrl + C* to stop the output and log out of the FortiGate.

**To disable pausing the CLI output:**

```
config system console
   set output standard
end
```

**To enable pausing the CLI output:**

```
config system console
   set output more
end
```

### Changing the baud rate

The baud rate of the local console connection can be changed from its default value of 9600.

**To change the baud rate:**

```
config system console
   set baudrate {9600 | 19200 | 38400 | 57600 | 115200}
end
```

### Editing the configuration file

The FortiGate configuration file can be edited on an external host by backing up the configuration, editing the configuration file, and then restoring the configuration to the FortiGate.

Editing the configuration file can save time is many changes need to be made, particularly if the plain text editor that you are using provides features such as batch changes.

**To edit the configuration file:**

1. Backup the configuration. See Configuration backups on page 112 for details.
2. Open the configuration file in a plain text editor that supports UNIX-style line endings.
3. Edit the file as needed.



Do not edit the first line of the configuration file.

This line contains information about the firmware version and FortiGate model. If you change the model number, the FortiGate unit will reject the configuration when you attempt to restore it.

4. Restore the modified configuration to the FortiGate. See Configuration backups on page 112 for details.
The FortiGate downloads the configuration file and checks that the model information is correct. If it is correct, the configuration file is loaded and each line is checked for errors. If a command is invalid, that command is ignored. If the configuration file is valid, the FortiGate restarts and loads the downloaded configuration.

## Command syntax

When entering a command, the CLI console requires that you use valid syntax and conform to expected input constraints. It rejects invalid commands. Indentation is used to indicate the levels of nested commands.

Each command line consists of a command word, usually followed by configuration data or a specific item that the command uses or affects.

### Notation

Brackets, vertical bars, and spaces are used to denote valid syntax. Constraint notations, such as `<address_ipv4>`, indicate which data types or string patterns are acceptable value input.

All syntax uses the following conventions:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Angle brackets < >** | Indicate a variable of the specified data type. |
| **Curly brackets { }** | Indicate that a variable or variables are mandatory. |
| **Square brackets [ ]** | Indicate that the variable or variables are optional.<br>For example:<br>`show system interface [<name_str>]`<br>To show the settings for all interfaces, you can enter `show system interface`<br>To show the settings for the Port1 interface, you can enter `show system interface port1`. |
| **Vertical bar \|** | A vertical bar separates alternative, mutually exclusive options.<br>For example:<br>`set protocol {ftp \| sftp}`<br>You can enter either `set protocol ftp` or `set protocol sftp`. |
| **Space** | A space separates non-mutually exclusive options.<br>For example:<br>`set allowaccess {ping https ssh snmp http fgfm radius-acct probe-response capwap ftm}`<br>You can enter any of the following:<br>`set allowaccess ping`<br>`set allowaccess https ping ssh`<br>`set allowaccess http https snmp ssh ping`<br>In most cases, to make changes to lists that contain options separated by spaces, you need to retype the entire list, including all the options that you want to apply and excluding all the options that you want to remove. |

## Optional values and ranges

Any field that is optional will use square-brackets. The overall config command will still be valid whether or not the option is configured.

Square-brackets can be used is to show that multiple options can be set, even intermixed with ranges. The following example shows a field that can be set to either a specific value or range, or multiple instances:

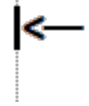
```
config firewall service custom
   set iprange <range1> [<range2> <range3> ...]
end
```

## next

The `next` command is used to maintain a hierarchy and flow to CLI commands. It is at the same indentation level as the preceding `edit` command, to mark where a table entry finishes.

The following example shows the next command used in the subcommand `entries`:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit <1>
        set name <name>
        set comment [comment]
        config entries
            edit <2>
                set filter-type {pattern | type}
            next
```



After configuring table entry <2> then entering `next`, the <2> table entry is saved and the console returns to the `entries` prompt:

```
FGT60E1Q23456789 (entries) #
```

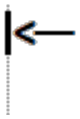
You can now create more table entries as needed, or enter `end` to save the table and return to the `filepattern` table element prompt.

## end

The `end` command is used to maintain a hierarchy and flow to CLI commands.

The following example shows the same command and subcommand as the `next` command example, except `end` has been entered instead of `next` after the subcommand:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit <1>
        set name <name>
        set comment [comment]
        config entries
            edit <2>
                set filter-type {pattern | type}
    end
```



Entering `end` will save the <2> table entry and the table, and exit the `entries` subcommand entirely. The console returns to the filepattern table element prompt:

```
FGT60E1Q23456789 (1) #
```

## Subcommands

Subcommands are available from within the scope of some commands. When you enter a subcommand level, the command prompt changes to indicate the name of the current command scope. For example, after entering:

```
config system admin
```

the command prompt becomes:

```
(admin)#
```

Applicable subcommands are available until you exit the command, or descend an additional level into another subcommand. Subcommand scope is indicated by indentation.

For example, the `edit` subcommand is only available in commands that affects tables, and the `next` subcommand is available only in the `edit` subcommand:

```
config system interface
   edit port1
      set status up
   next
end
```

The available subcommands vary by command. From a command prompt under the `config` command, subcommands that affect tables and fields could be available.

### Table subcommands

| | |
|---|---|
| **edit <table_row>** | Create or edit a table value.<br>In objects such as security policies, `<table_row>` is a sequence number. To create a new table entry without accidentally editing an existing entry, enter `edit 0`. The CLI will confirm that creation of entry 0, but will assign the next unused number when the entry is saved after entering `end` or `next`.<br>For example, to create a new firewall policy, enter the following commands:<br>`config firewall policy`<br>`edit 0`<br>`....`<br>`next`<br>`end`<br>To edit an existing policy, enter the following commands:<br>`config firewall policy`<br>`edit 27`<br>`....`<br>`next`<br>`end`<br>The `edit` subcommand changes the command prompt to the name of the table value that is being edited. |
| **delete <table_row>** | Delete a table value.<br>For example, to delete firewall policy 30, enter the following commands:<br>`config firewall policy`<br>`delete 30`<br>`end` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **purge** | Clear all table values.<br>The `purge` command cannot be undone. To restore purged table values, the configuration must be restored from a backup. |
| **move** | Move an ordered table value.<br>In the firewall policy table, this equivalent to dragging a policy into a new position. It does not change the policy's ID number.<br>For example, to move policy 27 to policy 30, enter the following commands:<br>`config firewall policy`<br>`move 27 to 30`<br>`end`<br>The `move` subcommand is only available in tables where the order of the table entries matters. |
| **clone <table_row> to <table_row>** | Make a clone of a table entry.<br>For example, to create firewall policy 30 as a clone of policy 27, enter the following commands:<br>`config firewall policy`<br>`clone 27 to 30`<br>`end`<br>The `clone` subcommand may not be available for all tables. |
| **rename <table_row> to <table_row>** | Rename a table entry.<br>For example to rename an administrator from Flank to Frank, enter the following commands:<br>`config system admin`<br>`rename Flank to Frank`<br>`end`<br>The `rename` subcommand is only available in tables where the entries can be renamed. |
| **get** | List the current table entries.<br>For example, to view the existing firewall policy table entries, enter the following commands:<br>`config firewall policy`<br>`get` |
| **show** | Show the configuration. Only table entries that are not set to default values are shown. |
| **end** | Save the configuration and exit the current `config` command. |



Purging the `system interface` or `system admin` tables does not reset default table values. This can result in being unable to connect to or log in to the FortiGate, requiring the FortiGate to be formatted and restored.

## Field subcommands

| | |
|---|---|
| **set <field> <value>** | Modify the value of a field. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | For example, the command `set fsso enable` sets the `fsso` field to the value `enable`. |
| **unset** | Set the field to its default value. |
| **select** | Clear all of the options except for those specified.<br>For example, if a group contains members A, B, C, and D, to remove all members except for B, use the command `select member B`. |
| **unselect** | Remove an option from an existing list.<br>For example, if a group contains members A, B, C, and D, to remove only member B, use the command `unselect member B`. |
| **append** | Add an option to an existing multi-option table value. |
| **clear** | Clear all the options from a multi-option table value. |
| **get** | List the configuration of the current table entry, including default and customized values. |
| **show** | Show the configuration. Only values that are not set to default values are shown. |
| **next** | Save changes to the table entry and exit the `edit` command so that you can configure the next table entry. |
| **abort** | Exit the command without saving. |
| **end** | Save the configuration and exit the current `config` command. |

## Permissions

Administrator, or access, profiles control what CLI commands an administrator can access by assigning read, write, or no access to each are of FortiOS. For information, see Administrator profiles on page 654.

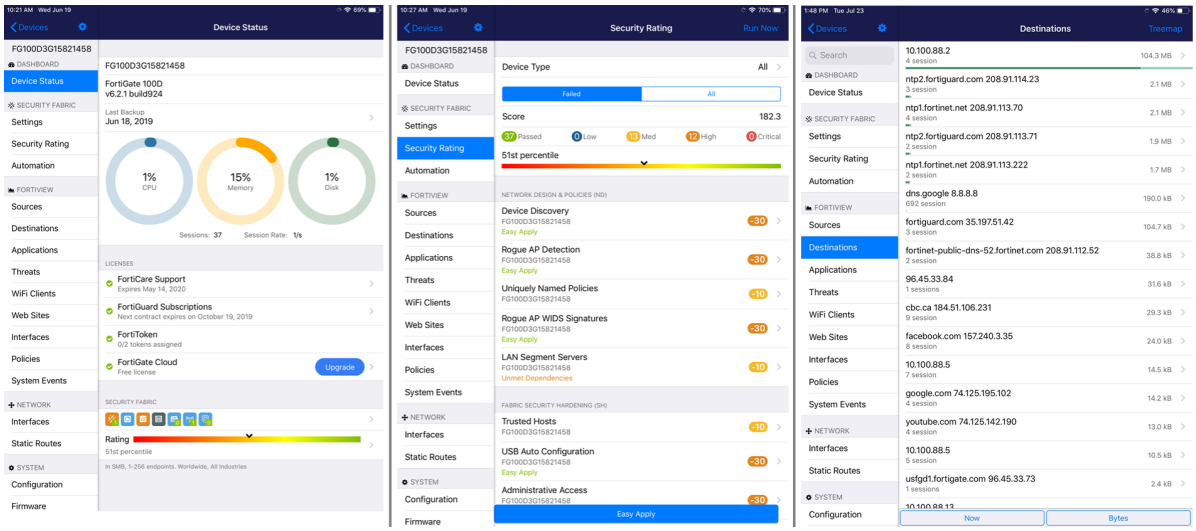
Read access is required to view configurations. Write access is required to make configuration changes. Depending on your account's profile, you may not have access to all CLI commands. To have access to all CLI commands, an administrator account with the *super_admin* profile must be used, such as the *admin* account.

Accounts assigned the *super_admin* profile are similar to the root administrator account. They have full permission to view and change all FortiGate configuration options, including viewing and changing other administrator accounts.

To increase account security, set strong passwords for all administrator accounts, and change the passwords regularly.

# FortiExplorer for iOS

FortiExplorer for iOS is a user-friendly application that helps you to rapidly provision, deploy, and monitor Security Fabric components from your iOS device.




FortiExplorer for iOS requires iOS 10.0 or later and is compatible with iPhone, iPad, and Apple TV. It is supported by FortiOS 5.6 and later, and is only available on the App Store for iOS devices.

Advanced features are available with the purchase of FortiExplorer Pro. Paid features include the ability to add more than two devices and the ability to download firmware images from FortiCare.

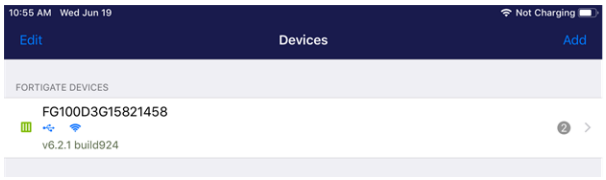
Up to six members can use this app with 'Family Sharing' enabled in the App Store.

## Getting started with FortiExplorer

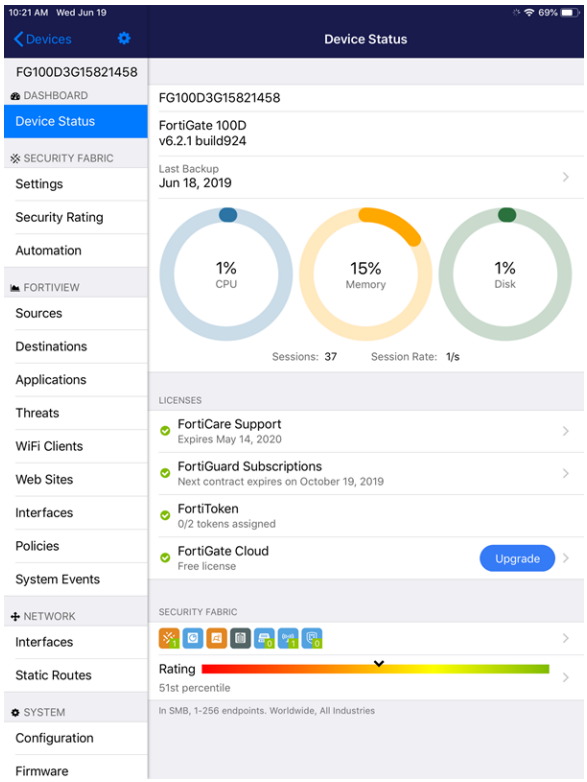
If your FortiGate is accessible on a wireless network, you can connect to it using FortiExplorer provided that your iOS device is on the same network (see Connecting FortiExplorer to a FortiGate via WiFi). Otherwise, you will need to physically connect your iOS device to the FortiGate using a USB cable.

**To connect and configure a FortiGate with FortiExplorer using a USB connection:**

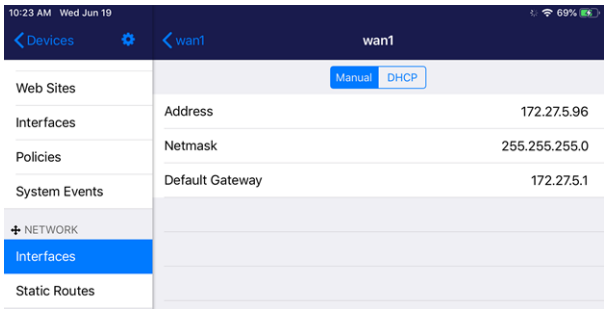
1. Connect your iOS device to your FortiGate USB A port. If prompted on your iOS device, *Trust* this computer.
2. Open FortiExplorer and select your FortiGate from the *FortiGate Devices* list . A blue USB icon will indicate that you are connected over a USB connection.



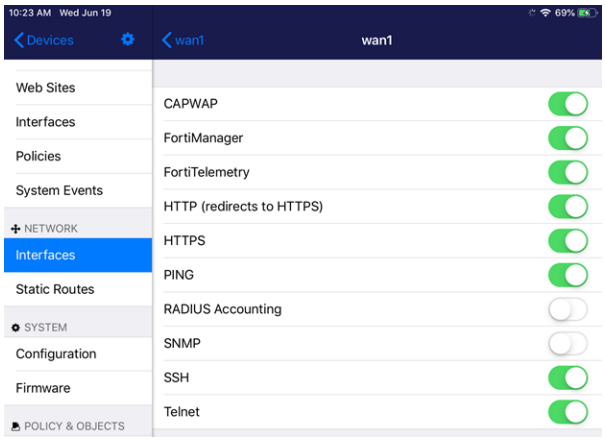

3. On the *Login* screen, select *USB*.
4. Enter the default *Username* (`admin`) and leave the *Password* field blank.
5. Optionally, select *Remember Password*.
6. Tap *Done* when you are ready.
   FortiExplorer opens the FortiGate management interface to the *Device Status* page:



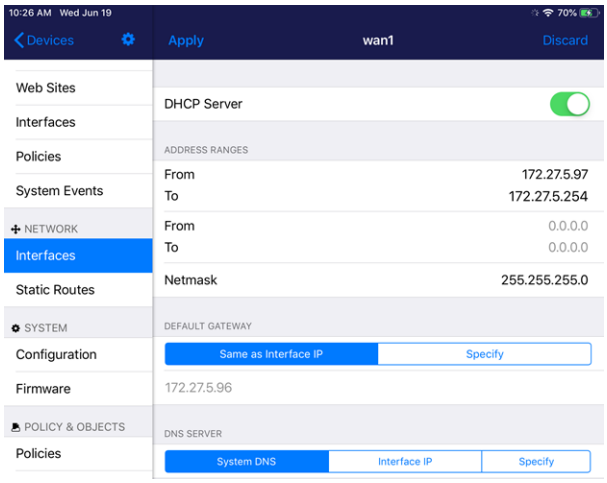

7. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and configure the WAN interface or interfaces.
8. The *wan1* interface *Address* mode is set to *DHCP* by default. Set it to *Manual* and enter its *Address*, *Netmask*, and *Default Gateway*, and then *Apply* your changes.



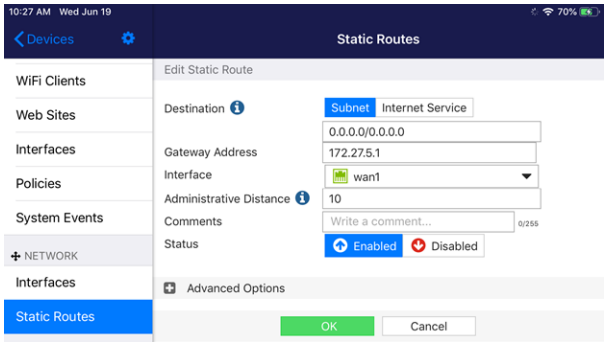

9. Optionally, configure *Administrative Access* to allow *HTTPS* access. This will allow administrators to access the FortiGate GUI using a web browser.



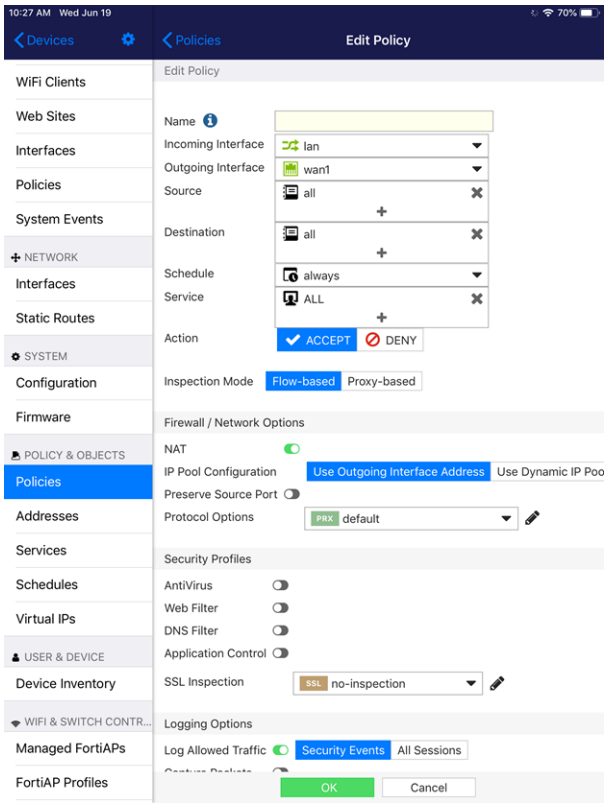

10. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and configure the local network (internal) interface.
11. Set the *Address* mode as before and configure *Administrative Access* if required.
12. Configure a *DHCP Server* for the internal network subnet.




13. Return to the internal interface using the < button at the top of the screen.
14. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and configure the static route to the gateway.




15. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and edit the Internet access policy. Enter a *Name* for the policy, enable the required *Security Profiles*, configure *Logging Options*, then tap *OK*.

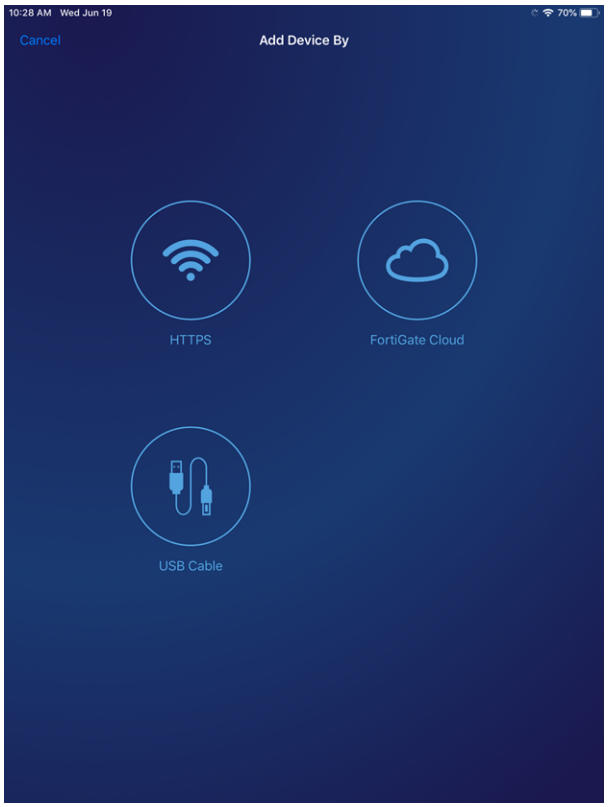



## Connecting FortiExplorer to a FortiGate via WiFi

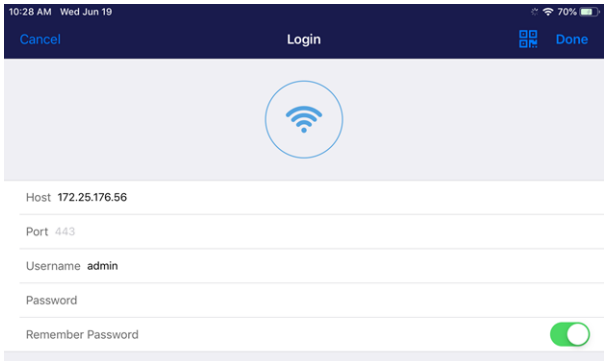
You can wirelessly connect to the FortiGate if your iOS device and the FortiGate are both connected to the same wireless network.

**To connect and configure a FortiGate with FortiExplorer wirelessly:**

1. Open the FortiExplorer app and tap *Add* on the *Devices* page.
2. On the *Add Device By* page, tap *HTTPS*.




3. Enter the *Host* information, *Username*, and *Password*.
4. If required, change the default *Port* number, and optionally enable *Remember Password*.

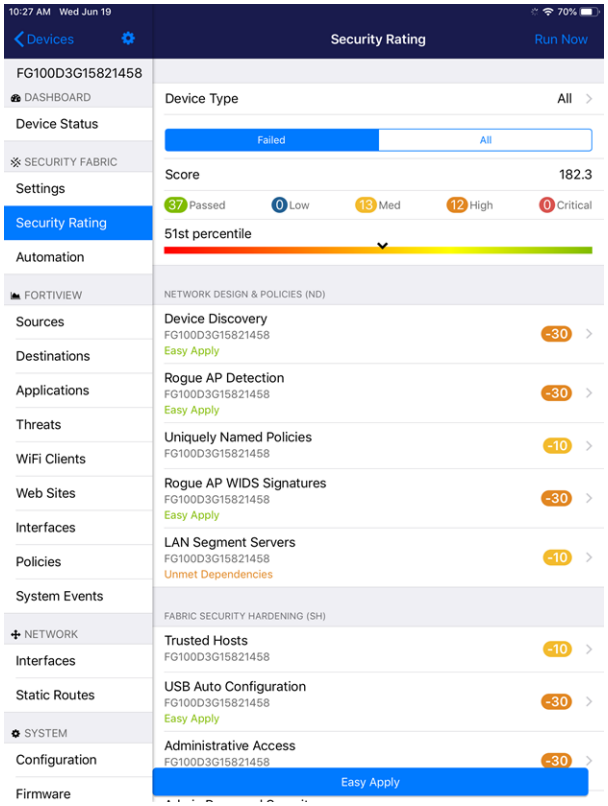



5. Tap *Done*.
6. If the FortiGate device identity cannot be verified, tap *Connect* at the prompt.
   FortiExplorer opens the FortiGate management interface to the *Device Status* page.

## Running a security rating

After configuring your network, run a security rating check to identify vulnerabilities and highlight best practices that could improve your network's security and performance.

Go to *Security Fabric* > *Security Rating* and follow the steps to determine the score. See Security rating on page 199 for more information.




## Upgrading to FortiExplorer Pro

FortiExplorer Pro includes the option to add more than two devices and download firmware images from FortiCare.

**To upgrade to FortiExplorer Pro:**

1. In FortiExplorer, go to *Settings*.
2. Tap *Upgrade to FortiExplorer Pro*.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

# Basic administration

This section contains information about basic FortiGate administration that you can do after you installing the unit in your network.

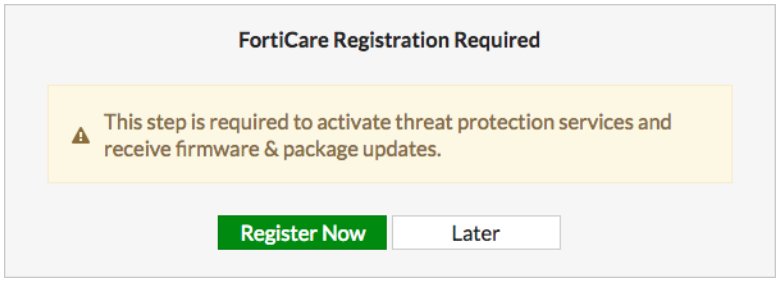
- Registration on page 44
- FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud login on page 46
- Transfer a device to another FortiCloud account on page 49

## Registration

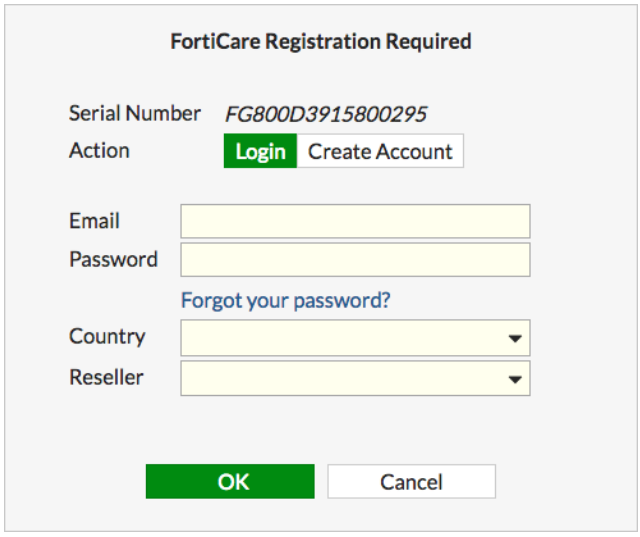
The FortiGate must be registered to have full access to Fortinet Customer Service and Support, and FortiGuard services.

**To register your FortiGate:**

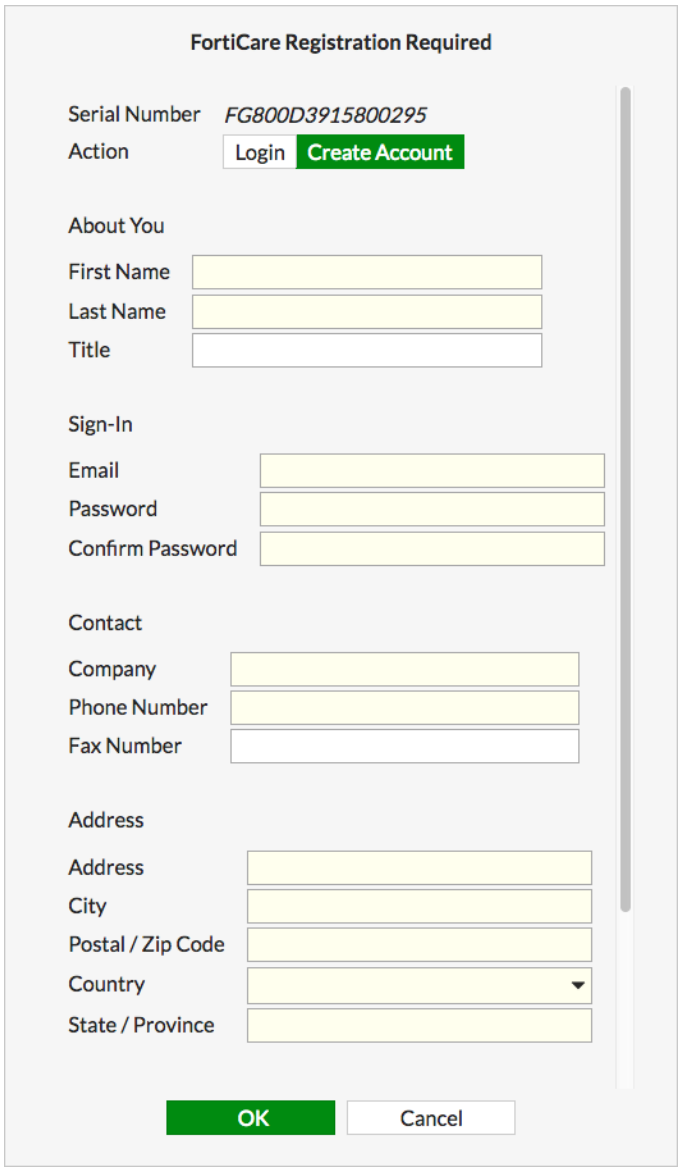
1. Connect to the FortiGate GUI. A message is shown stating that FortiCare registration is required.



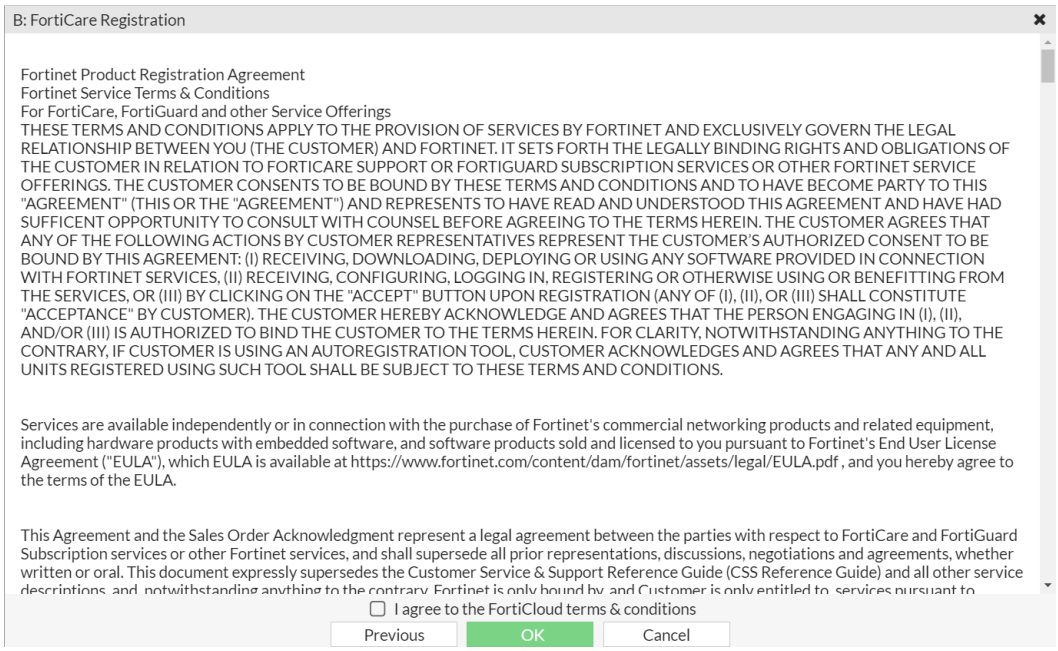

2. Click *Register Now*.
3. If you already have a support account, set *Action* to *Login*, and enter the required information.




If you need to create an account, set *Action* to *Create Account*, and enter the required information.


FortiCare Registration Required
Serial Number
FG800D3915800295
Action
Login
Create Account
About You
First Name
Last Name
Title
Sign-In
Email
Password
Confirm Password
Contact
Company
Phone Number
Fax Number
Address
Address
City
Postal / Zip Code
Country
State / Province
OK
Cancel

4. Click *OK*.The FortiCare registration agreement is displayed.




5. Agree to the terms of the registration and click *OK*.
6. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
7. In the *License Information* table, the *FortiCare Support* status is *Registered*. There may be a delay before the status is updated on your FortiGate.

## FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud login

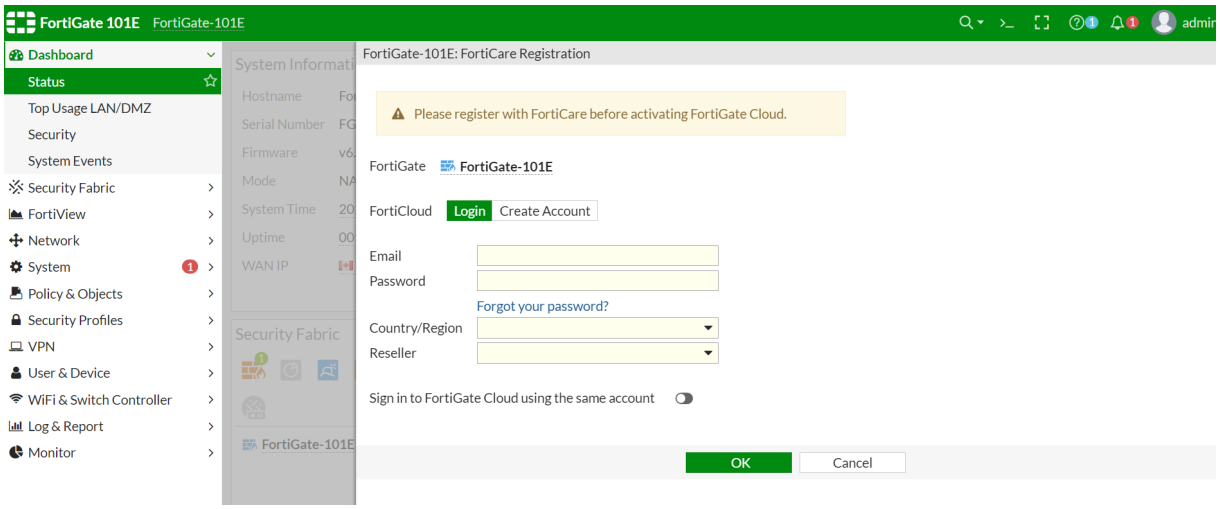
With FortiCloud, FortiGate supports a unified login to FortiCare and FortiGate Cloud. The FortiGate Cloud setup is a subset of the FortiCare setup.

- If the FortiGate is not registered, activating FortiGate Cloud will force you to register with FortiCare.
- If a FortiGate is registered in FortiCare using a FortiCloud account, then only that FortiCloud account can be used to activate FortiGate Cloud.
- If a different FortiCloud account was already used to activate FortiGate Cloud, then a notification asking you to migrate to FortiCloud is shown in the GUI after upgrading FortiOS.

The CLI can be used to activate FortiGate Cloud without registration, or with a different FortiCloud account.

**To activate FortiGate Cloud and register with FortiCare at the same time:**

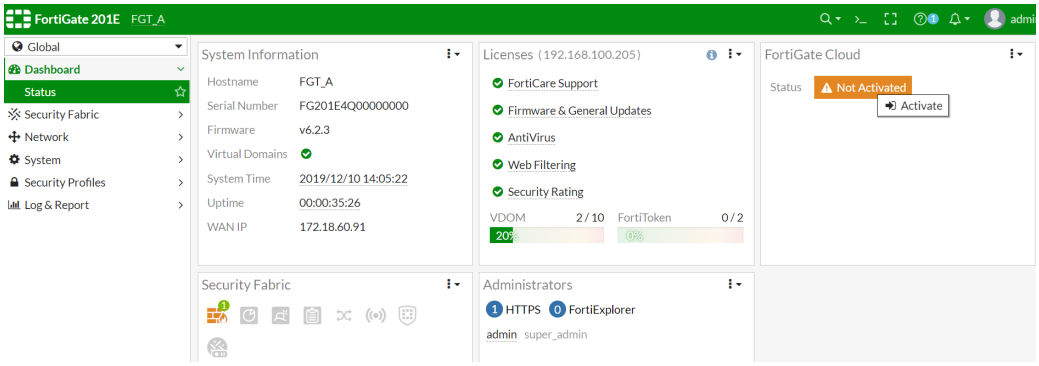
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. In the FortiGate Cloud widget, click *Not Activated* > *Activate*.
   You must register with FortiCare before activating FortiGate Cloud.



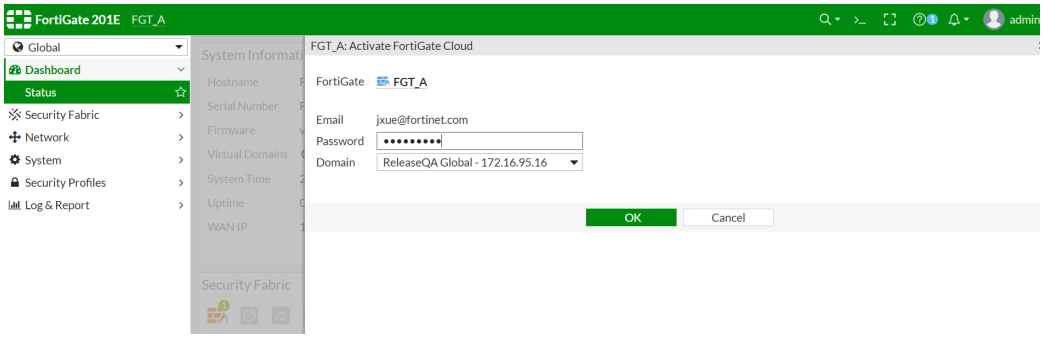

3. Enter your FortiCare *Email* address and *Password*.
4. Select your *Country/Region* and *Reseller*.
5. Enable *Sign in to FortiGate Cloud using the same account*.
6. Click *OK*.

**To activate FortiGate Cloud on an already registered FortiGate:**

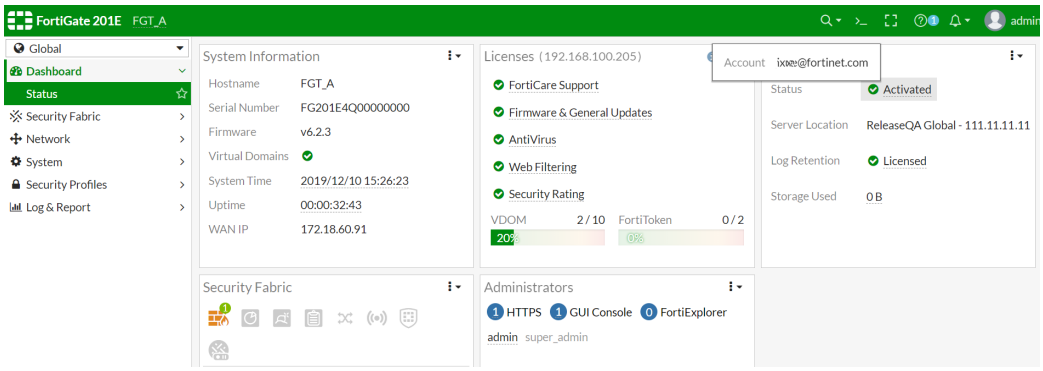
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. In the FortiGate Cloud widget, click *Not Activated* > *Activate*.




3. Enter the password for the account that was used to register the FortiGate.

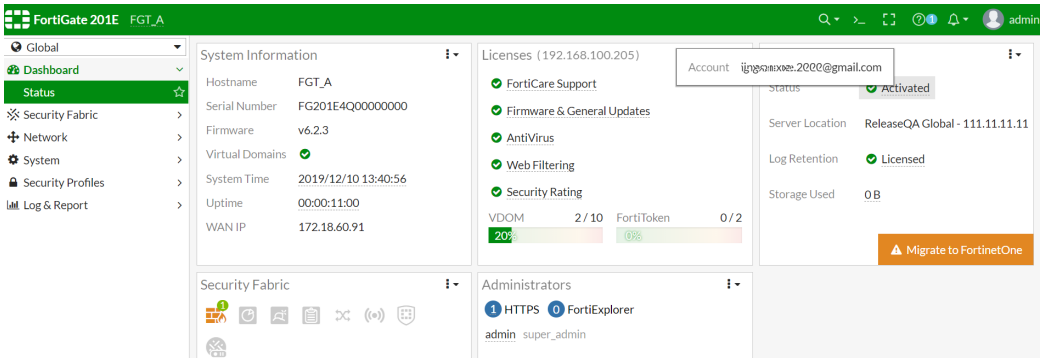



4. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate Cloud widget now shows the FortiCloud account.

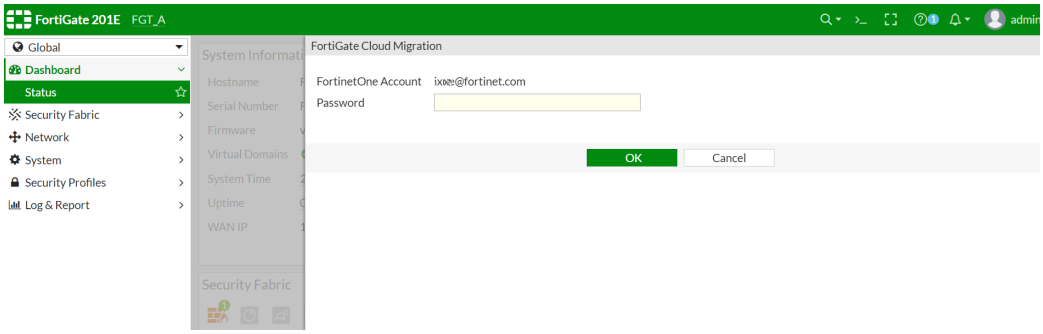



**To migrate from the activated FortiGate Cloud account to the registered FortiCloud account:**

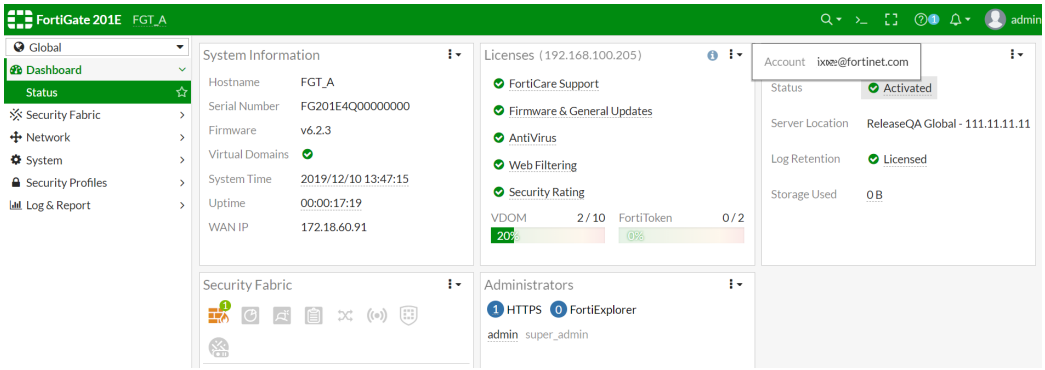
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.




2. In the FortiGate Cloud widget, click *Migrate to FortiCloud*.




3. Enter the password for the account that was used to register the FortiGate, then click *OK*.
The FortiGate Cloud widget now shows the FortiCloud account.



**To activate FortiGate Cloud using an account that is not used for registration:**

1. In the CLI, enter the following command:

   ```
   execute fortiguard-log login <account_id> <password>
   ```

   Where the <account_id> and <password> are the credentials for the account that you are using to activate FortiGate Cloud.
2. Check the account type with following command:

   ```
   # diagnose fdsm contract-controller-update
   Protocol=2.0|Response=202|Firmware=FAZ-4K-FW-2.50-
   100|SerialNumber=FAMS000000000000|Persistent=false|ResponseItem=HomeServer:172.16.95.151
   :443*AlterServer:172.16.95.151:443*Contract:20200408*NextRequest:86400*UploadConfig:Fals
   e*ManagementMode:Local*ManagementID:737941253*AccountType:multitenancy

   Result=Success
   ```

A FortiCloud account that is not used for the support portal account cannot be used to register FortiGate. Attempting to activate FortiGate Cloud with this type of account will fail.

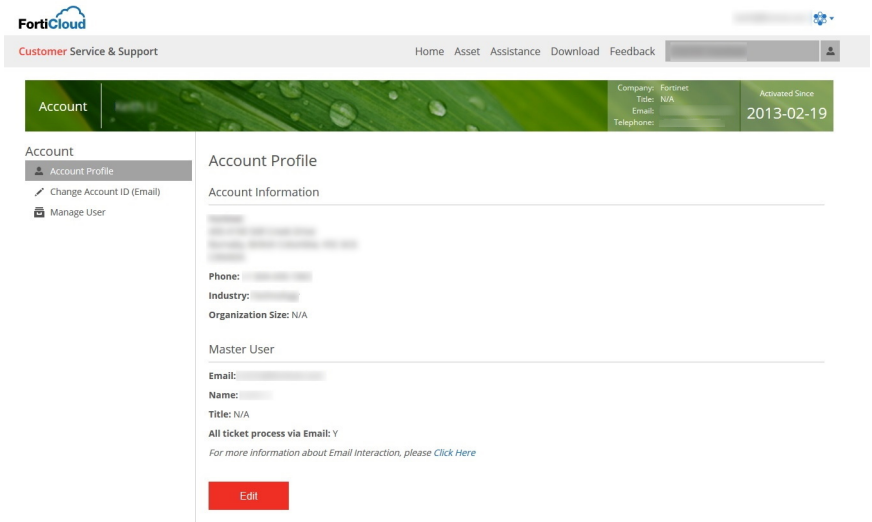
## Transfer a device to another FortiCloud account

Master account users can transfer a device from one FortiCloud/FortiCare account to another. Users can transfer a device up to three times within a twelve-month time period.

### Requirements:

To transfer an account, you must:

- Have access to the FortiGate, as well as both the FortiCloud and FortiCare accounts.
- Be a master account user.
  To verify you are the master account user, go to support.fortinet.com. Click the user name, then click *My Account*.

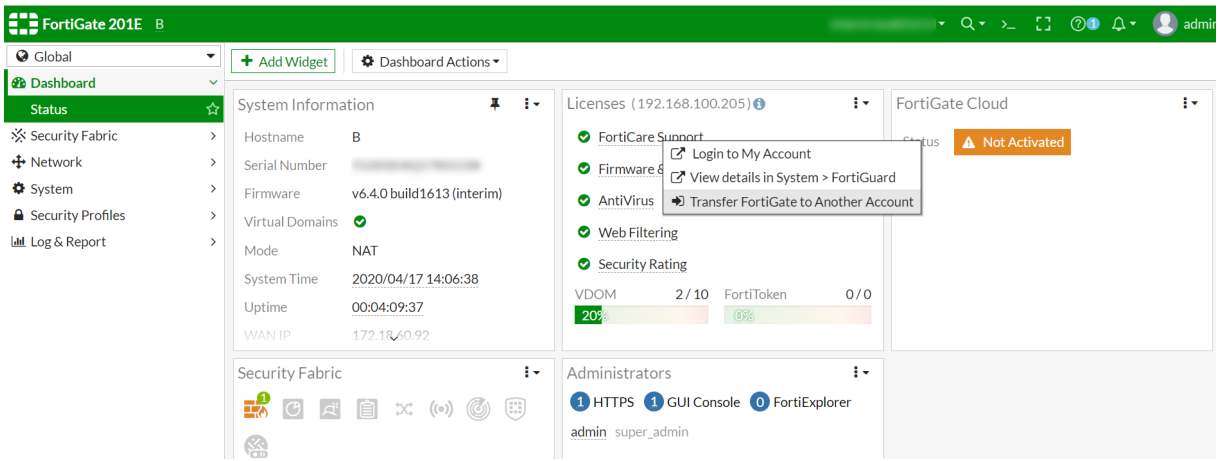


You can transfer a device up to three times in a twelve-month time period. If more transfers are required within the twelve-month time period, contact Technical Support to request the transfer.

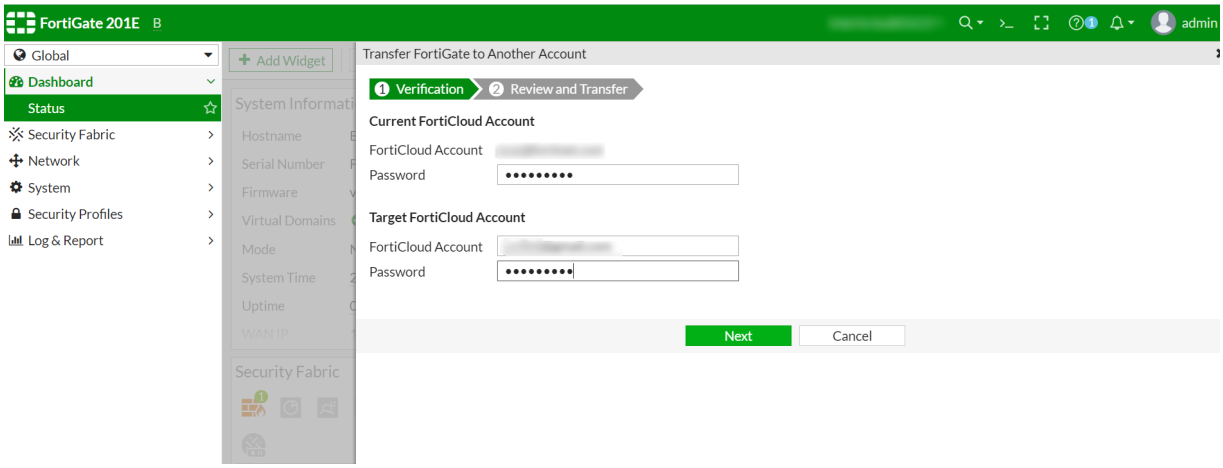
### To transfer an account in the GUI:

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*. In the *Status* dashboard, click on *FortiCare Support*, and click *Transfer FortiGate to Another Account*.

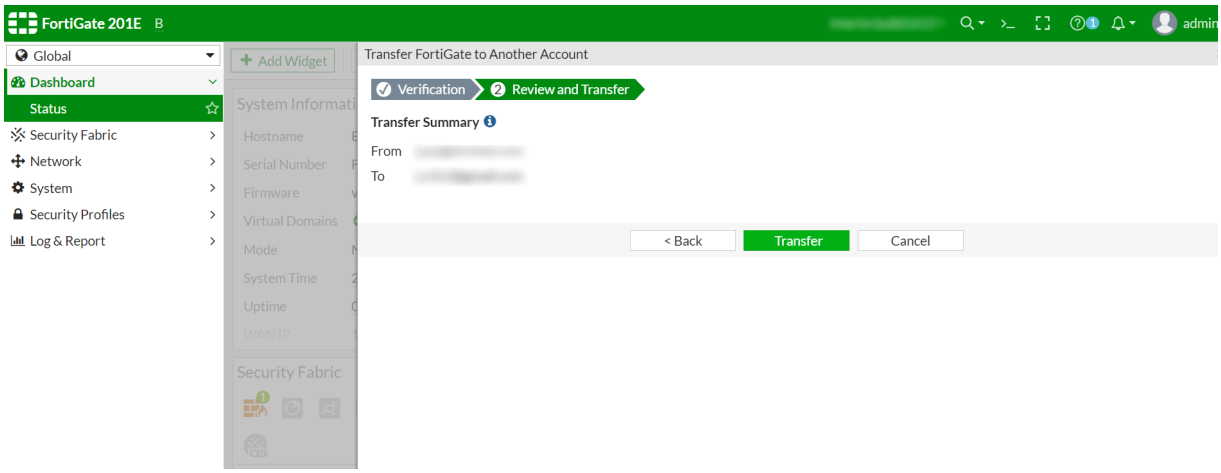
   You can also transfer an account from *System* > *FortiGuard*.



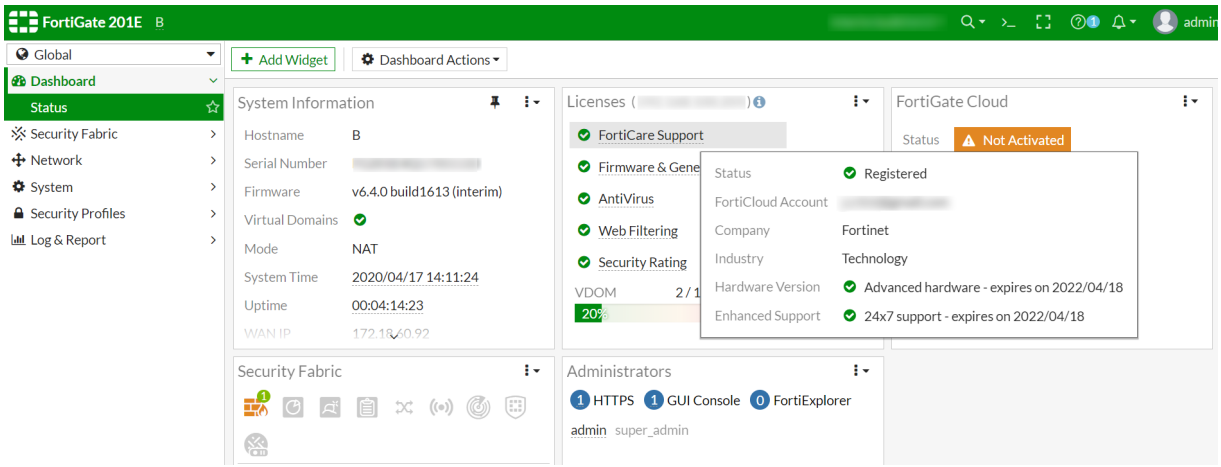

2. In the *Current FortiCloud Account* fields, enter the username and password for the current account. In the *Target FortiCloud Account* fields, enter the new username and password. Click *Next*.




FortiGate transfers the account.




After the transfer is complete, FortiGate displays the new the FortiCloud account.




# Troubleshooting your installation

If your FortiGate does not function as desired after installation, try the following troubleshooting tips:

1. **Check for equipment issues**
   Verify that all network equipment is powered on and operating as expected. Refer to the QuickStart Guide for information about connecting your FortiGate to the network.
2. **Check the physical network connections**
   Check the cables used for all physical connections to ensure that they are fully connected and do not appear damaged, and make sure that each cable connects to the correct device and the correct Ethernet port on that device.
3. **Verify that you can connect to the internal IP address of the FortiGate**
   Connect to the GUI from the FortiGate's internal interface by browsing to its IP address. From the PC, try to ping the internal interface IP address; for example, `ping 192.168.1.99`. If you cannot connect to the internal interface, verify the IP configuration of the PC. If you can ping the interface but can't connect to the GUI, check the settings for administrative access on that interface. Alternatively, use SSH to connect to the CLI, and then confirm that HTTPS has been enabled for Administrative Access on the interface.

4. **Check the FortiGate interface configurations**
   Check the configuration of the FortiGate interface connected to the internal network (under *Network* > *Interfaces*) and check that *Addressing mode* is set to the correct mode.
5. **Verify the security policy configuration**
   Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and verify that the internal interface to Internet-facing interface security policy has been added and is located near the top of the policy list. Check the *Active Sessions* column to ensure that traffic has been processed (if this column does not appear, right-click on the table header and select *Active Sessions*). If you are using NAT mode, check the configuration of the policy to make sure that *NAT* is enabled and that *Use Outgoing Interface Address* is selected.
6. **Verify the static routing configuration**
   Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and verify that the default route is correct. Go to *Monitor* > *Routing Monitor* and verify that the default route appears in the list as a static route. Along with the default route, you should see two routes shown as *Connected*, one for each connected FortiGate interface.
7. **Verify that you can connect to the Internet-facing interface's IP address**
   Ping the IP address of the Internet-facing interface of your FortiGate. If you cannot connect to the interface, the FortiGate is not allowing sessions from the internal interface to Internet-facing interface. Verify that PING has been enabled for *Administrative Access* on the interface.
8. **Verify that you can connect to the gateway provided by your ISP**
   Ping the default gateway IP address from a PC on the internal network. If you cannot reach the gateway, contact your ISP to verify that you are using the correct gateway.
9. **Verify that you can communicate from the FortiGate to the Internet**
   Access the FortiGate CLI and use the command `execute ping 8.8.8.8`. You can also use the `execute traceroute 8.8.8.8` command to troubleshoot connectivity to the Internet.
10. **Verify the DNS configurations of the FortiGate and the PCs**
    Check for DNS errors by pinging or using traceroute to connect to a domain name; for example: `ping www.fortinet.com`.

    If the name cannot be resolved, the FortiGate or PC cannot connect to a DNS server and you should confirm that the DNS server IP addresses are present and correct.
11. **Confirm that the FortiGate can connect to the FortiGuard network**
    Once the FortiGate is on your network, you should confirm that it can reach the FortiGuard network. First, check the *License Information* widget to make sure that the status of all FortiGuard services matches the services that you have purchased. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*. Scroll down to *Filtering Services Availability* and select *Check Again*. After a minute, the GUI should indicate a successful connection.Verify that your FortiGate can resolve and reach FortiGuard at `service.fortiguard.net` by pinging the domain name. If you can reach this service, you can then verify the connection to FortiGuard servers by running the command `diagnose debug rating`. This displays a list of FortiGuard IP gateways you can connect to, as well as the following information:
    - `Weight`: Based on the difference in time zone between the FortiGate and this server
    - `RTT`: Return trip time
    - `Flags`: D (IP returned from DNS), I (Contract server contacted), T (being timed), F (failed)
    - `TZ`: Server time zone
    - `Curr Lost`: Current number of consecutive lost packets
    - `Total Lost`: Total number of lost packets
12. **Consider changing the MAC address of your external interface**
    Some ISPs do not want the MAC address of the device connecting to their network cable to change. If you have added a FortiGate to your network, you may have to change the MAC address of the Internet-facing interface using the following CLI command:

```
config system interface
   edit <interface>
```

```
        set macaddr <xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx>
    end
end
```

13. **Check the FortiGate bridge table (transparent mode)**
    When a FortiGate is in transparent mode, the unit acts like a bridge sending all incoming traffic out on the other interfaces. The bridge is between interfaces on the FortiGate unit. Each bridge listed is a link between interfaces. Where traffic is flowing between interfaces, you expect to find bridges listed. If you are having connectivity issues and there are no bridges listed, that is a likely cause. Check for the MAC address of the interface or device in question.To list the existing bridge instances on the FortiGate, use the following CLI command:

    ```
    diagnose netlink brctl name host root.b
    show bridge control interface root.b host.
    fdb: size=2048, used=25, num=25, depth=1
    Bridge root.b host table
    port no device devname mac addr ttl attributes
    3 4 wan1 00:09:0f:cb:c2:77 88
    3 4 wan1 00:26:2d:24:b7:d3 0
    3 4 wan1 00:13:72:38:72:21 98
    4 3 internal 00:1a:a0:2f:bc:c6 6
    1 6 dmz 00:09:0f:dc:90:69 0 Local Static
    3 4 wan1 c4:2c:03:0d:3a:38 81
    3 4 wan1 00:09:0f:15:05:46 89
    3 4 wan1 c4:2c:03:1d:1b:10 0
    2 5 wan2 00:09:0f:dc:90:68 0 Local Static
    ```

14. **Use FortiExplorer if you can't connect to the FortiGate over Ethernet**
    If you can't connect to the FortiGate GUI or CLI, you may be able to connect using FortiExplorer. Refer to the QuickStart Guide or see the section on FortiExplorer for more details.
15. **Either reset the FortiGate to factory defaults or contact Fortinet Support for assistance**
    To reset the FortiGate to factory defaults, use the CLI command `execute factoryreset`. When prompted, type `y` to confirm the reset.

If you require further assistance, visit the Fortinet Support website.

# Zero touch provisioning

This section contains instructions for configuring zero touch provisioning:


- Zero touch provisioning with FortiDeploy on page 53
- Zero touch provisioning with FortiManager on page 55

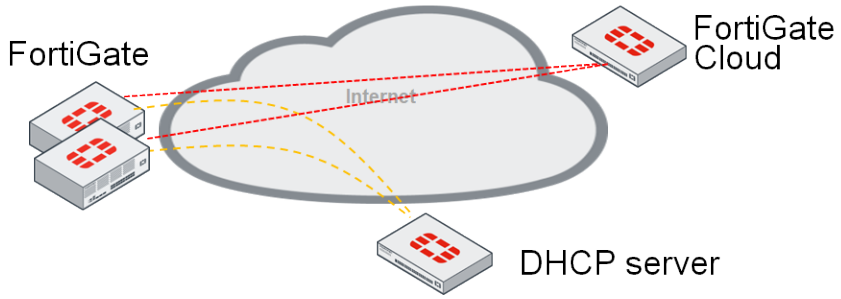

## Zero touch provisioning with FortiDeploy

You can use this feature only when the FortiGate boots up from factory reset.

## Topology

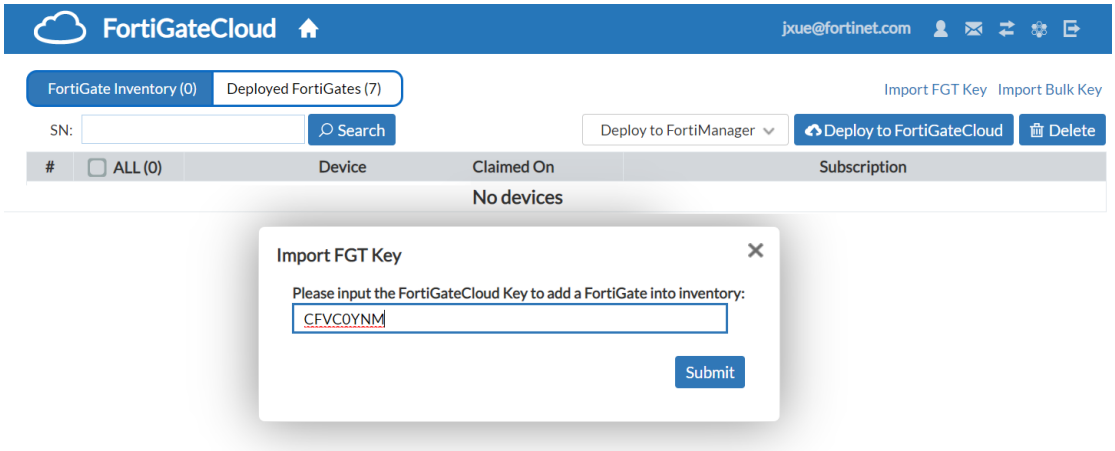
DHCP assignment

Management tunnel to FortiGate Cloud

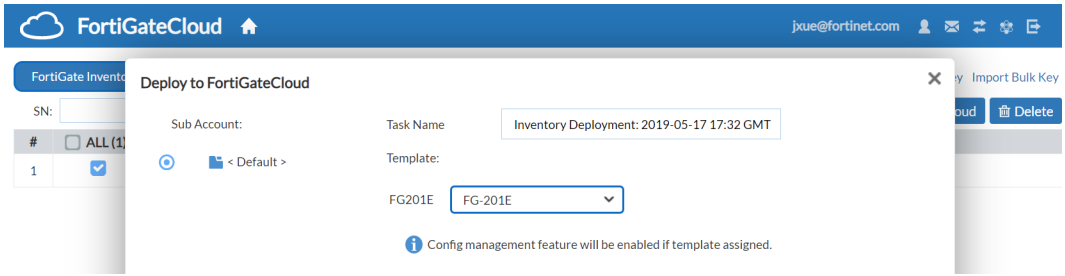



## FortiGate zero touch provisioning workflow

1. Add the FortiGate Cloud product key to the FortiGate Cloud portal so that the FortiGate serial number appears in the portal.




2. Set up a configuration template with the basic configuration in the FortiGate Cloud portal.
3. Deploy the FortiGate to FortiGate Cloud with that template.

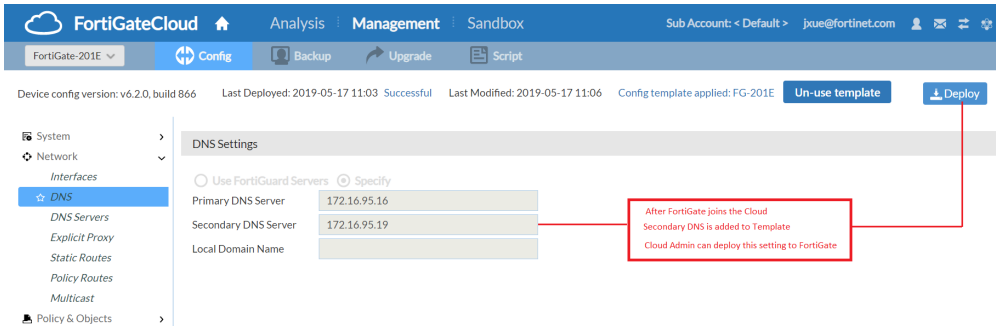



4. Ensure the FortiGate has an interface in default DHCP client mode and is connected to the ISP outlet.
5. Boot the FortiGate in factory reset. The FortiGate gets the DHCP lease so that it can access FortiGate Cloud in the Internet and join FortiGate Cloud.
   The FortiGate Cloud server checks that the FortiGate key is valid and then deploys the FortiGate to FortiGate Cloud.
   To prevent spoofing, FortiGate Cloud invalidates that key after a successful join.

6. Complete zero touch provisioning by obtaining configuration from platform template in the Cloud.

```
0:      set admintimeout 50
0: end
0: config system interface
0:      edit "wan1"
0:          set allowaccess ping ssh fgfm
0:      next
0:      edit "port1"
0:          set allowaccess ping
0:          set ip 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
0:      next
0:      edit "port2"
0:          set allowaccess ping
0:          set ip 2.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
0:      next
0: end
```

7. The FortiGate Cloud admin can change the template for different configuration requirements and then deploy the updated template to the FortiGate.
   For example, you can add a secondary DNS to the template and deploy it to FortiGate.




## Zero touch provisioning with FortiManager

You can use this feature only when the FortiGate boots up from factory reset. This feature is for FortiGate devices that cannot access the Internet.

A DHCP server includes option 240 and 241 which records FortiManager IP and domain name. FortiGate has an interface with the default DHCP client mode that is connected to the DHCP server in the intranet.

The FortiManager admin can authorize the FortiGate the specific ADOMs and install specific configurations on the FortiGate.

In the whole operation, you do not need to do any manual configuration on the FortiGate except connect to the DHCP server. This is called zero touch deployment.

To prevent spoofing, if a different FortiManager IP comes from the DHCP server later, FortiGate does not change the central management configuration.

### Example of configuring DHCP server with option 240

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 2
        set dns-service default
```

```
        set default-gateway 172.16.200.254
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "wan1"
        config ip-range
            edit 2
                set start-ip 172.16.200.201
                set end-ip 172.16.200.209
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
        config options
            edit 1
                set code 240
                set type ip
                set ip "172.18.60.115"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## FortiGate zero touch provisioning workflow

1. Boot the FortiGate in factory reset.

   ```
   G201E4Q17901047 # diagnose fdsm fmg-auto-discovery-status
   dhcp: fmg-ip=0.0.0.0, fmg-domain-name='', config-touched=0
   ```

   `config-touched=0` means no configuration change from the default.
2. When FortiGate boots in factory reset, it gets the DHCP lease including IP, gateway, DNS, and the FortiManager IP/URL. Central management is automatically configured by using FortiManager IP in option 240.

   ```
   FG201E4Q17901047 # show system central-management
   config system central-management
       set type fortimanager
       set fmg "172.18.60.115"
   end
   ```
3. If FortiGate changes from factory reset, you can see it in central management in `config-touched=1`.

   ```
   FG201E4Q17901047 # diagnose fdsm fmg-auto-discovery-status
   dhcp: fmg-ip=172.18.60.115, fmg-domain-name='', config-touched=1(/bin/dhcpcd)
   ```

### Example of a spoofing DHCP server with a fake FortiManager IP

```
config options
    edit 1
        set code 240
        set type ip
        set ip "172.18.60.117"
    end
```

After FortiGate reboots and gets DHCP renew, central management will not use the fake FortiManager IP because `config-touched=1` shows that the FortiGate is not in factory reset.

```
FG201E4Q17901047 # diagnose fdsm fmg-auto-discovery-status
dhcp: fmg-ip=0.0.0.0, fmg-domain-name='', config-touched=1(/bin/dhcpcd)

FG201E4Q17901047 # show system central-management
```

```
config system central-management
    set type fortimanager
    set fmg "172.18.60.115"
end
```

# Dashboards and widgets

FortiOS includes predefined dashboards so administrators can easily monitor device inventory, security threats, traffic, and network health. You can customize the appearance of a default dashboard to display data pertinent to your security fabric, or combine widgets to create custom dashboards. Many dashboards also allow you to switch views between fabric devices.

Each dashboard contains a set of widgets and monitors that allow you to view drill down data and take actions to prevent threats. Use widgets to perform tasks such as viewing device inventory, creating and deleting DHCP reservations, and disconnecting dial-up users. You can add or remove widgets to a dashboard, or save a widget as a standalone monitor.

This section contains the following topics:

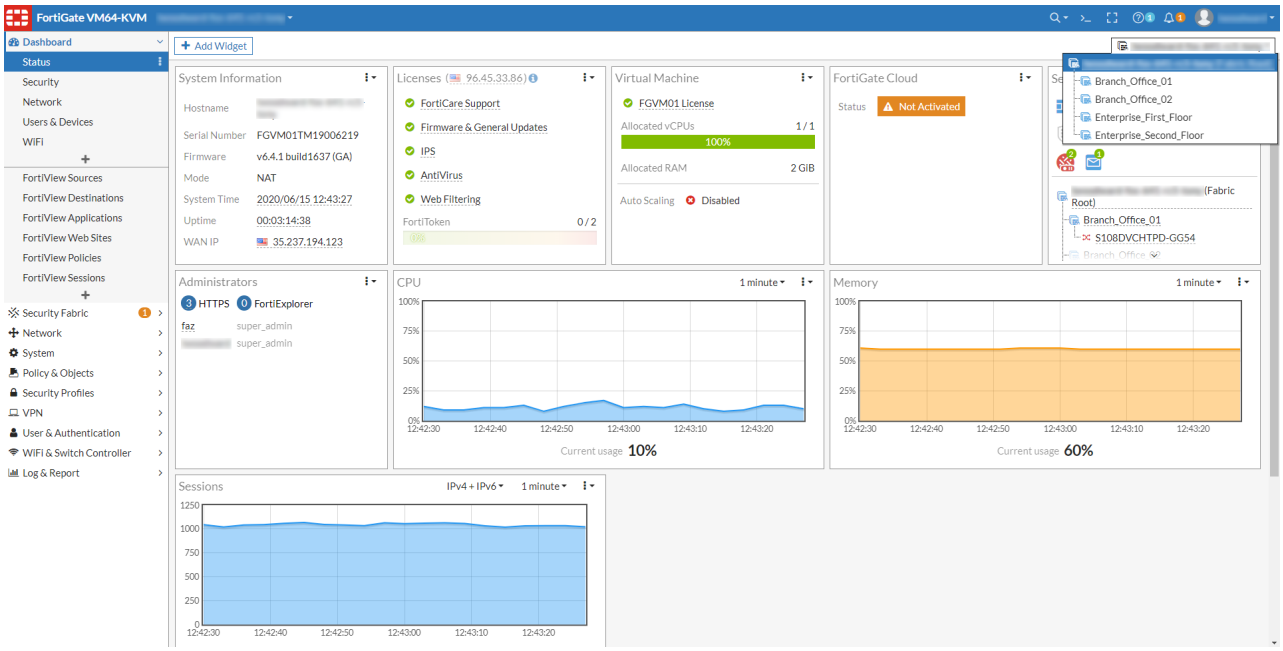

- Using dashboards on page 58
- Using widgets on page 63
- Monitor dashboards and widgets on page 65
- FortiView on page 77
- Configuration backups on page 112


## Using dashboards

You can use the dashboard GUI to view fabric devices in the security fabric. You can also combine widgets to create custom dashboards.

**To view downstream fabric devices in the GUI:**

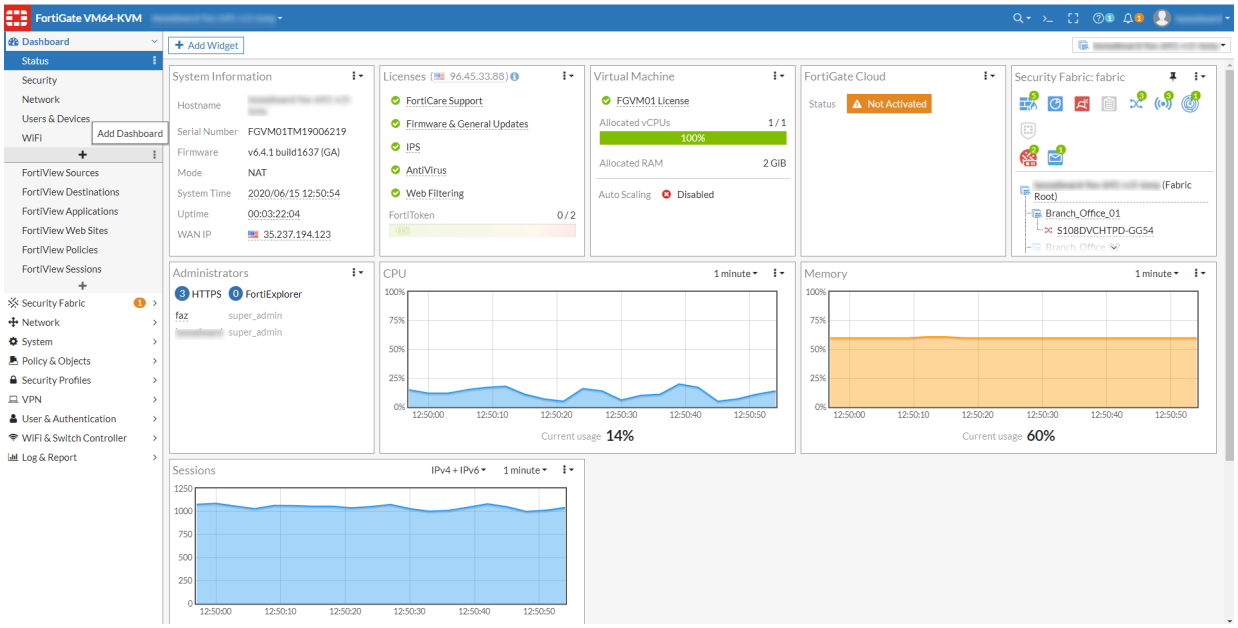
1. At the right side of dashboard, click the device dropdown and select a device.



The device dropdown is available in the *Status*, *Security*, *Network*, *Users & Devices*, and *WiFi* dashboards. You can also enable the dropdown when you create a dashboard.

### To create a new dashboard in the GUI:

1. Under *Dashboard*, click the *Add Dashboard* button. The *Add Dashboard* window opens.



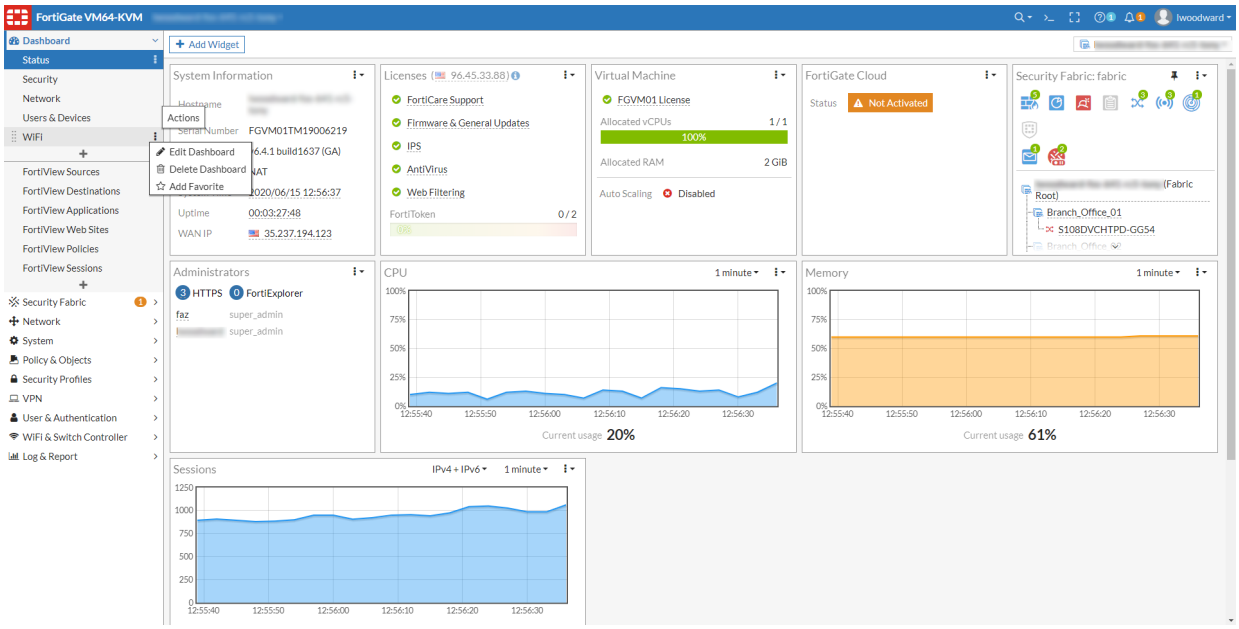

2. Enter a name in the *Name* field and click *OK*. The new dashboard opens.

### To add a widget to a dashboard in the GUI:

1. In the tree menu, select a dashboard.
2. (Optional) Click the device dropdown, and select a device in the network.
3. In the banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
4. Click the *Add* button next to the widget. You can use the *Search* field to search for a widget. Click *Show More* to view more widgets in a category.
5. Configure the widget settings and click *Add Widget*.
6. Click *Close*.

**To delete a dashboard in the GUI:**

1. Click the *Actions* menu at the right side of the dashboard and select*Delete Dashboard*.




2. Click *Delete Dashboard* . The *Confirm* window opens.
3. *Click OK.*

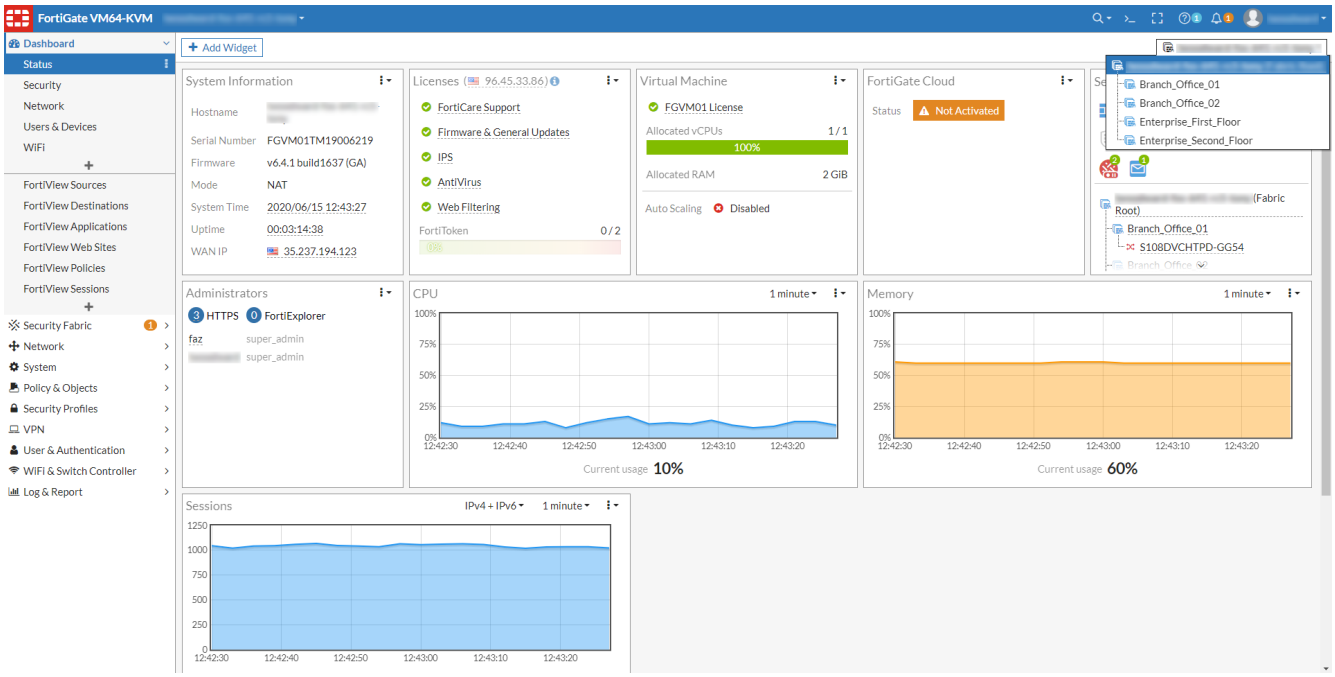
**To edit a dashboard in the GUI:**

1. Click the *Actions* menu at the right side of the dashboard and select*Edit Dashboard*.
2. Edit the dashboard and click *OK*.

# Viewing device dashboards in the security fabric

Use the device dropdown in the built-in dashboards to quickly navigate between downstream fabric devices. You can also create dedicated device dashboards devices or log in and configure fabric devices.

To view fabric devices, click the device dropdown at the right side of the page, and select a device from the list.






The device dropdown is available in the *Status*, *Security*, *Network*, *Users & Devices*, and *WiFi* dashboards. You can also enable the dropdown when you create a dashboard.

**To log into a device from the device dropdown:**

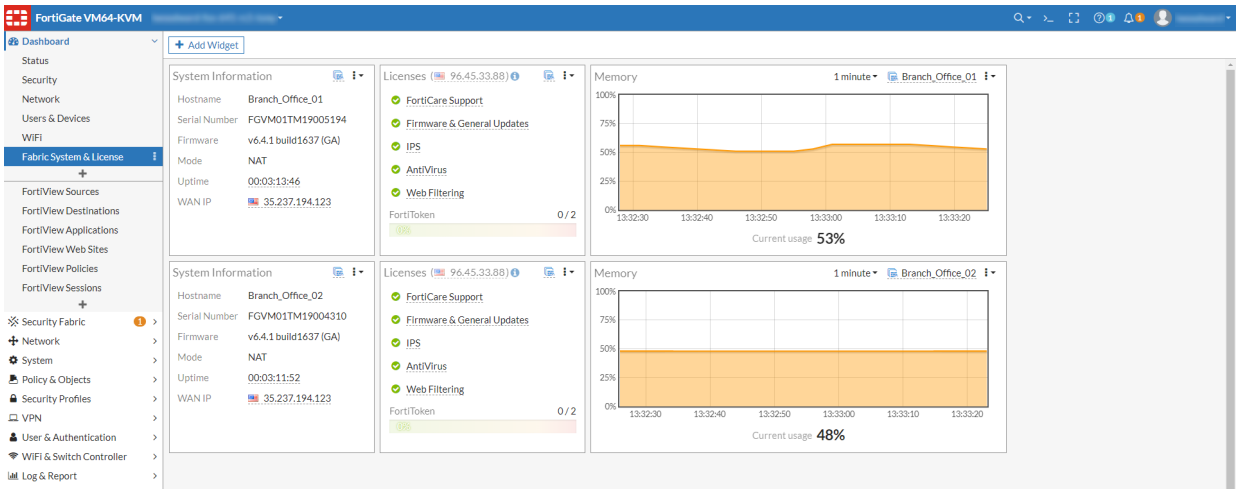
1. Hover over the device in the dropdown, and click *Login* You are redirected to the device login page or System dashboard if you are already logged in.

**To configure a device from the device dropdown:**

1. Hover over the device in the dropdown, and click *Configure*. The *Configure* page opens.

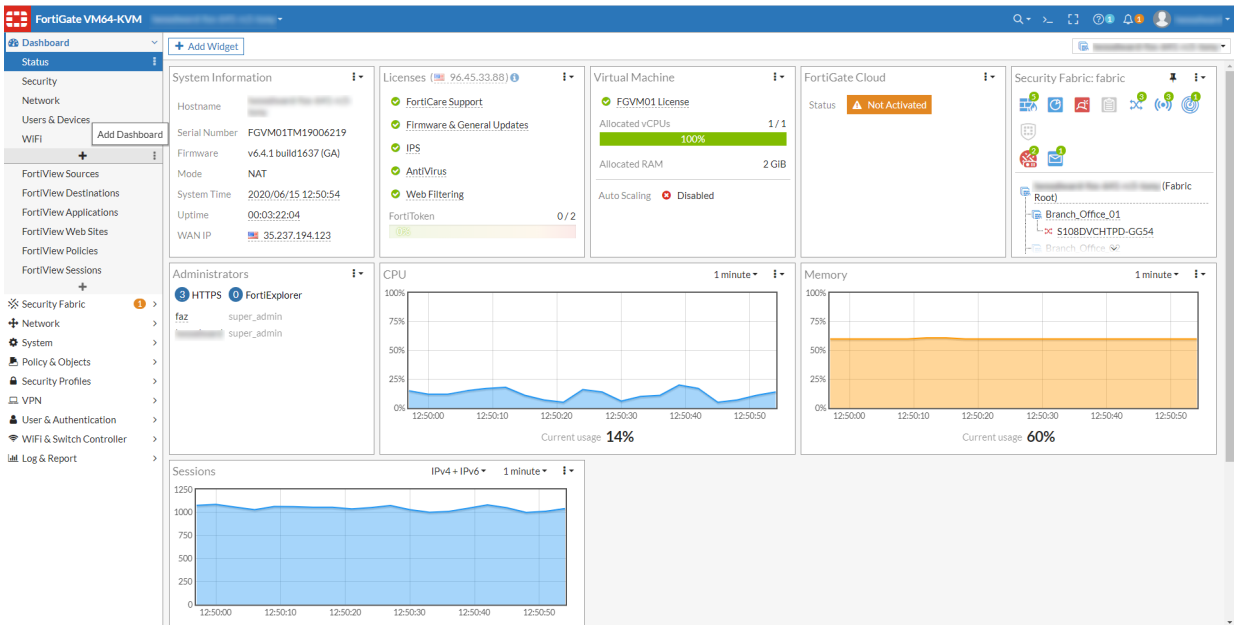
# Creating a fabric system and license dashboard

Create a dashboard summary page to monitor all the fabric devices in a single view. You can use the dashboard to monitor aspects of the devices such as system information, VPN, and routing.




### To create a system dashboard in the GUI:

1. Click the *Add Dashboard* button. The *Add Dashboard* window opens.



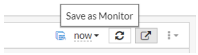

2. In the *Name* field, enter a name such as *Fabric System & License*, and click *OK*. The new dashboard appears.
3. In the banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens. You can use the *Search* field to search for a specific widget (for example, *License Status*, *System Information*, and *Memory Usage*).
4. Click the *Add* button next to widget. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
5. In the *Fabric member* area, select *Specify* and select a device in the security fabric.
6. Click *Add Widget*. The widget is added to the dashboard.
   Repeat this step for all the devices you want to view in the dashboard.
7. (Optional) Arrange the widgets in the dashboard by fabric device.

# Using widgets

You can save a widget as a standalone monitor, change the view type, as well as configure tables and filter data.

**To save a dashboard widget as a monitor:**

1. Hover over a widget in the dashboard, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.
2. In the top menu, click the *Save as Monitor* icon. The *Add Monitor* window opens.




3. Enter a name for the monitor in the *Name* field, and click *OK*.

**To view the widget settings:**

1. Click the menu dropdown at the right side of the widget and select *Settings*.
2. Configure the widget settings and click *OK*.



The settings will vary depending on the widget.

**To configure a table in the widget:**

1. Hover over the left side of the table header and click the *Configure Table* icon.
2. Configure the table options.

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| **Best Fit All Columns** | Resizes all of the columns in a table to fit their content. |
| **Reset Table** | Resets the table to the default view. |
| **Select Columns** | Adds or removes columns from the view. |

3. Click *Apply*.

**To filter or configure a column in a table:**

1. Hover over a column heading, and click the *Filter/Configure Column* icon.
2. Configure the column options, and click *Apply*.

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| **Resize to Contents** | Resizes the column to fit the content. |
| **Group by this Column** | Groups the table rows by the contents in the selected column. |

3. To filter a column, enter a value in the *Filter* field, and click *Apply*.

Filtering is not supported in all the widgets.

# Changing the default dashboard template

You can use the GUI to change the default dashboard template. The *Optimal* template contains a set of popular default dashboards and FortiView monitors. The *Comprehensive* template contains a set of default dashboards as well as all monitors and FortiViews. The Comprehensive template will be familiar to users coming from previous versions of FortiOS.

Changing the default template will remove the dashboards and monitors you added and reset the settings in the widgets.

**To change the default in the GUI:**

1. Click the *Actions* menu at the right side of *Add Dashboard* or *Add Monitor* and click *Reset All Dashboards*. The *Dashboard Setup* window opens.




2. Select a default template and click *OK*.
   The following dashboards and monitors are included in the default templates:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Optimal** | Dashboards | • Status,<br>• Security<br>• Network<br>• Users & Devices<br>• WiFi |
| | Monitors | • FortiView Sources<br>• FortiView Destinations<br>• FortiView Applications<br>• FortiView Web Sites<br>• FortiView Policies<br>• FortiView Sessions |
| **Comprehensive** | Dashboards | • Status<br>• WiFi |
| | Monitors | • FortiView Sources<br>• FortiView Destinations<br>• FortiView Applications<br>• FortiView Web Sites |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • FortiView Threats<br>• FortiView Compromised Hosts<br>• FortiView Policies<br>• FortiView Sessions<br>• Device Inventory Monitor<br>• Routing Monitor<br>• DHCP Monitor<br>• SD-WAN Monitor<br>• FortiGuard Quota Monitor<br>• IPsec Monitor<br>• SSL-VPN Monitor<br>• Firewall User Monitor<br>• Quarantine Monitor<br>• FortiClient Monitor<br>• FortiAP Clients Monitor<br>• Rogue APs Monitor |

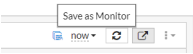
# Monitor dashboards and widgets

Monitor dashboards and widgets allows you to view various states of your FortiGate pertaining to routing, VPN, DHCP, devices, users, quarantine, and wireless connections.

The following default monitor dashboards are built into FortiOS:

- Network
- Users & Devices
- WiFi

Each built-in dashboard contains multiple widgets which can be expanded for detail view.To save a view as its own monitor, click *Save as Monitor* at the right side of the banner.




For more information, see Using widgets on page 63

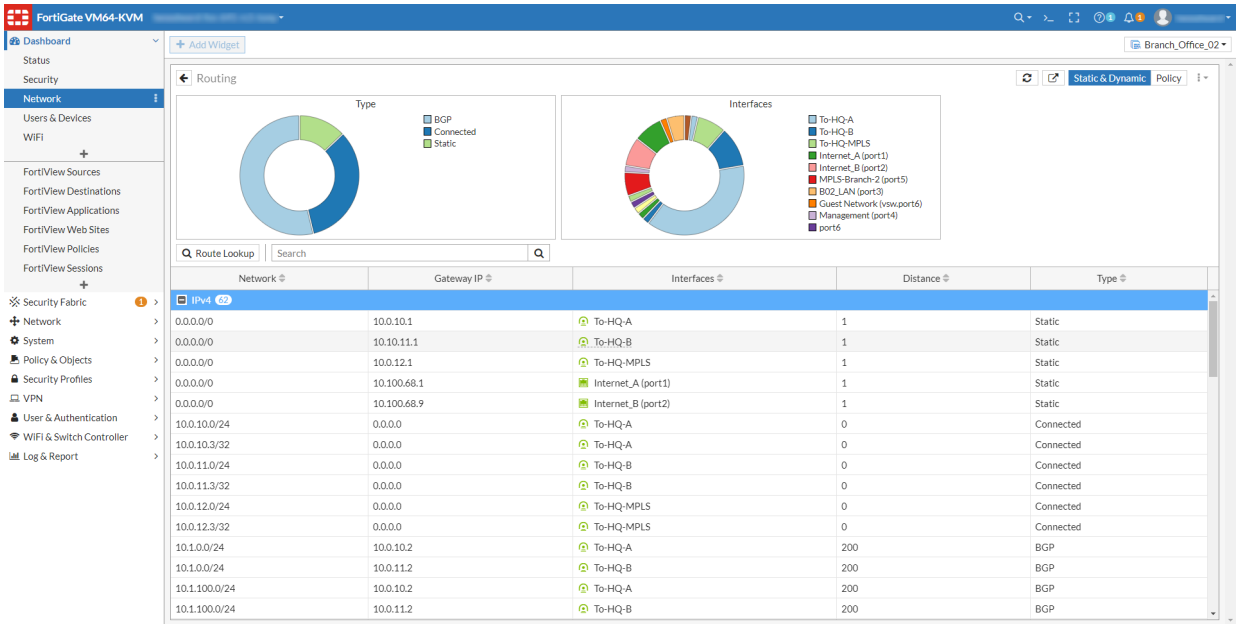
To view the widgets available in each dashboard category, click *Add Widget*.

| Category | Use these widgets to: |
|---|---|
| Monitor | • View users and devices connected to the network<br>• Identify threats from individual users and devices, and quarantine them.<br>• View FortiGuard and FortiClient data<br>• Monitor traffic bandwidth over time |
| Network | • Monitor DHCP clients<br>• Monitor IPsec VPN connections<br>• Monitor current routing table<br>• Monitor SD-WAN status |

| Category | Use these widgets to: |
|---|---|
| | • Monitor SSL-VPN connections |
| WiFi | • View FortiAP status, channel utilization, and clients<br>• View login failures and signal strength<br>• View the number of WiFi clients |

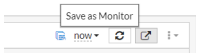
## Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor

The *Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor* displays the routing table on the FortiGate including all static and dynamic routing protocols in IPv4 and IPv6. You can also use this monitor to view the firewall policy route.




**To view the routing monitor in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *Routing* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Routing* monitor opens.
3. To view the policy monitor, click the *Policy* tab.
4. To filter the *Interfaces* and *Type* columns:
   a. Hover over the column heading, and click the *Filter/Configure Column* icon.
   b. Click *Group By This Column*, then click *Apply*.
5. (Optional) Click *Save as Monitor* to save the widget as monitor.



**To look up a route in the GUI:**

1. Click *Route Lookup*.
2. Enter an IP address in the *Destination* field, then click *Search*. The matching route is highlighted on the *Routing* monitor.

**To view the routing table in the CLI:**

```
# get route info routing-table all
```

Sample output:

```
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
* - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S* 0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 10.0.10.1, To-HQ-A
[1/0] via 10.0.12.1, To-HQ-MPLS
[1/0] via 10.10.11.1, To-HQ-B
[1/0] via 10.100.67.1, port1
[1/0] via 10.100.67.9, port2
C 10.0.10.0/24 is directly connected, To-HQ-A
C 10.0.10.2/32 is directly connected, To-HQ-A
C 10.0.11.0/24 is directly connected, To-HQ-B
C 10.0.11.2/32 is directly connected, To-HQ-B
C 10.0.12.0/24 is directly connected, To-HQ-MPLS
C 10.0.12.2/32 is directly connected, To-HQ-MPLS
C 10.1.0.0/24 is directly connected, port3
C 10.1.0.2/32 is directly connected, port3
C 10.1.0.3/32 is directly connected, port3
C 10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, vsw.port6
```

**To look up a firewall route in the CLI:**

```
# diag firewall proute list
```

Sample output:

```
list route policy info(vf=root):


id=0x7f450002 vwl_service=2(BusinessCritialCloudApp) vwl_mbr_seq=4 5 3 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff
     flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=3
     (port1) oif=4(port2) oif=18(To-HQ-MPLS)
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
destination wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
internet service(4): Microsoft.Office.365(4294837472,0,0,0, 33182) Microsoft.Office.Online
     (4294837475,0,0,0, 16177) Salesforce(4294837976,0,0,0, 16920) GoToMeeting
     (4294836966,0,0,0, 16354)
hit_count=0 last_used=2020-03-30 10:50:18

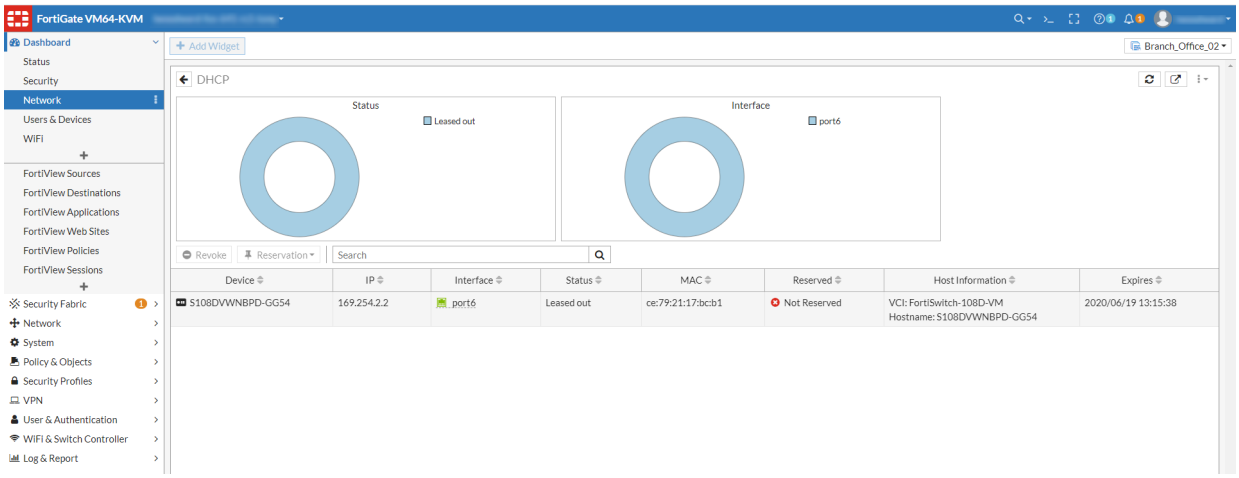
id=0x7f450003 vwl_service=3(NonBusinessCriticalCloudApp) vwl_mbr_seq=4 5 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff
     flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=3
     (port1) oif=4(port2)
```

```
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
destination wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
internet service(2): Facebook(4294836806,0,0,0, 15832) Twitter(4294838278,0,0,0, 16001)
hit_count=0 last_used=2020-03-30 10:50:18

id=0x7f450004 vwl_service=4(Ping-Policy) vwl_mbr_seq=1 2 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0
     tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=1 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=16(To-HQ-A)
     oif=17(To-HQ-B)
```

## DHCP monitor

The DHCP monitor displays all the addresses leased out by FortiGate's DHCP servers. You can use the monitor to revoke an address for a device, or create, edit, and delete address reservations.




**To view the DHCP monitor in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *DHCP* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

**To revoke a lease:**

1. Select a device in the table.
2. In the toolbar, click *Revoke*, or right-click the device, and click *Revoke*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.



A confirmation window opens only if there is an associated address reservation. If there is no address, the lease will be removed immediately upon clicking *Revoke*.

**To create a DHCP reservation:**

1. Select a server in the table.
2. In the toolbar, click *Reservation*, or right-click the device and click *Create DHCP Reservation*. The *Create New DHCP Reservation* window opens.
3. Configure the DHCP settings.
4. Click *OK*.

**To view top sources by bytes:**

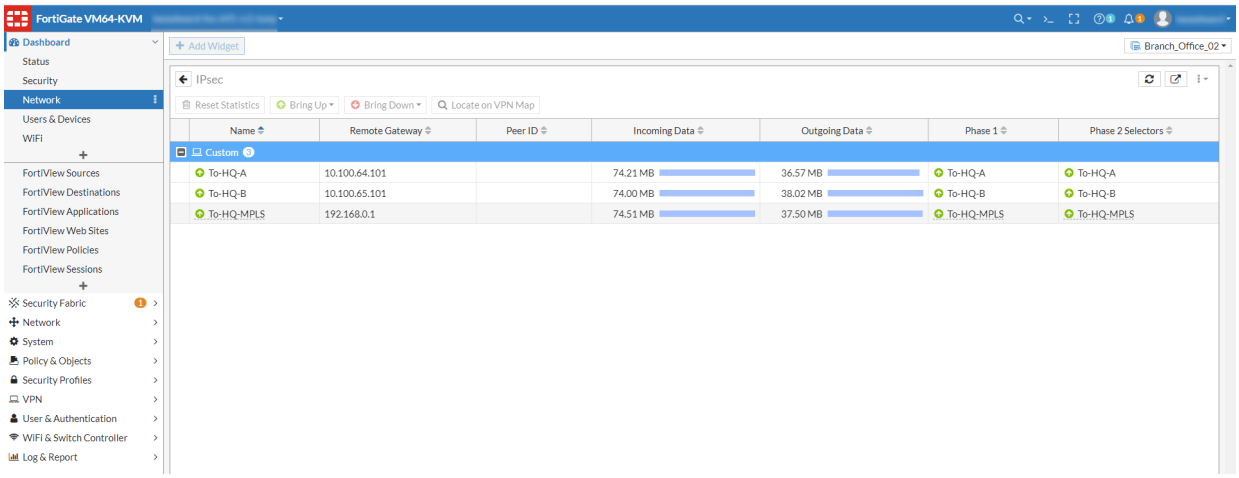
1. Right-click a device in the table and click *Show in FortiView*. The *Top Sources by Bytes* widget opens.

**To view the DHCP lease list in the CLI:**

```
# exec dhcp lease-list
```

## IPSEC monitor

The IPSEC monitor displays all connected Site to Site VPN and Dial-up VPNs. You can use the monitor to bring a phase 2 tunnel up or down or disconnect dial-up users.




**To view the IPSEC monitor in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *IPSEC* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

**To reset statistics:**

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. In the toolbar, click *Reset Statistics* or right-click the tunnel, and click *Reset Statistics*. The *Confirm* window opens.

3. Click *OK*.

**To bring a tunnel up:**

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. Click *Bring Up*, or right-click the tunnel, and click *Bring Up*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

**To bring a tunnel down:**

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. Click *Bring Down*, or right-click the tunnel, and click *Bring Down*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

**To locate a tunnel on the VPN Map:**

1. Select a tunnel in the table.
2. Click *Locate on VPN Map*, or right-click the tunnel, and click *Locate on VPN Map*. You are taken to *VPN* > *VPN Location Map*.

**To view the IPSEC monitor in the CLI:**

```
# diag vpn tunnel list
```

Sample output:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=fct-dialup ver=1 serial=4 10.100.67.5:0->0.0.0.0:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=3 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-rfc
     accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

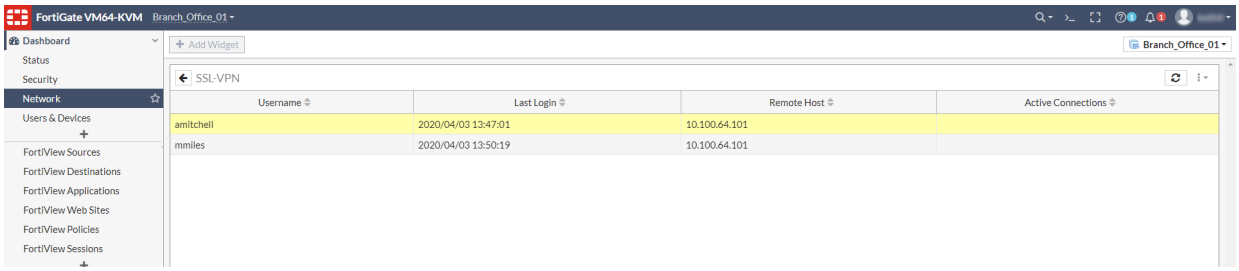
proxyid_num=0 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=5545 olast=5545 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=0
------------------------------------------------------
name=To-HQ-MPLS ver=2 serial=3 192.168.0.14:0->192.168.0.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
     frag-rfc accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=22 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=66693 txp=29183 rxb=33487128 txb=1908427
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=To-HQ-MPLS proto=0 sa=1 ref=6 serial=1 adr
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=3 options=32203 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=266/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=2c5e esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00002ea3 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=1773/1800
dec: spi=700c9198 esp=aes key=16 ebd04605de6148c8a92ced48b30930fa
ah=sha1 key=20 5f0201f67d7c714a046025a1df41d40376437f6a
enc: spi=5aaccc20 esp=aes key=16 13d5d4b46e5e9c42eef509f2d9879188
```

```
ah=sha1 key=20 2dde67ef7a2a78b622d9a7ec6d75ad3c55d241e1
dec:pkts/bytes=11938/5226964, enc:pkts/bytes=11357/1312184
```

## SSL VPN monitor

The SSL VPN monitor displays user logins and active connections. You can use the monitor to disconnect a specific connection.




**To view the SSL-VPN monitor in the GUI:**

1. Go *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Hover over the *SSL-VPN* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

**To disconnect a user:**

1. Select a user in the table.
2. In the table, right-click the user, and click *End Session*. The Confirm window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

**To monitor SSL-VPN users in the CLI:**

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
```

Sample output

```
SSL VPN Login Users:
Index User Group Auth Type Timeout From HTTP in/out HTTPS in/out
0 amitchell TAC 1(1) 296 10.100.64.101 3838502/11077721 0/0
1 mmiles Dev 1(1) 292 10.100.64.101 4302506/11167442 0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
Index User Group Source IP Duration I/O Bytes Tunnel/Dest IP
```

## Firewall Users Monitor

The Firewall Users monitor displays all firewall users currently logged in. You can use the monitor to diagnose user-related logons or to highlight and deauthenticate a user.

**To view the firewall monitor in the CLI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to *Dashboard* > *Firewalll User Monitor*. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 64.
2. Hover over the *Firewall Users* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.
3. To show FSSO Logons, click *Show all FSSO Logons* at the top right of the page.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.

**To deauthenticate a user:**

1. (Optional) Use the *Search* field to search for a specific user.
2. In the toolbar, click *Deauthenticate*, or right-click the user, and click *Deauthnticate*. The *Confirm* window opens.
3. Click *OK*.

**To view firewall users in the CLI:**

```
# diag firewall auth list
```

## Device inventory

You can enable device detection to allow FortiOS to monitor your networks and gather information about devices operating on those networks, including:

- MAC address
- IP address
- Operating system
- Hostname
- Username
- When FortiOS detected the device and on which interface

You can enable device detection separately on each interface in *Network* > *Interfaces*.

Device detection is intended for devices directly connected to your LAN ports. If enabled on a WAN port, device detection may be unable to determine the OS on some devices. You can enable active scanning on the interface to find hosts whose device types FortiOS cannot determine passively.

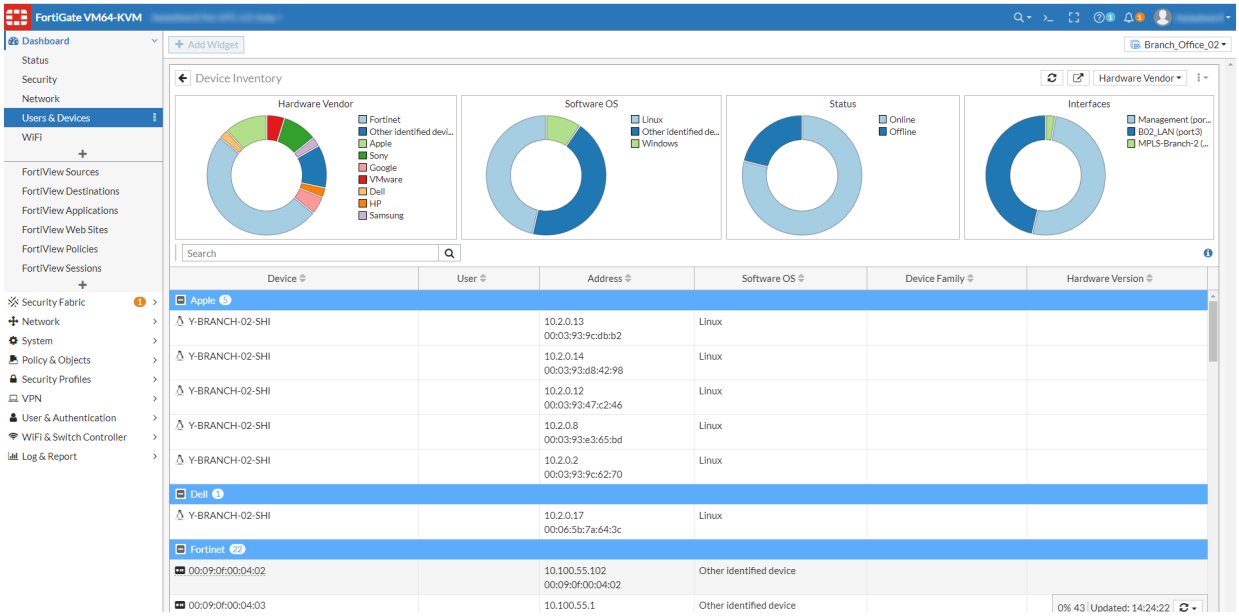
You can also manually add devices to Device Inventory to ensure that a device with multiple interfaces displays as a single device.

**To view the device inventory monitor in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to *Dashboard* > *Device Inventory Monitor*. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 64.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Device Inventory* pane appears.



To filter or configure a column in the table, hover over the column heading, and click *Filter/Configure Column*. See Device inventory and filtering on page 73.




## Device inventory and filtering

The *Device Inventory* widget contains a series of summary charts that provide an overview of the hardware, operating system, status, and interfaces. You can use these clickable charts to simplify filtering among your devices.

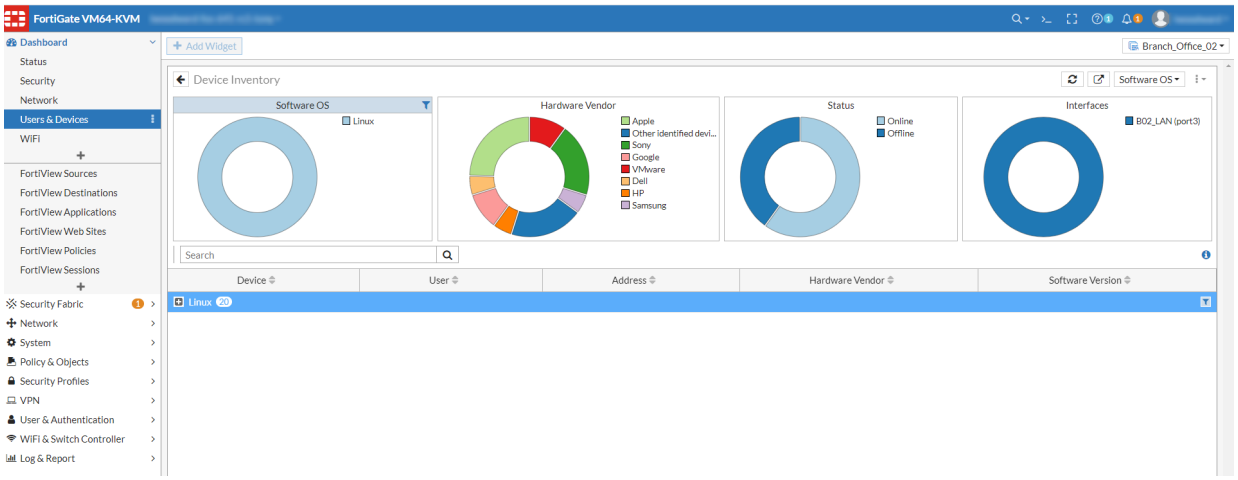
**To view the device inventory and apply a filter:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to Dashboard > Device Inventory Monitor. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 64.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Device Inventory* pane appears.
3. To filter the order of the charts by operating system, click the dropdown in the top menu bar and select *Software OS*.
4. To filter a chart, click an item in the legend or chart area. The table displays the filter results.
5. To combine filters, hover over a column heading and click *Filter/Configure Column*.
6. Click the filter icon in the top-right corner of the chart to remove the filter.

### Filter examples

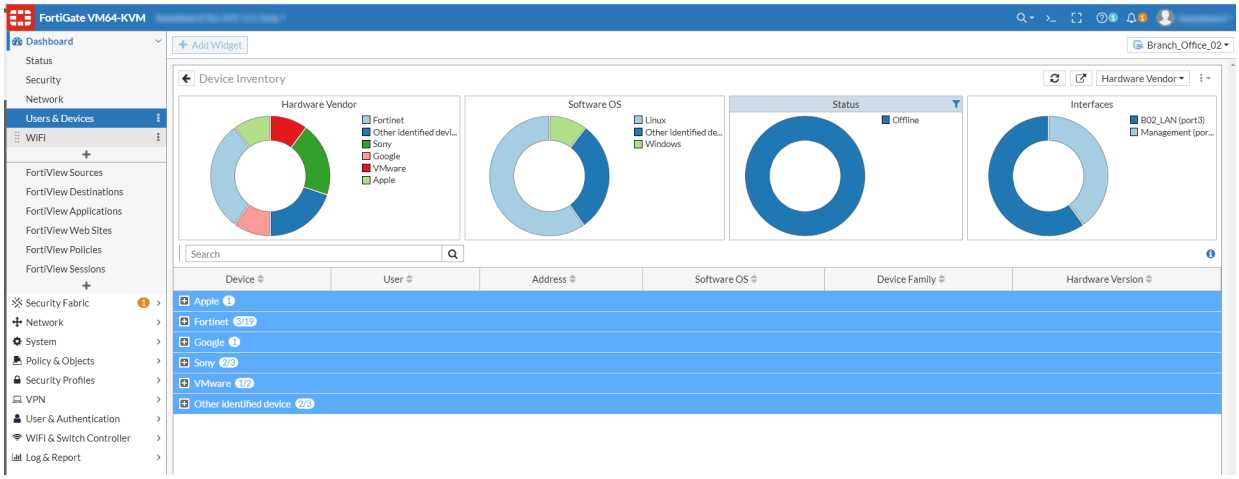
### To filter all Linux devices:

1. In the *Software OS* chart, click *Linux* .



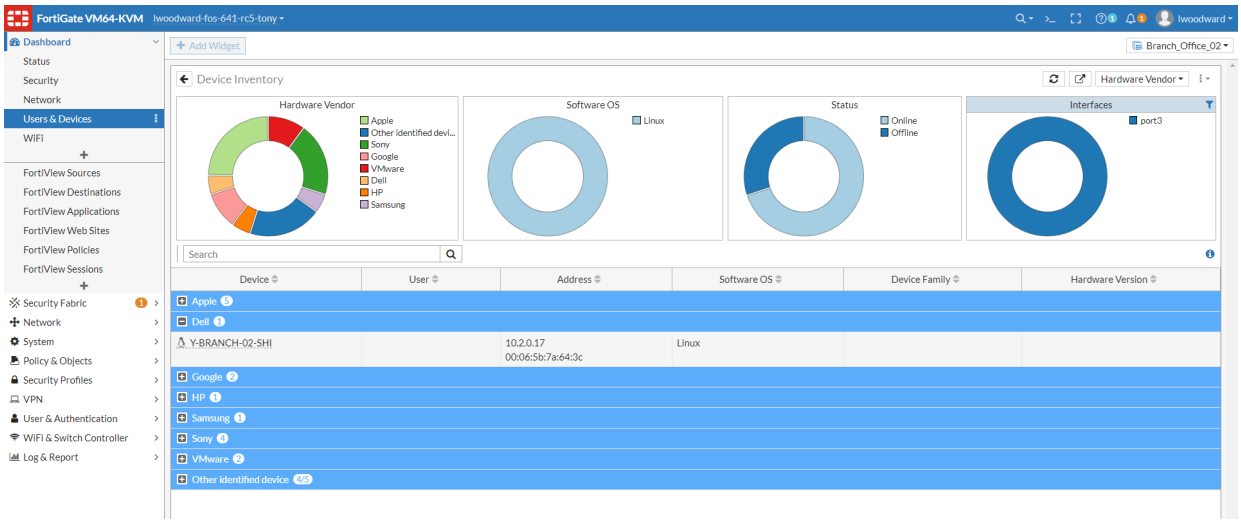

### To filter all offline devices:

1. In the *Status* chart, click *Offline*.



**To filter all devices discovered on port4:**

1. In the *Interfaces* chart, click *port3*.



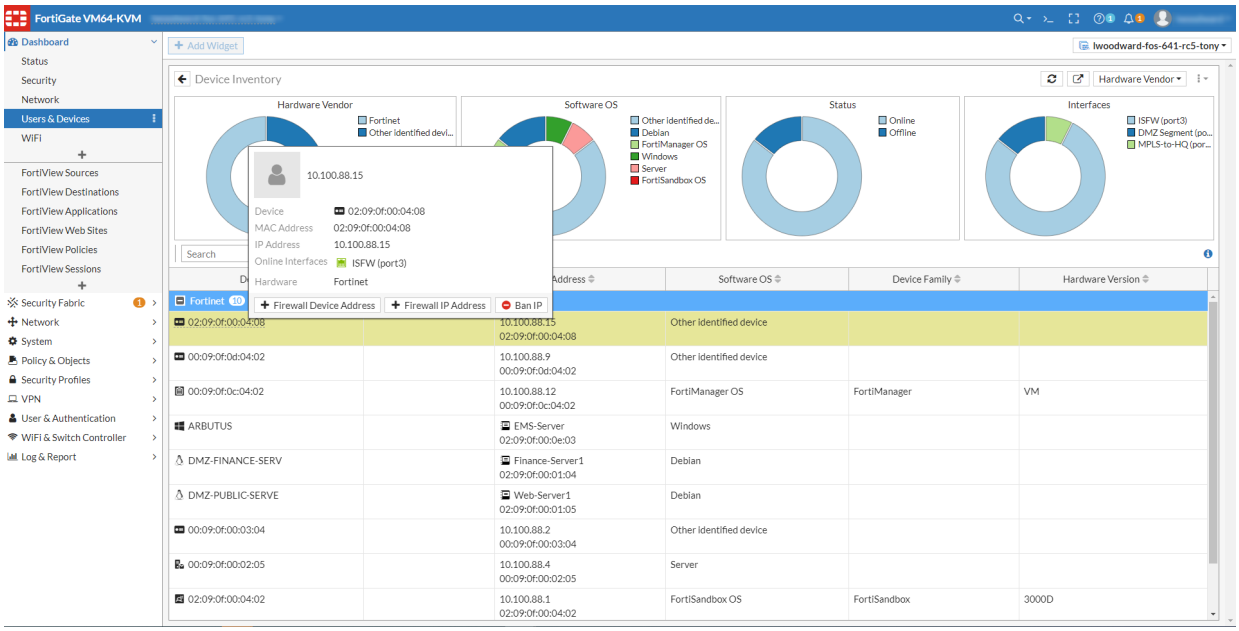

## Adding MAC-based addresses to devices

Assets detected by device detection appear in the *Device Inventory* widget. You can manage policies around devices by adding a new device object (MAC-based address) to a device. Once you add the MAC-based address, the device can be used in address groups or directly in policies.

**To add a MAC-based address to a device:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
   If you are using the Comprehensive dashboard template, go to *Dashboard* > *Device Inventory Monitor*. See Changing the default dashboard template on page 64.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*. The *Device Inventory* monitor opens.

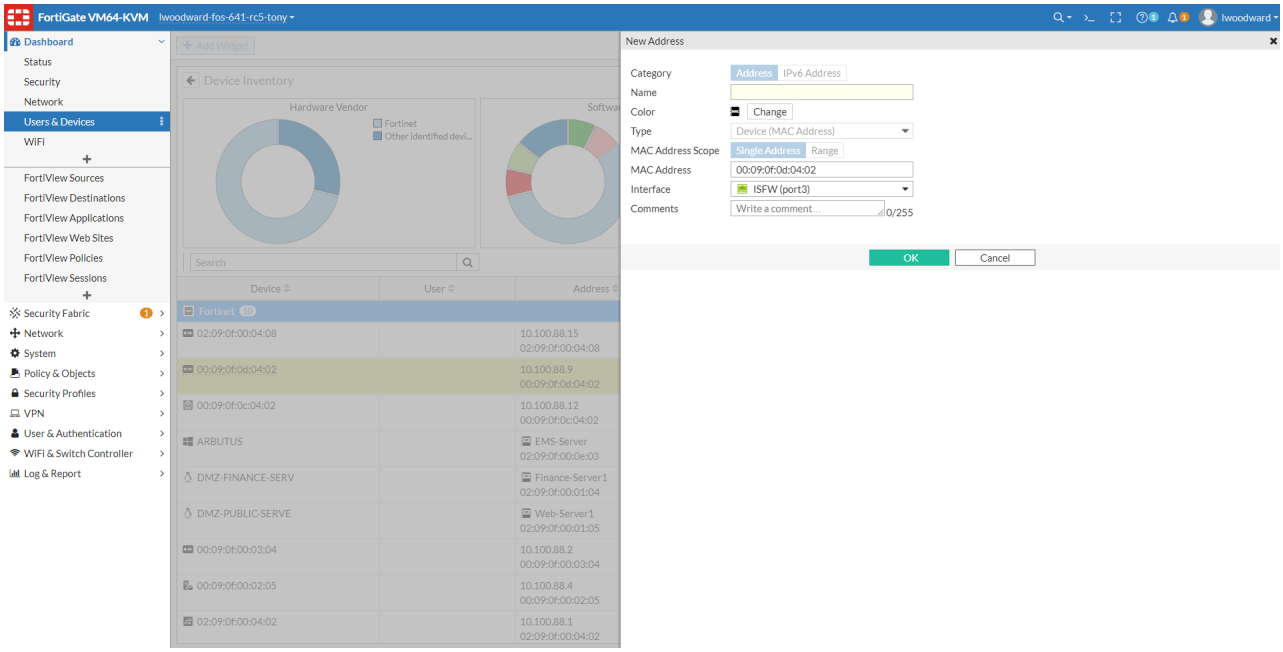
3. Click a device and then click *Firewall Device Address*.



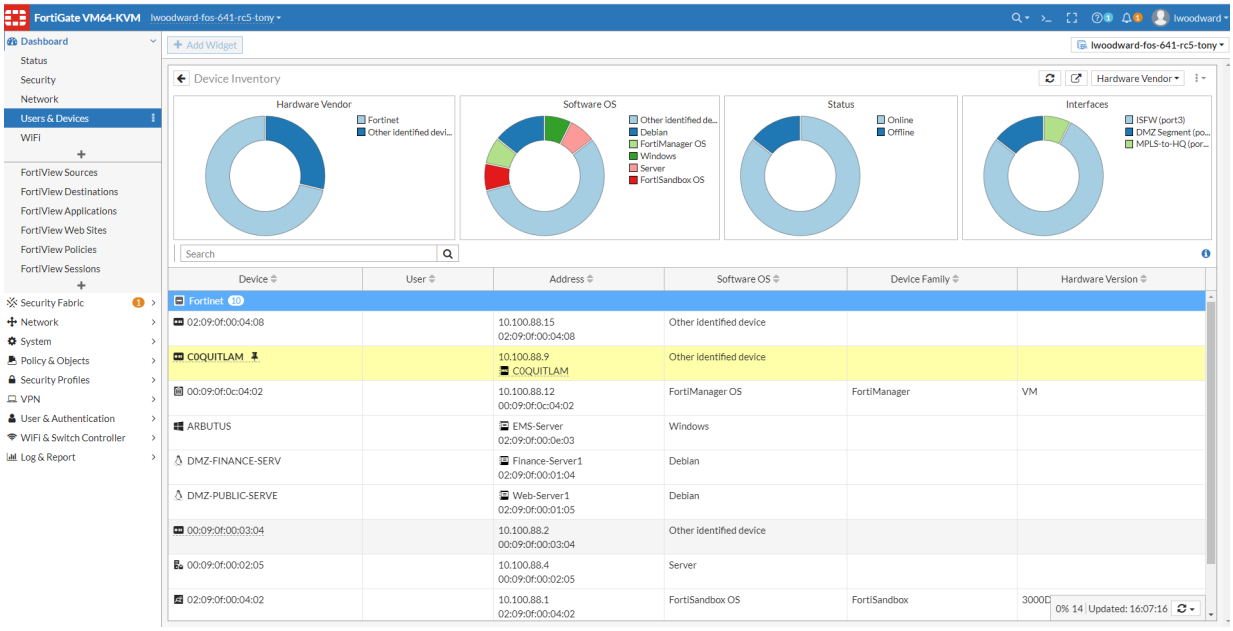

4. (Optional) In the *Name* field, give the device a descriptive name.



Use the *Name* field to assign a descriptive name to a device so it is easier to find it in the *Device* column. After you finish configuring the device, refresh the page to see the new name in the dashboard.



5. Click *OK*. The MAC address icon appears in the *Address* column next to the device name.




# FortiView

FortiView is the FortiOS log view tool and comprehensive monitoring system for your network. FortiView integrates real-time and historical data into a single view on your FortiGate. It can log and monitor network threats, keep track of administration activities, and more.

Use FortiView dashboards and widgets to investigate traffic activity such as user uploads and downloads, or videos watched on YouTube. You can view the traffic on the whole network, by user group or by individual. FortiView displays the information in both text and visual format, giving you an overall picture of your network traffic activity so that you can quickly decide on actionable items.

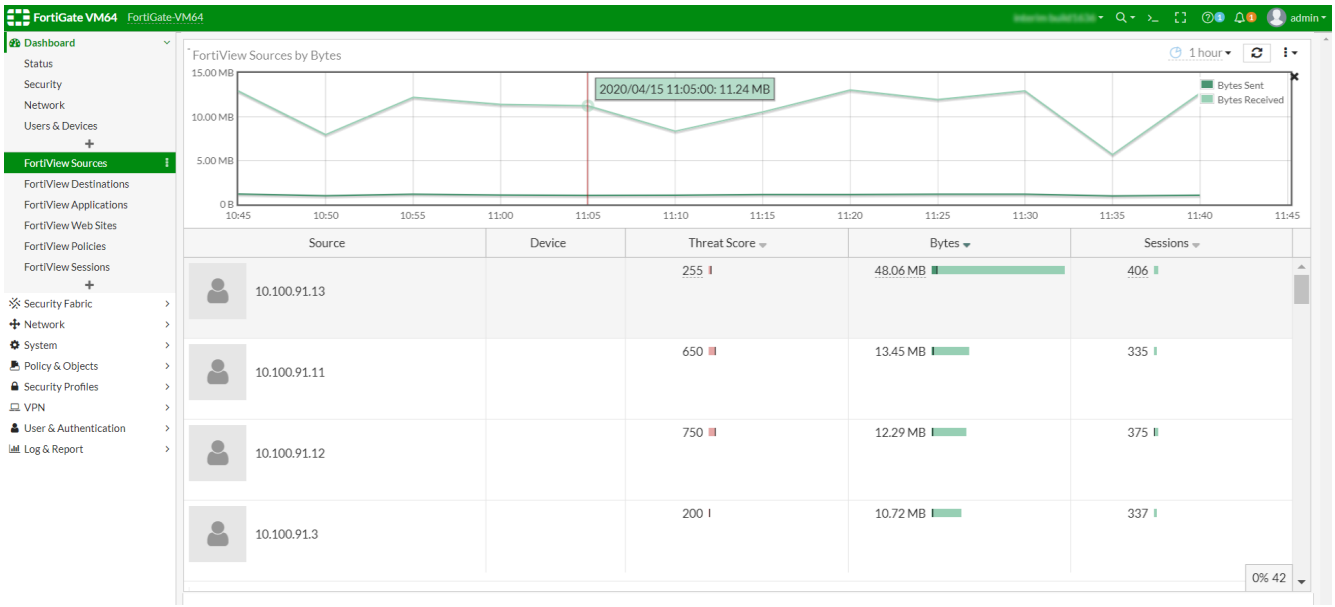
FortiView is integrated with many UTM functions and each release adds more features. For example, you can quarantine an IP address directly in FortiView or create custom devices and addresses from a FortiView entry.



The logging range and depth will depend on the FortiGate model.

## FortiView monitors and widgets

FortiView dashboards and widgets are available in the tree menu under the *Dashboards* module. The module contains several core dashboards for the top categories. Non-core FortiView pages are available as widgets that can be added to the dashboards. You can also use non-core pages to create standalone monitors.




## Core FortiView dashboards

The following core dashboards are available in the tree menu under the *Dashboard* console:

| Dashboard | Usage |
|---|---|
| FortiView Sources | Displays Top Sources by traffic volume and drilldown by Source. |
| FortiView Destinations | Displays Top Destinations by traffic volume and drilldown by Destination. |
| FortiView Applications | Displays Top Applications by traffic volume and drilldown by Application. |
| FortiView Websites | Displays Top Websites by session count and drilldown by Domain. |
| FortiView Policies | Displays Top Policies by traffic volume and drilldown by Policy number |
| FortiView Sessions | Displays Top Sessions by traffic source and can be used to end sessions. |

Usage is based on default settings. The pages may be customized further and sorted by other fields.



You can quarantine a host and ban an IP from all of the core FortiView monitors.

## FortiView widgets

FortiView widgets allow you to create custom dashboards to monitor vulnerabilities, scan summaries, and top items from selected FortiView categories. You can also customize widgets to show information that is most important to you, such as the time range, source logging device, and other information. For information, see Adding FortiView widgets on page 79

## Adding FortiView widgets

Non-core FortiView pages are available in the *Add Dashboard* window.You can add a FortiView widget to a dashboard or save the widget as a monitor.



You cannot add widgets to a core FortiView monitor.

**To add a FortiView widget in the GUI:**

1. In the tree menu, select a dashboard and click *Add Widget*.
2. In the *FortiView* section, click *Add* next to a widget. You can use the *Search* field to search for a specific widget or click *Show More* to view more widgets.
3. In the *Fabric member* area, click *Default* or *Specify* to select a FortiGate device in the security fabric.
4. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select the time period. This option is not available in all widgets.
5. In the *Visualization* area, select *Table View* or *Bubble Chart*.
6. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select the sorting method.
7. Click *Add Widget*.

### Widgets by category

Usage is based on the default settings. The widgets may be customized further and sorted by other fields.

#### LAN/DMZ

| Widget | Sort by | Usage |
|---|---|---|
| Applications | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top applications and drilldown by application. |
| Cloud Applications | Bytes/Sessions/Files(Up/Down) | Displays top cloud applications and drilldown by application . |
| Cloud Users | Bytes/Sessions/Files(Up/Down) | Displays top cloud users and drilldown by cloud user. |
| Compromised Hosts | Verdict | Displays compromised hosts and drilldown by source. |
| Countries/Regions | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top countries/regions and drilldown by countries/regions. |
| Destination Firewall Objects | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top destination firewall objects and drilldown by destination objects. |
| Destination Owners | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top destination owners and drilldown by destination. |

| Widget | Sort by | Usage |
|---|---|---|
| Destinations | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top destinations and drilldown by destination. |
| Search Phrases | Count | Displays top search phrases and drilldown by search phrase. |
| Source Firewall Objects | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top search phrases and drilldown by source object. |
| Sources | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top sources and drilldown by source. |
| Threats | Threat level/Threat Score/Sessions | Displays top threats and drilldown by threat. |
| Traffic Shaping | Dropped Bytes/Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top traffic shaping and drilldown by shaper. |
| Web Categories | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top web categories and drilldown by category. |
| Web Sites | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top web sites and drilldown by domain. |
| WiFi Clients | Bytes/Sessions | Displays top WiFi clients and drilldown by source. |

### WAN

| Widget | Sort by | Usage |
|---|---|---|
| Servers | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top servers and drilldown by server address. |
| Sources | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top sources and drilldown by device. |
| Threats | Threat Level/Threat Score/Sessions | Displays top threats and drilldown by threat. |

### All Segments

| Widget | Sort by | Usage |
|---|---|---|
| Admin Logins | Configuraton Changes/Logins/Failed Logins | Displays top admin logins by username. |
| Destination Interfaces | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top destination interfaces by destination interface. |
| Endpoint Vulnerabilities | Severity | Displays top endpoint vulnerabilities by vulnerability name. |
| Failed Authentication | Failed Attempts | Displays top failed authentications by failed authentication source. |
| FortiSandbox Files | Submitted | Displays top FortiSandbox files by file name. |

| Widget | Sort by | Usage |
|---|---|---|
| Interface Pairs | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top interface pairs by source interface. |
| Policies | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top policies by policy. |
| Source Interfaces | Bytes/Sessions/Bandwidth/Packets | Displays top source interfaces by source interface. |
| System Events | Level/Events | Displays top system events by event name. |
| VPN | Connections/Bytes | Displays top VPN connections by user. |
| Vulnerable Endpoint Devices | Detected Vulnerabilities | Displays top vulnerable endpoint devices by device. |

A maximum of 25 interfaces can be monitored at one time on a device.

## VDOMs and dashboards

Dashboards are created per VDOM when VDOM mode is enabled. Some features and widgets are not available depending on Multi or Split-task VDOM mode.

### Multi-VDOM mode

The following widgets and dashboard setting are not available Multi VDOM mode because it does not support Security Fabric:

- Security Fabric related widgets
- *FortiGate Selection* option

### Split-task mode

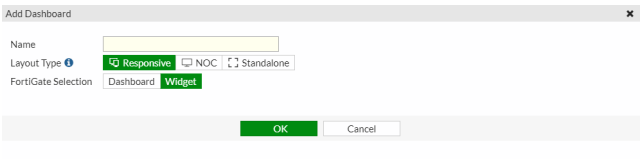
Split-task VDOM mode is limited to two VDOMs, the root VDOM and the FortiGate traffic VDOM. The root VDOM is for all management related settings and the FortiGate traffic VDOM is for all traffic related settings.

The *FortiGate Selection* option is available when you create a dashboard in Split-Task VDOM mode.

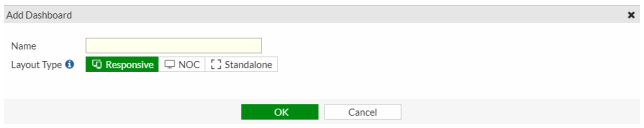
For information about VDOM modes, see Virtual Domains on page 677.

### Examples

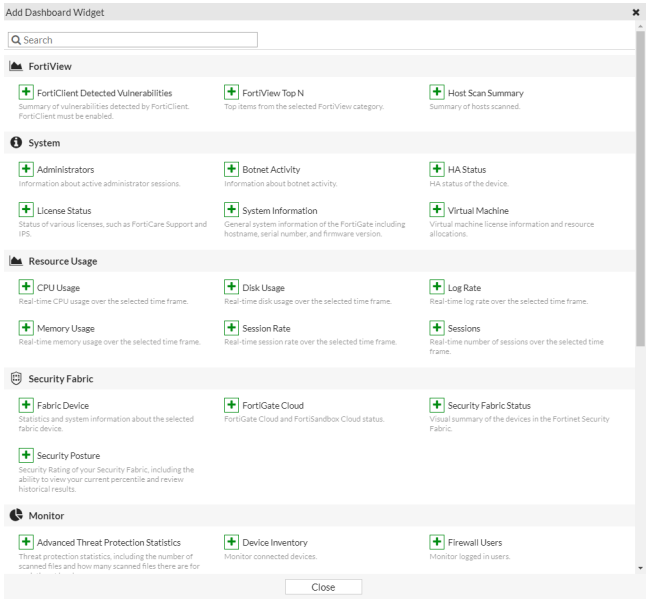
When VDOM mode is disabled, notice the *FortiGate Selection* option is available in the *Add Dashboard* window:



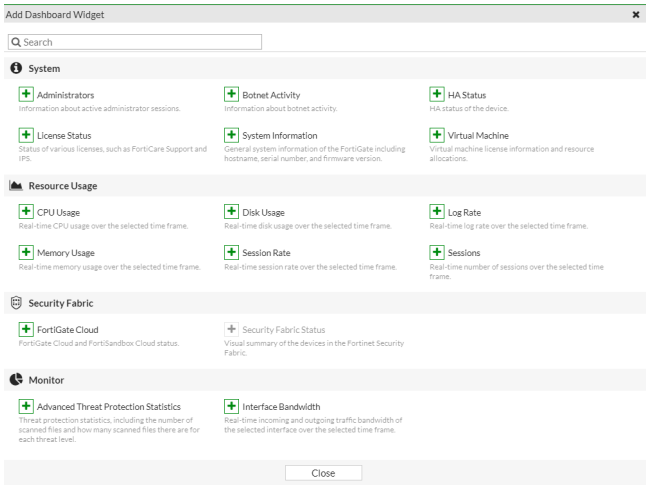

When Multi VDOM mode is enabled, notice the *FortiGate Selection* is not available in the *Add Dashboard* window:




When Multi VDOM mode is disabled, notice all the widgets in the *Add Dashboard Widget* menu are enabled:




When Multi VDOM mode is enabled, notice the *Security Fabric Status* widget is disabled:




## FortiView interface

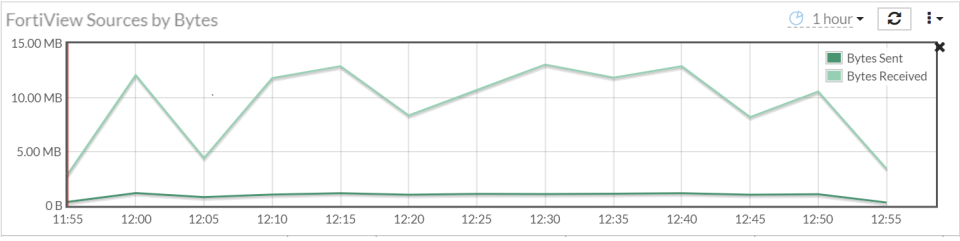
Use the FortiView interface to customize the view and visualizations within a dashboard to find the information you are looking for. The tools in the top menu bar allow you to change the time display, refresh the data, and customize the data source. You can also right-click a table in the dashboard to view drilldown information for an entry.

FortiOS 6.4.1 does not support search and filtering of results at this time.

## Top menu bar

The top menu bar contains the following settings:

- A *time display* dropdown to switch between current and historical data.
- A *Refresh* button to update the displayed data.
- A *Settings* dropdown to change the information shown on the dashboard.

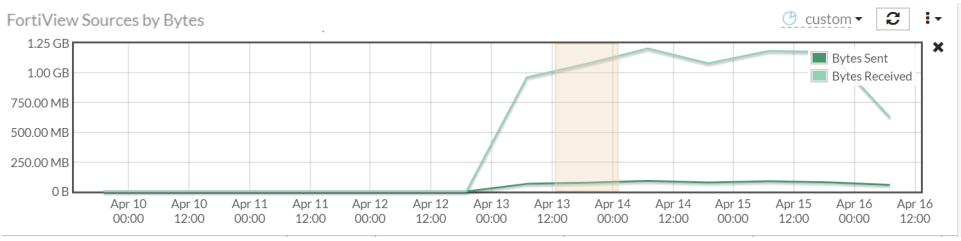



## Time period display

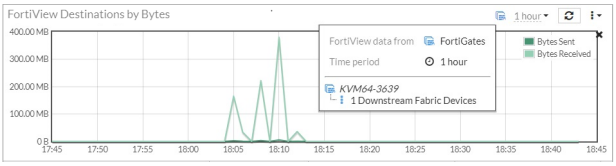
Use the *time display* dropdown to select the time period to display on the current dashboard. Time display options vary depending on the dashboard and can include current information (*now*) and historical information (*1 hour*, *24 hours*, and *7 days*).

Disk logging or remote logging must be enabled to view historical information.

You can use a chart to create a custom time display by selecting the time range with your cursor.




The icon next to the time period identifies the data source (FortiGate Disk, FortiAnalyzer, or FortiGate Cloud). You can hover over the icon to see a description of the device.

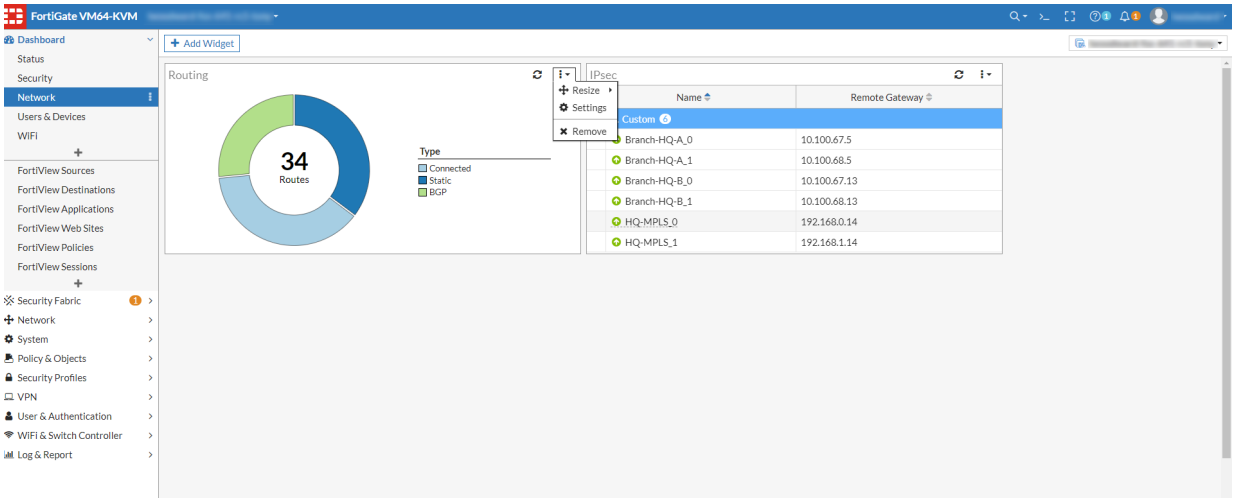


## View settings

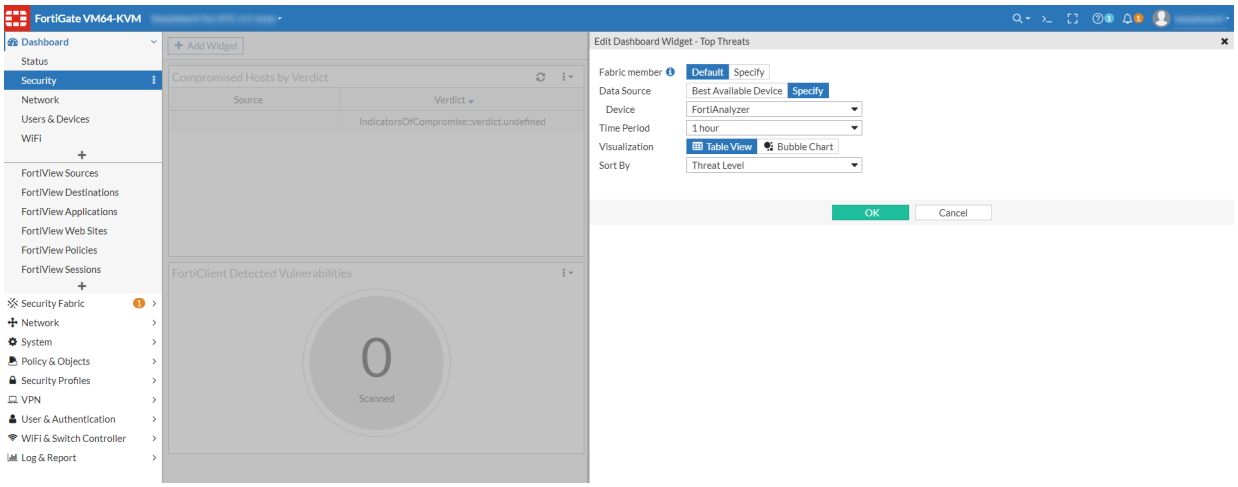
Use the *Settings* menu to change the data source, sort by information, and visualization.

### To change the widget settings:

1. Click the dropdown menu at the right side of the top menu bar, and select *Settings*.




2. Configure the widget settings, and click *OK*.






The *Data Source* dropdown only appears when FortiGate is connected to another data source.

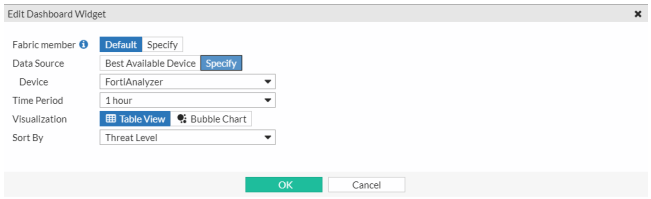
For information about widget settings, see Adding FortiView widgets on page 79



For dashboards with multiple widgets, you cannot access the settings dropdown when the widget is expanded to full screen. To change the settings, click the back button to return to the dashboard, and click the dropdown.

## Data source

FortiView gathers information from a variety of data sources. If there are no log disk or remote logging configured, the data will be drawn from the FortiGate's session table, and the *Time Period* is set to *Now*.




Other data sources that can be configured are:

- FortiGates (disk)
- FortiAnalyzer
- FortiGate Cloud

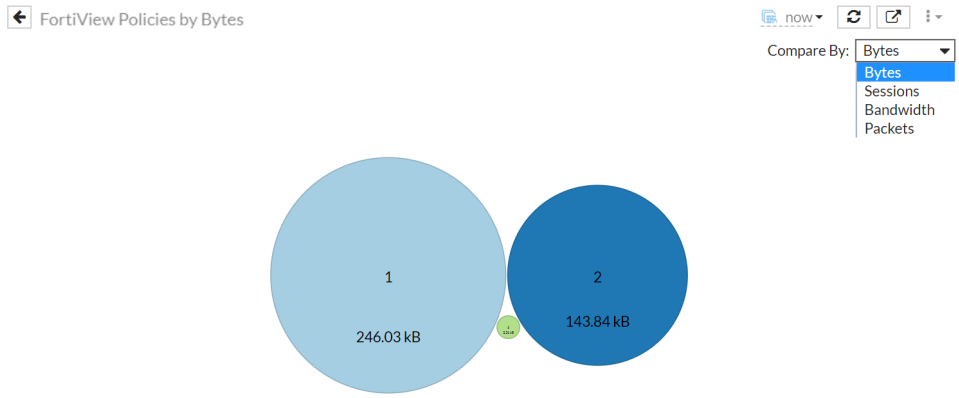
When *Data Source* is set to *Best Available Device*, FortiAnalyzer is selected when available, then FortiGate Cloud, and then FortiGate Disk.

## Display types

### Bubble charts

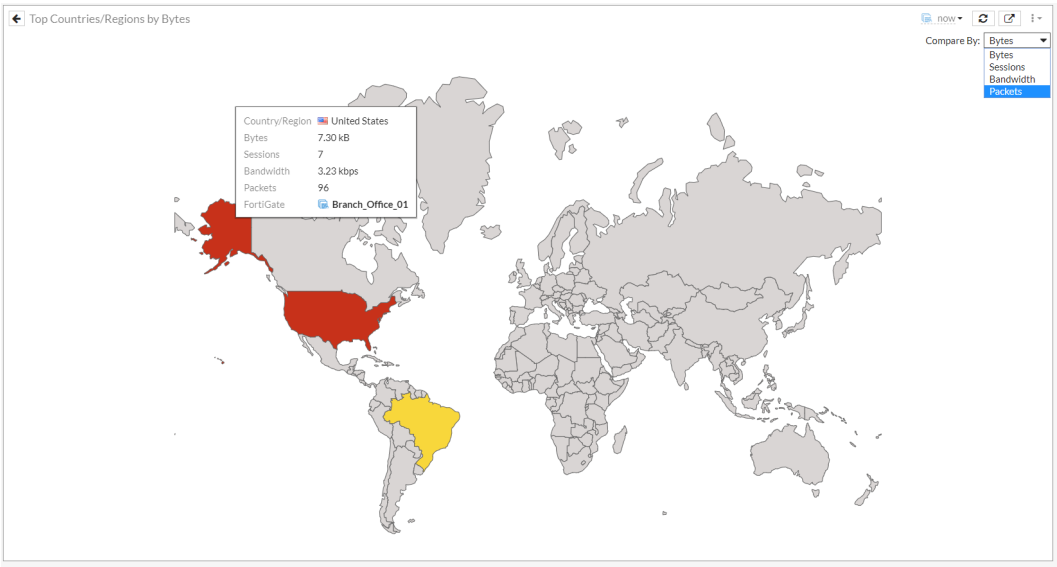
Display types include table view, bubble charts, and country maps. Not all display types are supported by all dashboards.

Bubble charts allow you to sort information using the *Compare By* dropdown menu. The size of each bubble represents the related amount of data. You can place your cursor over a bubble to display a tool-tip with detailed information on that item, and click on a bubble to drilldown into greater detail.



## Country maps

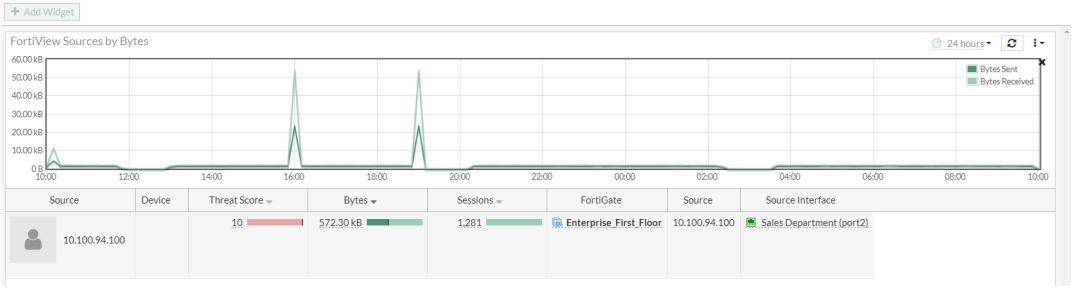
Country maps display traffic activity as regions on a map. Hover over the highlighted region to view information about the entry. You can also compare data by *Bytes*, *Sessions*, *Bandwidth*, and *Packets*. Country maps are not available in all dashboards and widgets.




## Table view

Table view displays traffic activity as a graph and a table. To remove the table, click close, at the top right corner of the graph. To view the graph, click *Show Graph*.

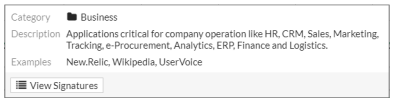
## Source view



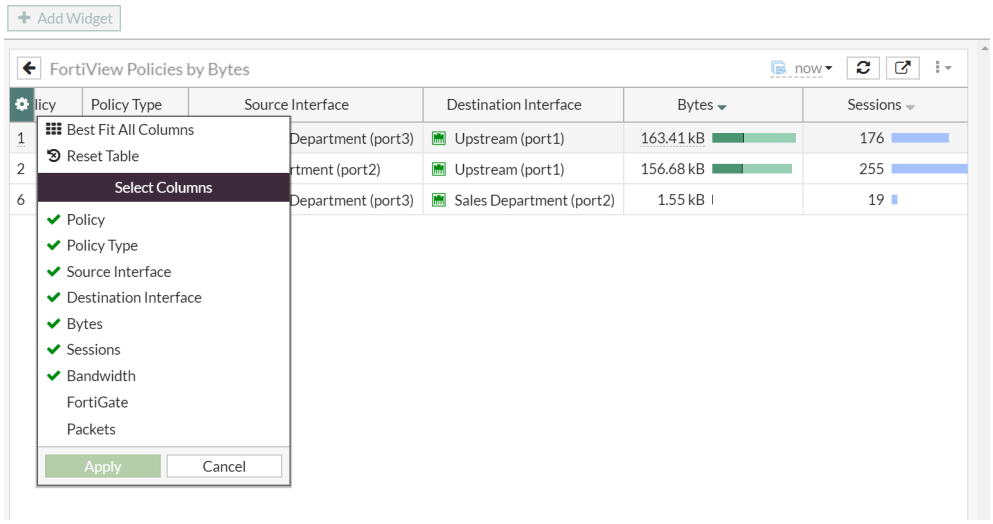

| | |
|---|---|
| **Time** | • *Now* entries are determined by the FortiGate's system session list.<br>• Historical or *1 hour* or later entries are determined by traffic logs, with additional information coming from UTM logs.<br><br>The dropdown only shows *now* if there is no disk. |
| **Graph** | • The graph shows the bytes sent/received in the time frame. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • Users can customize the time frame by selecting a time period within the graph. |
| **Columns** | • *Source* shows the IP address (and user as well as user avatar if configured) of the source device.<br>• *Device* shows the device information as listed in the *Device Inventory* widget. Device detection should be enabled on the applicable interfaces for best function. For information about adding widgets, see Using widgets on page 63.<br>• *Threat Score* is the threat score of the source based on UTM features such as Web Filter and antivirus. It shows threat scores allowed and threat scores blocked.<br>• *Bytes* is the accumulated bytes sent/received. In realtime, this is calculated from the session list, and in historical it is from logs.<br>• *Sessions* is the total sessions blocked/allowed. In realtime, this is calculated from the session list, and in historical it is from logs.<br>• *Source* is a simplified version of the first column, including only the IP address without extra information.<br>• *Source Interface* is the interface from which the traffic originates. In realtime, this is calculated from the session list, and in historical it is from the logs.<br>• *FortiGate* is the name of the fabric device.<br>• More information can be shown in a tooltip while hovering over these entries.<br>• For realtime, two more columns are available, *Bandwidth* and *Packets*, both of which come from the session list. |

Hover over linked items in an entry to view additional information. Some information windows provide links to other areas of FortiOS such as the application signatures page.



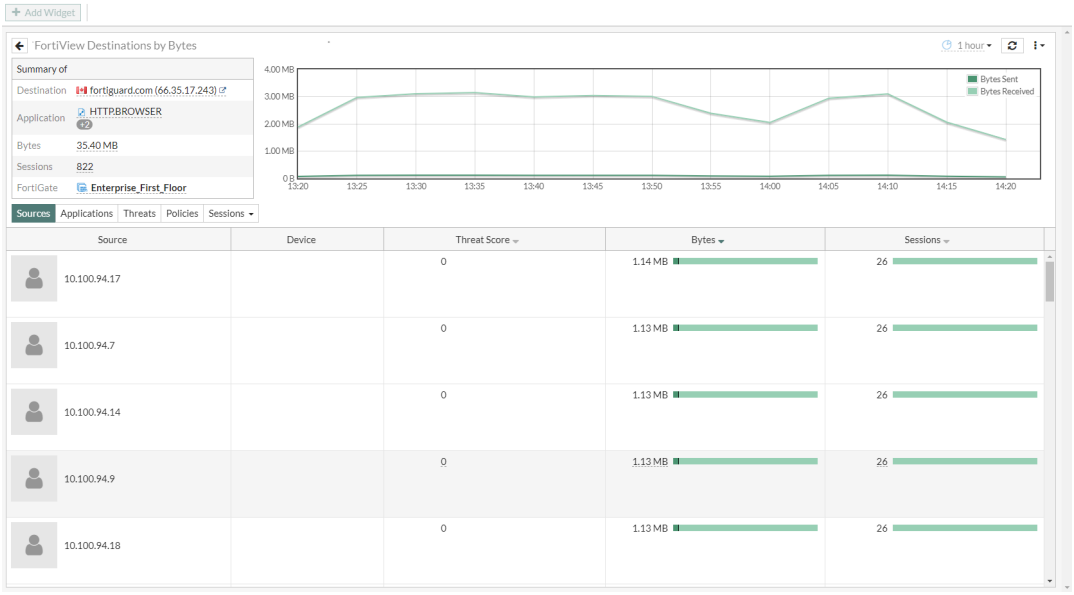

To select the columns displayed in a table, hover over the header in the first column, and click the *configure table* icon.



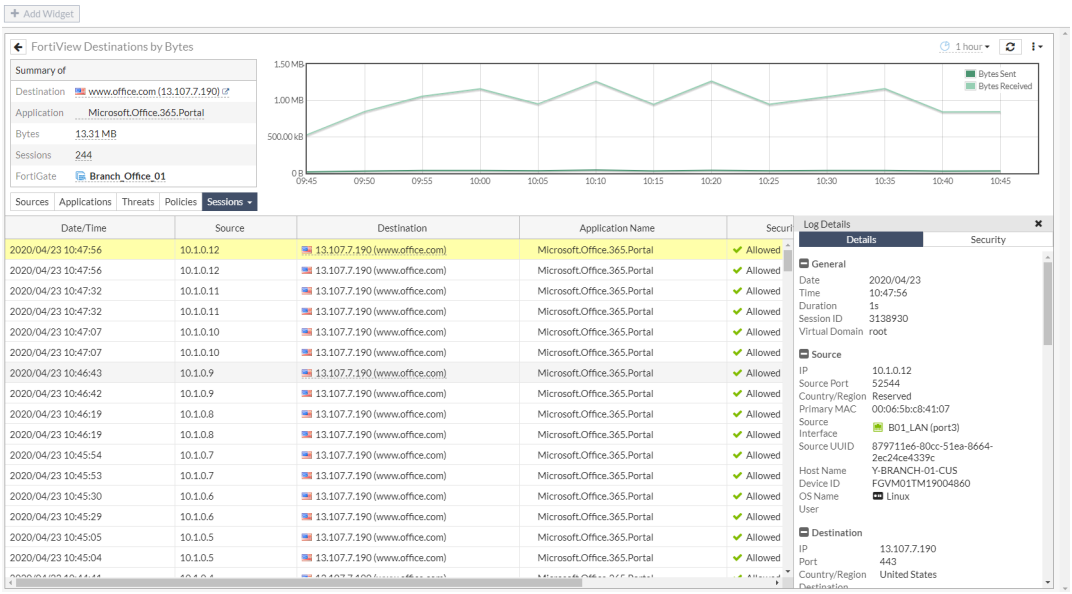
## Drilldown information

Double-click or right-click an entry in a FortiView dashboard and select *Drill Down to Details* to view additional details about the selected traffic activity. Click the *Back* icon in the toolbar to return to the previous view.

You can group drilldown information into different drilldown views. For example, you can group the drilldown information in the *Top* FortiView Destinations dashboard by *Sources*, *Applications*, *Threats*, and *Policies*.



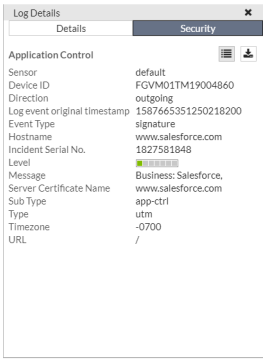

Double-click an entry to view the logs in *Sessions* view. Double-click a session to view the logs.




| | |
|---|---|
| **Graph** | • The graph shows the bytes sent/received in the time frame. Realtime does not include a chart.<br>• Users can customize the time frame by selecting a time period within the graph. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Summary Information** | • Shows information such as the user/avatar, avatar/source IP, bytes, and sessions total for the time period.<br>• Can quarantine host (access layer quarantine) if they are behind a FortiSwitch or FortiAP.<br>• Can ban IP addresses, adds the source IP address into the quarantine list. |
| **Tabs** | • Drilling down entries in any of these tabs (except sessions tab) will take you to the underlying traffic log in the sessions tab.<br>• *Applications* shows a list of the applications attributed to the source IP. This can include scanned applications (using Application Control in a firewall policy or unscanned applications.<br>`config log gui-display`<br>`set fortiview-unscanned-apps enable`<br>`end`<br>• *Destinations* shows destinations grouped by IP address/FQDN.<br>• *Threats* lists the threats caught by UTM profiles. This can be from antivirus, IPS, Web Filter, Application Control, etc.<br>• *Web Sites* contains the websites which were detected either with webfilter, or through FQDN in traffic logs.<br>• *Web Categories* groups entries into their categories as dictated by the Web Filter Database.<br>• *Policies* groups the entries into which polices they passed through or were blocked by.<br>• *Sessions* shows the underlying logs (historical) or sessions (realtime). Drilldowns from other tabs end up showing the underlying log located in this tab.<br>• *Search Phrases* shows entries of search phrases on search engines captured by a Web Filter UTM profile, with deep inspection enabled in firewall policy.<br>• More information can be shown in a tooltip while hovering over these entries. |

To view matching logs or download a log, click the *Security* tab in the *Log Details* .




## FortiView from disk

FortiView from disk is available on all FortiGates with an SSD disk.

## Restrictions

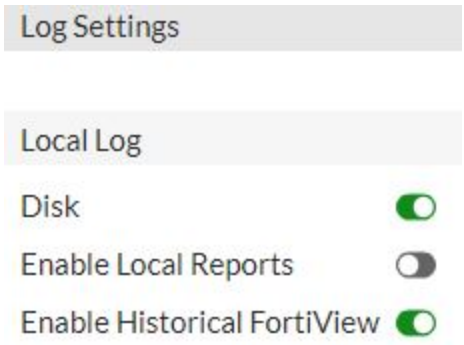
| Model | Supported view |
|---|---|
| Desktop models (100 series) with SSD | Five minutes and one hour |
| Medium models with SSD | Up to 24 hours |
| Large models (1500D and above) with SSD | Up to seven days<br>To enable seven days view:<br>`config log setting`<br>`set fortiview-weekly-data enable`<br>`end` |

## Configuration

A firewall policy needs to be in place with traffic logging enabled. For optimal operation with FortiView, internal interface roles should be clearly defined as LAN. DMZ and internet facing or external interface roles should be defined as WAN.

**To configure logging to disk in the GUI:**

1. Enable disk logging from the FortiGate GUI.
   a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* > *Local Traffic Log*.
   b. Select the checkbox next to *Disk*.
2. Enable historical FortiView from the FortiGate GUI.
   a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* > *Local Traffic Log*.
   b. Select the checkbox next to *Enable Historical FortiView*.




3. Click *Apply*.

**To include sniffer traffic and local-deny traffic when FortiView from Disk:**

This feature is only supported through the CLI.

```
config report setting
  set report-source forward-traffic sniffer-traffic local-deny-traffic
end
```

**To configure the data source in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources*.
2. Select a time range other than *now* from the drop-down list to view historical data.
3. In the top menu, click the dropdown, and select *Settings*. The *Edit Dashboard Widget* window opens.
   a. In the *Data Source* area, click *Specify*.
   b. From the dropdown, select *Disk*, and click *OK*.
   For information see, FortiView interface on page 82.

### Troubleshooting

Use `execute report flush-cache` and `execute report recreate-db` to clear up any irregularities that may be caused by upgrading or cache issues.

## FortiView from FortiAnalyzer

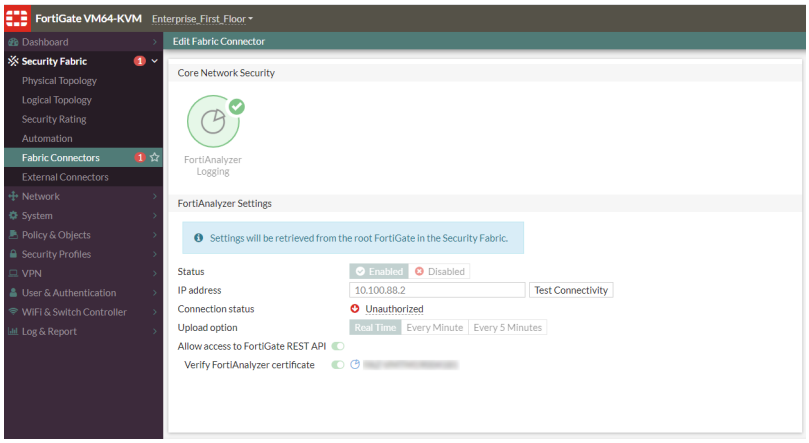
Attach a FortiAnlyzer to FortiGate to increase the functionality of FortiView. Adding a FortiAnalyzer is useful when adding widgets such as the *Compromised Hosts* widget. It also allows historical view for up to seven days.

### Requirements

- A FortiGate or FortiOS
- A compatible FortiAnalyzer (see Compatibility with FortiOS)

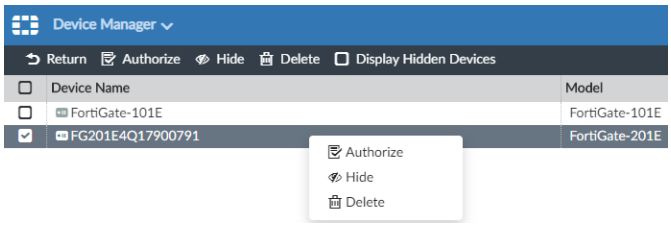
**To configure logging to the FortiAnalyzer:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
2. Enter the IP address of the FortiAnalyzer device.
3. Click *Test Connectivity*. A message will be shown stating that the FortiGate is not authorized on the FortiAnalyzer.

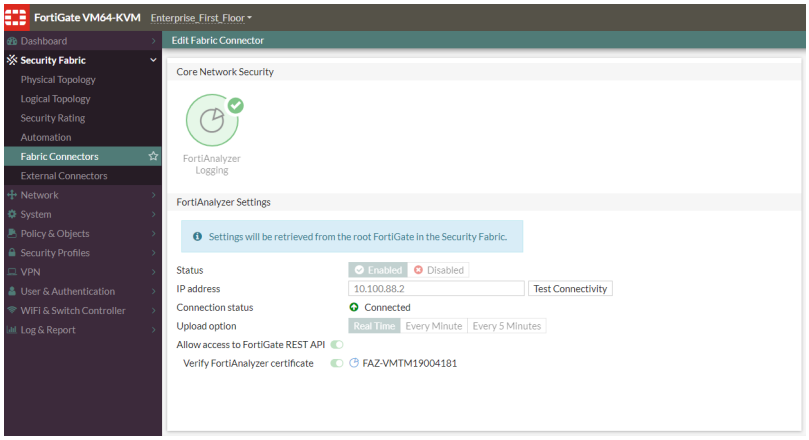



4. On the FortiAnalyzer, go to *Device Manager*, and click the *Unauthorized* tab.

5. In the device list, right-click the FortiGate, then click *Authorize*.

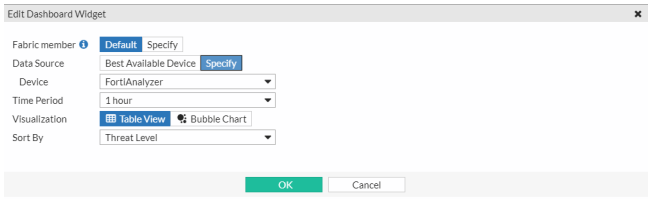



6. On FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
7. Click *Test Connectivity* to confirm that the device is now authorized.




**To enable FortiView from FortiAnalyzer:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources*.
2. Select a time range other than *now* from the drop-down list to view historical data.
3. In top menu, click the dropdown, and select *Settings*. The *Edit Dashboard Widget* window opens.
   a. In the *Data Source* area, click *Specify*.
   b. From the dropdown, select *FortiAnalyzer*, and click *OK*.




All the historical information now comes from the FortiAnalyzer.

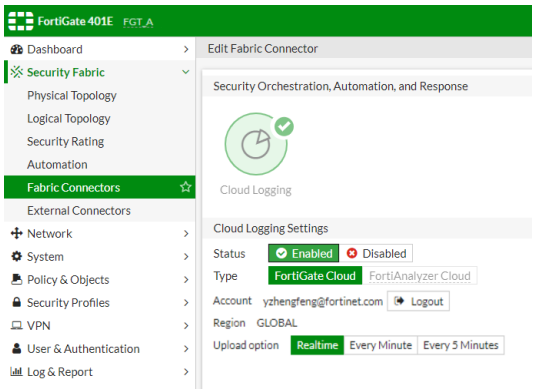
When *Data Source* is set to *Best Available Device*, FortiAnalyzer is selected when available, then FortiGate Cloud, and then FortiGate Disk.

## FortiView from FortiGate Cloud

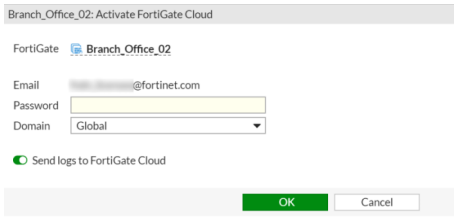
This function requires a FortiGate that is registered and logged into a compatible FortiGate Cloud. When using FortiGate Cloud, the Time Period can be set to up to 24 hours.

**To configure logging to FortiGate Cloud:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and double-click the *Cloud Logging* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enabled*.
3. For *Type*, click *FortiGate Cloud*.
   If the FortiGate is registered and logged into FortiGate Cloud, the *Account* and *Region* is displayed.



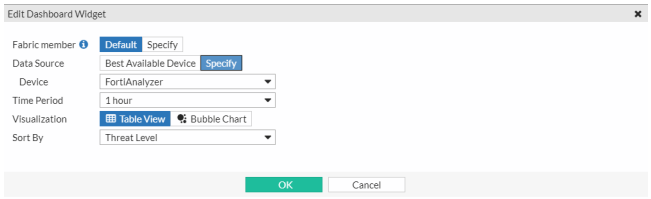

If the FortiGate is logged out from FortiGate Cloud, click *Activate* and log in, and ensure *Send logs to FortiGate Cloud* is selected.




4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* and set the following:
   a. Set *Event Logging* to *All*.
   b. Set *Local Traffic Log* to *All*.

**To enable FortiView with log source as FortiGate Cloud:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Sources*.
2. In the top menu, click the dropdown, and select *Settings*. The *Edit Dashboard Widget* window opens.
   a. In the *Data Source* area, click *Specify*.
   b. From the dropdown, select *FortiGate Cloud*, and click *OK*.



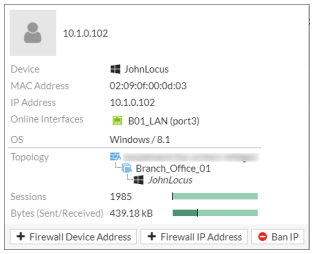

You can select FortiGate Cloud as the data source for all available FortiView pages and widgets.

## FortiView sources

The *FortiView Sources* dashboard displays top sources sorted by Bytes, Sessions or Threat Score. The information can be displayed in real time or historical views. You can use the dashboard to create or edit a firewall device address or IP address definitions, and temporarily or permanently ban IPs.

### To add a firewall device address:

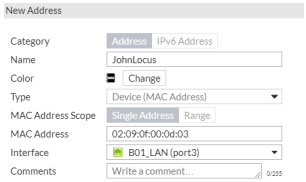
1. In the *Device* column, hover over the device MAC address. An information window opens.




2. Click *Firewall Device Address*. The *New Address* window opens.
3. Configure the address settings, and click *Return*.

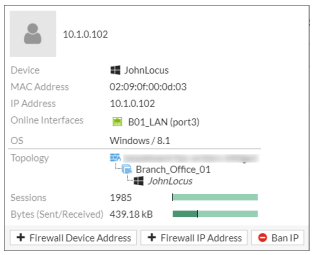


Use the *Name* field to assign a descriptive name to a device so it is easier to find it in the *Device* column. After you finish configuring the device, refresh the page to see the new name in the dashboard.




### To add a firewall IP address:

1. In the *Device* column, hover over the device MAC address. An information window opens.

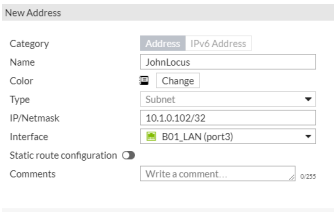



2. Click *Firewall IP Address*. The *New Address* window opens.

3. Configure the address settings, and click *Return*.

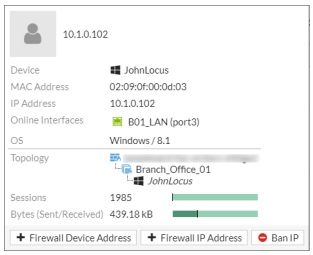


Use the *Name* field to assign a descriptive name to a device so it is easier to find it in the *Device* column. After you finish configuring the device, refresh the page to see the new name in the dashboard.

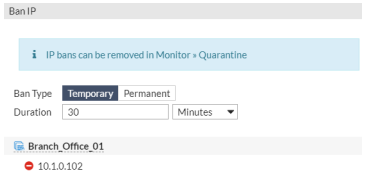



**To ban an IP address:**

1. In the *Device* column, hover over the device MAC address. An information window opens.




2. Click *Ban IP* . The *Ban IP* window opens.
3. Configure the ban IP settings, and click *OK*.

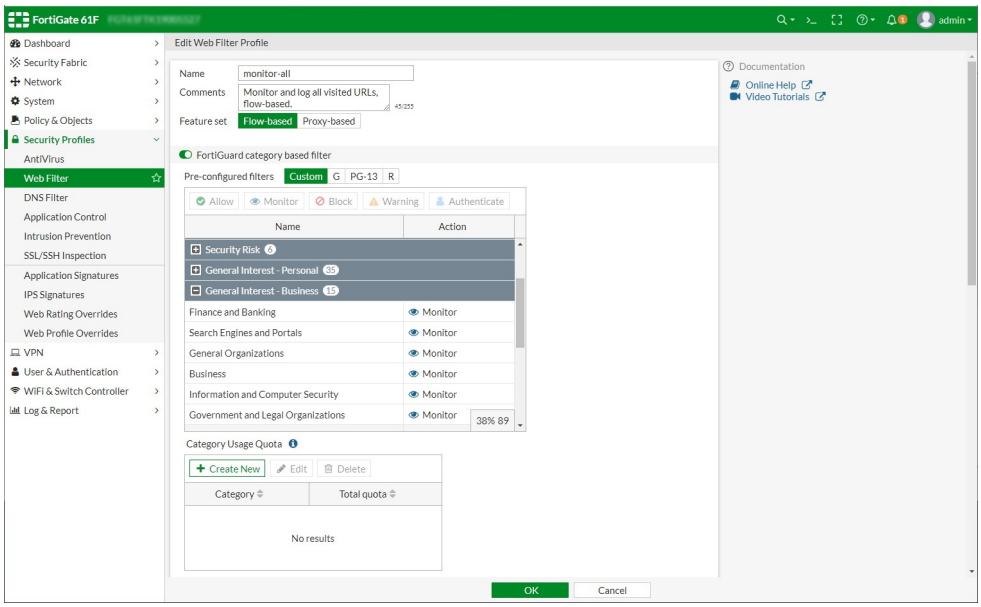



## Viewing top websites and sources by category

You can use FortiGuard web categories to populate the category fields in various FortiViews such as *FortiView Web Categories*, *FortiView Websites* or *FortiView Sources*. To view the categories in a dashboard, the web filter profile must be configured to at least monitor for FortiGuard category based filter, and applied to a firewall policy for outbound traffic.

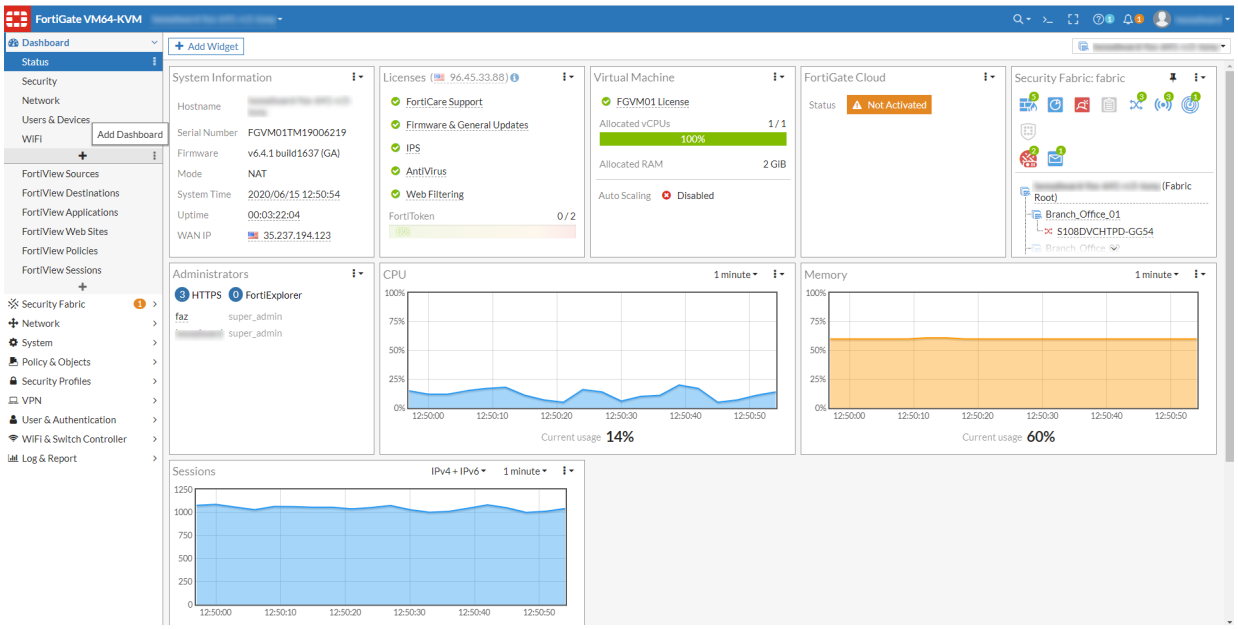
**To verify the web filter profile is monitor-only:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Double-click a web filter that is applied to an outbound traffic firewall policy. The *Edit Web Filter Profile* window opens.
3. Ensure *FortiGuard category based filter* is enabled.
   In the image below, the *General Interest - Business* categories are monitor-only.




### To create a Web categories dashboard:

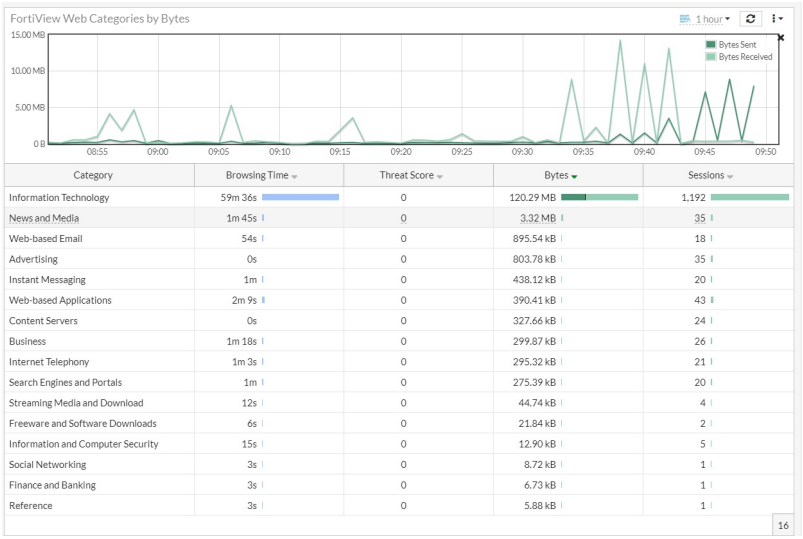
1. Under *Dashboard*, click *Add Dashboard*. The *Add Dashboard* window opens.




2. In the *Name* field, enter a name such as *FortiView Web Categories* and click *OK*. The new dashboard opens.
3. In the banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
4. In the *Search* field, type *FortiView Web Categories* and click the *Add* button next to the widget name.
5. In the *Fabric Member* area, click *Default* or *Specify* to select a device in the security fabric.
6. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select a time period greater than *Now*.
7. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select *Bytes*, *Sessions*, *Bandwidth*, or *Packets*.
8. Click *Add Widget*. The widget is added to the dashboard.

## Viewing the web filter category

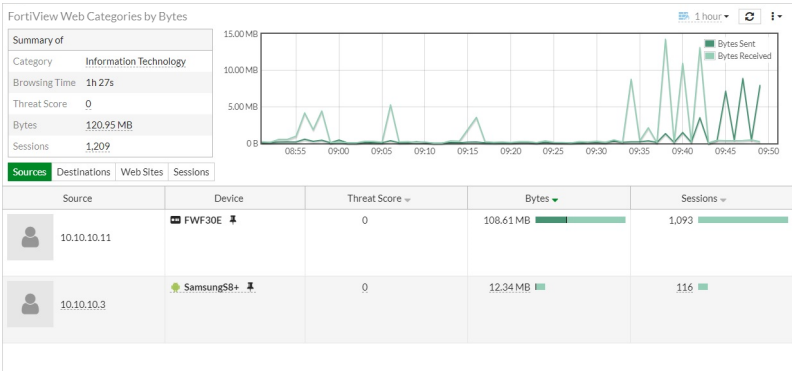
The web filter category name appears in the *Category* column of the dashboard.




| Category | Browsing Time | Threat Score | Bytes | Sessions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Information Technology | 59m 36s | 0 | 120.29 MB | 1,192 |
| News and Media | 1m 45s | 0 | 3.32 MB | 35 |
| Web-based Email | 54s | 0 | 895.54 kB | 18 |
| Advertising | 0s | 0 | 803.78 kB | 35 |
| Instant Messaging | 1m | 0 | 438.12 kB | 20 |
| Web-based Applications | 2m 9s | 0 | 390.41 kB | 43 |
| Content Servers | 0s | 0 | 327.66 kB | 24 |
| Business | 1m 18s | 0 | 299.87 kB | 26 |
| Internet Telephony | 1m 3s | 0 | 295.32 kB | 21 |
| Search Engines and Portals | 1m | 0 | 275.39 kB | 20 |
| Streaming Media and Download | 12s | 0 | 44.74 kB | 4 |
| Freeware and Software Downloads | 6s | 0 | 21.84 kB | 2 |
| Information and Computer Security | 15s | 0 | 12.90 kB | 5 |
| Social Networking | 3s | 0 | 8.72 kB | 1 |
| Finance and Banking | 3s | 0 | 6.73 kB | 1 |
| Reference | 3s | 0 | 5.88 kB | 1 |

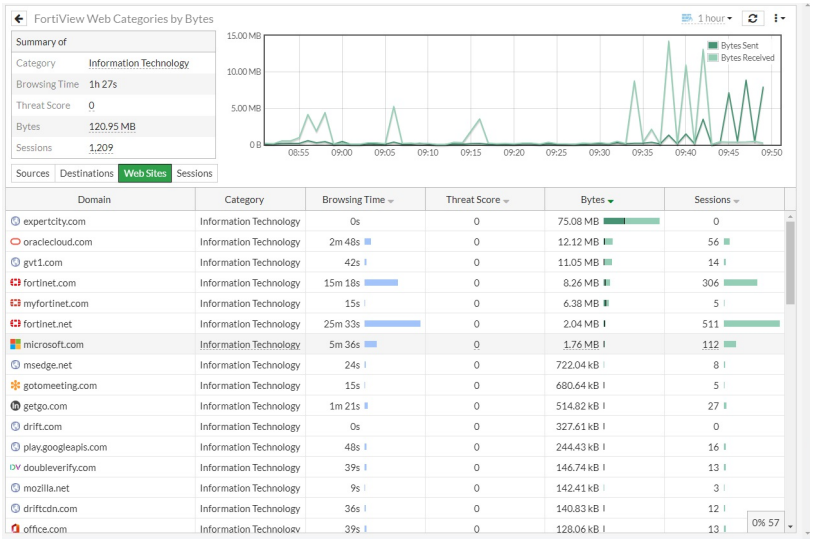
16

Click an entry in the table. The category name appears at the top of *Summary of* box.

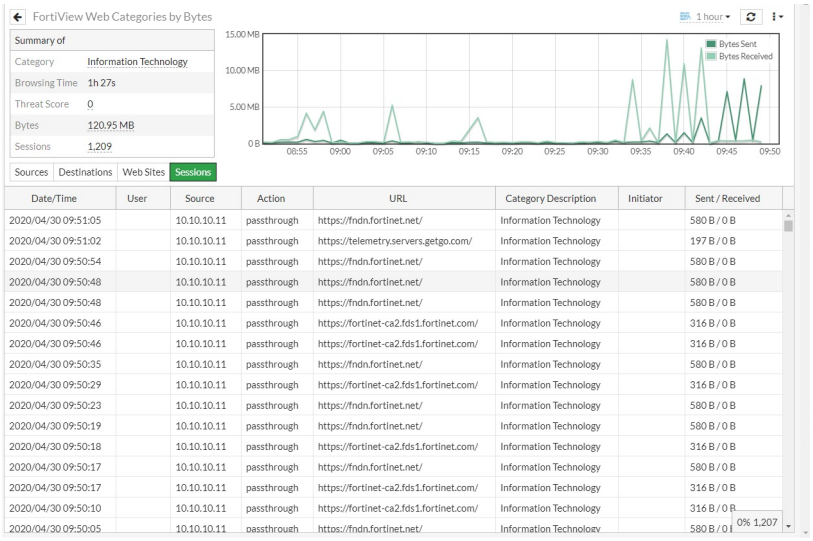



| Source | Device | Threat Score | Bytes | Sessions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10.10.10.11 | FWF30E | 0 | 108.61 MB | 1,093 |
| 10.10.10.3 | SamsungS8+ | 0 | 12.34 MB | 116 |

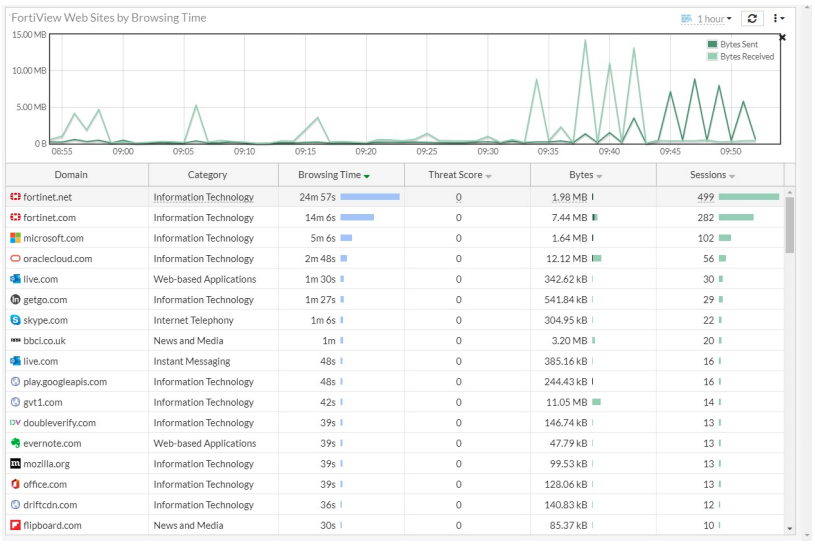
Click the *Web Sites* tab. The category name appears in the *Category* column.




Click the *Sessions* tab. The category name appears in the *Category Description* column.




The category name also appears in the *Category* column in the *FortiView Websites* and *FortiView Sources* dashboards.




# Cloud application view

To see different cloud application views, set up the following:

- A FortiGate having a relative firewall policy with the Application Control security profile.
- A FortiGate with log data from the local disk or FortiAnalyzer.
- Optional but highly recommended: *SSL Inspection* set to *deep-inspection* on relative firewall policies.

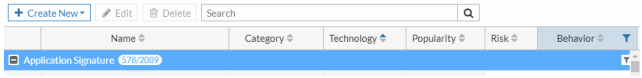
## Viewing cloud applications

### Cloud applications

All cloud applications require *SSL Inspection* set to *deep-inspection* on the firewall policy. For example, `Facebook_File.Download` can monitor Facebook download behavior which requires *SSL deep-inspection* to parse the deep information in the network packets.

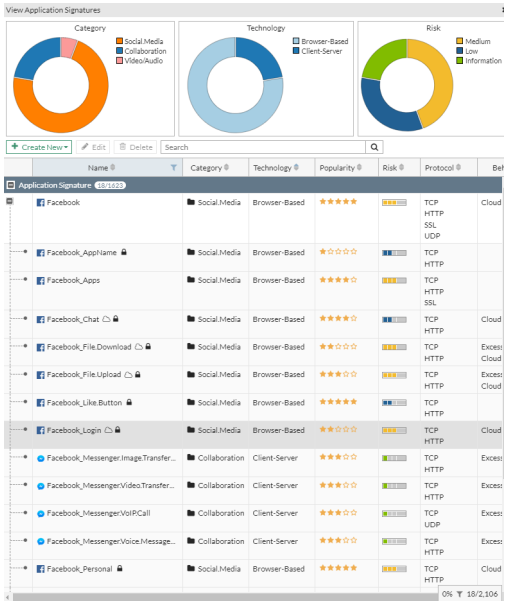
**To view cloud applications:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Select a relative Application Control profile used by the firewall policy and click *Edit*.
3. On the *Edit Application Sensor* page, click *View Application Signatures*.
4. Hover over a column heading or the *Application Signature* bar. In the right gutter area, click the filter icon to filter the applications.

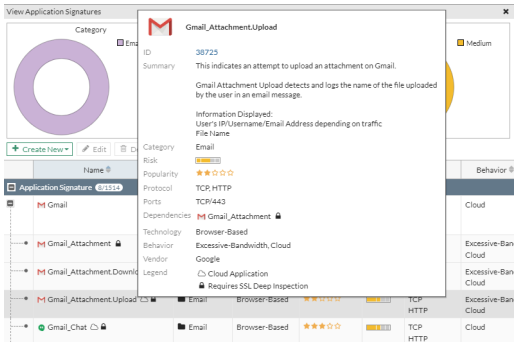



Cloud applications have a cloud icon beside them.

The lock icon indicates that the application requires SSL deep inspection.




5. Hover over an item to see its details.
   This example shows *Gmail_Attachment.Download*, a cloud application signature based sensor which requires SSL deep inspection. If any local network user behind the firewall logs into Gmail and downloads a Gmail attachment, that activity is logged.




## Applications with cloud behavior

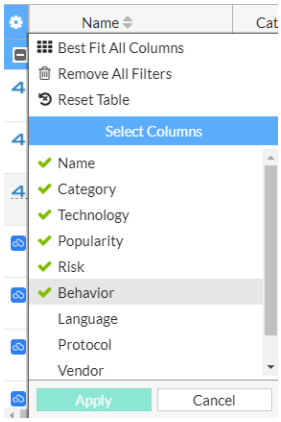
Applications with cloud behavior is a superset of cloud applications.

Some applications do not require SSL deep inspection, such as Facebook, Gmail, and YouTube. This means that if any traffic trigger application sensors for these applications, there is a FortiView cloud application view for that traffic.

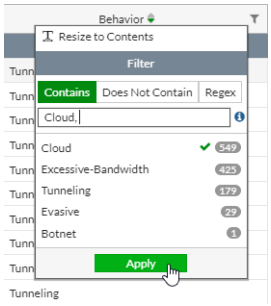
Other applications require SSL deep inspection, such as Gmail attachment, Facebook_Workplace, and so on.

**To view applications with cloud behavior:**

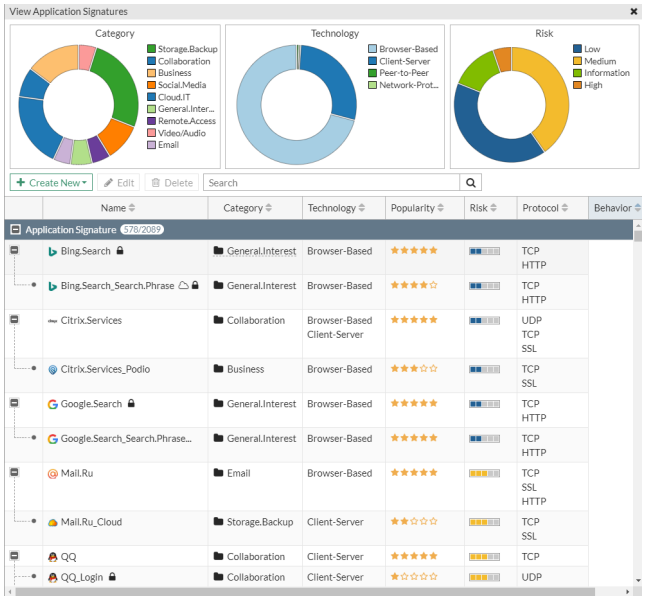
1. In the *Application Signature* page, ensure the *Behavior* column is displayed. If necessary, add the *Behavior* column.
   a. Hover over the left side of the table column headings to display the *Configure Table* icon.
   b. Click *Configure Table* and select *Behavior*.
   c. Click *Apply*.



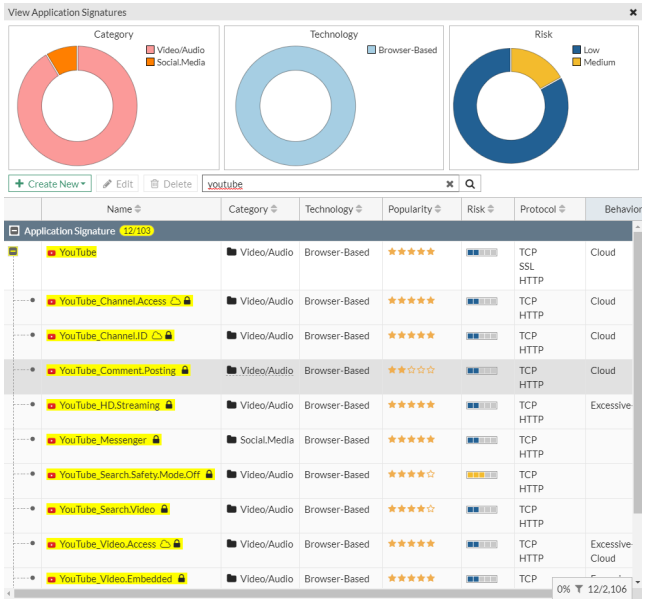

2. Click the filter icon in the *Behavior* column and select *Cloud* to filter by Cloud. Then click *Apply*.



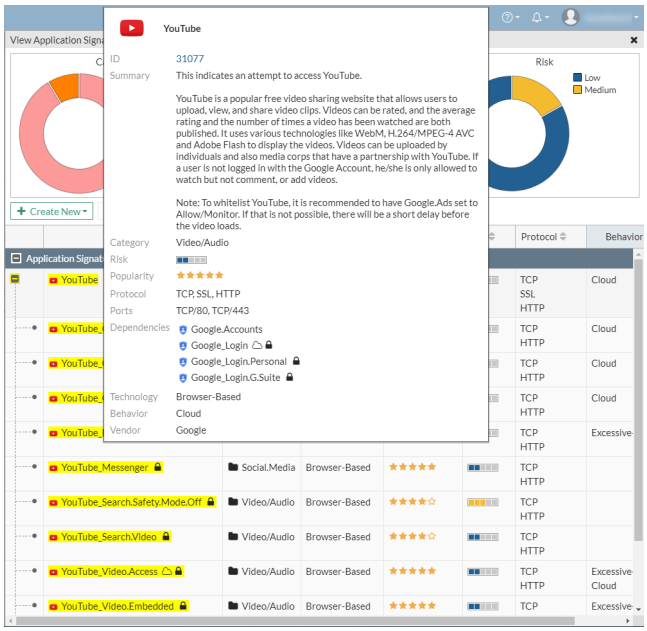

3. The *Application Signature* page displays all applications with cloud behavior.



4. Use the *Search* box to search for applications. For example, you can search for *youtube*.

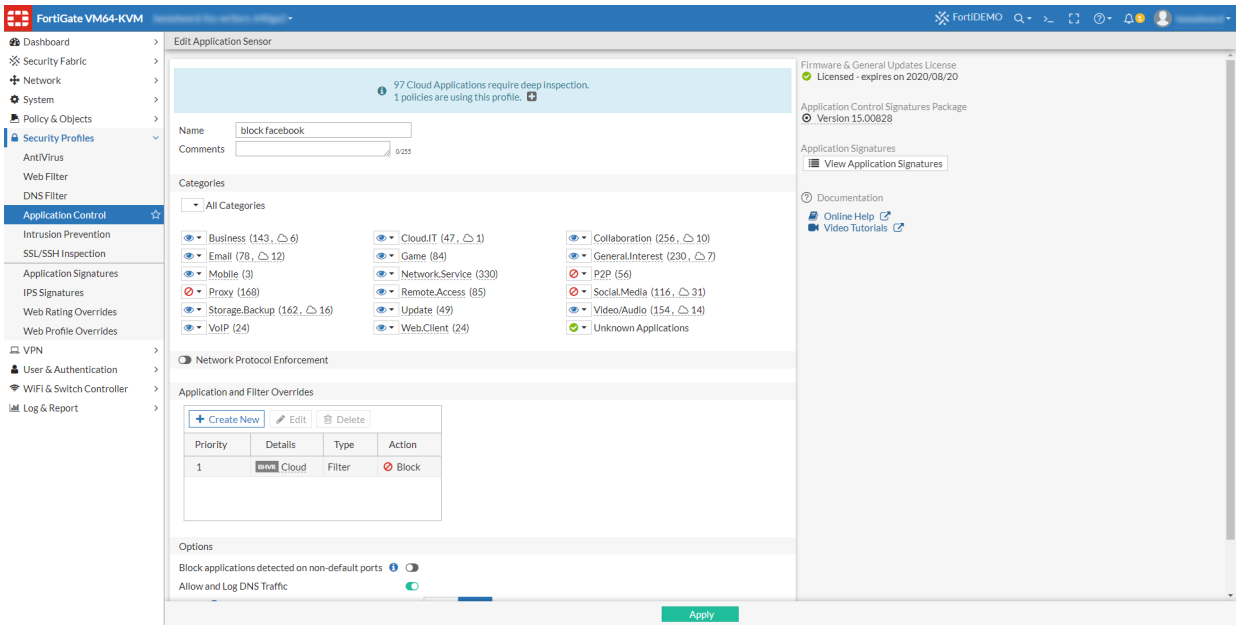



5. Hover over an item to see its details.
This example shows an application sensor with no lock icon which means that this application sensor does not require SSL deep inspection. If any local network user behind the firewall tries to navigate to the YouTube website, that activity is logged.



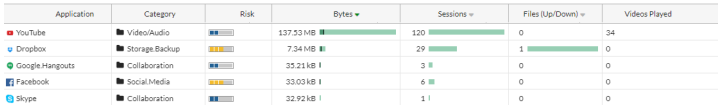

## Configuring the Cloud Applications widget

On the *Edit Application Sensor* page in the *Categories* section, the eye icon next to a category means that category is monitored and logged.




**To add the Cloud Applications widget in the GUI:**

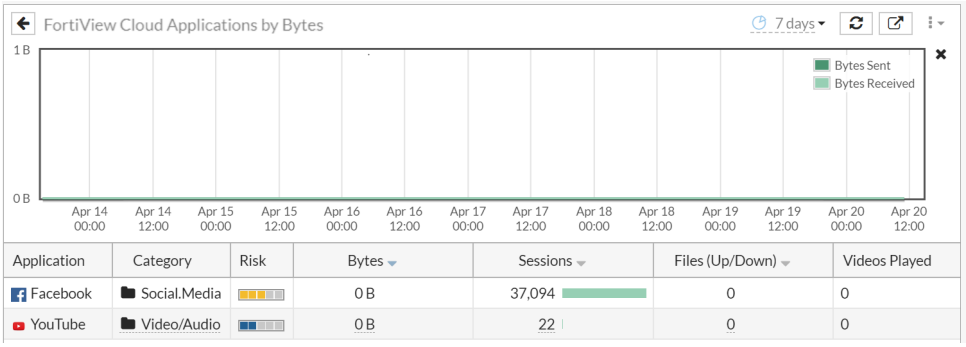
1. Go to *Dashboard* , and select a dashboard in the tree menu.
2. In the dashboard banner, click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
3. In the *Search* field, enter *FortiView Cloud Applications* and click the *Add* button next to the widget.
4. In the *Fabric Member* area, click *Default* or *Specify* to select a device in the security fabric.
5. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select a time period greater than *Now*.
6. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select *Bytes*, *Sessions*, or *Files (Up/Down)*.
7. Click *Add Widget*. The widget is added to the dashboard.
8. Click *Close*.
9. Hover the *FortiView Cloud Applications* widget and click *Expand to Full Screen*.
10. If SSL deep inspection is enabled on the relative firewall, then the widget shows the additional details that are logged, such as *Files (Up/Down)* and *Videos Played*.
    For YouTube, the *Videos Played* column is triggered by the *YouTube_Video.Play* cloud application sensor. This shows the number of local network users who logged into YouTube and played YouTube videos.
    For Dropbox, the *Files (Up/Down)* column is triggered by *Dropbox_File.Download* and *Dropbox_File.Upload* cloud application sensors. This shows the number of local network users who logged into Dropbox and uploaded or downloaded files.



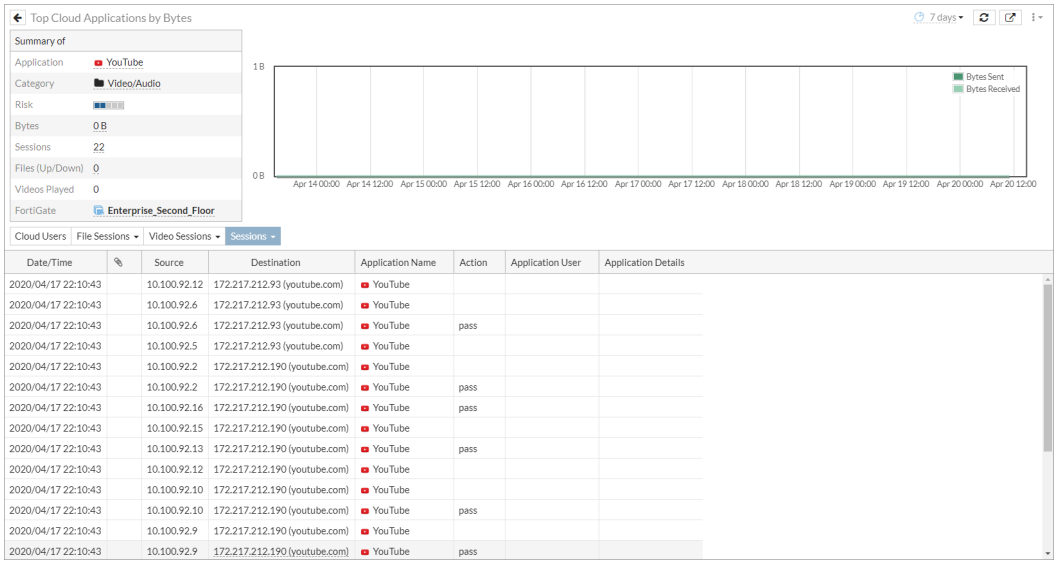
## Using the Cloud Applications widget

### To see additional information in the Cloud Applications widget:

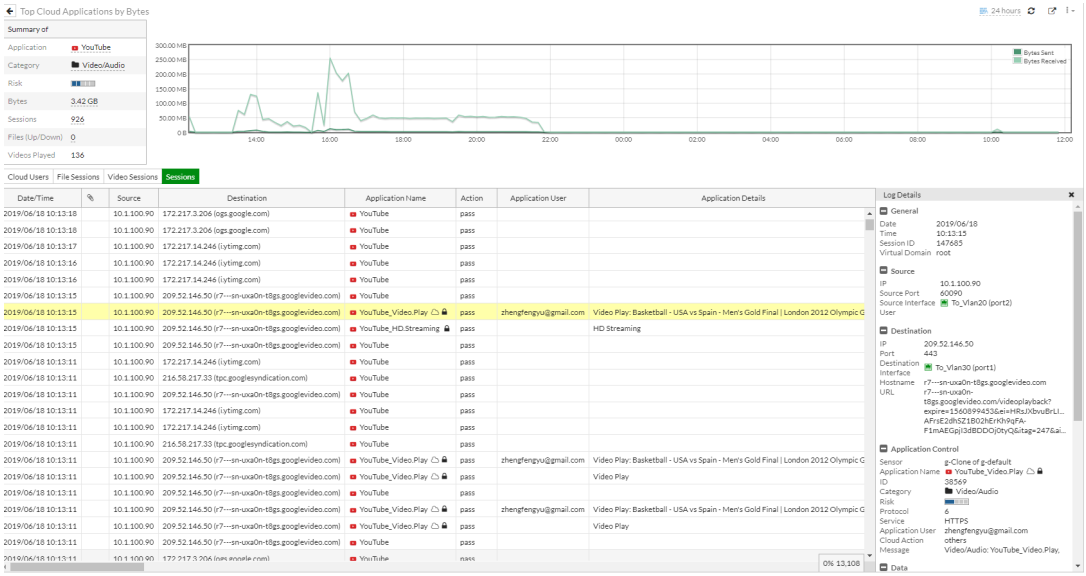
1. Hover over the widget in the dashboard, and click *Expand to full screen*.



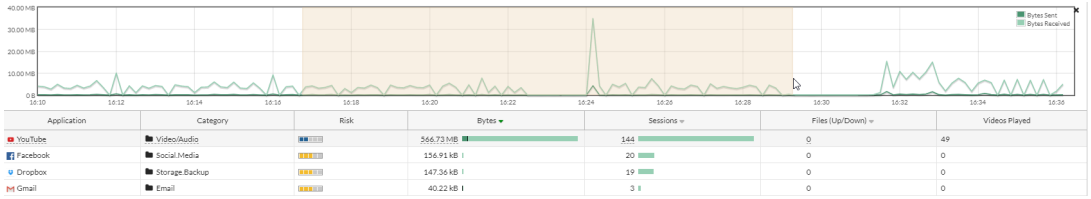

2. For details about a specific entry, double-click the entry or right-click the entry and select *Drill Down to Details*.
3. To see all the sessions for an application, click *Sessions*.
   In this example, the *Application Name* column shows all applications related to YouTube.



4. To view log details, double-click a session to display the *Log Details* pane.
   Sessions monitored by SSL deep inspection (in this example, Youtube_Video.Play) captured deep information such as *Application User*, *Application Details*, and so on. The *Log Details* pane also shows additional deep information such as application *ID*, *Message*, and so on.
   Sessions not monitored by SSL deep inspection (YouTube) did not capture the deep information.




5. To display a specific time period, select and drag in the timeline graph to display only the data for that time period.




## Top application: YouTube example

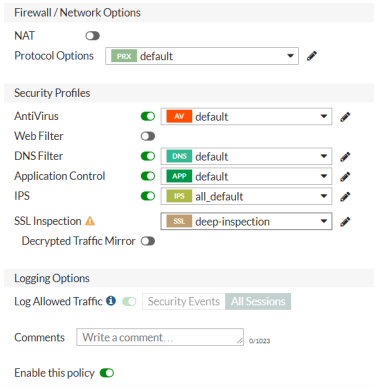
### Monitoring network traffic with SSL deep inspection

This example of monitors network traffic for YouTube using *FortiView Applications* view with SSL deep inspection.

### To monitor network traffic with SSL deep inspection:

1. Use a firewall policy with the following settings. If necessary, create a policy with these settings.
   - *Application Control* is enabled.
   - *SSL Inspection* is set to *deep-inspection*.

- *Log Allowed Traffic* is set to *All Sessions*.




2. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
3. Select a relative Application Control profile used by the firewall policy and click *Edit*.
4. Because YouTube cloud applications are categorized into *Video/Audio*, ensure the *Video/Audio* category is monitored.
   Monitored categories are indicate by an eye icon.
5. Click *View Application Signatures* and hover over YouTube cloud applications to view detailed information about YouTube application sensors.
6. Expand *YouTube* to view the Application Signatures associated with the application.

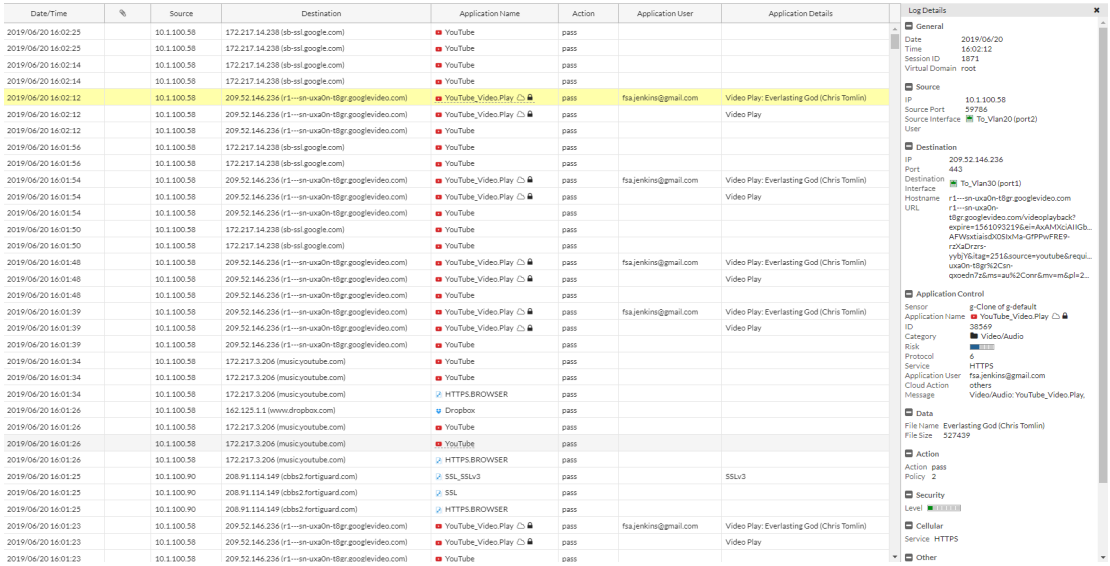
| Application Signature | Description | Application ID |
|---|---|---|
| *YouTube_Video.Access* | An attempt to access a video on YouTube. | 16420 |
| *YouTube_Channel.ID* | An attempt to access a video on a specific channel on YouTube. | 44956 |
| *YouTube_Comment.Posting* | An attempt to post comments on YouTube. | 31076 |
| *YouTube_HD.Streaming* | An attempt to watch HD videos on YouTube. | 33104 |
| *YouTube_Messenger* | An attempt to access messenger on YouTube. | 47858 |
| *YouTube_Video.Play* | An attempt to download and play a video from YouTube. | 38569 |
| *YouTube_Video.Upload* | An attempt to upload a video to YouTube. | 22564 |
| *YouTube* | An attempt to access YouTube.<br>This application sensor does not depend on SSL deep inspection so it does not have a cloud or lock icon. | 31077 |
| *YouTube_Channel.Access* | An attempt to access a video on a specific channel on YouTube. | 41598 |



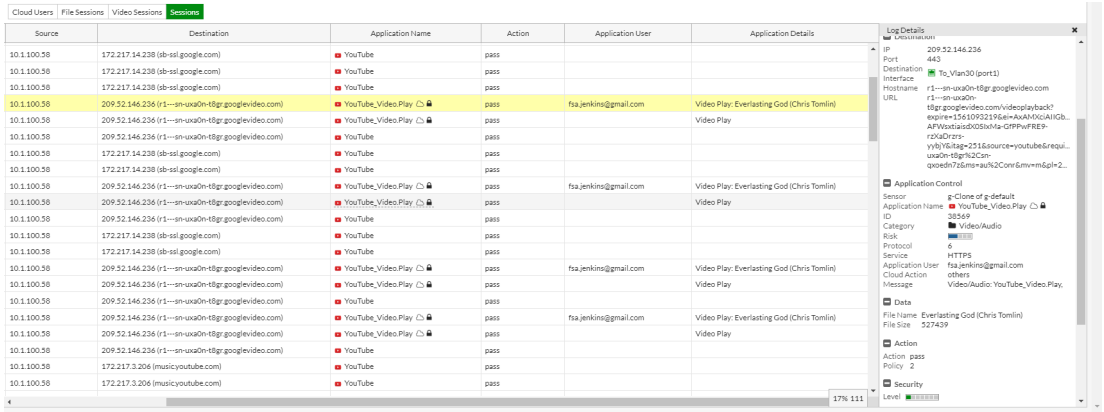
To view the application signature description, click the ID link in the information window.

7. On the test PC, log into YouTube and play some videos.
8. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Application Control* and look for log entries for browsing and playing YouTube videos.

In this example, note the *Application User* and *Application Details*. Also note that the *Application Control ID* is *38569* showing that this entry was triggered by the application sensor *YouTube_Video.Play*.



9. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Applications*.
10. In the *FortiView Applications* dashboard, double-click *YouTube* to view the drilldown information.
11. Select the *Sessions* tab to see all the entries for the videos played. Check the sessions for *YouTube_Video.Play* with the ID *38569*.



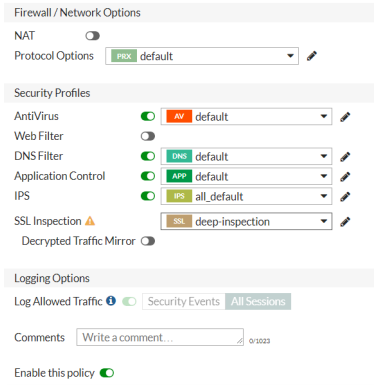
### Monitoring network traffic without SSL deep inspection

This example of monitors network traffic for YouTube using FortiView cloud application view without SSL deep inspection.

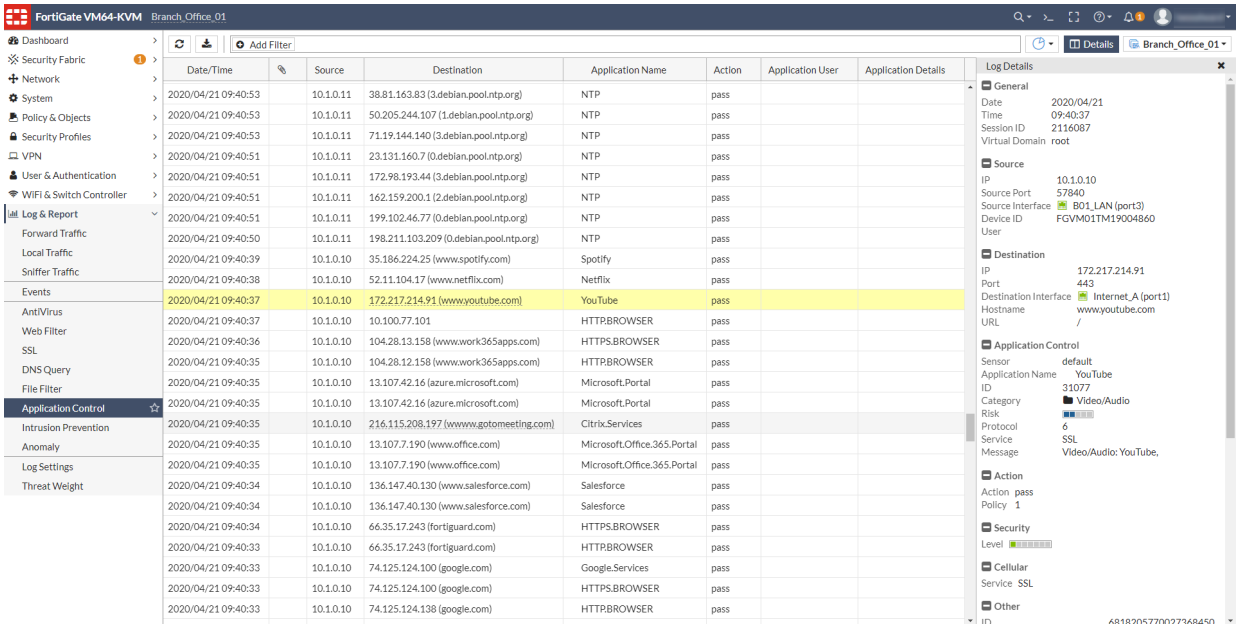
### To monitor network traffic without SSL deep inspection:

1. Use a firewall policy with the following settings. If necessary, create a policy with these settings.
   - *Application Control* is enabled.
   - *SSL Inspection* is set to *certificate-inspection*.

- *Log Allowed Traffic* is set to *All Sessions*.

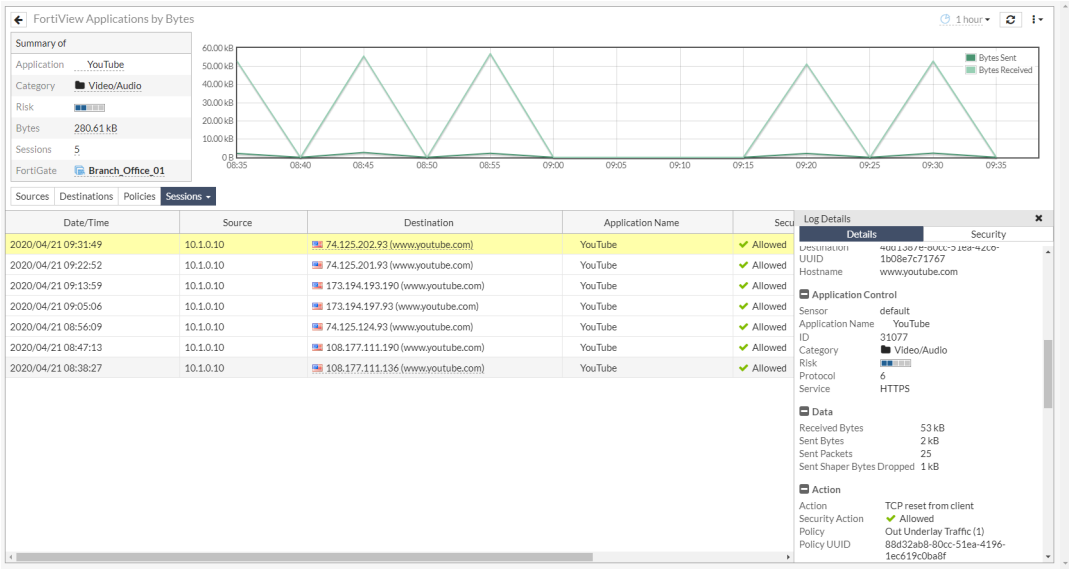



2. On the test PC, log into YouTube and play some videos.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Application Control* and look for log entries for browsing and playing YouTube videos.
   In this example, the log shows only applications with the name YouTube. The log cannot show YouTube application sensors which rely on SSL deep inspection.




4. Go to *Dashboard* > *FortiView Applications*.
   The *FortiView Cloud Application by Bytes* dashboard shows the YouTube cloud application without the video played information that requires SSL deep inspection.

5. Double-click *YouTube* and click the *Sessions* tab.
   These sessions were triggered by the application sensor *YouTube* with the ID *31077*. This is the application sensor with cloud behavior which does not rely on SSL deep inspection.




## FortiView Top Source and Top Destination Firewall Objects widgets

The *FortiView Source Firewall Objects* and *FortiView Destination Firewall Objects* widgets leverage UUID to resolve firewall object address names for improved usability.

### Requirements

To have a historical *Firewall Objects*-based view, address objects' UUIDs need to be logged.

### To enable address object UUID logging in the CLI:

```
config system global
     set log-uuid-address enable
end
```

### To add a firewall object widget in the GUI:

1. Open a dashboard and click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
2. In the *Search* field, type *Destination Firewall Objects* and click the *Add* button next to the dashboard name.
3. In the *Fabric Member* area, select *Default* or *Specify* to select a device in the security fabric.
4. In the *Data Source* area, select *Best Available* or *Specify*. For information about data sources, see FortiView interface on page 82.
5. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select the time period.
6. In the *Visualization* area, select *Table View* or *Bubble Chart*.
7. From the *Sort By* dropdown, select *Bytes*, *Sessions*, *Bandwidth*, or *Packets*.
8. Click *Add Widget*.

**Example**

In this example, firewall addresses have been configured and associated with a unique UUID.

In the *FortiView Source Firewall Objects* and *FortiView Destination Firewall Objects* widgets, firewall objects can be displayed in real-time or in a historical chart. Objects can also be drilled down for more details.

**To view Firewall Object-based charts in real-time:**

1. Open a dashboard, and click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
2. In the *Search* field, type *Destination Firewall Objects* and click the *Add* button next to the widget name.
3. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select *Now*.
4. Click *Add Widget*.

**To view Firewall Object-based charts over a historical period:**

1. Open a dashboard, and click *Add Widget*. The *Add Dashboard Widget* window opens.
2. In the *Search* field, type *Destination Firewall Objects* and click the *Add* button next to the widget name.
3. From the *Time Period* dropdown, select a time period other than *Now*.
4. Click *Add Widget*.

**To drill down Firewall Objects:**

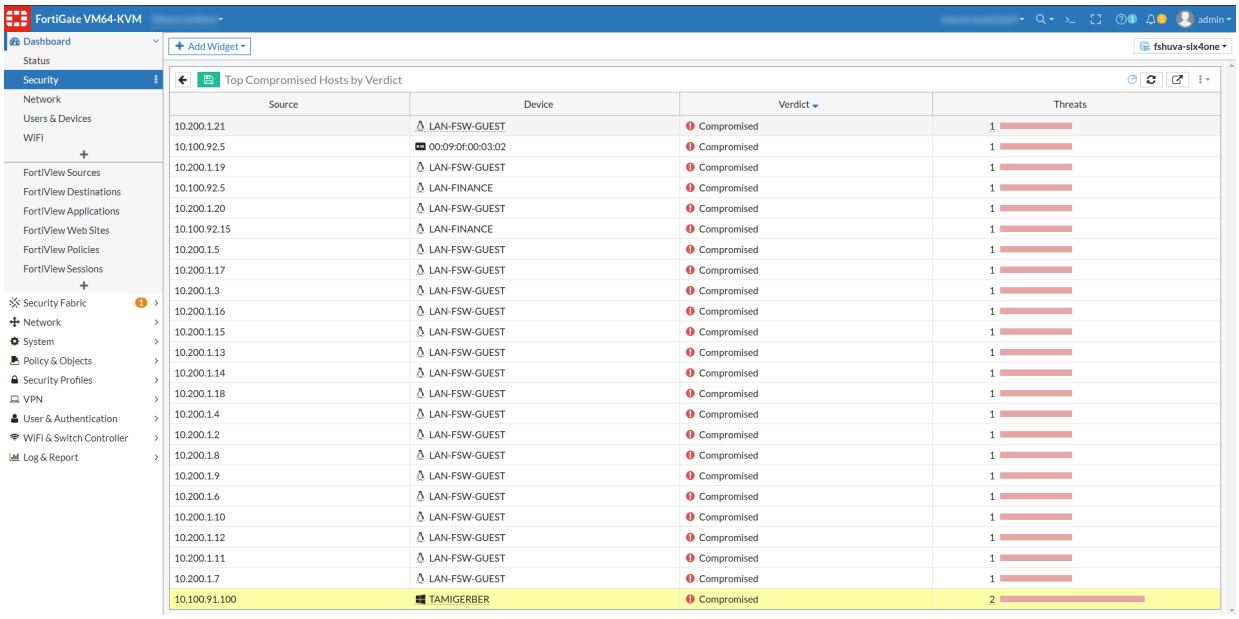
1. Right-click on any *Source* or *Destination Object* in the view results.
2. Select *Drill Down to Details*. More information displays about the object; there are additional criteria to filter data.

## Viewing session information for a compromised host

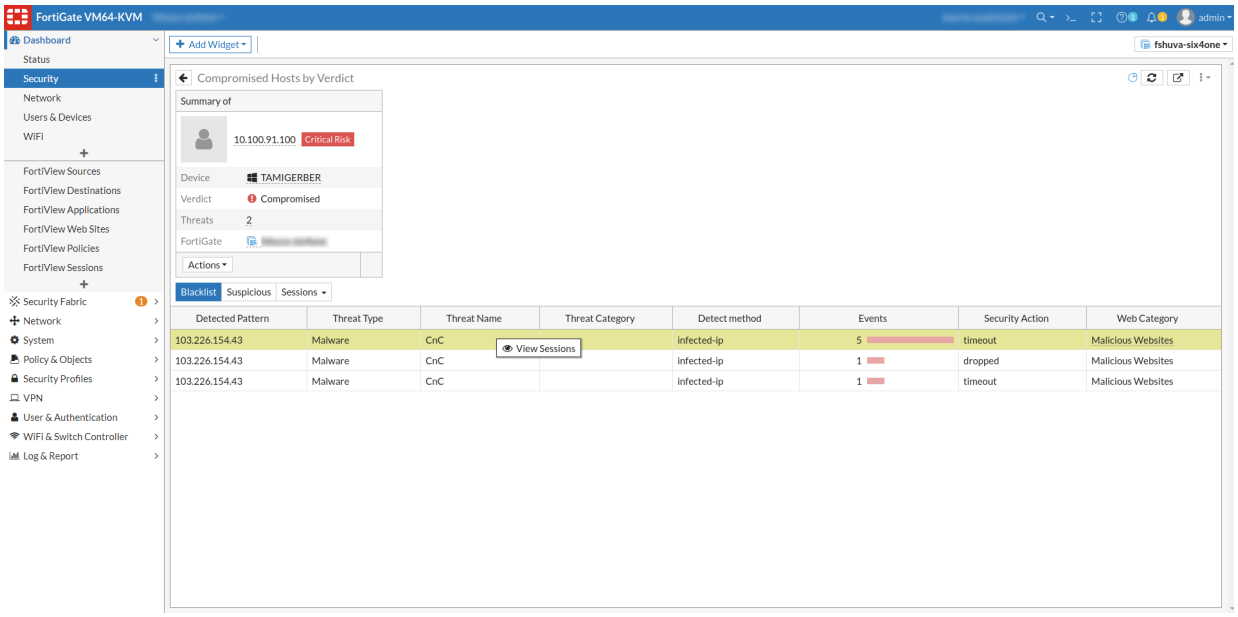
You can use the *Compromised Hosts by Verdict* widget to view the session information for a compromised host.

### To view session information for a compromised host in the GUI:

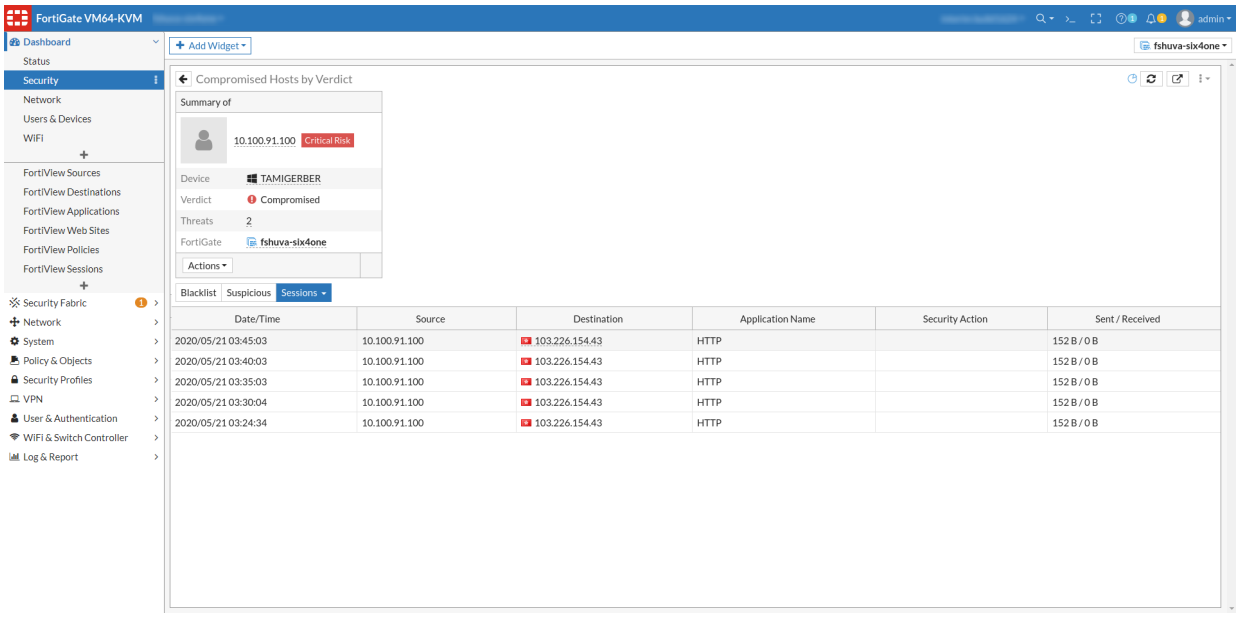
1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Security* and expand the *Compromised Hosts by Verdict* widget.




2. Double-click a compromised host to view the session information. You can also right-click a compromised host, and select *View Sessions*.



3. Double-click a session, or right-click the session and select *View Sessions* to view the information.




# Configuration backups

Once you successfully configure the FortiGate, it is extremely important that you backup the configuration. In some cases, you may need to reset the FortiGate to factory defaults or perform a TFTP upload of the firmware, which will erase the existing configuration. In these instances, the configuration on the device will have to be recreated, unless a backup can be used to restore it. You should also backup the local certificates, as the unique SSL inspection CA and server certificates that are generated by your FortiGate by default are not saved in a system backup.

We also recommend that you backup the configuration after *any* changes are made, to ensure you have the most current configuration available. Also, backup the configuration before any upgrades of the FortiGate's firmware. Should anything happen to the configuration during the upgrade, you can easily restore the saved configuration.

Always backup the configuration and store it on the management computer or off-site. You have the option to save the configuration file to various locations including the local PC, USB key, FTP, and TFTP server. The last two are configurable through the CLI only.

If you have VDOMs, you can back up the configuration of the entire FortiGate or only a specific VDOM. Note that if you are using FortiManager or FortiGate Cloud, full backups are performed and the option to backup individual VDOMs will not appear.



You can also backup and restore your configuration using Secure File Copy (SCP). See How to download/upload a FortiGate configuration file using secure file copy (SCP).

You enable SCP support using the following command:

```
config system global
   set admin-scp enable
end
```

For more information about this command and about SCP support, see config system global.

## Backing up the configuration

**To backup the configuration using the GUI:**

1. Click on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and select *Configuration* > *Backup*.
2. Direct the backup to your *Local PC* or to a *USB Disk*.
   The *USB Disk* option will not be available if no USB drive is inserted in the USB port. You can also backup to the FortiManager using the CLI.
3. If VDOMs are enabled, indicate whether the scope of the backup is the entire FortiGate configuration (*Global*) or only a specific VDOM configuration (*VDOM*).
   If backing up a VDOM configuration, select the VDOM name from the list.
4. Enable *Encryption*. Encryption must be enabled on the backup file to back up VPN certificates.
5. Enter a password, and enter it again to confirm it. This password will be required to restore the configuration.
6. Click *OK*.
7. When prompted, select a location on the PC or USB disk to save the configuration file. The configuration file will have a .conf extension.

**To backup the configuration using the CLI:**

Use one of the following commands:

```
execute backup config management-station <comment>
```

or:

```
execute backup config usb <backup_filename> [<backup_password>]
```

or for FTP, note that port number, username are optional depending on the FTP site:

```
execute backup config ftp <backup_filename> <ftp_server> [<port>] [<user_name>]
     [<password>]
```

or for TFTP:

```
execute backup config tftp <backup_filename> <tftp_servers> <password>
```

Use the same commands to backup a VDOM configuration by first entering the commands:

```
config vdom
  edit <vdom_name>
```

## Restoring a configuration

**To restore the FortiGate configuration using the GUI:**

1. Click on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and select *Configuration* > *Restore*.
2. Identify the source of the configuration file to be restored: your *Local PC* or a *USB Disk*.
   The *USB Disk* option will not be available if no USB drive is inserted in the USB port. You can restore from the FortiManager using the CLI.
3. Click Upload, locate the configuration file, and click *Open*.
4. Enter the password if required.
5. Click *OK*.

**To restore the FortiGate configuration using the CLI:**

```
execute restore config management-station normal 0
```

or:

```
execute restore config usb <filename> [<password>]
```

or for FTP, note that port number, username are optional depending on the FTP site:

```
execute restore config ftp <backup_filename> <ftp_server> [<port>] [<user_name>]
     [<password>]
```

or for TFTP:

```
execute restore config tftp <backup_filename> <tftp_server> <password>
```

The FortiGate will load the configuration file and restart. Once the restart has completed, verify that the configuration has been restored.

### Troubleshooting

When restoring a configuration, errors may occur, but the solutions are usually straightforward.

| Error message | Reason and Solution |
|---|---|
| Configuration file error | This error occurs when attempting to upload a configuration file that is incompatible with the device. This may be due to the configuration file being for a different model or being saved from a different version of firmware.<br>**Solution**: Upload a configuration file that is for the correct model of FortiGate device and the correct version of the firmware. |
| Invalid password | When the configuration file is saved, it can be protected by a password. The password entered during the upload process is not matching the one associated with the configuration file.<br>**Solution**: Use the correct password if the file is password protected. |

## Configuration revision

You can manage multiple versions of configuration files on models that have a 512MB flash memory and higher. Revision control requires either a configured central management server or the local hard drive, if your FortiGate has this feature. Typically, configuration backup to local drive is not available on lower-end models.

The central management server can either be a FortiManager unit or FortiGate Cloud.

If central management is not configured on your FortiGate unit, a message appears instructing you to either

- Enable central management, or
- Obtain a valid license.

When revision control is enabled on your FortiGate unit, and configuration backups have been made, a list of saved revisions of those backed-up configurations appears.

Configuration revisions are viewed by clicking on the user name in the upper right-hand corner of the screen and selecting *Configuration* > *Revisions*.

## Backup and restore the local certificates

This procedure exports a server (local) certificate and private key together as a password protected PKCS12 file. The export file is created through a customer-supplied TFTP server. Ensure that your TFTP server is running and accessible to the FortiGate before you enter the command.

### To back up the local certificates:

Connect to the CLI and use the following command:

```
execute vpn certificate local export tftp <cert_name> <filename> <tftp_ip>
```

where:

- `<cert_name>` is the name of the server certificate.
- `<filename>` is a name for the output file.
- `<tftp_ip>` is the IP address assigned to the TFTP server host interface.

### To restore the local certificates using the GUI:

1. Move the output file from the TFTP server location to the management computer.
2. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and click *Import* > *Local*.
3. Select the certificate type, then click *Upload* in the *Certificate file* field.
4. On the management computer, browse to the file location, select it, and click *Open*.
5. If the *Type* is *Certificate*, upload the *Key file* as well.
6. If required, enter the *Password* that is required to upload the file or files.
7. Click *OK*.

### To restore the local certificates using the CLI:

Connect to the CLI and use the following command:

```
execute vpn certificate local import tftp <filename> <tftp_ip>
```

## Restore factory defaults

There may be a need to reset the FortiGate to its original defaults; for example, to begin with a fresh configuration. There are two options when restoring factory defaults. The first resets the entire device to the original out-of-the-box configuration.

You can reset the device with the following CLI command:

```
execute factoryreset
```

When prompted, type `y` to confirm the reset.

Alternatively, in the CLI you can reset the factory defaults but retain the interface and VDOM configuration with the following command:

```
execute factoryreset2
```

# Fortinet Security Fabric

The Fortinet Security Fabric provides an intelligent architecture that interconnects discrete security solutions into an integrated whole to detect, monitor, block, and remediate attacks across the entire attack surface. It delivers broad protection and visibility into every network segment and device, be they hardware, virtual, or cloud based.

- The physical topology view shows all connected devices, including access layer devices. The logical topology view shows information about the interfaces that each device is connected to.
- Security rating checks analyze the Security Fabric deployment to identify potential vulnerabilities and highlight best practices to improve the network configuration, deploy new hardware and software, and increase visibility and control of the network.
- Fabric connectors provide integration with multiple SDN, cloud, and partner technology platforms to automate the process of managing dynamic security updates without manual intervention.
- Automation pairs an event trigger with one or more actions to monitor the network and take the designated actions automatically when the Security Fabric detects a threat.

## Security Fabric settings and usage

This section contains information about how to configure the following devices as part of the Fortinet Security Fabric:


- Components on page 117
- Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates
- Configuring FortiAnalyzer
- Configuring other Security Fabric devices on page 125
- Using the Security Fabric
- Deploying the Security Fabric on page 162
- Synchronizing objects across the Security Fabric on page 170
- Security Fabric over IPsec VPN on page 174
- Leveraging LLDP to simplify security fabric negotiation on page 180


### System requirements

To set up the Security Fabric, the devices that you want to include must meet the Product Integration and Support requirements in the FortiOS Release Notes.

Some features of the Security Fabric are only available in certain firmware versions and models. Not all FortiGate models can run the FortiGuard Security Rating Service if they are the root FortiGate in a Security Fabric. For more information, see the Special Notices in the FortiOS Release Notes.

### Prerequisites

- If devices are not already installed in your network, complete basic installation and configuration tasks by following the instructions in the device documentation.

- FortiGate devices must either have VDOMs disabled or be running in split-task VDOM mode in order to be added to the Security Fabric. See Virtual Domains on page 677.
- FortiGate devices must be operating in NAT mode.

## Components

The Fortinet Security Fabric consists of different components that work together to secure you network.

The following devices are required to create a Security Fabric:

| Device | Description |
|---|---|
| **FortiGate** | FortiGate devices are the core of the Security Fabric and can have one of the following roles:<br>• **Root**:<br>The root FortiGate is the main component in the Security Fabric. It is typically located on the edge of the network and connects the internal devices and networks to the Internet through your ISP. From the root FortiGate, you can see information about the entire Security Fabric on the Physical and Logical Topology pages in the GUI.<br>• **Downstream**:<br>After a root FortiGate is installed, all other FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric act as Internal Segmentation Firewalls (ISFWs), located at strategic points in your internal network, rather than on the network edge. This allows extra security measures to be taken around key network components, such as servers that contain valuable intellectual property. ISFW FortiGate devices create network visibility by sending traffic and information about the devices that are connected to them to the root FortiGate.<br>See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 119 for more information about adding FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiGate documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortigate |
| **FortiAnalyzer** | FortiAnalyzer gives you increased visibility into your network, centralized monitoring, and awareness of threats, events, and network activity by collecting and correlating logs from all Security Fabric devices. This gives you a deeper and more comprehensive view across the entire Security Fabric.<br>See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 124 for more information about adding FortiAnalyzer devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiAnalyzer documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortianalyzer |

The following devices are recommended:

| Device | Description |
|---|---|
| **FortiADC** | FortiADC devices optimize the availability, user experience, and scalability of enterprise application delivery. They enable fast, secure, and intelligent acceleration and distribution of even the most demanding enterprise applications.<br>See Additional devices on page 147 for more information about adding FortiADC devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiADC documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiadc |

| Device | Description |
|---|---|
| **FortiAP** | Add FortiAP devices to extend the Security Fabric to your wireless devices. Devices connected to a FortiAP appear in the Physical and Logical Topology pages in the Security Fabric menu.<br>See FortiAP and FortiSwitch on page 146 for more information about adding FortiAP devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiAP documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiap |
| **FortiClient** | FortiClient adds endpoint control to devices that are located in the Security Fabric, allowing only traffic from compliant devices to flow through the FortiGate. FortiClient compliance profiles are applied by the first FortiGate that a device's traffic flows through. Device registration and on-net status information for a device that is running FortiClient appears only on the FortiGate that applies the FortiClient profile to that device.<br>FortiClient documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/forticlient |
| **FortiClient EMS** | FortiClient EMS is used in the Security Fabric to provide visibility across your network, securely share information, and assign security profiles to endpoints.<br>See FortiClient EMS on page 136 for more information about adding FortiClient EMS devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiClient EMS documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/forticlient |
| **FortiDDoS** | FortiDDoS is a Network Behavior Anomaly (NBA) prevention system that detects and blocks attacks that intend to disrupt network service by overutilizing server resources.<br>See Additional devices on page 147 for more information about adding FortiDDoS devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiDDoS documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiddos |
| **FortiMail** | FortiMail antispam processing helps offload from other devices in the Security Fabric that would typically carry out this process.<br>See Additional devices on page 147 for more information about adding FortiMail devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiMail documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortimail |
| **FortiManager** | Add FortiManager to simplify the network management of devices in the Security Fabric by centralizing management access in a single device. This allows you to easily control the deployment of security policies, FortiGuard content security updates, firmware revisions, and individual configurations for devices in the Security Fabric.<br>See FortiManager on page 131 for more information about adding FortiManager devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiManager documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortimanager |
| **FortiSandbox** | Add FortiSandbox to your Security Fabric to improve security with sandbox inspection. Sandbox integration allows FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric to automatically receive signature updates from FortiSandbox and add the originating URL of any malicious file to a blocked URL list.<br>See FortiSandbox on page 134 for more information about adding FortiSandbox devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiSandbox documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortisandbox |

| Device | Description |
|---|---|
| **FortiSwitch** | A FortiSwitch can be added to the Security Fabric when it is managed by a FortiGate that is in the Security Fabric with the FortiLink protocol, and connected to an interface with *Security Fabric Connection* enabled. FortiSwitch ports to become logical extensions of the FortiGate.<br>Devices connected to the FortiSwitch appear in the Physical and Logical Topology pages in the Security Fabric menu, and security features, such as FortiClient compliance profiles, are applied to them.<br>See FortiAP and FortiSwitch on page 146 for more information about adding FortiSwitch devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiSwitch documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiswitch |
| **FortiWeb** | Add FortiWeb to defend the application attack surface from attacks that target application exploits. You can also configure FortiWeb to apply web application firewall features, virus scanning, and web filtering to HTTP traffic to help offload from other devices in the Security Fabric that would typically carry out these processes.<br>See Additional devices on page 147 for more information about adding FortiWeb devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiWeb documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/fortiweb |
| **FortiWLC** | FortiWLC delivers seamless mobility and superior reliability with optimized client distribution and channel utilization. Both single and multi channel deployment options are supported, maximizing efficiency to make the most of available wireless spectrum.<br>See Additional devices on page 147 for more information about adding FortiWLC devices in the Security Fabric.<br>FortiWLC documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/product/wireless-controller |

The following devices are optional:

| Device | Description |
|---|---|
| **Other Fortinet products** | Many other Fortinet products can be added to the Security Fabric, including FortiAuthenticator, FortiToken, FortiCache, and FortiSIEM.<br>Documentation: https://docs.fortinet.com/ |
| **Third-party products** | Third-party products that belong to the Fortinet Fabric-Ready Partner Program can be added to the Security Fabric. |

## Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates

The following procedures include configuration steps for a typical Security Fabric implementation, where the edge FortiGate is the root FortiGate, and the downstream FortiGate devices are all devices that are downstream from the root FortiGate.

### Prerequisites

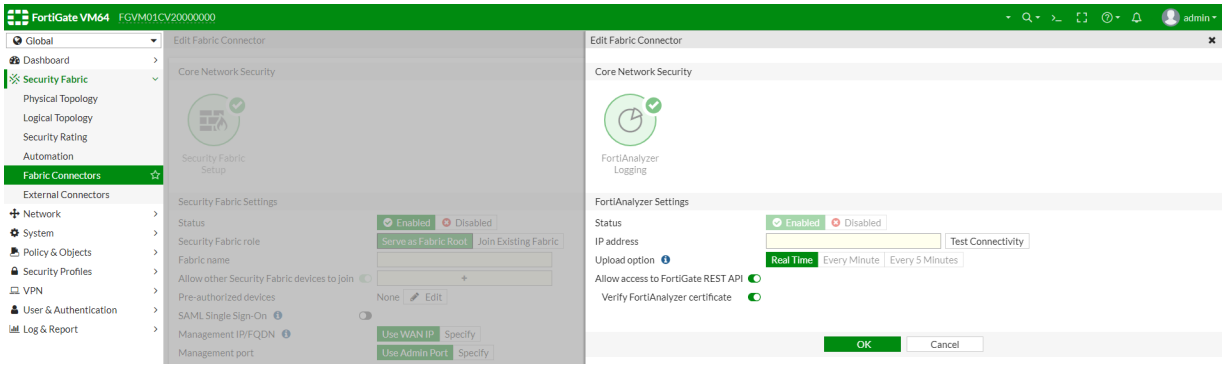
- FortiGate devices must either have VDOMs disabled or be running in split-task VDOM mode in order to be added to the Security Fabric. See Virtual Domains on page 677.
- FortiGate devices must be operating in NAT mode.

## Configure the root FortiGate

The edge FortiGate is typically configured as the root FortiGate, as this allows you to view the full topology of the Security Fabric from the top down.

**To configure the root FortiGate:**

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
3. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Serve as Fabric Root*. FortiAnalyzer logging is automatically enabled and the settings can be configured.




4. Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP and select and *Upload option*.
5. In the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* section, in the *IP address* field, enter the IP address of the FortiAnalyzer.
6. If required, enable *Allow access to FortiGate REST API* and, optionally, *Verify FortiAnalyzer certificate*.
   The REST API accesses the FortiGate topology and shares data and results. The FortiGate will verify the FortiAnalyzer by retrieving its serial number and checking it against the FortiAnalyzer certificate. When verified, the FortiAnalyzer serial number is stored in the FortiGate configuration. When authorizing the FortiGate on the FortiAnalyzer, the FortiGate admin credentials do not need to be entered.
7. Click *Test Connectivity*.
   If you select *Test Connectivity* and this is the first time that you are connecting the FortiGate to the FortiAnalyzer, you will receive a warning message because the FortiGate has not yet been authorized on the FortiAnalyzer. You can configure this authorization when you configure the FortiAnalyzer. See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 124.
8. Click *OK*. The FortiAnalyzer serial number is verified.
9. Enter a *Fabric name*.
10. Ensure *Allow other Security Fabric devices to join* is enabled and add the interfaces.
11. Click *OK*.

## Using the root FortiGate with disk to store historic user and device information

This backend implementation allows the root FortiGate in a Security Fabric to store historic user and device information in a database on its disk. This will allow administrators to visualize users and devices over a period of time.

A new daemon, user_info_history, stores this data on the disk. The information source for the historical data will be the user_info daemon, which would be recorded on the disk when user_info notifies user_info_history that a user has logged out or the device is no longer connected.

## Add downstream devices

Downstream FortiGate devices can be securely added to the Security Fabric without sharing the password of the root FortiGate. Downstream device serial numbers can be authorized from the root FortiGate, or allowed to join by request. New authorization requests include the device serial number, IP address, and HA members. HA members can include up to four serial numbers and is used to ensure that, in the event of a fail over, the secondary FortiGate is still authorized.



You can use the FortiIPAM service to automatically assign subnets to downstream FortiGates to prevent duplicate IP addresses from overlapping within the same Security Fabric. See Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service on page 388.

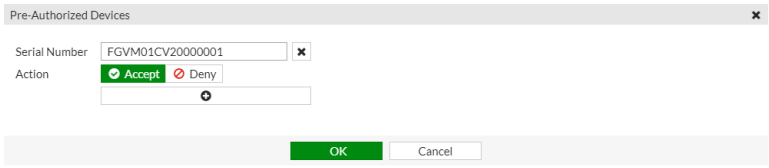
### Pre-authorizing the downstream FortiGate

When a downstream Fortinet device's serial number is added to the trusted list on the root FortiGate, the device can join the Security Fabric as soon as it connects. After the new device is authorized, connected FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices are automatically included in the topology, where they can be authorized with one click.

The interface that connects to the downstream FortiGate must have *Security Fabric Connection* enabled.

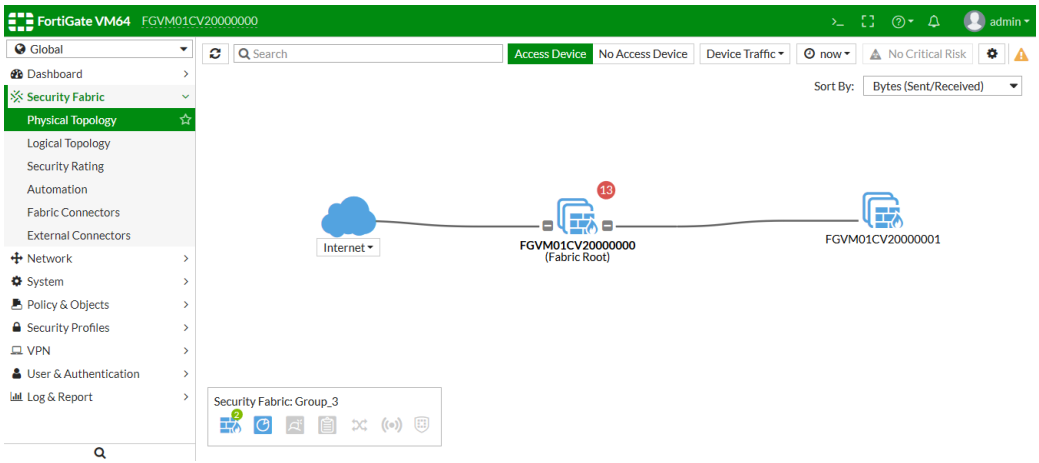
**To pre-authorize a FortiGate:**

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. In the *Pre-authorized devices*, click *Edit*. The *Pre-Authorized Devices* window opens.
3. Add a new FortiGate to the list using the downstream device's serial number.




4. On the downstream FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
5. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
6. Set *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
7. Enter the IP address of the root FortiGate in the *Upstream FortiGate IP* field.
8. Click *OK*.
9. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* and verify that the downstream FortiGate that you

added appears in the Security Fabric topology.




## Using LLDP

You can automatically prompt downstream FortiGate devices to join the Security Fabric using Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) and interface role assignments.

1. On the root FortiGate, assign the LAN role to all interfaces that may connect to downstream FortiGate devices. When the LAN role is assigned to an interface, LLDP transmission is enabled by default.
2. When a downstream FortiGate is installed, assign the WAN role to the interface that connects to the upstream FortiGate.
   When the WAN role is assigned, LLDP reception is enabled by default. The newly installed FortiGate uses LLDP to discover the upstream FortiGate, and the administrator is prompted to configure the FortiGate to join the Security Fabric.
3. On the root FortiGate, the new FortiGate must be authorized before it can join the Security Fabric.



If the network contains switches or routers, LLDP may not function as expected because some devices do not pass LLDP packets.

## Device request

A device can request to join the Security Fabric from another FortiGate, but it must have the IP address of the root FortiGate. The administrator of the root FortiGate must also authorize the device before it can join the Security Fabric.

The root FortiGate must have *Security Fabric Connection* enabled on the interface that the device connects to.

**To enable FortiTelemetry on an interface:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the interface that the device that you authorizing to join the Security Fabric is connected to.
3. Under *Administrative Access*, enable *Security Fabric Connection*.
4. Under *Network*, turn on *Device Detection*.

**To join the Security Fabric by device request:**

1. Connect to the unauthorized FortiGate or FortiWiFi device, and go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
3. Set *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
4. Set *Upstream FortiGate IP* to the IP address of the upstream FortiGate.
5. Connect to the root FortiGate and go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. The new FortiGate appears in the topology tree as unauthorized.
6. Click the unauthorized device and select *Authorize* to authorize the device.

## CLI commands

Use the following commands to view, accept, and deny authorization requests, to view upstream and downstream devices, and to list or test fabric devices:

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list | View pending authorization requests on the root FortiGate. |
| diagnose sys csf authorization accept <serial-number-value> | Authorize a device to join the Security Fabric. |
| diagnose sys csf authorization deny <serial-number-value> | Deny a device from joining the Security Fabric. |
| diagnose sys csf downstream | Show connected downstream devices. |
| diagnose sys csf upstream | Show connected upstream devices. |
| diagnose sys csf fabric-device list | List all known fabric devices. |
| diagnose sys csf fabric-device test | Test connections to locally configured fabric devices. |

## Desynchronizing settings

By default, the settings for FortiAnalyzer logging, central management, sandbox inspection, and FortiClient EMS are synchronized between all FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric. To disable the automatic synchronization of these settings, use the following CLI command:

```
config system csf
   set configuration-sync local
end
```

## Deauthorizing a device

A device can be deauthorized to remove it from the Security Fabric.

**To deauthorize a device:**

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*
2. In the topology tree, click the device and select *Deauthorize*.

After devices are deauthorized, the devices' serial numbers are saved in a trusted list that can be viewed in the CLI using the `show system csf` command. For example, this result shows a deauthorized FortiSwitch:

```
show system csf
   config system csf
      set status enable
      set group-name "Office-Security-Fabric"
      set group-password ENC 1Z2X345V678
      config trusted-list
         edit "FGT6HD391806070"
         next
         edit "S248DF3X17000482"
            set action deny
         next
      end
   end
end
```

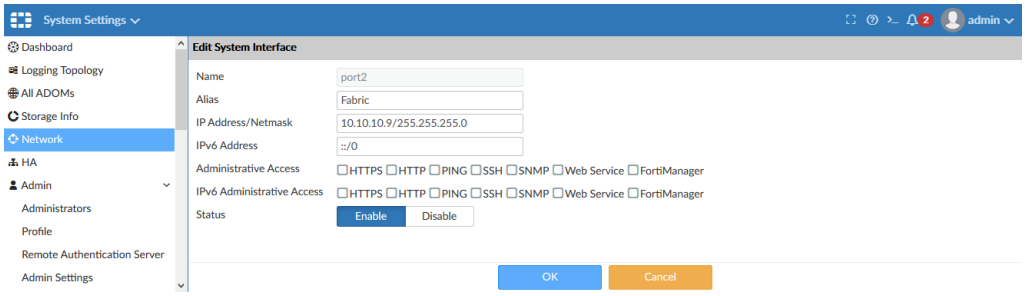
## Configuring FortiAnalyzer

FortiAnalyzer is a required component for the Security Fabric. It allows the Security Fabric to show historical data for the Security Fabric topology and logs for the entire Security Fabric.

For more information about using FortiAnalyzer, see the FortiAnalyzer Administration Guide.

**To connect a FortiAnalyzer to the Security Fabric:**

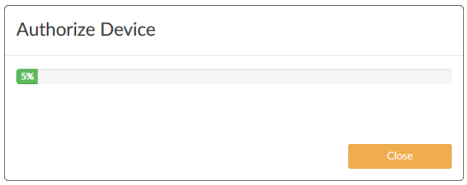
1. Enable *FortiAnalyzer Logging* on the root FortiGate. See Configure the root FortiGate on page 120.
2. On the FortiAnalyzer, go to *System Settings* > *Network* and click *All Interfaces*.
3. Edit the port that connects to the root FortiGate.
4. Set the *IP Address/Netmask* to the IP address that is used for the Security Fabric on the root FortiGate.




5. Click *OK*.
   If the FortiGates have already been configured, it will now be listed as an unauthorized device.
6. Go to *Device Manager* > *Devices Unauthorized*. The unauthorized FortiGate devices are listed.



7. Select the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGate devices in the list, then click *Authorize*. The *Authorize Device* page opens.
8. Click *OK* to authorize the selected devices.




9. On the FortiGate devices, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card. The page will now show the ADOM on the FortiAnalyzer that the FortiGate is in, and the storage, analytics, and archive usage.

# Configuring other Security Fabric devices

This section contains information about configuring the following devices as part of the Fortinet Security Fabric:


- FortiGate Cloud on page 125
- FortiAnalyzer Cloud service on page 127
- FortiManager on page 131
- FortiManager Cloud service on page 132
- FortiSandbox on page 134
- FortiClient EMS on page 136
- FortiNAC on page 144
- FortiAP and FortiSwitch on page 146
- Additional devices on page 147


## Prerequisites

- FortiGate devices must either have VDOMs disabled or be running in split-task VDOM mode in order to be added to the Security Fabric. See Virtual Domains on page 677.
- FortiGate devices must be operating in NAT mode.

## FortiGate Cloud

FortiGate Cloud is a hosted security management and log retention service for FortiGate devices. It provides centralized reporting, traffic analysis, configuration management, and log retention without the need for additional hardware or software.

FortiGate Cloud offers a wide range of features:

- **Simplified central management**
  FortiGate Cloud provides a central GUI to manage individual or aggregated FortiGate and FortiWiFi devices. Adding a device to the FortiGate Cloud management subscription is straightforward. FortiGate Cloud has detailed traffic and application visibility across the whole network.
- **Hosted log retention with large default storage allocated**
  Log retention is an integral part of any security and compliance program, but administering a separate storage system is onerous. FortiGate Cloud takes care of this automatically and stores the valuable log information in the

cloud. Different types of logs can be stored, including Traffic, System Events, Web, Applications, and Security Events.

- **Monitoring and alerting in real time**
  Network availability is critical to a good end-user experience. FortiGate Cloud enables you to monitor your FortiGate network in real time with different alerting mechanisms to pinpoint potential issues. Alerting mechanisms can be delivered via email.
- **Customized or pre-configured reporting and analysis tools**
  Reporting and analysis are your eyes and ears into your network's health and security. Pre-configured reports are available, as well as custom reports that can be tailored to your specific reporting and compliance requirements. The reports can be emailed as PDFs, and can cover different time periods.
- **Maintain important configuration information uniformly**
  The correct configuration of the devices within your network is essential for maintaining optimum performance and security posture. In addition, maintaining the correct firmware (operating system) level allows you to take advantage of the latest features.
- **Service security**
  All communication (including log information) between the devices and the cloud is encrypted. Redundant data centers are always used to give the service high availability. Operational security measures have been put in place to make sure your data is secure — only you can view or retrieve it.

### Registration and activation



Before you can activate a FortiGate Cloud account, you must first register your device.

FortiGate Cloud accounts can be registered manually through the FortiGate Cloud website, https://www.forticloud.com, or you can easily register and activate your account directly from your FortiGate.

#### To activate your FortiGate Cloud account:

1. On your device, go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. In the *FortiGate Cloud* widget, click the *Not Activated* > *Activate* button in the *Status* field.
3. A pane will open asking you to register your FortiGate Cloud account. Click *Create Account*, enter your information, view and accept the terms and conditions, and then click *OK*.
4. A second dialogue window open , asking you to enter your information to confirm your account. This sends a confirmation email to your registered email. The dashboard widget then updates to show that confirmation is required.
5. Open your email, and follow the confirmation link it contains.
   A FortiGate Cloud page will open, stating that your account has been confirmed. The *Activation Pending* message on the dashboard will change to state the type of account you have, and will provide a link to the FortiGate Cloud portal.

### Enabling logging to FortiGate Cloud

#### To enable logging to FortiGate Cloud:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Cloud Logging* or *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.
2. Enable *Cloud Logging*.

3. Select an upload option: *Realtime*, *Every Minute*, or *Every 5 Minutes* (default).
4. Click *Apply*.

### Logging into the FortiGate Cloud portal

Once logging has been configured and you have registered your account, you can log into the FortiGate Cloud portal and begin viewing your logging results. There are two methods to reach the FortiGate Cloud portal:

- If you have direct network access to the FortiGate:
  a. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
  b. In the *FortiGate Cloud* widget, in the *Status* field, click *Activated* > *Launch Portal*, or, in the *Licenses* widget, click *FortiCare Support* > *Launch Portal*.
- If you do not have access to the FortiGate's interface, visit the FortiGate Cloud website (https://www.forticloud.com) and log in remotely, using your email and password. It will ask you to confirm the FortiGate Cloud account you are connecting to and then you will be granted access.

### Cloud sandboxing

FortiGate Cloud can be used for automated sample tracking, or sandboxing, for files from a FortiGate. This allows suspicious files to be sent to be inspected without risking network security. If the file exhibits risky behavior, or is found to contain a virus, a new virus signature is created and added to the FortiGuard antivirus signature database.

### To configure cloud sandboxing:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. For status, click *Enable*.
3. Set the *Type* to *FortiSandbox Cloud*.



By default, the *FortiSandbox Cloud* option is not visible. See Feature visibility on page 761 for instructions on making it visible.

4. Select the *FortiSandbox cloud region*.
5. Click *OK*.
   Sandboxing results are shown on the *Sandbox* tab in the FortiGate Cloud portal.

For more information about FortiGate Cloud, see the FortiGate Cloud documentation.

## FortiAnalyzer Cloud service

FortiGate supports the FortiAnalyzer Cloud service for event logging.



Traffic and security logs are not supported in the initial version of FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

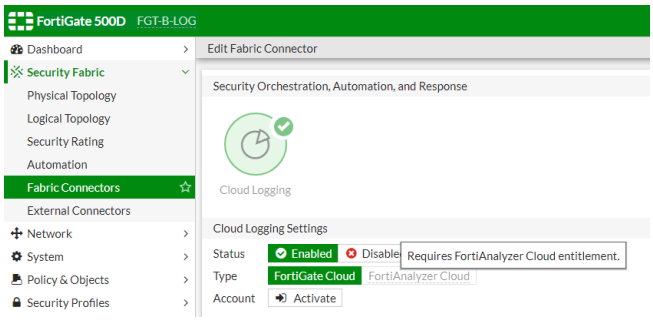
When FortiAnalyzer Cloud is licensed and enabled (see Deploying FortiAnalyzer Cloud for more information), all event logs are sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud by default. All traffic logs, security logs, and archive files are not sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud.

FortiAnalyzer Cloud differs from FortiAnalyzer in the following ways:

- You cannot enable FortiAnalyzer Cloud in `vdom override-setting` when global FortiAnalyzer Cloud is disabled.
- You must use the CLI to retrieve and display logs sent to FortiAnalyzer Cloud. The FortiOS GUI is not supported.
- You cannot enable FortiAnalyzer Cloud and FortiGate Cloud at the same time.

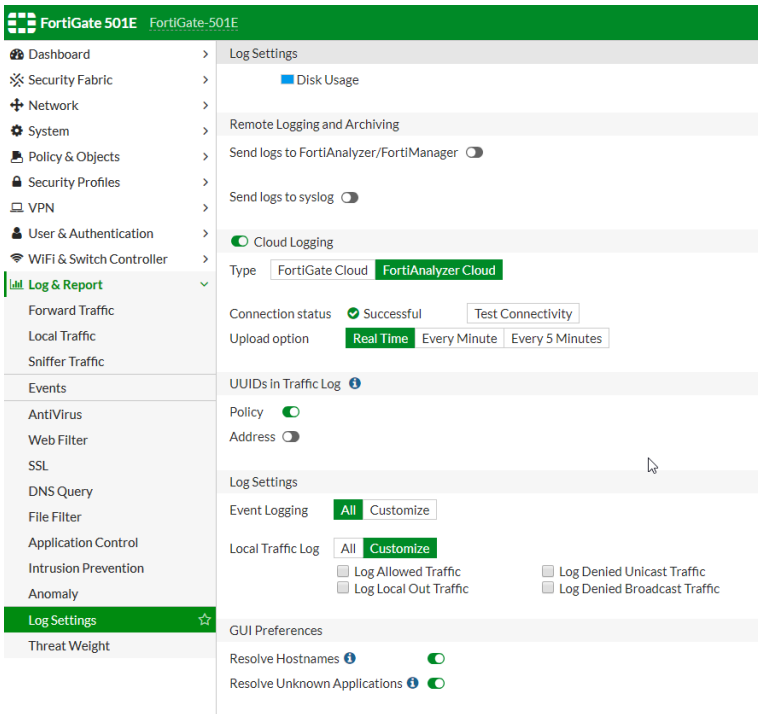
### Sample settings panes

In the FortiOS *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Cloud Logging* card settings page, *FortiAnalyzer Cloud* is grayed out when you do not have a FortiAnalyzer Cloud entitlement.

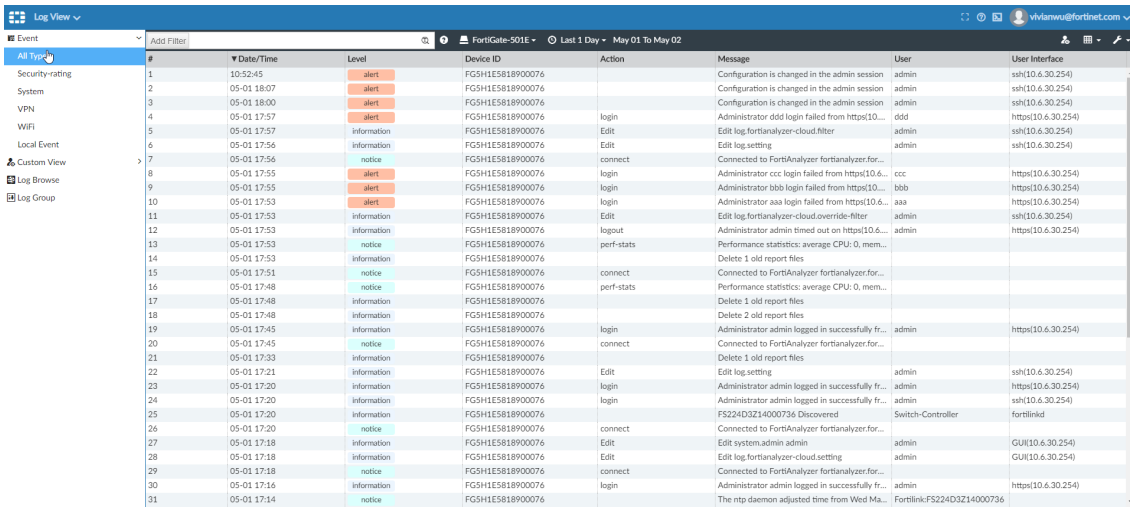



When you have a FortiAnalyzer Cloud entitlement, *FortiAnalyzer Cloud* is available.

You can also view the FortiAnalyzer Cloud settings in the *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* pane.




In FortiAnalyzer Cloud, you can view logs from *FortiOS* in the *Event* > *All Types* pane.




### To enable fortianalyzer-cloud using the CLI:

```
config log fortianalyzer-cloud setting
   set status enable
   set ips-archive disable
   set access-config enable
   set enc-algorithm high
   set ssl-min-proto-version default
   set conn-timeout 10
   set monitor-keepalive-period 5
   set monitor-failure-retry-period 5
   set certificate ''
   set source-ip ''
   set upload-option realtime
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud filter
   set severity information
   set forward-traffic disable
   set local-traffic disable
   set multicast-traffic disable
   set sniffer-traffic disable
   set anomaly disable
   set voip disable
   set dlp-archive disable
   set dns disable
   set ssh disable
   set ssl disable
   set cifs disable
   set filter ''
   set filter-type include
end
```

### To disable fortianalyzer-cloud for a specific VDOM using the CLI:

```
config log setting
   set faz-override enable
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting
   set status disable
```

```
end
```

**To set fortianalyzer-cloud filter for a specific vdom using the CLI:**

```
config log setting
   set faz-override enable
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-setting
   set status enable
end
config log fortianalyzer-cloud override-filter
   set severity information
   set forward-traffic disable
   set local-traffic disable
   set multicast-traffic disable
   set sniffer-traffic disable
   set anomaly disable
   set voip disable
   set dlp-archive disable
   set dns disable
   set ssh disable
   set ssl disable
   set cifs disable
   set filter ''
   set filter-type include
end
```

**To display fortianalyzer-cloud log using the CLI:**

```
execute log filter device fortianalyzer-cloud
execute log filter category event
execute log display
```

**Sample log**

```
date=2019-05-01 time=17:57:45 idseq=60796052214644736 bid=100926 dvid=1027 itime="2019-05-01
     17:57:48" euid=3 epid=3 dsteuid=0 dstepid=3 logver=602000890 logid=0100032002
     type="event" subtype="system" level="alert" srcip=10.6.30.254 dstip=10.6.30.9
     action="login" msg="Administrator ddd login failed from https(10.6.30.254) because of
     invalid user name" logdesc="Admin login failed" sn="0" user="ddd" ui="https
     (10.6.30.254)" status="failed" reason="name_invalid" method="https"
     eventtime=1556758666274548325 devid="FG5H1E5818900076" vd="root" dtime="2019-05-01
     17:57:45" itime_t=1556758668 devname="FortiGate-501E"
date=2019-05-01 time=17:57:21 idseq=60796052214644736 bid=100926 dvid=1027 itime="2019-05-01
     17:57:23" euid=3 epid=3 dsteuid=0 dstepid=3 logver=602000890 logid=0100044546
     type="event" subtype="system" level="information" action="Edit" msg="Edit
     log.fortianalyzer-cloud.filter " logdesc="Attribute configured" user="admin" ui="ssh
     (10.6.30.254)" cfgtid=164757536 cfgpath="log.fortianalyzer-cloud.filter"
     cfgattr="severity[information->critical]" eventtime=1556758642413367644
     devid="FG5H1E5818900076" vd="root" dtime="2019-05-01 17:57:21" itime_t=1556758643
     devname="FortiGate-501E"
```

## FortiManager

When a FortiManager device is added to the Security Fabric, it automatically synchronizes with any connected downstream devices.

To add a FortiManager to the Security Fabric, configure it on the root FortiGate. The root FortiGate then pushes this configuration to downstream FortiGate devices. The FortiManager provides remote management of FortiGate devices over TCP port 541. The FortiManager must have internet access for it to join the Security Fabric.

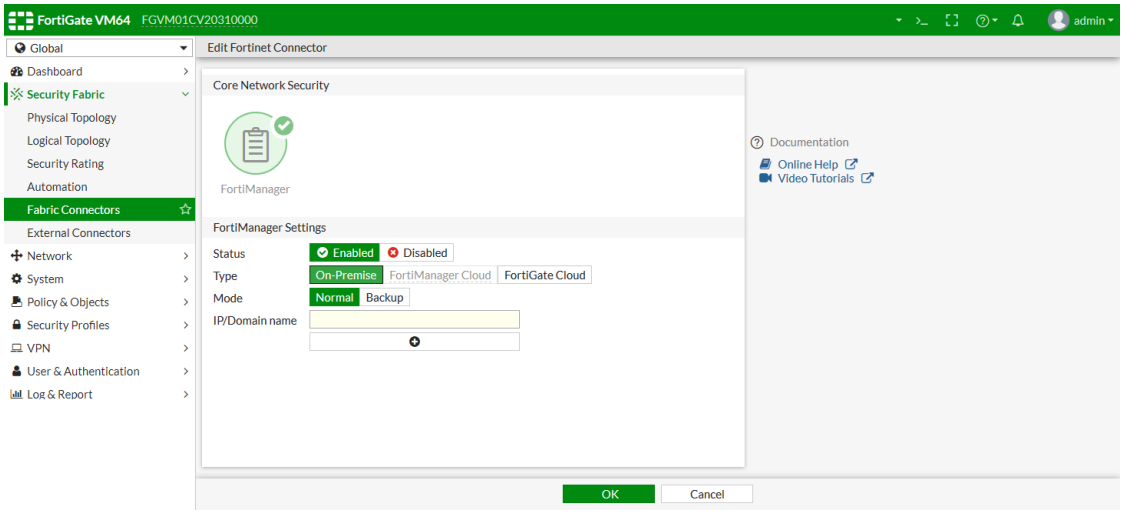
Once configured, the FortiGate can receive antivirus and IPS updates, and allows remote management through FortiManager or the FortiGate Cloud service. The FortiGate management option must be enabled so that the FortiGate can accept management updates to its firmware and FortiGuard services.

### To add a FortiManager to the Security Fabric using the CLI:

```
config system central-management
   set type fortimanager
   set fmg {<IP_address> | <FQDN_address>}
end
```

### To add a FortiManager to the Security Fabric using the GUI:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiManager* card.
2. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
3. For *Type*, click *On-Premise*.




4. Enter the *IP/Domain Name* of the FortiManager.
5. Click *OK*.
6. On the FortiManager, go to *Device Manager* and find the FortiGate in the *Unauthorized Devices* list.
7. Select the FortiGate device or devices, and click *Authorize* in the toolbar.
8. In the *Authorize Device* pop-up, adjust the device names as needed, then click *OK*.
   For more information about using FortiManager, see the FortiManager Administration Guide.

## FortiManager Cloud service

This cloud-based SaaS management service is available through FortiManager. This service is included in FortiCloud accounts with a FortiManager Cloud account level subscription (ALCI).

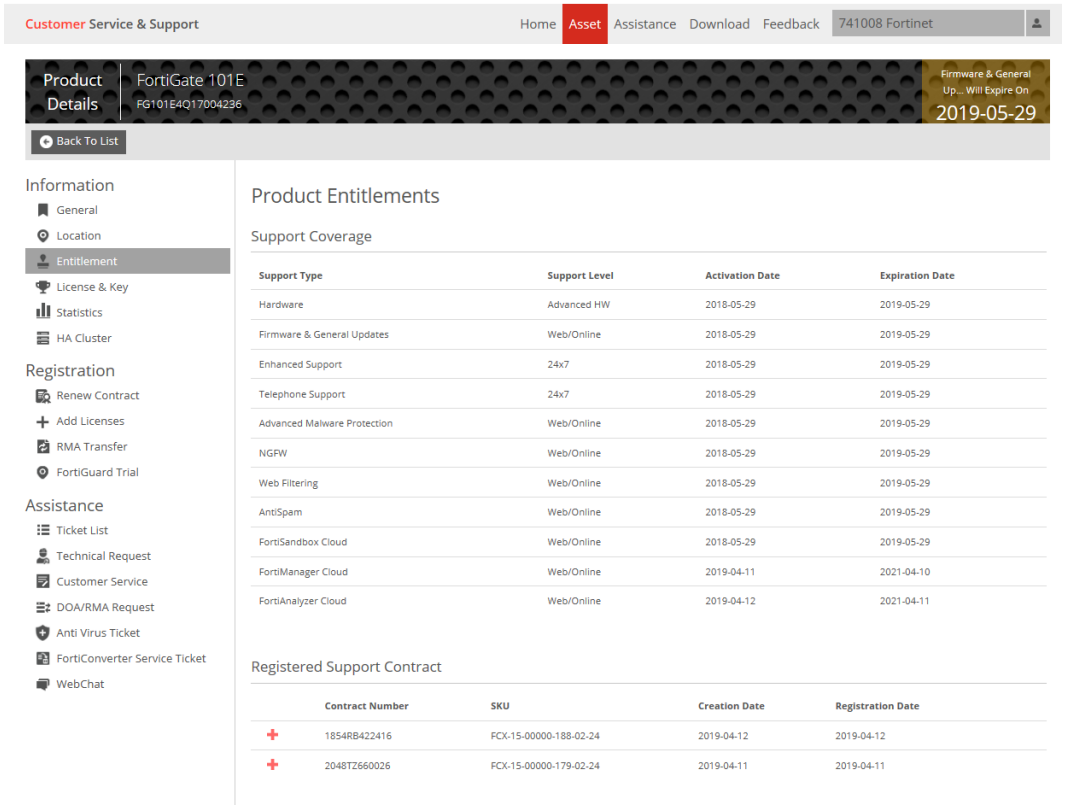
Once the FortiGate has acquired a contract named *FortiManager Cloud*, FortiCloud creates a cloud-based FortiManager instance under the user account. You can launch the portal for the cloud-based FortiManager from FortiCloud, and its URL starts with the User ID.

You can use a FortiGate with a contract for *FortiManager Cloud* to configure central management by using the FQDN of *fortimanager.forticloud.com*. A FortiGate-FortiManager tunnel is established between FortiGate and the FortiManager instance.

After the tunnel is established, you can execute FortiManager functions from the cloud-based FortiManager portal.

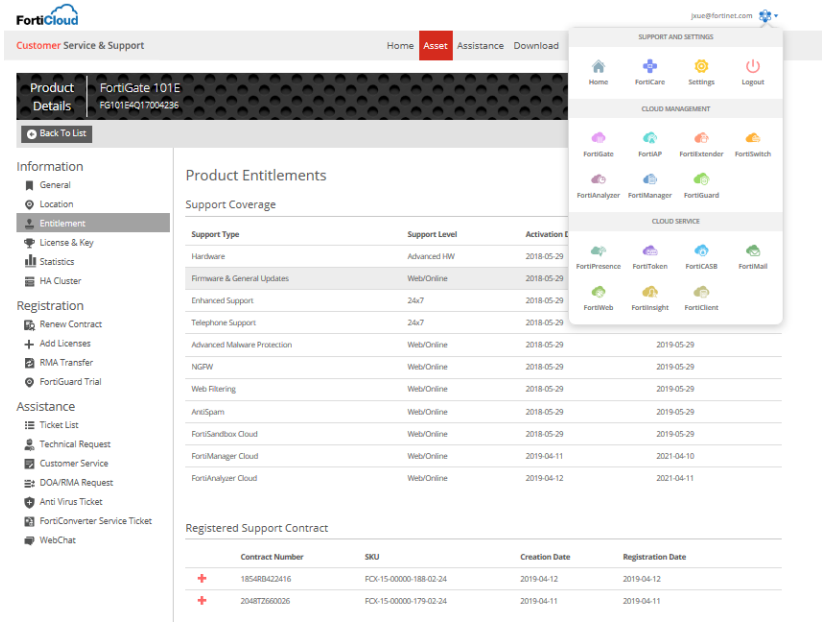
### To manage FortiGate with FortiManager Cloud:

1. In the FortiCare portal, ensure you have a product entitlement for *FortiManager Cloud*.
   a. Go to *Asset* > *Information* > *Entitlement*.
   b. Take note of your user ID number in the top-right corner.

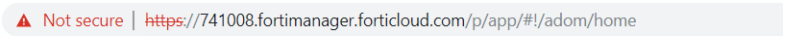



2. Click the *FortiCloud* icon in the upper-right corner.

3. Under *CLOUD MANAGEMENT*, select *FortiManager*.




The FortiManager portal opens. The URL incorporates the user ID for the dedicated instance.




4. In FortiOS, enable FortiManager Cloud.
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiManager* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   c. For *Type*, click *FortiManager Cloud*.
   d. Click *OK*.

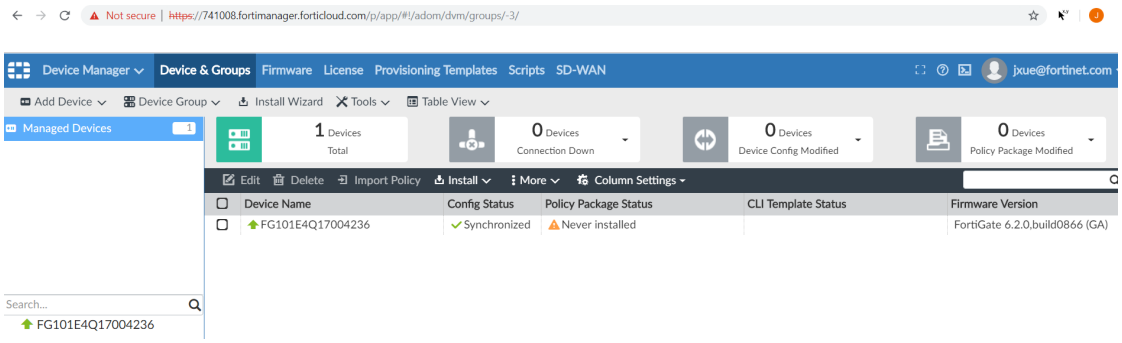


The *FortiManager Cloud* button can only be selected if you have a FortiManager Cloud product entitlement.

5. In the FortiManager Cloud instance, go to *Device Manager* and authorize the FortiGate. See Authorizing devices for more information.
   When using FortiGate to enable FortiManager Cloud, the FortiGate appears as an unauthorized device.




After authorizing the FortiGate, it becomes a managed device.




In FortiOS, the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* page now displays green arrow in the *FortiManager* card because FortiManager Cloud is registered.

## FortiSandbox

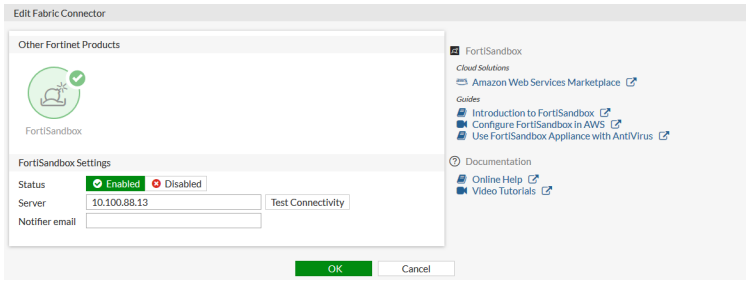
The Security Fabric supports FortiSandbox appliances and FortiSandbox Cloud. A FortiGate Cloud account is not required.

To use FortiSandbox in a Security Fabric, connect the FortiSandbox to the Security Fabric, then configure an antivirus profile to send files to the FortiSandbox. Sandbox inspection can also be used in web filter profiles.

FortiSandbox settings are configured on the root FortiGate of the Security Fabric. After configuration, the root FortiGate pushes the settings to other FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric.

### To add a FortiSandbox appliance to the Security Fabric:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. Set *Status* to *Enable*.
3. In the *Server* field, enter the FortiSandbox device's IP address.

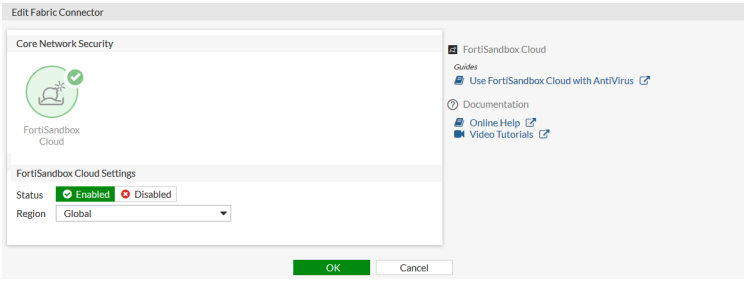



4. Optionally, enter a *Notifier email*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. On the FortiSandbox device, go to *Scan Input* > *Device*.
7. Edit the root FortiGate.
8. Under *Permissions*, check the *Authorized* box.
9. Click *OK*.
10. Authorize the rest of the FortiGate devices that are in the Security Fabric.

### To add a FortiSandbox cloud instance to the Security Fabric:

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox Cloud* card.
2. Set *Status* to *Enable*.

3. Select the FortiSandbox cloud *Region* from the dropdown list. Data from your network will only be sent to servers in the selected region.




4. Click *OK*.

---

If *FortiSandbox Cloud* is not visible in the GUI, run the `execute forticloud-sandbox region` and `execute forticloud-sandbox update` commands.

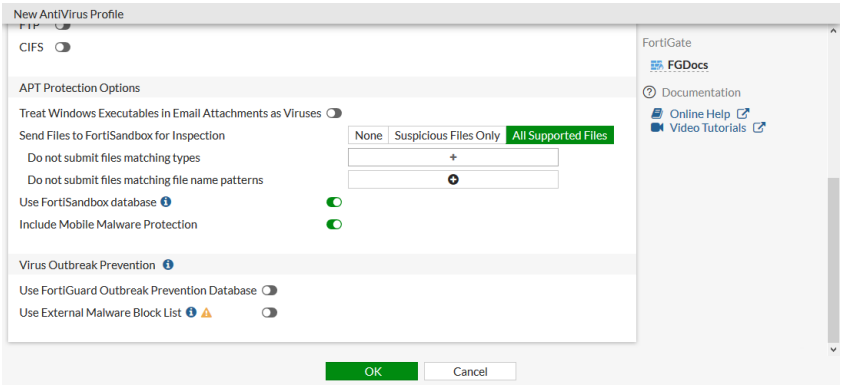
---

### Antivirus profiles

An antivirus profile must be configured to send files to the FortiSandbox.

### To configure an antivirus profile:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Profile* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Create, edit, or clone an antivirus profile.




3. Under *APT Protection Options*, set *Send Files to FortiSandbox Appliance for Inspection* to *All Supported Files*.
4. Optionally, configure file exceptions.
5. Enable *Use FortiSandbox database*.
6. Click *OK*.

### Web Filter profiles

Sandbox inspection can be used in Web Filter profiles.

### To configure a web filter profile:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Create, edit, or clone a profile.

3. Under *Static URL Filter*, enable *Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox*.
4. Click *OK*.

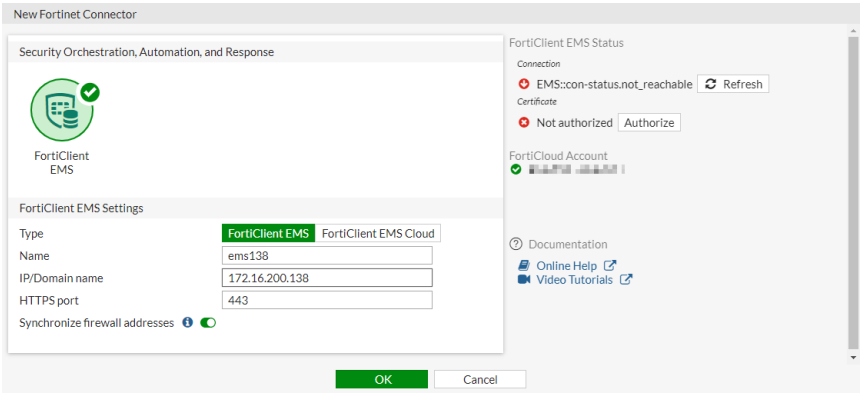
## FortiClient EMS

The FortiGate Security Fabric root device can link to FortiClient Endpoint Management System (EMS) and FortiClient EMS Cloud (a cloud-based EMS solution) for endpoint connectors and automation. Up to three EMS servers can be added to the Security Fabric, including a FortiClient EMS Cloud server. EMS settings are synchronized between all fabric members.

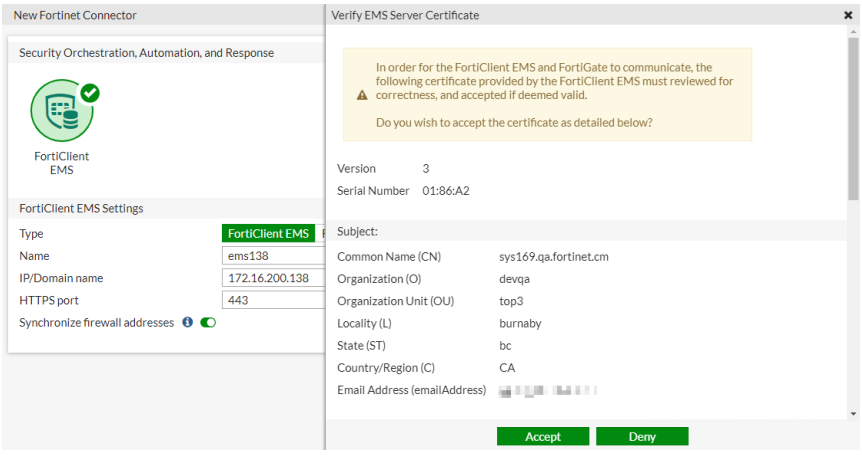
To enable cloud-based EMS services, the FortiGate must be registered to FortiCloud with an appropriate user account. The following examples presume that the EMS certificate has already been configured.

**To add an on-premise FortiClient EMS server to the Security Fabric in the GUI:**

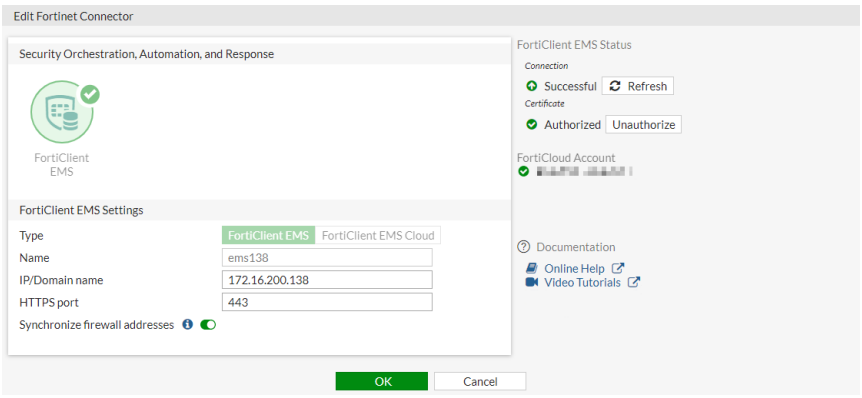
1. On the root FortiGate, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and enable *Endpoint Control*.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
3. Click *Create New* and click *FortiClient EMS*.
4. For *Type*, click *FortiClient EMS*.
5. Enter a name and IP address.




6. Click *OK*.
   A window appears to verify the EMS server certificate:

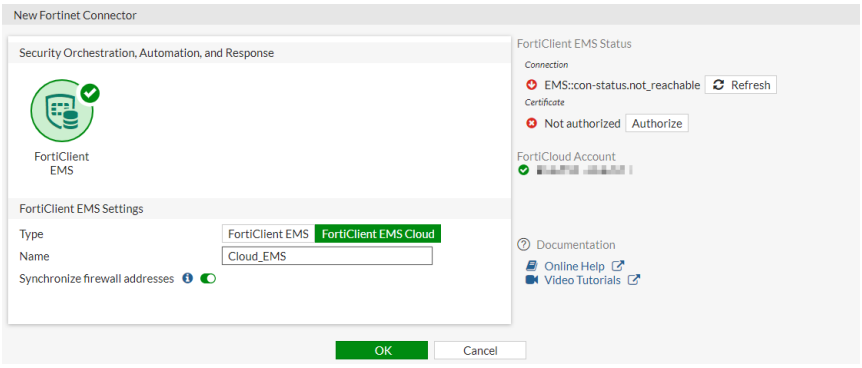



7. Click *Accept*.
   The *FortiClient EMS Status* section displays a *Successful* connection and an *Authorized* certificate:




### To add a FortiClient EMS Cloud server to the Security Fabric in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New* and click *FortiClient EMS*.
3. Set *Type* to *FortiClient EMS Cloud*.
4. Enter a name.




5. Click *OK*.
   A window appears to verify the EMS server certificate.
6. Click *Accept*.
   The *FortiClient EMS Status* section displays a *Successful* connection and an *Authorized* certificate.

### To test connectivity with the EMS server:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiClient EMS* or *FortiClient EMS Cloud* card.
2. In the *FortiClient EMS Status* section under *Connection*, click *Refresh*.

### To add an on-premise FortiClient EMS server to the Security Fabric in the CLI:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
    edit <ems_name>
        set server <ip_address>
        set certificate <string>
        set https-port <integer>
        set source-ip <ip_address>
    next
end
```

The `https-port` is the EMS HTTPS access port number, and the `source-ip` is the REST API call source IP address.

**To add a FortiClient EMS Cloud server to the Security Fabric in the CLI:**

```
config endpoint-control fctems
    edit <name>
        set fortinetone-cloud-authentication enable
        set certificate <string>
    next
end
```

**To verify an EMS certificate in the CLI:**

```
# execute fctems verify ems137

        Subject:     C = CA, ST = bc, L = burnaby, O = devqa, OU = top3, CN =
sys169.qa.fortinet.cm, emailAddress = xxxx@xxxxxxxx.xxx
        Issuer:      CN = 155-sub1.fortinet.com
        Valid from:  2017-12-05 00:37:57  GMT
        Valid to:    2027-12-02 18:08:13  GMT
        Fingerprint: D3:7A:1B:84:CC:B7:5C:F0:A5:73:3D:BB:ED:21:F2:E0
        Root CA:     No
        Version:     3
        Serial Num:
                01:86:a2
        Extensions:
                Name:     X509v3 Basic Constraints
                Critical: yes
                Content:
                CA:FALSE

                Name:     X509v3 Subject Key Identifier
                Critical: no
                Content:
                35:B0:E2:62:AF:9A:7A:E6:A6:8E:AD:CB:A4:CF:4D:7A:DE:27:39:A4

                Name:     X509v3 Authority Key Identifier
                Critical: no
                Content:
                keyid:66:54:0F:78:78:91:F2:E4:08:BB:80:2C:F6:BC:01:8E:3F:47:43:B1

DirName:/C=CA/ST=bc/L=burnaby/O=devqa/OU=top3/CN=fac155.fortinet.com/emailAddress=xyguo@fort
inet.com
serial:01:86:A4

                Name:     X509v3 Subject Alternative Name
                Critical: no
                Content:
                DNS:sys169.qa.fortinet.cm

                Name:     X509v3 Key Usage
                Critical: no
                Content:
                Digital Signature, Non Repudiation, Key Encipherment, Data Encipherment, Key
Agreement, Certificate Sign, CRL Sign, Encipher Only, Decipher Only
```

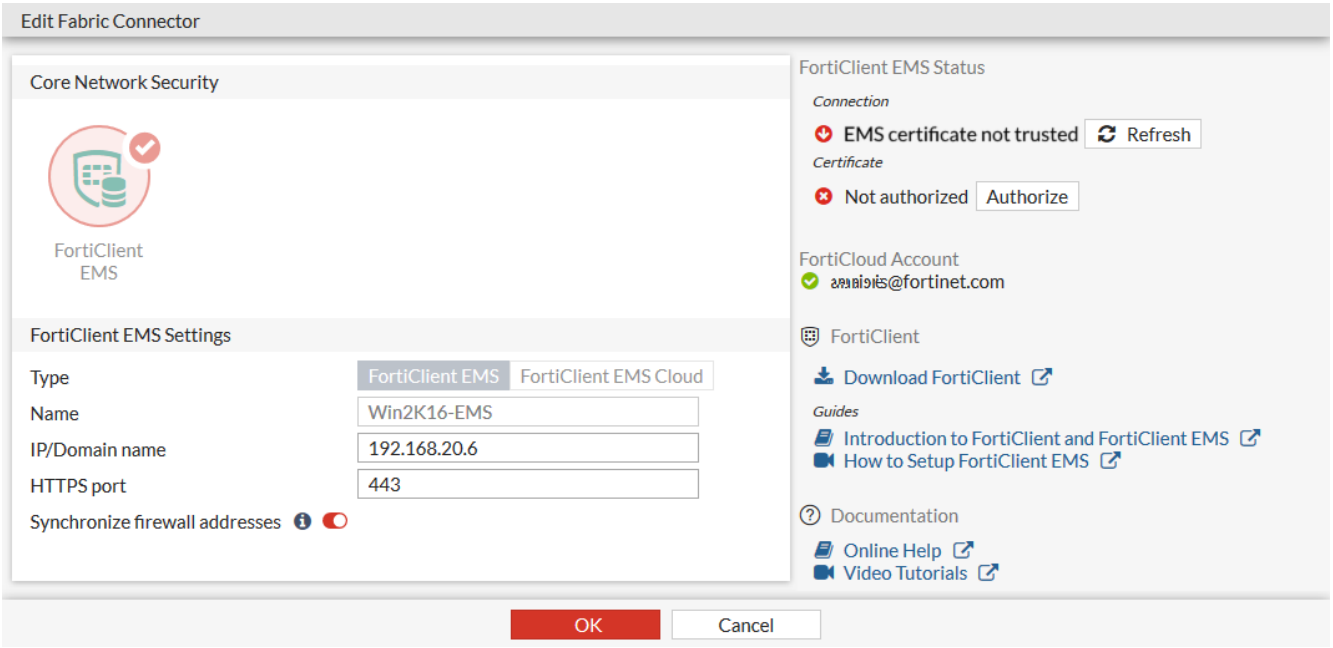
```
                Name:     X509v3 Extended Key Usage
                Critical: no
                Content:
                TLS Web Server Authentication, TLS Web Client Authentication

EMS configuration needs user to confirm server certificate.
Do you wish to add the above certificate to trusted remote certificates? (y/n)y
```

## Troubleshooting

### Certificate not trusted

When configuring a new connection to an EMS server, the certificate might not be trusted.




When you click *Authorize*, a warning is shown: *The server certificate cannot be authenticated with installed CA certificates. Please install its CA certificates on this FortiGate*.

In the CLI, an error message is shown when you try to verify the certificate:

```
# execute fctems verify Win2K16-EMS
certificate not configured/verified: 2
Could not verify server certificate based on current certificate authorities.
Error 1--92-60-0 in get SN call: EMS Certificate is not signed by a known CA.
```

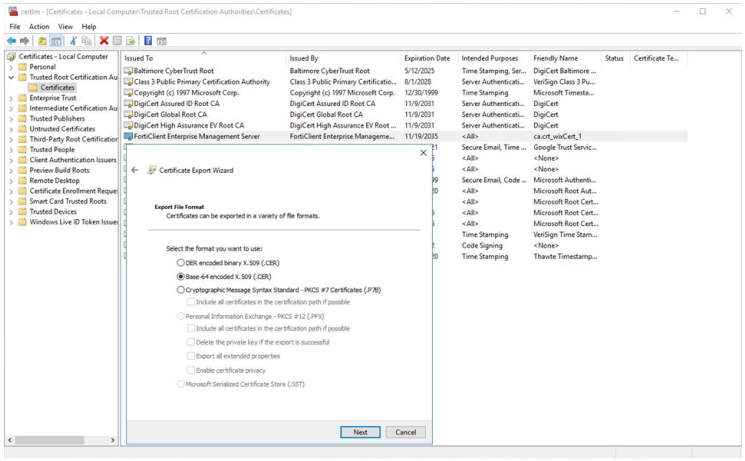
The default FortiClient EMS certificate that is used for the SDN connection is signed by the CA certificate that is saved on the Windows server when FortiClient EMS is first installed. It can be manually exported and installed on the FortiGate.

#### To manually export and install the certificate on to the FortiGate:

1. Export the EMS certificate on the server that EMS is installed on:
   a. On the Windows server that EMS is installed on, go to *Settings* > *Manage computer certificates*.
   b. In the certificate management module, go to *Trusted Root Certification Authorities* > *Certificates*.
   c. Right click on the certificate issued by FortiClient Enterprise Management Server and select *All Tasks* > *Export*.

d. The *Certificate Export Wizard* opens. Click *Next*.

e. Select *Base-64 encoded X.509*, then click *Next*.




f. Enter a file name for the certificate and click *Browse* to select the folder where it will be located, then click *Next*.

g. Review the settings, then click *Finish*. The certificate is downloaded to the specified folder.

2. On the FortiGate, import the certificate:

a. Go to *System* > *Certificate*. By default, the *Certificate* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 761 for information.

b. Click *Import* > *CA Certificate*.

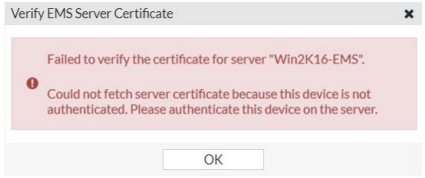
c. Set *Type* to *File*, and click *Upload* to import the certificate from the management computer.

d. Click *OK*. The imported certificate is shown in the *Remote CA Certificate* section of the certificate table.

3. Try to authorize the certificate on the FortiGate:

a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and edit the FortiClient EMS connector. The connection status should now say that the certificate is not authorized.

b. Click *Authorize*. The following warning is shown:




The warning can also be seen in the CLI:

```
# execute fctems verify Win2K16-EMS
failure in certificate configuration/verification: -4
Could not verify EMS. Error 1--94-0-401 in get SN call: Authentication denied.
```

4. Authorize the FortiGate on EMS:

a. Log in to the EMS server console and go to *Administration* > *Fabric Devices*.

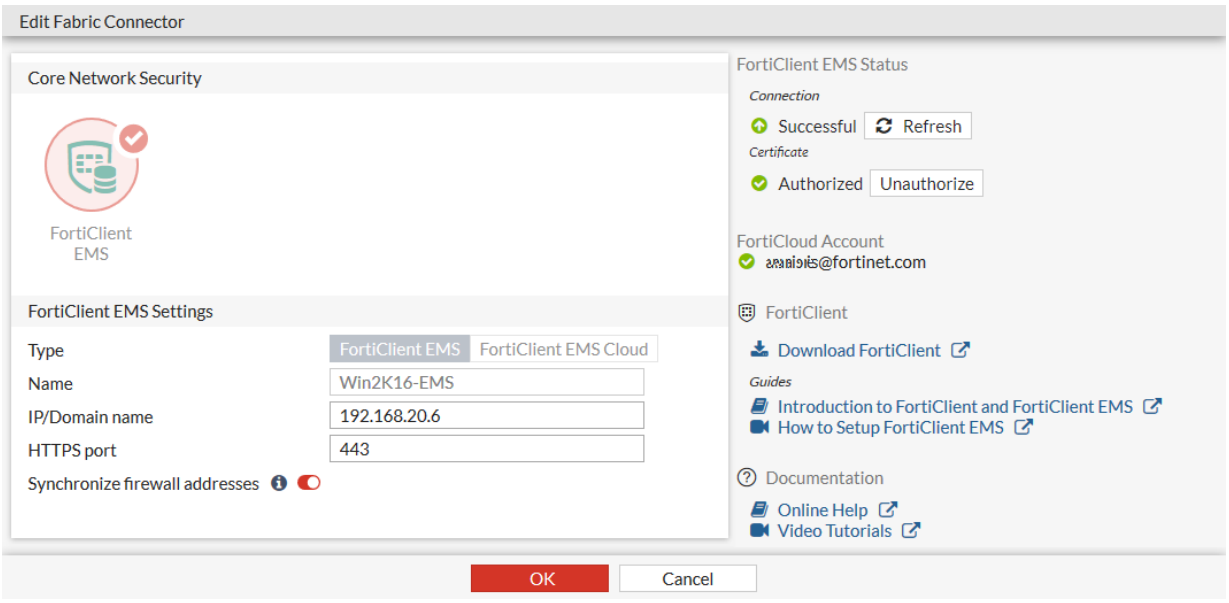
b. Select the serial number of the FortiGate device, then click *Authorize*.

5. Try to authorize the certificate on the FortiGate again:

a. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and edit the FortiClient EMS connector.

b. Click *Authorize*.

c. When presented with the EMS server certificate, click *Accept* to accept the certificate.
Your connection should now be successful and authorized.



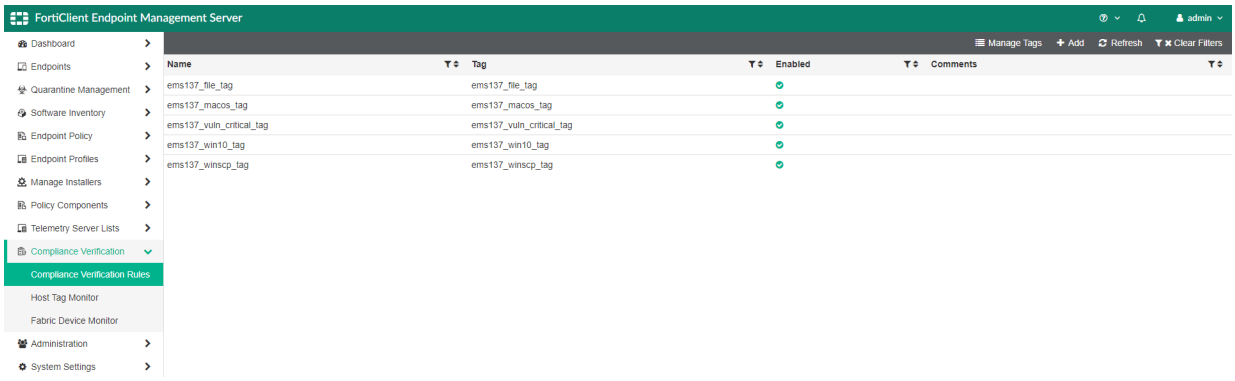

**d.** Click *OK*.

## Synchronizing FortiClient EMS tags and configurations

A new option under the FortiClient EMS settings consolidates the setup of EMS connectors to support EMS tags. EMS tags are pulled and automatically synced with the EMS server. They are converted into read-only dynamic firewall addresses that can be used in firewall policies, routing, and so on.

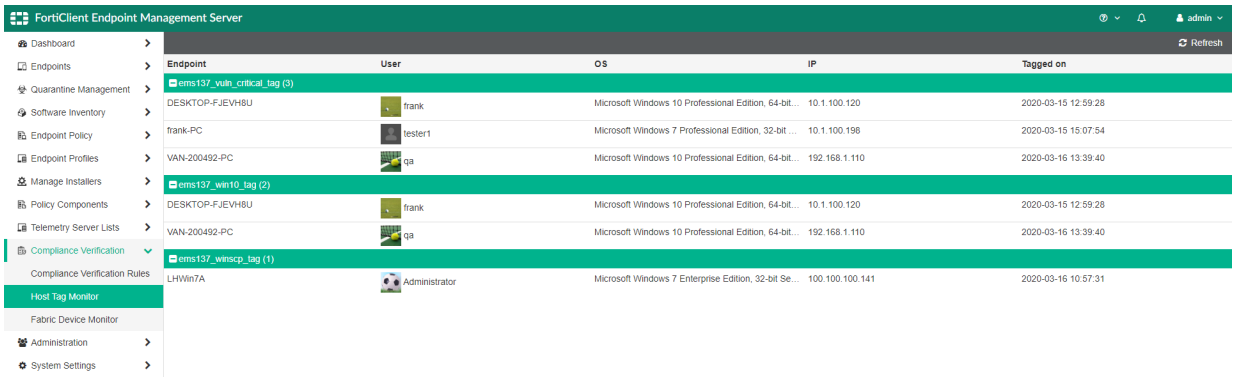
These examples presume the following have been configured in FortiClient EMS:

- Tags have been created on the *Compliance Verification* > *Compliance Verification Rules* page.



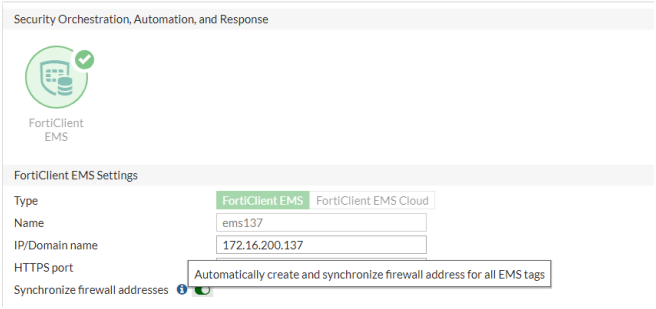

- There are registered users who match the defined tags that are visible on the *Compliance Verification* > *Host Tag*

*Monitor* page.



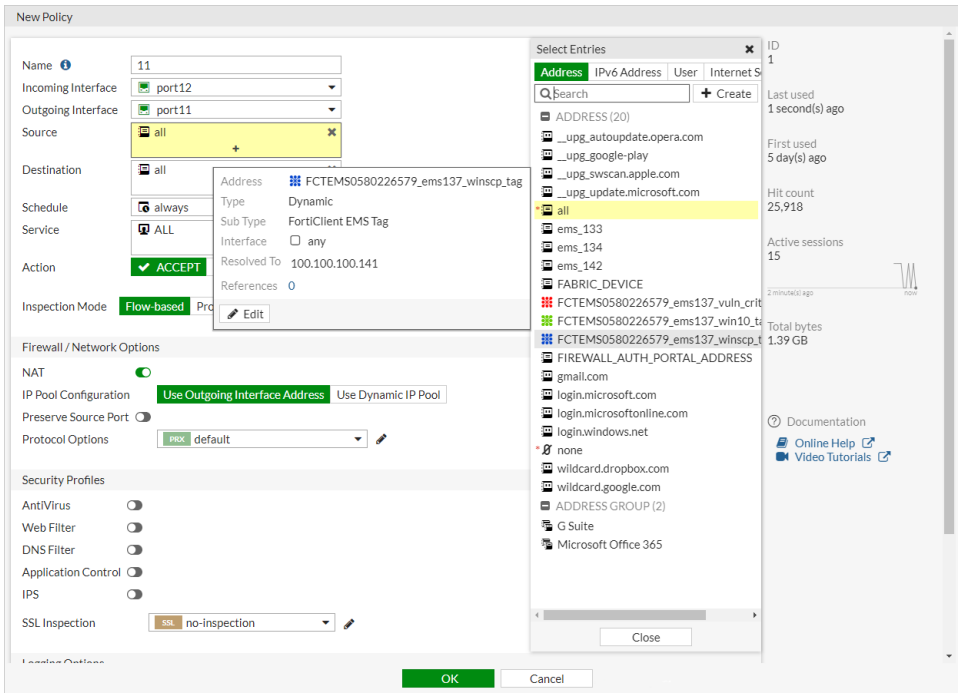

**To configure FortiClient EMS with tag synchronization in the GUI:**

1. Configure the EMS Fabric Connector:
   a. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New* and click *FortiClient EMS*.
   c. Enable *Synchronize firewall addresses*.




   d. Configure the other settings as needed and validate the certificate.
   e. Click *OK*.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and hover over the EMS tag to view which IPs it resolves to.

3. Configure a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
   b. For the *Source Address*, add the EMS tag dynamic address.




   c. Configure the other settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.

**To configure FortiClient EMS with tag synchronization in the CLI:**

1. Configure the EMS Fabric Connector:

```
config endpoint-control fctems
    edit "ems137"
        set fortinetone-cloud-authentication disable
        set server "172.16.200.137"
        set https-port 443
        set source-ip 0.0.0.0
        set pull-sysinfo enable
        set pull-vulnerabilities enable
        set pull-avatars enable
        set pull-tags enable
        set call-timeout 5000
        set certificate "REMOTE_Cert_1"
    next
end
```

2. Verify which IPs the dynamic firewall address resolves to:

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list
List all dynamic addresses:
FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_vuln_critical_tag: ID(118)
        ADDR(10.1.100.120)
        ADDR(10.1.100.198)
```

```
FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_winscp_tag: ID(155)
        ADDR(100.100.100.141)

FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_win10_tag: ID(182)
        ADDR(10.1.100.120)

# diagnose firewall dynamic address FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_vuln_critical_tag
FCTEMS0580226579_ems137_vuln_critical_tag: ID(118)
        ADDR(10.1.100.120)
        ADDR(10.1.100.198)

Total dynamic list entries: 1.
Total dynamic addresses: 2
Total dynamic ranges: 0
```

3. Configure a firewall policy that uses the EMS tag dynamic firewall address as a source.

## FortiNAC

A FortiNAC device can be added to the Security Fabric on the root FortiGate. After the device has been added and authorized, you can log in to the FortiNAC from the FortiGate topology views.



Adding a FortiNAC to the Security Fabric requires a FortiNAC with a license issued in the year 2020 or later that includes an additional certificate. The device cannot be added if it has an older license. Use the `licensetool` in the FortiNAC CLI to determine if your license includes the additional certificate.

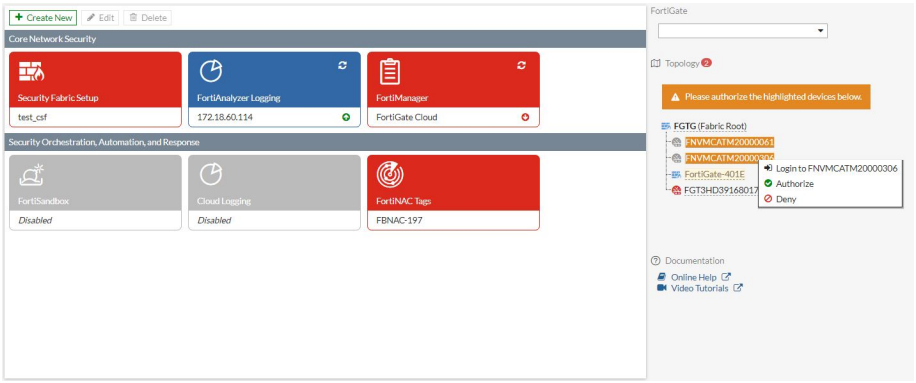
**To add a FortiNAC to the Security Fabric:**

1. On the FortNAC, configure telemetry and input the IP address of the root FortiGate. See Security Fabric Connection in the *FortiNAC Administration Guide* for more information.
2. On the root FortiGate, authorize the FortiNAC.
3. Verify the connection status in the topology views.

**To authorize the FortiNAC on the root FortiGate in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. The FortiNAC device will be highlighted in the topology list in the right panel with the status *Waiting for Authorization*.

3. Click on the highlighted FortiNAC and select *Authorize*.



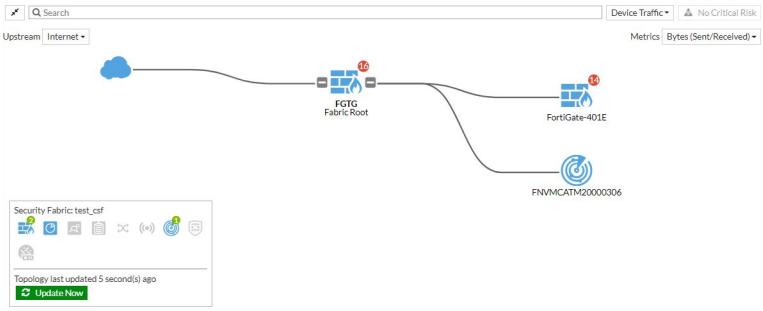

Optionally, you can also deny authorization to the FortiNAC to remove it from the list.

### To authorize the FortiNAC on the root FortiGate in the CLI:

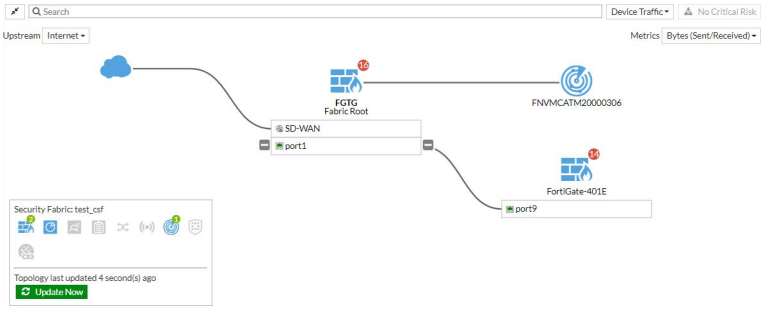
```
config system csf
    config trusted-list
        edit "FNVMCATM20000306"
            set action accept
        next
    end
end
```

### To verify the connection status:

1. After the FortiNAC is authorized, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* and confirm that it is included in the topology.




2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology* and confirm the FortiNAC is also displayed there.

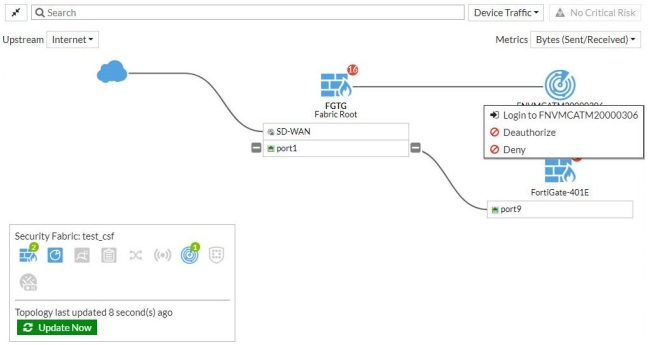


3. Run the following command in the CLI to view information about the FortiNAC device's status:

```
# diagnose sys csf downstream-devices fortinac
{
  "path":"FG5H1E5818900126:FNVMCATM20000306",
  "mgmt_ip_str":"10.1.100.197",
  "mgmt_port":0,
  "admin_port":8443,
  "serial":"FNVMCATM20000306",
  "host_name":"adnac",
  "device_type":"fortinac",
  "upstream_intf":"port2",
  "upstream_serial":"FG5H1E5818900126",
  "is_discovered":true,
  "ip_str":"10.1.100.197",
  "downstream_intf":"eth0",
  "authorizer":"FG5H1E5818900126",
  "idx":1
}
```

**To log in to the FortiNAC from the FortiGate:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
2. Click on the FortiNAC and select *Login to <serial_number>*.




A new tab will open to the FortiNAC log in page.

3. Enter the username and password to log in to the FortiNAC.

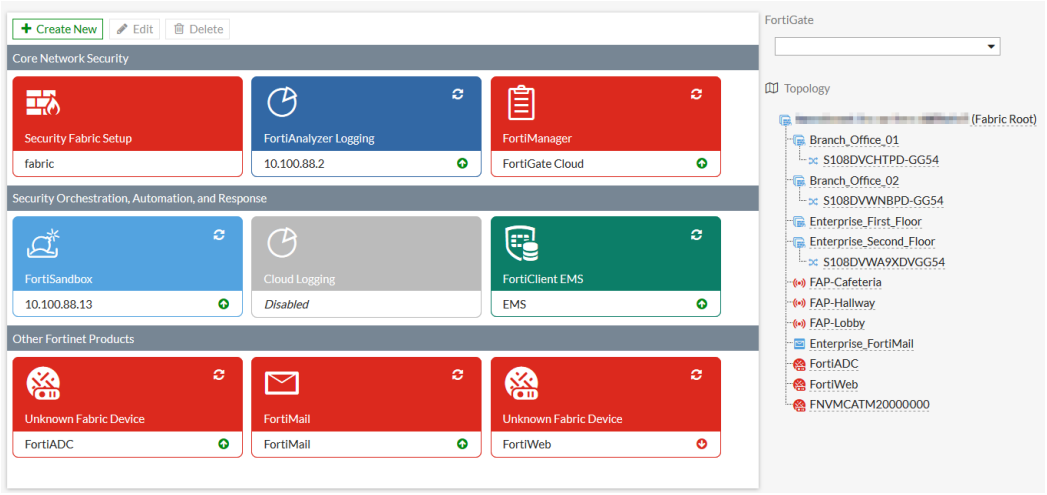
## FortiAP and FortiSwitch

FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices can be authorized in the Security Fabric with one click. After connecting a FortiAP or FortiSwitch device to an authorized FortiGate, it will automatically be listed in the topology tree.

**To authorize FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices:**

1. Connect the FortiAP or FortiSwitch device to a FortiGate.
2. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. The new device is shown in the *Topology* tree.

3. Click the device and select *Authorize*.




## Additional devices

The following Fortinet devices are supported by the Security Fabric:

- FortiADC
- FortiDDoS
- FortiSandbox
- FortiMail
- FortiWeb
- FortiWLC

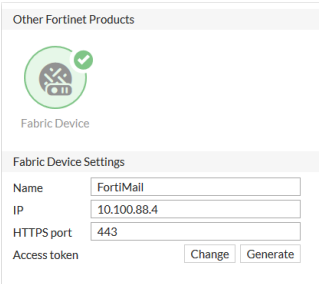


Security Fabric supports standalone FortiSandbox devices, FortiSandbox HA-Cluster primary, and FortiSandbox cluster IP.

In FortiOS, the device details can be shown in the *Security Fabric* and *Fabric Device* dashboard widgets, as well as the Fabric Connectors page, and physical and logical topologies.

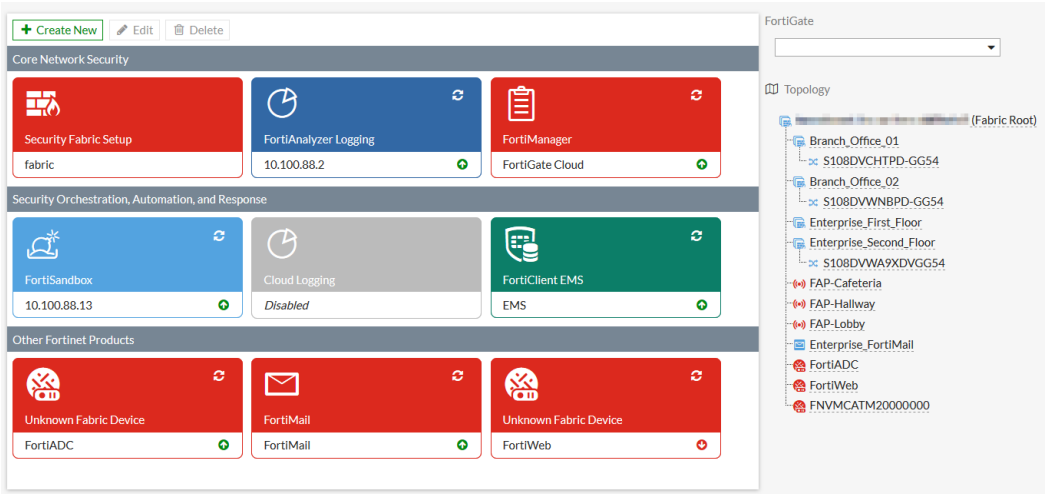
**To add one or more of the devices to the Security Fabric in the GUI:**

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Fabric Device*.
3. Enter the *Name*, *IP*, *HTTPS port* for the device.



FortiSandbox only supports HTTPS port 443.

4. Click Generate to generate an access token. The *Generate Access Token* pane opens.
   a. Enter the device's username and password.
   b. Click *OK*.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Add more devices as required.
   The additional devices are shown on the *Fabric Connectors* page under *Other Fortinet Products* and in the *Topology* tree.




**To add one or more of the devices to the Security Fabric in the CLI:**

```
config system csf
    ...
    config fabric-device
        edit "FortiMail"
            set device-ip 10.100.88.4
            set access-token xxxxxx
        next
    end
end
```

# Using the Security Fabric

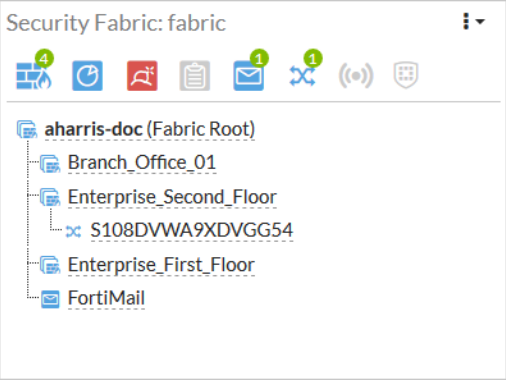
## Dashboard widgets

Security Fabric widgets can be added to FortiGate dashboards, including:

- Security Fabric status on page 149
- Security Posture on page 149
- Fabric Device on page 150
- FortiGate Cloud on page 151

## Security Fabric status

The Security Fabric status widget shows a summary of the devices in the Security Fabric.




Hover the cursor over the top icons to view pop-ups showing the statuses of the devices in the fabric.

The device tree shows devices that are connected, or could be connected, to you Security Fabric, according to the following color scheme:

- Blue: connected to the network
- Gray: not configured or not detected
- Red: no longer connected or not authorized

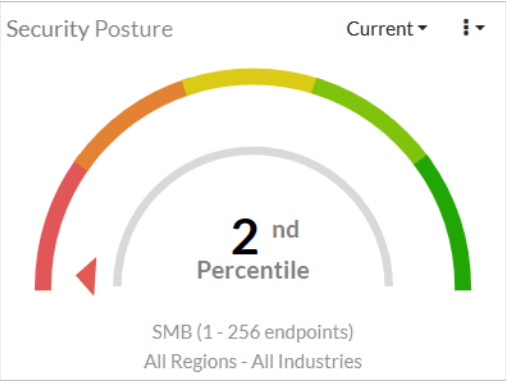
Hover over a device in the tree to view details about the device, such as it's serial number, operation mode, IP address, CPU and memory usage, and others, depending on the device type.

Unauthorized FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices are highlighted in the list, and can be authorized by clicking on the device name.

## Security Posture

The Security Posture widget shows the security rating for your Security Fabric. It can show the current rating percentile, or historical security rating score or percentile charts.

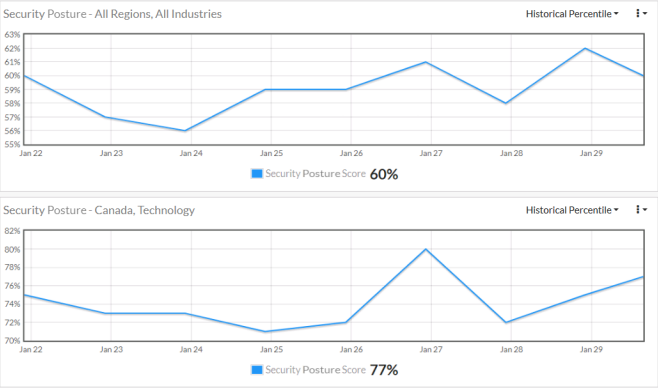
The widget can be configured to show how your organization's security rating compares to the ratings of either all organizations, or only organizations that are in the same industry and/or geographic region as you (determined from your FortiCare account settings).




To switch to the historical security rating score view, select *Historical Score* from the view dropdown menu. Making the widget wider makes the graph easier to read.




To switch to the historical percentile view, select *Historical Percentile* from the view dropdown menu. Making the widget wider makes the graph easier to read.




To receive a security rating score, all FortiGate devices that are in the Security Fabric must have a valid Security Rating License.

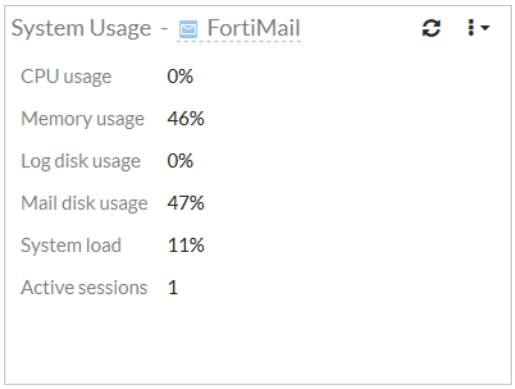
## Fabric Device

The Fabric Device widget show statistics and system information about the selected fabric device.

For a FortiMail device, the widget can show:

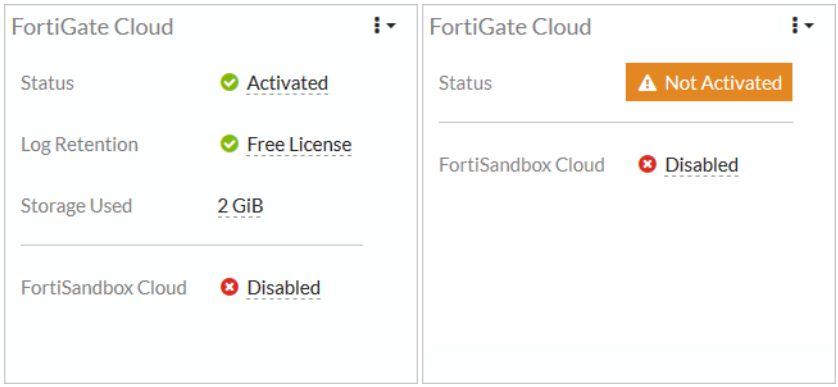
- Mail Statistics: a chart of the total messages and total spam messages over time.
- Statistics Summary: a pie chart summarizes mail statistics.
- System Information: The FortiMail System Information widget
- System Usage: System usage information, such as CPU, memory, and disk usage, as well as the number of active

sessions.




## FortiGate Cloud

The FortiGate Cloud widget shows the FortiGate Cloud status and information. If your account is not activated, you can activate it from the widget.




**To activate your FortiGate Cloud account:**

1. Click on the *Not Activated* button and select *Activate*. The *Activate FortiGate Cloud* pane opens.
2. If you already have an account:
   a. Fill in your email address, password, country or region, and reseller.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. If you are creating an account:
   a. In the *FortiCloud* field select *Create Account*.
   b. Fill in all of the required information.
   c. Click *OK*.

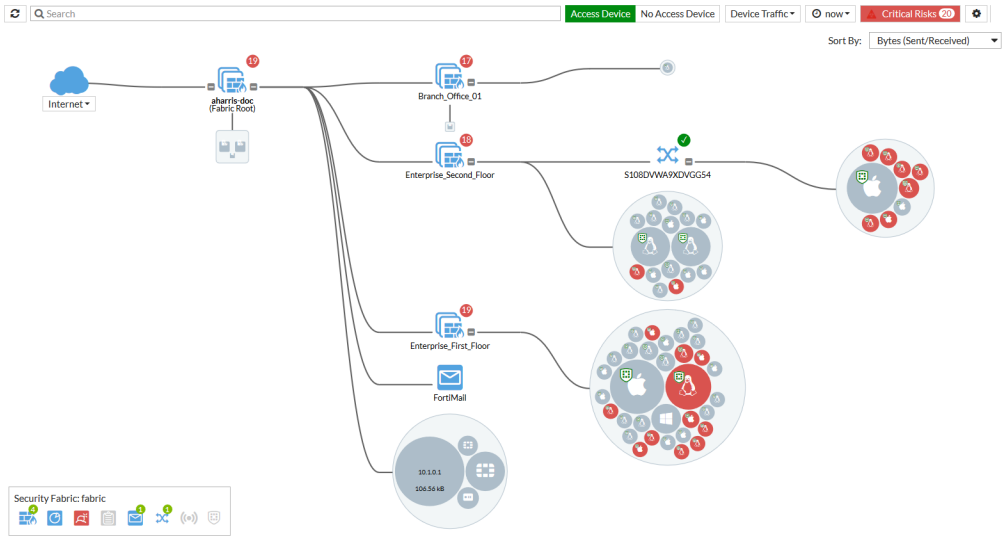
## Topology

The full Security Fabric topology can be viewed on the root FortiGate. Downstream FortiGate devices' topology views do not include upstream devices.

The Physical Topology shows the physical structure of your network, including all connected devices and the connections between them. The Logical Topology shows information about the interfaces that connect devices to the Security Fabric. Only Fortinet devices are shown in the topologies.

In both topology pages, you can use filtering and sorting options to control the information that is shown. Hover the cursor over a device icon, port number, or endpoint to open a tooltip that shows information about that specific device, port, or endpoint. Right-click on a device to log in to it or to deauthorize it. Right-click on an endpoint to perform various tasks, including drilling down for more details on sources or compromised hosts, quarantining the host, and banning the IP address.

The small number that might be shown on the top right corner of a device icon is the number of security ratings recommendations or warnings for that device. The color of the circle shows the severity of the highest security rating check that failed. Clicking it opens the Security Rating page. See Security rating on page 199 for more information.




Servers and server clusters are represented by squares with rounded corners. They are grouped separately from circular endpoints. Devices are grouped by type and are colored based on their risk level. Endpoint groups are represented by donut charts or bubble packs depending on the current view settings (see Endpoint groups for more information). The size of the bubbles in the topology vary based on traffic volume.

AWS assets are grouped by AWS security groups or subnets, and information about detected Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVEs), as well as the instance details and ID, are shown.

## Views

The topology views can be focused using filters and by sorting in different ways to help you locate the information that you need.

Select one of *Access Device* or *No Access Device* to only show access or no access devices in the physical topology.

From the *Endpoint Option* dropdown list, select one of the following views:

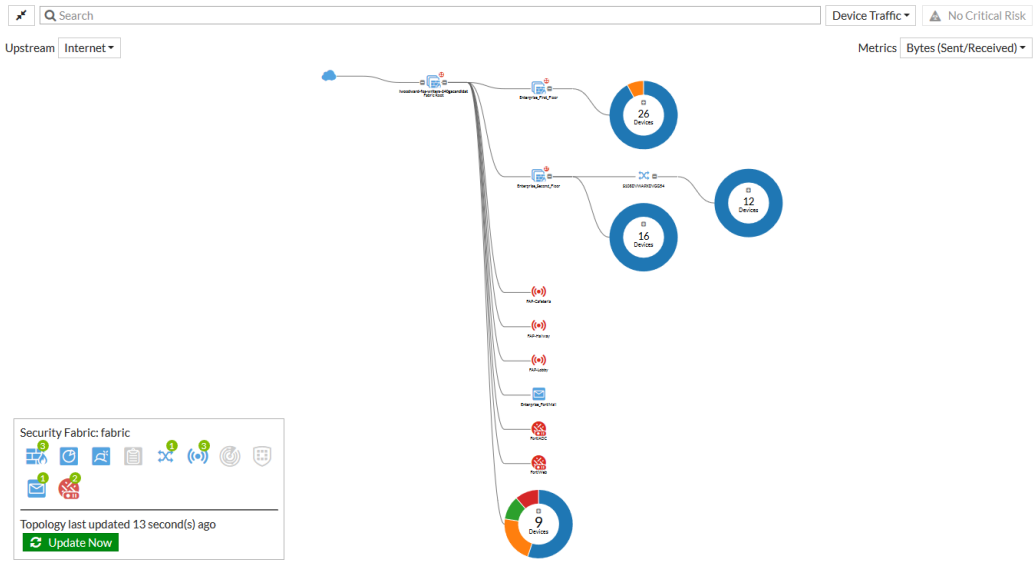
- *Device Traffic*: Organize devices by traffic.
- *Device Count*: Organize devices by the number of devices connected to it.
- *Device Operating System*: Organize devices by operating system.
- *Device Hardware Vendor*: Organize devices by hardware vendor.

- *Risk*: Only include devices that have endpoints with medium, high, or critical risk values of the specified type: *All*, *Compromised Host*, *Vulnerability*, or *Threat Score*.
- *No Devices*: Do not show endpoints.

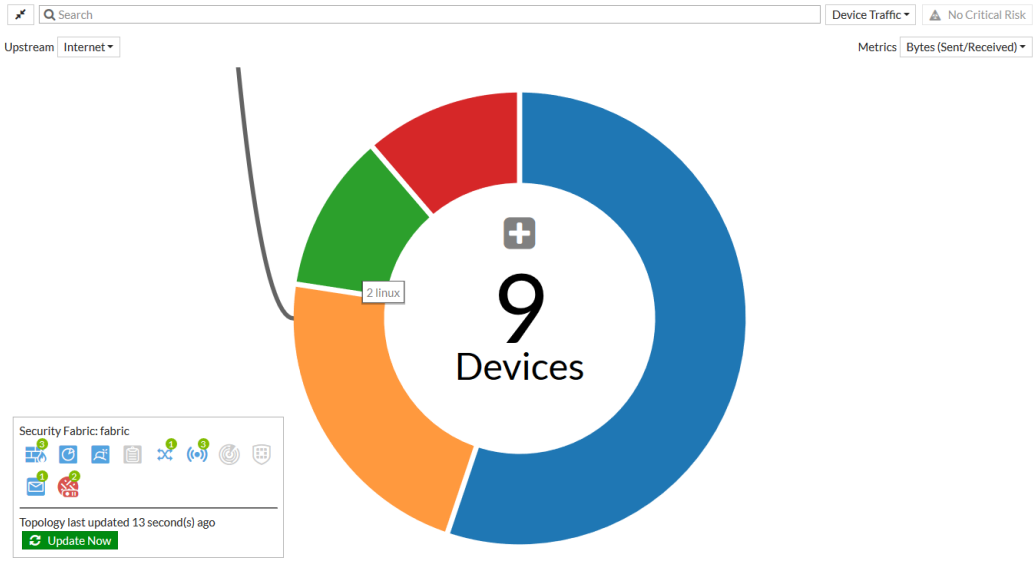
The time period dropdown list filters the view by time. Options include: *now* (real time), *5 minutes*, *1 hour*, *24 hours*, or *7 days*.

### Endpoint groups

The Device Traffic and Device Count views display endpoint groups as donut charts, with the total number of endpoints in the group in the center of the chart. Each sector of the donut chart represents a different endpoint operating system.



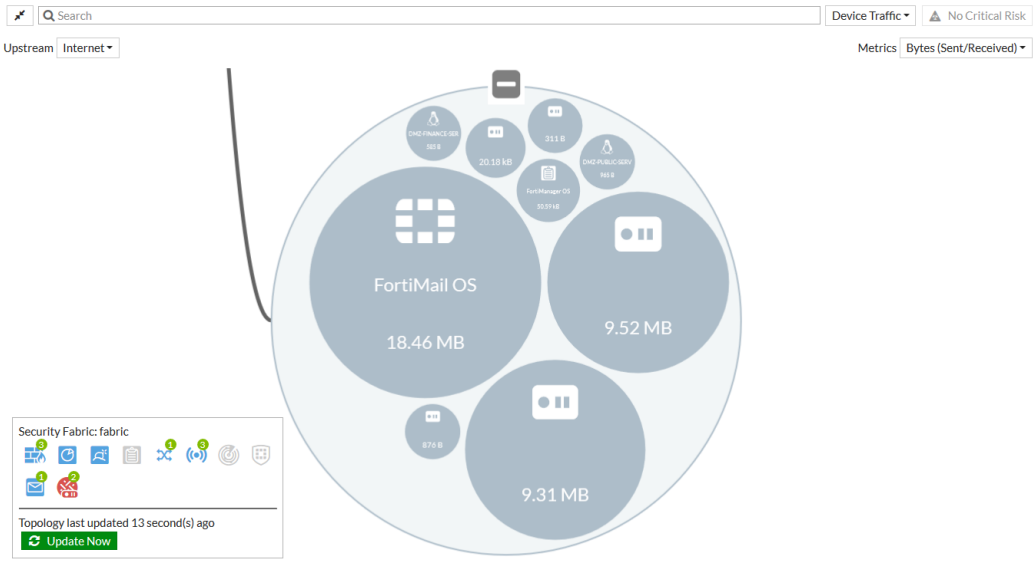

To zoom in on a donut chart, click any chart sector. Each sector represents a different endpoint OS. Hovering over each sector allows you to see the OS that the sector represents and the number of endpoints that have that OS installed.




In this example, the endpoint group contains a total of nine endpoints, with the following OSes installed:

| Donut sector color | OS | Number of endpoints |
|---|---|---|
| Orange | Linux | 2 |
| Green | FortiMail | 1 |
| Red | FortiManager | 1 |
| Blue | Other | 5 |

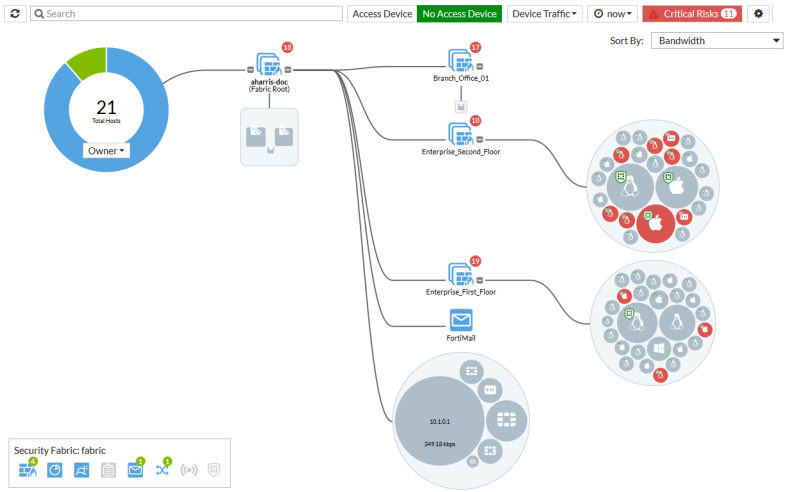
To view the endpoint group in a bubble pack display, click the + button in the center of the donut chart. You can view each individual endpoint in the bubble pack view.



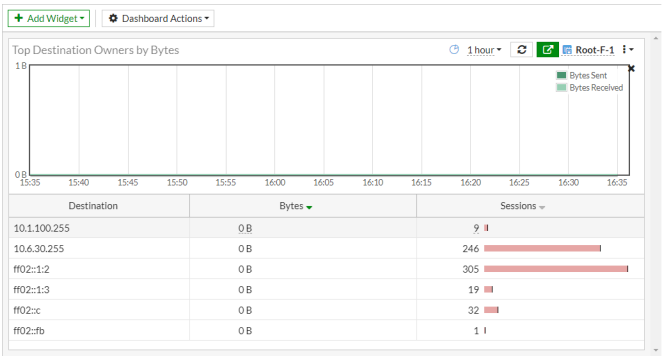

## WAN cloud

The WAN cloud icon includes a dropdown menu for selecting where the destination data comes from. The available options are: *Internet*, *Owner*, *IP Address*, and *Country/Region*. These options are only available when the filtering is based on *Device Traffic*.

When *Owner* is selected, the destination hosts are shown as donut charts that show the percentage of internal (with private IP addresses) and Internet hosts. Hover over either color in the chart to see additional information.




To view more details, right-click on the chart and select *Destination Owner Details*. The *Top Destination Owners by Bytes* widget opens. Click the green icon (*Standalone FortiView page* icon) to add the widget to a new dashboard.




Alternatively, you can add the *FortiView Destination Owners* widget as a standalone page or to an existing dashboard (see Adding FortiView widgets on page 79).

## FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices

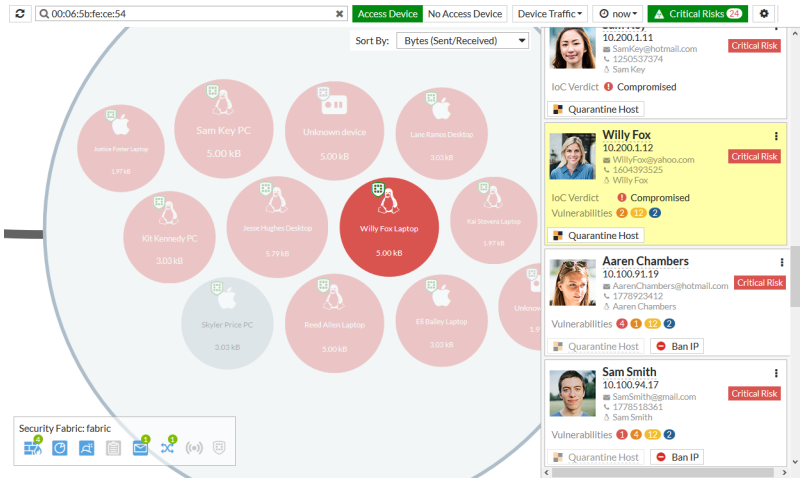
Newly discovered FortiAP and FortiSwitch devices are initial shown in the topologies with gray icons to indicate that they have not been authorized. To authorize a device, click on the device icon or name and select *Authorize*. Once authorized, the device icon will turn blue.

Right-click on an authorized FortiAP device to *Deauthorize* or *Restart* the device. Right-click on a FortiSwitch device to *Deauthorize*, *Restart*, or *Upgrade* the device, or to *Connect to the CLI*.

FortiAP and FortiSwitch links are enhanced to show link aggregation groups for the inter-switch link (ISL-LAG). To differentiate them from physical links, ISL-LAG links are shown with a thicker line. The endpoint circles can also be used as a reference to identify ISL-LAG groups that have more than two links.

## Critical risks

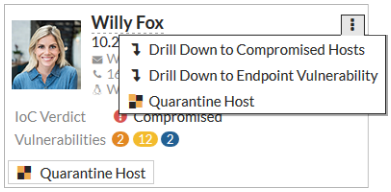
Click the *Critical Risks* button to see a list of endpoints that are deemed critical risks, organized by threat severity. These are the red endpoints in the current topology view.



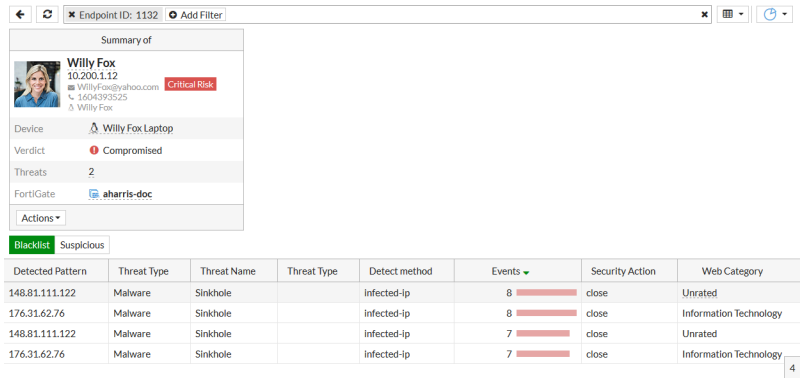

For each endpoint, the user's photo, name, IP address, email address, and phone number are shown. The number of vulnerabilities of each severity is shown, and if the IoC verdict is that the endpoint is compromised.

If applicable, the endpoint's host can be quarantined or their IP address banned, by clicking the *Quarantine Host* on *Ban IP* button.

The dropdown menu also provides options to drill down to more information on compromised hosts or endpoint vulnerabilities.



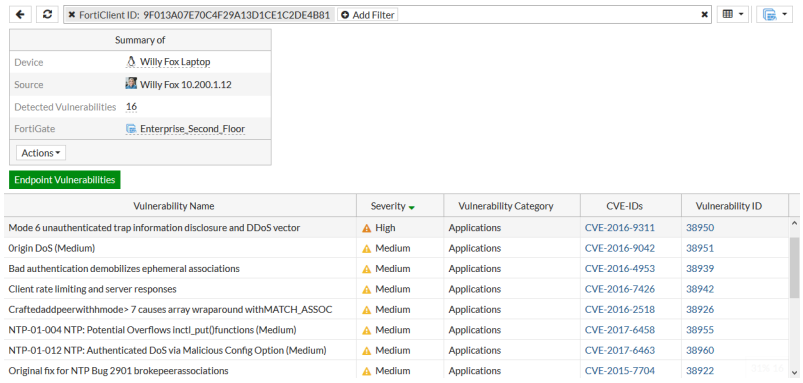

Click *Drill Down to Compromised Hosts* to open the *Top Compromised Hosts* page that shows a summary for the selected endpoint.




Compromised host information can also be viewed on the FortiAnalyzer in *SOC* > *FortiView* > *Threats* > *Compromised Hosts*.

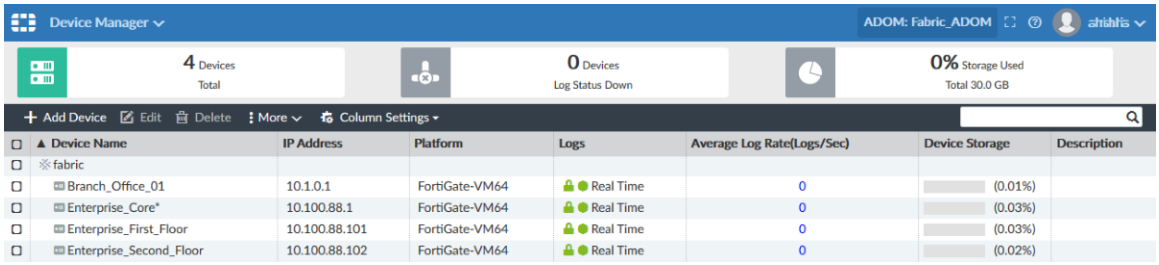
The FortiAnalyzer must have a FortiGuard Indicators of Compromise service license in order to see compromised hosts.

Click *Drill Down to Endpoint Vulnerability* to open the vulnerabilities page that shows a summary of the vulnerabilities on the selected endpoint.

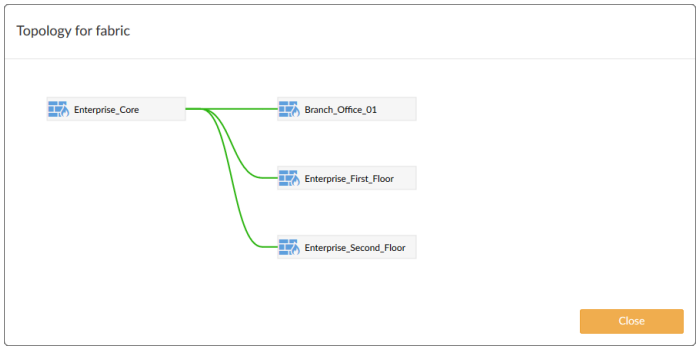



## FortiAnalyzer

The Security Fabric topology can also be seen on the FortiAnalyzer device. In the *Device Manager*, FortiGate devices are shown as part of a Security Fabric group with an asterisk next to the name of the root FortiGate.




To view the Security Fabric topology, right-click on the fabric group and select *Fabric Topology*. Only Fortinet devices are shown in the Security Fabric topology views.

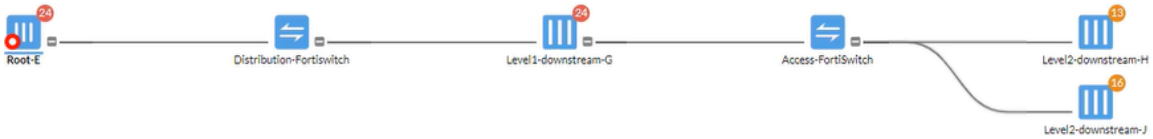



## Topology view — consolidated risk

The topology view shows endpoints based on their highest severity event.

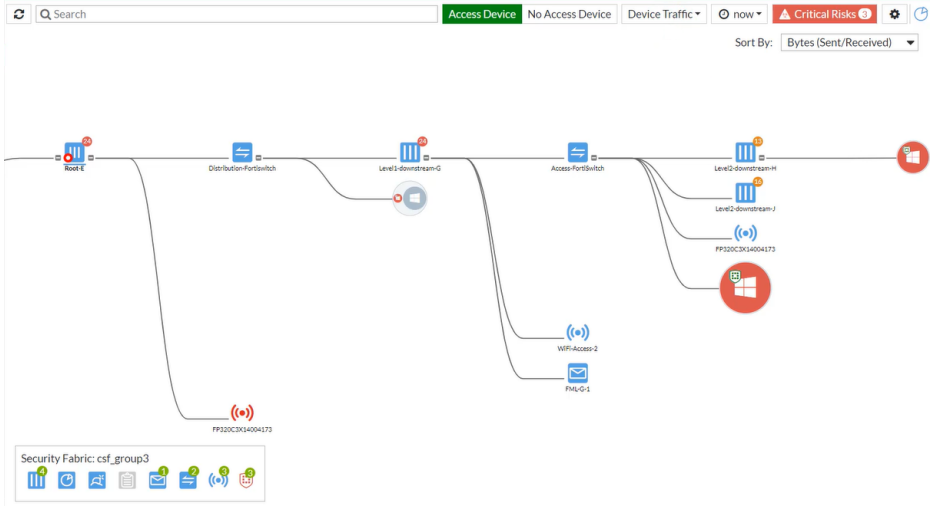
In the default topology view, you can view hosts with critical vulnerabilities and compromised hosts identified as critical risks.

The consolidated *Risk* view mode displays different risks within the Security Fabric topology. You can use the *Risk* view mode to filter threats by *Compromised Hosts*, *Vulnerability*, and *Threat Score*.

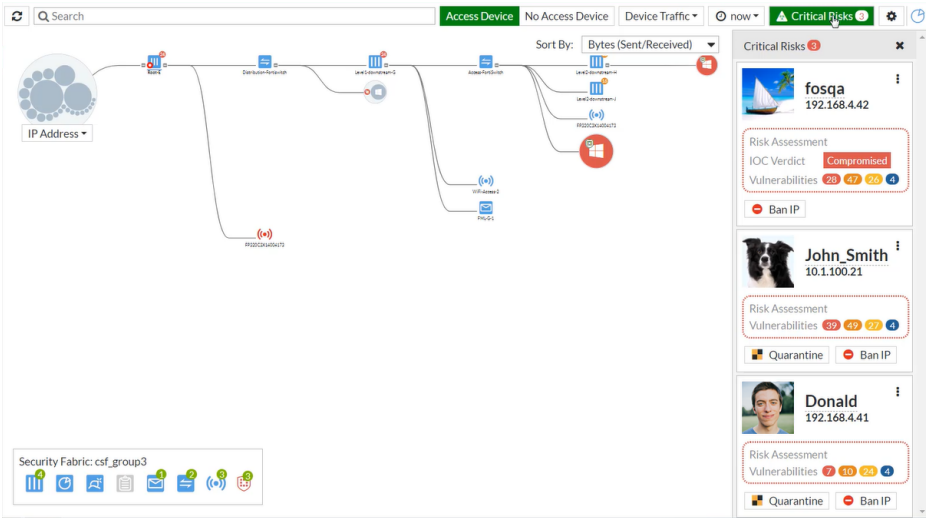



**To access the default topology view:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   The default topology view highlights hosts with critical vulnerabilities and compromised hosts as critical risks (three critical risks in the example).
   a. Hover over the tooltips for more details.

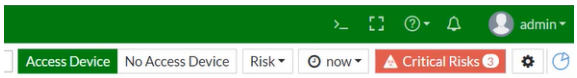



2. To view the critical risk summary, click *Critical Risks*.
   The *Critical Risks* pane displays on the right-side of the screen.

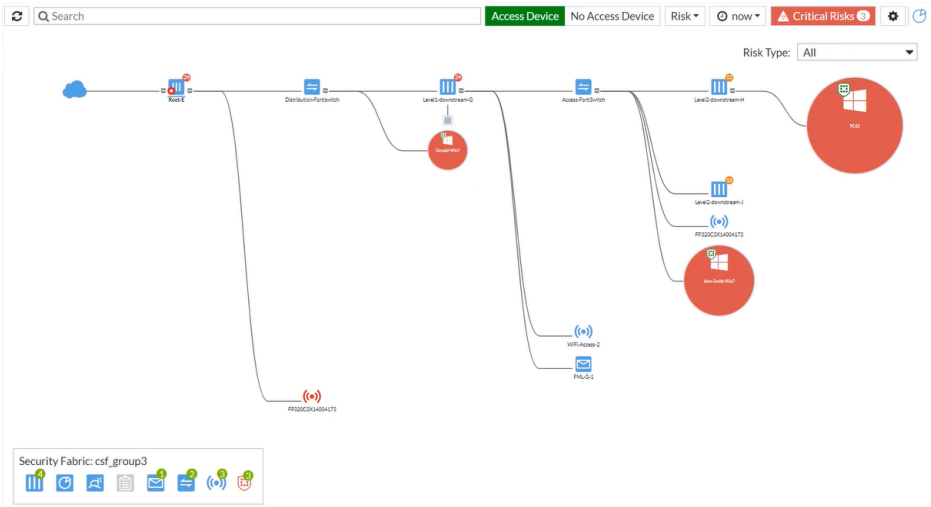


**To access the consolidated Risk view mode:**

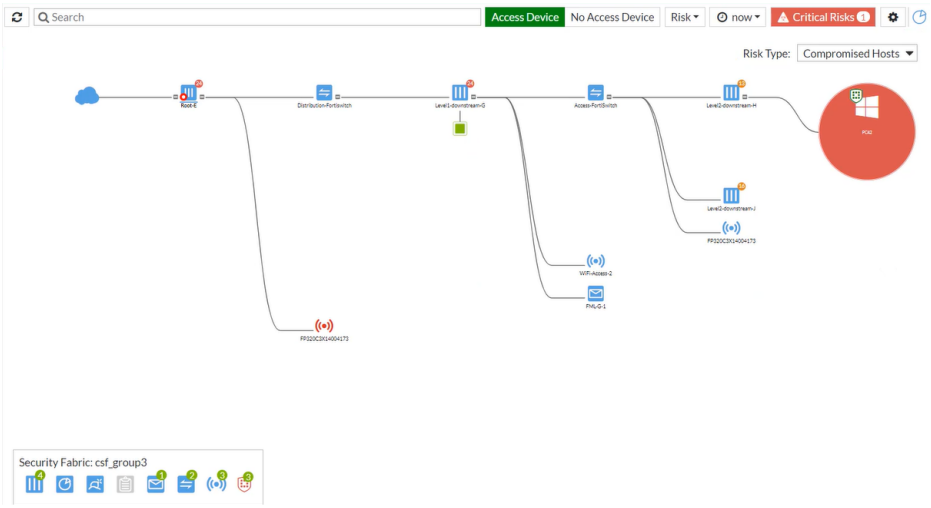
1. In the view option dropdown button, select *Risk*.



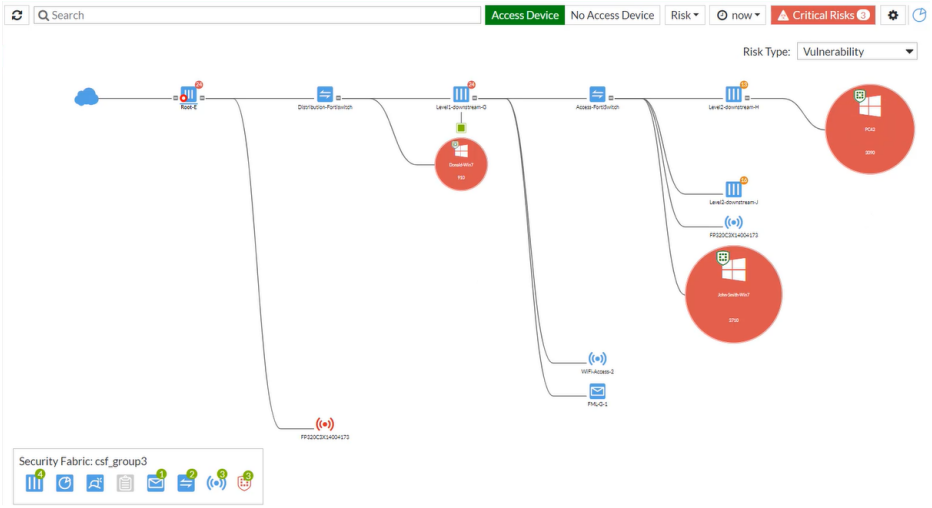

2. Select one of the following options from the *Risk Type* dropdown menu:
   - *All*



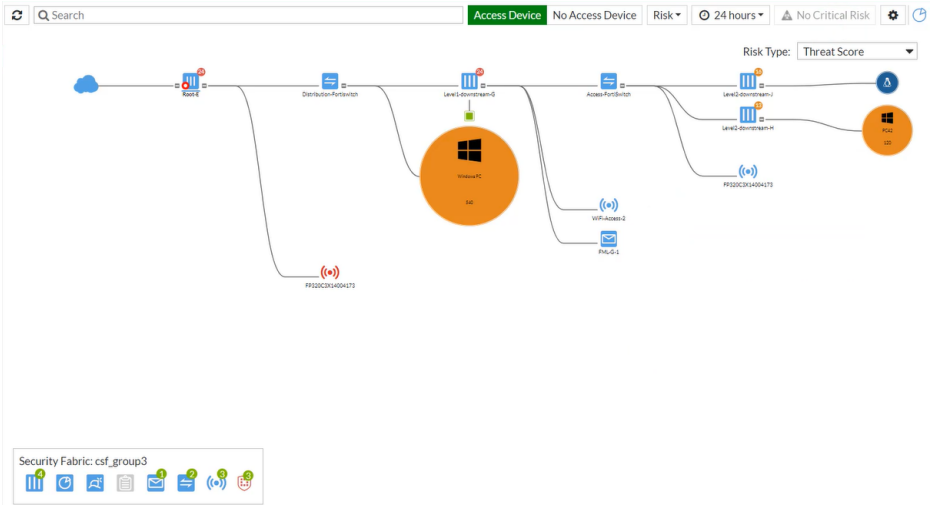

   - *Compromised Hosts*



- *Vulnerability*



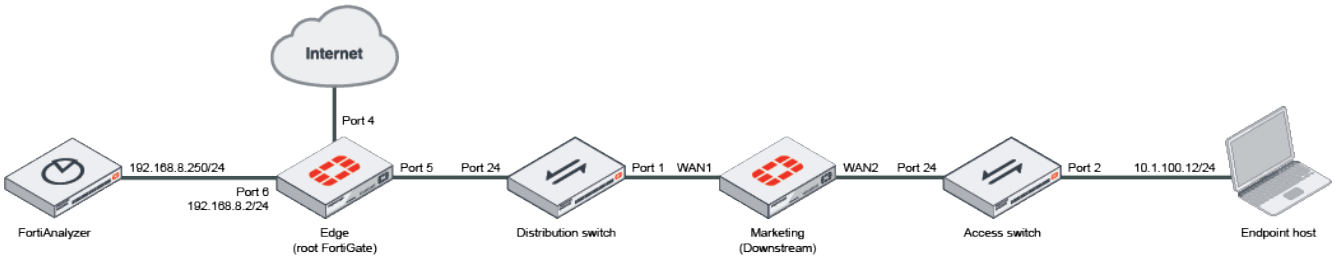

- *Threat Score*




## Viewing and controlling network risks via topology view

This topic shows how to view and control compromised hosts via the *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology* view.

In the following topology, the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) is connected to the root FortiGate (Edge) through a FortiSwitch (Distribution). The Endpoint Host is connected to the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) through another FortiSwitch (Access).

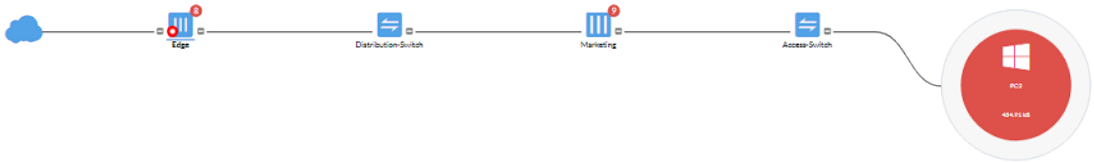


This topic consists of the following steps:

1. View the compromised endpoint host.
2. Quarantine the compromised endpoint host.
3. Run diagnose commands.

**To view the compromised endpoint host:**

1. Test that FortiGate detects a compromised endpoint host by opening a browser on the endpoint host and entering a malicious website URL. The browser displays a *Web Page Blocked!* warning and does not allow access to the website.
2. In FortiOS on the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*. The endpoint host, connected to the Access FortiSwitch, is highlighted in red. Mouse over the endpoint host to view a tooltip that shows the IoC verdict. The endpoint host is compromised.




3. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*. The endpoint host, connected to the downstream FortiGate, is highlighted in red. Mouse over the endpoint host to view a tooltip that shows the IoC verdict. The endpoint host is compromised.




**To quarantine the compromised endpoint host:**

1. In FortiOS on the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
2. Right-click the endpoint host and select *Quarantine Host*. Click *OK* to confirm the confirmation dialog.
3. Go to *Monitor* > *Quarantine Monitor*. From the dropdown list at the top right corner, select *All FortiGates*. The quarantined endpoint host displays in the content pane.
4. On the endpoint host, open a browser and visit a website such as https://www.fortinet.com/. If the website cannot be accessed, this confirms that the endpoint host is quarantined.

**To run diagnose commands:**

1. To show the downstream FortiGate after it joins the Security Fabric, run the `diagnose sys csf downstream` command in the root FortiGate (Edge) CLI. The output should resemble the following:

```
Edge # diagnose sys csf downstream
1: FG101ETK18002187 (192.168.7.3) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0 parent:
     FG201ETK18902514
path:FG201ETK18902514:FG101ETK18002187
data received: Y downstream intf:wan1 upstream intf:vlan70 admin-port:443
authorizer:FG201ETK18902514
```

2. To show the upstream FortiGate after the downstream FortiGate joins the Security Fabric, run the `diagnose sys csf upstream` command in the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) CLI. The output should resemble the following:

```
Marketing # diagnose sys csf upstream
Upstream Information:
Serial Number:FG201ETK18902514
IP:192.168.7.2
Connecting interface:wan1
Connection status:Authorized
```

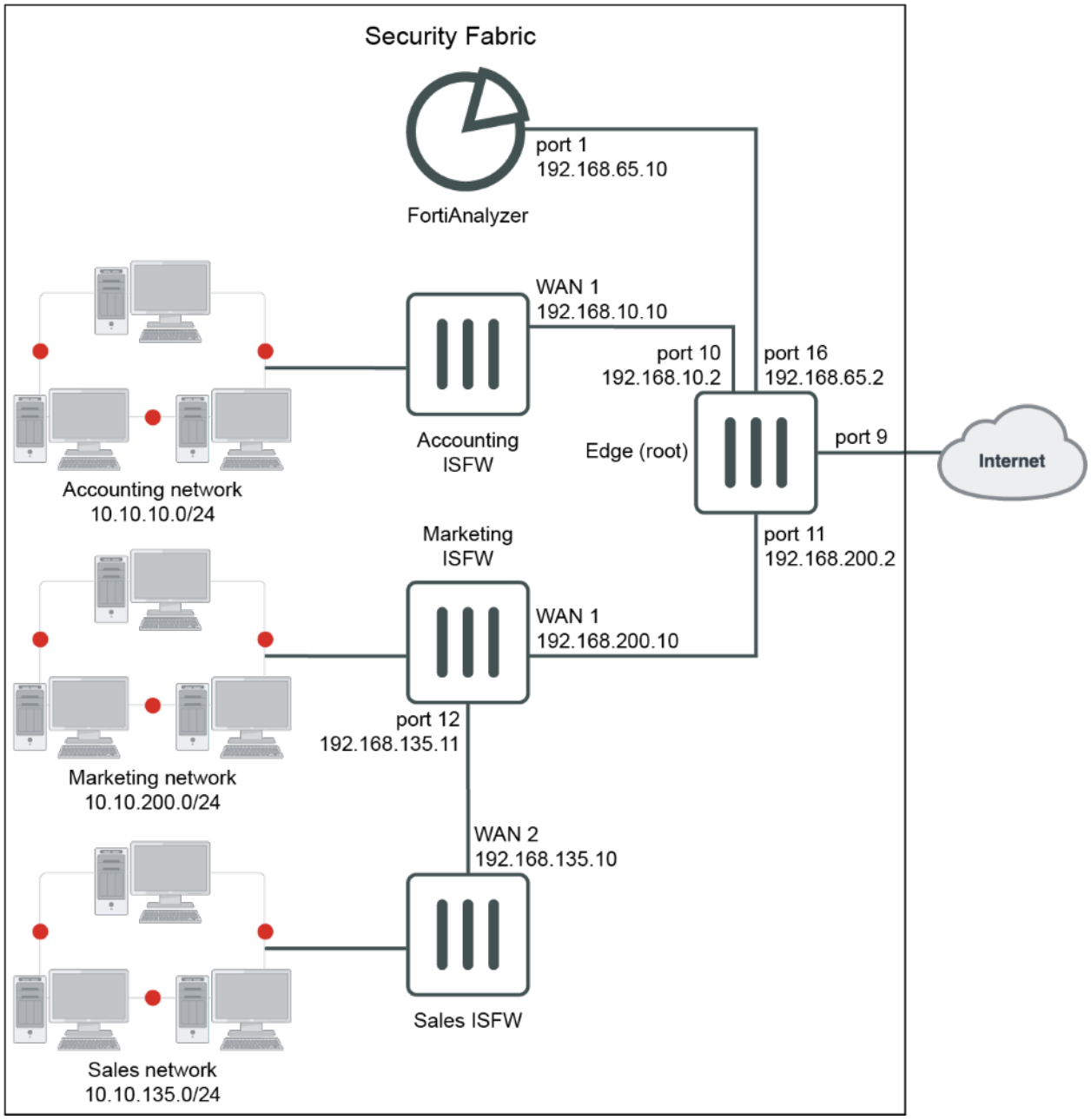
3. To show the quarantined endpoint host in the connected FortiGate, run the following commands in the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) CLI:

```
Marketing # show user quarantine
config user quarantine
   config targets
      edit "PC2"
         set description "Manually quarantined"
         config macs
            edit 00:0c:29:3d:89:39
               set description "manual-qtn Hostname: PC2"
            next
         end
      next
   end
end
```

## Deploying the Security Fabric

This topic provides an example of deploying Security Fabric with three downstream FortiGates connecting to one root FortiGate. To deploy Security Fabric, you need a FortiAnalyzer running firmware version 6.2 or later.

The following shows a sample network topology with three downstream FortiGates (Accounting, Marketing, and Sales) connected to the root FortiGate (Edge).




**To configure the root FortiGate (Edge):**

1. Configure interfaces:
   a. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port16*:
      - Set *Role* to *DMZ*.
      - For the interface connected to FortiAnalyzer, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.65.2/255.255.255.0*

**c.** Edit *port10*:
- Set *Role* to *LAN*.
- For the interface connected to the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.10.2/255.255.255.0*

**d.** Edit *port11*:
- Set *Role* to *LAN*.
- For the interface connected to the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.200.2/255.255.255.0*

**2.** Configure Security Fabric:
**a.** In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
**b.** For *Status*, click *Enable*.
**c.** Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Serve as Fabric Root*. The FortiAnalyzer settings can be configured.
**d.** Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP (*192.168.65.10*) and select and *Upload option* (the default is *Real Time*).
**e.** Click *Test Connectivity*.
A warning message indicates that the FortiGate is not authorized on the FortiAnalyzer. The authorization is configured in a later step on the FortiAnalyzer.
**f.** Click *OK*. The FortiAnalyzer serial number is verified.
**g.** Enter a *Fabric name*, such as *Office-Security-Fabric*.
**h.** Ensure *Allow other Security Fabric devices to join* is enabled and add *port10* and *port11*.
**i.** Click *OK*.

**3.** Create a policy to allow the downstream FortiGate (Accounting) to access the FortiAnalyzer:
**a.** In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
**b.** Click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *FAZ-addr*.
- Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
- Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.65.10/32*.
- Set *Interface* to *any*.

**c.** Click *OK*.
**d.** Click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *Accounting*.
- Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
- Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.10.10/32*.
- Set *Interface* to *any*.

**e.** Click *OK*.
**f.** In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *Accounting-to-FAZ*.
- Set *srcintf* to *port10*.
- Set *dstintf* to *port16*.
- Set *srcaddr* to *Accounting-addr*.
- Set *dstaddr* to *FAZ-addr*.
- Set *Action* to *Accept*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Enable *NAT*.
- Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

**g.** Click *OK*.

4. Create a policy to allow the two downstream FortiGates (Marketing and Sales) to access the FortiAnalyzer:
   **a.** In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New*.
   - Set *Name* to *Marketing-addr*.
   - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
   - Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.200.10/32*.
   - Set *Interface* to *any*.

   **b.** Click *OK*.
   **c.** In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   - Set *Name* to *Marketing-to-FAZ*.
   - Set *srcintf* to *port11*.
   - Set *dstintf* to *port16*.
   - Set *srcaddr* to *Marketing-addr*.
   - Set *dstaddr* to *FAZ-addr*.
   - Set *Action* to *Accept*.
   - Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
   - Set *Service* to *All*.
   - Enable *NAT*.
   - Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

   **d.** Click *OK*.

**To configure the downstream FortiGate (Accounting):**

1. Configure interface:
   **a.** In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   **b.** Edit interface *wan1*:
   - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
   - For the interface connected to root, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.10.10/255.255.255.0*

2. Configure the default static route to connect to the root FortiGate (Edge):
   **a.** In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
   - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
   - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
   - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.10.2*.

   **b.** Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   **a.** In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   **b.** For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Accounting) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   **c.** Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   **d.** *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.10.2* set in the previous step.
   **e.** Disable *Allow other FortiGates to join*, because there is no downstream FortiGate connecting to it.
   **f.** Click *OK*.

**To configure the downstream FortiGate (Marketing):**

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port12*:
      - Set *Role* to *LAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the downstream FortiGate (Sales), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.135.11/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *wan1*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the root FortiGate (Edge), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.200.10/255.255.255.0*.
2. Configure the default static route to connect to the root FortiGate (Edge):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.200.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Marketing) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.200.2* set in the previous step.
   e. Enable *Allow other FortiGates to join* and add *port12*.
   f. Click *OK*.
4. Create a policy to allow another downstream FortiGate (Sales) going through FortiGate (Marketing) to access the FortiAnalyzer:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *FAZ-addr*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.65.10/32*.
      - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   b. Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *Sales-addr*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *Subnet/IP Range* to *192.168.135.10/32*.
      - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   d. Click *OK*.

e. In the downstream FortiGate (Marketing), go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
- Set *Name* to *Sales-to-FAZ*.
- Set *srcintf* to *port12*.
- Set *dstintf* to *wan1*.
- Set *srcaddr* to *Sales-addr*.
- Set *dstaddr* to *FAZ-addr*.
- Set *Action* to *Accept*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Enable *NAT*.
- Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

f. Click *OK*.

**To configure the downstream FortiGate (Accounting):**

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit interface *wan1*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to root, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.10.10/255.255.255.0*
2. Configure the default static route to connect to the root FortiGate (Edge):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.10.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Accounting), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Accounting) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.10.2* set in the previous step.
   e. Disable *Allow other FortiGates to join*, because there is no downstream FortiGate connecting to it.
   f. Click *OK*.

**To configure the downstream FortiGate (Sales):**

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Sales), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *wan2*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the upstream FortiGate (Marketing), set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.135.10/255.255.255.0*.

2. Configure the default static route to connect to the upstream FortiGate (Marketing):
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Sales), go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *wan2*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.135.11*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure Security Fabric:
   a. In the downstream FortiGate (Sales), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. Settings for the FortiAnalyzer are retrieved from the root FortiGate (Edge) when FortiGate (Sales) connects to the root FortiGate (Edge).
   c. Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   d. *Upstream FortiGate IP* is filled in automatically with the default static route *Gateway Address* of *192.168.135.11* set in the previous step.
   e. Disable *Allow other FortiGates to join*, because there is no downstream FortiGate connecting to it.
   f. Click *OK*.

**To authorize downstream FortiGates (Accounting, Marketing, and Sales) on the root FortiGate (Edge):**

1. In the root FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   The *Topology* tree highlights two connected FortiGates with their serial numbers and asks you to authorize the highlighted devices.
2. Select the highlighted FortiGates and select *Authorize*.
   After they are authorized, the two downstream FortiGates (Accounting and Marketing) appear in the *Topology* tree in the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Security Fabric Setup* page. This means that the two downstream FortiGates (Accounting and Marketing) have successfully joined the Security Fabric.
3. The *Topology* tree now highlights the FortiGate with the serial number that is connected to the downstream FortiGate (Marketing) and asks you to authorize the highlighted device.
4. Select the highlighted FortiGates and select *Authorize*.
   After it is authorized, the downstream FortiGate ( Sales) appears in the *Topology* tree in the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Security Fabric Setup* page. This means that the downstream FortiGates (Sales) has successfully joined the Security Fabric.

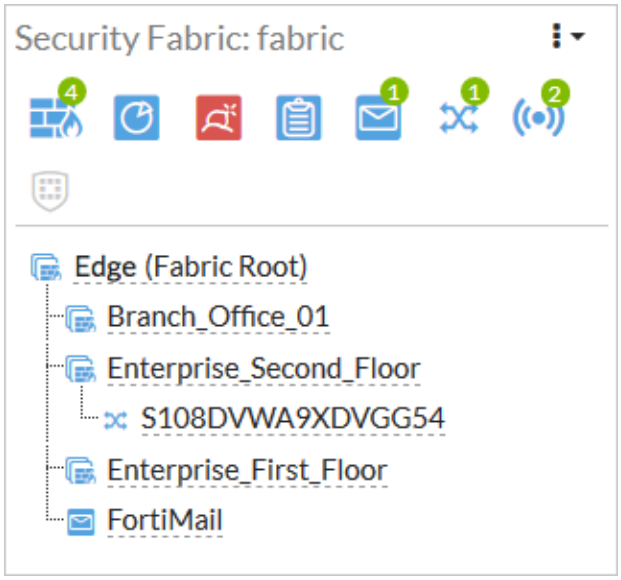
**To use FortiAnalyzer to authorize all the Security Fabric FortiGates:**

1. Authorize all the Security Fabric FortiGates on the FortiAnalyzer side:
   a. On the FortiAnalyzer, go to *System Settings* > *Network* > *All Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port1* and set *IP Address/Netmask* to *192.168.65.10/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Go to *Device Manager* > *Unauthorized*. All of the FortiGates are listed as unauthorized.
      i. Select all the FortiGates and select *Authorize*. The FortiGates are now listed as authorized.
      After a moment, a warning icon appears beside the root FortiGate (Edge) because the FortiAnalyzer needs administrative access to the root FortiGate (Edge) in the Security Fabric.
      ii. Click the warning icon and enter the admin username and password of the root FortiGate (Edge).

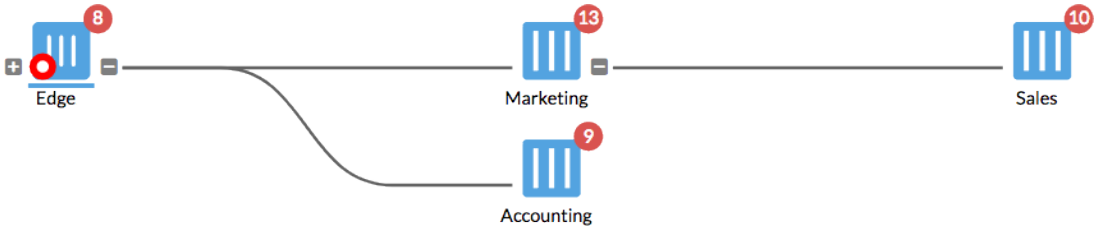
2. Check FortiAnalyzer status on all the Security Fabric FortiGates:
   a. On each FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
   b. Check that *Storage usage* information is shown.

**To check Security Fabric deployment result:**

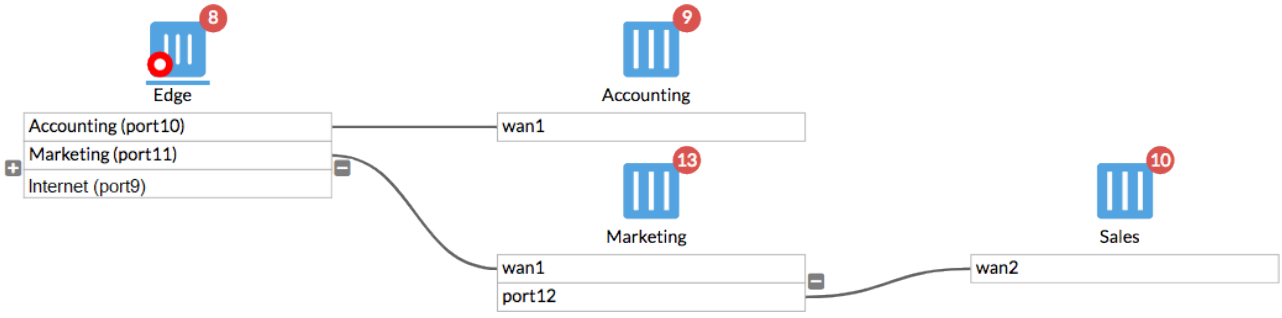
1. On FortiGate (Edge), go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
   The *Security Fabric* widget displays all the FortiGates in the Security Fabric.




2. On FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   This page shows a visualization of access layer devices in the Security Fabric.




3. On FortiGate (Edge), go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   This dashboard shows information about the interfaces of each device in the Security Fabric.



**To run diagnose commands:**

1. Run the `diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list` command in the root FortiGate to show the downstream FortiGate pending for root FortiGate authorization:

```
Edge # diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list
Serial                  IP Address      HA-Members    Path
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
FG201ETK18902514        0.0.0.0                       FG3H1E5818900718:FG201ETK18902514
```

2. Run the `diagnose sys csf downstream` command in the root or middle FortiGate to show the downstream FortiGates after they join Security Fabric:

```
Edge # diagnose sys csf downstream
1:     FG201ETK18902514 (192.168.200.10) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0
parent: FG3H1E5818900718
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FG201ETK18902514
        data received: Y downstream intf:wan1 upstream intf:port11 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
2:     FGT81ETK18002246 (192.168.10.10) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0 parent:
FG3H1E5818900718
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FGT81ETK18002246
        data received: Y downstream intf:wan1 upstream intf:port10 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
3:     FG101ETK18002187 (192.168.135.10) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0
parent: FG201ETK18902514
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FG201ETK18902514:FG101ETK18002187
        data received: Y downstream intf:wan2 upstream intf:port12 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
```

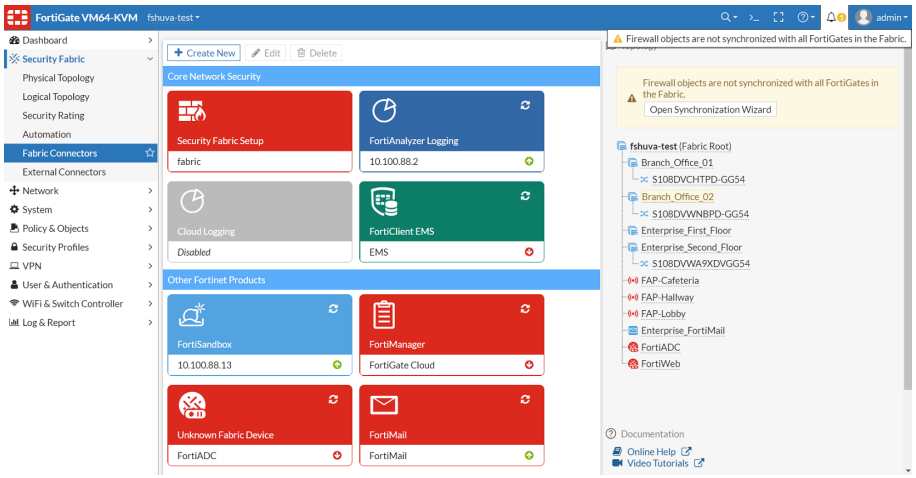
3. Run the `diagnose sys csf upstream` command in any downstream FortiGate to show the upstream FortiGate after downstream FortiGate joins Security Fabric:

```
Marketing # diagnose sys csf upstream
Upstream Information:
Serial Number:FG3H1E5818900718
IP:192.168.200.2
Connecting interface:wan1
Connection status:Authorized
```

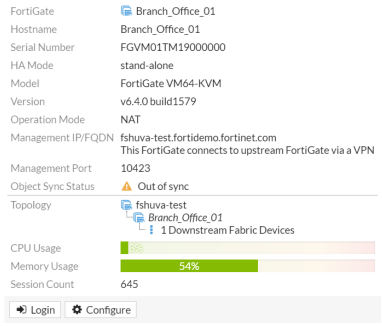
## Synchronizing objects across the Security Fabric

When the Security Fabric is enabled, various objects such as addresses, services, and schedules are synced from the upstream FortiGate to all downstream devices by default. The firewall object synchronization wizard helps identify objects that are out of sync and resolves any conflicts. Objects that are out of sync are highlighted in yellow in the GUI.

In this example, the notifications icon displays a message that *Firewall objects are not synchronized with all the FortiGates in the Fabric*. In the topology tree, *Branch_Office_02* is highlighted in yellow because it is out of sync.

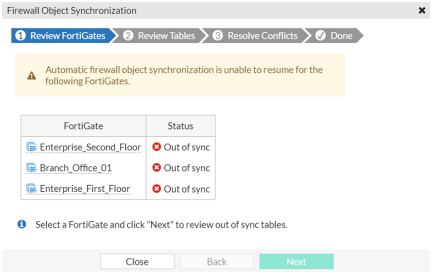



In this example, the tooltip displays a caution icon that the device is out of sync.



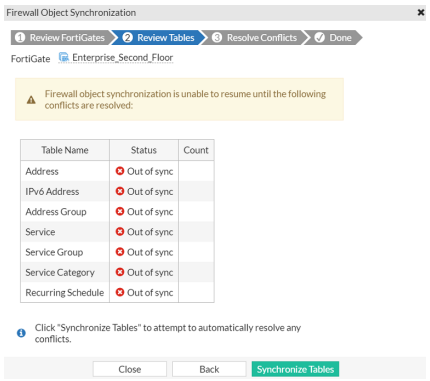

### To use the firewall object synchronization wizard in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric >Fabric Connectors* and click *Open Synchronization Wizard*.
   A list of FortiGates and their synchronization status displays.

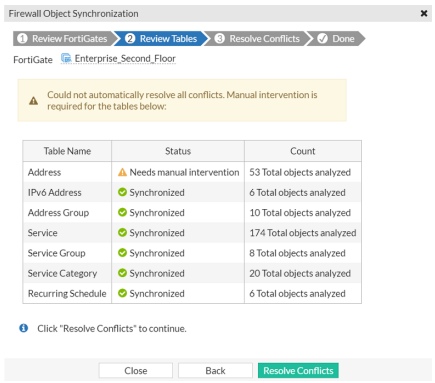



2. Select a FortiGate that is *Out of sync* and click *Next*.
   A list of tables and their synchronization status displays.

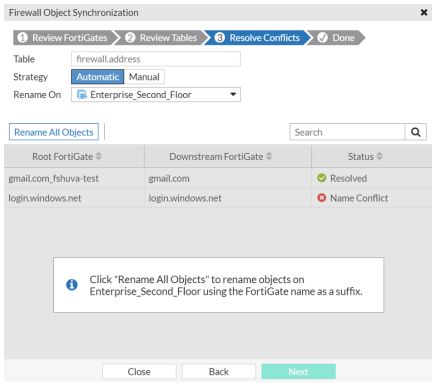
3. Click *Synchronize Tables*.




The FortiGate attempts to automatically resolve the conflicts. In this example, the address table requires manual intervention.

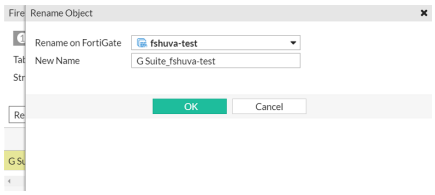



4. Click *Resolve Conflicts*.
5. For *Strategy*, choose one of the following.
   a. Automatic resolve (automatically resolves all the name conflicts and renames them on the selected FortiGate using the FortiGate name as a suffix):
      i. Click *Automatic*.
      ii. Click *Rename All Objects*.

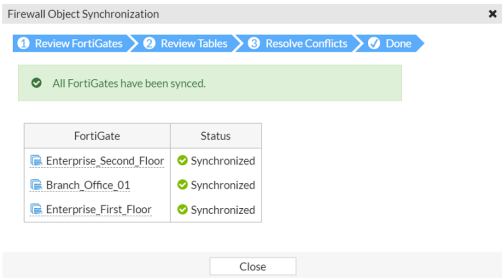



   b. Manual resolve:
      i. Click *Manual*.
      ii. Double-click an object and re-name it.

iii. Click *OK*.




6. Click *Next*.
   An updated list of FortiGates and their synchronization status displays.



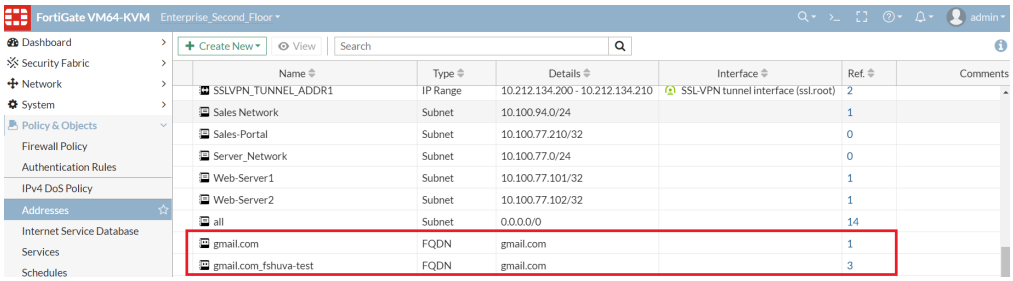

7. Click *Close*.

**To verify object synchronization on downstream devices:**

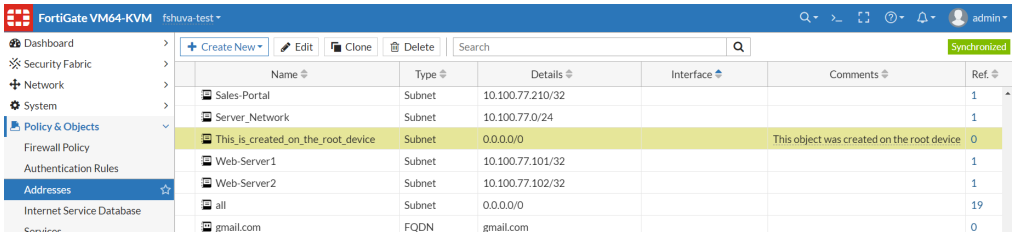
1. Log in to a downstream device.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   - An information bubble displays the following: *All objects must be created/edited on the root FortiGate, and will be read-only on downstream FortiGates*.



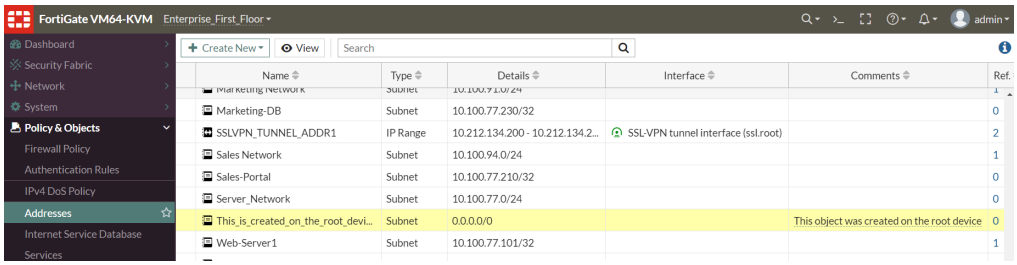

   - The following example shows an object that exists on both upstream (Enterprise_Second_Floor) and downstream (fshuva-test) FortiGates. On the downstream device, there is an existing *gmail.com*, and another object, *gmail.com_fshuva-test*, that was resolved by adding the suffix of the upstream FortiGate name to the end.



- In this example, an object created on the upstream FortiGate is synchronized to a downstream FortiGate.




The same object appears automatically on the downstream device.




## CLI commands

Object synchronization can be configured with the following commands:

```
config system csf
    set fabric-object-unification [default | local]
    set configuration-sync [default | local]
    ...
    next
end
```

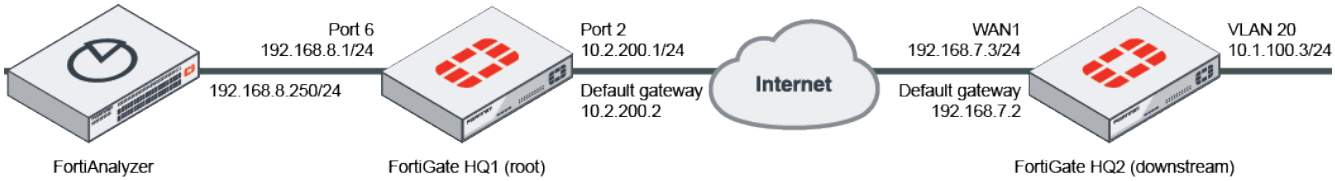
| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| fabric-object-unification | *default*: Global CMDB objects will be synchronized in Security Fabric.<br>*local*: Global CMDB objects will not be synchronized to and from this device. |
| configuration-sync | *default*: Synchronize configuration for FortiAnalyzer, FortiSandbox, and Central Management to root node.<br>*local*: Do not synchronize configuration with root node. |

# Security Fabric over IPsec VPN

This is an example of configuring Security Fabric over IPsec VPN.

## Sample topology

This sample topology shows a downstream FortiGate (HQ2) connected to the root FortiGate (HQ1) over IPsec VPN to join Security Fabric.




## Sample configuration

**To configure the root FortiGate (HQ1):**

1. Configure interface:
   a. In the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *port2*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - For the interface connected to the Internet, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.2.200.1/255.255.255.0*
   c. Edit *port6*:
      - Set *Role* to *DMZ*.
      - For the interface connected to FortiAnalyzer, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.8.250/255.255.255.0*
2. Configure the static route to connect to the Internet:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
      - Set *Interface* to *port2*.
      - Set *Gateway Address* to *10.2.200.2*.
   b. Click *OK*.
3. Configure IPsec VPN:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2*.
      - Set *Template Type* to *Custom*.
      - Click *Next*.
      - Set *Authentication* to *Method*.
      - Set *Pre-shared Key* to *123456*.
   b. Leave all other fields in their default values and click *OK*.
4. Configure the IPsec VPN interface IP address which will be used to form Security Fabric:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *To-HQ2*:
      - Set *Role* to *LAN*.
      - Set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.1/255.255.255.255*.
      - Set *Remote IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.3/255.255.255.0*.

5. Configure IPsec VPN local and remote subnet:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_2*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.3/32*.
   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2_local_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.8.0/24*.
   e. Click *OK*.
   f. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *10.1.100.0/24*.
   g. Click *OK*.
6. Configure IPsec VPN static routes:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*
   b. Click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Interface* to *To-HQ2*.

      Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Interface* to *Blackhole*.
      - Set *Administrative Distance* to *254*.
   d. Click *OK*.
7. Configure IPsec VPN policies:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*
   b. Click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ2_local*.
      - Set *Incoming Interface* to *port6*.
      - Set *Outgoing Interface* to *To-HQ2*.
      - Set *Source* to *To-HQ2_local_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Destination* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
      - Set *Service* to *All*.
      - Disable *NAT*.
   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ2_remote*.
      - Set *Incoming Interface* to *To-HQ2*.
      - Set *Outgoing Interface* to *port6*.
      - Set *Source* to *To-HQ2_remote_subnet_1, To-HQ2_remote_subnet_2*.

- Set *Destination* to *To-HQ2_local_subnet_1*.
- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Enable *NAT*.
- Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

**e.** Click *OK*.

8. Configure Security Fabric:
   **a.** Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   **b.** For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   After *FortiGate Telemetry* is enabled, FortiAnalyzer automatically enables *Logging* and *Upload* is set to *Real Time*.
   **c.** Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Serve as Fabric Root*. The FortiAnalyzer settings can be configured.
   **d.** Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP (*192.168.8.250*).
   **e.** Click *OK*. The FortiAnalyzer serial number is verified.
   **f.** Enter a *Fabric name*, such as *Office-Security-Fabric*.
   **g.** Ensure *Allow other Security Fabric devices to join* is enabled and add VPN interface *To-HQ2*.
   **h.** Click *OK*.

**To configure the downstream FortiGate (HQ2):**

1. Configure interface:
   **a.** Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   **b.** Edit interface *wan1*:
   - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
   - For the interface connected to the Internet, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.7.3/255.255.255.0*.

   **c.** Edit interface *vlan20*:
   - Set *Role* to *LAN*.
   - For the interface connected to local endpoint clients, set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.1.100.3/255.255.255.0*.

2. Configure the static route to connect to the Internet:
   **a.** Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
   - Set *Destination* to *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
   - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
   - Set *Gateway Address* to *192.168.7.2*.

   **b.** Click *OK*.
3. Configure IPsec VPN:
   **a.** Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
   - Set *VPN Name* to *To-HQ1*.
   - Set *Template Type* to *Custom*.
   - Click *Next*.
   - In the *Network IP Address*, enter *10.2.200.1*.
   - Set *Interface* to *wan1*.
   - Set *Authentication* to *Method*.
   - Set *Pre-shared Key* to *123456*.

   **b.** Leave all other fields in their default values and click *OK*.

4. Configure the IPsec VPN interface IP address which will be used to form Security Fabric:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Edit *To-HQ1*:
      - Set *Role* to *WAN*.
      - Set the *IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.3/255.255.255.255*.
      - Set *Remote IP/Network Mask* to *10.10.10.1/255.255.255.0.0*.
5. Configure IPsec VPN local and remote subnet:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ1_local_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *10.1.100.0/24*.
   c. Click *OK*.
   d. Click *Create New*
      - Set *Name* to *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Type* to *Subnet*.
      - Set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.8.0/24*.
   e. Click *OK*.
6. Configure IPsec VPN static routes:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Interface* to *To-HQ1*.
   b. Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New* or *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.
      - For *Named Address*, select *Type* and select *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Interface* to *Blackhole*.
      - Set *Administrative Distance* to *254*.
   d. Click *OK*.
7. Configure IPsec VPN policies:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ1_local*.
      - Set *Incoming Interface* to *vlan20*.
      - Set *Outgoing Interface* to *To-HQ1*.
      - Set *Source* to *To-HQ1_local_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Destination* to *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
      - Set *Service* to *All*.
      - Disable *NAT*.
   b. Click *OK*.
   c. Click *Create New*.
      - Set *Name* to *vpn_To-HQ1_remote*.
      - Set *Incoming Interface* to *To-HQ1*.
      - Set *Outgoing Interface* to *vlan20*.
      - Set *Source* to *To-HQ1_remote_subnet_1*.
      - Set *Destination* to *-HQ1_local_subnet_1*.

- Set *Schedule* to *Always*.
- Set *Service* to *All*.
- Disable *NAT*.

**d.** Click *OK*.

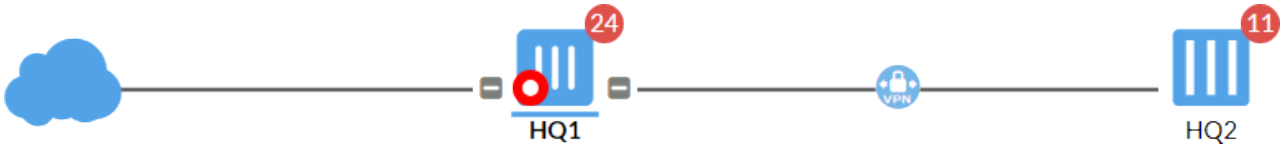
8. Configure Security Fabric:
   **a.** Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   **b.** For *Status*, click *Enable*.
   FortiAnalyzer automatically enables logging. FortiAnalyzer settings will be retrieved when the downstream FortiGate connects to the root FortiGate.
   **c.** Set the *Security Fabric role* to *Join Existing Fabric*.
   **d.** Set the *Upstream FortiGate IP* to *10.10.10.1*.
   **e.** Click *OK*.

**To authorize the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) on the root FortiGate (HQ1):**

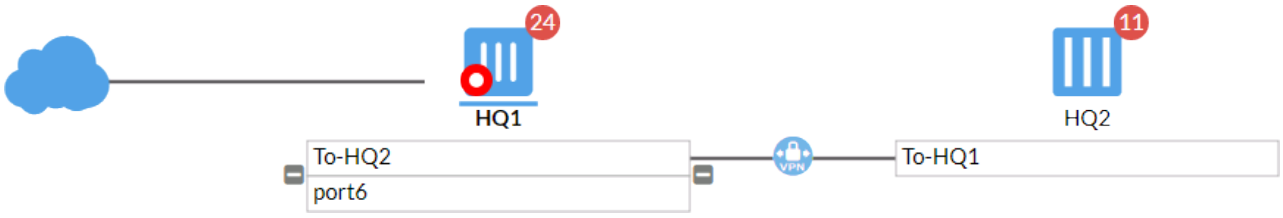
1. In the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   The *Topology* tree highlights the connected FortiGate (HQ2) with the serial number and asks you to authorize the highlighted device.
2. Select the highlighted FortiGates and select *Authorize*.
   After authorization, the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) appears in the *Topology* tree in the *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* > *Security Fabric Setup* page. This means the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) has successfully joined the Security Fabric.

**To check Security Fabric over IPsec VPN:**

1. On the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
   The root FortiGate (HQ1) is connected by the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) with VPN icon in the middle.




2. On the root FortiGate (HQ1), go to *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
   The root FortiGate (HQ1) VPN interface *To-HQ2* is connected by downstream FortiGate (HQ2) VPN interface *To-HQ1* with VPN icon in the middle.




**To run diagnose commands:**

1. Run the `diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list` command in the root FortiGate (HQ1) to show the downstream FortiGate pending for root FortiGate authorization:

```
HQ1 # diagnose sys csf authorization pending-list
Serial                  IP Address      HA-Members
Path
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
FG101ETK18002187        0.0.0.0
FG3H1E5818900718:FG101ETK18002187
```

2. Run the `diagnose sys csf downstream` command in the root FortiGate (HQ1) to show the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) after it joins Security Fabric:

```
HQ1 # diagnose sys csf downstream
 1:     FG101ETK18002187 (10.10.10.3) Management-IP: 0.0.0.0 Management-port:0 parent:
FG3H1E5818900718
        path:FG3H1E5818900718:FG101ETK18002187
        data received: Y downstream intf:To-HQ1 upstream intf:To-HQ2 admin-port:443
        authorizer:FG3H1E5818900718
```

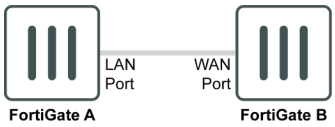
3. Run the `diagnose sys csf upstream` command in the downstream FortiGate (HQ2) to show the root FortiGate (HQ1) after the downstream FortiGate joins Security Fabric:

```
HQ2 # diagnose sys csf upstream
Upstream Information:
Serial Number:FG3H1E5818900718
IP:10.10.10.1
Connecting interface:To-HQ1
Connection status:Authorized
```

## Leveraging LLDP to simplify security fabric negotiation

This feature enables LLDP reception on WAN interfaces, and prompts FortiGates that are joining the Security Fabric if the upstream FortiGate asks.

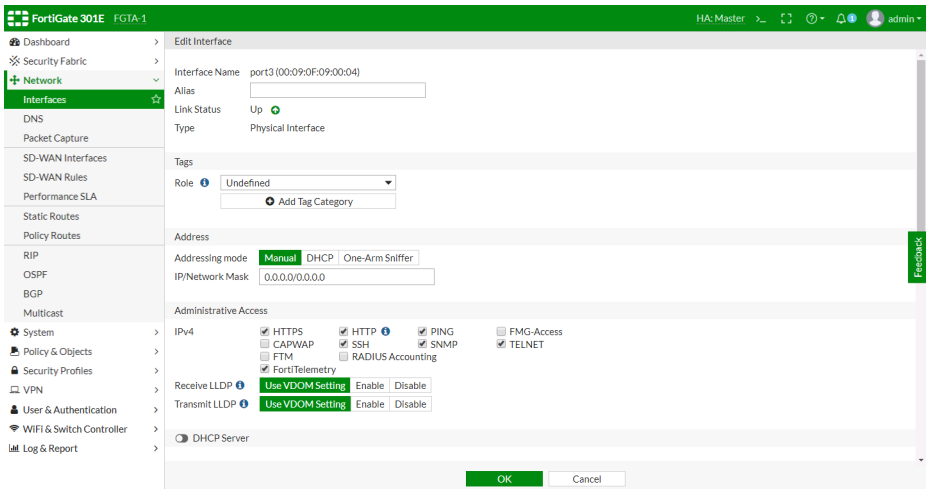
- If an interface's role is undefined, LLDP reception and transmission inherit settings from the VDOM.
- If an interface's role is WAN, LLDP reception is enabled.
- If an interface's role is LAN, LLDP transmission is enabled.




When a FortiGate B's WAN interface detects that FortiGate A's LAN interface is immediately upstream (through the default gateway), and FortiGate A has Security Fabric enabled, FortiGate B will show a notification on the GUI asking to join the Security Fabric.

**To configure LLDP reception and join a Security Fabric:**

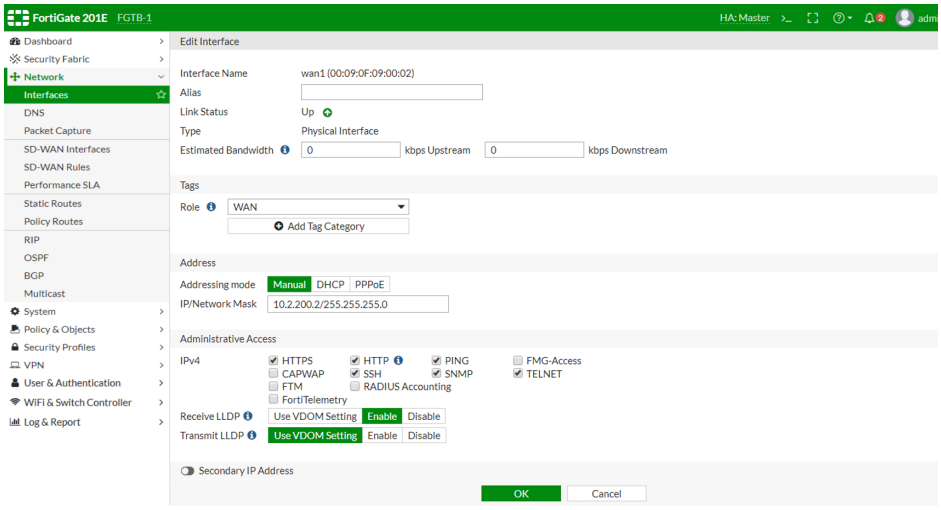
1. Go To *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Configure an interface:
   - If the interface's role is undefined, under *Administrative Access*, set *Receive LLDP* and *Transmit LLDP* to *Use VDOM Setting*.




Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "port3"
        set lldp-reception vdom
        set lldp-transmission vdom
        set role undefined
        ...
    next
end
```

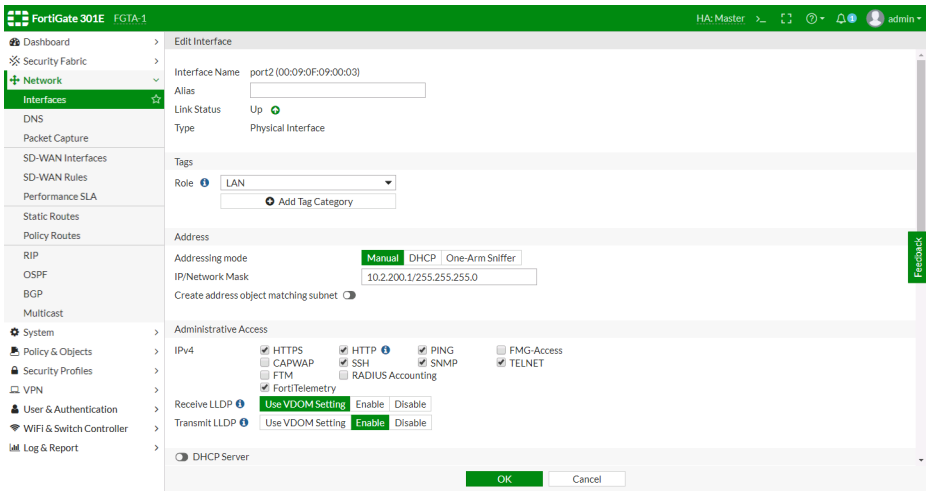
- If the interface's role is WAN, under *Administrative Access*, set *Receive LLDP* to *Enable* and *Transmit LLDP* to *Use VDOM Setting*.




Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set lldp-reception enable
        set lldp-transmission vdom
        set role wan
        ...
    next
end
```

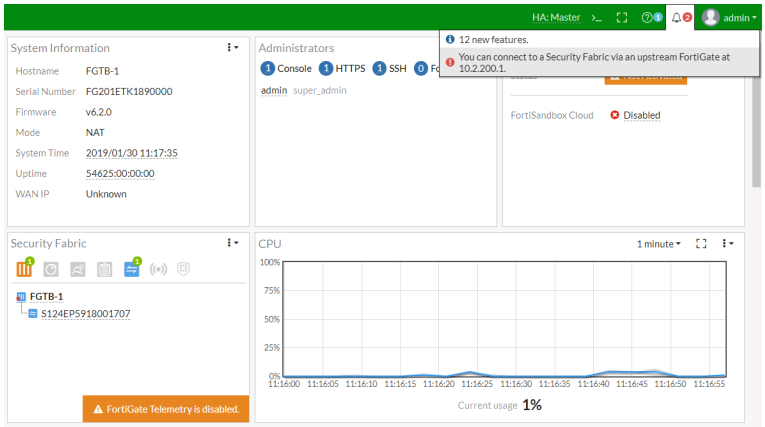
- If the interface's role is LAN, under *Administrative Access*, set *Receive LLDP* to *Use VDOM Setting* and *Transmit LLDP* to *Enable*.




Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set lldp-reception vdom
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set role lan
        ...
    next
end
```

A notification will be shown on FortiGate B.




3. Click the notification. The *Core Network Security* page with the Security Fabric settings opens. All the required settings automatically configured.
4. Click *OK* to apply the settings, or use the following CLI commands:

```
config system csf
    set status enable
    set upstream-ip 10.2.200.1
end
```

# Configuring the Security Fabric with SAML

Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) is an open standard for exchanging authentication and authorization data between one Identity Provider (IdP) and one or more Service Providers (SP). Both parties exchange messages using the XML protocol as transport. FortiGate firewall devices can be configured as IdPs or SPs.

When the Security Fabric is enabled, you can configure the root FortiGate as the IdP. You can also configure downstream FortiGates to be automatically configured as SPs, with all links required for SAML communication, when added to the Security Fabric. Administrators must still be authorized on each device. Credentials are verified by the root FortiGate, and login credentials are shared between devices. Once authorized, an administrator can move between fabric devices without logging in again.

Optionally, the downstream FortiGate can also be manually configured as an SP, and then linked to the root FortiGate.

The authentication service is provided by the root FortiGate using local system admin accounts for authentication. Any of the administrator account types can be used for SAML log in. After successful authentication, the administrator logs in to the first downstream FortiGate SP, and can then connect to other downstream FortiGates that have the SSO account properly configured, without needing to provide credentials again, as long as admins use the same browser session. In summary, the root FortiGate IdP performs SAML SSO authentication, and individual device administrators define authorization on FortiGate SPs by using security profiles.

## Configuring single-sign-on in the Security Fabric

SAML SSO enables a single FortiGate device to act as the identify provider (IdP), while other FortiGate devices act as service providers (SP) and redirect logins to the IdP.



Only the root FortiGate can be the identity provider (IdP). The downstream FortiGates can be configured as service providers (SP).

The process is as follows:

1. Configuring the root FortiGate as the IdP on page 183
2. Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP on page 184
3. Configuring certificates for SAML SSO on page 186
4. Verifying the single-sign-on configuration on page 187

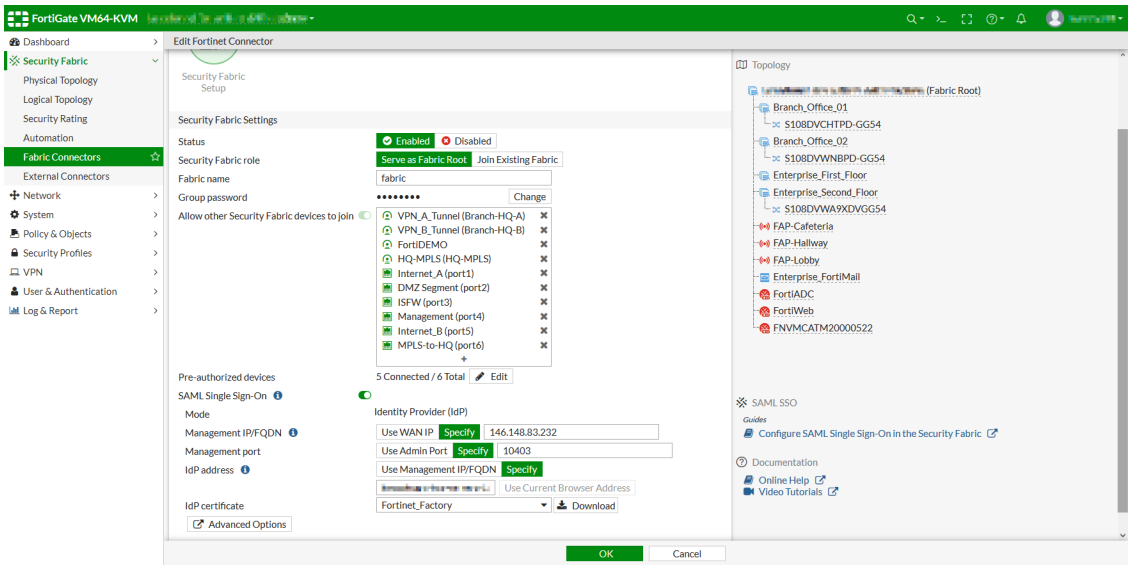
You can also use the CLI. See CLI commands for SAML SSO on page 188.

### Configuring the root FortiGate as the IdP

**To configure the root FortiGate as the IdP:**

1. Log in to the root FortiGate.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. Enable *SAML Single Sign-On*. The *Mode* field is automatically populated as *Identity Provider (IdP)*.
4. Enter an IP address in the *Management IP/FQDN* box.

5. Enter a management port in the *Management port* box.
   The *Management IP/FQDN* will be used by the SPs to redirect the login request. The *Management IP/FQDN* and *Management port* must be reachable from the user's device.
6. Select the *IdP certificate*.
7. Click *OK*.




## Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP

There are two ways to configure the downstream FortiGate:

- From the root FortiGate
- From within the downstream device

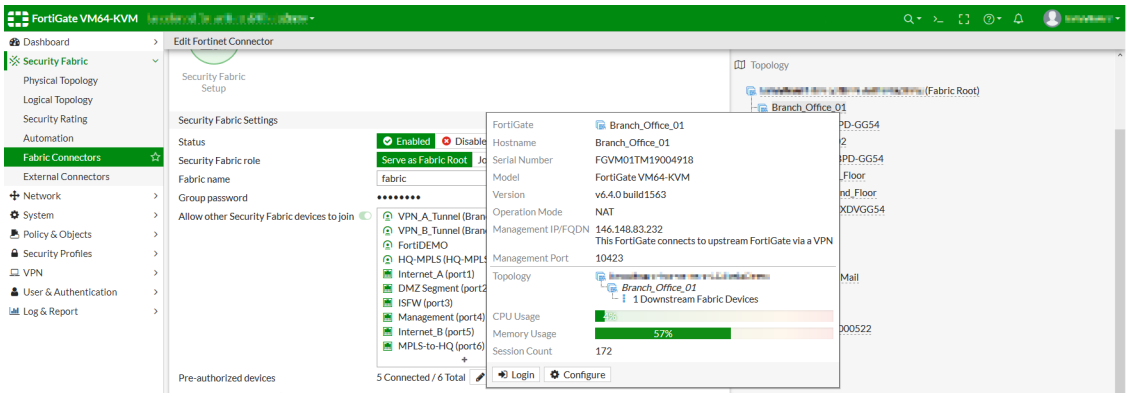


An SP must be a member of the Security Fabric before you configure it.

**To configure the downstream FortiGate from the root FortiGate:**

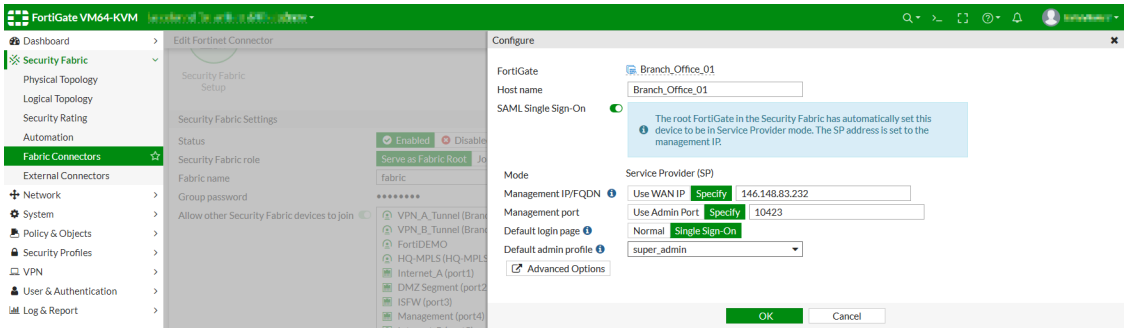
1. Log in to the root FortiGate.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.

3. In the *Topology* tree, hover over a FortiGate and click *Configure*.




The *Configure* pane opens.

4. Enable *SAML Single Sign-On*. The *Mode* field is automatically populated as *Service Provider (SP)*.
5. Enter an IP address in the *Management IP/FQDN* box.
6. Enter a management port in the *Management port* box.
   The *Management IP/FQDN* will be used by the IdP and so other SPs can redirect to each other. The *Management port* must be reachable from the user's device.
7. Select a *Default login page* option.
8. Select one of the following *Default admin profile* types: *prof_admin*, *super_admin*, or *super_admin_readonly*. The *no_access_admin profile* is set as the default.
9. Click *OK*.



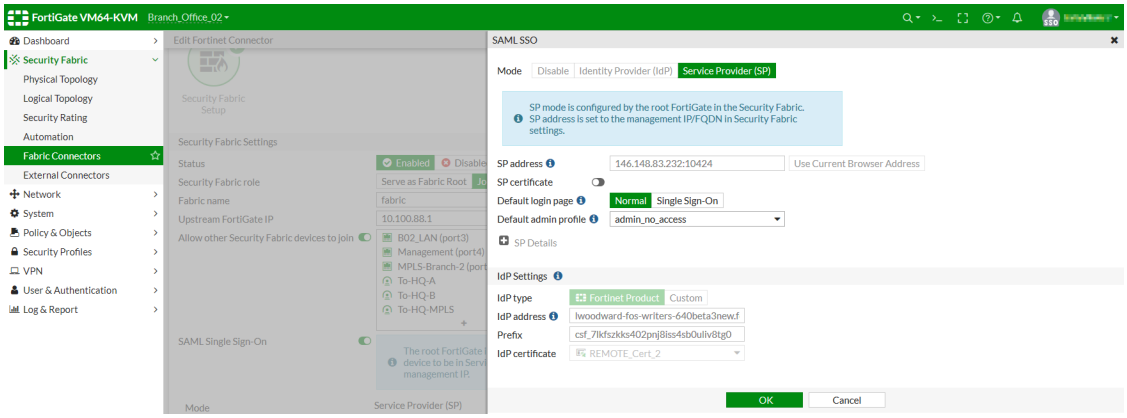

**To configure the downstream FortiGate within the device:**

1. Log in to the downstream FortiGate.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. Enable *SAML Single Sign-On*. The *Mode* field is automatically populated as *Service Provider (SP)*.
4. Enter an IP address in the *Management IP/FQDN* box.
5. Enter a management port in the *Management port* box.
   The *Management IP/FQDN* will be used by the IdP and so other SPs can redirect to each other. The *Management port* must be reachable from the user's device.
6. Select a *Default login page* option.
7. Select one of the following *Default admin profile* types: *prof_admin*, *super_admin*, or *super_admin_readonly*. The *no_access_admin profile* is set as the default.
8. Click *OK*.

## Configuring certificates for SAML SSO

Because communication between the root FortiGate IdP and FortiGate SPs is secured, you must select a local server certificate in the *IdP certificate* option on the root FortiGate. When downstream SPs join the IdP (root FortiGate), the SP automatically obtains the certificate.

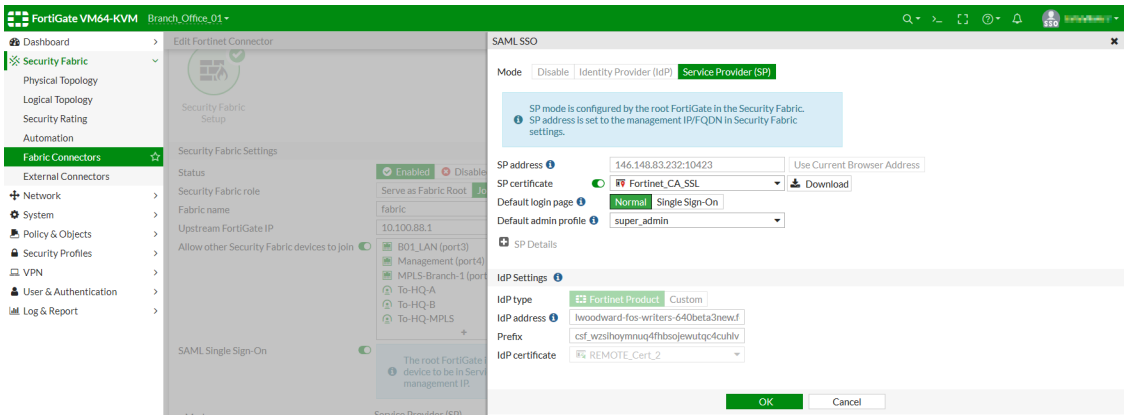
In the following SP example, the *IdP certificate* displays *REMOTE_Cert_2*, which is the root server certificate for the IdP:




It is possible to manually import a certificate from an SP to the IdP so it can be used for authentication.

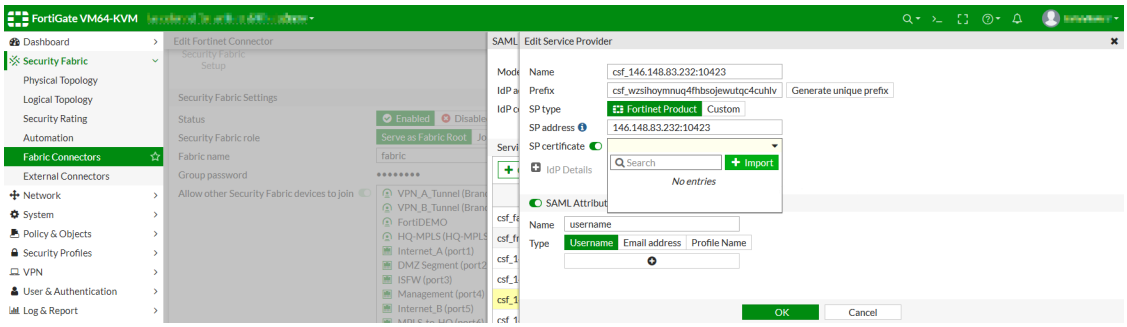
**To manually import an SP certificate to an IdP:**

1. Add the certificate:
   a. On the SP, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
   c. Enable *SP certificate* and select a certificate from the dropdown box.
   d. Click *Download*. The certificate is downloaded on the local file system.
   e. Click *OK*.




2. Import the certificate:
   a. On the IdP, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
   c. In the *Service Providers* table, select the SP from step 1 and click *Edit*.

**d.** Enable *SP certificate* and in the dropdown box, click *Import*.




The *Upload Remote Certificate* window opens.

**e.** Click *Upload* and select the certificate downloaded in step 1.

**f.** Click *OK*. The certificate is imported.

**g.** Click *OK*.

**h.** In the *IdP certificate* list, select the certificate that you imported.

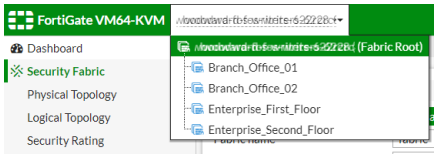
**i.** Click *OK*.

## Verifying the single-sign-on configuration

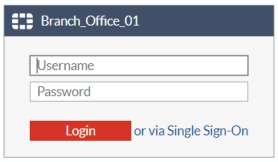
After you have logged in to a Security Fabric member using SSO, you can navigate between any Security Fabric member with SSO configured.

### To navigate between Security Fabric members:

1. Log in to a Security Fabric member that is using SSO.
2. In the top banner, click the name of the device you are logged in to. A list of Security Fabric members displays.

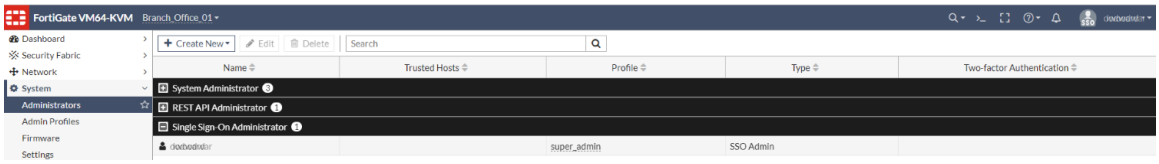



3. Click a Security Fabric member. The login page appears.
4. Select the option to log in *via Single-Sign-On*.




You are now logged in to the Security Fabric member with SSO. The letters "SSO" also display beside the user name in the top banner.

5. Go to *System* > *Administrators* > *Single-Sign-On Administrator* to view the list of SSO admins created.



## CLI commands for SAML SSO

To enter a question mark (?) or a tab, Ctrl + V must be entered first. Question marks and tabs cannot be typed or copied into the CLI Console or some SSH clients.

**To configure the IdP:**

```
config system saml
    set status enable
    set role identity-provider
    set cert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set server-address "172.16.106.74"
    config service-providers
        edit "csf_172.16.106.74:12443"
            set prefix "csf_ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20"
            set sp-entity-id "http://172.16.106.74/metadata/"
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
                edit "username"
                next
                edit "tdoc@fortinet.com"
                    set type email
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure an SP:**

```
config system saml
    set status enable
    set cert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set idp-entity-id "http://172.16.106.74/saml-idp/csf_
ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20/metadata/"
    set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.16.106.74/csf_
ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20/login/"
    set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.16.106.74/saml-idp/csf_
ngczjwqxujfsbhgr9ivhehwu37fml20/logout/"
    set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_1"
    set server-address "172.16.106.74:12443"
end
```

**To configure an SSO administrator:**

```
config system sso-admin
    edit "SSO-admin-name"
        set accprofile <SSO admin user access profile>
        set vdom <Virtual domain(s) that the administrator can access>
    next
end
```

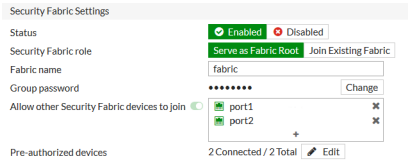
## SAML SSO with pre-authorized FortiGates

You can set up SAML SSO authentication in a Security Fabric environment by starting with a root FortiGate that has one or more pre-authorized FortiGates.

After the initial configuration, you can add more downstream FortiGates to the Security Fabric, and they are automatically configured with default values for a service provider.

**To set up basic SAML SSO for the Security Fabric:**

1. Log in to the root FortiGate of the Security Fabric.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. Join two pre-authorized FortiGates to the root FortiGate.




4. Configure the IdP (see Configuring the root FortiGate as the IdP on page 183).
5. Configure the SPs (see Configuring a downstream FortiGate as an SP on page 184).

## Navigating between Security Fabric members with SSO

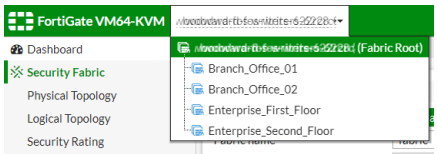
After you have logged in to a Security Fabric member by using SSO, you can navigate between any Security Fabric member with SSO configured. This can be done using the Security Fabric members dropdown menu or by logging in to a FortiGate SP from the root FortiGate IdP.

### Security Fabric members dropdown

The Security Fabric members dropdown menu allows you to easily switch between all FortiGate devices that are connected to the Security Fabric. You can also use this menu to customize a FortiGate in the Security Fabric.

**To navigate between Security Fabric members:**

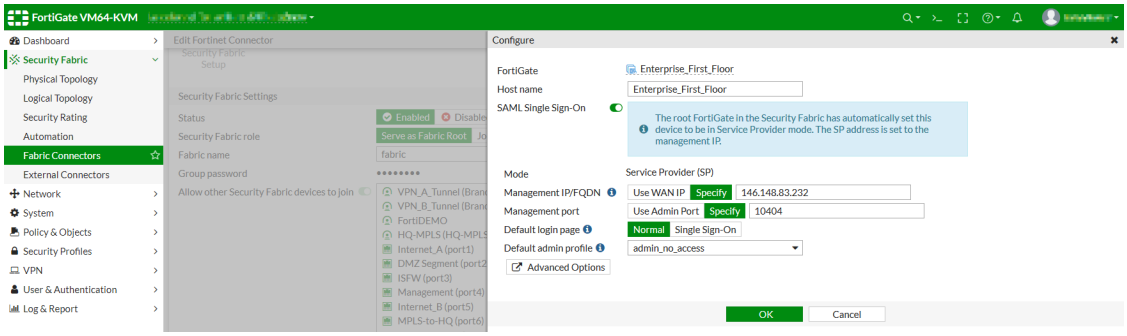
1. Log in to a Security Fabric member by using SSO.
2. In the top banner, click the name of the device you are logged into with SSO.
   A list of Security Fabric members is displayed.




3. Click the Security Fabric member.
   You are logged in to the Security Fabric member without further authentication.

### To customize a FortiGate in the Security Fabric:

1. In the Security Fabric members dropdown menu, hover the cursor over a FortiGate so the tooltip is shown.
2. Click *Configure*. The *Configure* pane opens.



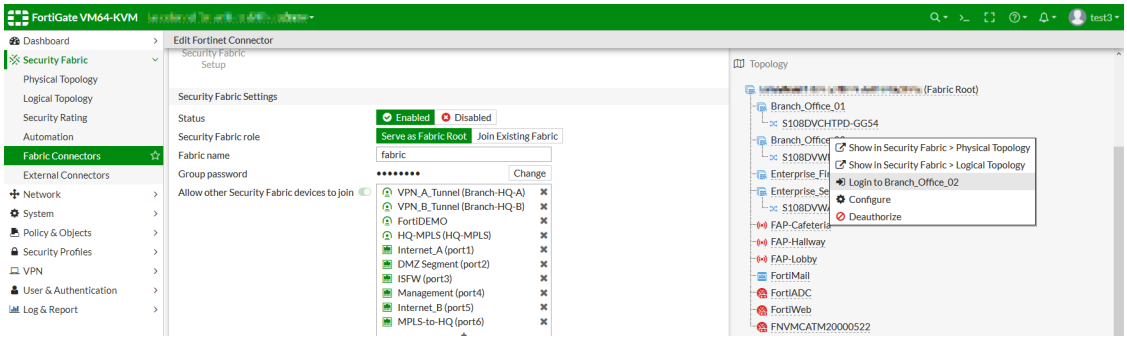

3. Edit the settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

### Logging in to an SP from the root IdP

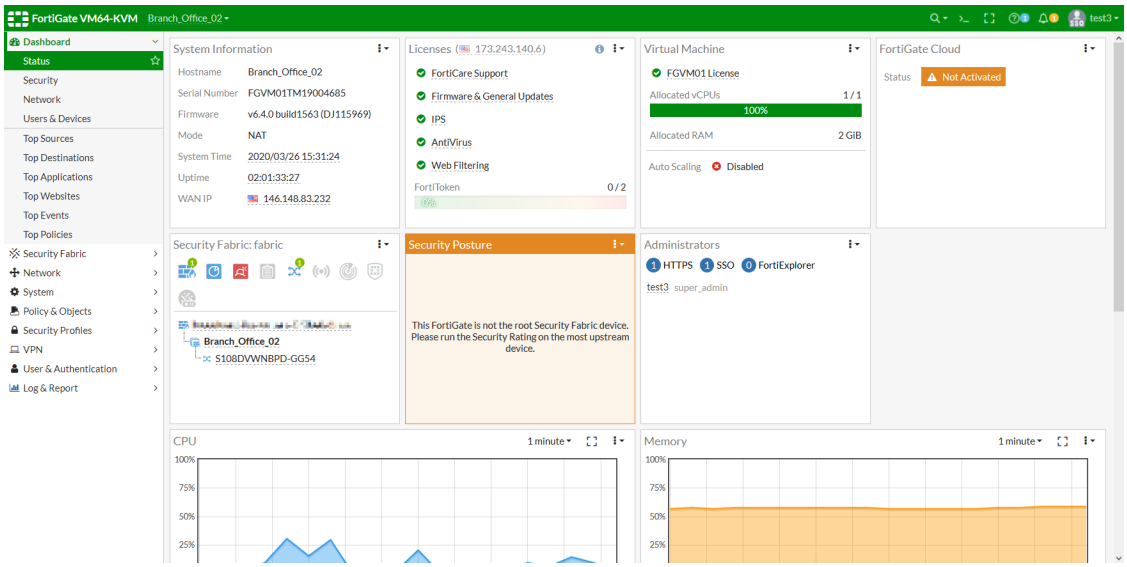
The following example describes how to log in to a root FortiGate IdP, and navigate to other FortiGate SPs in the Security Fabric without further authentication. The local administrator account is named *test3*. The local administrator account must also be available as an SSO administrator account on all downstream FortiGate SPs. Different tabs of the same browser are used to log in to the various FortiGates.

### To log in to a FortiGate SP from a root FortiGate IdP:

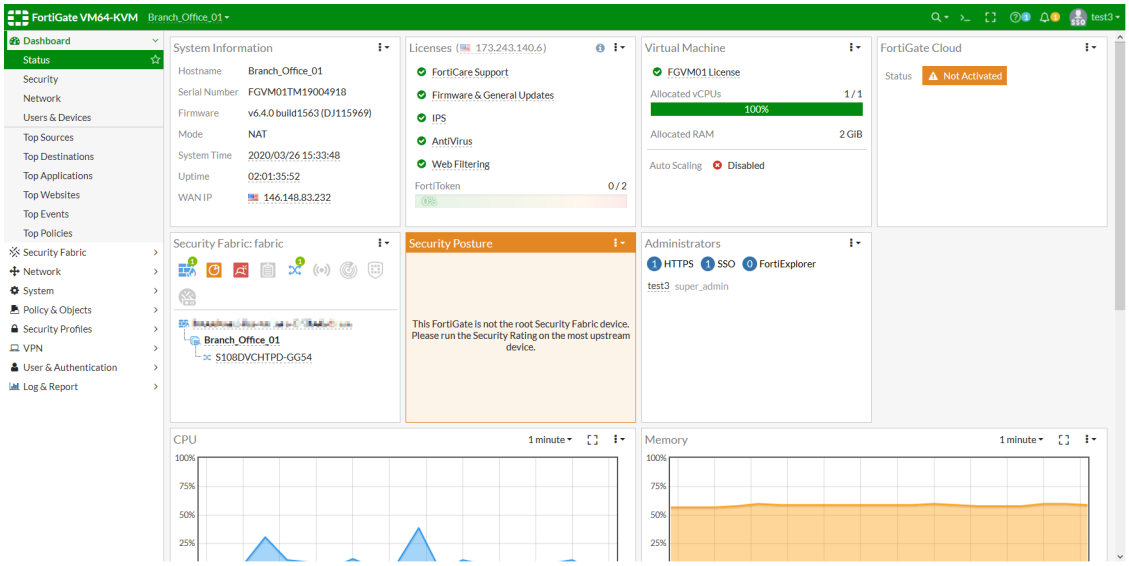
1. Log in to the root FortiGate IdP by using the local administrator account.
   In this example, the local administrator account is named *test3*.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
3. In the *Topology* tree, click one of the downstream FortiGate SPs, and select *Login to <name of FortiGate>*.




   The login screen is displayed.
4. In the login screen, select *Single Sign-On*.
   By using cookies in your local browser for the already-authenticated SSO administrator, FortiGate logs you in to the downstream FortiGate SP as the SSO administrator. In this example, the SSO administrator name is *test3*.




5. While still logged into the root FortiGate IdP in your browser, go to the browser tab for the root FortiGate IdP, and log in to another FortiGate SP that is displayed on the *Security Fabric* pane in the GUI.




SAML SSO login uses *SAML_IDP* session cookies of already authenticated admin users in your local browser cache to send to the root FortiGate IdP for authentication. If your browser cache is manually cleared, or you close your browser, you must authenticate again.

---

It is possible to log in to one downstream FortiGate SP in a Security Fabric, and then open another tab in your browser to connect to another FortiGate SP that is not a member of the Security Fabric.

This is useful in cases where the SSO administrator and the local system administrator on the FortiGate SP both have the same login name, but are two different entities.

---

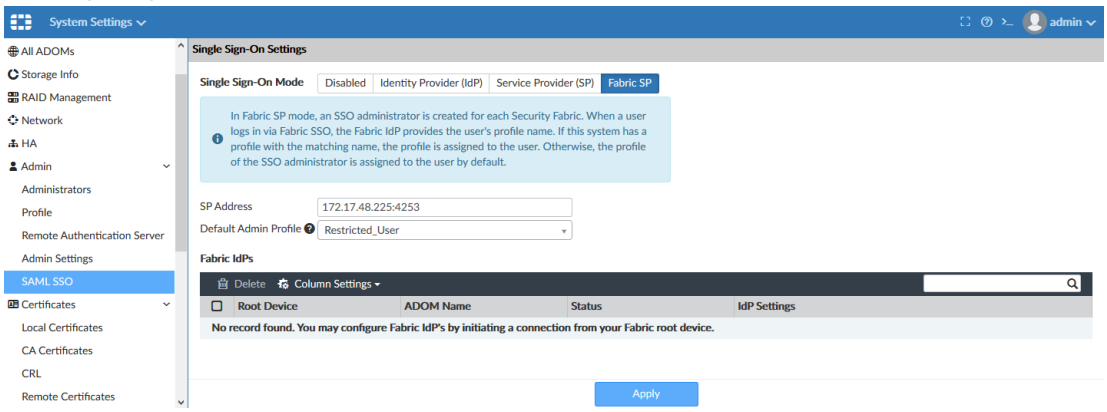
# Integrating FortiAnalyzer management using SAML SSO

When a FortiGate is configured as the SAML SSO IdP, FortiAnalyzer can register itself as the SP (FortiAnalyzer must be running version 6.4.0). Once registered, FortiAnalyzer will be added automatically to the Security Fabric navigation in FortiOS. A similar dropdown navigation is displayed in FortiAnalyzer where users can navigate to the FortiGate using SAML SSO.

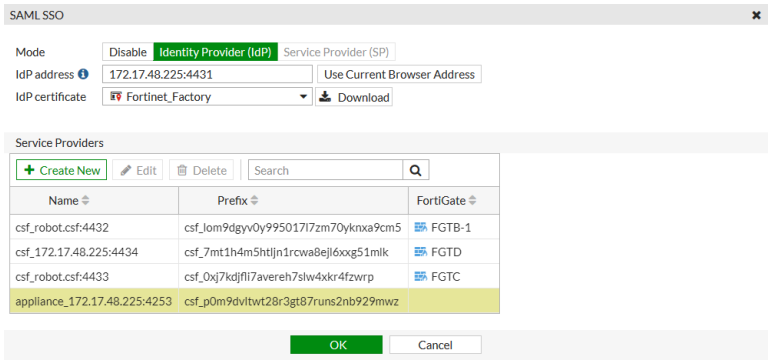
The following example assumes the root FortiGate (FGTA-1, server address 172.17.48.225:4431) has been configured as the SAML SSO IdP, and FortiAnalyzer logging has been enabled in the Security Fabric settings.

### To enable FortiAnalyzer as a Fabric SP in the GUI:

1. In FortiAnalyzer, go to *System Settings* > *Admin* > *SAML SSO*.
2. For *Single Sign-On Mode*, click *Fabric SP* and enter the *SP Address*.




3. Click *Apply*.
   FortiAnalyzer will automatically register itself on the FortiGate as an appliance visible in the list of SPs. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, edit the *Security Fabric Setup* connector, then click *Advanced Options* to view the list of SPs.




### To enable FortiAnalyzer as a Fabric SP in the CLI:

1. In FortiAnalyzer, enable the device as a Fabric SP:

```
config system saml
    set status enable
    set role FAB-SP
```

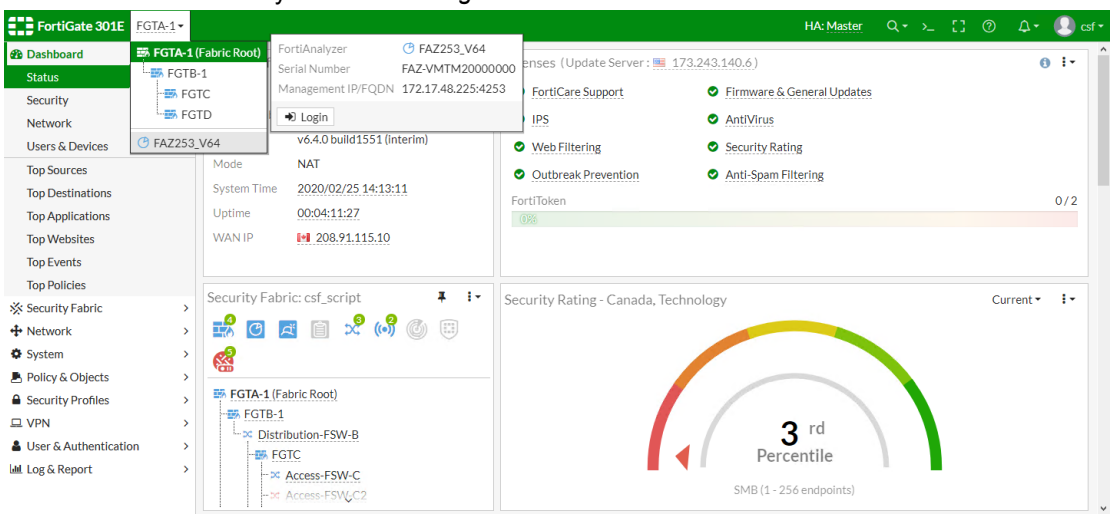
```
    set server-address "172.17.48.225:4253"
end
```

FortiAnalyzer will register itself on the FortiGate as an appliance. To view the configuration in FortiOS:

```
show system saml
    config service-providers
        edit "appliance_172.17.48.225:4253"
            set prefix "csf_p0m9dvltwt28r3gt87runs2nb929mwz"
            set sp-entity-id "http://172.17.48.225:4253/metadata/"
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.17.48.225:4253/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.17.48.225:4253/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.17.48.225:4253/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
                edit "username"
                next
                edit "profilename"
                    set type profile-name
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

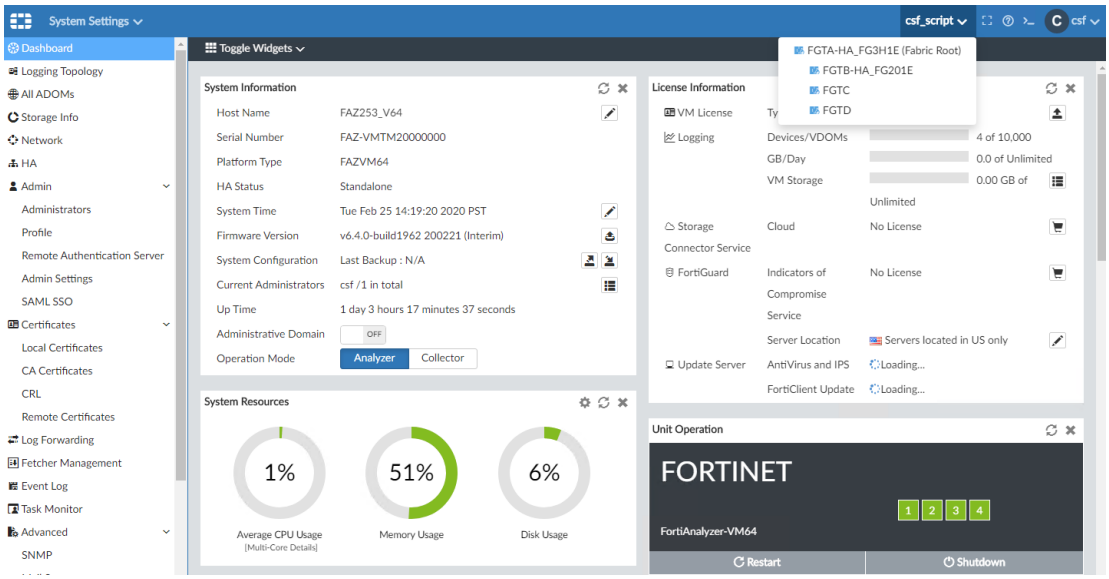
**To navigate between devices using SAML SSO:**

1. Log in to the root FortiGate.
2. In the toolbar, click the device name to display the Security Fabric members dropdown.
3. Hover over the FortiAnalyzer and click *Login*.




4. Log in to the FortiAnalyzer using SAML SSO.

5. In the toolbar, click the Security Fabric members dropdown to navigate between other FortiGates.

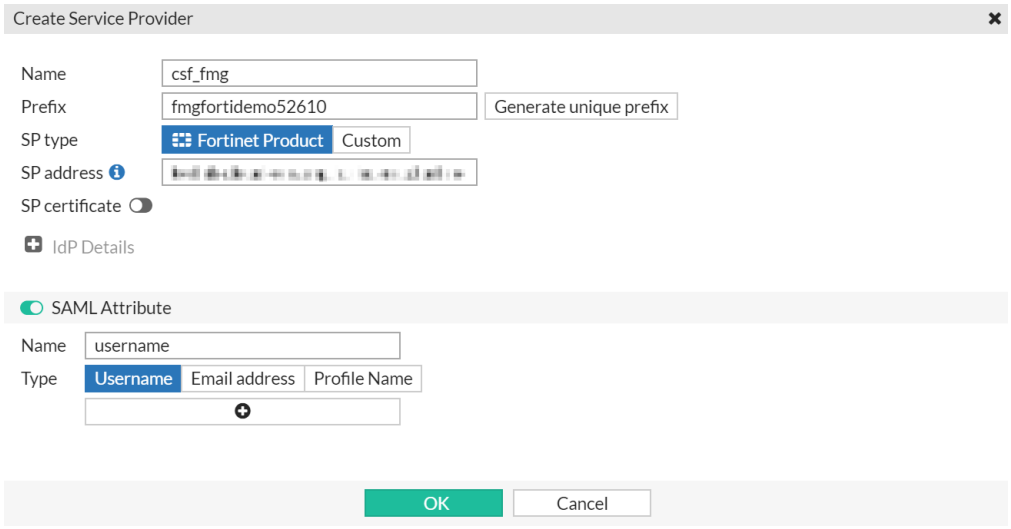



## Integrating FortiManager management using SAML SSO

When a FortiGate is configured as the SAML SSO IdP, FortiManager can be added as an SP.

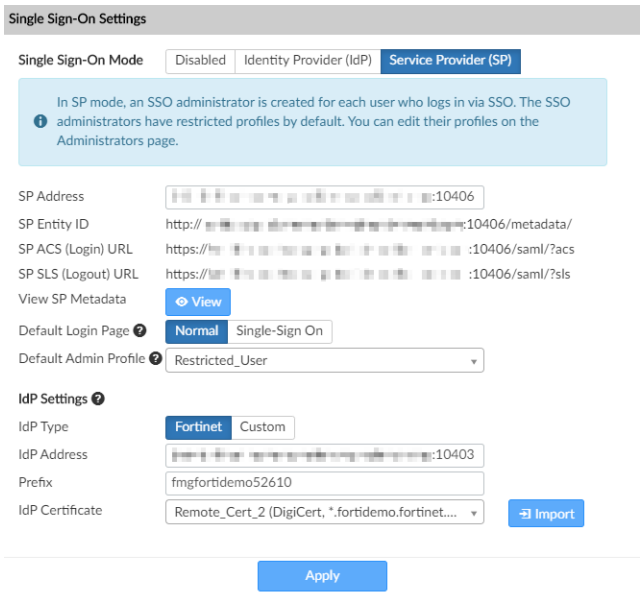
**To configure FortiManager as a Fabric SP:**

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*, and edit the *Security Fabric Setup* connector.
2. In the *Security Fabric Settings* section, click *Advanced Options*.
3. In the *Service Providers* section, click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name and a prefix for the SP. FortiOS generates a unique prefix, but you can enter your own.
5. In *SP address*, enter the FortiManager address including the port number.

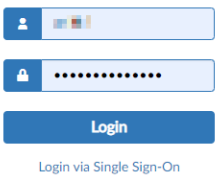



6. Click *OK*.
7. In FortiManager, go to *System Settings* > *Admin* > *SAML SSO* and in the *Single Sign-On Mode* section, click *Service Provider (SP)*.

8. Configure the *IdP Settings*:
   a. For *IdP Type*, click *Fortinet*.
   b. For *IdP Address*, enter the root FortiGate address including the port number.
   c. Enter the *Prefix* of the SP.
   d. For *IdP Certificate*, import the same certificate used on the root FortiGate.
   e. Click *Apply*.




9. To verify that the configuration works, log out of FortiManager and log in using the *Login via Single-Sign-On* link.

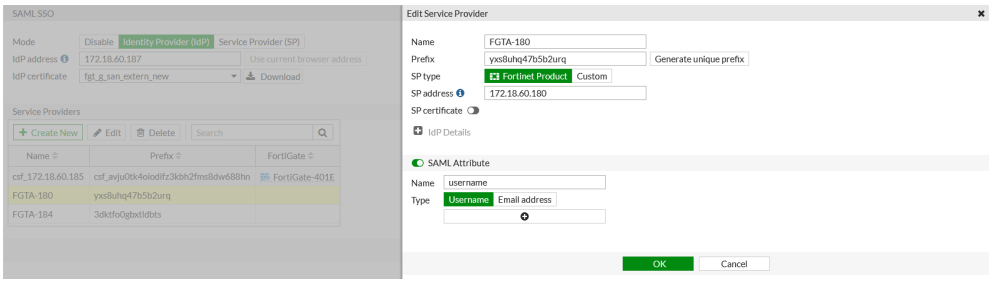



## Advanced option - FortiGate SP changes

From a root FortiGate IdP, you can edit each of the FortiGate SPs. For example, you can edit a FortiGate SP to generate a new prefix, or you can add or modify SAML attributes. When you generate a new prefix value, it is propagated to the respective downstream FortiGates.

**To edit an SP from the root FortiGate (IdP):**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
2. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
3. In the *Service Providers* table, select a device, and click *Edit*. The *Edit Service Provider* pane opens.
4. Edit the settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.



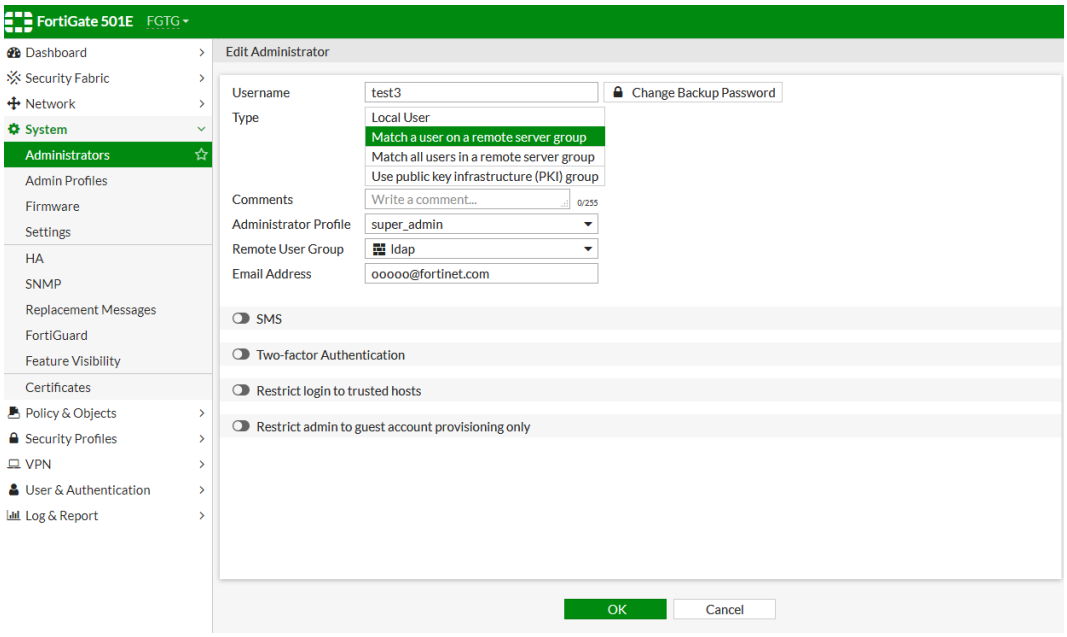

## Advanced option - unique SAML attribute types

The default SAML attribute type is *username*. When the attribute type is set to *username*, SSO administrator accounts created on FortiGate SPs use the login username that is provided by the user for authentication on the root FortiGate IdP.

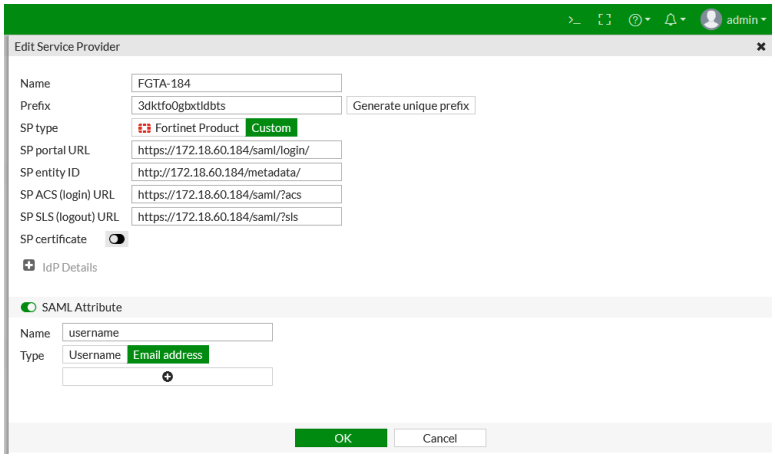
Because user names might not be unique, cases can occur where the user name is the same for the SSO administrator and the local administrator on the FortiGate SP. As a result, you might be unable to distinguish between actions taken by the local administrator and the SSO administrator on the FortiGate SP when looking at the system log. By using a unique SAML attribute type, such as an email address, you can create unique user names to better track what actions were taken by each administrator.

**To configure a unique SAML attribute using the GUI:**

1. On the root FortiGate (IdP), assign a unique email address to local administrator.
   In this example, the local administrator name is *test3*.
   a. Go to *System* > *Administrators*, and expand the list of local users.
   b. Select the local user, and click *Edit*.
   c. In the *Type* field, select *Match a user on a remote server group*.
   d. In the *Remote User Group* field, select a group.
   e. In the *Email Address* field, enter the email address.
   f. Click *OK*.



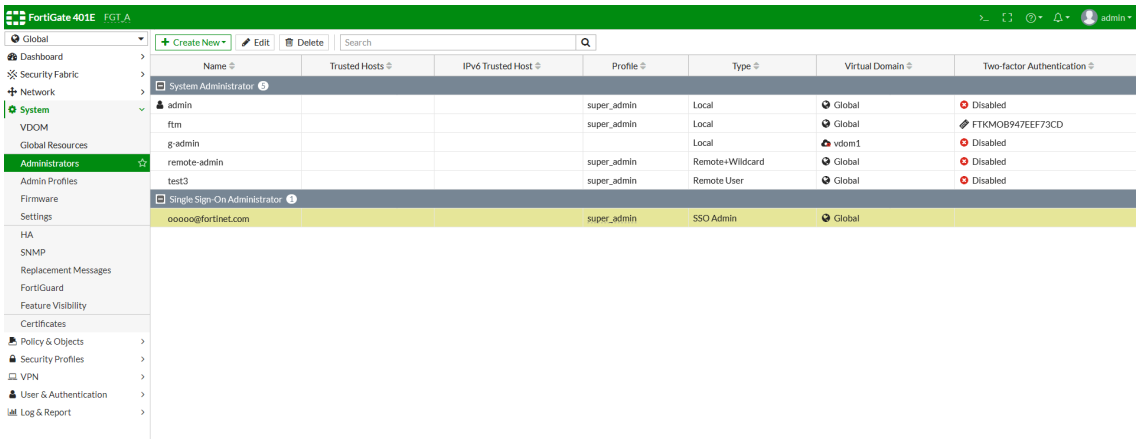

2. On the root FortiGate (IdP), update the SAML configuration:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric > Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *Security Fabric Setup* card.
   b. Click *Advanced Options*. The *SAML SSO* pane opens.
   c. In the *Service Providers* table, select the FortiGate, and click *Edit*. The *Edit Service Provider* pane opens.
   d. For *SP type*, select *Custom*.
   e. In the *SAML Attribute* section for *Type*, select *Email address*.
   f. Beside *Type*, select *Email address*.
   g. Click *OK*.




After the administrator (test3) logs in to the FortiGate SP for the first time, SAML authentication occurs on FortiGate SP. A new SSO administrator account is created, and the account name is now the email address instead of the login name (test3).

**To view the new SSO administrator account:**

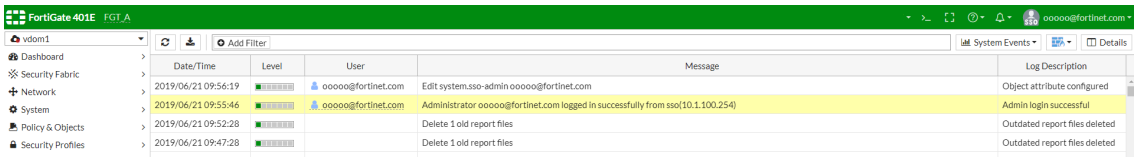
1. In the SP, go to *System* > *Administrators*, and expand the list of SSO administrators.
   The email address (*ooooo@fortinet.com*) is listed as the account name:




   If the SAML attribute had been set to the default setting of *username*, the user name for the SSO administrator account would have been (*test3*).

**To view the SSO administrator activity in the log files:**

1. In the SP, go to *Log & Report* > *Events*.
   Because the SAML attribute is set to *Custom*, the SSO administrator account *ooooo@fortinet.com* is used as the user name on the FortiGate SP, and it appears in the log files:




**To configure a unique SAML attribute using the CLI:**

```
config system saml
   set status enable
   set role identity-provider
   set cert "fgt_g_san_extern_new"
   set server-address "172.18.60.187"
   config service-providers
      edit "csf_172.18.60.185"
         set prefix "csf_avju0tk4oiodifz3kbh2fms8dw688hn"
         set sp-entity-id "http://172.18.60.185/metadata/"
         set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.60.185/saml/?acs"
         set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.60.185/saml/?sls"
         set sp-portal-url "https://172.18.60.185/saml/login/"
         config assertion-attributes
            edit "username"
            next
         end
      next
      edit "FGTA-180"
         set prefix "yxs8uhq47b5b2urq"
         set sp-entity-id "http://172.18.60.180/metadata/"
```

```
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.60.180/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.60.180/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.18.60.180/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
               edit "username"
               next
            end
         next
         edit "FGTA-184"
            set prefix "3dktfo0gbxtldbts"
            set sp-entity-id "http://172.18.60.184/metadata/"
            set sp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.60.184/saml/?acs"
            set sp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.60.184/saml/?sls"
            set sp-portal-url "https://172.18.60.184/saml/login/"
            config assertion-attributes
               edit "username"
                  set type email
               next
            end
         next
      end
   end
```

The `csf_172.18.60.185` service provider was automatically added when the FortiGate SP 172.18.60.185 joined the root FortiGate IdP in the Security Fabric.

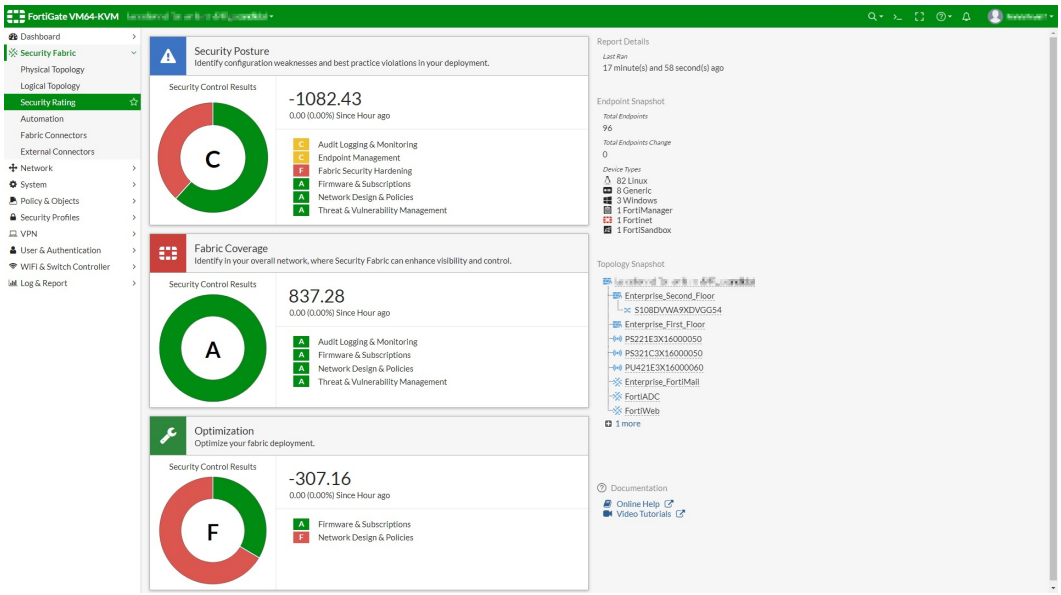
All `sp-*` options, such as `sp-portal-url`, are set with default values when a service provider is created, but can be modified using the CLI or GUI.

# Security rating

The security rating uses real-time monitoring to analyze your Security Fabric deployment, identify potential vulnerabilities, highlight best practices that can be used to improve the security and performance of your network, and calculate Security Fabric scores.

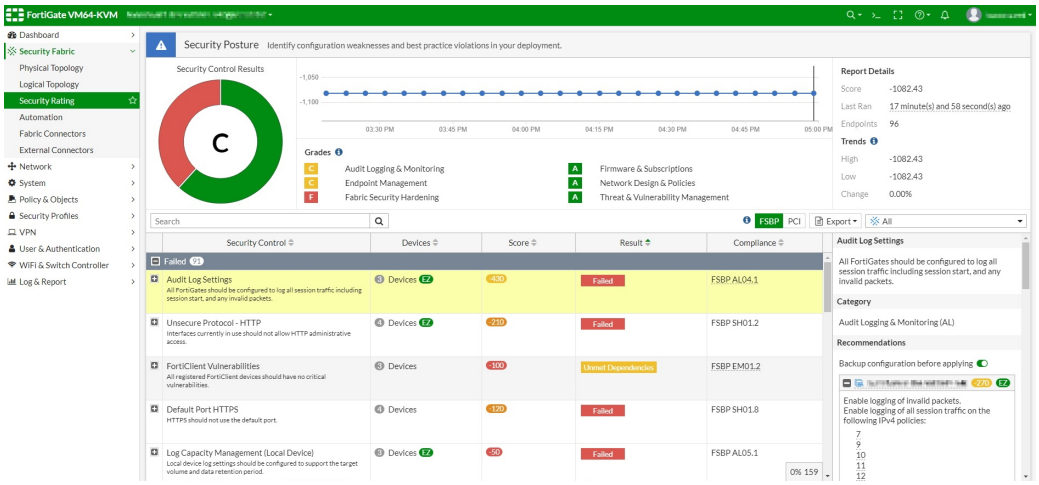
To view the security rating, go to *Security Fabric* > *Security Rating* on the root FortiGate.

The *Security Rating* page is separated into three major scorecards: *Security Posture*, *Fabric Coverage*, and *Optimization*, which provide an executive summary of the three largest areas of security focus in the Security Fabric.

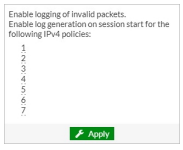



The scorecards show an overall letter grade and breakdown of the performance in sub-categories. Clicking a scorecard drills down to a detailed report of itemized results and compliance recommendations. The point score represents the net score for all passed and failed items in that area. In the drill down report, hover the cursor over a score to view the calculation breakdown.

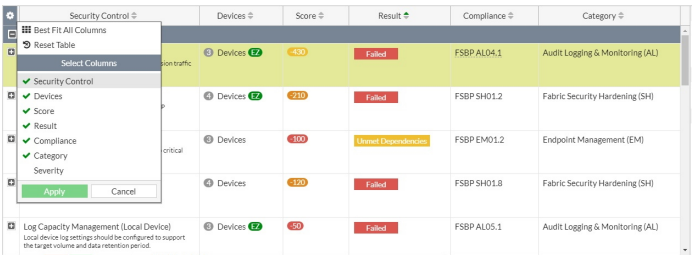
The report includes the security controls that were tested against, linking to specific FSBP or PCI compliance policies. Click the *FSBP* and *PCI* buttons to reference the corresponding standard. Users can search or filter the report results.



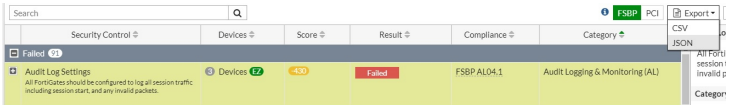

Certain remediations marked with an *EZ* symbol represent configuration recommendations that support *Easy Apply*. In the panel on the right, in the *Recommendations* section, click *Apply* to apply the changes to resolve the failed security control.




The report table can be customized by adding more columns, such as *Category*, to view, filter, or sort the results based on scorecard categories. Click the gear icon to customize the table.




Users can also export the reports as CSV or JSON files by clicking the *Export* dropdown.




To exit the current view, click the icon beside the scorecard title to return to the summary view.

For more information about security ratings, and details about each of the checks that are performed, go to Security Best Practices & Security Rating Feature.

Security rating licenses are required to run security rating checks across all the devices in the Security Fabric. It also allows ratings scores to be submitted to and received from FortiGuard for ranking networks by percentile.

See https://www.fortinet.com/support/support-services/fortiguard-security-subscriptions/security-rating.html for information.

## Security rating check scheduling

Security rating checks by default are scheduled to run automatically every four hours.

**To disable automatic security checks using the CLI:**

```
config system global
    security-rating-run-on-schedule disable
end
```

**To manually run a report using the CLI:**

```
# diagnose report-runner trigger
```

## Opt out of ranking

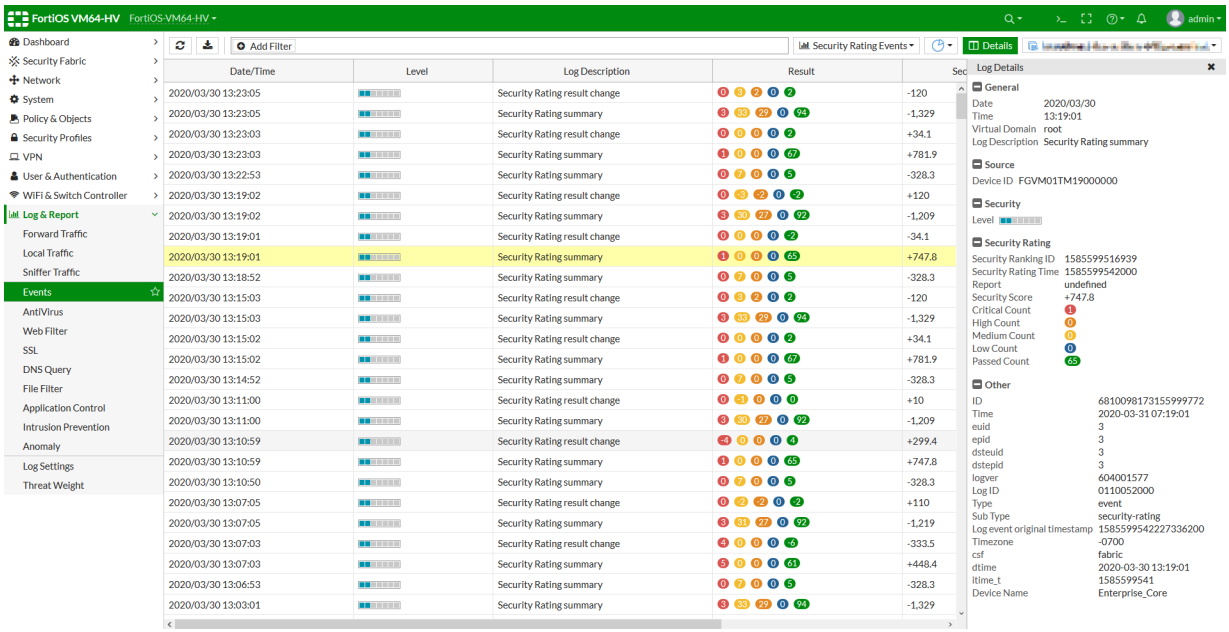
Security rating scores can be submitted to FortiGuard for comparison with other organizations' scores, allowing a percentile score to be calculated. If you opt out of submitting your score, only an absolute score will be available.

**To opt out of submitting the score using the CLI:**

```
config system global
    set security-rating-result-submission {enable | disable}
end
```

## Logging the security rating

The results of past security checks is available in *Log & Report* > *Events* by selecting *Security Rating Events* from the event type dropdown list.




An event filter subtype can be created for the Security Fabric rating so that event logs are created on the root FortiGate that summarize the results of a check, and show detailed information for the individual tests.

**To configure security rating logging using the CLI:**

```
config log eventfilter
    set security-rating enable
end
```

# Security Fabric score

The Security Fabric score is calculated when a security rating check is run, based on the severity level of the checks that are passed or failed. A higher scores represents a more secure network. Points are added for passed checks and removed for failed checks.

| Severity level | Weight (points) |
|---|---|
| Critical | 50 |

| Severity level | Weight (points) |
|---|---|
| High | 25 |
| Medium | 10 |
| Low | 5 |

To calculate the number of points awarded to a device for a passed check, the following equation is used:

$$\text{score} = \frac{\text{<severity level weight>}}{\text{<\# of FortiGates>}} \times \text{<secure FortiGate multiplier>}$$

The secure FortiGate multiplier is determined using logarithms and the number of FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric.

For example, if there are four FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric that all pass the compatible firmware check, the score for each FortiGate device is calculated with the following equation:

$$\frac{50}{4} \times 1.292 = 16.15 \text{ points}$$

All of the FortiGate devices in the Security Fabric must pass the check in order to receive the points. If any one of the FortiGate devices fails a check, the devices that passed are not awarded any points. For the device that failed the check, the following equation is used to calculated the number of points that are lost:

$$\text{score} = \text{<severity level weight>} \times \text{<secure FortiGate multiplier>}$$

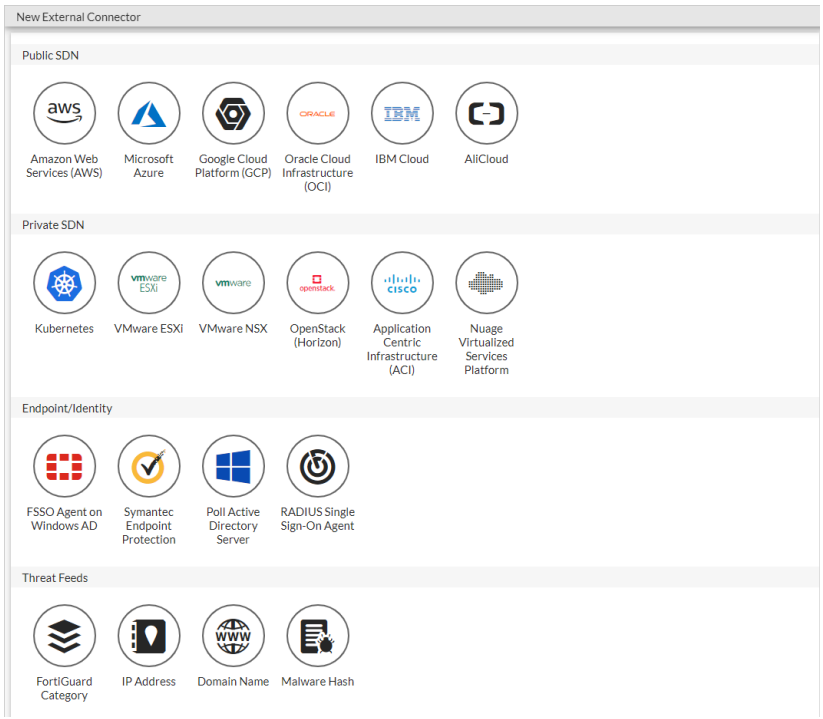
For example, if the check finds two critical FortiClient vulnerabilities, the score is calculated with the following equation:

$$-50 \times 2 = -100 \text{ points}$$

Scores are not affected by checks that do not apply to your network. For example, if there are no FortiAP devices in the Security Fabric, no points will be added or subtracted for the FortiAP firmware version check.

# External connectors

The following external connector categories are available in the Security Fabric: Public SDN, Private SDN, Endpoint/Identity, and Threat Feeds.




If VDOMs are enabled, SDN and Threat Feeds connectors are in the global settings, and Endpoint/Identity connectors are per VDOM.

## SDN connectors

Fabric connectors to SDNs provide integration and orchestration of Fortinet products with SDN solutions. Fabric connectors ensure that any changes in the SDN environment are automatically updated in your network.

There are four steps to creating and using an SDN connector:

1. Gather the required information
2. Create the fabric connector on page 204
3. Create a fabric connector address on page 205
4. Add the address to a firewall policy on page 206

An example of creating a Microsoft Azure SDN connector is available at https://docs.fortinet.com/vm/azure/fortigate/6.4/azure-cookbook/6.4.1/502895/configuring-a-fabric-connector-in-azure.

### Create the fabric connector

**To create an SDN Fabric connector in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click the service that you are using.

4. Enter the *Name*, *Status*, and *Update Interval* for the connector.
5. Enter the previously collected information for the specific connector that you are creating.
6. Click *OK*.

**To create an SDN Fabric connector in the CLI:**

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit <name>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set type {connector type}
        ...
        set update-interval <integer>
    next
end
```



The available CLI commands will vary depending on the selected SDN connector type.

## Create a fabric connector address

A fabric connector address can be used in the following ways:

- As the source or destination address for firewall policies.
- To automatically update changes to addresses in the environment of the service that you are using, based on specified filtering conditions.
- To automatically apply changes to firewall policies that use the address, based on specified filtering conditions.

**To create a fabric connector address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Enter a name for the address.
4. Set the *Type* to *Fabric Connector Address*.
5. Select an *SDN Connector* from the dropdown list, or click *Create New* to make a new one.
6. Set the *SDN address type*. Only addresses of the selected type will be collected.
7. Configure the connector specific settings.
8. Select an *Interface* for the address, or leave it as *any*, enable or disable *Show in Address List*, and optionally add *Comments*.
9. Add tags.
10. Click *OK*.

**To create a fabric connector address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall address
    edit <name>
        set type dynamic
        set sdn <sdn_connector>
        set visibility enable
```

```
        set associated-interface <interface_name>
        set color <integer>
        ...
        set comment <comment>
        config tagging
            edit <name>
                set category <string>
                set tags <strings>
            next
        end
    next
end
```



The available CLI commands will vary depending on the selected SDN connector type.

## Add the address to a firewall policy

A fabric connector address can be used as either the source or destination address.

**To add the address to a firewall policy in the GUI:**

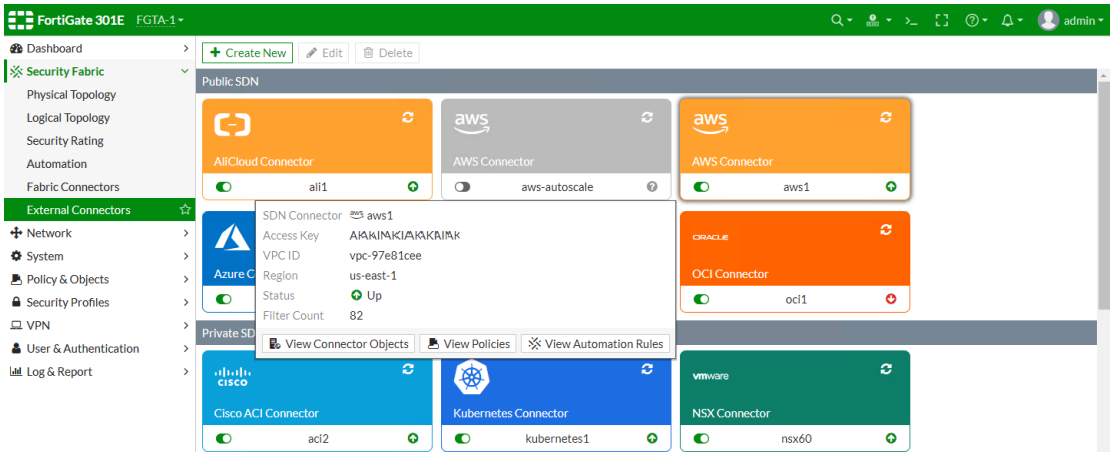
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the policy.
4. Set the incoming and outgoing interfaces.
5. Use the fabric connector address as the source or destination address.
6. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
7. Click *OK*.

**To add the address to a firewall policy in the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set name <name>
        set srcintf <port_name>
        set dstintf <port_name>
        set srcaddr <firewall_address>
        set dstaddr <firewall_address>
        set action accept
        set schedule <schedule>
        set service <service>
    next
            end
```

## Connector tooltips

In the *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* page, hover over an SDN connector to view a tooltip that shows basic configuration information.




There are three buttons that provide additional information:

- *View Connector Objects* shows the connector's dynamic objects, such as filters and instances.
- *View Policies* shows a list of policies that use the dynamic addresses from the connector.
- *View Automation Rules* shows a list of automation actions that use the connector.

## AliCloud SDN connector

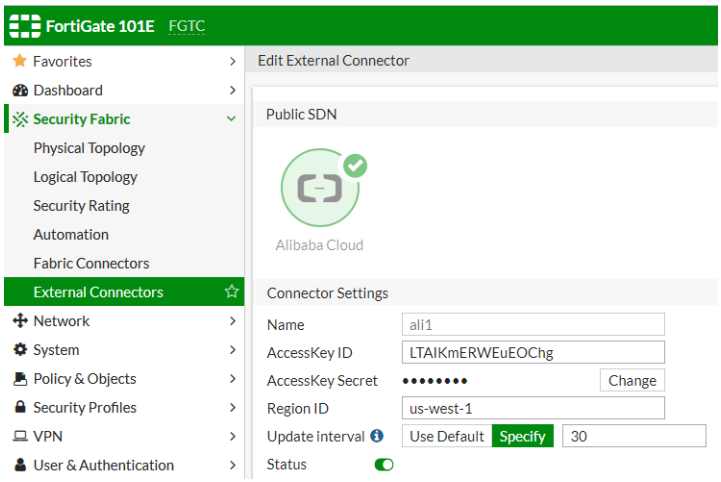
FortiOS automatically updates dynamic addresses for AliCloud using an AliCloud SDN connector, including mapping the following attributes from AliCloud instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

- ImageId
- InstanceId
- SecurityGroupId
- VpcId
- VSwitchId
- TagKey
- TagValue

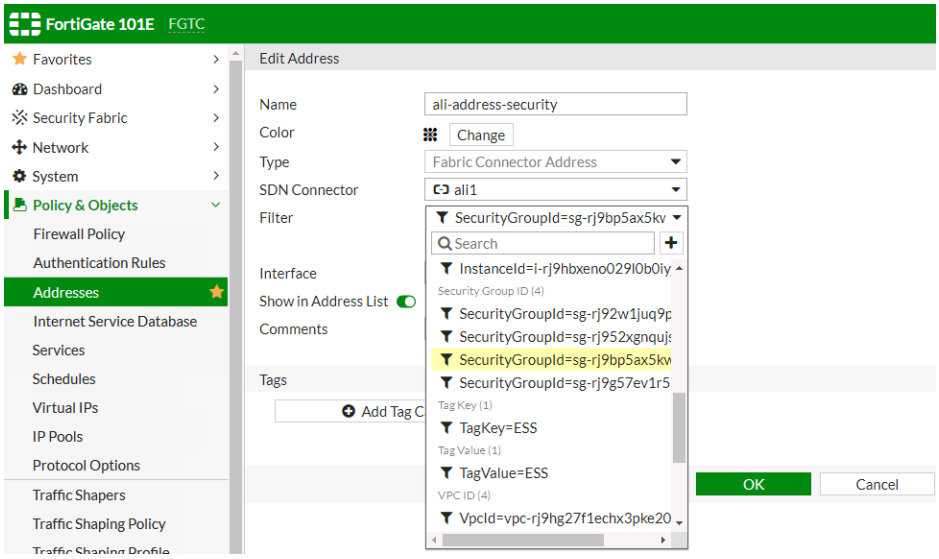
**To configure AliCloud SDN connector using the GUI:**

1. Configure the AliCloud SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *AliCloud*.
   c. Configure as shown, substituting the access key, secret, and region ID for your deployment. The update

interval is in seconds.

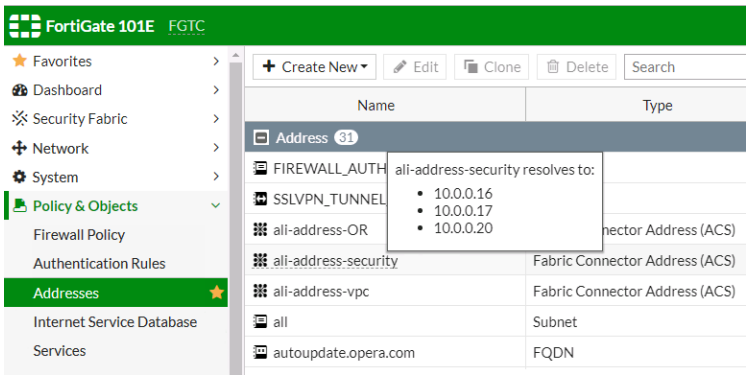



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AliCloud SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the AliCloud SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the specified security group:




3. Ensure that the AliCloud SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the security

group configured in step 2:




**To configure AliCloud SDN connector using CLI commands:**

1. Configure the AliCloud SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "ali1"
      set type acs
      set access-key "LTAIKmERWEuEOChg"
      set secret-key xxxxx
      set region "us-west-1"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AliCloud SDN connector with the supported AliCloud filter. In this example, the AliCloud SDN Connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the specified security group:

```
config firewall address
   edit "ali-address-security"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "ali1"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-rj9bp5ax5kwy3gqdizqb"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the AliCloud SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "ali-address-security"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "ali1"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-rj9bp5ax5kwy3gqdizqb"
      config list
         edit "10.0.0.16"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.17"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.20"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

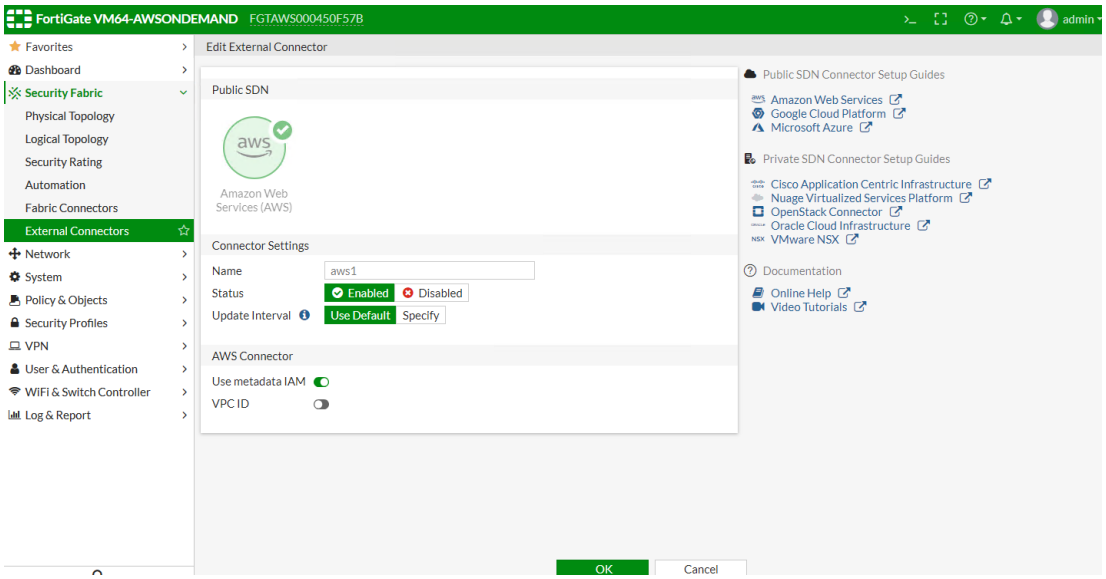
## AWS SDN connector with IAM credentials

For instances running in AWS (on demand or BYOL), you can set up the AWS SDN connector using AWS Identify and Access Management (IAM) credentials.

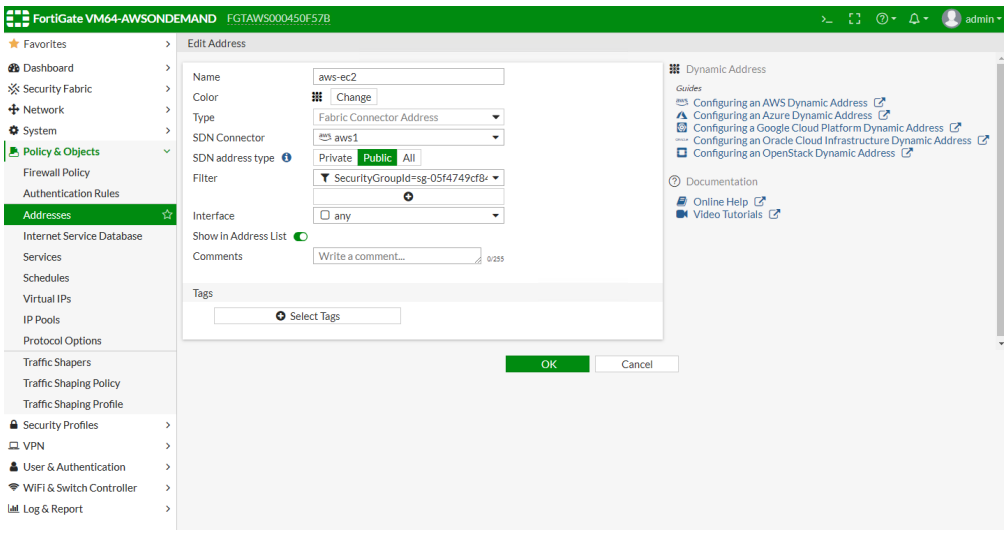
IAM authentication is available only for FGT-AWS and FGT-AWSONDEMAND platforms.

**To configure AWS SDN connector using the GUI:**

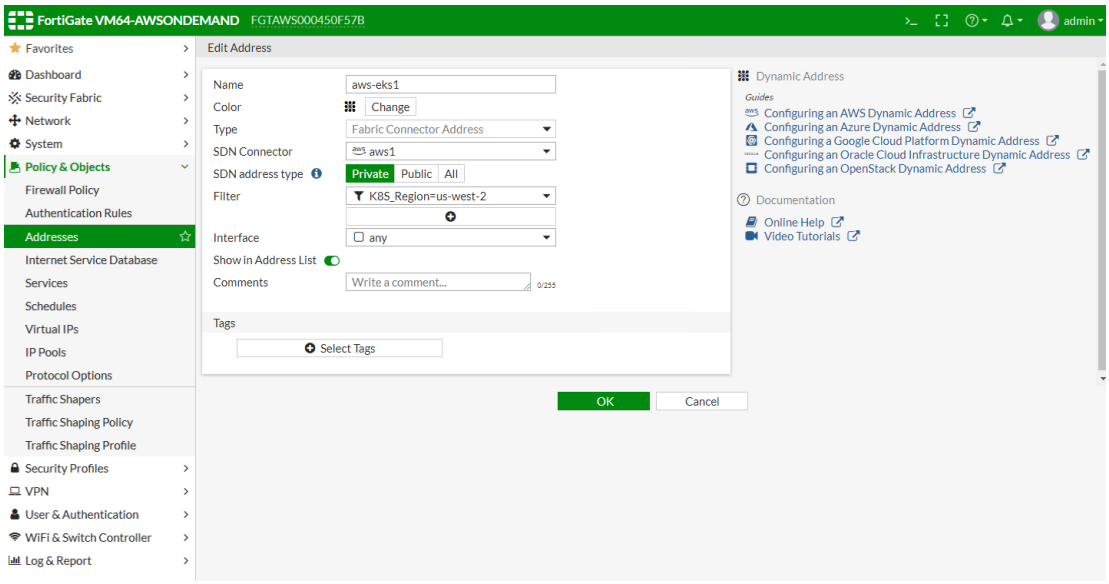
1. Configure the AWS SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Amazon Web Services (AWS)*.
   c. Configure as shown:



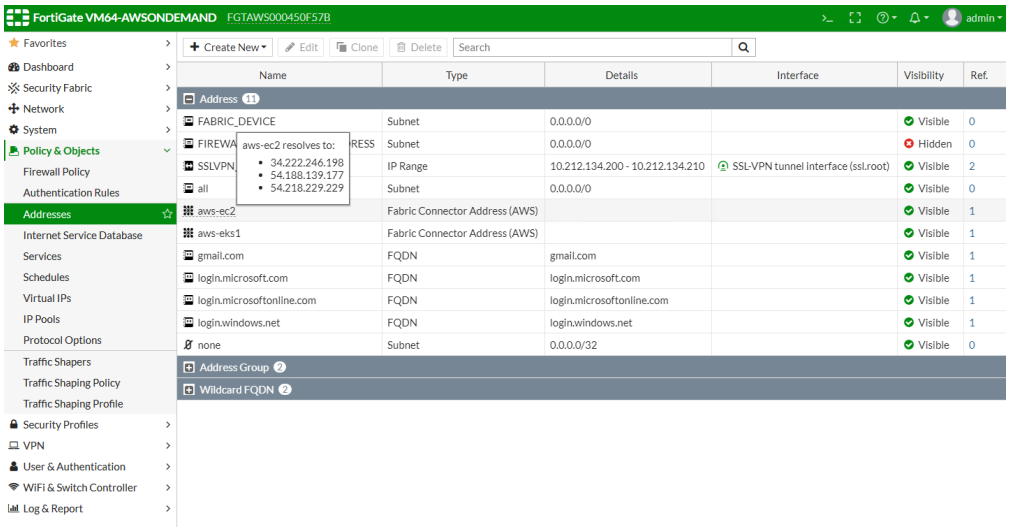

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AWS SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list.
   The following is an example for a public SDN address type:



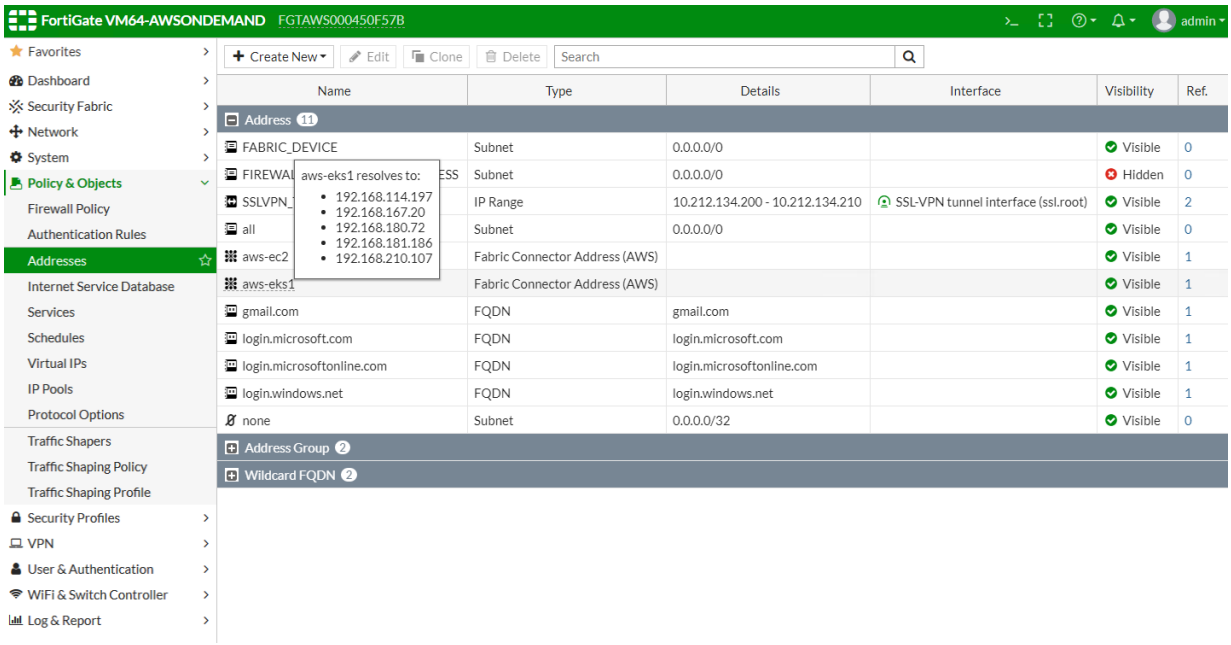

   The following is an example for a private SDN address type:




3. Ensure that the AWS SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the security group configured in step 2.
   The following is an example for a public SDN address type:




   The following is an example for a private SDN address type:




**To configure AWS SDN connector using CLI commands:**

1. Configure the AWS connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "aws1"
      set status enable
      set type aws
      set use-metadata-iam enable
      set update-interval 60
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured AWS SDN connector with the supported filter: Dynamic firewall address IPs are resolved by the SDN connector.

```
config firewall address
   edit "aws-ec2"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "aws1"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
      set sdn-addr-type public
   next
   edit "aws-eks1"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "aws1"
      set filter "K8S_Region=us-west-2"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the AWS SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "aws-ec2"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "aws1"
      set filter "SecurityGroupId=sg-05f4749cf84267548"
      set sdn-addr-type public
```

```
        config list
          edit "34.222.246.198"
          next
          edit "54.188.139.177"
          next
          edit "54.218.229.229"
          next
        end
      next
      edit "aws-eks1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aws1"
        set filter "K8S_Region=us-west-2"
        config list
          edit "192.168.114.197"
          next
          edit "192.168.167.20"
          next
          edit "192.168.180.72"
          next
          edit "192.168.181.186"
          next
          edit "192.168.210.107"
          next
        end
      next
  end
```

## Azure Stack SDN connector

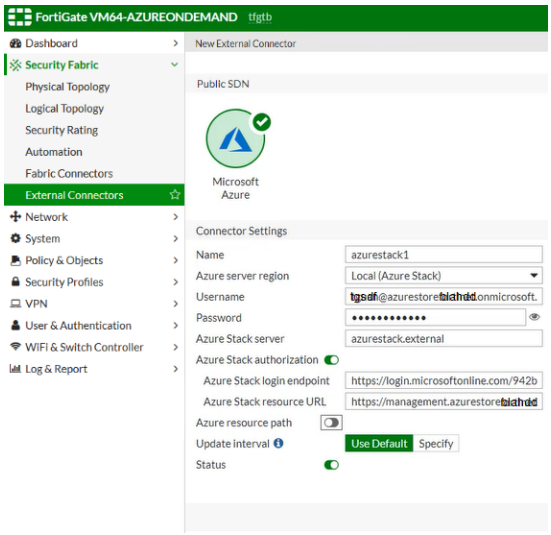
FortiOS automatically updates dynamic addresses for Azure Stack on-premise environments using an Azure Stack SDN connector, including mapping the following attributes from Azure Stack instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

- vm
- tag
- size
- securitygroup
- vnet
- subnet
- resourcegroup
- vmss

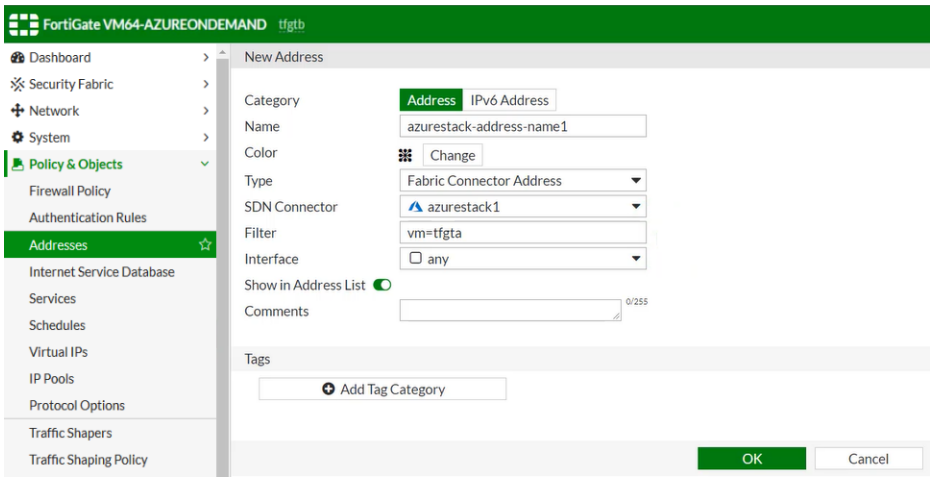
**To configure Azure Stack SDN connector using the GUI:**

1. Configure the Azure Stack SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Microsoft Azure*.
   c. Configure as shown, substituting the Azure Stack settings for your deployment. The update interval is in

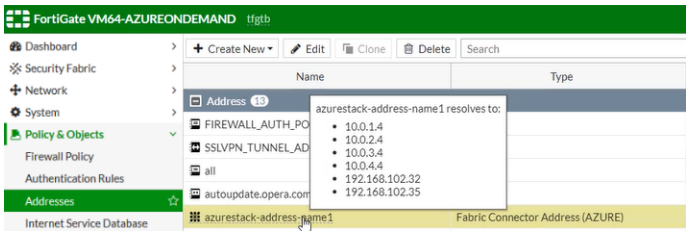
seconds.




2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured Azure Stack SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the Azure Stack SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that are named tfgta:




3. Ensure that the Azure Stack SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that are named tftgta as configured in step 2:



**To configure Azure Stack SDN connector using CLI commands:**

1. Configure the Azure Stack SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "azurestack1"
      set type azure
      set azure-region local
      set server "azurestack.external"
      set username "username@azurestoreexamplecompany.onmicrosoft.com"
      set password xxxxx
      set log-in endpoint "https://login.microsoftonline.com/942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-
           4b21dece61ba"
      set resource-url
           "https://management.azurestoreexamplecompany.onmicrosoft.com/12b6fedd-9364-
           4cf0-822b-080d70298323"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured Azure Stack SDN connector with the supported Azure Stack filter. In this example, the Azure Stack SDN Connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that are named tfgta:

```
config firewall address
   edit "azurestack-address-name1"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "azurestack1"
      set filter "vm=tfgta"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the Azure Stack fabric connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "azurestack-address-name1"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "azurestack1"
      set filter "vm=tfgta"
      config list
         edit "10.0.1.4"
         next
         edit "10.0.2.4"
         next
         edit "10.0.3.4"
         next
         edit "10.0.4.4"
         next
         edit "192.168.102.32"
         next
         edit "192.168.102.35"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Azure SDN connector for non-VM resources

IP address resolving functionality is available for the following Azure resources:

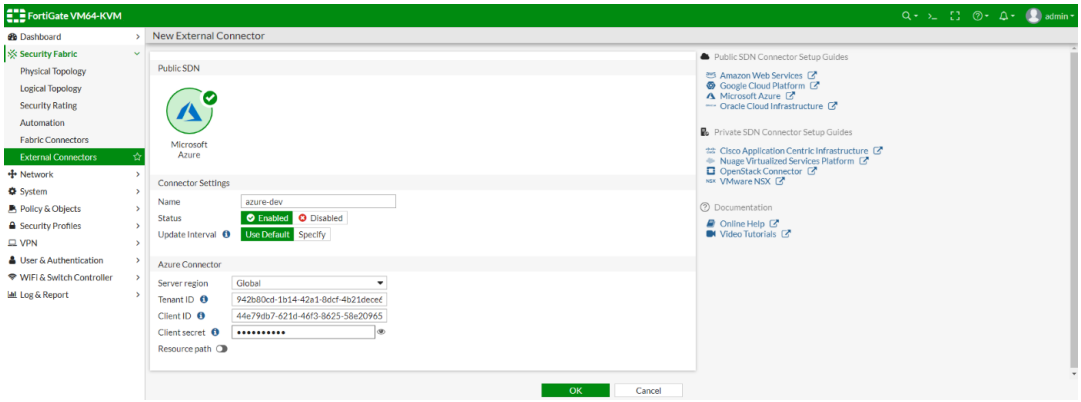
- VM network interfaces (including VMSS)
- Internet-facing load balancers
- Internal load balancers
- Application gateways

VPN gateways are currently not supported.

The following example demonstrates configuring an internet-facing load balancer.

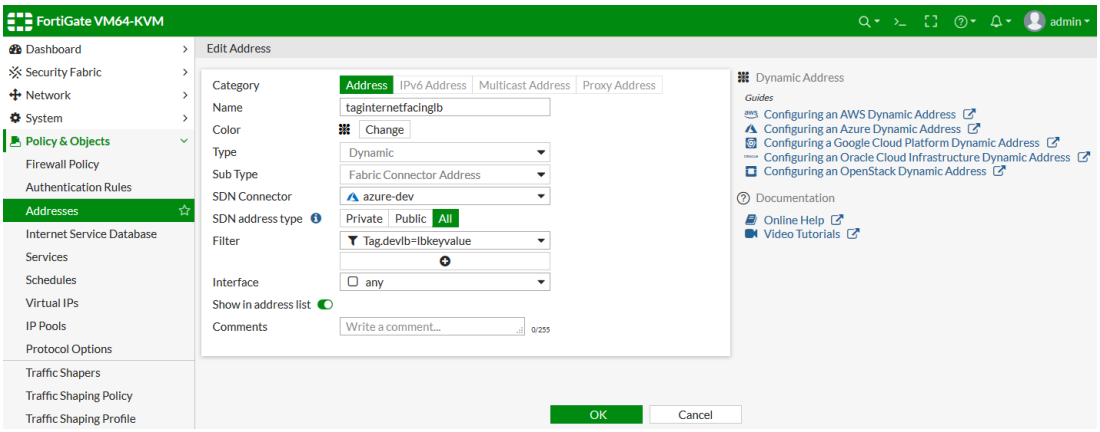
**To configure an internet-facing load balancer address in the GUI:**

1. Configure the Azure SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Microsoft Azure*.
   c. Enter the settings based on your deployment, and click *OK*. The update interval is in seconds.




2. Create the dynamic firewall address:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Address* and enter a name.
   c. Configure the following settings:
      i. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. For *Sub Type*, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
      iii. For *SDN Connector*, select *azure-dev*.
      iv. For *SDN address type*, select *All*.
      v. For *Filter*, enter `Tag.devlb=lbkeyvalue`.

**d.** Click *OK*.




The corresponding IP addresses are dynamically updated and resolved after applying the tag filter.

3. Ensure that the connector resolves the dynamic firewall IP address:
   **a.** Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   **b.** In the address table, hover over the address created in step 2 to view what IP it resolves to:




   **c.** In Azure, verify to confirm the IP address matches:




### To configure an internet-facing load balancer in the CLI:

1. Configure the Azure SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "azure-dev"
        set status enable
        set type azure
        set azure-region global
        set tenant-id "942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba"
        set client-id "44e79db7-621d-46f3-8625-58e209654e58"
        set client-secret xxxxxxxxxx
        set update-interval 60
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "taginternetfacinglb"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "azure-dev"
        set filter "Tag.devlb=lbkeyvalue"
        set sdn-addr-type all
    next
end
```

The corresponding IP addresses are dynamically updated and resolved after applying the tag filter.

3. Confirm that the connector resolves the dynamic firewall IP address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "taginternetfacinglb"
        show
            config firewall address
                edit "taginternetfacinglb"
                    set uuid df391760-3bb6-51ea-f775-421df18f368d
                    set type dynamic
                    set sdn "azure-dev"
                    set filter "Tag.devlb=lbkeyvalue"
                    set sdn-addr-type all
                    config list
                        edit "52.230.230.83"
                        next
                    end
                next
            end
        next
end
```

## IBM Cloud SDN connector

FortiOS can automatically update dynamic addresses for IBM Cloud using an SDN connector.

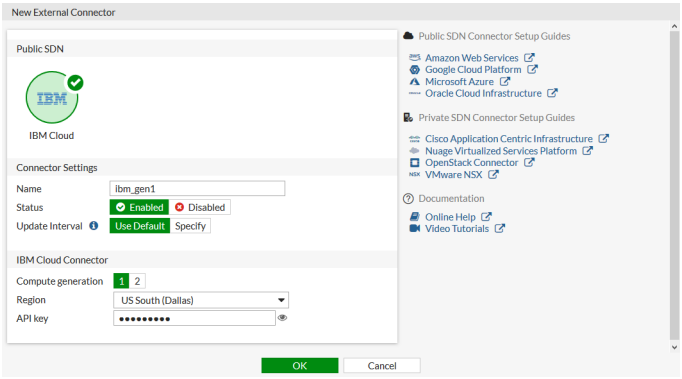
The dynamic addresses can be filtered with the following filters:

- <InstanceId>
- <InstanceName>
- <ImageId>
- <ImageName>
- <Architecture>
- <Profile>
- <Vpc>
- <Zone>
- <Subnet>
- <ResourceGroup>

### To configure IBM Cloud SDN connectors using the GUI:

1. Create SDN connectors for compute generation 1 and 2:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *IBM Cloud*.

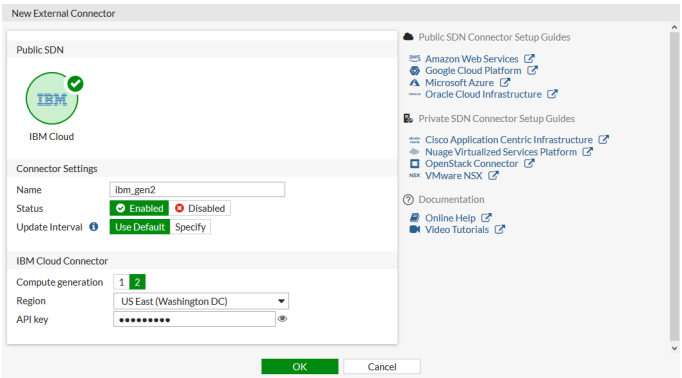
c. Configure the connector for computer generation 1:




d. Click *OK*.

e. Click *Create New*, then select *IBM Cloud*.

f. Configure the connector for computer generation 2:



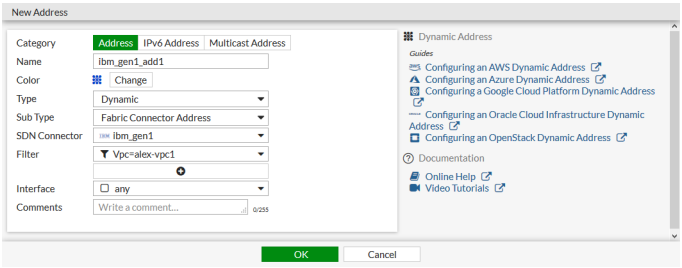

g. Click *OK*.

2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured connectors:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.

b. Click *Create New* > *Address*.

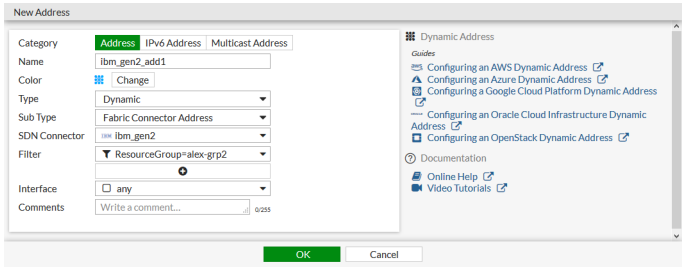
c. Configure an address for computer generation 1:




d. Click *OK*.

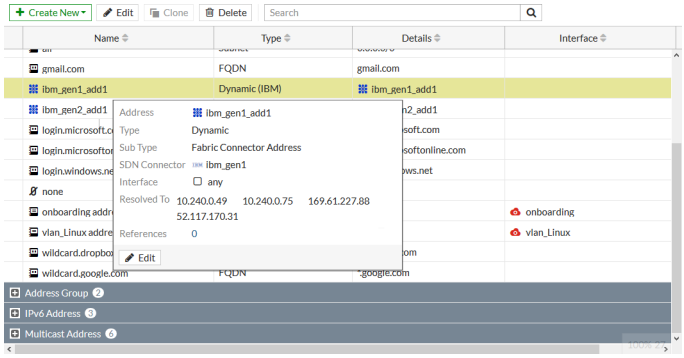
e. Click *Create New* > *Address*.

f. Configure an address for computer generation 2:




g. Click *OK*.

3. Ensure that the connectors resolve dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the addresses created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses resolved by the connector:




### To configure IBM Cloud SDN connectors using the CLI:

1. Create SDN connectors for compute generation 1 and 2:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "ibm_gen1"
        set status enable
        set type ibm
        set api-key xxxxxx
        set compute-generation 1
        set ibm-region-gen1 us-south
        set update-interval 60
    next
    edit "ibm_gen2"
        set status enable
        set type ibm
        set api-key xxxxxx
        set compute-generation 2
        set ibm-region-gen2 us-east
        set update-interval 60
    next
end
```

2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured connectors:

```
config firewall address
    edit "ibm_gen1_add1"
        set type dynamic
```

```
        set sdn "ibm_gen1"
        set color 19
        set filter "Vpc=alex-vpc1"
    next
    edit "ibm_gen2_add1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "ibm_gen2"
        set color 19
        set filter "ResourceGroup=alex-grp2"
    next
end
```

3. Ensure that the connectors resolve dynamic firewall IP addresses:

```
# show firewall address ibm_gen1_add1
config firewall address
    edit "ibm_gen1_add1"
        set uuid 586841c4-7f46-51ea-dc66-dbf840af03d3
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "ibm_gen1"
        set color 19
        set filter "Vpc=alex-vpc1"
        config list
            edit "10.240.0.49"
            next
            edit "10.240.0.75"
            next
            edit "169.61.227.88"
            next
            edit "52.117.170.31"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

```
# show firewall address ibm_gen2_add1
config firewall address
    edit "ibm_gen2_add1"
        set uuid 5868c4f0-7f46-51ea-2b79-b5170fbfd4a8
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "ibm_gen2"
        set color 19
        set filter "ResourceGroup=alex-grp2"
        config list
            edit "10.241.128.4"
            next
            edit "10.241.128.5"
            next
            edit "10.241.129.4"
            next
            edit "52.117.126.69"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

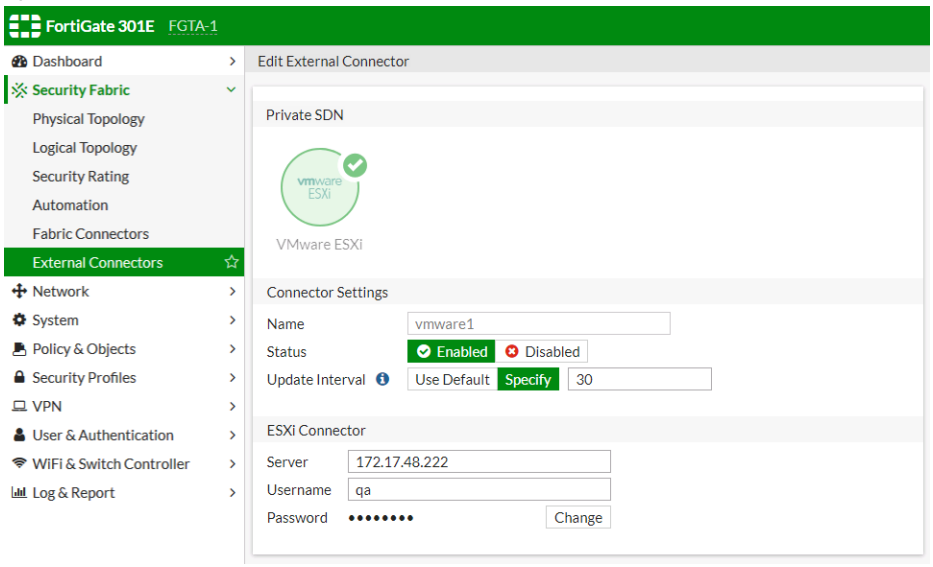
## VMware ESXi SDN connector

Dynamic addresses for VMware ESXi and vCenter servers can be automatically updated by using a VMware ESXi SDN connector, including mapping the following attributes from VMware ESXi and vCenter objects to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

- vmid
- host
- name
- uuid
- vmuuid
- vmnetwork
- guestid
- guestname
- annotation

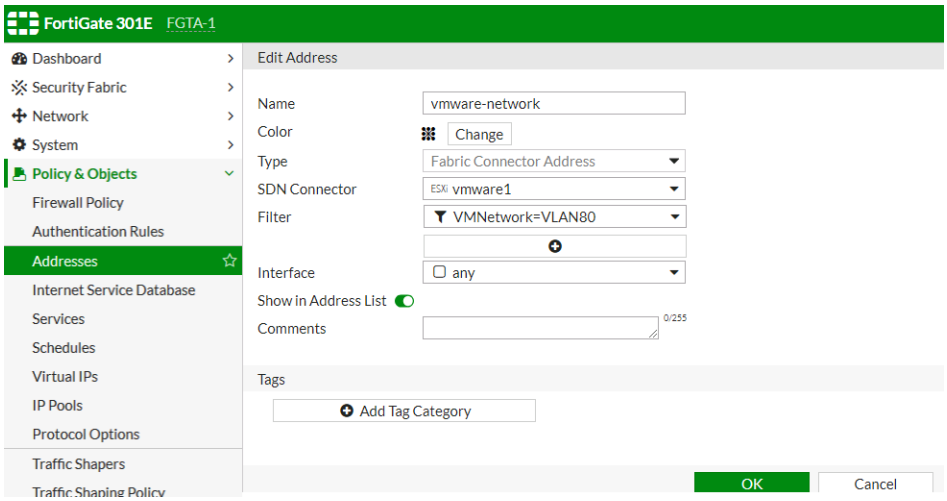
**To configure VMware ESXi SDN connector using the GUI:**

1. Configure the VMware ESXi SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *VMware ESXi*.
   c. Configure as shown, substituting the server IP address, username, and password for your deployment. The update interval is in seconds.

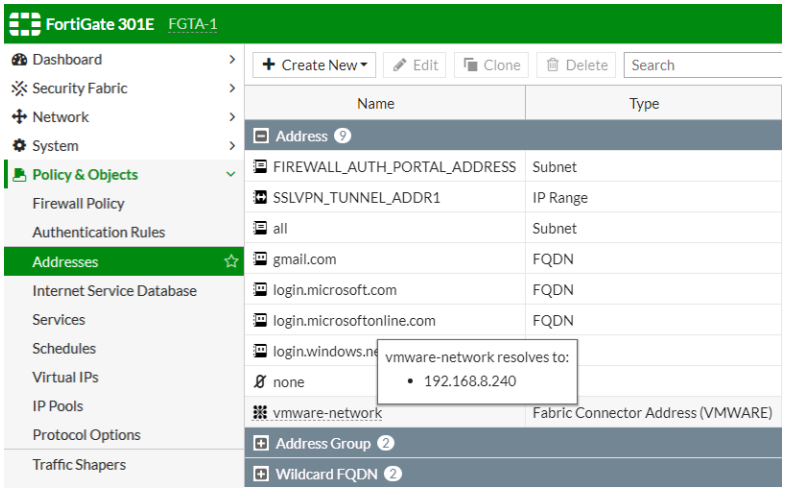



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured VMware ESXi SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the VMware ESXi fabric connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that

belong to VLAN80:




3. Ensure that the VMware ESXi SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to VLAN80 as configured in step 2:




**To configure VMware ESXi SDN connector using CLI commands:**

1. Configure the VMware ESXi SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "vmware1"
      set type vmware
      set server "172.17.48.222"
      set username "example_username"
      set password xxxxx
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured VMware ESXi SDN connector with the supported VMware ESXi filter. In this example, the VMware ESXi SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the specified VLAN:

```
config firewall address
```

```
    edit "vmware-network"
       set type dynamic
       set sdn "vmware1"
       set filter "vmnetwork=VLAN80"
    next
end
```

3. Confirm that the VMware ESXi SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
    edit "vmware-network"
       set type dynamic
       set sdn "vmware1"
       set filter "vmnetwork=VLAN80"
       config list
          edit "192.168.8.240"
          next
       end
    next
end
```

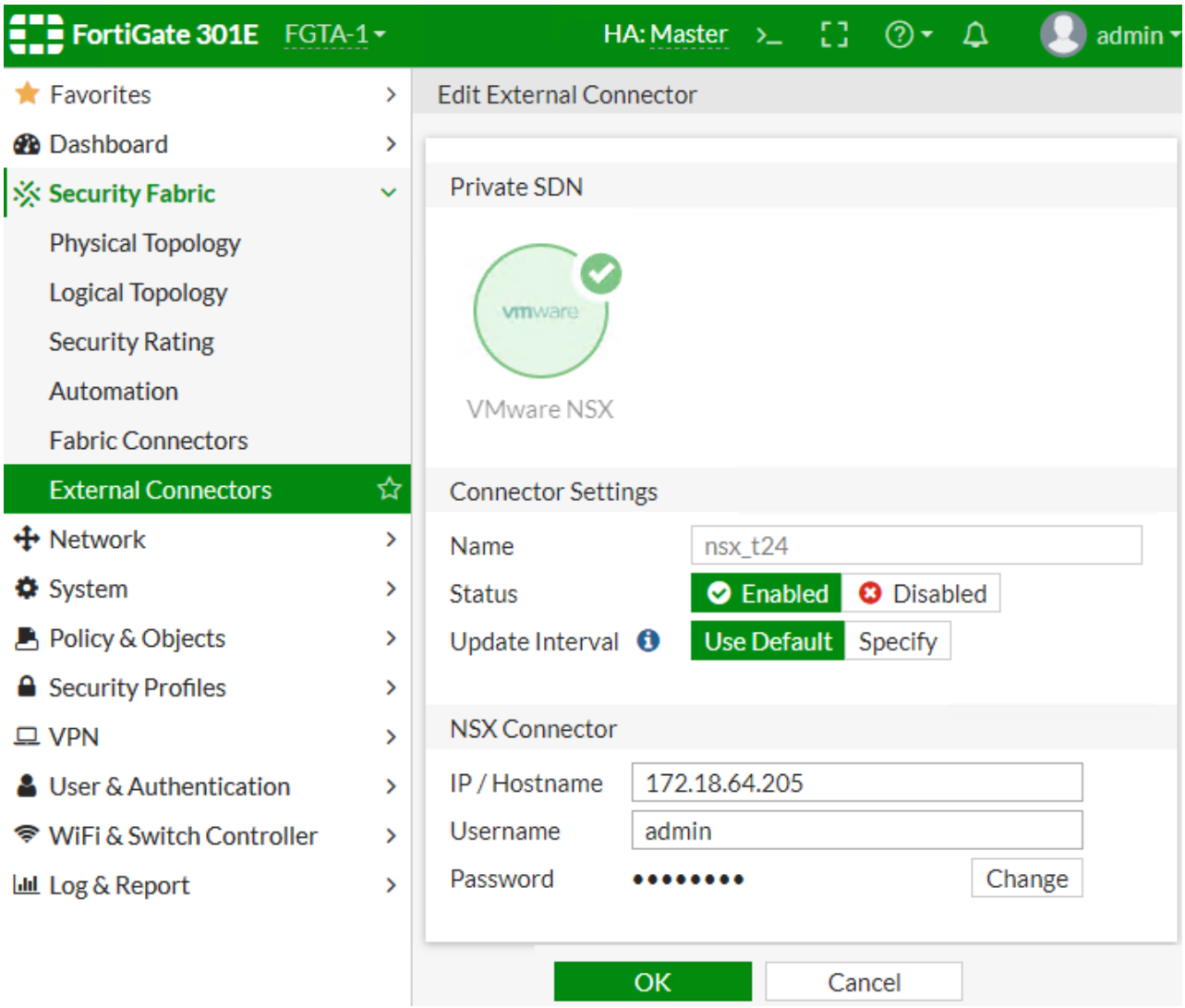
## VMware NSX-T manager SDN connector

This feature provides SDN connector configuration for VMware NSX-T manager. You can import specific groups, or all groups from the NSX-T manager.

**To configure SDN connector for NSX-T manager in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Private SDN* section, click *VMware NSX*.

3. Enter the settings and click *OK*.




**To configure SDN connector for NSX-T manager in the CLI:**

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx_t24"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.205"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
    next
end
```

**To import a specific group from the NSX-T manager:**

```
# execute nsx group import nsx_t24 root csf_ns_group
[1] 336914ba-0660-4840-b0f1-9320f5c5ca5e csf_ns_group:
  Name:csf_ns_group
  Address:1.1.1.0
```

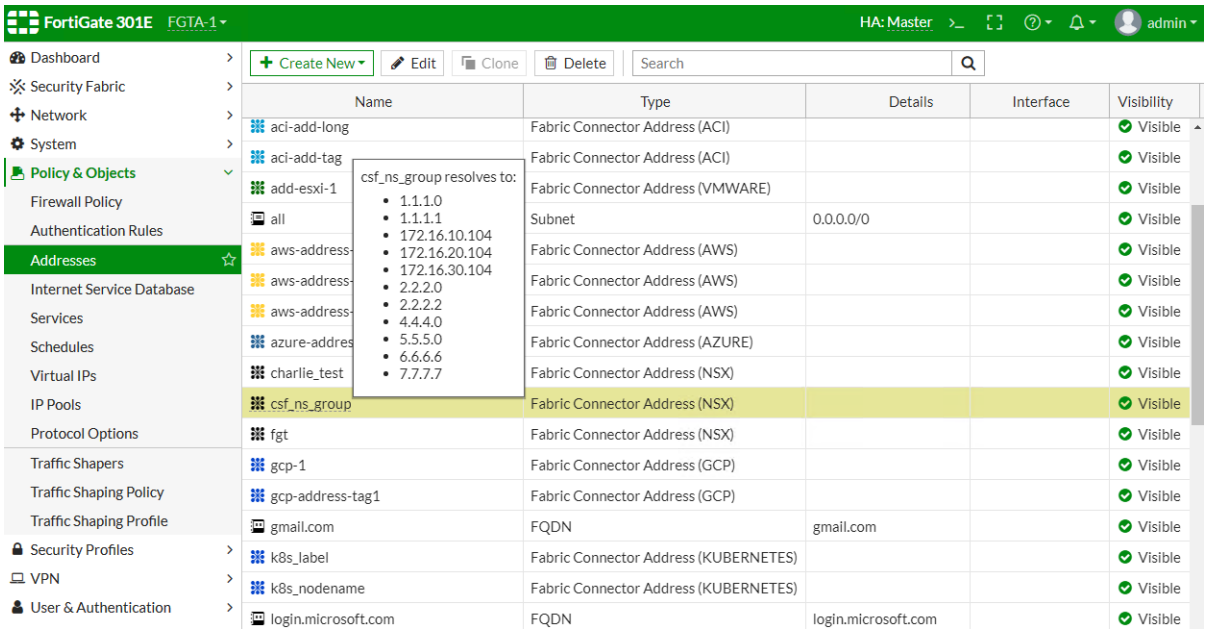
```
  Address:1.1.1.1
  Address:172.16.10.104
  Address:172.16.20.104
  Address:172.16.30.104
  Address:2.2.2.0
  Address:2.2.2.2
  Address:4.4.4.0
  Address:5.5.5.0
  Address:6.6.6.6
  Address:7.7.7.7
```

**To import all groups from NSX-T manager:**

```
# execute nsx group import nsx_t24 root
[1] 663a7686-b9a3-4659-b06f-b45c908349a0 ServiceInsertion_NSGroup:
  Name:ServiceInsertion_NSGroup
  Address:10.0.0.2
[2] 336914ba-0660-4840-b0f1-9320f5c5ca5e csf_ns_group:
  Name:csf_ns_group
  Address:1.1.1.0
  Address:1.1.1.1
  Address:172.16.10.104
  Address:172.16.20.104
  Address:172.16.30.104
  Address:2.2.2.0
  Address:2.2.2.2
  Address:4.4.4.0
  Address:5.5.5.0
  Address:6.6.6.6
  Address:7.7.7.7
[3] c462ec4d-d526-4ceb-aeb5-3f168cecd89d charlie_test:
  Name:charlie_test
  Address:1.1.1.1
  Address:2.2.2.2
  Address:6.6.6.6
  Address:7.7.7.7
[4] ff4dcb08-53cf-46bd-bef4-f7aeda9c0ad9 fgt:
  Name:fgt
  Address:172.16.10.101
  Address:172.16.10.102
  Address:172.16.20.102
  Address:172.16.30.103
[5] 3dd7df0d-2baa-44e0-b88f-bd21a92eb2e5 yongyu_test:
  Name:yongyu_test
  Address:1.1.1.0
  Address:2.2.2.0
  Address:4.4.4.0
  Address:5.5.5.0
```

**To view the dynamic firewall IP addresses that are resolved by the SDN connector in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* to view the IP addresses resolved by an SDN connector.




**To view the dynamic firewall IP addresses that are resolved by the SDN connector in the CLI:**

```
# show firewall address csf_ns_group
config firewall address
    edit "csf_ns_group"
        set uuid ee4a2696-bacd-51e9-f828-59457565b880
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "nsx_t24"
        set obj-id "336914ba-0660-4840-b0f1-9320f5c5ca5e"
        config list
            edit "1.1.1.0"
            next
            edit "1.1.1.1"
            next
            edit "172.16.10.104"
            next
            edit "172.16.20.104"
            next
            edit "172.16.30.104"
            next
            edit "2.2.2.0"
            next
            edit "2.2.2.2"
            next
            edit "4.4.4.0"
            next
            edit "5.5.5.0"
            next
            edit "6.6.6.6"
            next
            edit "7.7.7.7"
```

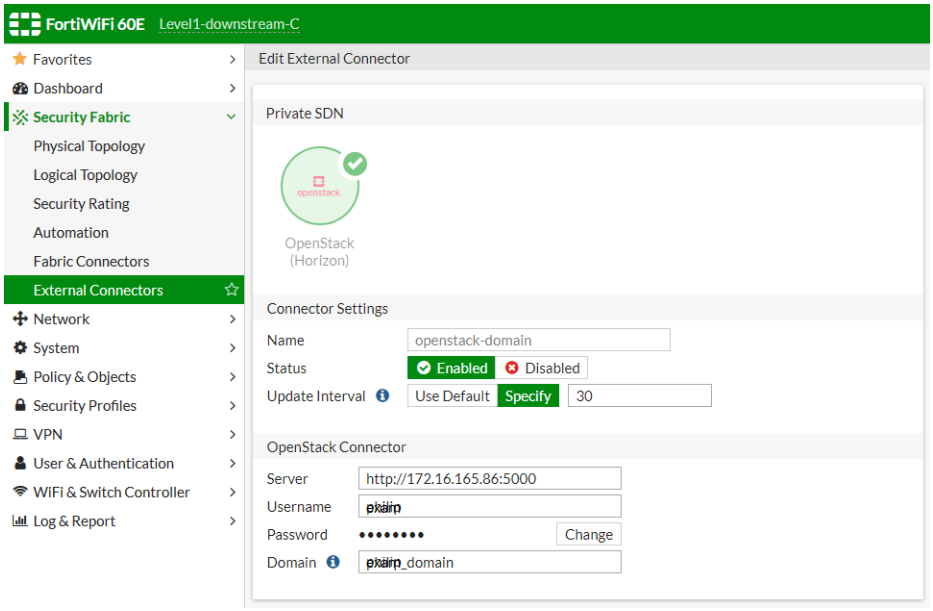
```
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## OpenStack (Horizon) SDN connector with domain filter

You can select a domain attribute when configuring an OpenStack SDN connector in FortiOS. When a domain is configured for the OpenStack SDN connector, FortiOS resolves OpenStack dynamic firewall addresses from the specified OpenStack domain. If a domain is not specified, FortiOS resolves the dynamic firewall addresses using the default OpenStack domain.

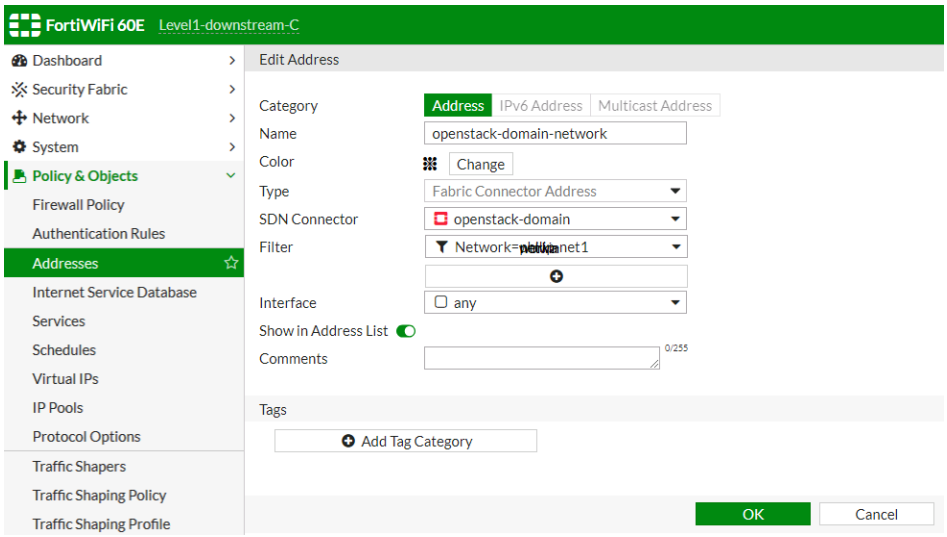
**To configure OpenStack SDN connector with a domain filter using the GUI:**

1. Configure the OpenStack SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Openstack (Horizon)*.
   c. In the *Domain* field, enter the desired domain name from OpenStack. The fabric connector will only resolve IP addresses for instances that belong to the specified domain.
   d. Configure as shown, substituting the server IP address, username, and password for your deployment. The update interval is in seconds.

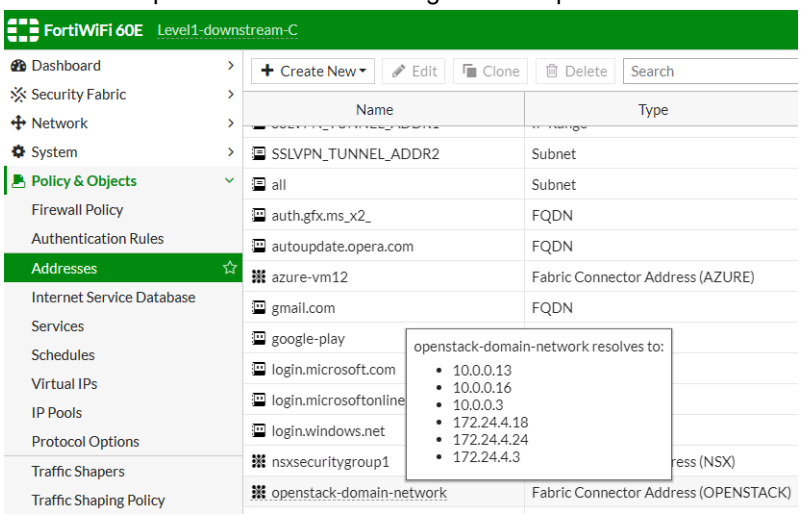



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured OpenStack SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. The OpenStack SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the

specified domain and network:




3. Ensure that the OpenStack SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the specified domain and specified network as configured in steps 1 and 2:




**To configure OpenStack SDN connector with a domain filter using CLI commands:**

1. Configure the OpenStack SDN connector. The SDN connector will only resolve IP addresses for instances that belong to the specified domain:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "openstack-domain"
      set type openstack
      set server "http://172.16.165.86:5000"
      set username "example_username"
      set password xxxxx
      set domain "example_domain"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured OpenStack SDN connector with the supported OpenStack filter. The OpenStack SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the specified domain and the specified network:

```
config firewall address
   edit "openstack-domain-network"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "openstack-domain"
      set filter "Network=example-net1"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the OpenStack SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured domain and filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "openstack-domain-network"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "openstack-domain"
      set filter "Network=example-net1"
      config list
         edit "10.0.0.13"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.16"
         next
         edit "10.0.0.3"
         next
         edit "172.24.4.18"
         next
         edit "172.24.4.24"
         next
         edit "172.24.4.3"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## OCI SDN connector

You can configure Security Fabric connector integration with Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI).

**To configure an OCI SDN connector in the CLI:**

1. Configure an SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "oci1"
        set status enable
        set type oci
        set tenant-id
"ocid1.tenancy.oc1..aaaaaaaaaaa3aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa77xxxxxx54bbbbbb4xxxx35xx55xxxx"
        set user-id
"ocid1.user.oc1..aaaaaaaaa2laaaaa3aaaaaaaaaabbbbbbbbbbcccc3ccccccccccxxxxxxxx"
        set compartment-id
"ocid1.compartment.oc1..aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa7bbbbbbbbbbccccccccc6xxx53xxxx7xxxxxxxxx"
        set oci-region "us-ashburn-1"
        set oci-region-type commercial
```

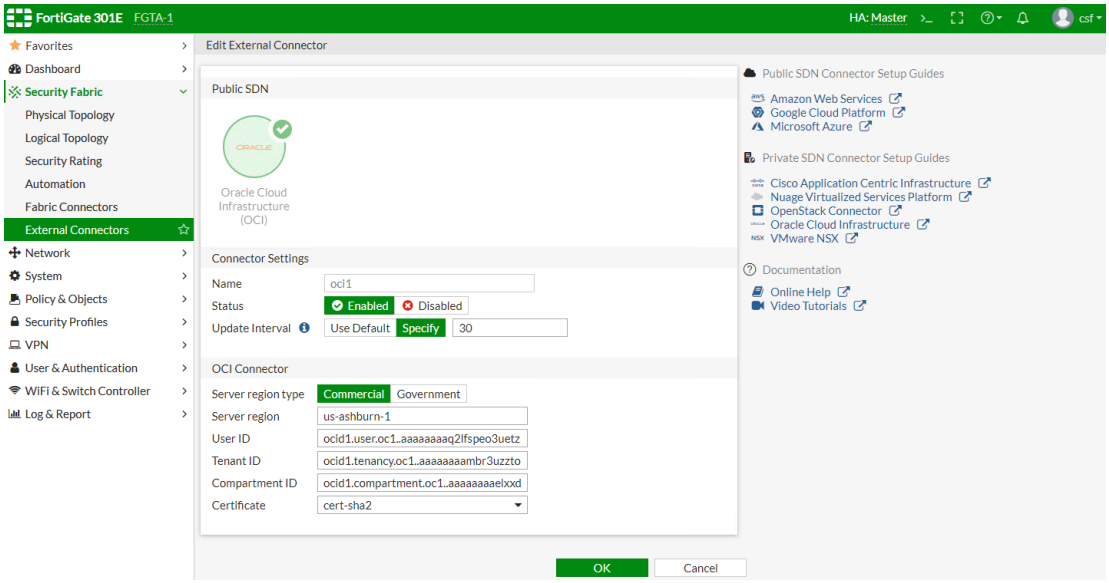
```
        set oci-cert "cert-sha2"
        set update-interval 30
    next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported filter:

```
config firewall address
    edit "oci-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "oci1"
        set filter "CompartmentName=DevelopmentEngineering"
    next
end
```

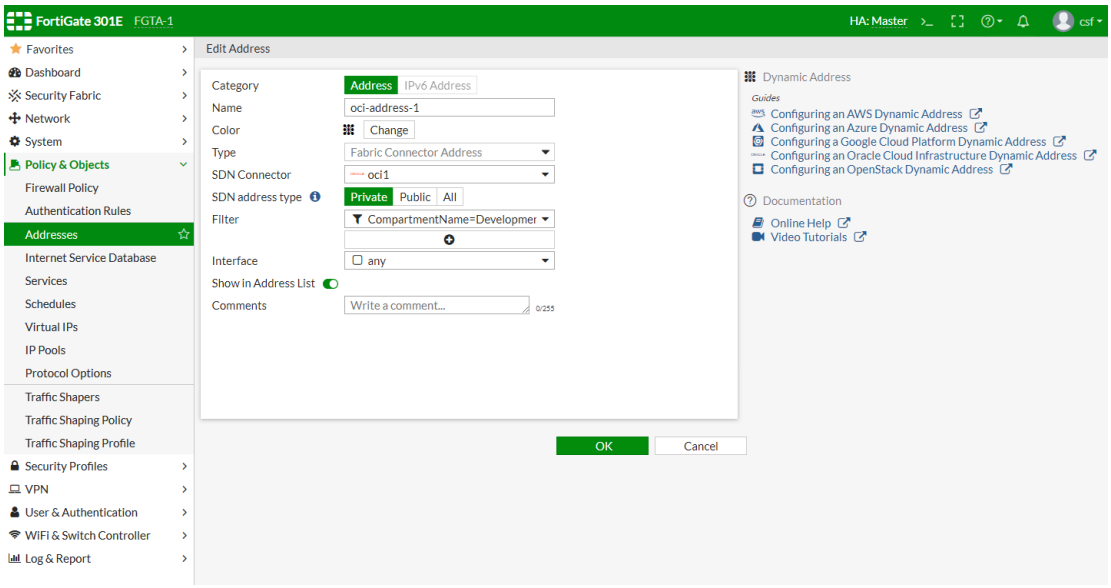
### To configure an OCI SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Public SDN* section, select *Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI)*.
3. Configuration the connector as needed.




4. Click *OK*.
5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.

6. Configure the address as needed, selecting the OCI connector in the *SDN Connector* field.



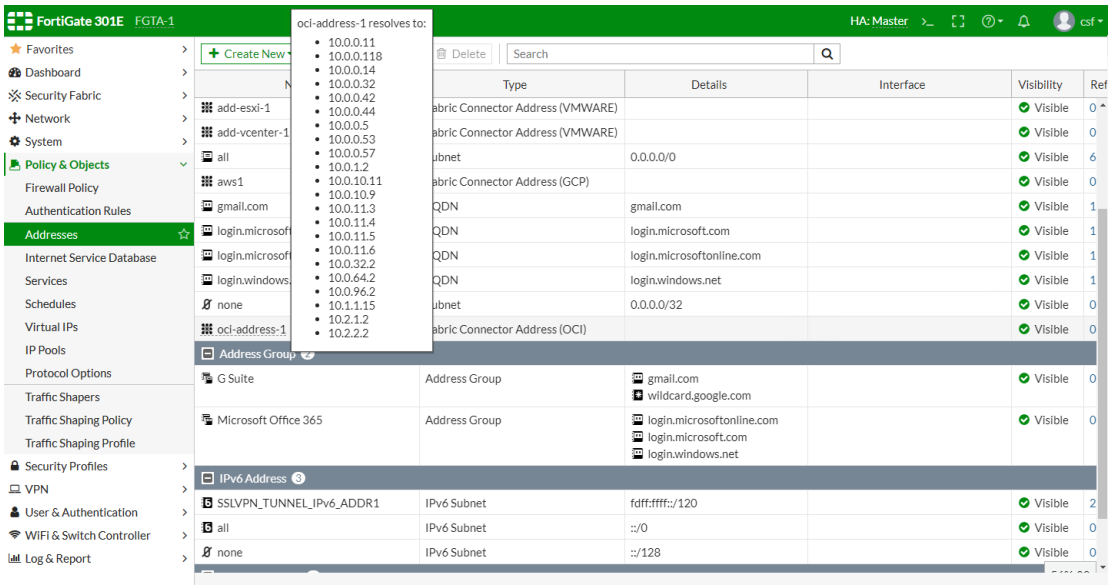

7. Click *OK*.

**To confirm that dynamic firewall addresses are resolved by the SDN connector:**

1. In the CLI, check that the addresses are listed:

```
config firewall address
    edit "oci-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "oci1"
        set filter "CompartmentName=DevelopmentEngineering"
        config list
            edit "10.0.0.11"
            next
            edit "10.0.0.118"
            next
            ...
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. In the GUI, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and hover the cursor over the address name.



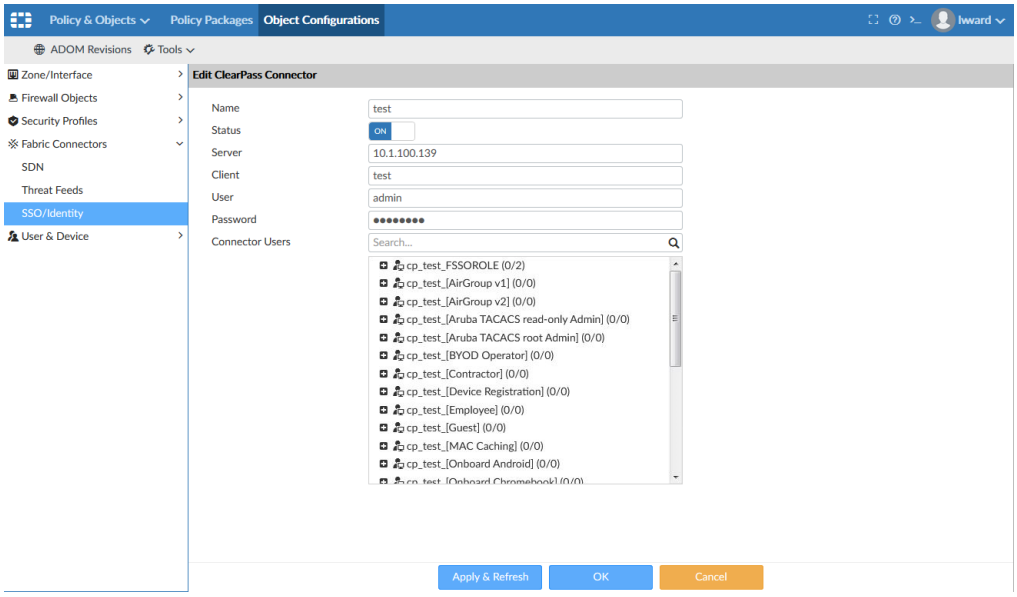

## ClearPass endpoint connector via FortiManager

ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) is a network access system that can send information about authenticated users to third party systems, such as a FortiGate or FortiManager.

In this example, communications are established between CPPM and FortiManager, and then the FortiManager forwards information to a managed FortiGate. On the FortiGate, the user information can be used in firewall policies and added to FSSO dynamic addresses.

### Configure the FortiManager

Establish communications between FortiManager and CPPM so that FortiManager can synchronize CPPM user groups. See Creating a ClearPass connector in the FortiManager Administration Guide.

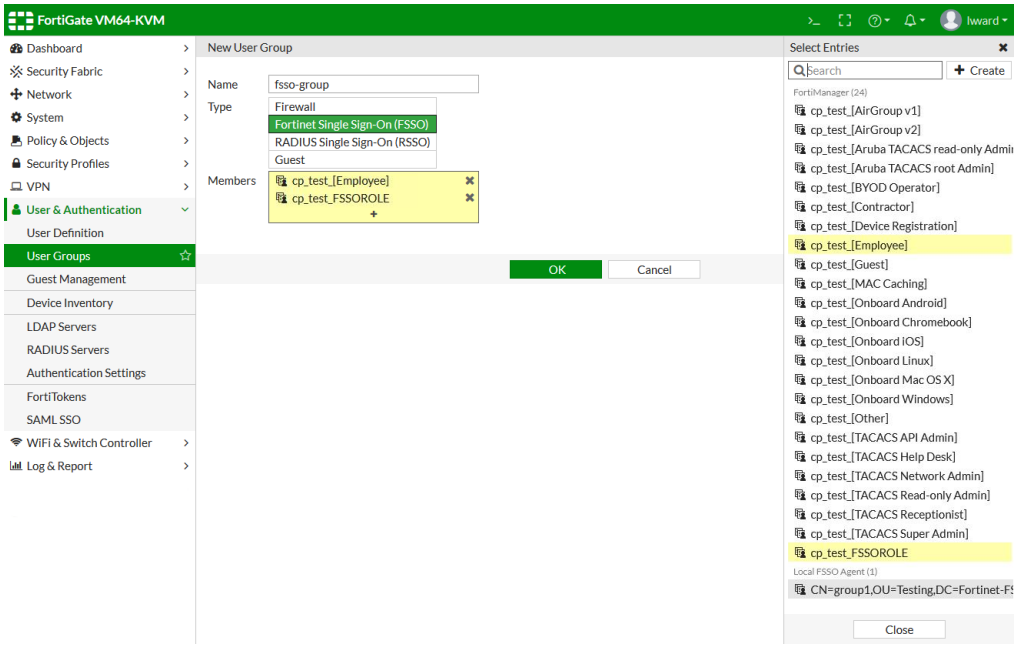


FortiManager forwards the group information to managed FortiGates.

## Add CPPM FSSO user groups to a local user group

### To add CPPM user groups to a local user group in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group and set *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*.
4. Click the *Members* field, and add one or more FSSO groups.
   FSSO groups can come from multiple sources; CPPM FSSO groups are prefixed with *cp_* and are listed under the *FortiManager* heading.




5. Click *OK*.

### To add CPPM user groups to a local user group in the CLI:

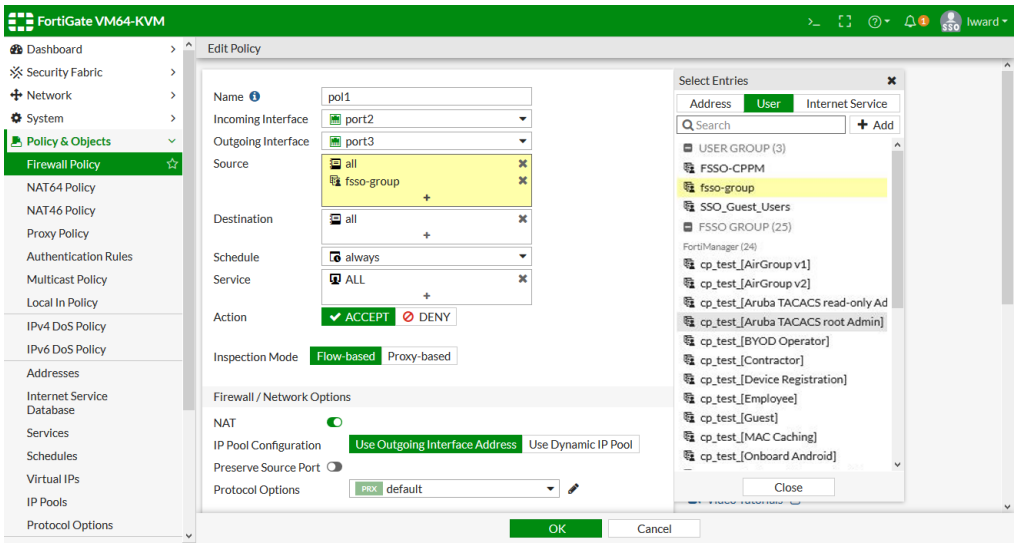
```
config user group
    edit fsso-group
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "cp_test_[Employee]" "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
    next
end
```

## Use the local FSSO user group in a firewall policy

### To add the local FSSO user group to a firewall policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy, or edit an existing one.

3. Click in the *Source* field and add the *fsso-group* user group.




   CPPM user groups can also be added directly to the policy.
4. Click *OK*.

**To add the local FSSO user group to a firewall policy in the CLI:**

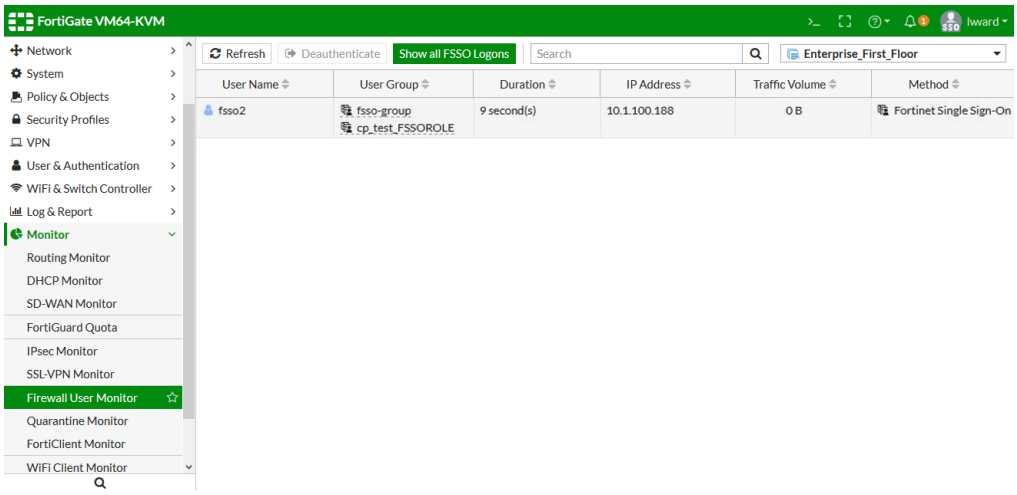
```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "pol1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "fsso-group"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Verification

**To verify that a user was added to the FSSO list on the FortiGate:**

1. Log on to the client and authenticate with CPPM.
   After successful authentication, the user is added to the FSSO list on the FortiGate.

2. On the FortiGate, go to *Monitor* > *Firewall User Monitor* to verify that the user was added.




The user group *cp_test_FSSOROLE* is listed separately because the user is a member of that group on the CPPM.

**To verify that traffic can pass the firewall:**

1. Log on to the client and browse to an external website.
2. On the FortiGate, go to *FortiView* > *Sources*.
3. Double-click on the user and select the *Destinations* tab to verify that traffic is being passed by the firewall.

**To verify the user address groups:**

```
show user adgrp
    config user adgrp
        edit "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[AirGroup v1]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[AirGroup v2]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Aruba TACACS read-only Admin]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Aruba TACACS root Admin]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[BYOD Operator]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Contractor]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        edit "cp_test_[Device Registration]"
            set server-name "FortiManager"
        next
        ...
```

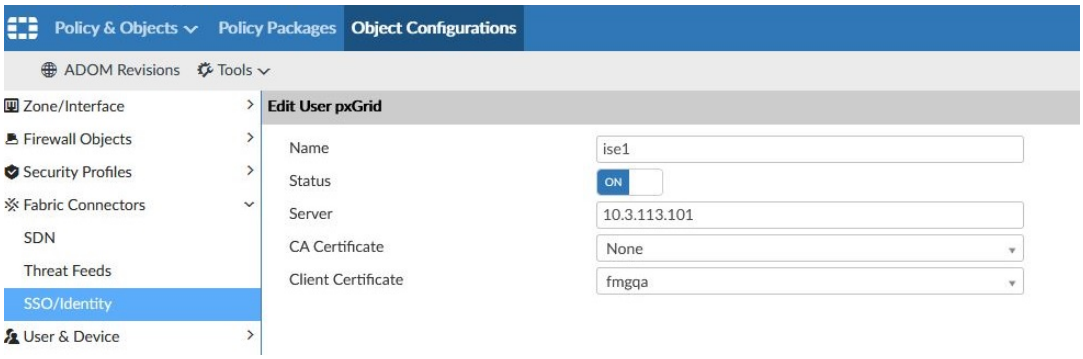
```
    edit "CN=group1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM"
        set server-name "Local FSSO Agent"   <----- !!!
    next
end
```

## Cisco pxGrid fabric connector

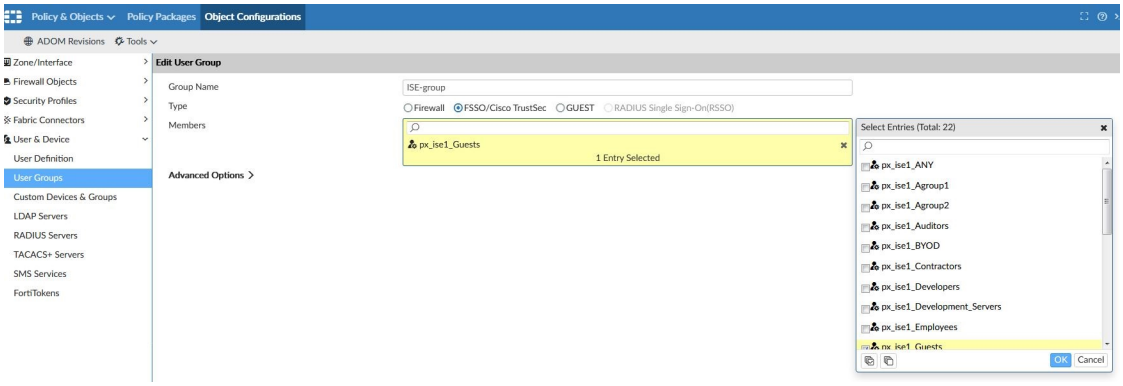
You can create an endpoint connector to Cisco pxGrid by using FortiManager. FortiManager dynamically collects updates from pxGrid and forwards them to FortiGate by using the Fortinet Single Sign On (FSSO) protocol.

**To create a Cisco pxGrid fabric connector:**

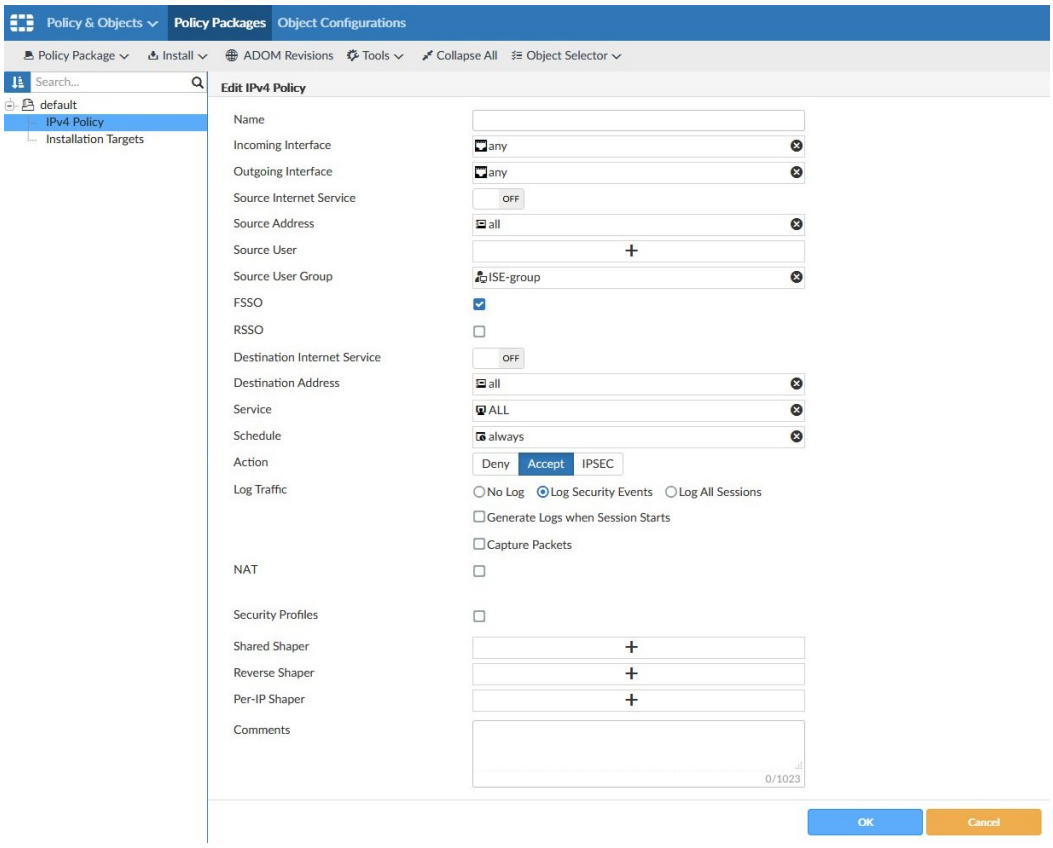
1. On FortiManager, create an SSO Connector to Cisco ISE.
   Communication between FortiManager and Cisco ISE is secured by using TLS. FortiManager requires a client certificate issued by Cisco ISE. FortiManager uses the certificate to authenticate to Cisco ISE.



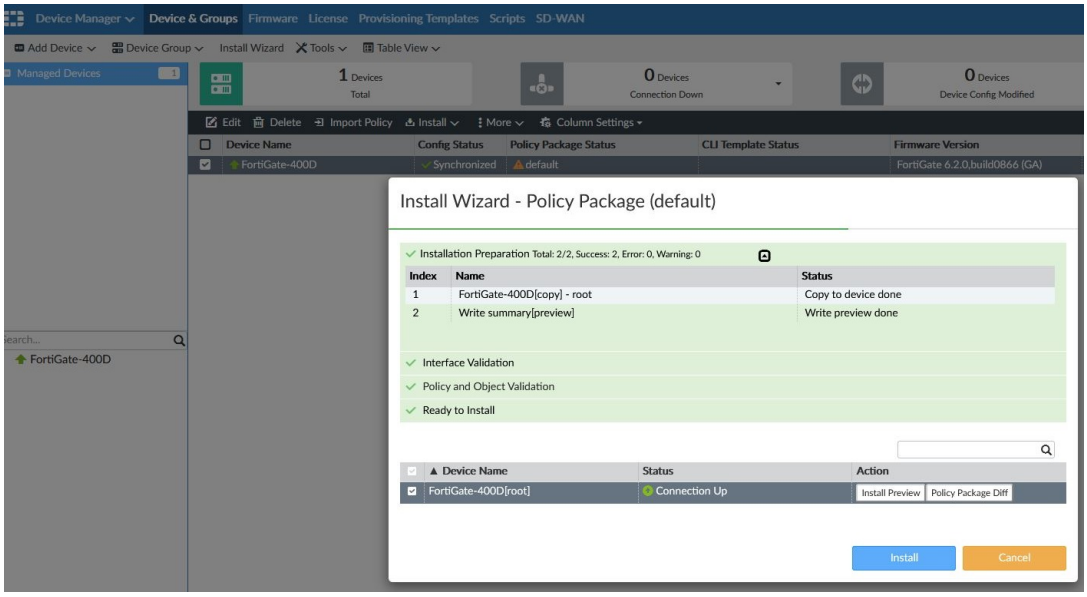

2. On FortiManager, map Cisco ISE groups to a Fortinet FSSO group.
   Once a secured communication channel is established, Cisco sends all user groups to FortiManager.
   The FortiManager administrator can select specific groups and map them to Fortinet FSSO groups.



3. On FortiManager, add Fortinet FSSO group to a firewall policy in a policy package.




4. On FortiManager, synchronize the policy package to the firewall for the managed FortiGate.

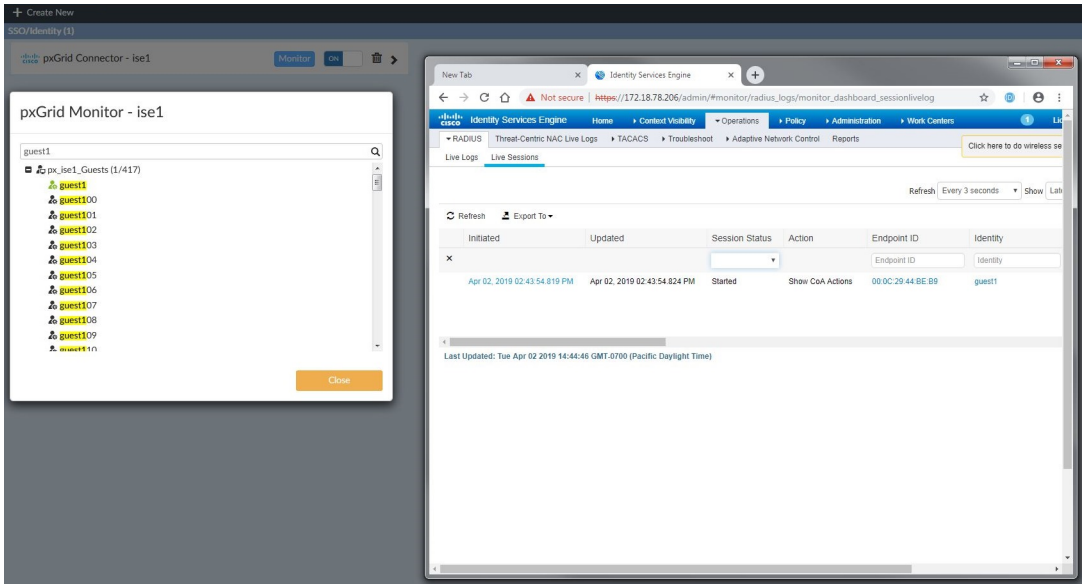



5. On FortiGate, verify that the synced firewall policy contains the correct FSSO group and that all FSSO-related information in `user adgrp` is correct.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set uuid b803052e-562a-51e9-0561-82525c8bcaa9
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set groups "ISE-group"
    next
end

FortiGate-400D # show user adgrp
config user adgrp
    edit "px_ise1_ANY"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Agroup1"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Agroup2"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Auditors"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_BYOD"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Contractors"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Developers"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Development_Servers"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Employees"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Guests"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_HR"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
    next
    edit "px_ise1_Network_Services"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
```

6. After successful user authentication on Cisco ISE, verify that information is forwarded to FortiManager. On FortiManager, the icon next to the authenticated user in *pxGrid Monitor* should be green.




FortiGate should have two entries: one in the firewall-authenticated user list and one in the FSSO logged-on user list.

In the FSSO logged-on user list, you can view both groups. You view the group that the user belongs to on Cisco ISE and the Fortinet FSSO group.

```
FortiGate-400D #
FortiGate-400D # dia deb authd fsso l
----FSSO logons----
IP: 10.1.100.188  User: guest1  Groups: px_ise1_Guests  Workstation:  MemberOf: ISE-group
Total number of logons listed: 1, filtered: 0
----end of FSSO logons----

FortiGate-400D # dia firewall auth l

10.1.100.188, guest1
       type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 59694, idled: 59694
       server: FortiManager
       packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
       group_id: 2
       group_name: ISE-group

----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

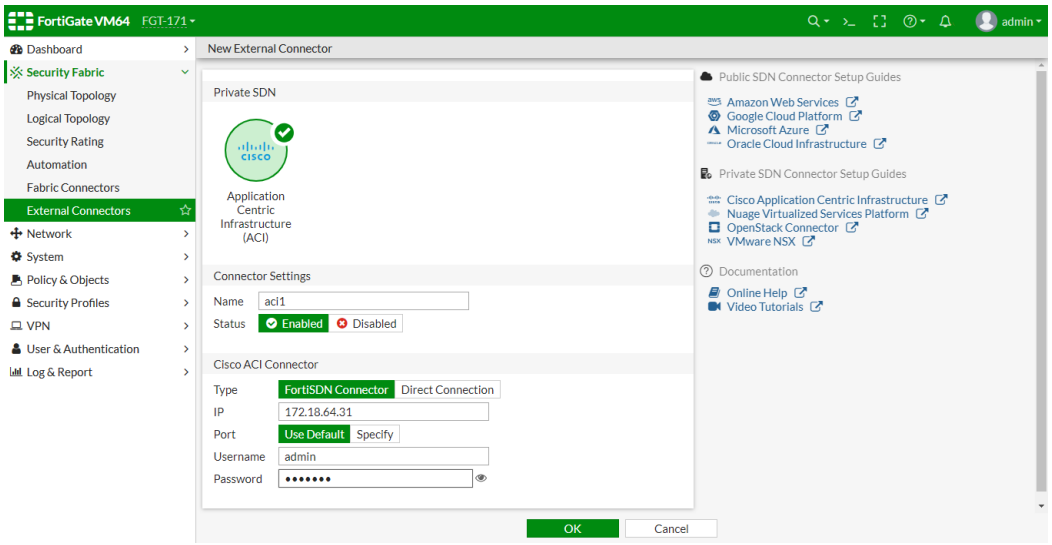
## Cisco ACI SDN connector

Cisco ACI (Application Centric Infrastructure) SDN connectors can be used in dynamic firewall addresses.

The Fortinet SDN Connector for Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks is a standalone connector that connects to SDN controllers within Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks. You must configure a connection to the Fortinet SDN connector in FortiOS to query the dynamic addresses.

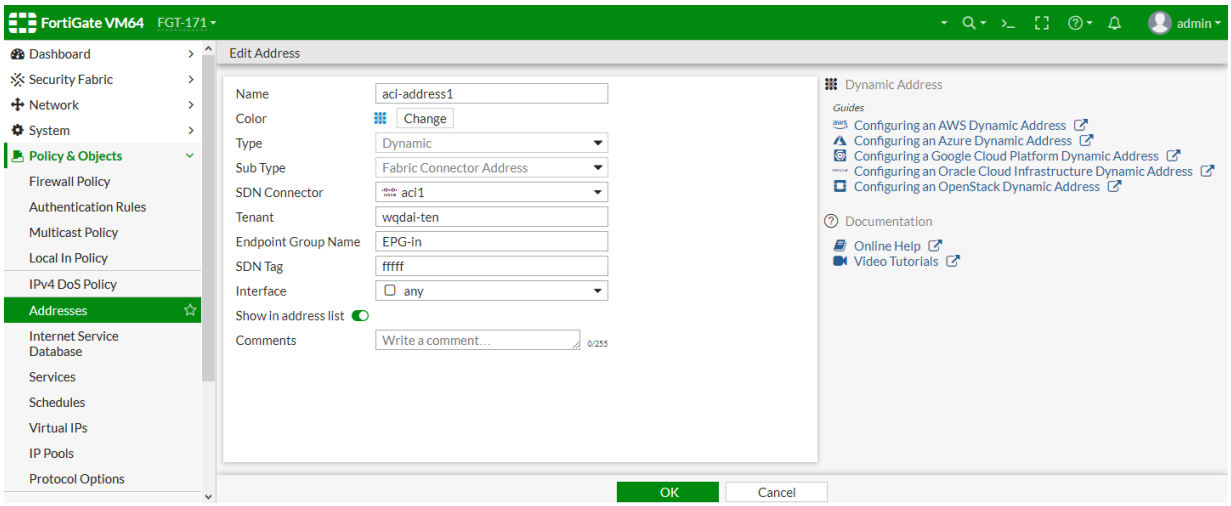
### To configure a Cisco ACI connector in the GUI:

1. Create the Cisco ACI SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Private SDN* section, click *Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI)*.
   c. In the *Cisco ACI Connector* section, for *Type*, select *Fortinet SDN Connector* and configure the remaining settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.




2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following settings:
      i. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. For *Sub Type*, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
      iii. For *SDN Connector*, select the first ACI connector.
      iv. Configure the remaining settings as needed.

c. Click *OK*.




**To verify the dynamic firewall IPs are resolved by the SDN connector in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. In the address table, hover over the address to view which IPs it resolves to.

**To configure a Cisco ACI connector in the CLI:**

1. Create the SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "aci1"
        set type aci
        set server "172.18.64.31"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aci-address1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aci1"
        set color 17
        set tenant "wqdai-ten"
        set epg-name "EPG-in"
        set sdn-tag "fffff"
    next
end
```

**To verify the dynamic firewall IPs are resolved by the SDN connector in the CLI:**

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list

List all dynamic addresses:
```

```
aci1.aci.wqdai-ten.EPG-in.fffff: ID(171)
        ADDR(192.168.100.20)
```

## Cisco ACI SDN connector with direct connection

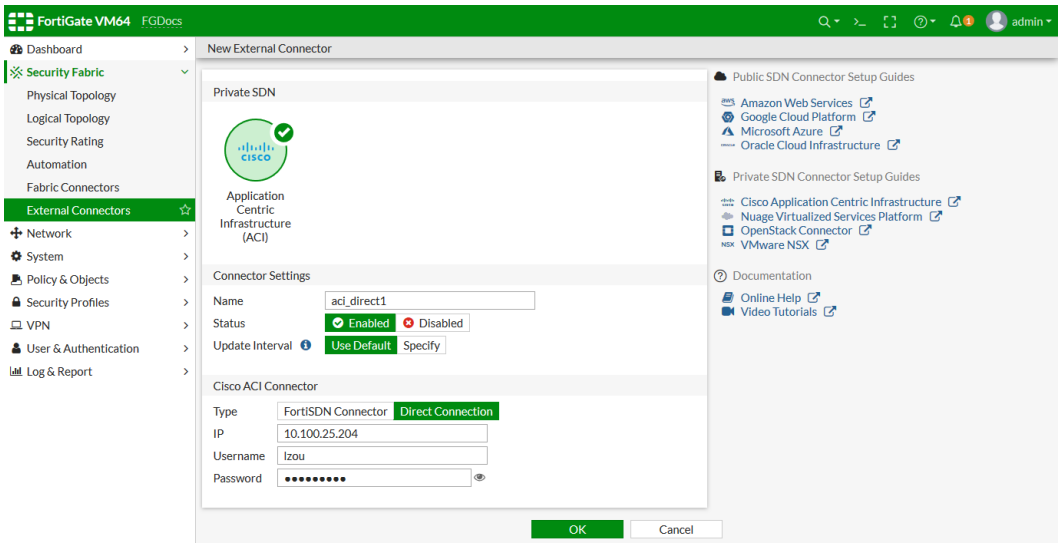
The Cisco ACI (Application Centric Infrastructure) connector can be used for northbound API integration with a direct connection.

The following address filters are supported:

- Tenant
- Application
- Endpoint group
- Tag

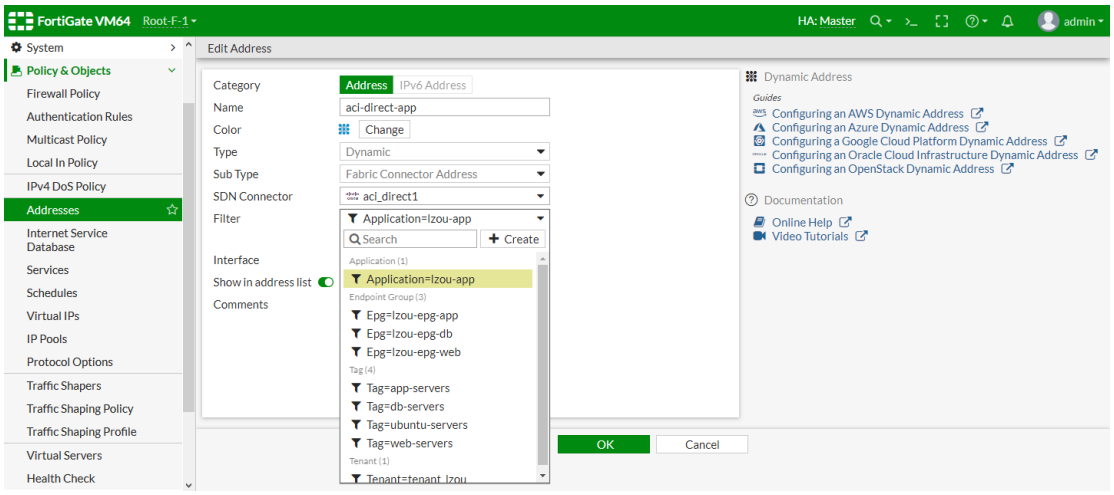
**To configure a Cisco ACI connector in the GUI:**

1. Create the Cisco ACI SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*,.
   b. In the *Private SDN* section, click *Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI)*.
   c. Configure the *Connector Settings* as needed. The update interval is in seconds.
   d. In the *Cisco ACI Connector* section, for *Type*, select *Direct Connection* and configure the remaining settings as needed.
   e. Click *OK*.

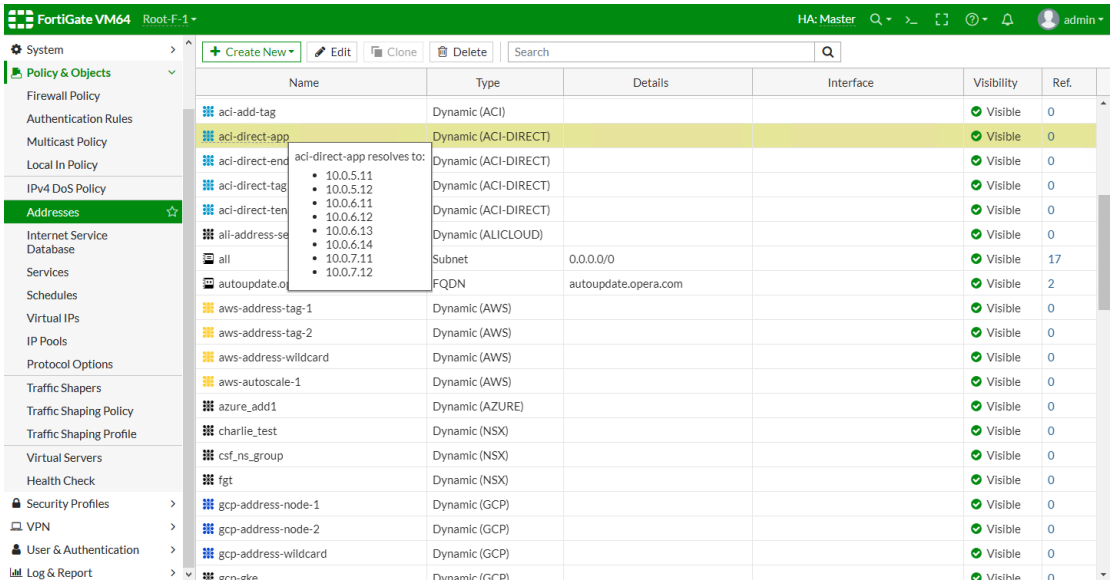



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Address* and enter a name.
   c. Configure the following settings:
      i. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. For *Sub Type*, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
      iii. For *SDN Connector*, select the connector created in step 1.
      iv. For *Filter*, select an entry from the dropdown list. In this example, *Application* is selected.

**d.** Click *OK*.




3. Confirm that the connector resolves the dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   **a.** Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   **b.** In the address table, hover over the address created in step 2 to view which IPs it resolves to:




### To configure a Cisco ACI connector in the CLI:

1. Create the Cisco ACI SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "aci_direct1"
        set status enable
        set type aci-direct
        set server "10.100.25.204"
        set username "lzou"
        set password xxxxxxx
        set update-interval 60
    next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aci-direct-app"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aci_direct1"
        set color 17
        set filter "Application=lzou-app"
    next
end
```

3. Confirm that the connector resolves the dynamic firewall IP addresses:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aci-direct-app"
        show
            config firewall address
                edit "aci-direct-app"
                    set uuid 794aaf20-3e33-51ea-57e1-10b5badf3fc7
                    set type dynamic
                    set sdn "aci_direct1"
                    set color 17
                    set filter "Application=lzou-app"
                    config list
                        edit "10.0.5.11"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.5.12"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.6.11"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.6.12"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.6.13"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.6.14"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.7.11"
                        next
                        edit "10.0.7.12"
                        next
                    end
                next
            end
        next
end
```

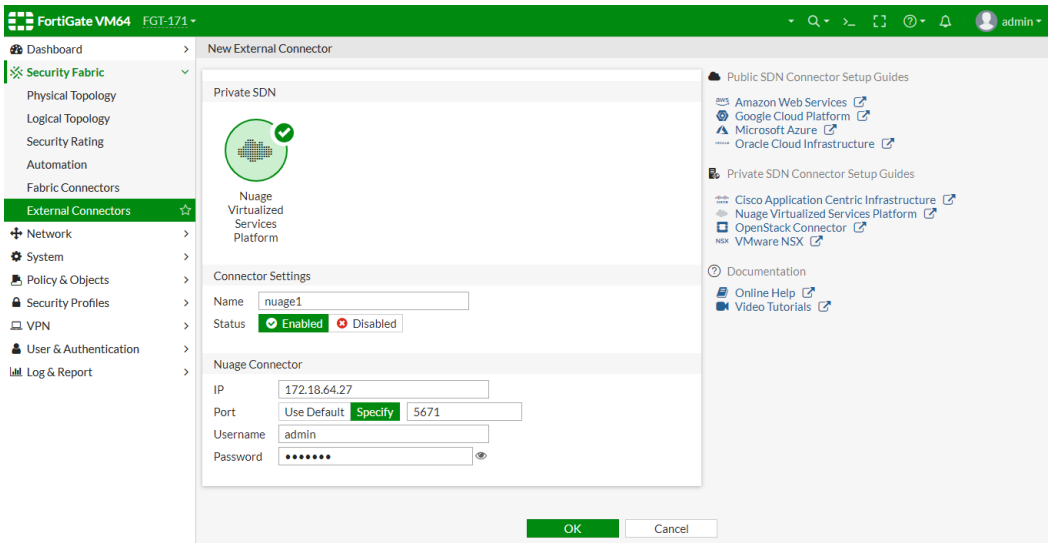
## Nuage SDN connector

You can use Nuage SDN connectors in dynamic firewall addresses.

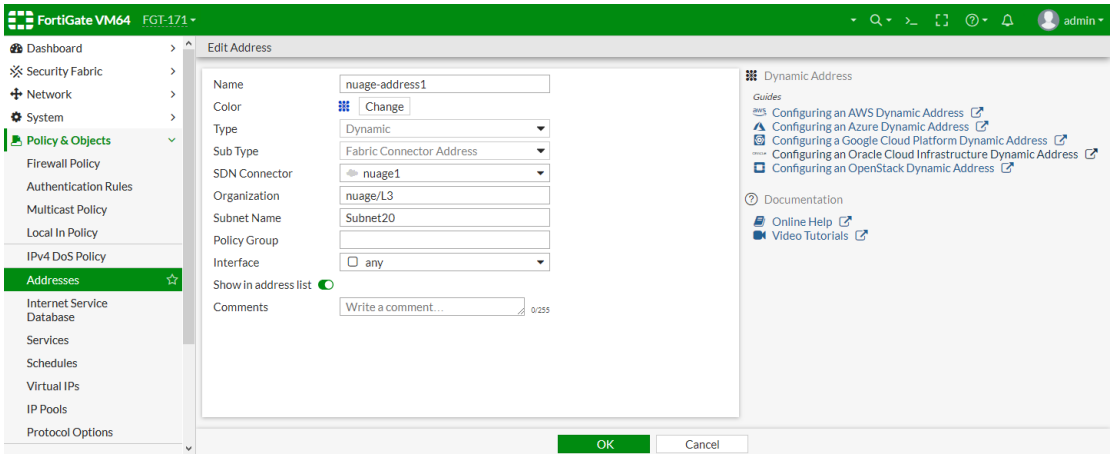
The Fortinet SDN Connector for Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks is a standalone connector that connects to SDN controllers within Cisco ACI and Nuage Networks. You must configure a connection to the Fortinet SDN connector in FortiOS to query the dynamic addresses.

**To configure a Nuage connector in the GUI:**

1. Create the Nuage SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Private SDN* section, click *Nuage Virtualized Services Platform*.
   c. Configure the settings as needed.
   d. Click *OK*.




2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. Configure the following settings:
      i. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
      ii. For *Sub Type*, select *Fabric Connector Address*.
      iii. For *SDN Connector*, select the first the first Nuage connector.
      iv. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
   c. Click *OK*.



**To verify the SDN connector resolves the dynamic firewall IPs in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. In the address table, hover over an address to view which IPs it resolves to.

**To configure a Nuage connector in the CLI:**

1. Create the SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nuage1"
        set type nuage
        set server "172.18.64.27"
        set server-port 5671
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address for the connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "nuage-address1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "nuage1"
        set color 19
        set organization "nuage/L3"
        set subnet-name "Subnet20"
    next
end
```

**To verify the SDN connector resolves the dynamic firewall IPs in the CLI:**

```
# diagnose firewall dynamic list

List all dynamic addresses:
nuage1.nuage.nuage/L3.Subnet20.*: ID(196)
        ADDR(192.168.20.92)
        ADDR(192.168.20.240)
```

## Multiple concurrent SDN connectors

You can configure multiple instances configured for every SDN connector. The specific connector instance must be specified when creating a dynamic firewall address.

This topic provides examples of how to create two Microsoft Azure SDN connectors and use them in new dynamic firewall addresses.

**To create and use two new SDN connectors with the CLI:**

1. Create two new SDN connectors:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "azure1"
        set type azure
```

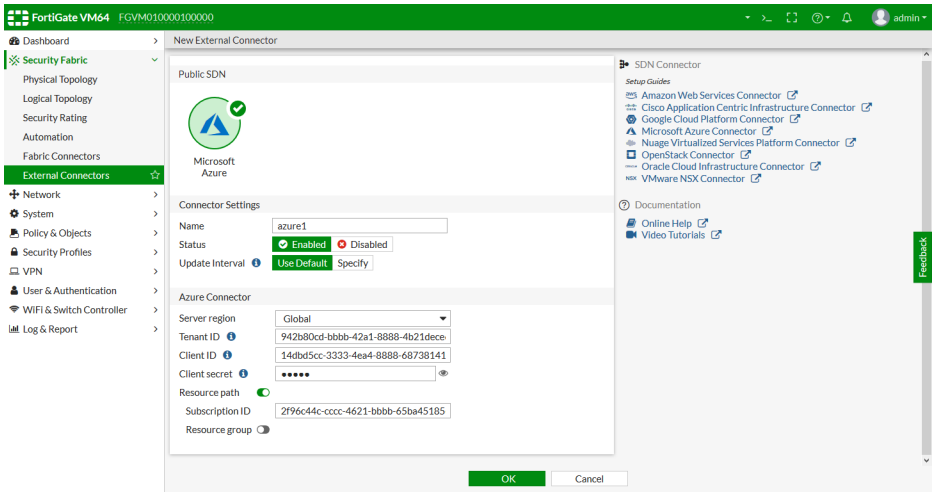
```
        set tenant-id "942b80cd-bbbb-42a1-8888-4b21dece61ba"
        set subscription-id "2f96c44c-cccc-4621-bbbb-65ba45185e0c"
        set client-id "14dbd5cc-3333-4ea4-8888-68738141feb1"
        set client-secret xxxxx
        set update-interval 30
    next
    edit "azure2"
        set type azure
        set tenant-id "942b80cd-bbbb-42a1-8888-4b21dece61ba"
        set client-id "3baa0acc-ffff-4444-b292-0777a2c36be6"
        set client-secret xxxxx
        set update-interval 30
    next
end
```

2. Create new dynamic firewall addresses that use the new connectors:

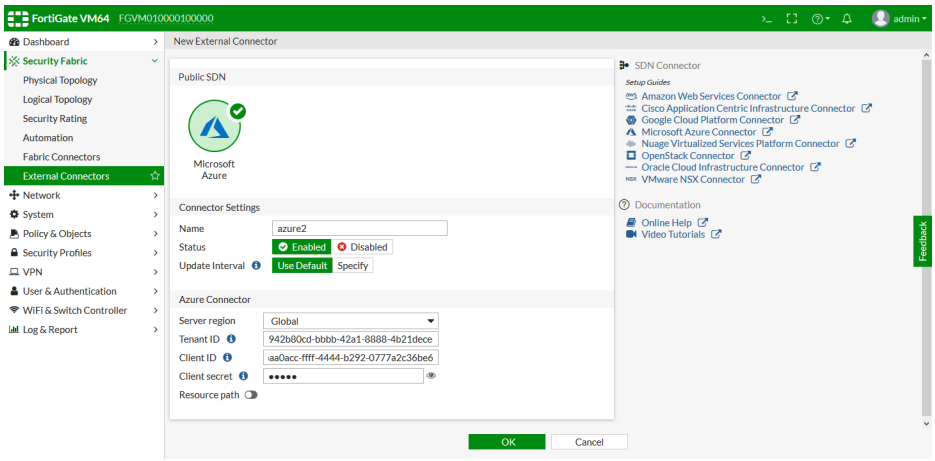
```
config firewall address
    edit "azure-address-location1"
        set type dynamic
        set color 2
        set sdn azure1
        set filter "location=WestUs"
    next
    edit "azure-address-location2"
        set type dynamic
        set color 2
        set sdn azure2
        set filter "location=NorthEurope"
    next
end
```

**To create and use two new SDN connectors with the GUI:**

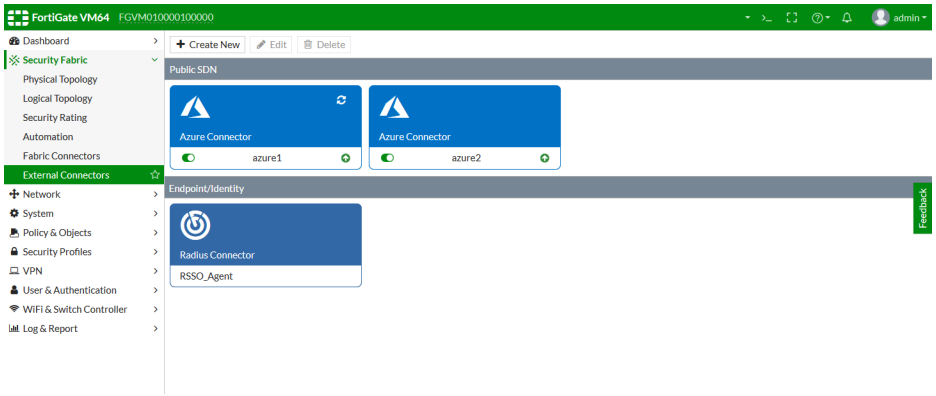
1. Create two new SDN connectors:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, and click *Create New* in the toolbar.
   b. Click on *Microsoft Azure*.
   c. Fill in the required information, then click *OK*.



**d.** Repeat the above steps for the second connector.




Two Microsoft Azure connectors will now be created.

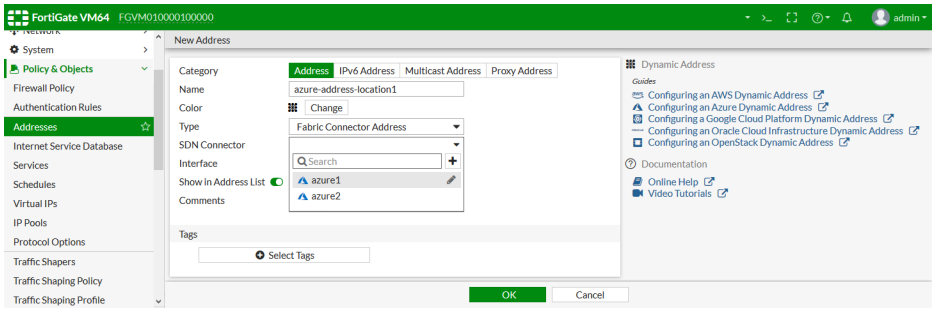



**2.** Create new dynamic firewall addresses that use the new connectors:

**a.** Go to *Policy and Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address* in the toolbar.

**b.** Enter a name for the address, and select *Fabric Connector Address* for the *Type*.

**c.** Select one of the previously created SDN connectors from the *SDN Connector* drop down list.




**d.** Configure the rest of the required information, then click *OK* to create the address.

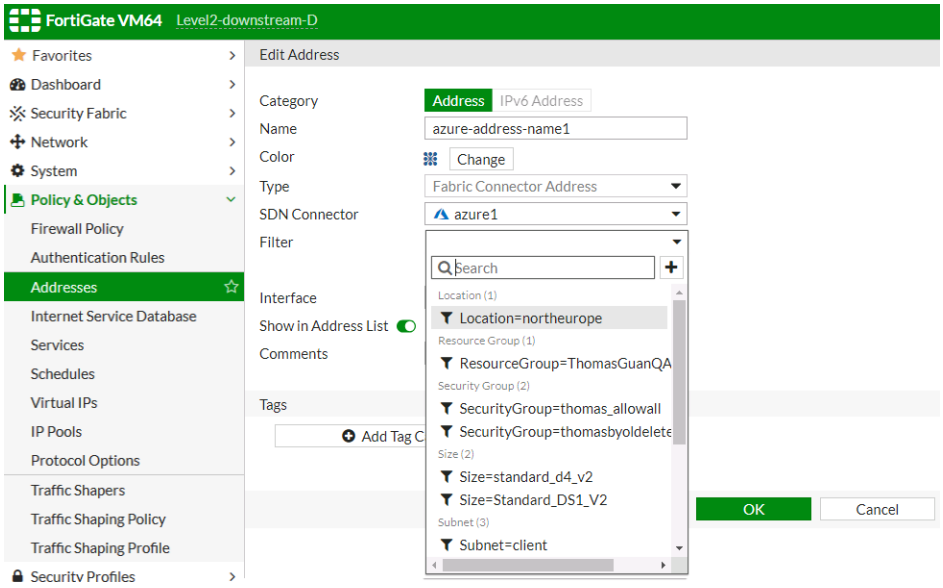
**e.** Repeat the above steps to create the second address, selecting the other Microsoft Azure SDN connector.

## Filter lookup in SDN connectors

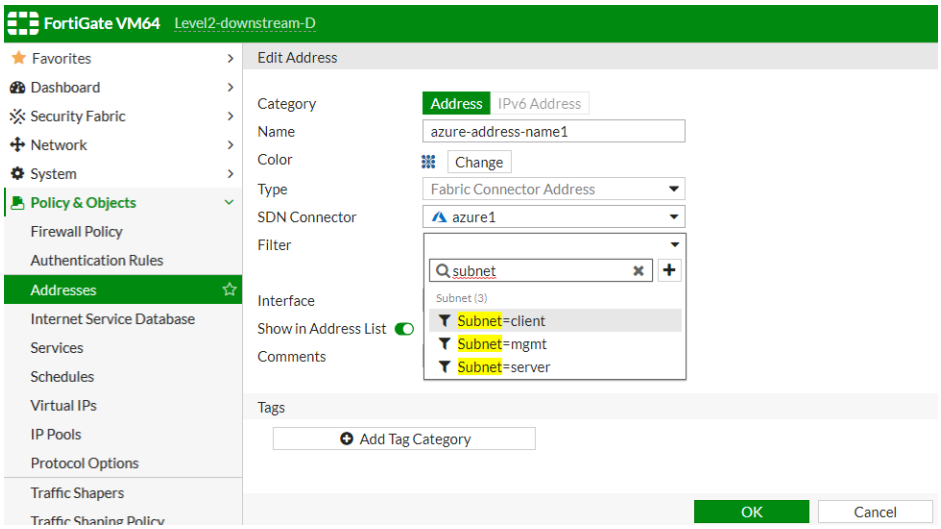
When configuring dynamic address mappings for filters in SDN connectors for Azure, GCP, OpenStack, Kubernetes, and AliCloud, FortiGate can query the filters automatically.

**To use the filter lookup:**

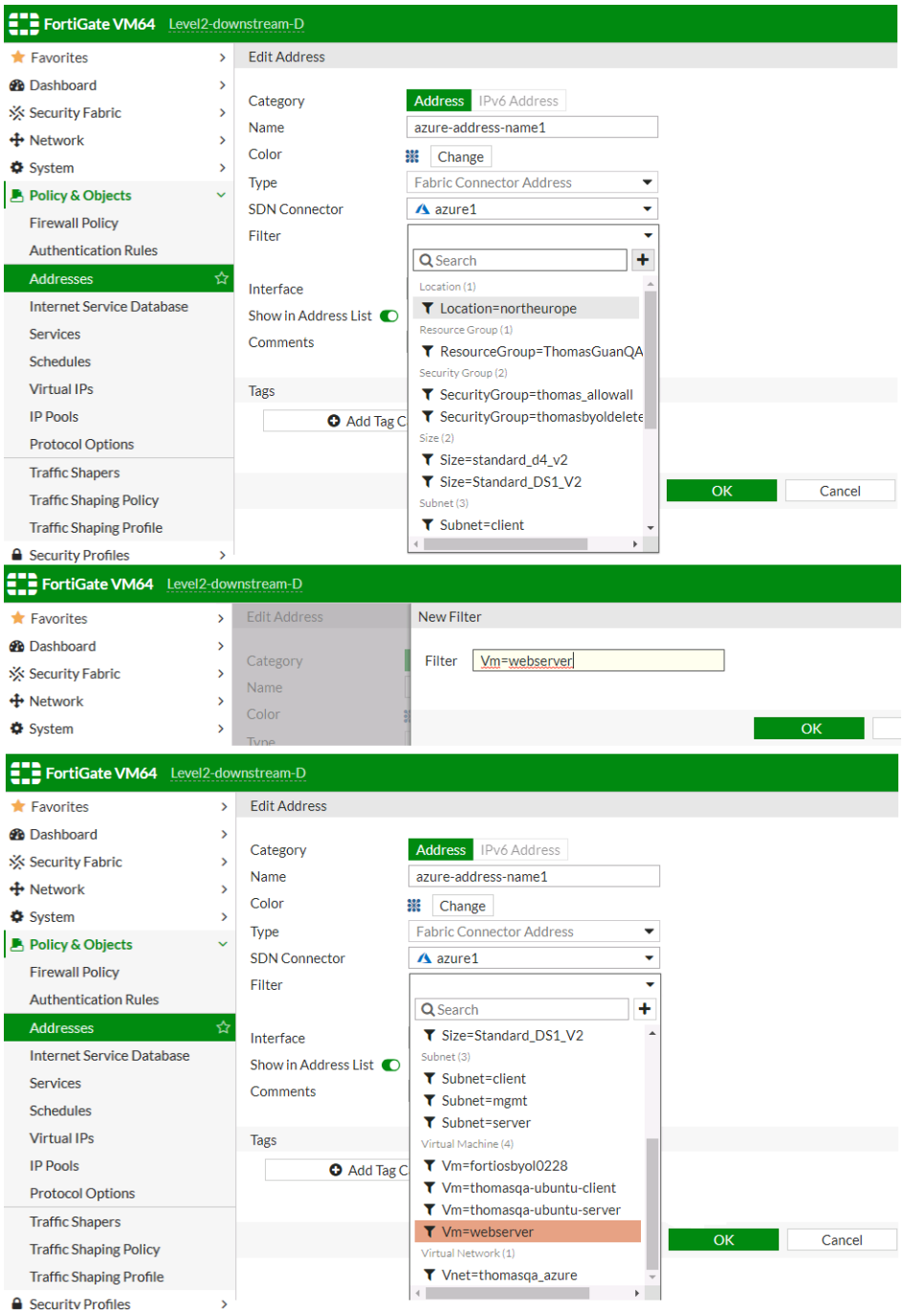
1. Navigate to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Create or edit an SDN connector type dynamic IP address.
   Supported SDN connector types include: AWS, Azure, GCP, OpenStack, Kubernetes, and AliCloud. The example below is for an Azure SDN connector.
3. In the address *Filter* field, you can perform the following actions:
   - List all available filters.



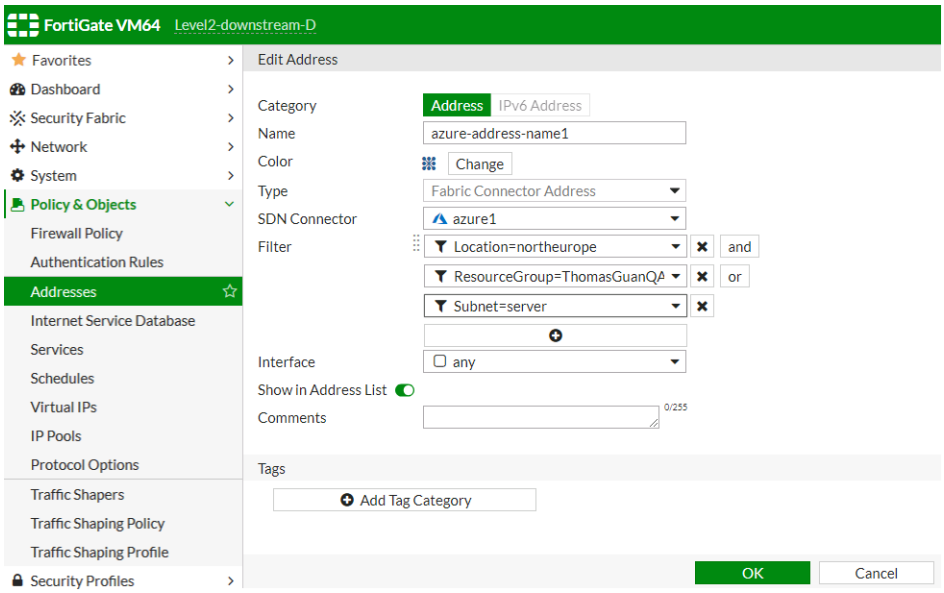

   - Search the available filters.



- Create custom filters.



- Set filter logic [and|or].




## Support for wildcard SDN connectors in filter configurations

Wildcards are supported for SDN connectors when configuring dynamic address filters.

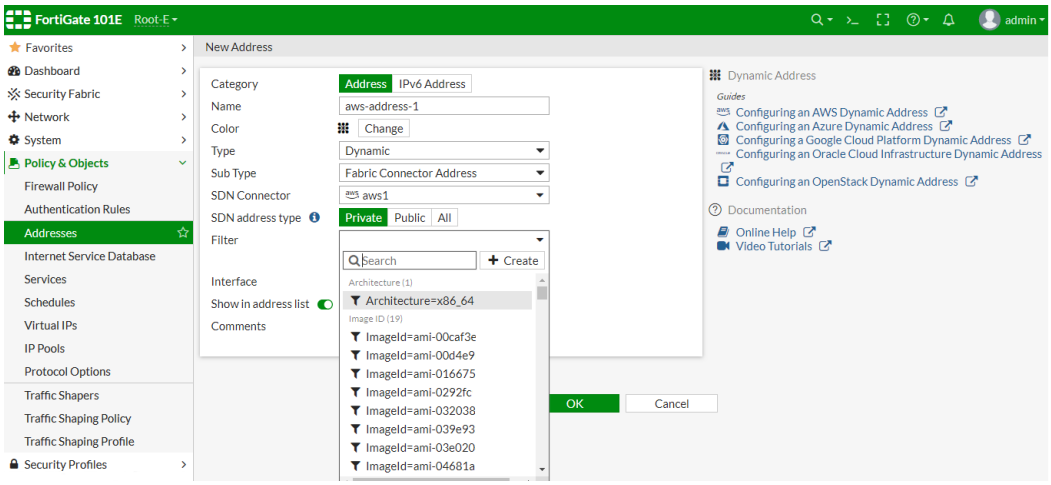
The following SDN connector types are currently supported:

- AWS
- Azure
- Google Cloud Platform
- Kubernetes
- OpenStack
- Oracle Cloud Infrastructure
- VMware ESXi

### To configure a dynamic address filter for AWS in the GUI:

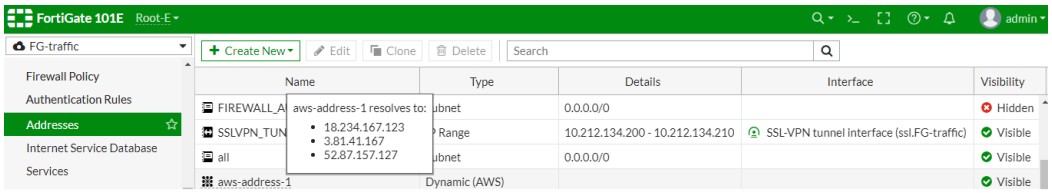
1. Create the SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Public SDN* section, click *Amazon Web Services (AWS)*.
   d. Configure the settings as needed.
   e. Click *OK*.
2. Create the dynamic firewall address:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Address*
   c. Enter a name for the address, then configure the following settings:
      - Set *Type* to *Dynamic*.
      - Set *Sub Type* to *Fabric Connector Address*.
      - Set *SDN Connector* to *aws1*.

- Set *SDN address type* to *Private*.
- For *Filter*, click *Create*, enter `Tag.Name=aws*`, the click *OK*.

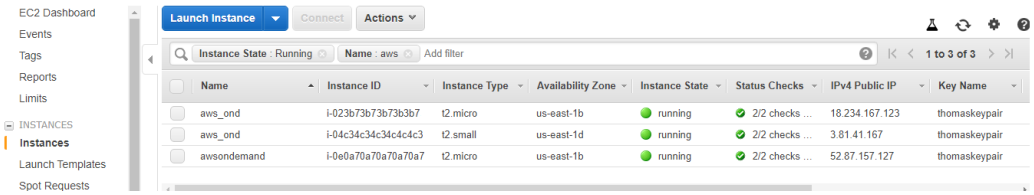



**d.** Click *OK*.

3. In the address table, hover over the address to view what IPs it resolves to.




4. In AWS, verify to confirm the IP addresses match.




### To configure a dynamic address filter for AWS in the CLI:

1. Configure the SDN connector:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aws-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aws1"
        set filter "Tag.Name=aws*"
        set sdn-addr-type public
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic firewall address and verify where the IP addresses resolve to:

```
config firewall address
    edit "aws-address-1"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "aws1"
```

```
            set filter "Tag.Name=aws*"
            set sdn-addr-type public
            config list
                edit "18.234.167.123"
                next
                edit "3.81.41.167"
                next
                edit "52.87.157.127"
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

3. In AWS, verify that the IP addresses match.

## Kubernetes (K8s) SDN connectors

The following topics provide information about configuring Kubernetes SDN connectors:

- Private Cloud K8s SDN connector on page 253
- AWS Kubernetes (EKS) SDN connector on page 255
- Azure Kubernetes (AKS) SDN connector on page 261
- GCP Kubernetes (GKE) SDN connector on page 258
- Oracle Kubernetes (OKE) SDN connector on page 263

### Private Cloud K8s SDN connector

FortiOS automatically updates dynamic and cluster IP addresses for Kubernetes (K8s) by using a K8s SDN connector, enabling FortiOS to manage K8s pods as global address objects, as with other connectors. This includes mapping the following attributes from K8s instances to dynamic address groups in FortiOS:

| Filter | Description |
|---|---|
| Namespace | Filter service IP addresses in a given namespace. |
| ServiceName | Filter service IP addresses by the given service name. |
| NodeName | Filter node IP addresses by the given node name. |
| PodName | Filter IP addresses by the pod name. |
| Label.XXX | Filter service or node IP addresses with the given label XXX. For example: `K8S_Label.app=nginx`. |

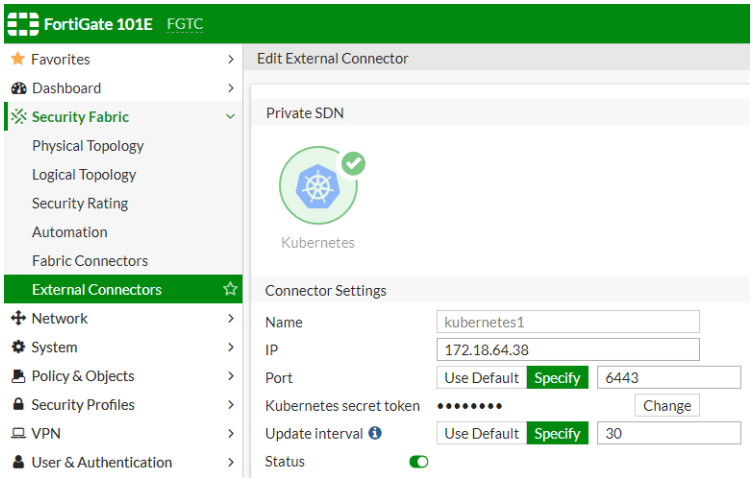
FortiOS collects cluster IP addresses in addition to external IP addresses for exposed Kubernetes services.



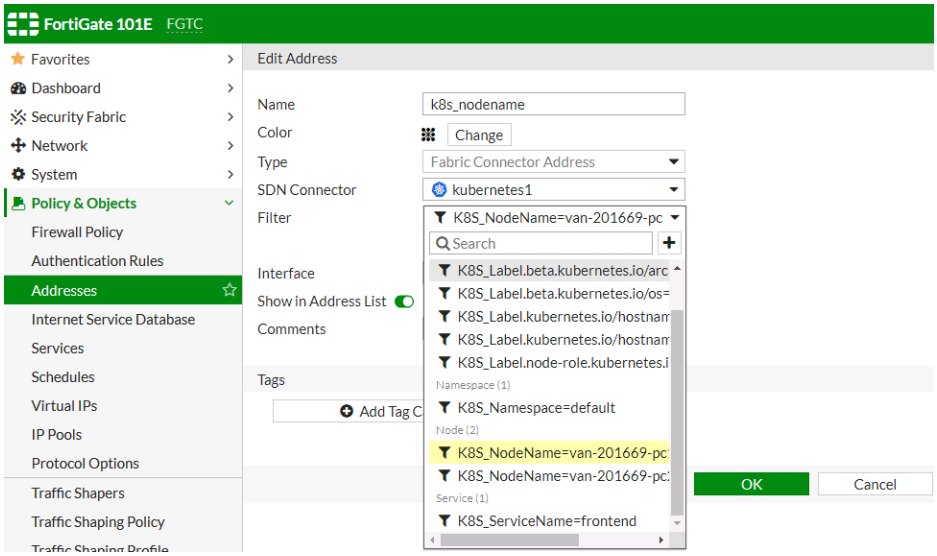
There is no maximum limit for the number of IP addresses populated with the filters.

**To configure K8s SDN connector using the GUI:**

1. Configure the K8s SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Kubernetes*.
   c. Configure as shown substituting the IP address, port number, and secret token for your deployment. The update interval is in seconds.

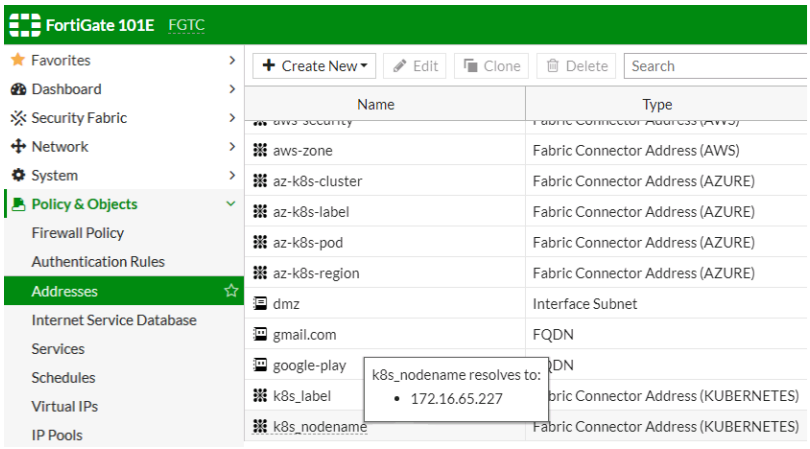



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured K8S SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the K8s SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for node instances that match the specified node name:




3. Ensure that the K8s SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for node instances that match the node

name configured in step 2:




**To configure K8s SDN connector using CLI commands:**

1. Configure the K8s SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "kubernetes1"
      set type kubernetes
      set server "172.18.64.38"
      set server-port 6443
      set secret-token xxxxx
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured K8s SDN connector with the supported K8s filter. In this example, the K8s SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for node instances that match the specified node name:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "kubernetes1"
      set filter "K8S_NodeName=van-201669-pc1"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the K8s SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "kubernetes1"
      set filter "K8S_NodeName=van-201669-pc1"
      config list
         edit "172.16.65.227"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## AWS Kubernetes (EKS) SDN connector

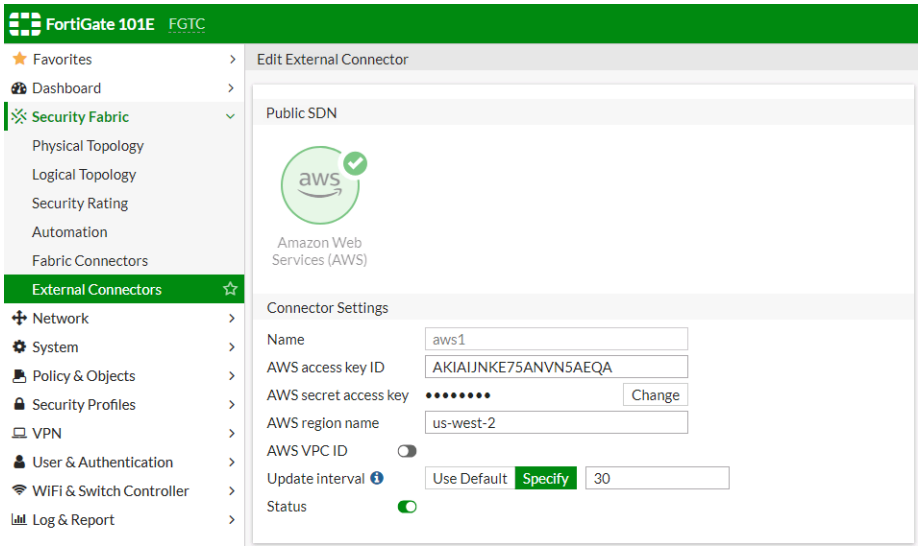
AWS SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on AWS Kubernetes (EKS) filters.

To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, the following address filters have been introduced:

| | |
|---|---|
| k8s_cluster | Name of Kubernetes cluster. |
| k8s_namespace | Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod. |
| k8s_svcname | Name of a Kubernetes service. |
| k8s_nodename | Name of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_zone | Zone of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_region | Region of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_podname | Name of a Kubernetes pod. |
| k8s_label.xxx | Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/Pod). |

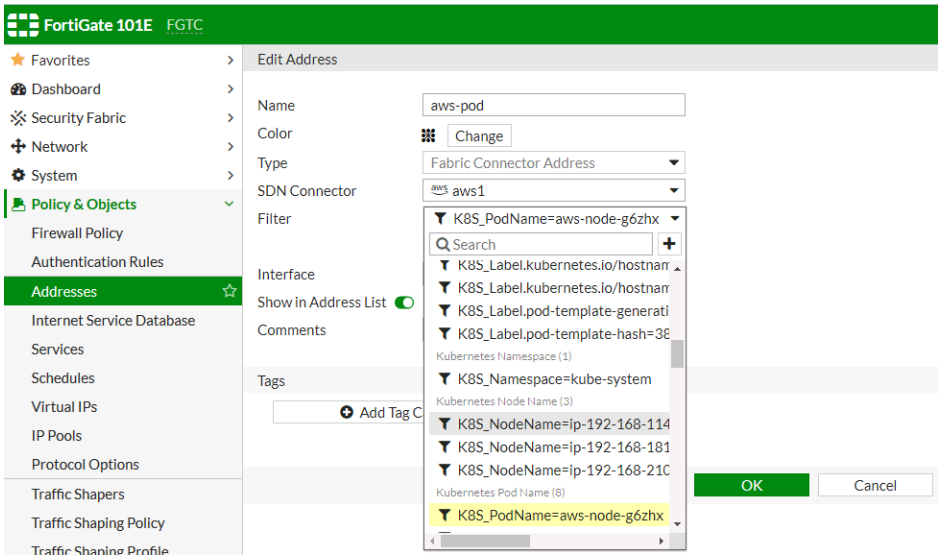
**To enable an AWS SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from AWS Kubernetes:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, and configure an SDN connector for AWS Kubernetes.

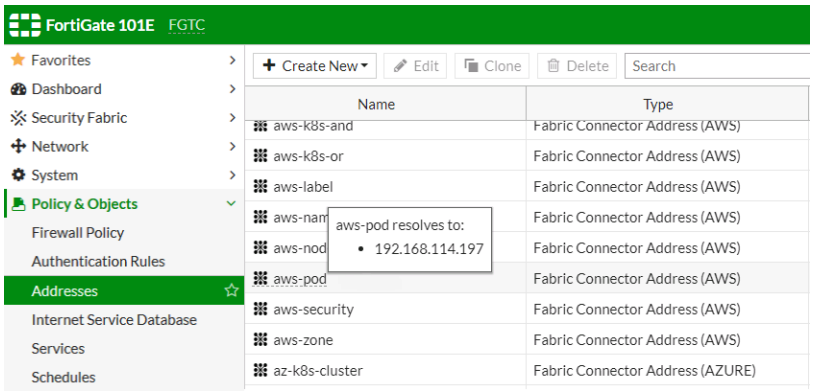



2. Go to *Policies & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a dynamic firewall address for the configured SDN connector using the supported Kubernetes filter.

3. To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, select the address filter or filters.




4. Configure the rest of the settings, then click *OK*.
The dynamic firewall address IP is resolved by the SDN connector.




### To configure an AWS Kubernetes SDN connector through the CLI:

1. Configure an SDN connector for Kubernetes:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "aws1"
      set type aws
      set access-key "AKIAIJNKE75ANVN5AEQA"
      set secret-key xxxxx
      set region "us-west-2"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported Kubernetes filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "aws-pod"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "aws1"
      set filter "K8S_PodName=aws-node-g6zhx"
   next
```

```
end
```

The dynamic firewall address IP is resolved by the SDN connector:

```
config firewall address
   edit "aws-pod"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "aws1"
      set filter "K8S_PodName=aws-node-g6zhx"
      config list
         edit "192.168.114.197"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## GCP Kubernetes (GKE) SDN connector

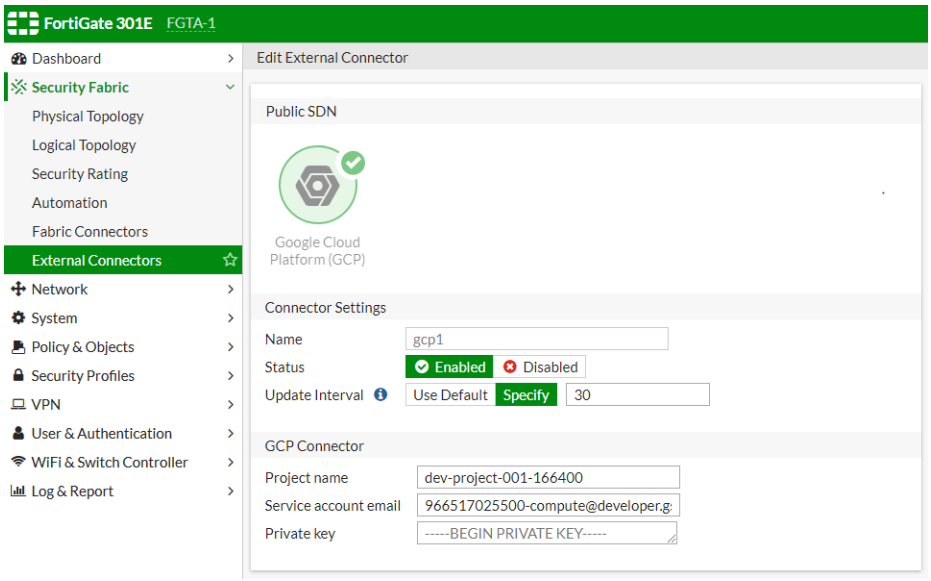
Google Cloud Platform (GCP) SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on GCP Kubernetes Engine (GKE) filters.

To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, the following address filters have been introduced:

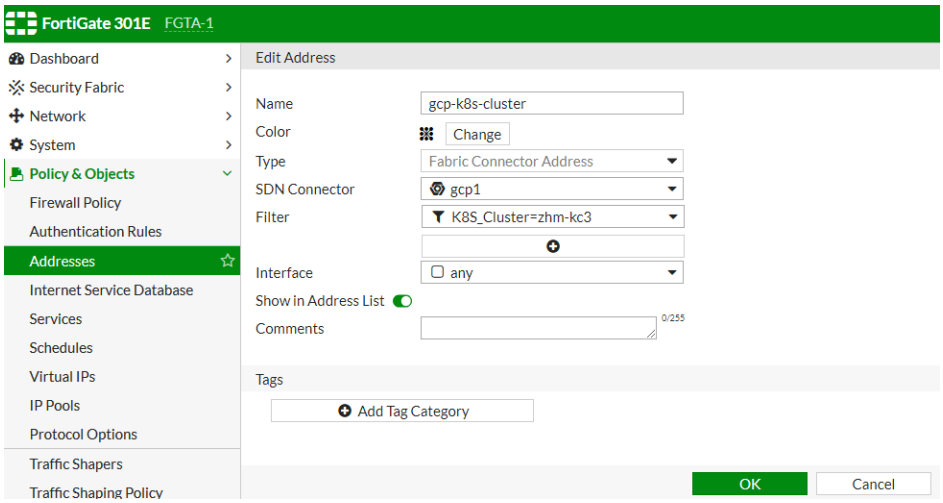
| | |
|---|---|
| k8s_cluster | Name of Kubernetes cluster. |
| k8s_nodepool | Name of node pool for a Kubernetes cluster. |
| k8s_namespace | Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod. |
| k8s_servicename | Name of a Kubernetes service. |
| k8s_nodename | Name of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_zone | Zone of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_region | Region of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_podname | Name of a Kubernetes pod. |
| k8s_label.xxx | Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/Pod). |

**To enable a GCP SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from GKE:**

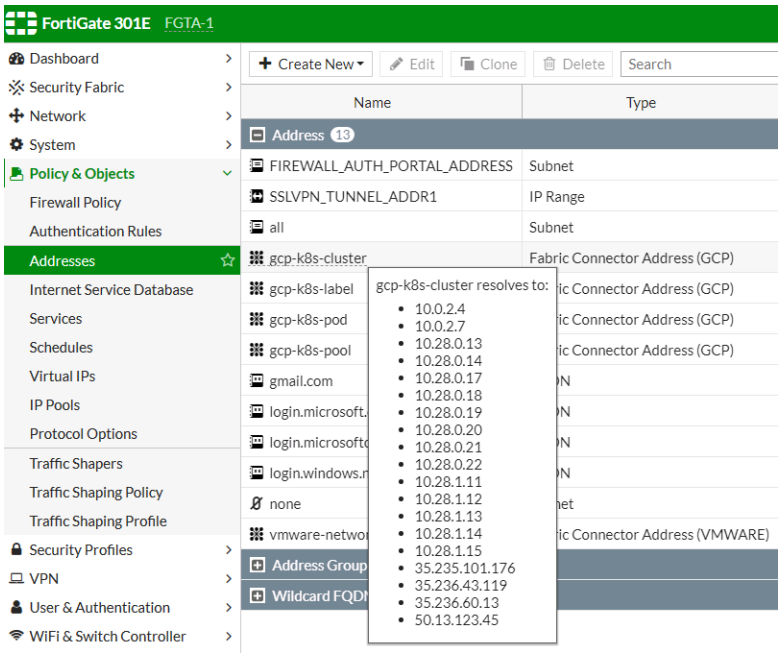
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, and configure an SDN connector for GCP.




2. Go to *Policies & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a dynamic firewall address for the configured SDN connector using the supported Kubernetes filter.
3. To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, select the address filter or filters. In this example, the GCP SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the zhm-kc3 cluster:




4. Configure the rest of the settings, then click *OK*.
   The dynamic firewall address IP is resolved by the SDN connector.




**To configure a GCP Kubernetes SDN connector through the CLI:**

1. Configure an SDN connector for Kubernetes:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "gcp1"
      set type gcp
      set gcp-project "dev-project-001-166400"
      set service-account "966517025500-compute@developer.gserviceaccount.com"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported Kubernetes filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "gcp-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "gcp1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhm-kc3"
   next
end
```

The dynamic firewall address IP is resolved by the SDN connector:

```
config firewall address
   edit "gcp-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "gcp1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhm-kc3"
      config list
         edit "10.0.2.4"
         next
         edit "10.0.2.7"
         next
         edit "10.28.0.13"
         next
      end
```

```
    next
end
```

## Azure Kubernetes (AKS) SDN connector

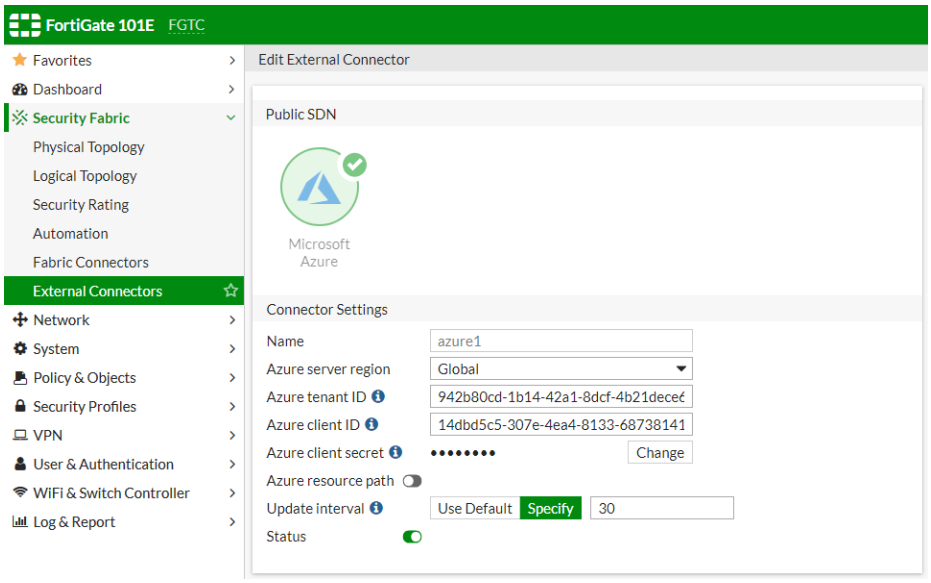
Azure SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on Azure Kubernetes (AKS) filters.

To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, the following address filters have been introduced:

| | |
|---|---|
| k8s_cluster | Kubernetes cluster name. |
| k8s_namespace | Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod. |
| k8s_svcname | Kubernetes service name. |
| k8s_nodename | Kubernetes node name. |
| k8s_region | Kubernetes node region. |
| k8s_podname | Kubernetes pod name. |
| k8s_label.xxx | Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/Pod). |

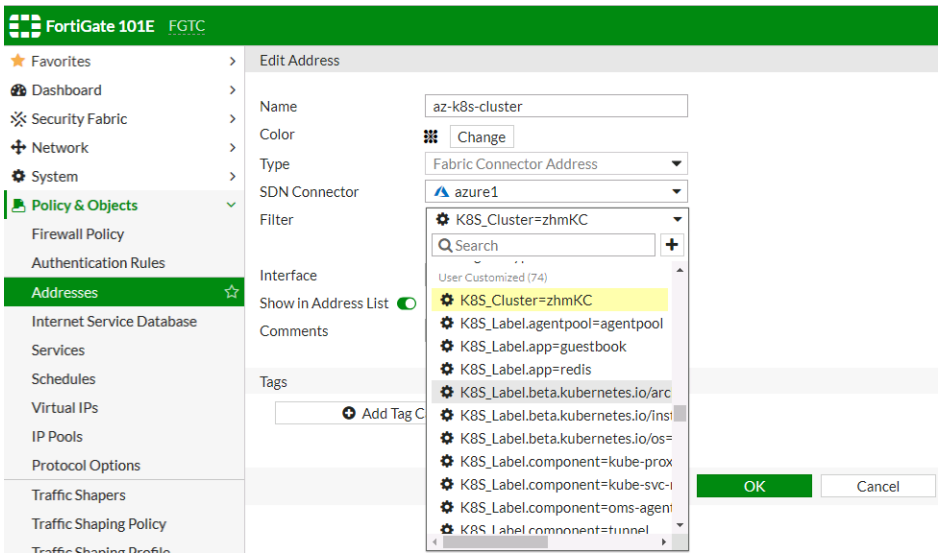
**To enable an Azure SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from Azure Kubernetes:**

1. Configure the Azure SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Azure*.
   c. Configure as shown substituting the region, tenant and client IDs, and client secret for your deployment. The update interval is in seconds.

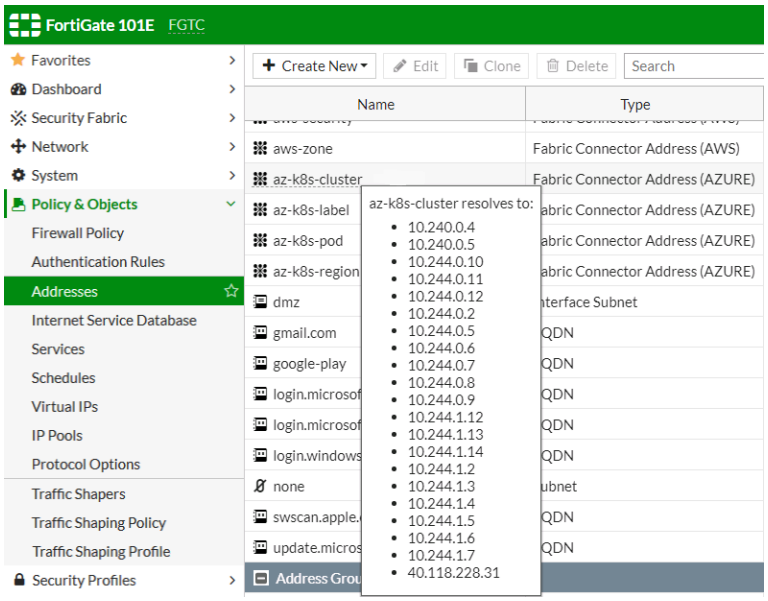



2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the configured K8S SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the address as shown, selecting the desired filter in the *Filter* dropdown list. In this example, the Azure SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the

zhmKC cluster:




3. Ensure that the K8S SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances that belong to the zhmKC cluster as configured in step 2:




**To configure an Azure Kubernetes SDN connector through the CLI:**

1. Configure an SDN connector for Kubernetes:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "azure1"
      set type azure
      set tenant-id "942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba"
      set client-id "14dbd5c5-307e-4ea4-8133-68738141feb1"
      set client-secret xxxxx
      set update-interval 30
   next
```

```
end
```

2. Create a dynamic firewall address for the SDN connector with a supported Kubernetes filter. In this example, the Azure SDN connector will automatically populate and update IP addresses only for instances that belong to the zhmKC cluster:

```
config firewall address
   edit "az-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "azure1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhmKC"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the Azure SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses using the configured filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "az-k8s-cluster"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "azure1"
      set filter "K8S_Cluster=zhmKC"
      config list
         edit "10.240.0.4"
         next
         edit "10.240.0.5"
         next
         edit "10.244.0.10"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Oracle Kubernetes (OKE) SDN connector

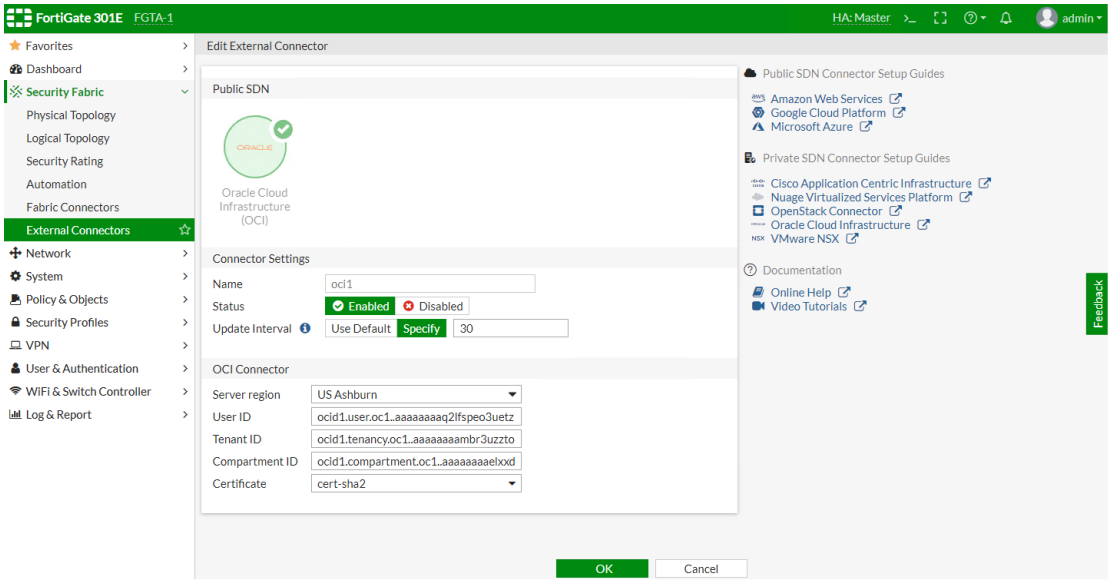
OCI SDN connectors support dynamic address groups based on Oracle Kubernetes (OKE) filters.

To filter out the Kubernetes IP addresses, the following address filters have been introduced:

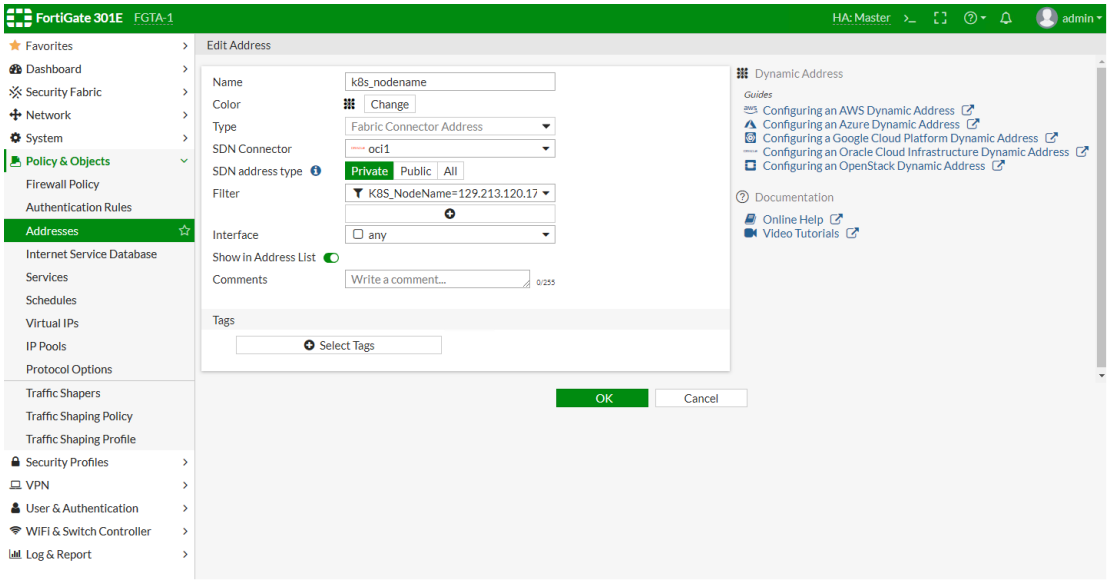
| | |
|---|---|
| k8s_compartment | Name of compartment that the Kubernetes cluster created in. |
| k8s_cluster | Name of Kubernetes cluster. |
| k8s_namespace | Namespace of a Kubernetes service or pod. |
| k8s_servicename | Name of a Kubernetes service. |
| k8s_nodename | Name of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_region | Region of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_zone | Zone of a Kubernetes node. |
| k8s_podname | name of a Kubernetes pod. |
| k8s_label.xxx | Name of label of a Kubernetes resource (cluster/service/node/Pod) |

**To enable an OCI SDN connector to fetch IP addresses from Oracle Kubernetes:**

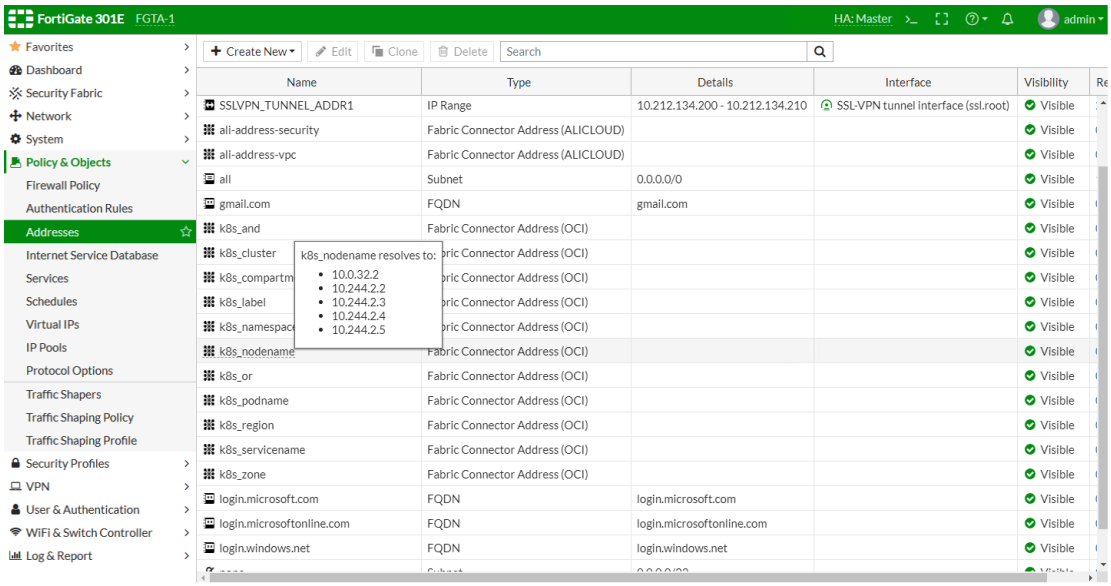
1. Configure the OCI SDN connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*, and select *Oracle Cloud Infrastructure (OCI)*.
   c. Configure as shown substituting the region, tenant and client IDs, and client secret for your deployment. The update interval is in seconds.




2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured SDN connector with supported Kubernetes filter:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*, then select *Address*.
   c. Configure the addresses.



3. Confirm that the SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Hover over the address created in step 2 to see a list of IP addresses for instances:




**To configure an SDN connector through the CLI:**

1. Configure the OCI SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
   edit "oci1"
      set type oci
      set tenant-id
           "ocid1.tenancy.oc1..aaaaaaaambr3uzztoyhweohbzqqdo775h7d3t54zpmzkp4b2cf35vs5
           5cxxx"
      set user-id
           "ocid1.user.oc1..aaaaaaaaq2lfspeo3uetzbzpiv2pqvzzevozccnys347stwssvizqlatfx
           xx"
      set compartment-id
           "ocid1.compartment.oc1..aaaaaaaaelxxdjazqo7nzczpgypyiqcgkmytjry6nfq5345vw7e
           avpwnmxxx"
      set oci-region ashburn
      set oci-cert "cert-sha2"
      set update-interval 30
   next
end
```

2. Create dynamic firewall addresses for the configured SDN connector with supported Kubernetes filter:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
      set sdn "oci1"
      set filter "K8S_NodeName=129.213.120.172"
   next
end
```

3. Confirm that the SDN connector resolves dynamic firewall IP addresses:

```
config firewall address
   edit "k8s_nodename"
      set type dynamic
```

```
        set sdn "oci1"
        set filter "K8S_NodeName=129.213.120.172"
        config list
           edit "10.0.32.2"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.2"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.3"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.4"
           next
           edit "10.244.2.5"
           next
        end
     next
  end
```

## Endpoint/Identity connectors

SSO fabric connectors integrate SSO authentication into the network. This allows users to enter their credentials only once, and have those credentials reused when accessing other network resources through the FortiGate.

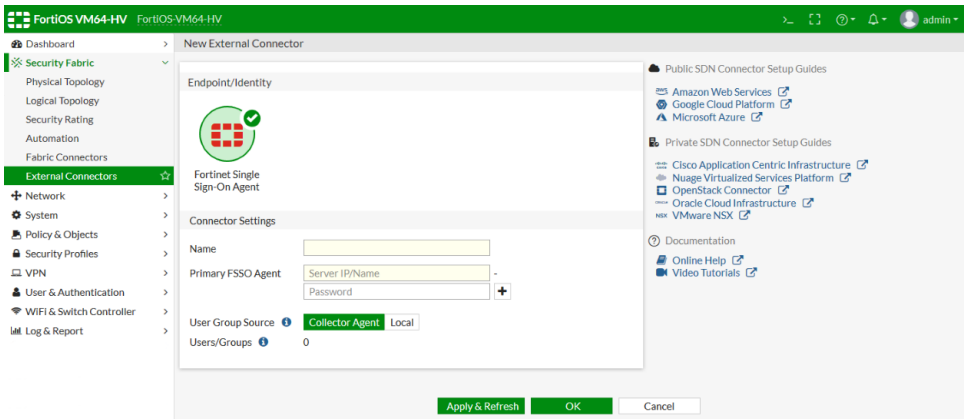
The following fabric connectors are available:

- Fortinet single sign-on agent on page 266
- Poll Active Directory server on page 267
- Symantec endpoint connector on page 267
- RADIUS single sign-on (RSSO) agent on page 274
- Exchange Server connector on page 278

### Fortinet single sign-on agent

**To create an FSSO agent connector in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.




4. Fill in the *Name*, and *Primary FSSO Agent* server IP address or name and *Password*.

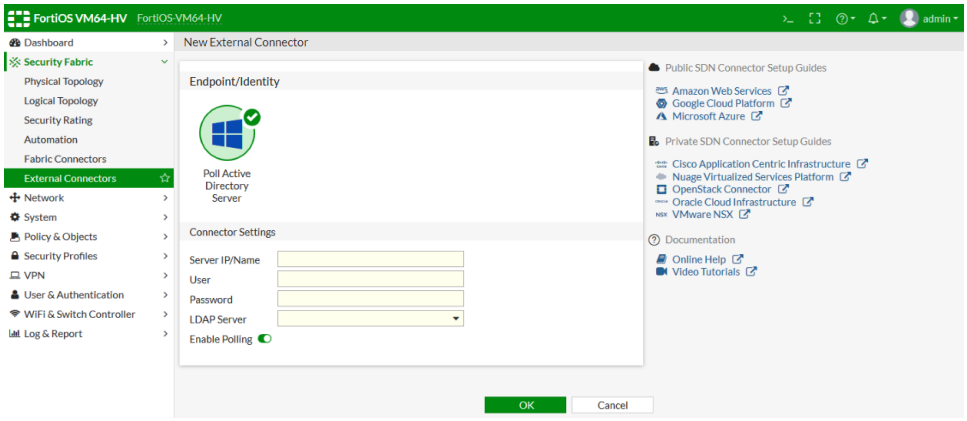
5. Optionally, add more FSSO agents by clicking the plus icon.
6. Select the *User Group Source*:
   - Collector Agent: User groups will be pushed to the FortiGate from the collector agent. Click *Apply & Refresh* to fetch group filters from the collector agent.
   - Local: User groups will be specified in the FortiGate unit's configuration. Select the LDAP server from the dropdown list, then select the *Users*, *Groups*, and *Organizational Units*. Enable or disable *Recursive* as required.
7. Click *OK*.

## Poll Active Directory server

The FortiGate unit can authenticate users and allow them network access based on groups membership in Windows Active Directory (AD).

**To create an AD server connector in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Poll Active Directory Server*.




4. Fill in the *Server IP/Name*, *User*, and *Password* for the AD server.
5. Select the LDAP server from the list.
6. If necessary, disable *Enable Polling*. This can be used to temporarily stop the FortiGate from polling security event logs on the Windows logon server, for troubleshooting purposes.
7. Click *OK*.

## Symantec endpoint connector

With the Fabric connector for Symantec Endpoint Protection Manager (SEPM), you can use the client IP information from SEPM to assign to dynamic IP addresses on FortiOS.

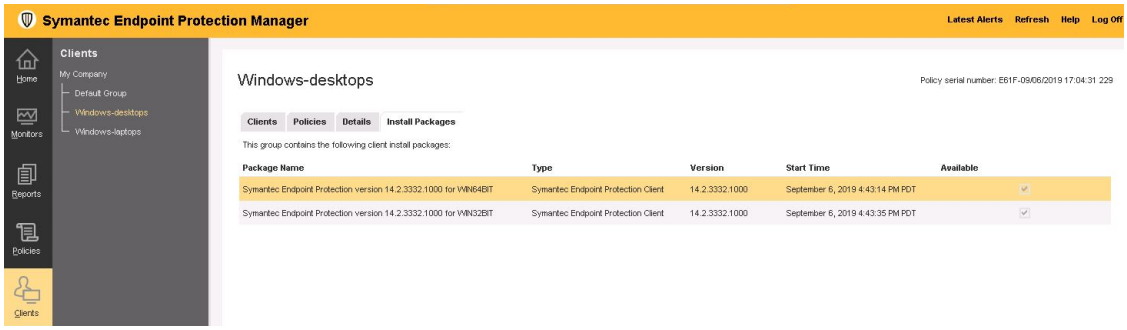
When communication between FortiGate and SEPM is established, FortiGate polls every minute for updates via TLS over port 8446. You can use the CLI to change the default one minute polling interval.

For example, you can create a dynamic Fabric Connector IP address subtype and use it in firewall policies as the source address. The dynamic IP address contains all IP addresses sent by SEPM.

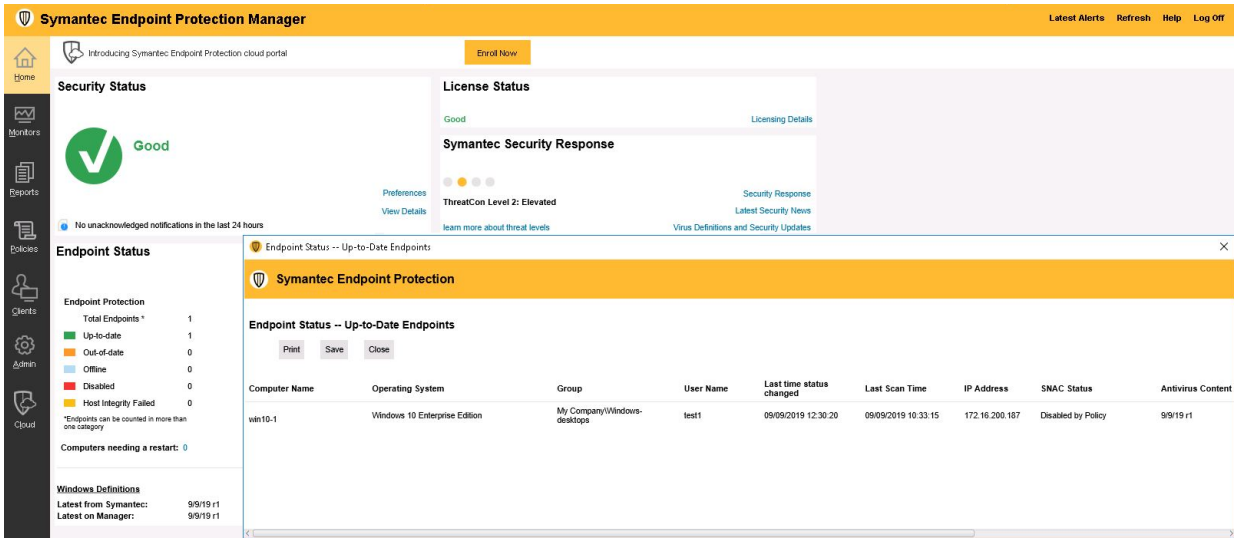
This example shows a dynamic IP address with SEPM and one client PC managed by SEPM using FortiGate as the default gateway.

**To configure SEPM on a managed client PC:**

1. In SEPM, create client packages for client hosts and group them into SEPM groups.
   You can install packages locally on clients or download them directly from SEPM.

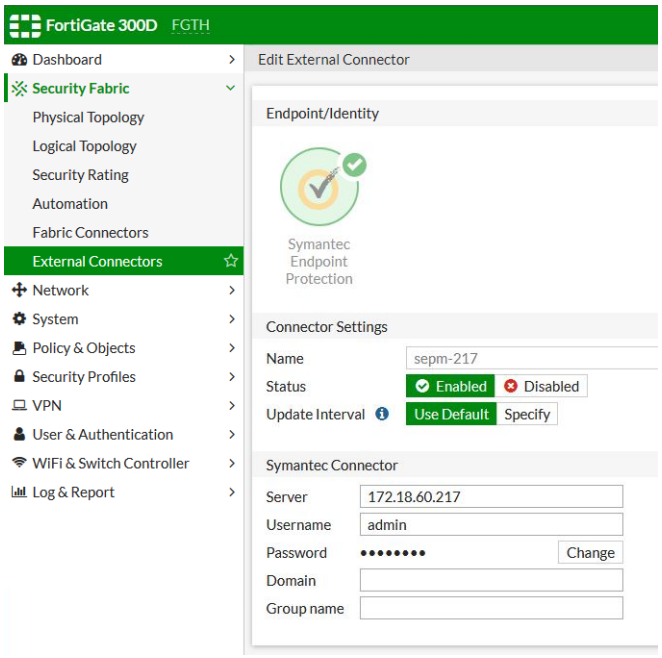



2. When a package is installed on the client host, the host is considered managed by SEPM.
   Even if the host has multiple interfaces, only one IP per host is displayed.

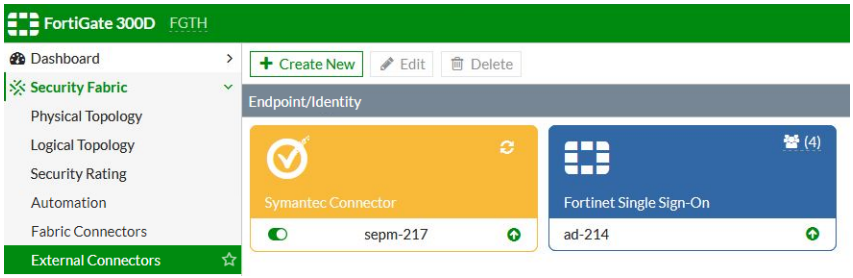



**To configure Symantec endpoint connector on FortiGate in the GUI:**

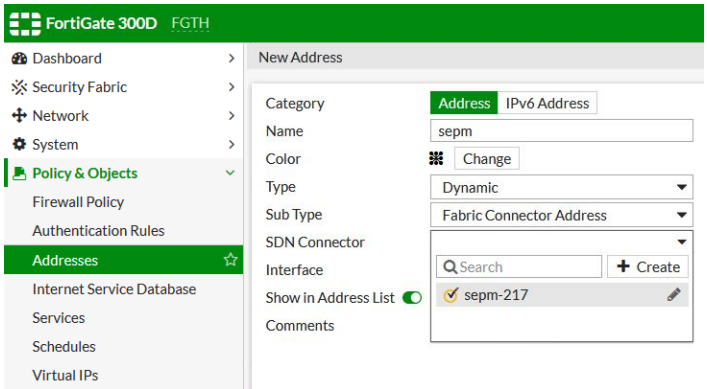
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click *Symantec Endpoint Protection*.
   - In the *Connector Settings* section, if options are left empty, then all SEPM domains and groups are monitored.
   - In the *Symantec Connector* section:
     - In the *Server* field, enter the SEPM IP address.
     - Enter the *Username* and *Password*.
     - If you want to limit the domains or groups that are monitored, enter the information in *Domain* and *Group name*.




4. Click *OK*.
   When the connection is established, you can see a green up arrow in the bottom right of the card. You might need to refresh your browser to see the established connection.

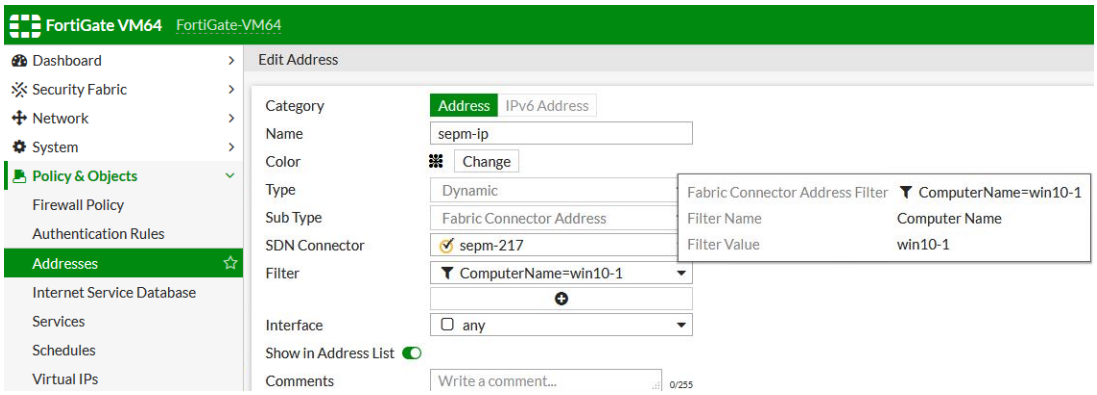



5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
6. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
   - Set *Type* to *Dynamic*.
   - Set *Sub Type* to *Fabric Connector Address*.
   - Set *SDN Connector* to the Fabric Connector that you just created.




7. Click *OK*.

8. Edit the address to see the configuration.
   - *Filter* shows the hostnames of the client PCs managed by SEPM. The GUI shows the ComputerName by default. You can change this using the CLI; see Specify filters for details.

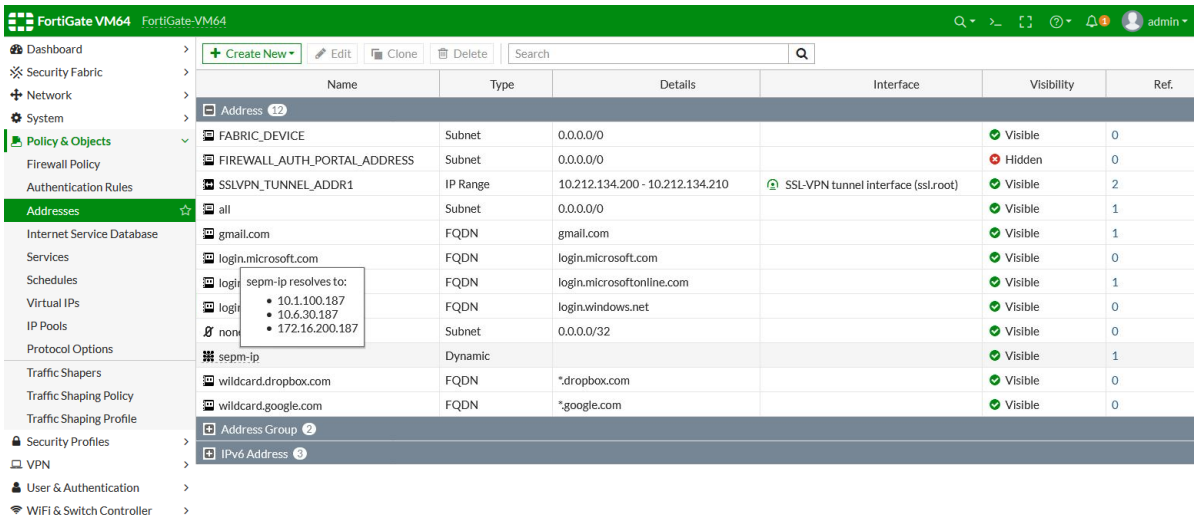




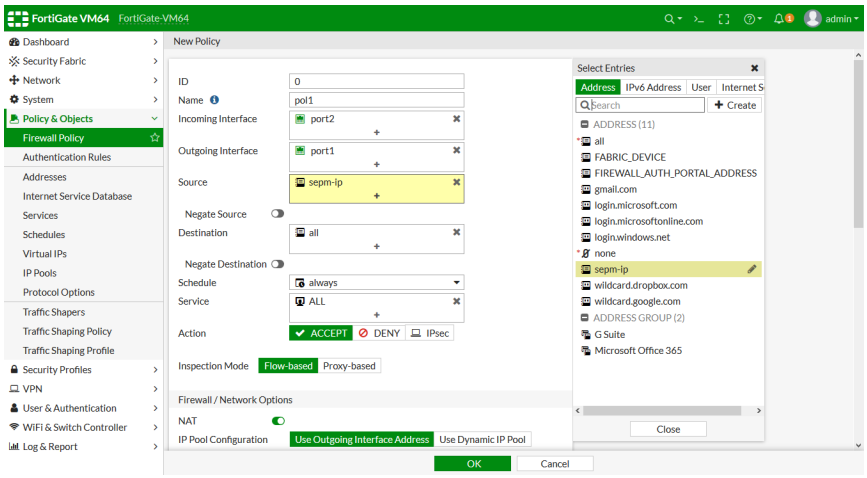

Filter options are only available for active computers that are configured and registered in SEPM. Free-form filters can be created manually by clicking *Create* and entering the filter, in the format: `filter_type=value`.

Possible manual filter types are: `GroupName`, `GroupID`, `ComputerName`, `ComputerUUID`, and `OSName`. For example: `GroupName=MyGroup`.

9. In *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*, you can see all the IP addresses of the host.

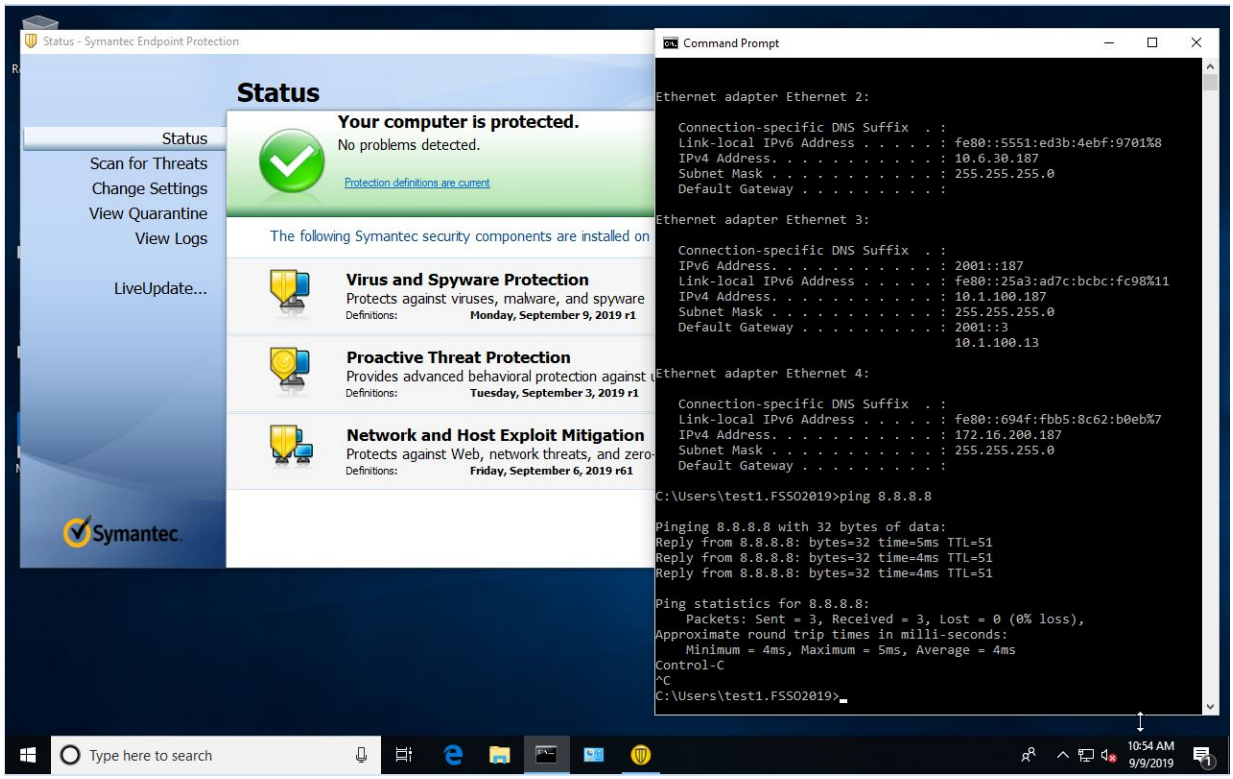


10. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, click *Create New* and add the dynamic IP address to the firewall policy.



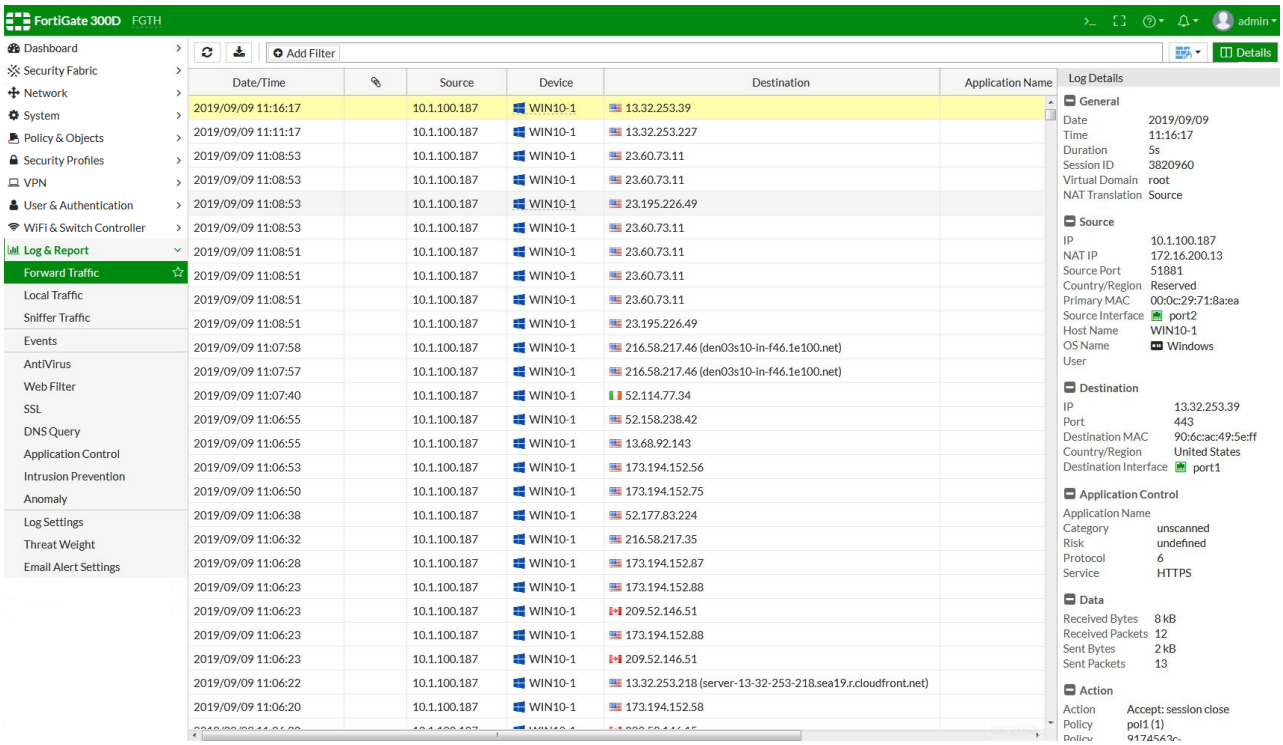

### To verify the configuration:

1. On the client PC, check that it is managed by SEPM to access the Internet.




2. In FortiGate, you can check in *FortiView* > *Sources*.

3. In FortiGate, you can also check in *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.






Since this traffic is not authenticated traffic but is based on source IP address only, this traffic is not shown in the GUI firewall monitor or in the CLI `diagnose firewall auth list` command.

**To configure Symantec endpoint connector on FortiGate in the CLI:**

1. Create the fabric connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "sepm-217"
        set type sepm
        set server "172.18.60.217"
        set username "admin"
        set password **********
        set status enable
    next
end
```

2. Create the dynamic IP address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "sepm-ip"
        set type dynamic
        set sdn "sepm-217"
        set filter "ComputerName=win10-1"
        config list
            edit "10.1.100.187"
            next
```

```
            edit "10.6.30.187"
            next
            edit "172.16.200.187"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

You can specify other filters and combine them with | and &, for example:

```
FGTH (sepm-ip) # set filter
<key1=value1>    [& <key2=value2>] [| <key3=value3>]
Available filter keys are:
        <ComputerName><ComputerUuid><GroupId><GroupName> <DomainId><DomainName><OsName>
```

3. Add the dynamic IP address to the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "pol1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "sepm-ip"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To troubleshoot Symantec SD connector in the CLI:**

```
# diagnose debug application sepmd -1

Output is sent every minute (default). All IPv4 learned from SEPM. IPv6 also sent but not
yet supported.

2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd checking firewall address object sepm-ip, vd 0
2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 finish updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:01:09 sepmd reap child pid: 18079
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 prepare to update
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepm-217 sdn connector will retrieve token after 9526 secs
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 172.16.200.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.6.30.187
```

```
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.1.100.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:02:09 2001:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0187 is not in IPv4 presentation
format


2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd checking firewall address object sepm-ip, vd 0
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 finish updating IP addresses
2019-09-09 12:02:09 sepmd reap child pid: 18089
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 prepare to update
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sepmd sdn connector sepm-217 start updating
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sepm-217 sdn connector will retrieve token after 9466 secs
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 172.16.200.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.6.30.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:03:09 sym_new_ip_addr ComputerName win10-1
    ComputerUuid AC894D56-BD86-A786-7DDB-7FD98B718AE0, OsName Windows 10
    IP 10.1.100.187
    GroupName My Company\Windows-desktops, GroupId E61FDEA2AC10C80E46D0B31BB58D7CB3
    DomainName Default, DomainId 6C507580AC10C80E5F3CAED5B1711A8E
2019-09-09 12:03:09 2001:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0187 is not in IPv4 presentation
format
```

**To list the SEPM daemon SDN connectors:**

```
diagnose test application sepmd 1
sepm SDN connector list:
  name: sepm-217, status: enabled, updater_interval: 60
```

**To list the SEPM daemon SDN filters:**

```
diagnose test application sepmd 2
sepm SDN connector sepm-217 filter list:
  name: sepm-ip, vd 0, filter 'ComputerName=win10-1'
```

## RADIUS single sign-on (RSSO) agent

With RSSO, a FortiGate can authenticate users who have authenticated on a remote RADIUS server. Based on which user group the user belongs to, the security policy applies the appropriate UTM profiles.

The FortiGate does not interact with the remote RADIUS server; it only monitors RADIUS accounting records that the server forwards (originating from the RADIUS client). These records include the user IP address and user group. The remote RADIUS server sends the following accounting messages to the FortiGate:

| Message | Action |
|---|---|
| Start | If the information in the start message matches the RSSO configuration on the FortiGate, the user is added to the local list of authenticated firewall users. |
| Stop | The user is removed from the local list of authenticated firewall users because the user session no longer exists on the RADIUS server. |

You can configure an RSSO agent connector using the FortiOSGUI; however, in most cases, you will need to use the CLI. There are some default options you may need to modify, which can only be done in the CLI.

**To configure an RSSO agent connector:**

1. Create the new connector:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *RADIUS Single Sign-On Agent*. The *New Fabric Connector* pane opens.
   d. Enter the connector name.
   e. Enable *Use RADIUS Shared Secret*.



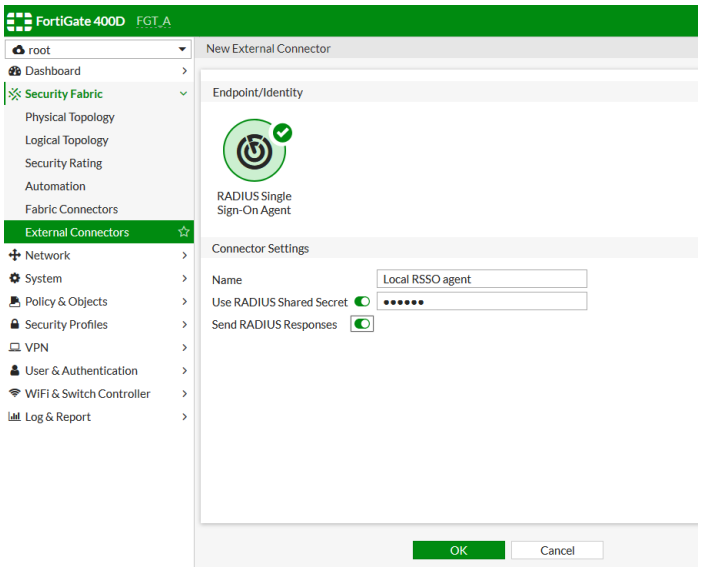
The value entered in *Use RADIUS Shared Secret* must be identical to what the remote RADIUS server uses to authenticate when it sends RADIUS accounting messages to the FortiGate.

   f. Enable *Send RADIUS Responses*.

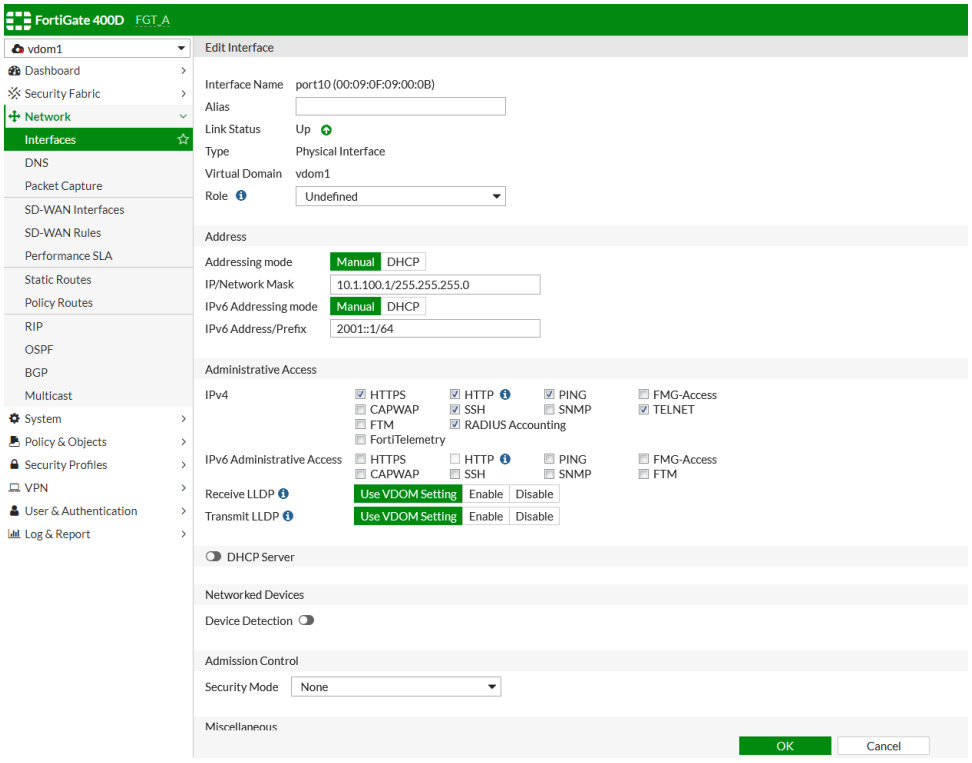


You should enable *Send RADIUS Responses* because some RADIUS servers continue to send the same RADIUS accounting message several times if there is no response.

g. Click *OK*.




2. Edit the network interface:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Double-click the interface that will receive the RADIUS accounting messages. The *Edit Interface* pane opens.
   c. In the *Administrative Access* section, select the *RADIUS Accounting* checkbox. This will open listening for port 1813 on this interface. The FortiGate will then be ready to receive RADIUS accounting messages.
   d. Click *OK*.



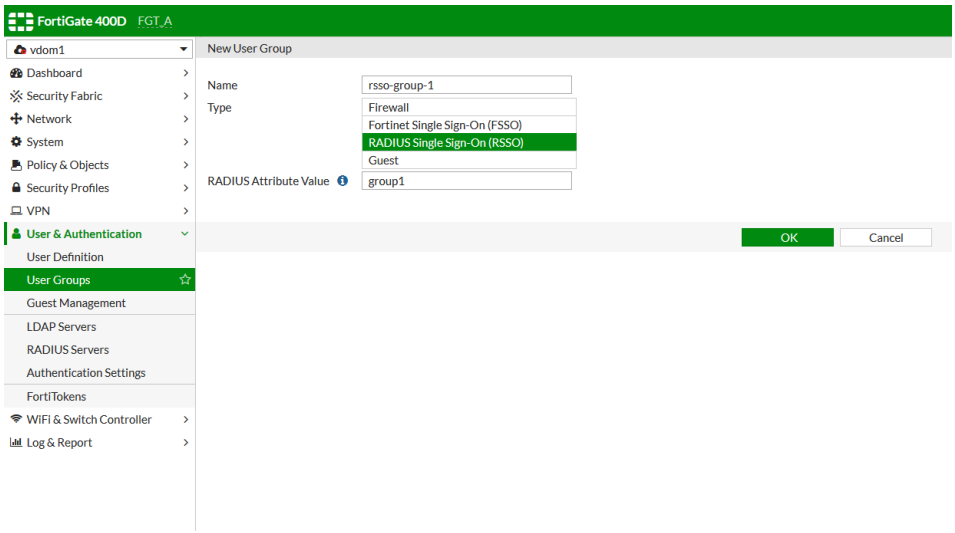

3. Create a local RSSO user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.

c. Enter the group name.
d. For the *Type* field, click *RADIUS Single-Sign-ON (RSSO)*.
e. Enter a value for *RADIUS Attribute Value*.
This value by default is the class attribute. The FortiGate uses the content of this attribute in RADIUS accounting start messages to map a user to a FortiGate group, which then can be used in firewall policies.
In this example configuration, the FortiGate will only add a remote RADIUS user to the local firewall user list if the class attribute in the RADIUS accounting START message contains the value group1.

If your users are in multiple groups, you will need to add another local RSSO user group.

If the RADIUS attribute value used to map users to a local RSSO group is different than the RADIUS attribute in the RADIUS accounting messages forwarded by the server, you must change it in the CLI.

f. Click *OK*.




4. Edit the local RSSO agent to modify default options using the CLI.
For example, the default value for `rsso-endpoint-attribute` might work in common remote access scenarios where users are identified by their unique `Calling-Station-Id`, but in other scenarios the user name might be in a different attribute.

```
config user radius
    edit "Local RSSO Agent"
        set rsso-endpoint-attribute <attribute>
        set sso-attribute <attribute>
    next
end
```

5. Add the local RSSO user group to a firewall policy.

### Verifying the RSSO configuration

Verification requires a working remote RADIUS server configured for RADIUS accounting forwarding and wireless or wired clients that use RADIUS for user authentication.

For a quick test, you can use one of the publicly available RADIUS test tools to send RADIUS accounting start and stop messages to the FortiGate. You can also use radclient.

### To verify the RSSO configuration:

1. In radclient, enter the RADIUS attributes. These attributes are then executed with the FortiGate IP parameters (sends accounting messages to port 1813) and shared password you configured. `-x` is used for verbose output:

```
root@ControlPC:~# echo "Acct-Status-Type =Start,Framed-Ip-Address=10.1.100.185,User-
Name=test2,Acct-Session-Id=0211a4ef,Class=group1,Calling-Station-Id=00-0c-29-44-BE-B8" |
 radclient -x 10.1.100.1 acct 123456
Sending Accounting-Request of id 180 to 10.1.100.1 port 1813
        Acct-Status-Type = Start
        Framed-IP-Address = 10.1.100.185
        User-Name = "test2"
        Acct-Session-Id = "0211a4ef"
        Class = 0x67726f757031
        Calling-Station-Id = "00-0c-29-44-BE-B8"
rad_recv: Accounting-Response packet from host 10.1.100.1 port 1813, id=180, length=20
root@ControlPC:~#
```

2. Verify that the user is in the local firewall user list with the correct type (`rsso`) and local firewall group (`rsso-group1`):

```
# diagnose firewall auth l

10.1.100.185, test2
        type: rsso, id: 0, duration: 5, idled: 5
        flag(10): radius
        server: vdom1
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 3
        group_name: rsso-group-1

----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

## Exchange Server connector

FortiGate can collect additional information about authenticated users from corporate Microsoft Exchange Servers. After a user logs in, the additional information can be viewed in various parts of the GUI.

The Exchange connector must be mapped to the LDAP server that is used for authentication.

The following attributes are retrieved:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| USER_INFO_FULL_NAME | USER_INFO_COMPANY | USER_INFO_CITY |
| USER_INFO_FIRST_NAME | USER_INFO_DEPARTMENT | USER_INFO_STATE |
| USER_INFO_LAST_NAME | USER_INFO_GROUP | USER_INFO_POSTAL_CODE |
| USER_INFO_LOGON_NAME | USER_INFO_TITLE | USER_INFO_COUNTRY |
| USER_INFO_TELEPHONE | USER_INFO_MANAGER | USER_INFO_ACCOUNT_EXPIRES |

| | |
|---|---|
| USER_INFO_EMAIL | USER_INFO_STREET |
| USER_INFO_USER_PHOTO | USER_INFO_POST_OFFICE_BOX |

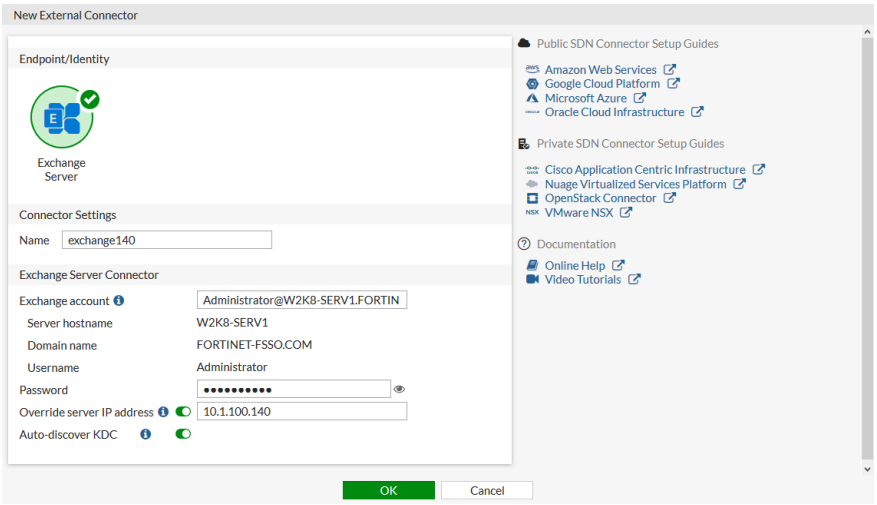
Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC) automatic discovery is enabled by default. The FortiGate must be able to use DNS to resolve the KDC IP addresses, otherwise the FortiGate will be unable to retrieve additional user information from the Exchange Server.

KDC automatic discovery can be disabled, and one or more internal IP addresses that the FortiGate can reach can be configured for KDC.

The Override server IP address is enabled when the IP address of the Exchange server cannot be resolved by DNS and must be entered manually.

### To configure an Exchange connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Exchange Server*.
3. Set *Name* to *exchange140*.
4. Set *Exchange account* to *Administrator@W2K8-SERV1.FORTINET-FSSO.COM*. *Administrator* is the username, *W2K8-SERV1* is the exchange server name, and *FORTINET-FSSO.COM* is the domain name.
5. Set *Password* to the password.
6. Enable *Override server IP address* and set it to *10.1.100.140*.
7. Ensure that *Auto-discover KDC* is enabled.

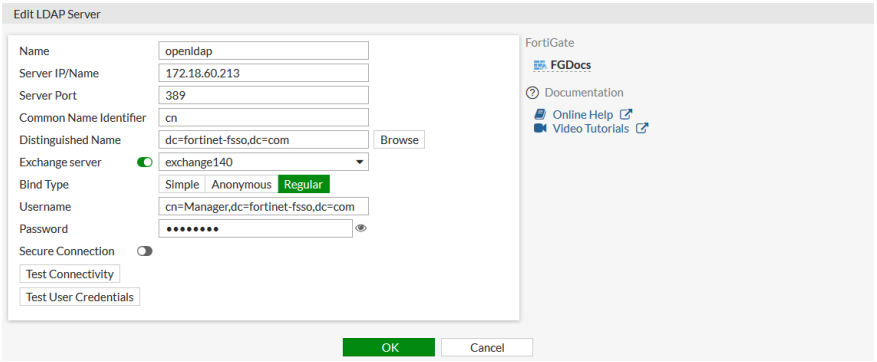



   If *Auto-discover KDC* is disabled, one or more KDC IP addresses can be manually entered.
8. Click *OK*.

### To link the connector to the LDAP server in the GUI:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
2. Edit an existing LDAP server, or click *Create New* to create a new one.
3. Enable *Exchange server*, and select the connector from the list.

4. Configure the remaining settings as required.




5. Click *OK*.

**To configure an Exchange connector with automatic KDC discovery in the CLI:**

```
config user exchange
    edit "exchange140"
        set server-name "W2K8-SERV1"
        set domain-name "FORTINET-FSSO.COM"
        set username "Administrator"
        set password **********
        set ip 10.1.100.140
        set auto-discover-kdc enable
    next
end
```

**To link the connector to the LDAP server in the CLI:**

```
config user ldap
    edit "openldap"
        set server "172.18.60.213"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Manager,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set group-object-filter "(&(objectclass=groupofnames)(member=*))"
        set member-attr "member"
        set user-info-exchange-server "exchange140"
    next
end
```

## Verification

**To verify that KDC auto-discovery is working:**

```
# diagnose wad debug enable category all
# diagnose wad debug enable level verbose
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose wad user exchange test-auto-discover
```

```
wad_diag_session_acceptor(3115): diag socket 20 accepted.
__wad_fmem_open(557): fmem=0x12490bd8, fmem_name='cmem 9188 bucket', elm_sz=9188, block_
sz=73728, overhead=0, type=advanced
Starting auto-discover test for all configured user-exchanges.
[NOTE]: If any errors are returned, try manually configuring IPs for the reported errors.

wad_rpc_nspi_test_autodiscover_kdc(1835): Starting DNS SRV request for srv(0x7f938e052050)
query(_kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM)
wad_dns_send_srv_query(705): 1:0: sending DNS SRV request for remote peer _kerberos._
udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM id=0
1: DNS response received for remote host _kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM req-id=0
wad_dns_parse_srv_resp(409): _kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM: resp_type(SUCCESS)
  srv[0]: name(w2k12-serv1.fortinet-fsso.com) port(88) priority(0) weight(100)
    addr[0]: 10.1.100.131
    addr[1]: 10.6.30.131
    addr[2]: 172.16.200.131
    addr[3]: 2003::131
    addr[4]: 2001::131
  srv[1]: name(fsso-core-DC.Fortinet-FSSO.COM) port(88) priority(0) weight(100)
    addr[0]: 10.6.30.16
    addr[1]: 172.16.200.16
  srv[2]: name(w2k12-serv1.Fortinet-FSSO.COM) port(88) priority(0) weight(100)
    addr[0]: 10.1.100.131
    addr[1]: 172.16.200.131
    addr[2]: 10.6.30.131
    addr[3]: 2001::131
    addr[4]: 2003::131
wad_rpc_nspi_dns_on_discover_kdc_done(1787): Received response for DNS autodiscover req
(0x7f938dfe8050) query(_kerberos._udp.FORTINET-FSSO.COM) n_rsp(3)

Completed auto-discover test for all configured user-exchanges.
```

**To check the collected information after the user has been authenticated:**

1. In the GUI, go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*, expand the *Firewall Users* widget, and hover over the user name.
2. In the CLI, run the following diagnose command:

```
# diagnose wad user info 20 test1
'username' = 'test1'
'sourceip' = '10.1.100.185'
'vdom' = 'root'
'cn' = 'test1'
'givenName' = 'test1'
'sn' = 'test101'
'userPrincipalName' = 'test1@Fortinet-FSSO.COM'
'telephoneNumber' = '604-123456'
'mail' = 'test1@fortinet-fsso.com'
'thumbnailPhoto' = '/tmp/wad/user_info/76665fff62ffffffffffffffffffff75ff68fffffffffa'
'company' = 'Fortinet'
'department' = 'Release QA'
'memberOf' = 'CN=group321,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'memberOf' = 'CN=g1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'memberOf' = 'CN=group21,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'memberOf' = 'CN=group1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'manager' = 'CN=test6,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
'streetAddress' = 'One Backend Street 1901'
```

```
'l' = 'Burnaby'
'st' = 'BC'
'postalCode' = '4711'
'co' = 'Canada'
'accountExpires' = '9223372036854
```

If the results are not as expected, verify what information FortiGate can collect from the Exchanger Server:

```
# diagnose test application wad 2500
# diagnose test application wad 162
```

## Threat feeds

Threat feeds dynamically import an external block lists from an HTTP server in the form of a plain text file. Block lists can be used to enforce special security requirements, such as long term policies to always block access to certain websites, or short term requirements to block access to known compromised locations. The lists are dynamically imported, so that any changes are immediately imported by FortiOS.

There are four types of threat feeds:

| | |
|---|---|
| **FortiGuard Category** | The file contains one URL per line. It is available as a *Remote Category* in Web Filter profiles and SSL inspection exemptions.<br>Example:<br>`http://example/com.url`<br>`https://example.com/url`<br>`http://example.com:8080/url` |
| **IP Address** | The file contains one IP/IP range/subnet per line. It is available as an *External IP Block List* in DNS Filter profiles, and as a *Source/Destination* in IPv4, IPv6, and proxy policies.<br>Example:<br>`192.168.2.100`<br>`172.200.1.4/16`<br>`172.16.1.2/24`<br>`172.16.8.1-172.16.8.100`<br>`2001:0db8::eade:27ff:fe04:9a01/120`<br>`2001:0db8::eade:27ff:fe04:aa01-2001:0db8::eade:27ff:fe04:ab01` |
| **Domain Name** | The file contains one domain per line. Simple wildcards are supported. It is available as a *Remote Category* in DNS Filter profiles. See External resources for DNS filter on page 290 for more information.<br>Example:<br>`mail.*.example.com`<br>`*-special.example.com`<br>`www.*example.com`<br>`example.com` |
| **Malware Hash** | The file contains one hash per line in the format `<hex hash> [optional hash description]`. Each line supports MD5, SHA1, and SHA256 hex hashes. It is automatically used for virus outbreak prevention on antivirus profiles with `external-blocklist` enabled. |

**Note**: For optimal performance, do not mix different hashes in the list. Only use one of MD5, SHA1, or SHA26.

Example:

```
292b2e6bb027cd4ff4d24e338f5c48de
dda37961870ce079defbf185eeeef905 Trojan-Ransom.Win32.Locky.abfl
3fa86717650a17d075d856a41b3874265f8e9eab Trojan-Ransom.Win32.Locky.abfl
c35f705df9e475305c0984b05991d444450809c35dd1d96106bb8e7128b9082f
     Trojan-Ransom.Win32.Locky.abfl
```

See External malware block list for antivirus on page 936 for an example.

## External resources file format

File format requirements for an external resources file:

- The file is in plain text format with each URL list, IP address, and domain name occupying one line.
- The file is limited to 10 MB or 128 × 1024 (131072) entries, whichever limit is hit first.
- The entry limit also follows the table size limitation defined by CMDB per model.
- The external resources update period can be set to 1 minute, hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly (43200 min, 30 days).
- The external resources type as category (URL list) and domain (domain name list) share the category number range 192 to 221 (total of 30 categories).
- There is no duplicated entry validation for the external resources file (entry inside each file or inside different files).
- If the number of entries exceed the limit, a warning is displayed. Additional entries beyond the threshold will not be loaded.

For domain name list (type = domain):

- Simple wildcards are allowed in the domain name list, for example: *.test.com.
- IDN (international domain name) is supported.

For IP address list (type = address):

- The IP address can be a single IP address, subnet address, or address range. For example, 192.168.1.1, 192.168.10.0/24, or 192.168.100.1-192.168.100.254.
- The address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. An IPv6 address does not need to be in [ ] format.

### To create a threat feed in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Thread Feeds* section, click on the required feed type.

4. Configure the connector settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the threat feed connector. |
| **URI of external resource** | Enter the link to the external resource file. The file should be a plain text file with one entry on each line. |
| **HTTP basic authentication** | Enable/disable basic HTTP authentication. When enabled, enter the username and password in the requisite fields. |
| **Refresh Rate** | The time interval to refresh the external resource, in minutes (1 - 43200, default = 5). |
| **Comments** | Optionally, enter a description of the connector. |
| **Status** | Enable/disable the connector. |

5. Click *OK*.

**To create a threat feed in the CLI:**

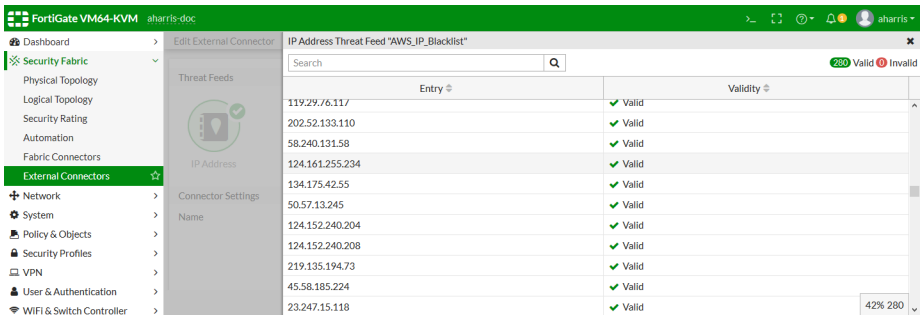
```
config system external-resource
    edit <name>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set type {category | address | domain | malware}
        set category <integer>
        set username <string>
        set password <string>
        set comments [comments]
        *set resource <resource-uri>
        *set refresh-rate <integer>
        set source-ip <string>
    next
end
```

Parameters marked with a * are mandatory and must be filled in. Other parameters either have default values or are optional.

## Update history

To review the update history of a threat feed, go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*, select a feed, and click *Edit*. The *Last Update* field shows the date and time that the feed was last updated.

Click *View Entries* to view the current entries in the list.

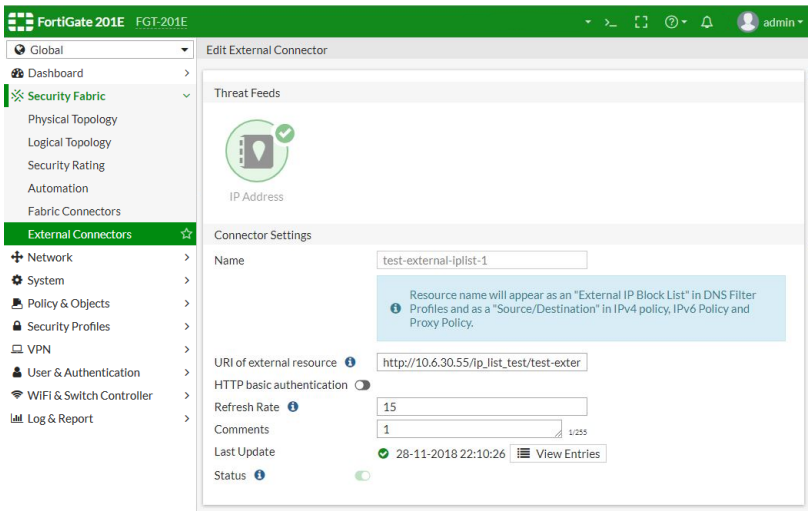


## External Block List (Threat Feed) – Policy

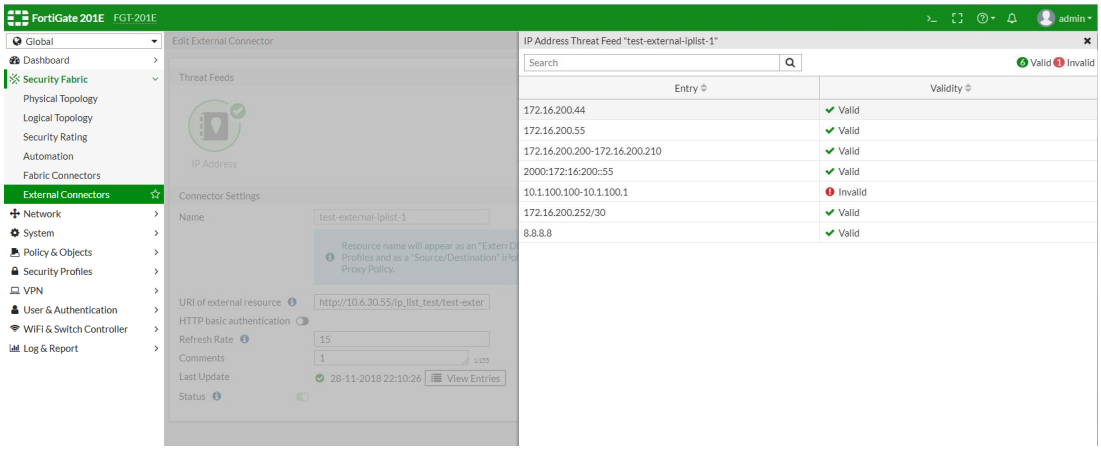
You can use the External Block List (Threat Feed) for web filtering and DNS. You can also use External Block List (Threat Feed) in firewall policies.

### Sample configuration

In *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* > *Threat Feeds* > *IP Address*, create or edit an external IP list object.




Click *View Entries* to see the external IP list.




### To create an external iplist object using the CLI:

```
config system external-resource
   edit "test-external-iplist-1"
      set status enable
      set type address
      set username ''
      set password ENC
      set comments ''
      set resource "http://10.6.30.55/ip_list_test/test-external-iplist-2.txt"
      set refresh-rate 15
```

```
   next
end
```

**To apply an external iplist object to the firewall policy using the CLI:**

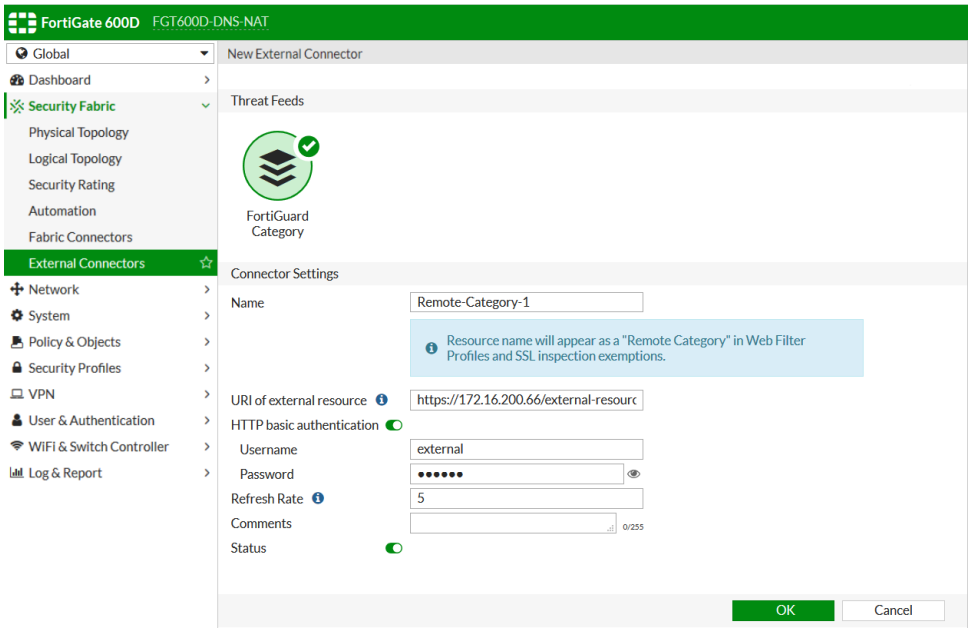
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "policyid-1"
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "test-external-iplist-1"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set logtraffic all
      set auto-asic-offload disable
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

## External Block List (Threat Feed) - Authentication

The external *Threat Feed* connector (block list retrieved by HTTPS) supports username and password authentication.

**To enable username and password authentication:**

1. Navigate to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Edit an existing *Threat Feed* or create a new one by selecting *Create New*.
3. In *Connector Settings*, select the *HTTP basic authentication* toggle to enable the feature.
4. Enter a username and password.



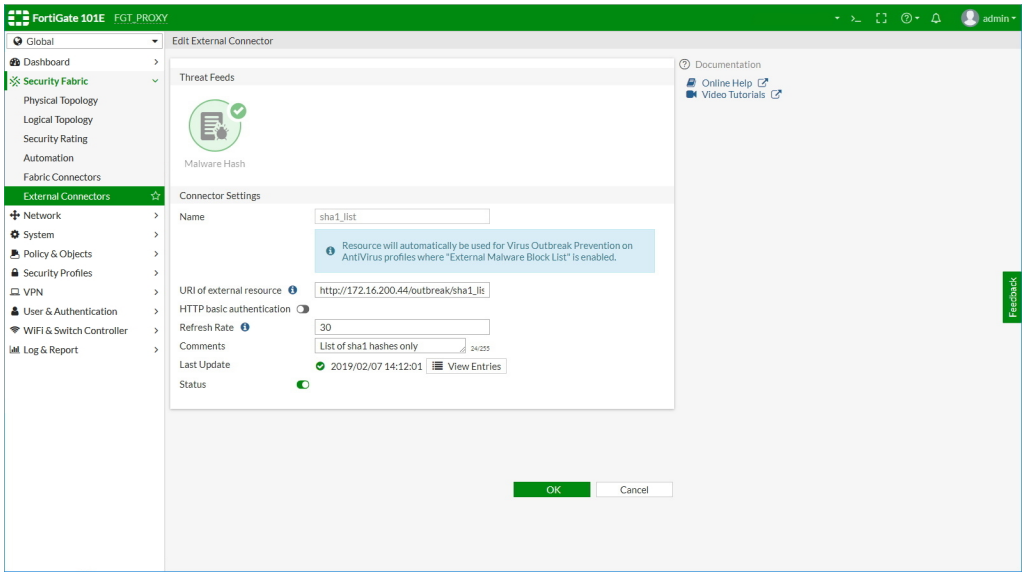

5. Select *OK* to save your changes.

## External Block List (Threat Feed) - File Hashes

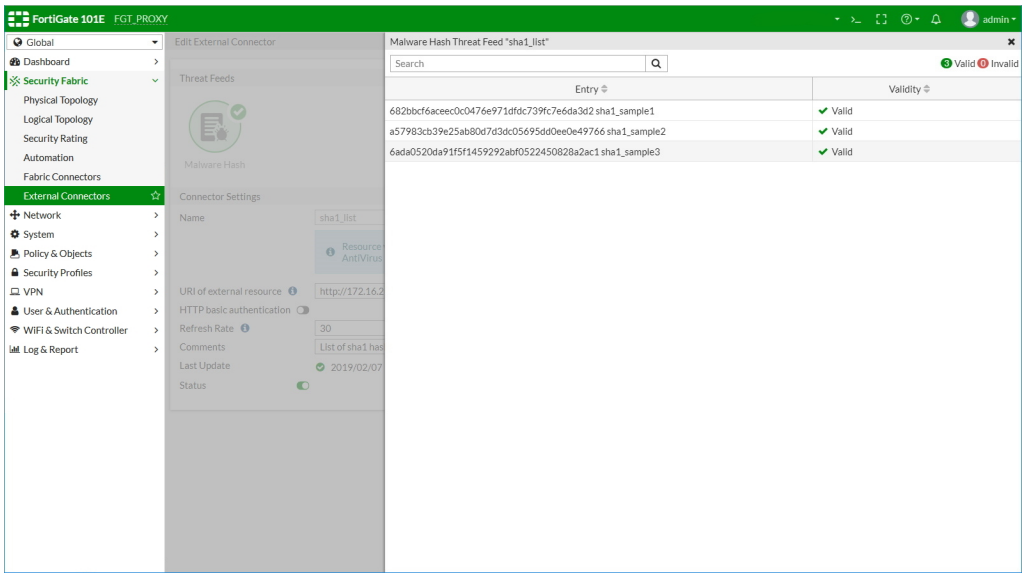
The Malware Hash type of *Threat Feed* connector supports a list of file hashes that can be used as part of virus outbreak prevention.

**To configure Malware Hash:**

1. Navigate to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Threat Feeds* section, click *Malware Hash*.
3. To configure *Malware Hash*, fill in the *Connector Settings* section.




4. Beside the *Last Update* field, click *View Entries* to display the external Malware Hash list contents.



## New Malware value for external-resource parameter in CLI

```
FGT_PROXY (external-resource) # edit sha1_list
new entry 'sha1_list' added

FGT_PROXY (sha1_list) # set type ?
category    FortiGuard category.
address     Firewall IP address.
domain      Domain Name.
malware     Malware hash.
```

**To configure external Malware Hash list sources in CLI:**

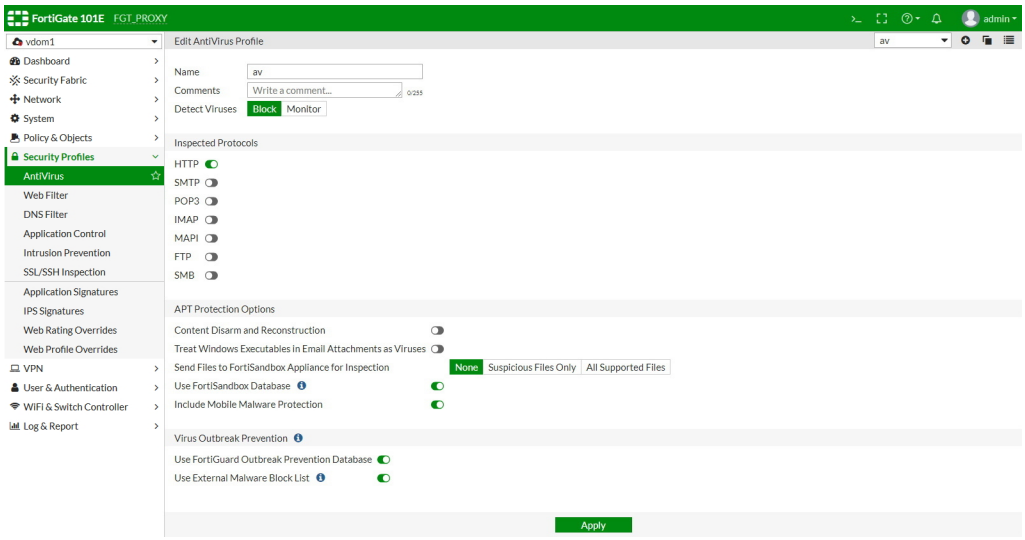
```
config global
    config system external-resource
        edit "md5_list"
            set type malware
            set comments "List of md5 hashes only"
            set resource "http://172.16.200.44/outbreak/md5_list"
            set refresh-rate 30
        next
        edit "sha1_list"
            set type malware
            set comments "List of sha1 hashes only"
            set resource "http://172.16.200.44/outbreak/sha1_list"
            set refresh-rate 30
        next
        edit "sha256_list"
            set type malware
            set comments "List of sha256 hashes only"
            set resource "http://172.16.200.44/outbreak/sha256_list"
            set refresh-rate 30
        next
    end

end
```

## Update to antivirus profile

In *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*, the *Virus Outbreak Prevention* section allows you to enable the following options:

- Use Fortinet outbreak Prevention Database.
- Use External Malware Block List.




### To configure virus outbreak prevention options in CLI:

You must first enable `outbreak-prevention` in the protocol and then enable `external-blocklist` under `outbreak-prevention`.

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av"
        set analytics-db enable
        config http
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention full-archive
        end
        config ftp
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention files
        end
        config imap
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention full-archive
        end
        config pop3
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention full-archive
        end
        config smtp
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention files
        end
        config mapi
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention full-archive
        end
        config nntp
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention full-archive
        end
        config smb
```

```
            set options scan
            set outbreak-prevention full-archive
        end
        config outbreak-prevention
            set ftgd-service enable
            set external-blocklist enable
        end
    next
end
```

### Update to utm-virus category logs

This feature adds the fields `filehash` and `filehashsrc` to outbreak prevention detection events.

Example of the utm-virus log generated when a file is detected by FortiGuard queried outbreak prevention:

```
2: date=2018-07-30 time=13:57:59 logid="0204008202" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="outbreak-prevention" level="warning" vd="root" evnttime=1532984279 msg="Blocked
by Virus Outbreak Prevention service." action="blocked" service="HTTP" sessionid=174777
srcip=192.168.101.20 dstip=172.16.67.148 srcport=37044 dstport=80 srcintf="lan"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="zhvo_test.com" checksum="583369a5" quarskip="No-skip"
virus="503e99fe40ee120c45bc9a30835e7256fff3e46a" dtype="File Hash"
filehash="503e99fe40ee120c45bc9a30835e7256fff3e46a"    filehashsrc="fortiguard"
url="http://172.16.67.148/zhvo_test.com" profile="mhash_test" agent="Firefox/43.0"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=30 crlevel="high&#8220;
```

Example of the utm-virus log generated when a file is detected by External Malware Hash List outbreak prevention:

```
1: date=2018-07-30 time=13:59:41 logid="0207008212" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="malware-list" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1532984381 msg="Blocked by
local malware list." action="blocked" service="HTTP" sessionid=174963 srcip=192.168.101.20
dstip=172.16.67.148 srcport=37045 dstport=80 srcintf="lan" srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="wan1"
dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming" filename="mhash_block.com"
checksum="90f0cb57" quarskip="No-skip" virus="mhash_block.com" dtype="File Hash"
filehash="93bdd30bd381b018b9d1b89e8e6d8753"    filehashsrc="test_list"
url="http://172.16.67.148/mhash_block.com" profile="mhash_test" agent="Firefox/43.0"
analyticssubmit="false"
```

## External resources for DNS filter

External resources provides the ability to dynamically import an external block list into an HTTP server. This feature enables the FortiGate to retrieve a dynamic URL, domain name, IP address, or malware hash list from an external HTTP server periodically. The FortiGate uses these external resources as the web filter's remote categories, DNS filter's remote categories, policy address objects, or antivirus profile's malware definitions. If external resources are updated, FortiGate objects are also updated dynamically.

External resource is divided into four types:

- URL list (type = category)
- Domain name list (type = domain)
- IP address list (type = address)
- Malware hash list (type = malware)

## Remote categories and external IP block list

The DNS filter profile can use two types of external resources: *domain type* (domain name list) and *address type* (IP address list).

When a *domain type* external resource is configured, it is treated as a remote category in the DNS filter profile. If the domain name in DNS query matches the entry in this external resource file, it is treated as the remote category and follows the action configured for this category in DNS filter profile.

When an *address type* external resource is configured, it can be enabled as *external-ip-blocklist* in DNS filter profile. If a DNS resolved IP address in DNS response matches the entry in the *external-ip-blocklist*, this DNS query is blocked by the DNS filter.

For external resources file format and limits, see External resources file format on page 283.

## Configuring external resources in the CLI

In the CLI, you can configure external resources files in an external HTTP server. Under global, configure the external resources file location and specify the resource type.

**To configure external resources:**

```
config system external-resource
   edit "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-1"
      set type domain
      set category 194
      set resource "http://172.16.200.66/external-resources/Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-
1.txt"
      set refresh-rate 1
   next
   edit "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-1"
      set status enable
      set type address
      set username ''
      set password
      set comments ''
      set resource "http://172.16.200.66/external-resources/Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-
1.txt"
      set refresh-rate 1
   next
end
```

In each VDOM, the domain type external resource can be used in the DNS filter as remote category. In this example, the domain name list in the Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-1.txt file is treated as a remote category (category ID 194). The IP address list in the Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-1.txt file can be applied in the DNS filter as an `external-ip-blocklist`. If the DNS resolved IP address matches any entry in the list in that file, the DNS query is blocked.

**To configure the external IP block list and apply it to a policy:**

```
config dnsfilter profile
   edit "default"
      set comment "Default dns filtering."
      config ftgd-dns
         config filters
            edit 1
```

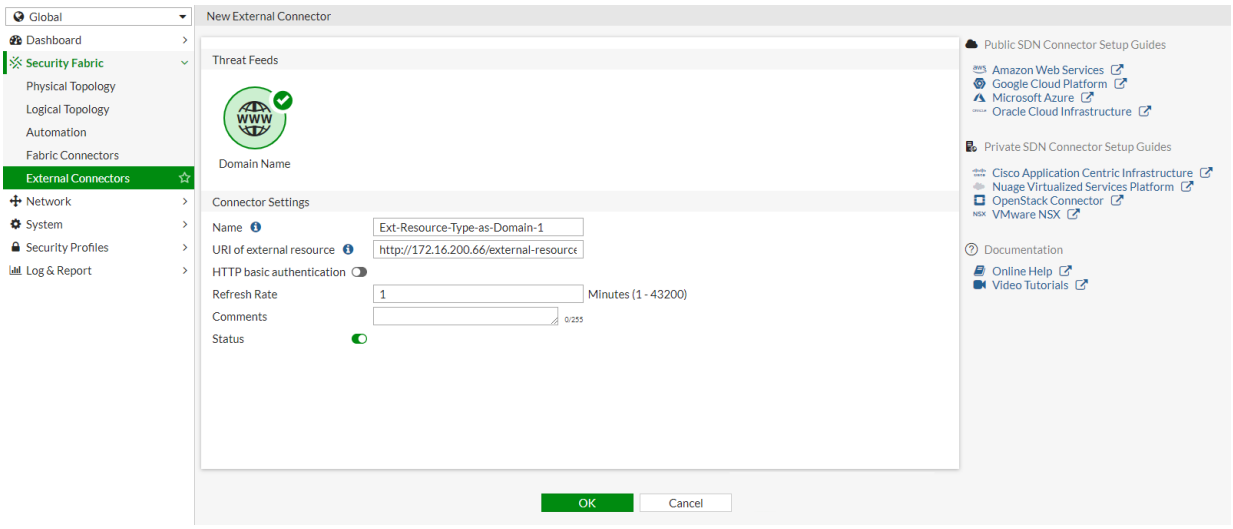
```
                set category 194
                set action block
            next
            edit 2
                set category 12
            next
            edit 3
            next
        end
    end
    set block-botnet enable
    set external-ip-blocklist "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Address-1"
  next
end

config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set name "DNSFilter"
    set srcintf "port10"
    set dstintf "port9"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set utm-status enable
    set logtraffic all
    set dnsfilter-profile "default"
    set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
    set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

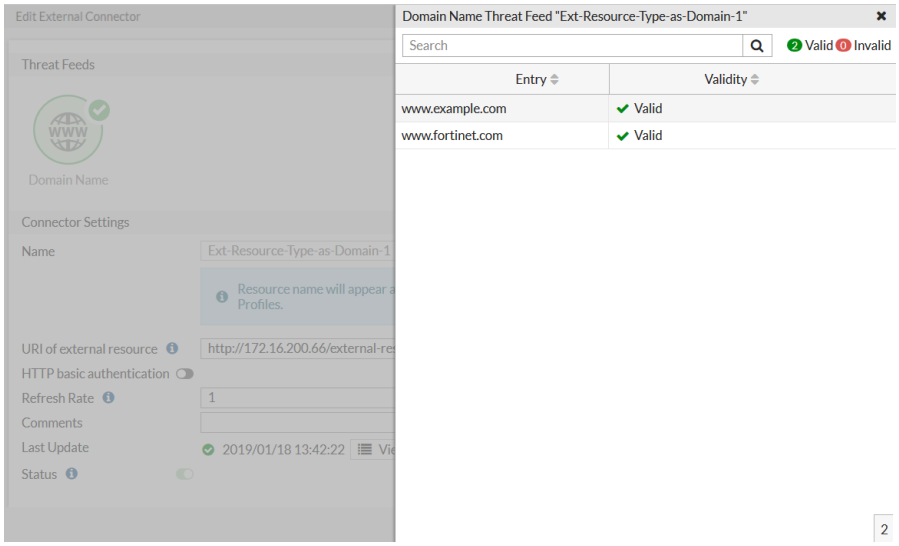
## Configuring external resources in the GUI

**To configure, edit, or view the entries for external resources in the GUI:**

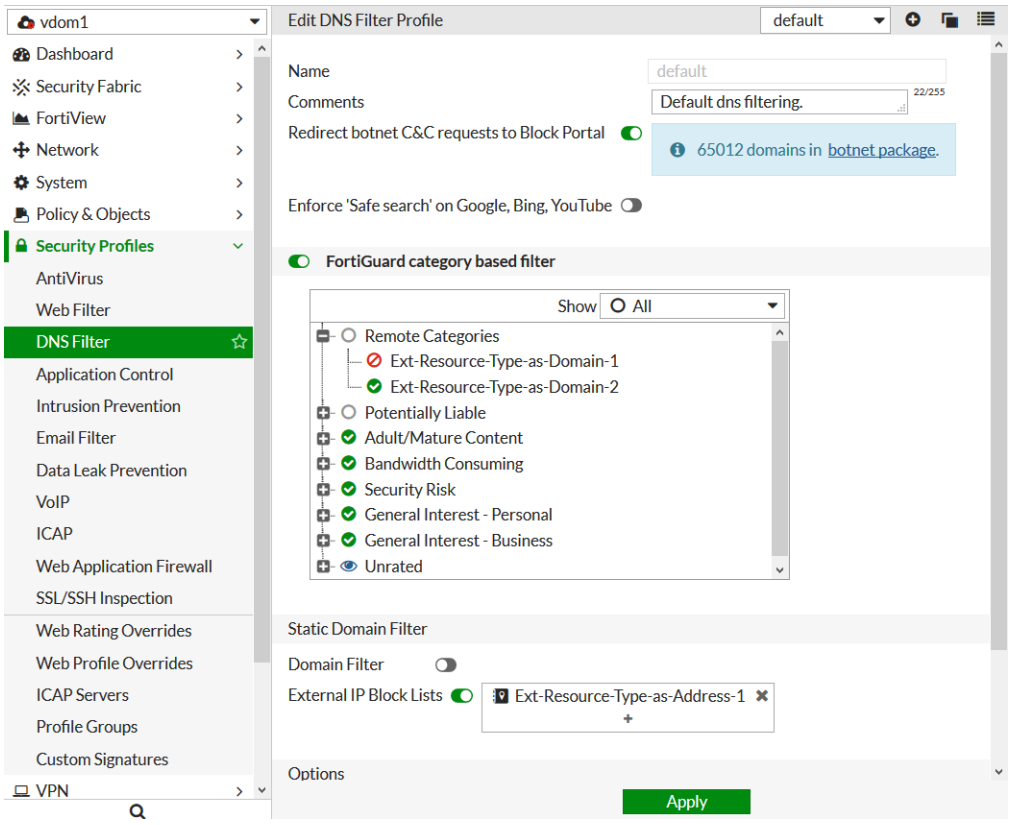
1. Go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Threat Feeds* section, select *Domain Name* or *IP Address*.
4. Enter the Resource *Name*, URL, location of the resource file, resource authentication credentials, and *Refresh Rate*.




5. Click *OK*.
6. Double-click the *Threat Feeds Object* you just configured to open the *Edit* page
7. Click *View Entries* to view the entry list in the external resources file.



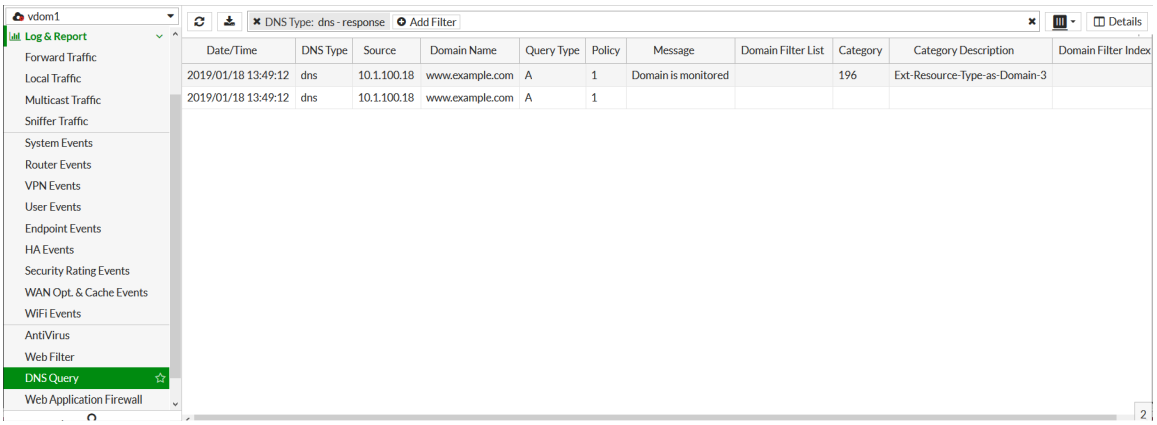

8. Go to *VDOM > Security Profiles > DNS Filter* and open a DNS filter profile. The configured external resources displays, and you can apply it in each DNS filter profile (remote category or external IP block lists).




## Log sample

### Remote categories

Go to *VDOM* > *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*. Some domains that match the remote category list are rated as remote category, overriding their original domain rating.




### Log example:

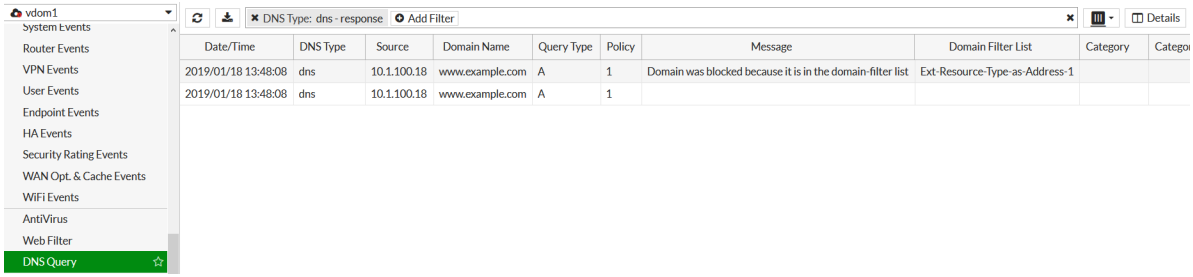
```
1: date=2019-01-18 time=13:49:12 logid="1501054802" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848151 policyid=1 sessionid=82998
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=42985 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
```

```
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=38234
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="93.184.216.34" msg="Domain
is monitored" action="pass" cat=196 catdesc="Ext-Resource-Type-as-Domain-3"

2: date=2019-01-18 time=13:49:12 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848151 policyid=1 sessionid=82998
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=42985 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=38234
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

### External IP block lists

Go to *VDOM* > *Log & Report* > *DNS Query*. If the DNS query resolved IP address matches the entry in the `external-ip-blocklist`, the DNS query is blocked.




### Log example:

```
1: date=2019-01-18 time=13:50:53 logid="1501054400" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848253 policyid=1 sessionid=83206
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=47281 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=7501
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" msg="Domain was blocked because it
is in the domain-filter list" action="redirect" domainfilteridx=0 domainfilterlist="Ext-
Resource-Type-as-Address-1"

2: date=2019-01-18 time=13:50:53 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547848253 policyid=1 sessionid=83206
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=47281 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="default" xid=7501
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

# Automation stitches

Automation stitches automate the activities between the different components in the Security Fabric, decreasing the response times to security events. Events from any source in the Security Fabric can be monitored, and action responses can be set up to any destination.



Automation stitches can also be used on FortiGate devices that are not part of a Security Fabric.

Automation stitches that use cloud-based actions, such as AWS Lambda and Azure Function, have the option to delay an action after the previous action is completed.

An automation stitch consists of two parts, the trigger and the actions. The trigger is the condition or event on the FortiGate that activates the action, for example, a specific log, or a failed log in attempt. The action is what the FortiGate does in response to the trigger.

Diagnose commands are available in the CLI to test, log, and display the history and settings of stitches.

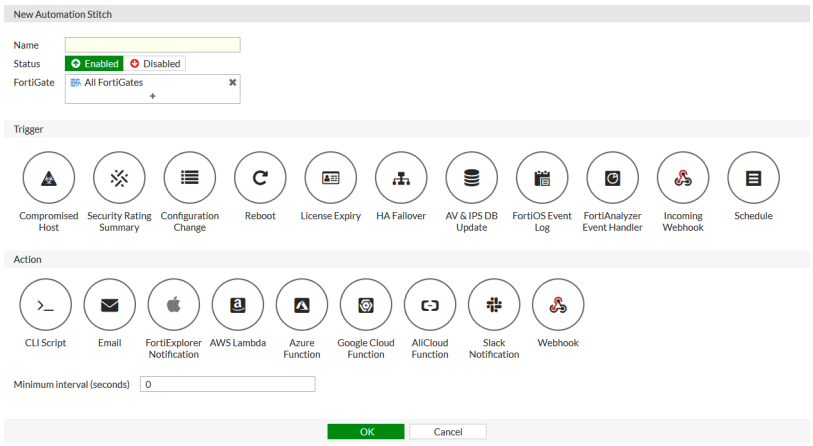
Automation stitches can only be created on the root FortiGate in a Security Fabric.

## Creating automation stitches

To create an automation stitch, a trigger event and a response action or actions are selected. Automation stitches can also be tested after they are created.

**To create an automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. On the root FortiGate, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Automation Stitch* page opens.



3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the automation stitch. |
| **Status** | Enable/disable the stitch. |
| **FortiGate** | Select the FortiGate device to apply the automation stitch to, or select *All FortiGates* to apply it to all of them. |
| **Trigger** | Select a trigger. |
| **Action** | Select and configure one or more actions. |
| **Minimum interval (seconds)** | Enter a minimum time interval during which notifications for the same trigger event will not be sent.<br>After the time interval elapses, an alert is sent that includes the last event since the time interval elapsed. |

4. Click *OK*.

**To create an automation stitch in the CLI:**

1. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit <automation-trigger-name>
        set trigger-type {event-based | scheduled}
        set event-type <option>
        set license-type <option>
        set ioc-level {medium | high}
        set logid <integer>
        set trigger-frequency {hourly | daily | weekly | monthly}
        set trigger-weekday <option>
        set trigger-day <integer>
        set trigger-hour <integer>
        set trigger-minute <integer>
        set faz-event-severity <string>
        set faz-event-tags <string>
    next
end
```

The available options will vary depending on the selected event type.

2. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit <name>
        set action-type <option>
        set email-to <names>
        set email-from <string>
        set email-subject <string>
        set message <string>
        set minimum-interval <integer>
        set delay <integer>
        set required {enable | disable}
        set aws-api-id <string>
        set aws-region <string>
        set aws-domain <string>
```

```
            set aws-api-stage <string>
            set aws-api-path <string>
            set aws-api-key <string>
            set azure-app <string>
            set azure-function <string>
            set azure-domain <string>
            set azure-function-authorization {anonymous | function | admin}
            set azure-api-key <string>
            set gcp-function-region <string>
            set gcp-project <string>
            set gcp-function-domain <string>
            set gcp-function <string>
            set alicloud-account-id <string>
            set alicloud-region <string>
            set alicloud-function-domain <string>
            set alicloud-version <string>
            set alicloud-service <string>
            set alicloud-function <string>
            set alicloud-function-authorization {anonymous | function}
            set alicloud-access-key-id <string>
            set alicloud-access-key-secret <string>
            set protocol {http | https}
            set method {post | put | get | patch | delete}
            set uri <string>
            set http-body <string>
            set port <integer>
            set headers <header>
            set script <string>
            set security-tag <string>
            set sdn-connector <connector_name>
        next
    end
```



Enter `edit 0` to get the next available ID.

3. Create an automation destination:

```
config system automation-destination
    edit <name>
        set type {fortigate | ha-cluster}
        set destination <serial numbers>
        set ha-group-id <integer>
    next
end
```

4. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit <automation-stitch-name>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set trigger <trigger-name>
        set action <action-name>
        set destination <serial-number>
```

```
        next
    end
```

**To test an automation stitch:**

In the GUI, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*, right-click on the automation stitch and select *Test Automation Stitch*.

In the CLI, enter the following command:

```
diagnose automation test <stitch-name> <log>
```

## Automation webhook stitches

The *Automation* menu contains eight webhook automation stitches, including an *Incoming Webhook Quarantine* trigger for API calls to the FortiGate, as well as a predefined *License Expired Notification* that replaces the existing license expiry alerts.

The automation stitches are available in new FortiGate installations by default. To install the stitches on an existing device, perform a factory reset.

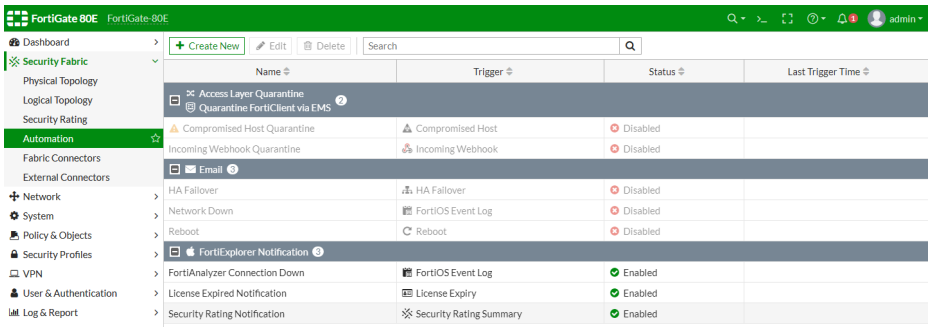
Performing a factory reset will wipe the existing configurations from the FortiGate.

Before performing a factory reset, backup the existing configuration. Contact Fortinet support for additional assistance.

The following webhook stitches are included in the *Automation* menu:

- Compromised Host Quarantine
- Incoming Webhook quarantine
- HA Failover
- Network Down
- Reboot
- FortiAnalyzer Connection Down
- License Expired Notification
- Security rating Notification

To view the automation stitches in the GUI, go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.




After the factory reset, the email alert feature will be removed from the GUI (*Log & Report* > *Email Alert Settings*), and replaced with the *Email* automation stitches.

You can continue using the email alert feature with the CLI console.

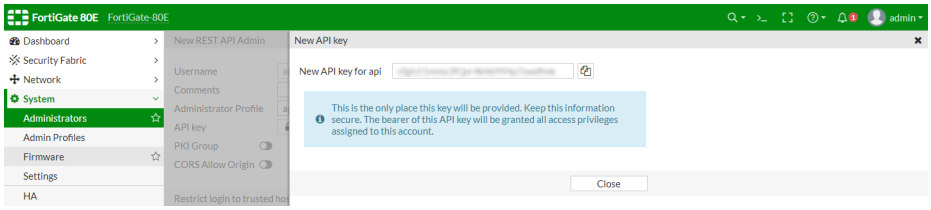
To configure the automation stitches in the CLI console, use the following commands:

```
config system automation-action
config system automation-trigger
config system automation-stitch
```

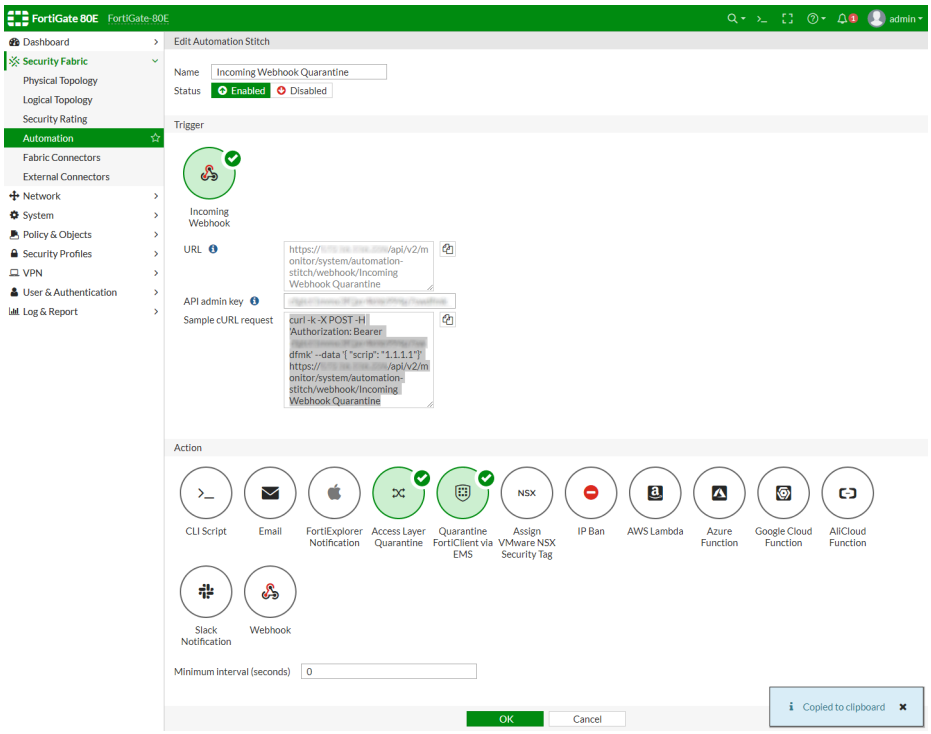
To view the configurations for the new automation stitches, see the CLI reference at the bottom of the page.

**To trigger an Incoming Webhook Quarantine stitch with the GUI:**

1. Create new API user.
   a. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
   c. Configure the *New REST API Admin* settings, and record the API key.




2. Get the sample cURL request.
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
   b. Under *Incoming Webhook*, right-click *Incoming Webhook Quarantine*, and select *Edit*.
   c. Click *Enabled*, to enable the rule.
   d. In the *API admin key* field, enter the API key you recorded in the previous step. A *Sample cURL request* is created.
   e. Copy the *Sample cURL request*.



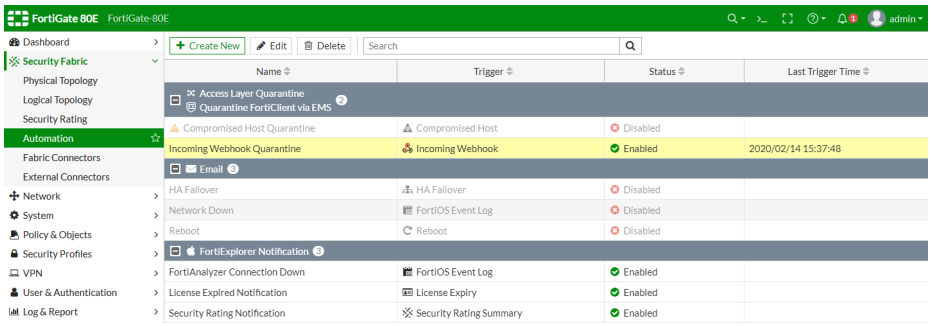

3. Execute the request:
   a. Edit the sample cURL you recorded in the previous step.
   b. Add parameters to the `data` field (`"mac"` and *"fctuid"*), and then execute the request.

```
root@pc:~# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
cfgtct1mmx3fQxr4khb994p7swdfmk' --data '{ "mac":"0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0", "fctuid":
"0000BB0B0ABD0D00B0D0A0B0E0F0B00B"}'
https://172.16.116.226/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-
stitch/webhook/Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine
{
   "http_method":"POST",
   "status":"success",
   "http_status":200,
   "serial":"FGT00E0Q00000000",
   "version":"v6.4.0",
   "build":1545
```



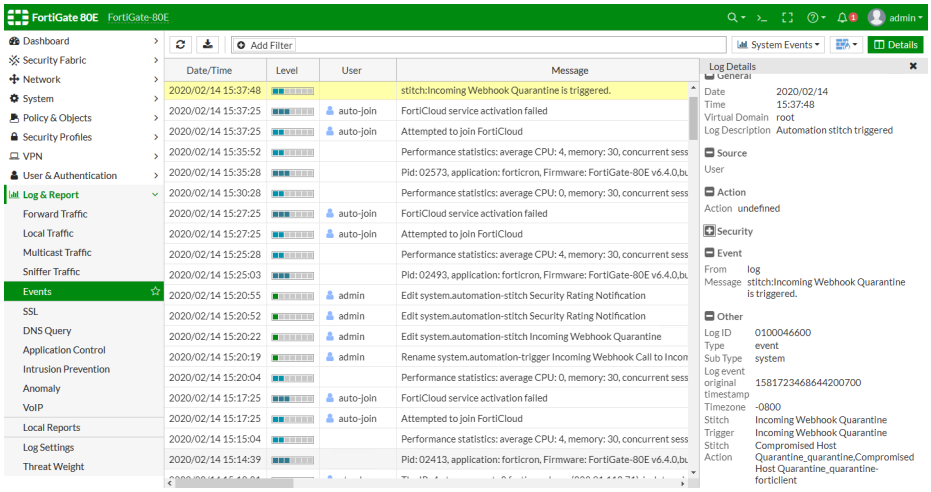
Encode the spaces in the automation-stitch name with `%20`. For example, `Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine`

The automation rule *Incoming Webhook Quarantine* is triggered.




The MAC address is quarantined in FortiGate and an event log is created.

The FortiClient UUID is quarantined by EMS on the server side.




**To create an automated stitch with the CLI:**

1. Create new API user and record the API key.

```
config system api-user
   edit "api"
      set api-key ENC SH00vqP0GKWKyZNz0FP0/jq00O0Ka/DHVEKdxUi+0kRDNKPpZppnnMk0KeunBI=
      set accprofile "api_profile"
      set vdom "root"
      config trusthost
         edit 1
            set ipv4-trusthost 10.6.30.0 200.200.200.0
         next
      end
   next
end
```

2. Configure the automation stitch, `Incoming Webhook Quarantine`.

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
      set status enable
      set trigger "Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
      set action "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine" "Compromised Host Quarantine_
          quarantine-forticlient"
   next
end
```

3. Add parameters in the `data` field (`"mac"` and `"fctuid"`), then execute the request on a device.

```
root@pc56:~# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
cfgtct1mmx0fQxr4khb000p70wdfmk' --data '{ "mac":"0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0", "fctuid":
"3000BB0B0ABD0D00B0D0A0B0E0F0B00B"}'
https://100.10.100.200/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-
stitch/webhook/Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine
{
   "http_method":"POST",
   "status":"success",
   "http_status":200,
   "serial":"FGT80E0Q00000000",
   "version":"v6.4.0",
   "build":1545
```



Encode the spaces in the automation-stitch name with `%20`. For example, `Incoming%20Webhook%20Quarantine`

The automation rule "Incoming Webhook Quarantine" is triggered. The MAC address is quarantined in FortiGate, and an event log is created. The FortiClient UUID will be quarantined on the EMS server side.

```
config user quarantine
   config targets
      edit "0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0"
         config macs
            edit 0c:0a:00:0c:ce:b0
               set description "Quarantined by automation stitch: Incoming Webhook
                    Quarantine"
            next
         end
      next
   end
end
date=2020-02-14 time=15:37:48 logid="0100046600" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1581723468644200712 tz="-0800"
logdesc="Automation stitch triggered" stitch="Incoming Webhook Quarantine"
trigger="Incoming Webhook Quarantine" stitchaction="Compromised Host Quarantine_
quarantine,Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine-forticlient" from="log"
msg="stitch:Incoming Webhook Quarantine is triggered."
```

## CLI Reference

### Network down

### config system automation-action

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Network Down_email"
      set action-type email
      set email-from ''
      set email-subject "Network Down"
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
```

```
      set message "%%log%%"
   next
end
```

**config system automation-trigger**

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Network Down"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type event-log
      set logid 20099
      config fields
         edit 1
            set name "status"
            set value "DOWN"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Network Down"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Network Down"
      set action "Network Down_email"
   next
end
```

**HA failover**

**config system automation-action**

```
config system automation-action
   edit "HA Failover_email"
      set action-type email
      set email-from ''
      set email-subject "HA Failover"
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "%%log%%"
   next
end
```

**config system automation-trigger**

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "HA Failover"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type ha-failover
   next
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "HA Failover"
      set status disable
      set trigger "HA Failover"
      set action "HA Failover_email"
   next
end
```

**Reboot**

**config system automation-action**

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Reboot_email"
      set action-type email
      set email-from ''
      set email-subject "Reboot"
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "%%log%%"
   next
end
```

**config system automation-trigger**

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Reboot"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type reboot
   next
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Reboot"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Reboot"
      set action "Reboot_email"
   next
end
```

**Connection down**

**config system automation-action**

```
config system automation-action
   edit "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down_ios-notification"
      set action-type ios-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
```

```
   next
end
```

**config system automation-trigger**

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type event-log
      set logid 22902
   next
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down"
      set status enable
      set trigger "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down"
      set action "FortiAnalyzer Connection Down_ios-notification"
   next
end
```

**License expired**

**config system automation-action**

```
config system automation-action
   edit "License Expired Notification_ios-notification"
      set action-type ios-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
```

**config system automation-trigger**

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "License Expired Notification"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type license-near-expiry
      set license-type any
   next
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "License Expired Notification"
      set status enable
      set trigger "License Expired Notification"
      set action "License Expired Notification_ios-notification"
   next
end
```

### Compromised host

#### config system automation-action

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine"
      set action-type quarantine
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
```

#### config system automation-trigger

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type ioc
      set ioc-level high
   next
end
```

#### config system automation-stitch

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set action "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine" "Compromised Host Quarantine_
           quarantine-forticlient"
   next
end
```

### Quarantine FortiClient

#### config system automation-action

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine-forticlient"
      set action-type quarantine-forticlient
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
```

#### config system automation-trigger

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type ioc
      set ioc-level high
   next
```

```
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set status disable
      set trigger "Compromised Host Quarantine"
      set action "Compromised Host Quarantine_quarantine" "Compromised Host Quarantine_
           quarantine-forticlient"
   next
end
```

**Security rating**

**config system automation-action**

```
config system automation-action
   edit "Security Rating Notification_ios-notification"
      set action-type ios-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
   next
end
```

**config system automation-trigger**

```
config system automation-trigger
   edit "Security Rating Notification"
      set trigger-type event-based
      set event-type security-rating-summary
   next
end
```

**config system automation-stitch**

```
config system automation-stitch
   edit "Security Rating Notification"
      set status enable
      set trigger "Security Rating Notification"
      set action "Security Rating Notification_ios-notification"
   next
end
```

## Chaining and delaying actions

Automation stitches that use cloud-based or webhook actions have the option to delay an action after the previous action is completed. The execution of the actions can be delayed by up to 3600 seconds (one hour).

To configure this option in the GUI, select a cloud-based action, then enter the required value, in seconds, in the action configuration's *Delay* field.

To configure a delay in the CLI, use the following command:

```
config system automation-action
    edit <name>
        set action-type {aws-lambda | azure-function | google-cloud-function | alicloud-
function | webhook}
        set required {enable | disable}
        set delay <seconds>
    next
end
```

## Triggers

The following table outlines the available automation stitch triggers:

| Trigger | Description |
|---|---|
| **Compromised Host** | An Indicator of Compromise (IoC) is detected on a host endpoint.<br>The threat level must be selected and can be *Medium* or *High*. If *Medium* is selected, both medium and high level threats are included.<br>**Note:** Additional actions are available only for *Compromised Host* triggers:<br>• Access Layer Quarantine<br>• Quarantine FortiClient via EMS<br>• Assign VMware NSX Security Tag<br>• IP Ban |
| **Security Rating Summary** | A summary is available for a recently run Security Rating. |
| **Configuration Change** | A FortiGate configuration change has occurred. |
| **Reboot** | A FortiGate is rebooting. |
| **Low memory** | This option is only available in the CLI.<br>Conserve mode due to low memory. See Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 344 for an example. |
| **High CPU** | This option is only available in the CLI.<br>High CPU usage. See Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 344 for an example. |
| **License Expiry** | A FortiGuard license is expiring.<br>The license type must be selected. Options include:<br>• FortiCare Support<br>• FortiGuard Web Filter<br>• FortiGuard AntiSpam<br>• FortiGuard AntiVirus<br>• FortiGuard IPS<br>• FortiGuard Management Service<br>• FortiGate Cloud |
| **HA Failover** | An HA failover is occurring. |
| **AV & IPS DB Update** | The antivirus and IPS database is updating. |

| Trigger | Description |
|---|---|
| **FortiOS Event Log** | The specified FortiOS log has occurred.<br>The event must be selected from the event list. |
| **FortiAnalyzer Event Handler** | The specified FortiAnalyzer event handler has occurred. See FortiAnalyzer event handler trigger on page 310 for details. |
| **Schedule** | A scheduled monthly, weekly, daily, or hourly trigger. Set to occur on a specific minute of an specific hour on a specific day. |
| **FortiGate Cloud-Based IOC** | IOC detection from the FortiGate Cloud IOC service.<br>This option requires an IOC license, a web filter license, and FortiCloud logging must be enabled. |

## FortiAnalyzer event handler trigger

You can trigger automation stitches based on FortiAnalyzer event handlers. This allows you to define rules based on complex correlations across devices, log types, frequencies, and other criteria.

To set up a FortiAnalyzer event handler trigger:

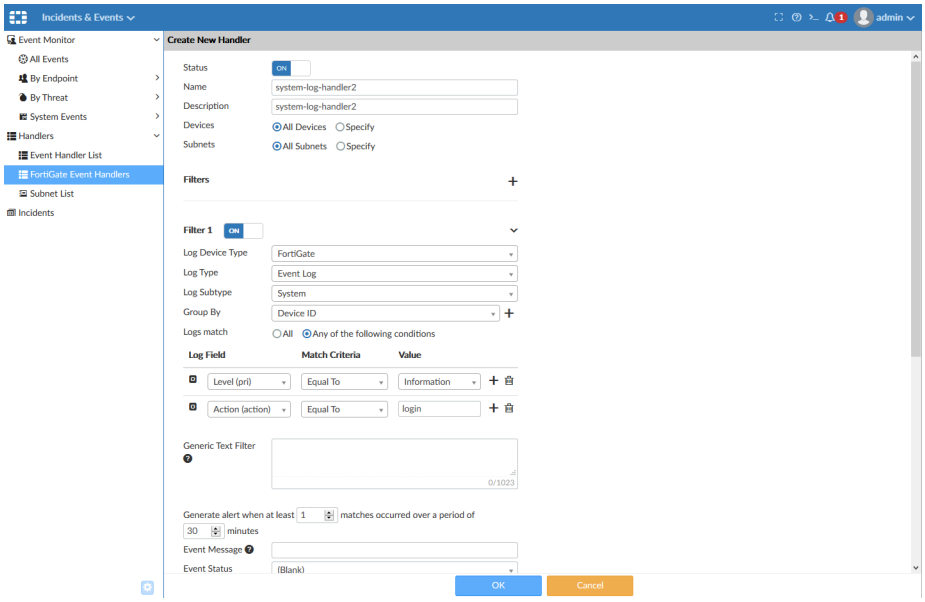
1. Configure a FortiGate event handler on the FortiAnalyzer
2. Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate on page 311
3. Configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler on page 311

### Configure a FortiGate event handler on the FortiAnalyzer

On the FortiAnalyzer, configure an event handler for the automation stitch. In this example, the event handler is triggered when an administrator logs in to the FortiGate.

**To configure an event handler on the FortiAnalyzer:**

1. Go to *Incidents & Events* > *Handlers* > *FortiGate Event Handlers*.
2. Configure an event handler for the automation stitch.




3. Click *OK*.

## Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate

See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 124 for more information.

**To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
2. Click *Enabled* and configure the settings as needed.
3. Click *OK*.

**To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the CLI:**

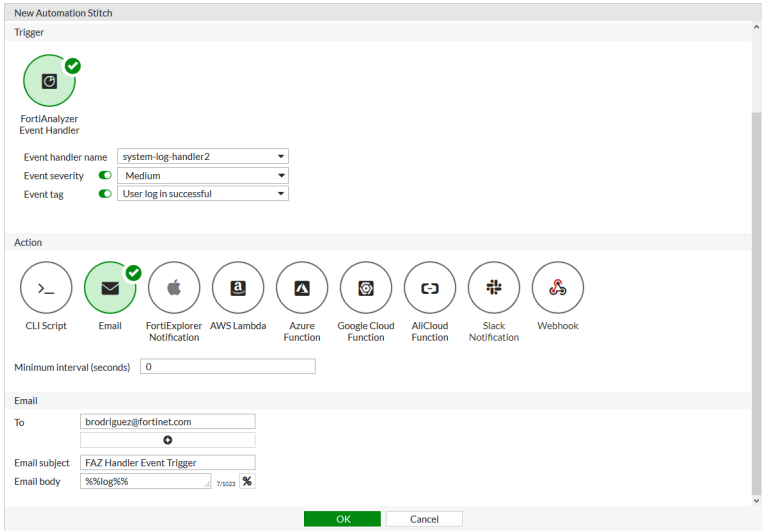
```
config log fortianalyzer setting
    set status enable
    set server "10.6.30.250"
    set serial "FL-4HET318900407"
    set upload-option realtime
    set reliable enable
end
```

## Configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler

When a FortiAnalyzer event handler is triggered, it sends a notification to the FortiGate automation framework, which generates a log and triggers the automation stitch.

**To configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Trigger* section, select *FortiAnalyzer Event Handler*.
4. Set *Event handler name* to the event that was created on the FortiAnalyzer.
5. Set the *Event severity*, and select or create an *Event tag*.




6. In the *Action* section, select *Email* and configure the email recipient and message.
7. Click *OK*.

**To configure an automation stitch that is triggered by a FortiAnalyzer event handler in the CLI:**

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto-faz-1_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "jnjssll@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert"
        set message "User login FortiGate successfully."
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-faz-1"
        set event-type faz-event
        set faz-event-name "system-log-handler2"
        set faz-event-severity "medium"
        set faz-event-tags "User login successfully"
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

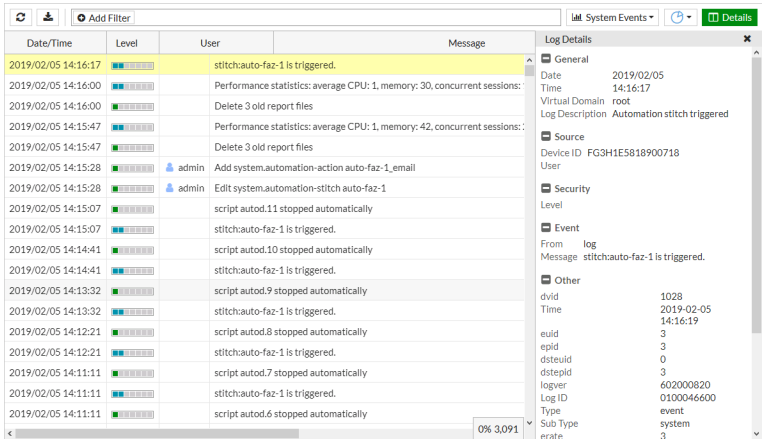
```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-faz-1"
```

```
        set trigger "auto-faz-1"
        set action "auto-faz-1_email"
    next
end
```

### View the trigger event log

**To see the trigger event log in the GUI:**

1. Log in to the FortiGate.
   The FortiAnalyzer sends notification to the FortiGate automation framework, generates an event log on the FortiGate, and triggers the automation stitch.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *System Events*.

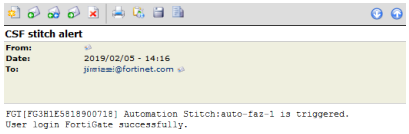



**To see event logs in the CLI:**

```
execute log display
    ...
    date=2019-02-05 time=14:16:17 logid="0100046600" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1549404977 logdesc="Automation stitch triggered"
stitch="auto-faz-1" trigger="auto-faz-1" from="log" msg="stitch:auto-faz-1 is triggered."
    ...
```

### Sample email

The email sent by the action will look similar to the following:




## Actions

The following table outlines the available automation stitch actions. Multiple actions can be added and reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping.

| Action | Description |
|---|---|
| **Alert** | Generate a FortiOS dashboard alert.<br>This option is only available in the CLI. |
| **CLI Script** | Run one or more CLI scripts. See CLI script action on page 315 for details. See Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 344 for an example. |
| **Disable SSID** | Disable the SSID interface.<br>This option is only available in the CLI. |
| **Email** | Send a custom email message to the selected recipients. At least one recipient and an email subject must be specified.<br>The email body can use parameters from logs or previous action results. Wrapping the parameter with %% will replace the expression with the JSON value for the parameter, for example: *%%results.source%%* is the source property from the previous action. |
| **FortiExplorer Notification** | Send push notifications to FortiExplorer.<br>The FortiGate must be registered to FortiCare on the iOS App that will receive the notification. |
| **Access Layer Quarantine** | This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers.<br>Impose a dynamic quarantine on multiple endpoints based on the access layer. |
| **Quarantine FortiClient via EMS** | This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers.<br>Use FortiClient EMS to block all traffic from the source addresses that are flagged as compromised hosts.<br>Quarantined devices are flagged on the Security Fabric topology views. Go to the *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* > *Quarantine* widget to view and manage quarantined IP addresses. |
| **Assign VMware NSX Security Tag** | This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers.<br>If an endpoint instance in a VMware NSX environment is compromised, the configured security tag is assigned to the compromised endpoint. See Assign VMware NSX security tag action on page 317 and Assign VMware NSX-T security tag action on page 320 for details. |
| **IP Ban** | This option is only available for Compromised Host triggers.<br>Block all traffic from the source addresses flagged by the IoC.<br>Go to the *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* > *Quarantine* widget to view and manage quarantined IP addresses. |
| **AWS Lambda** | Send log data to an integrated AWS service. See AWS Lambda action on page 323 for details. |
| **Azure Function** | Send log data to an Azure function. See Azure Function action on page 325 for details. |
| **Google Cloud Function** | Send log data to a Google Cloud function. See Google Cloud Function action on page 327 for details. |

| Action | Description |
|---|---|
| **AliCloud Function** | Send log data to an AliCloud function. See AliCloud Function action on page 329 for details. |
| **Slack Notification** | Send a notification to a Slack channel. See Slack notification action on page 332 for details. |
| **Webhook** | Send an HTTP request using a REST callback. See Webhook action on page 336 for details, and Slack integration webhook on page 341 and Microsoft Teams integration webhook on page 342 for examples. |

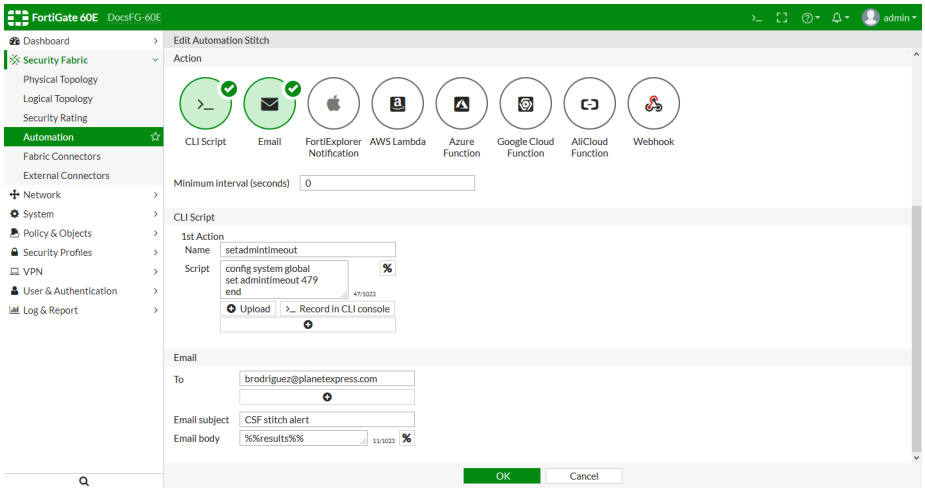
## CLI script action

CLI scripts can be run when an automation stitch is triggered. The scripts can be manually entered, uploaded as a file, or recorded in the CLI console. The output of the script can be sent as an email action.

In this example, the script sets the idle timeout value to 479 minutes, and sends an email with the script output.

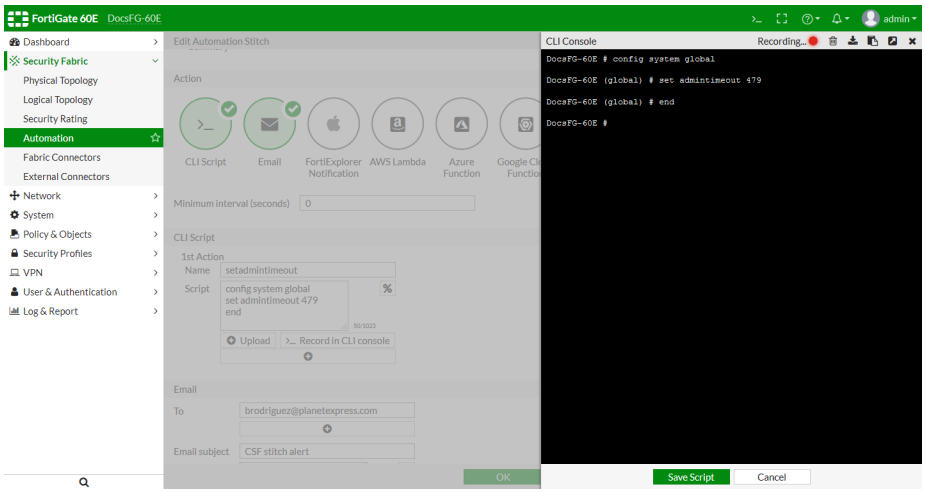
**To configure a CLI script automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.
5. Select *CLI Script* and *Email* actions.
6. Configure the CLI script:
   - To manually enter the script, type it into the *Script* field.




   - To upload a script file, click *Upload* and locate the file on your management computer.

- To record the script in the CLI console, click *>_Record in CLI console*, then enter the CLI commands.




7. Configure the email action.
8. Click *OK*.

### To configure a CLI script automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "set admintimeout479"
        set action-type cli-script
        set minimum-interval 0
        set delay 0
        set required enable
        set script "config system global
            set admintimeout 479
            end"
    next
    edit "auto-cli-1_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "jnkssll@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert"
        set message "%%results%%"
        set minimum-interval 0
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-cli-1"
        set trigger-type event-based
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

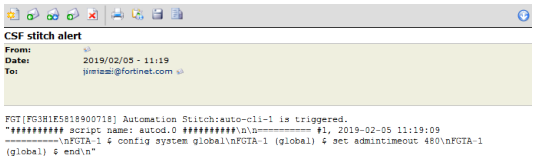
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-cli-1"
        set status enable
```

```
            set trigger "auto-cli-1"
            set action "set admintimeout479
        next
    end
```

### Email sample

The email sent by the action will look similar to the following:




## Assign VMware NSX security tag action

If an endpoint instance in a VMware NSX environment is compromised, this action will assign the configured security tag to the compromised endpoint.

This action is only available when the automation trigger is set to compromised host.

To set up the NSX quarantine action, you need to:

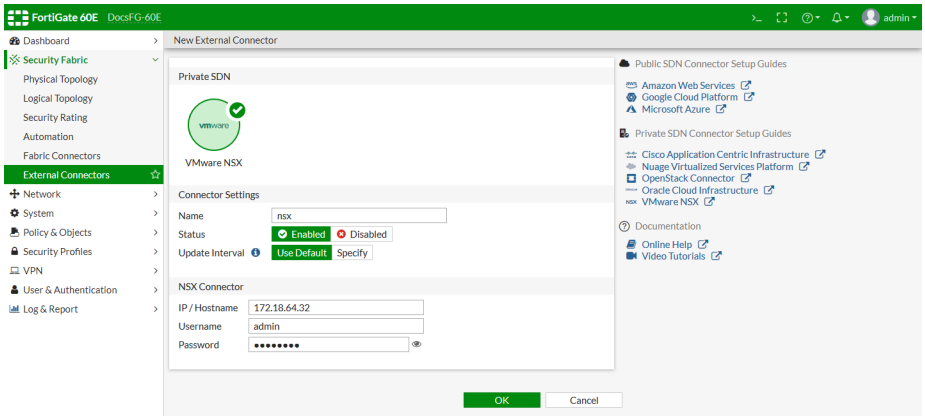
1. Configure a VMware NSX SDN connector
2. Configure an NSX security tag automation stitch
3. Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate

### Configure a VMware NSX SDN connector

The FortiGate retrieves security tags from the VMware NSX server through the connector.

#### To configure a VMware NSX SDN connector in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Select *VMware NSX*.
4. Configure the settings.




5. Click *OK*.

**To configure a VMware NSX SDN connector in the CLI:**

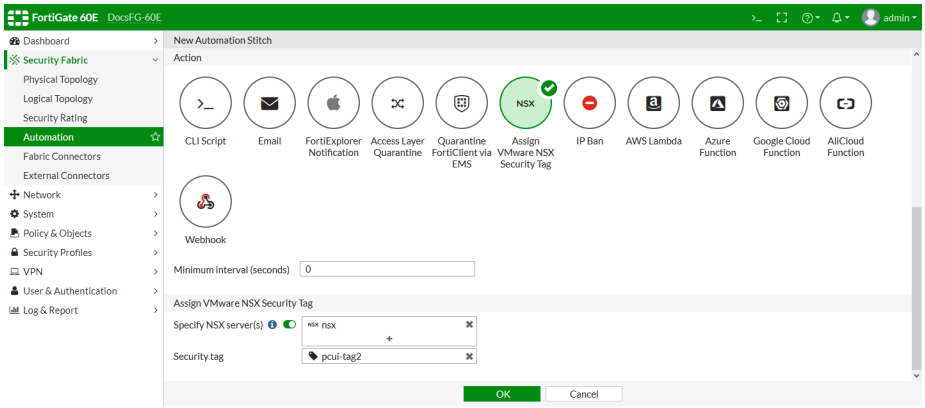
```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.32"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
    next
end
```

## Configure an NSX security tag automation stitch

Security tags are retrieved from the VMware NSX server through the NSX SDN connector.

**To configure an NSX security tag automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Trigger* section, select *Compromised Host*.
4. In the *Action* section, select *Assign VMware NSX Security Tag*.
5. Configure the settings.




6. Click *OK*.

**To configure an NSX security tag automation stitch in the CLI:**

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "pcui-test_quarantine-nsx"
        set action-type quarantine-nsx
        set security-tag "pcui-tag2"
        set sdn-connector "nsx"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "pcui-test"
        set ioc-level high
```

```
        next
    end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "pcui-test"
        set trigger "pcui-test"
        set action "pcui-test_quarantine-nsx"
    next
end
```

## Configure FortiAnalyzer logging on the FortiGate

The FortiAnalyzer is used to send endpoint compromise notification to the FortiGate.

See Configuring FortiAnalyzer on page 124 for more information.

### To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the GUI:

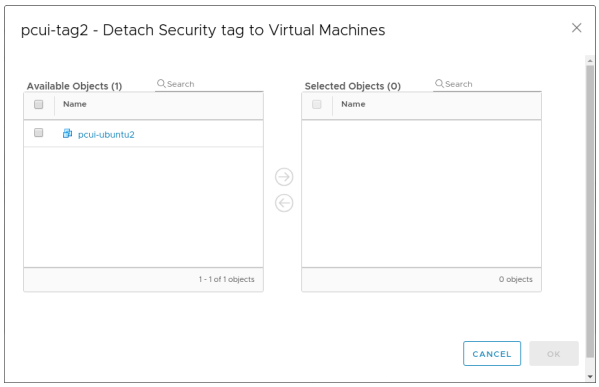
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiAnalyzer Logging* card.
2. Click *Enabled* and configure the settings as needed.
3. Click *Apply*.

### To configure FortiAnalyzer logging in the CLI:

```
config log fortianalyzer setting
    set status enable
    set server "172.18.64.234"
    set serial "FL-8HFT718900132"
    set upload-option realtime
    set reliable enable
end
```

## When an endpoint instance is compromised

When an endpoint instance, such as *pcui-ubuntu2*, in the VMware NSX environment is compromised, the automation stitch is triggered. The FortiGate then assigns the configured security tag, *pcui-tag2* in this example, to the compromised NSX endpoint instance.



## Assign VMware NSX-T security tag action

VMware NSX SDN connectors' vCenter server and credentials can be configured so the FortiGate resolves NSX-T VMs.

The FortiGate is notified of a compromised host on the NSX-T network by an incoming webhook or other means, such as FortiGuard IOC. An automation stitch can be configured to process this trigger and action it by assigning a VMware NSX security tag on the VM instance.

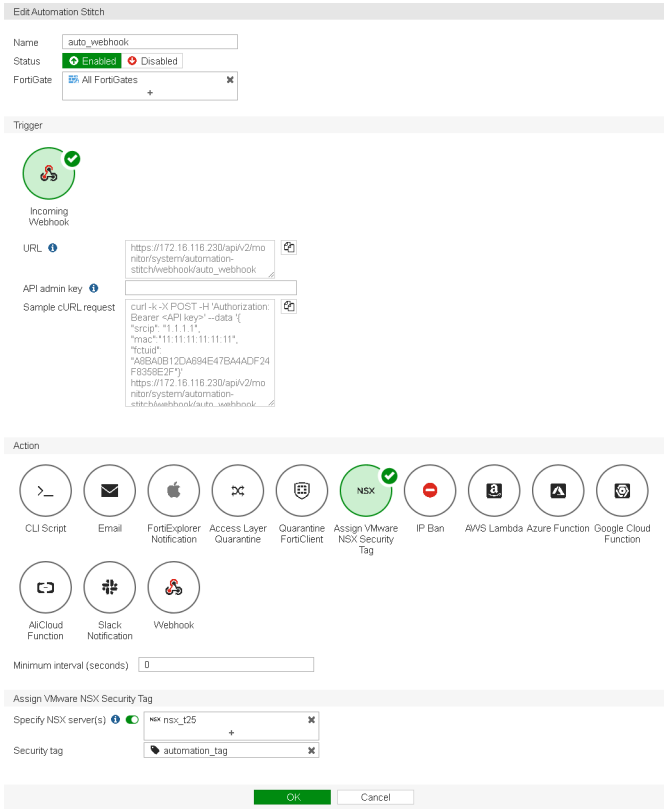
**To configure an automation stitch to assign a security tag to NSX-T VMs in the GUI:**

1. Configure the NSX SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx_t25"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.205"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
        set vcenter-server "172.18.64.201"
        set vcenter-username "administrator@vsphere.local"
        set vcenter-password xxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Configure the automation stitch:
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* and click *Create New*.
   b. In the *Trigger* section, select *Incoming Webhook*.
   c. In the *Action* section, select *Assign VMwareNSX Security Tag*.
   d. Enable *Specify NSX server(s)* and enter a server.
   e. Enter a *Security tag*.

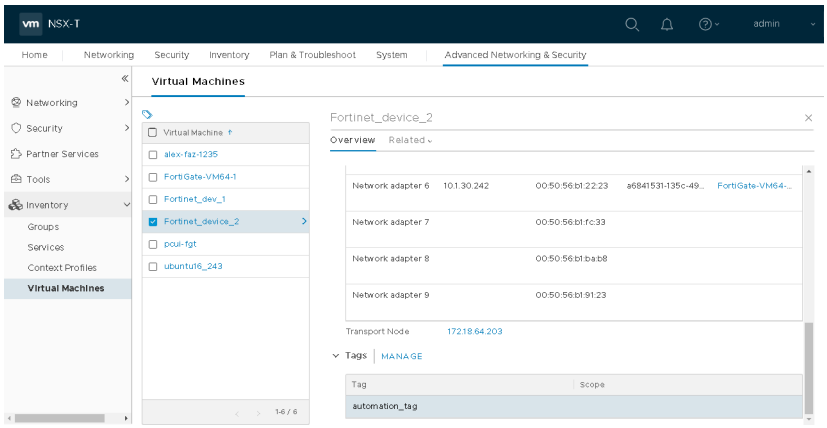
**f.** Click *OK*.



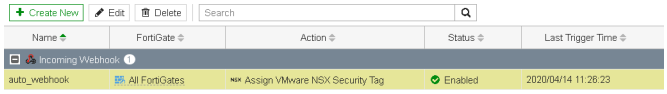

**3.** In NSX-T, create a cURL request to trigger the automation stitch on the FortiGate:

```
root@pc56:/home# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
3fdxNG08mgNg0fh4NQ51g1NQ1QHcxx' --data '{ "srcip": "10.1.30.242"}'
https://172.16.116.230/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-stitch/webhook/auto_webhook
{
  "http_method":"POST",
  "status":"success",
  "http_status":200,
  "serial":"FGVM08TM20000220",
  "version":"v6.4.0",
  "build":1608
}
```

The automation stitch is triggered and the configured tag is added to the NSX-T VM.




In FortiOS, the *Security Fabric* > *Automation* page shows the last trigger time.




**To configure an automation stitch to assign a security tag to NSX-T VMs in the CLI:**

1. Configure the NSX SDN connector:

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit "nsx_t25"
        set type nsx
        set server "172.18.64.205"
        set username "admin"
        set password xxxxxx
        set vcenter-server "172.18.64.201"
        set vcenter-username "administrator@vsphere.local"
        set vcenter-password xxxxxx
    next
end
```

2. Configure the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_webhook_quarantine-nsx"
        set action-type quarantine-nsx
        set security-tag "automation_tag"
        set sdn-connector "nsx_t25"
    next
end

config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_webhook"
        set trigger-type event-based
        set event-type incoming-webhook
    next
end

config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_webhook"
        set status enable
        set trigger "auto_webhook"
```

```
        set action "auto_webhook_quarantine-nsx"
    next
end
```

3. In NSX-T, create a cURL request to trigger the automation stitch on the FortiGate:

```
root@pc56:/home# curl -k -X POST -H 'Authorization: Bearer
3fdxNG08mgNg0fh4NQ51g1NQ1QHcxx' --data '{ "srcip": "10.1.30.242"}'
https://172.16.116.230/api/v2/monitor/system/automation-stitch/webhook/auto_webhook
{
  "http_method":"POST",
  "status":"success",
  "http_status":200,
  "serial":"FGVM08TM20000220",
  "version":"v6.4.0",
  "build":1608
}
```

**To verify the automation stitch is triggered and the action is executed:**

```
# diagnose test application autod 2

csf: enabled root:yes
version:1586883541 sync time:Tue Apr 14 11:04:05 2020

total stitches activated: 1

stitch: auto_webhook
destinations: all
trigger: auto_webhook

(id:15)service=auto_webhook

local hit: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
actions:
auto_webhook_quarantine-nsx type:quarantine-nsx interval:0
security tag:automation_tag
sdn connector:
nsx_t25;
```

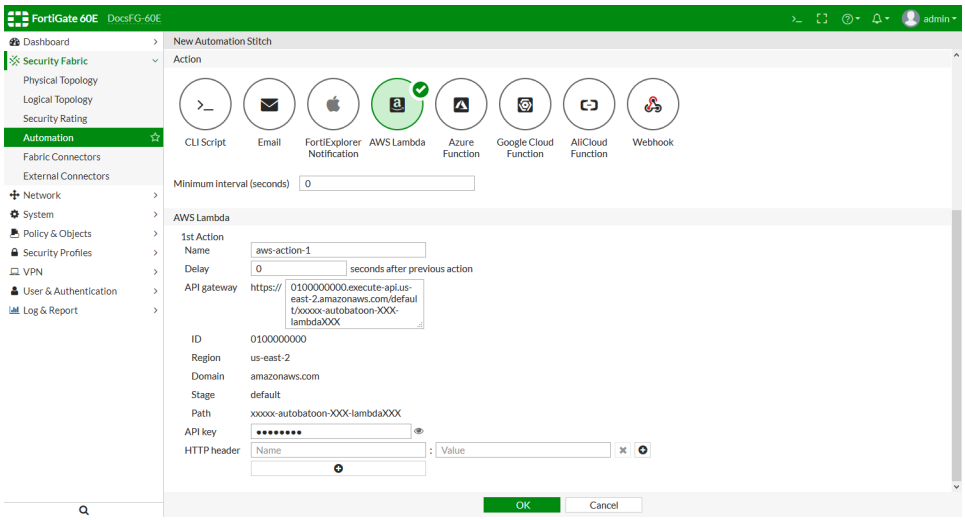
## AWS Lambda action

AWS Lambda functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

**To configure an AWS Lambda function automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.

5. Select *AWS Lambda Function* and configure its settings.




| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | The action name. |
| **Delay** | The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0). |
| **API gateway** | The API gateway URL, in the format:<br>`{restapi-id}.execute-api.{region}.{domain}/{stage}/{path}`<br>The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters. |
| **API key** | The API key configured in your API gateway. |
| **HTTP header** | The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added. |
| **+** | Click to add another action.<br>Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping. |
| **Name** | The action name. |
| **Delay** | The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0). |

6. Click *OK*.

**To configure an AWS Lambda function automation stitch in the CLI:**

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "aws-action-1"
        set action-type aws-lambda
        set aws-api-id "0100000000"
        set aws-region "us-east-2"
        set aws-api-stage "default"
        set aws-api-path "xxxxx-autobatoon-XXX-lambdaXXX"
        set aws-api-key *************
    next
end
```

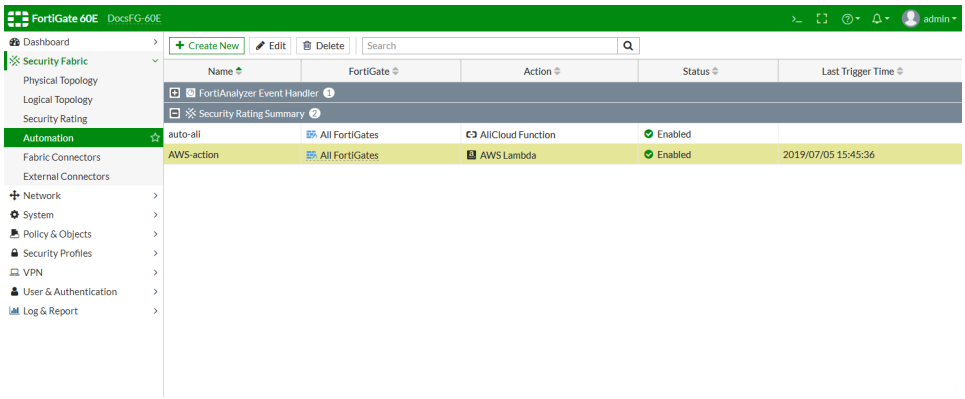
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-aws"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-aws"
        set trigger "auto-aws"
        set action "aws-action-1"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:




In AWS, the log shows that the function was called, executed, and finished.

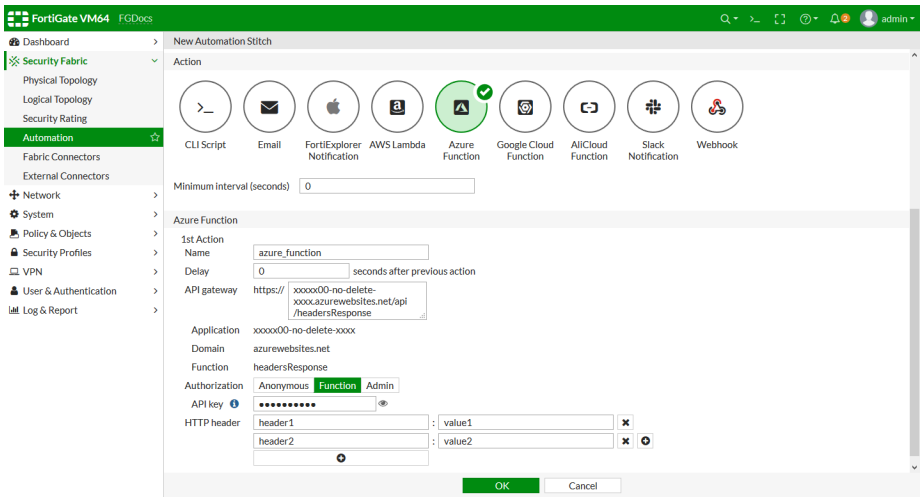
## Azure Function action

Azure functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

**To configure an Azure function automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.

5. Select *Azure Function* and configure its settings.




| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | The action name. |
| **Delay** | The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0). |
| **API gateway** | The API gateway URL, in the format:<br>`{application}.{domain}/api/{function}`<br>The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters. |
| **Authorization** | The authorization level: *Anonymous*, *Function*, or *Admin*. |
| **API key** | The API key configured in your API gateway.<br>This options is only available when *Authorization* is not *Anonymous*. |
| **HTTP header** | The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added. |
| **+** | Click to add another action.<br>Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping. |

6. Click *OK*.

### To configure an Azure function automation stitch in the CLI:

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "azure_function"
        set action-type azure-function
        set azure-app "xxxxx00-no-delete-xxxx"
        set azure-function "headersResponse"
        set azure-function-authorization function
        set azure-api-key **********
        set headers "header1:value1" "header2:value2"
    next
end
```

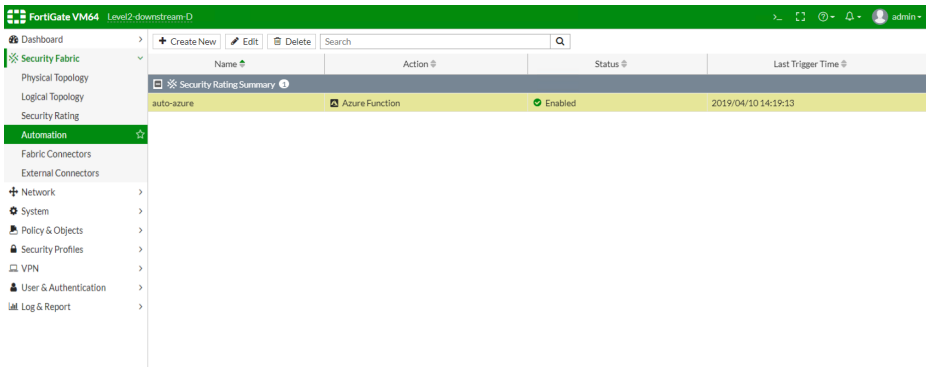
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-azure"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

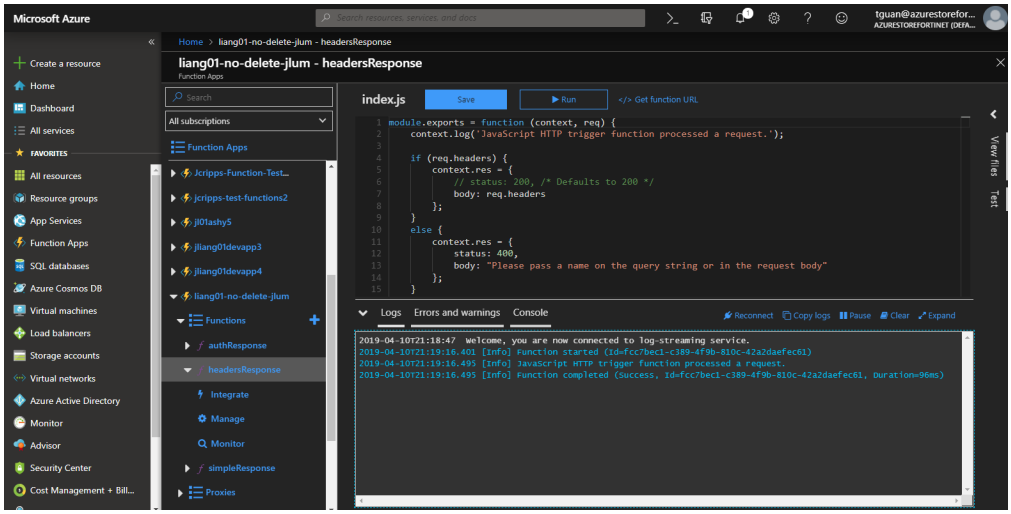
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-azure"
        set trigger "auto-azure"
        set action "azure_function"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:




In Azure, the function log shows that the function was called, executed, and finished:

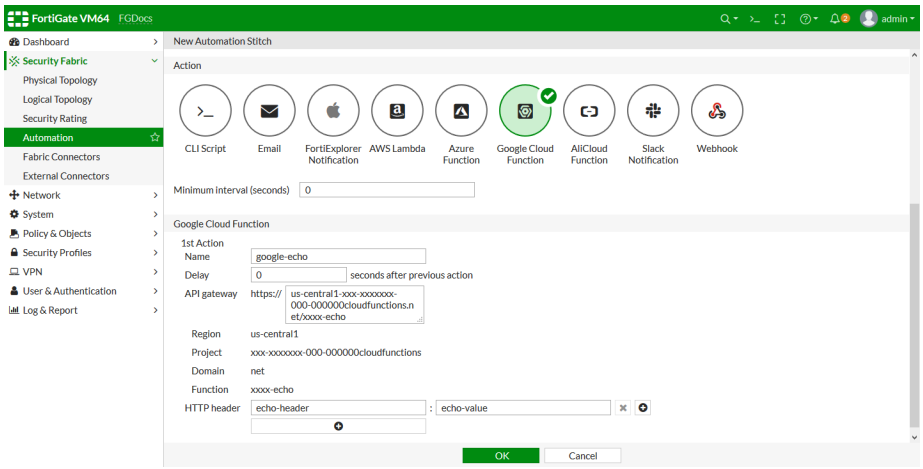



## Google Cloud Function action

Google Cloud functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

**To configure a Google Cloud function automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.
5. Select *Google Cloud Function* and configure its settings.




| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | The action name. |
| **Delay** | The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0). |
| **API gateway** | The API gateway URL, in the format:<br>`{region}-{project}{domain}/{function}`<br>The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters. |
| **HTTP header** | The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added. |
| **+** | Click to add another action.<br>Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping. |

6. Click *OK*.

**To configure a Google Cloud function automation stitch in the CLI:**

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "google-echo"
        set action-type google-cloud-function
        set gcp-function-region "us-central1"
        set gcp-project "xxx-xxxxxxx-000-000000"
        set gcp-function-domain "cloudfunctions.net"
        set gcp-function "xxxx-echo"
        set headers "echo-header:echo-value"
    next
end
```

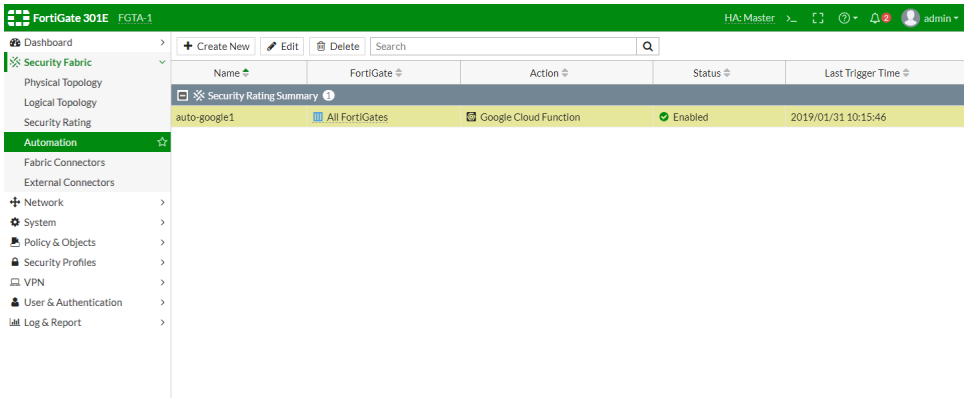
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-google1"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

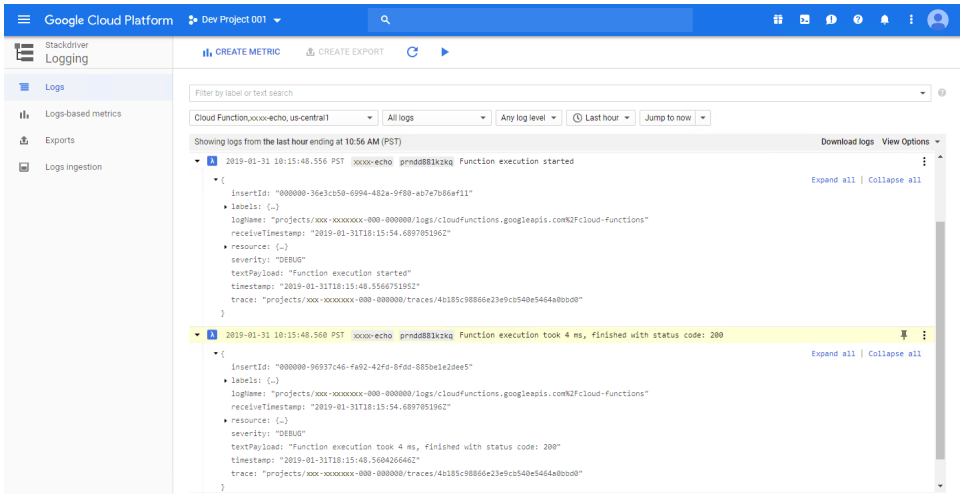
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-google1"
        set trigger "auto-google1"
        set action "google-echo"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:




In Google Cloud, go to *Logs* to see the function log showing that the configured function was called, executed, and finished:

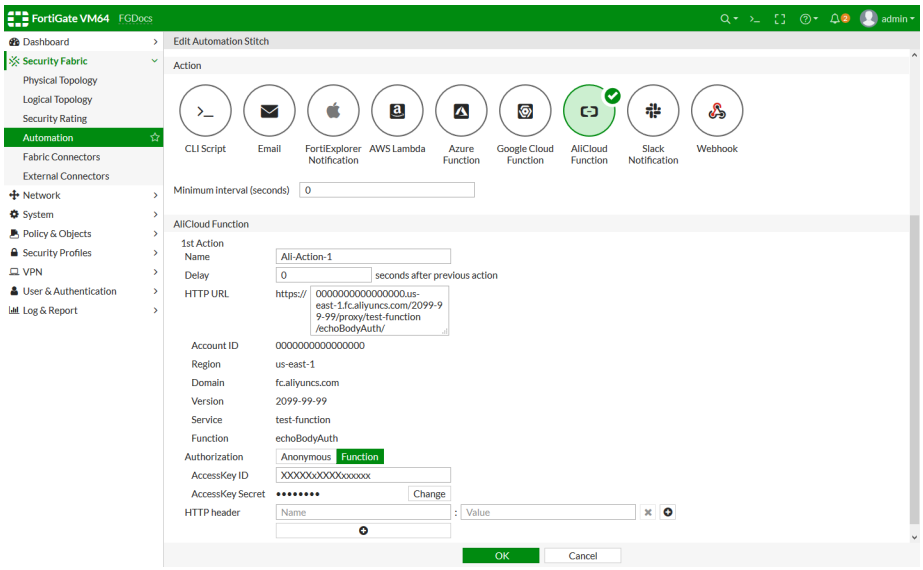



## AliCloud Function action

AliCloud functions can be called when an automation stitch is triggered.

**To configure an AliCloud function automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select a trigger, such as *Security Rating Summary*.
5. Select *AliCloud Function* and configure its settings.




| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | The action name. |
| **Delay** | The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0). |
| **HTTP URL** | The HTTP URL, in the format:<br>`{account id}.{region}.{domain}/{version}/proxy/{service}/{function}`<br>The CLI must be used to manually enter the individual parameters. |
| **Authorization** | The authorization level: *Anonymous*, or *Function*. |
| **AccessKey ID** | The access key ID<br>This options is only available when *Authorization* is *Function*. |
| **AccessKey Secret** | The access key secret.<br>This options is only available when *Authorization* is *Function*. |
| **HTTP header** | The HTTP request header name and value. Multiple headers can be added. |
| **+** | Click to add another action.<br>Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping. |

6. Click *OK*.

**To configure an AliCloud function automation stitch in the CLI:**

1. Create an automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "Ali-Action-1"
        set action-type alicloud-function
        set alicloud-account-id "0000000000000000"
        set alicloud-region "us-east-1"
        set alicloud-version "2099-99-99"
        set alicloud-service "test-function"
        set alicloud-function "echoBodyAuth"
        set alicloud-function-authorization function
        set alicloud-access-key-id "XXXXXxXXXXxxxxxx"
        set alicloud-access-key-secret xxxxxx
    next
end
```

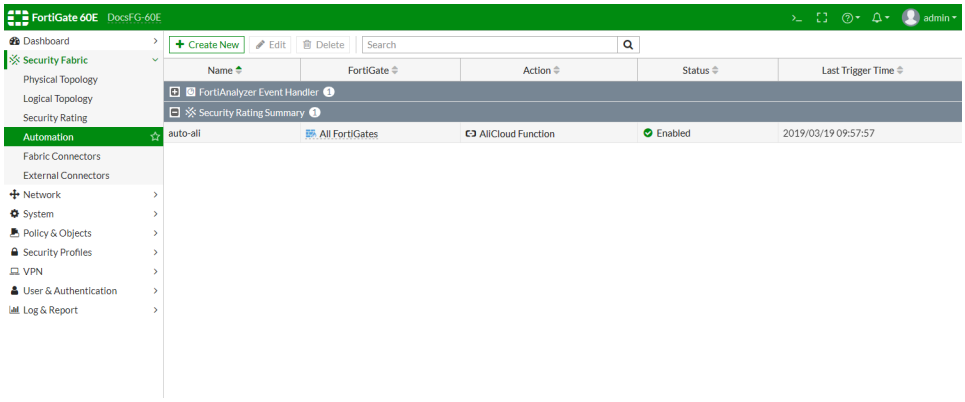
2. Create an automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-ali"
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

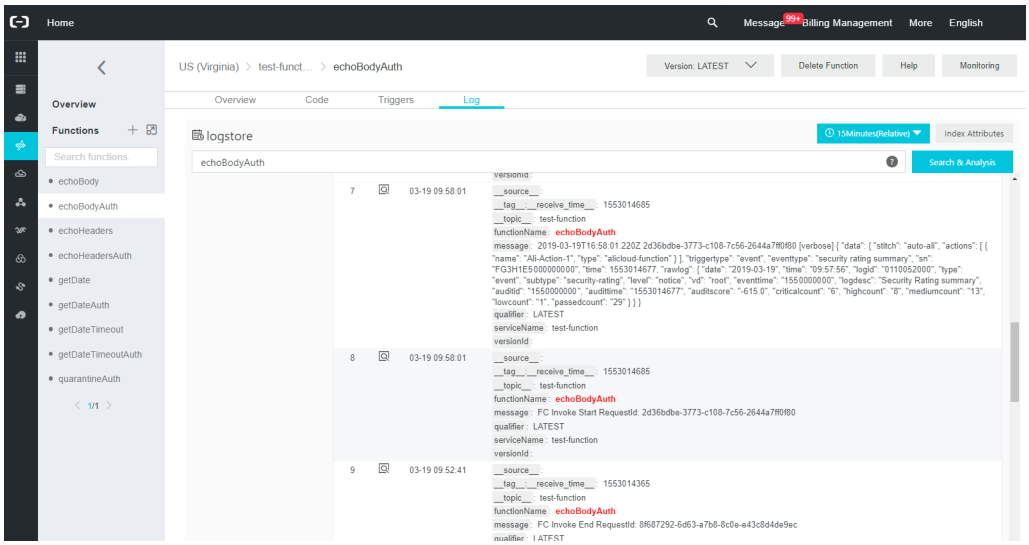
3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-ali"
        set trigger "auto-ali"
        set action "Ali-Action-1"
    next
end
```

When the automation stitch is triggered, the FortiGate shows the stitch trigger time:




In AliCloud, the function log shows that the function was called, executed, and finished:

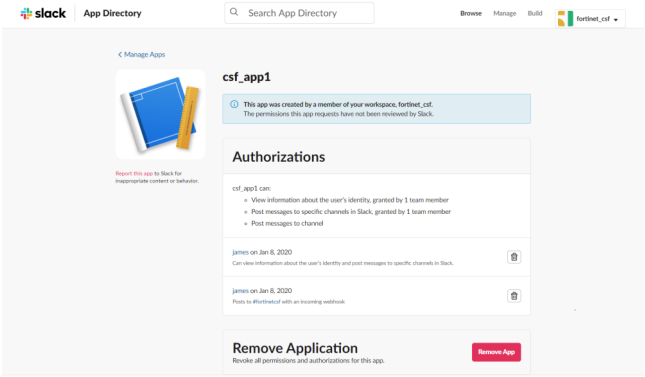



## Slack notification action

To configure the automation stitch, create an incoming webhook in Slack, and then enter the webhook URL in the corresponding field of the notification action in FortiGate.

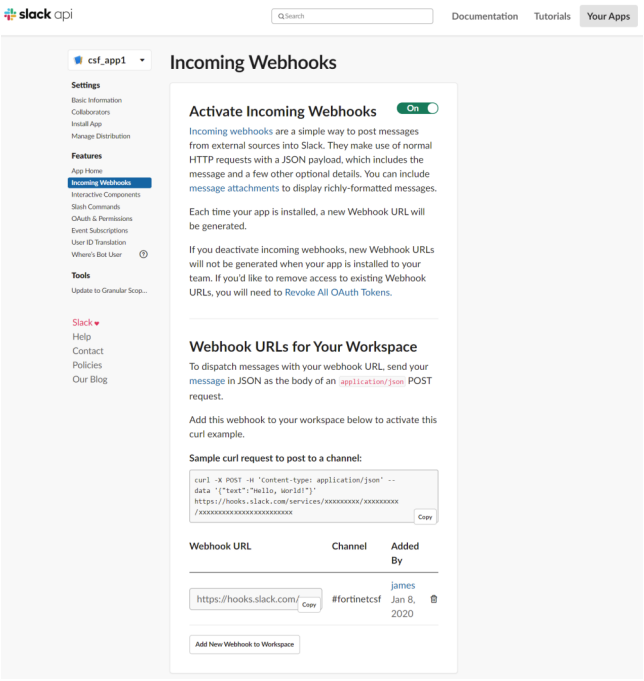
**To create an incoming webhook in Slack:**

1. Go to the Slack website, and create a workspace.
2. Create a Slack application for the workspace.




3. Add an *Incoming Webhook* to a channel in the workspace.

4. Activate the *Incoming Webhook*, and record the *Webhook URL*.

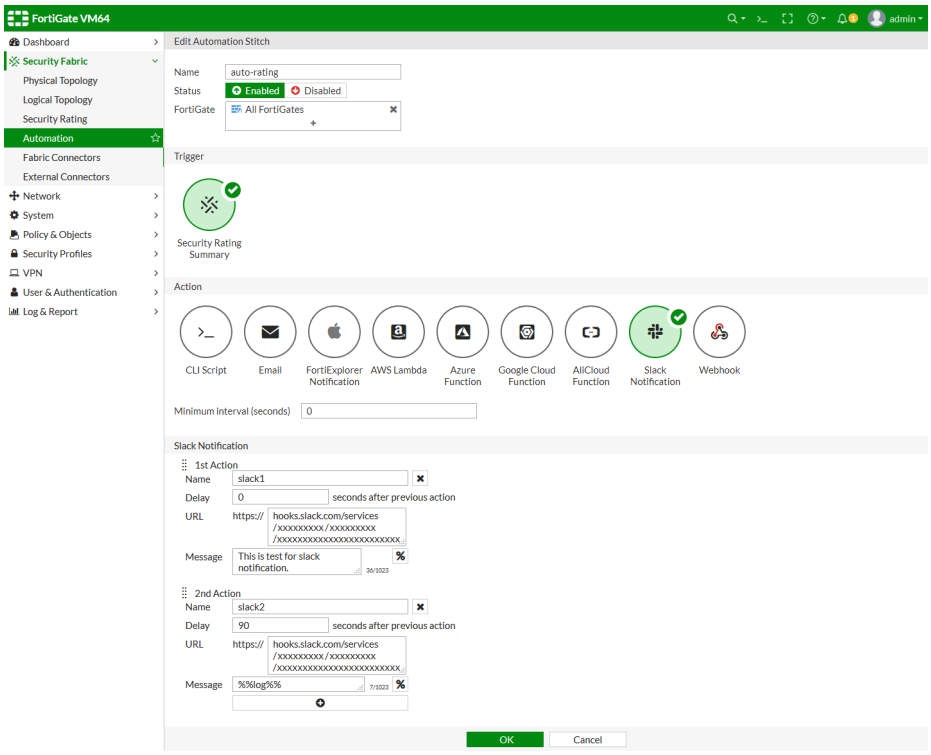



For information about using incoming webhooks in Slack, see https://api.slack.com/incoming-webhooks.

### To configure a Slack notification in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Choose an automation stitch, and click *Edit*.

3. Select *Slack Notification*, and configure the notification settings.




| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the notification. |
| **Delay** | Enter the number of seconds to delay the notification after the previous action is triggered. |
| **URL** | Enter the *Webhook URL* you recorded when you created the incoming webhook in Slack. |
| **Message** | Take one of the following actions:<br>• Configure the message parameters. Click *%* to view a description of the available parameters.<br>• Enter the message to display in the Slack channel. |

4. (Optional) Click the plus (+) sign to add another action.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Run the automation stitch to trigger the action.

**To configure a Slack notification in the CLI:**

1. Add the webhook URL the Slack notification action:

```
config system automation-action
   edit "slack1"
      set action-type slack-notification
      set minimum-interval 0
      set delay 0
      set required disable
      set message "This is test for slack notification."
      set uri "hooks.slack.com/services/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
   next
   edit "slack2"
      set action-type slack-notification
```

```
        set minimum-interval 0
        set delay 90
        set required disable
        set message "%%log%%"
        set uri "hooks.slack.com/services/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxx/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
    next
end
```

2. Create the trigger for the notification:

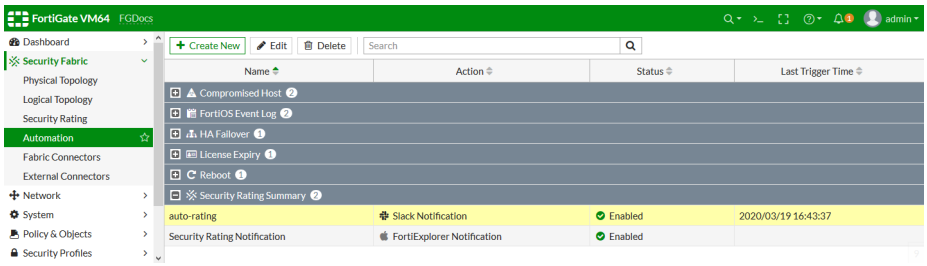
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto-rating"
        set trigger-type event-based
        set event-type security-rating-summary
    next
end
```

3. Configure the action for the trigger:

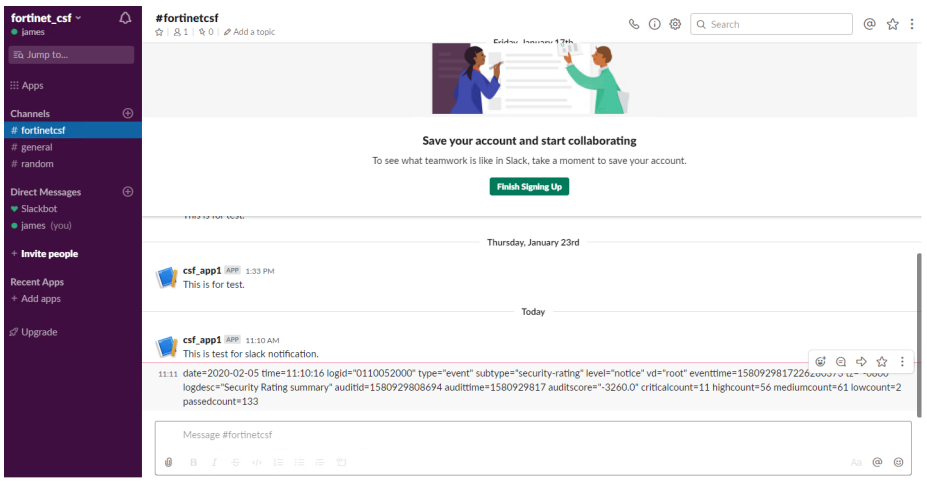
```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto-rating"
        set status enable
        set trigger "auto-rating"
        set action "slack1" "slack2"
    next
end
```

4. Trigger the notification.

The notification action is triggered in FortiGate.




The message you entered in the automation stitch is delivered to the Slack channel.



## Webhook action

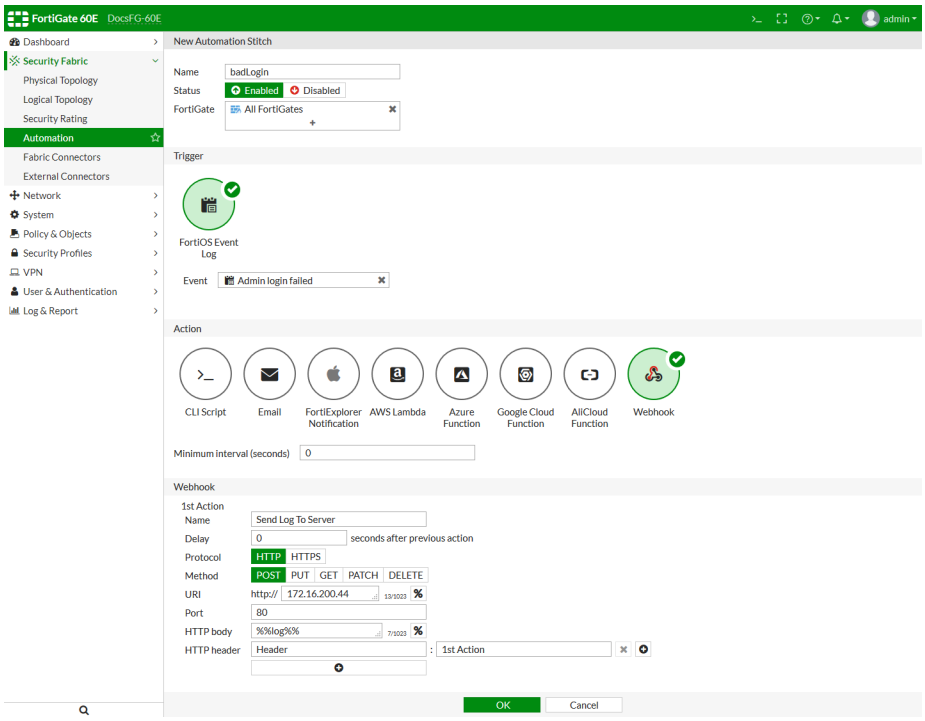
The webhook automation stitch action makes HTTP and HTTPS requests to a specified server, with custom headers, bodies, ports, and methods. It can be used to leverage the ubiquity of HTML requests and APIs to integrate with many other tools.

The URI and HTTP body can use parameters from logs or previous action results. Wrapping the parameter with %% will replace the expression with the JSON value for the parameter, for example: *%%results.source%%* is the source property from the previous action.

In this example, a specific log message (failed administrator log in attempt) triggers the FortiGate to send the contents of the log to a server. The server responds with a generic reply. This example assumes that the server is already configured and able to communicate with the FortiGate.

**To configure the webhook automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch, and select the FortiGate devices that it will be applied to.
4. Select the trigger *FortiOS Event Log*.
5. Set *Event* to *Admin login failed*.
6. Select *Webhook* and configure the settings:




| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | The action name. |
| **Delay** | The amount of time after the previous action before this action executes, in seconds (0 - 3600, default = 0). |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Protocol** | The request protocol to use: *HTTP* or *HTTPS*. |
| **Method** | The request method: *POST*, *PUT*, *GET*, *PATCH*, or *DELETE*. |
| **URI** | The request API URI. |
| **Port** | The protocol port. |
| **HTTP body** | The request body, if required, as a serialized JSON string.<br>Use the parameter *%%log%%* to send the contents of the log from the trigger. |
| **HTTP header** | The HTTP request header name and value. |
| **+** | Click to add another action.<br>Actions can be reorganized as needed by dragging and dropping. |

7. Click *OK*.

**To configure the webhook automation stitch in the CLI:**

1. Create the automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "Send Log To Server"
        set action-type webhook
        set uri "172.16.200.44"
        set http-body "%%log%%"
        set port 80
        set headers "Header:1st Action"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation trigger:

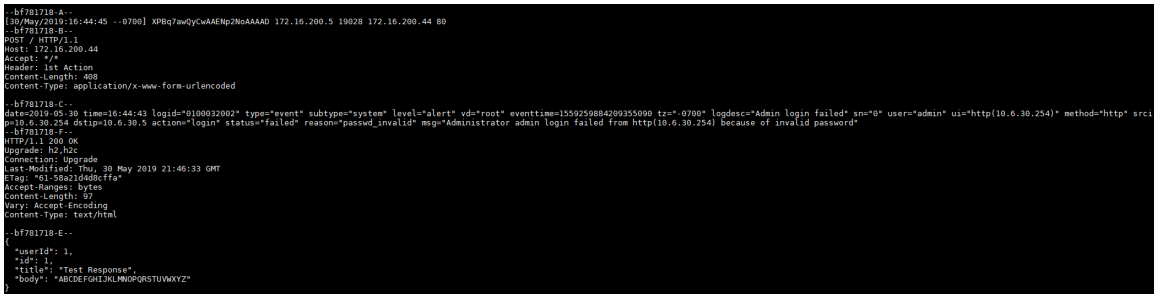
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "badLogin"
        set event-type event-log
        set logid 32002
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "badLogin"
        set trigger "badLogin"
        set action "Send Log To Server"
    next
end
```

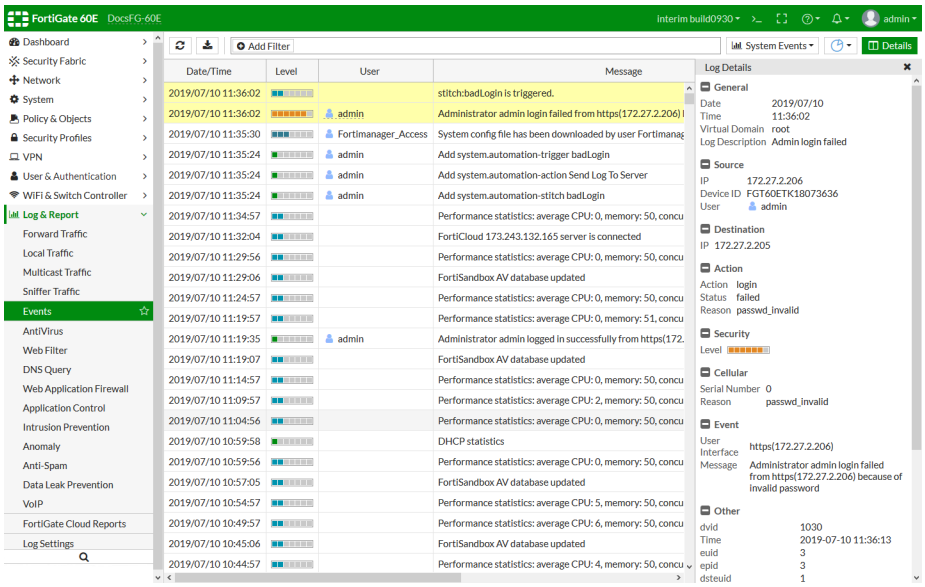
**To test the automation stitch:**

1. Attempt to log in to the FortiGate with an incorrect username or password.
2. On the server, check the log to see that its contents have been sent by the FortiGate.

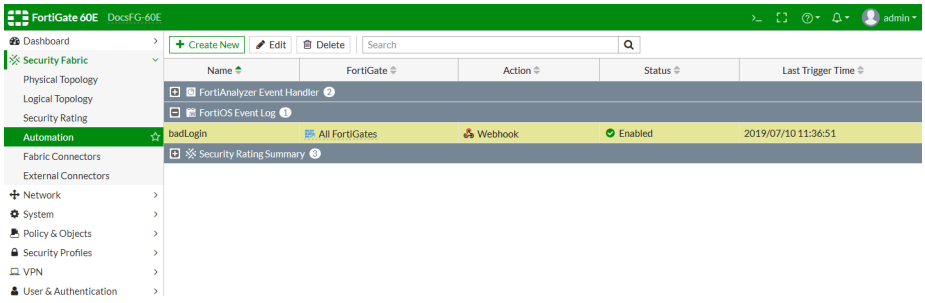



The body content is replaced with the log of the trigger.

3. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *System Events* to confirm that the stitch was activated.




4. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation* to see the last time that the stitch was triggered.




## Diagnose commands

- Enable log dumping:

```
# diagnose test application autod 1
```

```
autod dumped total:1 logs, num of logids:1
autod log dumping is enabled

vdom:root(0) logid:32002 len:408 log:
date=2019-05-30 time=17:41:03 logid="0100032002" type="event" subtype="system"
level="alert" vd="root" eventtime=1559263263858888451 tz="-0700" logdesc="Admin login
failed" sn="0" user="admin" ui="http(10.6.30.254)" method="http" srcip=10.6.30.254
dstip=10.6.30.5 action="login" status="failed" reason="passwd_invalid"
msg="Administrator admin login failed from http(10.6.30.254) because of invalid
password"
autod log dumping is disabled

autod logs dumping summary:
        logid:32002 count:1

autod dumped total:1 logs, num of logids:1
```

- Show automation settings:

```
# diagnose test application autod 2
csf: enabled   root:yes
total stitches activated: 2

stitch: badLogin
       destinations: all
       trigger: badLogin

       local hit: 6 relayed to: 6 relayed from: 6
       actions:
               Send Log To Server type:webhook interval:0
                       delay:0 required:no
                       proto:0 method:0 port:80
                       uri: 172.16.200.44
                       http body: %%log%%
                       headers:
                       0. Header:1st Action
```

- Show automation statistics:

```
# diagnose test application autod 3

stitch: badLogin

       local hit: 1 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
       last trigger:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019
       last relay:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019

       actions:
               Send Log To Server:
                       done: 1 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
                       last trigger:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019
                       last relay:Wed Jul 10 12:14:14 2019

logid2stitch mapping:
id:32002  local hit: 3 relayed to: 3 relayed from: 3
       badLogin
```

```
action run cfg&stats:
total:55 cur:0 done:55 drop:0
       email:
              flags:10
              stats: total:4 cur:0 done:4 drop:0
       ios-notification:
              flags:1
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       alert:
              flags:0
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       disable-ssid:
              flags:7
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine:
              flags:7
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine-forticlient:
              flags:4
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine-nsx:
              flags:4
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       ban-ip:
              flags:7
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       aws-lambda:
              flags:11
              stats: total:21 cur:0 done:21 drop:0
       webhook:
              flags:11
              stats: total:6 cur:0 done:6 drop:0
       cli-script:
              flags:10
              stats: total:4 cur:0 done:4 drop:0
       azure-function:
              flags:11
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       google-cloud-function:
              flags:11
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       alicloud-function:
              flags:11
              stats: total:20 cur:0 done:20 drop:0
```

- Enable debug output and turn on automation debug messages for about 30 minutes:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application autod -1
```

```
__auto_generate_generic_curl_request()-358: Generating generic automation CURL request
for action (Send Log To Server).
__auto_generate_generic_curl_request()-406: Generic automation CURL request POST data
for action (Send Log To Server):
date=2019-05-30 time=16:44:43 logid="0100032002" type="event" subtype="system"
level="alert" vd="root" eventtime=1559259884209355090 tz="-0700" logdesc="Admin login
failed" sn="0" user="admin" ui="http(10.6.30.254)" method="http" srcip=10.6.30.254
```

```
dstip=10.6.30.5 action="login" status="failed" reason="passwd_invalid"
msg="Administrator admin login failed from http(10.6.30.254) because of invalid
password"

__auto_generic_curl_request_close()-512: Generic CURL request response body from
http://172.16.200.44:
{
  "userId": 1,
  "id": 1,
  "title": "Test Response",
  "body": "ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ"
}
```

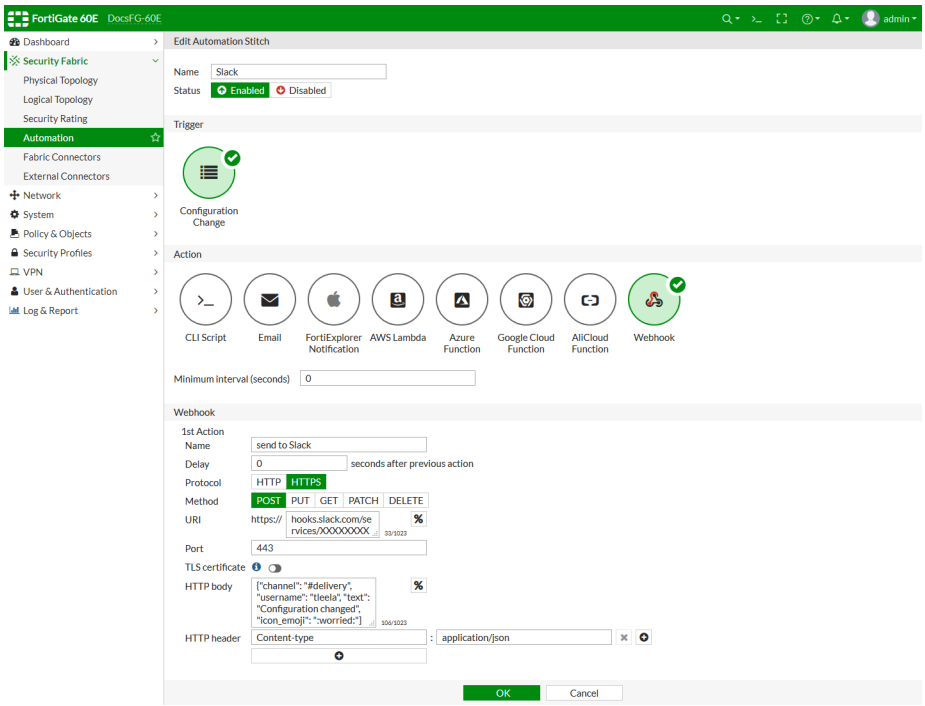
## Slack integration webhook

A webhook can be created to post messages and notifications to Slack. For information about using incoming webhooks in Slack, see https://api.slack.com/incoming-webhooks.

In this example, a configuration change triggers the FortiGate to post a message to Slack.

**To create a webhook automation stitch for Slack integration in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the stitch.
4. Select the trigger *Configuration Change*.
5. Select *Webhook* and configure the settings:




6. Click *OK*.

**To create a webhook automation stitch for Slack integration in the CLI:**

1. Create the automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "send to Slack"
        set action-type webhook
        set protocol https
        set uri "hooks.slack.com/services/XXXXXXXX"
        set http-body "{\"channel\": \"#delivery\", \"username\": \"tleela\", \"text\":
\"Configuration changed\", \"icon_emoji\": \":worried:\"}"
        set port 443
        set headers "Content-type:application/json"
    next
end
```

2. Create the automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "config change"
        set event-type config-change
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "Slack"
        set trigger "config change"
        set action "send to Slack"
    next
end
```

## Microsoft Teams integration webhook

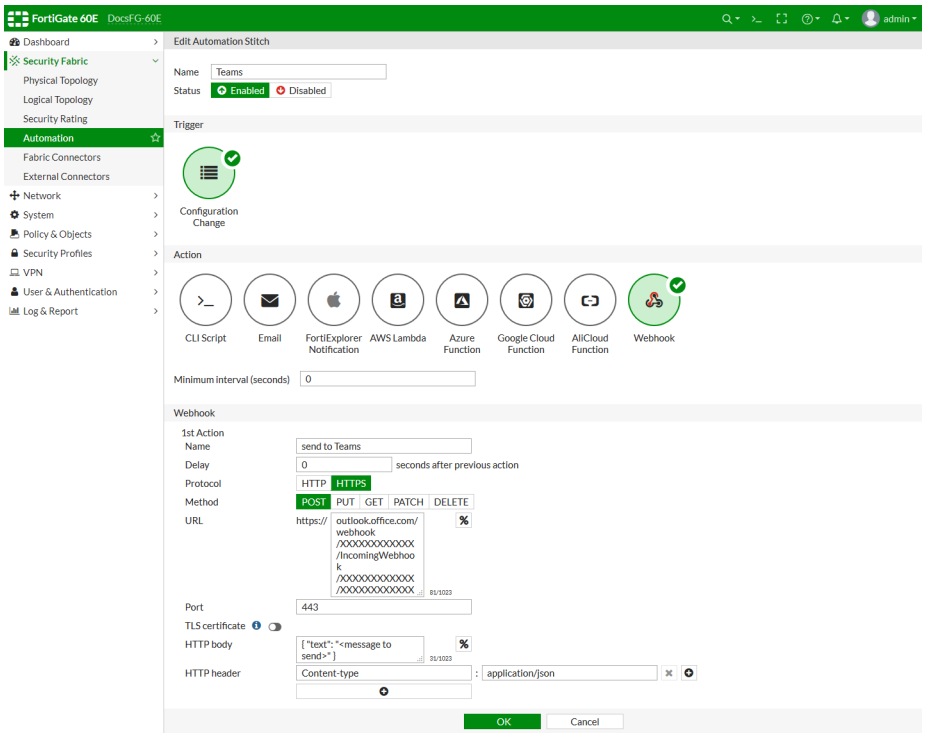
A webhook can be created to post messages and notifications to Microsoft Teams.

In this example, a configuration change triggers the FortiGate to post a message to Teams.

**To create a webhook automation stitch for Teams integration in the GUI:**

1. Create an incoming webhook in Teams. See https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoftteams/platform/webhooks-and-connectors/how-to/add-incoming-webhook for information.
2. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name for the stitch.
5. Select the trigger *Configuration Change*.

6. Select *Webhook* and configure the settings:




The *URI* is the URL from the incoming webhook created in Teams. The *HTTP body* can also contain log parameters.

7. Click *OK*.

### To create a webhook automation stitch for Teams integration in the CLI:

1. Create an incoming webhook in Teams. See https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoftteams/platform/webhooks-and-connectors/how-to/add-incoming-webhook for information.
2. Create the automation action:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "send to Teams"
        set action-type webhook
        set protocol https
        set uri
"outlook.office.com/webhook/XXXXXXXXXXXX/IncomingWebhook/XXXXXXXXXXXX/XXXXXXXXXXXX"
        set http-body "{ \"text\": \"<message to send>\" }"
        set port 443
        set headers "Content-type:application/json"
    next
end
```

3. Create the automation trigger:

```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "Teams"
        set event-type config-change
    next
end
```

4. Create the automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "Teams"
        set trigger "Teams"
        set action "send to Teams"
    next
end
```



For information about more advanced messages that can be configured and sent to the webhook, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoftteams/platform/webhooks-and-connectors/how-to/connectors-using

## Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds

Automation stitches can be created to run a CLI script and send an email message when CPU or memory usage exceeds specified thresholds.

In this example, two automation stitches are created that run a CLI script to collect debug information, and then email the results of the script to a specified email address when CPU usage threshold is exceeded or memory usage causes the FortiGate to enter conserve mode.



Automation stitches that use *High CPU* and *Conserve Mode* triggers can only be created in the CLI. Once create, they can be edited in the GUI.

**To define CPU and memory usage thresholds:**

```
config system global
    set cpu-use-threshold <percent>
    set memory-use-threshold-extreme <percent>
    set memory-use-threshold-green <percent>
    set memory-use-threshold-red <percent>
end
```

Where:

| | |
|---|---|
| cpu-use-threshold | Threshold at which CPU usage is reported, in percent of total possible CPU utilization (default = 90). |
| memory-use-threshold-extreme | Threshold at which memory usage is considered extreme, and new sessions are dropped, in percent of total RAM (default = 95). |
| memory-use-threshold-green | Threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to exit conserve mode, in percent of total RAM (default = 82). |
| memory-use-threshold-red | Threshold at which memory usage forces the FortiGate to enter conserve mode, in percent of total RAM (default = 88). |

## Configure the automation stitches

### High CPU usage stitch

**To create an automation stitch for high CPU usage:**

1. Create an automation action to run a CLI script:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "high_cpu_debug"
        set action-type cli-script
        set required enable
        set script "diagnose debug cli 8
diagnose debug console timestamp enable
diagnose debug enable
diagnose debug crashlog read
get system performance status
get system session status
diagnose sys session full-stat
diagnose firewall iprope state
diagnose sys flash list
diagnose hardware sysinfo memory
diagnose hardware sysinfo slab
diagnose hardware sysinfo shm
diagnose hardware deviceinfo disk
get system arp
diagnose ip arp list
diagnose ip address list
get router info routing-table all
get router info kernel
diagnose ip rtache list
diagnose sys top-summary
diagnose sys top 9 99"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation action to send an email:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_high_cpu_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "person@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert: high_cpu"
        set message "%%results%%"
    next
end
```

3. Create an automation trigger:

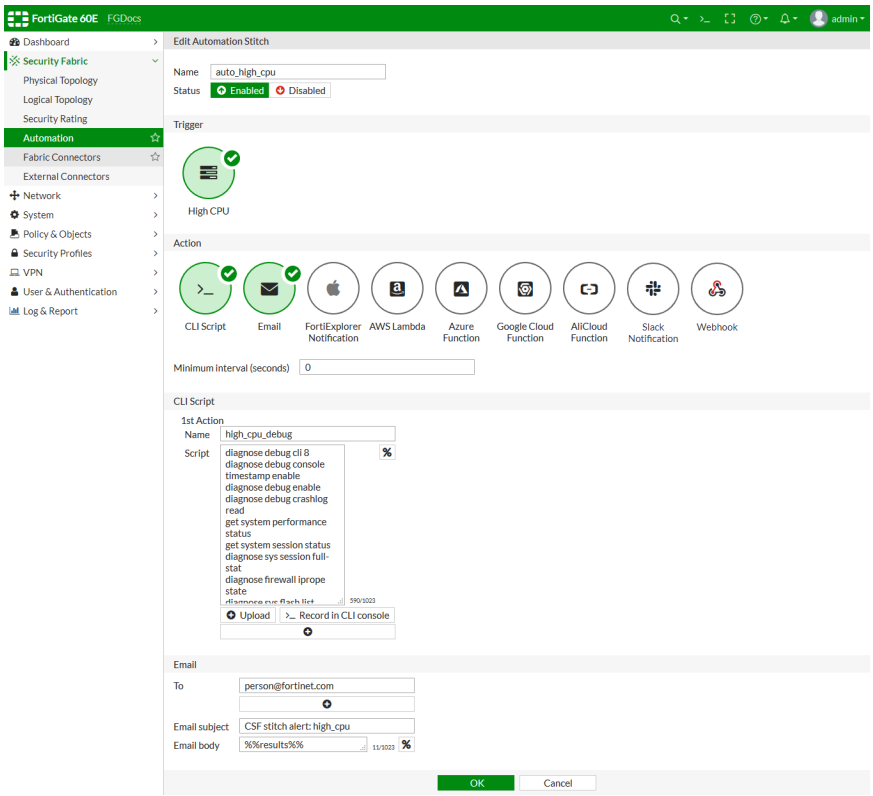
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_high_cpu"
        set event-type high-cpu
    next
end
```

4. Create an automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_high_cpu"
        set trigger "auto_high_cpu"
        set action "high_cpu_debug" "auto_high_cpu_email"
    next
end
```

**To edit the automation stitch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Double click the *auto_high_cpu* stitch.




3. Edit the stitch as required, then click *OK*.

## High memory usage stitch

**To create an automation stitch for high memory usage:**

1. Create an automation action to run a CLI script:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "high_memory_debug"
        set action-type cli-script
        set required enable
        set script "diagnose debug cli 8
diagnose debug console timestamp enable
diagnose debug enable
```

```
diagnose debug crashlog read
get system performance status
get system session status
diagnose sys session full-stat
diagnose firewall iprope state
diagnose sys flash list
diagnose hardware sysinfo memory
diagnose hardware sysinfo slab
diagnose hardware sysinfo shm
diagnose hardware deviceinfo disk
get system arp
diagnose ip arp list
diagnose ip address list
get router info routing-table all
get router info kernel
diagnose ip rtache list
diagnose sys top-summary
diagnose sys top 9 99"
    next
end
```

2. Create an automation action to send an email:

```
config system automation-action
    edit "auto_high_memory_email"
        set action-type email
        set email-to "person@fortinet.com"
        set email-subject "CSF stitch alert: high_memory"
        set message "%%results%%"
    next
end
```

3. Create an automation trigger:

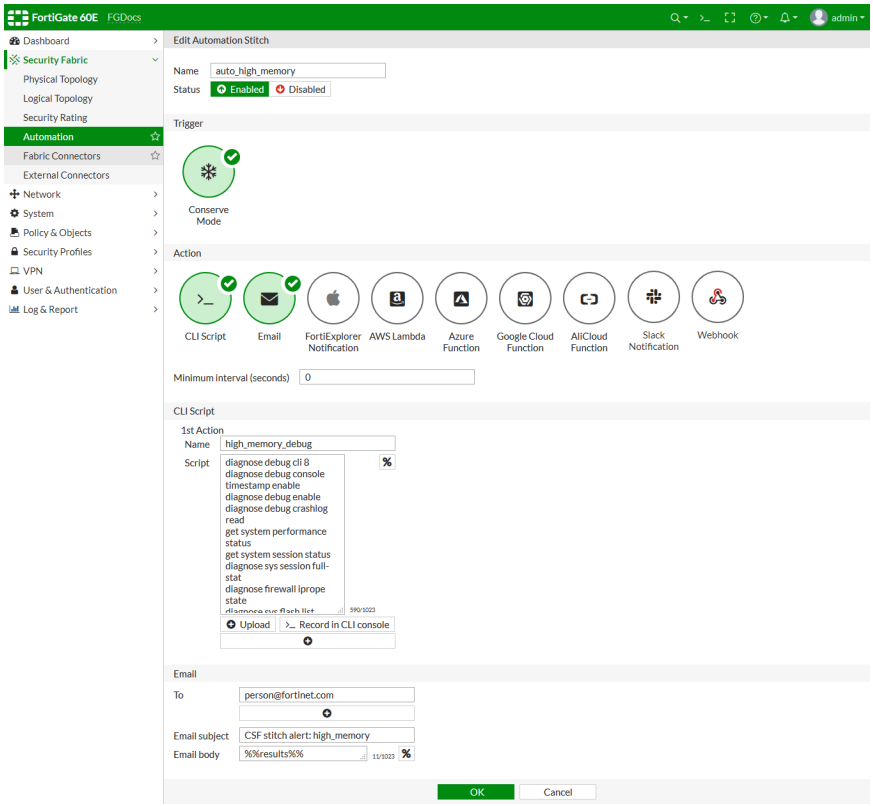
```
config system automation-trigger
    edit "auto_high_memory"
        set event-type low-memory
    next
end
```

4. Create an automation stitch:

```
config system automation-stitch
    edit "auto_high_memory"
        set trigger "auto_high_memory"
        set action "high_memory_debug" "auto_high_memory_email"
    next
end
```

**To edit the automation stitch in the GUI:**

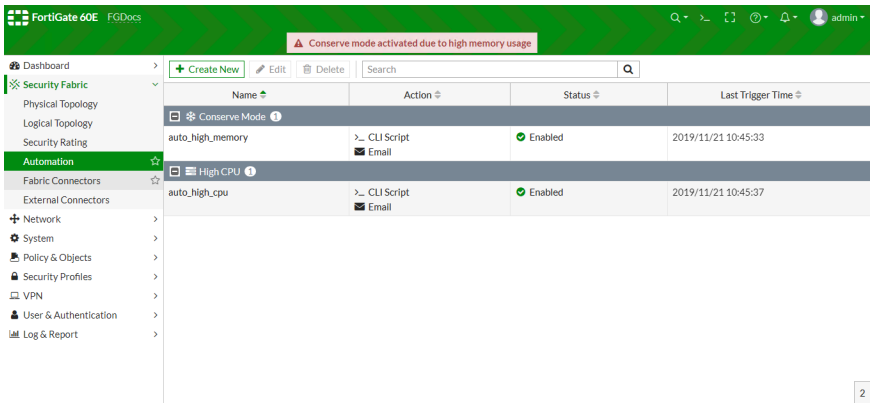
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Automation*.
2. Double click the *auto_high_memory* stitch.




3. Edit the stitch as required, then click *OK*.

## Results

When FortiGate enters conserve mode due to the `memory-use-threshold-red` being exceeded, the GUI displays a notice, and the *auto_high_memory* automation stitch is triggered, causing the CLI script to run and the results of the script to be emailed to the specified address.




Here is an example of the email message:

```
CSF stitch alert: high_memory
noreply@notification.fortinet.net
Thu 11/21/2019 11:06 AM
James Li
FGT[FGVM16TM19000026] Automation Stitch:auto_high_memory is triggered.
########## script name: autod.47 ##########
========== #1, 2019-11-21 11:07:24 ==========
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb cli 8
Debug messages will be on for 25 minutes.
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb console timestamp enable
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb enable
FGVM16TM19000026 $  diag deb crashlog read
1: 2019-08-08 11:35:25 the killed daemon is /bin/dhcpcd: status=0x0
2: 2019-08-08 17:52:47 the killed daemon is /bin/pyfcgid: status=0x0
3: 2019-08-23 11:32:31 from=license status=INVALID
4: 2019-08-23 11:32:32 from=license status=INVALID
5: 2019-11-21 09:53:31 from=license status=VALID
...
```

# Troubleshooting

The following topics provide troubleshooting information for the Fortinet Security Fabric:


- Viewing a summary of all connected FortiGates in a Security Fabric on page 349
- Diagnosing automation stitches on page 352


## Viewing a summary of all connected FortiGates in a Security Fabric

In downstream FortiGates, the `diagnose sys csf global` command shows a summary of all of the connected FortiGates in the Security Fabric.

**To view a Security Fabric summary on a downstream FortiGate:**

```
# diagnose sys csf global
Current vision:
[
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10403,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"identity-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "host_name":"admin-root",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "subtree_members":[
      {
```

```
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000002"
      },
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000003"
      },
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000004"
      },
      {
        "serial":"FGVM01TM19000005"
      }
    ]
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000002",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10423,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000002",
    "host_name":"Branch_Office_01",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"Branch-HQ-A",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.0.10.2",
    "downstream_intf":"To-HQ-A",
    "idx":1
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000003",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10407,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000003",
    "host_name":"Enterprise_Second_Floor",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"port3",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
```

```
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.100.88.102",
    "downstream_intf":"port1",
    "idx":2
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000004",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10424,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000004",
    "host_name":"Branch_Office_02",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"HQ-MPLS",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.0.12.3",
    "downstream_intf":"To-HQ-MPLS",
    "idx":3
  },
  {
    "path":"FGVM01TM19000001:FGVM01TM19000005",
    "mgmt_ip_str":"104.196.102.183",
    "mgmt_port":10404,
    "sync_mode":1,
    "saml_role":"service-provider",
    "admin_port":443,
    "serial":"FGVM01TM19000005",
    "host_name":"Enterprise_First_Floor",
    "firmware_version_major":6,
    "firmware_version_minor":2,
    "firmware_version_patch":0,
    "firmware_version_build":1010,
    "upstream_intf":"port3",
    "upstream_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_serial":"FGVM01TM19000001",
    "parent_hostname":"admin-root",
    "upstream_status":"Authorized",
```

```
    "upstream_ip":22569994,
    "upstream_ip_str":"10.100.88.1",
    "subtree_members":[
    ],
    "is_discovered":true,
    "ip_str":"10.100.88.101",
    "downstream_intf":"port1",
    "idx":4
  }
]
```

## Diagnosing automation stitches

Diagnose commands are available to:

- Test an automation stitch
- Enable or disable log dumping for automation stitches
- Display the settings of every automation stitch
- Display statistics on every automation stitch

**To test an automation stitch:**

```
diagnose automation test <automation-stitch-name>
```

Example:

```
# diagnose automation test HA-failover
automation test is done. stitch:HA-failover
```

**To toggle log dumping:**

```
diagnose test application autod 1
```

Examples:

```
# diagnose test application autod 1
autod log dumping is enabled
```

```
# diagnose test application autod 1
autod log dumping is disabled

autod logs dumping summary:
autod dumped total:7 logs, num of logids:4
```

**To display the settings for all of the automation stitches:**

```
diagnose test application autod 2
```

Example:

```
# diagnose test application autod 2
csf: enabled root:yes
total stitches activated: 3

stitch: Compromised-IP-Banned
        destinations: all
```

```
         trigger: Compromised-IP-Banned

       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
        actions:
               Compromised-IP-Banned_ban-ip type:ban-ip interval:0

stitch: HA-failover
        destinations: HA-failover_ha-cluster_25;
        trigger: HA-failover

       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
        actions:
               HA-failover_email type:email interval:0
               subject: HA Failover
               mailto:admin@example.com;

stitch: rebooot
       destinations: all
       trigger: reboot

       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
       actions:
               action1 type:alicloud-function interval:0
                       delay:1 required:yes
                       Account ID: id
                       Region: region
                       Function domain: fc.aliyuncs.com
                       Version: versoin
                       Service name: serv
                       Function name: funcy
                       headers:
```

**To display statistic on all of the automation stitches:**

```
diagnose test application autod 3
```

Example:

```
stitch: Compromised-IP-Banned
       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
       last trigger:Wed Dec 31 20:00:00 1969
       last relay:Wed Dec 31 20:00:00 1969
       actions:
               Compromised-IP-Banned_ban-ip:
                       done: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
                       last trigger:Wed Dec 31 20:00:00 1969
                       last relay:

stitch: HA-failover
       local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
       last trigger:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
       last relay:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
       actions:
               HA-failover_email:
                       done: 1 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
                       last trigger:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
                       last relay:Thu May 24 11:35:22 2018
```

```
stitch: rebooot
       local hit: 2 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
       last trigger:Fri May  3 13:30:56 2019
       last relay:Fri May  3 13:30:23 2019
       actions:
              action1
                     done: 1 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
                     last trigger:Fri May  3 13:30:56 2019
                     last relay:

logid2stitch mapping:
id:20103  local hit: 0 relayed to: 0 relayed from: 0
       License Expiry
       lambada

id:32138  local hit: 2 relayed to: 1 relayed from: 1
       Compromised-IP-Banned
       HA-failover
       rebooot

action run cfg&stats:
total:2 cur:0 done:1 drop:1
       email:
              flags:10
              stats: total:1 cur:0 done:1 drop:0
       ios-notification:
              flags:1
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       alert:
              flags:0
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       disable-ssid:
              flags:7
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine:
              flags:7
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine-forticlient:
              flags:4
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       quarantine-nsx:
              flags:4
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       ban-ip:
              flags:7
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       aws-lambda:
              flags:11
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       webhook:
              flags:11
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
       cli-script:
              flags:10
              stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
```

```
azure-function:
        flags:11
        stats: total:1 cur:0 done:0 drop:1
google-cloud-function:
        flags:11
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
alicloud-function:
        flags:11
        stats: total:0 cur:0 done:0 drop:0
```

# Network

The following topics provide information about network settings:


- Interfaces on page 356
- DNS on page 394
- Explicit and transparent proxies on page 406
- SD-WAN on page 468
- DHCP server on page 452
- Static routes on page 457
- Policy routes on page 458
- RIP on page 458
- OSPF on page 458
- BGP on page 458
- Direct IP support for LTE/4G on page 459
- LLDP reception on page 462
- Route leaking between VRFs on page 465


## Interfaces

Physical and virtual interfaces allow traffic to flow between internal networks, and between the internet and internal networks. FortiGate has options for setting up interfaces and groups of subnetworks that can scale as your organization grows. You can create and edit VLAN, EMAC-VLAN, switch interface, zones, and so on.

The following topics provide information about interfaces:


- Interface settings on page 357
- Aggregation and redundancy on page 360
- VLANs on page 362
- Enhanced MAC VLANs on page 368
- Inter-VDOM routing on page 371
- Software switch on page 376
- Zone on page 377
- Virtual Wire Pair on page 379
- Virtual switch support for FortiGate 300E series on page 381
- Failure detection for aggregate and redundant interfaces on page 383
- VLAN inside VXLAN on page 383
- Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN on page 386
- Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service on page 388

## Interface settings

Administrators can configure both physical and virtual FortiGate interfaces in *Network* > *Interfaces*. There are different options for configuring interfaces when FortiGate is in NAT mode or transparent mode.

**To configure an interface in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Interface*.
3. Configure the interface fields:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Interface Name** | Physical interface names cannot be changed. |
| **Alias** | Enter an alternate name for a physical interface on the FortiGate unit. This field appears when you edit an existing physical interface. The alias does not appear in logs.<br>The maximum length of the alias is 25 characters. |
| **Type** | The configuration type for the interface, such as VLAN or Software Switch. |
| **Link Status** | Indicates whether the interface is connected to a network or not (link status is up or down). This field is available when you edit an existing physical interface. |
| **Interface** | This field is available when *Type* is set to *VLAN*.<br>Select the name of the physical interface that you want to add a VLAN interface to. Once created, the VLAN interface is listed below its physical interface in the *Interface* list.<br>You cannot change the physical interface of a VLAN interface except when you add a new VLAN interface. |
| **VLAN ID** | This field is available when *Type* is set to *VLAN*.<br>Enter the VLAN ID. The VLAN ID can be any number between 1 and 4094 and must match the VLAN ID added by the IEEE 802.1Q-compliant router or switch that is connected to the VLAN subinterface.<br>The VLAN ID cannot be edited after the interface is added. |
| **Virtual Domain** | Select the virtual domain to add the interface to.<br>Only administrator accounts with the *super_admin* profile can change the *Virtual Domain*. |
| **Role** | Set the role setting for the interface. Different settings will be shown or hidden when editing an interface depending on the role.<br>• *LAN*: Used to connected to a local network of endpoints. It is default role for new interfaces.<br>• *WAN*: Used to connected to the internet. When WAN is selected, the *Estimated bandwidth* setting is available, and the following settings are not: *DHCP server*, *Create address object matching subnet*, *Device detection*, *Security mode*, *One-arm sniffer*, *Dedicate to extension/fortiap modes*, and *Admission Control*.and will show Estimated Bandwidth settings.<br>• *DMZ*: Used to connected to the DMZ. When selected, *DHCP server* and |

| | |
|---|---|
| | *Security mode* are not available.<br>• *Undefined*: The interface has no specific role. When selected, *Create address object matching subnet* is not available. |
| **Interface Members** | This section can has different formats depending on the *Type*:<br>*Software Switch*: This field is read-only, and shows the interfaces that belong to the virtual interface of the software switch.<br>*802.3ad Aggregate* or *Redundant Interface*: This field includes the available and selected interface lists. |
| **Addressing mode** | Select the addressing mode for the interface.<br>• *Manual*: Add an IP address and netmask for the interface. If IPv6 configuration is enabled,you can add both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address.<br>• *DHCP*: Get the interface IP address and other network settings from a DHCP server.<br>• *PPPoE*: Get the interface IP address and other network settings from a PPPoE server. This option is only available on the low-end FortiGate models.<br>• *Auto-managed by FortiIPAM*: Assign subnets to prevent duplicate IP addresses from overlapping within the same Security Fabric. See Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service on page 388.<br>• *One-Arm Sniffer*: Set the interface as a sniffer port so it can be used to detect attacks. |
| **IP/Netmask** | If *Addressing Mode* is set to *Manual*, enter an IPv4 address and subnet mask for the interface. FortiGate interfaces cannot have multiple IP addresses on the same subnet. |
| **IPv6 Address/Prefix** | If *Addressing Mode* is set to *Manual* and IPv6 support is enabled, enter an IPv6 address and subnet mask for the interface. A single interface can have an IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or both. |
| **Create address object matching subnet** | This option is available when *Role* is set to *LAN* or *DMZ*.<br>Enable this option to automatically create an address object that matches the interface subnet. |
| **Secondary IP Address** | Add additional IPv4 addresses to this interface. |
| **IPv4 Administrative Access** | Select the types of administrative access permitted for IPv4 connections to this interface. See Configure administrative access to interfaces on page 359. |
| **IPv6 Administrative Access** | Select the types of administrative access permitted for IPv6 connections to this interface. See Configure administrative access to interfaces on page 359. |
| **DHCP Server** | Select to enable a DHCP server for the interface. |
| **Device Detection** | Enable/disable passively gathering device identity information about the devices on the network that are connected to this interface. |
| **Security Mode** | Enable/disable captive portal authentication for this interface. After enabling captive portal authentication, you can configure the authentication portal, user and group access, custom portal messages, exempt sources and destinations/services, and redirect after captive portal. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Outbound shaping profile** | Enable/disable traffic shaping on the interface. This allows you to enforce bandwidth limits on individual interfaces. |
| **Comments** | Enter a description of the interface of up to 255 characters. |
| **Status** | Enable/disable the interface.<br>• *Enabled*: The interface is active and can accept network traffic.<br>• *Disabled*: The interface is not active and cannot accept traffic. |

4. Click *OK*.

**To configure an interface in the CLI:**

```
config system interface
    edit "<Interface_Name>"
        set vdom "<VDOM_Name>"
        set mode static/dhcp/pppoe
        set ip <IP_address> <netmask>
        set security-mode {none | captive-portal}
        set egress-shaping-profile <Profile_name>
        set device-identification {enable | disable}
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http
        set secondary-IP enable
        config secondaryip
            edit 1
                set ip 9.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
                set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## Configure administrative access to interfaces

You can configure the protocols that administrators can use to access interfaces on the FortiGate. This helps secure access to the FortiGate by restricting access to a limited number of protocols. It helps prevent users from accessing interfaces that you don't want them to access, such as public-facing ports.

As a best practice, you should configure administrative access when you're setting the IP address for a port.

**To configure administrative access to interfaces in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Create or edit an interface.
3. In the *Administrative Access* section, select which protocols to enable for *IPv4* and *IPv6 Administrative Access*.

| | |
|---|---|
| **HTTPS** | Allow secure HTTPS connections to the FortiGate GUI through this interface. If configured, this option is enabled automatically. |
| **HTTP** | Allow HTTP connections to the FortiGate GUI through this interface. This option can only be enabled if HTTPS is already enabled. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **PING** | The interface responds to pings. Use this setting to verify your installation and for testing. |
| **FMG-Access** | Allow FortiManager authorization automatically during the communication exchanges between FortiManager and FortiGate devices. |
| **SSH** | Allow SSH connections to the CLI through this interface. |
| **SNMP** | Allow a remote SNMP manager to request SNMP information by connecting to this interface. |
| **FTM** | Allow FortiToken Mobile Push (FTM) access. |
| **RADIUS Accounting** | Allow RADIUS accounting information on this interface. |
| **Security Fabric Connection** | Allow Security Fabric access. This enables FortiTelemetry and CAPWAP. |

## Aggregation and redundancy

Link aggregation (IEEE 802.3ad) enables you to bind two or more physical interfaces together to form an aggregated (combined) link. This new link has the bandwidth of all the links combined. If a link in the group fails, traffic is transferred automatically to the remaining interfaces. The only noticeable effect is reduced bandwidth.

This feature is similar to redundant interfaces. The major difference is a redundant interface group only uses one link at a time, where an aggregate link group uses the total bandwidth of the functioning links in the group, up to eight (or more).

An interface is available to be an aggregate interface if:

- It is a physical interface and not a VLAN interface or subinterface.
- It is not already part of an aggregate or redundant interface.
- It is in the same VDOM as the aggregated interface. Aggregate ports cannot span multiple VDOMs.
- It does not have an IP address and is not configured for DHCP or PPPoE.
- It is not referenced in any security policy, VIP, IP Pool, or multicast policy.
- It is not an HA heartbeat interface.
- It is not one of the FortiGate-5000 series backplane interfaces.

When an interface is included in an aggregate interface, it is not listed on the *Network* > *Interfaces* page. Interfaces still appear in the CLI although configuration for those interfaces do not take affect. You cannot configure the interface individually and it is not available for inclusion in security policies, VIPs, IP pools, or routing.

### Sample configuration

This example creates an aggregate interface on a FortiGate-140D POE using ports 3-5 with an internal IP address of 10.1.1.123, as well as the administrative access to HTTPS and SSH.

**To create an aggregate interface using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and select *Create New* > *Interface*.
2. For *Interface Name*, enter *Aggregate*.
3. For the Type, select *802.3ad Aggregate*.
4. In the physical *Interface Members*, click to add interfaces and select ports 4, 5, and 6.

5. For *Addressing mode*, select *Manual*.
6. For the IP address for the port, enter *10.1.1.123/24*.
7. For *Administrative Access*, select *HTTPS* and *SSH*.
8. Select *OK*.

**To create an aggregate interface using the CLI:**

```
FG140P3G15800330 (aggregate) # show
config system interface
    edit "aggregate"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.1.123 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http fgfm radius-acct capwap ftm
        set type aggregate
        set member "port3" "port4" "port5"
        set device-identification enable
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set fortiheartbeat enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 45
    next
end
```

## Redundancy

In a redundant interface, traffic only goes over one interface at any time. This differs from an aggregated interface where traffic goes over all interfaces for increased bandwidth. This difference means redundant interfaces can have more robust configurations with fewer possible points of failure. This is important in a fully-meshed HA configuration.

An interface is available to be in a redundant interface if:

- It is a physical interface and not a VLAN interface.
- It is not already part of an aggregated or redundant interface.
- It is in the same VDOM as the redundant interface.
- It does not have an IP address and is not configured for DHCP or PPPoE.
- It has no DHCP server or relay configured on it.
- It does not have any VLAN subinterfaces.
- It is not referenced in any security policy, VIP, or multicast policy.
- It is not monitored by HA.
- It is not one of the FortiGate-5000 series backplane interfaces.

When an interface is included in a redundant interface, it is not listed on the *Network* > *Interfaces* page. You cannot configure the interface individually and it is not available for inclusion in security policies, VIPs, or routing.

### Sample configuration

**To create a redundant interface using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and select *Create New* > *Interface*.
2. For *Interface Name*, enter *Redundant*.
3. For the Type, select *Redundant Interface*.

4. In the physical *Interface Members*, click to add interfaces and select ports 4, 5, and 6.
5. For *Addressing mode*, select *Manual*.
6. For the IP address for the port, enter *10.13.101.100/24*.
7. For *Administrative Access*, select *HTTPS* and *SSH*.
8. Select *OK*.

**To create a redundant interface using the CLI:**

```
config system interface
    edit "red"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.13.101.100 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https http
        set type redundant
        set member "port4" "port5" "port6"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 9
    next
end
```

# VLANs

Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) multiply the capabilities of your FortiGate unit and can also provide added network security. VLANs use ID tags to logically separate devices on a network into smaller broadcast domains. These smaller domains forward packets only to devices that are part of that VLAN domain. This reduces traffic and increases network security.

## VLANs in NAT mode

In NAT mode, the FortiGate unit functions as a layer-3 device. In this mode, the FortiGate unit controls the flow of packets between VLANs and can also remove VLAN tags from incoming VLAN packets. The FortiGate unit can also forward untagged packets to other networks such as the Internet.

In NAT mode, the FortiGate unit supports VLAN trunk links with IEEE 802.1Q-compliant switches or routers. The trunk link transports VLAN-tagged packets between physical subnets or networks. When you add VLAN subinterfaces to the FortiGate's physical interfaces, the VLANs have IDs that match the VLAN IDs of packets on the trunk link. The FortiGate unit directs packets with VLAN IDs to subinterfaces with matching IDs.

You can define VLAN subinterfaces on all FortiGate physical interfaces. However, if multiple virtual domains are configured on the FortiGate unit, you only have access to the physical interfaces on your virtual domain. The FortiGate unit can tag packets leaving on a VLAN subinterface. It can also remove VLAN tags from incoming packets and add a different VLAN tag to outgoing packets.

Normally in VLAN configurations, the FortiGate unit's internal interface is connected to a VLAN trunk, and the external interface connects to an Internet router that is not configured for VLANs. In this configuration, the FortiGate unit can apply different policies for traffic on each VLAN interface connected to the internal interface, which results in less network traffic and better security.

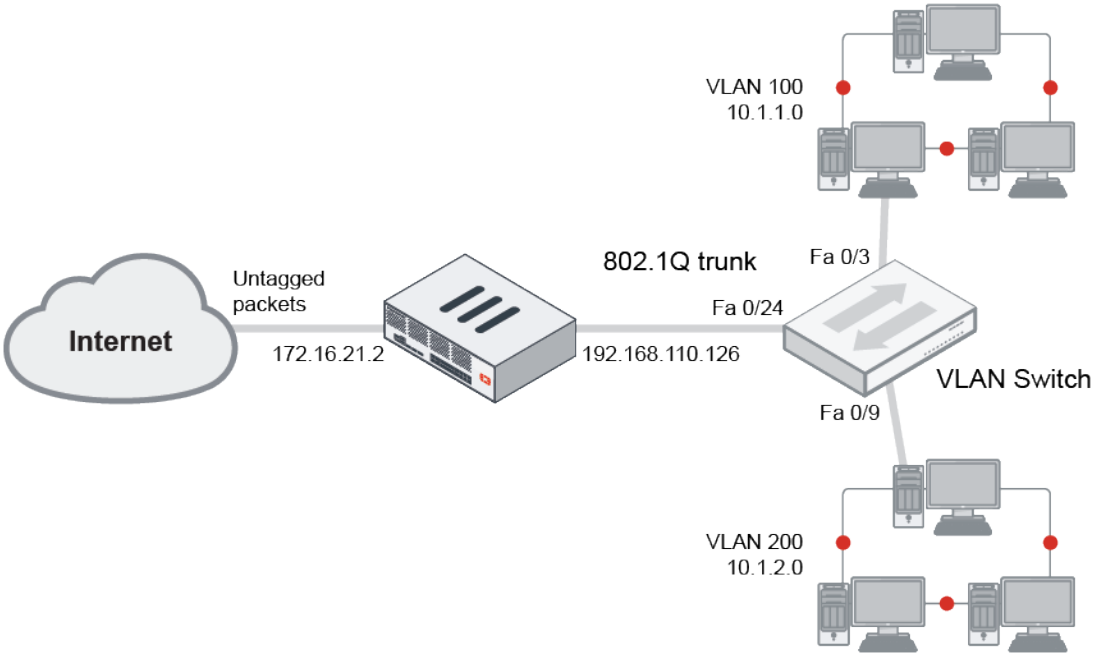
## Sample topology

In this example, two different internal VLAN networks share one interface on the FortiGate unit and share the connection to the Internet. This example shows that two networks can have separate traffic streams while sharing a single interface. This configuration can apply to two departments in a single company or to different companies.

There are two different internal network VLANs in this example. VLAN_100 is on the 10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0 subnet, and VLAN_200 is on the 10.1.2.0/255.255.255.0 subnet. These VLANs are connected to the VLAN switch.

The FortiGate internal interface connects to the VLAN switch through an 802.1Q trunk. The internal interface has an IP address of 192.168.110.126 and is configured with two VLAN subinterfaces (VLAN_100 and VLAN_200). The external interface has an IP address of 172.16.21.2 and connects to the Internet. The external interface has no VLAN subinterfaces.

When the VLAN switch receives packets from VLAN_100 and VLAN_200, it applies VLAN ID tags and forwards the packets of each VLAN both to local ports and to the FortiGate unit across the trunk link. The FortiGate unit has policies that allow traffic to flow between the VLANs, and from the VLANs to the external network.




## Sample configuration

In this example, both the FortiGate unit and the Cisco 2950 switch are installed and connected and basic configuration has been completed. On the switch, you need access to the CLI to enter commands. No VDOMs are enabled in this example.

General configuration steps include:

1. Configure the external interface.
2. Add two VLAN subinterfaces to the internal network interface.
3. Add firewall addresses and address ranges for the internal and external networks.
4. Add security policies to allow:
   - the VLAN networks to access each other.
   - the VLAN networks to access the external network.

**To configure the external interface:**

```
config system interface
    edit external
        set mode static
        set ip 172.16.21.2 255.255.255.0
end
```

**To add VLAN subinterfaces:**

```
config system interface
    edit VLAN_100
        set vdom root
        set interface internal
        set type vlan
        set vlanid 100
        set mode static
        set ip 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https ping
    next
    edit VLAN_200
        set vdom root
        set interface internal
        set type vlan
        set vlanid 200
        set mode static
        set ip 10.1.2.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess https ping
end
```

**To add the firewall addresses:**

```
config firewall address
    edit VLAN_100_Net
        set type ipmask
        set subnet 10.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit VLAN_200_Net
        set type ipmask
        set subnet 10.1.2.0 255.255.255.0
end
```

**To add security policies:**

Policies 1 and 2 do not need NAT enabled, but policies 3 and 4 do need NAT enabled.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf VLAN_100
        set srcaddr VLAN_100_Net
        set dstintf VLAN_200
        set dstaddr VLAN_200_Net
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat disable
```

```
        set status enable
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf VLAN_200
        set srcaddr VLAN_200_Net
        set dstintf VLAN_100
        set dstaddr VLAN_100_Net
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat disable
        set status enable
    next
    edit 3
        set srcintf VLAN_100
        set srcaddr VLAN_100_Net
        set dstintf external
        set dstaddr all
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    next
    edit 4
        set srcintf VLAN_200
        set srcaddr VLAN_200_Net
        set dstintf external
        set dstaddr all
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    end
```

## VLANs in transparent mode

In transparent mode, the FortiGate unit behaves like a layer-2 bridge but can still provide services such as antivirus scanning, web filtering, spam filtering, and intrusion protection to traffic. Some limitations of transparent mode is that you cannot use SSL VPN, PPTP/L2TP VPN, DHCP server, or easily perform NAT on traffic. The limits in transparent mode apply to IEEE 802.1Q VLAN trunks passing through the unit.

You can insert the FortiGate unit operating in transparent mode into the VLAN trunk without making changes to your network. In a typical configuration, the FortiGate unit internal interface accepts VLAN packets on a VLAN trunk from a VLAN switch or router connected to internal network VLANs. The FortiGate external interface forwards VLAN-tagged packets through another VLAN trunk to an external VLAN switch or router and on to external networks such as the Internet. You can configure the unit to apply different policies for traffic on each VLAN in the trunk.

To pass VLAN traffic through the FortiGate unit, you add two VLAN subinterfaces with the same VLAN ID, one to the internal interface and the other to the external interface. You then create a security policy to permit packets to flow from the internal VLAN interface to the external VLAN interface. If required, create another security policy to permit packets to flow from the external VLAN interface to the internal VLAN interface. Typically in transparent mode, you do not permit packets to move between different VLANs. Network protection features such as spam filtering, web filtering, and anti-

virus scanning, are applied through the UTM profiles specified in each security policy, enabling very detailed control over traffic.

When the FortiGate unit receives a VLAN-tagged packet on a physical interface, it directs the packet to the VLAN subinterface with the matching VLAN ID. The VLAN tag is removed from the packet and the FortiGate unit then applies security policies using the same method it uses for non-VLAN packets. If the packet exits the FortiGate unit through a VLAN subinterface, the VLAN ID for that subinterface is added to the packet and the packet is sent to the corresponding physical interface.

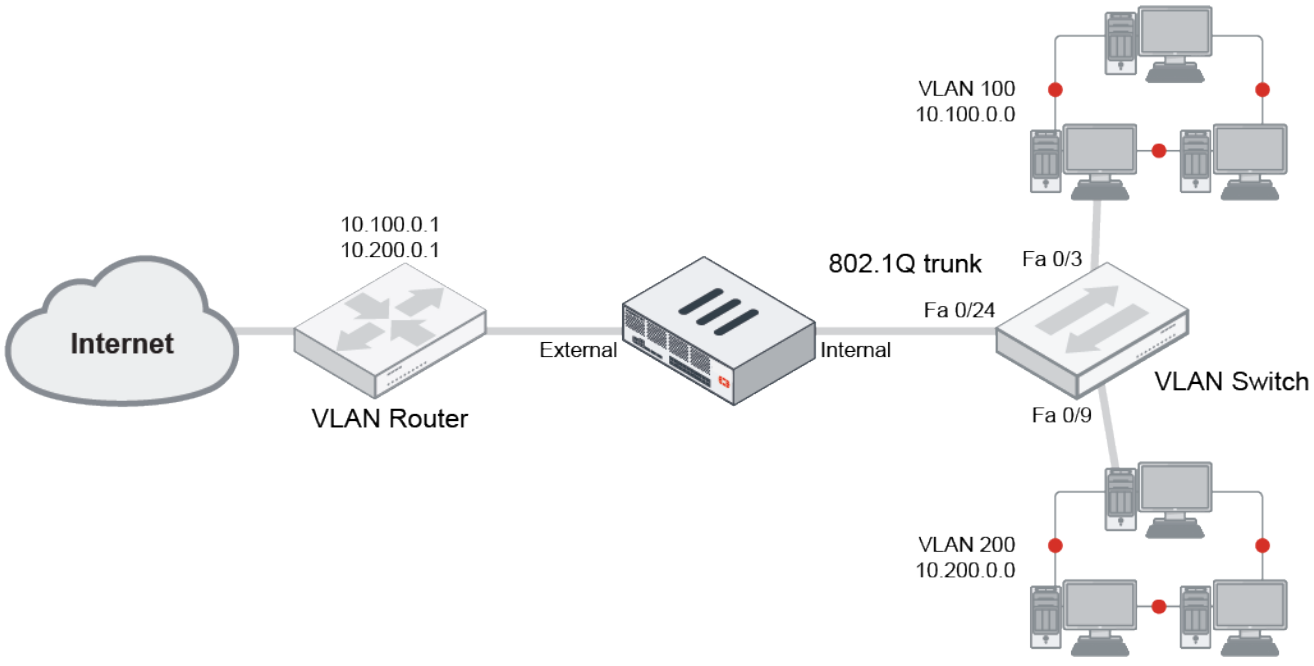
## Sample topology

In this example, the FortiGate unit is operating in transparent mode and is configured with two VLANs: one with an ID of 100 and the other with ID 200. The internal and external physical interfaces each have two VLAN subinterfaces, one for VLAN_100 and one for VLAN_200.

The IP range for the internal VLAN_100 network is 10.100.0.0/255.255.0.0, and for the internal VLAN_200 network is 10.200.0.0/255.255.0.0.

The internal networks are connected to a Cisco 2950 VLAN switch which combines traffic from the two VLANs onto one in the FortiGate unit's internal interface. The VLAN traffic leaves the FortiGate unit on the external network interface, goes on to the VLAN switch, and on to the Internet. When the FortiGate units receives a tagged packet, it directs it from the incoming VLAN subinterface to the outgoing VLAN subinterface for that VLAN.

In this example, we create a VLAN subinterface on the internal interface and another one on the external interface, both with the same VLAN ID. Then we create security policies that allow packets to travel between the VLAN_100_int interface and the VLAN_100_ext interface. Two policies are required: one for each direction of traffic. The same is required between the VLAN_200_int interface and the VLAN_200_ext interface, for a total of four security policies.




## Sample configuration

There are two main steps to configure your FortiGate unit to work with VLANs in transparent mode:

1. Add VLAN subinterfaces.
2. Add security policies.

You can also configure the protection profiles that manage antivirus scanning, web filtering, and spam filtering.

**To add VLAN subinterfaces:**

```
config system interface
    edit VLAN_100_int
        set type vlan
        set interface internal
        set vlanid 100
    next
    edit VLAN_100_ext
        set type vlan
        set interface external
        set vlanid 100
    next
    edit VLAN_200_int
        set type vlan
        set interface internal
        set vlanid 200
    next
    edit VLAN_200_ext
        set type vlan
        set interface external
        set vlanid 200
    end
```

**To add security policies:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf VLAN_100_int
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_100_ext
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf VLAN_100_ext
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_100_int
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 3
        set srcintf VLAN_200_int
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_200_ext
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
```

```
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
    next
    edit 4
        set srcintf VLAN_200_ext
        set srcaddr all
        set dstintf VLAN_200_int
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
end
```

## Enhanced MAC VLANs

The Media Access Control (MAC) Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) feature in Linux allows you to configure multiple virtual interfaces with different MAC addresses (and therefore different IP addresses) on a physical interface.

FortiGate implements an enhanced MAC VLAN consisting of a MAC VLAN with bridge functionality. Because each MAC VLAN has a unique MAC address, virtual IP addresses (VIPs) and IP pools are supported, and you can disable Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) in policies.

MAC VLAN cannot be used in a transparent mode virtual domain (VDOM). In a transparent mode VDOM, a packet leaves an interface with the MAC address of the original source instead of the interface's MAC address. FortiGate implements an enhanced version of MAC VLAN where it adds a MAC table in the MAC VLAN which learns the MAC addresses when traffic passes through.

If you configure a VLAN ID for an enhanced MAC VLAN, it won't join the switch of the underlying interface. When a packet is sent to this interface, a VLAN tag is inserted in the packet and the packet is sent to the driver of the underlying interface. When the underlying interface receives a packet, if the VLAN ID doesn't match, it won't deliver the packet to this enhanced MAC VLAN interface.



When using a VLAN ID, the ID and the underlying interface must be a unique pair, even if the belong to different VDOMs. This is because the underlying, physical interface uses the VLAN ID as the identifier to dispatch traffic among the VLAN and enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces.

If you use an interface in an enhanced MAC VLAN, do not use it for other purposes such as a management interface, HA heartbeat interface, or in Transparent VDOMs.

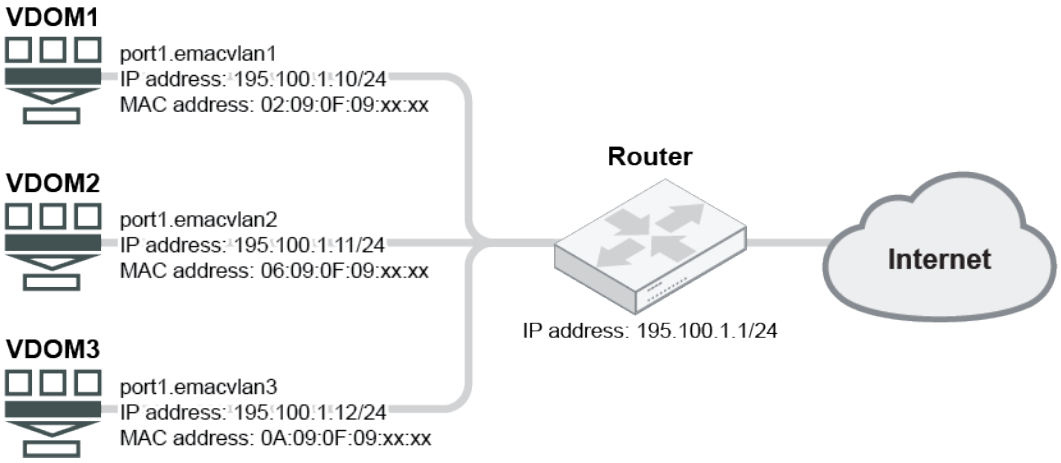
If a physical interface is used by an EMAC VLAN interface, you cannot use it in a Virtual Wire Pair.

In high availability (HA) configurations, enhanced MAC VLAN is treated as a physical interface. It's assigned a unique physical interface ID and the MAC table is synchronized with the secondary devices in the same HA cluster.

### Example 1: Enhanced MAC VLAN configuration for multiple VDOMs that use the same interface or VLAN

In this example, a FortiGate is connected, through port 1 to a router that's connected to the Internet. Three VDOMs share the same interface (port 1) which connects to the same router that's connected to the Internet. Three enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces are configured on port 1 for the three VDOMs. The enhanced MAC VLAN interfaces are in the same IP subnet segment and each have unique MAC addresses.

The underlying interface (port 1) can be a physical interface, an aggregate interface, or a VLAN interface on a physical or aggregate interface.



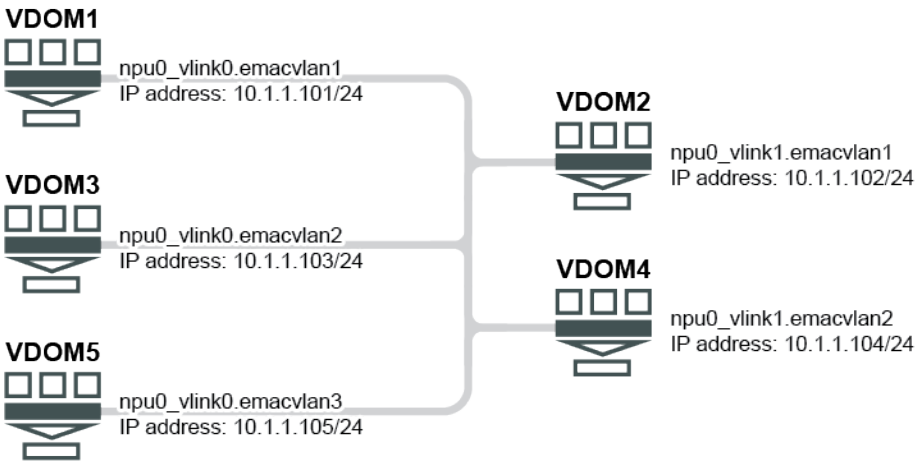

**To configure enhanced MAC VLAN for this example in the CLI:**

```
config system interface
    edit port1.emacvlan1
        set vdom VDOM1
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface port1
    next
    edit port 1.emacvlan2
        set vdom VDOM2
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface port1
    next
    edit port1.emacvlan3
        set vdom VDOM3
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface port1
    next
end
```

## Example 2: Enhanced MAC VLAN configuration for shared VDOM links among multiple VDOMs

In this example, multiple VDOMs can connect to each other using enhanced MAC VLAN on network processing unit (NPU) virtual link (Vlink) interfaces.

FortiGate VDOM links (NPU-Vlink) are designed to be peer-to-peer connections and VLAN interfaces on NPU Vlink ports use the same MAC address. Connecting more than two VDOMs using NPU Vlinks and VLAN interfaces is not recommended.




**To configure enhanced MAC VLAN for this example in the CLI:**

```
config system interface
    edit npu0_vlink0.emacvlan1
        set vdom VDOM1
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface npu0_vlink0
    next
    edit npu0_vlink0.emacvlan2
        set vdom VDOM3
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface npu0_vlink0
    next
    edit npu0_vlink1.emacvlan1
        set vdom VDOM2
        set type emac-vlan
        set interface npu0_vlink1
    next
end
```

## Example 3: Enhanced MAC VLAN configuration for unique MAC addresses for each VLAN interface on the same physical port

Some networks require a unique MAC address for each VLAN interface when the VLAN interfaces share the same physical port. In this case, the enhanced MAC VLAN interface is used the same way as normal VLAN interfaces.

To configure this, use the `set vlanid` command for the VLAN tag. The VLAN ID and interface must be a unique pair, even if they belong to different VDOMs.

**To configure enhanced MAC VLAN:**

```
config system interface
    edit <interface-name>
        set type emac-vlan
        set vlanid <VLAN-ID>
        set interface <physical-interface>
    next
end
```

## Inter-VDOM routing

In the past, virtual domains (VDOMs) were separate from each other and there was no internal communication. Any communication between VDOMs involved traffic leaving on a physical interface belonging to one VDOM and re-entering the FortiGate unit on another physical interface belonging to another VDOM to be inspected by firewall policies in both directions.

Inter-VDOM routing changes this. With VDOM links, VDOMs can communicate internally without using additional physical interfaces.

Inter-VDOM routing is the communication between VDOMs. VDOM links are virtual interfaces that connect VDOMs. A VDOM link contains a pair of interfaces, each one connected to a VDOM and forming either end of the inter-VDOM connection.

When VDOMs are configured on your FortiGate unit, configuring inter-VDOM routing and VDOM-links is very much like creating a VLAN interface. VDOM-links are managed through the web-based manager or CLI. In the web-based manager, VDOM link interfaces are managed in the network interface list.



VDOM link does not support traffic offload. If you want to use traffic offload, use NPU-VDOM-LINK.

**To configure a VDOM link in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *VDOM Link*.
3. Configure the fields including the *Name*, *Virtual Domain*, IP information, access levels, and other fields.



By default, VDOM links are created as point-to-point (ppp) links. If required, the link type can be changed in the CLI.

For example, when running OSPF in IPv6, a link-local address is required in order to communicate with OSPF neighbors. For a VDOM link to obtain a link-local address its type must be set to `ethernet`.

**To configure a VDOM link in the CLI:**

```
config system vdom-link
    edit "<vdom-link-name>"
        set type {ppp | ethernet}    <--Optional
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "<vdom-link-name0>"
        set vdom "<VDOM Name>"
        set type vdom-link
    next
    edit "<vdom-link-name1>"
        set vdom "<VDOM Name>"
        set type vdom-link
    next
end
```

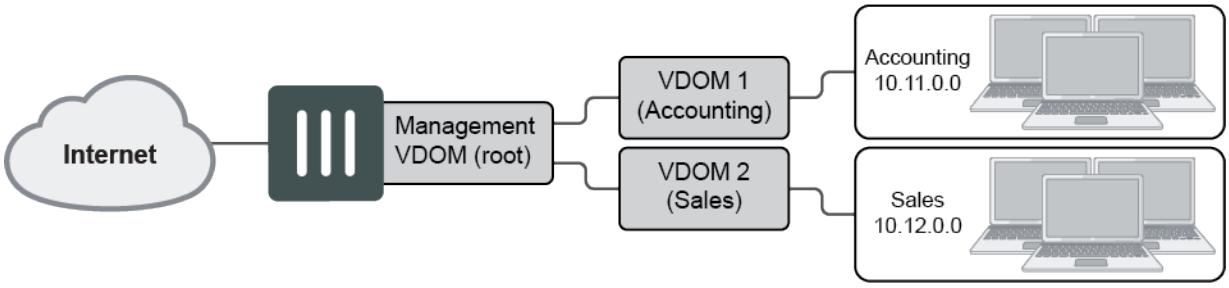
**To delete a VDOM link in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select a *VDOM Link* and click *Delete*.

**To delete a VDOM link in the CLI:**

```
config system vdom-link
    delete <VDOM-LINK-Name>
end
```

## Sample configuration: Inter-VDOM routing




This example shows how to configure a FortiGate unit to use inter-VDOM routing.

Two departments of a company, Accounting and Sales, are connected to one FortiGate. The company uses a single ISP to connect to the Internet.

This example includes the following general steps. We recommend following the steps in the order below.

### Create the VDOMs

**To enable VDOMs and create the Sales and Accounting VDOMs:**

```
config system global
    set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
config system vdom
    edit Accounting
    next
    edit Sales
    next
end
```

### Configure the physical interfaces

Next, configure the physical interfaces. This example uses three interfaces on the FortiGate unit: port2 (internal), port3 (DMZ), and port1 (external). Port2 and port3 interfaces each have a department's network connected. Port1 is for all traffic to and from the Internet and uses DHCP to configure its IP address, which is common with many ISPs.

**To configure the interfaces:**

```
config global
    config system interface
        edit port2
            set alias AccountingLocal
            set vdom Accounting
            set mode static
            set ip 172.100.1.1 255.255.0.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "The accounting dept internal interface"
        next
        edit port3
            set alias SalesLocal
            set vdom Sales
            set mode static
            set ip 192.168.1.1 255.255.0.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "The sales dept. internal interface"
        next
        edit port1
            set alias ManagementExternal
            set vdom root
            set mode DHCP
            set distance 5
            set gwdetect enable
            set dns-server-override enable
            set allowaccess https ssh snmp
            set description "The systemwide management interface."
        next
    end
end
```

## Configure the VDOM links

To complete the connection between each VDOM and the management VDOM, add the two VDOM links. One pair is the Accounting – management link and the other is the Sales – management link.

When configuring inter-VDOM links, you do not have to assign IP addresses to the links unless you are using advanced features such as dynamic routing that require them. Not assigning IP addresses results in faster configuration and more available IP addresses on your networks.

**To configure the Accounting and management VDOM link:**

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        edit AccountVlnk
        next
    end
    config system interface
        edit AccountVlnk0
            set vdom Accounting
            set ip 11.11.11.2 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Accounting side of the VDOM link"
        next
```

```
        edit AccountVlnk1
            set vdom root
            set ip 11.11.11.1 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Management side of the VDOM link"
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure the Sales and management VDOM link:**

```
config global
    config system vdom-link
        edit SalesVlnk
        next
    end
    config system interface
        edit SalesVlnk0
            set vdom Sales
            set ip 12.12.12.2 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Sales side of the VDOM link"
        next
        edit SalesVlnk1
            set vdom root
            set ip 12.12.12.1 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess https ping ssh
            set description "Management side of the VDOM link"
        next
    end
end
```

## Configure the firewall and security profile

With the VDOMs, physical interfaces, and VDOM links configured, the firewall must now be configured to allow the proper traffic. Firewalls are configured per-VDOM, and firewall objects and routes must be created for each VDOM separately.

**To configure the firewall policies from AccountingLocal to Internet:**

```
config vdom
    edit Accounting
        config firewall policy
            edit 1
                set name "Accounting-Local-to-Management"
                set srcintf port2
                set dstintf AccountVlnk
                set srcaddr all
                set dstaddr all
                set action accept
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set nat enable
            next
        end
```

```
    next
    edit root
        config firewall policy
            edit 2
                set name "Accounting-VDOM-to-Internet"
                set srcintf AccountVlnk
                set dstintf port1
                set srcaddr all
                set dstaddr all
                set action accept
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set nat enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the firewall policies from SalesLocal to the Internet:**

```
config vdom
    edit root
        config firewall policy
            edit 6
                set name "Sales-local-to-Management"
                set srcintf port2
                set srcaddr all
                set dstintf SalesVlnk
                set dstaddr all
                set schedule always
                set service ALL
                set action accept
                set logtraffic enable
            next
        end
    next
    edit Sales
        config firewall policy
            edit 7
                set name "Sales-VDOM-to-Internet"
                set srcintf SalesVlnk
                set srcaddr SalesManagement
                set dstintf external
                set dstaddr all
                set schedule always
                set service OfficeServices
                set action accept
                set logtraffic enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## Test the configuration

When the inter-VDOM routing has been configured, test the configuration to confirm proper operation.

Testing connectivity ensures that physical networking connections, FortiGate unit interface configurations, and firewall policies are properly configured.

The easiest way to test connectivity is to use the `ping` and `traceroute` command to confirm the connectivity of different routes on the network.

Test both from AccountingLocal to Internet and from SalesLocal to Internet.

## Software switch

A software switch, or soft switch, is a virtual switch that is implemented at the software or firmware level and not at the hardware level. A software switch can be used to simplify communication between devices connected to different FortiGate interfaces. For example, using a software switch, you can place the FortiGate interface connected to an internal network on the same subnet as your wireless interfaces. Then devices on the internal network can communicate with devices on the wireless network without any additional configuration on the FortiGate unit, such as additional security policies.

A software switch can also be useful if you require more hardware ports for the switch on a FortiGate unit. For example, if your FortiGate unit has a 4-port switch, WAN1, WAN2, and DMZ interfaces, and you need one more port, you can create a soft switch that can include the four-port switch and the DMZ interface, all on the same subnet. These types of applications also apply to wireless interfaces, virtual wireless interfaces, and physical interfaces such as those in FortiWiFi and FortiAP units.

Similar to a hardware switch, a software switch functions like a single interface. A soft switch has one IP address and all the interfaces in the software switch are on the same subnet. Traffic between devices connected to each interface are not regulated by security policies, and traffic passing in and out of the switch are controlled by the same policy.

When setting up a software switch, consider the following:

- Ensure you have a back up of the configuration.
- Ensure you have at least one port or connection such as the console port to connect to the FortiGate unit. If you accidentally combine too many ports, you need a way to undo errors.
- The ports that you include must not have any link or relation to any other aspect of the FortiGate unit, such as DHCP servers, security policies, and so on.
- For increased security, you can create a captive portal for the switch to allow only specific user groups access to the resources connected to the switch.

**To create a software switch in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Interface*.
3. Set *Type* to *Software Switch*.
4. Configure the *Interface Name*, *Virtual Domain*, *Interface Members*, and other fields.

**To create a software switch in the CLI:**

```
config system switch-interface
    edit <switch-name>
        set type switch
        set member <interface_list>
    next
end
```

```
config system interface
    edit <switch_name>
        set ip <ip_address>
        set allowaccess https ssh ping
    next
end
```

### Sample configuration: software switch

For this example, the wireless interface (WiFi) needs to be on the same subnet as the DMZ1 interface to facilitate wireless syncing from an iPhone and a local computer. Because synching between two subnets is problematic, putting both interfaces on the same subnet the synching will work. The software switch will accomplish this.

1. Clear the interfaces and back up the configuration.
   a. Ensure the interfaces are not used for other security policy or for other use on the FortiGate unit.
   b. Check the WiFi and DMZ1 ports to ensure DHCP is not enabled on the interface and that there are no other dependencies on these interfaces.
   c. Save the current configuration so that if something doesn't work, recovery can be quick.
2. Merge the interfaces.
   Merge the WiFi port and DMZ1 port to create a software switch named `synchro` with an IP address of 10.10.21.12.
   Use the following CLI commands to create the switch, add the IP, and then set the administrative access for HTTPS, SSH and Ping.

```
config system switch-interface
    edit synchro
        set type switch
        set member dmz1 wifi
    next
end
config system interface
    edit synchro
        set ip 10.10.21.12
        set allowaccess https ssh ping
    next
end
```

   When the soft switch is set up, you now add security policies, DHCP servers, and any other configuration you normally do to configure interfaces on the FortiGate unit.

## Zone

Zones are a group of one or more physical or virtual FortiGate interfaces that you can apply security policies to control inbound and outbound traffic. Grouping interfaces and VLAN subinterfaces into zones simplifies the creation of security policies where a number of network segments can use the same policy settings and protection profiles.

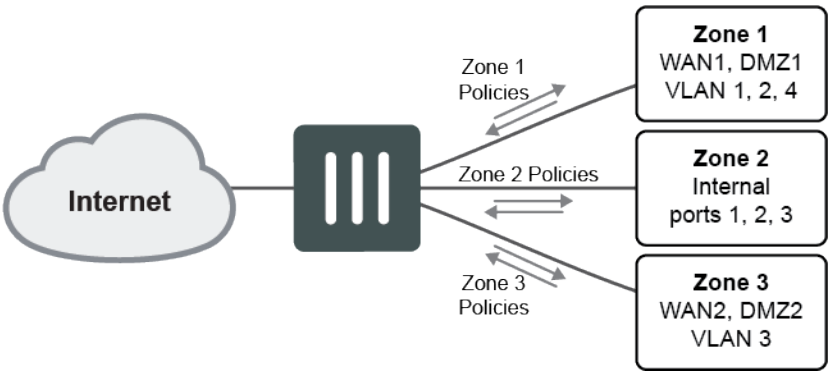
When you add a zone, you select the names of the interfaces and VLAN subinterfaces to add to the zone. Each interface still has its own address. Routing is still done between interfaces, that is, routing is not affected by zones. You can use security policies to control the flow of intra-zone traffic.

For example, in the sample configuration below, the network includes three separate groups of users representing different entities on the company network. While each group has its own set of ports and VLANs in each area, they can all use the same security policy and protection profiles to access the Internet. Rather than the administrator making nine

separate security policies, he can make administration simpler by adding the required interfaces to a zone and creating three policies.

## Sample configuration

You can configure policies for connections to and from a zone but not between interfaces in a zone. For this example, you can create a security policy to go between zone 1 and zone 3, but not between WAN2 and WAN1, or WAN1 and DMZ1.




**To create a zone in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.

   If VDOMs are enabled, go to the VDOM to create a zone.

2. Click *Create New* > *Zone*.
3. Configure the *Name* and add the *Interface Members*.

**To configure a zone to include the internal interface and a VLAN using the CLI:**

```
config system zone
    edit Zone_1
        set interface internal VLAN_1
        set intrazone deny/allow
    next
end
```

**Using zone in a firewall policy**

**To configure a firewall policy to allow any interface to access the Internet using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set name "2"
        set srcintf "Zone_1"
        set dstintf "port15"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**Intra-zone traffic**

In the zone configuration you can `set intrazone deny` to prohibit the different interfaces in the same zone to talk to each other.

For example, if you have ten interfaces in your zone and the `intrazone` setting is `deny`. You now want to allow traffic between a very small number of networks on different interfaces that are part of the zone but you do not want to disable the intra-zone blocking.

In this example, the zone VLANs are defined as: `192.168.1.0/24`, `192.168.2.0/24`, ... `192.168.10.0/24`.

This policy allows traffic from 192.168.1.x to 192.168.2.x even though they are in the same zone and intra-zone blocking is enabled. The intra-zone blocking acts as a default deny rule and you have to specifically override it by creating a policy within the zone.

**To enable intra-zone traffic, create the following policy:**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Source Interface** | Zone-name, e.g., `Vlans` |
| **Source Address** | 192.168.1.0/24 |
| **Destination** | Zone-name (same as Source Interface, i.e., `Vlans`) |
| **Destination Address** | 192.168.2.0/24 |

## Virtual Wire Pair

A virtual wire pair consists of two interfaces that do not have IP addressing and are treated like a transparent mode VDOM. All traffic received by one interface in the virtual wire pair can only be forwarded to the other interface, provided a virtual wire pair firewall policy allows this traffic. Traffic from other interfaces cannot be routed to the interfaces in a virtual wire pair. Redundant and 802.3ad aggregate (LACP) interfaces can be included in a virtual wire pair.

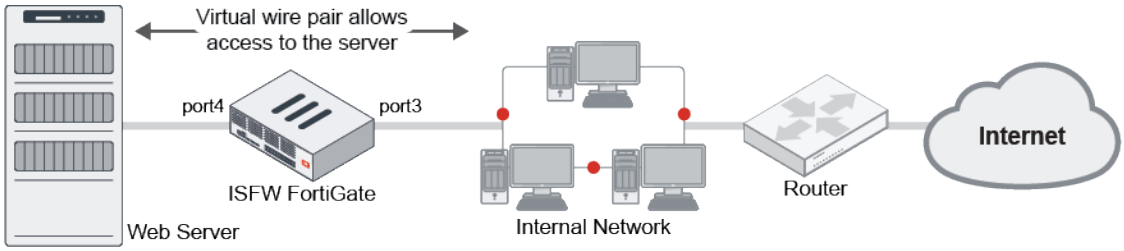
Virtual wire pairs are useful for a typical topology where MAC addresses do not behave normally. For example, port pairing can be used in a Direct Server Return (DSR) topology where the response MAC address pair may not match the request's MAC address pair.

### Example

In this example, a virtual wire pair (port3 and port4) makes it easier to protect a web server that is behind a FortiGate operating as an Internal Segmentation Firewall (ISFW). Users on the internal network access the web server through the ISFW over the virtual wire pair.



Interfaces used in a virtual wire pair cannot be used to access the ISFW FortiGate. Before creating a virtual wire pair, make sure you have a different port configured to allow admin access using your preferred protocol.




**To add a virtual wire pair using the CLI:**

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "VWP-name"
        set member "port3" "port4"
        set wildcard-vlan disable
    next
end
```

**To add a virtual wire pair using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Virtual Wire Pair*.
3. Select the *Interface Members* to add to the virtual wire pair.
   These interfaces cannot be part of a switch, such as the default LAN/internal interface.
4. If required, enable *Wildcard VLAN* and set the *VLAN Filter*..
5. Click *OK*.

**To create a virtual wire pair policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "VWP-Policy"
        set srcintf "port3" "port4"
        set dstintf "port3" "port4"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

**To create a virtual wire pair policy using the GUI:**

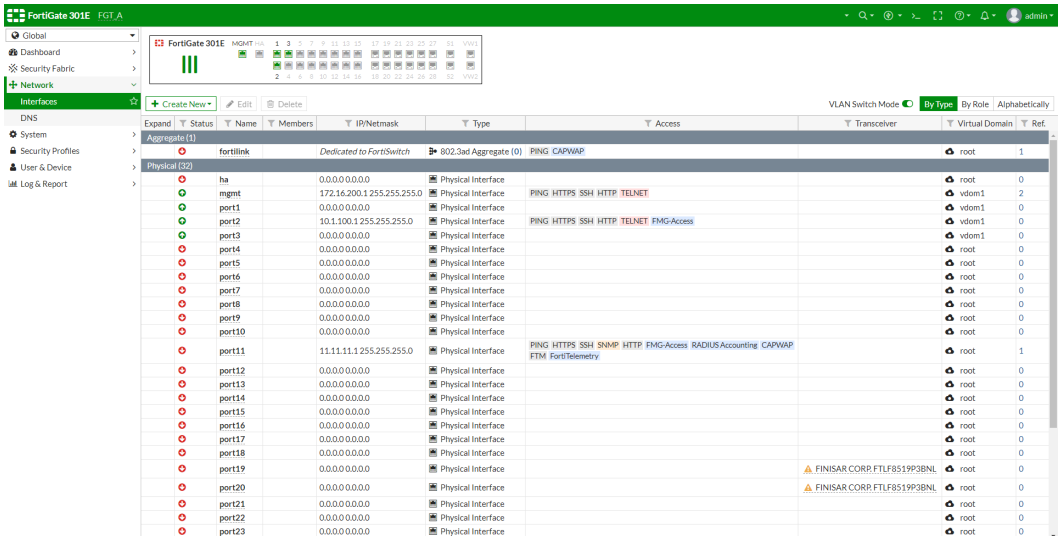
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *IPv4 Virtual Wire Pair Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Select the direction that traffic is allowed to flow.
4. Configure the other fields.
5. Click *OK*.

# Virtual switch support for FortiGate 300E series

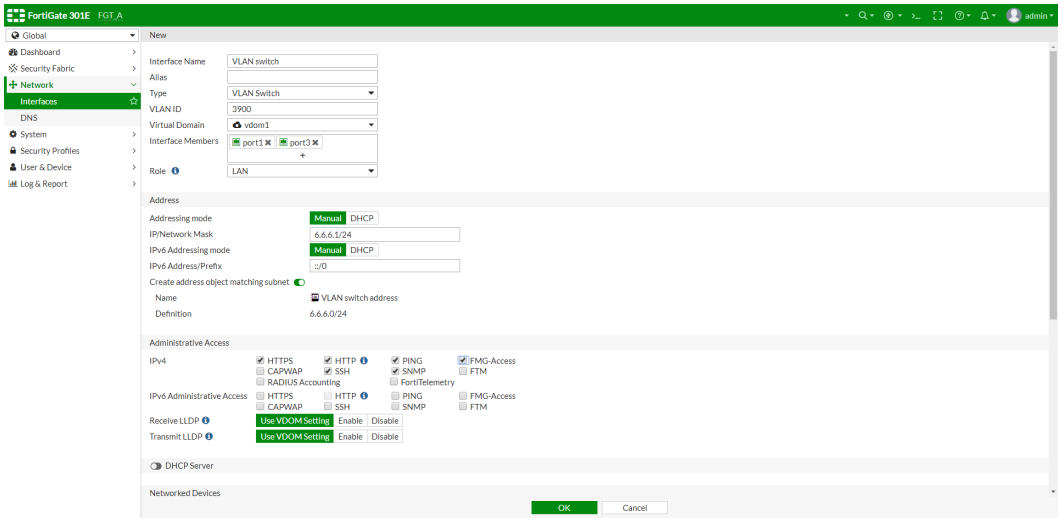
On the FortiGate 300E series, switch ports can be assigned to different VLANs.

### To create a VLAN switch in the GUI:

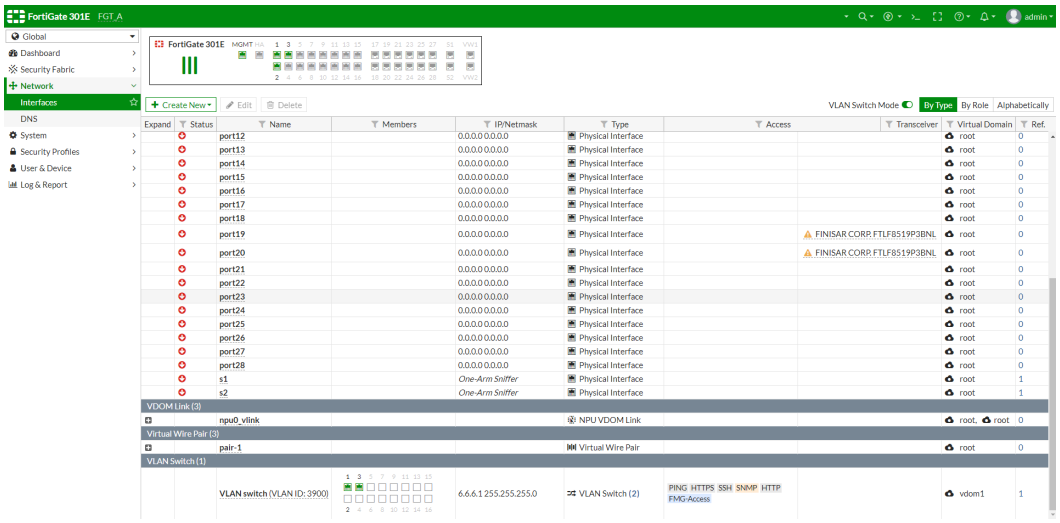
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and enable *VLAN Switch Mode*.




2. Click *Create New* > *Interface*.
3. Enter an interface name and configure the following:
   a. For *Type*, select *VLAN Switch*.
   b. (Optional) Enter a *VLAN ID* (range is 3900–3999).
   c. If applicable, select a *Virtual Domain*.
   d. Add the *Interface Members*.
   e. Configure the *Address* and *Administrative Access* settings as needed.
4. Click *OK*.




The new VLAN switch is visible in the interface table:




### To create a VLAN switch in the CLI:

1. Enable VLAN switch mode:

```
config system global
    set virtual-switch-vlan enable
end
```

2. Create the VLAN switch. Optionally, you can assign an ID to the VLAN:
The default ID is `0`. You can use the default ID, or you can assign an ID to the VLAN (3900–3999).

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "VLAN switch"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        set vlan 3900
        config port
            edit "port1"
            next
            edit "port3"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure the VLAN switch interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "VLAN switch"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 6.6.6.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http fgfm
        set type hard-switch
        set snmp-index 15
    next
end
```

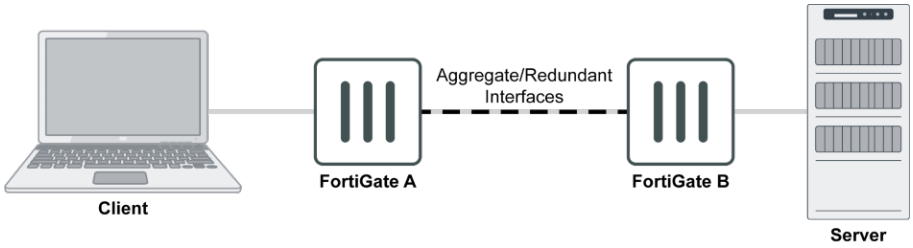
4. (Optional) Create a trunk interface:

```
config system interface
    edit port2
```

```
        set trunk enable
    next
end
```

## Failure detection for aggregate and redundant interfaces

When an aggregate or redundant interface goes down, the corresponding fail-alert interface changes to down. When an aggregate or redundant interface comes up, the corresponding fail-alert interface changes to up.




Fail-detect for aggregate and redundant interfaces can be configured using the CLI.

**To configure an aggregate interface so that port3 goes down with it:**

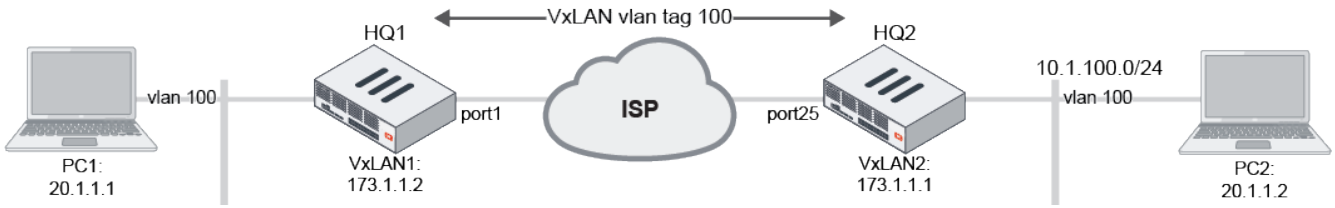
```
config system interface
   edit "agg1"
      set vdom "root"
      set fail-detect enable
      set fail-alert-method link-down
      set fail-alert-interfaces "port3"
      set type aggregate
      set member "port1" "port2"
   next
end
```

**To configure a redundant interface so that port4 goes down with it:**

```
config system interface
   edit "red1"
      set vdom "root"
      set fail-detect enable
      set fail-alert-method link-down
      set fail-alert-interfaces "port4"
      set type redundant
      set member "port1" "port2"
   next
end
```

## VLAN inside VXLAN

VLANs can be assigned to VXLAN interfaces. In a data center network where VXLAN is used to create an L2 overlay network and for multitenant environments, a customer VLAN tag can be assigned to VXLAN interface. This allows the VLAN tag from VLAN traffic to be encapsulated within the VXLAN packet.




**To configure VLAN inside VXLAN on HQ1:**

1. Configure VXLAN:

```
config system vxlan
   edit "vxlan1"
      set interface port1
      set vni 1000
      set remote-ip 173.1.1.1

   next
end
```

2. Configure system interface:

```
config system interface
   edit vlan100
     set vdom root
     set vlanid 100
     set interface dmz
   next
   edit vxlan100
     set type vlan
     set vlanid 100
     set vdom root
     set interface vxlan1
   next
end
```

3. Configure software-switch:

```
config system switch-interface
   edit sw1
      set vdom root
      set member vlan100 vxlan100
      set intra-switch-policy implicit
   next
end
```

The default `intra-switch-policy implicit` behavior allows traffic between member interfaces within the switch. Therefore, it is not necessary to create firewall policies to allow this traffic.

Instead of creating a software-switch, it is possible to use a virtual-wire-pair as well. See Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN on page 386.

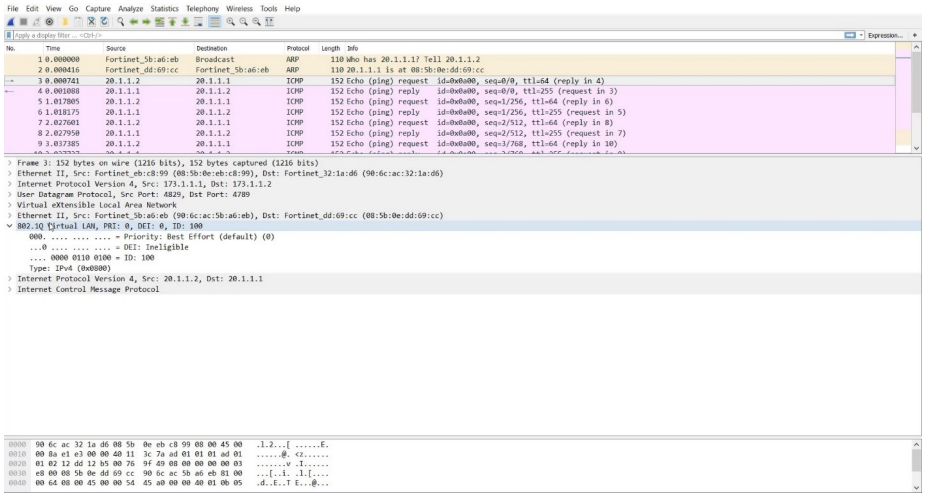
**To configure VLAN inside VXLAN on HQ2:**

1. Configure VXLAN:
```
config system vxlan
   edit "vxlan2"
      set interface port25
      set vni 1000
      set remote-ip 173.1.1.2
   next
end
```
2. Configure system interface:
```
config system interface
      edit vlan100
      set vdom root
      set vlanid 100
      set interface port20
   next
   edit vxlan100
      set type vlan
      set vlanid 100
      set vdom root
      set interface vxlan2
   next
end
```
3. Configure software-switch:
```
config system switch-interface
   edit sw1
      set vdom root
      set member vlan100 vxlan100
   next
end
```

**To verify the configuration:**

Ping PC1 from PC2.

The following is captured on HQ2:

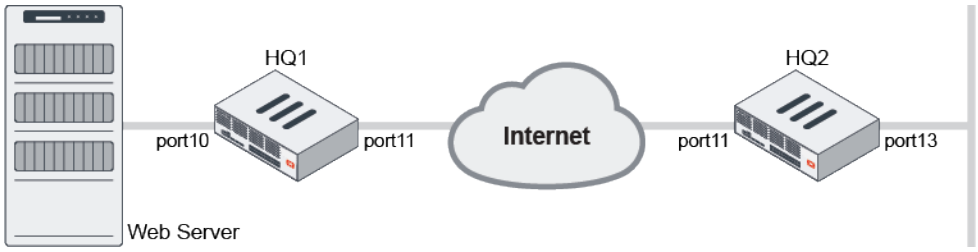



This captures the VXLAN traffic between 172.1.1.1 and 172.1.1.2 with the VLAN 100 tag inside.

# Virtual Wire Pair with VXLAN

Virtual wire pairs can be used with VXLAN interfaces.

In this examples, VXLAN interfaces are added between FortiGate HQ1 and FortiGate HQ2, a virtual wire pair is added in HQ1, and firewall policies are created on both HQ1 and HQ2.




**To create VXLAN interface on HQ1:**

```
config system interface
    edit "port11"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.2.2.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp telnet
    next
end
config system vxlan
    edit "vxlan1"
        set interface "port11"
        set vni 1000
        set remote-ip "10.2.2.2"
    next
end
```

**To create VXLAN interface on HQ2:**

```
config system interface
    edit "port11"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.2.2.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http
    next
end
config system vxlan
    edit "vxlan1"
        set interface "port11"
        set vni 1000
        set remote-ip "10.2.2.1"
    next
end
config system interface
    edit "vxlan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp
```

```
    next
end
```

**To create a virtual wire pair on HQ1:**

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "vwp1"
        set member "port10" "vxlan1"
    next
end
```

**To create a firewall policy on HQ1:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "vxlan-policy"
        set srcintf "port10" "vxlan1"
        set dstintf "port10" "vxlan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set webfilter-profile "default"
        set dnsfilter-profile "default"
        set ips-sensor "default"
        set application-list "default"
        set fsso disable
    next
end
```

**To create a firewall policy on HQ2:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "vxlan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

# Assign a subnet with the FortiIPAM service

The FortiIPAM (IP Address Management) service automatically assigns subnets to FortiGate to prevent duplicate IP addresses from overlapping within the same Security Fabric.

After the FortiIPAM registration is synced to FortiGuard from FortiCare, FortiGate can use FortiIPAM to automatically assign IP addresses based on the configured network size for the FortiGate interface.

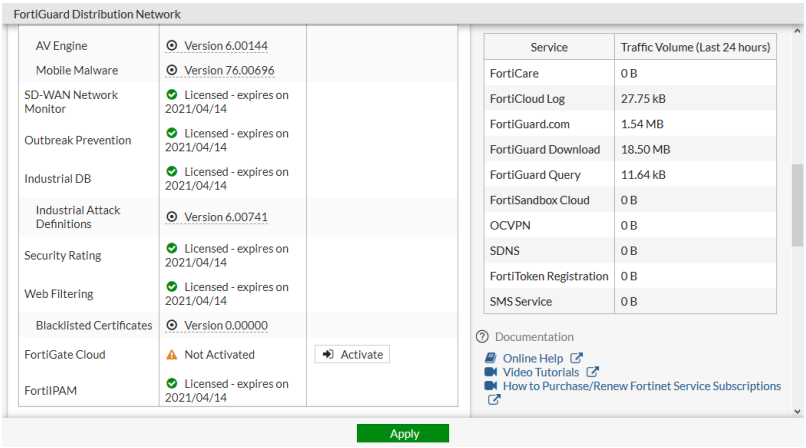
**Requirements:**

Register the FortiIPAM service for FortiGate in FortiCare.

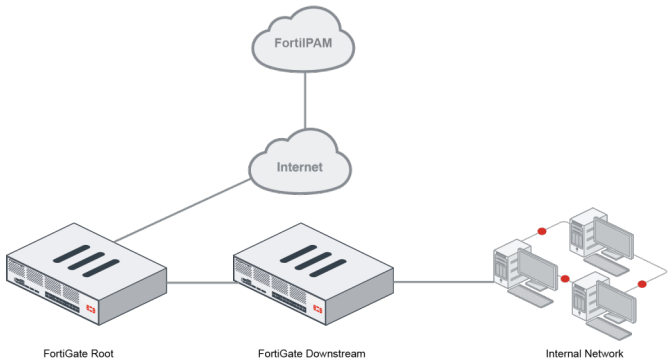
FortiIPAM is a paid service.

**To verify the FortiIPAM service registration in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* to verify the FortiIPAM service is registered. If the service is registered, the *FortiIPAM* area at the bottom of the page displays a check mark as well as the license expiry date.



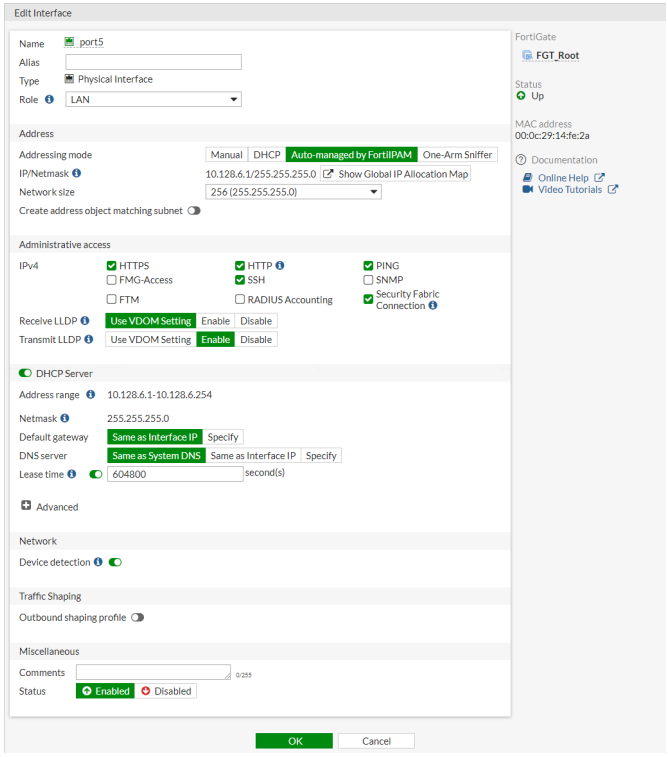

## Example



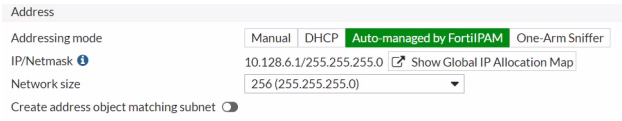
In this example, you will configure port5 on *FortiGate Root* to be managed by FortiIPAM and specify the network size. Next you will enable DHCP on the interface to supply IP addresses to this network.

Once FortiIPAM is designated as the IP source, you will configure the port5 interface on *FortiGate Downstream* to obtain an IP from DHCP to connect it to *FortiGate Root* and add it to the Security Fabric. Lastly, you will use FortiIPAM to assign IP addresses to the *Internal Network*.

1. On *FortiGate Root*, edit port5 and configure the interface to be managed by FortiIPAM.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*, and double-click port5 to edit it. The *Edit Interface* window opens.
   b. From the *Role* dropdown, select *LAN*.
   c. In the *Addressing mode* area, select *Auto-managed by FortiIPAM*. An information icon appears next to *IP/Netmask* and below the *Network Size* dropdown indicating FortiIPAM will allocate an IP subnet with the selected size.
   d. From the *Network Size* dropdown, select the size of the network segment for this interface.
   e. Enable *DHCP Server* to allow the interface to supply IP addresses to this network.
   You do not need to configure *Address range* and *Netmask*. These will be configured by FortiIPAM.
   f. Click *OK*. Port5 gets an IP address from FortiIPAM corresponding to the network size. It will also start assigning addresses through DHCP. Refresh this page if an IP has not been assigned.

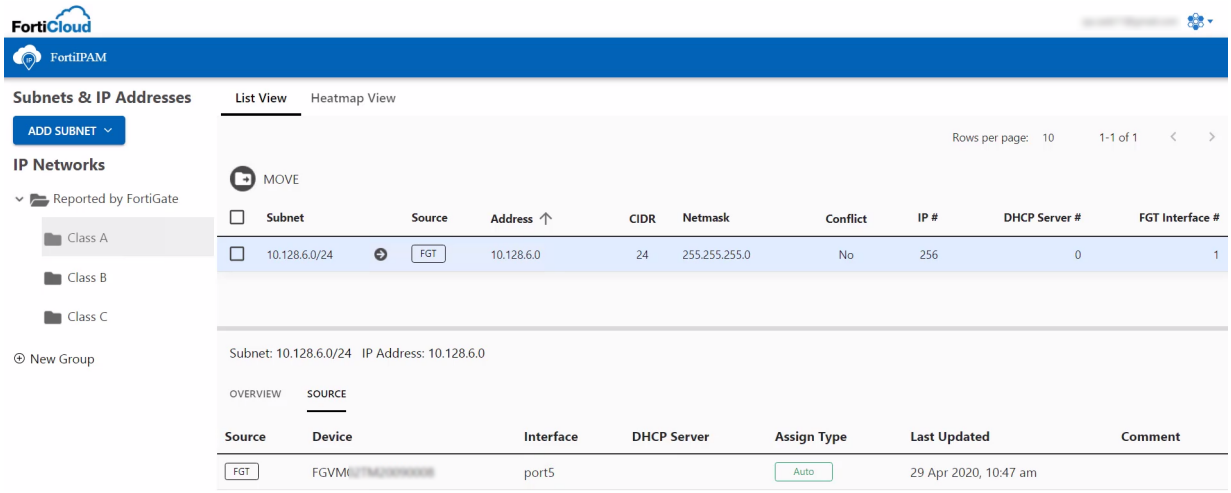



2. View the IP allocation map.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*, and double-click port5 to view it.
   b. In the *IP/Netmask* area, click *Show Global IP Allocation Map*. You are redirected to FortiCloud.

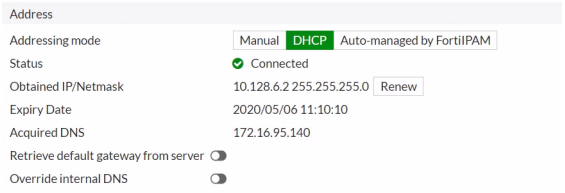



   c. Click *Login*. The FortiIPAM portal opens. The *List View* displays the assigned IP entries.
   d. Double-click an IP entry and click the *Source* tab. The IP source appears in the *Device* column. The *Interface*

column displays the port. *Assign Type* displays *Auto*. *Last Updated* displays the assign time.

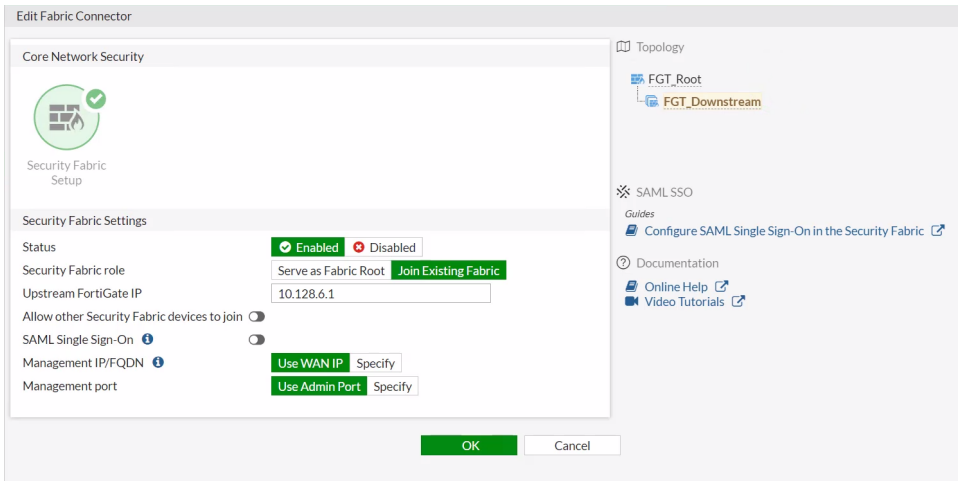



3. On *FortiGate Root* go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. The *DHCP Server* settings are configured automatically.
4. On *FortiGate Downstream*, configure port5 to obtain an IP from DHCP.
   a. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*, and verify FortiIPAM is licensed.
   b. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*, and double click port5 to edit it.
   c. In the *Addressing mode* area, select *DHCP* and click *OK*. The interface will get its IP address from the DHCP server configured on *FortiGate Root*.
   d. In *Network* > *Interfaces*, double-click port5. The following fields appear in the *Address* area:
      - *Status*.
      - *Obtained IP/Netmask*
      - *Expiry Date*
      - *Acquired DNS*

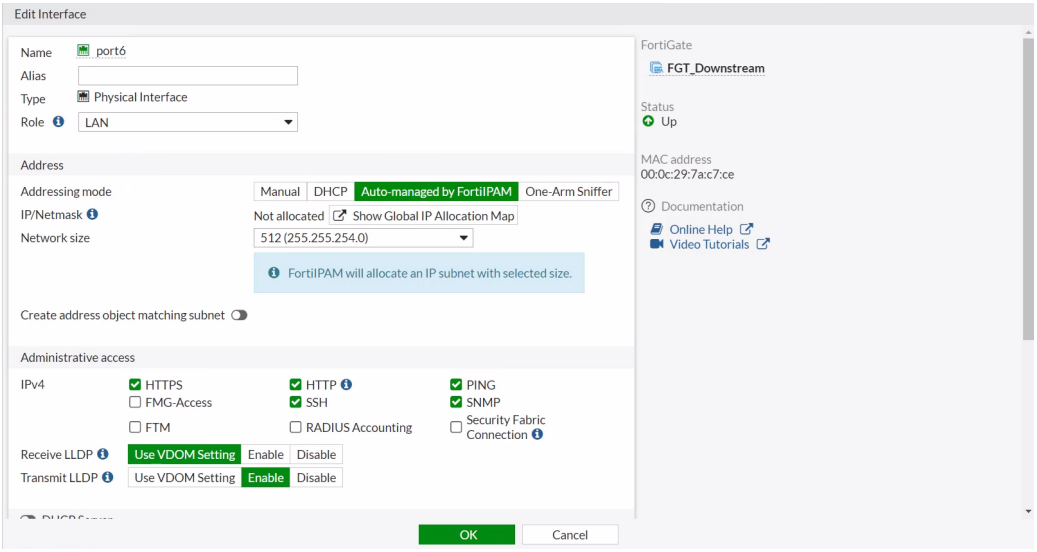



5. Add *FortiGate Downstream* to the Security Fabric.
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. In the *Security Fabric Settings* area, set *Status* to *Enabled*.
   b. In the *Upstream FortiGate IP* field, enter the IP address for *FortiGate Root*, and click *OK*. The *Topology* pane

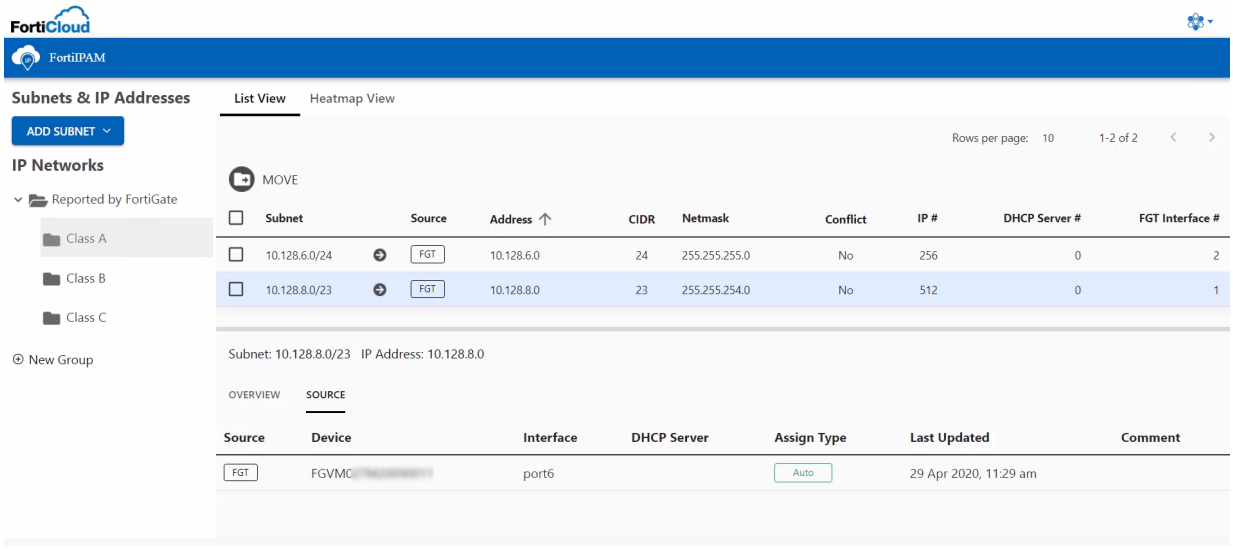
shows the connection is established.




6. On *FortiGate Downstream*, configure port6 to use FortiIPAM.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. Double-click port6 to edit it.
   b. From the *Role* dropdown, select *LAN*.
   c. In the *Address mode* area, select *Auto-managed by FortiIPAM*.
   d. From the *Network size* dropdown, select a different network size. In this example, the network size was increased to 512.




   e. Wait a while and then double-click port6. The *IP/Netmask* is auto-populated.
   f. Enable *DHCP Server* to allow the interface to supply IP addresses to this network.
7. Go back to the FortiIPAM portal in FortiCloud.
   a. The *List View* tab shows the IP addresses for the downstream FortiGates.
   b. Select a subnet, and click the *Source* tab. The source details show that the IP is different from the root FortiGate, preventing conflicts.




### To view the FortiIPAM service details in the CLI:

Use the `diagnose` command to view the FortiIPAM service information in FortiGate.

```
Root-E (global) # diagnose test update info
...
System contracts:
...
IPMC,Thu Apr 15 17:00:00 2021
```

---

You can also use the REST API to get the FortiIPAM service information.

```
https://172.16.116.xxx/api/v2/monitor/license/status
..."fortiipam_cloud":{
   "type":"live_cloud_service",
   "status":"licensed",
   "expires":1618531200,
   "entitlement":"IPMC"
}
```

---

### To configure FortiIPAM in the CLI:

1. On *FortiGate Root* , edit port5 and configure the interface to be managed by FortiIPAM. Use `managed-subnetwork-size` to specify the network size of the network segment for this interface.
   In this example, the network size 256.

```
config system interface
   edit "port5"
      set ip-managed-by-fortiipam enable
      set managed-subnetwork-size 256
   next
end
```

2. On the same interface, enable DHCP server on this interface to supply IP addresses to this network.



No configuration is required unless you need to change the defaults.

```
config system dhcp server
   edit 1
      set interface "port5"
      set dhcp-settings-from-fortiipam enable
   next
end
```

3. Once FortiIPAM completes the address configuration, the configurations will appear as follows:

```
show system interface
   ...
   edit "port5"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 10.128.6.1 255.255.255.0
      set allowaccess ping https ssh http fabric
      set type physical
      set device-identification enable
      set lldp-transmission enable
      set role lan
      set snmp-index 5
      set ip-managed-by-fortiipam enable
   next
   ...
end
show system dhcp server
   edit 1
      set dns-service default
      set default-gateway 10.128.6.1
      set netmask 255.255.255.0
      set interface "port5"
      config ip-range
         edit 1
            set start-ip 10.128.6.1
            set end-ip 10.128.6.254
         next
      end
      set dhcp-settings-from-fortiipam enable
      config exclude-range
         edit 1
            set start-ip 10.128.6.1
            set end-ip 10.128.6.1
         next
      end
   next
end
```

4. On *FortiGate Downstream*, configure port5 to obtain an IP from DHCP.

```
config system interface
   edit "port5"
      set mode dhcp
   next
end
```

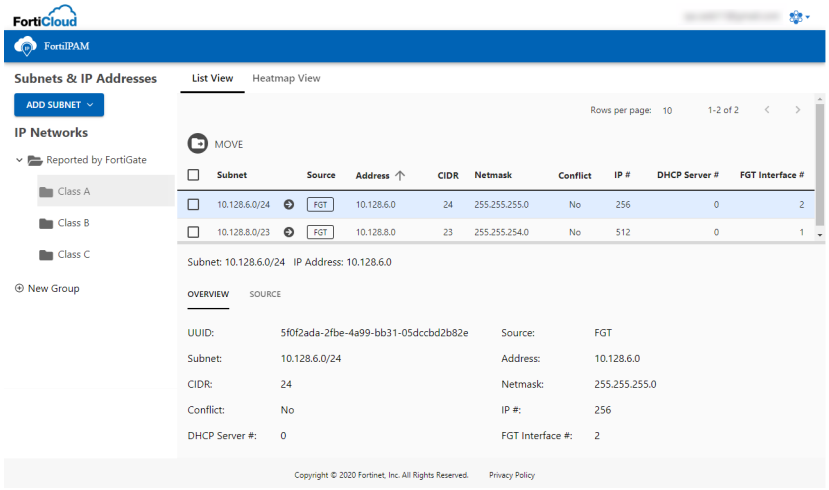
5. After the IP is assigned and the device is connected to *FortiGate Root* , add *FortiGate Downstream* to the Security Fabric.
6. Once *FortiGate Downstream* is connected to the Security Fabric, you can configure the port6 interface to use the FortiIPAM service as well.
7. On *FortiGate Downstream* , set the interface to be managed by the FortiIPAM service, and increase the `managed-subnetwork-size` value.
   In this example, the network size was increased to 512.

```
config system interface
   edit "port5"
      set ip-managed-by-fortiipam enable
      set managed-subnetwork-size 512
   next
end
```

8. Configure the DHCP server on this port to assign IP addresses to this subnet.

```
config system dhcp server
   edit 1
      set interface "port6"
      set dhcp-settings-from-fortiipam enable
   next
end
```

9. Go to the FortiIPAM Portal to view the IP addresses.




# DNS

Domain name system (DNS) is used by devices to locate websites by mapping a domain name to a website's IP address.

A FortiGate can serve different roles based on user requirements:

- A FortiGate can control what DNS server a network uses.
- A FortiGate can function as a DNS server.

FortiGuard Dynamic DNS (DDNS) allows a remote administrator to access a FortiGate's Internet-facing interface using a domain name that remains constant even when its IP address changes.

FortiOS supports DNS configuration for both IPv4 and IPv6 addressing. When a user requests a website, the FortiGate looks to the configured DNS servers to provide the IP address of the website in order to know which server to contact to complete the transaction.

The FortiGate queries the DNS servers whenever it needs to resolve a domain name into an IP address, such as for NTP or web servers defined by their domain names.

The following topics provide information about DNS:


- Important DNS CLI commands on page 395
- DNS domain list on page 396
- FortiGate DNS server on page 398
- DDNS on page 400
- DNS latency information on page 403
- DNS over TLS on page 405
- DNS troubleshooting on page 405


## Important DNS CLI commands

DNS settings can be configured with the following CLI command:

```
config system dns
    set primary <ip_address>
    set secondary <ip_address>
    set dns-over-tls {enable | disable | enforce}
    set ssl-certificate <string>
    set domain <domains>
    set ip6-primary <ip6_address>
    set ip6-secondary <ip6_address>
    set timeout <integer>
    set retry <integer>
    set dns-cache-limit <integer>
    set dns-cache-ttl <integer>
    set cache-notfound-responses {enable | disable}
    set source-ip <class_ip>
end
```

For a FortiGate with multiple logical CPUs, you can set the DNS process number from 1 to the number of logical CPUs. The default DNS process number is 1.

```
config system global
    set dnsproxy-worker-count <integer>
end
```

### dns-over-tls

DNS over TLS (DoT) is a security protocol for encrypting and wrapping DNS queries and answers via the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. It can be enabled, disabled, or enforced:

- `disable`: Disable DNS over TLS (default).
- `enable`: Use TLS for DNS queries if TLS is available.
- `enforce`: Use only TLS for DNS queries. Does not fall back to unencrypted DNS queries if TLS is unavailable.

For more information, see DNS over TLS on page 405.

### cache-notfound-responses

When enabled, any DNS requests that are returned with `NOT FOUND` can be stored in the cache. The DNS server is not asked to resolve the host name for `NOT FOUND` entries. By default, this option is disabled.

### dns-cache-limit

Set the number of DNS entries that are stored in the cache (0 to 4294967295, default = 5000). Entries that remain in the cache provide a quicker response to requests than going out to the Internet to get the same information.

### dns-cache-ttl

The duration that the DNS cache retains information, in seconds (60 to 86400 (1 day), default = 1800).

## DNS domain list

You can configure up to eight domains in the DNS settings using the GUI or the CLI.

When a client requests a URL that does not include an FQDN, FortiOS resolves the URL by traversing through the DNS domain list and performing a query for each domain until the first match is found.

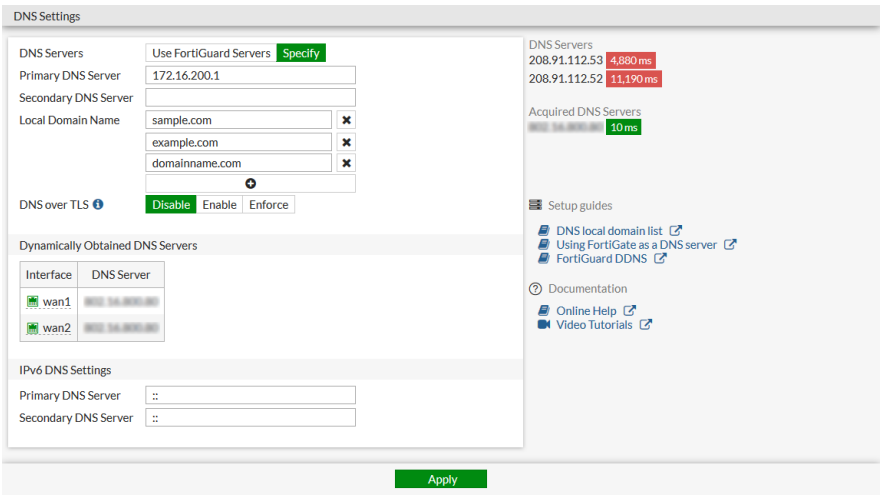
By default, FortiGate uses FortiGuard's DNS servers:

- Primary: 208.91.112.53
- Secondary: 208.91.112.52

You can also customize the DNS timeout time and the number of retry attempts.

**To configure a DNS domain list in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS*.
2. Set *DNS Servers* to *Specify*.
3. Configure the primary and secondary DNS servers as needed.
4. In the *Local Domain Name* field, enter the first domain (`sample.com` in this example).
5. Click the **+** to add more domains (`example.com` and `domainname.com` in this example). You can enter up to eight domains.




6. Configure additional DNS settings as needed.
7. Click *Apply*.

**To configure a DNS domain list in the CLI:**

```
config system dns
    set primary 172.16.200.1
    set domain "sample.com" "example.com" "domainname.com"
end
```

## Verify the DNS configuration

In the following example, the local DNS server has the entry for *host1* mapped to the FQDN of *host1.sample.com*, and the entry for *host2* is mapped to the FQDN of *host2.example.com*.

**To verify that the DNS domain list is configured:**

1. Open Command Prompt.
2. Enter `ping host1`.
   The system returns the following response:
   ```
   PING host1.sample.com (1.1.1.1): 56 data bytes
   ```
   As the request does not include an FQDN, FortiOS traverses the configured DNS domain list to find a match. Because *host1* is mapped to the *host1.sample.com*, FortiOS resolves *host1* to *sample.com*, the first entry in the domain list.
3. Enter `ping host2`.
   The system returns the following response:
   ```
   PING host2.example.com (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
   ```
   FortiOS traverses the domain list to find a match. It first queries sample.com, the first entry in the domain list, but does not find a match. It then queries the second entry in the domain list, example.com. Because *host2* is mapped to the FQDN of *host2.example.com*, FortiOS resolves *host2* to *example.com*.

## DNS timeout and retry settings

The DNS timeout and retry settings can be customized using the CLI.

```
config system dns
    set timeout <integer>
    set retry <integer>
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| timeout <integer> | The DNS query timeout interval, in seconds (1 - 10, default = 5). |
| retry <integer> | The number of times to retry the DNS query (0 - 5, default - 2). |

## FortiGate DNS server

You can create local DNS servers for your network. Depending on your requirements, you can either manually maintain your entries (primary DNS server), or use it to refer to an outside source (secondary DNS server).

A local, primary DNS server requires that you to manually add all URL and IP address combinations. Using a primary DNS server for local services can minimize inbound and outbound traffic, and access time. Making it authoritative is not recommended, because IP addresses can change, and maintaining the list can become labor intensive.

A secondary DNS server refers to an alternate source to obtain URL and IP address combinations. This is useful when there is a primary DNS server where the entry list is maintained.

FortiGate as a DNS server also supports TLS connections to a DNS client. See DNS over TLS on page 405 for details.

By default, DNS server options are not available in the FortiGate GUI.

**To enable DNS server options in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. Enable *DNS Database* in the *Additional Features* section.
3. Click *Apply*.

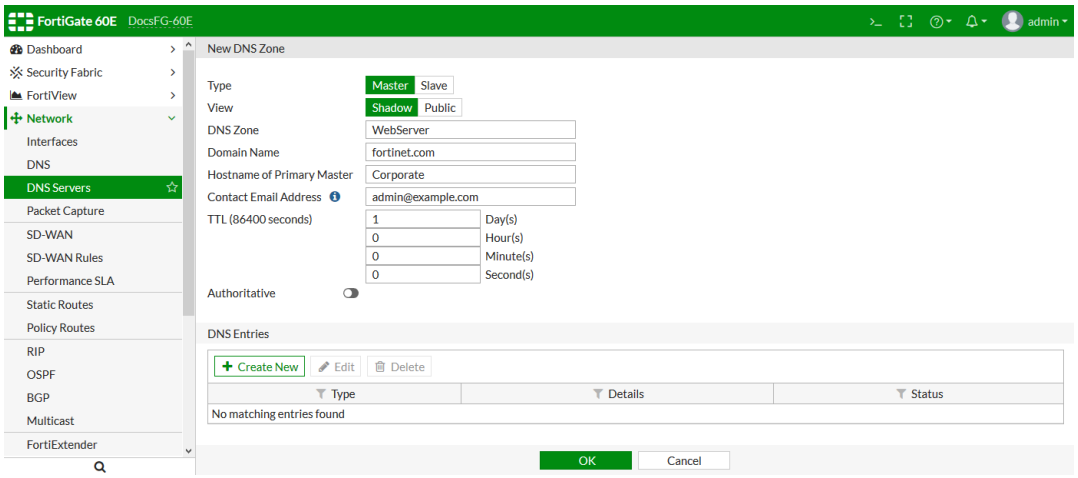
### Example configuration

This section describes how to create an unauthoritative primary DNS server. The interface mode is recursive so that, if the request cannot be fulfilled, the external DNS servers will be queried.

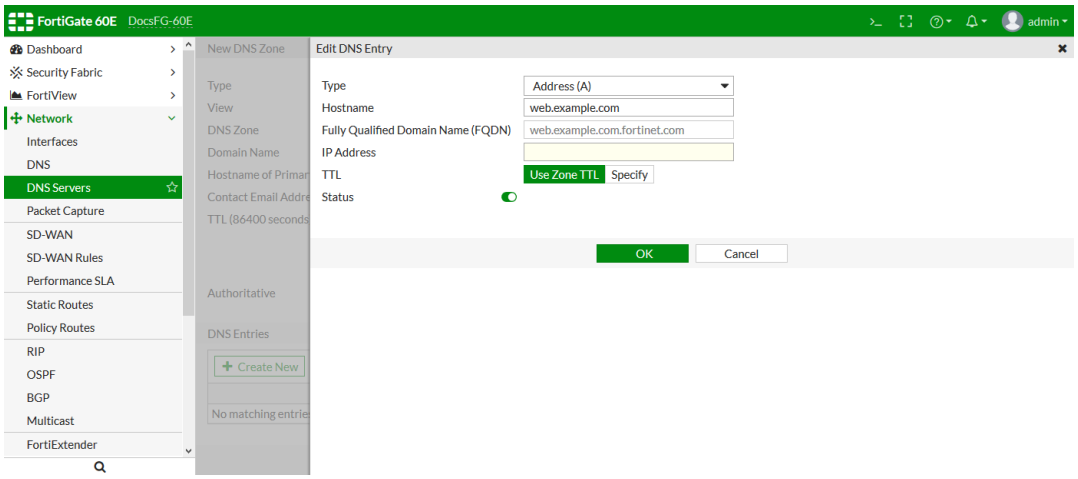
**To configure FortiGate as a primary DNS server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
2. In the *DNS Database* table, click *Create New*.
3. Set *Type* to *Master*.
4. Set *View* to *Shadow*.
   The *View* setting controls the accessibility of the DNS server. If you select *Public*, external users can access or use the DNS server. If you select *Shadow*, only internal users can use it.
5. Enter a *DNS Zone*, for example, *WebServer*.
6. Enter the *Domain Name* of the zone, for example, *fortinet.com*.
7. Enter the *Hostname* of the DNS server, for example, *Corporate*.
8. Enter the *Contact Email Address* for the administrator, for example, *admin@example.com*.

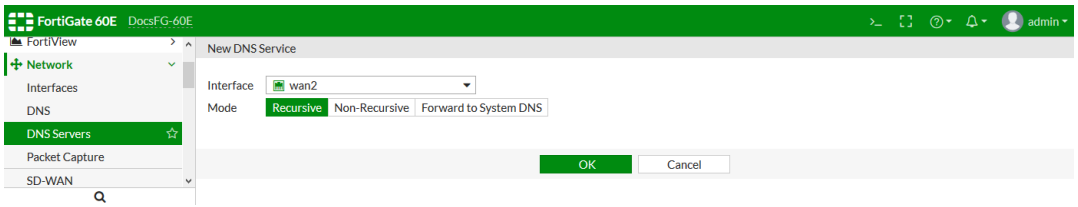
9. Disable *Authoritative*.




10. Add DNS entries:
    a. In the *DNS Entries* table, click *Create New*.
    b. Select a *Type*, for example *Address (A)*.
    c. Set the *Hostname*, for example *web.example.com*.




    d. Configure the remaining settings as needed. The options vary depending on the selected *Type*.
    e. Click *OK*.
11. Add more DNS entries as needed.
12. Click *OK*.
13. Enable DNS services on an interface:
    a. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
    b. In the *DNS Service on Interface* table, click *Create New*.
    c. Select the *Interface* for the DNS server, such as *wan2*.
    d. Set the *Mode* to *Recursive*.



**e.** Click *OK*.

**To configure FortiGate as a primary DNS server in the CLI:**

```
config system dns-database
    edit WebServer
        set domain example.com
        set type master
        set view shadow
        set ttl 86400
        set primary-name corporate
        set contact admin@example.com
        set authoritative disable
        config dns-entry
            edit 1
                set hostname web.example.com
                set type A
                set ip 192.168.21.12
                set status enable
            next
        end
    next
end
config system dns-server
    edit wan1
        set mode recursive
    next
end
```

## DDNS

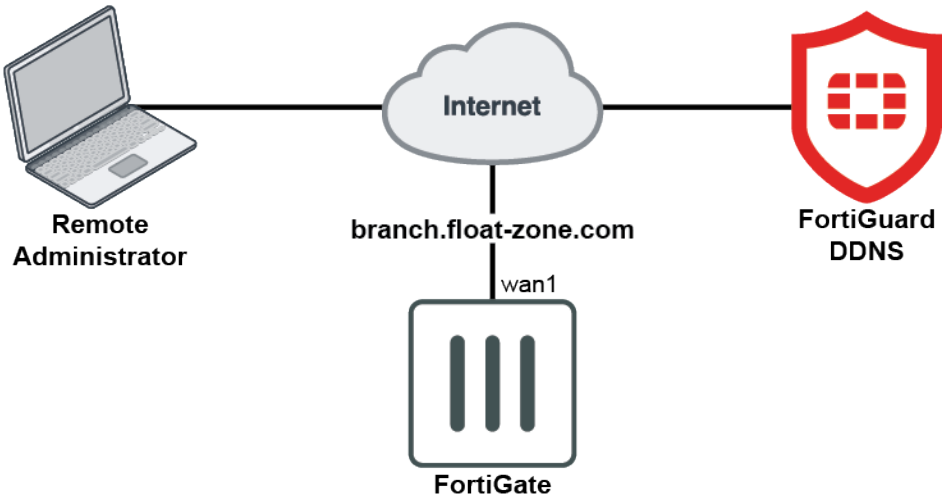
If your external IP address changes regularly and you have a static domain name, you can configure the external interface to use a dynamic DNS (DDNS) service. This ensures that external users and customers can always connect to your company firewall. If you have a FortiGuard subscription, you can use FortiGuard as the DDNS server.



- FortiGate does not support DDNS for pure TP mode.
- FortiGate models 1000D and higher do not support DDNS in the GUI.

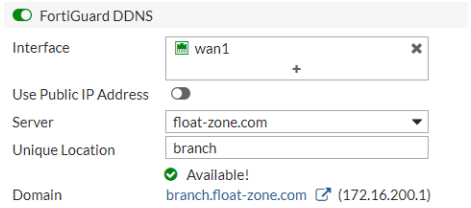
You can configure FortiGuard as the DDNS server using the GUI or CLI.

## Sample topology




**To configure FortiGuard as the DDNS server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS*
2. Enable *FortiGuard DDNS*.
3. Select the *Interface* with the dynamic connection.
4. Select the *Server* that you have an account with.
5. Enter your *Unique Location*.




6. Click *Apply*.

**To configure FortiGuard as the DDNS server in the CLI:**

```
config system ddns
    edit <1>
        set ddns-server FortiGuardDDNS
        set ddns-domain "branch.float-zone.com"
        set monitor-interface "wan1"
    next
end
```

## DDNS servers other than FortiGuard

If you do not have a FortiGuard subscription, or want to use a different DDNS server, you can configure a DDNS server for each interface. Only the first configure port appears in the GUI. The available commands vary depending on the selected DDNS server.

**To configure DDNS servers other than FortiGuard in the CLI:**

```
config system ddns
    edit <DDNS_ID>
        set monitor-interface <external_interface>
        set ddns-server <ddns_server_selection>
        ...
    next
end
```

## Refresh DDNS IP addresses

You can configure FortiGate to refresh DDNS IP addresses. FortiGate periodically checks the DDNS server that is configured.

**To configure FortiGate to refresh DDNS IP addresses using the CLI:**

```
config system ddns
    edit <1>
        set ddns-server FortiGuardDDNS
        set use-public-ip enable
        set update-interval seconds
    next
end
```

## Disable cleartext

When `clear-text` is disabled, FortiGate uses the SSL connection to send and receive (DDNS) updates.

**To disable cleartext and set the SSL certificate using the CLI:**

```
config system ddns
    edit <1>
        set clear-text disable
        set ssl-certificate <cert_name>
    next
end
```

## DDNS update override

A DHCP server has an override command option that allows DHCP server communications to go through DDNS to perform updates for the DHCP client. This enforces a DDNS update of the A field every time even if the DHCP client does not request it. This allows support for the `allow`, `ignore`, and `deny client-updates` options.

**To enable DDNS update override using the CLI:**

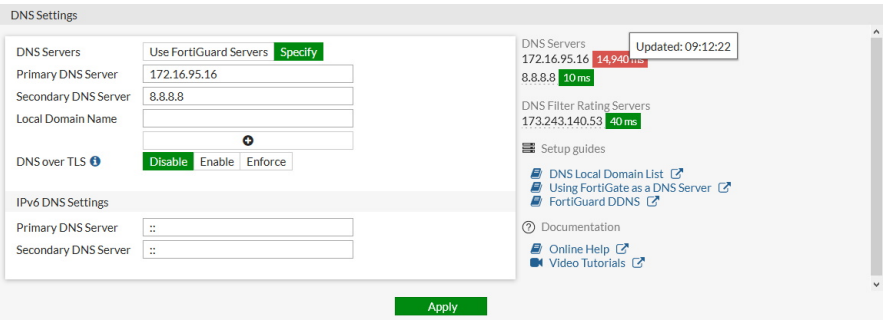
```
config system dhcp server
    edit <0>
        set ddns-update enable
        set ddns-update_override enable
        set ddns-server-ip <ddns_server_ip>
```

```
        set ddns-zone <ddns_zone>
    next
end
```

## DNS latency information

High latency in DNS traffic can result in an overall sluggish experience for end-users. In the *DNS Settings* pane, you can quickly identify DNS latency issues in your configuration.

Go to *Network* > *DNS* to view DNS latency information in the right side bar. If you use FortiGuard DNS, latency information for DNS, DNS filter, web filter, and outbreak prevention servers is also visible. Hover your pointer over a latency value to see when it was last updated.




### To view DNS latency information using the CLI:

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 2
worker idx: 0
worker: count=1 idx=0
retry_interval=500 query_timeout=1495
DNS latency info:
vfid=0 server=2001::1 latency=1494 updated=73311
vfid=0 server=208.91.112.52 latency=1405 updated=2547
vfid=0 server=208.91.112.53 latency=19 updated=91
SDNS latency info:
vfid=0 server=173.243.138.221 latency=1 updated=707681
DNS_CACHE: alloc=35, hit=26
RATING_CACHE: alloc=1, hit=49
DNS UDP: req=66769 res=63438 fwd=83526 alloc=0 cmp=0 retrans=16855 to=3233
          cur=111 switched=8823467 num_switched=294 v6_cur=80 v6_switched=7689041 num_v6_
switched=6
         ftg_res=8 ftg_fwd=8 ftg_retrans=0
DNS TCP: req=0, res=0, fwd=0, retrans=0 alloc=0, to=0
FQDN: alloc=45 nl_write_cnt=9498 nl_send_cnt=21606 nl_cur_cnt=0
Botnet: searched=57 hit=0 filtered=57 false_positive=0
```

### To view the latency from web filter and outbreak protection servers using the CLI:

```
# diagnose debug rating
Locale    : english

Service   : Web-filter
Status    : Enable
License   : Contract
```

```
Service  : Antispam
Status   : Disable

Service  : Virus Outbreak Prevention
Status   : Disable

--=- Server List (Tue Jan 22 08:03:14 2019) -=-

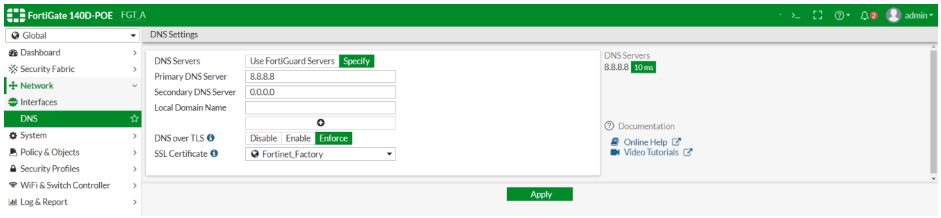
IP               Weight RTT Flags  TZ  Packets  Curr Lost Total Lost  Updated Time
173.243.138.194  10     0 DI       -8  700      0         2           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.195  10     0          -8  698      0         4           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.198  10     0          -8  698      0         4           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.196  10     0          -8  697      0         3           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
173.243.138.197  10     1          -8  694      0         0           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
96.45.33.64      10     22 D       -8  701      0         6           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
64.26.151.36     40     62         -5  704      0         10          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
64.26.151.35     40     62         -5  703      0         9           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
209.222.147.43   40     70 D       -5  696      0         1           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
66.117.56.42     40     70         -5  697      0         3           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
66.117.56.37     40     71         -5  702      0         9           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
65.210.95.239    40     74         -5  695      0         1           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
65.210.95.240    40     74         -5  695      0         1           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.88     90     142        0   706      0         12          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.87     90     155        0   714      0         20          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.85     90     156        0   711      0         17          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
45.75.200.86     90     159        0   704      0         10          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
62.209.40.72     100    157        1   701      0         7           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
62.209.40.74     100    173        1   705      0         11          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
62.209.40.73     100    173        1   699      0         5           Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
121.111.236.179  180    138        9   706      0         12          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
121.111.236.180  180    138        9   704      0         10          Tue Jan 22 08:02:44
2019
```

## DNS over TLS

DNS over TLS (DoT) is a security protocol for encrypting and wrapping DNS queries and answers via the TLS protocol. The goal of DNS over TLS is to increase user privacy and security by preventing eavesdropping and manipulation of DNS data via man-in-the-middle attacks. There is an option in the FortiOS DNS profile settings to enforce DoT for this added security.

**To configure DoT in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS*. The *DNS Settings* pane opens.
2. For *DNS over TLS*, click *Enforce*.




3. Click *Apply*.

**To configure DoT in the CLI:**

```
config system dns
    set primary 8.8.8.8
    set dns-over-tls enforce
    set ssl-certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
end
```

### FortiGuard DNS rating service

DNS over TLS connections to the FortiGuard secure DNS server is supported. The CLI options are only available when `fortiguard-anycast` is enabled. DNS filtering connects to the FortiGuard secure DNS server over anycast by default.

**To configure DoT to the secure DNS server in the CLI:**

```
config system fortiguard
    set fortiguard-anycast enable
    set fortiguard-anycast-source fortinet
    set anycast-sdns-server-ip 0.0.0.0
    set anycast-sdns-server-port 853
end
```

## DNS troubleshooting

The following diagnose command can be used to collect DNS debug information. If you do not specify worker ID, the default worker ID is `0`.

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy
worker idx: 0
```

```
1. Clear DNS cache
2. Show stats
3. Dump DNS setting
4. Reload FQDN
5. Requery FQDN
6. Dump FQDN
7. Dump DNS cache
8. Dump DNS DB
9. Reload DNS DB
10. Dump secure DNS policy/profile
11. Dump Botnet domain
12. Reload Secure DNS setting
13. Show Hostname cache
14. Clear Hostname cache
15. Show SDNS rating cache
16. Clear SDNS rating cache
17. DNS debug bit mask
99. Restart dnsproxy worker
```

**To view useful information about the ongoing DNS connection:**

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 3
```

Important fields include:

| | |
|---|---|
| `tls` | 1 if the connection is TLS, 0 if the connection is not TLS. |
| `rt` | The round trip time of the DNS latency. |
| `probe` | The number of probes sent. |

**To dump the second DNS worker's cache:**

```
diagnose test application dnsproxy 7 1
```

**To enable debug on the second worker:**

```
diagnose debug application dnsproxy -1 1
```

**To enable debug on all workers by specifying -1 as worker ID:**

```
diagnose debug application dnsproxy -1 -1
```

# Explicit and transparent proxies

This section contains instructions for configuring explicit and transparent proxies.


- Explicit web proxy on page 407
- Transparent proxy on page 411
- FTP proxy on page 409
- Proxy policy addresses on page 414
- Proxy policy security profiles on page 422

- Explicit proxy authentication on page 428
- Transparent web proxy forwarding on page 433
- Upstream proxy authentication in transparent proxy mode on page 434
- Multiple dynamic header count on page 436
- Restricted SaaS access (Office 365, G Suite, Dropbox) on page 439
- Explicit proxy and FortiSandbox Cloud on page 441
- Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers) on page 444
- Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy on page 449


## Explicit web proxy

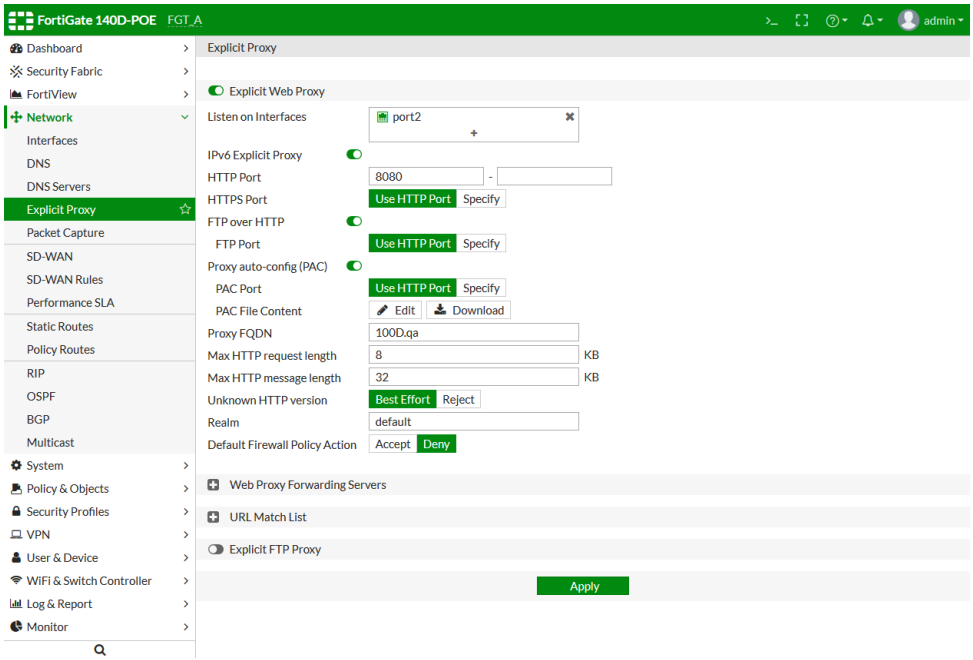
Explicit web proxy can be configured on FortiGate for proxying HTTP and HTTPS traffic.

To deploy explicit proxy, individual client browsers can be manually configured to send requests directly to the proxy, or they can be configured to download proxy configuration instructions from a Proxy Auto-Configuration (PAC) file.

When explicit proxy is configured on an interface, the interface IP address can be used by client browsers to forward requests directly to the FortiGate. FortiGate also supports PAC file configuration.

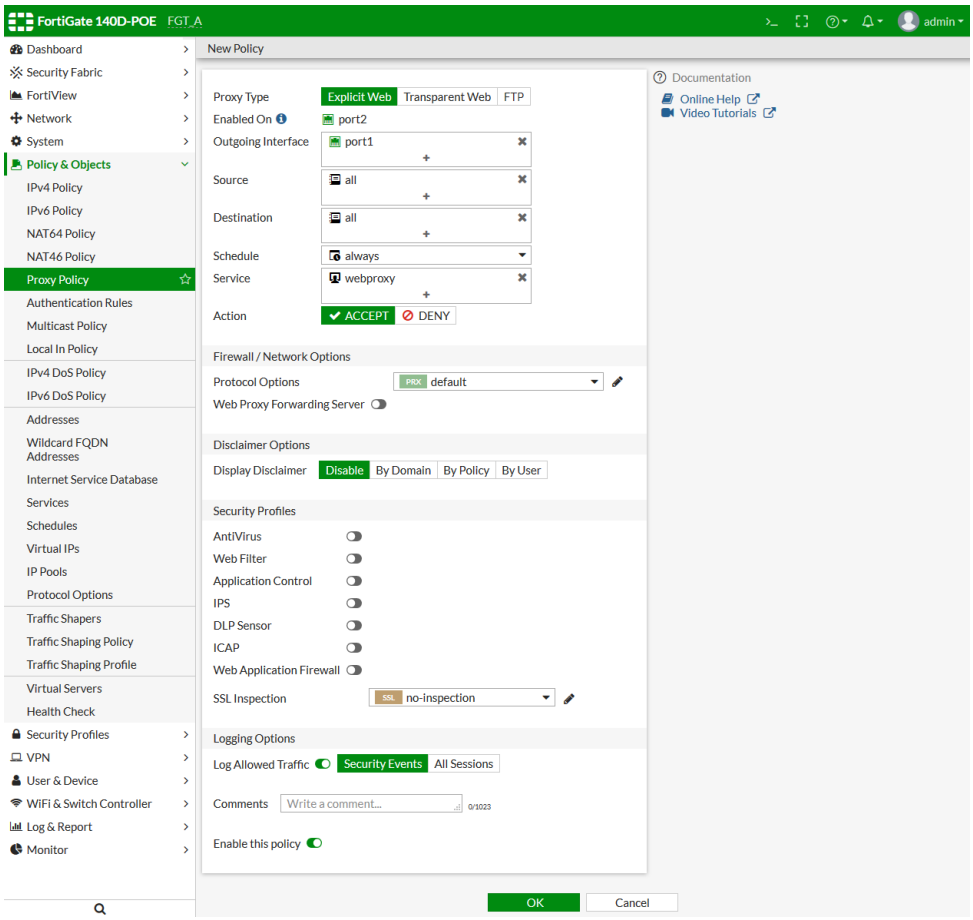
**To configure explicit web proxy in the GUI:**

1. Enable and configure explicit web proxy:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*.
   b. Enable *Explicit Web Proxy*.
   c. Select *port2* as the *Listen on Interfaces* and set the *HTTP Port* to *8080*.
   d. Configure the remaining settings as needed.




   e. Click *Apply*.

2. Create an explicit web proxy policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set *Proxy Type* to *Explicit Web* and *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *webproxy*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.




   e. Click *OK* to create the policy.



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

3. Configure a client to use the FortiGate explicit proxy:
   Set the FortiGate IP address as the proxy IP address in the browser, or use an automatic configuration script for the PAC file.

### To configure explicit web proxy in the CLI:

1. Enable and configure explicit web proxy:

```
config web-proxy explicit
    set status enable
    set ftp-over-http enable
    set socks enable
```

```
        set http-incoming-port 8080
        set ipv6-status enable
        set unknown-http-version best-effort
    end
    config system interface
        edit "port2"
            set vdom "vdom1"
            set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
            set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
            set type physical
            set explicit-web-proxy enable
            set snmp-index 12
            end
        next
    end
```

2. Create an explicit web proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
    next
end
```



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

3. Configure a client to use the FortiGate explicit web proxy:
Set the FortiGate IP address as the proxy IP address in the browser, or use an automatic configuration script for the PAC file.

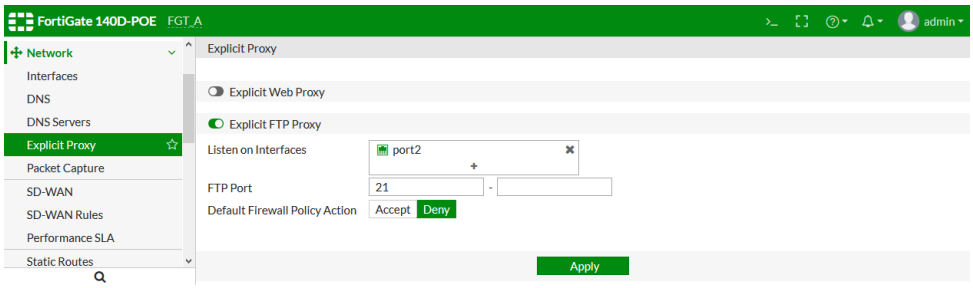
## FTP proxy

FTP proxies can be configured on the FortiGate so that FTP traffic can be proxied. When the FortiGate is configured as an FTP proxy, FTP client applications should be configured to send FTP requests to the FortiGate.

**To configure explicit FTP proxy in the GUI:**

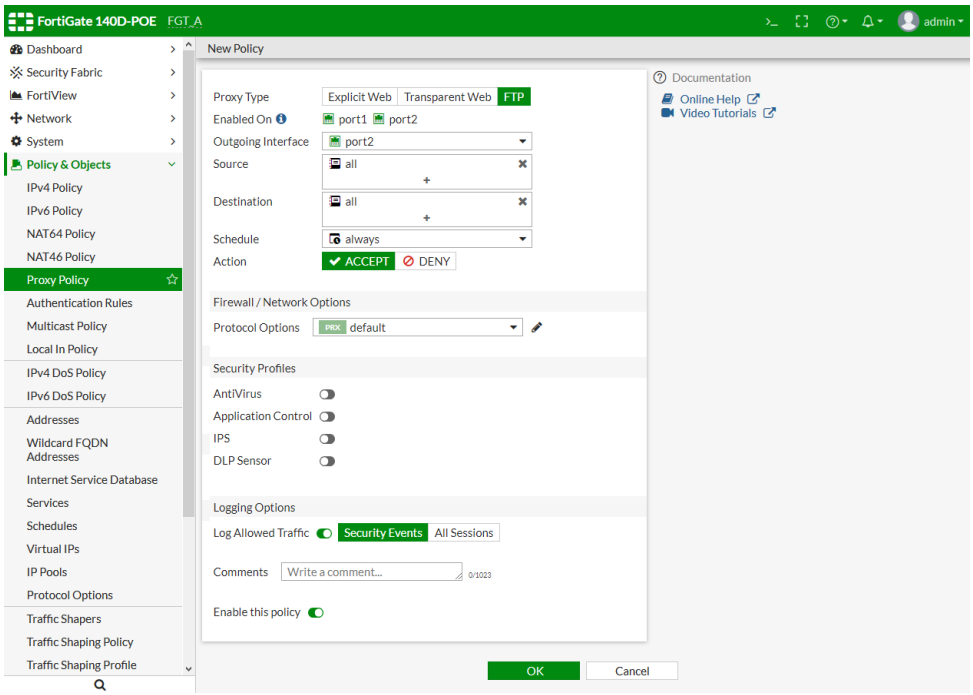
1. Enable and configure explicit FTP proxy:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*.
   b. Enable *Explicit FTP Proxy*.
   c. Select *port2* as the *Listen on Interfaces* and set the *HTTP Port* to *21*.

d. Configure the *Default Firewall Policy Action* as needed.




e. Click *Apply*.

2. Create an explicit FTP proxy policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set *Proxy Type* to *FTP* and *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.




e. Click *OK* to create the policy.



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled.

3. Configure the FTP client application to use the FortiGate IP address.

**To configure explicit FTP proxy in the CLI:**

1. Enable and configure explicit FTP proxy:

```
config ftp-proxy explicit
    set status enable
    set incoming-port 21
end
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
        set type physical
        set explicit-ftp-proxy enable
        set snmp-index 12
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create an explicit FTP proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 4
        set proxy ftp
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled.

3. Configure the FTP client application to use the FortiGate IP address.

## Transparent proxy

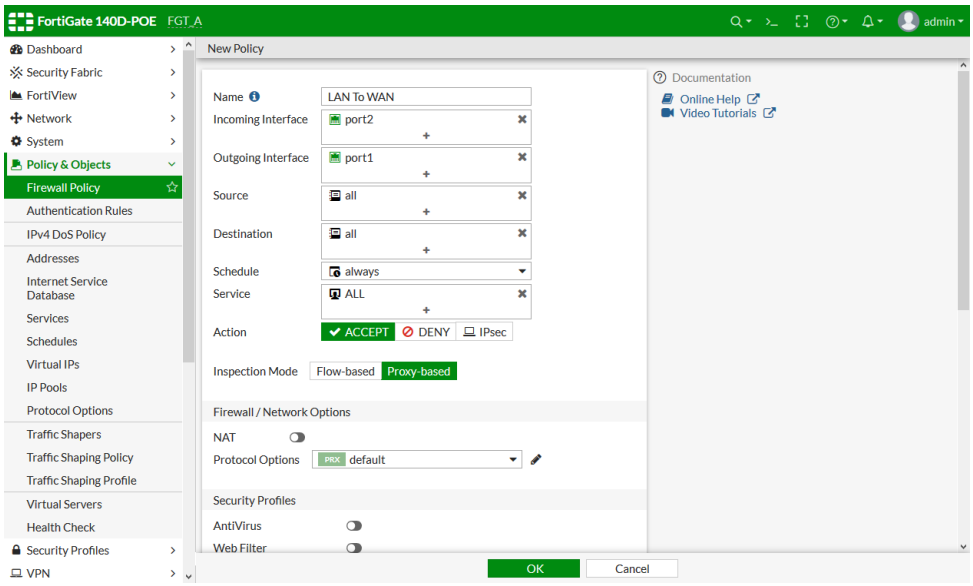
In a transparent proxy deployment, the user's client software, such as a browser, is unaware that it is communicating with a proxy.

Users request Internet content as usual, without any special client configuration, and the proxy serves their requests. FortiGate also allows user to configure in transparent proxy mode.

**To configure transparent proxy in the GUI:**

1. Configure a regular firewall policy with HTTP redirect:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Name the policy appropriately, set the *Incoming Interface* to *port2*, and set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.

e. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based* and *SSL Inspection* to *deep-inspection*.




f. Configure the remaining settings as needed.

g. Click *OK*.



HTTP redirect can only be configured in the CLI. To redirect HTTPS traffic, deep inspection is required.

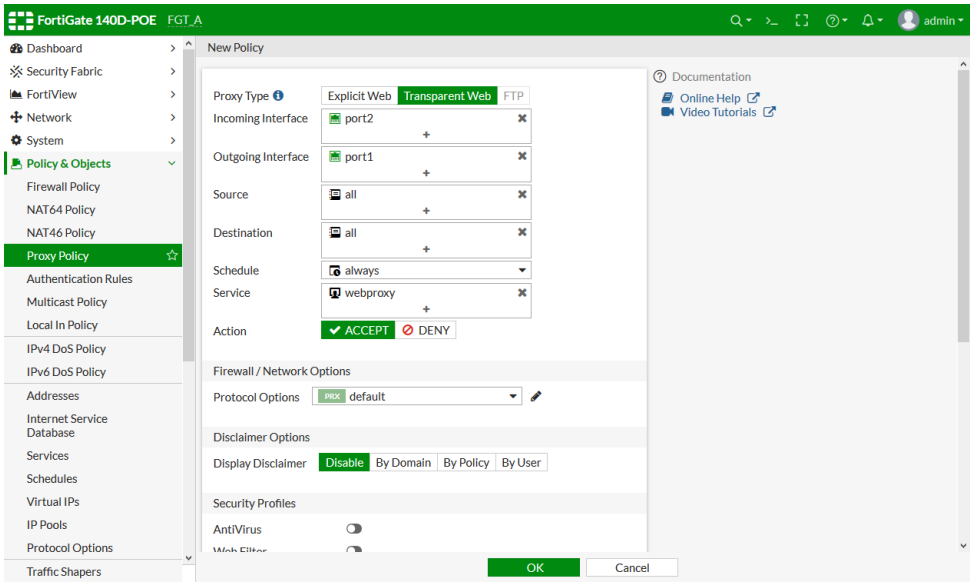
2. Configure a transparent proxy policy:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.

b. Click *Create New*.

c. Set *Proxy Type* to *Transparent Web*, set the *Incoming Interface* to *port2*, and set the *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.

d. Also set *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule*to *always*, *Service* to *webproxy*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.



e. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
f. Click *OK* to create the policy.



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

3. No special configure is required on the client to use FortiGate transparent proxy. As the client is using the FortiGate as its default gateway, requests will first hit the regular firewall policy, and then be redirected to the transparent proxy policy.

**To configure transparent proxy in the CLI:**

1. Configure a regular firewall policy with HTTP redirect:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set http-policy-redirect enable
        set fsso disable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

2. Configure a transparent proxy policy:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 5
        set proxy transparent-web
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```



This example creates a basic policy. If required, security profiles can be enabled, and deep SSL inspection can be selected to inspect HTTPS traffic.

3. No special configure is required on the client to use FortiGate transparent proxy. As the client is using the FortiGate as its default gateway, requests will first hit the regular firewall policy, and then be redirected to the transparent proxy policy.

# Proxy policy addresses

Proxy addresses are designed to be used only by proxy policies. The following address types are available:


- Host regex match on page 414
- URL pattern on page 415
- URL category on page 416
- HTTP method on page 417
- HTTP header on page 418
- User agent on page 419
- Advanced (source) on page 420
- Advanced (destination) on page 421


## Fast policy match

The fast policy match function improves the performance of IPv4 explicit and transparent web proxies on FortiGate devices.

When enabled, after the proxy policies are configured, the FortiGate builds a fast searching table based on the different proxy policy matching criteria. When fast policy matching is disabled, web proxy traffic is compared to the policies one at a time from the beginning of the policy list.

Fast policy matching is enabled by default, and can be configured with the following CLI command:

```
config web-proxy global
    set fast-policy-match {enable | disable}
end
```

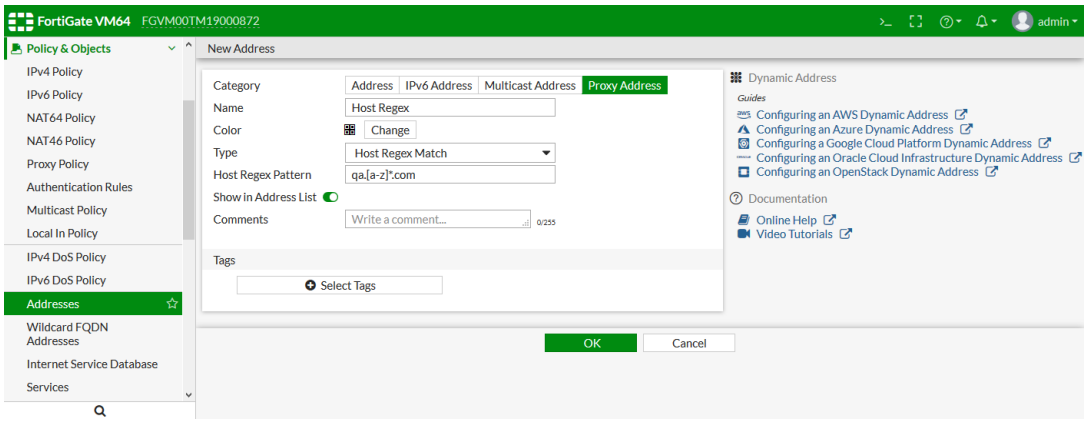
## Host regex match

In this address type, a user can create a hostname as a regular expression. Once created, the hostname address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the regular expression.

This example creates a host regex match address with the pattern *qa.[a-z]*.com*.

**To create a host regex match address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *Host Regex*,
   - *Type* to *Host Regex Match*, and
   - *Host Regex Pattern* to *qa.[a-z]*.com*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create a host regex match address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "Host Regex"
        set type host-regex
        set host-regex "qa.[a-z]*.com"
    next
end
```

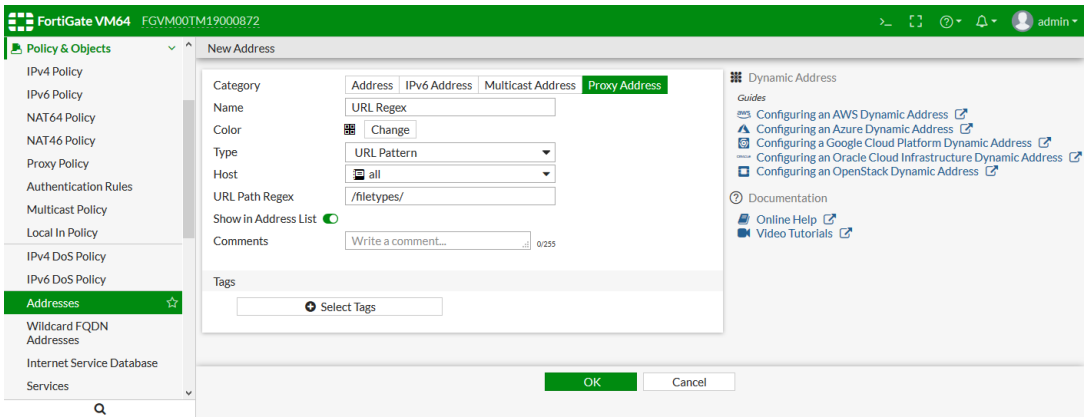
## URL pattern

In this address type, a user can create a URL path as a regular expression. Once created, the path address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the regular expression.

This example creates a URL pattern address with the pattern */filetypes/*.

**To create a URL pattern address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *URL Regex*,
   - *Type* to *URL Pattern*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *URL Path Regex* to */filetypes/*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create a URL pattern address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "URL Regex"
        set type url
        set host "all"
        set path "/filetypes/"
    next
end
```

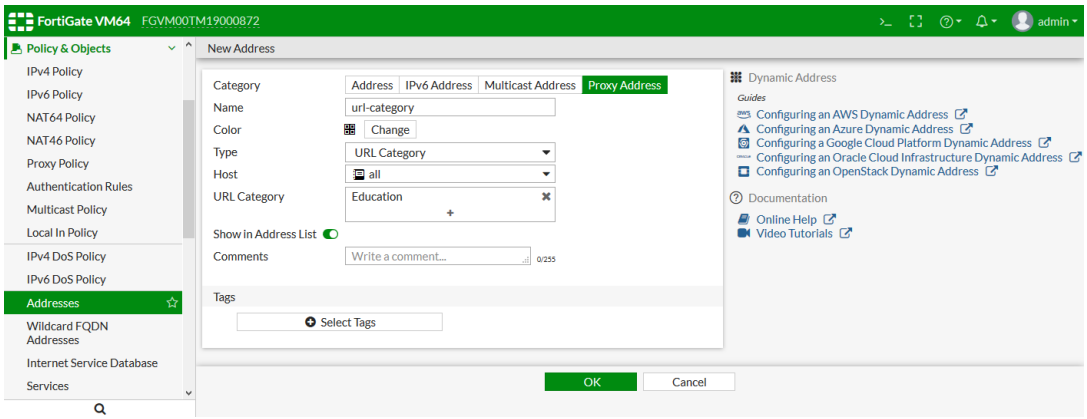
## URL category

In this address type, a user can create a URL category based on a FortiGuard URL ID. Once created, the address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the URL category.

The example creates a URL category address for URLs in the *Education* category. For more information about categories, see https://fortiguard.com/webfilter/categories.

**To create a URL category address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *url-category*,
   - *Type* to *URL Category*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *URL Category* to *Education*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create a URL category address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "url-category"
        set type category
        set host "all"
        set category 30
    next
end
```

To see a list of all the categories and their numbers, when editing the address, enter `set category ?`.

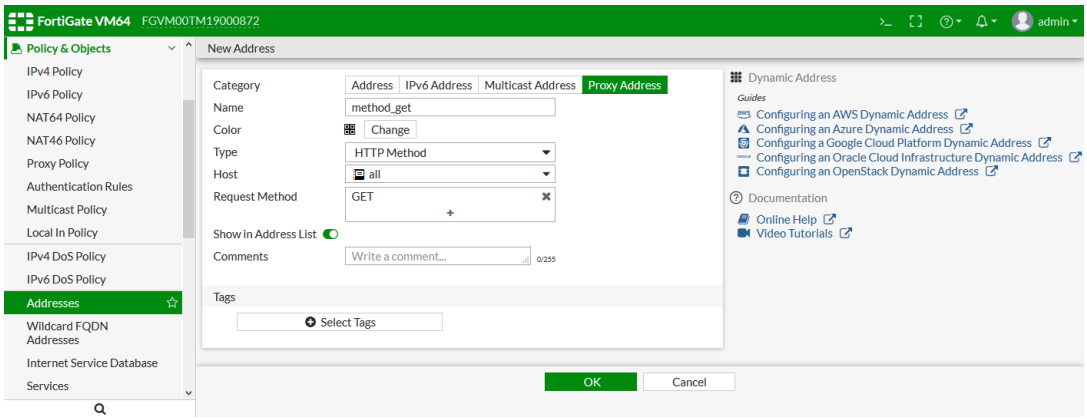
## HTTP method

In this address type, a user can create an address based on the HTTP request methods that are used. Multiple method options are supported, including: *CONNECT*, *DELETE*, *GET*, *HEAD*, *OPTIONS*, *POST*, *PUT*, and *TRACE*. Once created, the address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the selected HTTP method.

The example creates a HTTP method address that uses the GET method.

**To create a HTTP method address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *method_get*,
   - *Type* to *HTTP Method*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *Request Method* to *GET*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create a HTTP method address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "method_get"
        set type method
        set host "all"
        set method get
    next
end
```

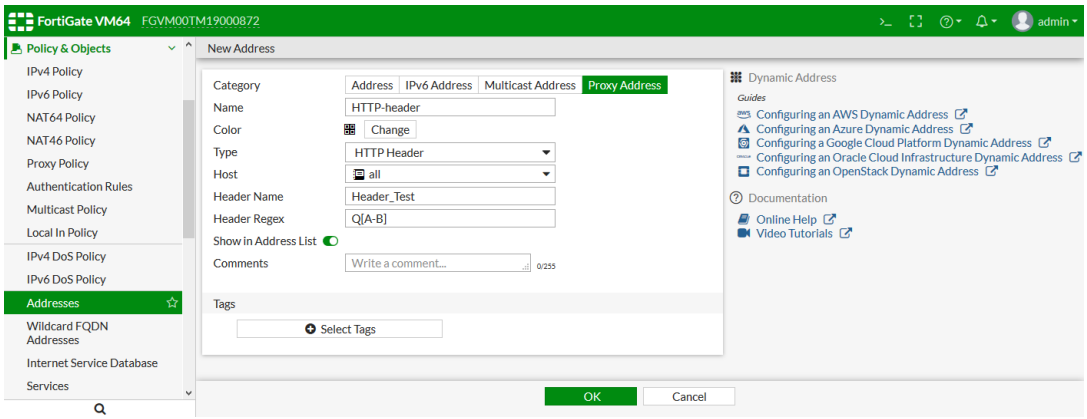
## HTTP header

In this address type, a user can create a HTTP header as a regular expression. Once created, the header address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests where the HTTP header matches the regular expression.

This example creates a HTTP header address with the pattern *Q[A-B]*.

**To create a HTTP header address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *HTTP-header*,
   - *Type* to *HTTP Header*,
   - *Host* to *all*,
   - *Header Name* to *Header_Test*, and
   - *Header Regex* to *Q[A-B]*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create a HTTP header address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "method_get"
        set type header
        set host "all"
        set header-name "Header_Test"
        set header "Q[A-B]"
    next
end
```

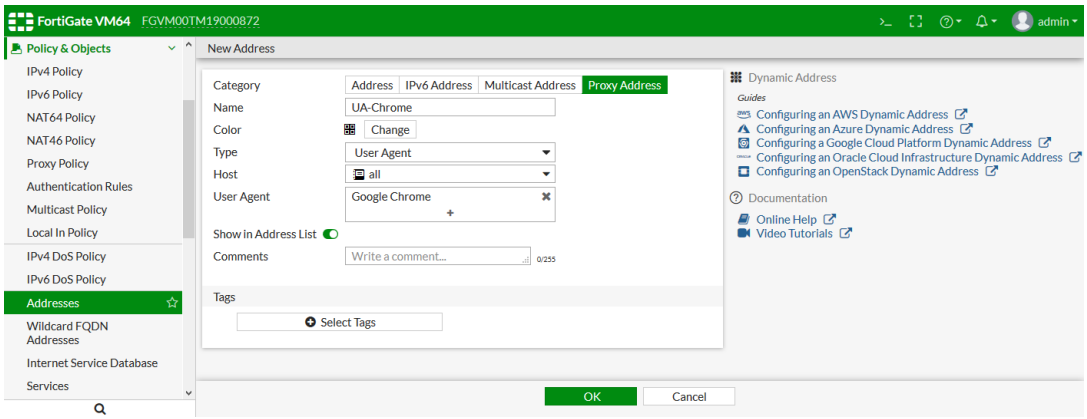
## User agent

In this address type, a user can create an address based on the names of the browsers that are used as user agents. Multiple browsers are supported, such as Chrome, Firefox, Internet Explorer, and others. Once created, the address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests from the specified user agent.

This example creates a user agent address for Google Chrome.

**To create a user agent address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *UA-Chrome*,
   - *Type* to *User Agent*,
   - *Host* to *all*, and
   - *User Agent* to *Google Chrome*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create a user agent address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "UA-Chrome"
        set type ua
        set host "all"
        set ua chrome
    next
end
```

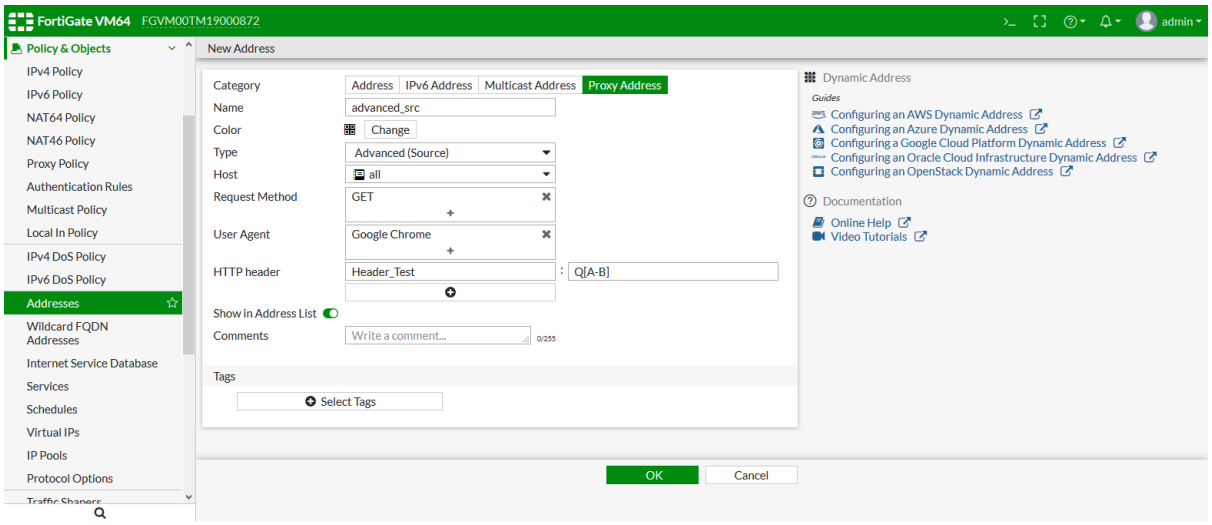
## Advanced (source)

In this address type, a user can create an address based on multiple parameters, including HTTP method, User Agent, and HTTP header. Once created, the address can be selected as a source of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the selected address.

This example creates an address that uses the get method, a user agent for Google Chrome, and an HTTP header with the pattern *Q[A-B]*.

**To create an advanced (source) address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *advanced_src*,
   - *Type* to *Advanced (Source)*,
   - *Host* to *all*,
   - *Request Method* to *GET*,
   - *User Agent* to *Google Chrome*, and
   - *HTTP header* to *Header_Test* : *Q[A-B]*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create an advanced (source) address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "advance_src"
        set type src-advanced
        set host "all"
        set method get
        set ua chrome
        config header-group
            edit 1
                set header-name "Header_Test"
                set header "Q[A-B]"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## Advanced (destination)

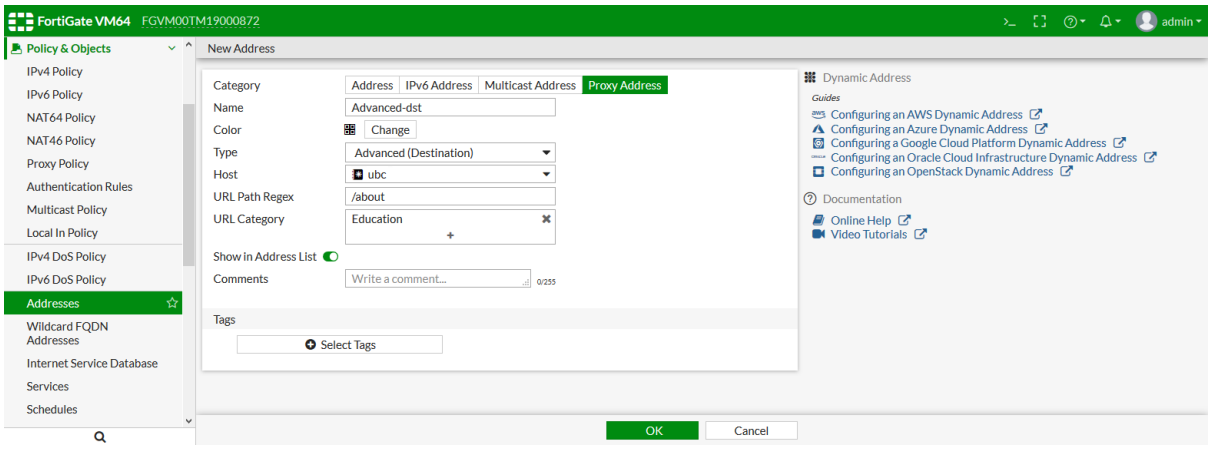
In this address type, a user can create an address based on URL pattern and URL category parameters. Once created, the address can be selected as a destination of a proxy policy. This means that a policy will only allow or block requests that match the selected address.

This example creates an address with the URL pattern */about* that are in the *Education* category. For more information about categories, see https://fortiguard.com/webfilter/categories.

**To create an advanced (destination) address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Category* to *Proxy Address*,
   - *Name* to *Advanced-dst*,

- *Type* to *Advanced (Destination)*,
- *Host* to *all*,
- *URL Path Regex* to */about*, and
- *URL Category* to *Education*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To create an advanced (destination) address in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-address
    edit "Advanced-dst"
        set type dst-advanced
        set host "ubc"
        set path "/about"
        set category 30
    next
end
```

## Proxy policy security profiles

Web proxy policies support most security profile types.



Security profiles must be created before they can be used in a policy, see Security Profiles on page 923 for information.

### Explicit web proxy policy

The security profiles supported by explicit web proxy policies are:

- *AntiVirus*
- *Web Filter*
- *Application Control*
- *IPS*
- *DLP Sensor*
- *ICAP*

- *Web Application Firewall*
- *SSL Inspection*

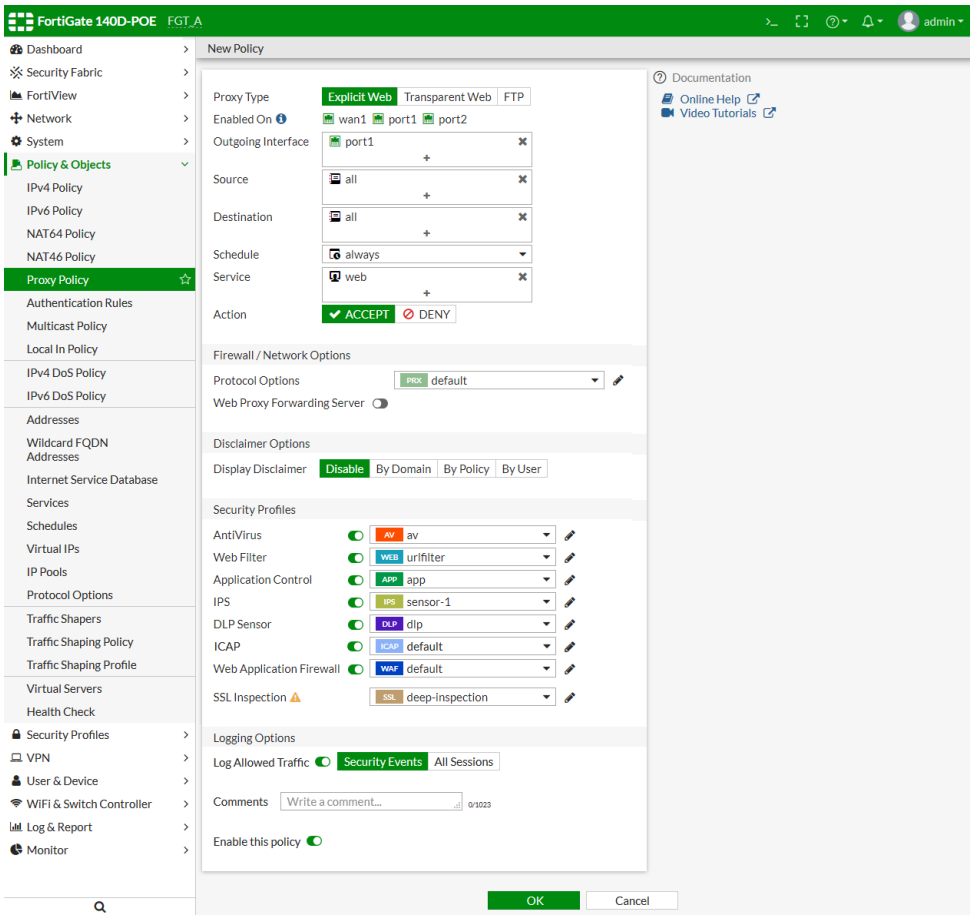
**To configure security profiles on an explicit web proxy policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Proxy Type** | Explicit Web |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port1 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | webproxy |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |

4. In the *Firewall / Network Options* section, set *Protocol Options* to *default*.
5. In the *Security Profiles* section, make the following selections (for this example, these profiles have all already been created):

| | |
|---|---|
| **AntiVirus** | av |
| **Web Filter** | urlfiler |
| **Application Control** | app |
| **IPS** | Sensor-1 |
| **DLP Sensor** | dlp |
| **ICAP** | default |
| **Web Application Firewall** | default |
| **SSL Inspection** | deep-inspection |




6. Click *OK* to create the policy.

**To configure security profiles on an explicit web proxy policy in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "web"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set webfilter-profile "urlfilter"
        set dlp-sensor "dlp"
        set ips-sensor "sensor-1"
        set application-list "app"
        set icap-profile "default"
        set waf-profile "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
    next
end
```

## Transparent proxy

The security profiles supported by transparent proxy policies are:

- *AntiVirus*
- *Web Filter*
- *Application Control*
- *IPS*
- *DLP Sensor*
- *ICAP*
- *Web Application Firewall*
- *SSL Inspection*

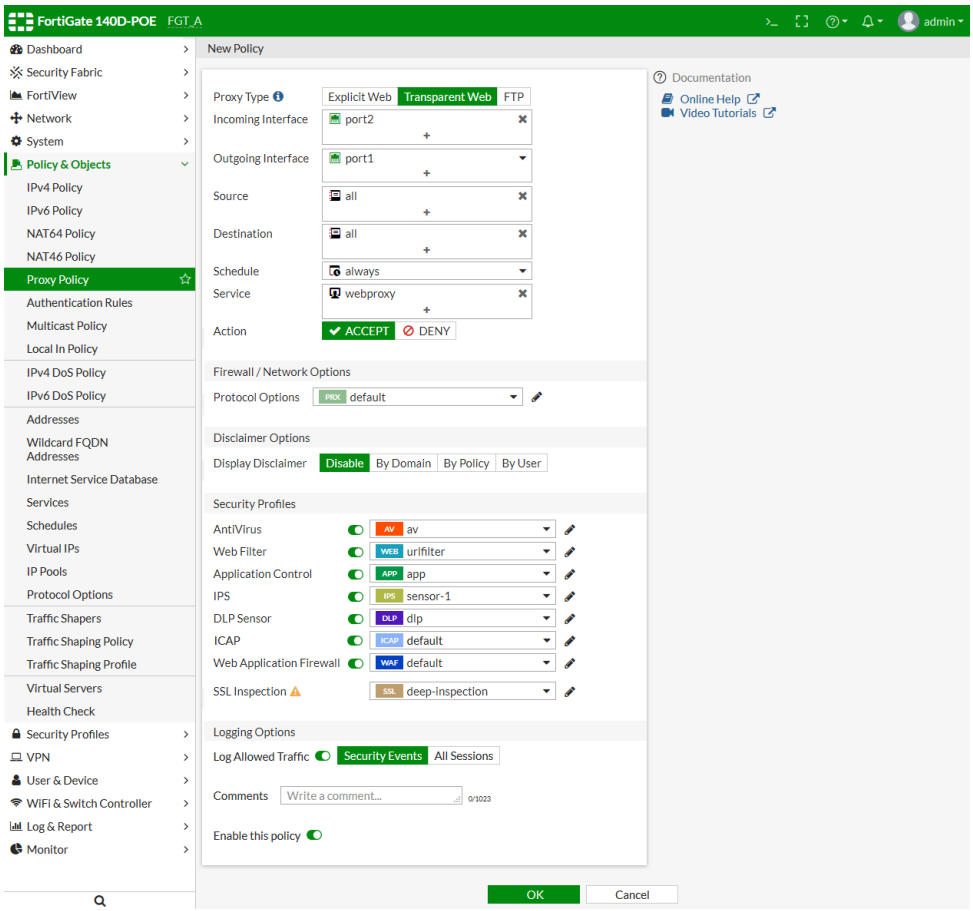
**To configure security profiles on a transparent proxy policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Proxy Type** | Explicit Web |
| **Incoming Interfae** | port2 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port1 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | webproxy |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |

4. In the *Firewall / Network Options* section, set *Protocol Options* to *default*.
5. In the *Security Profiles* section, make the following selections (for this example, these profiles have all already been created):

| | |
|---|---|
| **AntiVirus** | av |
| **Web Filter** | urlfiler |
| **Application Control** | app |
| **IPS** | Sensor-1 |
| **DLP Sensor** | dlp |
| **ICAP** | default |
| **Web Application Firewall** | default |
| **SSL Inspection** | deep-inspection |




6. Click *OK* to create the policy.

### To configure security profiles on a transparent proxy policy in the CLI:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 2
        set proxy transparent-web
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set webfilter-profile "urlfilter"
        set dlp-sensor "dlp"
        set ips-sensor "sensor-1"
        set application-list "app"
        set icap-profile "default"
        set waf-profile "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
    next
end
```

## FTP proxy

The security profiles supported by FTP proxy policies are:

- *AntiVirus*
- *Application Control*
- *IPS*
- *DLP Sensor*

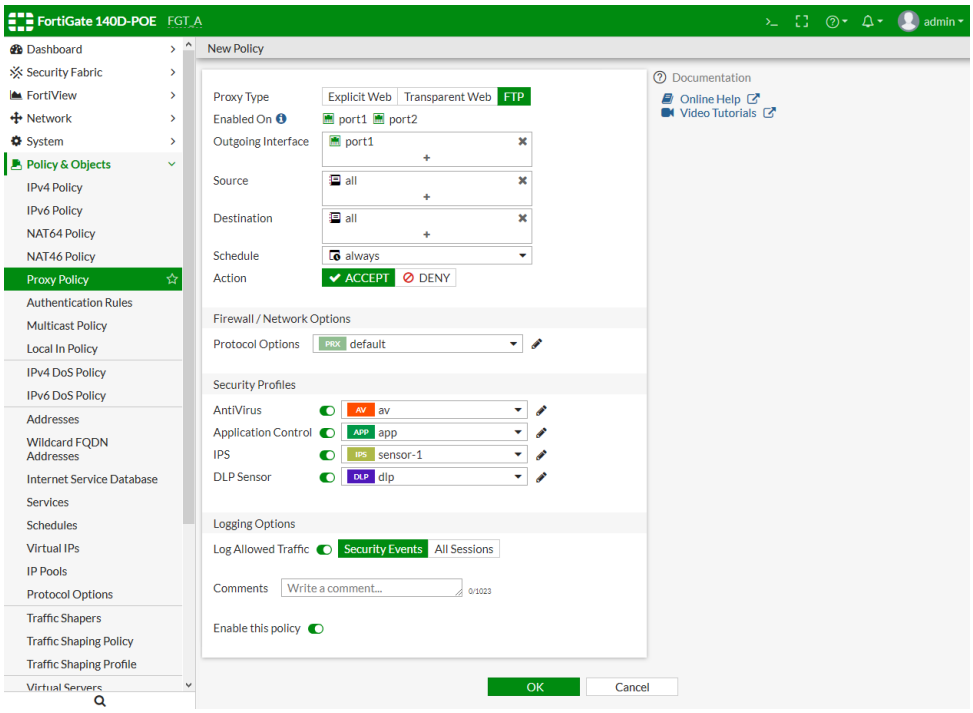
**To configure security profiles on an FTP proxy policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Proxy Type** | FTP |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port1 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |

4. In the *Firewall / Network Options* section, set *Protocol Options* to *default*.
5. In the *Security Profiles* section, make the following selections (for this example, these profiles have all already been created):

| | |
|---|---|
| **AntiVirus** | av |
| **Application Control** | app |
| **IPS** | Sensor-1 |
| **DLP Sensor** | dlp |




6. Click *OK* to create the policy.

**To configure security profiles on an FTP proxy policy in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 3
        set proxy ftp
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set dlp-sensor "dlp"
        set ips-sensor "sensor-1"
        set application-list "app"
    next
end
```

## Explicit proxy authentication

FortiGate supports multiple authentication methods. This topic explains using an external authentication server with Kerberos as the primary and NTLM as the fallback.

**To configure Explicit Proxy with authentication:**

1. Enable and configure the explicit proxy on page 429.
2. Configure the authentication server and create user groups on page 429.
3. Create an authentication scheme and rules on page 431.

4. Create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to the policy on page 432.
5. Verify the configuration on page 433.

## Enable and configure the explicit proxy

**To enable and configure explicit web proxy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*.
2. Enable *Explicit Web Proxy*.
3. Select *port2* as the *Listen on Interfaces* and set the *HTTP Port* to *8080*.
4. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
5. Click *Apply*.

**To enable and configure explicit web proxy in the CLI:**

```
config web-proxy explicit
    set status enable
    set ftp-over-http enable
    set socks enable
    set http-incoming-port 8080
    set ipv6-status enable
    set unknown-http-version best-effort
end
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
        set type physical
        set explicit-web-proxy enable
        set snmp-index 12
        end
    next
end
```

## Configure the authentication server and create user groups

Since we are using an external authentication server with Kerberos authentication as the primary and NTLM as the fallback, Kerberos authentication is configured first and then FSSO NTLM authentication is configured.

For successful authorization, the FortiGate checks if user belongs to one of the groups that is permitted in the security policy.

**To configure an authentication server and create user groups in the GUI:**

1. Configure Kerberos authentication:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
   b. Click *Create New*.

c. Set the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | ldap-kerberos |
| **Server IP** | 172.18.62.220 |
| **Server Port** | 389 |
| **Common Name Identifier** | cn |
| **Distinguished Name** | dc=fortinetqa,dc=local |

d. Click *OK*

2. Define Kerberos as an authentication service. This option is only available in the CLI.
3. Configure FSSO NTLM authentication:
FSSO NTLM authentication is supported in a Windows AD network. FSSO can also provide NTLM authentication service to the FortiGate unit. When a user makes a request that requires authentication, the FortiGate initiates NTLM negotiation with the client browser, but does not process the NTLM packets itself. Instead, it forwards all the NTLM packets to the FSSO service for processing.
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
   b. Click *Create New* and select *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent* from the *Endpoint/Identity* category.
   c. Set the *Name* to *FSSO*, *Primary FSSO Agent* to *172.16.200.220*, and enter a password.
   d. Click *OK*.
4. Create a user group for Kerberos authentication:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *Ldap-Group*, and *Type* to *Firewall*.
   d. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*, and set the *Remote Server* to the previously created *ldap-kerberos* server.
   e. Click *OK*.
5. Create a user group for NTLM authentication:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *NTLM-FSSO-Group*, *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*, and add *FORTINETQA/FSSO* as a member.
   d. Click *OK*.

**To configure an authentication server and create user groups in the CLI:**

1. Configure Kerberos authentication:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-kerberos"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
        set password **********
    next
end
```

2. Define Kerberos as an authentication service:

```
config user krb-keytab
    edit "http_service"
        set pac-data disable
        set principal "HTTP/FGT.FORTINETQA.LOCAL@FORTINETQA.LOCAL"
        set ldap-server "ldap-kerberos"
        set keytab
"BQIAAABFAAIAEEZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwABEhUVFAAFEZHVC5GT1JUSU5FVFFBLkxPQ0FMAAAAAQAAAAA
EAAEACKLCMonpitnVAAAARQACABBGT1JUSU5FVFFBLkxPQ0FMAARIVFRQABRGR1QuRk9SVElORVRRQS5MT0N
BTAAAAAEAAAAABAADAAiiwjKJ6YrZ1QAAAE0AAgAQRk9SVElORVRRQS5MT0NBTAAESFRUUAAURkdULkZPUlR
JTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwAAAABAAAAAAQAFwAQUHo9uqR9cSkzyxdzKCEXdwAAAF0AAgAQRk9SVElORVRRQS5MT0N
BTAAESFRUUAAURkdULkZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwAAAABAAAAAAQAEgAgzee854Aq1HhQiKJZvV4tL2Poy7h
MIARQpK8MCB//BIAAAABNAAIAEEZPUlRJTkVUUUEuTE9DQUwABEhUVFAAFEZHVC5GT1JUSU5FVFFBLkxPQ0F
MAAAAAQAAAAAEABEAEG49vHEiiBghr63Z/lnwYrU="
    next
end
```

3. Configure FSSO NTLM authentication:

```
config user fsso
    edit "1"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set password **********
    next
end
```

4. Create a user group for Kerberos authentication:

```
config user group
    edit "Ldap-Group"
        set member "ldap" "ldap-kerberos"
    next
end
```

5. Create a user group for NTLM authentication:

```
config user group
    edit "NTLM-FSSO-Group"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "FORTINETQA/FSSO"
    next
end
```

## Create an authentication scheme and rules

Explicit proxy authentication is managed by authentication schemes and rules. An authentication scheme must be created first, and then the authentication rule.

### To create an authentication scheme and rules in the GUI:

1. Create an authentication scheme:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Authentication Rules*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Authentication Schemes*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *Auth-scheme-Negotiate* and select *Negotiate* as the *Method*.
   d. Click *OK*.

2. Create an authentication rule:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Authentication Rules*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Authentication Rules*.
   c. Set the *Name* to *Auth-Rule*, *Source Address* to *all*, and *Protocol* to *HTTP*.
   d. Enable *Authentication Scheme*, and select the just created *Auth-scheme-Negotiate* scheme.
   e. Click *OK*.

**To create an authentication scheme and rules in the CLI:**

1. Create an authentication scheme:

```
config authentication scheme
    edit "Auth-scheme-Negotiate"
        set method negotiate       <<< Accepts both Kerberos and NTLM as fallback
    next
end
```

2. Create an authentication rule:

```
config authentication rule
    edit "Auth-Rule"
        set status enable
        set protocol http
        set srcaddr "all"
        set ip-based enable
        set active-auth-method "Auth-scheme-Negotiate"
        set comments "Testing"
    next
end
```

## Create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to the policy

**To create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to it in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Object* > *Proxy Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set *Proxy Type* to *Explicit Web* and *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
4. Set *Source* to *all*, and the just created user groups *NTLM-FSSO-Group* and *Ldap-Group*.
5. Also set *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *webproxy*, and *Action* to *ACCEPT*.
6. Click *OK*.

**To create an explicit proxy policy and assign a user group to it in the CLI:**

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "web"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
```

```
            set groups "NTLM-FSSO-Group" "Ldap-Group"
            set av-profile "av"
            set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
        next
    end
```

### Verify the configuration

Log in using a domain and system that would be authenticated using the Kerberos server, then enter the `diagnose wad user list` CLI command to verify:

```
# diagnose wad user list
ID: 8, IP: 10.1.100.71, VDOM: vdom1
  user name    : test1@FORTINETQA.LOCAL
  duration     : 389
  auth_type    : IP
  auth_method : Negotiate
  pol_id       : 1
  g_id         : 1
  user_based   : 0
  expire       : no
  LAN:
    bytes_in=4862 bytes_out=11893
  WAN:
    bytes_in=7844 bytes_out=1023
```

Log in using a system that is not part of the domain. The NTLM fallback server should be used:

```
# diagnose wad user list
ID: 2, IP: 10.1.100.202, VDOM: vdom1
  user name    : TEST31@FORTINETQA
  duration     : 7
  auth_type    : IP
  auth_method : NTLM
  pol_id       : 1
  g_id         : 5
  user_based   : 0
  expire       : no
  LAN:
    bytes_in=6156 bytes_out=16149
  WAN:
    bytes_in=7618 bytes_out=1917
```

## Transparent web proxy forwarding

In FortiOS, there is an option to enable proxy forwarding for transparent web proxy policies and regular firewall policies for HTTP and HTTPS.

In previous versions of FortiOS, you could forward proxy traffic to another proxy server (proxy chaining) with explicit proxy. Now, you can forward web traffic to the upstream proxy without having to reconfigure your browsers or publish a proxy auto-reconfiguration (PAC) file.

Once configured, the FortiGate forwards traffic generated by a client to the upstream proxy. The upstream proxy then forwards it to the server.

**To enable proxy forwarding using the CLI:**

1. Configure the web proxy forwarding server:

```
config web-proxy forward-server
    edit "PC_03"
        set ip 172.16.200.46
        set healthcheck enable
        set monitor "http://www.google.ca"
    next
end
```

2. Append the web proxy forwarding server to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "LAN to WAN"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic all
        set webproxy-forward-server "PC_03"
        set fsso disable
        set av-profile "av"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Upstream proxy authentication in transparent proxy mode

A downstream proxy FortiGate that needs to be authenticated by the upstream web proxy can use the basic authentication method to send its username and password, in the base64 format, to the upstream web proxy for authentication. If the authentication succeeds, web traffic that is forwarded from the downstream proxy FortiGate to the upstream proxy can be accepted and forwarded to its destinations.

In this example, a school has a FortiGate acting as a downstream proxy that is configured with firewall policies for each user group (students and staff). In each policy, a forwarding server is configured to forward the web traffic to the upstream web proxy.

The username and password that the upstream web proxy uses to authenticate the downstream proxy are configured on the forwarding server, and are sent to the upstream web proxy with the forwarded HTTP requests.

| | Username | Password |
|---|---|---|
| student.proxy.local:8080 | students | ABC123 |
| staff.proxy.local:8081 | staff | 123456 |

On the downstream FortiGate, configure forwarding servers with the usernames and passwords for authentication on the upstream web proxy, then apply those servers to firewall policies for transparent proxy. For explicit web proxy, the forwarding servers can be applied to proxy policies.

When the transparent proxy is configured, clients can access websites without configuring a web proxy in their browser. The downstream proxy sends the username and password to the upstream proxy with forwarded HTTP requests to be authenticated.

**To configure the forwarding server on the downstream FortiGate:**

```
config web-proxy forward-server
    edit "Student_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set addr-type fqdn
        set fqdn "student.proxy.local"
        set port 8080
        set username "student"
        set password ABC123
    next
    edit "Staff_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set addr-type fqdn
        set fqdn "staff.proxy.local"
        set port 8081
        set username "staff"
        set password 123456
    next
end
```

**To configure firewall policies for transparent proxy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "Vlan_Student"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "Student_Subnet"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set av-profile "av"
        set webproxy-forward-server "Student_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "Vlan_Staff"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "Staff_Subnet"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
```

```
        set av-profile "av"
        set webproxy-forward-server "Staff_Upstream_WebProxy"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Multiple dynamic header count

Multiple dynamic headers are supported for web proxy profiles, as well as Base64 encoding and the append/new options.

Administrators only have to select the dynamic header in the profile. The FortiGate will automatically display the corresponding static value. For example, if the administrator selects the `$client-ip` header, the FortiGate will display the actual client IP address.

The supported headers are:

| | |
|---|---|
| `$client-ip` | Client IP address |
| `$user` | Authentication user name |
| `$domain` | User domain name |
| `$local_grp` | Firewall group name |
| `$remote_grp` | Group name from authentication server |
| `$proxy_name` | Proxy realm name |

**To configure dynamic headers using the CLI:**

Since authentication is required, FSSO NTLM authentication is configured in this example.

1. Configure LDAP:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-kerberos"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set cnid "cn"a
        set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
        set password **********
    next
end
```

2. Configure FSSO:

```
config user fsso
    edit "1"
        set server "172.18.62.220"
        set password **********
    next
end
```

3. Configure a user group:

```
config user group
    edit "NTLM-FSSO"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "FORTINETQA/FSSO"
    next
end
```

4. Configure an authentication scheme:

```
config authentication scheme
    edit "au-sch-ntlm"
        set method ntlm
    next
end
```

5. Configure an authentication rule:

```
config authentication rule
    edit "au-rule-fsso"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set active-auth-method "au-sch-ntlm"
    next
end
```

6. Create a web proxy profile that adds a new dynamic and custom `Via` header:

```
config web-proxy profile
    edit "test"
        set log-header-change enable
        config headers
            edit 1
                set name "client-ip"
                set content "$client-ip"
            next
            edit 2
                set name "Proxy-Name"
                set content "$proxy_name"
            next
            edit 3
                set name "user"
                set content "$user"
            next
            edit 4
                set name "domain"
                set content "$domain"
            next
            edit 5
                set name "local_grp"
                set content "$local_grp"
            next
            edit 6
                set name "remote_grp"
                set content "$remote_grp"
            next
            edit 7
                set name "Via"
                set content "Fortigate-Proxy"
```

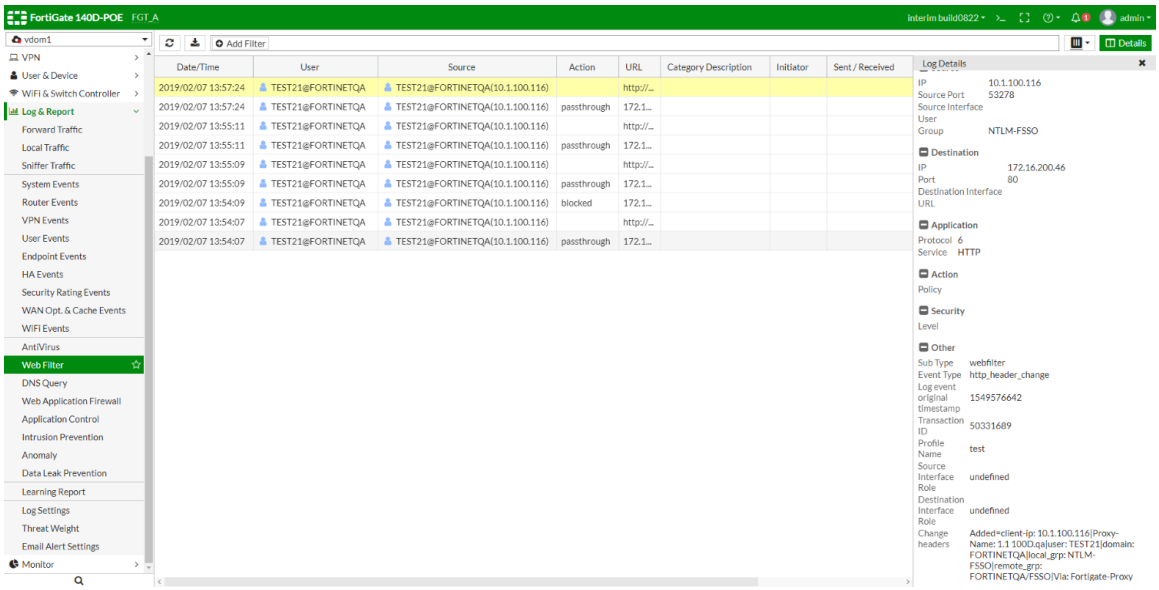
```
            next
        end
    next
end
```

7. In the proxy policy, append the web proxy profile created in the previous step:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "web"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "NTLM-FSSO"
        set webproxy-profile "test"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "av"
        set webfilter-profile "content"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
    next
end
```

8. Once traffic is being generated from the client, look at the web filter logs to verify that it is working.
The corresponding values for all the added header fields displays in the *Change headers* section at the bottom of the *Log Details* pane.

```
1: date=2019-02-07 time=13:57:24 logid="0344013632" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="http_header_change" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1549576642 policyid=1
transid=50331689 sessionid=1712788383 user="TEST21@FORTINETQA" group="NTLM-FSSO"
profile="test" srcip=10.1.100.116 srcport=53278 dstip=172.16.200.46 dstport=80
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port1" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTP" url="http://172.16.200.46/" agent="curl/7.22.0" chgheaders="Added=client-
ip: 10.1.100.116|Proxy-Name: 1.1 100D.qa|user: TEST21|domain: FORTINETQA|local_grp:
NTLM-FSSO|remote_grp: FORTINETQA/FSSO|Via: Fortigate-Proxy"
```




## Restricted SaaS access (Office 365, G Suite, Dropbox)

With the web proxy profile, you can specify access permissions for Microsoft Office 365, Google G Suite, and Dropbox. You can insert vendor-defined headers that restrict access to the specific accounts. You can also insert custom headers for any destination.

You can configure the web proxy profile with the required headers for the specific destinations, and then directly apply it to a policy to control the header's insertion.

**To implement Office 365 tenant restriction, G Suite account access control, and Dropbox network access control:**

1. Configure a web proxy profile according to the vendors' specifications:
   a. Define the traffic destination (service provider).
   b. Define the header name, defined by the service provider.
   c. Define the value that will be inserted into the traffic, defined by your settings.
2. Apply the web proxy profile to a policy.

The following example creates a web proxy profile for Office 365, G Suite, and Dropbox access control.



Due to vendors' changing requirements, this example may no longer comply with the vendors' official guidelines.

**To create a web proxy profile for access control using the CLI:**

1. Configure the web proxy profile:

```
config web-proxy profile
   edit "SaaS-Tenant-Restriction"
        set header-client-ip pass
```

```
        set header-via-request pass
        set header-via-response pass
        set header-x-forwarded-for pass
        set header-front-end-https pass
        set header-x-authenticated-user pass
        set header-x-authenticated-groups pass
        set strip-encoding disable
        set log-header-change disable
        config headers
            edit 1
                set name "Restrict-Access-To-Tenants"  <---header name defined by
Office365 spec. input EXACTLY as it is
                set dstaddr "Microsoft Office 365" <----built-in destination address for
Office365
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content "contoso.onmicrosoft.com,fabrikam.onmicrosoft.com"  <----
your tenants restriction configuration
            next
            edit 2
                set name "Restrict-Access-Context"  <----header name defined by
Office365 spec. input EXACTLY as it is
                set dstaddr "Microsoft Office 365"  <----build-in destination address
for Office365
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content "456ff232-35l2-5h23-b3b3-3236w0826f3d" <----your directory
ID can find in Azure portal
            next
            edit 3
                set name "X-GooGApps-Allowed-Domains"  <----header name defined by
Google G suite.
                set dstaddr "G Suite"  <---- built-in G Suite destination address
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content "abcd.com"    <----your domain restriction when you create G
Suite account
            next

            edit 4
                set name "X-Dropbox-allowed-Team-Ids" <----header defined by Dropbox
                set dstaddr "wildcard.dropbox.com"  <----build-in destination address
for Dropbox
                set action add-to-request
                set base64-encoding disable
                set add-option new
                set protocol https http
                set content "dbmid:FDFSVF-DFSDF"  <----your team-Id in Dropbox
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Apply the web proxy profile to a firewall policy:

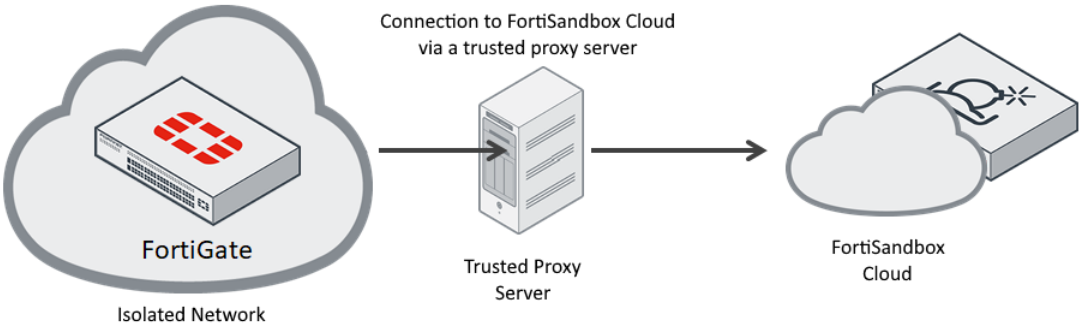
```
config firewall policy
     edit 1
                set name "WF"
                set srcintf "port10" "wifi"
                set dstintf "port9"
                set srcaddr "all"
                set dstaddr "all"
                set action accept
                set schedule "always"
                set service "ALL"
                set webproxy-profile "SaaS-Tenant-Restriction"
                set utm-status enable
                set utm-inspection-mode proxy
                set logtraffic all
                set webfilter-profile "blocktest2"
          set application-list "g-default"
                set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
                set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
                set nat enable
        next
end
```

**References**

- Office 365: Use tenant restrictions to manage access to SaaS cloud applications
- G Suite: Block access to consumer accounts
- Dropbox: Network control

## Explicit proxy and FortiSandbox Cloud

Explicit proxy connections can leverage FortiSandbox Cloud for advanced threat scanning and updates. This allows FortiGates behind isolated networks to connect to FortiCloud services.



**To configure FortiGuard services to communicate with an explicit proxy server:**

```
config system fortiguard
    set proxy-server-ip 172.16.200.44
    set proxy-server-port 3128
    set proxy-username "test1"
    set proxy-password ENC
Y0+KTg9UsILkv8+nDe+Pe3VlnlaHUMzLkfAXLATknW/xm/Xv7EdZHTnua1djM+waZA1vxCh8LV7Ci4sEhj/PABSTShSt
xskEn3E1+CjxviwVSljgF6AD+zJZF/+4jkspq+PogZT3LVO68+kqsPdU4rikuy1BbnsbZcPxC/MJyuIx7343bdKYqp+I
UprQUR2wf8tiMg==
end
```

**To verify the explicit proxy connection to FortiSandbox Cloud:**

```
# diagnose debug application forticldd -1
Debug messages will be on for 30 minutes.
# diagnose debug enable
[2942] fds_handle_request: Received cmd 23 from pid-2526, len 0
[40] fds_queue_task: req-23 is added to Cloud-sandbox-controller
[178] fds_svr_default_task_xmit: try to get IPs for Cloud-sandbox-controller
[239] fds_resolv_addr: resolve aptctrl1.fortinet.com
[169] fds_get_addr: name=aptctrl1.fortinet.com, id=32, cb=0x2bc089
[101] dns_parse_resp: DNS aptctrl1.fortinet.com -&gt; 172.16.102.21
[227] fds_resolv_cb: IP-1: 172.16.102.21
[665] fds_ctx_set_addr: server: 172.16.102.21:443
[129] fds_svr_default_pickup_server: Cloud-sandbox-controller: 172.16.102.21:443
[587] fds_https_start_server: server: 172.16.102.21:443
[579] ssl_new: SSL object is created
[117] https_create: proxy server 172.16.200.44 port:3128
[519] fds_https_connect: https_connect(172.16.102.21) is established.
[261] fds_svr_default_on_established: Cloud-sandbox-controller has connected to
ip=172.16.102.21
[268] fds_svr_default_on_established: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-23
[102] fds_pack_objects: number of objects: 1
[75] fds_print_msg: FCPC: len=109
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Command=RegionList
[81] fds_print_msg: Firmware=FG101E-FW-6.02-0917
[81] fds_print_msg: SerialNumber=FG101E4Q17002429
[81] fds_print_msg: TimeZone=-7
[75] fds_print_msg: http req: len=248
[81] fds_print_msg: POST https://172.16.102.21:443/FCPService HTTP/1.1
[81] fds_print_msg: User-Agent: Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows NT 5.1)
[81] fds_print_msg: Host: 172.16.102.21:443
[81] fds_print_msg: Cache-Control: no-cache
[81] fds_print_msg: Connection: close
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Type: application/octet-stream
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Length: 301
[524] fds_https_connect: http request to 172.16.102.21: header=248, ext=301.
[257] fds_https_send: sent 248 bytes: pos=0, len=248
[265] fds_https_send: 172.16.102.21: sent 248 byte header, now send 301-byte body
[257] fds_https_send: sent 301 bytes: pos=0, len=301
[273] fds_https_send: sent the entire request to server: 172.16.102.21:443
[309] fds_https_recv: read 413 bytes: pos=413, buf_len=2048
[332] fds_https_recv: received the header from server: 172.16.102.21:443, [HTTP/1.1 200
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
```

```
Content-Length: 279
Date: Thu, 20 Jun 2019 16:41:11 GMT
Connection: close]
[396] fds_https_recv: Do memmove buf_len=279, pos=279
[406] fds_https_recv: server: 172.16.102.21:443, buf_len=279, pos=279
[453] fds_https_recv: received a packet from server-172.16.102.21:443: sz=279, objs=1
[194] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[839] ssl_free: Done
[830] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
[481] fds_https_recv: obj-0: type=FCPR, len=87
[294] fds_svr_default_on_response: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-23
[75] fds_print_msg: fcpr:  len=83
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Response=202
[81] fds_print_msg: ResponseItem=Region:Europe,Global,Japan,US
[81] fds_print_msg: existing:Japan
[3220] aptctrl_region_res: Got rsp: Region:Europe,Global,Japan,US
[3222] aptctrl_region_res: Got rsp: Region existing:Japan
[439] fds_send_reply: Sending 28 bytes data.
[395] fds_free_tsk: cmd=23; req.noreply=1
# [136] fds_on_sys_fds_change: trace
[2942] fds_handle_request: Received cmd 22 from pid-170, len 0
[40] fds_queue_task: req-22 is added to Cloud-sandbox-controller
[587] fds_https_start_server: server: 172.16.102.21:443
[579] ssl_new: SSL object is created
[117] https_create: proxy server 172.16.200.44 port:3128
[519] fds_https_connect: https_connect(172.16.102.21) is established.
[261] fds_svr_default_on_established: Cloud-sandbox-controller has connected to
ip=172.16.102.21
[268] fds_svr_default_on_established: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-22
[102] fds_pack_objects: number of objects: 1
[75] fds_print_msg: FCPC: len=146
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Command=UpdateAPT
[81] fds_print_msg: Firmware=FG101E-FW-6.02-0917
[81] fds_print_msg: SerialNumber=FG101E4Q17002429
[81] fds_print_msg: TimeZone=-7
[81] fds_print_msg: TimeZoneInMin=-420
[81] fds_print_msg: DataItem=Region:US
[75] fds_print_msg: http req: len=248
[81] fds_print_msg: POST https://172.16.102.21:443/FCPService HTTP/1.1
[81] fds_print_msg: User-Agent: Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 6.0; Windows NT 5.1)
[81] fds_print_msg: Host: 172.16.102.21:443
[81] fds_print_msg: Cache-Control: no-cache
[81] fds_print_msg: Connection: close
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Type: application/octet-stream
[81] fds_print_msg: Content-Length: 338
[524] fds_https_connect: http request to 172.16.102.21: header=248, ext=338.
[257] fds_https_send: sent 248 bytes: pos=0, len=248
[265] fds_https_send: 172.16.102.21: sent 248 byte header, now send 338-byte body
[257] fds_https_send: sent 338 bytes: pos=0, len=338
[273] fds_https_send: sent the entire request to server: 172.16.102.21:443
[309] fds_https_recv: read 456 bytes: pos=456, buf_len=2048
[332] fds_https_recv: received the header from server: 172.16.102.21:443, [HTTP/1.1 200
Content-Type: application/octet-stream
Content-Length: 322
```

```
Date: Thu, 20 Jun 2019 16:41:16 GMT
Connection: close]
[396] fds_https_recv: Do memmove buf_len=322, pos=322
[406] fds_https_recv: server: 172.16.102.21:443, buf_len=322, pos=322
[453] fds_https_recv: received a packet from server-172.16.102.21:443: sz=322, objs=1
[194] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[839] ssl_free: Done
[830] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
[481] fds_https_recv: obj-0: type=FCPR, len=130
[294] fds_svr_default_on_response: server-Cloud-sandbox-controller handles cmd-22
[75] fds_print_msg: fcpr:  len=126
[81] fds_print_msg: Protocol=2.0
[81] fds_print_msg: Response=202
[81] fds_print_msg: ResponseItem=Server1:172.16.102.51:514
[81] fds_print_msg: Server2:172.16.102.52:514
[81] fds_print_msg: Contract:20210215
[81] fds_print_msg: NextRequest:86400
[615] parse_apt_contract_time_str: The APTContract is valid to Mon Feb 15 23:59:59 2021
[616] parse_apt_contract_time_str: FGT current local time is Thu Jun 20 09:41:16 2019
[3289] aptctrl_update_res: Got rsp: APT=172.16.102.51:514 APTAlter=172.16.102.52:514 next-
upd=86400
[395] fds_free_tsk: cmd=22; req.noreply=1
```

## Proxy chaining (web proxy forwarding servers)

For the explicit web proxy you can configure web proxy forwarding servers to use proxy chaining to redirect web proxy sessions to other proxy servers. Proxy chaining can be used to forward web proxy sessions from the FortiGate unit to one or more other proxy servers on your network or on a remote network. You can use proxy chaining to integrate the FortiGate explicit web proxy with a web proxy solution that you already have in place.

A FortiGate unit can forward sessions to most web proxy servers including a remote FortiGate unit with the explicit web proxy enabled. No special configuration of the explicit web proxy on the remote FortiGate unit is required.

You can deploy the explicit web proxy with proxy chaining in an enterprise environment consisting of small satellite offices and a main office. If each office has a FortiGate unit, users at each of the satellite offices can use their local FortiGate unit as an explicit web proxy server. The satellite office FortiGate units can forward explicit web proxy sessions to an explicit web proxy server at the central office. From here the sessions can connect to web servers on the Internet.

FortiGate proxy chaining does not support web proxies in the proxy chain authenticating each other.

The following examples assume explicit web proxy has been enabled.

**To enable explicit web proxy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. In the *Security Features* column, enable *Explicit Proxy*.
3. Configure the explicit web proxy settings. See Explicit web proxy on page 407.

**To add a web proxy forwarding server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*. The *Explicit Proxy* page opens.
2. In the *Web Proxy Forwarding Servers* section, click *Create New*.

3. Configure the server settings and click *OK*.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter the name of the forwarding server. |
| **Proxy Address Type** | Select the type of IP address of the forwarding server. A forwarding server can have an *FQDN* or *IP* address. |
| **Proxy Address** | Enter the IP address of the forwarding server. |
| **Port** | Enter the port number on which the proxy receives connections. Traffic leaving the FortiGate explicit web proxy for this server has its destination port number changed to this number. |
| **Server Down Action** | Select the action the explicit web proxy will take if the forwarding server is down.<br>• *Block*: Blocks the traffic if the remote server is down.<br>• *Use Original Server*: Forwards the traffic from the FortiGate to its destination as if no forwarding server is configured. |
| **Health Monitor** | Select to enable health check monitoring. |
| **Health Check Monitor Site** | Enter the address of a remote site. |

### Example

The following example adds a web proxy forwarding server named `fwd-srv` at address `proxy.example.com` and port `8080`.

**To add a web proxy forwarding server in the CLI:**

```
config web-proxy forward-server
   edit fwd-srv
      set addr-type fqdn
      set fqdn proxy.example.com
      set port 8080
   end
```

## Web proxy forwarding server monitoring and health checking

By default, a FortiGate unit monitors a web proxy forwarding server by forwarding a connection to the remote server every 10 seconds. The remote server is assumed to be down if it does not respond to the connection. FortiGate continues checking the server. The server is assumed to be back up when the server sends a response. If you enable health checking, the FortiGate unit attempts to get a response from a web server every 10 seconds by connecting through the remote forwarding server.

You can configure health checking for each remote server and specify a different website to check for each one.

If the remote server is found to be down you can configure the FortiGate unit to block sessions until the server comes back up or to allow sessions to connect to their destination, bypassing the remote forwarding server. You cannot configure the FortiGate unit to fail over to another remote forwarding server.

**To configure proxy server monitor and health checking in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Explicit Proxy*. The *Explicit Proxy* page opens.
2. In the *Web Proxy Forwarding Servers* section, select a server and click *Editi*.

3. Configure the *Server Down Action* and *Health Monitor* settings.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Server Down Action** | Select the action the explicit web proxy will take if the forwarding server is down.<br>• *Block*: Blocks the traffic if the remote server is down.<br>• *Use Original Server*: Forwards the traffic from the FortiGate to its destination as if no forwarding server configured. |
| **Health Monitor** | Select to enable health check monitoring. |
| **Health Check Monitor Site** | Enter the address of a remote site. |

4. Click *OK*.

**Example**

The following example enables health checking for a web proxy forwarding server and sets the server down option to bypass the forwarding server if it is down.

**To configure proxy server monitor and health checking in the CLI:**

```
config web-proxy forward-server
   edit fwd-srv
      set healthcheck enable
      set monitor http://example.com
      set server-down-option pass
   end
```

## Grouping forwarding servers and load balancing traffic to the servers

You can add multiple web proxy forwarding servers to a forwarding server group and then add the server group to an explicit web proxy policy instead of adding a single server. Forwarding server groups are created from the FortiGate CLI but can be added to policies from the web-based manager (or from the CLI).

When you create a forwarding server group you can select a load balancing method to control how sessions are load balanced to the forwarding servers in the server group. Two load balancing methods are available:

- *Weighted* load balancing sends more sessions to the servers with higher weights. You can configure the weight for each server when you add it to the group.
- *Least-session* load balancing sends new sessions to the forwarding server that is processing the fewest sessions.

When you create a forwarding server group you can also enable *affinity*. Enable affinity to have requests from the same client processed by the same server. This can reduce delays caused by using multiple servers for a single multi-step client operation. Affinity takes precedence over load balancing.

You can also configure the behavior of the group if all of the servers in the group are down. You can select to block traffic or you can select to have the traffic pass through the FortiGate explicit proxy directly to its destination instead of being sent to one of the forwarding servers.

## Example

The following example adds a forwarding server group that uses weighted load balancing to load balance traffic to three forwarding servers. Server weights are configured to send most traffic to `server2`. The group has `affinity` enabled and blocks traffic if all of the forward servers are down.

**To configure load balancing in the CLI:**

```
config web-proxy forward-server
   edit server_1
      set ip 172.20.120.12
      set port 8080
   next
   edit server_2
      set ip 172.20.120.13
      set port 8000
   next
   edit server_3
      set ip 172.20.120.14
      set port 8090
   next
   end
config web-proxy forward-server-group
   edit New-fwd-group
      set affinity enable
      set ldb-method weighted
      set group-down-option block
         config server-list
            edit server_1
               set weight 10
            next
            edit server_2
               set weight 40
            next
            edit server_3
               set weight 10
            next
   end
```

## Adding proxy chaining to an explicit web proxy policy

You can enable proxy chaining for web proxy sessions by adding a web proxy forwarding server or server group to an explicit web proxy policy. In a policy you can select one web proxy forwarding server or server group. All explicit web proxy traffic accepted by this security policy is forwarded to the specified web proxy forwarding server or server group.

**To add an explicit web proxy forwarding server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the policy settings.
3.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Proxy Type** | Explicit Web |
| **Outgoing Interface** | wan1 |
| **Source** | Internal_subnet |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | webproxy |
| **Action** | Accept |

4. Enable *Web Proxy Forwarding Server* and select the forwarding server, (for example,*fwd-srv*).
5. Click *OK*.

### Example

The following example adds a security policy that allows all users on the `10.31.101.0` subnet to use the explicit web proxy for connections through the `wan1` interface to the Internet. The policy forwards web proxy sessions to a remote forwarding server named *fwd-srv*.

**To add an explicit web proxy forwarding server in the CLI:**

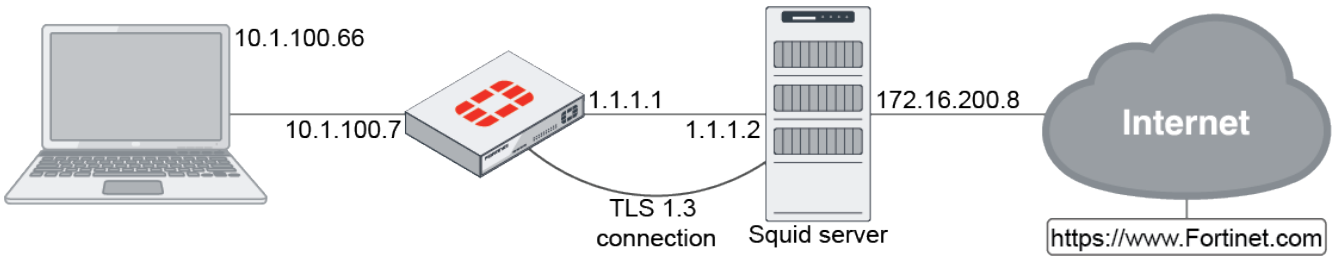
```
config firewall proxy-policy
   edit 0
      set proxy explicit-web
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "Internal_subnet"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set service "webproxy"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set webproxy-forward-server "fwd-srv"
   end
```

## Using TLS 1.3 with web proxy forward servers

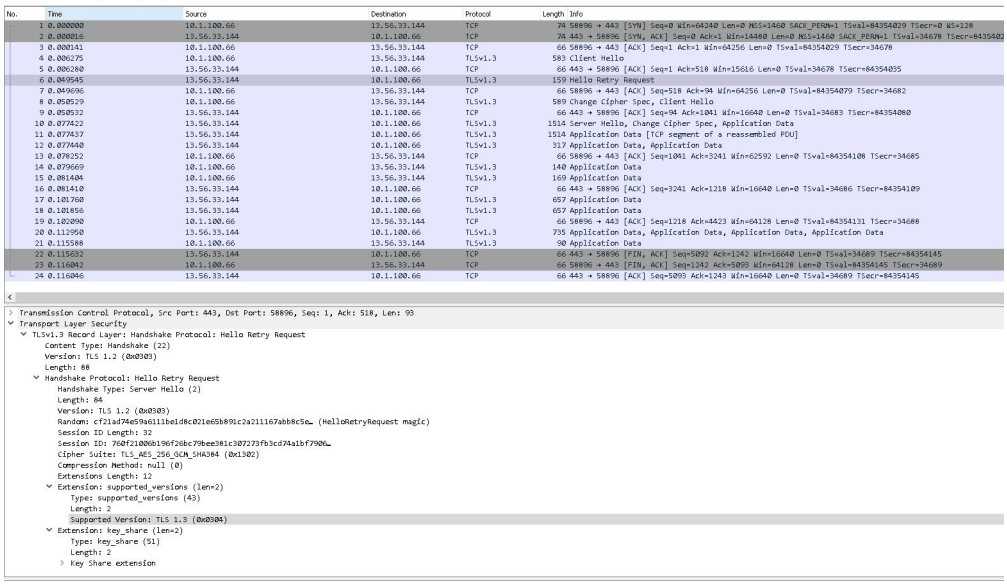
A FortiGate can handle TLS 1.3 traffic in both deep and certificate inspection modes.

### Example

The following example demonstrates that the Squid server and the FortiGate can handle TLS 1.3 traffic.




The following output from the Squid server demonstrates that the FortiGate supports TLS 1.3 traffic and forwards the hello retry request back to the client PC. The client PC then sends the client hello again, and the connection is successfully established.




## Agentless NTLM authentication for web proxy

In FortiOS, agentless Windows NT LAN Manager (NTLM) authentication includes support for the following items:

- Multiple servers
- Individual users

You can use multiple domain controller servers for the agentless NTLM. They can be used for load balancing and high service stability.

You can also use user-based matching in groups for Kerberos and agentless NTLM. In these scenarios, FortiOS matches the user's group information from an LDAP server.

**To support multiple domain controllers for agentless NTLM using the CLI:**

1. Configure an LDAP server:
```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap-kerberos"
      set server "172.18.62.177"
      set cnid "cn"
      set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
      set type regular
      set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
      set password **********
   next
end
```
2. Configure multiple domain controllers:
```
config user domain-controller
   edit "dc1"
      set ip-address 172.18.62.177
      config extra-server
         edit 1
            set ip-address 172.18.62.220
         next
```

```
      end
      set ldap-server "ldap-kerberos"
   next
end
```

3. Create an authentication scheme and rule:

```
config authentication scheme
   edit "au-ntlm"
      set method ntlm
      set domain-controller "dc1"
   next
end
config authentication rule
   edit "ru-ntlm"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set ip-based disable
      set active-auth-method "au-ntlm"
   next
end
```

4. In the proxy policy, append the user group for authorization:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
   edit 1
      set proxy explicit-web
      set dstintf "port1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set service "web"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set groups "ldap-group"
      set utm-status enable
      set av-profile "av"
      set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
   next
end
```

   This configuration uses a round-robin method. When the first user logs in, the FortiGate sends the authentication request to the first domain controller. Later when another user logs in, the FortiGate sends the authentication request to another domain controller.

5. Verify the behavior after the user successfully logs in:

```
# diagnose wad user list
ID: 1825, IP: 10.1.100.71, VDOM: vdom1
   user name : test1
   duration : 497
   auth_type : Session
   auth_method : NTLM
   pol_id : 1 g_id : 5
   user_based : 0 e
   xpire : 103
   LAN:
      bytes_in=2167 bytes_out=7657
   WAN:
      bytes_in=3718 bytes_out=270
```

**To support individual users for agentless NTLM using the CLI:**

1. Configure an LDAP server:
```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap-kerberos"
      set server "172.18.62.177"
      set cnid "cn"
      set dn "dc=fortinetqa,dc=local"
      set type regular
      set username "CN=root,CN=Users,DC=fortinetqa,DC=local"
      set password **********
   next
end
```
2. Configure the user group and allow user-based matching:
```
config user group
   edit "ldap-group"
      set member "ldap" "ldap-kerberos"
      config match
         edit 1
            set server-name "ldap-kerberos"
            set group-name "test1"
         next
      end
   next
end
```
3. Create an authentication scheme and rule:
```
config authentication scheme
   edit "au-ntlm"
      set method ntlm
      set domain-controller "dc1"
   next
end
config authentication rule
   edit "ru-ntlm"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set ip-based disable
      set active-auth-method "au-ntlm"
   next
end
```
4. In the proxy policy, append the user group for authorization:
```
config firewall proxy-policy
   edit 1
      set proxy explicit-web
      set dstintf "port1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set service "web"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set groups "ldap-group"
      set utm-status enable
      set av-profile "av"
      set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-custom"
   next
end
```

This implementation lets you configure a single user instead of a whole group. The FortiGate will now allow the user named `test1`.

**To verify the configuration using the CLI:**

```
diagnose wad user list
   ID: 1827, IP: 10.1.15.25, VDOM: vdom1
   user name : test1
   duration : 161
   auth_type : Session
   auth_method : NTLM
   pol_id : 1
   g_id : 5
   user_based : 0
   expire : 439
   LAN:
      bytes_in=1309 bytes_out=4410
   WAN:
      bytes_in=2145 bytes_out=544
```

# DHCP server

A DHCP server provides an address from a defined address range to a client on the network, when requested.

You can configure one or more DHCP servers on any FortiGate interface. A DHCP server dynamically assigns IP addresses to hosts on the network connected to the interface. The host computers must be configured to obtain their IP addresses using DHCP.

You can configure a FortiGate interface as a DHCP relay. The interface forwards DHCP requests from DHCP clients to an external DHCP server and returns the responses to the DHCP clients. The DHCP server must have appropriate routing so that its response packets to the DHCP clients arrive at the unit.

For more information about options, see:

- DHCP options on page 453
- IP address assignment with relay agent information option on page 454
- DHCP client options on page 456

## Configure DHCP on the FortiGate

**To add a DHCP server on the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit an interface.
3. Enable the *DHCP Server* option and configure the settings.

**To add a DHCP server on the CLI:**

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
```

```
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 192.168.1.2
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port1"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 192.168.1.1
                set end-ip 192.168.1.1
            next
            edit 2
                set start-ip 192.168.1.3
                set end-ip 192.168.1.254
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
        set tftp-server "172.16.1.2"
    next
end
```

## DHCP options

When adding a DHCP server, you can include DHCP codes and options. The DHCP options are BOOTP vendor information fields that provide additional vendor-independent configuration parameters to manage the DHCP server. For example, you might need to configure a FortiGate DHCP server that gives out a separate option as well as an IP address, such as an environment that needs to support PXE boot with Windows images.

The option numbers and codes are specific to the application. The documentation for the application indicates the values to use. Option codes are represented in a option value/HEX value pairs. The option is a value between 1 and 255.

You can add up to three DHCP code/option pairs per DHCP server.

For detailed information about DHCP options, see RFC 2132, DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions.

**To configure option 252 with value http://192.168.1.1/wpad.dat using the CLI:**

```
config system dhcp server
    edit <server_entry_number>
        set option1 252 687474703a2f2f3139322e3136382e312e312f777061642e646174
    next
end
```

### Option 82

The DHCP relay agent information option (option 82 in RFC 3046) helps protect the FortiGate against attacks such as spoofing (forging) of IP addresses and MAC addresses, and DHCP IP address starvation.

This option is disabled by default. However, when `dhcp-relay-service` is enabled, `dhcp-relay-agent-option` becomes enabled.

**To configure the DHCP relay agent option using the CLI:**

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
```

```
        set vdom root
        set dhcp-relay-service enable
        set dhcp-relay-ip <ip>
        set dhcp-relay-agent-option enable
        set vlanid <id>
    next
end
```

See IP address assignment with relay agent information option on page 454 for an example.

### Option 42

This option specifies a list of the NTP servers available to the client by IP address.

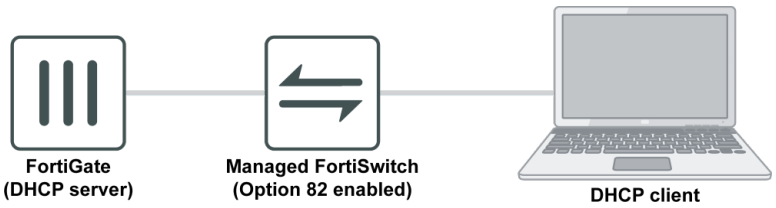
```
config system dhcp server
    edit 2
        set ntp-service {local | default | specify}
        set ntp-server1 <class_ip>
        set ntp-server2 <class_ip>
        set ntp-server3 <class_ip>
    next
end
```

The NTP service options include:

- `local`: The IP address of the interface that the DHCP server is added to becomes the client's NTP server IP address.
- `default`: Clients are assigned the FortiGate's configured NTP servers.
- `specify`: Specify up to three NTP servers in the DHCP server configuration.

## IP address assignment with relay agent information option

Option 82 (DHCP relay information option) helps protect the FortiGate against attacks such as spoofing (or forging) of IP and MAC addresses, and DHCP IP address starvation.




The following CLI variables are included in the `config system dhcp server` > `config reserved-address` command:

| | |
|---|---|
| `circuit-id-type {hex \| string}` | DHCP option type; hex or string (default). |
| `circuit-id <value>` | Option 82 circuit ID of the client that will get the reserved IP address.<br>Format: *vlan-mod-port*<br>• vlan: VLAN ID (2 bytes)<br>• mod: 1 = snoop, 0 = relay (1 byte)<br>• port: port number (1 byte) |

| | |
|---|---|
| `remote-id-type {hex \| string}` | DHCP option type; hex or string (default). |
| `remote-id <value>` | Option 82 remote ID of the client that will get the reserved IP address.<br>Format: the MAC address of the client. |
| `type {mac \| option82}` | The DHCP reserved address type; mac (default) or option82. |

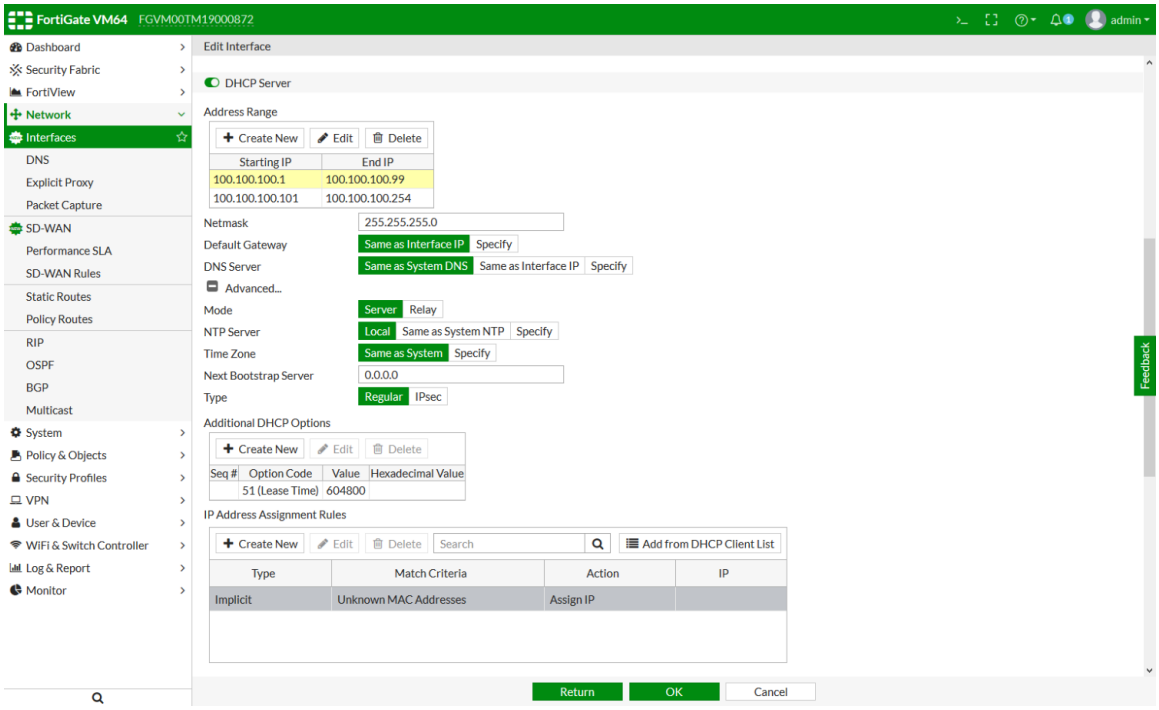
**To create an IP address assignment rule using option 82 in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit an existing port, or create a new one.



The port *Role* must be *LAN* or *Undefined*.

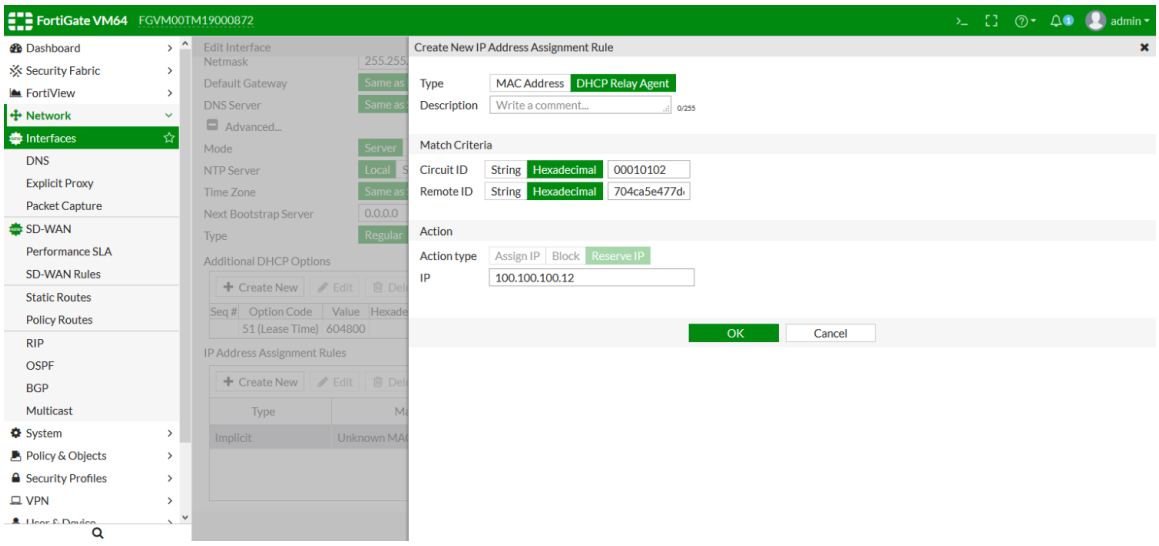
3. Enable *DHCP Server*.
4. Configure the address ranges and other settings as needed.
5. Click + to expand the *Advanced* options.
6. In the *IP Address Assignment Rules* table, click *Create New*.




The *Create New IP Address Assignment Rule* pane opens.

7. Configure the new rule:
   a. For the *Type*, select *DHCP Relay Agent*.
   b. Enter the *Circuit ID* and *Remote ID*.
   c. Enter the *IP* address that will be reserved.

8. Click *OK*.




**To create an IP address assignment rule using option 82 with the CLI:**

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "port4"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 100.100.100.1
                set end-ip 100.100.100.99
            next
            edit 2
                set start-ip 100.100.100.101
                set end-ip 100.100.100.254
            next
        end
        config reserved-address
            edit 1
                set type option82
                set ip 100.100.100.12
                set circuit-id-type hex
                set circuit-id "00010102"
                set remote-id-type hex
                set remote-id "704ca5e477d6"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## DHCP client options

When an interface is in DHCP addressing mode, DHCP client options can be configured in the CLI. For example, a vendor class identifier (usually DCHP client option 60) can be specified so that a request can be matched by a specific DHCP offer.

Multiple options can be configured, but any options not recognized by the DHCP server are discarded.

**To configure client option 60 - vendor class identifier:**

```
config system interface
    edit port1
        set vdom vdom1
        set mode dhcp
        config client-options
            edit 1
                set code 60
                set type hex
                set value aabbccdd
            next
        end
        set type physical
        set snmp-index 4
    next
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| `code <integer>` | DHCP client option code (0 - 255, default = 0).<br>See Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) Parameters for a list of possible options. |
| `type {hex \| string \| ip \| fqdn}` | DHCP client option type (default = hex). |
| `value <string>` | DHCP client option value. |
| `ip <ip>` | DHCP client option IP address. This option is only available when `type` is `ip`. |

# Static routes

The following topics include information about static routes:

- Deploying the Security Fabric on page 162
- Security Fabric over IPsec VPN on page 174
- Viewing and controlling network risks via topology view on page 160
- Adding a static route on page 470
- Configure VDOM-A on page 685
- Configure VDOM-A on page 694
- Adding IPsec aggregate members in the GUI on page 1224
- IPsec VPN in an HA environment on page 1219
- IPsec VPN to Azure with virtual network gateway on page 1162
- FortiGate as dialup client on page 1177
- ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol on page 1280
- ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol on page 1290
- ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol on page 1298

- Basic site-to-site VPN with pre-shared key on page 1132
- Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1137
- Tunneled Internet browsing on page 1205
- FortiGate multiple connector support on page 1652

## Policy routes

The following topics include information about policy routes:

- IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1228
- Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules on page 537

## RIP

The following topics include information about Routing Information Protocol (RIP):

- ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol on page 1298

## OSPF

The following topics include information about Open Shortest Path First (OSPF):

- OSPF with IPsec VPN for network redundancy on page 1211
- IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1228
- ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol on page 1290

## BGP

The following topics include information about Border Gateway Protocol (BGP):

- Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules on page 537
- BGP multiple path support on page 540
- Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules on page 542
- Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors on page 549
- IBGP and EBGP support in VRF on page 555
- ADVPN and shortcut paths on page 557
- SD-WAN related diagnose commands on page 641
- IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway on page 1155

- ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol on page 1280
- Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication on page 1487

# Direct IP support for LTE/4G

Direct IP is a public IP address that is assigned to a computing device, which allows the device to directly access the internet.

When an LTE modem is enabled in FortiOS, a DHCP interface is created. As a result, the FortiGate can acquire direct IP (which includes IP, DNS, and gateway) from the LTE network carrier.

Since some LTE modems require users to input the access point name (APN) for the LTE network, the LTE modem configuration allows you to set the APN.



LTE modems can only be enabled by using the CLI.

**To enable direct IP support using the CLI:**

1. Enable the LTE modem:

```
config system lte-modem
  set status enable
end
```

2. Check that the LTE interface was created:

```
config system interface
  edit "wwan"
    set vdom "root"
    set mode dhcp
    set status down
    set distance 1
    set type physical
    set snmp-index 23
  next
end
```

Shortly after the LTE modem joins its carrier network, `wwan` is enabled and granted direct IP:

```
# config system interface
(interface) # edit wwan
(wwan) # get
name                : wwan
....
ip                  : 100.112.75.43 255.255.255.248
....
status              : up
....
defaultgw           : enable
DHCP Gateway        : 100.112.75.41
```

```
Lease Expires       : Thu Feb 21 19:33:27 2019
dns-server-override : enable
Acquired DNS1       : 184.151.118.254
Acquired DNS2       : 70.28.245.227
....
```

PCs can reach the internet via the following firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
....
  edit 5
    set name "LTE"
    set srcintf "port9"
    set dstintf "wwan"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set utm-status enable
    set fsso disable
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

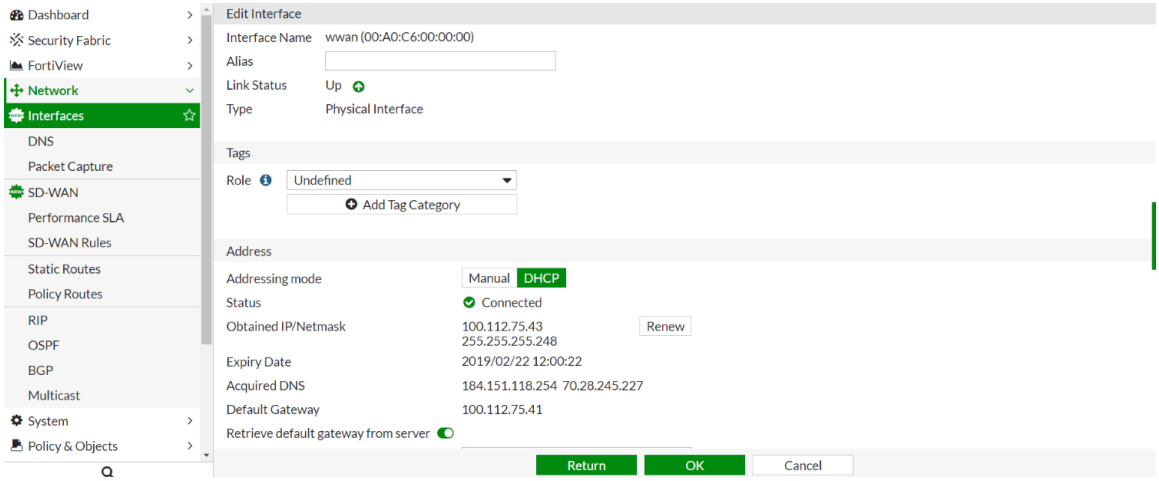
## Sample LTE interface

When an LTE modem is enabled, you can view the LTE interface in the GUI and check the acquired IP, DNS, and gateway.

**To view the LTE interface in the GUI:**

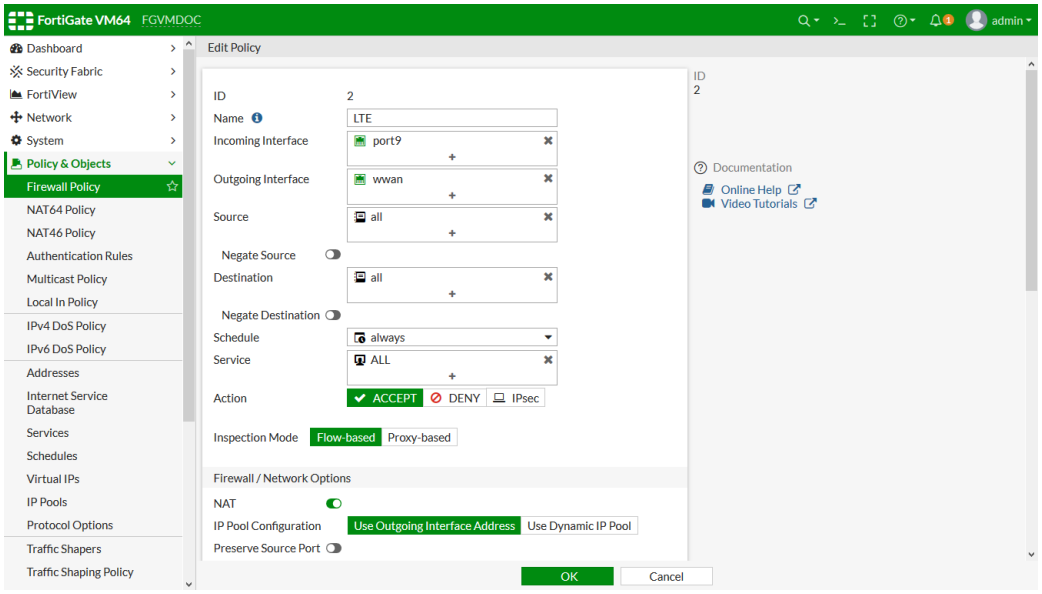
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Double-click the LTE interface to view the properties.
3. Look in the *Address* section to view the:
   a. *Obtained IP*
   b. *Acquired DNS*
   c. *Default Gateway*

4. Click *Return*.




**To configure the firewall policy that uses the LTE interface:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Double-click the LTE policy. The *Edit Policy* pane opens.
3. In the *Outgoing Interface* field, select the interface (`wwan` in this example).
4. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.




5. Click *OK*.

## Limitations

- Most LTE modems have a preset APN in their SIM card. Therefore, the APN does not need to be set in the FortiOS configuration. In cases where the internet cannot be accessed, consult with your carrier and set the APN in the LTE modem configuration (for example, inet.bell.ca):

```
config system lte-modem
  set status enable
  set apn "inet.bell.ca"
end
```

- Some models, such as the FortiGate 30E-3G4G, have built-in LTE modems. In this scenario, the LTE modem is enabled by default. The firewall policy via the LTE interface is also created by default. Once you plug in a SIM card, your network devices can connect to the internet.

  **Sample FortiGate 30E-3G4G default configuration:**

```
config system lte-modem
  set status enable
  set extra-init ''
  set manual-handover disable
  set force-wireless-profile 0
  set authtype none
  set apn ''
  set modem-port 255
  set network-type auto
  set auto-connect disable
  set gpsd-enabled disable
  set data-usage-tracking disable
  set gps-port 255
end

config firewall policy
....
  edit 3
    set srcintf "internal"
    set dstintf "wwan"
    set srcaddr "all"
    set dstaddr "all"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
    set nat enable
  next
end
```

# LLDP reception

Natively, device detection can scan LLDP as a source for device identification. However, the FortiGate does not read or store the full information. Enabling LLDP reception allows the FortiGate to receive and store LLDP messages, learn about active neighbors, and makes the LLDP information available via the CLI, REST API, and SNMP.

You will need to enable `device-identification` at the interface level, and then `lldp-reception` can be enabled on three levels: globally, per VDOM, or per interface.

**To configure device identification on an interface:**

```
config system interface
    edit <port>
```

```
        set device-identification enable
    next
end
```

**To configure LLDP reception globally:**

```
config system global
    set lldp-reception enable
end
```

**To configure LLDP reception per VDOM:**

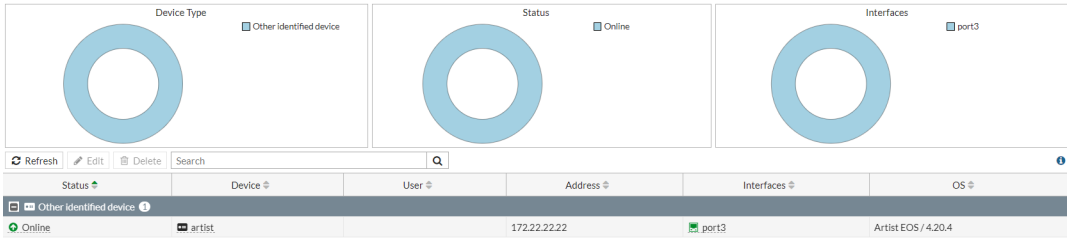
```
config system setting
    set lldp-reception enable
end
```

**To configure LLDP reception per interface:**

```
config system interface
    edit <port>
        set lldp-reception enable
    next
end
```

**To view the LLDP information in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget, and click *Expand to Full Screen*.




**To view the received LLDP information in the CLI:**

```
# diagnose user device list
    hosts
      vd root/0 44:0a:a0:0a:0a:0a gen 3 req S/2
        created 10290s gen 1 seen 0s port3 gen 1
        ip 172.22.22.22 src lldp
        type 20 'Other Network Device' src lldp id 155 gen 2
        os 'Artist EOS ' version '4.20.4' src lldp id 155
        host 'artist' src lldp
```

**To view additional information about LLDP neighbors and ports:**

```
# diagnose lldprx neighbor {summary | details | clear}
# diagnose lldprx port {details | summary | neighbor | filter}
# diagnose lldprx port neighbor {summary | details}
```

Note that the port index in the output corresponds to the port index from the following command:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list port2 port3 | grep index
      if=port2 family=00 type=1 index=4 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
      if=port3 family=00 type=1 index=5 mtu=1500 link=0 master=0
```

**To view the received LLDP information in the REST API:**


```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "mac":"90:9c:9c:c9:c9:90",
      "chassis_id":"90:9C:9C:C9:C9:90",
      "port":19,
      "port_id":"port12",
      "port_desc":"port12",
      "system_name":"S124DN3W00000000",
      "system_desc":"FortiSwitch-124D v3.6.6,build0416,180515 (GA)",
      "ttl":120,
      "addresses":[
        {
          "type":"ipv4",
          "address":"192.168.1.99"
        }
      ]
    }
  ],
  "vdom":"root",
  "path":"network",
  "name":"lldp",
  "action":"neighbors",
  "status":"success",
  "serial":"FG201E4Q00000000",
  "version":"v6.2.0",
  "build":866
}
```

```
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "name":"port1",
      "rx":320,
      "neighbors":1
    }
  ],
  "vdom":"root",
  "path":"network",
  "name":"lldp",
  "action":"ports",
  "mkey":"port1",
  "status":"success",
  "serial":"FG201E4Q00000000",
  "version":"v6.2.0",
  "build":866
}
```

# Route leaking between VRFs

This feature provides generic route leaking capabilities between locally defined VRFs (VRF-lite). If VRF leaking is not configured, VRFs are isolated.

In this example, interface *npu0_vlink0* belongs to VRF 10 and is used to leak 1.2.2.2/32 from VRF10 to VRF20, and interface *npu0_vlink1* belongs to VRF 20 and is used to leak 172.28.1.0/24 from VRF20 to VRF10. So, VRF10 can see 172.28.1.0/24, and VRF20 can see 1.2.2.2/32.

**To configure VRF leaking:**

1. Configure the prefix list and route map to filter what will be leaked:

```
config router prefix-list
    edit "1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 1.2.2.2 255.255.255.255
            next
        end
    next
    edit "2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 172.28.1.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end

config router route-map
    edit "from10"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "1"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "from20"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "2"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the VDOM link interfaces for the leaking and routing:

```
config system interface
    edit "npu0_vlink0"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 10
        set ip 172.16.201.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http
    next
```

```
    edit "npu0_vlink1"
        set vdom "root"
        set vrf 20
        set ip 172.16.201.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
    next
end
```

3. Configure the BGP VRF leak:

```
config router bgp
    set as 44
    set router-id 4.4.4.4
    config neighbor
        edit "172.16.200.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 11
            set update-source "port1"
        next
        edit "172.16.202.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 22
            set update-source "port3"
        next
    end
    config vrf-leak
        edit "10"
            config target
                edit "20"
                    set route-map "from10"
                    set interface "npu0_vlink0"
                next
            end
        next
        edit "20"
            config target
                edit "10"
                    set route-map "from20"
                    set interface "npu0_vlink1"
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

4. Confirm that the filtered routed leaked as expected:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Routing table for VRF=10
B       1.1.1.1/32 [20/0] via 172.16.200.1, port1, 01:03:16
B       1.2.2.2/32 [20/0] via 172.16.200.1, port1, 01:03:16
B       172.28.1.0/24 [20/0] via 172.16.201.2, npu0_vlink0, 00:00:17
<<<<<<<<<<<<<<Leaked into VRF10 from VRF20

Routing table for VRF=20
B       1.2.2.2/32 [20/0] via 172.16.201.1, npu0_vlink1, 00:00:15   <<<<<<<<<<<<<<Leaked
into VRF 20 from VRF10
```

```
B       172.28.1.0/24 [20/0] via 172.16.202.1, port3, 01:03:16
B       172.28.2.0/24 [20/0] via 172.16.202.1, port3, 01:03:16
```

# SD-WAN

SD-WAN is a software-defined approach to managing Wide-Area Networks (WAN). It allows you to offload internet-bound traffic, meaning that private WAN services remain available for real-time and mission critical applications. This added flexibility improves traffic flow and reduces pressure on the network.

SD-WAN platforms create hybrid networks that integrate broadband and other network services into the corporate WAN while maintaining the performance and security of real-time and sensitive applications.

SD-WAN with Application Aware Routing can measure and monitor the performance of multiple services in a hybrid network. It uses application routing to offer more granular control of where and when an application uses a specific service, allowing better use of the overall network.

Some of the key benefits of SD-WAN include:

- Reduced cost with transport independence across MPLS, 3G/4G LTE, and others.
- Improve business application performance thanks to increased availability and agility.
- Optimized user experience and efficiency with SaaS and public cloud applications.

SD-WAN has 4 objects:

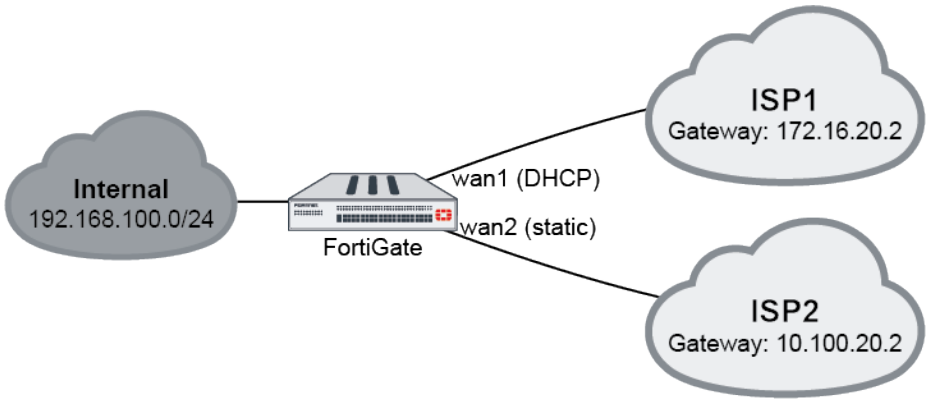
- **SD-WAN zones**
  SD-WAN is divided into zones. SD-WAN member interfaces are assigned to zones, and zones are used in policies as source and destination interfaces. You can define multiple zones to group SD-WAN interfaces together, allowing logical groupings for overlay and underlay interfaces. See SD-WAN zones on page 479.
- **SD-WAN members**
  Also called interfaces, SD-WAN members are the ports and interfaces that are used to run traffic. At least one interface must be configured for SD-WAN to function; up to 255 member interfaces can be configured. See Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 469.
- **Performance SLAs**
  Also called health-checks, performance SLAs are used to monitor member interface link quality, and to detect link failures. They can be used to remove routes, and to reroute traffic when an SD-WAN member cannot detect the server. They can also be used in SD-WAN rules to select the preferred member interface for forwarding traffic. See Factory default health checks on page 487, Performance SLA - link monitoring on page 484, and Performance SLA - SLA targets on page 486.
- **SD-WAN rules**
  Also called services, SD-WAN rules are used to control path selection. Specific traffic can be dynamically sent to the best link, or use a specific route. There are five modes:
  - *auto*: Assign interfaces a priority based on quality.
  - *manual*: Assign interfaces a priority manually.
  - *priority*: Assign interfaces a priority based on the link-cost-factor quality of the interface.
  - *sla*: Assign interfaces a priority based on selected SLA settings.
  - *load-balance*: Distribute traffic among all available links based on the load balance algorithm.

  See Implicit rule on page 490, SD-WAN rules - best quality on page 493, SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA) on page 496, and SD-WAN rules - maximize bandwidth (SLA) on page 499.

## SD-WAN quick start

This section provides an example of how to start using SD-WAN for load balancing and redundancy.

In this example, two ISP internet connections, wan1 (DHCP) and wan2 (static), use SD-WAN to balance traffic between them at 50% each.




1. Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 469
2. Adding a static route on page 470
3. Selecting the implicit SD-WAN algorithm on page 470
4. Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 471
5. Link monitoring and failover on page 472
6. Results on page 473
7. Configuring SD-WAN in the CLI on page 477

## Configuring the SD-WAN interface

First, SD-WAN must be enabled and member interfaces must be selected and added to a zone. The selected FortiGate interfaces can be of any type (physical, aggregate, VLAN, IPsec, and others), but must be removed from any other configurations on the FortiGate.

In this step, two interfaces are configured and added to the default SD-WAN zone (virtual-wan-link) as SD-WAN member interfaces. This example uses a mix of static and dynamic IP addresses; your deployment could also use only one or the other.

Once the SD-WAN members are created and added to a zone, the zone can be used in firewall policies, and the whole SD-WAN can be used in static routes.

**To configure SD-WAN members:**

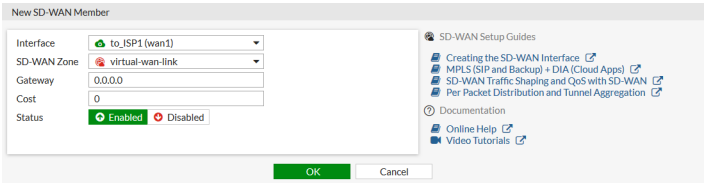
1. Configure the wan1 and wan2 interfaces. See Interface settings on page 357 for details.
   a. Set the wan1 interface *Addressing mode* to *DHCP* and *Distance* to *10*.

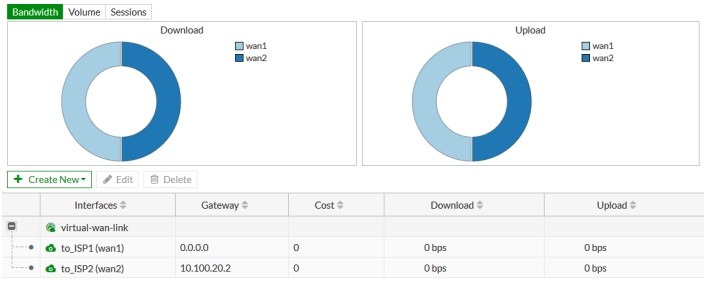
   By default, a DHCP interface has a distance of 5, and a static route has a distance of 10. It is important to account for this when configuring your SD-WAN for 50/50 load balancing by setting the DHCP interface's distance to 10.

   b. Set the wan2 interface *IP/Netmask* to *10.100.20.1 255.255.255.0*.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*. Routing for each SD-WAN interface is defined here.
3. Click *Create New* > *SD-Member*.

4. Set the *Interface* to *wan1*.
5. Leave *SD-WAN Zone* as *virtual-wan-link*.
6. As wan1 uses DHCP, leave *Gateway* set to *0.0.0.0*.
   If IPv6 visibility is enabled in the GUI, an IPv6 gateway can also be added for each member. See Feature visibility on page 761 for details.
7. Leave *Cost* as *0*.
   The *Cost* field is used by the Lowest Cost (SLA) strategy. The link with the lowest cost is chosen to pass traffic. The lowest possible *Cost* is *0*.




8. Set *Status* to *Enable*, and click *OK*.
9. Repeat the above steps for wan2, setting *Gateway* to the ISP's gateway: *10.100.20.2*.

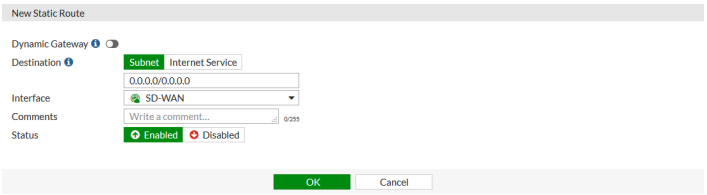



## Adding a static route

You must configure a default route for the SD-WAN. The default gateways for each SD-WAN member interface do not need to be defined in the static routes table. FortiGate will decide what route or routes are preferred using Equal Cost Multi-Path (ECMP) based on distance and priority.

**To create a static route for SD-WAN:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Static Route* page opens.
3. Set *Destination* to *Subnet*, and leave the IP address and subnet mask as *0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0*.
4. From the *Interface* drop-down list, select *virtual-wan-link*.




5. Ensure that *Status* is *Enabled*.
6. Click *OK*.

## Selecting the implicit SD-WAN algorithm

SD-WAN rules define specific routing options to route traffic to an SD-WAN member.

If no routing rules are defined, the default *Implicit* rule is used. It can be configured to use one of five different load balancing algorithms. See Implicit rule on page 490 for more details and examples.

This example shows four methods to equally balance traffic between the two WAN connections. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* and edit the *sd-wan* rule to select the method that is appropriate for your requirements.

- *Source IP* (CLI command: `source-ip-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members according to a hash algorithm based on the source IP addresses.
- *Session* (`weight-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members by the session numbers ratio among its members. Use weight 50 for each of the 2 members.
- *Source-Destination IP* (`source-dest-ip-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members according to a hash algorithm based on the source and destination IP addresses.
- *Volume* (`measured-volume-based`):
  Select this option to balance traffic equally between the SD-WAN members according to the bandwidth ratio among its members.

## Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN

SD-WAN zones can be used in policies as source and destination interfaces. Individual SD-WAN members cannot be used in policies.

You must configure a policy that allows traffic from your organization's internal network to the SD-WAN zone. Policies configured with the SD-WAN zone apply to all SD-WAN interface members in that zone.

**To create a firewall policy for SD-WAN:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Policy* page opens.

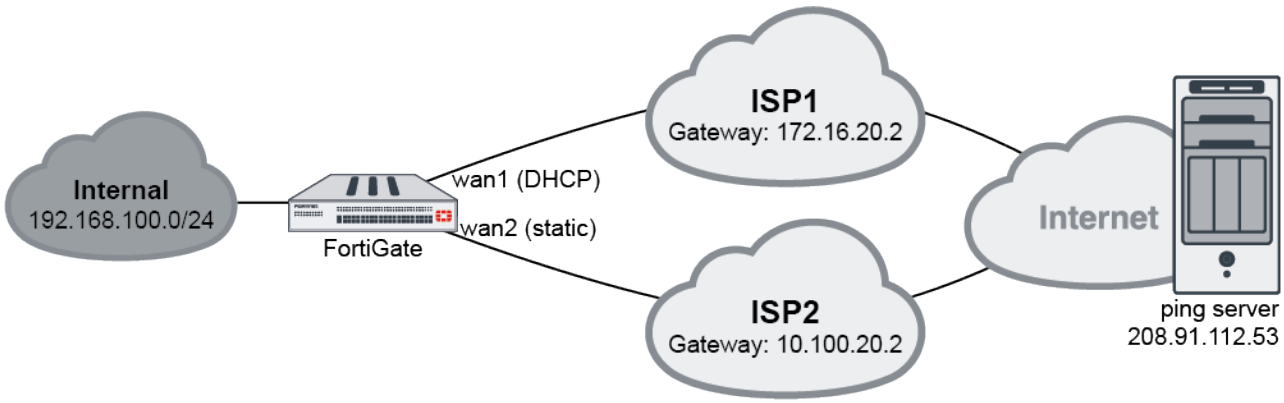
3. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the policy. |
| **Incoming Interface** | *internal* |
| **Outgoing Interface** | *virtual-wan-link* |
| **Source** | *all* |
| **Destination** | *all* |
| **Schedule** | *always* |
| **Service** | *ALL* |
| **Action** | *ACCEPT* |
| **Firewall / Network Options** | Enable *NAT* and set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*. |
| **Security Profiles** | Apply profiles as required. |
| **Logging Options** | Enable *Log Allowed Traffic* and select *All Sessions*. This allows you to verify results later. |

4. Enable the policy, then click *OK*.

## Link monitoring and failover

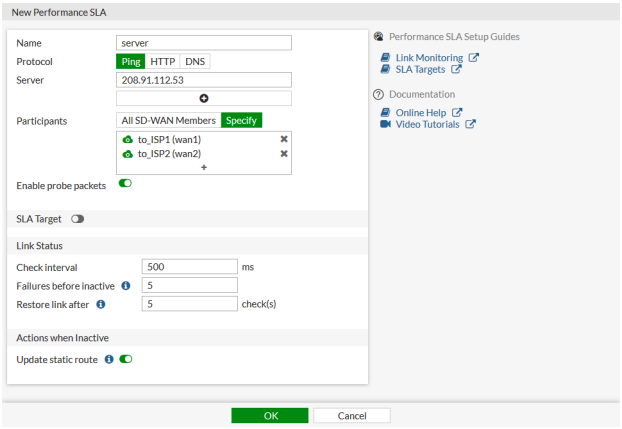
Performance SLA link monitoring measures the health of links that are connected to SD-WAN member interfaces by sending probing signals through each link to a server, and then measuring the link quality based on latency, jitter, and packet loss. If a link is broken, the routes on that link are removed and traffic is routed through other links. When the link is working again, the routes are re-enabled. This prevents traffic being sent to a broken link and lost.




In this example, the detection server IP address is 208.91.112.53. A performance SLA is created so that, if ping fails per the metrics defined, the routes to that interface are removed and traffic is detoured to the other interface. The ping protocol is used, but other protocols could also be selected as required.

**To configure a performance SLA:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
2. Click *Create New*. The *New Performance SLA* page opens.
3. Enter a name for the SLA and set *Protocol* to *Ping*.
4. In the *Server* field, enter the detection server IP address (208.91.112.53 in this example).
5. In the *Participants* field, select *Specify* and add wan1 and wan2.




   SLA targets are not required for link monitoring.
6. Configure the required metrics in *Link Status*.
7. Ensure that *Update static route* is enabled. This disables static routes for the inactive interface and restores routes on recovery.
8. Click *OK*.

## Results

The following GUI pages show the function of the SD-WAN and can be used to confirm that it is setup and running correctly:

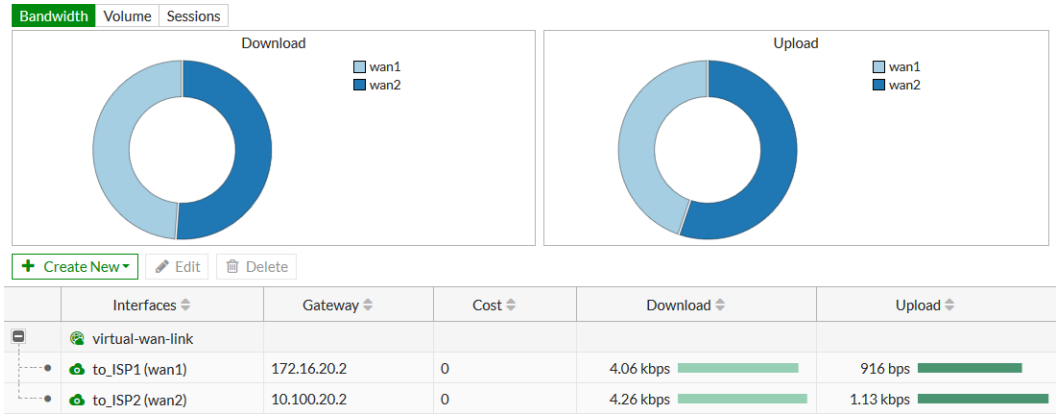
- Interface usage on page 473
- Routing table on page 476
- Firewall policy on page 477

### Interface usage

Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* to review the SD-WAN interfaces' usage.

## Bandwidth

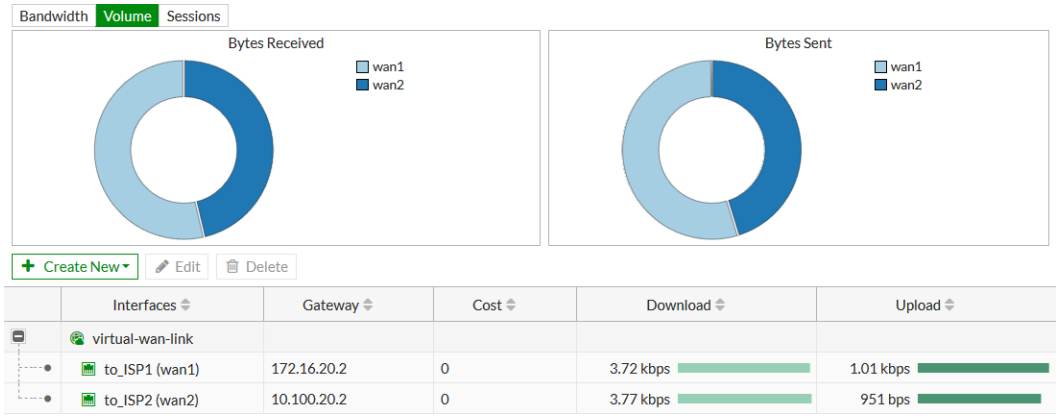
Select *Bandwidth* to view the amount of downloaded and uploaded data for each interface.




| Interfaces | Gateway | Cost | Download | Upload |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| virtual-wan-link | | | | |
| to_ISP1 (wan1) | 172.16.20.2 | 0 | 4.06 kbps | 916 bps |
| to_ISP2 (wan2) | 10.100.20.2 | 0 | 4.26 kbps | 1.13 kbps |

## Volume

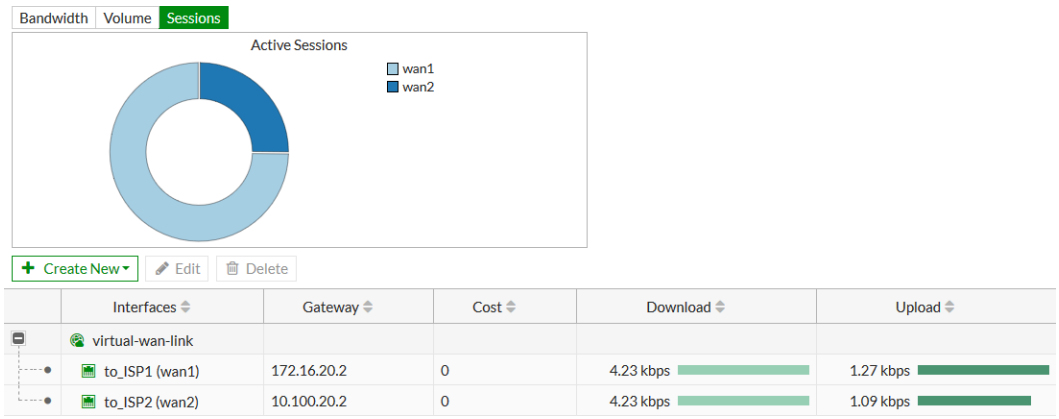
Select *Volume* to see donut charts of the received and sent bytes on the interfaces.




| Interfaces | Gateway | Cost | Download | Upload |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| virtual-wan-link | | | | |
| to_ISP1 (wan1) | 172.16.20.2 | 0 | 3.72 kbps | 1.01 kbps |
| to_ISP2 (wan2) | 10.100.20.2 | 0 | 3.77 kbps | 951 bps |

## Sessions

Select *Sessions* to see a donut chart of the number of active sessions on each interface.



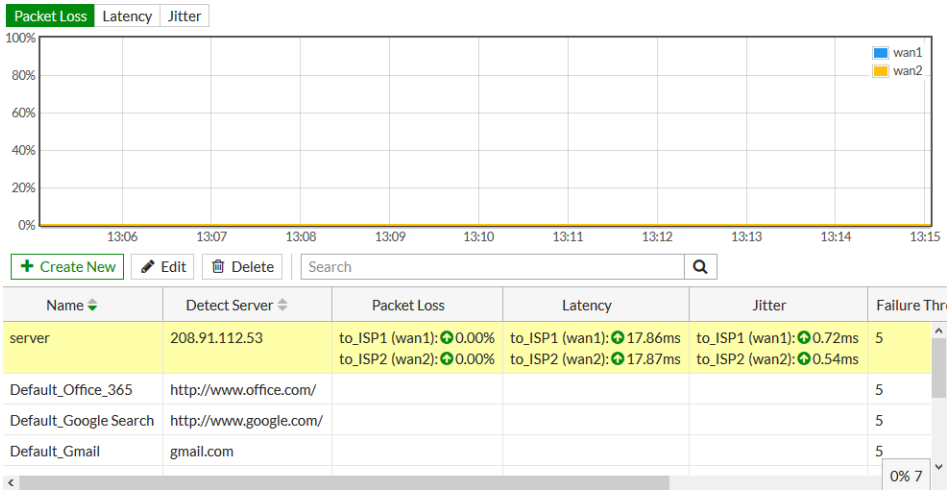

| Interfaces | Gateway | Cost | Download | Upload |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| virtual-wan-link | | | | |
| to_ISP1 (wan1) | 172.16.20.2 | 0 | 4.23 kbps | 1.27 kbps |
| to_ISP2 (wan2) | 10.100.20.2 | 0 | 4.23 kbps | 1.09 kbps |

## Performance SLA

Go to *Network > Performance SLA* and select the SLA from the table (*server* in this example) to view the packet loss, latency, and jitter on each SD-WAN member in the health check server.

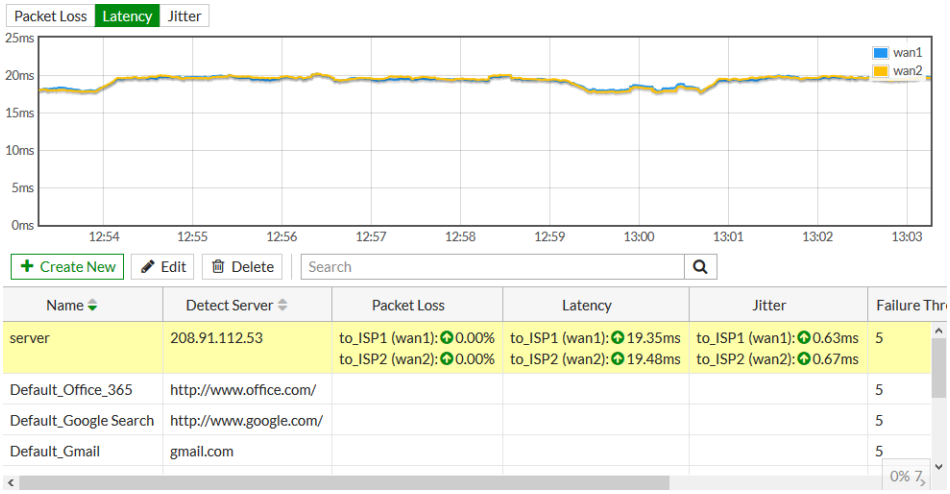
## Packet loss

Select *Packet Loss* to see the percentage of packets lost for each member.



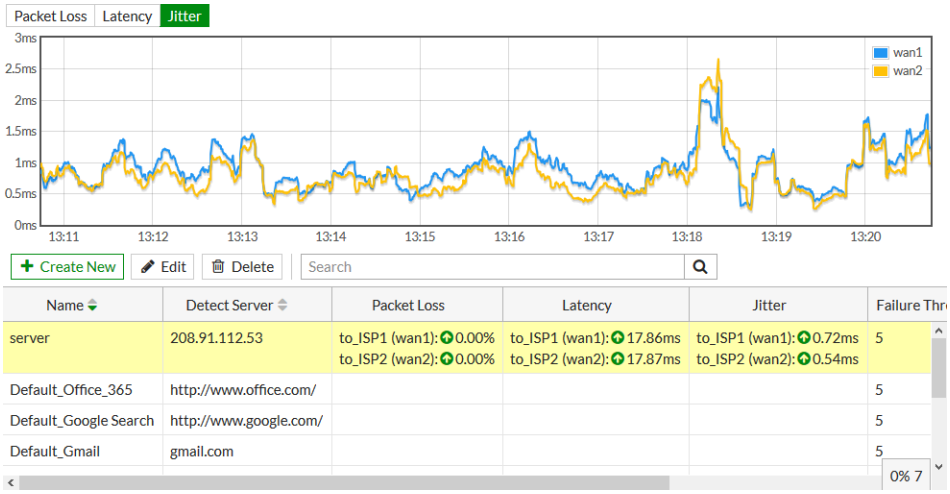

## Latency

Select *Latency* to see the current latency, in milliseconds, for each member.



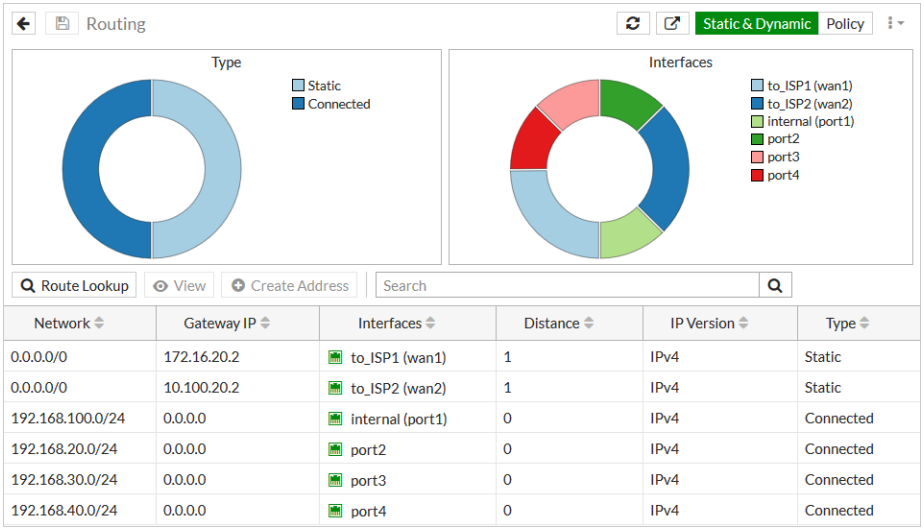
### Jitter

Select *Jitter* to see the jitter, in milliseconds, for each member.



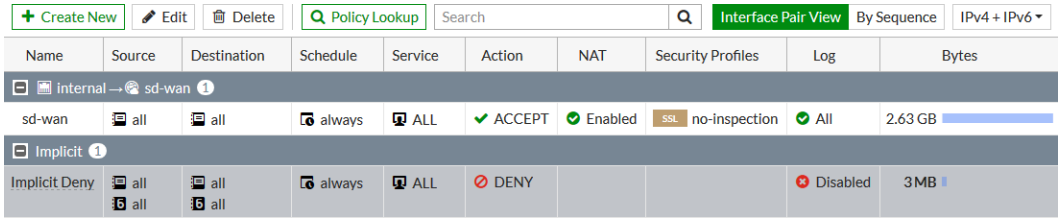

## Routing table

Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *Static & Dynamic Routing* widget to review all static and dynamic routes. For more information about the widget, see Static & Dynamic Routing Monitor on page 66.



### Firewall policy

Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to review the SD-WAN policy.




## Configuring SD-WAN in the CLI

This example can be entirely configured using the CLI.

**To configure SD-WAN in the CLI:**

1. Configure the wan1 and wan2 interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias to_ISP1
        set mode dhcp
        set distance 10
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias to_ISP2
        set ip 10.100.20.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Enable SD-WAN and add the interfaces as members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set gateway 10.100.20.2
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

3. Create a static route for SD-WAN:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set sdwan enable
    next
end
```

4. Select the implicit SD-WAN algorithm:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode {source-ip-based | weight-based | source-dest-ip-based |
measured-volume-based}
end
```

5. Create a firewall policy for SD-WAN:

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policy_id>
        set name <policy_name>
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile <profile_name>
        set av-profile <profile_name>
        set webfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set dnsfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set emailfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set ips_sensor <sensor_name>
        set application-list <app_list>
        set voip-profile <profile_name>
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    next
end
```

6. Configure a performance SLA:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "server"
            set server "208.91.112.53"
            set update-static-route enable
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

### Results

**To view the routing table:**

```
# get router info routing-table all

Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 172.16.20.2, wan1
                  [1/0] via 10.100.20.2, wan2
C       10.100.20.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
C       172.16.20.2/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, internal
```

**To diagnose the Performance SLA status:**

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(server):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(15.247), jitter(5.231) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.621), jitter(6.905) sla_map=0x0
```

# SD-WAN zones

SD-WAN is divided into zones. SD-WAN member interfaces are assigned to zones, and zones are used in policies as source and destination interfaces.

You can define multiple zones to group SD-WAN interfaces together, allowing logical groupings for overlay and underlay interfaces. The zones are used in firewall policies to allow for more granular control. SD-WAN members cannot be used directly in policies.

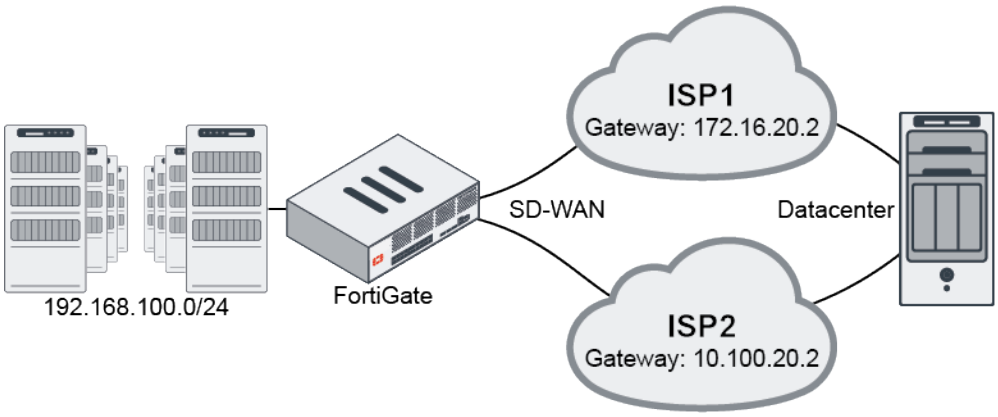
Static routes use the entire SD-WAN, not just individual zones or members.



In the CLI:

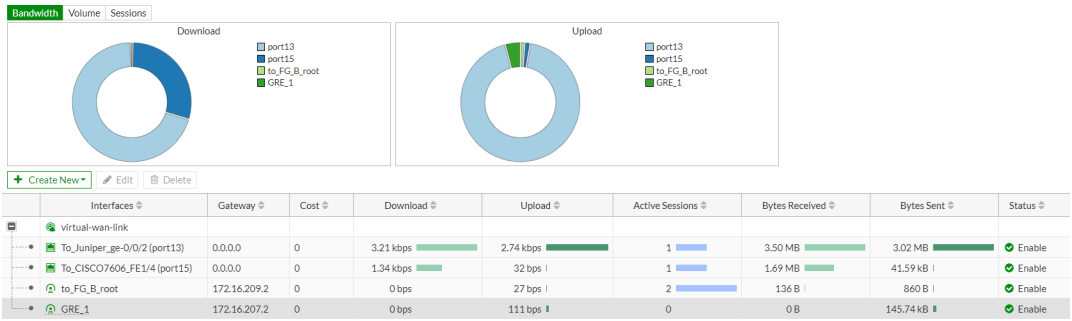
- `config system sdwan` has replaced `config system virtual-wan-link`.
- `diagnose sys sdwan` has replaced `diagnose sys virtual-wan-link`.
- When configuring a static route, the `sdwan` variable has replaced the `virtual-wan-link` variable.

When the Security Fabric is configured, SD-WAN zones are included in the Security Fabric topology views.

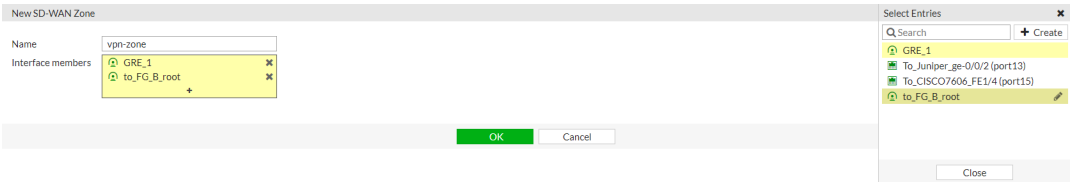



### To create an SD-WAN zone in the GUI:

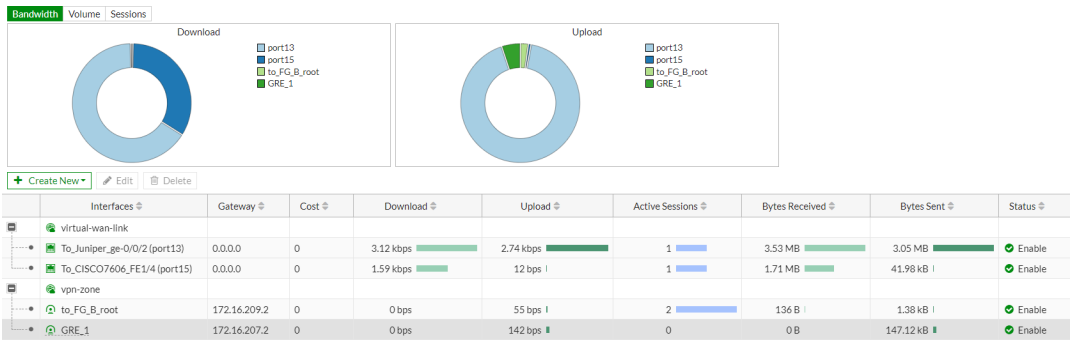
1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
   The default SD-WAN zone is *virtual-wan-link*.




2. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Zone*.
3. Enter a name for the new zone.
4. If SD-WAN members have already been created, add the required members to the zone.
   Members can also be added to the zone after it has been created by editing the zone, or when creating or editing the member.

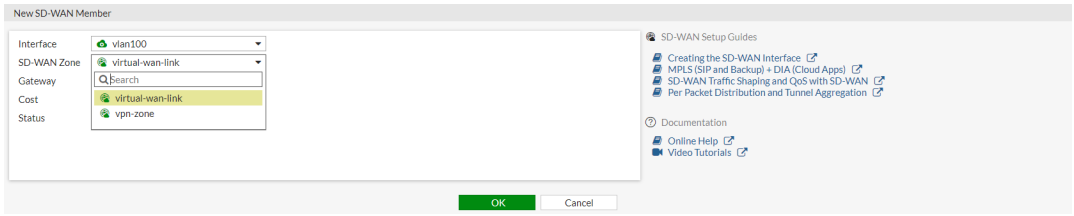



5. Click *OK*.

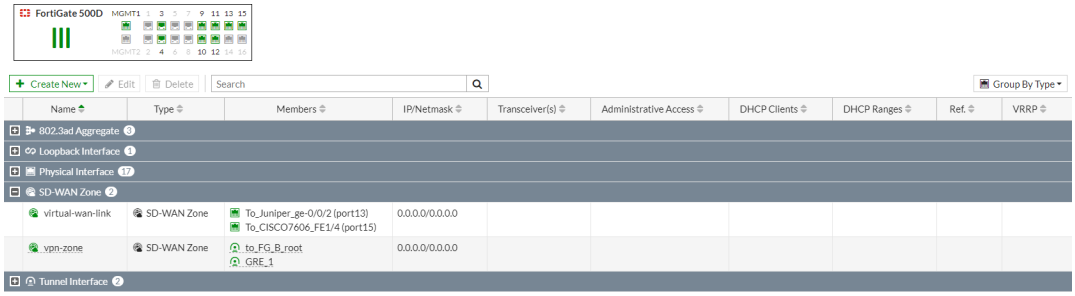


**To create an SD-WAN interface member in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
3. Select an interface.
   The interface can also be left as *none* and selected later, or click *+VPN* to create an IPsec VPN for the SD-WAN member.
4. Select the SD-WAN zone that the member will join. A member can also be moved to a different zone at any time.

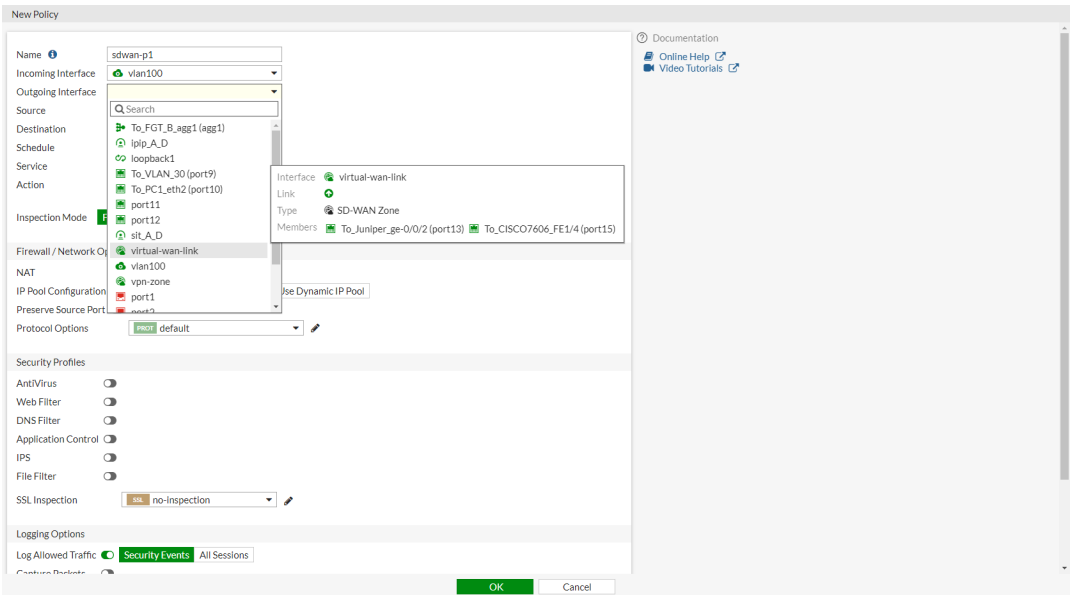



5. Set the *Gateway*, *Cost*, and *Status* as required.
6. Click *OK*.
   The interface list at *Network* > *Interfaces* shows the SD-WAN zones and their members.




**To create a policy using the SD-WAN zone in the GUI:**

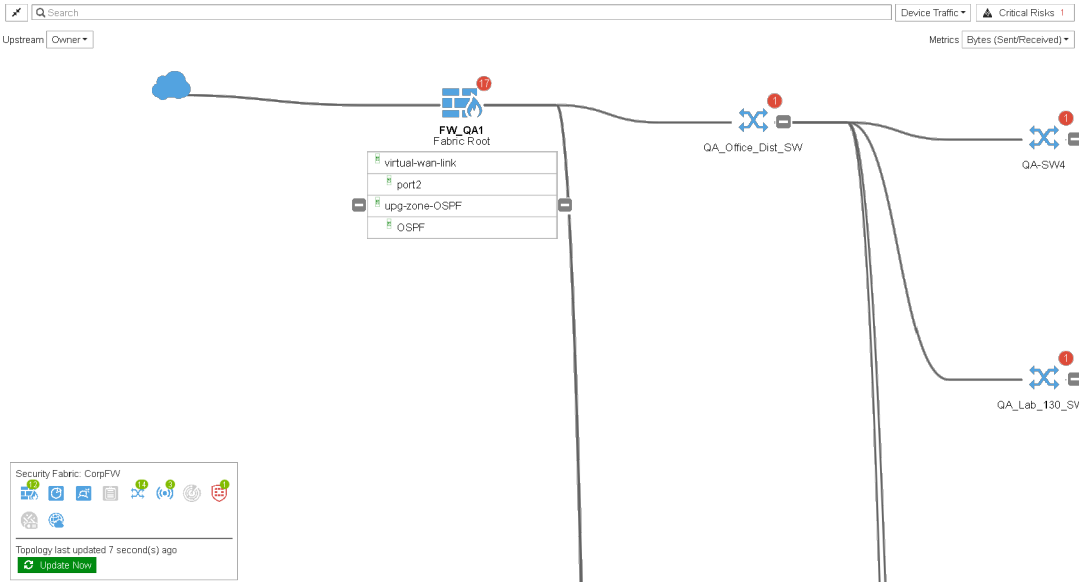
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, *Policy & Objects* > *Proxy Policy*, or *Policy & Objects* > *Security Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* .
3. Configure the policy settings as needed, selecting an SD-WAN zone or zones for the incoming and/or outgoing interface.

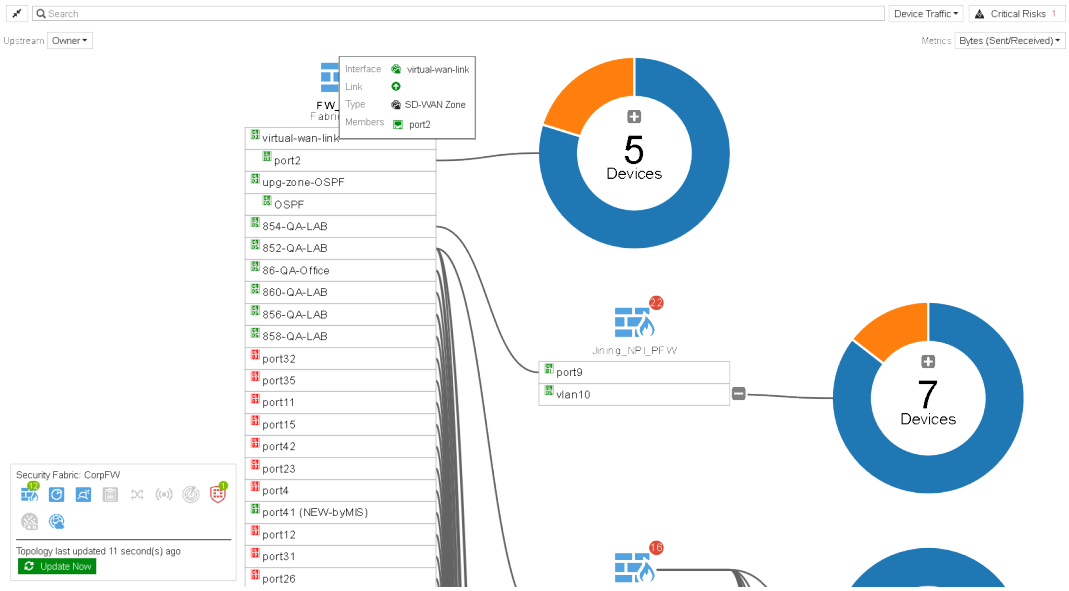



4. Click *OK*.

### To view SD-WAN zones in a Security Fabric topology:

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*. The SD-WAN zones and their members are shown.






**To configure SD-WAN in the CLI:**

1. Enable SD-WAN and create a zone:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config zone
        edit "vpn-zone"
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure SD-WAN members and add them to a zone:

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "to_FG_B_root"
            set zone "vpn-zone"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "GRE_1"
            set zone "vpn-zone"
        next
    end
end
```

**To create a policy using the SD-WAN zone in the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit <policy_id>
        set name <policy_name>
        set srcintf internal
        set dstintf vpn-zone
```

```
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set service ALL
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile <profile_name>
        set av-profile <profile_name>
        set webfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set dnsfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set emailfilter-profile <profile_name>
        set ips_sensor <sensor_name>
        set application-list <app_list>
        set voip-profile <profile_name>
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
        set status enable
    next
end
```

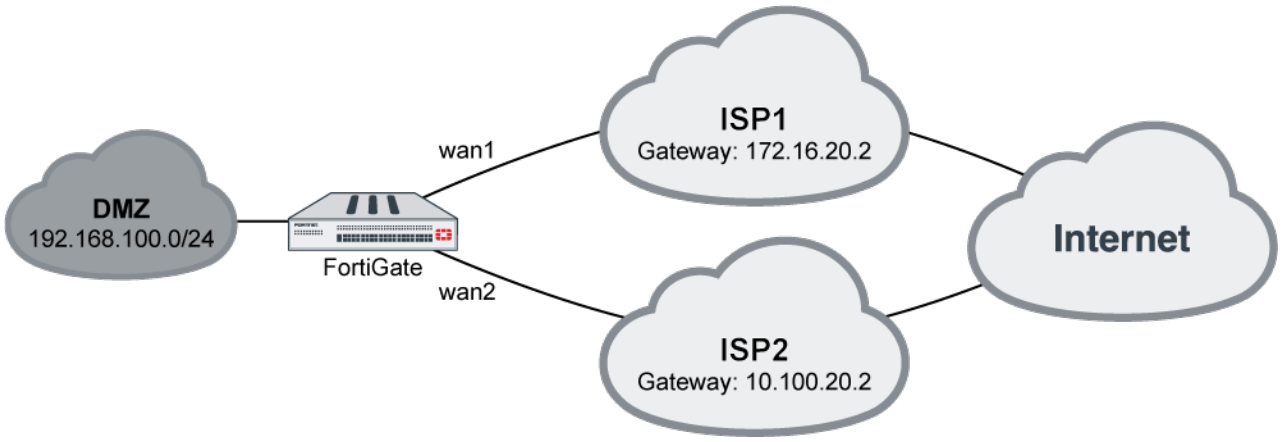
# WAN path control

The following topics provide instructions on configuring WAN path control:


- Performance SLA - link monitoring on page 484
- Performance SLA - SLA targets on page 486
- Factory default health checks on page 487
- Implicit rule on page 490
- SD-WAN rules - best quality on page 493
- SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA) on page 496
- SD-WAN rules - maximize bandwidth (SLA) on page 499
- Application steering using SD-WAN rules on page 501
- SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS on page 513
- DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN on page 518


## Performance SLA - link monitoring

Performance SLA link monitoring measures the health of links that are connected to SD-WAN member interfaces by sending probing signals through each link to a server and measuring the link quality based on latency, jitter, and packet loss. If a link is broken, the routes on that link are removed, and traffic is routed through other links. When the link is working again, the routes are reenabbled. This prevents traffic being sent to a broken link and lost.



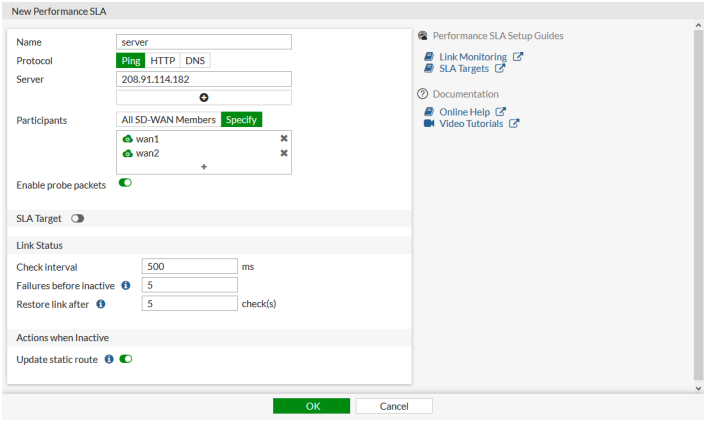

In this example:

- Interfaces wan1 and wan2 connect to the internet through separate ISPs
- The detection server IP address is 208.91.114.182

A performance SLA is created so that, if one link fails, its routes are removed and traffic is detoured to the other link.

### To configure a Performance SLA using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
3. Click *Create New*. The *Performance SLA* page opens.
4. Enter a name for the SLA and select a protocol.
5. In the *Server* field, enter the detection server IP address (208.91.114.182 in this example).
6. In the *Participants* field, select both wan1 and wan2.




7. Configured the remaining settings as needed, then click *OK*.

### To configure a Performance SLA using the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "server"
            set server "208.91.114.182"
            set update-static-route enable
```

```
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

**To diagnose the Performance SLA status:**

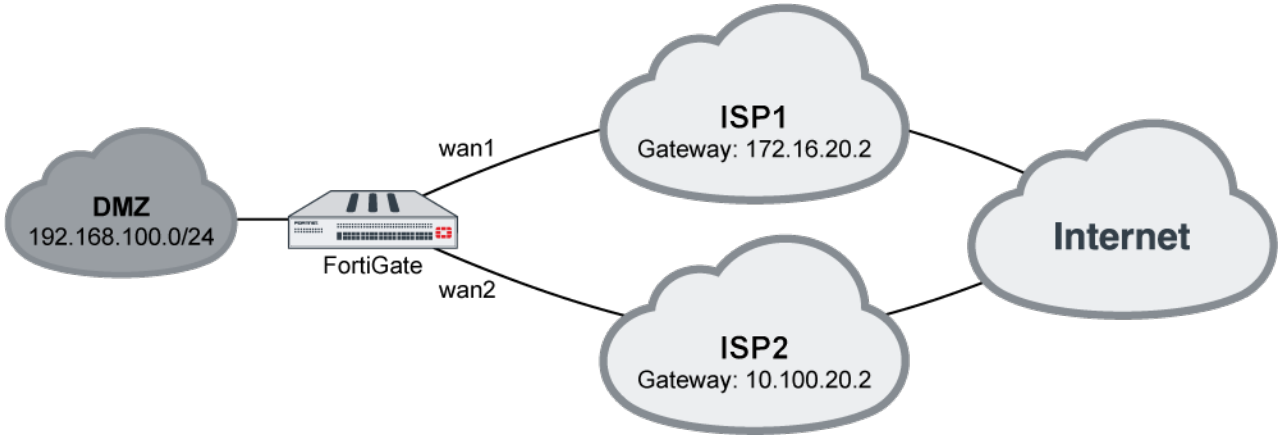
```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(server):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(15.247), jitter(5.231) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.621), jitter(6.905) sla_map=0x0
```

## Performance SLA - SLA targets

SLA targets are a set of constraints that are used in SD-WAN rules to control the paths that traffic take.

The available constraints are:

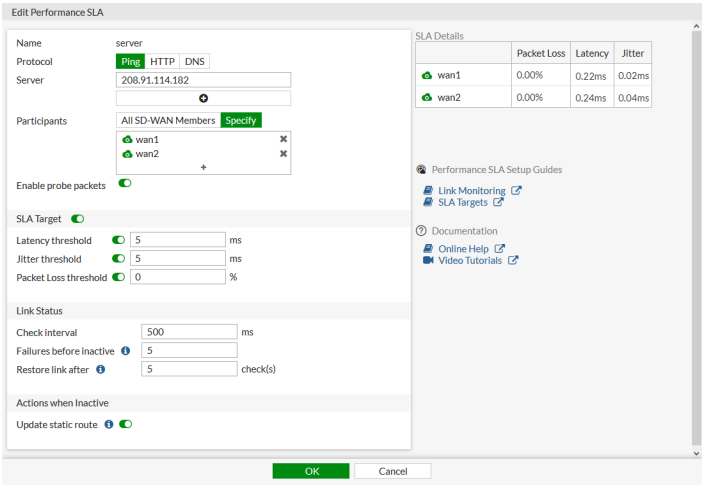
- *Latency threshold*: Latency for SLA to make decision, in milliseconds (0 - 10000000, default = 5).
- *Jitter threshold*: Jitter for SLA to make decision, in milliseconds (0 - 10000000, default = 5).
- *Packet loss threshold*: Packet loss for SLA to make decision, in percentage (0 - 100, default = 0).




**To configure Performance SLA targets using the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
3. Create a new Performance SLA or edit an existing one. See Performance SLA - link monitoring on page 484.

4. Enable *SLA Targets*and configure the constraints. To add multiple SLA targets, use the CLI.




5. Configured the remaining settings as needed, then click *OK*.

**To configure Performance SLA targets using the GUI:**

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "server"
            set server "208.91.114.182"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor latency jitter packet-loss
                    set latency-threshold 10
                    set jitter-threshold 10
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

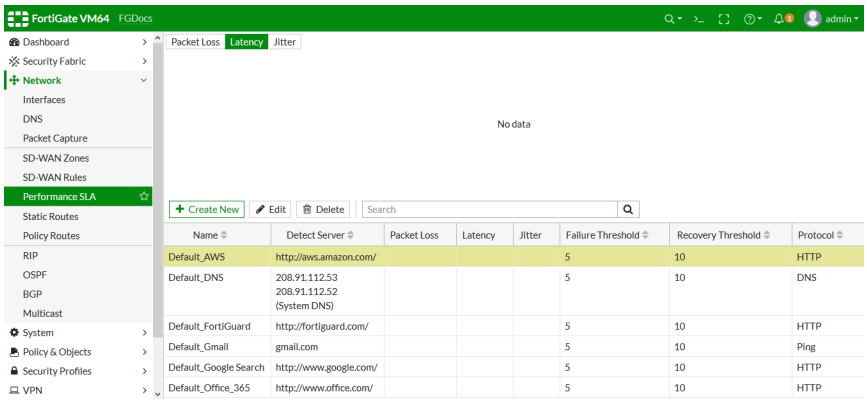
The `link-cost-factor` variable is used to select which constraints are enabled.

## Factory default health checks

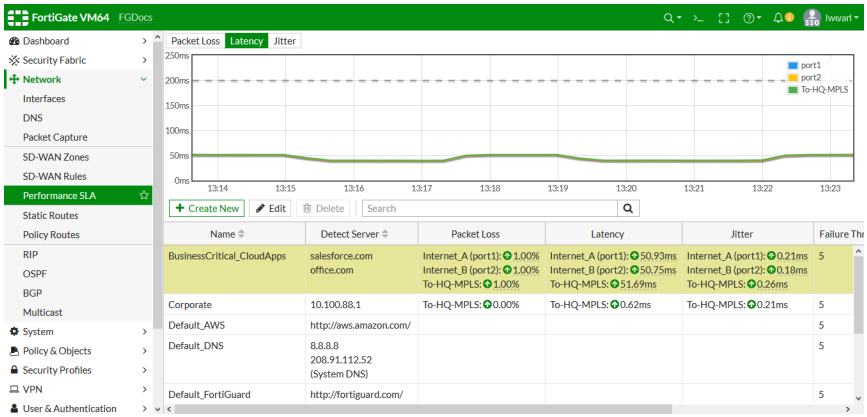
There are six predefined performance SLA profiles for newly created VDOMs or factory reset FortiGate devices:

- AWS
- System DNS
- FortiGuard
- Gmail
- Google Search
- Office 365

You can view and configure the SLA profiles in *Network* > *Performance SLA*.




After configuring a health check, you will be able to view packet loss, latency, and jitter data for the SLA profiles. If a value is colored red, it means that it failed to meet the SLA requirements.




### To configure the performance SLA profiles in the CLI:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "Default_AWS"
            set server "aws.amazon.com"
            set protocol http
            set interval 1000
            set recoverytime 10
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 250
                    set jitter-threshold 50
                    set packetloss-threshold 5
                next
            end
        next
        edit "Default_DNS"
            set system-dns enable
            set interval 1000
            set probe-timeout 1000
            set recoverytime 10
            config sla
                edit 1
```

```
            set latency-threshold 250
            set jitter-threshold 50
            set packetloss-threshold 5
        next
    end
next
edit "Default_FortiGuard"
    set server "fortiguard.com"
    set protocol http
    set interval 1000
    set recoverytime 10
    config sla
        edit 1
            set latency-threshold 250
            set jitter-threshold 50
            set packetloss-threshold 5
        next
    end
next
edit "Default_Gmail"
    set server "gmail.com"
    set interval 1000
    set recoverytime 10
    config sla
        edit 1
            set latency-threshold 250
            set jitter-threshold 50
            set packetloss-threshold 2
        next
    end
next
edit "Default_Google Search"
    set server "www.google.com"
    set protocol http
    set interval 1000
    set recoverytime 10
    config sla
        edit 1
            set latency-threshold 250
            set jitter-threshold 50
            set packetloss-threshold 5
        next
    end
next
edit "Default_Office_365"
    set server "www.office.com"
    set protocol http
    set interval 1000
    set recoverytime 10
    config sla
        edit 1
            set latency-threshold 250
            set jitter-threshold 50
            set packetloss-threshold 5
        next
    end
```

```
        next
    end
end
```

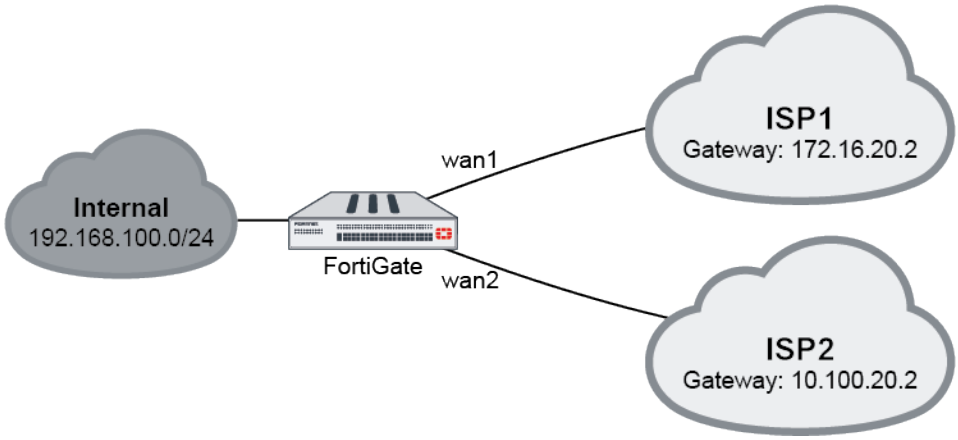
## Implicit rule

SD-WAN supports five types of implicit rules (load-balance mode):

- Source IP (CLI command: `source-ip-based`): SD-WAN will load balance the traffic equally among its members according to a hash algorithm based on the source IP addresses.
- Session (`weight-based`): SD-WAN will load balance the traffic according to the session numbers ratio among its members.
- Spillover (`usage-based`): SD-WAN will use the first member until the bandwidth reaches its limit, then use the second, and so on.
- Source-Destination IP (`source-dest-ip-based`): SD-WAN will load balance the traffic equally among its members according to a hash algorithm based on both the source and destination IP addresses.
- Volume (`measured-volume-based`): SD-WAN will load balance the traffic according to the bandwidth ratio among its members.

### Examples

The following four examples demonstrate how to use the implicit rules (load-balance mode).




If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

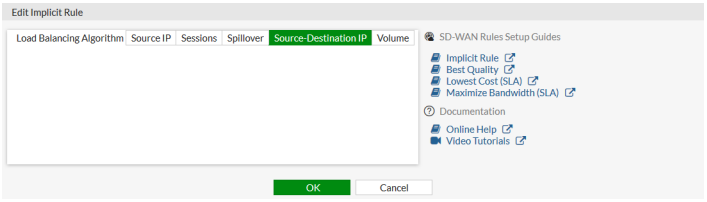
### Example 1

Outgoing traffic is equally balanced between wan1 and wan2, using *source-ip-based* or *source-dest-ip-based* mode.

**Using the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, enable SD-WAN and add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.

2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
3. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
4. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select either *Source IP* or *Source-Destination IP*.




5. Click *OK*.

**Using the CLI:**

1. Enable SD-WAN and add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.
2. Set the load balancing algorithm:
   Source IP based:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode source-ip-based
end
```

   Source-Destination IP based:

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode source-dest-ip-based
end
```

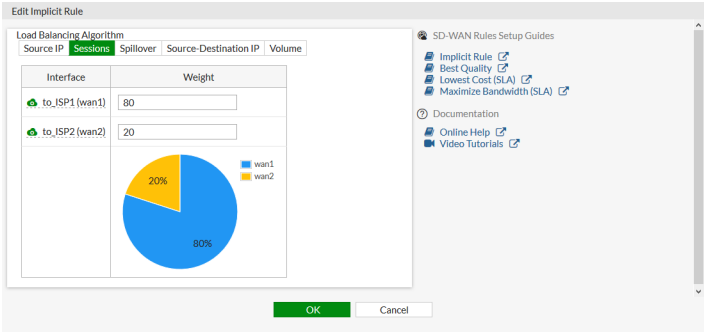
## Example 2

Outgoing traffic is balanced between wan1 and wan2 with a customized ratio, using *weight-based* mode: wan1 runs 80% of the sessions, and wan2 runs 20% of the sessions.

Sessions with the same source and destination IP addresses (`src-ip` and `dst-ip`) will be forwarded to the same path, but will still be considered in later session ratio calculations.

**Using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
3. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select *Sessions*.
4. Enter 80 in the *wan1* field, and 20 in the *wan2* field.



5. Click *OK*.

**Using the CLI:**

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode weight-based
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set weight 80
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set weight 20
        next
    end
end
```

## Example 3

Outgoing traffic is balanced between wan1 and wan2 with a customized ratio, using *measured-volume-based* mode: wan1 runs 80% of the volume, and wan2 runs 20% of the volume.

**Using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
3. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select *Volume*.
4. Enter 80 in the *wan1* field, and 20 in the *wan2* field.
5. Click *OK*.

**Using the CLI:**

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode measured-volume-based
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set volume-ratio 80
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set volume-ratio 20
        next
    end
end
```

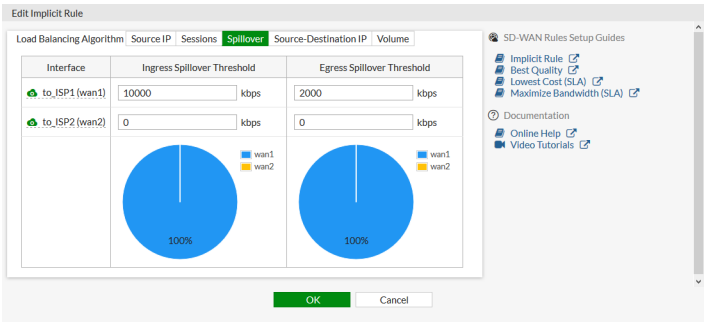
## Example 4

Load balancing can be used to reduce costs when internet connections are charged at different rates. For example, if wan2 charges based on volume usage and wan1 charges a fixed monthly fee, we can use wan1 at its maximum bandwidth, and use wan2 for overflow.

In this example, wan1's bandwidth is 10Mbps down and 2Mbps up. Traffic will use wan1 until it reaches its spillover limit, then it will start to use wan2. Note that `auto-asic-offload` must be disabled in the firewall policy.

**Using the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, enable SD-WAN and add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
3. Edit the *sd-wan* rule (the last default rule).
4. For the *Load Balancing Algorithm*, select *Spillover*.
5. Enter 10000 in the *wan1 Ingress Spillover Threshold* field, and 2000 in the *wan1 Egress Spillover Threshold* field.




6. Click *OK*.

**Using the CLI:**

```
config system sdwan
    set load-balance-mode usage-based
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set spillover-threshold 2000
            set ingress-spillover-threshold 10000
        next
    end
end
```

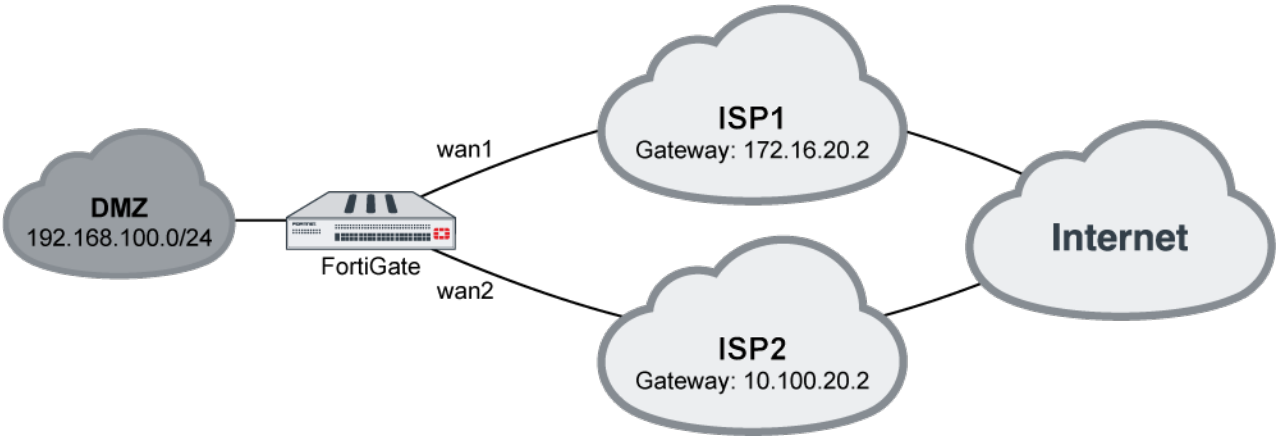
## SD-WAN rules - best quality

SD-WAN rules are used to control how sessions are distributed to SD-WAN members. Rules can be configured in one of five modes:

- `auto`: Interfaces are assigned a priority based on quality.
- Manual (`manual`): Interfaces are manually assigned a priority.
- Best Quality (`priority`): Interface are assigned a priority based on the link-cost-factor of the interface.
- Lowest Cost (SLA) (`sla`): Interfaces are assigned a priority based on selected SLA settings. See SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA) on page 496.
- Maximize Bandwith (SLA) (`load-balance`): Traffic is distributed among all available links based on the selected load balancing algorithm. See SD-WAN rules - maximize bandwidth (SLA) on page 499.

When using *Best Quality* mode, SD-WAN will choose the best link to forward traffic by comparing the *link-cost-factor*, selected from one of the following:

| GUI | CLI | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Latency | `latency` | Select a link based on latency. |
| Jitter | `jitter` | Select a link based on jitter. |
| Packet Loss | `packet-loss` | Select a link based on packet loss. |
| Downstream | `inbandwidth` | Select a link based on available bandwidth of incoming traffic. |
| Upstream | `outbandwidth` | Select a link based on available bandwidth of outgoing traffic. |
| Bandwidth | `bibandwidth` | Select a link based on available bandwidth of bidirectional traffic. |
| custom-profile-1 | `custom-profile-1` | Select link based on customized profile. If selected, set the following weights:<br>• packet-loss-weight: Coefficient of packet-loss.<br>• latency-weight: Coefficient of latency.<br>• jitter-weight: Coefficient of jitter.<br>• bandwidth-weight: Coefficient of reciprocal of available bidirectional bandwidth. |

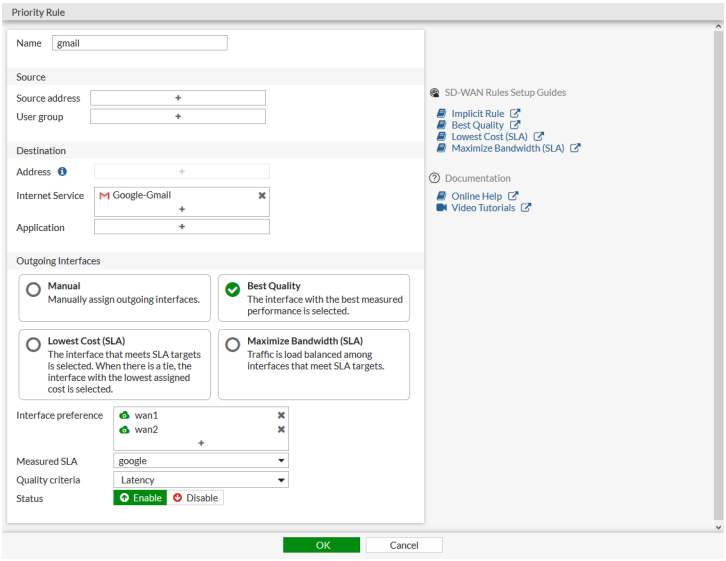



In this example, your wan1 and wan2 SD-WAN interfaces connect to two ISPs that both go to the public internet, and you want Gmail services to use the link with the least latency.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use Best Quality:**

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.
2. Create a new Performance SLA named *google*. See Performance SLA - link monitoring on page 484.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *gmail*.

6. Configure the following settings:




| Field | Setting |
|---|---|
| Internet Service | Google-Gmail |
| Strategy | Best Quality |
| Interface preference | wan1 and wan2 |
| Measured SLA | google (created in step 2). |
| Quality criteria | Latency |

7. Click *OK* to create the rule.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use priority:**

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "google"
            set server "google.com"
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "gmail"
            set mode priority
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-id 65646
            set health-check "google"
            set link-cost-factor latency
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

**To diagnose the Performance SLA status:**

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service 1
Service(1):

    TOS(0x0/0x0), protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(priority), link-cost-facotr(latency), link-
cost-threshold(10), health-check(google) Members:

        1: Seq_num(2), alive, latency: 12.633, selected
        2: Seq_num(1), alive, latency: 14.563, selected

    Internet Service: Google-Gmail(65646)
```

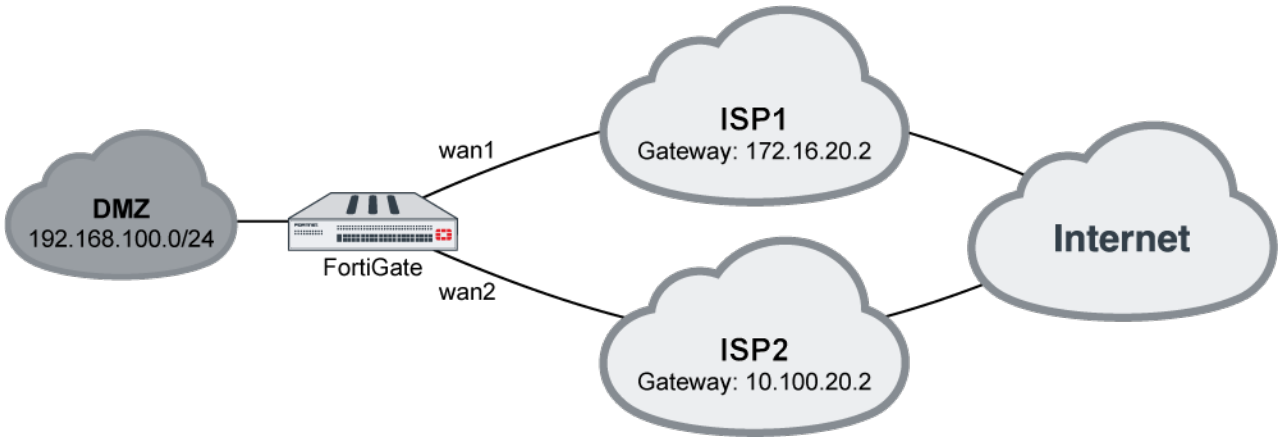
As wan2 has a smaller latency, SD-WAN will put Seq_num(2) on top of Seq_num(1) and wan2 will be used to forward Gmail traffic.

## SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA)

SD-WAN rules are used to control how sessions are distributed to SD-WAN members. Rules can be configured in one of five modes:

- `auto`: Interfaces are assigned a priority based on quality.
- Manual (`manual`): Interfaces are manually assigned a priority.
- Best Quality (`priority`): Interface are assigned a priority based on the link-cost-factor of the interface. See SD-WAN rules - best quality on page 493.
- Lowest Cost (SLA) (`sla`): Interfaces are assigned a priority based on selected SLA settings.
- Maximize Bandwidth (SLA) (`load-balance`): Traffic is distributed among all available links based on the selected load balancing algorithm. See SD-WAN rules - maximize bandwidth (SLA) on page 499.

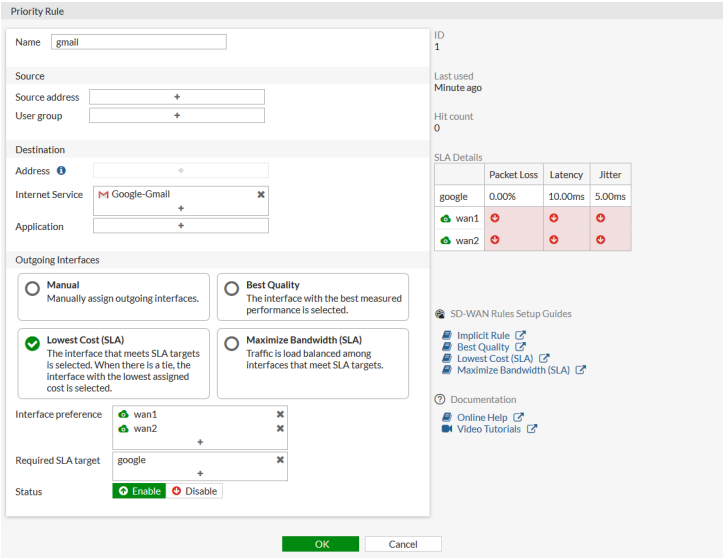
When using *Lowest Cost (SLA)* mode (`sla` in the CLI), SD-WAN will choose the lowest cost link that satisfies SLA to forward traffic. The lowest possible cost is `0`. If multiple eligible links have the same cost, the *Interface preference* order will be used to select a link.



In this example, your wan1 and wan2 SD-WAN interfaces connect to two ISPs that both go to the public internet. The cost of wan2 is less than that of wan1. You want to configure Gmail services to use the lowest cost interface, but the link quality must meet a standard of latency: 10ms, and jitter: 5ms.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use Lowest Cost (SLA):**

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.
2. Create a new Performance SLA named *google* that includes an SLA Target with *Latency threshold* = 10ms and *Jitter threshold* = 5ms. See Performance SLA - link monitoring on page 484.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *gmail*.
6. Configure the following settings:




| Field | Setting |
|---|---|
| Internet Service | Google-Gmail |
| Strategy | Lowest Cost (SLA) |
| Interface preference | wan1 and wan2 |
| Required SLA target | google (created in step 2). |

7. Click *OK* to create the rule.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SLA:**

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set cost 10
        next
        edit 2
```

```
            set interface "wan2"
            set cost 5
        next
    end
    config health-check
        edit "google"
            set server "google.com"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 10
                    set jitter-threshold 5
                next
            end
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "gmail"
            set mode sla
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-id 65646
            config sla
                edit "google"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To diagnose the Performance SLA status:**

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service 1
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

    TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
    Members:<<BR>>

        1: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), selected
        2: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), selected

    Internet Service: Google.Gmail(65646)
```

When both wan1 and wan2 meet the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will only use wan2. If only wan1 meets the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will only use wan1, even though it has a higher cost. If neither interface meets the requirements, wan2 will be used.

If both interface had the same cost and both met the SLA requirements, the first link configured in `set priority-members` would be used.

## SD-WAN rules - maximize bandwidth (SLA)

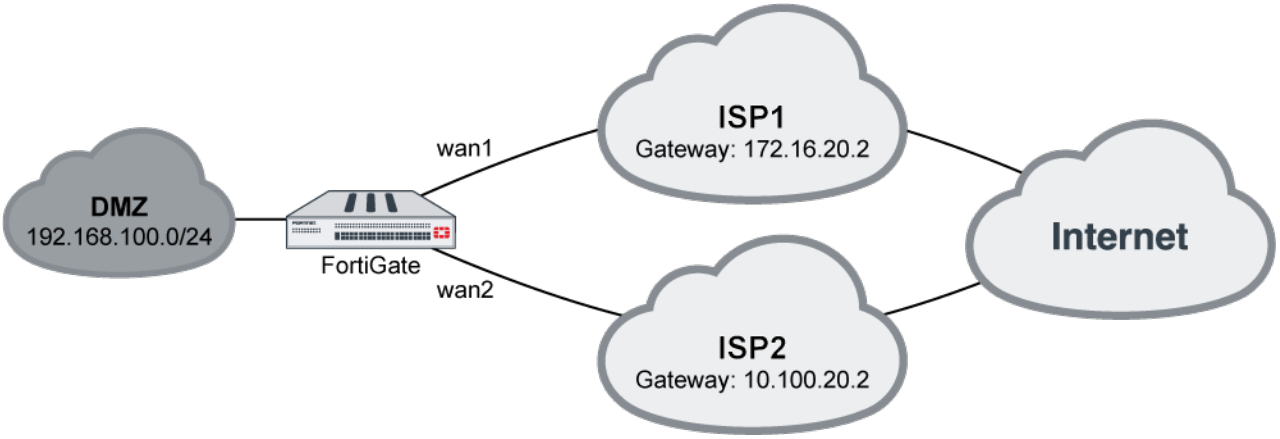
SD-WAN rules are used to control how sessions are distributed to SD-WAN members. Rules can be configured in one of five modes:

- `auto`: Interfaces are assigned a priority based on quality.
- Manual (`manual`): Interfaces are manually assigned a priority.
- Best Quality (`priority`): Interface are assigned a priority based on the link-cost-factor of the interface. See SD-WAN rules - best quality on page 493.
- Lowest Cost (SLA) (`sla`): Interfaces are assigned a priority based on selected SLA settings. See SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA) on page 496.
- Maximize Bandwidth (SLA) (`load-balance`): Traffic is distributed among all available links based on the selected load balancing algorithm.

When using *Maximize Bandwidth* mode (`load-balance` in the CLI), SD-WAN will all of the links that satisfies SLA to forward traffic based on a round-robin load balancing algorithm.



ADVPN is not supported in this mode.

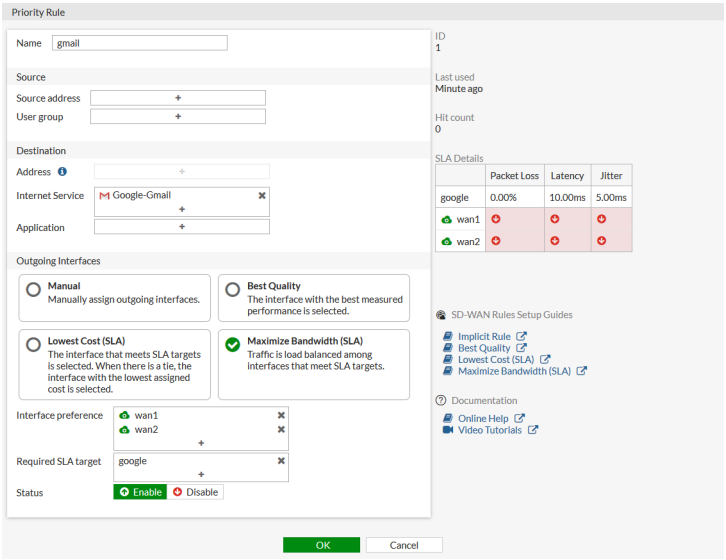



In this example, your wan1 and wan2 SD-WAN interfaces connect to two ISPs that both go to the public internet. You want to configure Gmail services to use both of the interface, but the link quality must meet a standard of latency: 10ms, and jitter: 5ms. This can maximize the bandwidth usage.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use Maximize Bandwidth (SLA):**

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.

2. Create a new Performance SLA named *google* that includes an SLA Target 1 with *Latency threshold* = 10ms and *Jitter threshold* = 5ms. See Performance SLA - link monitoring on page 484.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *gmail*.
6. Configure the following settings:




| Field | Setting |
|---|---|
| Internet Service | Google-Gmail |
| Strategy | Maximize Bandwidth (SLA) |
| Interface preference | wan1 and wan2 |
| Required SLA target | google (created in step 2). |

7. Click *OK* to create the rule.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SLA:**

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "google"
            set server "google.com"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 10
                    set jitter-threshold 5
                next
            end
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "gmail"
```

```
            set mode load-balance
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-id 65646
            config sla
                edit "google"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

**To diagnose the performance SLA status:**

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service 1
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

    TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(load-balance)
    Members:<<BR>>

        1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected
        2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected

    Internet Service: Google.Gmail(65646)
```

When both wan1 and wan2 meet the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will use both wan1 and wan2. If only one of the interfaces meets the SLA requirements, Gmail traffic will only use that interface.

If neither interface meets the requirements but health-check is still alive, then wan1 and wan2 tie. The traffic will try to balance between wan1 and wan2, using both interfaces to forward traffic.

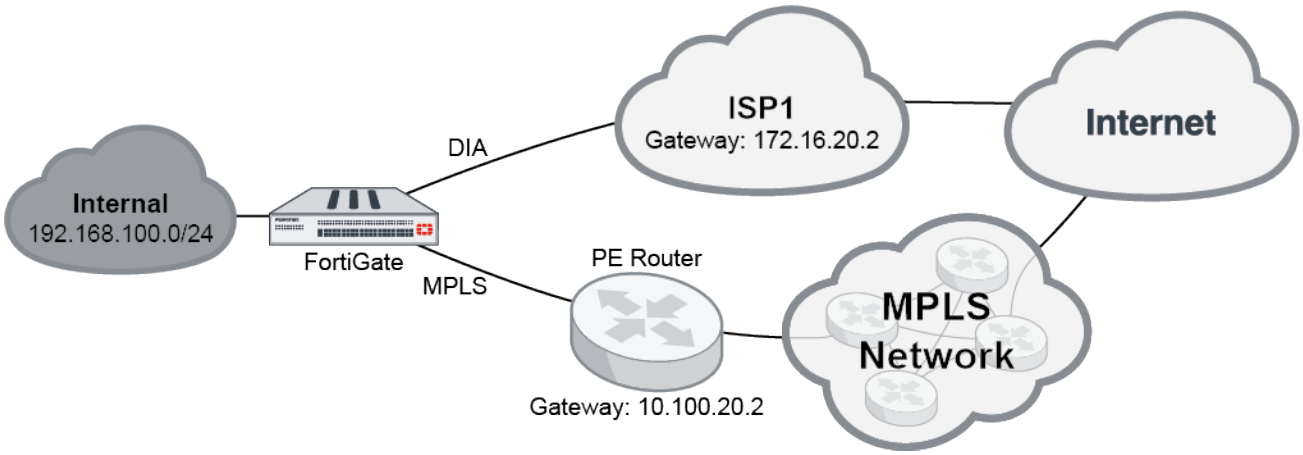
## Application steering using SD-WAN rules

This topic covers how to use application steering in a topology with multiple WAN links. The following examples illustrate how to use different strategies to perform application steering to accommodate different business needs:

- Static application steering with a manual strategy on page 501
- Dynamic application steering with lowest cost and best quality strategies on page 505

### Static application steering with a manual strategy

This example covers a typical usage scenario where the SD-WAN has two members: MPLS and DIA. DIA is primarily used for direct internet access to internet applications, such as Office365, Google applications, Amazon, and Dropbox. MPLS is primarily used for SIP, and works as a backup when DIA is not working.

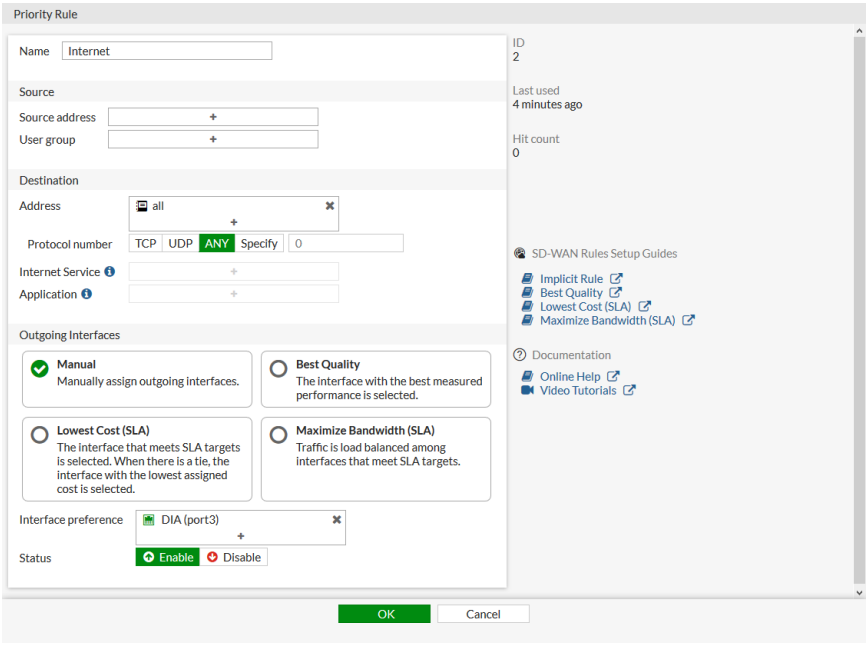



This example configures all SIP traffic to use MPLS while all other traffic uses DIA. If DIA is not working, the traffic will use MPLS.

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SIP and DIA in the GUI:**

1. Add port1 (DIA) and port2 (MPLS) as SD-WAN members, and configure a static route. See Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 469 for details.
2. Create a firewall policy with an *Application Control* profile configured. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 471 for details.
3. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
4. Click *Create New*. The *Priority Rule* page opens.
5. Enter a name for the rule, such as *SIP*.
6. Click the *Application* field and select the applicable SIP applications from the *Select Entries* panel.
7. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Manual*.
8. For *Interface preference*, select *MPLS*.
9. Click *OK*.
10. Click *Create New* to create another rule.
11. Enter a name for the rule, such as *Internet*.
12. Click the *Address* field and select *all* from the panel.
13. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Manual*.

14. For *Interface preference*, select *DIA*.




15. Click *OK*.

**To configure the firewall policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
        set application-list "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure an SD-WAN rule to use SIP and DIA using the CLI:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "MPLS"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "DIA"
        next
```

```
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "SIP"
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 34640 152305677 38938 26180 26179 30251
            set priority-members 2
        next
        edit 2
            set name "Internet"
            set dst "all"
            set priority-members 1
        next
    end
end
```

All SIP traffic uses MPLS. All other traffic goes to DIA. If DIA is broken, the traffic uses MPLS. If you use VPN instead of MPLS to run SIP traffic, you must configure a VPN interface, for example vpn1, and then replace member 1 from MPLS to vpn1 for SD-WAN member.



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To use the diagnose command to check performance SLA status using the CLI:**

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service 1

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
Members:<<BR>>

1: Seq_num(1), alive, selected

Internet Service: SIP(4294836224 34640) SIP.Method(4294836225 152305677) SIP.Via.NAT
(4294836226 38938) SIP_Media.Type.Application(4294836227 26180) SIP_Message(4294836228
26179) SIP_Voice(4294836229 30251)
```

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service 2

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0

TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
Members:<<BR>>

1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected

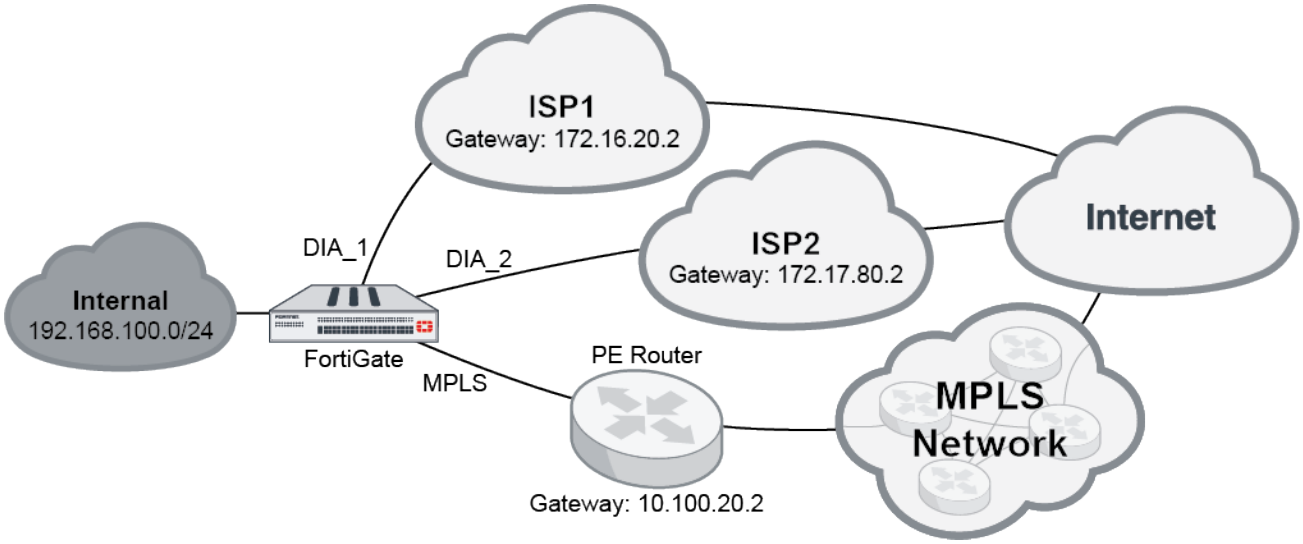
Dst address: 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

```
# diagnose sys sdwan internet-service-app-ctrl-list
Ctrl application(SIP 34640):Internet Service ID(4294836224)
Ctrl application(SIP.Method 152305677):Internet Service ID(4294836225)
Ctrl application(SIP.Via.NAT 38938):Internet Service ID(4294836226)
Ctrl application(SIP_Media.Type.Application 26180):Internet Service ID(4294836227)
```

```
Ctrl application(SIP_Message 26179):Internet Service ID(4294836228)
Ctrl application(SIP_Voice 30251):Internet Service ID(4294836229)
```

## Dynamic application steering with lowest cost and best quality strategies

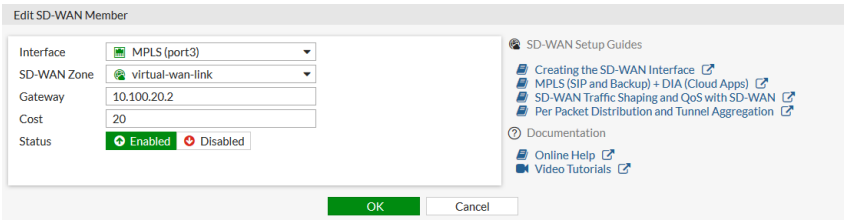
In this example, the SD-WAN has three members: two ISPs (DIA_1 and DIA_2) that are used for access to internet applications, and an MPLS link that is used exclusively as a backup for business critical applications.




Business applications, such as Office365, Google, Dropbox, and SIP, use the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy to provide application steering, and traffic falls back to MPLS only if both ISP1 and ISP2 are down. Non-business applications, such as Facebook and Youtube, use the *Best Quality* strategy to choose between the ISPs.

**To configure the SD-WAN members, static route, and firewall policy in the GUI:**

1. Add port1 (DIA_1), port2 (DIA_2), and port3 (MPLS) as SD-WAN members. Set the cost of DIA_1 and DIA_2 to *0*, and MPLS to *20*. See Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 469 for details.



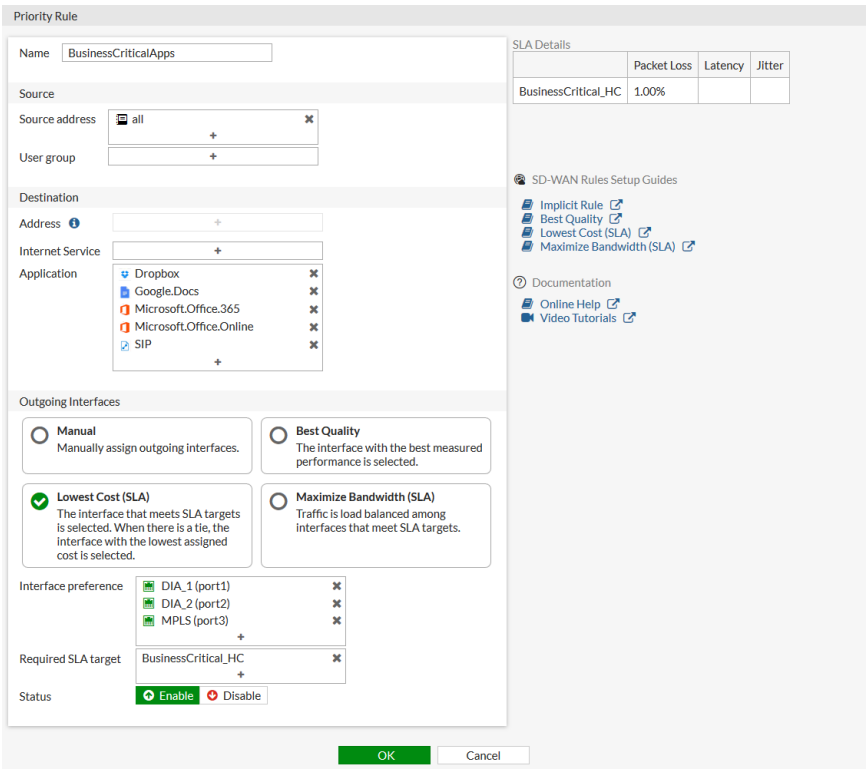

2. Configure a static route. See Adding a static route on page 470 for details.
3. Create a firewall policy to allow traffic out on SD-WAN, with an *Application Control* profile configured. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 471 for details.

**To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for business critical application in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*, and click *Create New*.
2. Set the name to *BusinessCriticalApps*.
   This rule will steer your business critical traffic to the appropriate link based on the *Lowest Cost (SLA)*.
3. Set *Source address* to *all*.

4. Under *Destination*, set *Application* to your required applications. In this example: *Microsoft.Office.365*, *Microsoft.Office.Online*, *Google.Docs*, *Dropbox*, and *SIP*.
5. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Lowest Cost (SLA)*.
   The lowest cost is defined in the SD-WAN member interface settings (see Configuring the SD-WAN interface on page 469). The lowest possible cost is *0*, which represents the most preferred link. In this example, DIA_1 and DIA_2 both have a cost of *0*, while MPLS has a cost of *20* because it is used for backup.
6. In *Interface preference*, add the interfaces in order of preference when the cost of the links is tied. In this example, DIA_1, DIA_2, then MPLS.
   MPLS will always be chosen last, because it has the highest cost. DIA_1 and DIA_2 have the same cost, so an interface is selected based on their order in the *Interface preference* list.
7. Set *Required SLA target* to ensure that only links that pass your SLA target are chosen in this SD-WAN rule:
   a. Click in the *Required SLA target* field.
   b. In the *Select Entries* pane, click *Create*. The *New Performace SLA* pane opens.
   c. Set *Name* to *BusinessCritical_HC*.
      This health check is used for business critical applications in your SD-WAN rule.
   d. Leave *Protocol* set to *Ping*, and add up to two servers, such as *office.com* and *google.com*.
   e. Set *Participants* to *Specify*, and add all three interfaces: DIA_1, DIA_2, and MPLS.
   f. Enable *SLA Target*.
      The attributes in your target determine the quality of your link. The SLA target of each link is compared when determining which link to use based on the lowest cost. Links that meet the SLA target are preferred over links that fail, and move to the next step of selection based on cost. If no links meet the SLA target, then they all move to the next step.
      In this example, disable *Latency threshold* and *Jitter threshold*, and set *Packet loss threshold* to *1*.
   g. Click *OK*.
   h. Select the new performance SLA to set it as the *Required SLA target*.

   When multiple SLA targets are added, you can choose which target to use in the SD-WAN rule.




8. Click *OK* to create the SD-WAN rule.

**To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for non-business critical application in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*, and click *Create New*.
2. Set the name to *NonBusinessCriticalApps*.
   This rule will steer your non-business critical traffic to the appropriate link based on the *Best Quality*. No SLA target must be met, as the best link is selected based on the configured quality criteria and interface preference order.
3. Set *Source address* to *all*.
4. Under *Destination*, set *Application* to your required applications. In this example: *Facebook*, and *Youtube*.
5. Under *Outgoing Interfaces*, select *Best Quality*.
6. In *Interface preference*, add the interfaces in order of preference.
   By default, a more preferred link has an advantage of 10% over a less preferred link. For example, when latency is used, the preferred link's calculated latency = real latency / (1+10%).

---

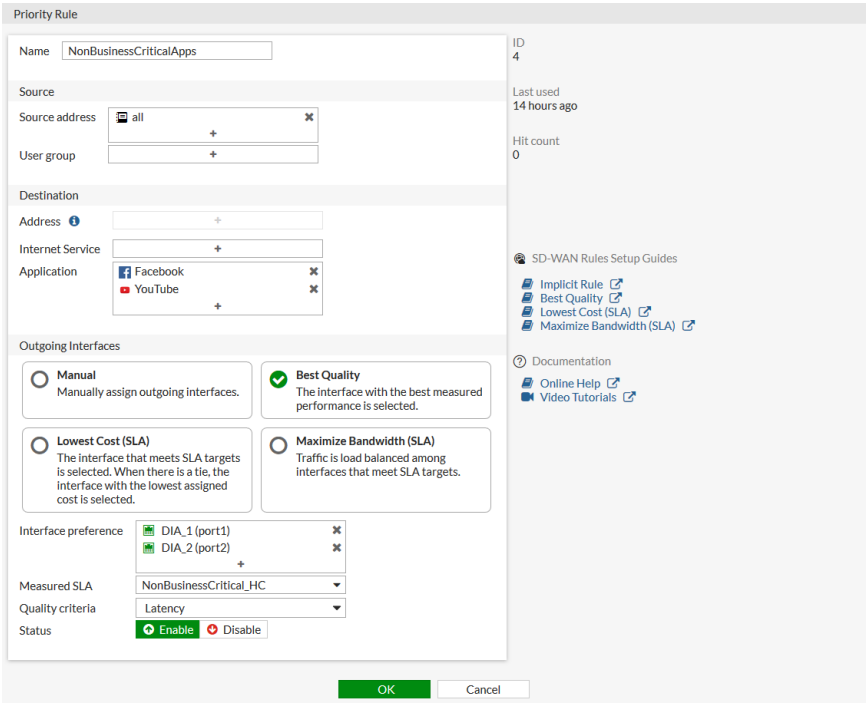


The preferred link advantage can be customized in the CLI when the mode is `priority` (*Best Quality*) or `auto`:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit <id>
            set link-cost-threshold <integer>
        next
    end
end
```

---

7. Create and apply a new performance SLA profile:
   a. Click in the *Measured SLA* field.
   b. In the drop-down list, click *Create*. The *New Performace SLA* pane opens.
   c. Set *Name* to *NonBusinessCritical_HC*.
      This health check is used for non-business critical applications in your SD-WAN rule.
   d. Leave *Protocol* set to *Ping*, and add up to two servers, such as *youtube.com* and *facebook.com*.
   e. Set *Participants* to *Specify*, and add the DIA_1 and DIA_2 interfaces. In this example, MPLS is not used for non-business critical applications.
   f. Leave *SLA Target* disabled.
   g. Click *OK*.
   h. Select the new performance SLA from the list to set it as the *Measured SLA*.
8. Set *Quality criteria* as required. In this example, *Latency* is selected.
   For bandwidth related criteria, such as *Downstream*, *Upstream*, and *Bandwidth* (bi-directional), the selection is based on available bandwidth. An estimated bandwidth should be configured on the interface to provide a baseline, maximum available bandwidth.




9. Click *OK* to create the SD-WAN rule.

**To configure the SD-WAN members, static route, and firewall policy in the CLI:**

1. Configure the interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set ip <class_ip&net_netmask>
        set alias "DIA_1"
        set role wan
    next
    edit "port2"
        set ip <class_ip&net_netmask>
```

```
        set alias "DIA_2"
        set role wan
    next
    edit "port3"
        set ip <class_ip&net_netmask>
        set alias "MPLS"
        set role wan
    next
end
```

2. Configure the SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
            set gateway 172.16.20.2
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "port2"
            set gateway 172.17.80.2
        next
        edit 3
            set interface "port3"
            set gateway 10.100.20.2
            set cost 20
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for business critical application in the CLI:**

1. Configure the *BusinessCriticalApps_HC* health-check:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "BusinessCriticalApps_HC"
            set server "office.com" "google.com"
            set members 1 2 3
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the *BusinessCriticalApps* service to use *Lowest Cost (SLA)*:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "BusinessCriticalApps"
            set mode sla
            set src "all"
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 17459 16541 33182 16177 34640
            config sla
                edit "BusinessCriticalApps_HC"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2 3
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure the SD-WAN rule and performance SLA checks for non-business critical application in the CLI:**

1. Configure the *nonBusinessCriticalApps_HC* health-check:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "NonBusinessCriticalApps_HC"
            set server "youtube.com" "facebook.com"
            set members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the *BusinessCriticalApps* service to use *Lowest Cost (SLA)*:

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 4
            set name "NonBusinessCriticalApps"
            set mode priority
            set src "all"
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 15832 31077
            set health-check "NonBusinessCriticalApps_HC"
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

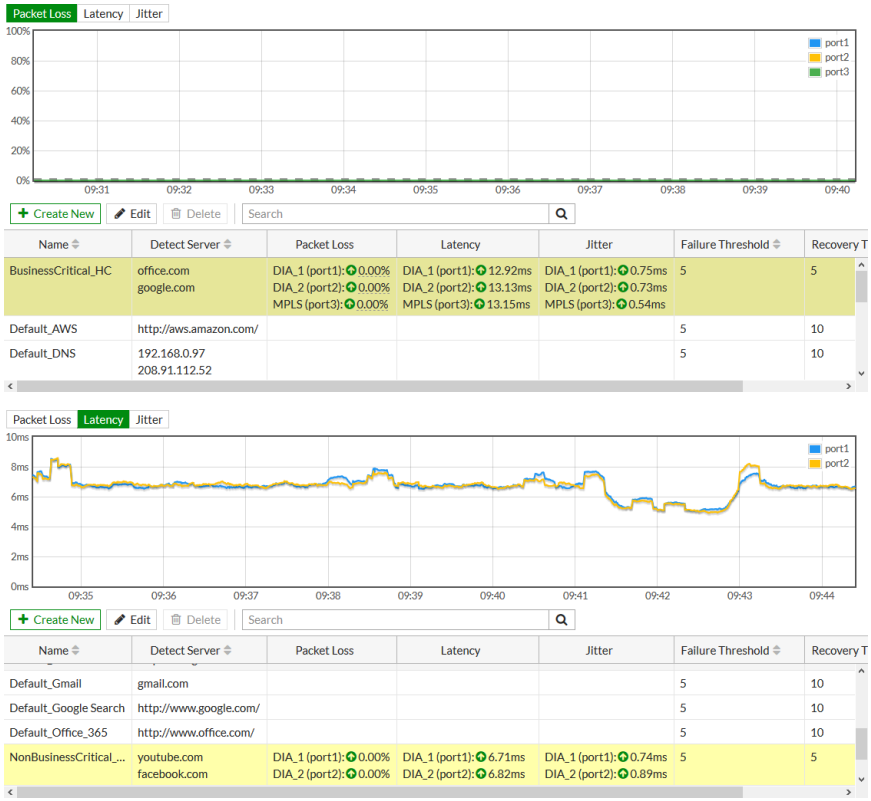
## Verification

Check the following GUI pages, and run the following CLI commands to confirm that your traffic is being steered by the SD-WAN rules.

### Health checks

#### To verify the status of each of the health checks in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select each of the health checks from the list.



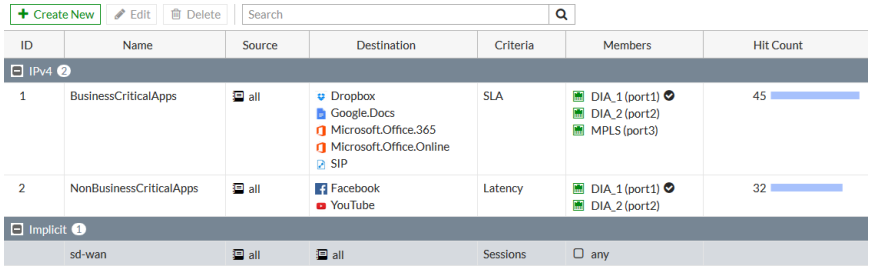

#### To verify the status of each of the health checks in the CLI:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(BusinessCritical_HC):
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.884), jitter(0.919) sla_map=0x1
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.018), jitter(0.723) sla_map=0x1
Seq(3 port3): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.018), jitter(0.923) sla_map=0x1
Health Check(NonBusinessCritical_HC):
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(6.888), jitter(0.953) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(6.805), jitter(0.830) sla_map=0x0
```

### Rule members and hit count

#### To verify the active members and hit count of the SD-WAN rule in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.




   The interface that is currently selected by the rule has a checkmark next to its name in the *Members* column. Hover the cursor over the checkmark to open a tooltip that gives the reason why that member is selected. If multiple members are selected, only the highest ranked member is highlighted (unless the mode is *Maximize Bandwidth (SLA)*).

#### To verify the active members and hit count of the SD-WAN rule in the CLI:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(13), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
    3: Seq_num(3 port3), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(2), cost(20), selected
  Internet Service: Dropbox(4294836727,0,0,0 17459) Google.Docs(4294836992,0,0,0 16541)
Microsoft.Office.365(4294837472,0,0,0 33182) Microsoft.Office.Online(4294837475,0,0,0 16177)
SIP(4294837918,0,0,0 34640)
  Src address:
       0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

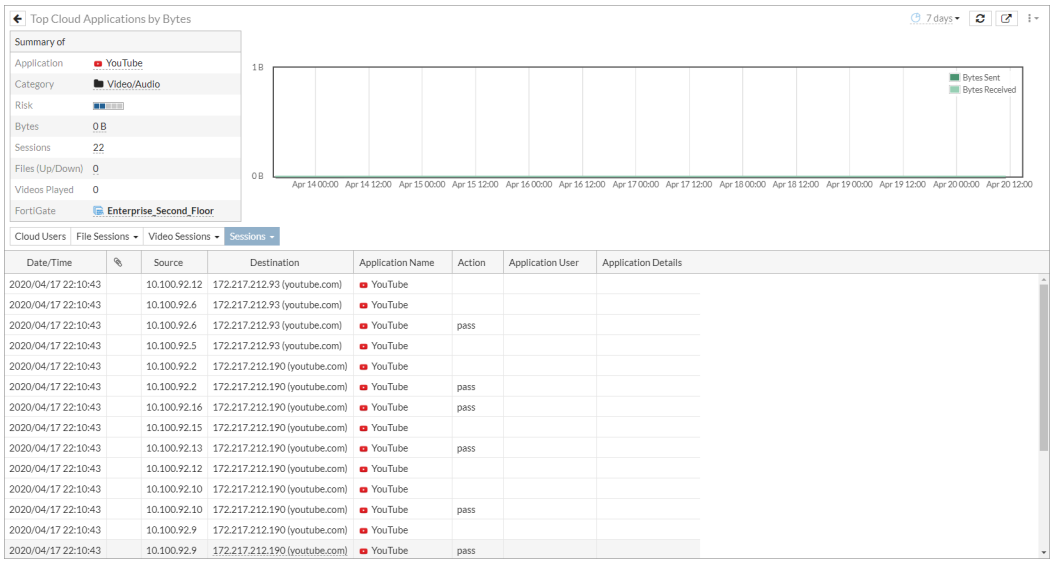
Service(4): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(211), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(priority), link-cost-factor(latency),
link-cost-threshold(10), heath-check(NonBusinessCritical_HC)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, latency: 5.712, selected
    2: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, latency: 5.511, selected
  Internet Service: Facebook(4294836806,0,0,0 15832) YouTube(4294838537,0,0,0 31077)
  Src address:
       0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

### Applications and sessions

#### To verify sessions in FortiView:

1. Go to a dashboard and add the *Top Cloud Applications by Bytes* widget. See Cloud application view on page 99 for details.

2. Drill down on an application, such as *YouTube*, then select the *Sessions* tab.




**To verify applications identified by Application Control in SD-WAN:**

```
# diagnose sys sdwan internet-service-app-ctrl-list

Facebook(15832 4294836697): 31.13.67.20 6 443 Fri April 17 22:33:39 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 31.13.67.35 6 443 Fri April 17 22:33:41 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 31.13.70.36 6 443 Fri April 17 22:36:41 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 157.240.11.22 6 443 Fri April 17 22:36:42 2020
Facebook(15832 4294836697): 157.240.11.35 6 443 Fri April 17 22:36:41 2020
YouTube(31077 4294838227): 172.217.24.150 6 443 Fri April 17 22:32:16 2020
YouTube(31077 4294838227): 172.217.25.78 6 443 Fri April 17 22:32:16 2020
YouTube(31077 4294838227): 216.58.220.129 6 443 Fri April 17 22:32:34 2020
```

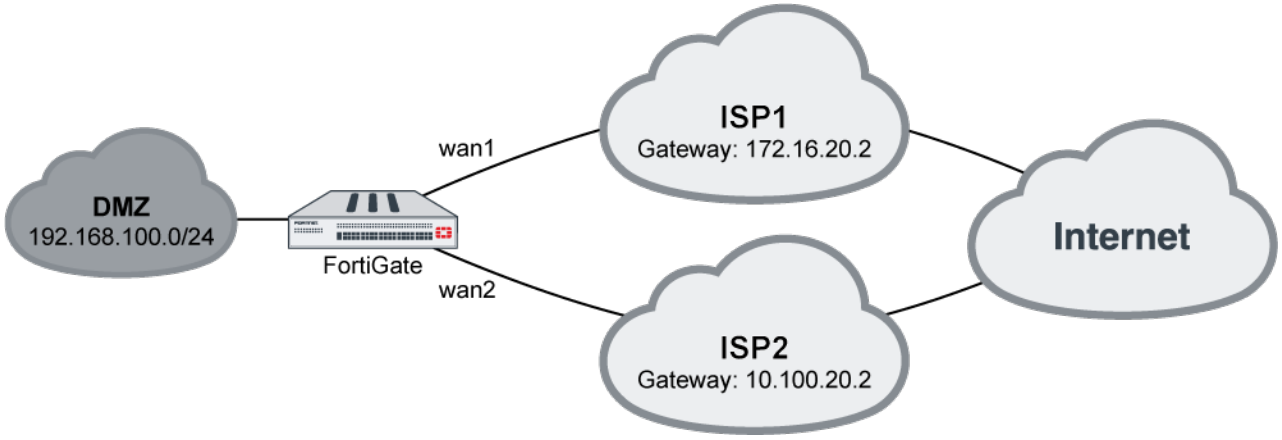
## SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS

Use a traffic shaper in a firewall shaping policy to control traffic flow. You can use it to control maximum and guaranteed bandwidth, or put certain traffic to one of the three different traffic priorities: high, medium, or low.

An advanced shaping policy can classify traffic into 30 groups. Use a shaping profile to define the percentage of the interface bandwidth that is allocated to each group. Each group of traffic is shaped to the assigned speed limit based on the outgoing bandwidth limit configured on the interface.

For more information, see Traffic shaping on page 886.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

This example shows a typical customer usage where the customer's SD-WAN uses the default zone, and has two member: wan1 and wan2, each set to 10Mb/s.

An overview of the procedures to configure SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS with SD-WAN includes:

1. Give HTTP/HTTPS traffic high priority and give FTP low priority so that if there are conflicts, FortiGate will forward HTTP/HTTPS traffic first.
2. Even though FTP has low priority, configure FortiGate to give it a 1Mb/s guaranteed bandwidth on each SD-WAN member so that if there is no FTP traffic, other traffic can use all the bandwidth. If there is heavy FTP traffic, it can still be guaranteed a 1Mb/s bandwidth.
3. Traffic going to specific destinations such as a VOIP server uses wan1 to forward, and SD-WAN forwards with an Expedited Forwarding (EF) DSCP tag 101110.

**To configure SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS with SD-WAN in the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, add wan1 and wan2 as SD-WAN members, then add a policy and static route.
   See SD-WAN quick start on page 468.
2. Add a firewall policy with *Application Control* enabled. See Configuring firewall policies for SD-WAN on page 471.
3. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers* and edit *low-priority*.
   a. Enable *Guaranteed Bandwidth* and set it to *1000* kbps.
4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
   a. Name the traffic shaping policy, for example, *HTTP-HTTPS*.
   b. Set the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Source** | *all* |
| **Destination** | *all* |
| **Service** | *HTTP* and *HTTPS* |
| **Outgoing** | *virtual-wan-link* |
| **Shared Shaper** | Enable and set to *high-priority* |
| **Reverse Shaper** | Enable and set to *high-priority* |

c. Click *OK*.

5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
   a. Name the traffic shaping policy, for example, *FTP*.
   b. Set the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Source** | *all* |
| **Destination** | *all* |
| **Service** | *FTP*, *FTP_GET*, and *FTP_PUT* |
| **Outgoing** | *virtual-wan-link* |
| **Shared Shaper** | Enable and set to *low-priority* |
| **Reverse Shaper** | Enable and set to *low-priority* |

   c. Click *OK*
6. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* and click *Create New*.
   a. Enter a name for the rule, such as *Internet*.
   b. In the *Destination* section, click *Address* and select the VoIP server that you created in the firewall address.
   c. Under *Outgoing Interfaces* select *Manual*.
   d. For *Interface preference* select *wan1*.
   e. Click *OK*.
7. Use CLI commands to modify DSCP settings. See the DSCP CLI commands below.

**To configure the firewall policy using the CLI:**

```
connfig firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set application-list "default"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure the firewall traffic shaper priority using the CLI:**

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "high-priority"
        set maximum-bandwidth 1048576
        set per-policy enable
    next
    edit "low-priority"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 1000
        set maximum-bandwidth 1048576
```

```
        set priority low
        set per-policy enable
    next
end
```

**To configure the firewall traffic shaping policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "http-https"
        set service "HTTP" "HTTPS"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set traffic-shaper "high-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "high-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "FTP"
        set service "FTP" "FTP_GET" "FTP_PUT"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set traffic-shaper "low-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "low-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

**To configure SD-WAN traffic shaping and QoS with SD-WAN in the CLI:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set gateway 172.16.20.2
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
            set gateway 10.100.20.2
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "SIP"
            set priority-members 1
            set dst "voip-server"
            set dscp-forward enable
            set dscp-forward-tag 101110
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To use the diagnose command to check if specific traffic is attached to the correct traffic shaper:**

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=1 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=high-priority(2/0/134217728) reply=high-priority(2/0/134217728)
cos_fwd=0  cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=0 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(2): 36 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
service(2):
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(80,80)] helper:auto
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(443,443)] helper:auto

policy index=2 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=low-priority(4/128000/134217728) reply=low-priority(4/128000/134217728)
cos_fwd=0  cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=0 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(2): 36 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=6,
service(3):
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(21,21)] helper:auto
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(21,21)] helper:auto
        [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(21,21)] helper:auto
```

**To use the diagnose command to check if the correct traffic shaper is applied to the session:**

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=11 expire=3599 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=5
origin-shaper=low-priority prio=4 guarantee 128000Bps max 1280000Bps traffic 1050Bps drops
0B
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 shaping_policy_id=2 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty npu npd os mif route_preserve
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=868/15/1 reply=752/10/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 76/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 66/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=39->38/38->39 gwy=172.16.200.55/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:58241->172.16.200.55:21(172.16.200.1:58241)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:21->172.16.200.1:58241(10.1.100.11:58241)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=4
serial=0003255f tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x100000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
```

```
vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason:  offload-denied helper
total session 1
```

**To use the diagnose command to check the status of a shared traffic shaper:**

```
 # diagnose firewall shaper traffic-shaper list

name high-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 0 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 2
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name low-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 4
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name high-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 0 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 2
policy 1
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

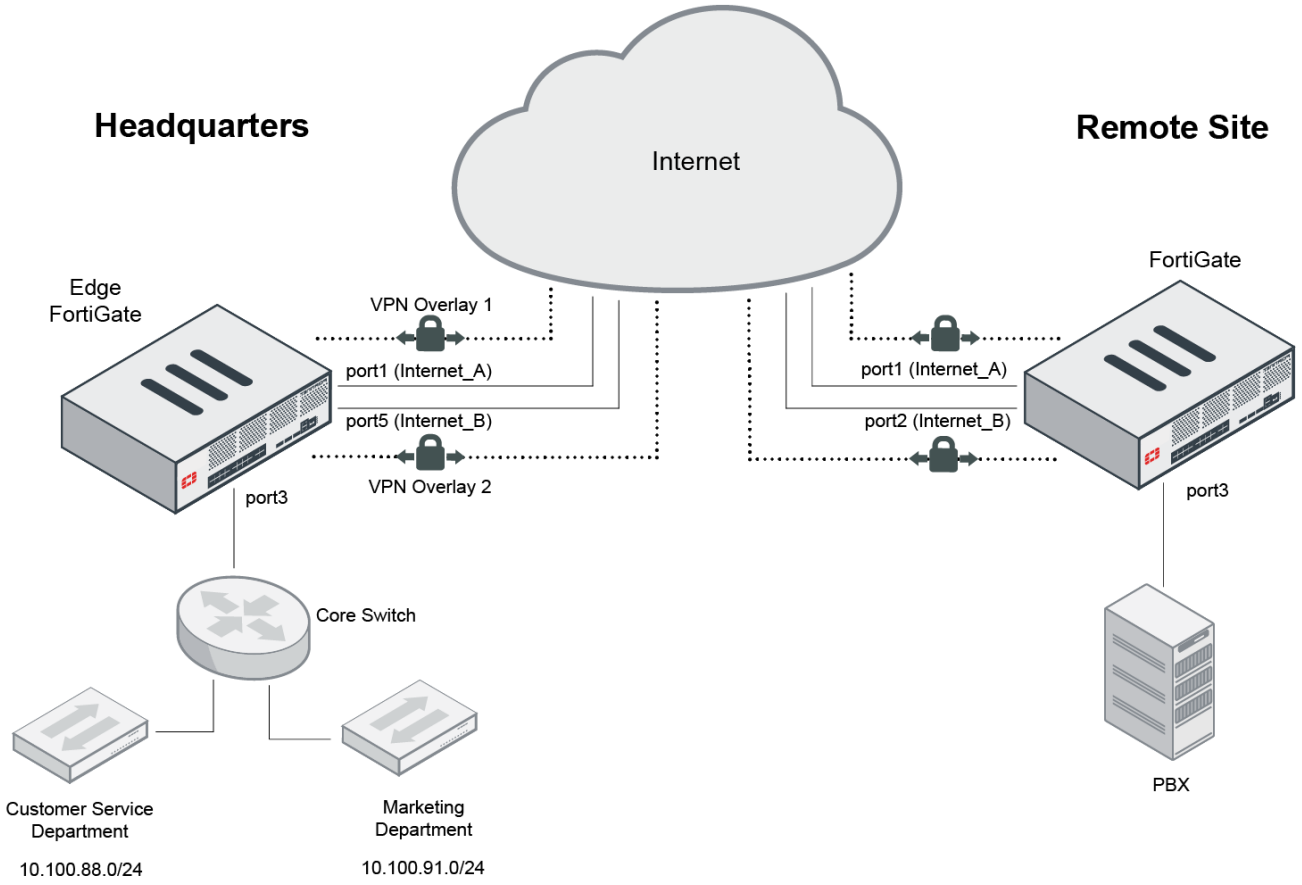
name low-priority
maximum-bandwidth 131072 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 4
policy 2
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0
```

## DSCP tag-based traffic steering in SD-WAN

This document demonstrates the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) tag-based traffic steering in Fortinet secure SD-WAN. You can use this guide as an example to deploy DSCP tag-based traffic steering in Fortinet secure SD-WAN.

DSCP tags are often used to categorize traffic to provide quality of service (QoS). Based on DSCP tags, you can provide SD-WAN traffic steering on an edge device.

In this example, we have two different departments at the Headquarters site - Customer Service and Marketing. Traffic from each of these departments is marked with separate DSCP tags by the core switch, and passes through the core switch to the edge FortiGate. The edge FortiGate reads the DSCP tags and steers traffic to the preferred interface based on the defined SD-WAN rules.




In our example, we consider two types of traffic - social media traffic and VoIP traffic. VoIP traffic from Customer Service is considered to be more important than social media traffic. Each of these traffic types is marked with a DSCP tag by the core switch - VoIP traffic is marked with the DSCP tag of `011100`, and social media traffic is marked with the DSCP tag of `001100`. The DSCP tagged traffic is then passed on to the edge FortiGate. The edge FortiGate identifies the DSCP tagged traffic and based on the defined SD-WAN rules, the edge FortiGate steers:

- VoIP traffic to the preferred VPN overlay with the least jitter in order to provide the best quality of voice communication with the remote VoIP server (PBX)
- Social media traffic to the preferred Internet link with a lower cost (less expensive and less reliable)

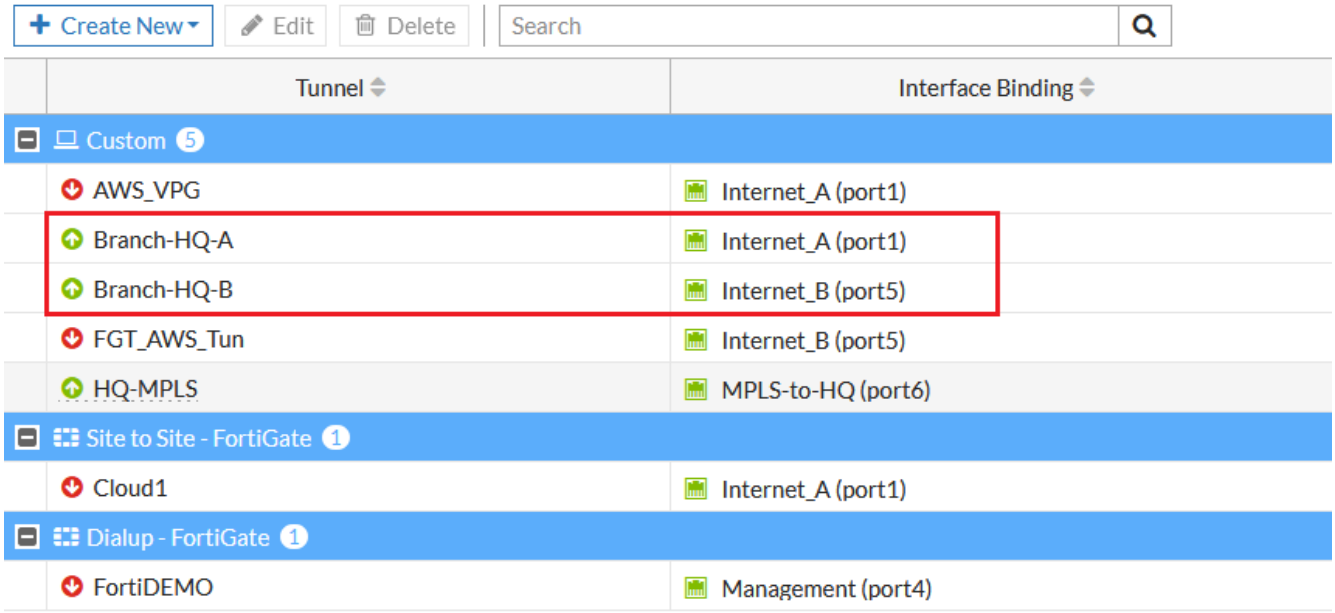
If you are familiar with SD-WAN configurations in FortiOS, you can directly jump to the Configuring SD-WAN rules on page 522 section to learn how to configure the SD-WAN rules to perform traffic steering. Otherwise, you can proceed with all of the following topics to configure the edge FortiGate:

- Configuring IPsec tunnels on page 520
- Configuring SD-WAN zones on page 520
- Configuring firewall policies on page 521
- Configuring Performance SLA test on page 521
- Configuring SD-WAN rules on page 522
- Results on page 526

## Configuring IPsec tunnels

In our example, we have two interfaces `Internet_A (port1)` and `Internet_B(port5)` on which we have configured IPsec tunnels `Branch-HQ-A` and `Branch-HQ-B` respectively. To learn how to configure IPsec tunnels, refer to the IPsec VPNs on page 1107 section.

After you have configured the IPsec tunnels as required, verify your IPsec tunnels by navigating to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* from the tree menu on the left side of the GUI.

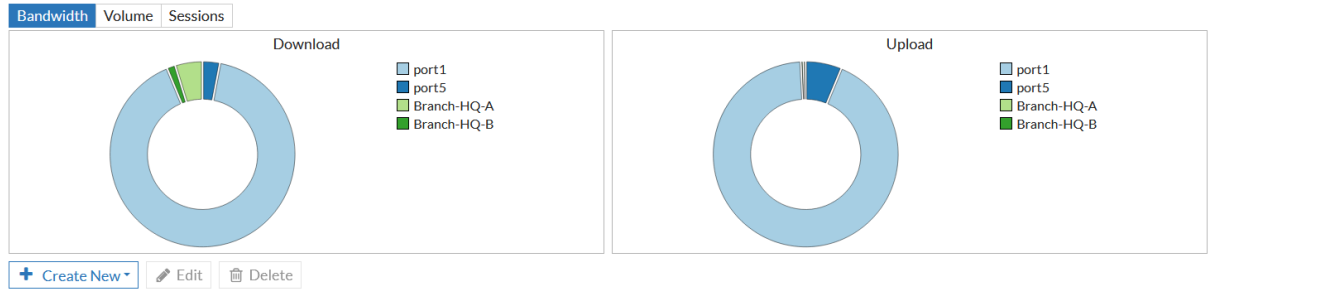



## Configuring SD-WAN zones

In order for us to steer traffic based on SD-WAN rules, first we need to configure SD-WAN interface members and assign them to SD-WAN zones. To know more about SD-WAN zones, refer to the SD-WAN zones on page 479 section.

In our example, we created two SD-WAN zones. The `virtual-wan-link` SD-WAN zone for the underlay traffic passing through the `Internet_A(port1)` and `Internet_B(port5)` interfaces, and the `Overlay` SD-WAN zone for the overlay traffic passing through the `Branch-HQ-A` and `Branch-HQ-B` interfaces.

Verify the configurations on the *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* screen:




+ Create New | Edit | Delete

| Interfaces | Cost | Download | Upload | Active Sessions | Status |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| virtual-wan-link | | | | | |
| Internet_A (port1) | 0 | 99.03 kbps | 35.71 kbps | 248 | Enable |
| Internet_B (port5) | 10 | 2.94 kbps | 2.30 kbps | 5 | Enable |
| Overlay | | | | | |
| VPN_A_Tunnel (Branch-HQ-A) | 0 | 4.87 kbps | 39 bps | 0 | Enable |
| VPN_B_Tunnel (Branch-HQ-B) | 0 | 1.25 kbps | 39 bps | 0 | Enable |

In the screen shot above, we have configured the `Internet_A(port1)` and `Internet_B (port5)` SD-WAN interface members with their *Cost* values being `0` and `10` respectively. A lower *Cost* value indicates that this member is the primary interface member, and is preferred more than a member with a higher *Cost* value when using the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy.

We also need to configure a static route that points to the *SD-WAN* interface. To know more about static routes, refer to the Adding a static route on page 470 section.

## Configuring firewall policies

Configure firewall policies for both the overlay and underlay traffic. To know more about firewall policies, refer to the Policies on page 773 section.

In this example, the *Overlay-out* policy governs the overlay traffic and the *SD-WAN-Out* policy governs the underlay traffic. The firewall policies are configured accordingly.

Once created, verify the firewall policies by navigating to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*:

+ Create New | Edit | Delete | Policy Lookup | Search | Interface Pair View | By Sequence | IPv4 + IPv6

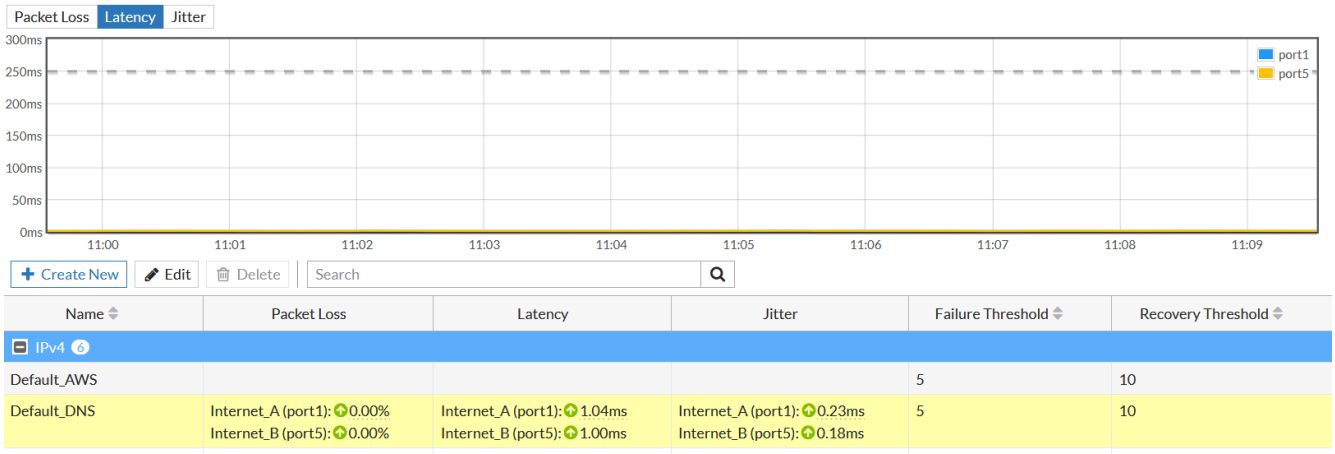
| Name | From | To | Source | Destination | Schedule | Service | Action | NAT | Security Profiles | Log | Bytes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| SD-WAN-Out | ISFW (port3) | virtual-wan-link | all | all | always | ALL | ACCEPT | Enabled | APP default<br>SSL certificate-inspection | All | 5.92 GB |
| Overlay-out | ISFW (port3) | Overlay | all | all | always | ALL | ACCEPT | Enabled | SSL no-inspection | All | 34.30 MB |

The *Security Profiles* column indicates that the *Overlay-out* firewall policy for the overlay traffic is set up to not scan any traffic, while the *SD-WAN-Out* firewall policy is set to scan all web traffic to identify and govern social media traffic as *Application Control* profile is active.

## Configuring Performance SLA test

Configure a performance SLA test that will be tied to the SD-WAN interface members we created and assigned to SD-WAN zones. To know more about Performance SLA, refer to the Performance SLA - SLA targets on page 486 section.

In this example, we created a *Performance SLA* test *Default_DNS* with `Internet_A(port1)` and `Internet_B (port5)` interface members as participants. We will use the created *Performance SLA* test to steer all web traffic passing through the underlays other than social media traffic based on the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy.




## Configuring SD-WAN rules

Configure SD-WAN rules to govern the steering of DSCP tag-based traffic to the appropriate interfaces. Traffic will be steered based on the *Criteria* configured as part of the SD-WAN rules configuration.

In our example, we configured three different SD-WAN rules to govern DSCP tagged traffic. We have one SD-WAN rule each for VoIP traffic, social media traffic (Facebook in this case), and all other web traffic. VoIP traffic is always steered to either of the two overlay SD-WAN zones - `VPN_A_tunnel(Branch-HQ-A)` or `VPN_B_tunnel(Branch-HQ-B)`. Similarly, social media traffic and other web traffic is always steered to either of the two underlay SD-WAN zones - `Internet_A(port1)` or `Internet_B(port5)`. The interface that is preferred by the system over another depends upon the *Criteria* configured in the SD-WAN rule definition.

We configured the following SD-WAN rules:

- SD-WAN rule for VoIP traffic on page 522
- SD-WAN rule for social media traffic on page 523
- SD-WAN rule for other web traffic on page 524

### SD-WAN rule for VoIP traffic

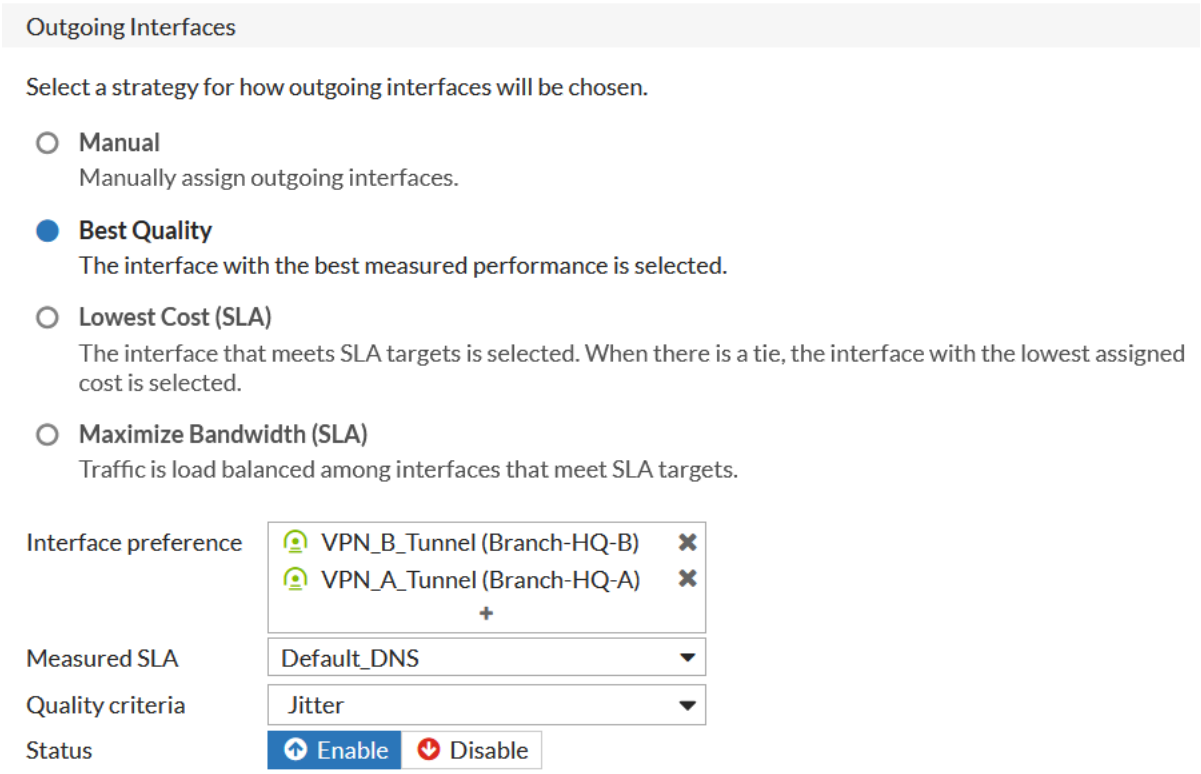
**To configure SD-WAN rule for DSCP tagged VoIP traffic using the CLI:**

```
FortiGate # config sys sdwan
   config service
      edit 5
         set name "VoIP-Steer"
         set mode priority
         set tos 0x70
         set tos-mask 0xf0
         set dst "all"
         set health-check "Default_DNS"
         set link-cost-factor jitter
         set priority-members 4 3
   end
```

The `VoIP-Steer` SD-WAN rule configured above governs the DSCP tagged VoIP traffic.

DSCP values commonly are 6-bit binary numbers that are padded with zeros at the end. Therefore, in this example, VoIP traffic with DSCP tag `011100` will become `01110000`. This 8-bit binary number `01110000` is represented in its hexadecimal form `0x70` as the `tos` (Type of Service bit pattern) value. The `tos-mask` (Type of Service evaluated bits) hexadecimal value of `0xf0` (binary `11110000`) is used to check the four most significant bits from the `tos` value in this case. Hence, the first four bits of the `tos` (`0111`) will be used to match the first four bits of the DSCP tag in our policy above. Only the non-zero bit positions are used for comparison and the zero bit positions are ignored from the `tos-mask`.

We used the *Best Quality* strategy to define the *Criteria* to select the preferred interface from the overlay SD-WAN zone. With the *Best Quality* strategy selected, the interface with the best measured performance is selected. The system prefers the interface with the least *Jitter*.




To know more about configuring SD-WAN rules with the *Best Quality* strategy, refer to the SD-WAN rules - best quality on page 493 section.

## SD-WAN rule for social media traffic

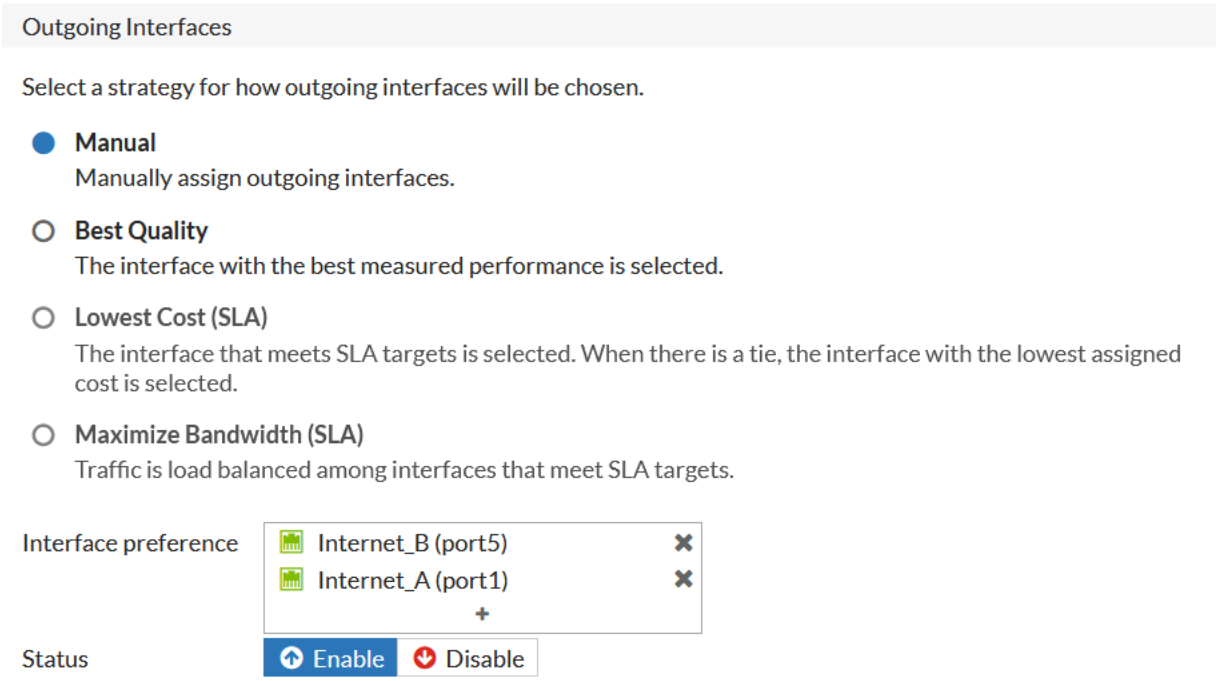
**To configure SD-WAN rule for DSCP tagged social media traffic using the CLI:**

```
FortiGate # config sys sdwan
   config service
      edit 3
         set name "Facebook-DSCP-steer"
         set tos 0x30
         set tos-mask 0xf0
         set dst "all"
         set priority-members 2 1
   end
```

The `Facebook-DSCP-steer` SD-WAN rule configured above governs the DSCP tagged social media traffic.

DSCP values commonly are 6-bit binary numbers that are padded with zeros at the end. Therefore, in this example, social media traffic with DSCP tag `001100` will become `00110000`. This 8-bit binary number `00110000` is represented in its hexadecimal form `0x30` as the `tos` (Type of Service bit pattern) value. The `tos-mask` (Type of Service evaluated bits) hexadecimal value of `0xf0` (binary `11110000`) is used to check the four most significant bits from the `tos` value in this case. Hence, the first four bits of the `tos` (`0011`) will be used to match the first four bits of the DSCP tag in our policy above. Only the non-zero bit positions are used for comparison and the zero bit positions are ignored from the `tos-mask`.

We used a manual strategy to select the preferred interface from the underlay SD-WAN zone. We manually select the preferred interface as *Internet_B(port5)* to steer all social media traffic to.




To know more about configuring SD-WAN rules with static application steering with a manual strategy, refer to the Static application steering with a manual strategy on page 501 section.

## SD-WAN rule for other web traffic

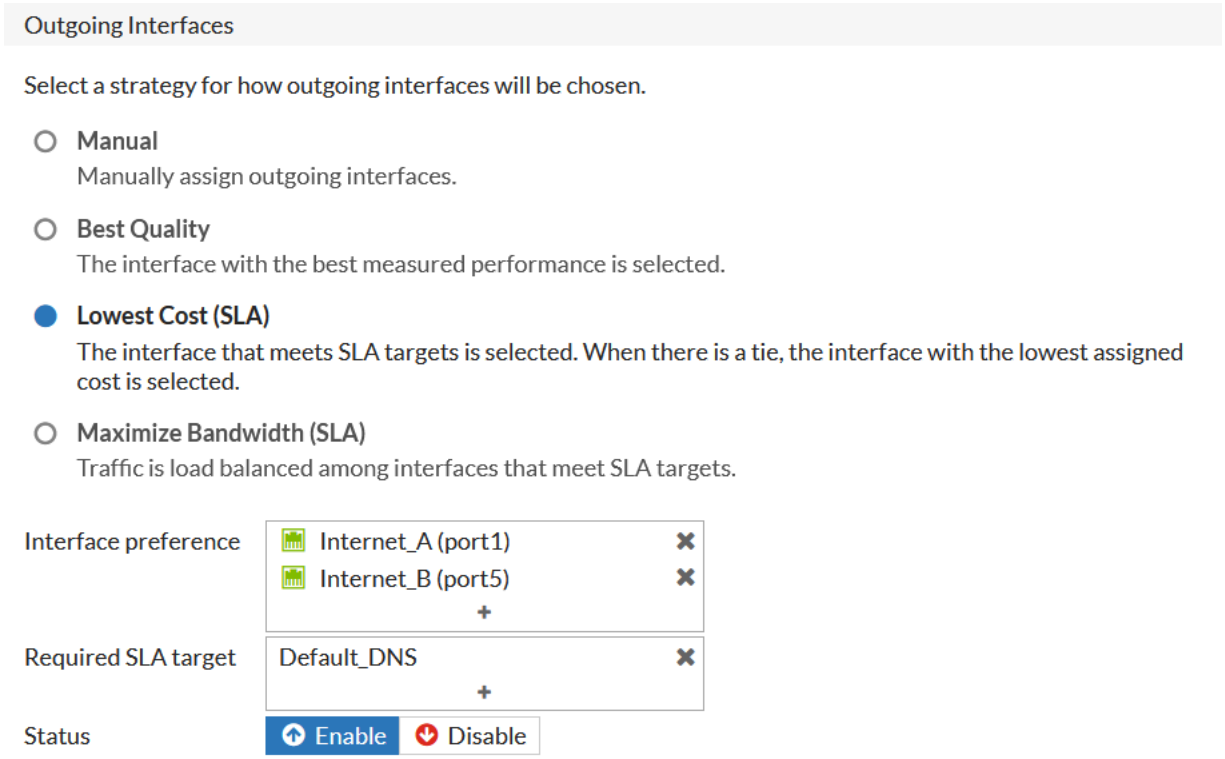
**To configure SD-WAN rule for all other web traffic using the CLI:**

```
FortiGate # config sys sdwan
   config service
      edit 2
         set name "All-traffic"
         set mode sla
         set dst "all"
         config sla
            edit "Default_DNS"
               set id 1
            next
         end
         set priority-members 1 2
```

```
end
```

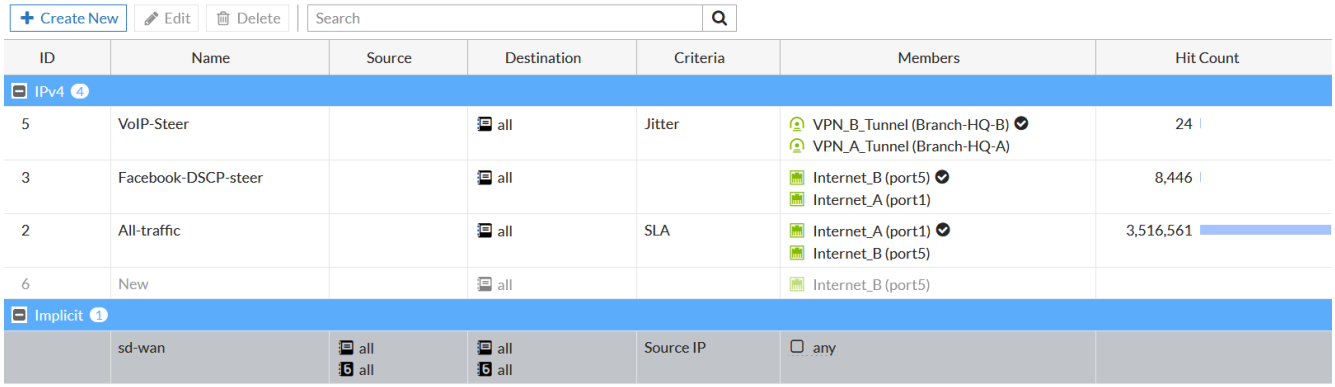
The `All-traffic` SD-WAN rule configured above governs all other web traffic.

We used the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy to define the *Criteria* to select the preferred interface from the underlay SD-WAN zone. With the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy selected, the interface that meets the defined *Performance SLA* targets (*Default_DNS* in our case) is selected. When there is a tie, the interface with the lowest assigned *Cost* (`Internet_A (port1)` in our case) is selected.




To know more about configuring SD-WAN rules with the *Lowest Cost (SLA)* strategy, refer to the SD-WAN rules - lowest cost (SLA) on page 496 section.

Once configured, verify your SD-WAN rules by navigating to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*:



## Results

The following sections show the function of the FortiGate and specifically of secure SD-WAN with respect to DSCP tagged traffic steering, and can be used to confirm that it is setup and running correctly:

- Verifying the DSCP tagged traffic on FortiGate on page 526
- Verifying service rules on page 527
- Verifying traffic steering as per the defined SD-WAN rules on page 528
- Verifying steered traffic leaving the required interface on page 528

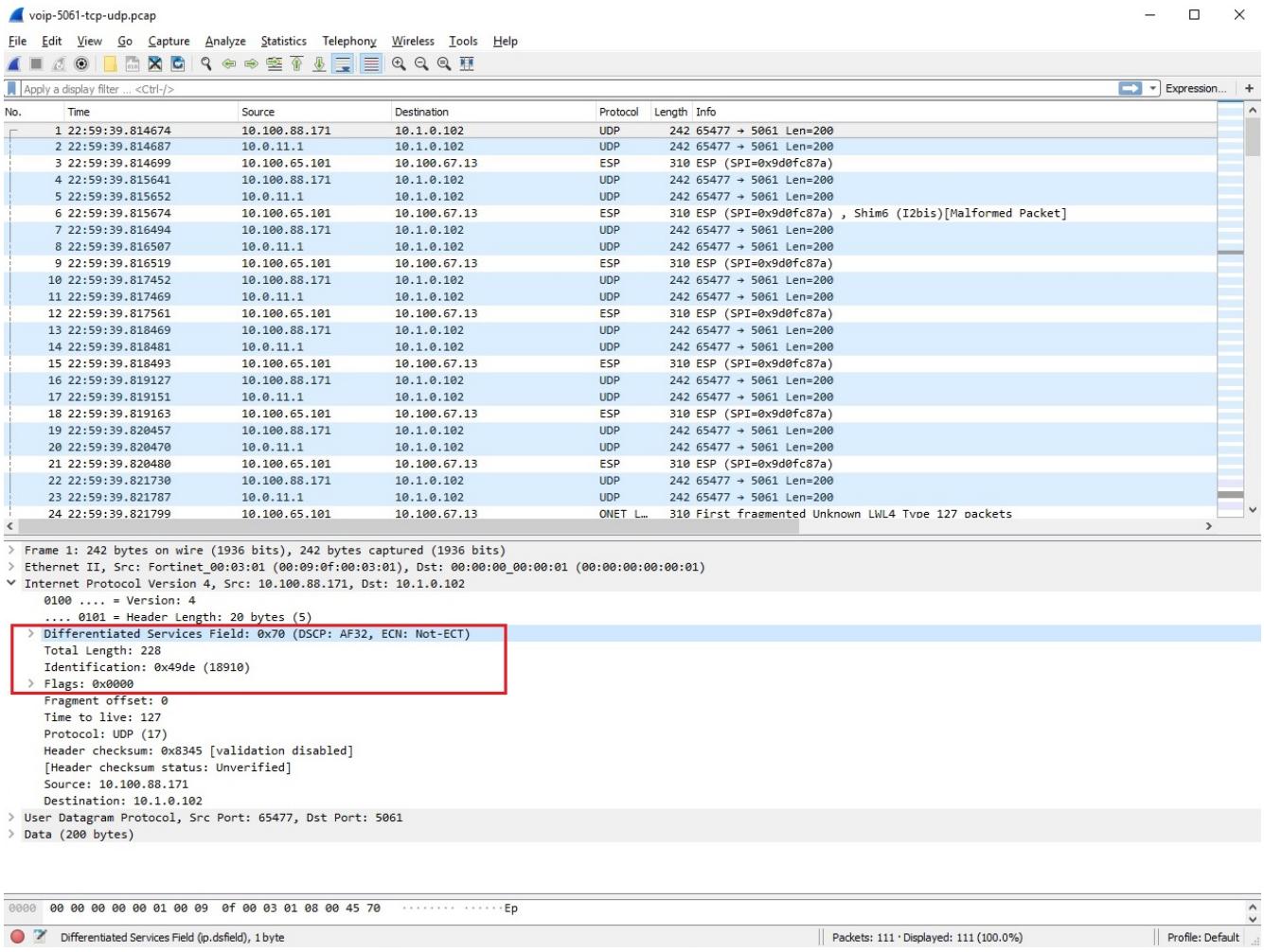
### Verifying the DSCP tagged traffic on FortiGate

To verify the incoming DSCP tagged traffic, we used packet sniffing and converting the sniffed traffic to a desired format. To know more about packet sniffing, refer to the Using the FortiOS built-in packet sniffer guide on the *Fortinet Knowledge Base*.

**For VoIP traffic that is marked with DSCP tag `0x70`:**

```
FortiGate # diag sniffer packet any '(ip and ip[1] & 0xfc == 0x70)' 6 0 l
```

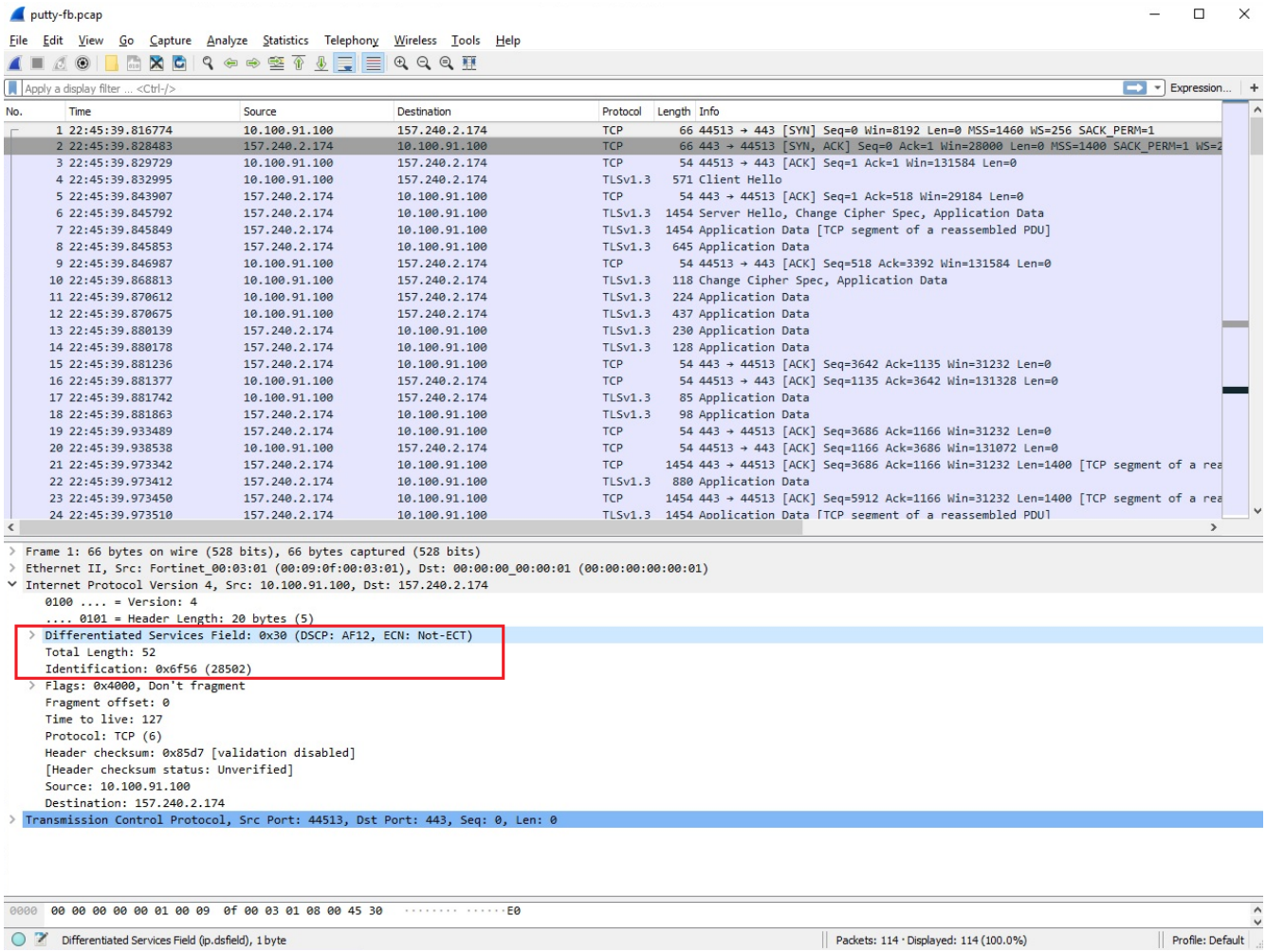
We used the open-source packet analyzer *Wireshark* to verify that VoIP traffic is tagged with the `0x70` DSCP tag.



**For web traffic marked with DSCP tag `0x30`:**

```
FortiGate # diag sniffer packet any '(ip and ip[1] & 0xfc == 0x30)' 6 0 l
```

We used the open-source packet analyzer *Wireshark* to verify that web traffic is tagged with the `0x30` DSCP tag.




## Verifying service rules

The following CLI commands show the appropriate DSCP tags and the corresponding interfaces selected by the SD-WAN rules to steer traffic:

```
FortiGate # diag sys sdwan service

Service(5): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
   Gen(1), TOS(0x70/0xf0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
   Members:
      1: Seq_num(4 Branch-HQ-B), alive, selected
   Dst address:
         0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

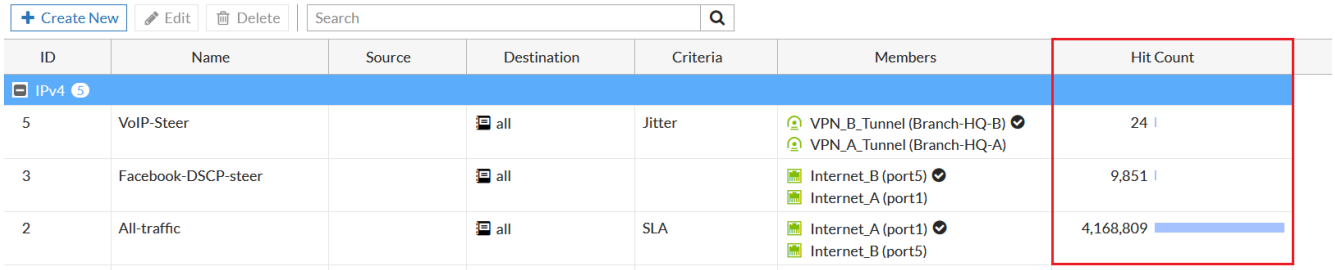
Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
   Gen(1), TOS(0x30/0xf0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
   Members:
```

```
      1: Seq_num(2 port5), alive, selected
   Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
   Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
   Members:
      1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
      2: Seq_num(2 port5), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(10), selected
   Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

## Verifying traffic steering as per the defined SD-WAN rules

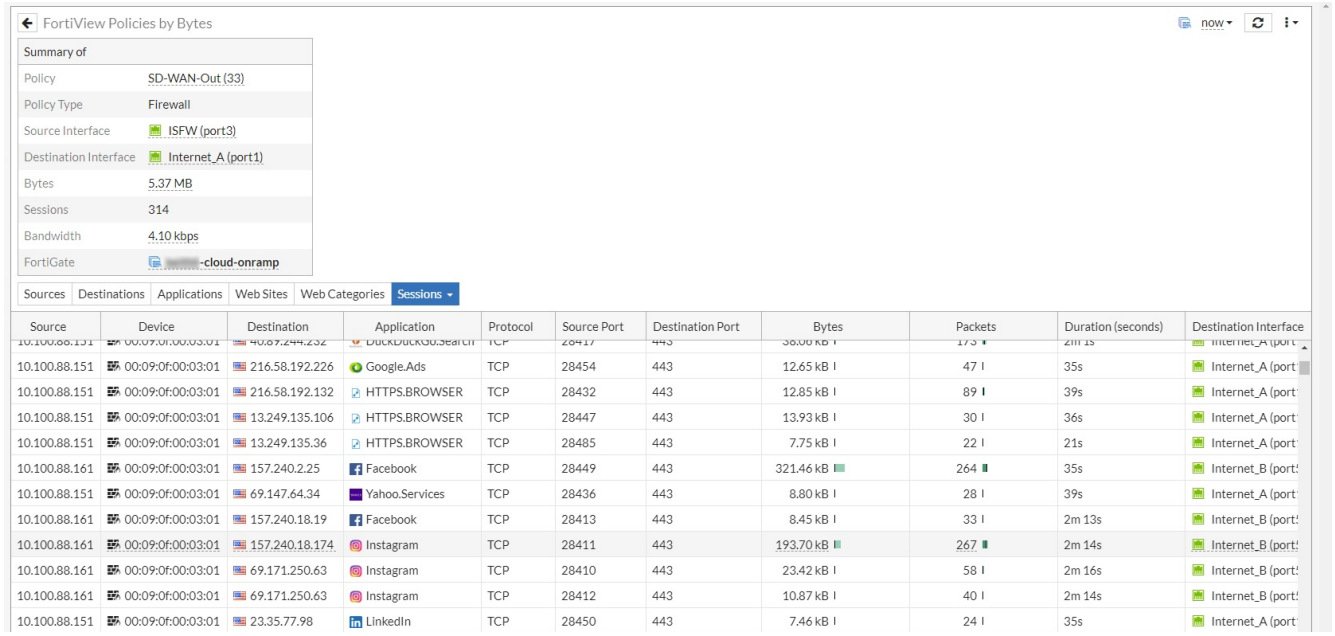
Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* to review the *Hit Count* on the appropriate SD-WAN interfaces.



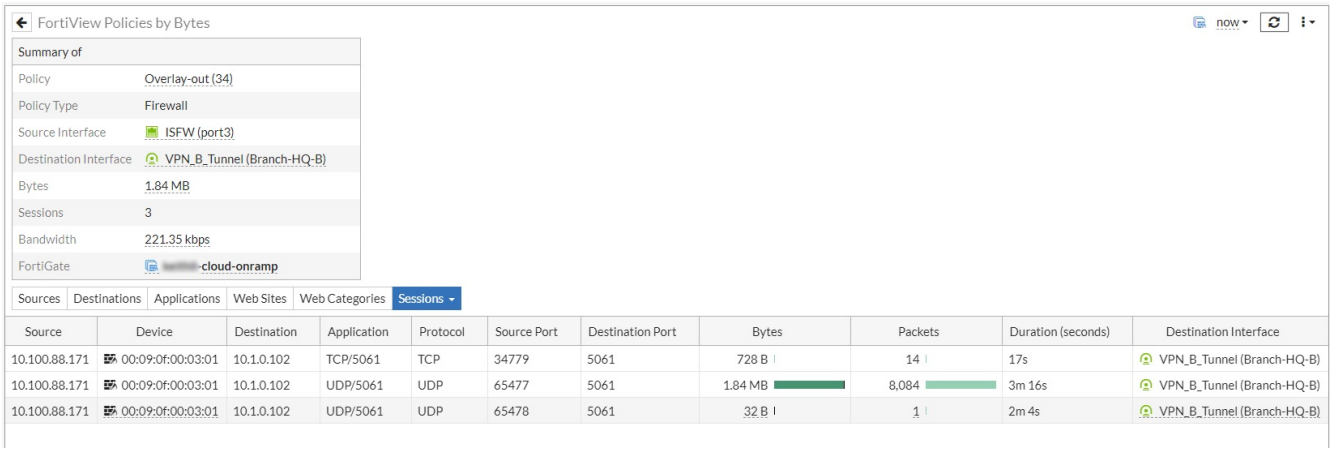

## Verifying steered traffic leaving the required interface

Go to *Dashboard* > *Top Policies* to confirm that web traffic (port 443) flows through the right underlay interface members, and VoIP traffic flows through the right overlay interface member.

Web traffic leaves either `Interface_A(port1)` or `Interface_B(port5)`.




VoIP traffic leaves the preferred `VPN_B_Tunnel(Branch-HQ-B)` interface.




# Advanced configuration

The following topics provide instructions on SD-WAN advanced configuration:


- Self-originating traffic on page 529
- SDN dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN rules on page 531
- Forward error correction on VPN overlay networks on page 534
- Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules on page 537
- BGP multiple path support on page 540
- Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules on page 542
- Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors on page 549
- IBGP and EBGP support in VRF on page 555
- ADVPN and shortcut paths on page 557
- SD-WAN monitor on ADVPN shortcuts on page 570
- SD-WAN integration with OCVPN on page 571
- DSCP matching (shaping) on page 578
- SD-WAN health check packet DSCP marker support on page 582
- Dual VPN tunnel wizard on page 582
- SD-WAN with FGCP HA on page 584


See also Per packet distribution and tunnel aggregation on page 1234.

## Self-originating traffic



This topic applies to FortiOS 6.4.1. In other versions, self-originating (local-out) traffic behaves differently.

By default, self-originating traffic, such as Syslog, FortiAnalyzer logging, FortiGuard services, remote authentication, and others, relies on routing table lookups to determine the egress interface that is used to initiate the connection. Policy routes generated by SD-WAN rules do not apply to this traffic.

Explicit proxy traffic uses policy routes and SD-WAN rules to select an egress interface.

For the following features, self-originating traffic can be configured to use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

#### PING

IPv4 and IPv6 pings can be configured to use SD-WAN rules.

```
execute ping-options use-sdwan {yes | no}
execute ping6-options use-sd-wan {yes | no}
```

#### DNS

DNS and non-management VDOM DNS traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system {dns | vdom-dns}
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **interface-select-method {auto \| sdwan \| specify}** | Select the interface selection method:<br>• `auto`: Set the outgoing interface automatically (default)<br>• `sdwan`: Set the interface by SD-WAN or policy routing rules<br>• `specify`: Set the interface manually. |
| **interface <interface>** | Specify the outgoing interface. This option is only available and must be configured when `interface-select-method` is `specify`. |

#### FortiGuard

FortiGuard traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system fortiguard
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

#### RADIUS

RADIUS, and individual accounting servers, traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config user radius
    edit <name>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
        config accounting-server
            edit <name>
                set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
                set interface <interface>
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

### LDAP

LDAP traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config user ldap
    edit <name>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
    next
end
```

### TACACS+

TACACS+ traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config user tacacs+
    edit <name>
        set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
        set interface <interface>
    next
end
```

### Central management

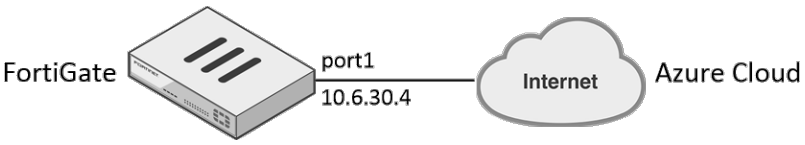
Central management traffic can use SD-WAN rules or a specific interface:

```
config system central-management
    set interface-select-method {auto | sdwan | specify}
    set interface <interface>
end
```

## SDN dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN rules

SDN dynamic connector addresses can be used in SD-WAN rules. FortiGate supports both public (AWS, Azure, GCP, OCI, AliCloud) and private (Kubernetes, VMware ESXi and NSX, OpenStack, ACI, Nuage) SDN connectors.

The configuration procedure for all of the supported SDN connector types is the same. This example uses an Azure public SDN connector.




There are four steps to create and use an SDN connector address in an SD-WAN rule:

1. Configure the FortiGate IP address and network gateway so that it can reach the Internet.
2. Create an Azure SDN connector.
3. Create a firewall address to associate with the configured SDN connector.
4. Use the firewall address in an SD-WAN service rule.

**To create an Azure SDN connector:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Public SDN* section, click *Microsoft Azure*.
4. Enter the following:

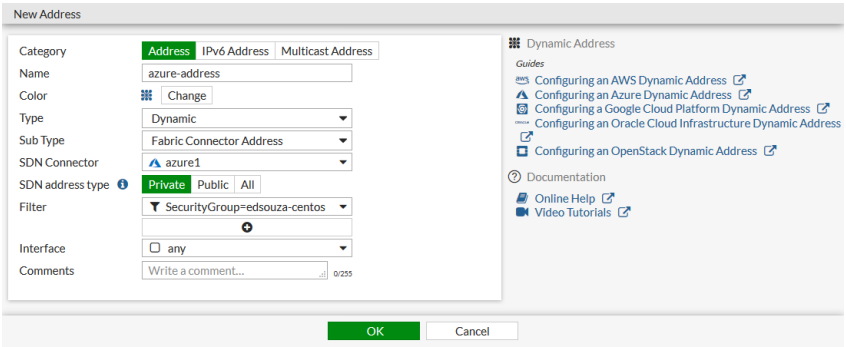
| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | azure1 |
| **Status** | Enabled |
| **Update Interval** | Use Default |
| **Server region** | Global |
| **Directory ID** | 942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba |
| **Application ID** | 14dbd5c5-307e-4ea4-8133-68738141feb1 |
| **Client secret** | xxxxxx |
| **Resource path** | disabled |

5. Click *OK*.

**To create a firewall address to associate with the configured SDN connector:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Enter the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Category** | Address |
| **Name** | azure-address |
| **Type** | Dynamic |
| **Sub Type** | Fabric Connector Address |
| **SDN Connector** | azure1 |
| **SDN address type** | Private |
| **Filter** | SecurityGroup=edsouza-centos |
| **Interface** | Any |



4. Click *OK*.

**To use the firewall address in an SD-WAN service rule:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the *Name* to *Azure1*.
4. For the *Destination Address* select *azure-address*.
5. Configure the remaining settings as needed. See WAN path control on page 484 for details.
6. Click *OK*.

## Diagnostics

Use the following CLI commands to check the status of and troubleshoot the connector.

**To see the status of the SDN connector:**

```
# diagnose sys sdn status

    SDN Connector       Type        Status          Updating        Last update
    ---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-
    azure1              azure       connected       no              n/a
```

**To debug the SDN connector to resolve the firewall address:**

```
# diagnose debug application azd -1
    Debug messages will be on for 30 minutes.

    ...
    azd sdn connector azure1 start updating IP addresses
    azd checking firewall address object azure-address-1, vd 0
     IP address change, new list:
      10.18.0.4
      10.18.0.12
      ...
      ...

# diagnose sys sdwan service

    Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
      TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
      Service role: standalone
      Member sub interface:
      Members:
        1: Seq_num(1), alive, selected
      Dst address:
            10.18.0.4 - 10.18.0.4
            10.18.0.12 - 10.18.0.12
             ... ...
             ... ...
             ... ...
```

# Forward error correction on VPN overlay networks

This topic shows an SD-WAN with forward error correction (FEC) on VPN overlay networks. FEC is a technique used to control and correct errors in data transmission by sending redundant data across the VPN. It uses six parameters in IPsec phase1/phase1-interface settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| `fec-ingress` | Enable/disable Forward Error Correction for ingress IPsec traffic (default = disable). |
| `fec-egress` | Enable/disable Forward Error Correction for egress IPsec traffic (default = disable). |
| `fec-base` | The number of base Forward Error Correction packets (1 - 100, default = 20). |
| `fec-redundant` | The number of redundant Forward Error Correction packets (1 - 100, default = 10). |
| `fec-send-timeout` | The time before sending Forward Error Correction packets, in milliseconds (1 - 1000, default = 8). |
| `fec-receive-timeout` | The time before dropping Forward Error Correction packets, in milliseconds (1 - 1000, default = 5000). |

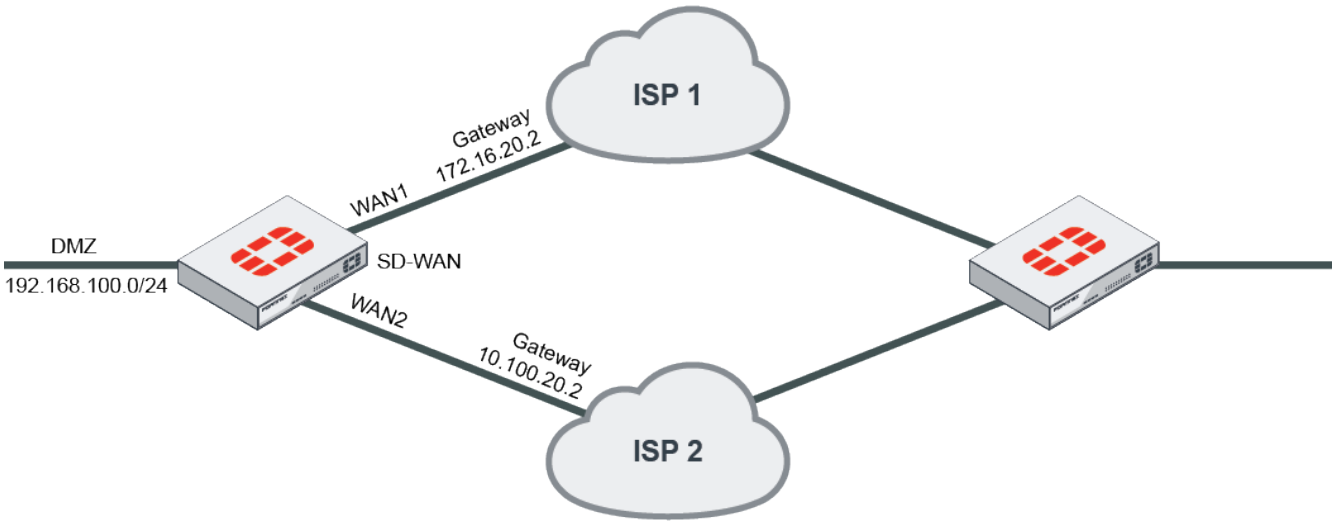
For every `fec-base` number of sent packets, the tunnel will send `fec-redundant` number of redundant packets.

If your FortiGate is NPU capable, disable `npu-offload` in your phase1 configurations:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <name>
        set npu-offload disable
    next
end
```

## Example

For example, a customer has two ISP connections, wan1 and wan2. Using these two connections, create two IPsec VPN interfaces as SD-WAN members. Configure FEC on each VPN interface to lower packet loss ratio by re-transmitting the packets using its backend algorithm.



**To configure IPsec VPN:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.201.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
        set fec-egress enable
        set fec-send-timeout 8
        set fec-base 20
        set fec-redundant 10
        set fec-ingress enable
        set fec-receive-timeout 5000
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
        set fec-egress enable
        set fec-send-timeout 8
        set fec-base 20
        set fec-redundant 10
        set fec-ingress enable
        set fec-receive-timeout 5000
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set phase1name "vd1-p1"
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set phase1name "vd1-p2"
    next
end
```

**To configure the interface:**

```
config system interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set ip 172.16.211.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 172.16.211.2 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set ip 172.16.212.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 172.16.212.2 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

**To configure the firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf ""virtual-wan-link""
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure SD-WAN:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "vd1-p1"
            set gateway 172.16.211.2
        next
        edit 1
            set interface "vd2-p2"
            set gateway 172.16.212.2
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To use the diagnose command to check VPN FEC status:**

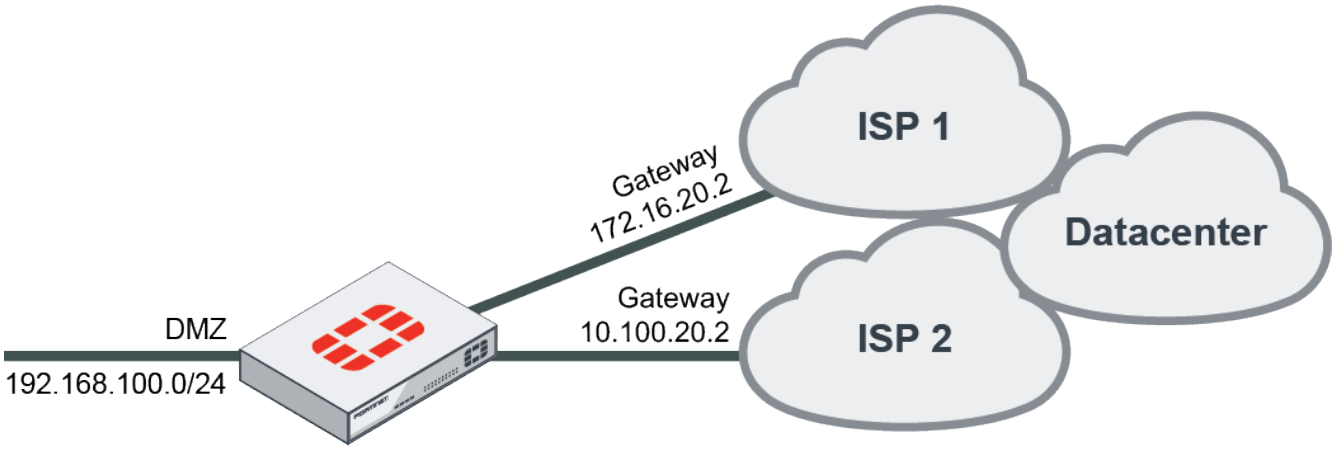
```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=vd1 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/3600 options[0e10]=create_dev
frag-rfc fec-egress fec-ingress  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
fec-egress: base=20 redundant=10 remote_port=50000     <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
fec-ingress: base=20 redundant=10                      <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
proxyid=demo proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:173.1.1.0/255.255.255.0:0
```

```
SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1390 expire=42897/0B replaywin=2048
     seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
dec: spi=181f4f81 esp=aes key=16 6e8fedf2a77691ffdbf3270484cb2555
     ah=sha1 key=20 f92bcf841239d15d30b36b695f78eaef3fad05c4
enc: spi=0ce10190 esp=aes key=16 2d684fb19cbae533249c8b5683937329
     ah=sha1 key=20 ba7333f89cd34cf75966bd9ffa72030115919213
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

## Using BGP tags with SD-WAN rules

SD-WAN rules can use Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) learned routes as dynamic destinations.




In this example, a customer has two ISP connections, wan1 and wan2. wan1 is used primarily for direct access to internet applications, and wan2 is used primarily for traffic to the customer's data center.

The customer could create an SD-WAN rule using the data center's IP address range as the destination to force that traffic to use wan2, but the data center's IP range is not static. Instead, a BGP tag can be used.

For this example, wan2's BGP neighbor advertises the data center's network range with a community number of 30:5.

This example assumes that SD-WAN is enabled on the FortiGate, wan1 and wan2 are added as SD-WAN members in the *virtual-wan-link* SD-WAN zone, and a policy and static route have been created. See SD-WAN quick start on page 468 for details.

**To configure BGP tags with SD-WAN rules:**

1. Configure the community list:

```
config router community-list
    edit "30:5"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set action permit
                set match "30:5"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the route map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-community "30:5"
                set set-route-tag 15
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure BGP:

```
config router bgp
    set as xxxxx
    set router-id xxxx
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.20.2"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as xxxxx
            set route-map-in "comm1"
        next
    end
end
```

4. Configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

5. Edit the SD-WAN configuration:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "wan1"
            set gateway 172.16.20.2
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "wan2"
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "DataCenter"
```

```
            set mode manual
            set route-tag 15
            set priority-members 2
        next
    end
end
```

## Troubleshooting BGP tags with SD-WAN rules

## Check the network community

Use the `get router info bgp network` command to check the network community:

```
# get router info bgp network
BGP table version is 5, local router ID is 1.1.1.1
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i - internal,
              S Stale
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

   Network Next Hop Metric LocPrf Weight RouteTag Path
*> 0.0.0.0/0 10.100.1.5 32768 0 ?
*> 1.1.1.1/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.1.100.0/24 172.16.203.2 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.1.0/30 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.1.4/30 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.1.248/29 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 10.100.10.0/24 10.100.1.5 202 10000 15 20 e
*> 172.16.200.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.200.200/32
                    0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.201.0/24 172.16.200.4 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.203.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.204.0/24 172.16.200.4 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.205.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.206.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.207.1/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.207.2/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.212.1/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.16.212.2/32 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.17.200.200/32
                    0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.1.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.2.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.5.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.6.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.7.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.27.8.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.29.1.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 172.29.2.0/24 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?
*> 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.0 32768 0 ?

Total number of prefixes 28

# get router info bgp network 10.100.11.0
BGP routing table entry for 10.100.10.0/24
Paths: (2 available, best 1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
```

```
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
   172.10.22.2
  20
    10.100.20.2 from 10.100.20.2 (6.6.6.6)
      Origin EGP metric 200, localpref 100, weight 10000, valid, external, best
      Community: 30:5 <<<<==========================
      Last update: Wen Mar 20 18:45:17 2019
```

### Check dynamic BGP addresses

Use the `get router info route-map-address` command to check dynamic BGP addresses:

```
# get router info route-map-address
Extend-tag: 15, interface(wan2:16)
        10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0
```

### Check dynamic BGP addresses used in policy routes

Use the `diagnose firewall proute list` command to check dynamic BGP addresses used in policy routes:

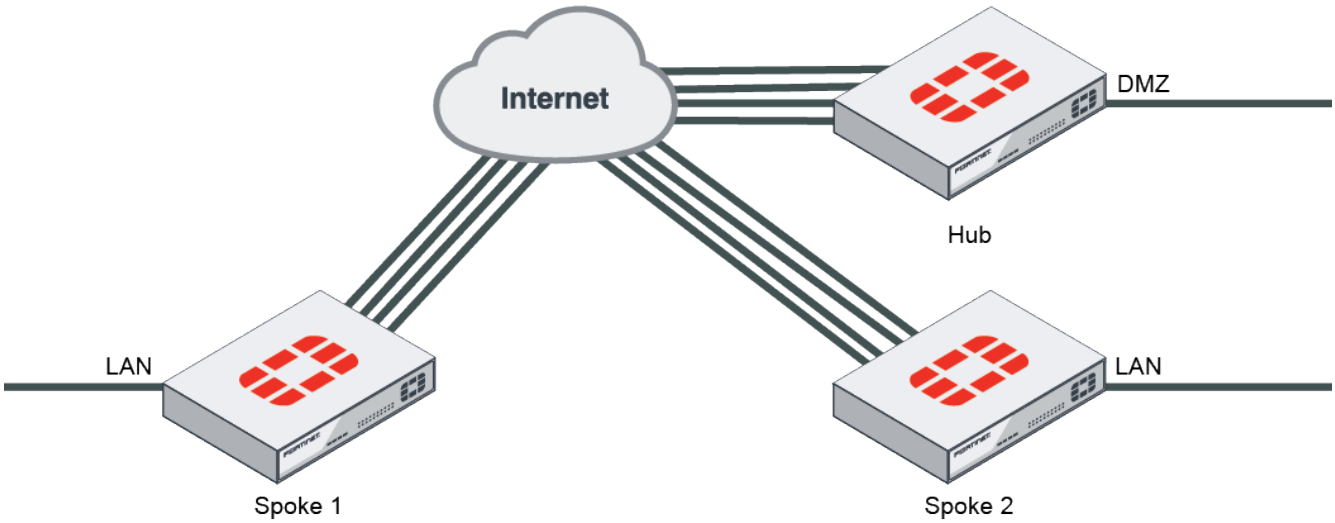
```
# diagnose firewall proute list
list route policy info(vf=root):

id=4278779905 vwl_service=1(DataCenter) flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0
sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=16
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
destination wildcard(1): 10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0
```

## BGP multiple path support

BGP supports multiple paths, allowing an ADVPN to advertise multiple paths. This allows BGP to extend and keep additional network paths according to RFC 7911.

In this example, Spoke1 and Spoke2 each have four VPN tunnels that are connected to the Hub with ADVPN. The Spoke-Hub has established four BGP neighbors on all four tunnels.




Spoke 1 and Spoke 2 can learn four different routes from each other.

**To configure the hub:**

```
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    set router-id 11.11.11.11
    set ibgp-multipath enable
    set additional-path enable
    set additional-path-select 4
    config neighbor-group
        edit "gr1"
            set capability-default-originate enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set additional-path both
            set adv-additional-path 4
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.0.0 255.255.0.0
            set neighbor-group "gr1"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 12
            set prefix 11.11.11.11 255.255.255.255
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure a spoke:**

```
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    set router-id 2.2.2.2
    set ibgp-multipath enable
    set additional-path enable
    set additional-path-select 4
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.100.254"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set additional-path both
            set adv-additional-path 4
        next
        edit "10.10.200.254"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set additional-path both
            set adv-additional-path 4
        next
        edit "10.10.203.254"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set additional-path both
            set adv-additional-path 4
```

```
        next
        edit "10.10.204.254"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set additional-path both
            set adv-additional-path 4
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 3
            set prefix 22.1.1.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**To view the BGP routing table on a spoke:**

```
Spoke1 # get router info routing-table bgp
    Routing table for VRF=0
    B*      0.0.0.0/0 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, vd2-2, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.203.254, vd2-3, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.204.254, vd2-4, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, vd2-1, 03:57:26
    B       1.1.1.1/32 [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
        [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
        [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
        [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 03:57:51
    B       11.11.11.11/32 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, vd2-2, 03:57:51
        [200/0] via 10.10.203.254, vd2-3, 03:57:51
        [200/0] via 10.10.204.254, vd2-4, 03:57:51
        [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, vd2-1, 03:57:51
    B       33.1.1.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.204.3, vd2-4, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.203.3, vd2-3, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, vd2-2, 03:57:26
        [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, vd2-1, 03:57:26
```

## Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules

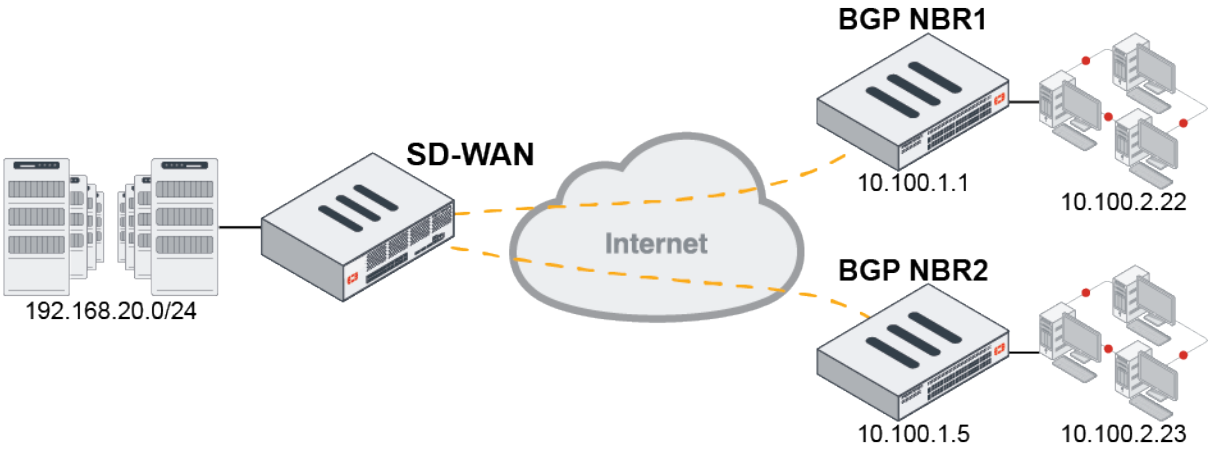
SD-WAN allows you to select different outbound WAN links based on performance SLAs. It is important that BGP neighbors are aware of these settings, and changes to them.

BGP can adapt to changes in SD-WAN link SLAs in the following ways:

- Applying different route-maps based on the SD-WAN's health checks. For example, different BGP community strings can be advertised to BGP neighbors when SLAs are not met.
- Traffic can be selectively forwarded based on the active BGP neighbor. If the SD-WAN service's role matches the active SD-WAN neighbor, the service is enabled. If there is no match, then the service is disabled.

## Example

In this topology, a branch FortiGate has two SD-WAN gateways serving as the primary and secondary gateways. The gateways reside in different datacenters, but have a full mesh network between them.




This example shows how route-maps and service rules are selected based on performance SLAs and the member that is currently active. Traffic flows through the primary gateway unless the neighbor's health check is outside of its SLA. If that happens, traffic routes to the secondary gateway.

BGP NBR1 is the primary neighbor and BGP NBR2 is the secondary neighbor.

The branch FortiGate's wan1 and wan2 interfaces are members of the SD-WAN. When the SD-WAN neighbor status is primary, it will advertise community *20:1* to BGP NBR1 and *20:5* to BGP NBR2. When the SD-WAN neighbor status is secondary, it will advertise *20:5* to BGP NBR1 and *20:2* to BGP NBR2.

Only one of the primary or secondary neighbors can be active at one time. The SD-WAN neighbor status is used to decide which neighbor is selected:

- **Primary**: The primary neighbor takes precedence if its SLAs are met.
- **Secondary**: If the primary neighbor's SLAs are not met, the secondary neighbor becomes active if its SLAs are met.
- **Standalone**: If neither the primary or secondary neighbor's SLAs are met, the SD-WAN neighbor status becomes standalone.

## Route map

SD-WAN is configured to let BGP advertise different communities when the SLA status changes. When the SLA is missed, it triggers BGP to advertise a different community to its BGP neighbor based on its route-map. The BGP neighbors can use the received community string to select the best path to reach the branch.

**To configure BGP route-maps and neighbors:**

1. Configure an access for the routes to be matched:

```
config router access-list
    edit "net192"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure the primary neighbor's preferred route-map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "20:1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure the secondary neighbor's preferred route-map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "20:2"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. Configure the failed route-map:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm5"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "20:5"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure BGP neighbors:

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    set ibgp-multipath enable
```

```
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.1.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 20
            set route-map-out "comm5"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm1"
        next
        edit "10.100.1.5"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 20
            set route-map-out "comm5"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm2"
        next
    end
end
```

When SLAs are met, `route-map-out-preferable` is used. When SLAs are missed, `route-map-out` is used.

**To configure SD-WAN:**

1. Configure the SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "port2"
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure health checks for each member:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "ping"
            set server "10.100.2.22"
            set members 1
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
        next
        edit "ping2"
            set server "10.100.2.23"
            set members 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 1
                next
            end
```

```
            next
        end
    end
```

3. Configure the SD-WAN neighbors and assign them a role and the health checks used to determine if the neighbor meets the SLA:
   SD-WAN neighbors can only be configured in the CLI.

```
config system sdwan
    config neighbor
        edit "10.100.1.1"
            set member 1
            set role primary
            set health-check "ping"
            set sla-id 1
        next
        edit "10.100.1.5"
            set member 2
            set role secondary
            set health-check "ping2"
            set sla-id 1
        next
    end
end
```

## Service rules

Create SD-WAN service rules to direct traffic to the primary neighbor when its SLAs are met, and to the secondary neighbor when the primary neighbor's SLAs are missed.

**To configure the SD-WAN service rules:**

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "Primary-Out"
            set role primary
            set dst "all"
            set src "all"
            set priority-members 1
        next
        edit 2
            set name "Secondary-Out"
            set role secondary
            set dst "all"
            set src "all"
            set priority-members 2
        next
    end
end
```



If neither the primary nor secondary neighbors are active, the SD-WAN neighbor status becomes standalone. Only service rules with `standalone-action` enabled will continue to pass traffic. This option is disabled by default.

## Verification

**To verify when the primary neighbor is passing traffic:**

1. Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.569), jitter(0.061) sla_
map=0x1
Health Check(ping2):
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(3.916), jitter(2.373) sla_
map=0x1
```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
SD-WAN neighbor status: hold-down(disable), hold-down-time(0), hold_boot_time(0)
        Selected role(primary) last_secondary_select_time/current_time in seconds 0/572
Neighbor(10.100.1.1): member(1) role(primary)
        Health-check(ping:1)  sla-pass selected alive
Neighbor(10.100.1.5): member(2) role(secondary)
        Health-check(ping2:1)  sla-pass alive
```

3. Verify service rules status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(3), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: primary
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(6), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: secondary, disabled by unselected.
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
```

```
      10.100.1.2 from 10.100.1.2 (192.168.122.98)
        Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
        Community: 20:1
        Last update: Thu Apr 30 13:41:40 2020
```

**b.** Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    10.100.1.6 from 10.100.1.6 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:5
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 13:41:39 2020
```

### To verify when the secondary neighbor is passing traffic:

**1.** Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 port1): state(dead), packet-loss(54.000%) sla_map=0x0
Health Check(ping2):
Seq(2 port2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(4.339), jitter(3.701) sla_
map=0x1
```

**2.** Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
SD-WAN neighbor status: hold-down(disable), hold-down-time(0), hold_boot_time(0)
        Selected role(secondary) last_secondary_select_time/current_time in seconds
936/936
Neighbor(10.100.1.1): member(1) role(primary)
        Health-check(ping:1)  sla-fail dead
Neighbor(10.100.1.5): member(2) role(secondary)
        Health-check(ping2:1)  sla-pass selected alive
```

**3.** Verify service rules status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(4), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: primary, disabled by unselected.
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(7), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Service role: secondary
```

```
Members:
  1: Seq_num(2 port2), alive, selected
Src address:
      0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

Dst address:
      0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    10.100.1.2 from 10.100.1.2 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:5
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 15:41:58 2020
```

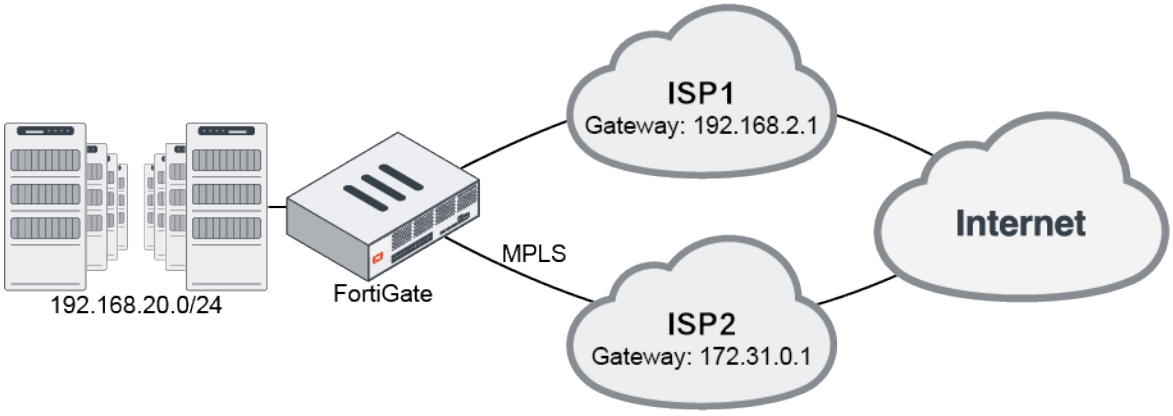
   b. Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    10.100.1.6 from 10.100.1.6 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 20:2
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 15:42:07 2020
```

## Applying BGP route-map to multiple BGP neighbors

Controlling traffic with BGP route mapping and service rules explained how BGP can apply different route-maps to the primary and secondary SD-WAN neighbors based on SLA health checks.

In this example, SD-WAN neighbors that are not bound to primary and secondary roles are configured.




The FortiGate has multiple SD-WAN links and has formed BGP neighbors with both ISPs.

ISP1 is used primarily for outbound traffic, and has an SD-WAN service rule using the lowest cost algorithm applied to it. When SLAs for ISP1 are not met, it will fail over to the MPLS line.

Inbound traffic is allowed by both WAN links, with each WAN advertising a community string when SLAs are met. When SLAs are not met, the WAN links advertise a different community string.

This example uses two SD-WAN links. The topology can be expanded to include more links as needed.

**To configure BGP route-maps and neighbors:**

1. Configure an access list for routes to be matched:

```
config router access-list
    edit "net192"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set prefix 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure route-maps for neighbor ISP1:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64511:1"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "comm-fail1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64511:5"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Configure route-maps for neighbor ISP2:

```
config router route-map
    edit "comm2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
                set set-community "64522:1"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "comm-fail2"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-ip-address "net192"
```

```
                set set-community "64522:5"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. Configure the BGP neighbors:

```
config router bgp
    set as 64512
    set keepalive-timer 1
    set holdtime-timer 3
    config neighbor
        edit "192.168.2.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 64511
            set route-map-out "comm-fail1"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm1"
        next
        edit "172.31.0.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 64522
            set route-map-out "comm-fail2"
            set route-map-out-preferable "comm2"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

When SLAs are met, `route-map-out-preferable` is used. When SLAs are missed, `route-map-out` is used.

**To configure SD-WAN:**

1. Configure the SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "port1"
            set gateway 192.168.2.1
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "MPLS"
            set cost 20
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the health checks that must be met:

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "pingserver"
```

```
            set server "8.8.8.8"
            set members 2 1
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set link-cost-factor packet-loss
                    set packetloss-threshold 2
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the SD-WAN neighbors and assign them a role and the health checks used to determine if the neighbor meets the SLA:
   When no role is defined, the default role, `standalone`, is used.

```
config system sdwan
    config neighbor
        edit "192.168.2.1"
            set member 1
            set health-check "pingserver"
            set sla-id 1
        next
        edit "172.31.0.1"
            set member 2
            set health-check "pingserver"
            set sla-id 1
        next
    end
end
```

## Service rules

Create SD-WAN service rules to direct traffic to the SD-WAN links based on the lowest cost algorithm The same SLA health check and criteria that are used for the SD-WAN neighbor are used for this SD-WAN service rule.

When no roles are defined in the service rule, the default role, `standalone`, is used.

**To configure the SD-WAN service rule:**

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set name "OutboundAll"
            set mode sla
            set dst "all"
            set src "all"
            config sla
                edit "pingserver"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

## Verification

**To verify that when both SLAs are met, port1 is selected due to its lower cost:**

1. Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(pingserver):
Seq(2 MPLS): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(24.709), jitter(14.996) sla_
map=0x1
Seq(1 port1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(28.771), jitter(14.840) sla_
map=0x1
```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
Neighbor(192.168.2.1): member(1) role(standalone)
        Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-pass selected alive
Neighbor(172.31.0.1): member(2) role(standalone)
        Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-pass selected alive
```

3. Verify service rules status:
   Because the service role is `standalone`, it matches both neighbors. The mode (SLA) determines that port1 is lower cost.

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
  Service role: standalone
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 port1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2 MPLS), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(20), selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    192.168.2.5 from 192.168.2.5 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64511:1
      Last update: Thu Apr 30 23:59:05 2020
```

   b. Secondary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
```

```
64512
  172.31.0.2 from 172.31.0.2 (192.168.122.98)
    Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
    Community: 64522:1
    Last update: Fri May  1 00:11:28 2020
```

**To verify that when neighbor ISP1 misses SLAs, MPLS is selected and BGP advertises a different community string for ISP1:**

1. Verify the health check status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(pingserver):
Seq(2 MPLS): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(25.637), jitter(17.820) sla_
map=0x1
Seq(1 port1): state(dead), packet-loss(16.000%) sla_map=0x0
```

2. Verify SD-WAN neighbor status:

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan neighbor
Neighbor(192.168.2.1): member(1) role(standalone)
        Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-fail dead
Neighbor(172.31.0.1): member(2) role(standalone)
        Health-check(pingserver:1)  sla-pass selected alive
```

3. Verify service rules status:
   As SLA failed for neighbor ISP1, MPLS is preferred.

```
FortiGate-Branch # diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(3), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla), sla-compare-order
  Service role: standalone
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 MPLS), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(20), selected
    2: Seq_num(1 port1), dead, sla(0x0), cfg_order(0), cost(0)
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255

  Dst address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
```

4. Verify neighbor routers:
   The community received on ISP1 is updated.
   a. Primary neighbor router:

```
FGT-NBR1 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  64512
    192.168.2.5 from 192.168.2.5 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64511:5
      Last update: Fri May  1 00:33:26 2020
```

**b.** Secondary neighbor router:

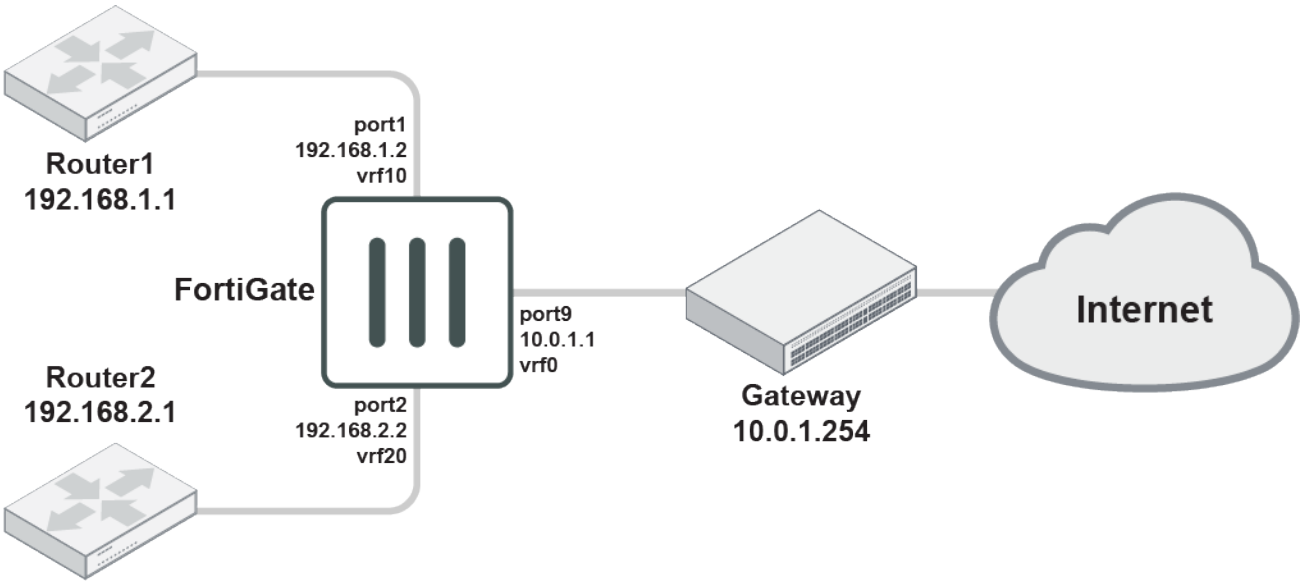
```
FGT-NBR2 # get router info bgp network 192.168.20.0
VRF 0 BGP routing table entry for 192.168.20.0/24
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Original VRF 0
  64512
    172.31.0.2 from 172.31.0.2 (192.168.122.98)
      Origin IGP metric 0, localpref 100, valid, external, best
      Community: 64522:1
      Last update: Fri May  1 00:22:42 2020
```

## IBGP and EBGP support in VRF

Support is included for internal and external border gateway protocols (IBGP and EBGP) in virtual routing and forwarding (VRF).

FortiGate can establish neighbor connections with other FortiGates or routers, and the learned routes are put into different VRF tables according to the neighbor's settings.

This example uses the following topology:




- BGP routes learned from the Router1 neighbor are put into vrf10.
- BGP routes learned from the Router2 neighbor are put into vrf20.

**To configure this example:**

```
config system interface
    edit port1
        set vrf 10
    next
    edit port2
        set vrf 20
```

```
    next
end

config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit "192.168.1.1"
            set update-source port1
        next
        edit "192.168.2.1"
            set interface port2
        next
    end
end
```

## Results

Using the above topology:

- Both Router1 and Router2 establish OSPF and BGP neighbor with the FortiGate.
- Router1 advertises 10.10.1.0/24 into OSPF and 10.10.2.0/24 into BGP.
- Router2 advertises 20.20.1.0/24 into OSPF and 20.20.2.0/24 into BGP.

When port1 and port2 have not set VRF, all of the routing is in VRF=0:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 10.0.1.254, port9
C       10.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, port9
O       10.10.1.0/24 [110/10] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:18:31
B       10.10.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:01:31
O       20.20.1.0/22 [110/10] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:19:05
B       20.20.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:01:31
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

After VRF is set for BGP, BGP routes are added to the VRF tables along with OSPF and connected routes:

```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 10.0.1.254, port9
C       10.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, port9

Routing table for VRF=10
O       10.10.1.0/24 [110/10] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:18:31
```

```
B       10.10.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.1.1, port1, 00:01:31
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, port1

Routing table for VRF=20
O       20.20.1.0/22 [110/10] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:19:05
B       20.20.2.0/24 [20/200] via 192.168.2.1, port2, 00:01:31
C       192.168.2.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

### BGP neighbor groups

This feature is also supported in the BGP neighbor groups. For example:

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor-group
        edit "FGT"
            set update-source "port1"
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.201.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "FGT"
        next
    end
end
```

Note that the `set interface` command is not supported.

## ADVPN and shortcut paths

This topic provides an example of how to use SD-WAN and ADVPN together.

ADVPN (Auto Discovery VPN) is an IPsec technology that allows a traditional hub-and-spoke VPN's spokes to establish dynamic, on-demand, direct tunnels between each other to avoid routing through the topology's hub device. The primary advantage is that it provides full meshing capabilities to a standard hub-and-spoke topology. This greatly reduces the provisioning effort for full spoke-to-spoke low delay reachability, and addresses the scalability issues associated with very large fully meshed VPN networks.

If a customer's head office and branch offices all have two or more internet connections, they can build a dual-hub ADVPN network. Combined with SD-WAN technology, the customer can load-balance traffic to other offices on multiple dynamic tunnels, control specific traffic using specific connections, or choose better performance connections dynamically.

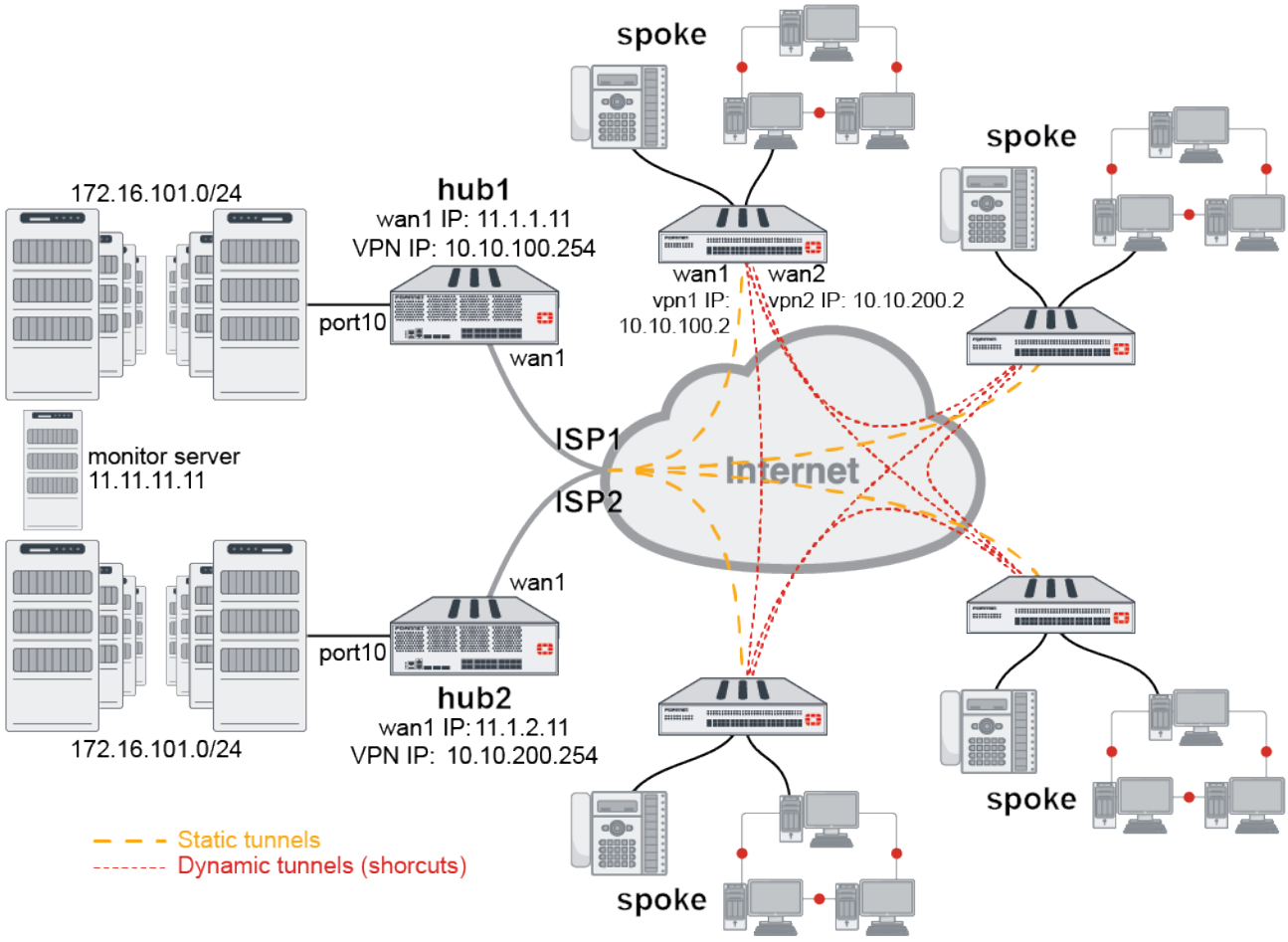


SD-WAN load-balance mode rules (or services) do not support ADVPN members. Other modes' rules, such as SLA and priority, support ADVPN members.

This topic covers three parts:

1. Configure dual-hub ADVPN with multiple branches.
2. Configure BGP to exchange routing information among hubs and spokes.
3. Configure SD-WAN on spoke to do load-balancing and control traffic.

## Configuration example




A typical ADVPN configuration with SD-WAN usually has two hubs, and each spoke connects to two ISPs and establishes VPN tunnels with both hubs.

This example shows a hub-and-spoke configuration using two hubs and one spoke:

- Hub1 and Hub2 both use wan1 to connect to the ISPs and port10 to connect to internal network.
- Spoke1 uses wan1 to connect to ISP1 and wan2 to connect to ISP2.
- wan1 sets up VPN to hub1.
- wan2 sets up VPN to hub2.

The SD-WAN is configured on the spoke. It uses the two VPN interfaces as members and two rules to control traffic to headquarters or other spokes using ADVPN VPN interfaces. You can create more rules if required.

For this example:

- Use SD-WAN member 1 (via ISP1) and its dynamic shortcuts for financial department traffic if member 1 meets SLA requirements. If it doesn't meet SLA requirements, it will use SD-WAN member 2 (via ISP2).
- Use SD-WAN member 2 (via ISP2) and its dynamic shortcuts for engineering department traffic.
- Load balance other traffic going to hubs and other spokes between these two members.
- Set up all other traffic to go with their original ISP connection. All other traffic does not go through SD-WAN.
- Set up basic network configuration to let all hubs and spokes connect to their ISPs and the Internet.

| | |
|---|---|
| Hub internal network | 172.16.101.0/24 |
| Spoke1 internal network | 10.1.100.0/24 |
| ADVPN 1 network | 10.10.100.0/24 |
| ADVPN 2 network | 10.10.200.0/24 |
| Hub1 wan1 IP | 11.1.1.11 |
| Hub2 wan1 IP | 11.1.2.11 |
| Hub1 VPN IP | 10.10.100.254 |
| Hub2 VPN IP | 10.10.200.254 |
| Spoke1 to hub1 VPN IP | 10.10.100.2 |
| Spoke1 to hub2 VPN IP | 10.10.200.2 |
| Ping server in Headquarters | 11.11.11.11 |
| Internal subnet of spoke1 | 22.1.1.0/24 |
| Internal subnet of spoke2 | 33.1.1.0/24 |
| Firewall addresses | Configure hub_subnets and spoke_subnets before using in policies. These can be customized. |

The GUI does not support some ADVPN related options, such as auto-discovery-sender, auto-discovery-receiver, auto-discovery-forwarder, and IBGP neighbor-group setting, so this example only provides CLI configuration commands.

**Hub1 sample configuration**

**To configure the IPsec phase1 and phase2 interface:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-
sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "hub-phase2"
        set phase1name "hub-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-
sha256
```

```
    next
end
```

**To configure the VPN interface and BGP:**

```
config system interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.100.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.100.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    config neighbor-group
        edit "advpn"
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.100.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "advpn"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 11.11.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
    end
end
```

**To configure the firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "hub_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to headquater"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to spokes"
    next
    edit 3
        set name "internal2spoke"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
        set srcaddr "hub_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from headquater to spokes"
    next
end
```

#### Hub2 sample configuration

Hub2 configuration is the same as hub1 except the wan1 IP address, VPN interface IP address, and BGP neighbor-range prefix.

#### To configure the IPsec phase1 and phase2 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-
sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "hub-phase2"
        set phase1name "hub-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-
sha256
    next
end
```

#### To configure the VPN interface and BGP:

```
config system interface
    edit "hub-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.200.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.200.253 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    config neighbor-group
        edit "advpn"
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.200.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "advpn"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 11.11.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
    end
end
```

**To configure the firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "hub_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to headquater"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "hub-phase1"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from spokes to spokes"
    next
    edit 3
        set name "internal2spoke"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "hub-phase1"
```

```
        set srcaddr "hub_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow traffic from headquater to spokes"
    next
end
```

**Spoke1 sample configuration**

**To configure the IPsec phase1 and phase2 interface:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1-phase1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 11.1.1.11
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1-2-phase1"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 11.1.2.11
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1-phase2"
        set phase1name "spoke1-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1-2-phase2"
        set phase1name "spoke1-2-phase1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

**To configure the VPN interface and BGP:**

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke1-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.100.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.100.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke1-2-phase1"
        set ip 10.10.200.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.200.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router bgp
    set as 65505
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.100.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
        next
        edit "10.10.200.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65505
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure SD-WAN:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "spoke1-phase1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "spoke1-2-phase1"
        next
    end
    config health-check
        edit "ping"
            set server "11.11.11.11"
            set members 1 2
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 200
                    set jitter-threshold 50
                    set packetloss-threshold 5
                next
            end
```

```
        next
    end
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode sla
            set dst "finacial-department"
            config sla
                edit "ping"
                    set id 1
                next
            end
            set priority-member 1 2
        next
        edit 2
            set member 2
            set dst "engineering-department"
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To configure the firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets" "hub_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow internal traffic going out to headquater and other spokes"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "spoke_subnets" "hub_subnets"
        set dstaddr "spoke_subnets"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "allow headquater and other spokes traffic coming in"
    next
end
```

## Troubleshooting ADVPN and shortcut paths

### Before spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established

Use the following CLI commands to check status before spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established.

```
# get router info bgp summary
BGP router identifier 2.2.2.2, local AS number 65505
BGP table version is 13
3 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor        V         AS MsgRcvd MsgSent   TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down  State/PfxRcd
10.10.100.254   4      65505    3286    3270       11    0    0 00:02:15        5
10.10.200.254   4      65505    3365    3319       12    0    0 00:02:14        5

Total number of neighbors 2
```

```
# get router info routing-table bgp

Routing table for VRF=0
B*      0.0.0.0/0 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:00:58
                  [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:00:58
B       1.1.1.1/32 [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:01:29
                   [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:01:29
B       11.11.11.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:01:29
                      [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:01:29
B       33.1.1.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:00:58
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1, 00:00:58
                    [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:00:58
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1, 00:00:58
```

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 3
------------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-phase1 ver=1 serial=5 12.1.1.2:0->11.1.1.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=48 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=22 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=185 rxb=16428 txb=11111
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=4
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42820/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=ba esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42903/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a2a esp=aes key=16 56e673f0df05186aa657f55cbb631c13
       ah=sha1 key=20 b0d50597d9bed763c42469461b03da8041f87e88
  enc: spi=2ead61bc esp=aes key=16 fe0ccd4a3ec19fe6d520c437eb6b8897
       ah=sha1 key=20 e3e669bd6df41b88eadaacba66463706f26fb53a
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16368, enc:pkts/bytes=185/22360
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.1.11 npu_lgwy=12.1.1.2 npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
------------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-2-phase1 ver=1 serial=6 112.1.1.2:0->11.1.2.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
```

```
bound_if=90 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=21 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=186 rxb=16498 txb=11163
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=74
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1-2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42818/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=bb esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a2b esp=aes key=16 fe49f5042a5ad236250bf53312db1346
       ah=sha1 key=20 5dbb15c8cbc046c284bb1c6425dac2b3e15bec85
  enc: spi=2ead61bd esp=aes key=16 d6d97be52c3cccb9e88f28a9db64ac46
       ah=sha1 key=20 e20916ae6ea2295c2fbd5cbc8b8f5dd8b17f52f1
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16438, enc:pkts/bytes=186/22480
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.2.11 npu_lgwy=112.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

**# diagnose sys sdwan service**

```
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
  Member sub interface:
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Member sub interface:
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
```

**# diagnose firewall proute list**

```
list route policy info(vf=vd2):

id=2132869121 vwl_service=1 vwl_mbr_seq=1 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=70 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0

id=2132869122 vwl_service=2 vwl_mbr_seq=2 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
```

### After spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established

Use the following CLI commands to check status after spoke vs spoke shortcut VPN is established.

**# get router info routing-table bgp**

```
Routing table for VRF=0
```

```
B*      0.0.0.0/0 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:01:33
                  [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:01:33
B       1.1.1.1/32 [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:02:04
                   [200/0] via 11.1.1.1 (recursive via 12.1.1.1), 00:02:04
B       11.11.11.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.254, spoke1-2-phase1, 00:02:04
                      [200/0] via 10.10.100.254, spoke1-phase1, 00:02:04
B       33.1.1.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1_0, 00:01:33
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1_0, 00:01:33
                    [200/0] via 10.10.200.3, spoke1-2-phase1_0, 00:01:33
                    [200/0] via 10.10.100.3, spoke1-phase1_0, 00:01:33
```

**# diagnose sys sdwan service**

```
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
  Member sub interface:
    1: seq_num(1), interface(spoke1-phase1):
       1: spoke1-phase1_0(111)
    2: seq_num(2), interface(spoke1-2-phase1):
       1: spoke1-2-phase1_0(113)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Member sub interface:
    1: seq_num(2), interface(spoke1-2-phase1):
       1: spoke1-2-phase1_0(113)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected
  Dst address: 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
```

**# diagnose vpn tunnel list**

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 3
------------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-phase1 ver=1 serial=5 12.1.1.2:0->11.1.1.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=48 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=20 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=759 rxb=16428 txb=48627
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=4
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42536/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2f8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a42 esp=aes key=16 1f131bda108d33909d49fc2778bd08bb
       ah=sha1 key=20 14131d3f0da9b741a2fd13d530b0553aa1f58983
  enc: spi=2ead61d8 esp=aes key=16 81ed24d5cd7bb59f4a80dceb5a560e1f
       ah=sha1 key=20 d2ccc2f3223ce16514e75f672cd88c4b4f48b681
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16360, enc:pkts/bytes=759/94434
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.1.11 npu_lgwy=12.1.1.2 npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

```
---------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-2-phase1 ver=1 serial=6 112.1.1.2:0->11.1.2.11:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=90 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=756 rxb=16450 txb=48460
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=74
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42538/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2f5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a43 esp=aes key=16 7fc87561369f88b56d08bfda769eb45b
       ah=sha1 key=20 0ed554ef231c5ac16dc2e71d1907d7347dda33d6
  enc: spi=2ead61d9 esp=aes key=16 00286687aa1762e7d8216881d6720ef3
       ah=sha1 key=20 59d5eec6299ebcf038c190860774e2833074d7c3
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16382, enc:pkts/bytes=756/94058
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.1.2.11 npu_lgwy=112.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
---------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-phase1_0 ver=1 serial=55 12.1.1.2:0->13.1.1.3:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=48 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=vd2-1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=18 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42893/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a44 esp=aes key=16 c3b77a98e3002220e2373b73af14df6e
       ah=sha1 key=20 d18d107c248564933874f60999d6082fd7a78948
  enc: spi=864f6dba esp=aes key=16 eb6181806ccb9bac37931f9eadd4d5eb
       ah=sha1 key=20 ab788f7a372877a5603c4ede1be89a592fc21873
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.3 npu_lgwy=12.1.1.2 npu_selid=51 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
---------------------------------------------------
name=spoke1-2-phase1_0 ver=1 serial=57 112.1.1.2:0->113.1.1.3:0 dst_mtu=15324
bound_if=90 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=vd2-2 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=5 olast=5 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd2-2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

```
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=15262 expire=42900/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=03e01a45 esp=aes key=16 0beb519ed9f800e8b4c0aa4e1df7da35
       ah=sha1 key=20 bc9f38db5296cce4208a69f1cc8a9f7ef4803c37
  enc: spi=864f6dbb esp=aes key=16 1d26e3556afcdb9f8e3e33b563b44228
       ah=sha1 key=20 564d05ef6f7437e1fd0a88d5fee7b6567f9d387e
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=113.1.1.3 npu_lgwy=112.1.1.2 npu_selid=53 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

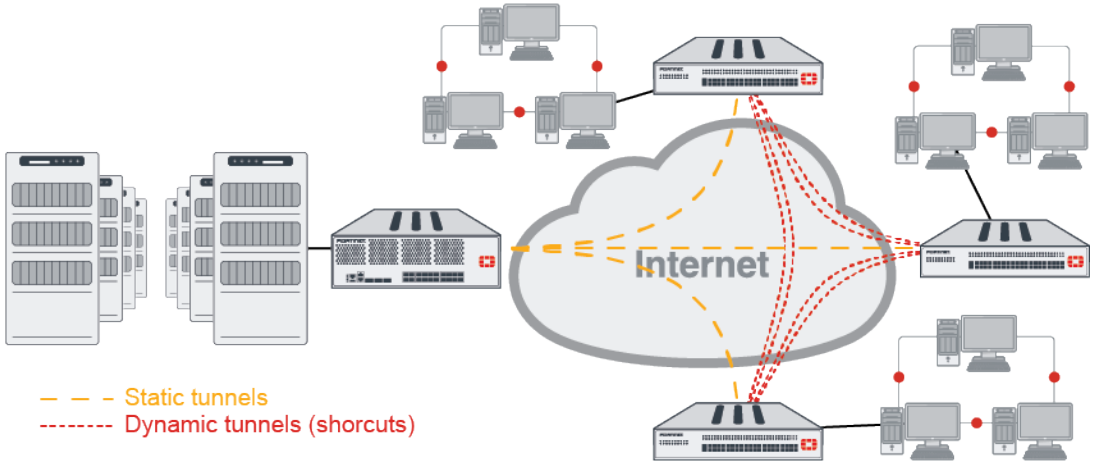
```
# diagnose firewall proute list
list route policy info(vf=vd2):

id=2132869121 vwl_service=1 vwl_mbr_seq=1 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=111 oif=70 oif=113 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.1-33.1.1.100
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0

id=2132869122 vwl_service=2 vwl_mbr_seq=2 dscp_tag=0xff 0xff flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_
mask=0x00 protocol=0 sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=113 oif=71
destination(1): 33.1.1.101-33.1.1.200
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
```

## SD-WAN monitor on ADVPN shortcuts

SD-WAN monitors ADVPN shortcut link quality by dynamically creating link monitors for each ADVPN link. The dynamic link monitor on the spoke will use ICMP probes and the IP address of the gateway as the monitored server. These ICMP probes will not be counted as actual user traffic that keeps the spoke-to-spoke tunnel alive.




- When no shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 tunnel-1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.038), jitter(0.006) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.035), jitter(0.004) sla_
map=0x3
```

- When one shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 tunnel-1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.039), jitter(0.003) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(1 tunnel-1_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.060), jitter(0.023) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.035), jitter(0.002) sla_
map=0x3
```

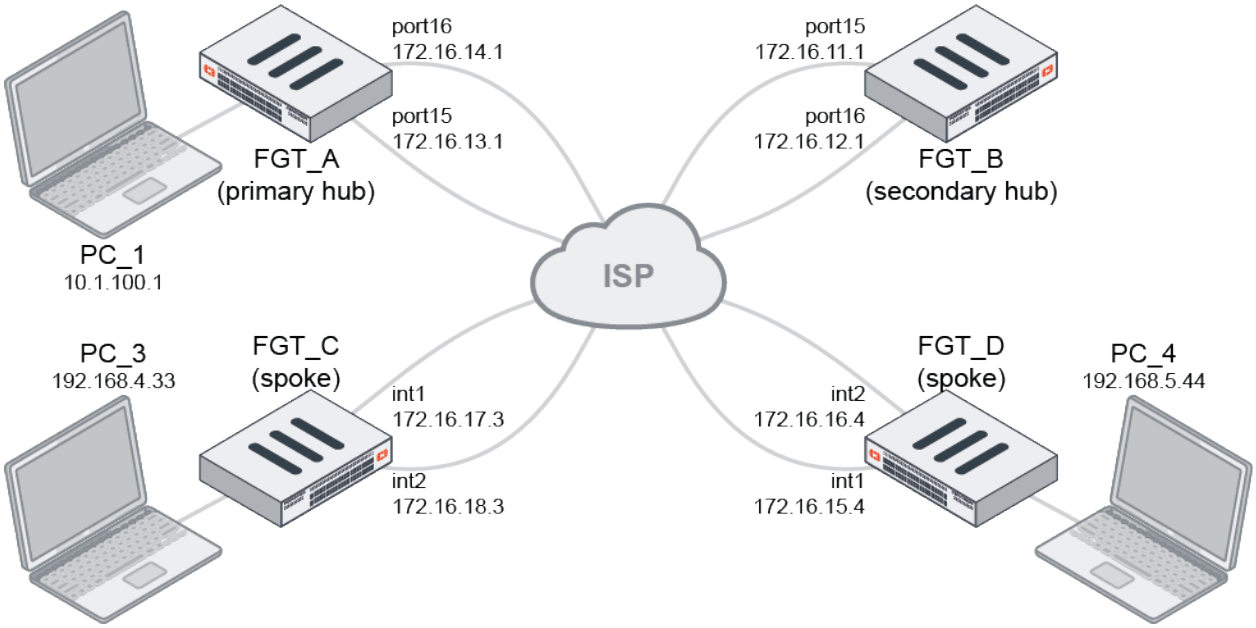
- When more than one shortcut is established:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1 tunnel-1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.036), jitter(0.004) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(1 tunnel-1_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.041), jitter(0.009) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.030), jitter(0.005) sla_
map=0x3
Seq(2 tunnel-2_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.031), jitter(0.004) sla_
map=0x3
```

## SD-WAN integration with OCVPN

OCVPN has the capability to enable SD-WAN in order to dynamically add its tunnel interfaces as SD-WAN members. Users can configure SD-WAN health checks and service rules to direct traffic over the OCVPN tunnels.

The following example uses a dual hub and spoke topology. Each hub and spoke has two WAN link connections to the ISP. The spokes generate two IPsec tunnels to each hub (four tunnels in total). BGP neighbors are established over each tunnel and routes from the hubs and other spokes learned from all neighbors, which forms an ECMP scenario. All tunnels are placed as SD-WAN members, so traffic can be distributed across tunnels based on the configured SD-WAN service rules.

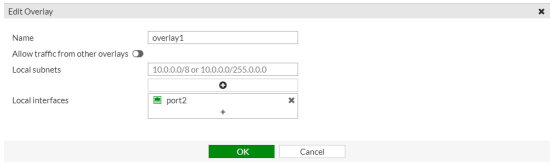


**To integrate SD-WAN with OCVPN in the GUI:**

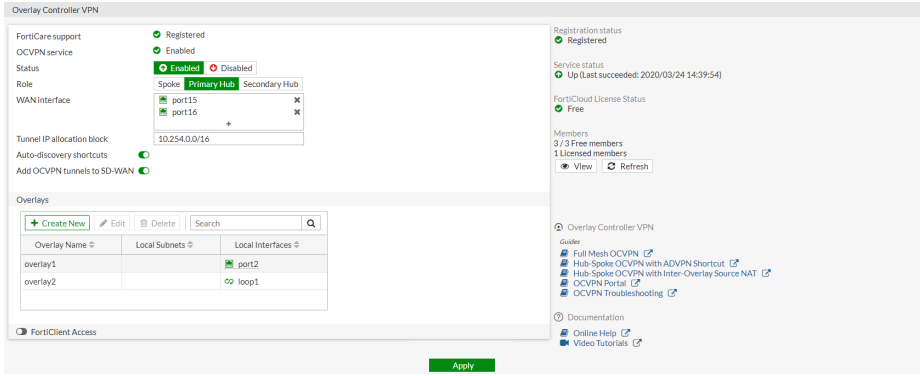
1. Configure the primary hub:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN* and set the *Status* to *Enable*.
   b. For *Role*, select *Primary Hub*.
   c. Enter the WAN interfaces (*port15* and *port16*) and tunnel IP allocation block (*10.254.0.0/16*).

   The WAN interface is position sensitive, meaning a tunnel will be created with the first position interface on the hub to the first position interface on the spoke, and so on. In this example, FGT_A (primary hub) will create two tunnels with FGT_C (spoke):
   - FGT_A port15 <==> FGT_C internal1
   - FGT_A port16 <==> FGT_C internal2

   d. Enable *Auto-discovery shortcuts*.
   e. Enable *Add OCVPN tunnels to SD-WAN*. The IPsec tunnels will be added automatically to the SD-WAN members if SD-WAN is enabled.
2. Configure the overlays on the primary hub:
   a. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name and add the local interface (*port2*). Note the overlay is either based on local subnets or local interfaces, but not both.
   By default, inter-overlay traffic is not enabled. Toggle *Allow traffic from other overlays* to enable it.
   c. Click *OK* and repeat these steps to create the second overlay (*loop1*).




   d. Click *Apply*.

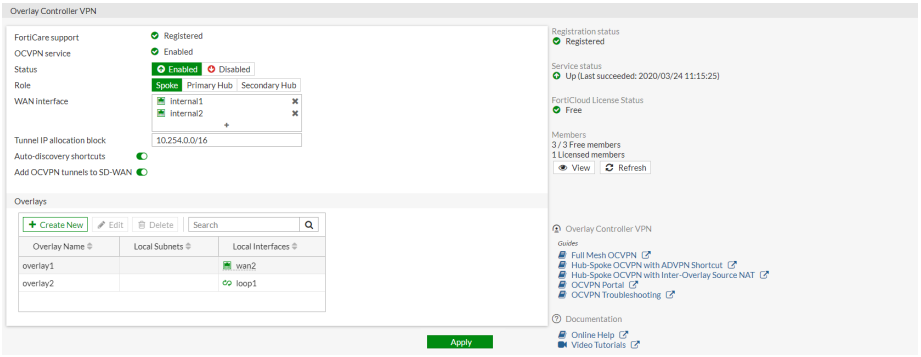



3. Configure the secondary hub with the same settings as the primary hub.
4. Configure the spoke:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN* and set the *Status* to *Enable*.
   b. For *Role*, select *Spoke*.
   c. Enter the WAN interfaces (*internal1* and *internal2*).
   d. Enable *Auto-discovery shortcuts*.
   e. Enable *Add OCVPN tunnels to SD-WAN*. The IPsec tunnels will be added automatically to the SD-WAN members if SD-WAN is enabled.

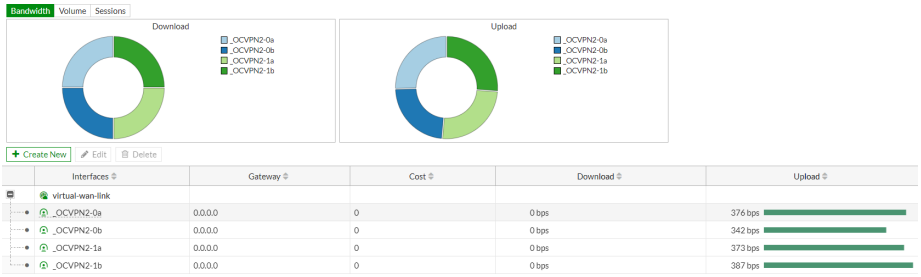
**f.** Configure the overlays.

The overlay names on the spokes must match the hub for the traffic to be allowed through the same overlay.

**g.** Click *Apply*.




5. Configure the other spoke with the same settings.
6. On a spoke, go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* to view the configuration generated by OCVPN.




Firewall policies will be automatically generated by OCVPN between the local interfaces and the SD-WAN interface. Each policy will define the proper local and remote networks for its source and destination addresses.

### To integrate SD-WAN with OCVPN in the CLI:

1. Configure the primary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set role primary-hub
    set sdwan enable
    set wan-interface "port15" "port16"
    set ip-allocation-block 10.254.0.0 255.255.0.0
    config overlays
        edit "overlay1"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "port2"
                next
            end
        next
        edit "overlay2"
            config subnets
```

```
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "loop1"
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the secondary hub with the same settings as the primary hub.
3. Configure the spoke:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set sdwan enable
    set wan-interface "internal1" "internal2"
    config overlays
        edit "overlay1"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "wan2"
                next
            end
        next
        edit "overlay2"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set type interface
                    set interface "loop1"
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

4. Configure the other spoke with the same settings.
5. Configure SD-WAN:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "_OCVPN2-0a"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "_OCVPN2-0b"
        next
        edit 3
            set interface "_OCVPN2-1a"
        next
        edit 4
            set interface "_OCVPN2-1b"
        next
    end
end
```

Firewall policies will be automatically generated by OCVPN between the local interfaces and the SD-WAN interface. Each policy will define the proper local and remote networks for its source and destination addresses.



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

**To verify the integration is working after the ADVPN shortcut is triggered:**

1. Check the routing table on the spoke:

```
FGT_C # get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.17.2, internal1
                  [10/0] via 172.16.18.2, internal2
B       10.1.100.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.7.254, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:10:24
                      [200/0] via 10.254.15.254, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:10:24
B       10.1.200.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.7.254, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:10:24
                      [200/0] via 10.254.15.254, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:10:24
B       10.2.100.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.71.254, _OCVPN2-1a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.79.254, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:10:15
B       10.2.200.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.71.254, _OCVPN2-1a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.79.254, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:10:15
B       10.254.0.0/16 [200/0] via 10.254.7.254, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.15.254, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.71.254, _OCVPN2-1a, 00:10:15
                      [200/0] via 10.254.79.254, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:10:15
C       10.254.0.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0a
C       10.254.0.1/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0a
C       10.254.8.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0b
C       10.254.8.1/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0b
C       10.254.64.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1a
C       10.254.64.1/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b_0 <==shortcut tunnel
C       10.254.64.2/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1a
C       10.254.72.0/21 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b
C       10.254.72.2/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b
                       is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1b_0
C       172.16.17.0/24 is directly connected, internal1
C       172.16.18.0/24 is directly connected, internal2
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       192.168.1.0/24 is directly connected, internal
C       192.168.4.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
B       192.168.5.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                       [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
```

```
                        [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                        [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
C       192.168.44.0/24 is directly connected, loop1
B       192.168.55.0/24 [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.0.2, _OCVPN2-0a, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.8.2, _OCVPN2-0b, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.64.1, _OCVPN2-1b_0, 00:00:10
                         [200/0] via 10.254.72.1, _OCVPN2-1b, 00:00:10
```

2. Check the VPN tunnel state:

```
FGT_C # diagnose vpn tunnel list

list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1b_0 ver=2 serial=1c 172.16.18.3:0->172.16.15.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=9 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=4

 parent=_OCVPN2-1b index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=15 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=641 txp=1025 rxb=16436 txb=16446
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1b proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42650/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=407 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000280 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43186/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d9d esp=aes key=16 6cb33685bbc67d5c85488e0176ecf7b0
       ah=sha1 key=20 7d11b3babe62c840bf444b7b1f637b4324722a71
  enc: spi=7bc94bda esp=aes key=16 b4d8fc731d411eb24448b4077a5872ca
       ah=sha1 key=20 b724064d827304a6d80385ed4914461108b7312f
  dec:pkts/bytes=641/16368, enc:pkts/bytes=2053/123426
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.15.4 npu_lgwy=172.16.18.3 npu_selid=1f dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0a ver=2 serial=18 172.16.17.3:0->172.16.13.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=8 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=20 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1665 txp=2922 rxb=278598 txb=70241
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=7
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0a proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41599/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=890 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d95 esp=aes key=16 a6ffcc197bb1b46ec745d0b595cdd69a
       ah=sha1 key=20 8007c134e41edf282f95daf9c9033d688ef05ccc
```

```
  enc: spi=a1bf21bf esp=aes key=16 ead05be389b0dec222f969e2f9c46b1d
       ah=sha1 key=20 b04105d34d4b0e61b018f2e60591f9b1510783bb
  dec:pkts/bytes=1665/278538, enc:pkts/bytes=4237/265074
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.13.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.17.3 npu_selid=1b dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1a ver=2 serial=1a 172.16.17.3:0->172.16.11.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=8 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=3

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=2913 rxb=16376 txb=69642
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=5
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1a proto=0 sa=1 ref=28 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41653/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=887 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d9b esp=aes key=16 ee03f5b0f617a26c6177e91d60abf90b
       ah=sha1 key=20 f60cbbc4ebbd6d0327d23137da707b7ab2dc49e6
  enc: spi=a543a7d3 esp=aes key=16 1d37efab13a5c0347b582b2198b15cb8
       ah=sha1 key=20 427ee4c82bac6f26f0bcabfe04328c7f57ce682e
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16316, enc:pkts/bytes=4229/264036
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.11.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.17.3 npu_selid=1d dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0b ver=2 serial=19 172.16.18.3:0->172.16.14.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=9 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=2

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=20 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1665 txp=2917 rxb=278576 txb=69755
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=7
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0b proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41599/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=88b esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d96 esp=aes key=16 9d7eb233c1d095b30796c3711d53f2fd
       ah=sha1 key=20 d8feacd42b5e0ba8b5e38647b2f2734c94644bd1
  enc: spi=a1bf21c0 esp=aes key=16 d2c0984bf86dc504c5475230b24034f0
       ah=sha1 key=20 3946e4033e1f42b0d9a843b94448f56fd5b57bee
  dec:pkts/bytes=1665/278516, enc:pkts/bytes=4233/264411
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.14.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.18.3 npu_selid=1c dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1b ver=2 serial=1b 172.16.18.3:0->172.16.12.1:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=9 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=4

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=1 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=2922 rxb=16430 txb=70173
```

```
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=4
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1b proto=0 sa=1 ref=28 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41656/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=890 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42903/43200
  dec: spi=90f03d9c esp=aes key=16 a655767c1ed6cff4575857eb3981ad81
       ah=sha1 key=20 bfc2bccd7103a201be2641d4c6147d437d2c3f70
  enc: spi=a543a7d4 esp=aes key=16 7221b814e483165b01edfdc8260d261a
       ah=sha1 key=20 d54819643c2f1b20da2aea4282d50a1f1bc1d72a
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16370, enc:pkts/bytes=4238/265164
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=172.16.12.1 npu_lgwy=172.16.18.3 npu_selid=1e dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=1
```

3. Check the SD-WAN state:

```
FGT_C # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(Default_DNS):
Health Check(Default_Office_365):
Health Check(Default_Gmail):
Health Check(Default_AWS):
Health Check(Default_Google Search):
Health Check(Default_FortiGuard):
Health Check(ocvpn):
Seq(1 _OCVPN2-0a): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.364), jitter(0.028) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(2 _OCVPN2-0b): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.287), jitter(0.026) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(3 _OCVPN2-1a): state(dead), packet-loss(100.000%) sla_map=0x0
Seq(4 _OCVPN2-1b): state(dead), packet-loss(100.000%) sla_map=0x0
Seq(4 _OCVPN2-1b_0): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.289), jitter(0.029)
sla_map=0x0
```

## DSCP matching (shaping)

This feature has three parts:

- DSCP matching in firewall policies
- DSCP matching in firewall shaping policies
- DSCP marking in firewall shaping policies

### DSCP matching in firewall policies

Traffic is allowed or blocked according to the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) values in the incoming packets.

The following CLI variables are available in the `config firewall policy` command:

| | |
|---|---|
| `tos-mask <mask_value>` | Non-zero bit positions are used for comparison. Zero bit positions are ignored (default = 0x00).<br>This variable replaces the `dscp-match` variable. |

| | |
|---|---|
| `tos <tos_value>` | Type of Service (ToC) value that is used for comparison (default = 0x00). This variable is only available when `tos-mask` is not zero.<br>This variable replaces the `dscp-value` variable. |
| `tos-negate {enable \| disable}` | Enable/disable negated ToS match (default = disable). This variable is only available when `tos-mask` is not zero.<br>This variable replaces the `dscp-negate` variable. |

## DSCP matching in firewall shaping policies

Shaping is applied to the session or not according to the DSCP values in the incoming packets. The same logic and commands as in firewall policies are used.

## DSCP marking in firewall shaping policies

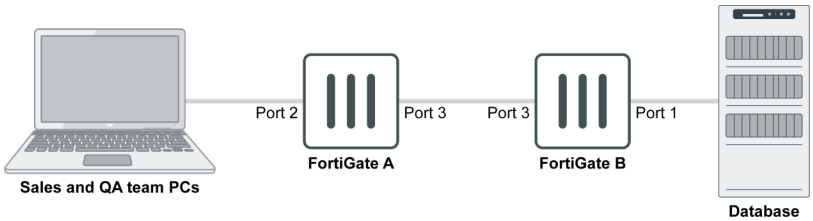
Traffic is allowed or blocked according to the DSCP values in the incoming packets. DSCP marking in firewall shaping policies uses the same logic and commands as in firewall policy and traffic-shaper.

When DSCP marking on `firewall shaper traffic-shaper`, `firewall shaping-policy`, and `firewall policy` all apply to the same session, `shaping-policy` overrides `policy`, and `shaper traffic-shaper` overrides both `shaping-policy` and `policy`.

The following CLI variables in `config firewall policy` are used to mark the packets:

| | |
|---|---|
| `diffserv-forward {enable \| disable}` | Enable/disable changing a packet's DiffServ values to the value specified in `diffservcode-forward` (default = disable). |
| `diffservcode-forward <dscp_value>` | The value that packet's DiffServ is set to (default = 000000). This variable is only available when `diffserv-forward` is enabled. |
| `diffserv-reverse {enable \| disable}` | Enable/disable changing a packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ values to the value specified in `diffservcode-rev` (default = disable). |
| `diffservcode-rev <dscp_value>` | The value that packet's reverse (reply) DiffServ is set to (default = 000000). This variable is only available when `diffserv-rev` is enabled. |

## Examples




### Example 1

FortiGate A marks traffic from the sales and QA teams with different DSCP values. FortiGate B does DSCP matching, allowing only the sales team to access the database.

1. Configure FortiGate A:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "QA"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 110000
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 5
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "Sales"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 111011
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

2. Configure FortiGate B:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Database"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set tos-mask 0xf0
        set tos 0xe0
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Example 2

FortiGate A marks traffic from the sales and QA teams with different DSCP values. FortiGate B uses a firewall shaping policy to do the DSCP matching, limiting the connection speed of the sales team to the database to 10MB/s.

1. Configure FortiGate A:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
```

```
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "QA"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 110000
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 5
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "Sales"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffservcode-forward 111011
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

2. Configure FortiGate B:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "10MB/s"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 60000
        set maximum-bandwidth 80000
    next
end
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set tos-mask 0xf0
        set tos 0xe0
        set traffic-shaper "10MB/s"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

### Example 3

FortiGate A has a traffic shaping policy to mark traffic from the QA team with a DSCP value of 100000, while reverse traffic is marked with 000011.

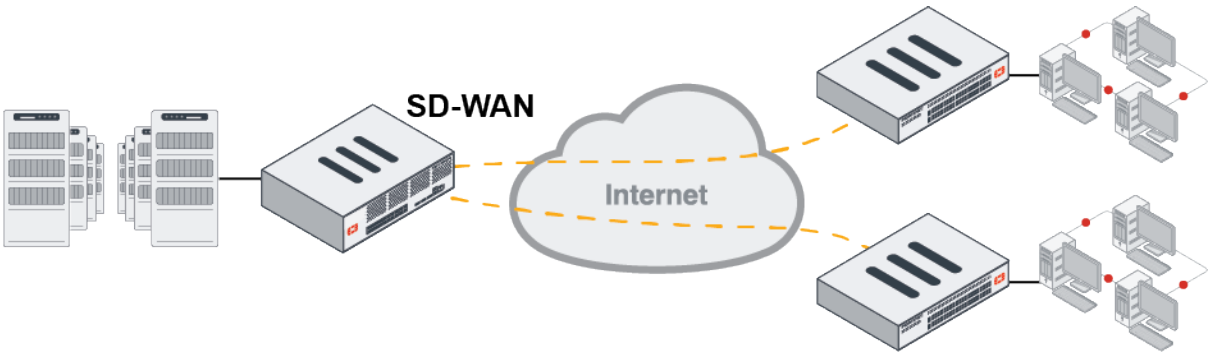
1. Configure FortiGate A:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "QA Team 50MB"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set traffic-shaper "50MB/s"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "50MB/s"
        set diffserv-forward enable
        set diffserv-reverse enable
        set srcaddr "QA"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set diffservcode-forward 100000
        set diffservcode-rev 000011
    next
end
```

## SD-WAN health check packet DSCP marker support

SD-WAN health check probe packets support Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) markers for accurate evaluation of the link performance for high priority applications by upstream devices.

When the SD-WAN health check packet is sent out, the DSCP can be set with a CLI command.




**To mark health-check packets with DSCP:**

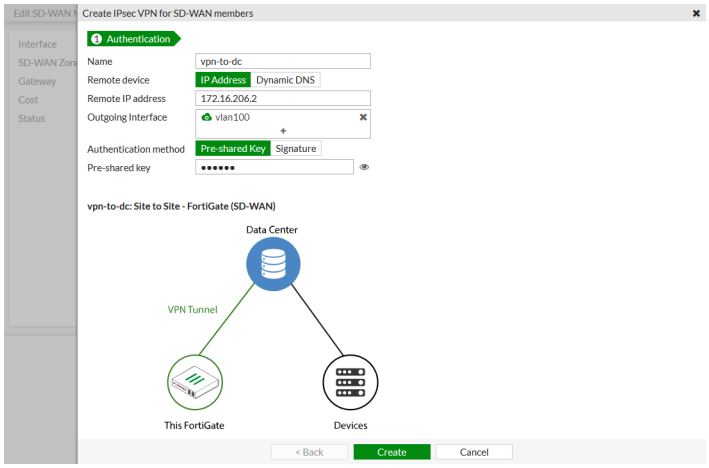
```
config system sdwan
   config health-check
      edit <name>
         set diffservcode <6 bits binary, range 000000-111111>
      next
   end
end
```

## Dual VPN tunnel wizard

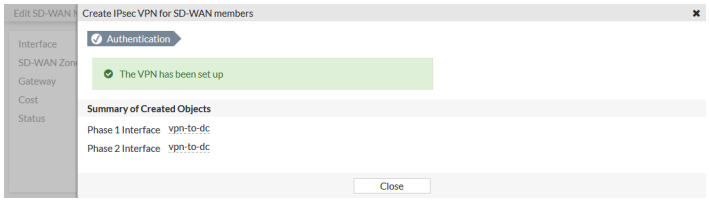
This wizard is used to automatically set up multiple VPN tunnels to the same destination over multiple outgoing interfaces. This includes automatically configuring IPsec, routing, and firewall settings, avoiding cumbersome and error-prone configuration steps.

**To create a new SD-WAN VPN interface using the tunnel wizard:**

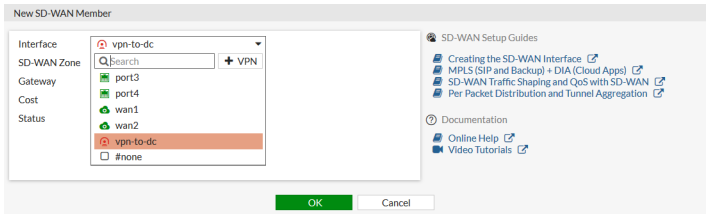
1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* and click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
2. In the *Interface* drop-down, click *+VPN*. The *Create IPsec VPN for SD-WAN members* pane opens.



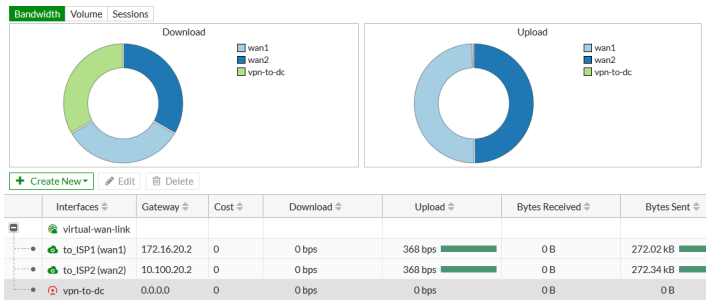

3. Enter the required information, then click *Create*.




4. Click *Close* to return to the SD-WAN page.
   The newly created VPN interface will be highlighted in the *Interface* drop-down list.




5. Select the VPN interface to add it as an SD-WAN member, then click *OK*.

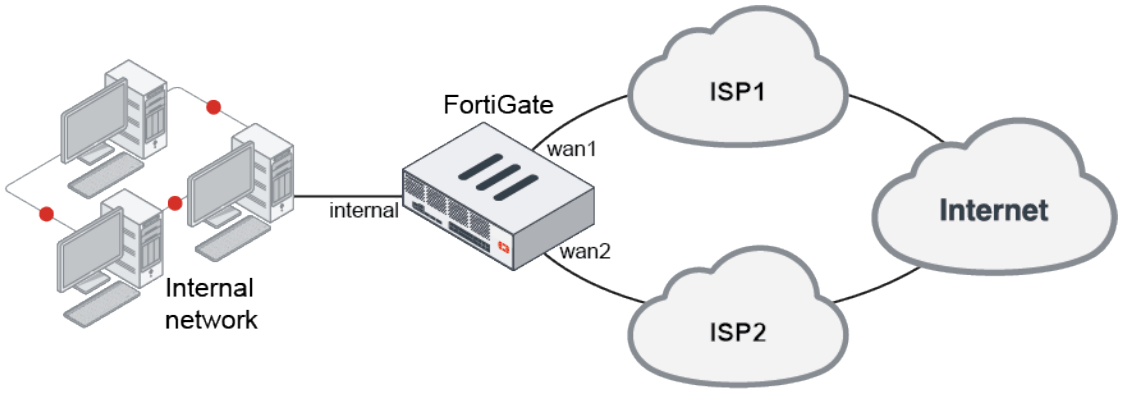


## SD-WAN with FGCP HA

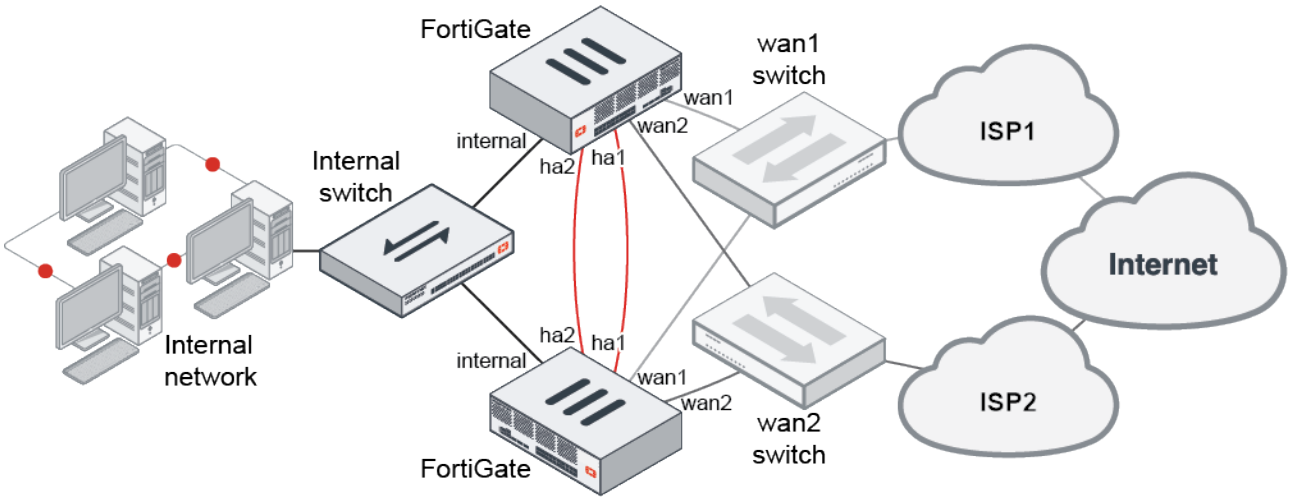
This example shows how to convert a standalone FortiGate SD-WAN solution to a FGCP HA cluster with full-mesh WAN set up. This configuration allows you to load balance your internet traffic between multiple ISP links. It also provides redundancy for your internet connection if your primary ISP in unavailable, or if one of the FortiGates in the HA cluster fails.

This example assumes that a standalone FortiGate has already been configured for SD-WAN by following the SD-WAN quick start on page 468.

**Standalone FortiGate:**




**FGCP HA cluster:**




The following devices are required to convert the topology to HA:

- A second FortiGate that is the same model running the same firmware version.
- Two switches for connecting each FortiGate's WAN interface to the corresponding ISP modem.

Before you begin:

- Ensure that the licenses and subscriptions on both HA members match.
- Ensure that there are one or more ports reserved for HA heartbeat.
- Ensure you have physical access to both HA members.



Enabling HA and re-cabling the WAN interfaces will cause network interruptions. This procedure should be performed during a maintenance window.

## Configuring the standalone FortiGate for HA

After running the following commands, the FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. You might temporarily lose connectivity with the FortiGate as FGCP negotiations take place and the MAC addresses of the FortiGate interfaces are changed to HA virtual MAC addresses.

This configurations sets the HA mode to active-passive.

The ha1 and ha2 interfaces are configured as the heartbeat interfaces, with priorities set to 200 and 100 respectively. Setting different priorities for the heartbeat interfaces is a best practice, but is not required.

If you have more than one cluster on the same network, each cluster should have a different group ID. Changing the group ID changes the cluster interface's virtual MAC addresses. If the group IP causes a MAC address conflict on your network, select a different group ID.

Enabling override and increasing the device priority means that this FortiGate always becomes the primary unit.

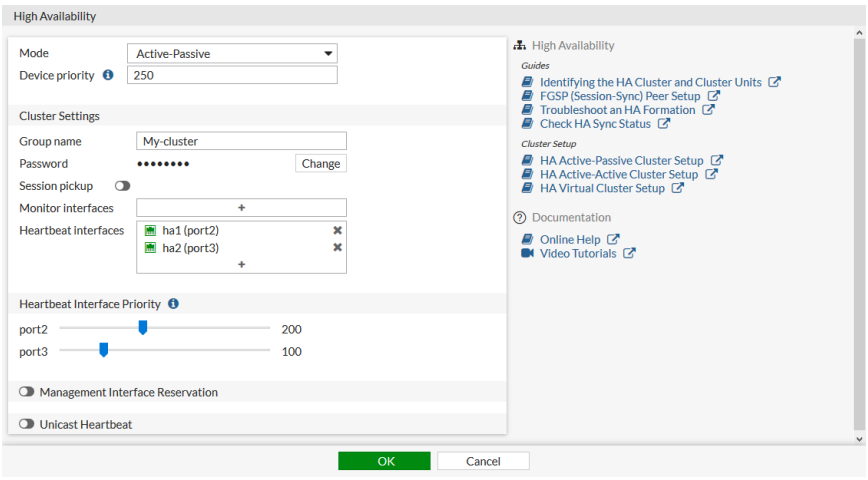
**To configure the standalone FortiGate for HA in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Settings* and change the *Host name* so that the FortiGate can be easily identified as the primary unit.
2. Go to *System* > *HA* and configure the following options:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mode** | Active-Passive |
| **Device priority** | 250 |
| **Group name** | My-cluster |
| **Password** | <password> |
| **Heartbeat interfaces** | ha1 and ha2 |
| **Heartbeat Interface Priority** | **port2** (ha1): 200<br>**port3** (ha2): 100 |



Override and the group ID can only be configured from the CLI.




3. Click *OK*.
   Connectivity with the FortiGate will temporarily be lost.

**To configure the standalone FortiGate for HA in the CLI:**

1. Change the host name so that the FortiGate can be easily identified:

```
config system global
    set hostname primary_FG
end
```

2. Configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-p
    set group-id 100
    set group-name My-cluster
    set password <password>
    set priority 250
    set override enable
    set hbdev ha1 200 ha2 100
end
```



If HA mode does not start after running the above steps, ensure that none of the FortiGate's interfaces use DHCP or PPPoE addressing.

## Configuring the secondary FortiGate for HA

The secondary FortiGate must be the same model and running the same firmware version as the primary FortiGate. The HA settings are the same as the for the primary unit, except the secondary device has a lower priority and override is not enabled.



It is best practice to reset the FortiGate to factory default settings prior to configuring HA. This reduces the chance of synchronization problems.

```
# execute factoryreset
This operation will reset the system to factory default!
Do you want to continue? (y/n) y
```

This is unnecessary if the device is new from the factory.

**To configure the secondary FortiGate for HA in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Settings* and change the *Host name* so that the FortiGate can be easily identified as the backup unit.
2. Go to *System* > *HA* and configure the options the same as for the primary FortiGate, except with a lower priority:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mode** | Active-Passive |
| **Device priority** | 128 |
| **Group name** | My-cluster |
| **Password** | <password> |
| **Heartbeat interfaces** | ha1 and ha2 |
| **Heartbeat Interface Priority** | **port2** (ha1): 200<br>**port3** (ha2): 100 |

3. Click *OK*.

**To configure the secondary FortiGate for HA in the CLI:**

1. Change the host name so that the secondary FortiGate can be easily identified:

```
config system global
    set hostname secondary_FG
end
```

2. Configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-p
    set group-id 100
    set group-name My-cluster
    set password <password>
    set priority 128
    set hbdev ha1 200 ha2 100
end
```

## Connecting the heartbeat interfaces between the FortiGates

**To connect and check the heartbeat interfaces:**

1. Connect the heartbeat interfaces ha1 and ha2 between the primary and secondary FortiGate.
   a. An HA primary device is selected. Because the primary FortiGate has a higher priority and override enabled, it assumes the role of HA primary.

   b. The secondary FortiGate synchronizes its configuration from the primary device.
2. Verify that the checksums match between the primary and secondary FortiGates:

   ```
   # diagnose sys ha checksum cluster
   ```

   If all of the cluster members have identical checksums, then their configurations are synchronized. If the checksums are not the same, wait for a few minutes, then repeat the command. Some parts of the configuration might take a significant amount of time to synchronize (tens of minutes).

## Connecting other traffic interfaces

After the device configurations are synchronized, you can connect the rest of the traffic interfaces. Making these connections will disrupt traffic as cables are disconnected and reconnected.

Switches must be used between the cluster and the ISPs, and between the cluster and the internal network, as shown in the topology diagram.

## Checking cluster operations

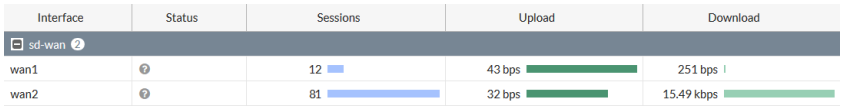
The *HA Status* dashboard widget shows the synchronization status. Hover over the host names of each FortiGate in the widget to verify that they are synchronized and have the same checksum.

To view more information about the cluster status, including the number of sessions passing through the cluster members, go to *System* > *HA*.

See Check HA sync status on page 710 for more information.

## Results

1. Browse the internet on a computer in the internal network.
2. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* to see the bandwidth, volume, and sessions for traffic on the SD-WAN interfaces. See Results on page 473 for details.
3. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*, and expand the *SD-WAN* widget to see information about each interface, such as the number of sessions and the bit rate.




## Testing HA failover

All traffic should currently be flowing through the primary FortiGate. If it becomes unavailable, traffic fails over to the secondary FortiGate. When the primary FortiGate rejoins the cluster, the secondary FortiGate continues to operate as the primary FortiGate.

To test this, ping a reliable IP address from a computer in the internal network, and then power off the primary FortiGate.

There will be a momentary pause in the ping results until traffic diverts to the backup FortiGate, allowing the ping traffic to continue:

```
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=69 ttl=52 time=8.719 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=70 ttl=52 time=8.822 ms\
```

```
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=74 ttl=52 time=8.901 ms\
Request timeout for icmp_seq 75\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=76 ttl=52 time=8.860 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=77 ttl=52 time=9.174 ms\
64 bytes from 184.25.76.114: icmp_seq=83 ttl=52 time=8.639 ms}
```

If you are using port monitoring, you can also unplug the primary FortiGate's internet facing interface to test failover.

After the secondary FortiGate becomes the primary, you can log into the cluster using the same IP address as before the fail over. If the primary FortiGate is powered off, you will be logged into the backup FortiGate. Check the host name to verify what device you have logged into. The FortiGate continues to operate in HA mode, and if you restart the primary FortiGate, it will rejoin the cluster and act as the backup FortiGate. Traffic is not disrupted when the restarted FortiGate rejoins the cluster.

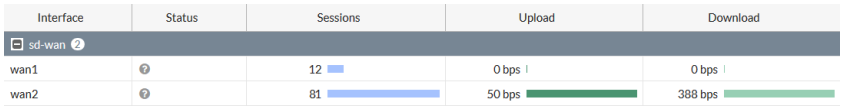
You can also use the CLI to force an HA failover. See Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations on page 728 for information.

### Testing ISP failover

To test a failover of the redundant internet configuration, you need to simulate a failed internet connection to one of the ports. You can do this by disconnecting power from the wan1 switch, or by disconnecting the wan1 interfaces of both FortiGates from ISP1.

After disconnecting, verify that users still have internet access

- Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*, and expand the *SD-WAN* widget. The *Upload* and *Download* columns for wan1 show that traffic is not going through that interface.




- Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*. The *Bandwidth*, *Volume*, and *Sessions* tabs show that traffic is entirely diverted to wan2.




Users on the network should not notice the wan1 failure. If you are using the wan1 gateway IP address to connect to the administrator dashboard, it will appear as though you are still connecting through wan1.

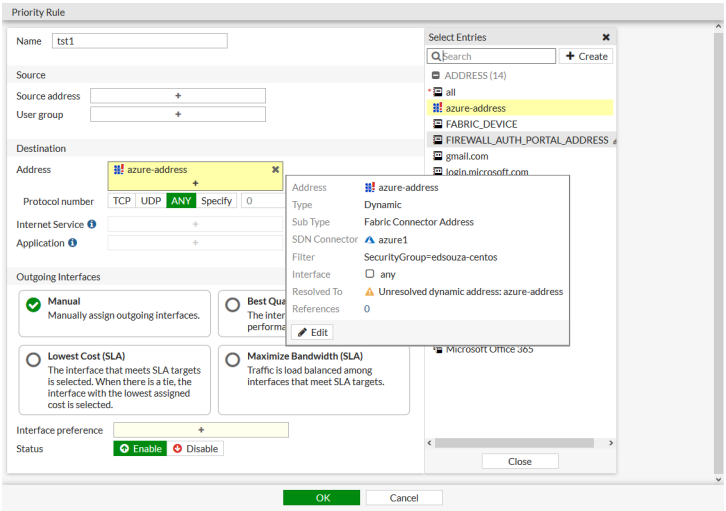
After verifying a successful failover, reestablish the connection to ISP1.

## Dynamic connector addresses in SD-WAN policies

Dynamic Fabric Connector addresses can be used in SD-WAN policies.

**To add a dynamic connector address to an SD-WAN rule:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Name* field, enter the rule name.
4. In the *Destination* > *Address* field, click the +. The *Select Entries* pane will appear.
5. In the *Select Entries* pane, select the dynamic connector.



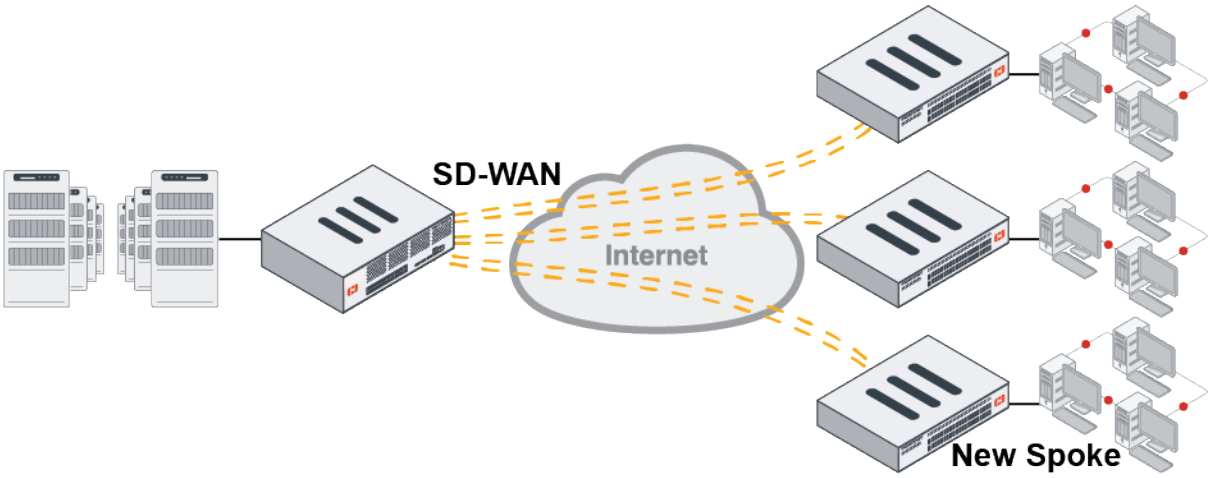

6. Configure the remaining settings as required.
7. Click *OK* to save the rule.

# SD-WAN configuration portability

When configuring SD-WAN, adding interfaces to members is optional.

This allows the SD-WAN to be configured without associating any interfaces to SD-WAN members. It also allows a configuration to be copied directly from one device to another, without requiring the devices to have interfaces with the same names.

After the configuration is created, add interfaces to the members make it functional.

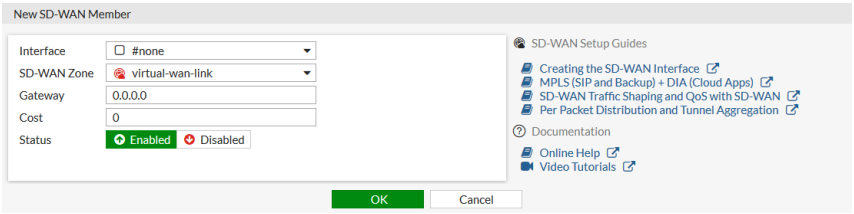



## Example 1

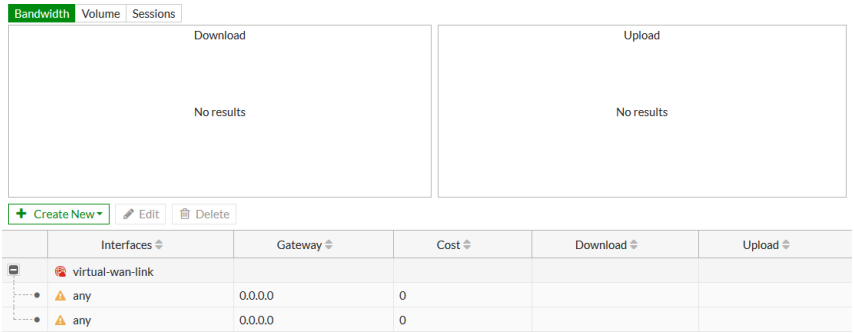
In this example, we create a template with two SD-WAN members configured without assigned interfaces that are used in a performance SLA and SD-WAN rule. The template can be used to configure new devices, as in Example 2 on page 594. Interfaces are then assigned to the members, and the configuration becomes active.

**To create the SD-WAN members in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
3. Leave all the settings set to their default values and click *OK*.



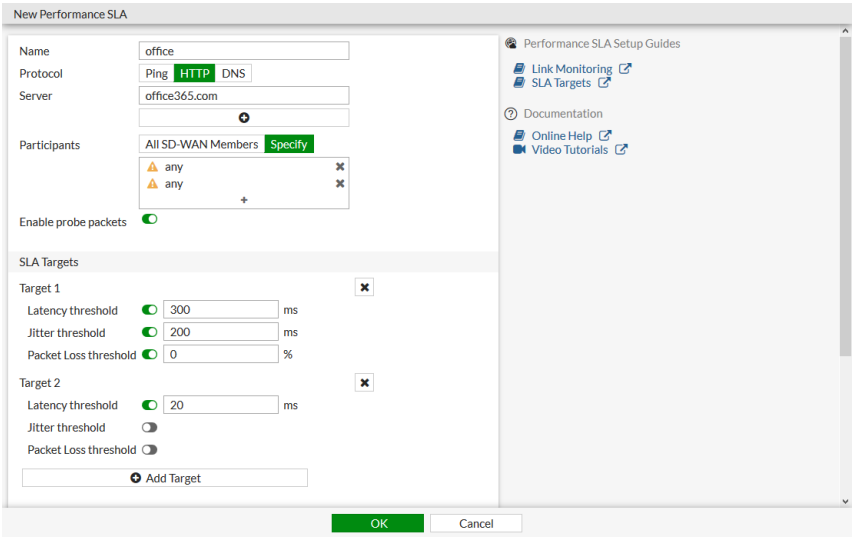

4. Repeat the above steps to create a second member.
   The empty members are listed on the *SD-WAN Zones* page.




   The members are disabled until interfaces are configured, but can still be used in performance SLAs and SD-WAN rules.

### To create a performance SLA in the GUI:

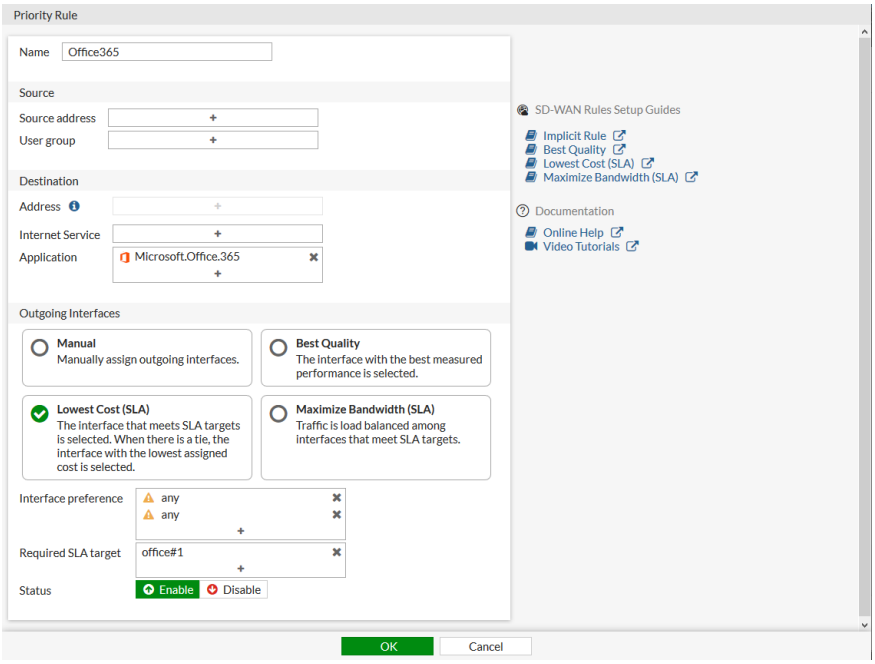
1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the performance SLA, specifying the empty members as participants.




4. Click *OK*.

### To create an SD-WAN rule in the GUI:

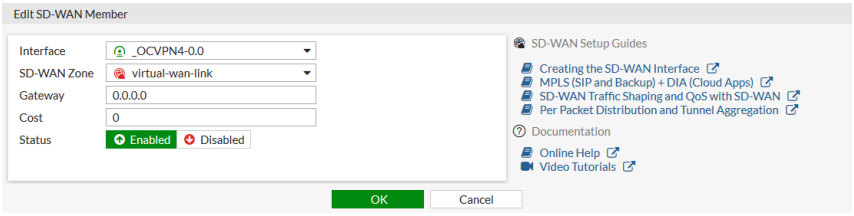
1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the rule, adding both members to the *Interface preference* field:




4. Click *OK*.

**To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Edit the first member
3. Set Interface to an actual interface.




4. Click *OK*.
5. Repeat the above steps to assign an interface to the second member.

**To configure the SD-WAN in the CLI:**

1. Create SD-WAN members:

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
        next
        edit 2
        next
    end
end
```

2. Create a health check (performance SLA):

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "office"
            set server "office365.com"
            set protocol http
            set sla-fail-log-period 300
            set sla-pass-log-period 300
            set members 2 1
            config sla
                edit 1
                    set latency-threshold 300
                    set jitter-threshold 200
                next
                edit 2
                    set link-cost-factor latency
                    set latency-threshold 20
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

3. Create a service (rule):

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 3
            set name "Office365"
            set mode sla
            set internet-service enable
            set internet-service-app-ctrl 33182
            config sla
                edit "office"
                    set id 2
                next
            end
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

The SD-WAN configuration can now be used in as a template for new spokes, as in Example 2 on page 594.

**To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members in the CLI:**

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.0"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.1"
        next
    end
end
```



If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

## Example 2

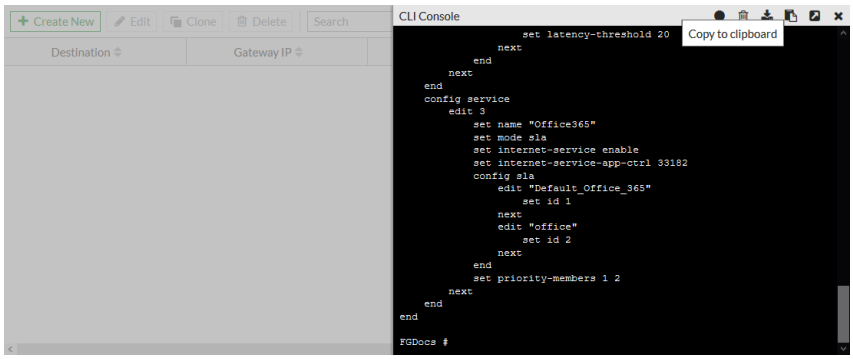
In this example, the configuration from Example 1 is copied onto a new FortiGate.

### Using the CLI console and the GUI

**To copy the SD-WAN configuration from the original FortiGate:**

1. Optionally, change the console screen paging setting. See Screen paging on page 31 for details.
2. Open the CLI console.
3. If necessary, click *Clear console* to empty the console.
4. Enter the following command:
   ```
   show system sdwan
   ```

5. Either click *Download* and open the file in a text editor, or click *Copy to clipboard* and paste the content into a text editor.




6. Edit the CLI configuration as necessary. For example, the first line that shows the `show` command should be deleted, and the default health checks can be removed.
7. If required, save the CLI configuration as a text file.

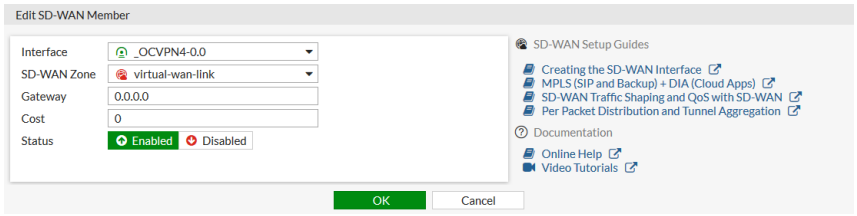
**To paste the SD-WAN configuration onto a new FortiGate:**

1. Copy the SD-WAN configuration from the text editor.
2. On the new FortiGate, open the CLI console.
3. Press *Ctrl* + *v* to paste the CLI commands.
4. In necessary, press *Enter* to apply the last `end` command.
   The SD-WAN configuration is copied to the new FortiGate.

   If the interfaces do not exist, the SD-WAN members are created without interfaces, and are disabled until interfaces are configured.

**To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members:**

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
2. Edit the first member
3. Set Interface to an actual interface.




4. Click *OK*.
5. Repeat the above steps to assign an interface to the second member.

## Using a terminal emulator

The following instructions use PuTTy. The steps may vary in other terminal emulators.

**To copy the SD-WAN configuration from the original FortiGate:**

1. Connect to the FortiGate. See Connecting to the CLI on page 23 for details.
2. Enter the following command:
   `show system sdwan`
3. Select the output, press *Ctrl* + *c* to copy it, and then paste it into a text editor.
4. Edit the CLI configuration as necessary. For example, the default health checks can be removed.
5. If required, save the CLI configuration as a text file.

**To paste the SD-WAN configuration onto a new FortiGate:**

1. Copy the SD-WAN configuration from the text editor.
2. Connect to the new FortiGate. See Connecting to the CLI on page 23 for details.
3. Right-click to paste the SD-WAN configuration.
4. In necessary, press *Enter* to apply the last `end` command.
   The SD-WAN configuration is copied to the new FortiGate.
   If the interfaces do not exist, the SD-WAN members are created without interfaces, and are disabled until interfaces are configured.

**To assign interfaces to the SD-WAN members::**

```
config system sdwan
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.0"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "_OCVPN4-0.1"
        next
    end
end
```

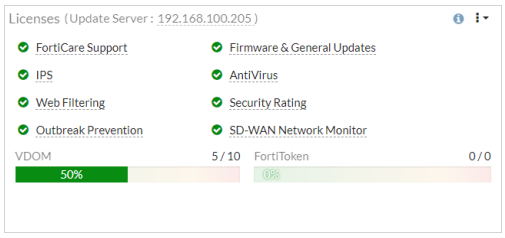


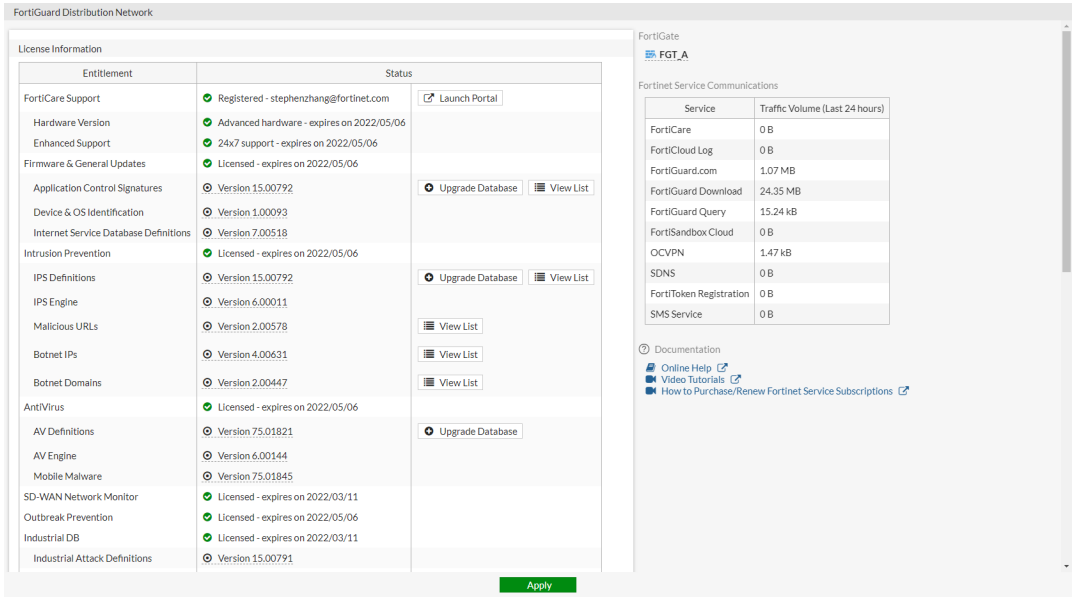
If no SD-WAN zone is specified, members are added to the default *virtual-wan-link* zone.

# Interface speedtest

An interface speedtest can be performed on WAN interfaces in the GUI. The results of the test can be added to the interface's *Estimated bandwidth*. An SD-WAN Network Monitor license is required.

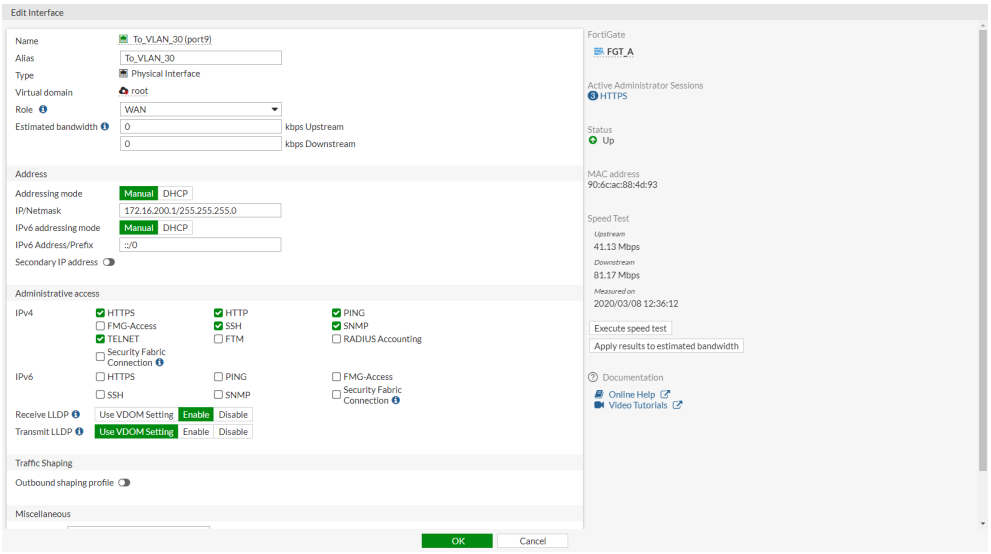
The *License* widget and the *System* > *FortiGuard* page display the SD-WAN Network Monitor license status.



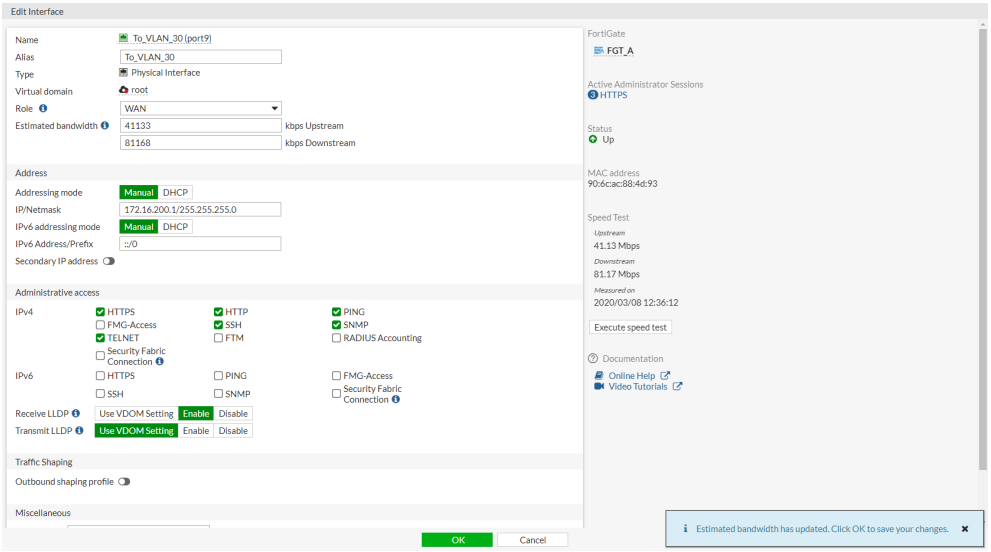




### To run an interface speedtest in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit a WAN interface. The interfaces can be grouped by role using the grouping dropdown on the right side of the toolbar.
3. Click *Execute speed test* in the right pane.



4. When the test completes, click *Apply results to estimated bandwidth*.




The speedtest results are used to populate the *Estimated bandwidth* fields.

5. Click *OK*.



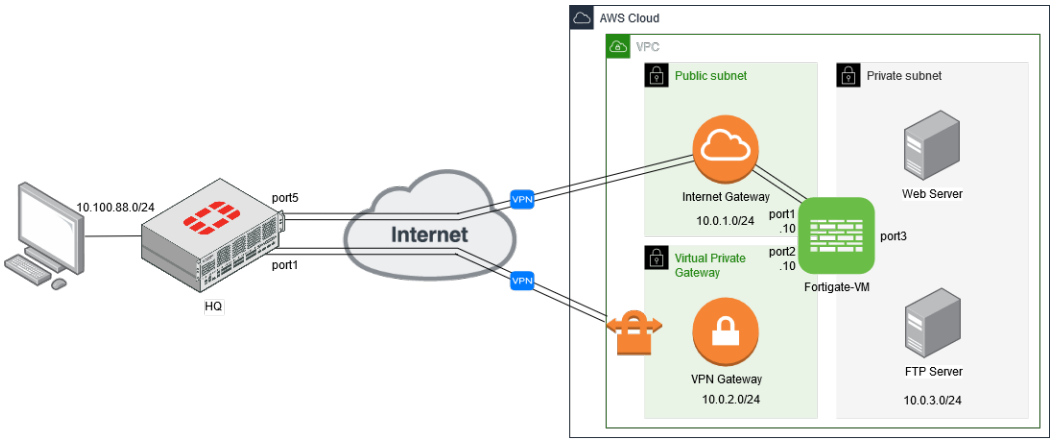
The FortiGate must be connected to FortiGuard, and able to reach either the AWS or Google speedtest servers.

# SD-WAN cloud on-ramp

In this example, you configure a connection to a new cloud deployment that has some remote servers. SD-WAN is used to steer traffic through the required overlay tunnel.

The on-premise FortiGate has two internet connections, each with a single VPN connection. The two VPN gateways are configured on the cloud for redundancy, one terminating at the FortiGate-VM, and the other at the native AWS VPN Gateway.

This example uses AWS as the Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS) provider, but the same configuration can also apply to other services. A full mesh VPN setup is not shown, but can be added later if required.




To connect to the servers that are behind the cloud FortiGate-VM, virtual IP addresses (VIPs) are configured on port2 to map to the servers:

- VPN traffic terminating on port1 is routed to the VIP on port2 to access the web servers.
- VPN traffic terminating on the VPN gateway accesses the VIPs on port2 directly.

There are four major steps to configure this setup:

1. Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and cloud FortiGate-VM on page 599
2. Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and AWS native VPN gateway on page 604
3. Configuring the VIP to access the remote servers on page 607
4. Configuring the SD-WAN to steer traffic between the overlays on page 610

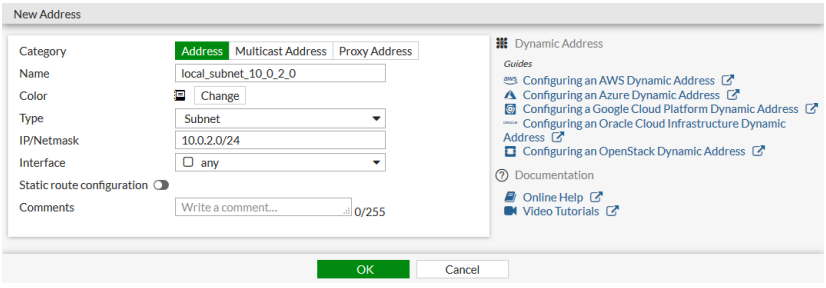
After the configuration is complete, verify the traffic to ensure that the configuration is working as expected, see Verifying the traffic on page 615.

## Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and cloud FortiGate-VM

### Configure the cloud FortiGate-VM

**To create an address for the VPN gateway:**

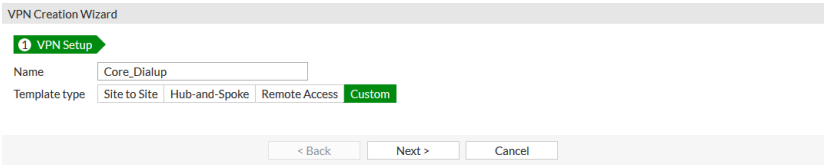
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *local_subnet_10_0_2_0*.
3. Set *IP/Netmask* to *10.0.2.0/24*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To configure a custom IPsec VPN:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Set *Name* to *Core_Dialup*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*.

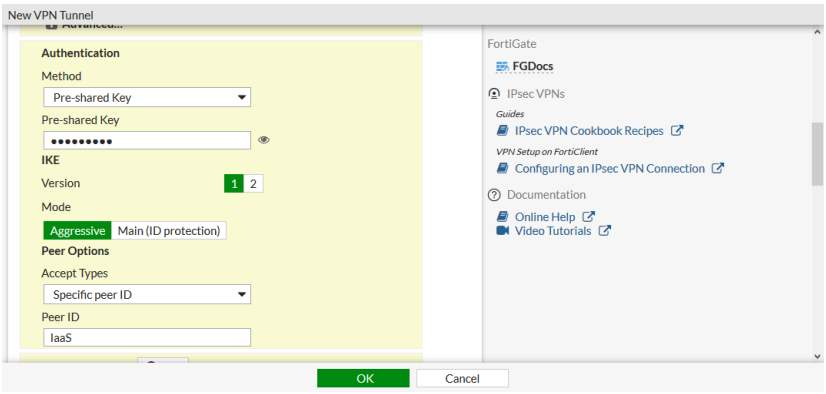



4. Click *Next*.
5. Configure *Network* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Remote Gateway** | Dialup User |
| **Interface** | port1 |
| **NAT Traversal** | Enable |

6. Configure *Authentication* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Method** | Pre-shared Key |
| **Pre-shared Key** | Enter the pre-shared key. |
| **Version** | 1 |
| **Mode** | Aggressive<br>This setting allows the peer ID to be specified. |
| **Accept Types** | Specific peer ID |
| **Peer ID** | IaaS<br>The other end of the tunnel needs to have its local ID set to IaaS. |




7. Leave the default *Phase 1 Proposal* settings and disable *XAUTH*.

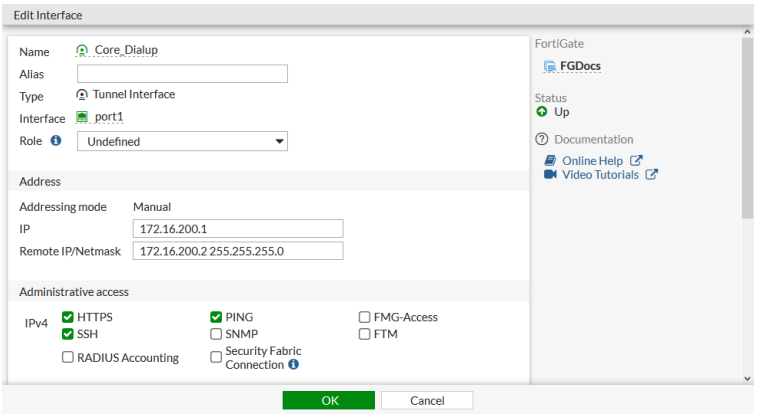
8. Configure the *Phase 2 Selector* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Ent_Core |
| **Local Address** | Named Address - *local_subnet_10_0_2_0* |
| **Remote Address** | Named Address - *all*<br>This setting allows traffic originating from both the remote subnet 10.100.88.0 and the health checks from the VPN interface on the remote FortiGate. For increased security, each subnet can be specified individually. |

9. Click *OK*.

**To configure remote and local tunnel IP addresses:**

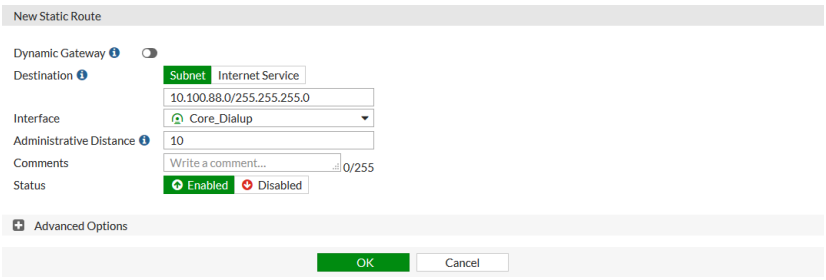
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *Core_Dialup* interface under *port1*.
2. Set *IP* to *172.16.200.1*.
3. Set *Remote IP/Netmask* to *172.16.200.2 255.255.255.0*. This is where remote health check traffic will come from.
4. Enable *Administrative access* for *HTTPS*, *PING*, and *SSH*.




5. Click *OK*.

**To configure a route to the remote subnet through the tunnel:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter the IP address and netmask: *10.100.88.0/255.255.255.0*.
3. Set *Interface* to *Core_Dialup*.

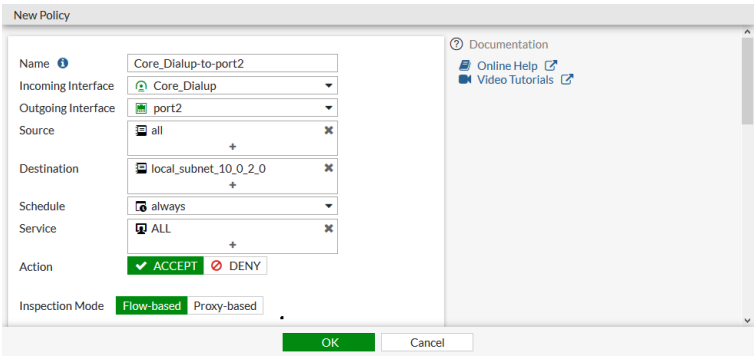



4. Click *OK*.

**To configure a firewall policy to allow traffic from the tunnel to port2:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Core_Dialup-to-port2 |
| **Incoming Interface** | Core_Dialup |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port2 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | local_subnet_10_0_2_0 |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |




3. Configure the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

## Configure the HQ FortiGate

**To create an address for the VPN gateway:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *remote_subnet_10_0_2_0*.
3. Set *IP/Netmask* to *10.0.2.0/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To configure a custom IPsec VPN:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Set *Name* to *FGT_AWS_Tun*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*.
4. Click *Next*.

5. Configure *Network* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Remote Gateway** | Static IP Address |
| **IP Address** | 100.21.29.17 |
| **Interface** | port5 |
| **NAT Traversal** | Enable |

6. Configure *Authentication* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Method** | Pre-shared Key |
| **Pre-shared Key** | Enter the pre-shared key. |
| **Version** | 1 |
| **Mode** | Aggressive<br>This setting allows the peer ID to be specified. |
| **Accept Types** | Any peer ID |

7. Leave the default *Phase 1 Proposal* settings, except set *Local ID* to *IaaS*.
8. Disable *XAUTH*.
9. Configure the *Phase 2 Selector* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | FGT_AWS_Tun |
| **Local Address** | Named Address - *all*<br>This setting allows traffic originating from both the local subnet 10.100.88.0 and the health checks from the VPN interface. For increased security, each subnet can be specified individually. |
| **Remote Address** | Named Address - *remote_subnet_10_0_2_0* |

10. Click *OK*.

**To configure local and remote tunnel IP addresses:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *FGT_AWS_Tun* interface under *port5*.
2. Set *IP* to *172.16.200.2*.
3. Set *Remote IP/Netmask* to *172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0*.
4. Enable *Administrative access* for *HTTPS*, *PING*, and *SSH*.
5. Click *OK*.



Routing is defined when creating the SD-WAN interface. The firewall policy is created after the SD-WAN interface is defined.

# Configuring the VPN overlay between the HQ FortiGate and AWS native VPN gateway

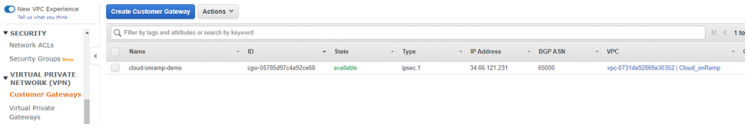
This example uses static routing. It is assumed that the AWS VPN Gateway is already configured, and that proper routing is applied on the corresponding subnet.

## Verify the AWS configuration

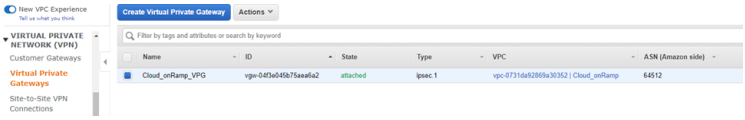
See Creating routing tables and associate subnets in the AWS Cookbook for configuration details.

**To check the AWS configuration:**

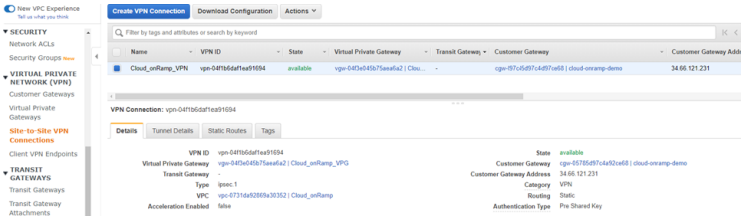
1. Go to *Virtual Private Network (VPN)* > *Customer Gateways* to confirm that the customer gateway defines the FortiGate IP address as its Gateway IP address, in this case *34.66.121.231*.



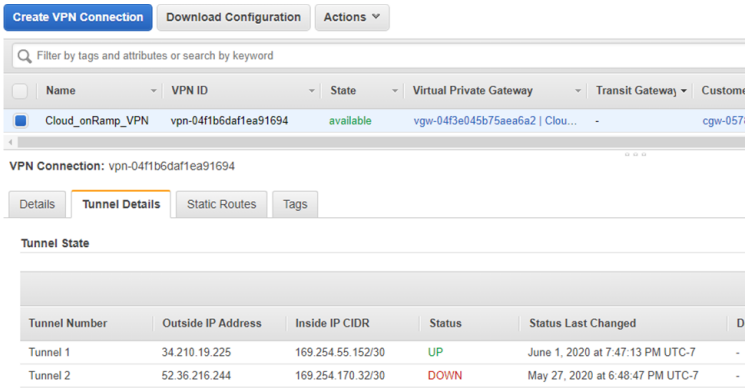
2. Go to *Virtual Private Network (VPN)* > *Virtual Private Gateways* to confirm that a virtual private gateway (VPG) has been created. In this case it is attached to the *Cloud_onRamp* VPC that contains the FortiGate and servers.



3. Go to *Virtual Private Network (VPN)* > *Site-to-Site VPN Connections* to confirm that site-to-site VPN connections have been created and attached to the customer gateway and virtual private gateway.
If *Routing Options* is *Static*, the IP prefix of the remote subnet on the HQ FortiGate (10.100.88.0) is entered here.

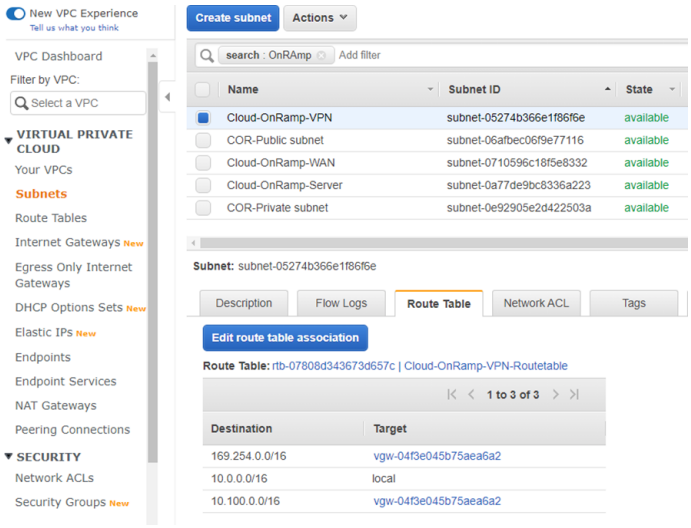


AWS site-to-site VPN always creates two VPN tunnels for redundancy. In this example, only Tunnel 1 is used.

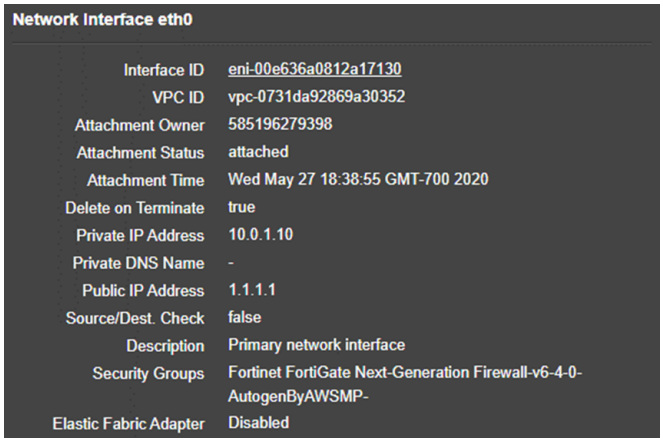



4. Click *Download Configuration* to download the FortiGate's tunnel configurations. The configuration can be referred to when configuring the FortiGate VPN.

5. The new VPG is attached to your VPC, but to successfully route traffic to the VPG, proper routing must be defined. Go to *Virtual Private Cloud* > *Subnets*, select the *Cloud-OnRamp-VPN*, and select the *Route Table* tab to verify that there are at least two routes to send traffic over the VPG.




   - *169.254.0.0/24* defines the tunnel IP address. Health check traffic originating from the FortiGate will come from this IP range.
   - *10.100.0.0/16* defines the remote subnet from the HQ FortiGate.
   - Both routes point to the just created VPG *vgw-04xxxx*.
6. On the cloud FortiGate-VM EC2 instances, ensure that port1 and port2 both have *Source/Dest. Check* set to *false*. This allows the FortiGate to accept and route traffic to and from a different network.
   If you launched the instance from the AWS marketplace, this setting defaults to *true*.

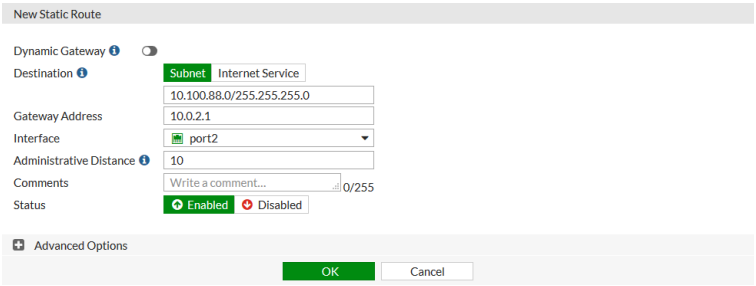



## Configure routing to the VPG on the cloud FortiGate-VM

**To configure routing to the VPG on the cloud FortiGate-VM:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter the IP address and netmask: *10.100.88.0/255.255.255.0*.
3. Set *Gateway Address* to *Specify* and enter *10.0.2.1*.

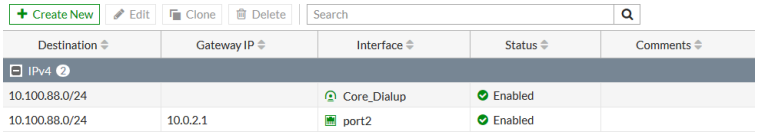
4. Set *Interface* to *port2*.




The new route must have the same *Administrative Distance* as the route that was created for traffic through the *Core_Dialup* tunnel to ensure that both routes are added to the routing table (see To configure a route to the remote subnet through the tunnel).

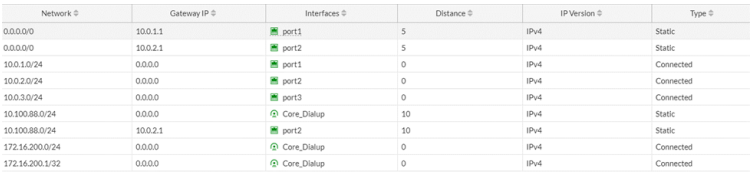
The *Gateway Address* is arbitrarily set to 10.0.2.1. The VPG does not have an IP address, but the address defined here allows the FortiGate to route traffic out of port2, while AWS routes the traffic based on its routing table.

5. Click *OK*.
6. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* to view the configured static routes:




7. If *Optimal* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the Routing widget to view the routing table.

If *Comprehensive* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Routing Monitor* and select *Static & Dynamic* in the widget toolbar to view the routing table:




## Configure IPsec VPN on the HQ FortiGate

**To configure a custom IPsec VPN:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. Set *Name* to *AWS_VPG*.
3. Set *Template type* to *Custom*.
4. Click *Next*.
5. Configure *Network* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Remote Gateway** | Static IP Address |
| **IP Address** | 34.210.19.225<br>This address is taken from the downloaded AWS configuration file. |
| **Interface** | port1 |
| **NAT Traversal** | Enable |

6. Configure *Authentication* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Method** | Pre-shared Key |
| **Pre-shared Key** | Enter the pre-shared key. |
| **Version** | 1 |
| **Mode** | Main |

7. Configure the *Phase 1 Proposal* settings using information from the downloaded AWS configuration file.
8. Disable *XAUTH*.
9. Configure the *Phase 2 Selector* settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | AWS_VPG |
| **Local Address** | Named Address - *all*<br>This setting allows traffic originating from both the local subnet 10.100.88.0 and the health checks from the VPN interface. For increased security, each subnet can be specified individually. |
| **Remote Address** | Named Address - *remote_subnet_10_0_2_0* |

10. Click *OK*.

**To configure local and remote tunnel IP addresses:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *AWS_VPG* interface under *port1*.
2. Set *IP* to *169.254.55.154*.
3. Set *Remote IP/Netmask* to *169.254.55.153 255.255.255.0*.
4. Enable *Administrative access* for *HTTPS* and *PING*.
5. Click *OK*.



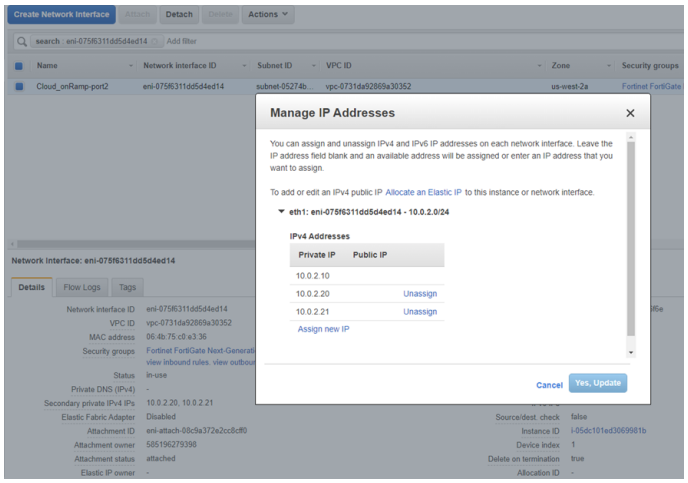
Routing is defined when creating the SD-WAN interface. The firewall policy is created after the SD-WAN interface is defined.

## Configuring the VIP to access the remote servers

VIPs, interface IP addresses, and policies are created on the cloud FortiGate-VM to allow access to the remote servers.

**To configure additional private IPs on AWS for the FortiGate VIP:**

1. On the FortiGate EC2 instance, edit the *Elastic Network Interface* that corresponds to *port2*. In this example, Network Interface *eth1*.
2. Go to *Actions* > *Manage IP Addresses*.
3. Add two private IP address in the 10.0.2.0/24 subnet.
   These address will be used in the VIPs on the FortiGate. This ensures that traffic to these IP addresses is routed to the FortiGate by AWS.

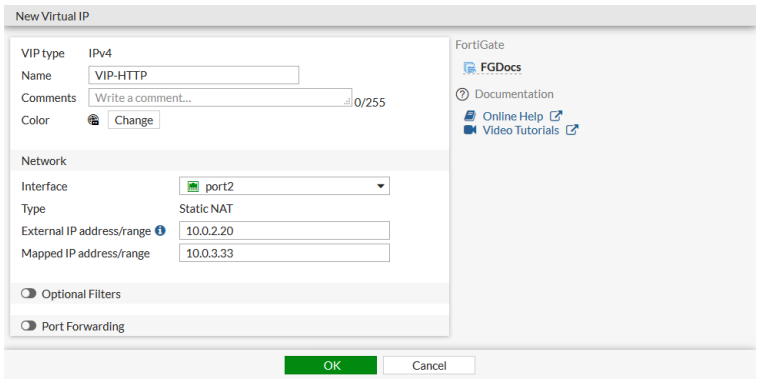



4. Click *Yes, Update*.

### To configure VIPs on the cloud FortiGate-VM:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and click *Create New* > *Virtual IP*.
2. Configure the following:

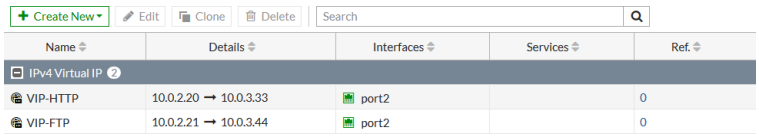
| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | VIP-HTTP |
| **Interface** | port2 |
| **External IP address/range** | 10.0.2.20 |
| **Mapped IP address/range** | 10.0.3.33 |




3. Click *OK*.

4. Create a second VIP for the FTP server with the following settings:

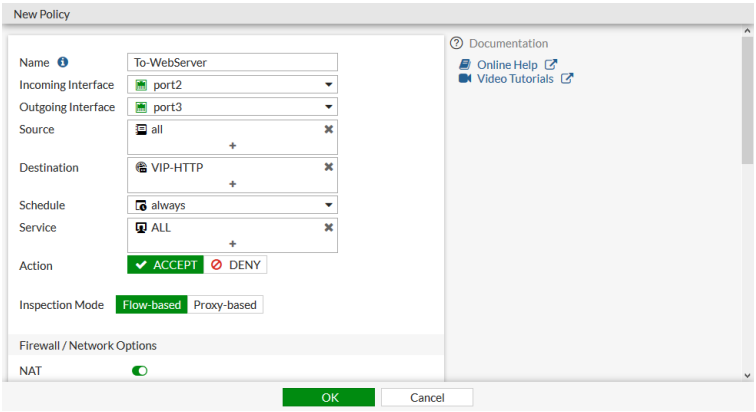
| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | VIP-FTP |
| **Interface** | port2 |
| **External IP address/range** | 10.0.2.21 |
| **Mapped IP address/range** | 10.0.3.44 |




**To configure firewall policies to allow traffic from port2 to port3:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | To-WebServer |
| **Incoming Interface** | port2 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port3 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | VIP-HTTP |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | Enabled |

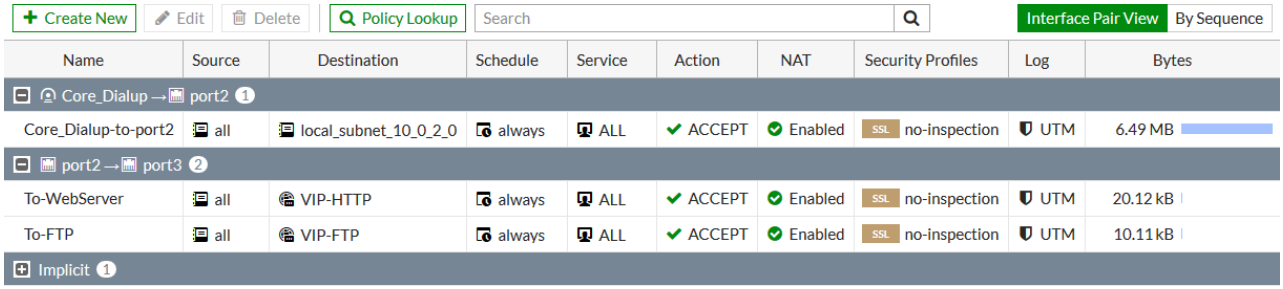



3. Configure the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

5. Create a second policy for the FTP VIP with the following settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | To-FTP |
| **Incoming Interface** | port2 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port3 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | VIP-FTP |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | Enabled |

6. Click *OK*.



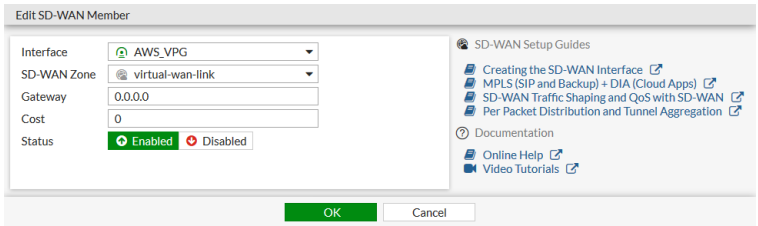

## Configuring the SD-WAN to steer traffic between the overlays

Configure the HQ FortiGate to use two overlay tunnels for SD-WAN, steering HTTPS and HTTP traffic through the FGT_AWS_Tun tunnel, and SSH and FTP throguh the AWS_VPG tunnel.

1. Add SD-WAN member interfaces
2. Configure a route to the remote network
3. Configure firewall policies
4. Configure a health check
5. Configure SD-WAN rules

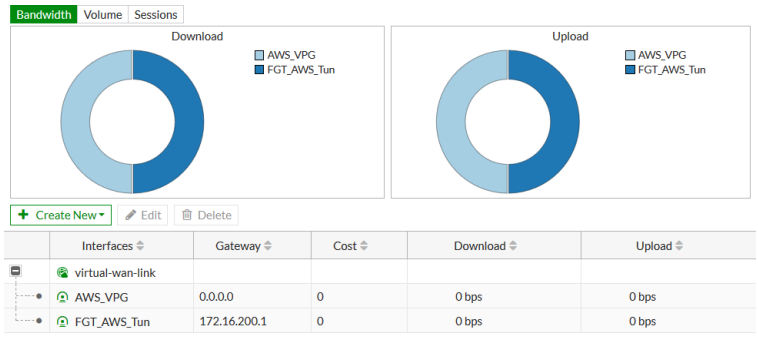
### To add SD-WAN member interfaces:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones* and click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
2. Set *Interface* to *AWS_VPG* then click *OK*.



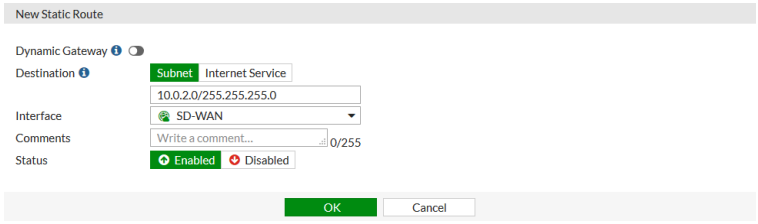

3. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member* again.

4. Set *Interface* to *FGT_AWS_Tun*.
5. Set *Gateway* to *172.16.200.1*.
6. Click *OK*.

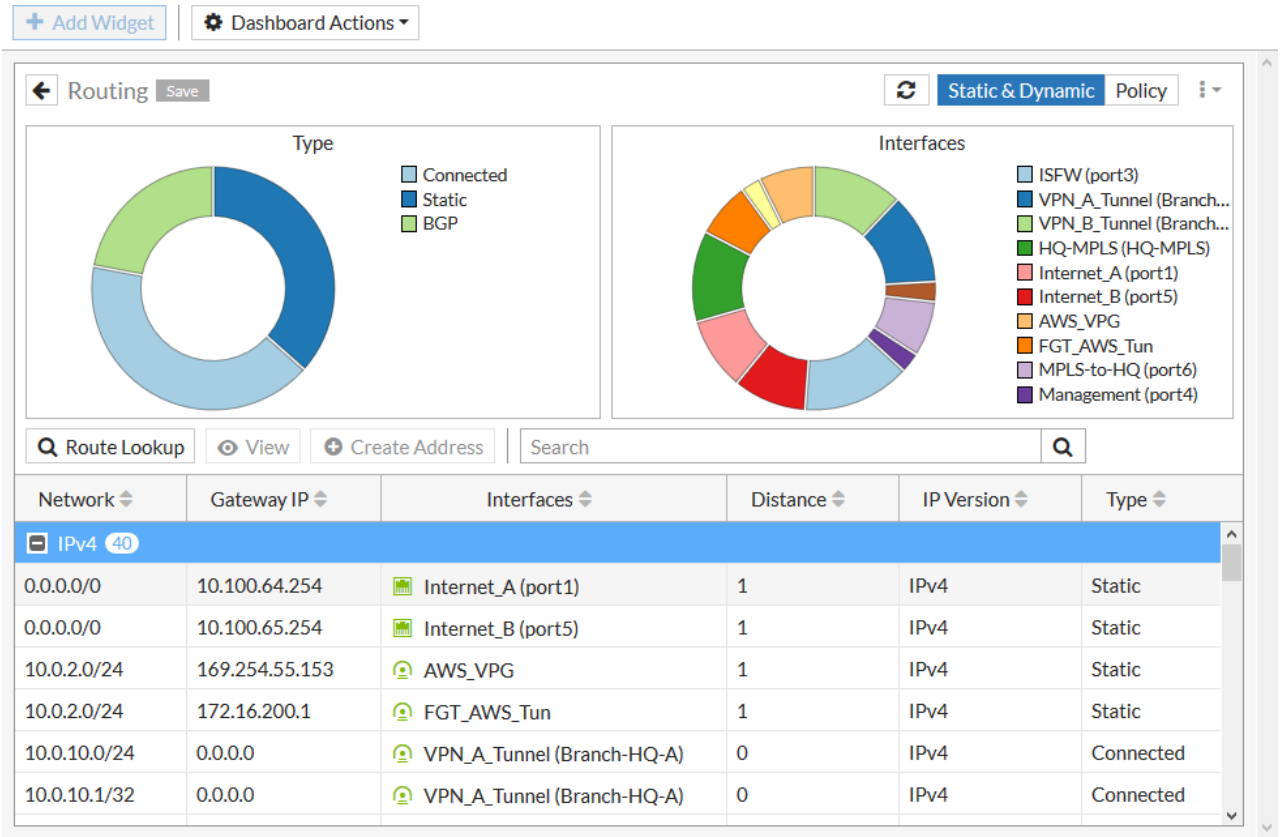



**To configure a route to the remote network 10.0.2.0/24:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Destination* to *Subnet* and enter the IP address and netmask: *10.0.2.0/255.255.255.0*.
3. Set *Interface* to *SD-WAN*.



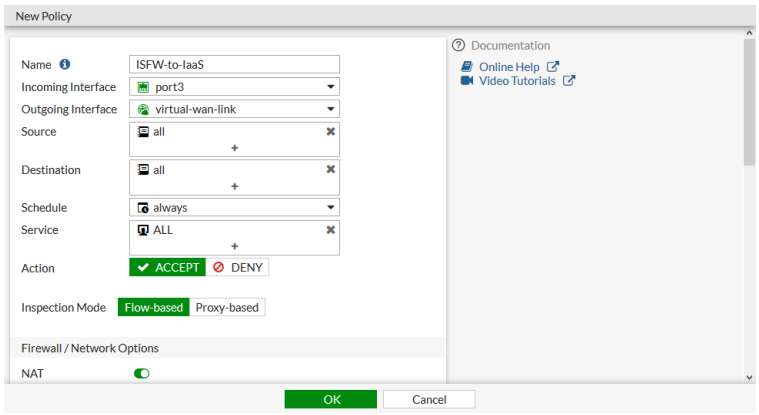

4. Click *OK*.
   Individual routes to each tunnel are automatically added to the routing table with the same distance:




**To configure firewall policies to allow traffic from the internal subnet to SD-WAN:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | ISFW-to-IaaS |
| **Incoming Interface** | port3 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | virtual-wan-link |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | Enabled |



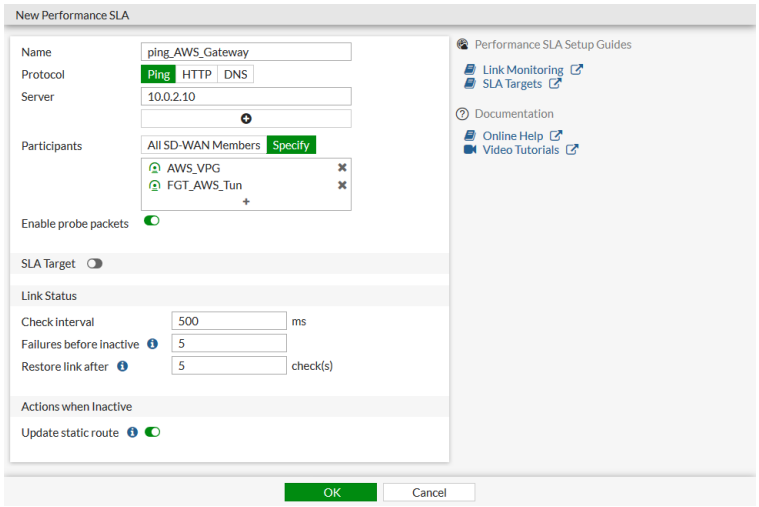

3. Configure the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.
   Once the firewall policies are configured, the VPN tunnels should come up when there is traffic.

### To configure a health check to monitor the status of the tunnels:

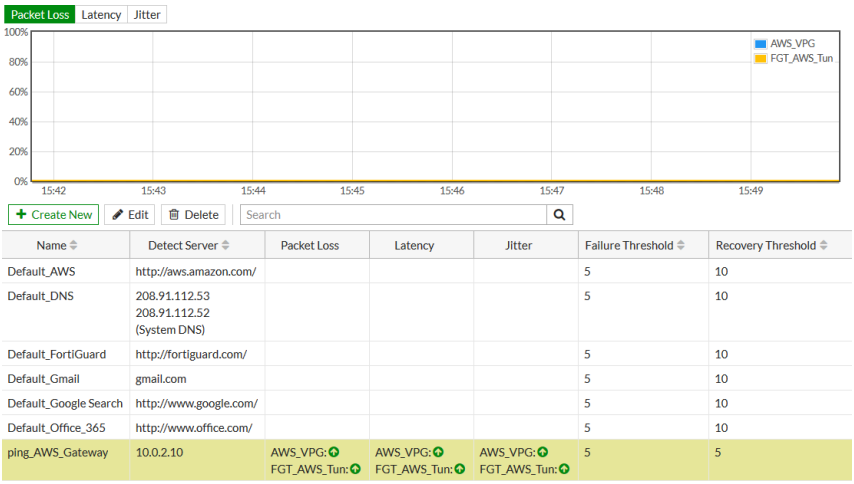
As you are accessing the servers on the 10.0.2.0/24 subnet, it is preferable to use the FortiGate port2 interface as the ping server for detection. This ensures that, if the gateway is not reachable in either tunnel, its routes are brought down and traffic continues on the other tunnel.

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | ping_AWS_Gateway |
| **Protocol** | Ping |
| **Server** | 10.0.2.10 |
| **Participants** | Specify<br>Add AWS_VPG and FGT_AWS_Tun as participants. |



3. Click *OK*.



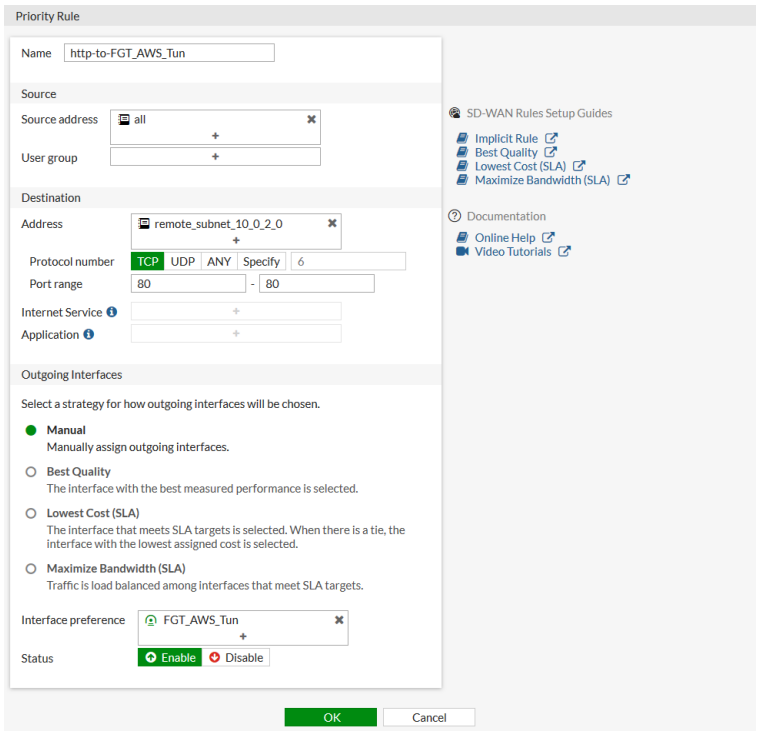

Health check probes originate from the VPN interface's IP address. This is why the phase2 selectors are configured with *Local Address* set to *all*.

### To configure SD-WAN rules to steer traffic:

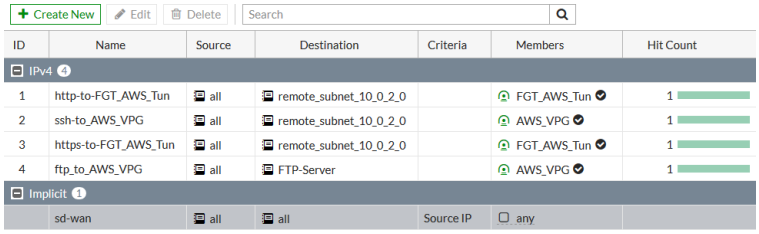
HTTPS and HTTP traffic is steered to the FGT_AWS_Tun tunnel, and SSH and FTP traffic is steered to the AWS_VPG tunnel. The Manual algorithm is used in this example.

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | http-to-FGT_AWS_Tun |
| **Source Address** | all |
| **Address** | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 |
| **Protocol** | TCP |
| **Port range** | 80 - 80 |
| **Outgoing Interfaces** | Manual |
| **Interface preference** | FGT_AWS_Tun |




3. Click *OK*.
4. Create other SD-WAN rules as required:




## Verifying the traffic

### To verify that pings are sent across the IPsec VPN tunnels

- On the HQ FortiGate, run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'host 10.0.2.10' 4 0 1 interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 10.0.2.10]
2020-06-05 11:35:14.822600 AWS_VPG out 169.254.55.154 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:35:14.822789 FGT_AWS_Tun out 172.16.200.2 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:35:14.877862 FGT_AWS_Tun in 10.0.2.10 -> 172.16.200.2: icmp: echo reply
2020-06-05 11:35:14.878887 AWS_VPG in 10.0.2.10 -> 169.254.55.154: icmp: echo reply
```

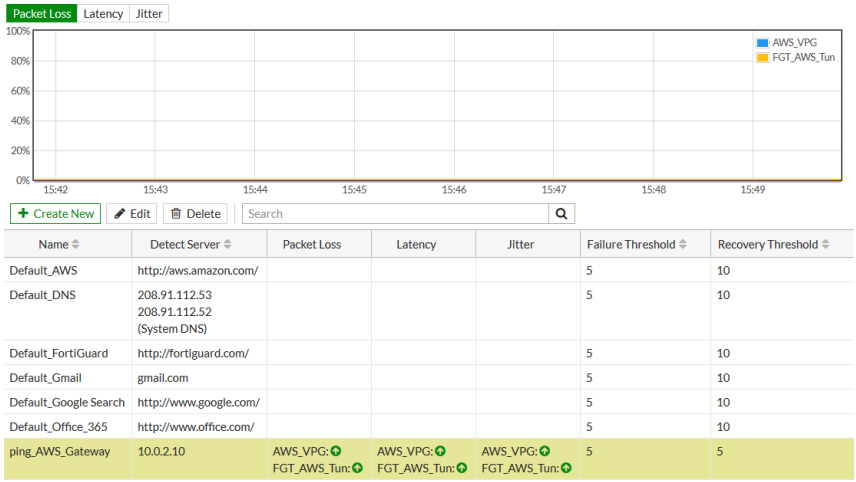
- On the cloud FortiGate-VM, run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'host 10.0.2.10' 4 0 1 interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 10.0.2.10]
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176329 port2 in 169.254.55.154 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176363 port2 out 10.0.2.10 -> 169.254.55.154: icmp: echo reply
```

```
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176505 Core_Dialup in 172.16.200.2 -> 10.0.2.10: icmp: echo request
2020-06-05 11:37:57.176514 Core_Dialup out 10.0.2.10 -> 172.16.200.2: icmp: echo reply
```

### To verify the SLA health checks on the HQ FortiGate:

1. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select *Packet Loss* and the *ping_AWS_Gateway* SLA:



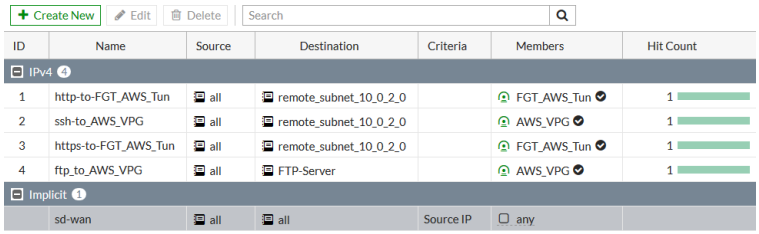

| Name | Detect Server | Packet Loss | Latency | Jitter | Failure Threshold | Recovery Threshold |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Default_AWS | http://aws.amazon.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_DNS | 208.91.112.53<br>208.91.112.52<br>(System DNS) | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_FortiGuard | http://fortiguard.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_Gmail | gmail.com | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_Google Search | http://www.google.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_Office_365 | http://www.office.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| ping_AWS_Gateway | 10.0.2.10 | AWS_VPG:<br>FGT_AWS_Tun: | AWS_VPG:<br>FGT_AWS_Tun: | AWS_VPG:<br>FGT_AWS_Tun: | 5 | 5 |

2. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
…
Seq(1 AWS_VPG): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(56.221), jitter(0.290) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(2 FGT_AWS_Tun): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(55.039), jitter(0.223)
sla_map=0x0
```

### To verify service rules:

1. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*:




| ID | Name | Source | Destination | Criteria | Members | Hit Count |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IPv4 4 | | | | | | |
| 1 | http-to-FGT_AWS_Tun | all | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 | | FGT_AWS_Tun | 1 |
| 2 | ssh-to_AWS_VPG | all | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 | | AWS_VPG | 1 |
| 3 | https-to-FGT_AWS_Tun | all | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 | | FGT_AWS_Tun | 1 |
| 4 | ftp_to_AWS_VPG | all | FTP-Server | | AWS_VPG | 1 |
| Implicit 1 | | | | | | |
| | sd-wan | all | all | Source IP | any | |

2. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 80->80), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255
```

```
Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 22->22), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 443->443), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(4): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.21-10.0.2.21
```

**To verify that sessions are going to the correct tunnel:**

1. Run the following CLI command to verify that HTTPS and HTTP traffic destined for the Web server at 10.0.2.20 uses FGT_AWS_Tun:

```
# diagnose sys session filter dst 10.0.2.20
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=2 expire=3597 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=FGT_AWS_Tun/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=593/4/1 reply=3689/5/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 264/2 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 1646/13
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=0->18/18->0 gwy=172.16.200.1/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55589->10.0.2.20:80(172.16.200.2:55589)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:80->172.16.200.2:55589(10.100.88.101:55589)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:80->10.100.88.101:55589(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b7442c tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=34050 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000001 rpdb_svc_id=2154552596 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008

session info: proto=6 proto_state=66 duration=1 expire=3 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
```

```
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=FGT_AWS_Tun/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr f00 csf_syncd_log
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=48/1/0 reply=40/1/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 26/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 22/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->18/18->5
gwy=172.16.200.1/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55621->10.0.2.20:443(172.16.200.2:55621)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:443->172.16.200.2:55621(10.100.88.101:55621)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:443->10.100.88.101:55621(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b74b50 tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000003 rpdb_svc_id=2154552596 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
```

2. Run the following CLI command to verify that SSH and FTP traffic destined for the FTP server at 10.0.2.21 uses AWS_VPG:

```
# diagnose sys session filter dst 10.0.2.20
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=197 expire=3403 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=580/12/1 reply=863/13/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 2/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 4/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->17/17->5
gwy=169.254.55.153/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55528->10.0.2.21:21(169.254.55.154:55528)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.21:21->169.254.55.154:55528(10.100.88.101:55528)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.21:21->10.100.88.101:55528(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b72a5f tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=15896 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000004 rpdb_svc_id=2149689849 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008

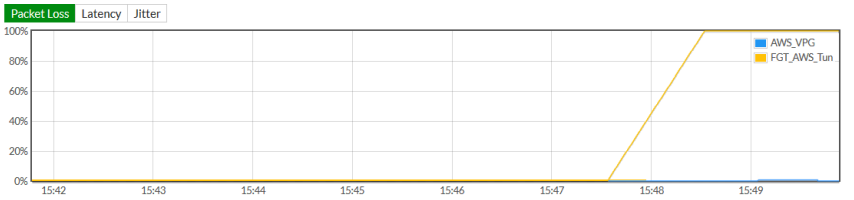
session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=3 expire=3596 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=1496/6/1 reply=1541/5/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 416/3 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 429/3
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->17/17->5
```

```
gwy=169.254.55.153/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:55644->10.0.2.21:22(169.254.55.154:55644)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.21:22->169.254.55.154:55644(10.100.88.101:55644)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.21:22->10.100.88.101:55644(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b75287 tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=16060 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= ff000002 rpdb_svc_id=2149689849 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
```

**To simulate an issue on an overlay VPN tunnel:**

On the cloud FortiGate-VM, disable the firewall policy allowing Core_Dialup to port2.

1. Health-checks through the FGT_AWS_Tun tunnel fail:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Performance SLA* and select *Packet Loss* and the *ping_AWS_Gateway* SLA:




+ Create New | Edit | Delete | Search

| Name | Detect Server | Packet Loss | Latency | Jitter | Failure Threshold | Recovery Threshold |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Default_AWS | http://aws.amazon.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_DNS | 208.91.112.53<br>208.91.112.52<br>(System DNS) | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_FortiGuard | http://fortiguard.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_Gmail | gmail.com | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_Google Search | http://www.google.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| Default_Office_365 | http://www.office.com/ | | | | 5 | 10 |
| ping_AWS_Gateway | 10.0.2.10 | AWS_VPG: 0.00%<br>FGT_AWS_Tun: | AWS_VPG: 54.98ms<br>FGT_AWS_Tun: | AWS_VPG: 0.41ms<br>FGT_AWS_Tun: | 5 | 5 |

   b. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan health-check
…
Seq(1 AWS_VPG): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(52.746), jitter(0.713) sla_
map=0x0
Seq(2 FGT_AWS_Tun): state(dead), packet-loss(19.000%) sla_map=0x0
```

2. Service rules show that the member is down:
   a. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Rules*:

+ Create New | Edit | Delete | Search

| ID | Name | Source | Destination | Criteria | Members | Hit Count |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IPv4 4 | | | | | | |
| 1 | http-to-FGT_AWS_Tun | all | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 | | FGT_AWS_Tun | 1 |
| 2 | ssh-to_AWS_VPG | all | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 | | AWS_VPG | 2 |
| 3 | https-to-FGT_AWS_Tun | all | remote_subnet_10_0_2_0 | | FGT_AWS_Tun | 1 |
| 4 | ftp_to_AWS_VPG | all | FTP-Server | | AWS_VPG | 2 |
| Implicit 1 | | | | | | |
| | sd-wan | all | all | Source IP | any | |

   b. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys sdwan service

Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
```

```
  Gen(2), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 80->80), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), dead
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(2): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 22->22), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(3): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(2), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(6: 443->443), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2 FGT_AWS_Tun), dead
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.0-10.0.2.255

Service(4): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  Gen(1), TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1 AWS_VPG), alive, selected
  Src address:
        0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255
  Dst address:
        10.0.2.21-10.0.2.21
```

3. Sessions are redirected to the working tunnel:
   a. Run the following CLI command:

```
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=11 duration=3 expire=3596 timeout=3600
flags=00000000 socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr npu f00 csf_syncd_log app_valid
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=504/4/1 reply=620/3/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 150/1 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 184/1
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=0->17/17->0
gwy=169.254.55.153/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:56373->10.0.2.20:80(169.254.55.154:56373)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:80->169.254.55.154:56373(10.100.88.101:56373)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:80->10.100.88.101:56373(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
```

```
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b87199 tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=34050 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= 80000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008

session info: proto=6 proto_state=66 duration=3 expire=1 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
socktype=0 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=AWS_VPG/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty ndr f00 csf_syncd_log
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=48/1/0 reply=40/1/1 tuples=3
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 15/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 12/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=5->17/17->5
gwy=169.254.55.153/10.100.88.101
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.100.88.101:56383->10.0.2.20:443(169.254.55.154:56383)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 10.0.2.20:443->169.254.55.154:56383(10.100.88.101:56383)
hook=post dir=reply act=noop 10.0.2.20:443->10.100.88.101:56383(0.0.0.0:0)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
src_mac=00:09:0f:00:03:01
misc=0 policy_id=32 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=0
serial=00b876bb tos=ff/ff app_list=2000 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id= 80000000 rpdb_svc_id=0 ngfwid=n/a
npu_state=0x3041008
total session 2
```

4. Routes to the *FGT_AWS_Tun* tunnel are removed:
   a. If *Optimal* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the Routing widget to view the routing table.
   If *Comprehensive* dashboards is selected, go to *Dashboard* > *Routing Monitor* and select *Static & Dynamic* in the widget toolbar to view the routing table:

| Network | Gateway IP | Interfaces | Distance | IP Version | Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| IPv4 40 | | | | | |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | 10.100.64.254 | Internet_A (port1) | 1 | IPv4 | Static |
| 0.0.0.0/0 | 10.100.65.254 | Internet_B (port5) | 1 | IPv4 | Static |
| 10.0.2.0/24 | 169.254.55.153 | AWS_VPG | 1 | IPv4 | Static |
| 10.0.10.0/24 | 0.0.0.0 | VPN_A_Tunnel (Branch-HQ-A) | 0 | IPv4 | Connected |
| 10.0.10.1/32 | 0.0.0.0 | VPN_A_Tunnel (Branch-HQ-A) | 0 | IPv4 | Connected |

   b. Run the following CLI command:

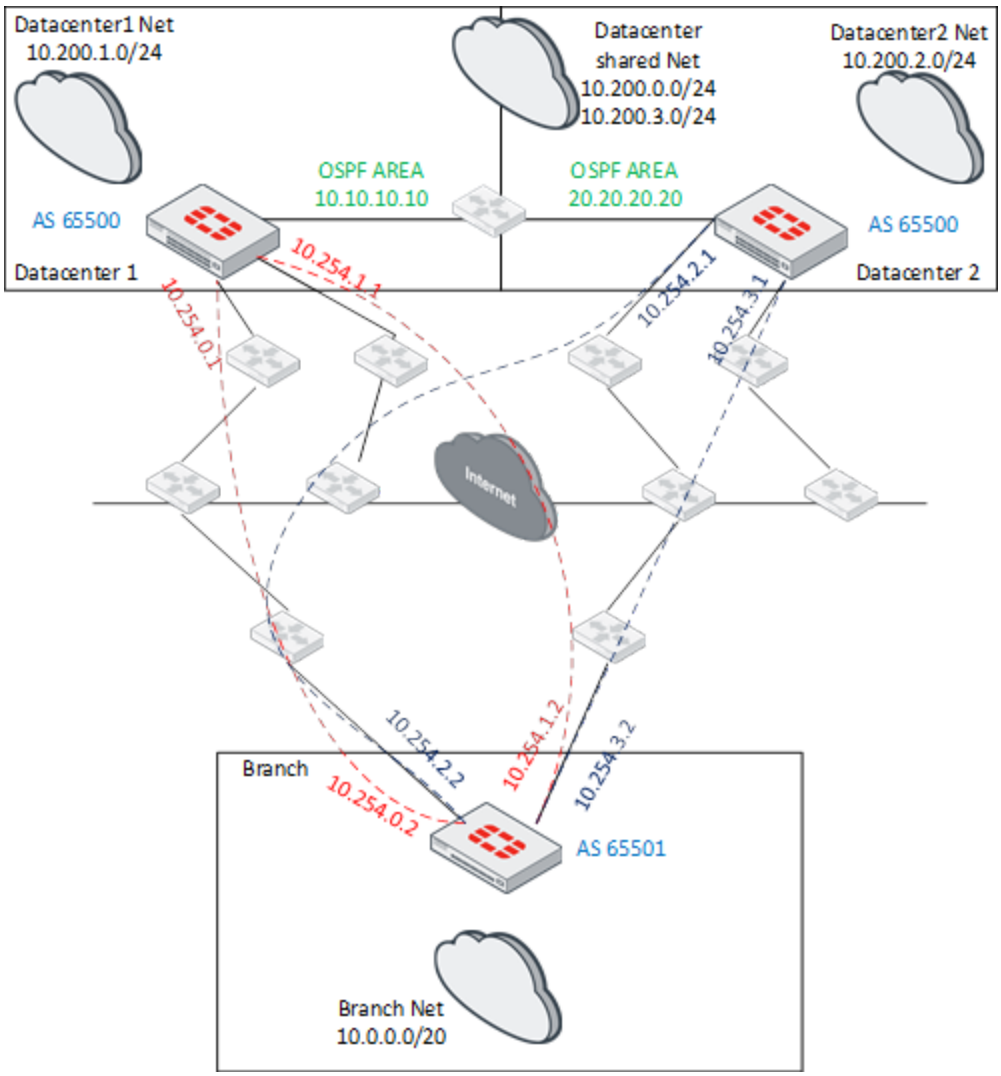
```
# get router info routing-table all
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [1/0] via 10.100.64.254, port1
                  [1/0] via 10.100.65.254, port5
```

```
S       10.0.2.0/24 [1/0] via 169.254.55.153, AWS_VPG
C       10.0.10.0/24 is directly connected, Branch-HQ-A
C       10.0.10.1/32 is directly connected, Branch-HQ-A
…
```

# Hub and spoke SD-WAN deployment example

This topology diagram shows an overview of the network that is configured in this example:




## Datacenter configuration

The datacenter is configured to support:

- Zero touch provisioning of new spokes
- Point to multipoint VPN

- Central management of access with the datacenter firewall
- Dynamic peering, to share routing information between branches and the datacenter
- VDOM compatibility, with inter-VDOM links for isolation and segmentation

**To configure the datacenter, complete the following steps:**

1. Configure dial-up (dynamic) VPN
2. Configure VPN interfaces
3. Configure loopback interface
4. Configure BGP
5. Firewall policies
6. Configure a black hole route

## Configure dial-up (dynamic) VPN

Dial-up, or dynamic, VPNs are used to facilitate zero touch provisioning of new spokes to establish VPN connections to the hub FortiGate.

The `exchange-interface-ip` option is enabled to allow the exchange of IPsec interface IP addresses. This allows a point to multipoint connection to the hub FortiGate.

The `add-route` option is disabled to allow multiple dial-up tunnels to be established to the same host that is advertising the same network. This dynamic network discovery is facilitated by the BGP configuration; see Configure BGP on page 625 for details.

Wildcard security associations are defined for the phase2 interface because routing is used to determine if traffic is subject to encryption and transmission through the IPsec VPN tunnel. The phase1 interface name must be 11 characters or less.

A dynamic VPN configuration must be defined for each interface that connects to the internet.

**To configure the IPsec phase1 interfaces:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn-isp-a"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set add-route disable
        set dhgrp 5
        set net-device enable
        set psksecret ********
    next
    edit "vpn-isp-b"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port3"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set add-route disable
        set dhgrp 5
```

```
        set net-device enable
        set psksecret ********
    next
end
```

**To configure the IPsec phase2 interfaces:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vpn-isp-a_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn-isp-a"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
    next
    edit "vpn-isp-b_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn-isp-b"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
    next
end
```

## Configure VPN interfaces

To establish the BGP session, IP addresses must be assigned to the tunnel interfaces that BGP will use to peer.

The hub IP address is set to the address that the tunnels connect to. The remote IP address is set to highest unused IP address that is part of the tunnel network. This establishes two connected routes directly back to the branch FortiGate in the hub FortiGate's routing table.

Ping is allowed on the virtual interface to confirm that a point to point tunnel has been established between the hub and branch FortiGates.

**To define IP addressses for VPN interfaces:**

```
config system interface
    edit "vpn-isp-a"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.0.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.254.0.254 255.255.255.255
        set interface "port2"
    next
    edit "vpn-isp-b"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.1.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.254.1.254 255.255.255.255
        set interface "port3"
    next
end
```

## Configure loopback interface

A loopback interface must be defined on the hub FortiGate to be used as a common probe point for the FortiGates that are using SD-WAN. The FortiGates send a probe packet from each of their SD-WAN member interfaces so that they can determine the best route according to their policies. Ping is allowed so that it can be used for measurements.

**To configure the loopback interface on the hub FortiGate:**

```
config system interface
    edit "loopback_0"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.255.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type loopback
    next
end
```

## Configure BGP

Network route discovery is facilitated by BGP.

EBGP is used to prevent the redistribution of routes that are in the same Autonomous System (AS) number as the host. It is also required to influence route selection on the branches with AS-Path prepending. EBGP multipath is enabled so that the hub FortiGate can dynamically discover multiple paths for networks that are advertised at the branches.

The neighbor range and group settings are configured to allow peering relationships to be established without defining each individual peer. Connecting branches have their tunnel interfaces configured within the range of the BGP peer.

In order to facilitate the fastest route failovers, configure the following timers to their lowest levels: `scan-time`, `advertisement-interval`, `keep-alive-timer`, and `holdtime-timer`.

**To configure BGP on the hub FortiGate:**

```
config router bgp
    set as 65500
    set router-id 10.10.0.1
    set ebgp-multipath enable
    set graceful-restart enable
    config neighbor-group
        edit "branch-peers-1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65501
        next
        edit "branch-peers-2"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65501
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.254.0.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "branch-peers-1"
        next
        edit 2
```

```
            set prefix 10.254.1.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "branch-peers-2"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.200.1.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.200.0.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 3
            set prefix 10.200.3.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

## Firewall policies

Centralized access is controlled from the hub FortiGate using Firewall policies. In addition to layer three and four inspection, security policies can be used in the policies for layer seven traffic inspection.

It is best practice to only allow the networks and services that are required for communication through the firewall. The following rules are the minimum that must be configured to allow SD-WAN to function:

| Source Interface | Destination Interface | Source Address | Destination Address | Action | Schedule | Service | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| <vpn interfaces> | <internal Interface> | <branch tunnel IP addresses> | <hub FortiGate internal interface> | Accept | Always | ICMP | Allow health checks to the hub FortiGate |
| <vpn interfaces> | <internal Interface> | <branch networks> | <datacenter networks> | Accept | Always | <allowed services> | Allow traffic from branch networks |

For this example, a simple policy that allows all traffic is configured.

**To configure a firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Allow All"
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

### Configure a black hole route

If there is a temporary loss of connectivity to the branch routes, it is best practice to send the traffic that is destined for those networks into a black hole until connectivity is restored.

**To configure a black hole route for branch networks:**

```
config router static
    edit 6
        set dst 10.0.0.0/14
        set distance 254
        set blackhole enable
    next
end
```

## Branch configuration

The branches are configured to support:

- Client side SD-WAN with intelligent load balancing based on link quality
- Easy to create configuration templates for quick spoke deployment
- Split tunnel deployment for local internet access
- VDOM compatibility, with inter-VDOM links for isolation and segmentation

**To configure a branch, complete the following steps:**

1. Configure VPN to the hub
2. Configure VPN interfaces
3. Configure BGP
4. Configure SD-WAN
5. Firewall configuration

### Configure VPN to the hub

The branch uses a normal site-to-site VPN configuration.

Wildcard security associations are define in the phase2 configuration because dynamic routing with BGP determines what traffic must traverse the VPN tunnel for encryption/transmission.

To make sure that the VPN is established, `auto-negotiate` is enabled.

**To configure the IPsec phase1 interfaces:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vpn_dc1-1"
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 5
        set remote-gw 172.16.0.78
```

```
        set psksecret ********
    next
    edit "vpn_dc1-2"
        set interface "port3"
        set peertype any
        set exchange-interface-ip enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 5
        set remote-gw 172.16.0.82
        set psksecret ********
    next
end
```

**To configure the IPsec phase2 interfaces:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vpn_dc1-1_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn_dc1-1"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "vpn_dc1-2_p2"
        set phase1name "vpn_dc1-2"
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set pfs disable
        set replay disable
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

## Configure VPN interfaces

The branch must define its local tunnel interface IP address, and the remote tunnel interface IP address of the datacenter FortiGate, to establish the point to multipoint VPN.

**To define IP addressses for VPN interfaces:**

```
config system interface
    edit "vpn_dc1-1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.0.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.255.0.1 255.255.255.255
        set interface "port2"
    next
    edit "vpn_dc1-2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.255.1.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set type tunnel
        set remote-ip 10.255.1.1 255.255.255.255
```

```
        set interface "port3"
    next
end
```

## Configure BGP

BGP enables learning dynamic routes from the datacenter. The BGP configuration is normal, with the definition of the datacenter FortiGate tunnel IP addresses set as BGP peers.

Routes that have the same network mask, administrative distance, priority, and AS length are automatically considered for SD-WAN when the interfaces that those routes are on are added to the SD-WAN interface group.

In order to facilitate the fastest route failovers, configure the following timers to their lowest levels: `scan-time`, `advertisement-interval`, `keep-alive-timer`, and `holdtime-timer`.

The `distance-external` option might need to be configured if you need routes that are learned from BGP to take precedence over static routes.

**To configure BGP on the branch FortiGate:**

```
config router bgp
    set as 65501
    set router-id 10.254.0.2
    set ebgp-multipath enable
    config neighbor
        edit "10.254.0.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65500
        next
        edit "10.254.1.1"
            set soft-reconfiguration enable
            set remote-as 65500
        next
    end
end
```

## Configure SD-WAN

SD-WAN configuration is required to load balance based on the quality of the links. It can be configured to select the best link based on characteristics such as jitter, packet loss, and latency. A policy route is created by the FortiGate to select the best link based on the defined criteria.

For SD-WAN interfaces, or members, the peer is defined to reference the BGP neighbor that is tied to that specific interface.

The health check is the ping server that gathers the link characteristics used for link selection. It is recommended that the minimum `failtime` be set to `2`.

The service definition defines the criteria for the policy routes. It can match based on the following characteristics:

- Protocol
- Destination Address
- Source Address
- Identity Based Group

- Internet Service Definition
- Source Port
- Destination Port
- Destination Route Tag

To dynamically determine the networks of the policy routes, routes that are learned from a BGP neighbor are matched against a route map, and a tag is defined for the matching routes. The service rules learn the networks based on these tags, instead of defining objects based on the learned addresses' network prefixes . See Dynamic definition of SD-WAN routes on page 632 for details on configuring the FortiGate to use the destination tags for the SD-WAN service definition.

**To define the SD-WAN member interfaces:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "vpn_dc1-1"
        next
        edit 2
            set interface "vpn_dc1-2"
        next
    end
end
```

**To define the SD-WAN health checks:**

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "datacenter1"
            set server "10.200.1.1"
            set interval 1
            set failtime 2
            set recoverytime 10
        next
    end
end
```

**To define the SD-WAN service rules:**

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode priority
            set dst n-corporate
            set health-check "datacenter1"
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

### Firewall configuration

Centralized access is controlled from the hub FortiGate using Firewall policies. In addition to layer three and four inspection, security policies can be used in the policies for layer seven traffic inspection.

It is best practice to only allow the networks and services that are required for communication through the firewall. The following rules are the minimum that must be configured to allow SD-WAN to function:

| Source Interface | Destination Interface | Source Address | Destination Address | Action | Schedule | Service | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| <internal interface> | <virtual wan link> | <branch networks> | <datacenter networks> | Accept | Always | <allowed services> | Allow traffic from branch to datacenter |
| <virtual wan link> | <internal Interface> | <datacenter networks> | <branch networks> | Accept | Always | <allowed services> | Allow traffic from datacenter to branch |

For this example, a simple policy that allows all traffic is configured.

**To configure a firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Allow All"
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "any"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

## Validation

The following commands can be used to validate the connections on the datacenter and branches.

### Datacenter

**Routing table:**

```
get router info routing-table all
```

**VPN establishment:**

```
diagnose vpn ike gateway list
```

### Branch

**SD-WAN validation:**

```
diagnose sys sdwan member
diagnose sys sdwan service
diagnose sys sdwan health-check
```

**Routing table:**

```
get router info routing-table all
get router info route-map-address
get router info bgp route-map <route-map-name>
```

**VPN establishment:**

```
diagnose vpn ike gateway list
```

## Dynamic definition of SD-WAN routes

Dynamic definitions of SD-WAN routes alleviate administrators from needing to know the destination of the traffic that is being load balanced, which, in an environment where routes are constantly added and removed, required a significant amount of administrative overhead.

The FortiGate can be configured to apply a route map to a BGP neighbor, and tag the routes that are learned from that neighbor with the `set-route-tag` command. After those routes are assigned a tag ID in the route map, the ID can be referenced in the SD-WAN rule.

**To define the route map to apply to the BGP neighbor:**

```
config router route-map
    edit "map-comm1"
        config rule
            edit 1
                set match-origin igp
                set set-route-tag 12
            next
            edit 2
                set match-ip-address "pf-all-in"
                set set-route-tag 11
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To apply the route map to the BGP neighbor:**

```
config router bgp
    config neighbor
        edit "10.254.0.1"
```

```
            set route-map-in "map-comm1"
        next
    end
end
```

**To reference tagged routes in an SD-WAN rule:**

```
config system sdwan
    config service
        edit 1
            set mode priority
            set dst-tag 11
            set health-check "datacenter1"
            set priority-members 1 2
        next
    end
end
```

## Adding another datacenter

Datacenter FortiGates should be configured to establish an OSPF neighbor relationship with the internal core router. This allows the dynamic redistribution of routes to the branches that are receiving updates from the datacenter FortiGates.

To ensure the fastest failover with OSPF, the following timers are set to their minimum levels: `spf-timers`, `hello-interval`, `dead-interval`.

Bi-directional forwarding is enabled to allow the fastest convergence time if there is a failure with a peering neighbor.

**To configure OSPF:**

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 10.10.10.10
    set spf-timers 0 1
    set distribute-list-in "pf-datacenter2-tunnel"
    set restart-mode graceful-restart
    config area
        edit 10.10.10.10
        next
    end
    config ospf-interface
        edit "port5"
            set interface "port5"
            set dead-interval 3
            set hello-interval 1
            set bfd enable
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.100.0 255.255.255.252
            set area 10.10.10.10
        next
    end
```

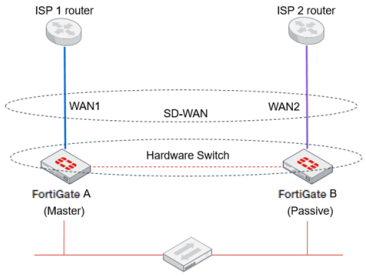
```
    config redistribute "connected"
        set status enable
        set routemap "redistribute-branch-tunnel"
    end
    config redistribute "static"
    end
    config redistribute "rip"
    end
    config redistribute "bgp"
        set status enable
        set routemap "redistribute-branch-networks"
    end
    config redistribute "isis"
    end
end
```

# Configuring SD-WAN in an HA cluster using internal hardware switches



This setup is not fully compliant with a regular HA configuration. Failover is also unnecessary. Flipping can occur if failover is configured using a ping server interface.

Two FortiGates with internal hardware switches can be configured as an active-active (A-A) HA pair. In the following topology, both FortiGates forward traffic through internal switches connected to service providers. SD-WAN is configured on all upstream interfaces and overlays.




This setup is not fully compliant with a regular HA configuration. In a regular HA configuration, two logical switches are used: one for incoming traffic and one for outgoing traffic. In this example, only incoming traffic has a switch while outgoing traffic uses the internal switch. This means that if FortiGate A loses power, ISP 1 will not be available.

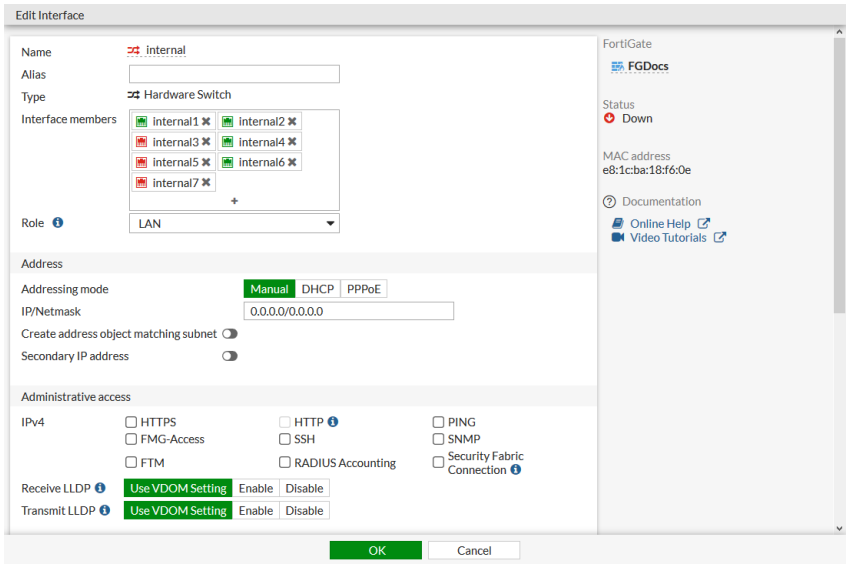
Traffic will flow either through ISP 1 directly or through ISP 2 via a connection between FortiGate A and FortiGate B's internal switch interface. FortiGate A decides how traffic will go through ISP 1 or ISP 2 based on SD-WAN rules. If ISP 1 is not available, then traffic will go through ISP 2.

Failover is unnecessary in this setup. Because SD-WAN will automatically failover traffic to the accessible ISP, traffic is not blocked so there is no network downtime. Also, the hardware switch interface cannot be monitored as an HA interface. If HA failover is required, a ping server must be used. The ping server monitor interface has to be configured under HA settings. This failover setup, however, results in flipping. FortiGate B will act as the primary after failover and

traffic will still flow to the available ISP. Since the broken link to one of the ISPs still fails, HA will start flipping until the link is back up.

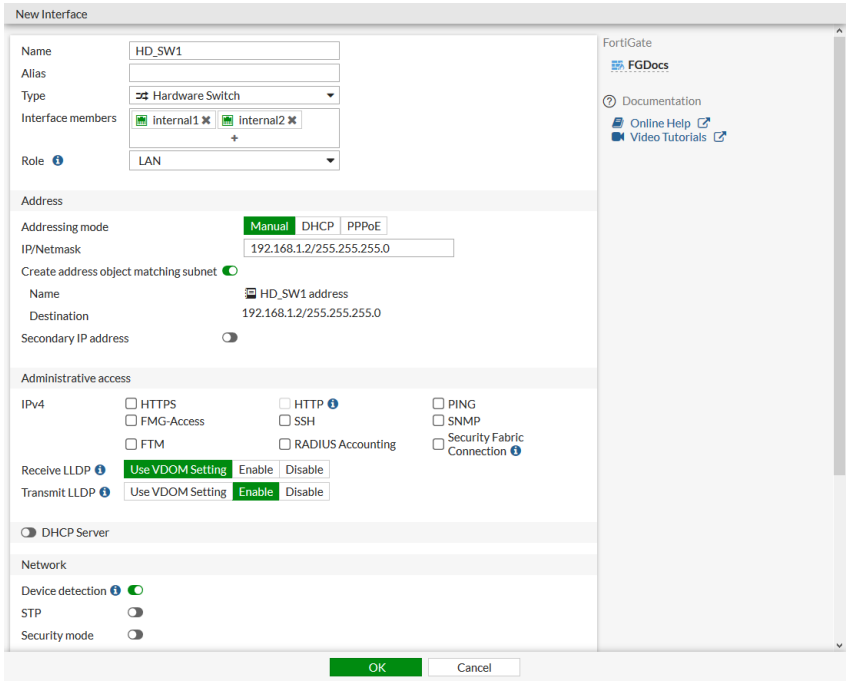
### To configure the HA A-A cluster with internal hardware switches:

1. Configure two FortiGates with internal switches in an active-active HA cluster (follow the steps in HA active-active cluster setup on page 715), starting by connecting the heartbeat interface.
2. On the primary FortiGate, remove the existing interface members:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. In the *LAN* section, double-click the *internal* interface to edit it.
   c. In the *Interface Members* box, remove all the interfaces.

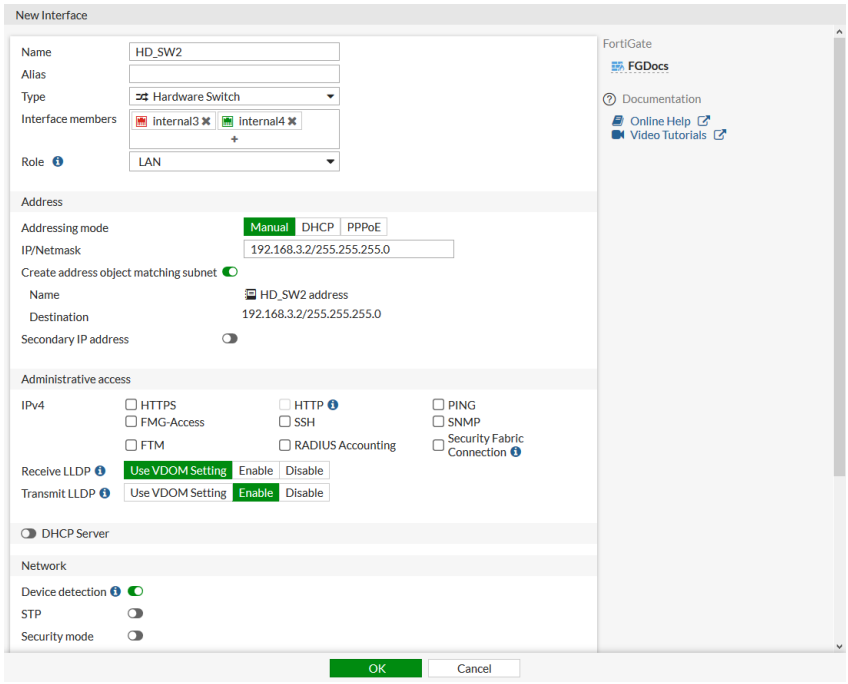



   d. Click *OK*.
3. On the primary FortiGate, configure the hardware switch interfaces for the two ISPs:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Interface*.
   c. Enter a name (*HD_SW1*).
   d. For type, select *Hardware Switch*.
   e. For *Interface Members*, add two interfaces (*internal1* and *internal2*).
   f. Configure the remaining settings as needed.

**g.** Click *OK*.




**h.** Repeat these steps to create a second hardware switch interface (*HD_SW2*) with two interface members (*internal3* and *internal4*).

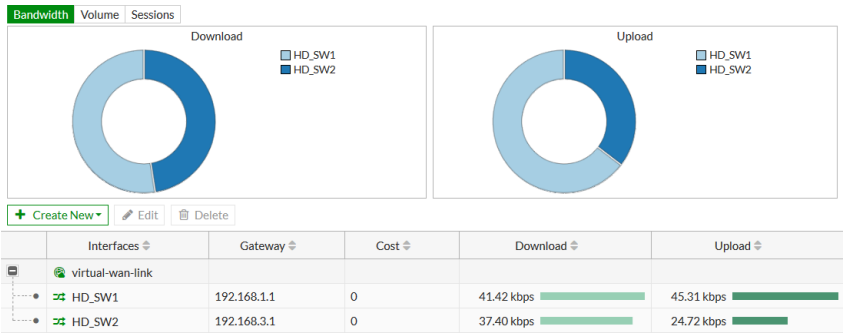



**4.** On the primary FortiGate, set up SD-WAN:



The primary FortiGate makes all the SD-WAN decisions.

a. Go to *Network* > *SD-WAN Zones*.
b. Click *Create New* > *SD-WAN Member*.
c. In the *Interface* dropdown, select *HD_SW1*.
d. Leave *SD-WAN Zone* set to *virtual-wan-link*.
e. Enter the *Gateway* address.
f. Click *OK*.
g. Repeat these steps to add the second interface (*HD_SW2*).
h. Click *Apply*.




5. Connect the devices as shown in the topology:
   a. Connect the incoming interface to the internal switch on both FortiGates.
   b. On FortiGate A, connect ISP 1 to HD_SW1.
   c. On FortiGate B, connect ISP 2 to HD_SW2.
   d. For HD_SW1, connect FortiGate A directly to B.
   e. For HD_SW2, connect FortiGate A directly to B.

The default implicit rule load-balancing algorithm for SD-WAN is the source IP address. For more information about rule types and configurations, see Implicit rule on page 490.

# Troubleshooting SD-WAN

The following topics provide instructions on SD-WAN troubleshooting:


- Understanding SD-WAN related logs on page 637
- SD-WAN related diagnose commands on page 641
- SLA logging on page 645
- SLA monitoring using the REST API on page 646
- SD-WAN bandwidth monitoring service on page 648


## Understanding SD-WAN related logs

This topic lists the SD-WAN related logs and explains when the logs will be triggered.

**Health-check detects a failure:**

- When health-check detects a failure, it will record a log:

```
34: date=2019-03-23 time=17:26:06 logid="0100022921" type="event" subtype="system"
level="critical" vd="root" eventtime=1553387165 logdesc="Routing information changed"
name="test" interface="R150" status="down" msg="Static route on interface R150 may be
removed by health-check test. Route:  (10.100.1.2->10.100.2.22 ping-down)"
```

- When health-check detects a recovery, it will record a log:

```
32: date=2019-03-23 time=17:26:54 logid="0100022921" type="event" subtype="system"
level="critical" vd="root" eventtime=1553387214 logdesc="Routing information changed"
name="test" interface="R150" status="up" msg="Static route on interface R150 may be
added by health-check test. Route:  (10.100.1.2->10.100.2.22 ping-up)"
```

**Health-check has an SLA target and detects SLA qualification changes:**

- When health-check has an SLA target and detects SLA changes, and changes to fail:

```
5: date=2019-04-11 time=11:48:39 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555008519816639290 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="SD-WAN Health Check(ping) SLA(1): number of pass members changes from 2 to 1."
```

- When health-check has an SLA target and detects SLA changes, and changes to pass:

```
2: date=2019-04-11 time=11:49:46 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555008586149038471 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="SD-WAN Health Check(ping) SLA(1): number of pass members changes from 1 to 2."
```

**SD-WAN calculates a link's session/bandwidth over/under its ratio and stops/resumes traffic:**

- When SD-WAN calculates a link's session/bandwidth over its configured ratio and stops forwarding traffic:

```
3: date=2019-04-10 time=17:15:40 logid="0100022924" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1554941740185866628 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link volume
status" interface="R160" msg="The member(3) enters into conservative status with limited
ablity to receive new sessions for too much traffic."
```

- When SD-WAN calculates a link's session/bandwidth according to its ratio and resumes forwarding traffic:

```
1: date=2019-04-10 time=17:20:39 logid="0100022924" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1554942040196041728 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link volume
status" interface="R160" msg="The member(3) resume normal status to receive new sessions
for internal adjustment."
```

**The SLA mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes:**

- When the SLA mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 fails the SLA check, but is still alive:

```
14: date=2019-03-23 time=17:44:12 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388252 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by SLA will be redirected in seq-num order 2(R160) 1(R150)."
15: date=2019-03-23 time=17:44:12 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388252 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) SLA order changed from 1 to 2. "
16: date=2019-03-23 time=17:44:12 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
```

```
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388252 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) SLA order changed from 2 to 1. "
```

- When the SLA mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 changes from fail to pass:

```
1: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388365 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by SLA will be redirected in seq-num order 1(R150) 2(R160)."
2: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388365 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) SLA order changed from 1 to 2. "
3: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388365 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) SLA order changed from 2 to 1. "
```

**The priority mode service rule member's link status changes:**

- When priority mode service rule member's link status changes. In this example R150 changes to better than R160, and both are still alive:

```
1: date=2019-03-23 time=17:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by packet-loss will be redirected in seq-num order 1(R150) 2
(R160)."
2: date=2019-03-23 time=17:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link quality packet-loss order changed from 1 to
2. "
3: date=2019-03-23 time=17:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) link quality packet-loss order changed from 2 to
1. "
```

- When priority mode service rule member's link status changes. In this example R160 changes to better than R150, and both are still alive:

```
6: date=2019-03-23 time=17:32:01 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387520 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service2() prioritized by packet-loss will be redirected in seq-num order 2(R160) 1
(R150)."
7: date=2019-03-23 time=17:32:01 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387520 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) link quality packet-loss order changed from 1 to
2. "
8: date=2019-03-23 time=17:32:01 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387520 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link quality packet-loss order changed from 2 to
1. "
```

**SD-WAN member is used in service and it fails the health-check:**

- When SD-WAN member fails the health-check, it will stop forwarding traffic:

```
6: date=2019-04-11 time=13:33:21 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555014801844089814 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link is unreachable or miss threshold. Stop
forwarding traffic. "
```

- When SD-WAN member passes the health-check again, it will resume forwarding logs:

```
2: date=2019-04-11 time=13:33:36 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555014815914643626 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link is available. Start forwarding traffic. "
```

**Load-balance mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes:**

- When load-balance mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 changes to not meet SLA:

```
2: date=2019-04-11 time=14:11:16 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926510687 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service1(rule2) will be load balanced among members  2(R160) with available
routing."
3: date=2019-04-11 time=14:11:16 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926508676 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) SLA order changed from 1 to 2. "
4: date=2019-04-11 time=14:11:16 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926507182 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) SLA order changed from 2 to 1. "
```

- When load-balance mode service rule's SLA qualified member changes. In this example R150 changes to meet SLA:

```
1: date=2019-04-11 time=14:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1555017075926510668 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
msg="Service1(rule2) will be load balanced among members 1(R150) 2(R160) with available
routing."
2: date=2019-03-23 time=14:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603592651068 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R160" msg="The member2(R160) link quality packet-loss order changed from 1 to
2. "
3: date=2019-03-23 time=14:33:23 logid="0100022923" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553387603592651068 logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
interface="R150" msg="The member1(R150) link quality packet-loss order changed from 2 to
1. "
```

**SLA link status logs, generated with interval sla-fail-log-period or sla-pass-log-period:**

- When SLA fails, SLA link status logs will be generated with interval sla-fail-log-period:

```
7: date=2019-03-23 time=17:45:54 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1553388352 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="test" interface="R150" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.016, jitter: 0.002, packet
loss: 21.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth: 200Mbps, sla_map:
0x0"
```

- When SLA passes, SLA link status logs will be generated with interval sla-pass-log-period:

```
5: date=2019-03-23 time=17:46:05 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1553388363 logdesc="Link monitor SLA
information" name="test" interface="R150" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.017, jitter:
0.003, packet loss: 0.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth:
200Mbps, sla_map: 0x1"
```

## SD-WAN related diagnose commands

This topic lists the SD-WAN related diagnose commands and related output.

**To check SD-WAN health-check status:**

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(server):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(15.247), jitter(5.231) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(13.621), jitter(6.905) sla_map=0x0

FGT  # diagnose sys sdwan health-check
Health Check(ping):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(0.683), jitter(0.082) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(dead), packet-loss(100.000%) sla_map=0x0

FGT # diagnose sys sdwan health-check google
Health Check(google):
Seq(1): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(14.563), jitter(4.334) sla_map=0x0
Seq(2): state(alive), packet-loss(0.000%) latency(12.633), jitter(6.265) sla_map=0x0
```

**To check SD-WAN member status:**

- When SD-WAN load-balance mode is *source-ip-based*/*source-dest-ip-based*.

  ```
  FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
  Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0, weight:
  0
  Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0, weight:
  0
  ```

- When SD-WAN load-balance mode is *weight-based*.

  ```
  FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
  Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0, weight:
  33
  Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0, weight:
  66
  ```

- When SD-WAN load-balance mode is *measured-volume-based*.
  - Both members are under volume and still have room:

    ```
    FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
    Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0,
    weight: 33
      Config volume ratio: 33, last reading: 8211734579B, volume room 33MB
    Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0,
    weight: 66
      Config volume ratio: 66, last reading: 24548159B, volume room 66MB
    ```

  - Some members are overloaded and some still have room:

    ```
    FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
    Member(1): interface: port1, gateway: 10.10.0.2, priority: 0, weight: 0
      Config volume ratio: 10, last reading: 10297221000B, overload volume 1433MB
    Member(2): interface: port2, gateway: 10.11.0.2, priority: 0, weight: 38
      Config volume ratio: 50, last reading: 45944239916B, volume room 38MB
    ```

- When SD-WAN load balance mode is *usage-based*/*spillover*.
  - When no spillover occurs:

```
FGT # diagnose sys virtual-wan-link member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0,
weight: 255
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 400kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 300kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=0, ingress-overbps=0
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0,
weight: 254
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=0, ingress-overbps=0
```

  - When member has reached limit and spillover occurs:

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan member
Member(1): interface: port13, gateway: 10.100.1.1 2004:10:100:1::1, priority: 0,
weight: 255
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 400kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 300kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=1, ingress-overbps=1
Member(2): interface: port15, gateway: 10.100.1.5 2004:10:100:1::5, priority: 0,
weight: 254
  Egress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s, ingress-spillover-threshold: 0kbit/s
  Egress-overbps=0, ingress-overbps=0
```

  - You can also use the `diagnose netlink dstmac list` command to check if you are over the limit.

```
FGT # diagnose netlink dstmac list port13
dev=port13 mac=08:5b:0e:ca:94:9d rx_tcp_mss=0 tx_tcp_mss=0 egress_overspill_
threshold=51200 egress_bytes=103710 egress_over_bps=1 ingress_overspill_
threshold=38400 ingress_bytes=76816 ingress_over_bps=1 sampler_rate=0
```

**To check SD-WAN service rules status:**

- *Manual mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(manual)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *Auto mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(auto), link-cost-factor(latency), link-cost-
threshold(10), health-check(ping)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, latency: 0.011
    2: Seq_num(1), alive, latency: 0.018, selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *Priority mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(priority), link-cost-factor(latency), link-
```

```
cost-threshold(10), health-check(ping)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(2), alive, latency: 0.011, selected
    2: Seq_num(1), alive, latency: 0.017, selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *Load-balance* mode service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(load-balance)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), num of pass(1), selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

- *SLA mode* service rules.

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan service
Service(1): Address Mode(IPV4) flags=0x0
  TOS(0x0/0x0), Protocol(0: 1->65535), Mode(sla)
  Members:
    1: Seq_num(1), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(0), cost(0), selected
    2: Seq_num(2), alive, sla(0x1), cfg_order(1), cost(0), selected
  Dst address: 10.100.21.0-10.100.21.255
```

**To check interface logs from the past 15 minutes:**

```
FGT (root) # diagnose sys sdwan intf-sla-log R150
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:08:36 2019, used inbandwidth: 0bps, used outbandwidth: 0bps, used
bibandwidth: 0bps, tx bytes: 860bytes, rx bytes: 1794bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:08:46 2019, used inbandwidth: 1761bps, used outbandwidth: 1710bps,
used bibandwidth: 3471bps, tx bytes: 2998bytes, rx bytes: 3996bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:08:56 2019, used inbandwidth: 2452bps, used outbandwidth: 2566bps,
used bibandwidth: 5018bps, tx bytes: 7275bytes, rx bytes: 7926bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:06 2019, used inbandwidth: 2470bps, used outbandwidth: 3473bps,
used bibandwidth: 5943bps, tx bytes: 13886bytes, rx bytes: 11059bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:16 2019, used inbandwidth: 2433bps, used outbandwidth: 3417bps,
used bibandwidth: 5850bps, tx bytes: 17946bytes, rx bytes: 13960bytes.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:26 2019, used inbandwidth: 2450bps, used outbandwidth: 3457bps,
used bibandwidth: 5907bps, tx bytes: 22468bytes, rx bytes: 17107bytes.
```

**To check SLA logs in the past 15 minutes:**

```
FGT (root) # diagnose sys sdwan sla-log ping 1
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:27 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.014, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 16.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:28 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.015, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 15.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:28 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.014, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 14.000%.
Timestamp: Fri Apr 12 11:09:29 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.015, jitter: 0.003, packet loss: 13.000%.
```

**To check Application Control used in SD-WAN and the matching IP addresses:**

```
FGT # diagnose sys sdwan internet-service-app-ctrl-list
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Authentication 41475):Internet Service ID(4294836224)
        Protocol(6), Port(443)
        Address(2): 104.42.72.21 131.253.61.96
Ctrl application(Microsoft.CDN 41470):Internet Service ID(4294836225)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Lync 28554):Internet Service ID(4294836226)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Office.365 33182):Internet Service ID(4294836227)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Office.365.Portal 41468):Internet Service ID(4294836228)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Office.Online 16177):Internet Service ID(4294836229)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.OneNote 40175):Internet Service ID(4294836230)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Portal 41469):Internet Service ID(4294836231)
        Protocol(6), Port(443)
        Address(8): 23.58.134.172 131.253.33.200 23.58.135.29 204.79.197.200 64.4.54.254
23.59.156.241 13.77.170.218 13.107.22.200
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Sharepoint 16190):Internet Service ID(4294836232)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Sway 41516):Internet Service ID(4294836233)
Ctrl application(Microsoft.Tenant.Namespace 41471):Internet Service ID(4294836234)
```

**To check IPsec aggregate interface when SD-WAN uses the per-packet distribution feature:**

```
# diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list
agg1 algo=L3 member=2 run_tally=2
members:
        vd1-p1
        vd1-p2
```

**To check BGP learned routes and determine if they are used in SD-WAN service:**

```
FGT # get router info bgp network
FGT # get router info bgp network 10.100.11.0
BGP routing table entry for 10.100.10.0/24
Paths: (2 available, best 1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
   172.10.22.2
  20
    10.100.20.2 from 10.100.20.2 (6.6.6.6)
      Origin EGP metric 200, localpref 100, weight 10000, valid, external, best
      Community: 30:5
      Last update: Wen Mar 20 18:45:17 2019
FGT # get router info route-map-address
Extend-tag: 15, interface(wan2:16)
        10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0

FGT # diagnose firewall proute list
list route policy info(vf=root):

id=4278779905 vwl_service=1(DataCenter) flags=0x0 tos=0x00 tos_mask=0x00 protocol=0
sport=0:65535 iif=0 dport=1-65535 oif=16
source wildcard(1): 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
destination wildcard(1): 10.100.11.0/255.255.255.0
```

## SLA logging

The features adds an SD-WAN daemon function to keep a short, 10 minute history of SLA that can be viewed in the CLI.

Performance SLA results related to interface selection, session failover, and other information, can be logged. These logs can then be used for long-term monitoring of traffic issues at remote sites, and for reports and views in FortiAnalyzer.

The time intervals that Performance SLA fail and pass logs are generated in can be configured.

**To configure the fail and pass logs' generation time interval:**

```
config system sdwan
    config health-check
        edit "ping"
            set sla-fail-log-period 30
            set sla-pass-log-period 60
        next
    end
end
```

**To view the 10 minute Performance SLA link status history:**

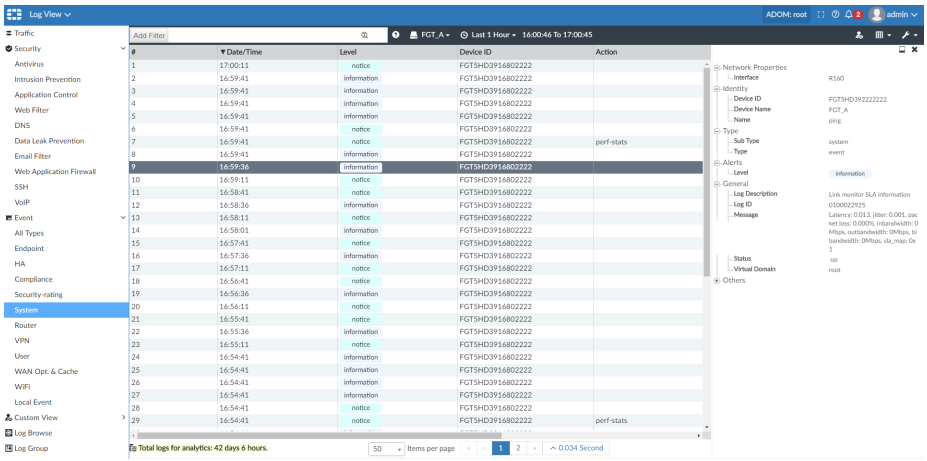
```
FGT_A (root) # diagnose sys sdwan sla-log ping 1
Timestamp: Thu Feb 28 10:58:24 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.000, jitter: 0.000, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Thu Feb 28 10:58:24 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.097, jitter: 0.000, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Thu Feb 28 10:58:25 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.058, jitter: 0.040, packet loss: 0.000%.
Timestamp: Thu Feb 28 10:58:25 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: R150, status:
up, latency: 0.044, jitter: 0.026, packet loss: 0.000%.
... ...
```

### SLA pass logs

The FortiGate generates Performance SLA logs at the specified pass log interval (`sla-pass-log-period`) when SLA passes.

```
3: date=2019-02-28 time=11:53:26 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1551383604 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R160" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.013, jitter: 0.001, packet loss:
0.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 0Mbps, bibandwidth: 0Mbps, sla_map: 0x1"
7: date=2019-02-28 time=11:52:26 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1551383545 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R160" status="up" msg="Latency: 0.013, jitter: 0.002, packet loss:
0.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 0Mbps, bibandwidth: 0Mbps, sla_map: 0x1"
```

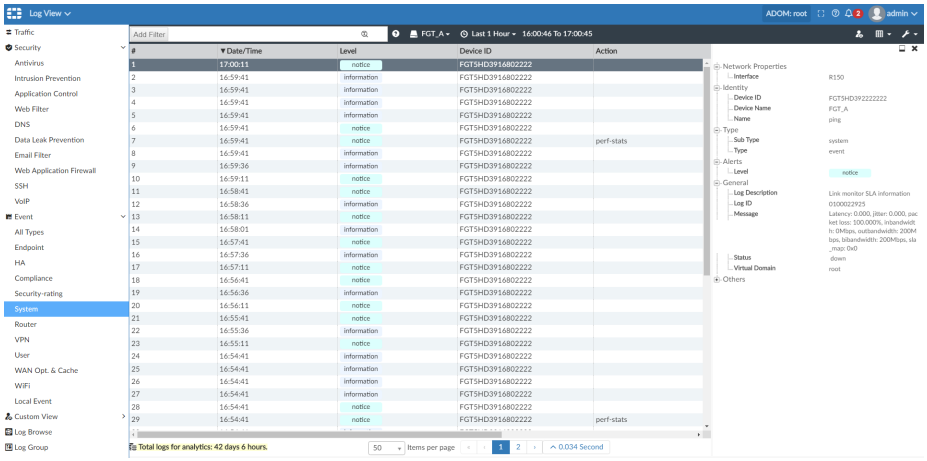
In the FortiAnalyzer GUI:



### SLA fail logs

The FortiGate generates Performance SLA logs at the specified fail log interval (`sla-fail-log-period`) when SLA fails.

```
6: date=2019-02-28 time=11:52:32 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1551383552 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R150" status="down" msg="Latency: 0.000, jitter: 0.000, packet loss:
100.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth: 200Mbps, sla_map: 0x0"
8: date=2019-02-28 time=11:52:02 logid="0100022925" type="event" subtype="system"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1551383522 logdesc="Link monitor SLA information"
name="ping" interface="R150" status="down" msg="Latency: 0.000, jitter: 0.000, packet loss:
100.000%, inbandwidth: 0Mbps, outbandwidth: 200Mbps, bibandwidth: 200Mbps, sla_map: 0x0"
```



## SLA monitoring using the REST API

SLA log information and interface SLA information can be monitored using the REST API. This feature is also be used by FortiManager as part of its detailed SLA monitoring and drill-down features.

**Interface log command example:**

```
https://172.172.172.9/api/v2/monitor/virtual-wan/interface-log
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "interface":"port13",
      "logs":[
        {
          "timestamp":1547087168,
          "tx_bandwidth":3447,
          "rx_bandwidth":3457,
          "bi_bandwidth":6904,
          "tx_bytes":748875,
          "rx_bytes":708799,
          "egress_queue":[
          ]
        },
        {
          "timestamp":1547087178,
          "tx_bandwidth":3364,
          "rx_bandwidth":3400,
          "bi_bandwidth":6764,
          "tx_bytes":753789,
          "rx_bytes":712835,
          "egress_queue":[
          ]
        },
....
....
```

**SLA log command example:**

```
https://172.172.172.9/api/v2/monitor/virtual-wan/sla-log
{
  "http_method":"GET",
  "results":[
    {
      "name":"ping",
      "interface":"port13",
      "logs":[
        {
          "timestamp":1547087204,
          "link":"up",
          "latency":0.686433,
          "jitter":0.063400,
          "packetloss":0.000000
        },
        {
          "timestamp":1547087205,
          "link":"up",
          "latency":0.688433,
          "jitter":0.063133,
          "packetloss":0.000000
        },
```

```
        {
          "timestamp":1547087206,
          "link":"up",
          "latency":0.688300,
          "jitter":0.065267,
          "packetloss":0.000000
        },
....
....
```

**CLI diagnose commands:**

```
# diagnose sys sdwan sla-log ping 1
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:11 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.698, jitter: 0.073, packet loss: 0.000%.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:12 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.704, jitter: 0.073, packet loss: 0.000%.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:13 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.709, jitter: 0.073, packet loss: 0.000%.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:14 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.707, jitter: 0.066, packet loss: 0.000%.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:15 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.710, jitter: 0.061, packet loss: 0.000%.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:16 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.707, jitter: 0.055, packet loss: 0.000%.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:35:17 2019, vdom root, health-check ping, interface: port13,
status: up, latency: 0.703, jitter: 0.055, packet loss: 0.000%.

# diagnose sys sdwan intf-sla-log port13
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:33:49 2019, used inbandwidth: 3208bps, used outbandwidth:
3453bps, used bibandwidth: 6661bps, tx bytes: 947234bytes, rx bytes: 898622bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:33:59 2019, used inbandwidth: 3317bps, used outbandwidth:
3450bps, used bibandwidth: 6767bps, tx bytes: 951284bytes, rx bytes: 902937bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:09 2019, used inbandwidth: 3302bps, used outbandwidth:
3389bps, used bibandwidth: 6691bps, tx bytes: 956268bytes, rx bytes: 907114bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:19 2019, used inbandwidth: 3279bps, used outbandwidth:
3352bps, used bibandwidth: 6631bps, tx bytes: 958920bytes, rx bytes: 910793bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:29 2019, used inbandwidth: 3233bps, used outbandwidth:
3371bps, used bibandwidth: 6604bps, tx bytes: 964374bytes, rx bytes: 914854bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:39 2019, used inbandwidth: 3235bps, used outbandwidth:
3362bps, used bibandwidth: 6597bps, tx bytes: 968250bytes, rx bytes: 918846bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:49 2019, used inbandwidth: 3165bps, used outbandwidth:
3362bps, used bibandwidth: 6527bps, tx bytes: 972298bytes, rx bytes: 922724bytes.
    Timestamp: Wed Jan 9 18:34:59 2019, used inbandwidth: 3184bps, used outbandwidth:
3362bps, used bibandwidth: 6546bps, tx bytes: 977282bytes, rx bytes: 927019bytes.
```

## SD-WAN bandwidth monitoring service

The bandwidth measuring tool is used to detect true upload and download speeds. Bandwidth tests can be run on demand or automated using a script, and can be useful when configuring SD-WAN SLA and rules to balance SD-WAN traffic.

The speed test tool requires a valid SD-WAN Bandwidth Monitoring Service license.

The speed test tool is compatible with iperf3.6 with SSL support. It can test the upload bandwidth to the FortiGate Cloud speed test service. It can initiate the server connection and send download requests to the server. The tool can be run up to 10 times a day .

FortiGate downloads the speed test server list. The list expires after 24 hours. One of the speed test servers is selected, based on user input. The speed test runs, testing upload and download speeds. The test results are shown in the command terminal.

**To download the speed test server list:**

```
# execute speed-test-server download
Download completed.
```

**To check the speed test server list:**

```
# execute speed-test-server list
AWS_West valid
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5204 fortinet
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5205 fortinet
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5206 fortinet
        Host: 34.210.67.183 5207 fortinet
Google_West valid
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5204 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5205 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5206 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.55.210 5207 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5204 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5205 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5206 fortinet
        Host: 35.230.2.124 5207 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5204 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5205 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5206 fortinet
        Host: 35.197.18.234 5207 fortinet
```

**To run the speed test:**

You can run the speed test without specifying a server. The system will automatically choose one server from the list and run the speed test.

```
# execute speed-test auto
The license is valid to run speed test.
Speed test quota for 2/1 is 9
current vdom=root
Run in uploading mode.
Connecting to host 35.230.2.124, port 5206
[ 16] local 172.16.78.185 port 2475 connected to 35.230.2.124 port 5206
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr Cwnd
[ 16] 0.00-1.01 sec 11.0 MBytes 91.4 Mbits/sec 0 486 KBytes
[ 16] 1.01-2.00 sec 11.6 MBytes 98.4 Mbits/sec 0 790 KBytes
[ 16] 2.00-3.01 sec 11.0 MBytes 91.6 Mbits/sec 15 543 KBytes
[ 16] 3.01-4.01 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.2 Mbits/sec 1 421 KBytes
[ 16] 4.01-5.01 sec 11.2 MBytes 93.5 Mbits/sec 0 461 KBytes
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
```

```
[ 16] 0.00-5.01 sec 56.1 MBytes 93.8 Mbits/sec 16 sender
[ 16] 0.00-5.06 sec 55.8 MBytes 92.6 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done.
Run in reverse downloading mode!
Connecting to host 35.230.2.124, port 5206
Reverse mode, remote host 35.230.2.124 is sending
[ 16] local 172.16.78.185 port 2477 connected to 35.230.2.124 port 5206
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate
[ 16] 0.00-1.00 sec 10.9 MBytes 91.4 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 1.00-2.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 93.9 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 2.00-3.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 3.00-4.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 93.9 Mbits/sec
[ 16] 4.00-5.00 sec 10.9 MBytes 91.1 Mbits/sec
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 16] 0.00-5.03 sec 57.5 MBytes 95.9 Mbits/sec 40 sender
[ 16] 0.00-5.00 sec 55.4 MBytes 92.9 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done
```

**To run the speed test on a server farm or data center:**

```
# execute speed-test auto AWS_West
The license is valid to run speed test.
Speed test quota for 2/1 is 8
current vdom=root
Run in uploading mode.
Connecting to host 34.210.67.183, port 5205
```

**To run the speed test on a local interface when there are multiple valid routes:**

```
# execute speed-test port1 Google_West
The license is valid to run speed test.
Speed test quota for 2/1 is 6
bind to local ip 172.16.78.202
current vdom=root
Specified interface port1 does not comply with default outgoing interface port2 in routing
table!
Force to use the specified interface!
Run in uploading mode.
Connecting to host 35.197.18.234, port 5205
[ 11] local 172.16.78.202 port 20852 connected to 35.197.18.234 port 5205
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr Cwnd
[ 11] 0.00-1.01 sec 10.7 MBytes 89.0 Mbits/sec 0 392 KBytes
[ 11] 1.01-2.01 sec 10.5 MBytes 88.5 Mbits/sec 1 379 KBytes
[ 11] 2.01-3.01 sec 11.3 MBytes 94.5 Mbits/sec 0 437 KBytes
[ 11] 3.01-4.01 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.3 Mbits/sec 0 478 KBytes
[ 11] 4.01-5.00 sec 11.3 MBytes 95.2 Mbits/sec 0 503 KBytes
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 11] 0.00-5.00 sec 55.1 MBytes 92.3 Mbits/sec 1 sender
[ 11] 0.00-5.04 sec 54.5 MBytes 90.7 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done.
Run in reverse downloading mode!
```

```
Connecting to host 35.197.18.234, port 5205
Reverse mode, remote host 35.197.18.234 is sending
[ 11] local 172.16.78.202 port 20853 connected to 35.197.18.234 port 5205
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate
[ 11] 0.00-1.00 sec 10.9 MBytes 91.1 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 1.00-2.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 2.00-3.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 3.00-4.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
[ 11] 4.00-5.00 sec 11.2 MBytes 94.0 Mbits/sec
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
[ ID] Interval Transfer Bitrate Retr
[ 11] 0.00-5.03 sec 57.4 MBytes 95.8 Mbits/sec 33 sender
[ 11] 0.00-5.00 sec 55.7 MBytes 93.4 Mbits/sec receiver

speed test Done.
```

**To add a script to run a speed test automatically once every 24 hours:**

```
config system auto-script
    edit "speedtest"
        set interval 86400
        set repeat 0
        set start auto
        set script "
execute speed-test-server download
execute speed-test"
    next
end
```

**To view the results of the speed test script:**

```
execute auto-script result speedtest
```

# System

This topic contains information about FortiGate administration and system configuration that you can do after installing the FortiGate in your network.

## Basic system settings

### Administrators

By default, FortiGate has an administrator account with the username *admin* and no password. See Administrators on page 654 for more information.

### Administrator profiles

An administrator profile defines what the administrator can see and do on the FortiGate. See Administrator profiles on page 654 for more information.

### Password policy

Set up a password policy to enforce password criteria and change frequency. See Password policy on page 658 for more information.

### Interfaces

Physical and virtual interface allow traffic to flow between internal networks, and between the internet and internal networks. See Interfaces on page 356 for more information.

## Advanced system settings

### SNMP

The simple network management protocol (SNMP) allows you to monitor hardware on your network. See SNMP on page 732 for more information.

### DHCP server

You can configure one or more DHCP servers on any FortiGate interface. See DHCP server on page 452 for more information.

### VDOM

You can use virtual domains (VDOMs) to divide a FortiGate into multiple virtual devices that function independently. See Virtual Domains on page 677 for more information.

### High availability

You can configure multiple FortiGate devices, including private and public cloud VMs, in HA mode. See High Availability on page 698 for more information.

### Certificates

You can manage certificates on the FortiGate. See Certificates on page 762 for more information.

## Operating modes

A FortiGate or VDOM (in multi-vdom mode) can operate in either NAT/Route mode or Transparent mode.

### NAT/Route mode

The FortiGate or VDOM is installed as a gateway between two networks, such as a private network and the internet. This allows the FortiGate to hide the IP addresses on the private network using NAT. NAT/Route mode can also be used when several ISPs are used for redundant internet connections.

By default, new VDOMs are set to NAT/Route operation mode.

See Configure VDOM-A on page 685 for more information.

### Transparent mode

The FortiGate or VDOM is installed between the internal network and the router. The FortiGate does not changes any IP addresses, and only applies security scanning to traffic. When you add a FortiGate that is in transparent mode to a network, it only needs to be provided with a management IP address.

Transparent mode is primarily used when increased network protection is needed without changing the network configuration.

See Configure VDOM-A on page 694 for more information.

### To change the operating mode of a FortiGate or VDOM:

```
config system settings
    set opmode {nat | transparent}
end
```

# Administrators

By default, FortiGate has an administrator account with the username *admin* and no password. To prevent unauthorized access to the FortiGate, this account must be protected with a password. Additional administrators can be added for various functions, each with a unique username, password, and set of access privileges.

The following topics provide information about administrators:


- Administrator profiles on page 654
- Add a local administrator on page 656
- Remote authentication for administrators on page 656
- Password policy on page 658
- Admin profile option for diagnose access on page 659


## Administrator profiles

Administrator profiles define what the administrator can do when logged into the FortiGate. When you set up an administrator account, you also assign an administrator profile which dictates what the administrator sees. Depending on the nature of the administrator's work, access level or seniority, you can allow them to view and configure as much or as little as is required.

By default, the FortiGate has an *admin* administrator account that uses the *super_admin* profile.

### super_admin profile

This profile has access to all components of FortiOS, including the ability to add and remove other system administrators. For certain administrative functions, such as backing up and restoring the configuration, super_admin access is required. To ensure that there is always a method to administer the FortiGate, the super_admin profile can't be deleted or modified.



Lower level administrator profiles can't backup or restore the FortiOS configuration.

The super_admin profile is used by the default admin account. It is recommended that you add a password and rename this account once you have set up your FortiGate. In order to rename the default account, a second admin account is required.

### Creating customized profiles

**To create a profile in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Admin Profiles*.
2. Select *Create New*.
3. Configure the following settings:
   - Name.
   - Access permissions.

- Override idle timeout.

4. Select *OK*.

**To create a profile in the CLI:**

```
config system accprofile
    edit "sample"
        set secfabgrp read-write
        set ftviewgrp read-write
        set authgrp read-write
        set sysgrp read-write
        set netgrp read-write
        set loggrp read-write
        set fwgrp read-write
        set vpngrp read-write
        set utmgrp read-write
        set wanoptgrp read-write
        set wifi read-write
    next
end
```

## Edit profiles

**To edit a profile in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Admin Profiles*.
2. Choose the profile to be edited and select *Edit*.
3. Select *OK* to save any changes made.

**To edit a profile in the CLI:**

```
config system accprofile
    edit "sample"
        set secfabgrp read
    next
end
```

## Delete profiles

**To delete a profile in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Admin Profiles*.
2. Choose the profile to be deleted and select *Delete*.
3. Select *OK*.

**To delete a profile in the CLI:**

```
config system accprofile
    delete "sample"
end
```

## Add a local administrator

By default, FortiGate has one super admin named `admin`. You can create more administrator accounts with different privileges.

**To create an administrator account in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Administrator*.
3. Specify the *Username*.



Do not use the characters `< > ( ) # " '` in the administrator username.

Using these characters in an administrator username might have a cross site scripting (XSS) vulnerability.

4. Set *Type* to *Local User*.
5. Set the password and other fields.
6. Click *OK*.

**To create an administrator account in the CLI:**

```
config system admin
    edit <admin_name>
        set accprofile <profile_name>
        set vdom <vdom_name>
        set password <password for this admin>
    next
end
```

## Remote authentication for administrators

Administrators can use remote authentication, such as LDAP, to connect to the FortiGate.

Setting up remote authentication for administrators includes the following steps:

1. Configure the LDAP server on page 656
2. Add the LDAP server to a user group on page 657
3. Configure the administrator account on page 657

### Configure the LDAP server

**To configure the LDAP server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and select *Create New*.
2. Enter the server *Name*, *Server IP* address or *Name*.
3. Enter the *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
4. Set the *Bind Type* to *Regular* and enter the *Username* and *Password*.
5. Click *OK*.

**To configure the LDAP server in the CLI:**

```
config user ldap
  edit <ldap_server_name>
    set server <server_ip>
    set cnid "cn"
    set dn "dc=XYZ,dc=fortinet,dc=COM"
    set type regular
    set username "cn=Administrator,dc=XYA, dc=COM"
    set password <password>
  next
end
```

## Add the LDAP server to a user group

After configuring the LDAP server, create a user group that includes that LDAP server.

**To create a user group in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and select *Create New*.
2. Enter a *Name* for the group.
3. In the *Remote groups* section, select *Create New*.
4. Select the *Remote Server* from the dropdown list.
5. Click *OK*.

**To create a user group in the CLI:**

```
config user group
  edit <Group_name>
    set member "ldap_server_name"
  next
end
```

## Configure the administrator account

After configuring the LDAP server and adding it to a user group, create a new administrator. For this administrator, instead of entering a password, use the new user group and the wildcard option for authentication.

**To create an administrator in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Select *Create New* > *Administrator*.
3. Specify the *Username*.
4. Set *Type* to *Match a user on a remote server group*.
5. In *Remote User Group*, select the user group you created.
6. Select *Wildcard*.
   The Wildcard option allows LDAP users to connect as this administrator.
7. Select an *Administrator Profile*.
8. Click *OK*.

**To create an administrator in the CLI:**

```
config system admin
  edit <admin_name>
    set remote-auth enable
    set accprofile super_admin
    set wild card enable
    set remote-group ldap
end
```

### Other methods of administrator authentication

Administrator accounts can use different methods for authentication, including RADIUS, TACACS+, and PKI.

#### RADIUS authentication for administrators

To use a RADIUS server to authenticate administrators, you must:

- Configure the FortiGate to access the RADIUS server.
- Create the RADIUS user group.
- Configure an administrator to authenticate with a RADIUS server.

#### TACACS+ authentication for administrators

To use a TACACS+ server to authenticate administrators, you must:

- Configure the FortiGate to access the TACACS+ server.
- Create a TACACS+ user group.
- Configure an administrator to authenticate with a TACACS+ server.

#### PKI certificate authentication for administrators

To use PKI authentication for an administrator, you must:

- Configure a PKI user.
- Create a PKI user group.
- Configure an administrator to authenticate with a PKI certificate.

## Password policy

Brute force password software can launch more than just dictionary attacks. It can discover common passwords where a letter is replaced by a number. For example, if `p4ssw0rd` is used as a password, it can be cracked.

Using secure passwords is vital for preventing unauthorized access to your FortiGate. When changing the password, consider the following to ensure better security:

- Do not use passwords that are obvious, such as the company name, administrator names, or other obvious words or phrases.
- Use numbers in place of letters, for example: `passw0rd`.
- Administrator passwords can be up to 64 characters.
- Include a mixture of numbers, symbols, and upper and lower case letters.

- Use multiple words together, or possibly even a sentence, for example: `correcthorsebatterystaple`.
- Use a password generator.
- Change the password regularly and always make the new password unique and not a variation of the existing password. for example, do not change from `password` to `password1`.
- Make note of the password and store it in a safe place away from the management computer, in case you forget it; or ensure at least two people know the password in the event one person becomes unavailable. Alternatively, have two different admin logins.

FortiGate allows you to create a password policy for administrators and IPsec pre-shared keys. With this policy, you can enforce regular changes and specific criteria for a password policy, including:

- Minimum length between 8 and 64 characters.
- If the password must contain uppercase (A, B, C) and/or lowercase (a, b, c) characters.
- If the password must contain numbers (1, 2, 3).
- If the password must contain special or non-alphanumeric characters (!, @, #, $, %, ^, &, *, (, and )).
- Where the password applies (admin or IPsec or both).
- The duration of the password before a new one must be specified.

If you add a password policy or change the requirements on an existing policy, the next time that administrator logs into the FortiGate, the administrator is prompted to update the password to meet the new requirements before proceeding to log in.

For information about setting passwords, see Default administrator password on page 669.

**To create a system password policy the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Password Policy* section, change the *Password scope* to *Admin*, *IPsec*, or *Both*.
3. Configure the password policy options.
4. Click *Apply*.

**To create a system password policy the CLI:**

```
config system password-policy
    set status {enable | disable}
    set apply-to {admin-password | ipsec-preshared-key}
    set minimum-length <8-128>
    set min-lower-case-letter <0-128>
    set min-upper-case-letter <0-128>
    set min-non-alphanumeric <0-128>
    set min-number <0-128>
    set change-4-characters {enable | disable}
    set expire-status {enable | disable}
    set expire-day <1-999>
    set reuse-password {enable | disable}
end
```

## Admin profile option for diagnose access

The `system-diagnostics` command in an administrator profile can be used to control access to diagnose commands for global and VDOM level administrators.

**To block an administrator's access to diagnose commands:**

1. Create an admin profile that cannot access diagnose commands:

```
config system accprofile
    edit "nodiagnose"
        ...
        set system-diagnostics disable
    next
end
```

2. Apply the profile to an administrator:

```
config system admin
    edit "nodiag"
        set accprofile "nodiagnose"
        set vdom "root"
        set password ********
    next
end
```

3. Log in as that administrator and confirm that they cannot access diagnose commands:

```
$ ?
config     Configure object.
get        Get dynamic and system information.
show       Show configuration.
execute    Execute static commands.
alias      Execute alias commands.
exit       Exit the CLI.
```

# Firmware

Fortinet periodically updates the FortiGate firmware to include new features and resolve important issues. After you have registered your FortiGate unit, firmware updates can be downloaded from the Fortinet Customer Service & Support website.



Always back up the current configuration before installing new firmware. See Configuration backups on page 112.

Before you install any new firmware, follow the below steps:

1. Review the Release Notes for a new firmware release.
2. Review the Supported Upgrade Paths.
3. Download a copy of the currently installed firmware, in case you need to revert to it. See Downloading a firmware image on page 662 and Downgrading to a previous firmware version on page 666 for details.
4. Have a plan in place in case there is a critical failure, such as the FortiGate not coming back online after the update. This could include having console access to the device (Connecting to the CLI on page 23), ensuring that you TFTP server is working (Installing firmware from system reboot on page 667), and preparing a USB drive (Restoring from a USB drive on page 668).
5. Backup the current configuration, including local certificates. See Configuration backups on page 112 for details.

6. Test the new firmware until you are satisfied that it applies to your configuration. See Testing a firmware version on page 664 and Controlled upgrade on page 669 for details.

Installing new firmware without reviewing release notes or testing the firmware may result in changes to settings and unexpected issues.



Only FortiGate admin users and administrators whose access profiles contain system read and write privileges can change the FortiGate firmware.

## Firmware upgrade notifications

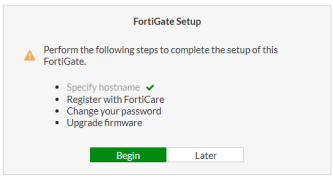
FortiGates with a firmware upgrade license that are connected to FortiGuard display upgrade notifications in the setup window, banner, and FortiGuard menu. The firmware notifications are enabled by default.

### To configure firmware notifications in the CLI:

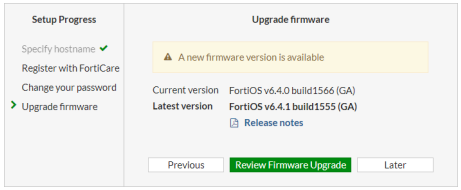
```
config system global
    set gui-firmware-upgrade-warning {enable | disable}
end
```

### To use the firmware upgrade notifications in the GUI:

1. When you log in to FortiGate, the *FortiGate Setup* window includes an *Upgrade firmware* step. Click *Begin*.

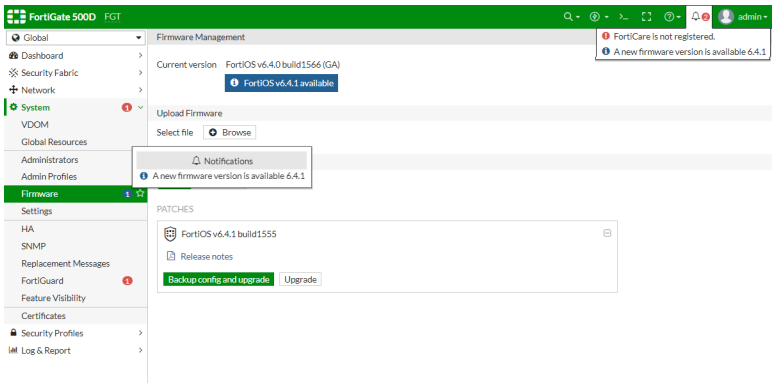



2. Follow the steps in the *Setup Progress*, then click *Review Firmware Upgrade*.




The *System* > *Firmware* page opens.

3. Notifications appear below the *Notification* icon in the banner, and beside *Firmware* in the tree menu.




## Downloading a firmware image

Firmware images for all FortiGate units are available on the Fortinet Customer Service & Support website.

**To download firmware:**

1. Log into the support site with your user name and password.
2. Go to *Download* > *Firmware Images*.
   A list of Release Notes is shown. If you have not already done so, download and review the Release Notes for the firmware version that you are upgrading your FortiGate unit to.
3. Select the *Download* tab.
4. Navigate to the folder for the firmware version that you are upgrading to.
5. Find your device model from the list. FortiWiFi devices have file names that start with *FWF*.
6. Click *HTTPS* in the far right column to download the firmware image to your computer.

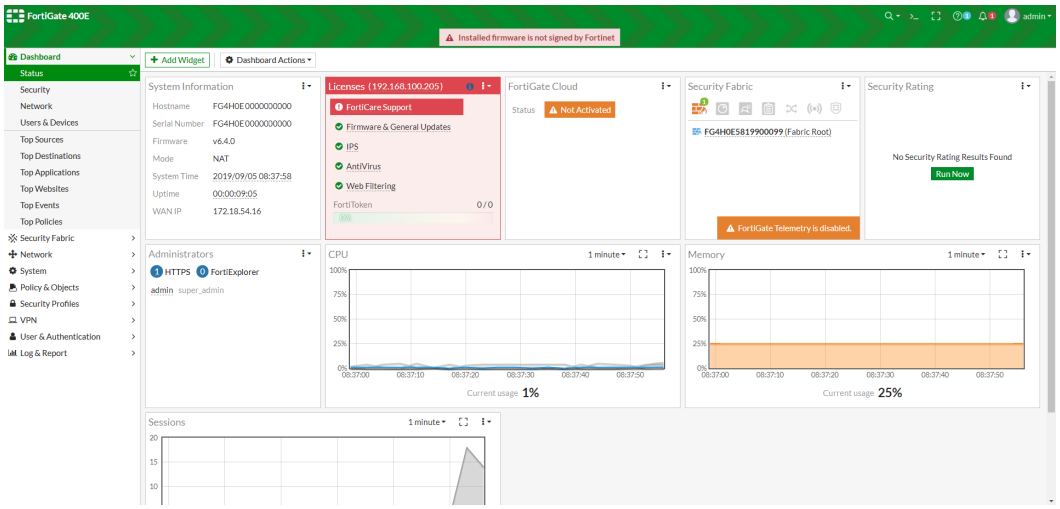


Firmware can also be downloaded using FTP, but as FTP is not an encrypted file transferring protocol, HTTPS downloading is recommended.

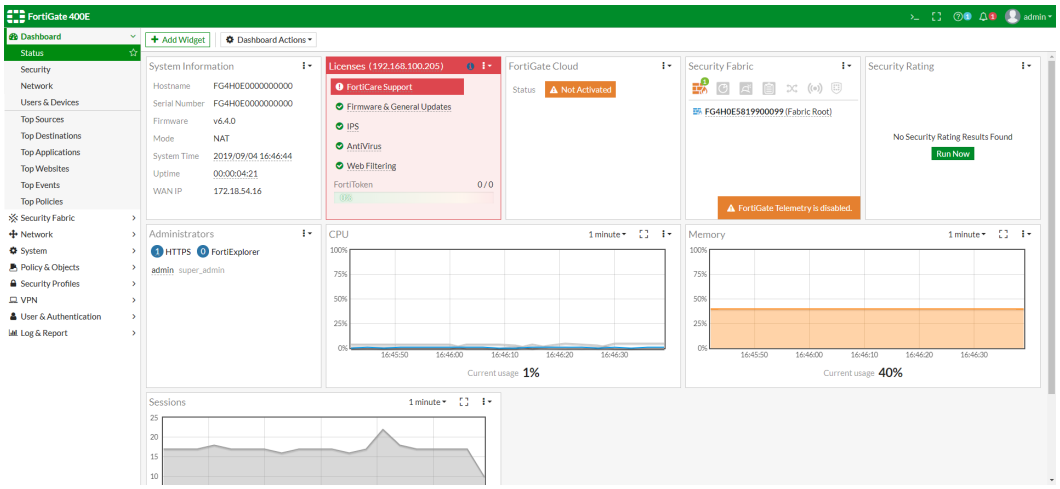
### FortiOS image signing and verification

Official FortiOS firmware images are signed by the Fortinet CA. The BIOS checks the validity of an image when it is uploaded to the device. If the image is not signed by the Fortinet CA, a warning message is shown in the GUI.

### Unsigned image:




### Signed image:




This functionality is implemented on the following devices:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| FortiGate 40F | FortiWiFi 41F | FortiGate 100F | FortiGate 3400E |
| FortiGate 40F-3G4G | FortiWiFi 41F-3G4G | FortiGate 101F | FortiGate 3401E |
| FortiGate 41F | FortiGate 60F | FortiGate 400E | FortiGate 3600E |
| FortiGate 41F-3G4G | FortiGate 61F | FortiGate 401E | FortiGate 3601E |
| FortiWiFi 40F | FortiWiFi 60F | FortiGate 600E | |
| FortiWiFi 40F-3G4G | FortiWiFi 61F | FortiGate 601E | |

# Testing a firmware version

The integrity of firmware images downloaded from Fortinet's support portal can be verified using a file checksum. A file checksum that does not match the expected value indicates a corrupt file. The corruption could be caused by errors in transfer or by file modification. A list of expected checksum values for each build of released code is available on Fortinet's support portal.

Image integrity is also verified when the FortiGate is booting up. This integrity check is done through a cyclic redundancy check (CRC). If the CRC fails, the FortiGate unit will encounter an error during the boot process.

Firmware images are signed and the signature is attached to the code as it is built. When upgrading an image, the running OS will generate a signature and compare it with the signature attached to the image. If the signatures do not match, the new OS will not load.

## Testing before installation

FortiOS lets you test a new firmware image by installing the firmware image from a system reboot and saving it to system memory. After completing this procedure, the FortiGate unit operates using the new firmware image with the current configuration. The new firmware image is not permanently installed. The next time the FortiGate unit restarts, it operates with the originally installed firmware image using the current configuration. If the new firmware image operates successfully, you can install it permanently using the procedure explained in Upgrading the firmware.

For this procedure, you must install a TFTP server that you can connect to from the FortiGate internal interface. The TFTP server should be on the same subnet as the internal interface.

**To test the new firmware version:**

1. Connect to the CLI using an RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9) or null modem cable.
2. Ensure that the TFTP server is running.
3. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory on the TFTP server.
4. Ensure that the FortiGate unit can connect to the TFTP server using the `execute ping` command.
5. Restart the FortiGate unit: `execute reboot`. The following message is shown:
   ```
   This operation will reboot the system!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. As the FortiGate unit starts, a series of system startup messages appears.
7. When the following messages appears:
   ```
   Press any key to display configuration menu.........
   ```
   Immediately press any key to interrupt the system startup.

   You have only three seconds to press any key. If you do not press a key during this time, the FortiGate will reboot, and you will have to log in and repeat the `execute reboot` command.

   If you successfully interrupt the startup process, the following messages appears:
   ```
   [G]: Get firmware image from TFTP server.
   [F]: Format boot device.
   [B]: Boot with backup firmware and set as default
   [C]: Configuration and information
   [Q]: Quit menu and continue to boot with default firmware.
   [H]: Display this list of options.
   Enter G, F, Q, or H:
   ```
8. Type *G* to get the new firmware image from the TFTP server. The following message appears: `Enter TFTP server address [192.168.1.168]:`

9. Type the address of the TFTP server, then press *Enter*. The following message appears: `Enter Local Address [192.168.1.188]:`
10. Type the IP address of the FortiGate unit to connect to the TFTP server.



The IP address must be on the same network as the TFTP server.
Make sure that you do not enter the IP address of another device on this network.

The following message appears:

```
Enter File Name [image.out]:
```

11. Enter the firmware image file name then press *Enter*. The TFTP server uploads the firmware image file to the FortiGate unit and the following message appears:

```
Save as Default firmware/Backup firmware/Run image without saving: [D/B/R]
```

12. Type *R*. The FortiGate image is installed to system memory and the FortiGate unit starts running the new firmware image, but with its current configuration.

Test the new firmware image as required. When done testing, reboot the FortiGate unit, and the it will resume using the firmware that was running before you installed the test firmware.

## Upgrading the firmware

Installing a new firmware image replaces the current antivirus and attack definitions, along with the definitions included with the firmware release that is being installing. After you install new firmware, make sure that the antivirus and attack definitions are up to date.



Back up your configuration before making any firmware changes.

**To upgrade the firmware in the GUI:**

1. Log into the FortiGate GUI as the admin administrative user.
2. Go to *System* > *Firmware*.
3. Under *Upload Firmware*, click *Browse* and locate the previously downloaded firmware image file (see Downloading a firmware image on page 662).
4. Click *Backup config and upgrade*.
   The FortiGate unit backs up the current configuration to the management computer, uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.

**To upgrade the firmware in the CLI:**

1. Make sure that the TFTP server is running.
2. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory of the TFTP server.
3. Log into the CLI.
4. Ping the TFTP server to ensure that the FortiGate can connect to it:

```
execute ping <tftp_ipv4>
```

5. Enter the following command to copy the firmware image from the TFTP server to the FortiGate unit:

```
execute restore image tftp <filename> <tftp_ipv4>
```

The FortiGate unit responds with the message:

```
This operation will replace the current firmware version!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)
```

6. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
7. Reconnect to the CLI.
8. Update the antivirus and attack definitions:
   ```
   execute update-now
   ```

## Downgrading to a previous firmware version



Downgrading the firmware is not recommended.

This procedure downgrades the FortiGate to a previous firmware version. The backup configuration might not be able to be restored after downgrading.

**To downgrade to a previous firmware version in the GUI:**

1. Log into the FortiGate GUI as the admin administrative user.
2. Go to *System* > *Firmware*.
3. Under *Upload Firmware*, click *Browse* and locate the previously downloaded firmware image file (see Downloading a firmware image on page 662).
4. Click *Confirm version downgrade*.
5. Click *Backup config and downgrade*.
   The FortiGate unit backs up the current configuration to the management computer, uploads the firmware image file, upgrades to the new firmware version, and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.

**To downgrade to a previous firmware version in the CLI:**

1. Make sure that the TFTP server is running.
2. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory of the TFTP server.
3. Log into the CLI.
4. Ping the TFTP server to ensure that the FortiGate can connect to it:
   ```
   execute ping <tftp_ipv4>
   ```
5. Enter the following command to copy the firmware image from the TFTP server to the FortiGate unit:
   ```
   execute restore image tftp <filename> <tftp_ipv4>
   ```
   The FortiGate unit responds with the message:
   ```
   This operation will replace the current firmware version!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit uploads the firmware image file, then a message similar to the following is shown:
   ```
   Get image from tftp server OK.
   Check image OK.
   This operation will downgrade the current firmware version!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
7. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit downgrades to the old firmware version and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
8. Reconnect to the CLI.

9. Update the antivirus and attack definitions:
   ```
   execute update-now
   ```

## Installing firmware from system reboot

In the event that the firmware upgrade does not load properly and the FortiGate unit will not boot, or continuously reboots, it is best to perform a fresh install of the firmware from a reboot using the CLI. If configured, the firmware can also be automatically installed from a USB drive; see Restoring from a USB drive on page 668 for details.

This procedure installs a firmware image and resets the FortiGate unit to factory default settings. You can use this procedure to upgrade to a new firmware version, revert to an older firmware version, or re-install the current firmware.

To use this procedure, you must connect to the CLI using the FortiGate console port and a RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9), or null modem cable. You must also install a TFTP server that you can connect to from the FortiGate internal interface. The TFTP server should be on the same subnet as the internal interface.

Before beginning this procedure, ensure that you backup the FortiGate unit configuration. See Configuration backups on page 112 for details. If you are reverting to a previous FortiOS version, you might not be able to restore the previous configuration from the backup configuration file.

Installing firmware replaces your current antivirus and attack definitions, along with the definitions included with the firmware release you are installing. After you install new firmware, make sure that antivirus and attack definitions are up to date.

**To install firmware from a system reboot:**

1. Connect to the CLI using the RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9) or null modem cable.
2. Ensure that the TFTP server is running.
3. Copy the new firmware image file to the root directory of the TFTP server.
4. Ensure that the FortiGate unit can connect to the TFTP server using the `execute ping` command.
5. Restart the FortiGate unit: `execute reboot`. The following message is shown:
   ```
   This operation will reboot the system!
   Do you want to continue? (y/n)
   ```
6. Type `y`. As the FortiGate unit starts, a series of system startup messages appears.
7. When the following messages appears:
   ```
   Press any key to display configuration menu.....
   ```
   Immediately press any key to interrupt the system startup.

   You have only three seconds to press any key. If you do not press a key during this time, the FortiGate will reboot, and you will have to log in and repeat the `execute reboot` command.

   If you successfully interrupt the startup process, the following messages appears:

   ```
   [C]: Configure TFTP parameters.
   [R]: Review TFTP parameters.
   [T]: Initiate TFTP firmware transfer.
   [F]: Format boot device.
   [I]: System information.
   [B]: Boot with backup firmware and set as default.
   [Q]: Quit menu and continue to boot.
   [H]: Display this list of options.

   Enter C,R,T,F,I,B,Q,or H:
   ```

8. If necessary, type `C` to configure the TFTP parameters, then type `Q` to return to the previous menu:

```
[P]: Set firmware download port.
[D]: Set DHCP mode.
[I]: Set local IP address.
[S]: Set local subnet mask.
[G]: Set local gateway.
[V]: Set local VLAN ID.
[T]: Set remote TFTP server IP address.
[F]: Set firmware file name.
[E]: Reset TFTP parameters to factory defaults.
[R]: Review TFTP parameters.
[N]: Diagnose networking(ping).
[Q]: Quit this menu.
[H]: Display this list of options.

Enter P,D,I,S,G,V,T,F,E,R,N,Q,or H:
```



The IP address must be on the same network as the TFTP server.
Make sure that you do not enter the IP address of another device on this network.

9. Type `T` get the new firmware image from the TFTP server.
   The FortiGate unit loads the firmware.
10. Save the firmware as the default (`D`) or backup (`B`) firmware image, or run the image without saving it (`R`).
    The FortiGate unit installs the new firmware image and restarts. The installation might take a few minutes to complete.

## Restoring from a USB drive

The FortiGate firmware can be manually restored from a USB drive, or installed automatically from a USB drive after a reboot.

**To restore the firmware from a USB drive:**

1. Copy the firmware file to the root directory on the USB drive.
2. Connect the USB drive to the USB port of the FortiGate device.
3. Connect to the FortiGate CLI using the RJ-45 to USB (or DB-9) or null modem cable.
4. Enter the following command:
   ```
   execute restore image usb <filename>
   ```
   The FortiGate unit responds with the following message:
   ```
   This operation will replace the current firmware version! Do you want to continue?
   (y/n)
   ```
5. Type `y`. The FortiGate unit restores the firmware and restarts. This process takes a few minutes.
6. Update the antivirus and attack definitions:
   ```
   execute update-now
   ```

**To install firmware automatically from a USB drive:**

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Start Up Settings* section, enable *Detect firmware* and enter the name of the firmware file.

3. Copy the firmware file to the root directory on the USB drive.
4. Connect the USB drive to the USB port of the FortiGate device.
5. Reboot the FortiGate device.

## Controlled upgrade

Using a controlled upgrade, you can upload a new version of the FortiOS firmware to a separate partition in the FortiGate memory for later upgrade. The FortiGate unit can be configured so that when it is rebooted, it will automatically load the new firmware. Using this option, you can stage multiple FortiGate units to upgrade simultaneously using FortiManager or a script.

**To load the firmware for later installation:**

```
execute restore secondary-image {ftp | tftp | usb} <filename_str>
```

**To set the FortiGate unit so that when it reboots, the new firmware is loaded:**

```
execute set-next-reboot {primary | secondary}
```

where `{primary | secondary}` is the partition with the preloaded firmware.

# Settings

The default administrator password should be configured immediately after the FortiGate is installed, see Default administrator password on page 669.

After that, there are several system settings that should also be configured in *System* > *Settings*:


- Default administrator password on page 669
- Changing the host name on page 670
- Setting the system time on page 670
- Configuring ports on page 674
- Setting the idle timeout time on page 675
- Setting the password policy on page 675
- Changing the view settings on page 675
- Setting the administrator password retries and lockout time on page 676


## Default administrator password

By default, your FortiGate has an administrator account set up with the username `admin` and no password. In order to prevent unauthorized access to the FortiGate, it is highly recommended that you add a password to this account.



In FortiOS 6.2.1 and later, adding a password to the *admin* administrator is mandatory. You will be prompted to configured it the first time you log in to the FortiGate using that account, after a factory reset, and after a new image installation.

### To change the default password in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Edit the *admin* account.
3. Click *Change Password*.
4. If applicable, enter the current password in the *Old Password* field.
5. Enter a password in the *New Password* field, then enter it again in the *Confirm Password* field.
6. Click *OK*.

### To change the default password in the CLI:

```
config system admin
    edit admin
        set password <password>
    next
end
```



It is also recommended that you change the user name of this account; however, since you cannot change the user name of an account that is currently in use, a second administrator account must be created in order to do this.

## Changing the host name

The FortiGate host name is shown in the *Hostname* field in the *System Information* widget on a dashboard, as the command prompt in the CLI, as the SNMP system name, as the device name on FortiGate Cloud, and other places. If the FortiGate is in an HA cluster, use a unique host name to distinguish it from the other devices in the cluster.

An administrator requires *System* > *Configuration* read/write access to edit the host name. See Administrator profiles on page 654 for details.

### To change the host name in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Host name* field, enter a new name.
3. Click *Apply*.

### To change the host name in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set hostname <hostname>
end
```

## Setting the system time

You can either manually set the FortiOS system time, or configure the device to automatically keep its system time correct by synchronizing with a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

Daylight savings time is enabled by default, and can only be configured in the CLI.



For many features to work, including scheduling, logging, and SSL-dependent features, the FortiOS system time must be accurate.

### To configure the date and time in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *System Time* section, configure the following settings to either manually set the time or use an NTP server:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Time Zone** | | Select a time zone from the list. This should be the time zone that the FortiGate is in. |
| **Set Time** | | Select to either *Synchronize with an NTP Server*, or use *Manual settings*. |
| | **Synchronize with an NTP Server** | To use an NTP server other than FortiGuard, the CLI must be used.<br>In the *Sync interval* field, enter how often, in minutes, that the device synchronizes its time with the NTP server. |
| | **Manual settings** | Manually enter the *Date*, *Hour* (in 24-hour format), *Minute*, and *Second* in their fields. |
| **Setup device as local NTP server** | | Enable to configure the FortiGate as a local NTP server.<br>In the *Listen on Interfaces* field, set the interface or interfaces that the FortiGate will listen for NTP requests on. |

3. Click *Apply*.

### To configure the date and time in the CLI:

1. Configure the timezone and daylight savings time:

```
config system global
    set timezone <integer>
    set dst {enable | disable}
end
```

2. Either manually configure the date and time, or configure an NTP server:

   Manual:

```
execute date <yyyy-mm-dd>
execute time <hh:mm:ss>
```

   NTP server:

```
config system ntp
    set ntpsync enable
    set type {fortiguard | custom}
    set syncinterval <integer>
    set source-ip <ip_address>
    set source-ip6 <ip6_address>
    set server-mode {enable | disable}
    set interface <interface>
    set authentication {enable | disable}
    set key-type {MD5 | SHA1}
```

```
        set key <password>
        set key-id <integer>
        config ntpserver
            edit <server_id>
                set server <ip_address or hostname>
                set ntpv3 {enable | disable}
                set authentication {enable | disable}
                set key <password>
                set key-id <integer>
            next
        end
    end
```

## SHA-1 authentication support (for NTPv4)

SHA-1 authentication support allows the NTP client to verify that severs are known and trusted and not intruders masquerading (accidentally or intentionally) as legitimate servers. In cryptography, SHA-1 is a cryptographic hash algorithmic function.



SHA-1 authentication support is only available for NTP clients, not NTP servers.

**To configure authentication on a FortiGate NTP client:**

```
config system ntp
    set ntpsync enable
    set type custom
    set syncinterval 1
    config ntpserver
        edit "883502"
            set server "10.1.100.11"
            set authentication enable
            set key
ENCi9NmcqsV3xBJvOkgIL3lFxA8mnNs2XKfB7spOQoUw4cm8FOOP0nrCbqx6rJ+om95+hVUHpaVZmepdd4KznPlAHNiu
liPgPOk
            set key-id 1
        next
    end
end
```

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| `authentication <enable \| disable>` | Enable/disable MD5/SHA1 authentication (default = disable). |
| `key <passwd>` | Key for MD5/SHA1 authentication. Enter a password value. |
| `key-id <integer>` | Key ID for authentication. Enter an integer value from 0 to 4294967295. |

**To confirm that NTP authentication is set up correctly:**

```
# diagnose sys ntp status
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: disabled
ipv4 server(10.1.100.11) 10.1.100.11 -- reachable(0xff) S:4 T:6 selected
server-version=4, stratum=3
```

If NTP authentication is set up correctly, the server version is equal to 4.

## PTPv2

Precision time protocol (PTP) is used to synchronize network clocks. It is best suited to situations where time accuracy is of the utmost importance, as it supports accuracy in the sub-microsecond range. Conversely, NTP accuracy is in the range of milliseconds or tens of milliseconds.

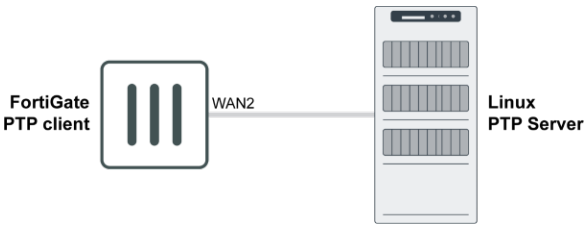
The following CLI commands are available:

```
config system ptp
  set status {enable | disable}
  set mode {multicast | hybrid}
  set delay-mechanism {E2E | P2P}
  set request-interval <integer>
  set interface <interface>
end
```

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| status {enable \| disable} | Enable or disable the FortiGate system time by synchronizing with a PTP server (default = disable). |
| mode {multicast \| hybrid} | Use multicast or hybrid transmission (default = multicast). |
| delay-mechanism {E2E \| P2P} | Use end-to-end (E2E) or peer-to-peer (P2P) delay detection (default = E2E). |
| request-interval <integer> | The logarithmic mean interval between the delay request messages sent by the client to the server in seconds (default = 1). |
| interface <interface> | The interface that the PTP client will reply through. |

### Sample configuration

This example uses the following topology:




**To configure a FortiGate to act as a PTP client that synchronizes itself with a Linux PTP server:**

1. Enable debug messages:
   ```
   # diagnose debug application ptpd -1
   ```

This command will provide details to debug the PTP communication with the server.

2. Check the system date:
```
# execute date
   current date is: 2019-01-01
```
3. Configure PTP in global mode:
```
config system ptp
   set status enable
   set interface wan2
end
```
4. Check the system date again after synchronization with the PTP server:
```
# execute date
   current date is: 2019-01-14
```

## Configuring ports

To improve security, the default ports for administrative connections to the FortiGate can be changed. Port numbers must be unique. If a conflict exists with a particular port, a warning message is shown.

When connecting to the FortiGate after a port has been changed, the port number be included, for example: `https://192.168.1.99:100`.

### To configure the ports in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, set the HTTP, HTTPS, SSH, and Telnet ports.
3. Enable *Redirect to HTTPS* to prevent HTTP from being used by administrators.
4. Click *Apply*.

### To configure the ports in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set admin-port <port>
    set admin-sport <port>
    set admin-https-redirect {enable | disable}
    set admin-ssh-port <port>
    set admin-telnet-port <port>
end
```

### Custom default service port range

The default service port range can be customized using the following CLI command:

```
config system global
   set default-service-source-port <port range>
end
```

Where `<port range>` is the new default service port range, that can have a minimum value of 0 and a maximum value up to 65535. The default value is 1 to 65535.



This change effects the TCP/UDP protocol.

## Setting the idle timeout time

The idle timeout period is the amount of time that an administrator will stay logged in to the GUI without any activity. This is to prevent someone from accessing the FortiGate if the management PC is left unattended. By default, it is set to five minutes.



A setting of higher than 15 minutes will have a negative effect on a security rating score. See Security rating on page 199 for more information.

### To change the idle timeout in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, set the *Idle timeout* to up to 480 minutes.
3. Click *Apply*.

### To change the idle timeout in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set admintimeout <integer>
end
```

## Setting the password policy

A password policy can be created for administrators and IPsec pre-shared keys. See Password policy on page 658 for information.

## Changing the view settings

The view settings change the look and language of the FortiOS GUI.

### To change the view settings in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *View Settings* section, configure the following settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Language** | Set the GUI language: *English*, *French*, *Spanish*, *Portuguese*, *Japanese*, *Traditional Chinese*, *Simplifies Chinese*, *Korean*. |
| **Lines per page** | Set the number of lines per page, from 20 to 100. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Theme** | Set the theme color: *Green*, *Red*, *Blue*, *Melongene*, or *Mariner*. |
| **Date/Time Display** | Set the date and time to display using the FortiGate's or the browser's timezone. |
| **NGFW Mode** | Set the NGFW mode to either *Profile-based* (default) or *Policy-based*.<br>If *Policy-based* is selected, the *SSL/SSH Inspection* profile must be selected. |

3. Click *Apply*.

### To change the view settings in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set language {english | french | spanish | portuguese | japanese | trach | simch |
korean}
    set gui-lines-per-page <integer>
    set gui-theme {green | red | blue | melongene | mariner}
    set gui-date-time-source {system | browser}
end
config system settings
    set ngfw-mode {profile-based | policy-based}
    set ssl-ssh-profile {certificate-inspection | custom-deep-inspection | deep-inspection |
no-inspection}
end
```

## Setting the administrator password retries and lockout time

By default, the number password retry attempts is set to three, allowing the administrator a maximum of three attempts at logging in to their account before they are locked out for a set amount of time (by default, 60 seconds).

The number of attempts and the default wait time before the administrator can try to enter a password again can be configured using the CLI.

A maximum of ten retry attempts can be configured, and the lockout period can be 1 to 2147483647 seconds (over 68 years). The higher the retry attempts, the higher the risk that someone might be able to guess the password.

### To configure the lockout options:

```
config system global
    set admin-lockout-threshold <failed_attempts>
    set admin-lockout-duration <seconds>
end
```

### Example:

To set the number of retry attempts to 1, and the lockout time to 5 minutes, enter the following commands:

```
config system global
    set admin-lockout-threshold 1
    set admin-lockout-duration 300
end
```



If the time span between the first failed log in attempt and the lockout threshold failed attempt is less than lockout time, the lockout will be triggered.

# Virtual Domains

Virtual Domains (VDOMs) are used to divide a FortiGate into two or more virtual units that function independently. VDOMs can provide separate security policies and, in NAT mode, completely separate configurations for routing and VPN services for each connected network.

There are two VDOM modes:

- Split-task VDOM mode: One VDOM is used only for management, and the other is used to manage traffic. See Split-task VDOM mode on page 678.
- Multi VDOM mode: Multiple VDOMs can be created and managed as independent units. See Multi VDOM mode on page 682.

By default, most FortiGate units support 10 VDOMs, and many FortiGate models support purchasing a license key to increase the maximum number.

Global settings are configured outside of a VDOM. They effect the entire FortiGate, and include settings such as interfaces, firmware, DNS, some logging and sandboxing options, and others. Global settings should only be changed by top level administrators.



Enable the following to prevent accidentally creating VDOMs in the CLI:

```
config system global
    set edit-vdom-prompt enable
end
```

The FortiGate displays a prompt to confirm before the VDOM is created.

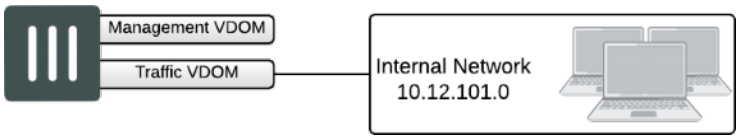
## Switching VDOM modes

| Current VDOM mode | New VDOM mode | Rule |
|---|---|---|
| No VDOM | Split-task VDOM | Allowed |
| Split-task VDOM | No VDOM | Allowed |
| No VDOM | Multi VDOM | Allowed only if the FortiGate is not a member of a Security Fabric. See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 119 for more information. |
| Multi VDOM | No VDOM | Allowed |

| Current VDOM mode | New VDOM mode | Rule |
|---|---|---|
| Split-task VDOM | Multi VDOM | Allowed only if the FortiGate is not a member of a Security Fabric. See Configuring the root FortiGate and downstream FortiGates on page 119 for more information. |
| Multi VDOM | Split-task VDOM | Not Allowed. User must first switch to *No VDOM* |

## Split-task VDOM mode

In split-task VDOM mode, the FortiGate has two VDOMs: the management VDOM (*root*) and the traffic VDOM (*FG-traffic*).




The management VDOM is used to manage the FortiGate, and cannot be used to process traffic.

The following GUI sections are available when in the management VDOM:

- The Status dashboard
- Security Fabric topology and settings (read-only, except for *HTTP Service* settings)
- Interface and static route configuration
- FortiClient configuration
- Replacement messages
- Certificates
- System events
- Log and email alert settings
- Threat weight definitions

The traffic VDOM provides separate security policies, and is used to process all network traffic.

The following GUI sections are available when in the traffic VDOM:

- The Status, Top Usage LAN/DMZ, and Security dashboards
- Security Fabric topology, settings (read-only, except for *HTTP Service* settings), and External Connectors (*Endpoint/Identity* connectors only)
- FortiView
- Interface configuration
- Packet capture
- SD-WAN, SD-WAN Rules, and Performance SLA
- Static and policy routes
- RIP, OSPF, BGP, and Multicast
- Replacement messages
- Feature visibility
- Tags
- Certificates

- Policies and objects
- Security profiles
- VPNs
- User and device authentication
- Wifi and switch controller
- Logging
- Monitoring

Split-task VDOM mode is not available on all FortiGate models. The Fortinet Security Fabric supports split-task VDOM mode.

## Enable split-task VDOM mode

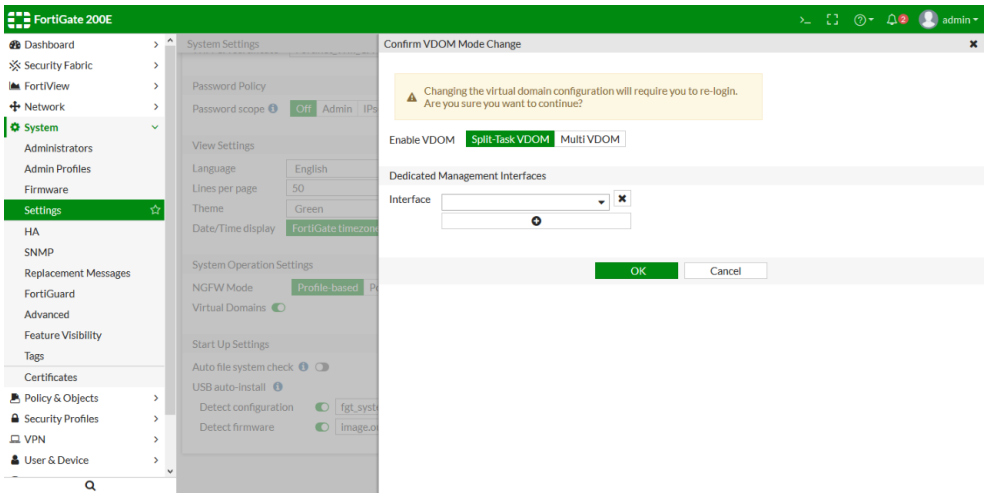
Split-task VDOM mode can be enabled in the GUI or CLI. Enabling it does not require a reboot, but does log you out of the FortiGate.

When split-task VDOM mode is enabled, all current management configuration is assigned to the *root* VDOM, and all non-management settings, such as firewall policies and security profiles, are deleted.

On FortiGate 60 series models and lower, VDOMs can only be enabled using the CLI.

**To enable split-task VDOM mode in the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *System Operation Settings* section, enable *Virtual Domains*.




3. Select *Split-Task VDOM* for the VDOM mode.
4. Select a *Dedicated Management Interface* from the *Interface* list. This interface is used to access the management VDOM, and cannot be used in firewall policies.
5. Click *OK*.

**To enable split-task VDOM mode with the CLI:**

```
config system global
   set vdom-mode split-vdom
end
```

## Assign interfaces to a VDOM

An interface can only be assigned to one of the VDOMs. When split-task VDOM mode is enabled, all interfaces are assigned to the *root* VDOM. To use an interface in a policy, it must first be assigned to the traffic VDOM.

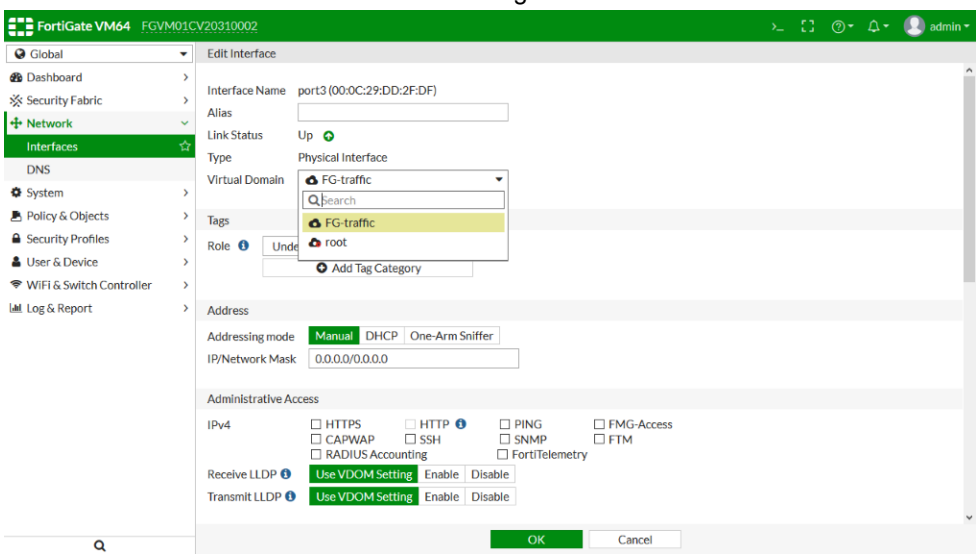
An interface cannot be moved if it is referenced in an existing configuration.



In the GUI, the interface list *Ref.* column shows if the interface is referenced in an existing configuration, and allows you to quickly access and edit those references.

**To assign an interface to a VDOM in the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Global* > *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the interface that will be assigned to a VDOM.
3. Select the VDOM that the interface will be assigned to from the *Virtual Domain* list.




4. Click *OK*.

**To assign an interface to a VDOM using the CLI:**

```
config global
   config system interface
      edit <interface>
         set vdom <VDOM_name>
      next
   end
end
```

## Create per-VDOM administrators

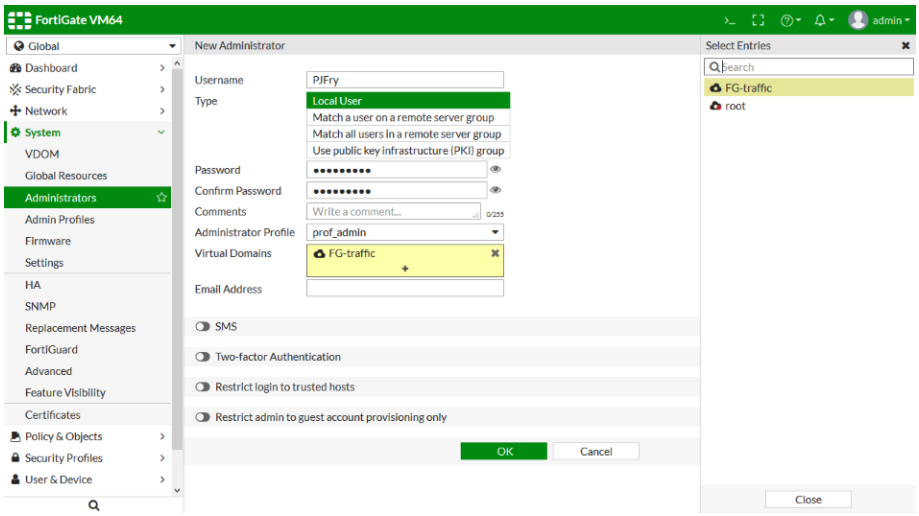
Per-VDOM administrators can be created that can access only the management or traffic VDOM. These administrators must use either the *prof_admin* administrator profile, or a custom profile.

A per-VDOM administrator can only access the FortiGate through a network interface that is assigned to the VDOM that they are assigned to. The interface must also be configured to allow management access. They can also connect to the FortiGate using the console port.

To assign an administrator to multiple VDOMs, they must be created at the global level. When creating an administrator at the VDOM level, the *super_admin* administrator profile cannot be used.

### To create a per-VDOM administrator in the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, connect to the management VDOM.
2. Go to *Global* > *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *Administrator*.
3. Fill in the required information, setting the *Type* as *Local User*.
4. In the *Virtual Domains* field, add the VDOM that the administrator will be assigned to, and if necessary, remove the other VDOM from the list.




5. Click *OK*.

### To create a per-VDOM administrator using the CLI:

```
config global
   config system admin
      edit <name>
         set vdom <VDOM_name>
         set password <password>
         set accprofile <admin_profile>
         ...
      next
   end
end
```

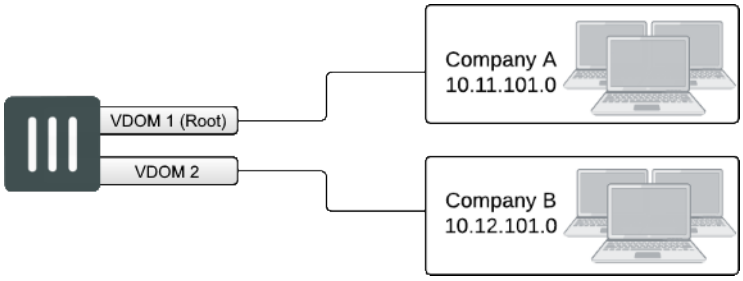
## Multi VDOM mode

In multi VDOM mode, the FortiGate can have multiple VDOMs that function as independent units. One VDOM is used to manage global settings. The root VDOM cannot be deleted, and remains in the configuration even if it is not processing any traffic.

Multi VDOM mode isn't available on all FortiGate models. The Fortinet Security Fabric does not support multi VDOM mode.

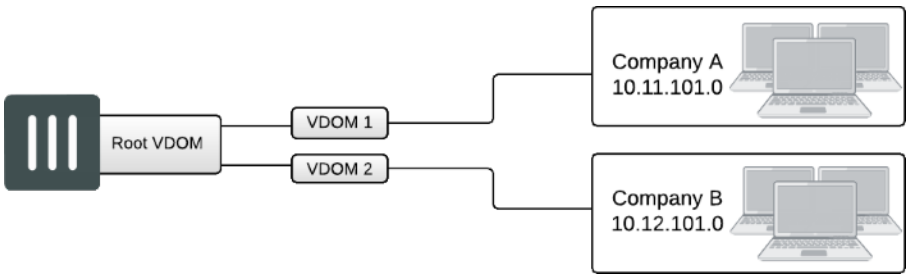
There are three main configuration types in multi VDOM mode:

**Independent VDOMs:**




Multiple, completely separate VDOMs are created. Any VDOM can be the management VDOM, as long as it has Internet access. There are no inter-VDOM links, and each VDOM is independently managed.

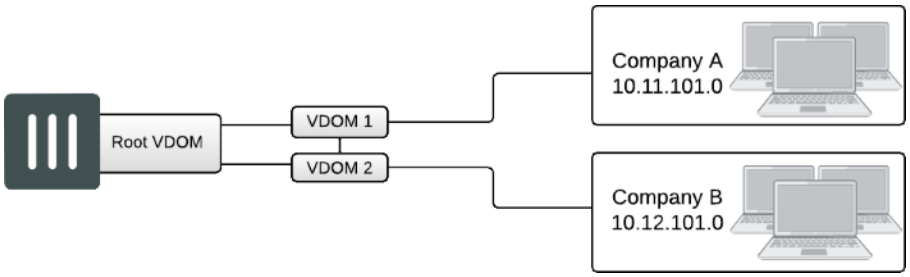
**Management VDOM:**




A management VDOM is located between the other VDOMs and the Internet, and the other VDOMs connect to the management VDOM with inter-VDOM links. The management VDOM has complete control over Internet access, including the types of traffic that are allowed in both directions. This can improve security, as there is only one point of ingress and egress.

There is no communication between the other VDOMs.

**Meshed VDOMs:**



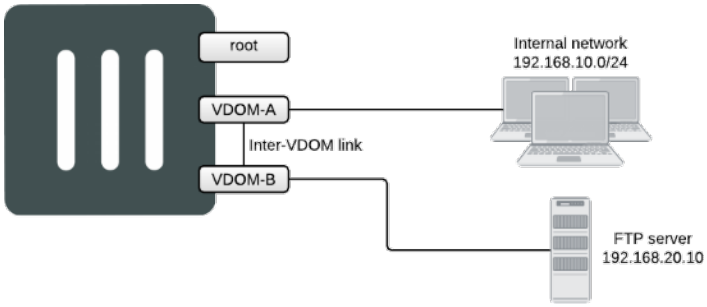

VDOMs can communicate with inter-VDOM links. In full-mesh configurations, all the VDOMs are interconnected. In partial-mesh configurations, only some of the VDOMs are interconnected.

In this configuration, proper security must be achieved by using firewall policies and ensuring secure account access for administrators and users.

## Multi VDOM configuration examples

The following examples show how to configure per-VDOM settings, such as operation mode, routing, and security policies, in a network that includes the following VDOMs:

- VDOM-A: allows the internal network to access the Internet.
- VDOM-B: allows external connections to an FTP server.
- root: the management VDOM.




You can use VDOMs in either NAT or transparent mode on the same FortiGate. By default, VDOMs operate in NAT mode.

For both examples, multi VDOM mode must be enabled, and VDOM-A and VDOM-B must be created.

### Enable multi VDOM mode

Multi VDOM mode can be enabled in the GUI or CLI. Enabling it does not require a reboot, but does log you out of the device. The current configuration is assigned to the *root* VDOM.



On FortiGate 60 series models and lower, VDOMs can only be enabled using the CLI.

**To enable multi VDOM mode in the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *System Operation Settings* section, enable *Virtual Domains*.
3. Select *Multi VDOM* for the VDOM mode.
4. Click *OK*.

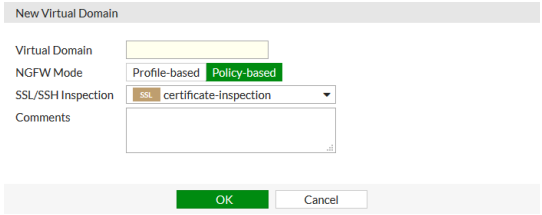
**To enable multi VDOM mode with the CLI:**

```
config system global
   set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
```

**Create the VDOMs**

**To create the VDOMs in the GUI:**

1. In the *Global* VDOM, go to *System* > *VDOM*, and click *Create New*. The *New Virtual Domain* page opens.




2. In the *Virtual Domain* field, enter *VDOM-A*.
3. If required, set the *NGFW Mode*. If the *NGFW Mode* is *Policy-based*, select an *SSL/SSH Inspection* from the list.
4. Optionally, enter a comment.
5. Click *OK* to create the VDOM.
6. Repeat the above steps for *VDOM-B*.

**To create the VDOMs with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit <VDOM-A>
      next
   edit <VDOM-B>
      next
   end
end
```

## NAT mode

In this example, both VDOM-A and VDOM-B use NAT mode. A VDOM link is created that allows users on the internal network to access the FTP server.

This configuration requires the following steps:

1. Configure VDOM-A on page 685
2. Configure VDOM-B on page 687
3. Configure the VDOM link on page 689

## Configure VDOM-A

VDOM-A allows connections from devices on the internal network to the Internet. WAN 1 and port 1 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-A includes the following:

- A firewall address for the internal network
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing the internal network to access the Internet

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-A, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

**To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | internal-network |
| **Type** | Subnet |
| **Subnet / IP Range** | 192.168.10.0/255.255.255.0 |
| **Interface** | port1 |
| **Show in Address List** | enabled |

**To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
  edit VDOM-A
    config firewall address
      edit internal-network
        set associated-interface port1
        set subnet 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
      next
    end
  next
end
```

**To add a default route in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | Subnet |
| **IP address** | 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 |
| **Gateway** | 172.20.201.7 |
| **Interface** | wan1 |
| **Distance** | 10 |

**To add a default route with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config router static
         edit 0
            set gateway 172.20.201.7
            set device wan1
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the security policy in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | VDOM-A-Internet |
| **Incoming Interface** | port1 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | wan1 |
| **Source** | internal-network |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | enabled |

**To add the security policy with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name VDOM-A-Internet
            set srcintf port1
            set dstintf wan1
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr all
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service ALL
            set nat enable
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Configure VDOM-B

VDOM-B allows external connections to reach an internal FTP server. WAN 2 and port 2 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-B includes the following:

- A firewall address for the FTP server
- A virtual IP address for the FTP server
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing external traffic to reach the FTP server

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-B, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

**To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Address Name** | FTP-server |
| **Type** | Subnet |
| **Subnet / IP Range** | 192.168.20.10/32 |
| **Interface** | port2 |
| **Show in Address List** | enabled |

**To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit FTP-server
            set associated-interface port2
            set subnet 192.168.20.10 255.255.255.255
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the virtual IP address in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs* and create a new virtual IP address.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | FTP-server-VIP |
| **Interface** | wan2 |
| **External IP Address/Range** | 172.25.177.42 |
| **Internal IP Address/Range** | 192.168.20.10 |

**To add the virtual IP address with the CLI:**

```
config firewall vip
   edit FTP-server-VIP
      set extip 172.25.177.42
      set extintf wan2
      set mappedip 192.168.20.10
   next
end
```

**To add a default route in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | Subnet |
| **IP address** | 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 |
| **Gateway** | 172.20.10.10 |
| **Interface** | wan2 |
| **Distance** | 10 |

**To add a default route with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config router static
         edit 0
            set device wan2
            set gateway 172.20.10.10
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the security policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Access-server |
| **Incoming Interface** | wan2 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port2 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | FTP-server-VIP |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | FTP |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | enabled |

**To add the security policy with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name Access-server
            set srcintf wan2
            set dstintf port2
            set srcaddr all
            set dstaddr FTP-server-VIP
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
            set nat enable
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Configure the VDOM link

The VDOM link allows connections from VDOM-A to VDOM-B. This allows users on the internal network to access the FTP server through the FortiGate.

The configuration for the VDOM link includes the following:

- The VDOM link interface
- Firewall addresses for the FTP server on VDOM-A and for the internal network on VDOM-B
- Static routes for the FTP server on VDOM-A and for the internal network on VDOM-B
- Policies allowing traffic using the VDOM link

All procedures in this section require you to connect to the global VDOM using a global administrator account.

**To add the VDOM link in the GUI:**

1. Connect to root.
2. Go to *Global* > *Network* > *Interfaces* and select *Create New* > *VDOM link.*
3. Enter the following information:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Name** | | VDOM-link |
| **Interface 0** | | |
| | **Virtual Domain** | VDOM-A |
| | **IP/Netmask** | 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 |
| **Interface 1** | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Virtual Domain** | VDOM-B |
| **IP/Netmask** | 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 |

**To add the VDOM link with the CLI:**

```
config global
   config system vdom-link
      edit vlink
   end
   config system interface
      edit VDOM-link0
         set vdom VDOM-A
         set ip 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
      next
      edit VDOM-link1
         set vdom VDOM-B
         set ip 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
      next
   end
end
```

**To add the firewall address on VDOM-A in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Address Name** | FTP-server |
| **Type** | Subnet |
| **Subnet / IP Range** | 192.168.20.10/32 |
| **Interface** | VDOM-link0 |
| **Show in Address List** | enabled |
| **Static Route Configuration** | enabled |

**To add the firewall addresses on VDOM-A with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit FTP-server
            set associated-interface VDOM-link0
            set allow-routing enable
            set subnet 192.168.20.10 255.255.255.255
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the static route on VDOM-A in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | Named Address |
| **Named Address** | FTP-server |
| **Gateway** | 0.0.0.0 |
| **Interface** | VDOM-link0 |

**To add the static route on VDOM-A with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config router static
         edit 0
            set device VDOM-link0
            set dstaddr FTP-server
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the security policy on VDOM-A in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Access-FTP-server |
| **Incoming Interface** | port1 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | VDOM-link0 |
| **Source** | internal-network |
| **Destination** | FTP-server |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | FTP |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | disabled |

**To add the security policy on VDOM-A with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
```

```
            set name Access-FTP-server
            set srcintf port1
            set dstintf VDOM-link0
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr FTP-server
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
        next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the firewall address on VDOM-B in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Address Name** | internal-network |
| **Type** | Subnet |
| **Subnet / IP Range** | 192.168.10.0/24 |
| **Interface** | VDOM-link1 |
| **Show in Address List** | enabled |
| **Static Route Configuration** | enabled |

**To add the firewall addresses on VDOM-B with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit internal-network
            set associated-interface VDOM-link1
            set allow-routing enable
            set subnet 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the static route on VDOM-B in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | Named Address |
| **Named Address** | internal-network |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Gateway** | 0.0.0.0 |
| **Interface** | VDOM-link1 |

**To add the static route on VDOM-B with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config router static
         edit 0
            set device VDOM-link1
            set dstaddr internal-network
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the security policy on VDOM-B in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Internal-server-access |
| **Incoming Interface** | VDOM-link1 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port2 |
| **Source** | internal-network |
| **Destination** | FTP-server |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | FTP |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | disabled |

**To add the security policy on VDOM-B with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
            set name Internal-server-access
            set srcintf VDOM-link1
            set dstintf port2
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr FTP-server
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
         next
      end
```

```
    next
end
```

### NAT and transparent mode

In this example, VDOM-A uses NAT mode and VDOM-B uses transparent mode.

This configuration requires the following steps:

1. Configure VDOM-A on page 694
2. Configure VDOM-B on page 696

## Configure VDOM-A

VDOM-A allows connections from devices on the internal network to the Internet. WAN 1 and port 1 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-A includes the following:

- A firewall address for the internal network
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing the internal network to access the Internet

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-A, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

**To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | internal-network |
| **Type** | Subnet |
| **Subnet / IP Range** | 192.168.10.0/24 |
| **Interface** | port1 |
| **Show in Address List** | enabled |

**To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall address
         edit internal-network
            set associated-interface port1
            set subnet 192.168.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add a default route in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | Subnet |
| **IP address** | 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 |
| **Gateway** | 172.20.201.7 |
| **Interface** | wan1 |
| **Distance** | 10 |

**To add a default route with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config router static
         edit 0
            set gateway 172.20.201.7
            set device wan1
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add the security policy in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-A.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | VDOM-A-Internet |
| **Incoming Interface** | port1 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | wan1 |
| **Source** | internal-network |
| **Destination** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | enabled |

**To add the security policy with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-A
      config firewall policy
         edit 0
```

```
            set name VDOM-A-Internet
            set srcintf port1
            set dstintf wan1
            set srcaddr internal-network
            set dstaddr all
            set action accept
            set schedule always
            set service ALL
            set nat enable
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Configure VDOM-B

VDOM-B allows external connections to reach an internal FTP server. WAN 2 and port 2 are assigned to this VDOM.

The per-VDOM configuration for VDOM-B includes the following:

- A firewall address for the FTP server
- A static route to the ISP gateway
- A security policy allowing external traffic to reach the FTP server

All procedures in this section require you to connect to VDOM-B, either using a global or per-VDOM administrator account.

**To add the firewall addresses in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create a new address.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Address Name** | FTP-server |
| **Type** | Subnet |
| **Subnet / IP Range** | 172.25.177.42/32 |
| **Interface** | port2 |
| **Show in Address List** | enabled |

**To add the firewall addresses with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config firewall address
         edit FTP-server
            set associated-interface port2
            set subnet 172.25.177.42 255.255.255.255
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To add a default route in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Routing Table* and create a new route.
2. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | Subnet |
| **IP address** | 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0 |
| **Gateway** | 172.20.10.10 |

**To add a default route with the CLI:**

```
config vdom
   edit VDOM-B
      config router static
         edit 0
            set gateway 172.20.10.10
         next
      end
      next
   end
```

**To add the security policy in the GUI:**

1. Connect to VDOM-B.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a new policy.
3. Enter the following information:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Access-server |
| **Incoming Interface** | wan2 |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port2 |
| **Source** | all |
| **Destination** | FTP-server |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | FTP |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |

**To add the security policy with the CLI:**

```
   config vdom
      edit VDOM-B
         config firewall policy
            edit 0
               set name Access-server
               set srcintf wan2
               set dstintf port2
               set srcaddr all
               set dstaddr FTP-server-VIP
               set action accept
```

```
            set schedule always
            set service FTP
        next
    end
  next
end
```

# High Availability

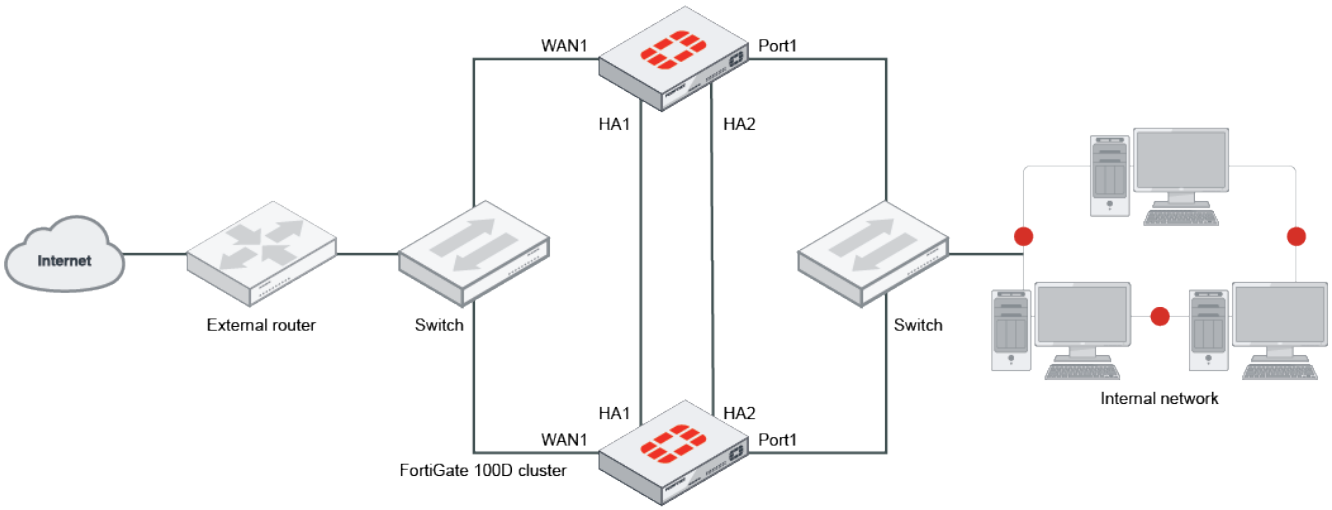
The following sections provide instructions on configuring High Availability (HA):


- Introduction to the FGCP cluster on page 698
- Failover protection on page 699
- FGSP (session synchronization) peer setup on page 701
- UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic in FGSP on page 702
- UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic on L3 on page 704
- Encryption for L3 on asymmetric traffic in FGSP on page 706
- Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters on page 706
- Using standalone configuration synchronization on page 708
- Troubleshoot an HA formation on page 710
- Check HA sync status on page 710
- Disabling stateful SCTP inspection on page 711
- Upgrading FortiGates in an HA cluster on page 712
- HA cluster setup examples on page 713
- Routing data over the HA management interface on page 722
- Override FortiAnalyzer and syslog server settings on page 724
- Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations on page 728
- Querying autoscale clusters for FortiGate VM on page 731


## Introduction to the FGCP cluster

High availability (HA) is usually required in a system where there is high demand for little downtime. There are usually hot-swaps, backup routes, or standby backup units and as soon as the active entity fails, backup entities will start functioning. This results in minimal interruption for the users.

The FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) is a proprietary HA solution whereby FortiGates can find other member FortiGates to negotiate and create a cluster. A FortiGate HA cluster consists of at least two FortiGates (members) configured for HA operation. All FortiGates in the cluster must be the same model and have the same firmware installed. Cluster members must also have the same hardware configuration (such as the same number of hard disks). All cluster members share the same configurations except for their host name and priority in the HA settings. The cluster works like a device but always has a hot backup device.




### Critical cluster components

The following are critical components in an HA cluster:

- Heartbeat connections: members will use this to communicate with each other. In general, a two-member cluster is most common. We recommend double back-to-back heartbeat connections.
- Identical connections for internal and external interfaces: as demonstrated in the topology, we recommend similar connections from each member to the switches for the cluster to function properly.

### General operation

The following are best practices for general cluster operation:

- Ensure that heartbeat communication is present.
- Enable the session synchronization option in daily operation (see FGSP (session synchronization) peer setup on page 701).
- Monitor traffic flowing in and out of the interfaces.

### Failover

FGCP provides failover protection in the following scenarios:

- The active device loses power.
- A monitored interface loses a connection.

After failover occurs, the user will not notice any difference, except that the active device has changed. See Failover protection on page 699 for more information.

## Failover protection

The FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) provides failover protection, meaning that a cluster can provide FortiGate services even when one of the devices in the cluster encounters a problem that would result in the complete loss of connectivity for a stand-alone FortiGate unit. Failover protection provides a backup mechanism that can be used to reduce the risk of unexpected downtime, especially in mission-critical environments.

FGCP supports failover protection in three ways:

1. Link failover maintains traffic flow if a link fails.
2. If a device loses power, it automatically fails over to a backup unit with minimal impact on the network.
3. Optionally, if an SSD fails, it can automatically fail over to a backup unit.

When session-pickup is enabled in the HA settings, existing TCP session are kept, and users on the network are not impacted by downtime as the traffic can be passed without reestablishing the sessions.

## When and how the failover happens

### 1. Link fails

Before triggering a failover when a link fails, the administrator must ensure that monitor interfaces are configured. Normally, the internal interface that connects to the internal network, and an outgoing interface for traffic to the internet or outside the network, should be monitored. Any of those links going down will trigger a failover.

### 2. Loss of power for active unit.

When an active (primary) unit loses power, a backup (secondary) unit automatically becomes the active, and the impact on traffic is minimal. There are no settings for this kind of fail over.

### 3. SSD failure

HA failover can be triggered by an SSD failure.

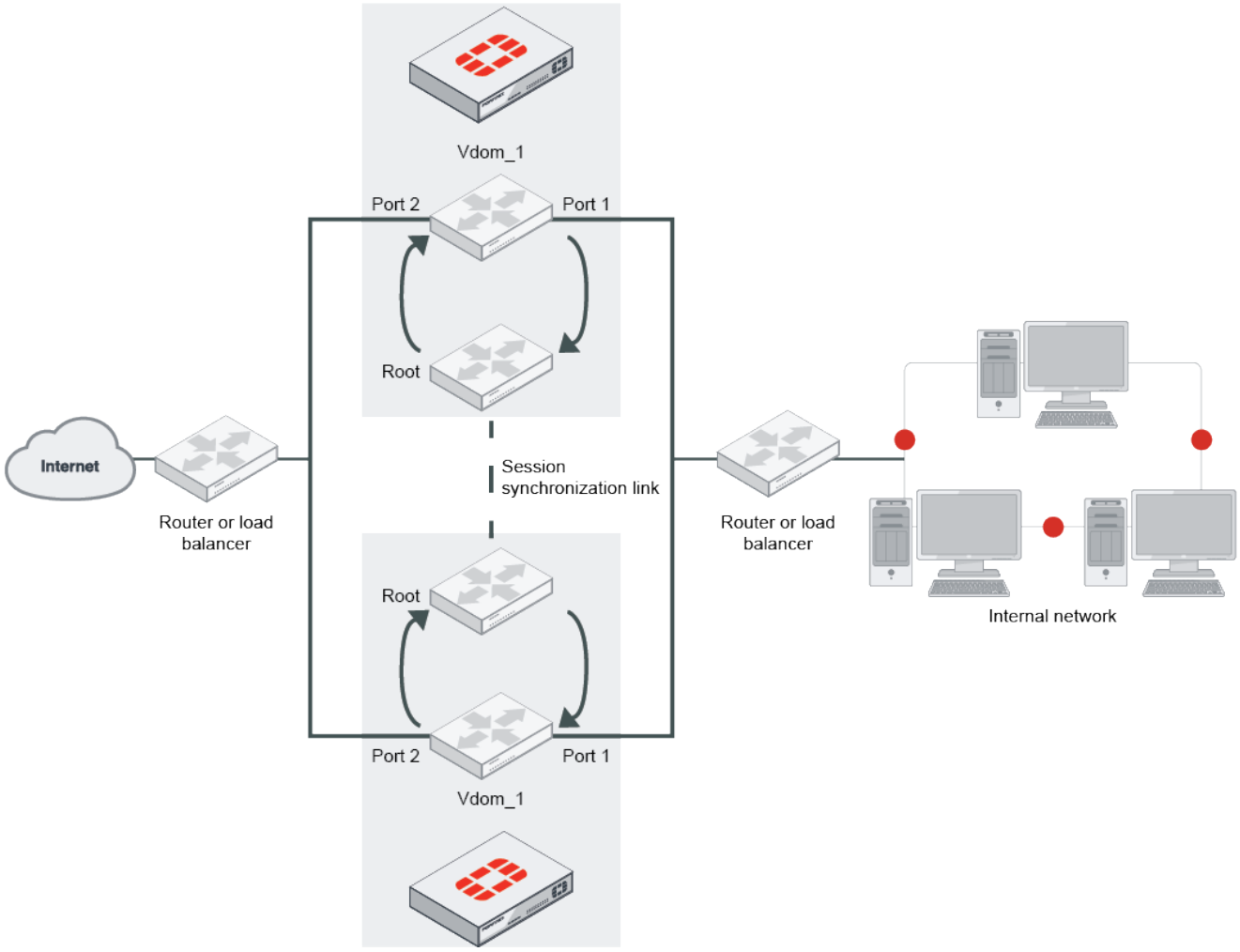
**To enable an SSD failure triggering HA fail over:**

```
config system ha
    set ssd-failover enable
end
```

## FGSP (session synchronization) peer setup

The FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) is a proprietary HA solution for only sharing sessions between two entities and is based on a peer-to-peer structure. The entities could be standalone FortiGates or an FGCP cluster.

Connect all necessary interfaces as per the topology diagram below. Interfaces may be changed depending on the models in use. Interface names in the topology diagram are for example purposes only.




**To setup an FGSP peer through the CLI:**

These instructions assume that the device has been connected to the console, the CLI is accessible, and that all FortiGates have been factory reset.

1. Connect all necessary interfaces as per the topology diagram.
2. Enter the following command to change the FortiGate unit host name:

```
config system global
    set hostname Example1_host(Example2_host, etc)
end
```

3. On each FGSP peer device, enter the following command:

```
config system cluster-sync
   set peerip xx.xx.xx.xx    --->> peer's interface IP for session info to be
passed.
end
```

4. Set up identical firewall policies.
   FGSP peers share the same session information which goes from the same incoming interface (example: port1) to the outgoing interface (example: port2). Firewall policies should be identical as well, and can be copied from one device to its peer.

**To test the setup:**

1. Initiate TCP traffic (like HTTP access) to go through *FortiGateA*.
2. Check the session information.
   For example:
   ```
   diagnose sys session filter src xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (your PCs IP)
   diagnose sys session list
   ```
3. Use the same command on *FortiGateB* to determine if the same session information appeared.

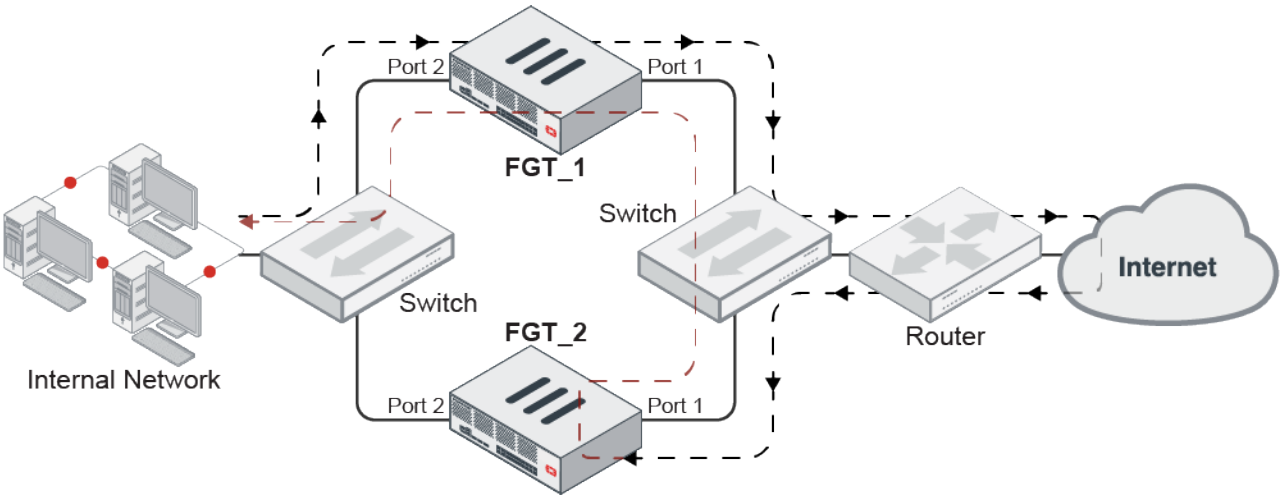
## UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic in FGSP

When traffic passes asymmetrically through FGSP peers, UTM inspection can be supported by always forwarding traffic back to the session owner for processing. The session owner is the FortiGate that receives the first packet of the session.

In this example, traffic from the internal network first hits FGT_1, but the return traffic is routed to FGT_2. Consequently, traffic bounces from FGT_2 port1 to FGT_1 port1 using FGT_1's MAC address. Traffic is then inspected by FGT_1.

This example requires the following settings:

- The internal and outgoing interfaces of both FortiGates in the FGSP pair are in the same subnet.
- Both peers have layer 2 access with each other.



**To configure FTG_1:**

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_2:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.2
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 0
    set layer2-connection available
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure FTG_2:**

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_1:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.1
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
    set layer2-connection available
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Results

Capture packets on FGT_2 to see that traffic bounced from FGT_2 to FGT_1 over the traffic interface.

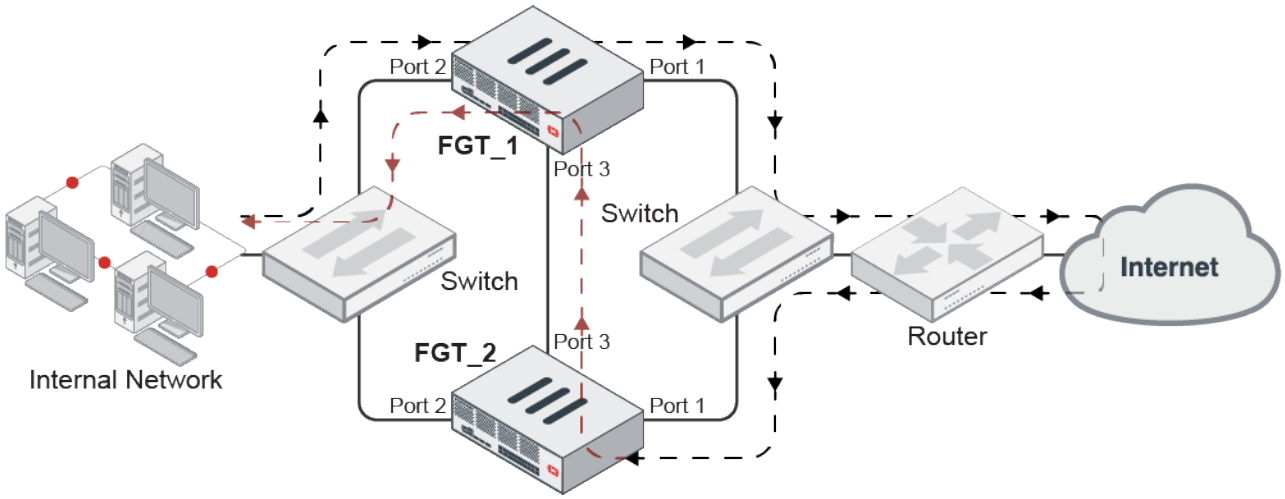
```
FGT_2 # diagnose sniffer packet any 'host 10.1.100.15 and host 172.6.200.55' 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 10.1.100.15 and host 172.16.200.55]
91.803816 port1 in 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800480 port1 in 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800486 port1 out 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800816 port1 in 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
92.800818 port1 out 172.16.200.55.80 -> 10.1.100.15.40008: syn 2572073713 ack 261949279
```

## UTM inspection on asymmetric traffic on L3

When traffic passes asymmetrically through FGSP peers, UTM inspection can be supported by always forwarding traffic back to the session owner for processing. The session owner is the FortiGate that receives the first packet of the session.

For networks where L2 connectivity is not available, such as cloud environments, traffic bound for the session owner are forwarded through the peer interface using a UDP connection.

In this example, traffic from the internal network first hits FGT_1, but the return traffic is routed to FGT_2. Consequently, return traffic is packed and sent from FGT_2 to FGT_1 using UDP encapsulation between two peer interfaces (port 3). Traffic is then inspected by FGT_1.




**To configure FTG_1:**

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_2:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.2
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 0
    set layer2-connection unavailable
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure FTG_2:**

1. Configure the cluster, setting the peer IP to the IP address of FGT_1:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.2.2.1
    next
end
```

2. Configure FGSP cluster attributes:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
    set layer2-connection unavailable
    unset session-sync-dev
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "default"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Encryption for L3 on asymmetric traffic in FGSP

In scenarios where asymmetric routing between FGSP members occurs, the return traffic can be encrypted and routed back to the session owner on Layer 3 (L3).

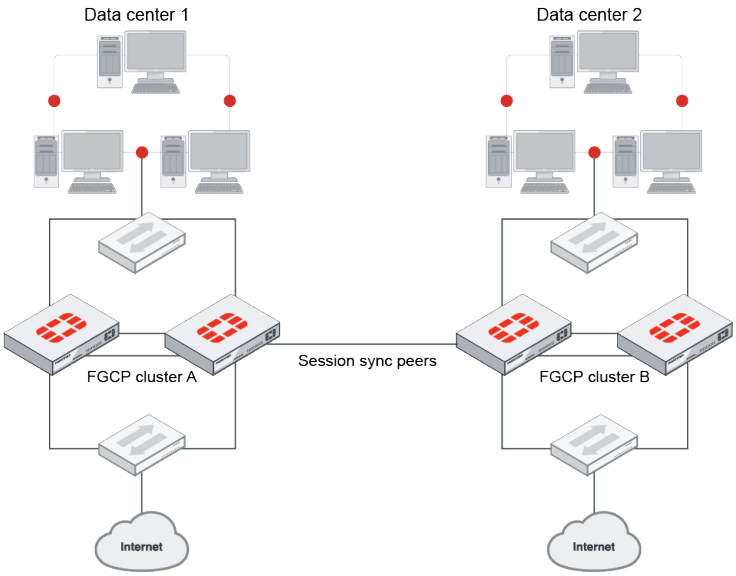
**To encrypt L3 traffic in FGSP:**

1. Run the following on both FortiGates:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set encryption enable
    set psksecret xxxxxxxxx
end
```

## Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters

Synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters is useful when data centers in different locations are used for load-balancing, and traffic must be shared and flow freely based on demand.




There are some limitations when synchronizing sessions between FGCP clusters:

- All FortiGates must have the same model and generation, hardware configuration, and FortiOS version.
- Currently, a total of 16 clusters can share sessions.

**To configure session synchronization between two clusters:**

1. Configure the two clusters (see HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713 or HA active-active cluster setup on page 715).
2. On cluster A, configure the peer IP for the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port5"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
    next
end
```

   In this example, cluster A uses port5 and its IP address, 10.10.10.1, is reachable from another cluster.
3. On cluster A, configure cluster and session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.10.10.2
    next
end
```

4. On cluster A, configure additional FGSP attributes as needed:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 0
    set session-sync-dev <interface>
end
```

   The `standalone-group-id` must match between FGSP members. The `group-member-id` is unique for each FGCP cluster. `session-sync-dev` is an optional command to specify the interfaces to sync sessions.

5. On cluster B, configure the peer IP for the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port5"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh snmp http telnet
    next
end
```

In this example, cluster B uses port5 and its IP address, 10.10.10.2, is reachable from another cluster.

6. On cluster B, configure cluster and session synchronization:

```
config system cluster-sync
    edit 1
        set peerip 10.10.10.1
    next
end
```

7. On cluster B, configure additional FGSP attributes as needed:

```
config system standalone-cluster
    set standalone-group-id 1
    set group-member-id 1
    set session-sync-dev <interface>
end
```

## Using standalone configuration synchronization

You can configure synchronization from one standalone FortiGate to another standalone FortiGate (`standalone-config-sync`). With the exception of some configurations that do not sync (settings that identify the FortiGate to the network), the rest of the configurations are synced, such as firewall policies, firewall addresses, and UTM profiles.

This option is useful in situations when you need to set up FGSP peers, or when you want to quickly deploy several FortiGates with the same configurations. You can set up `standalone-config-sync` for multiple members.



`standalone-config-sync` is an independent feature and should be used with caution as there are some limitations. We recommend disabling it once the configurations have been synced over.

### Limitations

When standalone configuration synchronization is enabled, there are some limitations, including but not limited to the following:

- Network interruptions occur during firmware upgrades: when upgrading the firmware, all members in the `standalone-config-sync` group are upgraded simultaneously. This creates downtime if the FortiGates are the only outgoing gateway in the network. We recommend disabling the option before upgrading firmware.
- Some unwanted configurations might be synced: the current design and implementation of `standalone-config-sync` is based on requirements from specific customers. Thus, some users may find that unwanted parts of the configurations are synced. Should this occur, we recommend disabling the option and modifying those configurations manually.
- The wrong primary device might be selected accidentally: `standalone-config-sync` is derived from the HA primary unit selection mechanism. All members in the group will join the selection process in the same way as a the

HA cluster selection process. It is important to select the correct device as the primary, otherwise the wrong device could be selected and existing configurations could be overwritten.

- Layer 2 heartbeat connections must be present: similar to HA heartbeat requirements, one or more layer 2 heartbeat connections are needed to sync configurations between the primary and secondary devices.

## Setting up standalone configuration synchronization

Two or more standalone FortiGates should be connected to each other with one or more heartbeat interfaces, either back-to-back or via a switch. In the following example, the device supplying the configurations is called "conf-prim," and the devices receiving the configurations are called "conf-secos."




**To set up standalone configuration synchronization:**

1. Configure the conf-prim device for the group:

```
config system ha
    set hbdev ha1 50 ha2 100
    set priority 255
    set override enable
    set standalone-config-sync enable
end
```

2. Configure the conf-prim device as needed to be functional.
3. Configure the other group members as conf-secos:

```
config system ha
    set standalone-config-sync enable
end
```

4. Wait 10–15 minutes for the configurations to sync over.
5. Verify the synchronization status:

```
# get system ha status
...
Configuration Status:
  FG201E4Q17900771(updated 3 seconds ago): out-of-sync
  FG201ETK19900991(updated 1 seconds ago): in-sync
...
```

If all members are `in-sync`, this means all members share the same configurations, except those that should not be synced. If any members are `out-of-sync`, this means the member failed to sync with the primary device.



Debugging is similar when a cluster is out of sync.

## Troubleshoot an HA formation

The following are requirements for setting up an HA cluster or FGSP peers.

Cluster members must have:

- The same model.
- The same hardware configuration.
- The same connections.
- The same generation.



The requirement to have the same generation is done as a best practice as it avoids issues that can occur later on. If you are unsure if the FortiGates are from the same generation, please contact customer service.

**Troubleshooting common HA formation errors**

**One member keeps shutting down during HA setup (hard drive failure):**

If one member has a hard drive failure but the other does not, the one with the hard drive failure will be shut down during HA setup. In this case, RMA the member to resolve the issue.

**All members are primaries and members can't see other members:**

Typically, this is a heartbeat issue. It is recommended that for a two-member cluster, you use a back-to-back connection for heartbeat communication. If there are more than three members in the cluster, a separate switch should be used to connect all heartbeat interfaces.

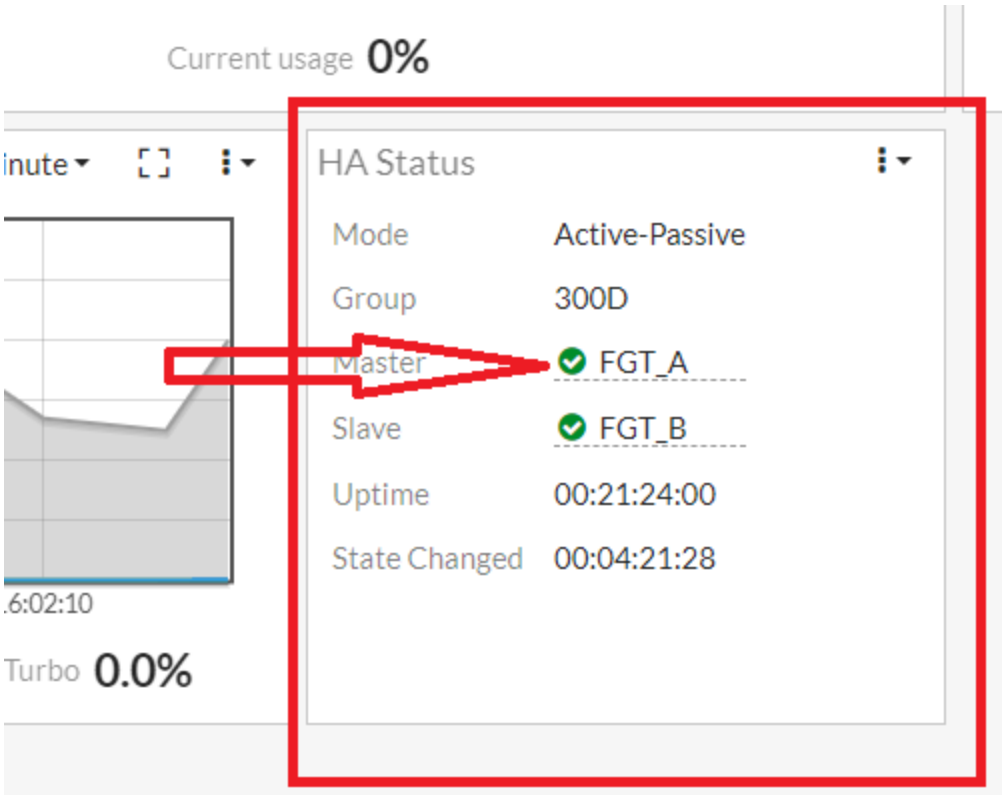
## Check HA sync status

The HA sync status can be viewed in the GUI through either a widget on the *Dashboard* or on the *System* > *HA* page. It can also be confirmed through the CLI. When a cluster is out of sync, administrators should correct the issue as soon as possible as it affects the configuration integrity and can cause issues to occur.

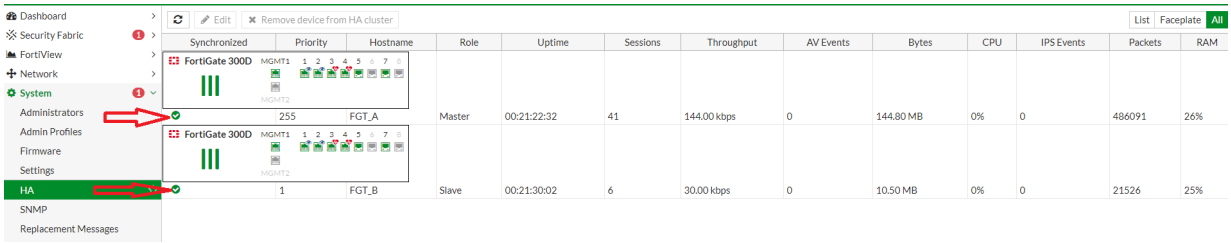
**HA sync status in the GUI**

- Dashboard widget:
  - Following HA setup, the *HA Status* widget can be added to the *Dashboard*. The widget shows the HA sync status by displaying a green checkmark next to each member in sync. A red mark indicates the member is out

of sync.




- *System* > *HA* page:
  - The same set of icons will be displayed on the *System* > *HA* page to indicate if the member is in sync.




**HA sync status in the CLI**

In the CLI, run the `get system ha status` command to see if the cluster is in sync. The sync status is reported under *Configuration Status*.

## Disabling stateful SCTP inspection

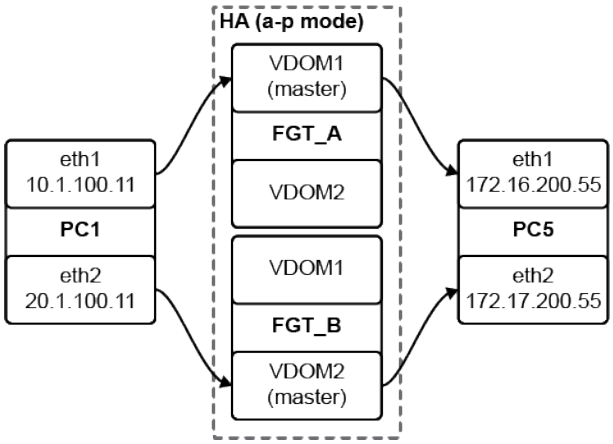
There is an option in FortiOS to disable stateful SCTP inspection. This option is useful when FortiGates are deployed in a high availability (HA) cluster that uses the FortiGate Clustering Protocol (FGCP) and virtual clustering in a multihoming topology. In this configuration, the primary stream control transmission protocol (SCTP) path traverses the primary FortiGate node by using its active VDOM (for example, VDOM1), and the backup SCTP path traverses the other passive FortiGate node by using its active VDOM (for example, VDOM2).

When stateful SCTP inspection is enabled, SCTP heartbeat traffic fails by means of the backup path because the primary path goes through a different platform and VDOM. Since there is no state sharing between VDOMs, the passive FortiGate is unaware of the original SCTP session and drops the heartbeats because of no associated sessions. When stateful SCTP inspection is disabled, the passive node permits the SCTP heartbeats to pass.

When set to `enable`, SCTP session creation without SCTP INIT is enabled. When set to `disable`, SCTP session creation without SCTP INIT is disabled (this is the default setting):

```
config system settings
   set sctp-session-without-init {enable | disable}
end
```

The following is an example topology and scenario:




In this example, FGT_A and FGT_B are in HA a-p mode with two virtual clusters. Two primaries exist on different FortiGate units. PC1 eth1 can access PC5 eth1 through VDOM1, and PC1 eth2 can access PC5 eth2 through VDOM2.

On PC5, to listen for an SCTP connection:

```
sctp_darn -H 172.16.200.55 -B 172.17.200.55 -P 2500 -l
```

On PC1, to start an SCTP connection:

```
sctp_darn -H 10.1.100.11 -B 20.1.100.11 -P 2600 -c 172.16.200.55 -c 172.17.200.55 -p 2500
     -s
```

An SCTP four-way handshake is on one VDOM, and a session is created on that VDOM. With the default configuration, there is no session on any other VDOM, and the heartbeat on another path (another VDOM) is dropped. After enabling `sctp-session-without-init`, the other VDOM creates the session when it receives the heartbeat, and the heartbeat is forwarded:

```
config system settings
  set sctp-session-without-init enable
end
```

## Upgrading FortiGates in an HA cluster

You can upgrade the firmware on an HA cluster in the same way as on a standalone FortiGate. During a firmware upgrade, the cluster upgrades the primary unit and all of the subordinate units to the new firmware image.



Before upgrading a cluster, back up your configuration (Configuration backups on page 112), schedule a maintenance window, and make sure that you are using a supported upgrade path (https://docs.fortinet.com/upgrade-tool).

### Uninterrupted upgrade

An uninterrupted upgrade occurs without interrupting communication in the cluster.

To upgrade the cluster firmware without interrupting communication, the following steps are followed. These steps are transparent to the user and the network, and might result in the cluster selecting a new primary unit.

1. The administrator uploads a new firmware image using the GUI or CLI. See Firmware on page 660 for details.
2. The firmware is upgraded on all of the subordinate units.
3. A new primary unit is selected from the upgraded subordinates.
4. The firmware is upgraded on the former primary unit.
5. Primary unit selection occurs, according to the standard primary unit selection process.

If all of the subordinate units crash or otherwise stop responding during the upgrade process, the primary unit will continue to operate normally, and will not be upgraded until at least one subordinate rejoins the cluster.

### Interrupted upgrade

An interrupted upgrade upgrades all cluster members at the same time. This takes less time than an uninterrupted upgrade, but it interrupts communication in the cluster. Interrupted upgrade is disabled by default.

**To enable interrupted upgrade:**

```
config system ha
    set uninterruptible-upgrade disable
end
```

## HA cluster setup examples

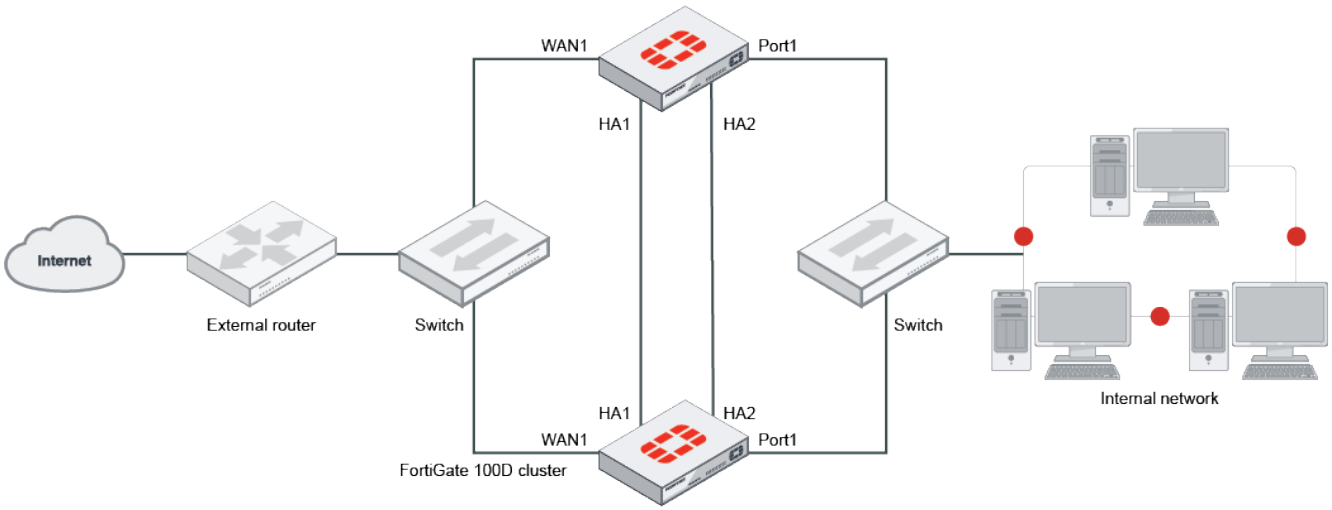
The following examples provide instructions on HA cluster setup:

- HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713
- HA active-active cluster setup on page 715
- HA virtual cluster setup on page 717
- HA using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch on page 719

### HA active-passive cluster setup

An HA Active-Passive (A-P) cluster can be set up using the GUI or CLI.

This example uses the following network topology:

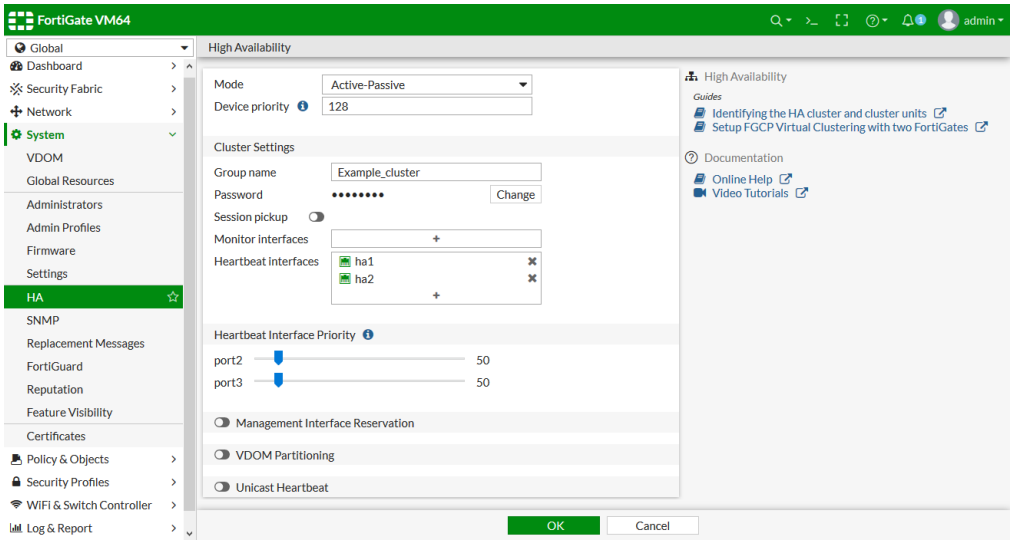



**To set up an HA A-P cluster using the GUI:**

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Go to *System* > *HA* and set the following options:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mode | Active-Passive |
| Device priority | 128 or higher |
| Group name | Example_cluster |
| Heartbeat interfaces | ha1 and ha2 |

Except for the device priority, these settings must be the same on all FortiGates in the cluster.




4. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. Connectivity with the FortiGate may be temporarily lost as the HA cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate's interfaces.

6. Factory reset the other FortiGate that will be in the cluster, configure GUI access, then repeat steps 1 to 5, omitting setting the device priority, to join the cluster.

**To set up an HA A-P cluster using the CLI:**

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Change the hostname of the FortiGate:

```
config system global
    set hostname Example1_host
end
```

   Changing the host name makes it easier to identify individual cluster units in the cluster operations.
4. Enable HA:

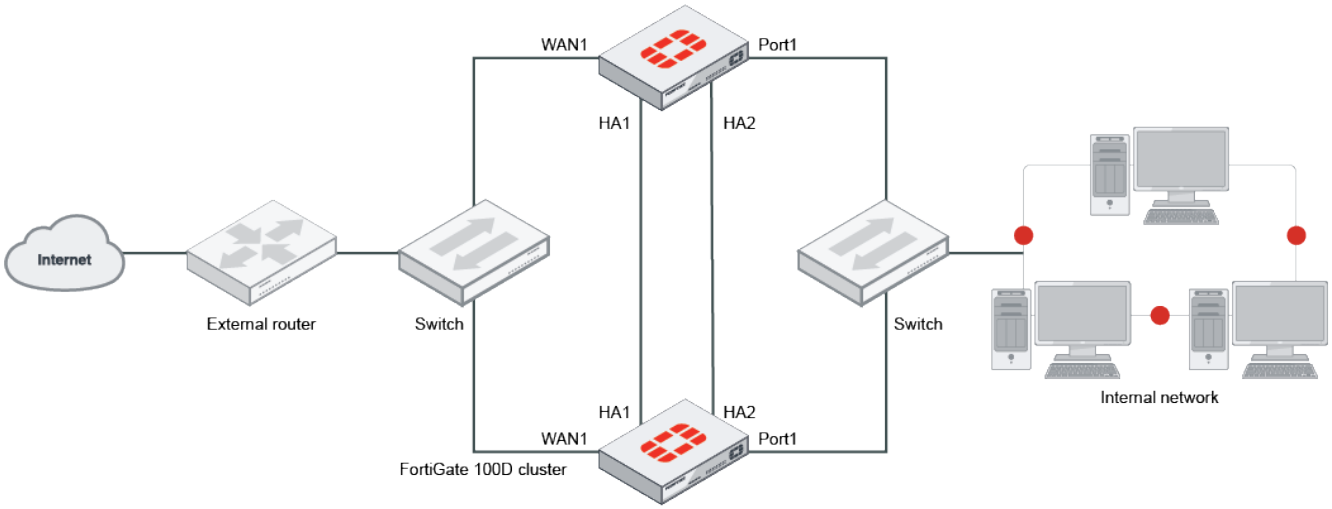
```
config system ha
    set mode a-p
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

5. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 on the other FortiGate devices to join the cluster.

## HA active-active cluster setup

An HA Active-Active (A-A) cluster can be set up using the GUI or CLI.

This example uses the following network topology:



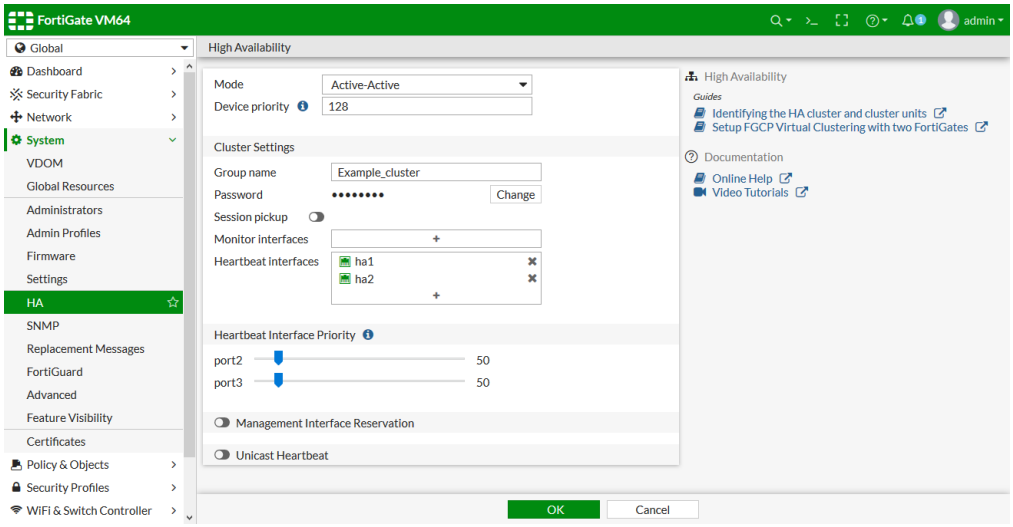

**To set up an HA A-A cluster using the GUI:**

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.

3. Go to *System* > *HA* and set the following options:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mode | Active-Active |
| Device priority | 128 or higher |
| Group name | Example_cluster |
| Heartbeat interfaces | ha1 and ha2 |

Except for the device priority, these settings must be the same on all FortiGates in the cluster.




4. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. Connectivity with the FortiGate may be temporarily lost as the HA cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate's interfaces.
6. Factory reset the other FortiGate that will be in the cluster, configure GUI access, then repeat steps 1 to 5, omitting setting the device priority, to join the cluster.

### To set up an HA A-A cluster using the CLI:

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.
3. Change the hostname of the FortiGate:

```
config system global
    set hostname Example1_host
end
```

   Changing the host name makes it easier to identify individual cluster units in the cluster operations.
4. Enable HA:

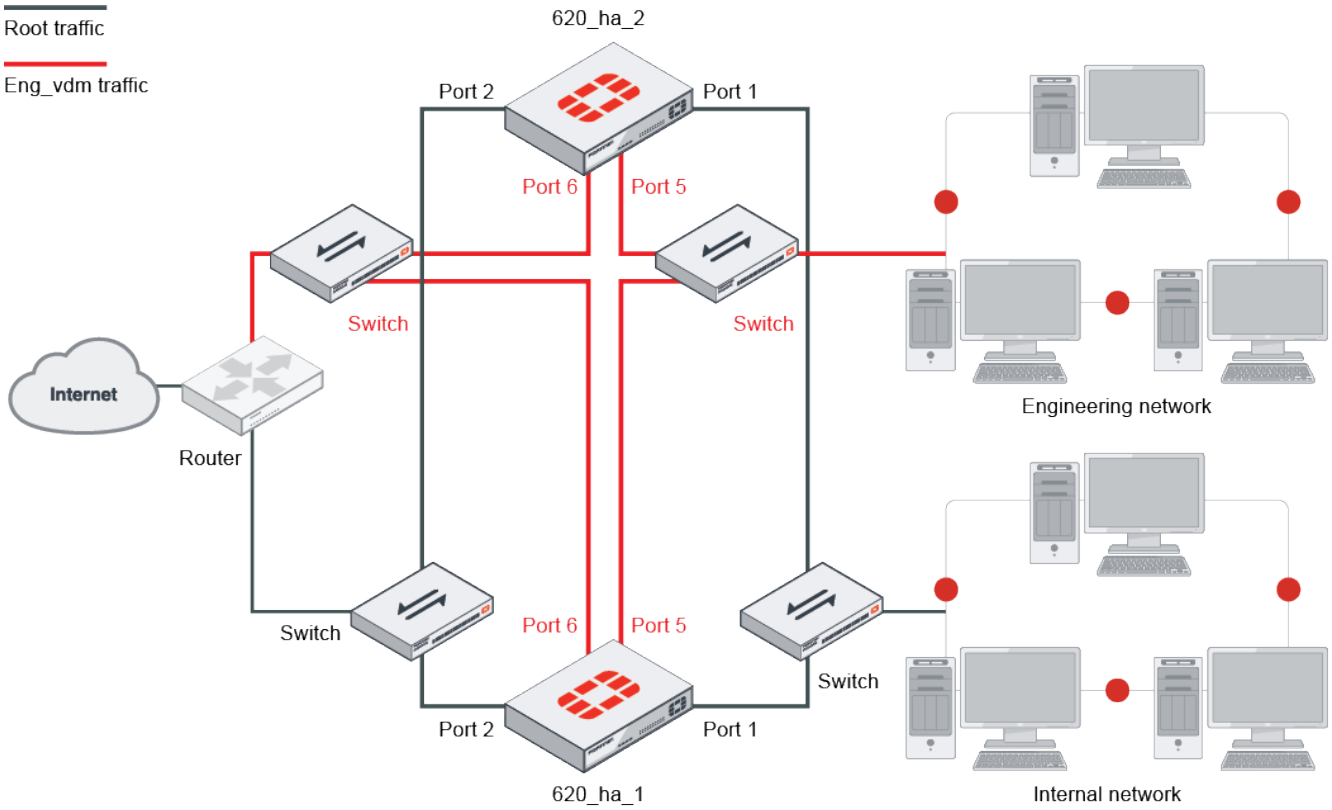
```
config system ha
    set mode a-a
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

5. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 on the other FortiGate devices to join the cluster.

## HA virtual cluster setup

An HA virtual cluster can be set up using the GUI or CLI.

This example uses the following network topology:




HA virtual clusters are based on VDOMs and are more complicated than regular clusters.

The root VDOM can only be associated with virtual cluster 1.

The VDOM that is assigned as the management VDOM can also only be associated with virtual cluster 1.

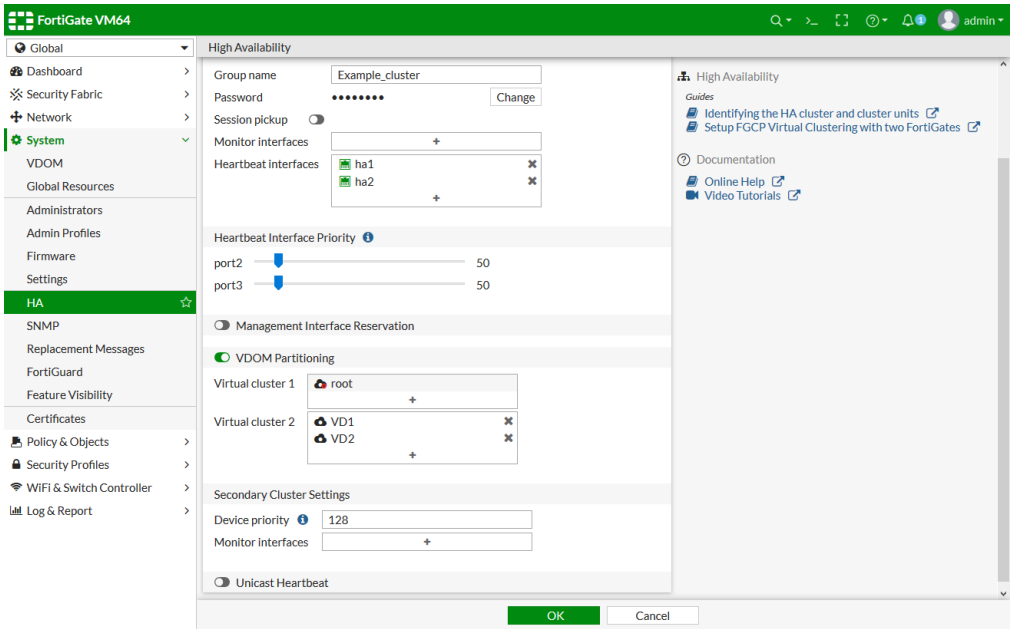
**To set up an HA virtual cluster using the GUI:**

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Log into one of the FortiGates.

3. Go to *System* > *HA* and set the following options:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mode | Active-Passive |
| Device priority | 128 or higher |
| Group name | Example_cluster |
| Heartbeat interfaces | ha1 and ha2 |

   Except for the device priority, these settings must be the same on all FortiGates in the cluster.
4. Leave the remaining settings as their default values. They can be changed after the cluster is in operation.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate negotiates to establish an HA cluster. Connectivity with the FortiGate may be temporarily lost as the HA cluster negotiates and the FGCP changes the MAC addresses of the FortiGate's interfaces.
6. Factory reset the other FortiGate that will be in the cluster, configure GUI access, then repeat steps 1 to 5, omitting setting the device priority, to join the cluster.
7. Go to *System* > *Settings* and enable *Virtual Domains*.
8. Click *Apply*. You will be logged out of the FortiGate.
9. Log back into the FortiGate, ensure that you are in the global VDOM, and go to *System* > *VDOM*.
10. Create two new VDOMs, such as VD1 and VD2:
    a. Click *Create New*. The *New Virtual Domain* page opens.
    b. Enter a name for the VDOM in the *Virtual Domain* field, then click *OK* to create the VDOM.
    c. Repeat these steps to create a second new VDOM.
11. Implement a virtual cluster by moving the new VDOMs to *Virtual cluster 2*:
    a. Go to *System* > *HA*.
    b. Enable *VDOM Partitioning*.
    c. Click on the *Virtual cluster 2* field and select the new VDOMs.




    d. Click *OK*.

**To set up an HA virtual cluster using the CLI:**

1. Make all the necessary connections as shown in the topology diagram.
2. Set up a regular A-P cluster. See HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713.
3. Enable VDOMs:

```
config system global
    set vdom-mode multi-vdom
end
```

   You will be logged out of the FortiGate.
4. Create two VDOMs:

```
config vdom
    edit VD1
    next
    edit VD2
    next
end
```

5. Reconfigure the HA settings to be a virtual cluster:

```
config global
    config system ha
        set vcluster2 enable
        config secondary-vcluster
            set vdom "VD1" "VD2"
        end
    end
end
```

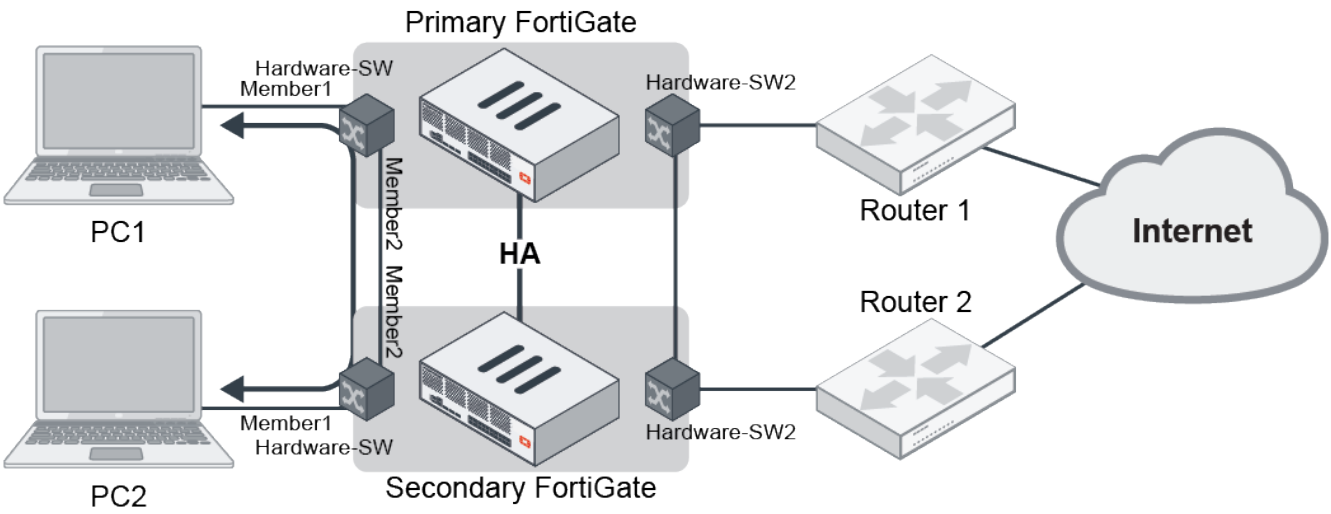
## HA using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch

Using a hardware switch to replace a physical switch is not recommended, as it offers no redundancy or interface monitoring.

- If one FortiGate loses power, all of the clients connected to that FortiGate device cannot go to another device until that FortiGate recovers.
- A hardware switch cannot be used as a monitor interface in HA. Any incoming or outgoing link failures on hardware member interfaces will not trigger failover; this can affect traffic.

## Examples

The examples use the following topology:




## Traffic between hardware switches

When using Hardware switch in HA environment, a client device connected to the hardware switch on the primary FortiGate can communicate with client devices connected to the hardware switch on secondary FortiGates as long as there is a direct connection between the two switches.

No configuration is required after setting up the hardware switches. If a client connected to both of the hardware switches needs to reach destinations outside of the cluster, the firewall must be configured for it.

**To configure the FortiGate devices:**

1. Connect the devices as shown in the topology diagram.
2. On each FortiGate, configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-a
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

3. On the primary FortiGate, configure the hardware switch:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit Hardware-SW
        set physical-switch sw0
        config port
            edit port3
            next
            edit port5
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. On each FortiGate, configure the IP addresses on the hardware switches:

```
config system interface
    edit Hardware-SW
        set ip 6.6.6.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping ssh http https
    next
end
```

After configuring the hardware switches, PC1 and PC2 can now communicate with each other.

## Traffic passes through FortiGate

If client device needs to send traffic through the FortiGate, additional firewall configuration on the FortiGate is required.

All traffic from the hardware switches on either the primary or secondary FortiGate reaches the primary FortiGate first. The traffic is then directed according to the HA mode and firewall configuration.

### To configure the FortiGate devices:

1. Connect the devices as shown in the topology diagram.
2. On each FortiGate, configure HA:

```
config system ha
    set mode a-a
    set group-name Example_cluster
    set hbdev ha1 10 ha2 20
end
```

3. On the primary FortiGate, configure the hardware switch:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit Hardware-SW
        set physical-switch sw0
        config port
            edit port3
            next
            edit port5
            next
        end
    next
    edit Hardware-SW2
        set physical-switch sw0
        config port
            edit port1
            next
        end
    next
end
```

4. On each FortiGate, configure the IP addresses on the hardware switch:

```
config system interface
    edit Hardware-SW
        set ip 6.6.6.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping ssh http https
    next
    edit Hardware-SW2
```

```
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping ssh http https
    next
end
```

5. On each FortiGate, configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf Hardware-SW
        set dstintf Hardware-SW2
        set srcaddr all
        set dstaddr all
        set service ALL
        set action accept
        set schedule always
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

6. On each FortiGate, configure a static route:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set device Hardware-SW2
        set gateway 172.16.200.254
    next
end
```

Traffic from PC1 and PC2 can now reach destinations outside of the FortiGate cluster.

## Routing data over the HA management interface

In an HA environment, the `ha-direct` option allows data from services such as syslog, FortiAnalyzer, FortiManager, SNMP, and NetFlow to be routed over the outgoing interface.

The following example shows how NetFlow data can be routed over the HA management interface mgmt1.

**To route NetFlow data over the HA management interface:**

1. On the primary unit (FortiGate A), configure the HA and mgmt1 interface settings:

```
(global) # config system ha
    set group-name "test-ha"
    set mode a-p
    set password ENC
    set hbdev "port6" 50
    set hb-interval 4
    set hb-lost-threshold 10
    set session-pickup enable
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface "mgmt1"
        next
    end
```

```
    set override enable
    set priority 200
    set ha-direct enable
end
```

```
(global) # config system interface
    edit "mgmt1"
        set ip 10.6.30.111 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http telnet fgfm
        set type physical
        set dedicated-to management
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
```

2. On the secondary unit (FortiGate B), configure the HA and mgmt1 interface settings:

```
(global) # config system ha
    set group-name "test-ha"
    set mode a-p
    set password ENC
    set hbdev "port6" 50
    set hb-interval 4
    set hb-lost-threshold 10
    set session-pickup enable
    set ha-mgmt-status enable
    config ha-mgmt-interfaces
        edit 1
            set interface "mgmt1"
        next
    end
    set override enable
    set priority 100
    set ha-direct enable
end
```

```
(global) # config system interface
    edit "mgmt1"
        set ip 10.6.30.112 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping https ssh http telnet fgfm
        set type physical
        set dedicated-to management
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 1
    next
end
```

3. On the primary unit (FortiGate A), configure the NetFlow setting:

```
(global) # config system netflow
    set collector-ip 10.6.30.59
end
```

4. Verify that NetFlow uses the mgmt1 IP:

```
(global) # diagnose test application sflowd 3
```

5. Verify that the NetFlow packets are being sent by the mgmt1 IP:

```
(vdom1) # diagnose sniffer packet any 'udp and port 2055' 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[udp and port 2055]
8.397265 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.111.1992 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
23.392175 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.111.1992 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 188
23.392189 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.111.1992 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
^C
3 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

6. On the secondary device (FortiGate B), change the priority so that it becomes the primary:

```
(global) # config system ha
    set priority 250
end
```

7. Verify the NetFlow status on FortiGate A, which is using the new primary's mgmt1 IP:

```
(global) # diagnose test application sflowd 3
```

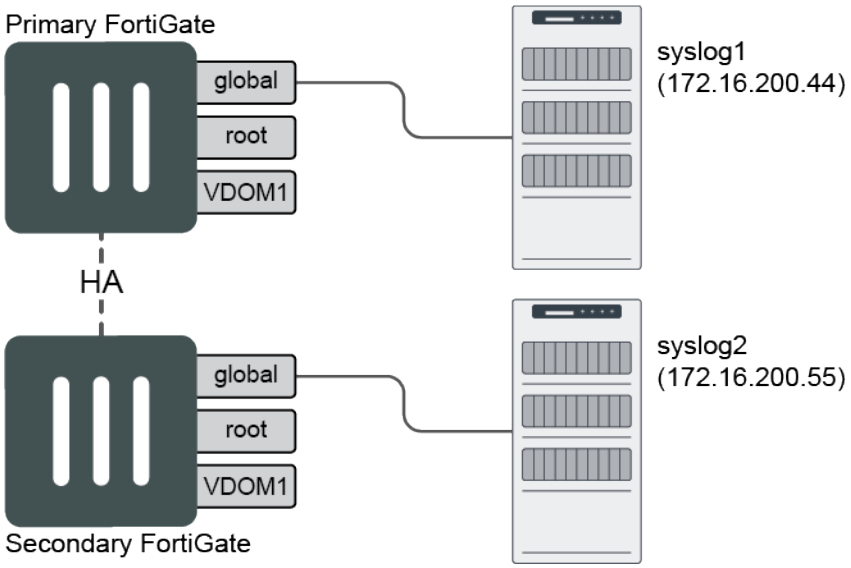
8. Verify that the NetFlow packets use the new source IP on FortiGate B:

```
(vdom1) # diagnose sniffer packet any 'udp and port 2055' 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[udp and port 2055]
7.579574 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.112.3579 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
22.581830 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.112.3579 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 60
29.038336 mgmt1 out 10.6.30.112.3579 -> 10.6.30.59.2055: udp 1140
^C
3 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

## Override FortiAnalyzer and syslog server settings

In an HA cluster, secondary devices can be configured to use different FortiAnalyzer devices and syslog servers than the primary device. VDOMs can also override global syslog server settings.

## Configure a different syslog server on a secondary HA device




**To configure the primary HA device:**

1. Configure a global syslog server:

```
config global
    config log syslog setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.44
        set facility local6
        set format default
    end
end
```

2. Set up a VDOM exception to enable setting the global syslog server on the secondary HA device:

```
config global
    config system vdom-exception
        edit 1
            set object log.syslogd.setting
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure the secondary HA device:**

1. Configure a global syslog server:

```
config global
    config log syslogd setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.55
        set facility local5
    end
end
```

2. After the primary and secondary device synchronize, generate logs on the secondary device.

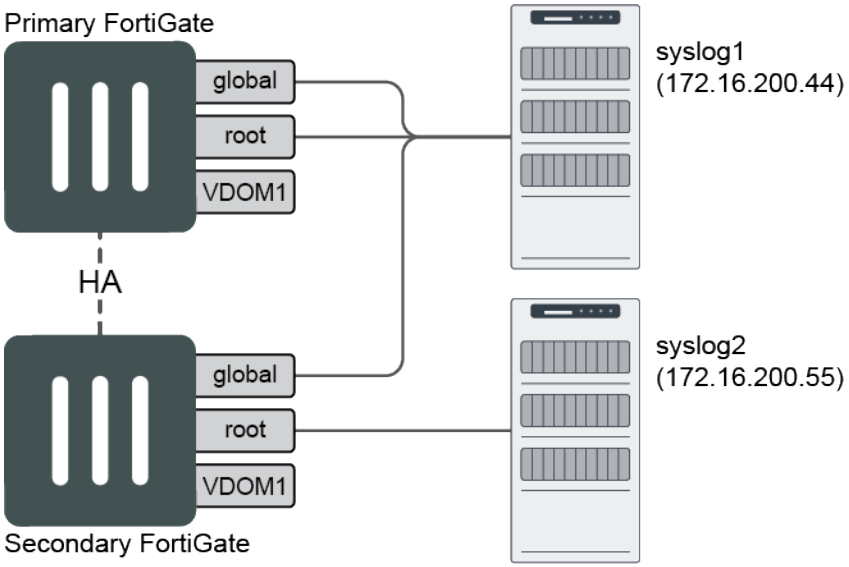
**To confirm that logs are been sent to the syslog server configured on the secondary device:**

1. On the primary device, retrieve the following packet capture from the secondary device's syslog server:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any "host 172.16.200.55" 6
interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 172.16.200.55]

266.859494 port2 out 172.16.200.2.7434 -> 172.16.200.55.514: udp 278
0x0000   0000 0000 0000 0009 0f09 0004 0800 4500        ..............E.
0x0010   0132 f3c7 0000 4011 9d98 ac10 c802 ac10        .2....@.........
0x0020   c837 1d0a 0202 011e 4b05 3c31 3734 3e64        .7......K.<174>d
0x0030   6174 653d 3230 3230 2d30 332d 3134 2074        ate=2020-03-14.t
0x0040   696d 653d 3132 3a30 303a 3035 2064 6576        ime=12:00:05.dev
0x0050   6e61 6d65 3d22 466f 7274 6947 6174 652d        name="FGT-81E-Sl
0x0060   3831 455f 4122 2064 6576 6964 3d22 4647        ave-A".devid="FG
0x0070   5438 3145 3451 3136 3030 3030 3438 2220        T81E4Q16000048".
0x0080   6c6f 6769 643d 2230 3130 3030 3230 3032        logid="010002002
0x0090   3722 2074 7970 653d 2265 7665 6e74 2220        7".type="event".
0x00a0   7375 6274 7970 653d 2273 7973 7465 6d22        subtype="system"
0x00b0   206c 6576 656c 3d22 696e 666f 726d 6174        .level="informat
0x00c0   696f 6e22 2076 643d 2276 646f 6d31 2220        ion".vd="vdom1".
0x00d0   6576 656e 7474 696d 653d 3135 3834 3231        eventtime=158421
0x00e0   3234 3035 3835 3938 3335 3639 3120 747a        2405859835691.tz
0x00f0   3d22 2d30 3730 3022 206c 6f67 6465 7363        ="-0700".logdesc
0x0100   3d22 4f75 7464 6174 6564 2072 6570 6f72        ="Outdated.repor
0x0110   7420 6669 6c65 7320 6465 6c65 7465 6422        t.files.deleted"
0x0120   206d 7367 3d22 4465 6c65 7465 2031 206f        .msg="Delete.1.o
0x0130   6c64 2072 6570 6f72 7420 6669 6c65 7322        ld.report.files"
```

## Configure a different syslog server in the root VDOM on a secondary HA device



**To configure the primary HA device:**

1. Configure a global syslog server:

```
config global
    config log syslog setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.44
        set facility local6
        set format default
    end
end
```

2. Set up a VDOM exception to enable `syslog-override` in the secondary HA device root VDOM:

```
config global
    config system vdom-exception
        edit 1
            set object log.syslogd.override-setting
            set scope inclusive
            set vdom root
        next
    end
end
```

3. In the VDOM, enable `syslog-override` in the log settings, and set up the override syslog server:

```
config root
    config log setting
        set syslog-override enable
    end
    config log syslog override-setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.44
        set facility local6
        set format default
    end
end
```

After `syslog-override` is enabled, an override syslog server must be configured, as logs will not be sent to the global syslog server.

**To configure the secondary HA device:**

1. Configure an override syslog server in the root VDOM:

```
config root
    config log syslogd override-setting
        set status enable
        set server 172.16.200.55
        set facility local5
        set format default
    end
end
```

2. After the primary and secondary device synchronize, generate logs in the root VDOM on the secondary device.

**To confirm that logs are been sent to the syslog server configured for the root VDOM on the secondary device:**

1. On the primary device, retrieve the following packet capture from the syslog server configured in the root VDOM on the secondary device:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any "host 172.16.200.55" 6
interfaces=[any]
filters=[host 172.16.200.55]

156.759696 port2 out 172.16.200.2.1165 -> 172.16.200.55.514: udp 277
0x0000   0000 0000 0000 0009 0f09 0004 0800 4500        ..............E.
0x0010   0131 f398 0000 4011 9dc8 ac10 c802 ac10        .1....@.........
0x0020   c837 048d 0202 011d af5f 3c31 3734 3e64        .7......._<174>d
0x0030   6174 653d 3230 3230 2d30 332d 3134 2074        ate=2020-03-14.t
0x0040   696d 653d 3131 3a33 353a 3035 2064 6576        ime=11:35:05.dev
0x0050   6e61 6d65 3d22 466f 7274 6947 6174 652d        name="FGT-81E-Sl
0x0060   3831 455f 4122 2064 6576 6964 3d22 4647        ave-A".devid="FG
0x0070   5438 3145 3451 3136 3030 3030 3438 2220        T81E4Q16000048".
0x0080   6c6f 6769 643d 2230 3130 3030 3230 3032        logid="010002002
0x0090   3722 2074 7970 653d 2265 7665 6e74 2220        7".type="event".
0x00a0   7375 6274 7970 653d 2273 7973 7465 6d22        subtype="system"
0x00b0   206c 6576 656c 3d22 696e 666f 726d 6174        .level="informat
0x00c0   696f 6e22 2076 643d 2272 6f6f 7422 2065        ion".vd="root".e
0x00d0   7665 6e74 7469 6d65 3d31 3538 3432 3130        venttime=1584210
0x00e0   3930 3537 3539 3334 3132 3632 2074 7a3d        905759341262.tz=
0x00f0   222d 3037 3030 2220 6c6f 6764 6573 633d        "-0700".logdesc=
0x0100   224f 7574 6461 7465 6420 7265 706f 7274        "Outdated.report
0x0110   2066 696c 6573 2064 656c 6574 6564 2220        .files.deleted".
0x0120   6d73 673d 2244 656c 6574 6520 3220 6f6c        msg="Delete.2.ol
0x0130   6420 7265 706f 7274 2066 696c 6573 22          d.report.files"
```

## Force HA failover for testing and demonstrations



This command should only be used for testing, troubleshooting, maintenance, and demonstrations.

Do not use it in a live production environment outside of an active maintenance window.

HA failover can be forced on an HA primary device. The device will stay in a failover state regardless of the conditions. The only way to remove the failover status is by manually turning it off.

### Syntax

```
execute ha failover set <cluster_id>
execute ha failover unset <cluster_id>
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| `<cluster_id>` | The cluster ID is `1` for any cluster that is not in virtual cluster mode, and can be `1` or `2` if virtual cluster mode is enabled. |

## Example

### To manually force an HA failover:

```
# execute ha failover set 1
Caution: This command will trigger an HA failover.
It is intended for testing purposes.
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
```

### To view the failover status:

```
# execute ha failover status
failover status: set
```

### To view the system status of a device in forced HA failover:

```
# get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-300D
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 240
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 2:11:46
Cluster state change time: 2020-03-12 17:38:04
Master selected using:
    <2020/03/12 17:38:04> FGT3HD3914800153 is selected as the master because it has EXE_
FAIL_OVER flag set.
    <2020/03/12 15:27:26> FGT3HD3914800069 is selected as the master because it has the
largest value of override priority.
ses_pickup: disable
override: enable
Configuration Status:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 4 seconds ago): in-sync
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 3 seconds ago): in-sync
System Usage stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 4 seconds ago):
        sessions=5, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=30%
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 3 seconds ago):
        sessions=41, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/99%, memory=30%
HBDEV stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 4 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=15914162/42929/0/0,
tx=15681840/39505/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=17670346/52854/0/0,
tx=20198409/54692/0/0
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 3 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=16636700/45544/0/0,
tx=15529791/39512/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=20199928/54699/0/0,
tx=17672146/52862/0/0
Slave : FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800069, HA cluster index = 1
Master: FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800153, HA cluster index = 0
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: standby 169.254.0.1
```

```
Slave : FGT3HD3914800069, HA operating index = 1
Master: FGT3HD3914800153, HA operating index = 0
```

**To stop the failover status:**

```
# execute ha failover unset 1
Caution: This command may trigger an HA failover.
It is intended for testing purposes.
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
```

**To view the system status of a device after forced HA failover is disabled:**

```
# get system ha status
HA Health Status: OK
Model: FortiGate-300D
Mode: HA A-P
Group: 240
Debug: 0
Cluster Uptime: 0 days 2:14:55
Cluster state change time: 2020-03-12 17:42:17
Master selected using:
    <2020/03/12 17:42:17> FGT3HD3914800069 is selected as the master because it has the
largest value of override priority.
    <2020/03/12 17:38:04> FGT3HD3914800153 is selected as the master because it has EXE_
FAIL_OVER flag set.
    <2020/03/12 15:27:26> FGT3HD3914800069 is selected as the master because it has the
largest value of override priority.
ses_pickup: disable
override: enable
Configuration Status:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 3 seconds ago): in-sync
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 2 seconds ago): in-sync
System Usage stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 3 seconds ago):
        sessions=0, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=30%
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 2 seconds ago):
        sessions=38, average-cpu-user/nice/system/idle=0%/0%/0%/100%, memory=30%
HBDEV stats:
    FGT3HD3914800069(updated 3 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=16302442/43964/0/0,
tx=16053848/40454/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=18161941/54088/0/0,
tx=20615650/55877/0/0
    FGT3HD3914800153(updated 2 seconds ago):
        port3: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=17033009/46641/0/0,
tx=15907891/40462/0/0
        port5: physical/1000auto, up, rx-bytes/packets/dropped/errors=20617180/55881/0/0,
tx=18163135/54091/0/0
Master: FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800069, HA cluster index = 1
Slave : FortiGate-300D  , FGT3HD3914800153, HA cluster index = 0
number of vcluster: 1
vcluster 1: work 169.254.0.2
Master: FGT3HD3914800069, HA operating index = 0
Slave : FGT3HD3914800153, HA operating index = 1
```

# Querying autoscale clusters for FortiGate VM

When a FortiGate VM secondary device is added to a cluster, the new secondary member can query the cluster about its autoscale environment. FortiManager can then run this query on the new secondary member to update its autoscale record.

**To view cluster information from a secondary member:**

```
# diagnose sys ha checksum autoscale-cluster
```

## Cluster information sample

## Sample cloud topology:

```
FGT_BYOL; primary; 10.0.0.6; FGVM04TM00000066
FGT_BYOL; secondary; 10.0.0.7; FGVM00000000056
FGT_PAYG; secondary; 10.0.0.4; FGTAZ000000000CD
FGT_PAYG; secondary; 10.0.0.5; FGTAZ00000000003D
```

From the secondary device, you can see cluster checksums and the primary device:

```
# diagnose sys ha checksum autoscale-cluster
================== FGTAZ000000000CD ==================
is_autoscale_master()=0
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
================== FGVM04TM00000066 ==================
is_autoscale_master()=1
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
================== FGVM00000000056 ==================
is_autoscale_master()=0
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
================== FGTAZ00000000003D ==================
is_autoscale_master()=0
debugzone
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
```

```
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
checksum
global: 56 49 b3 02 f2 b7 5b 82 ec 2d c2 1a ff 80 8c 79
root: bf 18 cf 83 1e 04 c3 04 4c e4 66 bc 38 fe 3a dc
all: 77 06 d0 89 6e 06 c0 86 17 98 53 72 33 85 ae ff
```

**To get ha sync information from the secondary device:**

```
# get test hasync 50
autoscale_count=69. current_jiffies=41235125
    10.0.0.6, timeo=31430, serial_no=FGVM04TM19001766
    10.0.0.7, timeo=31430, serial_no=FGVM04TM19008156
    10.0.0.5, timeo=31430, serial_no=FGTAZR7UZRKKNR3D
```

# SNMP

SNMP enables you to monitor hardware on your network. You can configure the hardware, such as the FortiGate SNMP agent, to report system information and send traps (alarms or event messages) to SNMP managers. SNMP traps alert you to events that happen, such as when a log disk is full or a virus is detected.

The FortiGate SNMP implementation is read-only. SNMP v1/v2c, and v3 compliant SNMP managers have read-only access to FortiGate system information through queries, and can receive trap messages from the FortiGate unit.


- Interface access on page 732
- MIB files on page 733
- SNMP agent on page 733
- SNMP v1/v2c communities on page 734
- SNMP v3 users on page 736
- Important SNMP traps on page 737
- SNMP traps and query for monitoring DHCP pool on page 739


## Interface access

Before a remote SNMP manager can connect to the FortiGate SNMP agent, you must configure one or more FortiGate interfaces to accept SNMP connections.

**To configure a FortiGate interface to accept SNMP connections in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the interface.
3. In the *Administrative Access* options, enable *SNMP*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To configure a FortiGate interface to accept SNMP connections in the CLI:**

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
```

```
        append allowaccess snmp
        set snmp-index <integer>
        config ipv6
            append ip6-allowaccess snmp
        end
    next
end
```

## MIB files

The FortiGate SNMP agent supports Fortinet proprietary MIBs, as well as the parts of RFC 2665 and RFC 1213 that apply to FortiGate unit configuration.

Your SNMP manager may already include standard and private MIBs in a compiled database that is ready to use. You must add the Fortinet proprietary MIBs to this database to have access to Fortinet specific information.

| MIB file or RFC | Description |
|---|---|
| FORTINET-CORE-MIB.mib | The Fortinet core MIB includes all system configuration and trap information that is common to all Fortinet products.<br>Your SNMP manager requires this information to monitor Fortinet device settings and receive traps from the FortiGate SNMP agent. |
| FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB.mib | The FortiGate MIB includes all system configuration information and trap information that is specific to FortiGate units.<br>Your SNMP manager requires this information to monitor FortiGate settings and receive traps from the FortiGate SNMP agent. |
| RFC-1213 (MIB II) | The FortiGate SNMP agent supports MIB II groups with the following exceptions:<br>• No support for the EGP group from MIB II (RFC 1213, section 3.11 and 6.10).<br>• Protocol statistics returned for MIB II groups (IP/ICMP/TCP/UDP/etc.) do not accurately capture all Fortinet traffic activity. More accurate information can be obtained from the information reported by the Fortinet MIB. |
| RFC-2665 (Ethernet-like MIB) | The FortiGate SNMP agent supports Ethernet-like MIB information.<br>FortiGate SNMP does not support for the dot3Tests and dot3Errors groups. |

**To download the MIB files:**

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Click *Download FortiGate MIB File* and save the file to the management computer.
3. Click *Download Fortinet Core MIB File* and save the file to the management computer.

## SNMP agent

The SNMP agent sends SNMP traps originating on the FortiGate to an external monitoring SNMP manager defined in a SNMP community. The SNMP manager can monitor the FortiGate system to determine if it is operating properly, or if any critical events occurring.

The description, location, and contact information for this FortiGate system will be part of the information that the SNMP manager receives. This information is useful if the SNMP manager is monitoring many devices, and enables faster responses when the FortiGate system requires attention.

**To configure the SNMP agent in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Enable *SNMP Agent*.
3. Enter a description of the agent.
4. Enter the location of the FortiGate unit.
5. Enter a contact or administrator for the SNMP Agent or FortiGate unit.
6. Click *Apply*.

**To configure the SNMP agent in the CLI:**

```
config system snmp sysinfo
    set status enable
    set description <string>
    set contact-info <string>
    set location <string>
end
```

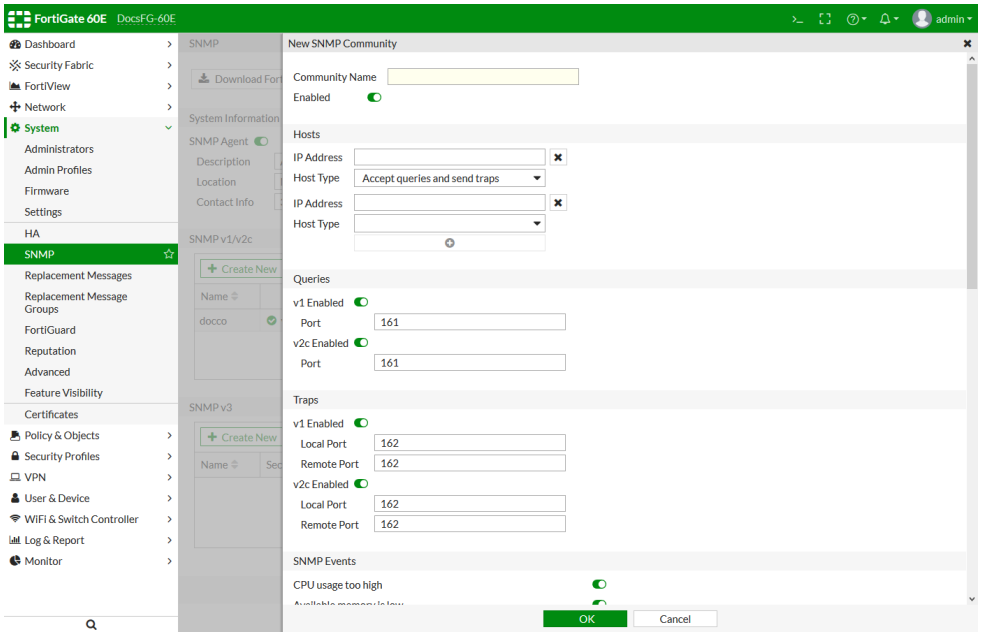
## SNMP v1/v2c communities

An SNMP community is a grouping of equipment for network administration purposes. A single device can belong to multiple communities.

You must add an SNMP community to the FortiGate so that the SNMP manager can receive traps and system information. Up to three communities can be added.

### To create a n SNMP v1/v2c community in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. In the *SNMP v1/v2c* table, click *Create New*.




3. Enter a *Community Name* and enable the community.
4. In the *Hosts* section, enter the *IP Address* and select the *Host Type* for each SNMP manager.
5. In the *Queries* section, enable or disable v1 and v2c queries, then enter the port numbers that the SNMP managers in this community use for them.
6. In the *Traps* section, enable or disable v1 and v2c traps, then enter the local and remote port numbers that the SNMP managers in this community use for them.
7. In the *SNMP Events* section, enable or disable the events that activate traps in this community.
8. Click *OK*.

### To create a n SNMP v1/v2c community in the CLI:

```
config system snmp community
    edit 2
        set name <string>
        set status {enable | disable}
        config hosts
            edit <host_id>
                set ip <ip/mask>
                set source-ip <class_ip>
                set ha-direct {enable | disable}
                set host-type {any | query | trap}
            next
        end
        set query-v1-port <port_number>
        set query-v1-status {enable | disable}
        set query-v2c-port <port_number>
        set query-v2c-status {enable | disable}
        set trap-v1-lport <port_number>
        set trap-v1-rport <port_number>
```

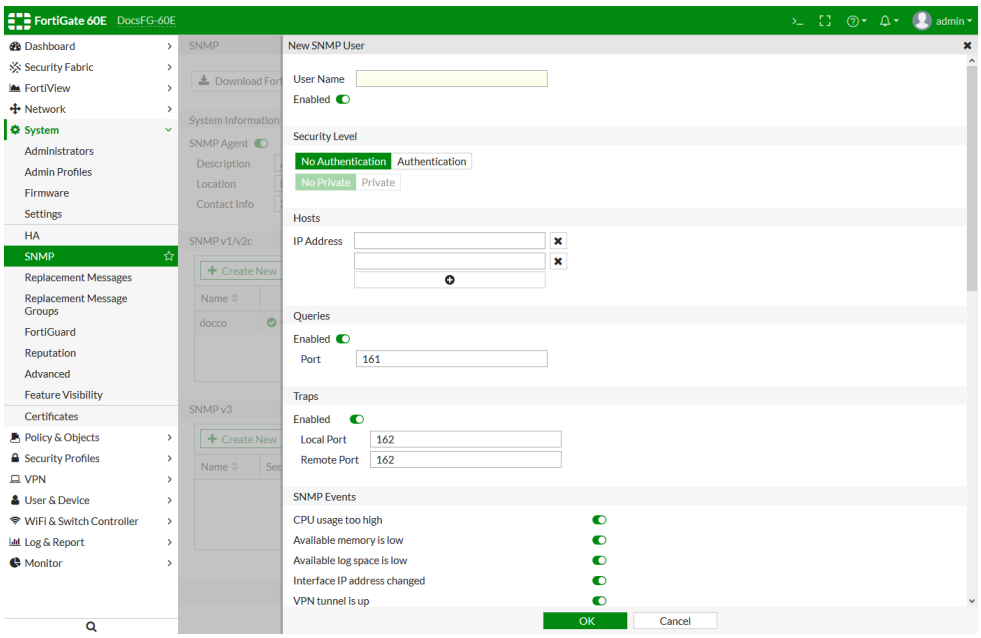
```
        set trap-v1-status {enable | disable}
        set trap-v2c-lport <port_number>
        set trap-v2c-rport <port_number>
        set trap-v2c-status {enable | disable}
        set events <events>
    next
end
```

## SNMP v3 users

Authentication is used to ensure the identity of users. Privacy allows for encryption of SNMP v3 messages to ensure confidentiality of data. These protocols provide a higher level of security than is available in SNMP v1 and v2c, which use community strings for security. Both authentication and privacy are optional.

**To create a n SNMP v3 user in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. In the *SNMP v3* table, click *Create New*.




3. Enter a *User Name* and enable the user.
4. In the *Security Level* section, configure the security level:
   - *No Authentication*: No authentication or encryption.
   - *Authentication*: Select the authentication algorithm and password.
   - *Authentication and Private*: Select both the authentication and encryption algorithms and password.
5. In the *Hosts* section, enter the *IP Address* for each SNMP manager.
6. In the *Queries* section, enable or disable queries, then enter the port number that the SNMP managers use for them.
7. In the *Traps* section, enable or disable traps, then enter the local and remote port numbers that the SNMP managers use for them.
8. In the *SNMP Events* section, enable or disable the events that activate traps.
9. Click *OK*.

**To create an SNMP v3 user in the CLI:**

```
config system snmp user
    edit <user>
        set status {enable | disable}
        set trap-status {enable | disable}
        set trap-lport <port_number>
        set trap-rport <port_number>
        set queries {enable | disable}
        set query-port <port_number>
        set notify-hosts <class_ip> ... <class_ip>
        set source-ip <class_ip>
        set ha-direct {enable | disable}
        set events <events>
        set security-level {no-auth-no-priv | auth-no-priv | auth-priv}
        set auth-proto {md5 | sha | sha224 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
        set auth-pwd <password>
        set priv-proto {aes | des | aes256 | aes256cisco}
        set priv-pwd <password>
    next
end
```

# Important SNMP traps

## Link Down and Link Up traps

This trap is sent when a FortiGate port either goes down or is brought up.

For example, the following traps are generated when the state of port34 is set to down using `set status down`, and then brought up using `set status up`:

```
NET-SNMP version 5.7.3 2019-01-31 14:11:48 10.1.100.1(via UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->
[10.1.100.11]:162) TRAP, SNMP v1, community REGR-SYS SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTraps Link Down Trap
(0) Uptime: 0:14:44.95 IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42 IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER:
down(2) IF-MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: down(2) FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 =
STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE

2019-01-31 14:11:48 <UNKNOWN> [UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162]: DISMAN-EVENT-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (88495) 0:14:44.95 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: IF-
MIB::linkDown IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42 IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER: down(2)
IF-MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: down(2) FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING:
FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE 2019-01-31 14:12:01
10.1.100.1(via UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162) TRAP, SNMP v1, community REGR-SYS
SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTraps Link Up Trap (0) Uptime: 0:14:57.98 IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42
IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) IF-MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) FORTINET-
CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING:
FortiGate-140D-POE

2019-01-31 14:12:01 <UNKNOWN> [UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162]: DISMAN-EVENT-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (89798) 0:14:57.98 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: IF-
MIB::linkUp IF-MIB::ifIndex.42 = INTEGER: 42 IF-MIB::ifAdminStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) IF-
MIB::ifOperStatus.42 = INTEGER: up(1) FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING:
FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE
```

## fgFmTrapIfChange trap

This trap is sent when any changes are detected on the interface. The change can be very simple, such as giving an IPV4 address.

For example, the user has given the IP address of 1.2.3.4/24 to port 1 and the EMS Manager has detected the following trap:

```
DISMAN-EXPRESSION-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (7975058) 22:09:10.58 SNMPv2-
MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgFmTrapIfChange FORTINET-CORE-
MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 IF-MIB::ifName.45 = STRING: port1 FORTINET-
FORTIGATE-MIB::fgManIfIp.0 = IpAddress: 1.2.3.4 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgManIfMask.0 =
IpAddress: 255.255.255.0 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgManIfIp6.0 = STRING: 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0
```

## entConfigChange trap

The change to the interface in the previous example has also triggered the *ConfChange Trap* which is sent along with the *fgFmTrapIfChange* trap:

```
2018-11-15 09:30:23 FGT_A [UDP: [172.16.200.1]:162->[172.16.200.55]:162]: DISMAN-EXPRESSION-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (8035097) 22:19:10.97 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID:
ENTITY-MIB::entConfigChange
```

## fgTrapDeviceNew trap

This trap is triggered when a new device, like a FortiSwitch, is connected to the FortiGate.

For example, the following scenario has given the device a new trap for adding FortiAP on a PoE interface a FortiGate 140D-POE. The trap has important information about the device name, device MAC address, and when it was last seen.

```
2018-11-15 11:17:43 UDP/IPv6: [2000:172:16:200::1]:162 [UDP/IPv6: [2000:172:16:200::1]:162]:
DISMAN-EXPRESSION-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (520817) 1:26:48.17 SNMPv2-
MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgTrapDeviceNew FORTINET-CORE-
MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FGT_A IF-
MIB::ifIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgVdEntIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0 FORTINET-
FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceCreated.0 = Gauge32: 5 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceLastSeen.0 =
Gauge32: 5 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceMacAddress.0 = STRING: 90:6c:ac:f9:97:a0

2018-11-15 11:17:43 FGT_A [UDP: [172.16.200.1]:162->[172.16.200.55]:162]: DISMAN-EXPRESSION-
MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks: (520817) 1:26:48.17 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID:
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgTrapDeviceNew FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING:
FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FGT_A IF-MIB::ifIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgVdEntIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-
MIB::fgDeviceCreated.0 = Gauge32: 5 FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceLastSeen.0 = Gauge32: 5
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgDeviceMacAddress.0 = STRING: 90:6c:ac:f9:97:a0
```

## fgTrapAvOversize trap

The `fgTrapAvOversize` trap is generated when the antivirus scanner detects an oversized file:

```
019-01-31 13:22:04 10.1.100.1(via UDP: [10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162) TRAP, SNMP v1,
community REGR-SYS FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgt140P Enterprise Specific Trap (602) Uptime: 1
day, 3:41:10.31 FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-
MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE 2019-01-31 13:22:29 <UNKNOWN> [UDP:
```

```
[10.1.100.1]:162->[10.1.100.11]:162]: DISMAN-EVENT-MIB::sysUpTimeInstance = Timeticks:
(9967031) 1 day, 3:41:10.31 SNMPv2-MIB::snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: FORTINET-FORTIGATE-
MIB::fgTrapAvOversize FORTINET-CORE-MIB::fnSysSerial.0 = STRING: FG140P3G15800330 SNMPv2-
MIB::sysName.0 = STRING: FortiGate-140D-POE
```

## SNMP traps and query for monitoring DHCP pool

The SNMP DHCP event contains three traps and one query.

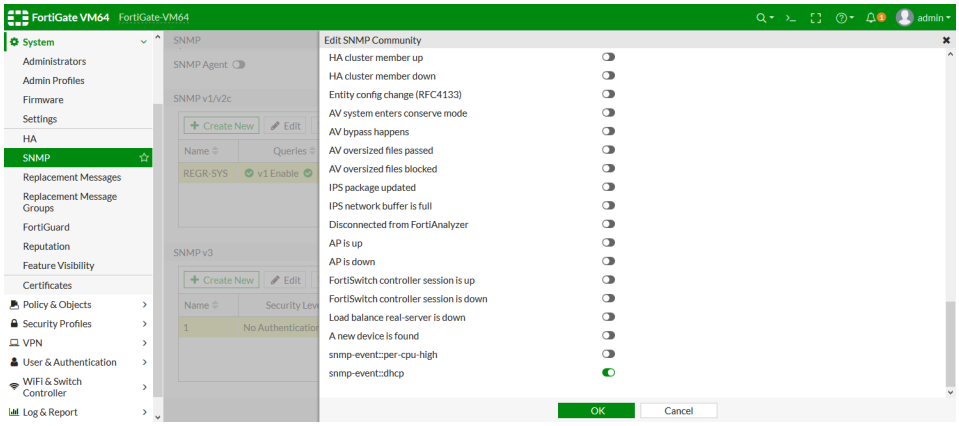
Traps are sent when:

- DHCP server IP pool usage reaches 90%
- DHCP server detect an IP address that is already in use
- DHCP client receives DHCP NAK

SNMP queries are accepted for DHCP lease usage information (OID = 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.23). The query result is based on the leased out percentage.

**To enable the SNMP DHCP event in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Click *Create New* in either the *SNMP v1/v2c* table or *SNMP v3* table, or edit an existing community or user.
3. Configure the settings as required.
4. In the *SNMP Events* list, enable *snmp-event::dhcp*.




5. Click *OK*.

**To enable the SNMP DHCP event in the CLI:**

```
config system snmp community
    edit 1
        set name "REGR-SYS"
        config hosts
            edit 1
                set ip 10.1.100.11 255.255.255.255
            next
            edit 2
                set ip 172.16.200.55 255.255.255.255
            next
        end
```

```
        set events dhcp
    next
end

config system snmp user
    edit "1"
        set notify-hosts 172.10.1.0 172.20.1.0
        set events dhcp
        set security-level auth-priv
        set auth-proto sha384
        set auth-pwd ********************
        set priv-proto aes256
        set priv-pwd *********************
    next
end
```

# Replacement messages

The replacement message list in *System* > *Replacement Messages* enables you to view and customize replacement messages. Highlight the replacement messages you want to edit and customize the message content to your requirements. Hit *Save* when done. If you do not see the message you want to edit, select the *Extended View* option in the upper right-hand corner of the screen.

If you make a mistake, select *Restore Default* to return to the original message and code base.

## Replacement message images

You can add images to replacement messages on:

- Disclaimer pages
- Login pages
- Declined disclaimer pages
- Login failed pages
- Login challenge pages
- Keepalive pages



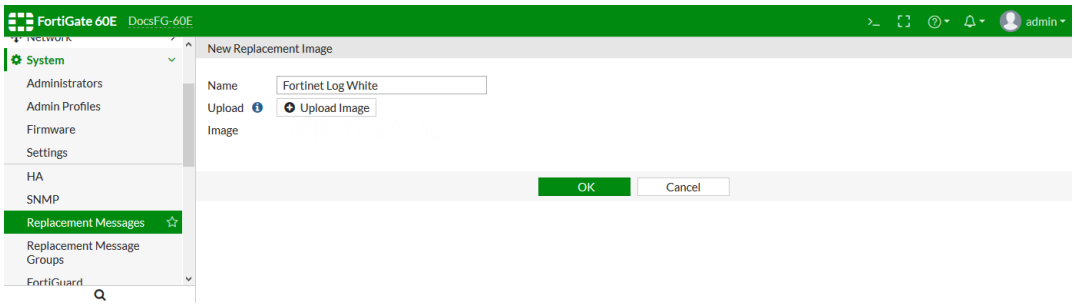
Supported image formats are GIF, JPEG, TIFF, and PNG. The maximum file size supported is 24KB.

### Adding images to replacement messages

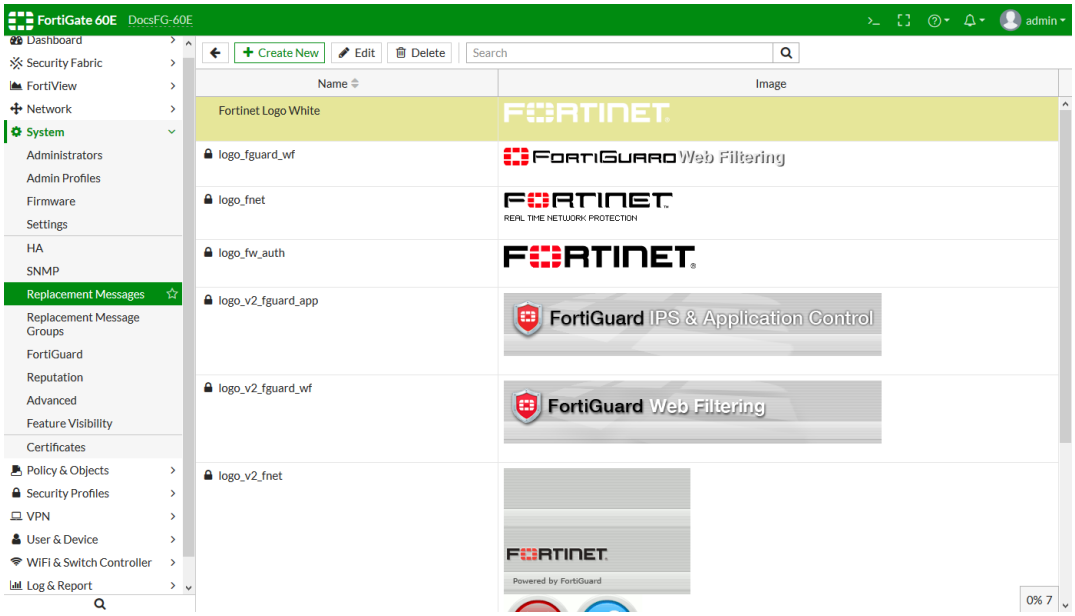
**To add images to replacement messages in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. Click *Manage Images* at the top of the page.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name for the image.

5. Click *Upload Image* and locate the file.




6. Click *OK*.




**To add images to replacement messages in the CLI:**

```
config system replacemsg-image
    edit <image_name>
        set image-type {gif | jpg | tiff | png}
        set image-base64 <string>
    next
end
```

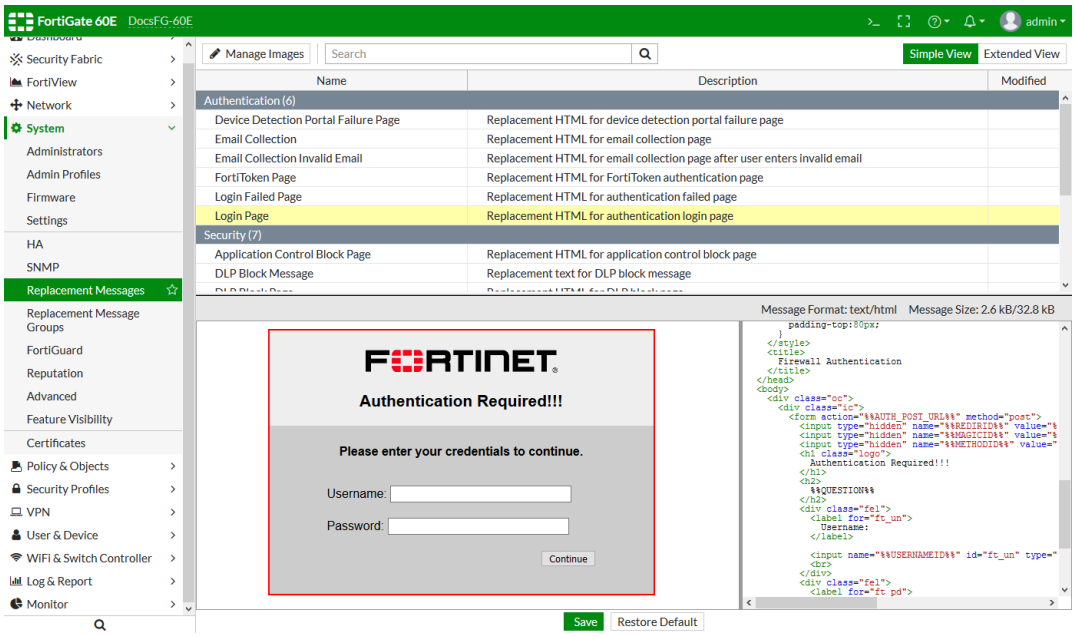
## Modifying replacement messages

Replacement messages can be modified to include an HTML message or content that suits your organization. A list of common replacement messages appear in the main window. Select *Extended View* to see the entire list and all categories for replacement messages.

**To modify a replacement message in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. Select the replacement message you want to edit.

3. In the bottom pane of the GUI the message will be displayed on the left alongside the HTML code on the right. Edit the HTML code as needed.
   The message view changes in real-time as you edit the content.




4. Click *Save*.

### To modify a replacement message in the CLI:

```
config system replacemsg <message_category> <message_type>
    set buffer <string>
    set header {none | http | 8bit}
    set format {none | text | html}
end
```

For example, to modify the *Traffic Quota Limit Exceeded Page* message:

```
config system replacemsg traffic-quota "per-ip-shaper-block"
    set buffer "<html>
  <head>
    <title>
      Traffic Quota Control
    </title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <font size=2>
      <table width=\"100%\">
        <tr>
          <td bgcolor=#3300cc align=\"center\" colspan=2>
            <font color=#ffffff>
              <b>
                Traffic blocked because exceeded session quota
              </b>
            </font>
          </td>
        </tr>
      </table>
```

```
      <br>
      <br>
      Traffic blocked because it exceeded the per IP shaper session quota. Please contact
the system administrator.
      <br>
      %%QUOTA_INFO%%
      <br>
      <br>
      <hr>
    </font>
  </body>
</html>"
    set header http
    set format html
end
```

# Replacement message groups

Replacement message groups allow you to customize replacement messages for individual policies and profiles.

There are two types of replacement message groups:

- `utm`: Used with UTM settings in firewall policies. Messages in the following categories can be customized: mail, http, webproxy, ftp, nntp, fortiguard-wf, spam, alertmail, admin, sslvpn, nac-quar, traffic-quota, utm, custom-message, and icap.
- `auth`: Used with authentication pages in firewall policies. Messages in the following categories can be customized: webproxy and auth.

The messages added to a group do not need to be customized. The body content, header type, and format of a message will use the default values if not customized.

**To create or edit a replacement message group in the CLI:**

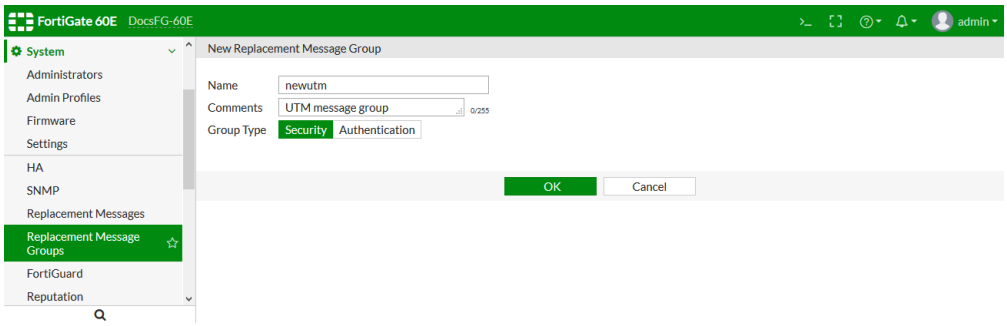
```
config system replacemsg-group
    edit <group>
        set group-type {auth | utm}
        config <message_category>
            edit <message_type>
                set buffer <message>
                set header {none | http | 8bit}
                set format {none | text | html}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To create a replacement message group in the GUI:**

1. Make replacement message groups visible in the GUI with the following CLI command:

   ```
   config system settings
       set gui-replacement-message-groups enable
   end
   ```

2. Go to *System* > *Replacement Message Groups*.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. Enter a name for the new group.
5. Optionally, enter a comment describing the group.
6. Select the *Group Type*, either *Security* or *Authentication*.




7. Click *OK*.

## Example

In this example, two replacement message groups are created. The UTM type message group includes custom mail related messages, changes the formats of some spam related message, and is assigned to an email filter profile. The authentication type message group has a custom authentication success message that is applied to a proxy-based firewall policy that with the email filter profile assigned.

**To create the replacement message groups and use them in a profile and a policy in the CLI:**

1. Create the replacement message groups:

```
config system replacemsg-group
    edit "newutm"
        set group-type utm
        config mail
            edit "partial"
                set buffer "Fragmented emails are blocked, sorry."
            next
            edit "email-av-fail"
                set buffer "The email has been blocked for reasons."
            next
        end
        config spam
            edit "submit"
                set header http
                set format html
            next
            edit "reversedns"
                set header http
                set format html
            next
        end
    next
    edit "newauth"
        set group-type auth
```

```
        config auth
            edit "auth-success-msg"
                set buffer "Welcome to the firewall. Your authentication has been
accepted, please reconnect."
                set header none
                set format text
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Apply the message groups:

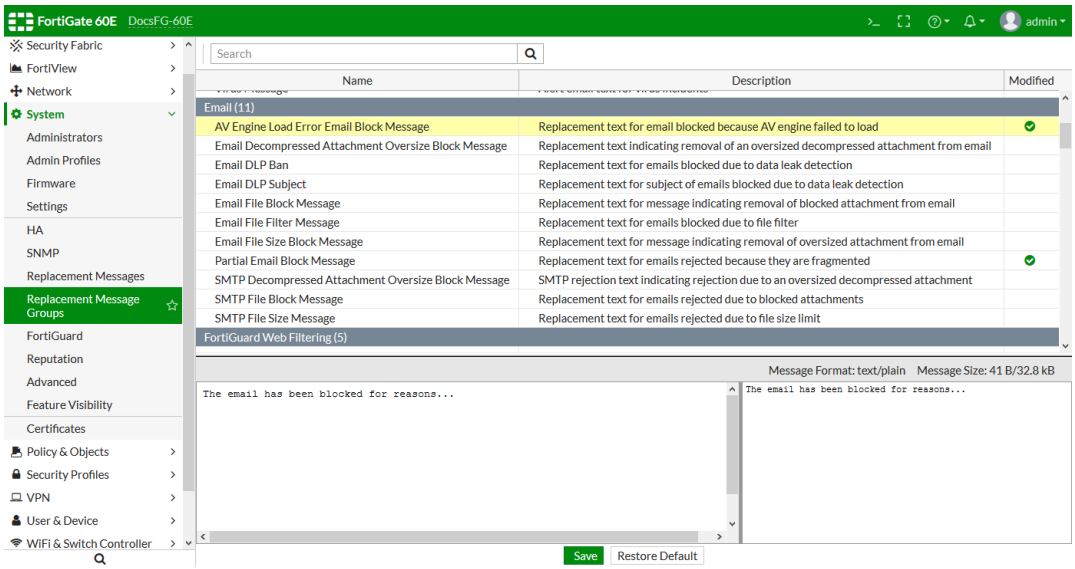
```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "newmsgs"
        set replacemsg-group "newutm"
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        ...
        set replacemsg-override-group "newauth"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set emailfilter-profile "newmsgs"
        ...
    next
end
```

**To create the replacement message groups and use them in a profile and a policy in the GUI:**

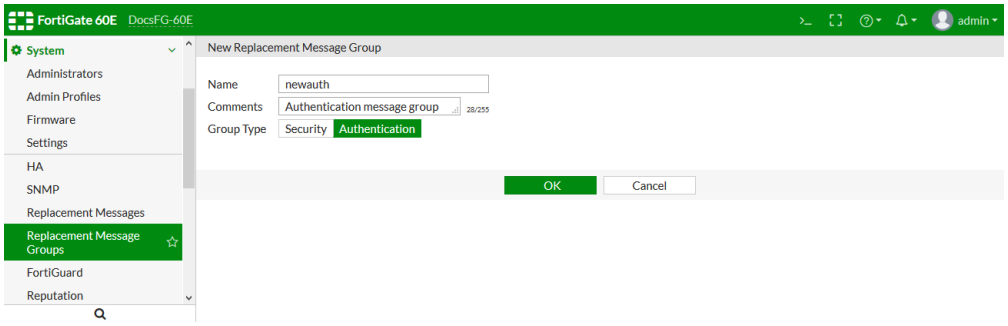
1. Create the *Security* replacement message groups:
   a. Go to *System* > *Replacement Message Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Enter *newutm* in the *Name* field.
   d. Enter *UTM message group* in the *Comments* field.
   e. Select *Security* as the *Group Type*.
   f. Click *OK*.
2. Customize the replacement messages in the *newutm* group:
   a. Go to *System* > *Replacement Message Groups*.
   b. Edit the *newutm* group.

c. Locate the *AV Engine Load Error Email Block Message*, edit the message, then click *Save*.




d. Locate the *Partial Email Block Message*, edit the message, then click *Save*.

3. Create the *Authentication* replacement message group:
   a. Go to *System Replacement Message Groups*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Enter *newauth* in the *Name* field.
   d. Enter *Authentication message group* in the *Comments* field.
   e. Select *Authentication* as the *Group Type*.




   f. Click *OK*.
4. Apply the *newutm* replacement message group to an email filter profile using the CLI.
5. Apply the *newauth* replacement message group and the email filter profile to a firewall policy using the CLI.

# FortiGuard

FortiGuard services can be purchased and registered to your FortiGate unit. The FortiGate must be connected to the Internet in order to automatically connect to the FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN) to validate the license and download FDN updates.

The FortiGuard subscription update services include:

- Antivirus (AV)
- Intrusion Protection Service (IPS)
- Application Control
- Antispam
- Web Filtering
- Web Application Firewall (WAF)

To view FDN support contract information, go to *System* > *FortiGuard*. The *License Information* table shows the status of your FortiGate's support contract.


- IPv6 FortiGuard connections on page 747
- Configuring antivirus and IPS options on page 748
- Manual updates on page 748
- Automatic updates on page 749
- Sending malware statistics to FortiGuard on page 751
- Update server location on page 752
- Filtering on page 752
- Override FortiGuard servers on page 753
- Online security tools on page 754
- FortiGuard anycast and third-party SSL validation on page 754
- Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server on page 757
- Cloud service communication statistics on page 758
- IoT detection service on page 759


## IPv6 FortiGuard connections

The Fortinet DNS can resolve FortiGuard related servers to both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. FortiOS daemons (update, forticldd, url) connect using either IPv4 or IPv6 addresses. The first available connection will be used for updates or the rating service.

**To configure an interface and route for IPv6:**

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        config ipv6
            set ip6-address 2000:172:16:200::1/64
        end
    next
end
```

```
config router static6
    edit 1
        set gateway 2000:172:16:200::254
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

**To configure push updates:**

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status enable
    set override enable
    set address "2620:101:9005:3860::94"
end
```

## Configuring antivirus and IPS options

**To configure antivirus and IPS options:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *AntiVirus & IPS Updates* section.
3. Configure the antivirus and IPS options for connecting and downloading definition files:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Accept push updates** | Enable to allow updates to be sent automatically to your FortiGate. New definitions will be added as soon as they are released by FortiGuard. See Push updates on page 750. |
| **Use override push** | Only available if *Accept push updates* is enabled. See Override push on page 751. |
| **Scheduled Updates** | Enable to schedule updates to be sent to the FortiGate at the specified time. See Scheduled updates on page 749. |
| **Improve IPS quality** | Enable to send information to the FortiGuard servers when an attack occurs. This can help keep the FortiGuard database current as attacks evolve, and improve IPS signatures. |
| **Use extended IPS signature package** | Enable to use the extended IPS database, that includes protection from legacy attacks, along with the regular IPS database that protects against the latest common and in-the-wild attacks. |
| **Update AV & IPS Definitions** | Click to manually initiate an FDN update. |

4. Click *Apply*.

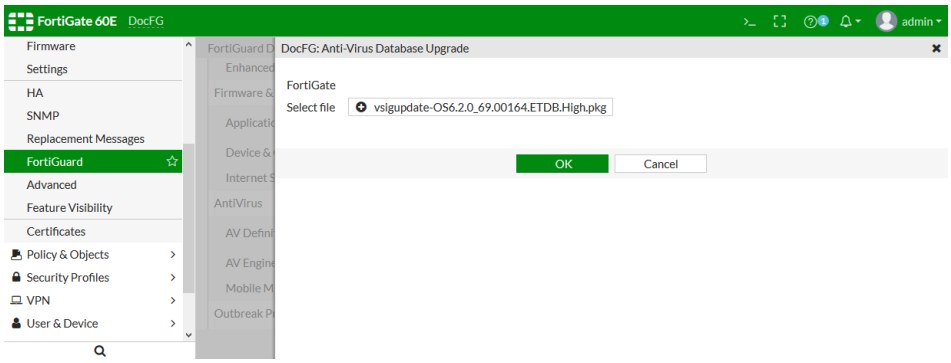
## Manual updates

When needed, FortiGuard Distribution Network (FDN) updates can be manually uploaded.

**To manually update the signature definitions files:**

1. Log in to the Fortinet Support website.
2. Go to *Download* > *FortiGuard Service Updates*.
3. Select your *OS Version* from the dropdown list.
4. Locate your device in the table, and download the signature definitions files.
5. On the FortiGate, go to *System FortiGuard*.
6. In the *License Information* table, locate the row of the definitions that you are updating, and click *Upgrade Database* in the rightmost column.

7. In the pane that opens, click *Upload*, locate the downloaded definitions file on your computer, then click *Open*. The download may take a few minutes to complete.




8. Click *OK*.

## Automatic updates

The FortiGate can be configured to request updates from FDN on a schedule, or via push notification.

### Scheduled updates

Scheduling updates ensures that the virus and IPS definitions are downloaded to your FortiGate on a regular basis.

Updating definitions can cause a brief disruption in traffic that is currently being scanned while the FortiGate unit applies the new signature database. Updates should be scheduled during off-peak hours when network usage is at a minimum to ensure that network activity will not be affected by downloading the definitions files.

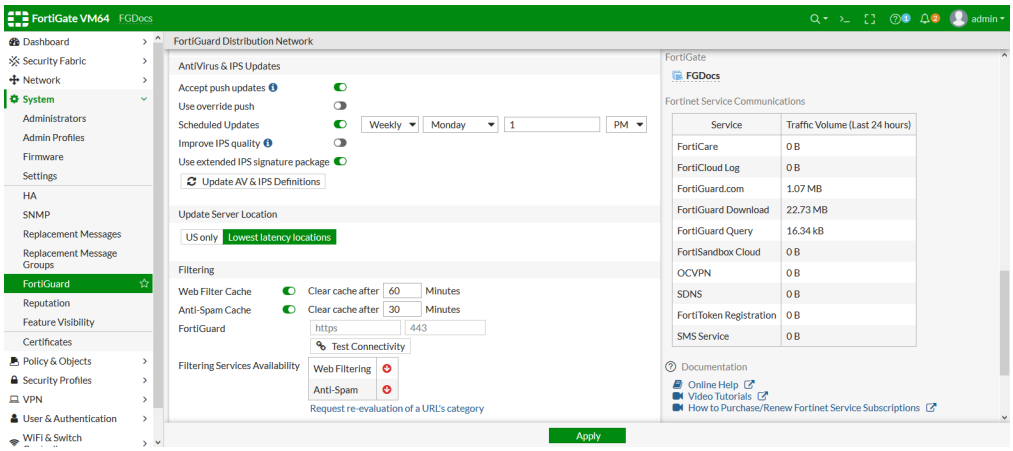


A schedule of once a week means any urgent updates will not be pushed until the scheduled time. If an urgent update is required, click the *Update AV & IPS Definitions* button to manually update the definitions.

**To configure scheduled updates in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *AntiVirus & IPS Updates* section.
3. Enable *Scheduled Updates*.

4. Configure the update schedule.




5. Click *Apply*.

**To configure scheduled updates in the CLI:**

```
config system autoupdate schedule
    set status enable
    set frequency {every | daily | weekly}
    set time <hh:mm>
    set day <day_of_week>
end
```

## Push updates

Push updates enable you to get immediate updates when new viruses or intrusions are discovered and new signatures are created. This ensures that the latest signature are sent to the FortiGate as soon as possible.

When a push notification occurs, the FortiGuard server sends a notice to the FortiGate that a new signature definition file available. The FortiGate then initiates a download of the definition file. For maximum security, both scheduled and push updates should be enabled.

**To enable push updates - GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *AntiVirus & IPS Updates* section.
3. Enable *Accept push updates*.
4. Click *Apply*.

**To enable push updates in the CLI:**

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status enable
    set override {enable | disable}
    set address <vip_address>
end
```

### Override push

If the FortiGate is behind a NAT device (or another FortiGate), or if your organization provides updates using their own FortiGuard server, an override server must be used to ensure that the FortiGate receives push update notifications. The FDS will connect to the NAT device when attempting to reach the FortiGate, and the NAT device must be configured to forward FDS traffic to the FortiGate on UDP port 9443.

Push updates must be enabled to configure a push update override.

For example, if the NAT device is another FortiGate:

1. On the FortiGate NAT device, add a port forwarding virtual IP address in *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*. See for details.
2. On the FortiGate NAT device, add a security policy that connects to the internet and includes the port forwarding VIP.
3. On the internal FortiGate device, configure *Push update override*.

**To configure push update override in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *AntiVirus & IPS Updates* section.
3. Enable *Accept push updates*.
4. Enable *Use override push*.
5. Enter the IP address and port number configured on the NAT device.
6. Click *Apply*.

**To configure push update override in the CLI:**

```
config system autoupdate push-update
    set status enable
    set override {enable | disable}
    set address <vip_address>
end
```

## Sending malware statistics to FortiGuard

FortiGate devices periodically send encrypted antivirus, IPS, botnet IP list, and application control statistics to FortiGuard. Included with these data is the IP address and serial number of the FortiGate, and the country that it is in. This information is never shared with external parties, Fortinet Privacy Policy.

The malware statistics are used to improve various aspects of FortiGate malware protection. For example, antivirus data allow FortiGuard to determine what viruses are currently active. Signatures for those viruses are kept in the Active AV Signature Database that is used by multiple Fortinet products.Inactive virus signatures are moved to the Extended AV Signature Database (see Configuring antivirus and IPS options on page 748). When events for inactive viruses start appearing in the malware data, the signatures are moved back into the AV Signature Database.

The FortiGate and FortiGuard servers go through a 2-way SSL/TLS 1.2 authentication before any data is transmitted. The certificates used in this process must be trusted by each other and signed by the Fortinet CA server.

The FortiGate only accepts data from authorized FortiGuard severs. Fortinet products use DNS to find FortiGuard servers and periodically update their FortiGate server list. All other servers are provided by a list that is updated through the encrypted channel.

Malware statistics are accumulated and sent every 60 minutes by default.

To configure sharing this information, use the following CLI command:

```
config system global
    set fds-statistics {enable | disable}
    set fds-statistics-period <minutes>
end
```



The submission of malware data is in accordance with the Fortinet Privacy Policy.

There is no sensitive or personal information included in these submissions. Only malware statistics are sent.

Fortinet uses the malware statistics collected in this manner to improve the performance of the FortiGate services and to display statistics on the Fortinet Support website for customers registered FortiGate devices.

Fortinet may also publish or share statistics or results derived from this malware data with various audiences. The malware statistics shared in this way do not include any customer data.

## Update server location

The location of the FortiGuard update server that the FortiGate connects to can be set to either only servers in the USA only, or to the servers with the lowest latency.

On hardware FortiGate devices, the default is *Lowest latency locations*. On VM devices, the default is *US only*.

**To configure the update server location in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *Update Server Location* section.
3. Select *US only* or *Lowest latency locations*.
4. Click *Apply*.

**To configure the update server location in the CLI:**

```
config system fortiguard
    set update-server-location {usa | any}
end
```

## Filtering

Web filtering is used to block access to harmful, inappropriate, and dangerous web sites (see FortiGuard filter on page 971).

Email filtering is used to detect and block spam messages (see FortiGuard-based filters on page 1055).

**To configure filtering in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *Filtering* section.
3. Configure the settings as needed:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Web Filter Cache** | Enable/disable web filter cache, and set the amount of time that the FortiGate will store a blocked IP address or URL locally. After the time expires, the FortiGate contacts the FDN to verify the address. |
| **Anti-Spam Cache** | Enable/disable email filter cache, and set the amount of time that the FortiGate will store an email address locally. |
| **FortiGuard** | The protocol and port used to contact the FortiGuard servers. These options can be changed in the CLI. |
| **Filtering Service Availability** | The status of the filtering service. Click *Test Connectivity* if the filtering service is not available. |
| **Request re-evaluation of a URL's category** | Click to re-evaluate a URL category rating on the FortiGuard web filter service. |

4. Click *Apply*.

**To configure filtering in the CLI:**

```
config system fortiguard
    set protocol {https | udp}
    set port {443 | 53 | 8888}
    set antispam-force-off {enable | disable}
    set antispam-cache {enable | disable}
    set antispam-cache-ttl <integer>
    set antispam-cache-mpercent <percent>
    set antispam-timeout <integer>
    set webfilter-force-off {enable | disable}
    set webfilter-cache {enable | disable}
    set webfilter-cache-ttl <integer>
    set webfilter-timeout <integer>
end
```



When anycast is enabled (by default) the protocol is HTTPS and the port is 443.

## Override FortiGuard servers

By default, FortiOS will update signature packages and query rating servers using public FortiGuard servers. This list can be overridden by adding servers to the override server list. Communication with public FortiGuard servers can also be disabled.

**To add an override FortiGuard server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*
2. Scroll down to the *Override FortiGuard Servers* section.
3. In the table, click *Create New*. The *Create New Override FortiGuard Server* pane opens.
4. Select the server address type: *IPv4*, *IPv6*, or *FQDN*.
5. Enter the server address of the selected type in the *Address* field.
6. Select the type of server: *AntiVirus & IPS Updates*, *Filtering*, or *Both*.
7. Click *Apply*.

**To add an override FortiGuard server in the CLI:**

```
config system central-management
    set type fortiguard
    config server-list
        edit <integer>
            set server-type {update rating}
            set server-address <ip_address>
        next
    end
end
```

## Online security tools

FortiGuard Labs provides a number of online security tools, including but not limited to:

- **URL lookup**
  Enter a website address to see if it has been rated and what category and classification it is filed as. If you find a site that has been wrongly categorized, use this page to request that the site be re-evaluated: https://www.fortiguard.com/webfilter
- **Threat Encyclopedia**
  Browse FortiGuard Labs extensive encyclopedia of threats. Search for viruses, botnet C&C, IPS, endpoint vulnerabilities, and mobile malware: https://www.fortiguard.com/encyclopedia
- **Application Control**
  Browse FortiGuard Labs extensive encyclopedia of applications: https://www.fortiguard.com/appcontrol

## FortiGuard anycast and third-party SSL validation

Anycast optimizes routing performance to FortiGuard servers. It is the default FortiGuard access mode.

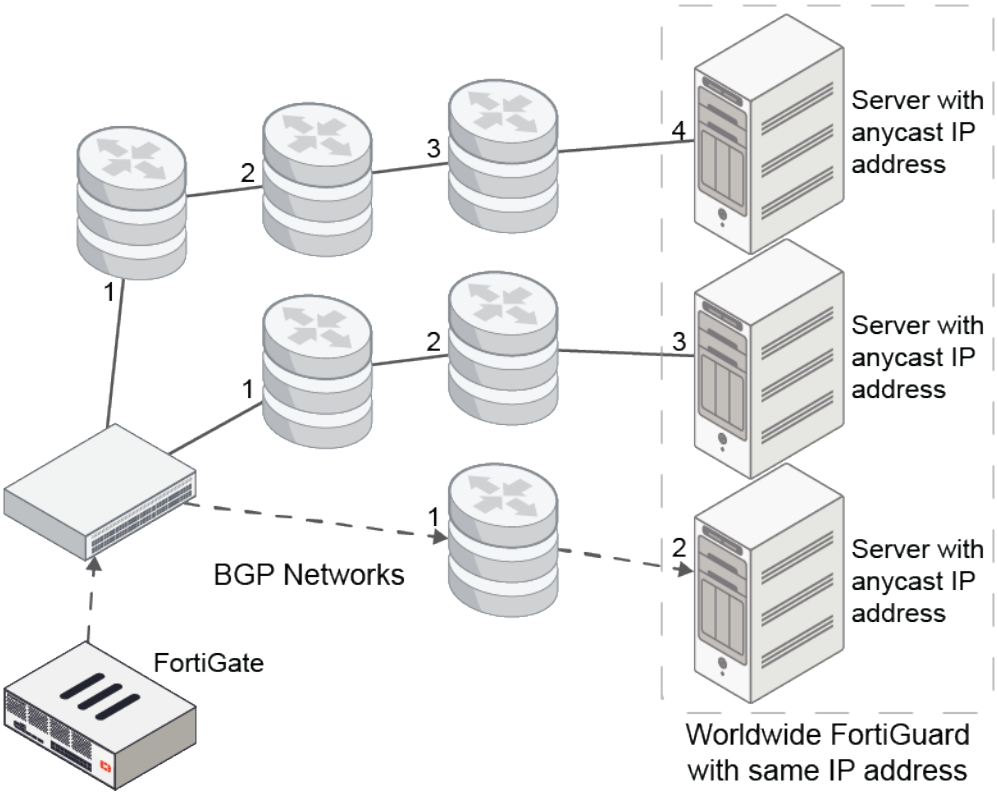
Using Fortinet DNS servers, the FortiGate receives a single IP address for the domain name of each FortiGuard service. BGP routing optimization is transparent to the FortiGate. The domain name of each FortiGuard service is the common name in that service's certificate, which is signed by a third-party intermediate CA. The FortiGuard server uses third-party certificate verification and the Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) stapling check, so that the FortiGate can always validate the FortiGuard server certificate efficiently.

FortiGate will only complete the TLS handshake with an anycast server that has a good OCSP status for its certificate. Any other status will result in a failed SSL connection. OCSP stapling is reflected on the signature interval so that *good* means that the certificate is not revoked at that timestamp. The FortiGuard servers query the CA's OCSP responder every four hours and update its OCSP status. If the FortiGuard is unable to reach the OCSP responder, it will keep the

last known OCSP status for up to seven days. This cached OCSP status will be sent out immediately when a client connection request is made, optimizing the response time.

FortiGuard represents all cloud based servers; see Anycast and unicast services for details.

The anycast server has one IP address to match its domain name. The FortiGate connects with a single server address, using HTTPS and port 443, regardless of where the FortiGate is located.

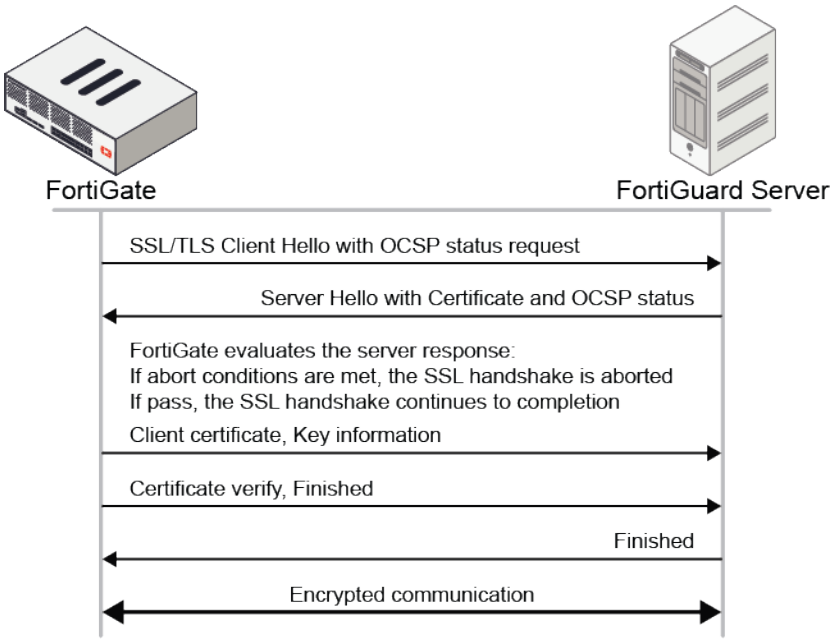



**To configure the anycast FortiGuard access mode:**

```
config system fortiguard
    set fortiguard-anycast {enable | disable}
    set fortiguard-anycast-source {fortinet | aws}
end
```

## Connection process

The following process is used to connect to an anycast server:



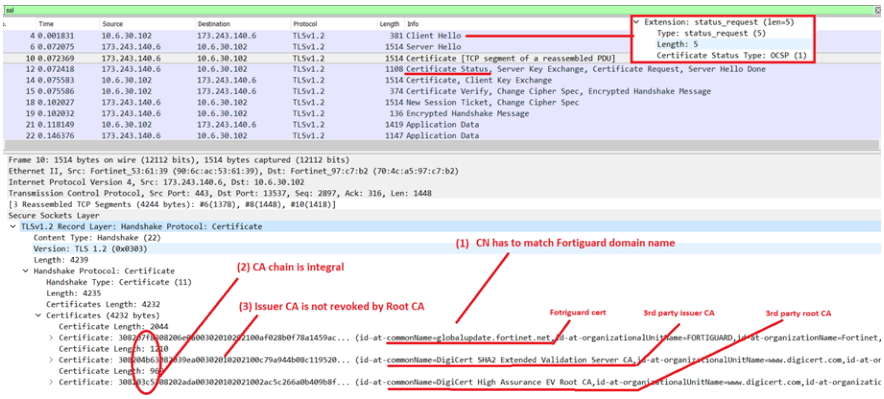

1. The FortiGate embeds the CA_bundle certificate, which includes the root CA with CRL list and third-party intermediate CA, in the root CA level.
2. The FortiGate finds the FortiGuard IP address from its domain name from DNS.
3. The FortiGate starts a TLS handshake with the FortiGuard IP address. The client hello includes an extension of the *status request*.
4. The FortiGuard servers provide a certificate with its OCSP status: *good*, *revoked*, or *unknown*.
5. The FortiGate verifies the CA chain against the root CA in the CA_bundle.
6. The FortiGate verifies the intermediate CA's revoke status against the root CA's CRL.
7. The FortiGate verifies the FortiGuard certificate's OCSP status:

```
OCSP Response Data:
    OCSP Response Status: successful (0x0)
    Response Type: Basic OCSP Response
    Version: 1 (0x0)
    Responder Id: 3DD350A5D6A0ADEEF34A600A65D321D4F8F8D60F
    Produced At: Aug 20 07:50:58 2019 GMT
    Responses:
    Certificate ID:
      Hash Algorithm: sha1
      Issuer Name Hash: 49F4BD8A18BF760698C5DE402D683B716AE4E686
      Issuer Key Hash: 3DD350A5D6A0ADEEF34A600A65D321D4F8F8D60F
      Serial Number: 02555C9F3901B799DF1873402FA9392D
    Cert Status: good
    This Update: Aug 20 07:50:58 2019 GMT
    Next Update: Aug 27 07:05:58 2019 GMT
```

   Abort conditions include:

   - The CN in the server's certificate does not match the domain name resolved from the DNS.
   - The OCSP status is not good.
   - The issuer-CA is revoked by the root-CA.
8. Once the SSL handshake is established, the FortiGate can engage the server.

**Example Wireshark PCAP:**




## Using FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server

FortiManager can provide a local FortiGuard server with port 443 access.

Anycast FortiGuard settings force the rating process to use port 443, even with an override server. Using a unique address in the same subnet as the FortiManager access IP address, the FortiManager can provide local FortiGuard updates and rating access with a dedicated IP address and port 443.

**To use a FortiManager as a local FortiGuard server:**

```
config system central-management
    set type fortimanager
    set fmg "172.18.37.148"
    config server-list
        edit 1
            set server-type update
            set server-address 172.18.37.150
        next
        edit 2
            set server-type rating
            set server-address 172.18.37.149
        next
    end
    set fmg-update-port 443
    set include-default-servers enable
end
```

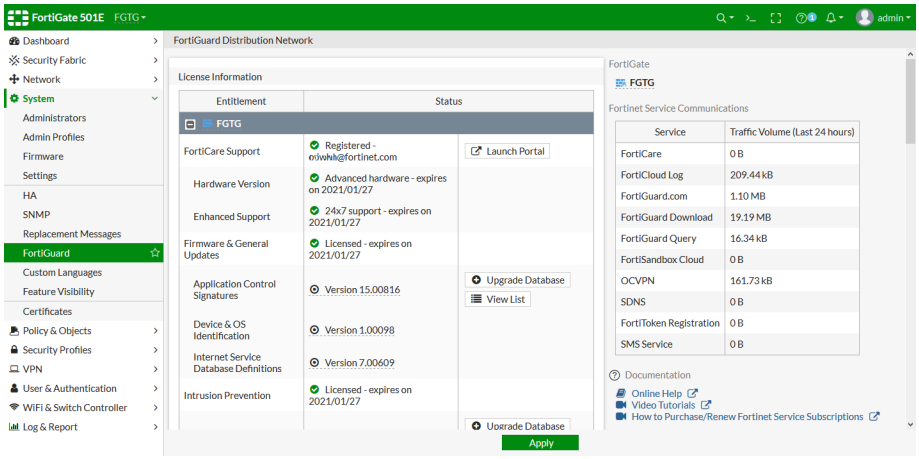
When `fmg-update-port` is set to `443`, the update process will use port 443 to connect to the override update server, which is the local FortiGuard server in the FortiManager. If this is not set, the update process will use port 8890, and the server address setting has to be the FortiManager access IP address. Override FortiGuard services come from the server list that is the local FortiGuard server in the FortiManager, and use the traditional, non-OCSP TLS handshake. If override servers in the FortiManager are not available, the default FortiGuard servers are connected, and the anycast OCSP TLS handshake is used.

# Cloud service communication statistics

Fortinet service communications statistics are displayed on the *FortiGuard* page. The statistics correspond with the output from `diagnose sys service-communication`. The traffic volume values in the GUI are the sums of data from the last 24 hours.

**To view Fortinet service communications statistics:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
   The *Fortinet Service Communications* statistics are displayed on the right-side of the screen:




These statistics correspond to the following:

```
# diagnose sys service-communication
FortiCare:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiGuard Download:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 195752 0 21051904 36342800 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  57590456 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiGuard Query:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 2805 0 1298 1709 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  5812 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiCloud Log:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiSandbox Cloud:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
FortiGuard.com:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  2014 0 1329 0 1329 0 1329 0 1329 0 2020 103930
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  3343 112595 9032861 18584815 17757745 16054191 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  61545550 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

```
FortiToken Registration:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
SMS Service:
The last 1 hour(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 24 hours(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
The last 7 days(in bytes):  0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

## IoT detection service

Internet of Things (IoT) detection is a subscription service that allows FortiGate to detect unknown devices in FortiGuard that are not detected by the local Device Database (CIDB). When the service is activated, FortiGate can send device information to the FortiGuard collection server. When a new device is detected, FortiGate queries the results from the FortiGuard query for more information about the device.

This feature requires an IoT Detection Service license.

**FortiGate device requirements:**

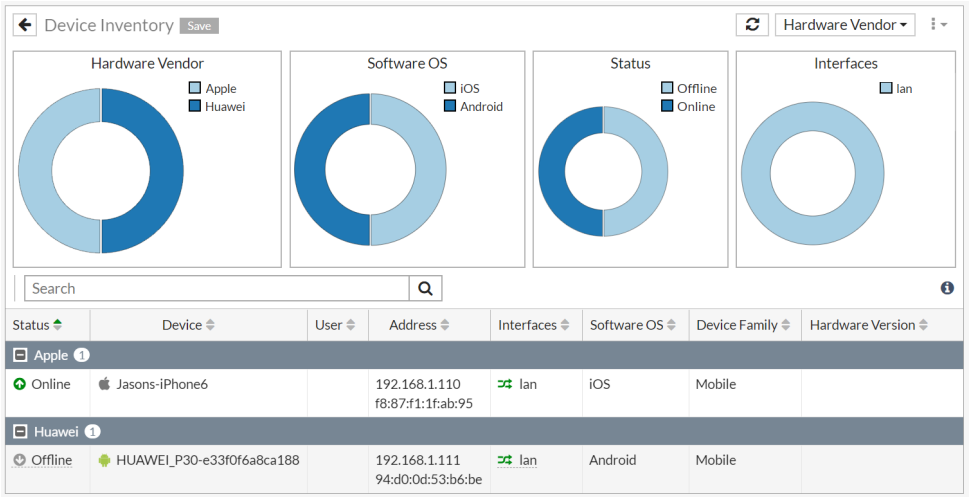
The FortiGate device must be:

- Registered with FortiCare
- Connected to an anycast FortiGuard server

### How the service works:

1. Enable Device Detection on an interface..
2. FortiGate uses the interface to detect device traffic flow.
3. Upon detecting traffic from an unknown device, FortiGate sends the device data to the FortiGuard collection server.
4. The collection server returns data about the new device to the FortiGuard query server.
5. If the device signature does not appear in the local Device Database (CIDB) or some fields are not complete, FortiGate queries FortiGuard for more information about the device.

To view the latest device information in the GUI, go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices* and expand the *Device Inventory* widget.



**To debug the daemon in the CLI:**

1. Disable the local device database in order to force all queries to go to FortiGuard.
   ```
   diagnose src-vis local-sig disable
   ```
2. Enable iotd debugs.
   ```
   diagnose debug application iotd -1
   diagnose debug enable
   ```
   FortiGate sends the device data to the FortiGuard collection server.
   ```
   FortiWiFi-60E # [iotd] recv request from caller size:61
   [iotd] service:collect hostname: ip: fd:-1 request tlv_len:41
   [iotd] txt(.....y...w.....Jasons-iPhone6....579=23..)
   [iotd] hex
        (02010007017903060f77fc0203000e4a61736f6e732d6950686f6e65360204000835373 93d32330cf
        f)
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip: fd:-1 got server hostname
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:-1 got
        server ip
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13
        socket created
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13
        connecting
   [iotd] fd:13 monitor event:pollout
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13 build
        req packet
   [iotd] service:collect hostname:qadevcollect.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.133 fd:13
        collect resp:1(pending)
   ```
   The FortiGuard collection server returns new device data to the FortiGuard query server.
   ```
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got query
        resp
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 id:0
        total_len:48 header_len:16 tlv_len:32 confidence:100 mac:f8:87:f1:1f:ab:95
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
        remaining_len:32 type:1 len:6
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
        category:'Mobile'
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
        remaining_len:24 type:2 len:6
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
        sub_category:'Mobile'
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
        remaining_len:16 type:3 len:5
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
        vendor:'Apple'
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
        remaining_len:9 type:4 len:0
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
        remaining_len:7 type:5 len:3
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 got tlv
        os:'iOS'
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17
        remaining_len:2 type:6 len:0
   [iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 send
        query response to caller size:48
   [iotd] txt(............d0 ...Mobile..Mobile..Apple....iOS..)
   [iotd] hex
        (f887f11fab950000000000006430200001064d6f62696c6502064d6f62696c6503054170706c650400
        0503694f530600)
   ```

```
[iotd] service:query hostname:qadevquery.fortinet.net ip:192.168.100.248 fd:17 read
     resp:0(good)
```

3. The query returns the device information including the information source (`src fortiguard`).

```
diagnose user device list
   vd root/0  f8:87:f1:1f:ab:95  gen 26  req OUA/34
      created 503s  gen 23  seen 102s  lan  gen 7
      ip 192.168.1.110  src arp
      hardware vendor 'Apple'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
      type 'Mobile'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
      family 'Mobile'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
      os 'iOS'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
      host 'Jasons-iPhone6'  src dhcp
```

# Feature visibility

Feature visibility is used to control which features are visible in the GUI. This allows features that are not in use to be hidden. Some features are also invisible by default and must be made visible before they can be configure in the GUI.

The visibility of a feature does not affect its functionality or configuration. Invisible features can still be configured using the CLI.

**To change the visibility of features:**

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. Change the visibility of the features as required. To simplify setting security features, a feature set can be selected from the dropdown list.
   For information about what settings each options affects, click on the + icon to the right of the feature name.
   Changes are listed on the right of the screen.
3. Click *Apply*.

## Security feature presets

Six system presets are available:

- *NGFW*: for networks that require application control and protection from external attacks.
- *ATP*: for networks that require protection from viruses and other external threats.
- *WF*: for networks that require web filtering.
- *NGFW + ATP*: for networks that require protection from external threats and attacks.
- *UTM*: for networks that require protection from external threats and wish to use security features that control network usage. This is the default setting.
- *Full UTM*: for networks that require the normal UTM features, as well as antivirus, application control, endpoint control, and web filtering.
- *Custom* should be chosen for networks that require customization of available features (including the ability to select all features).

# Certificates

The following topics provide instructions about certificates:


- Microsoft CA deep packet inspection on page 762
- Purchase and import a signed SSL certificate on page 767


## Microsoft CA deep packet inspection

In most production environments, you want to use a certificate issued be your own PKI for deep packet inspection (DPI).

An existing Microsoft root CA can be used to issue a subordinate CA (sub CA) certificate that is installed as a DPI certificate on the FortiGate.

Complete the following steps to create your own sub CA certificate and use it for DPI:

1. Create a Microsoft sub CA certificate
2. Export the certificate and private key
3. Import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate
4. Configure a firewall policy for DPI
5. Verify that the sub CA certificate is being used for DPI

The FortiGate firewall uses information in the original web server certificate, then issues a new certificate signed by the Microsoft DPI certificate. The FortiGate then sends this certificate with the issuing DPI certificate to the client's web browser when the SSL session is being established.

The browser verifies that the certificate was issued by a valid CA, then looks for the issuing CA of the Microsoft DPI certificate in its loca trusted root CA store to complete the path to trusted root CA.

The Microsoft CA root certificate is normally deployed to all client PCs in the Windows domain, so the client can complete the certificate path up to a trusted root CA. The FortiGate now controlsand can inspect the two HTTPS sessions: one with the external web server, and one with the client PC.

### Create a Microsoft sub CA certificate

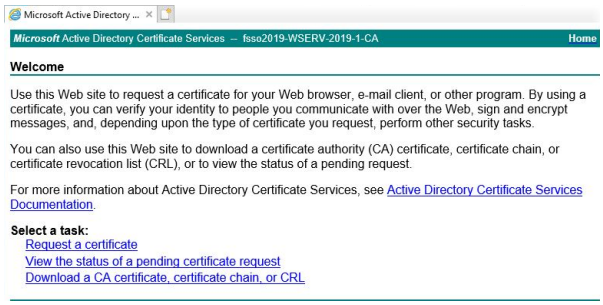
A Microsoft sub CA certificate can be created on a Microsoft CA server, or remotely using a web browser.

Creating a certificate remotely requires that the web enrollment option is configured on the Microsoft CA server. Remote certificate requests require HTTPS; requests are not allowed with HTTP.

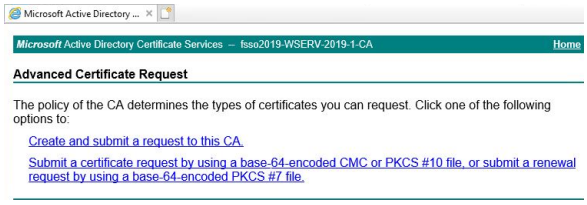
**To create a Microsoft sub CA certificate remotely:**

1. Open a web browser and go to one of the following URLs:
   - *https://<FQDN-CA-server>/CertSrv*
   - *https://<IP-CA-server>/CertSrv*.

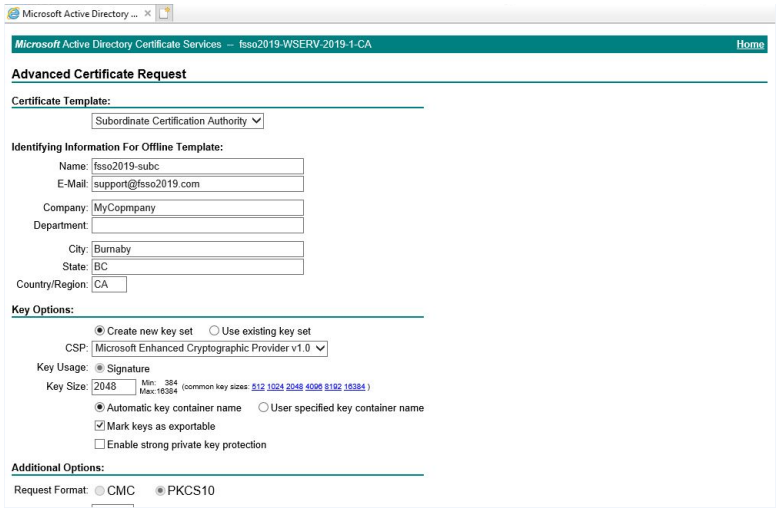
2. Log in to a domain administrator account that has web enrollment rights.




3. Click *Request a certificate*.
4. Click *advanced certificate request*.




5. Click *Create and submit a request to this CA*, then click *Yes* in the *Web Access Confirmation* warning.
6. For the *Certificate Template*, select *Subordinate Certification Authority*.
7. Enable *Mark keys as exportable*.
8. Fill out the remaining information according to your security policy.

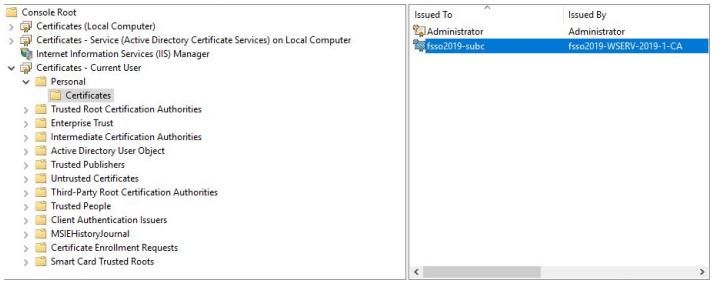



9. Submit the request.
10. Click *Yes* in the *Web Access Confirmation* warning.
11. Click *Install this certificate*.
    The certificate and private key are located in the current user's certificate store.

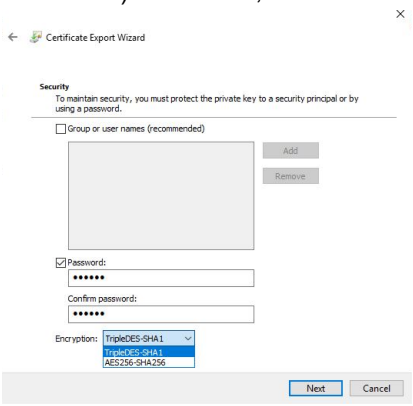
## Export the certificate and private key

**To export the certificate and private key:**

1. Open the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and add the *Certificate Snap-in*.
2. Go to the user's certificate store to locate the sub CA certificate that you just installed.




3. Right-click on the certificate and select *All Tasks* > *Export*.
4. Click *Next* to start the *Microsoft Certificate Export Wizard*.
5. Follow the steps in the wizard:
   - When asked, select *Yes, export the private key*.
   - Only the PKCS #12 (.PFX) format is available, and it requires a password.
   - When selecting the encryption type, select *TripleDES-SHA1* if you are using an older version of FortiOS (5.6.9 and earlier). Otherwise, select *AES256-SHA256*.




6. Complete the wizard, and save the DPI certificate to a local folder.

## Import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate

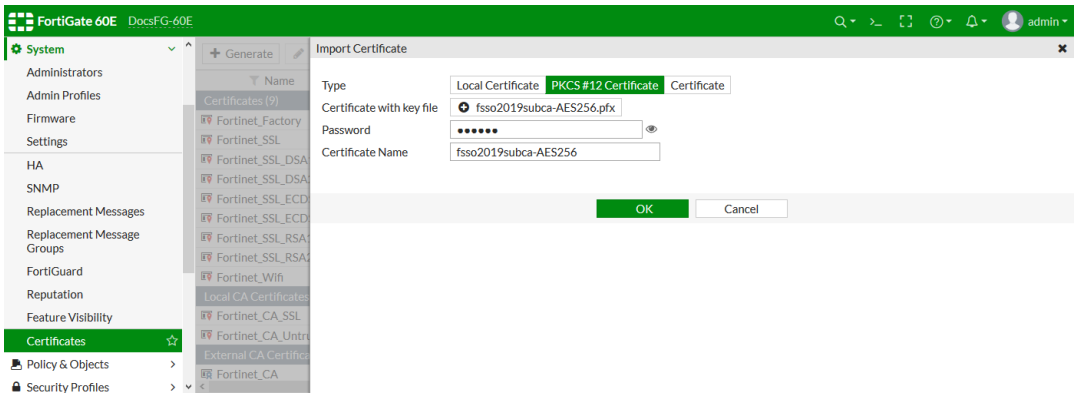
The certificate can be imported from the local computer using the GUI, or from a TFTP server using the CLI.

After importing the certificate, you can view it in the GUI to verify that it was successfully imported.

**To import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
2. Select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
3. Set *Type* to *PKCS #12 Certificate*.
4. Click *Upload* and locate the certificate file.
5. Enter the *Password*.

6. Optionally, modify the *Certificate Name*.



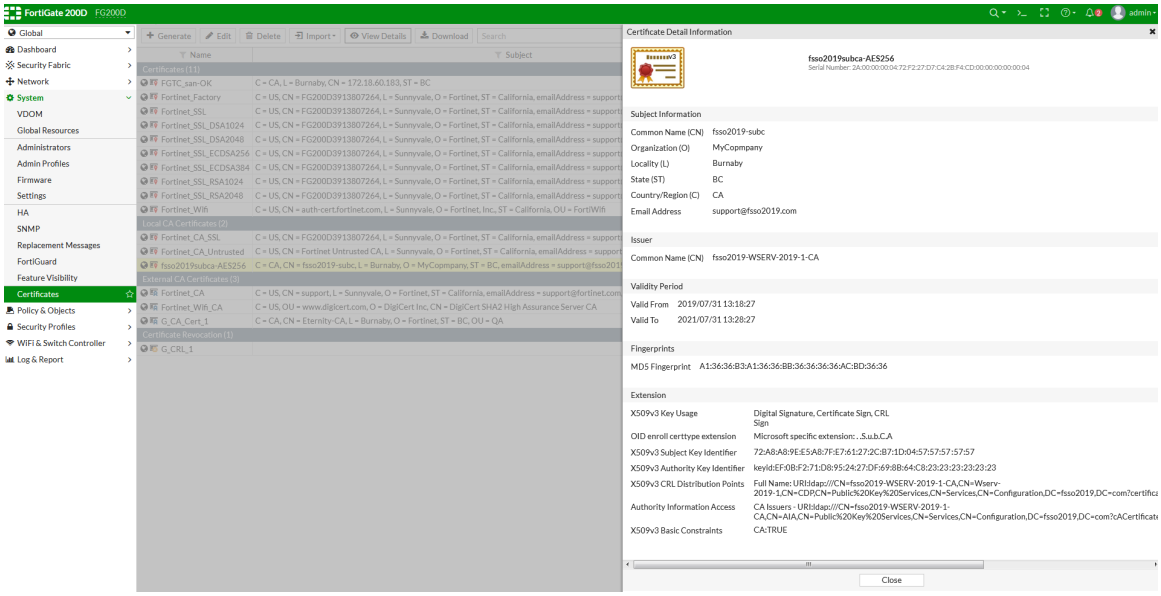

7. Click *OK*.

### To import the certificate and private key into the FortiGate in the CLI:

```
execute vpn certificate local import <certificate file name> <tftp ip address> <password>
```

### To verify that the certificate was imported:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*. By default, the *Certificate* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 761 for information.
2. Locate the newly imported certificate in the table.
3. Select the certificate and click *View Details* to view the certificate details.

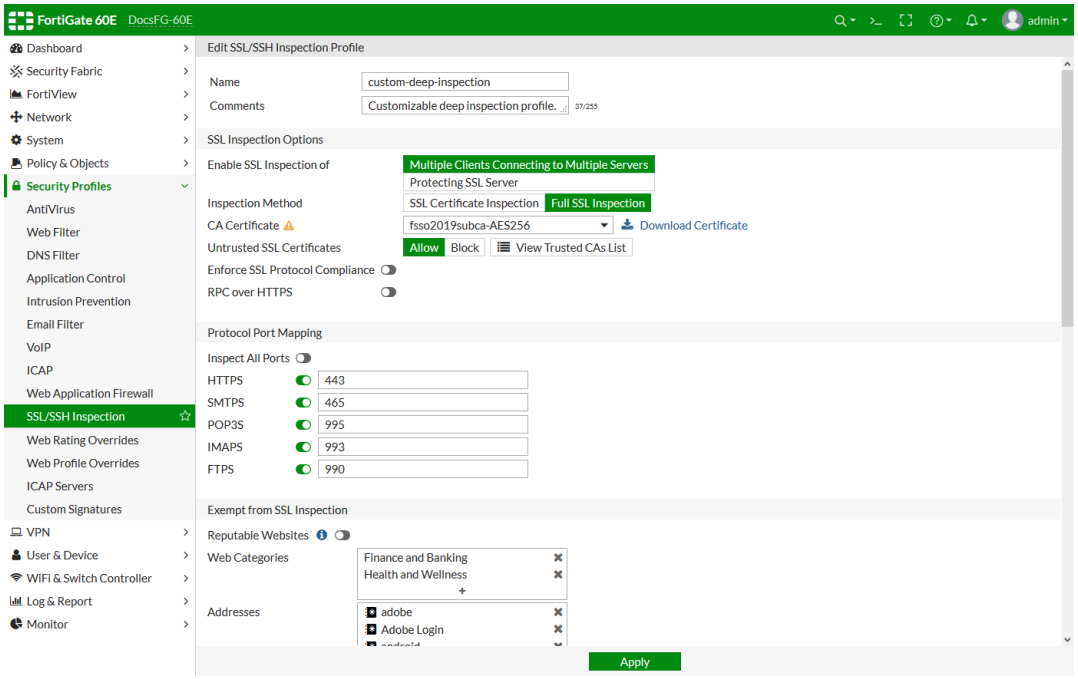



## Configure a firewall policy for DPI

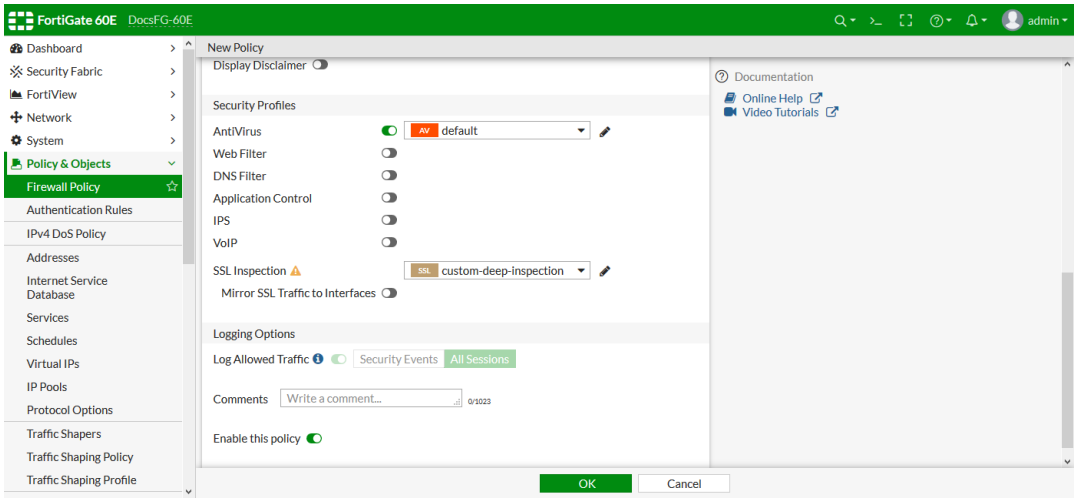
The certificate is used in an SSL/SSH inspection profile that is then used in a firewall policy.

**To configure a firewall policy for DPI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the inspection profile, selecting the new certificate




4. Click *Apply*.
5. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
6. Create a new policy, or edit an existing policy.
7. In the *SSL Inspection* field, select the new SSL inspection profile.




8. Configure the remaining settings as needed.
9. Click *OK*.

### Verify that the sub CA certificate is being used for DPI

You can verify that the certificate is being used for resigning web server certificates when a user connects to an external HTTPS website.

**To verify that the certificate is being used:**

1. On a client PC that is behind the FortiGate, go to an external HTTPS website.
   When connecting to the website, no certificate warning should be shown.
2. In your web browser, view the certificate and certificate path.
   The methods for doing this vary depending on the browser. See your browsers documentation for information.

## Purchase and import a signed SSL certificate

A signed SSL certificate can be used when configuring SSL VPN, for administrator GUI access, and for other functions that require a certificate.



Before creating a certificate, you must have a registered domain.

Follow these instructions to purchase, import, and use a signed SSL certificate:

- Purchase, setup, and download an SSL certificate package from a certificate authority
- Generate a CSR
- Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate
- Configure your FortiGate device to use the signed certificate

### Purchase, setup, and download an SSL certificate package from a certificate authority

SSL certificate packages can be purchased from any Certificate Authority (CA), such as DigiCert, GoDaddy, or GlobalSign.



A third party CA might not sign a certificate with an intranet name or IP address. For details, see Can I request a certificate for an intranet name or IP address?

The process for purchasing, setting up, and downloading a certificate will vary depending on the CA that is used, and if a CSR must be generated on the FortiGate.

**To purchase a certificate package:**

1. Create an account with your chosen vendor, or use the account that you used to purchase your domain.
2. Locate the SSL Certificates page.
3. Purchase a basic SSL certificate for domain validation only. If required, a more secure SSL certificate can be purchased.

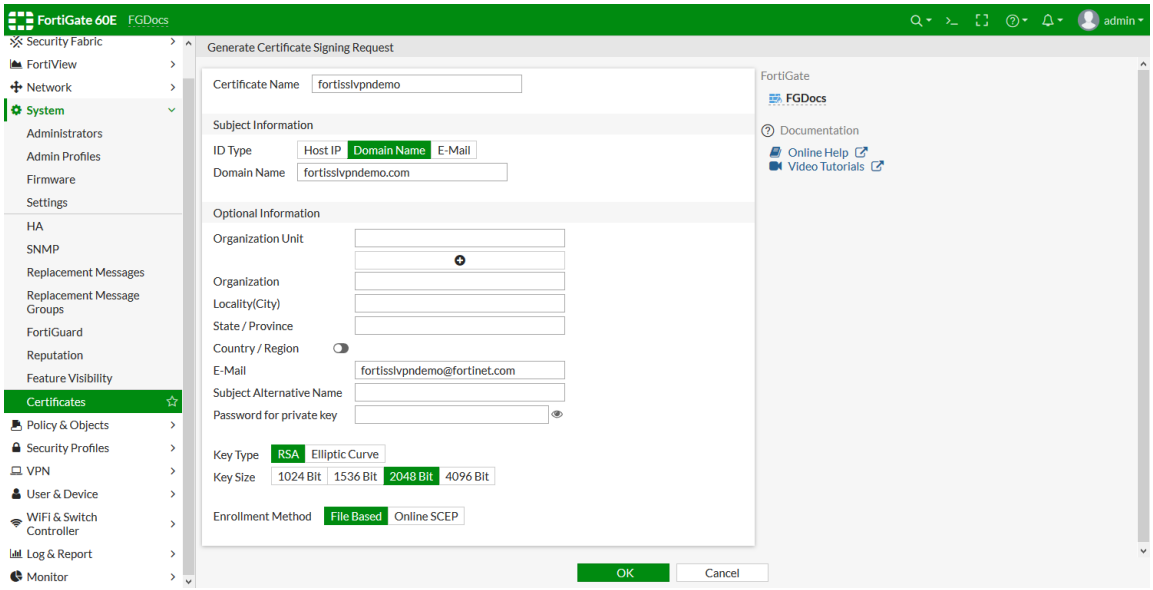
4. If required, load the CSR, either by uploaded the text file or copying and pasting the contents into the requisite text box. See Generate a CSR on page 768 for information on generating the CSR on the FortiGate.
5. If required, set the server type to *Other*.
6. Verify the certificate per the requirements of the CA.
7. Download the signed certificate to your computer.
8. Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate; see Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate on page 769.

## Generate a CSR

Some CAs can auto-generate the CSR during the signing process, or provide tools for creating CSRs. If necessary, a CSR can be created in your FortiGate device's GUI.

**To generate a CSR on your FortiGate:**

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*. By default, the *Certificate* option is not visible, see Feature visibility on page 761 for information.
2. Click *Generate*. The *Generate Certificate Signing Request* page opens.




3. Configure the CSR request:
   - Ensure that the certificate has a unique name.
   - Set the *ID Type* to *Domain Name* and enter a *Domain Name*.
   - An email address is required.
   - Ensure that the *Key Size* is set to *2048 Bit*.
   - Set the *Enrollment Method* to *File Based*.
4. Click *OK*.
   The CSR will be added to the certificate list with a status of *PENDING*.
5. In the certificate list, select the new CSR then click *Download* to save the CSR to your computer.
   The CSR file can be opened in any text editor, and will resemble the following:

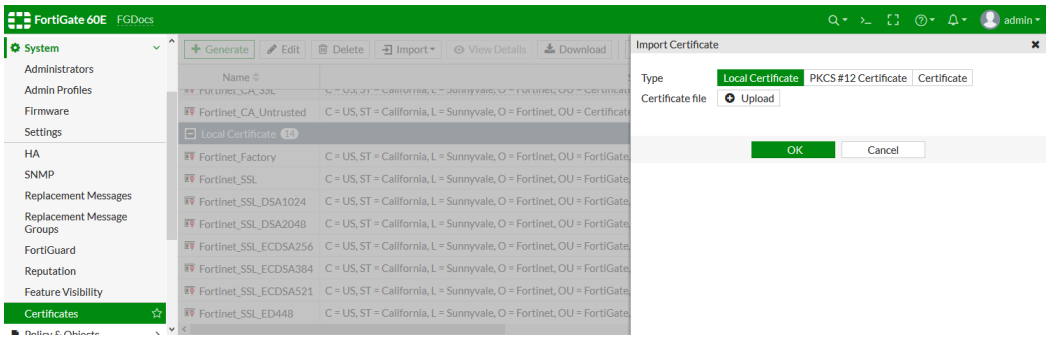
```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIICuTCCAaECAQAwSzEcMBoGA1UEAxMTZm9ydGlzc2x2cG5kZW1vLmNvbTErMCkG
CSqGSIb3DQEJARYcZm9ydGlzc2x2cG5kZW1vQGZvcnRpbmV0LmNvbTCCASIwDQYJ
```

```
KoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCAQoCggEBAMtnpNoR20NH2+UEX/NsyCmZhQqc4af3
Be1u9iOoNbo9Fk42gw47r71moAN+1jTL/Tcp3hRhXtpgoI7Zh3vjZnBbD2wwU8Ow
U7d1h5MULyMehR9r4T6OAJl4KbKPt5u90r5SpIb6mM1OIKvzMncuRS66rW1St0KP
mp/f6QjpjMrthnyJkCejgyTA1YwWNuT9BcO6PTkxBqVMLaRP6TUH6He9uhOx1Cj/
5tzvSdAozZIr2moMieQy0lNd6oQcgpdzaB9QN41+cZOlUXRCMPoH7E4KUe3/Gnis
+NMdQ8rIBijvWCXrKj20wb6sUEjAGJkcXlqVHWYCKWXl6Owejmc4ipkCAwEAAaAp
MCcGCSqGSIb3DQEJDjEaMBgwCQYDVR0TBAIwADALBgNVHQ8EBAMCBaAwDQYJKoZI
hvcNAQELBQADggEBAJKhtz2BPIKeHH9HcJKnfBKL+a6vu1l+1sW+YqnyD+3oR9ec
0eCmLnPxyyxsVel/tRsUg4DTfmooLNDhOjgfMsWxAGUQgrDH2k87cw6kiDAPCqv1
b+hFPNKZQSd09+HXAvOpXrMlrw5YdSaoRnau6Q02yUIYennKTIzFIscgh1mk4FSe
mb12DhPF+QydDCGDgtqnQbfxlDC0WmDcmxwa/0ZktoQhhhEbYgJ2O7l4TMqOxs/q
AZgwJlSNGBALLA2AxkIRUMKUteDdXz0QE8xNrvZpLTbWCNIpYJdRRqSd5C1w2VF4
CFgugTjFaJ13kYmBimeMRQsFtjLV5AxN+bUUsnQ=
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
```

## Import the signed certificate into your FortiGate

**To import the signed certificate into your FortiGate:**

1. Unzip the file downloaded from the CA.
   There should be two CRT files: a CA certificate with *bundle* in the file name, and a local certificate.
2. Log in to your FortiGate unit and go to *System* > *Certificates*.
3. Click *Import* > *Local Certificate*.




4. Upload the local certificate file, then click *OK*.
5. The status of the certificate will change from *PENDING* to *OK*.
6. Click *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
7. Set the *Type* to *File*, upload the CA certificate file, then click *OK*.
   The CA certificate will be listed in the *CA Certificates* section of the certificates list.

## Configure your FortiGate device to use the signed certificate

After the signed certificates have been imported, you can use it when configuring SSL VPN, for administrator GUI access, and for other functions that require a certificate.

**To configure your FortiGate to use the signed certificate for SSL VPN:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Set *Server Certificate* to the new certificate.

3. Configure other settings as needed.
4. Click *Apply*.

For more information on configuring SSL VPN, see SSL VPN on page 1343 and the Setup SSL VPN video in the Fortinet Video Library.

**To configure using the certificate for administrator GUI access in the CLI:**

```
config system global
    set admin-server-cert fortisslvpndemo
end
```

**To change the certificate that is used for administrator GUI access in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Administration Settings* section, change *HTTPS server certificate* as needed.
3. Click *Apply*. You will be logged out of FortiOS.

# Configuration scripts

Configuration scripts are text files that contain CLI command sequences. They can be created using a text editor or copied from a CLI console, either manually or using the *Record CLI Script* function.

Scripts can be used to run the same task on multiple devices. For example, if your devices use the same security policies, you can enter or record the commands to create those policies in a script, and then run the script on each device. You could also create the policies in the GUI, and then copy and paste the CLI commands from the *CLI Console* using the *show* command.

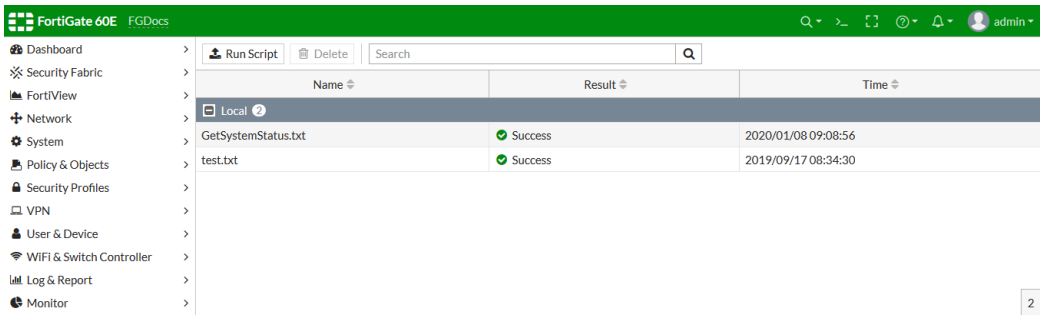
If the FortiGate is managed by FortiManager, scripts can be uploaded to FortiManager and then run on any other FortiGates that are managed by that FortiManager. See Scripts in the FortiManager Administration Guide.



A comment line in a script starts with the number sign (#). Comments are not executed.

**To run a script using the GUI:**

1. Click on your username and select *Configuration* > *Scripts*.
2. Click *Run Script*.
3. Select the text file containing the script on your management computer, then click *OK*.
   The script runs immediately, and the *Script Execution History* table is updated, showing if the script ran successfully.




# Workspace mode

Workspace mode allows administrators to make a batch of changes that are not implemented until the transaction is committed. Prior to committing, the changes can be reverted or edited as needed without impacting current operations.

When an object is edited in workspace mode it is locked, preventing other administrators from editing that object. A warning message will be shown to let the administrator know that the object is currently being configured in another transaction.

All administrators can use workspace mode; their permissions in workspace mode are the same as defined in their account profile.

A workspace mode transaction times out after five minutes if there is no activity. When a transaction times out, all changes are discarded. A warning message will be shown to let the administrator know that a timeout is imminent, or has already happened:

```
config transaction id=1 will expire in 30 seconds
config transaction id=1 will expire in 20 seconds
config transaction id=1 will expire in 10 seconds
config transaction id=1 has expired
```

The following commands are not changeable in a workspace transaction:

```
config system console
config system resource-limits
config system elbc
config system global
   set split-port
   set vdom-admin
   set management-vdom
   set wireless-mode
   set internal-switch-mode
end
config system settings
   set opmode
end
config system npu
config system np6
config system wireless
   set mode
end
config system vdom-property
config system storage
```

The `execute batch` command cannot be used in or to start workspace mode.

**To use workspace mode:**

1. Start workspace mode:
   ```
   execute config-transaction
   ```
   Once in workspace mode, the administrator can make configuration changes, all of which are made in a local CLI process that is not viewable by other processes.
2. Commit configuration changes:
   ```
   execute config-transaction commit
   ```
   After performing the commit, the changes are available for all other processes, and are also made in the kernel.
3. Abort configuration changes:
   ```
   execute config-transaction abort
   ```
   If changes are aborted, no changes are made to the current configuration or the kernel.

**Diagnose commands**

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-meta
```

Show config transaction meta information. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-meta
txn_next_id=8, txn_nr=2
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-info
```

Show config transaction information. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-info
current_jiffies=680372

txn_id=6, expire_jiffies=706104, clicmd_fpath='/dev/cmdb/txn/6_EiLl9G.conf'
txn_id=7, expire_jiffies=707427, clicmd_fpath='/dev/cmdb/txn/7_UXK6wY.conf'
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-entity
```

Show config transaction entity. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-entity
vd='global', cli-node-oid=37(system.vdom), txn_id=7. location: fileid=0, storeid=0,
     pgnr=0, pgidx=0
vd='global', cli-node-oid=46(system.interface), txn_id=7. location: fileid=3,
     storeid=0, pgnr=0, pgidx=0
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-lock
```

Show transaction lock status. For example:

```
# diagnose sys config-transaction show txn-lock
type=-1, refcnt=0, value=256, pid=128
```

```
diagnose sys config-transaction status
```

Show the transaction status in the current CLI.

# Policy and Objects

This section contains topics on configuring policies and traffic shaping:


- Policies on page 773
- Objects on page 862
- Traffic shaping on page 886


## Policies

The firewall policy is the axis around which most features of the FortiGate revolve. Many firewall settings end up relating to or being associated with the firewall policies and the traffic they govern. Any traffic going through a FortiGate has to be associated with a policy. These policies are essentially discrete compartmentalized sets of instructions that control the traffic flow going through the firewall. These instructions control where the traffic goes, how it is processed, if it is processed, and whether or not it is allowed to pass through the FortiGate.

When the firewall receives a connection packet, it analyzes the source address, destination address, and service (by port number). It also registers the incoming interface, the outgoing interface it needs to use, and the time of day. Using this information, the FortiGate firewall attempts to locate a security policy that matches the packet. If a policy matches the parameters, then the FortiGate takes the required action for that policy. If it is *Accept*, the traffic is allowed to proceed to the next step. If the action is *Deny* or a match cannot be found, the traffic is not allowed to proceed.

The two basic actions at the initial connection are either *Accept* or *Deny*:

- If the action is *Accept*, the policy permits communication sessions. There may be other packet processing instructions, such as requiring authentication to use the policy or restrictions on the source and destination of the traffic.
- If the action is *Deny*, the policy blocks communication sessions, and you can optionally log the denied traffic. If no security policy matches the traffic, the packets are dropped. A *Deny* security policy is needed when it is required to log the denied traffic, also called *violation traffic*.

One other action can be associated with the policy:

- *IPsec*: this is an *Accept* action that is specifically for IPsec VPNs.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies:


- Firewall policy parameters on page 774
- Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW on page 775
- NGFW policy mode application default service on page 779
- Policy views and policy lookup on page 781
- Policy with source NAT on page 782
- Policy with destination NAT on page 795
- Policy with Internet Service on page 808
- NAT64 policy and DNS64 (DNS proxy) on page 826
- NAT46 policy on page 829
- Multicast processing and basic Multicast policy on page 833

- Local-in policies on page 834
- IPv4/IPv6 access control lists on page 836
- Mirroring SSL traffic in policies on page 837
- Inspection mode per policy on page 840
- OSPFv3 neighbor authentication on page 842
- Firewall anti-replay option per policy on page 844
- Enabling advanced policy options in the GUI on page 845
- Recognize anycast addresses in geo-IP blocking on page 846
- Matching GeoIP by registered and physical location on page 847
- Authentication policy extensions on page 848
- HTTP to HTTPS redirect for load balancing on page 849
- GTPv2 in policies on page 851
- Use active directory objects directly in policies on page 852
- FortiGate Cloud / FDN communication through an explicit proxy on page 856
- No session timeout on page 857
- MAP-E support on page 858


## Firewall policy parameters

For traffic to flow through the FortiGate firewall, there must be a policy that matches its parameters:

- Incoming interface(s)
- Outgoing interface(s)
- Source address(es)
- User(s) identity
- Destination address(es)
- Internet service(s)
- Schedule
- Service

Without all six (possibly eight) of these things matching, the traffic is declined.

Traffic flow initiated from each direction requires a policy, that is, if sessions can be initiated from both directions, each direction requires a policy.

Just because packets can go from point A to point B on port X does not mean that the traffic can flow from point B to point A on port X. A policy must be configured for each direction.

When designing a policy, there is often reference to the traffic flow, but most communication is two-way so trying to determine the direction of the flow might be confusing. If traffic is HTTP web traffic, the user sends a request to the website, but most of the traffic flow will be coming from the website to the user or in both directions? For the purposes of determining the direction for a policy, the important factor is the direction of the initiating communication. The user is sending a request to the website, so this is the initial communication; the website is responding so the traffic is from the user's network to the Internet.



FortiOS does not perform a reverse-path check on reply traffic that matches an allowed session based on the IP tuple. The request traffic can be sent on one interface and the reply traffic could return on another interface.

# Profile-based NGFW vs policy-based NGFW

Profile-based next-generation firewall (NGFW) mode is the traditional mode where you create a profile (antivirus, web filter, and so on) and then apply the profile to a policy.

In policy-based NGFW mode, you allow applications and URL categories to be used directly in security policies, without requiring web filter or application control profiles.

In policy-based mode:

- Central NAT is always enabled. If no Central SNAT policy exists, you must create one. See Central SNAT on page 789 for more information.
- Pre-match rules are defined separately from security policies, and define broader rules, such as SSL inspection and user authentication.

If your FortiGate operates in NAT mode, rather than enabling source NAT in individual NGFW policies, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Central SNAT* and add source NAT policies that apply to all matching traffic. In many cases, you may only need one SNAT policy for each interface pair.

The NGFW mode is set per VDOM, and it is only available when the VDOM inspection mode is flow-based. You can operate your entire FortiGate or individual VDOMs in NGFW policy mode.



Switching from profile-based to policy-based mode converts your policies to policy-based. To avoid issues, you could create a new VDOM for the policy-based mode. We recommend backing up your configuration before switching modes. See Configuration backups on page 112 for information.

## Enabling policy-based NGFW mode

**To enable policy-based NGFW mode without VDOMs in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In *NGFW Mode*, select *Policy-based*.
3. Click *Apply*.

**To enable policy-based NGFW mode with VDOMs in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *VDOM* .
2. Double-click a VDOM to edit the settings.
3. In *NGFW Mode*, select *Policy-based*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To enable policy-based NGFW mode without VDOMs in the CLI:**

```
config system settings
    set ngfw-mode policy-based
end
```

**To enable policy-based NGFW mode with VDOMs in the CLI:**

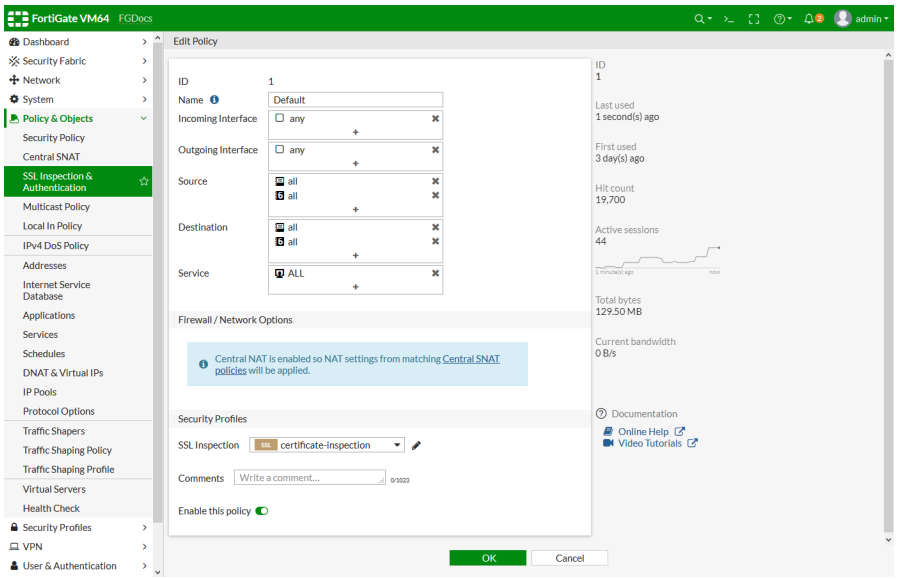
```
config vdom
    edit <vdom>
        config system settings
            set ngfw-mode policy-based
        end
    next
end
```

## Security and SSL Inspection & Authentication policies

Security policies work with SSL Inspection & Authentication policies to inspect traffic. To allow traffic from a specific user or user group, both Security and SSL Inspection & Authentication policies must be configured. A default SSL Inspection & Authentication policy with the certificate-inspection SSL Inspection profile is preconfigured. Traffic will match the SSL Inspection & Authentication policy first. If the traffic is allowed, packets are sent to the IPS engine for application, URL category, user, and user group match, and then, if enabled, UTM inspection (antivirus, IPS, DLP, and email filter) is performed.

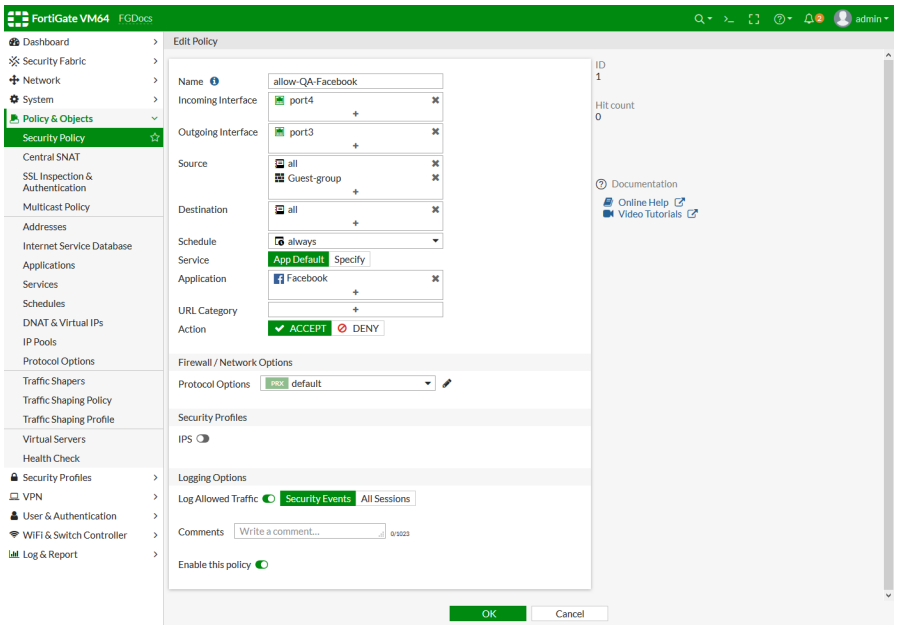
SSL Inspection & Authentication policies are used to pre-match traffic before sending the packets to the IPS engine:

- There are no schedule or action options; traffic matching the policy is always redirected to the IPS engine.
- SSL inspection, formerly configured in the VDOM settings, is configured in an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy.
- Users and user groups that require authentication must be configured in an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy.




Security policies work with SSL Inspection & Authentication policies to inspect traffic:

- Applications and URL categories can be configured directly in the policy.
- Users and user groups that require authentication must also be configured in a security policy.
- The available actions are *Accept* or *Deny*.
- The *Service* option can be used to enforce the standard port for the selected applications. See NGFW policy mode application default service on page 779 for details.
- UTM inspection is configured in a security policy.




**To configure policies for Facebook and Gmail access in the CLI:**

1. Configure an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Policy-1"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "port17"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "new-deep-inspection"
        set groups "Dev" "HR" "QA" "SYS"
    next
end
```

2. Configure security policies:

```
config firewall security-policy
    edit 2
        set name "allow-QA-Facebook"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "port17"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set application 15832
        set groups "Dev" "QA"
    next
    edit 4
        set name "allow-QA-Email"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "port17"
```

```
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set url-category 23
            set groups "QA"
        next
    end
```

### Logs

In the application control and web filter logs, `securityid` maps to the security policy ID.

Application control log:

```
date=2019-06-17 time=16:35:47 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560814547702405829 tz="-0700"
appid=15832 user="Jack" group="QA" srcip=10.1.100.102 dstip=157.240.3.29 srcport=56572
dstport=443 srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port17"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="P2P" direction="incoming" policyid=1
sessionid=42445 appcat="Social.Media" app="Facebook" action="pass" hostname="external-sea1-
1.xx.fbcdn.net" incidentserialno=1419629662 url="/" securityid=2 msg="Social.Media:
Facebook," apprisk="medium" scertcname="*.facebook.com" scertissuer="DigiCert SHA2 High
Assurance Server CA"
```

Web filter log:

```
date=2019-06-17 time=16:42:41 logid="0317013312" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_allow" level="notice" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560814961418114836 tz="-0700"
policyid=4 sessionid=43201 user="Jack" group="QA" srcip=10.1.100.102 srcport=56668
srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.3.165 dstport=443 dstintf="port17"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="HTTPS" hostname="mail.google.com"
action="passthrough" reqtype="direct" url="/" sentbyte=709 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing"
msg="URL belongs to an allowed category in policy" method="domain" cat=23 catdesc="Web-based
Email" securityid=4
```

Traffic logs:

```
date=2019-06-17 time=16:35:53 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560814553778525154 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.102
srcport=56572 srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=157.240.3.29 dstport=443
dstintf="port17" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="b740d418-8ed3-51e9-5a7b-114e99ab6370"
sessionid=42445 proto=6 action="server-rst" user="Jack" group="QA" policyid=1
policytype="consolidated" centralnatid=1 service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United States"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=56572 duration=6
sentbyte=276 rcvdbyte=745 sentpkt=5 rcvdpkt=11 appid=15832 app="Facebook"
appcat="Social.Media" apprisk="medium" utmaction="allow" countapp=1 utmref=65531-294

2: date=2019-06-17 time=16:47:45 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560815265058557636 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.102
srcport=56668 srcintf="port18" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.3.165 dstport=443
dstintf="port17" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="b740d418-8ed3-51e9-5a7b-114e99ab6370"
sessionid=43201 proto=6 action="timeout" user="Jack" group="QA" policyid=1
policytype="consolidated" centralnatid=1 service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United States"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=56668 duration=303
sentbyte=406 rcvdbyte=384 sentpkt=4 rcvdpkt=4 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="allow"
countweb=1 utmref=65531-3486
```

### Other NGFW policy-based mode options

You can combine *Application Control* and *Web Filter* in the same NGFW mode policy. If the policy accepts applications or URL categories, you can also apply *AntiVirus*, *DNS Filter*, *IPS* profiles, and logging options.

## NGFW policy mode application default service

In NGFW policy-based mode, the application default service enforces applications running only on their default service port. The applications specified in the policy are monitored, and if traffic is detected from a nonstandard port, it is blocked, and a log entry is recorded with a *port-violation* event type.

If you are not using the default ports, and need to pick specific services, select *Specify* to select the required services.

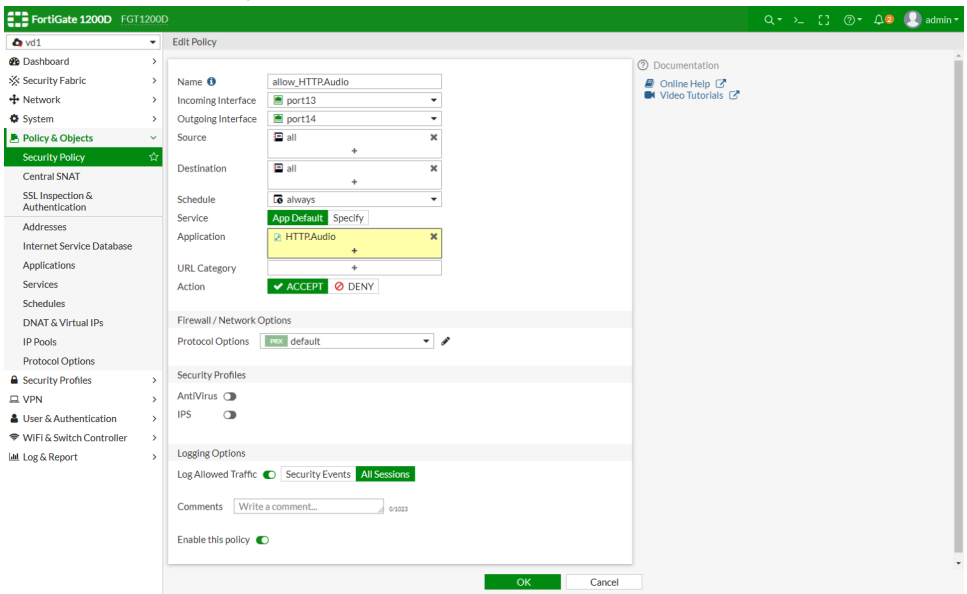
### Example

In this example, the standard port is enforced for HTTPS traffic using the HTTP.Audio application.

First, an SSL Inspection & Authentication policy is created do to traffic pre-match, and then a security policy is created to allow the HTTP.Audio application when using the default port. Fetching an MP3 file from an HTTP server using port 443 is allowed, but is blocked when using a nonstandard port, such as 8443.

**To enforce the HTTP.Audio application using the default port in the GUI:**

1. Create a new SSL Inspection & Authentication policy, or use the default policy.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Security Policy*, and click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the policy, such as *allow_HTTP.Audio*.
4. Configure the ports as needed.
5. Set *Service* to *App Default*.
6. In the *Application* field, select *HTTP.Audio*.
7. Set the *Action* to *Accept*.




8. Click *OK*.

**To enforce the HTTP.Audio application using the default port in the CLI:**

1. Create a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "consolidated_all"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "port14"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "new-deep-inspection"
    next
end
```

2. Create a security policy:

```
config firewall security-policy
    edit 1
        set name "allow_HTTP.Audio"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "port14"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set enforce-default-app-port enable
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set application 15879
    next
end
```

### Logs

The application logs show logs with an event type of `port-violation` for traffic on port 8443 that is blocked, and an event type of `signature` for traffic on port 443 that is allowed.

Blocked:

```
2: date=2019-06-18 time=16:15:40 logid="1060028736" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="port-violation" level="warning" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560899740218875746 tz="-0700"
appid=15879 srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=172.16.200.216 srcport=52680 dstport=8443
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTPS" direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=5041 appcat="Video/Audio"
app="HTTP.Audio" action="block" hostname="172.16.200.216" incidentserialno=1906780850
url="/app_data/story.mp3" securityid=2 msg="Video/Audio: HTTP.Audio," apprisk="elevated"
```

Allowed:

```
1: date=2019-06-18 time=16:15:49 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1560899749258579372 tz="-0700"
appid=15879 srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=172.16.200.216 srcport=54527 dstport=443
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTPS" direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=5064 appcat="Video/Audio"
app="HTTP.Audio" action="pass" hostname="172.16.200.216" incidentserialno=1139663486
url="/app_data/story.mp3" securityid=2 msg="Video/Audio: HTTP.Audio," apprisk="elevated"
```

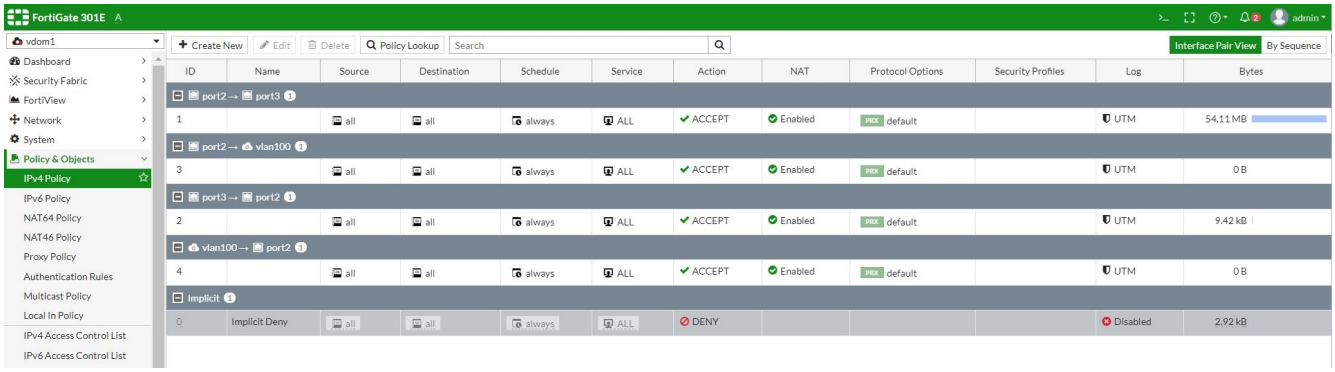
# Policy views and policy lookup

This topic provides a sample of firewall policy views and firewall policy lookup.

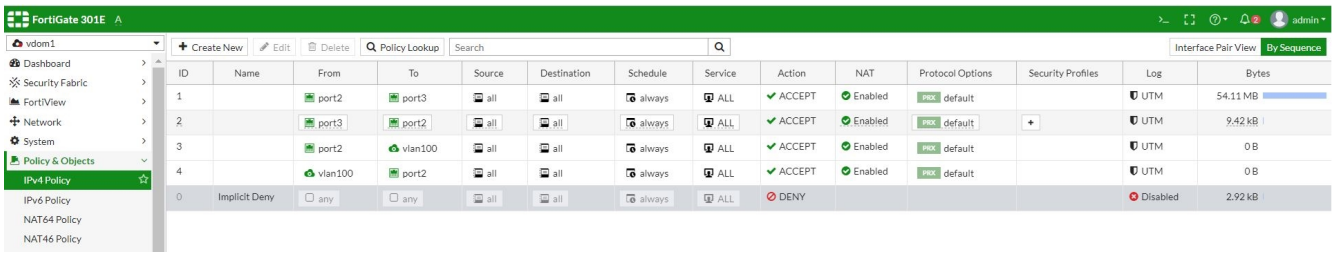
## Policy views

In *Policy & Objects* policy list page, there are two policy views: *Interface Pair View* and *By Sequence* view.

*Interface Pair View* displays the policies in the order that they are checked for matching traffic, grouped by the pairs of Incoming and Outgoing interfaces. For example, all policies referencing traffic from WAN1 to DMZ are in one section. The policies referencing traffic from DMZ to WAN1 are in another section. The sections are collapsible so that you only need to look at the sections you want.




*By Sequence* displays policies in the order that they are checked for matching traffic without any grouping.



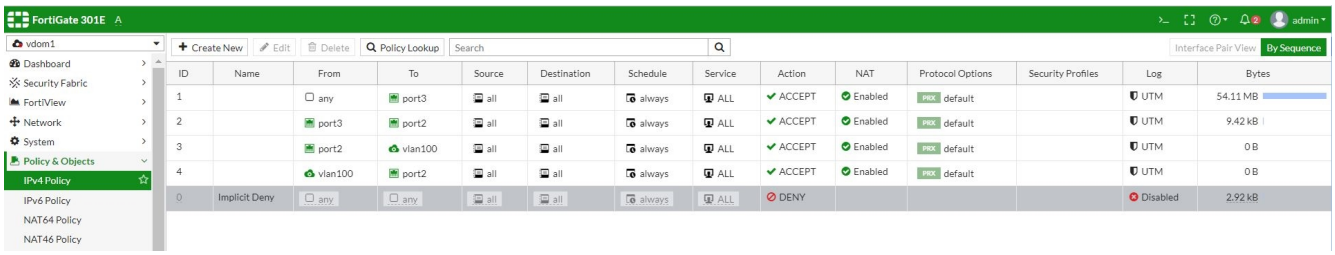

The default display is *Interface Pair View*. You can switch between the two views except if *any* or multiple-interfaces are applied in the policy.

### How *Any* or multiple-interfaces policy can change the *Interface Pair View*

The FortiGate unit automatically changes the view on the policy list page to *By Sequence* whenever there is a policy containing *any* or multiple-interfaces as the *Source* or *Destination* interface. If the *Interface Pair View* is grayed out, it is likely that one or more policies have used the *any* or multiple-interfaces.

When you use the *any* or multiple-interfaces, the policy goes into multiple sections because it might be any one of a number of interface pairings. Policies are divided into sectioned using the interface pairings, for example, port1 to port2.

Each section has its own policy order. The order in which a policy is checked for matching criteria to a packet's information is based solely on the position of the policy within its section or within the entire list of policies. If the policy is in multiple sections, FortiGate cannot place the policy in order in multiple sections. Therefore the view can only be *By Sequence*.




## Policy lookup

Firewall policy lookup is based on the `Source_interfaces/Protocol/Source_Address/Destination_Address` that matches the `source-port` and `dst-port` of the protocol. Use this tool to find out which policy matches specific traffic from a number of policies. After completing the lookup, the matching firewall policy is highlighted on the policy list page.

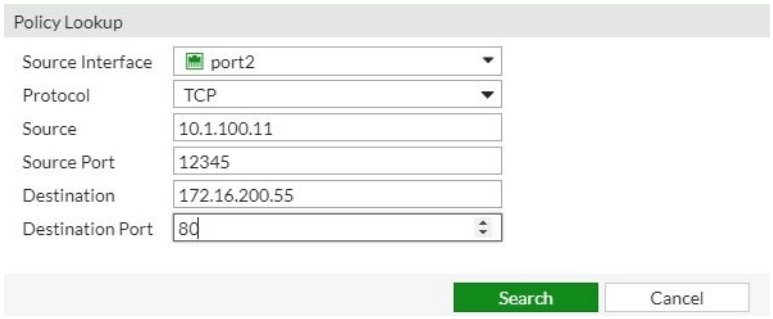
The Policy Lookup tool has the following requirements:

- Transparent mode does not support Policy lookup function.
- When executing the policy lookup, you need to confirm whether the relevant route required for the policy work already exists.

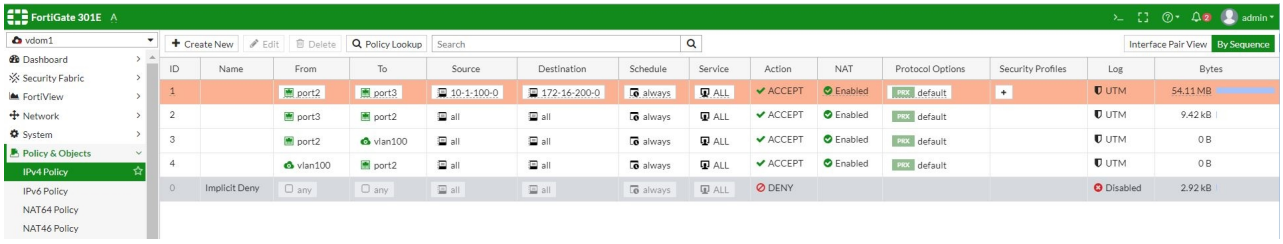
### Sample configuration

This example uses the TCP protocol to show how policy lookup works:

1. In *Policy & Objects* policy list page, click *Policy Lookup* and enter the traffic parameters.




2. Click *Search* to display the policy lookup results.




# Policy with source NAT

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies with source NAT:

- Static SNAT on page 783
- Dynamic SNAT on page 784
- Central SNAT on page 789
- Configuring an IPv6 SNAT policy on page 792
- SNAT policies with virtual wire pairs on page 794


## Static SNAT

Network Address Translation (NAT) is the process that enables a single device such as a router or firewall to act as an agent between the Internet or Public Network and a local or private network. This agent acts in real time to translate the source or destination IP address of a client or server on the network interface. For the source IP translation, this enables a single public address to represent a significantly larger number of private addresses. For the destination IP translation, the firewall can translate a public destination address to a private address. So we don't have to configure a real public IP address for the server deployed in a private network.

We can subdivide NAT into two types: source NAT (SNAT) and destination NAT (DNAT). This topic is about SNAT, We support three NAT working modes: static SNAT, dynamic SNAT, and central SNAT.

In static SNAT all internal IP addresses are always mapped to the same public IP address. This is a port address translation, Since we have 60416 available port numbers, this one public IP address can handle the conversion of 60,416 internal IP addresses. See example below.

| Internal Source IP | Source Port | Translated Source IP | Translated Source Port |
|---|---|---|---|
| 10.1.100.1 | 11110 | 172.16.200.1 | 5117 |
| 10.1.100.1 | 11111 | 172.16.200.1 | 5118 |
| 10.1.100.2 | 11112 | 172.16.200.1 | 5119 |
| ..... | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | 65533 |

FortiGate firewall configurations commonly use the Outgoing Interface address.

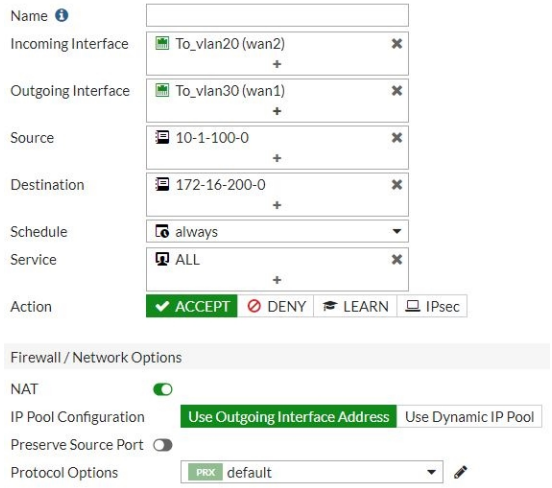
### Sample configuration

The following example of static SNAT uses an internal network with subnet 10.1.100.0/24 (vlan20) and an external/ISP network with subnet 172.16.200.0/24 (vlan30).

When the clients in internal network need to access the servers in external network, We need to translate IP addresses from 10.1.100.0/24 to an IP address 172.16.200.0/24, In this example, we implement static SNAT by creating a firewall policy.

**To configure static NAT:**

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, click *Create New*.
2. Enter the required policy parameters.
3. Enable *NAT* and select *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.
4. If needed, enable *Preserve Source Port*.
   Enable *Preserve Source Port* to keep the same source port for services that expect traffic to come from a specific source port.
   Disable *Preserve Source Port* to allow more than one connection through the firewall for that service.




For packets that match this policy, its source IP address is translated to the IP address of the outgoing interface.

## Dynamic SNAT

Dynamic SNAT maps the private IP addresses to the first available public address from a pool of addresses. In the FortiGate firewall, this can be done by using IP pools. IP pools is a mechanism that allows sessions leaving the FortiGate firewall to use NAT. An IP pool defines a single IP address or a range of IP addresses to be used as the source address for the duration of the session. These assigned addresses are used instead of the IP address assigned to that FortiGate interface.

### IP pool types

FortiGate uses four types of IPv4 IP pools. This topic focuses on some of the differences between them.

#### Overload

This type of IP pool is similar to static SNAT mode. We need to define an external IP range that contains one or more IP addresses. When there is only one IP address it is almost the same as static SNAT, the outgoing interface address is used. When it contains multiple IP addresses, it is equivalent to an extended mode of static SNAT.

For instance, if we define an overload type IP pool with two external IP addresses (172.16.200.1—172.16.200.2), since there are 60,416 available port numbers per IP, this IP pool can handle 60,416*2 internal IP addresses.

| Original Source IP | Original Source Port | Translated Source IP | Translated Source Port |
|---|---|---|---|
| 10.1.100.1 | 11110 | 172.16.200.1 | 5117 |
| 10.1.100.2 | 11111 | 172.16.200.1 | 5118 |
| ..... | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | 65533 |
| ..... | ..... | 172.16.200.2 | 5117 |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | 172.16.200.2 | 65533 |

The mapped IP address can be calculated from the source IP address. The index number of the address in the pool is the remainder of the source IP address, in decimal, divided by the number addresses in the pool.



To calculate the decimal value of the source IP address, either use an online calculator, or use the following equation:

$$a.b.c.d = a * (256)^3 + b * (256)^2 + c * (256) + d$$

For example:

$$192.168.0.1 = 192 * (256)^3 + 168 * (256)^2 + 0 * (256) + 1 = 3232235521$$

If there is one IP pool, where:

- $P_1$ = the first address in the IP pool
- $R_1$ = the number of IP addresses in the IP pool
- $X$ = the source IP address as a decimal number
- $Y$ = the mapped IP address

Then the equation to determine the mapped address is:

$$Y = P_1 + X \bmod R_1$$

For example:

| IP pool | Source IP address |
|---|---|
| 172.26.73.20 to 172.26.73.90 | 192.168.1.200 |

1. Convert the source IP address to a decimal number:
$$192 * (256)^3 + 168 * (256)^2 + 1 * (256) + 200 = 3232235976$$
2. Determine the number of IP addresses in the pool:
$$172.26.73.90 - 172.26.73.20 = 71$$
3. Find the remainder of the source IP address divided by the number of addresses in the pool:
$$3232235976 \bmod 71 = 26$$
4. Add the remainder to the first IP address in the pool:
$$172.26.73.20 + 26 = 172.26.73.46$$
So, the mapped IP address is **172.26.73.46**.

If there are multiple IP pools, the calculation is similar to when there is only one pool.

If there are two IP pools, where:

- $P_1$ = the first address in the first IP pool
- $P_2$ = the first address in the second IP pool
- $R_1$ = the number of IP addresses in the first IP pool
- $R_2$ = the number of IP addresses in the second IP pool
- $X$ = the source IP address as a decimal number
- $Y$ = the mapped IP address

Then the equations to determine the mapped address are:

$$\text{If } X \bmod (R_1 + R_2) >= R_1, \text{ then } Y = P_2 + X \bmod R_2$$

$$\text{If } X \bmod (R_1 + R_2) < R_1, \text{ then } Y = P_1 + X \bmod R_1$$

For example:

| IP pools | Source IP address |
|---|---|
| pool01: 172.26.73.20 to 172.26.73.90 | 192.168.1.200 |
| pool02: 172.26.75.50 to 172.26.75.150 | |

1. Convert the source IP address to a decimal number:
$$192 * (256)^3 + 168 * (256)^2 + 1 * (256) + 200 = 3232235976$$
2. Determine the total number of IP addresses in the pools:
$$(172.26.73.90 - 172.26.73.20) + (172.26.75.50 - 172.26.75.150) = 71 + 101 = 172$$
3. Find the remainder of the source IP address divided by the number of addresses in the pools:
$$3232235976 \bmod 172 = 108$$
4. The remainder is greater than the number of addresses in pool01, so the address is selected from pool02 and the remainder is recalculated based only on pool02:
$$3232235976 \bmod 101 = 40$$
5. Add the new remainder to the first IP address in pool02:
$$172.26.75.50 + 40 = 172.26.75.90$$
So, the mapped IP address is **172.26.75.90**.

### One-to-one

This type of IP pool means that the internal IP address and the external (translated) IP address match one-to-one. The port address translation (PAT) is disabled when using this type of IP pool. For example, if we define a one-to-one type IP pool with two external IP addresses (172.16.200.1 - 172.16.200.2), this IP pool only can handle two internal IP addresses.

### Fixed port range

For the overload and one-to-one IP pool types, we do not need to define the internal IP range. For the fixed port range type of IP pool, we can define both internal IP range and external IP range. Since each external IP address and the number of available port numbers is a specific number, if the number of internal IP addresses is also determined, we can calculate the port range for each address translation combination. So we call this type fixed port range. This type of IP pool is a type of port address translation (PAT).

For instance, if we define one external IP address (172.16.200.1) and ten internal IP addresses (10.1.100.1-10.1.100.10), we have translation IP+Port combination like following table:

| Original Source IP | Original Source Port | Translated Source IP | Translated Source Port Range |
|---|---|---|---|
| 10.1.100.1 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | 5117~11157 |
| 10.1.100.2 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | 11158~17198 |
| 10.1.100.3 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| 10.1.100.4 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| 10.1.100.5 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| 10.1.100.6 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| 10.1.100.7 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| 10.1.100.8 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | ..... |
| 10.1.100.9 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | 53445~59485 |
| 10.1.100.10 | ..... | 172.16.200.1 | 59486~65526 |

### Port block allocation

This type of IP pool is also a type of port address translation (PAT). It gives users a more flexible way to control the way external IPs and ports are allocated. Users need to define *Block Size/Block Per User* and external IP range. *Block Size* means how many ports each Block contains. *Block per User* means how many blocks each user (internal IP) can use.

The following is a simple example:

- **External IP Range**: 172.16.200.1—172.16.200.1
- **Block Size**: 128
- **Block Per User**: 8

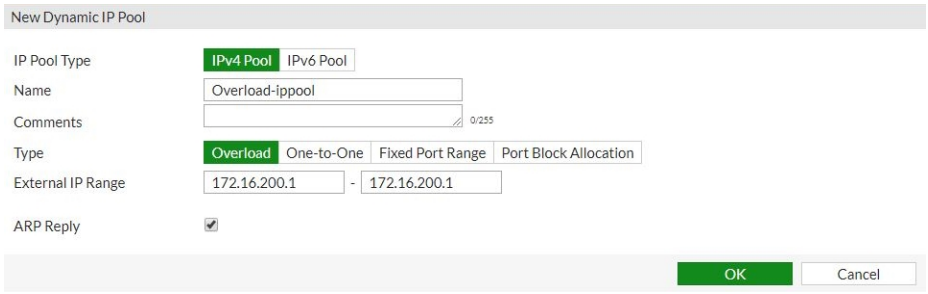
Result:

- **Total-PBAs**: 472 (60416/128)
- **Maximum ports can be used per User (Internal IP Address)**: 1024 (128*8)
- **How many Internal IP can be handled**: 59 (60416/1024 or 472/8)

## Sample configuration

### To configure overload IP pool in the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *Overload*.

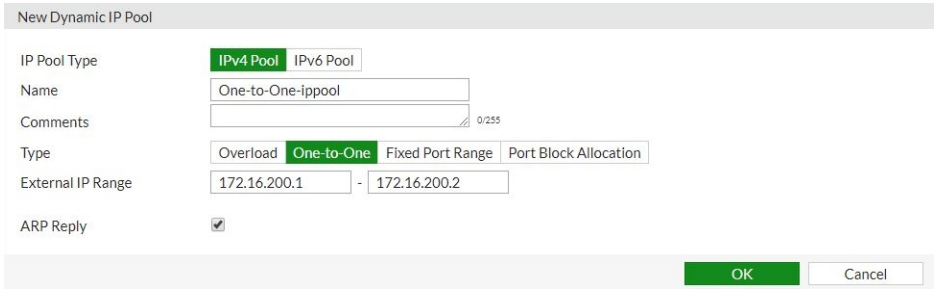



### To configure overload IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "Overload-ippool"
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.1
    next
end
```

### To configure one-to-one IP pool using the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *One-to-One*.

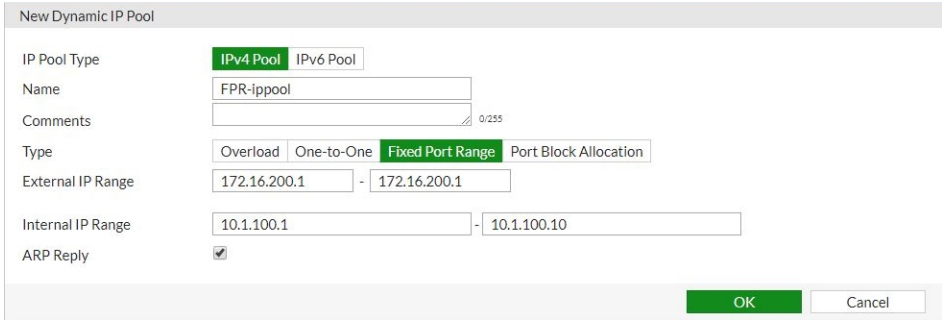



### To configure one-to-one IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "One-to-One-ippool"
        set type one-to-one
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.2
    next
end
```

### To configure fixed port range IP pool in the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *Fixed Port Range*.

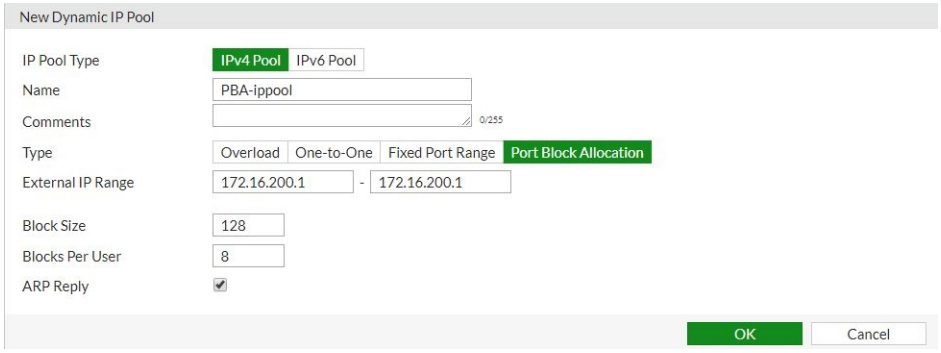



### To configure fixed port range IP pool in the CLI:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "FPR-ippool"
        set type fixed-port-range
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.1
        set source-startip 10.1.100.1
        set source-endip 10.1.100.10
   next
end
```

**To configure port block allocation IP pool in the GUI:**

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *IP Pools*, click *Create New*.
2. Select *IPv4 Pool* and then select *Port Block Allocation*.




**To configure port block allocation IP pool in the CLI:**

```
config firewall ippool
    edit PBA-ippool
        set type port-block-allocation
        set startip 172.16.200.1
        set endip 172.16.200.1
        set block-size 128
        set num-blocks-per-user 8
    next
end
```

## Central SNAT

The central SNAT table enables you to define and control (with more granularity) the address translation performed by FortiGate. With the NAT table, you can define the rules for the source address or address group, and which IP pool the destination address uses.

While similar in functionality to IP pools where a single address is translated to an alternate address from a range of IP addresses, with IP pools there is no control over the translated port. When using the IP pool for source NAT, you can define a fixed port to ensure the source port number is unchanged. If no fixed port is defined, the port translation is randomly chosen by FortiGate. With the central NAT table, you have full control over both the IP address and port translation.

FortiGate reads the NAT rules from the top down until it hits a matching rule for the incoming address. This enables you to create multiple NAT policies that dictate which IP pool is used based on the source address. NAT policies can be rearranged within the policy list. NAT policies are applied to network traffic after a security policy.

The central SNAT table allows you to create, edit, delete, and clone central SNAT entries.

### Central SNAT notes

- The central NAT feature in not enabled by default.
- If central NAT is enabled, the NAT option under IPv4 policies is skipped and SNAT must be done via `central-snat-map`. The firewall policy list and dialog boxes have messages and redirection links to show this information.
- If NGFW mode is policy-based, then it is assumed that central NAT (specifically SNAT) is enabled implicitly.

- The option to toggle NAT in `central-snat-map` policies has been added. Previously it was only shown in NGFW policy-based mode.
- In the central SNAT policy dialog box, the port mapping fields for the original port have been updated to accept ranges.
- If per VDOM NAT is enabled, NAT is skipped in firewall policy.
- The central SNAT window contains a table of all the central SNAT policies.

## Sample configuration

### To enable or disable central SNAT using the CLI:

```
config system settings
   set central-nat [enable | disable]
end
```

When central NAT is enabled, *Policy & Objects* displays the Central SNAT section.

### To create central SNAT using the GUI:

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Central SNAT*.
   The right pane displays a table of Central SNAT entries.
2. To create a new entry, click *Create New* in the right pane.
   To edit an entry, double-click the policy you want to edit.
3. To set the *Incoming Interface*, click + in that field.
4. In the pane on the right, select an interface to add it.
   You can select multiple interfaces.
5. To set the *Outgoing Interface*, click click + in that field.
6. In the pane on the right, select an interface to add it.
   You can select multiple interfaces.
7. To set the *Source Address*, click click + in that field.
8. In the pane on the right, select an address to add it.
   You can select multiple addresses.
9. To set the *Destination Address*, click click + in that field.
10. In the pane on the right, select an address to add it.
    You can select multiple addresses.
11. In *NAT* > *IP Pool Configuration*, select either *Use Outgoing Interface Address* or *Use Dynamic IP Pool*.
    If you select *Use Dynamic IP Pool*, click + and select which IP pool to use.
12. Select one of the following *Protocol* parameters.
    - *ANY*. Use any protocol traffic.
    - *TCP*. Use TCP traffic only. Protocol number is set to *6*.
    - *UDP*. Use UDP traffic only. Protocol number is set to *17*.
    - *SCTP*. Use SCTP traffic only. Protocol number is set to *132*.
    - *Specify*. You can specify the traffic filter protocol by setting the protocol number.
13. If you use the *Overload* type of IP pool, you can enable *Explicit Port Mapping*.
    a. If you enable *Explicit Port Mapping*, set the *Original Source Port* to the start number of the source port range.
    b. Set the *Translated Port* to the start number of the translated port range.
14. Click *OK*.

**To configure central SNAT using the CLI:**

```
config firewall central-snat-map
edit <policyID number>set status [enable|disable]
  set orig-addr <valid address object preconfigured on the FortiGate>
  set srcintf <name of interface on the FortiGate>
  set dst-addr <valid address object preconfigured on the FortiGate>
  set dstintf <name of interface on the FortiGate>
  set protocol <integer for protocol number>
  set orig-port <integer for original port number>
  set nat-port <integer for translated port number>
  set comments <string>
end
```

**To set NAT to be not available regardless of NGFW mode:**

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 1
        set orig-addr "192-86-1-86"
        set srcintf "port23"
        set dst-addr "192-96-1-96"
        set dstintf "port22"
        set nat-ippool "pool1"
        set protocol 17
        set orig-port 2896-2897
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To hide NAT port if NAT IP pool is not set or if NAT is disabled:**

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 1
        set orig-addr "192-86-1-86"
        set srcintf "port23"
        set dst-addr "192-96-1-96"
        set dstintf "port22"
        set nat-ippool "pool1"
        set protocol 17
        set orig-port 2896-2897
        set nat disable
    next
end
```

**To change original port to accept range:**

```
config firewall central-snat-map
    edit 1
        set orig-addr "192-86-1-86"
        set srcintf "port23"
        set dst-addr "192-96-1-96"
        set dstintf "port22"
        set nat-ippool "pool1"
        set protocol 17
        set orig-port 2896-2897 (help text changed to: Original port or port range).
```

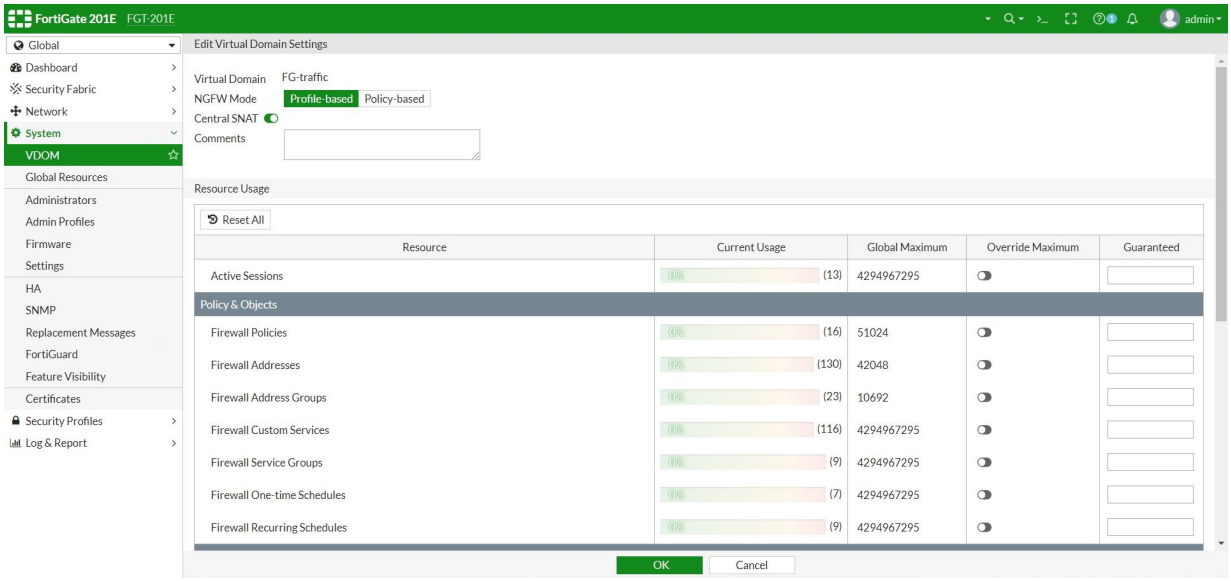
```
        set nat-port 35804-35805
    next
end
```

## Configuring an IPv6 SNAT policy

IPv4 and IPv6 central SNAT maps are displayed in the same table.

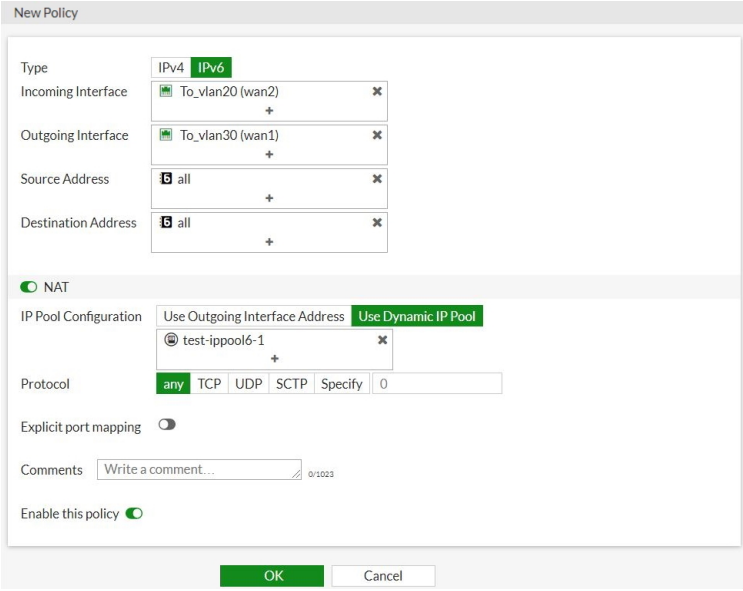
**To configure an IPv6 policy with central SNAT in the GUI:**

1. Enable central SNAT:
   a. In the Global VDOM, go to *System* > *VDOM*.
   b. Select a VDOM and click *Edit*. The *Edit Virtual Domain Settings* pane opens.
   c. Enable *Central SNAT*.
   d. Click *OK*.




2. Go in to the VDOM with central SNAT enabled (FG-traffic in this example).
3. Go *Policy & Objects* > *Central SNAT* and click *Create New*.
4. Configure the policy settings:
   a. For *Type*, select *IPv6*.
   b. Enter the interface, address, and IP pool information.
   c. Configure the other settings as needed.

**d.** Click *OK*.




The matching SNAT traffic will be handled by the IPv6 central SNAT map.

### To configure an IPv6 policy with central SNAT in the CLI:

1. Enable central SNAT:

```
config vdom
    edit FG-traffic
        config system settings
            set central-nat enable
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create an IPv6 central SNAT policy:

```
config vdom
    edit FG-traffic
        config firewall central-snat-map
            edit 2
                set type ipv6
                set srcintf "wan2"
                set dstintf "wan1"
                set orig-addr6 "all"
                set dst-addr6 "all"
                set nat-ippool6 "test-ippool6-1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Verify the SNAT traffic:

```
(FG-traffic) # diagnose sniffer packet any icmp6 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp6]
```

```
3.602891 wan2 in 2000:10:1:100::41 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 0
3.602942 wan1 out 2000:172:16:200::199 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 0
3.603236 wan1 in 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:172:16:200::199: icmp6: echo reply seq 0
3.603249 wan2 out 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:10:1:100::41: icmp6: echo reply seq 0
4.602559 wan2 in 2000:10:1:100::41 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 1
4.602575 wan1 out 2000:172:16:200::199 -> 2000:172:16:200::55: icmp6: echo request seq 1
4.602956 wan1 in 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:172:16:200::199: icmp6: echo reply seq 1
4.602964 wan2 out 2000:172:16:200::55 -> 2000:10:1:100::41: icmp6: echo reply seq 1
^C
8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

## SNAT policies with virtual wire pairs

Source NAT (SNAT) can be configured in IPv4 and IPv6 policies with virtual wire pair (VWP) interfaces.

**To configure a policy using SNAT and a virtual wire pair:**

1. Create the virtual wire pair interface:

```
config system virtual-wire-pair
    edit "test-vw-1"
        set member "port1" "port4"
    next
end
```

2. Create the IP pool. The IP pool must have a different subnet than the VWP peers:

```
config firewall ippool
    edit "vwp-pool-1"
        set startip 172.16.222.99
        set endip 172.16.222.100
    next
end
```

3. Configure the policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 88
        set srcintf "port4"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set ippool enable
        set poolname "vwp-pool-1"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

4. Verify the IP pool functions as expected and traffic passes through:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4
interfaces=[any]
```

```
filters=[icmp]
23.438095 port4 in 172.16.200.11 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
23.438126 port1 out 172.16.222.100 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
23.438492 port1 in 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.222.100: icmp: echo reply
23.438501 port4 out 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.200.11: icmp: echo reply
24.439305 port4 in 172.16.200.11 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
24.439319 port1 out 172.16.222.100 -> 172.16.200.156: icmp: echo request
24.439684 port1 in 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.222.100: icmp: echo reply
24.439692 port4 out 172.16.200.156 -> 172.16.200.11: icmp: echo reply

8 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

# Policy with destination NAT

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies with destination NAT:


- Static virtual IPs on page 795
- Virtual IP with services on page 796
- Virtual IPs with port forwarding on page 798
- Virtual server on page 800


## Static virtual IPs

Mapping a specific IP address to another specific IP address is usually called Destination NAT (DNAT). When this central NAT table is not used, FortiOS calls this a Virtual IP address (VIP). DNAT, or VIP, is are used to map an external IP address to an IP address or address range. The mapping can include all TCP/UDP ports or, if port forwarding is enabled, it only refers to the specific configured ports. As the central NAT table is disabled by default, the term VIP is usually used.

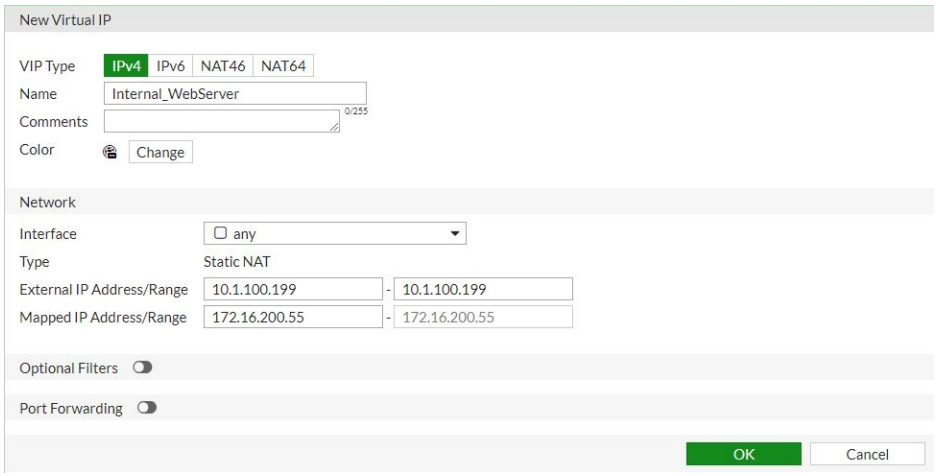
VIPs are typically used to NAT external or public IP addresses to internal or private IP addresses. Using a VIP between two internal interfaces made up of private IP addresses is possible, but rare, because the two networks can just use the IP addresses of the networks without any address translation. Using a VIP for traffic going from the inside to the internet is supported, but unlikely to be required.

### Sample configuration

**To create a virtual IP using the GUI:**

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Virtual IP*.
3. Select a *VIP Type* based on the IP versions used:
   - If IPv4 is on both sides of the FortiGate unit, select *IPv4*.
   - If IPv6 is on both sides of the FortiGate unit, select *IPv6*.
   - If traffic goes from an IPv4 network to an IPv6 network, select *NAT46*.
   - If traffic goes from an IPv6 network to an IPv4 network, select *NAT64*.

4. Enter a unique name for the virtual IP and fill in the other fields.




**To create a virtual IP using the CLI:**

```
config firewall vip
    edit "Internal_WebServer"
        set extip 10.1.100.199
        set extintf "any"
        set mappedip "172.16.200.55"
    next
end
```

**To apply a virtual IP to policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 8
        set name "Example_Virtual_IP_in_Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Internal_WebServer"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Virtual IP with services

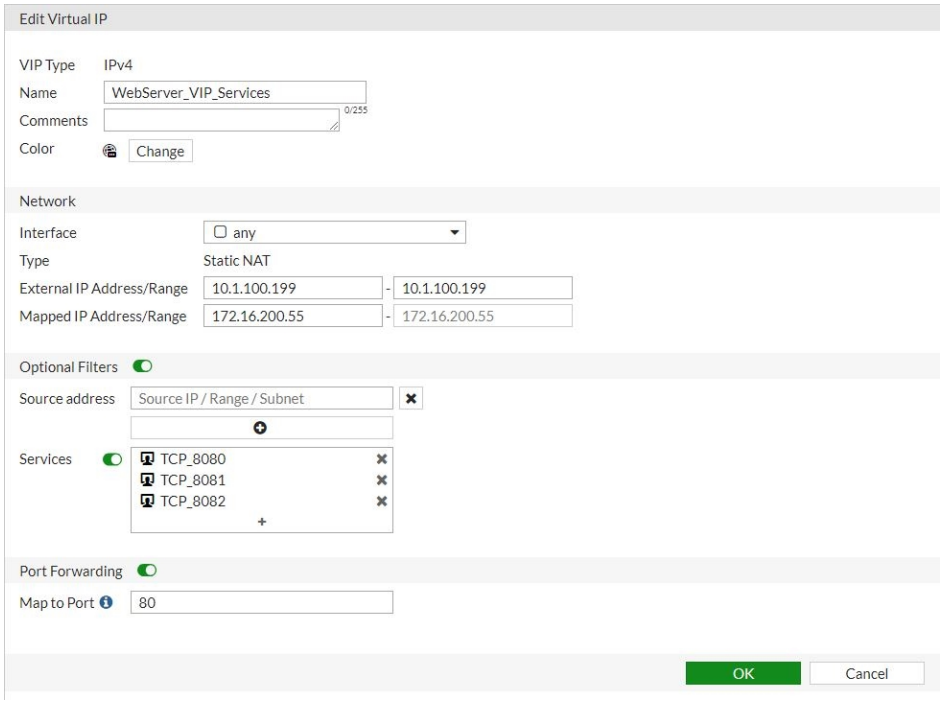
Virtual IP with services is a more flexible virtual IP mode. This mode allows users to define services to a single port number mapping.

This topic shows how to use virtual IP with services enabled. This example has one public external IP address. We map TCP ports 8080, 8081, and 8082 to an internal WebServer TCP port 80. This allows remote connections to communicate with a server behind the firewall.

## Sample configuration

**To create a virtual IP with services using the GUI:**

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Virtual IP*.
3. For *VIP Type*, select *IPv4*.
4. Enter a unique name for the virtual IP and fill in the other fields.
5. Configure the fields in the *Network* section. For example:
   - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   - Set *External IP Address/Range* to *10.1.100.199*.
   - Set *Mapped IP Address/Range* to *172.16.200.55*.
6. Enable *Optional Filters* and then enable *Services*.
7. In the *Services* field, click + to display the Services pane.
8. In the *Services* pane, select *TCP_8080*, *TCP_8081*, and *TCP_8082*.
9. Enable *Port Forwarding*.
10. Set *Map to Port* to *80*.




11. Click *OK*.

**To see the results:**

1. Apply the above virtual IP to the Firewall policy.
2. The results are:
   - Access 10.1.100.199:8080 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.
   - Access 10.1.100.199:8081 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.
   - Access 10.1.100.199:8082 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.

**To create a virtual IP with services using the CLI:**

```
config firewall vip
    edit "WebServer_VIP_Services"
        set service "TCP_8080" "TCP_8081" "TCP_8082"
        set extip 10.1.100.199
        set extintf "any"
        set portforward enable
        set mappedip "172.16.200.55"
        set mappedport 80
    next
end
```

## Virtual IPs with port forwarding

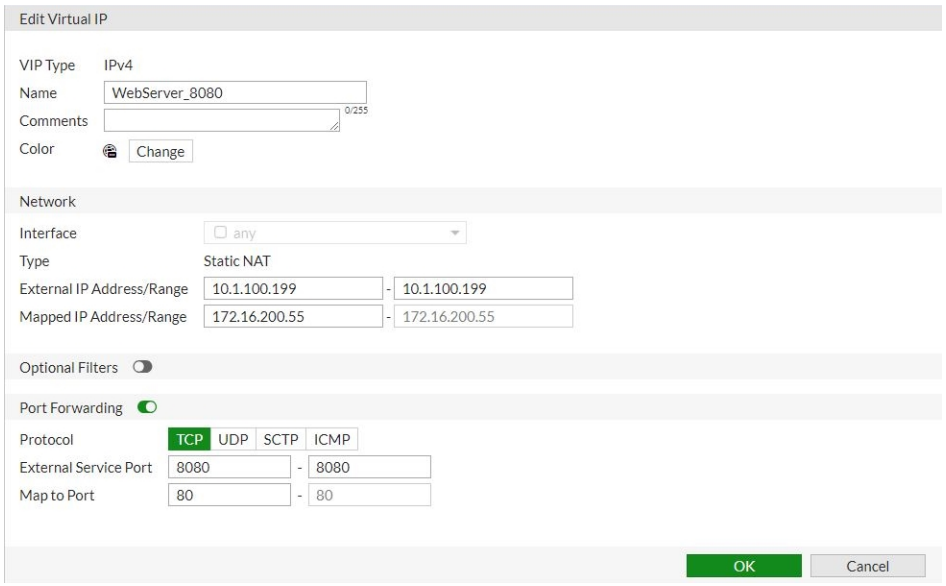
If you need to hide the internal server port number or need to map several internal servers to the same public IP address, enable port-forwarding for Virtual IP.

This topic shows how to use virtual IPs to configure port forwarding on a FortiGate unit. This example has one public external IP address. We map TCP ports 8080, 8081, and 8082 to different internal WebServers' TCP port 80. This allows remote connections to communicate with a server behind the firewall.

### Sample configuration

**To create a virtual IP with port forwarding using the GUI:**

1. In *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New* and select *Virtual IP*.
3. For *VIP Type*, select *IPv4*.
4. Enter a unique name for the virtual IP and fill in the other fields.
5. Configure the fields in the *Network* section. For example:
   - Set *Interface* to *any*.
   - Set *External IP Address/Range* to *10.1.100.199*.
   - Set *Mapped IP Address/Range* to *172.16.200.55*.
6. Leave *Optional Filters* disabled.
7. Enable *Port Forwarding*.
8. Configure the fields in the *Port Forwarding* section. For example:
   - Set *Protocol* to *TCP*.
   - Set *External Service Port* to *8080 - 8080*.
   - Set *Map to Port* to *80 - 80*.




9. Click *OK*.
10. Follow the above steps to create two additional virtual IPs.
    a. For one virtual IP:
        - Use a different *Mapped IP Address/Range*, for example, *172.16.200.56*.
        - Set *External Service Port* to *8081 - 8081*.
        - Use the same *Map to Port* numbers: *80 - 80*.
    b. For the other virtual IP:
        - Use a different *Mapped IP Address/Range*, for example, *172.16.200.57*.
        - Set *External Service Port* to *8082 - 8082*.
        - Use the same *Map to Port* numbers: *80 - 80*.
11. Create a *Virtual IP Group* and put the above three virtual IPs into that group.




**To see the results:**

1. Apply the above virtual IP to the Firewall policy.
2. The results are:
    - Access 10.1.100.199:8080 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.55:80 in internal network.
    - Access 10.1.100.199:8081 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.56:80 in internal network.
    - Access 10.1.100.199:8082 from external network and FortiGate maps to 172.16.200.57:80 in internal network

## Virtual server

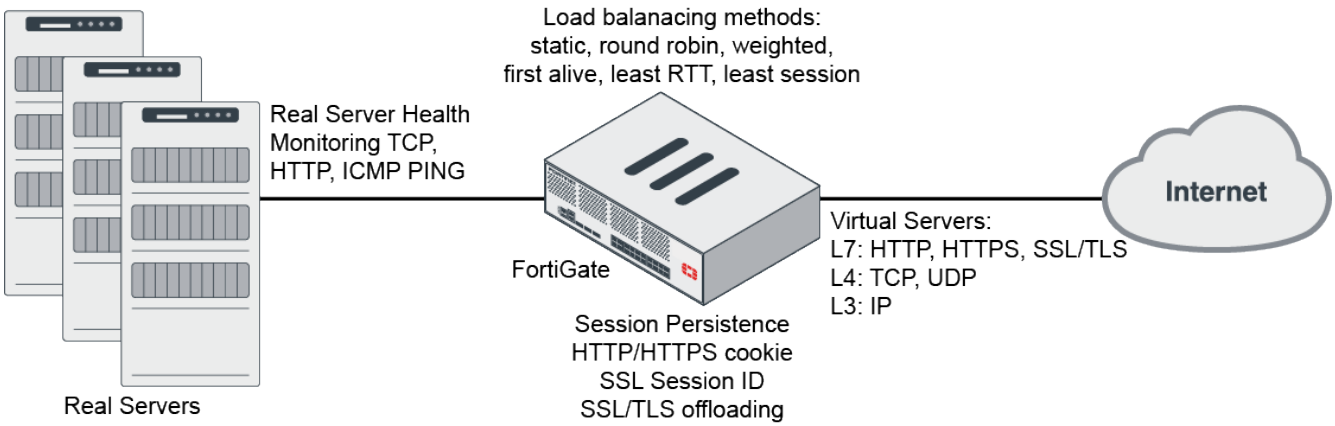
This topic shows a special virtual IP type: virtual server. Use this type of VIP to implement server load balancing.

The FortiOS server load balancing contains all the features of a server load balancing solution. You can balance traffic across multiple backend servers based on multiple load balancing schedules including:

- Static (failover)
- Round robin
- Weighted (to account for different sized servers or based on the health and performance of the server including round trip time and number of connections)

The load balancer supports HTTP, HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S, SMTPS, SSL/TLS, and generic TCP/UDP and IP protocols. Session persistence is supported based on the SSL session ID based on an injected HTTP cookie, or based on the HTTP or HTTPS host. SSL/TLS load balancing includes protection from protocol downgrade attacks. Server load balancing is supported on most FortiGate devices and includes up to 10,000 virtual servers on high end systems.

### Sample topology




### SSL/TLS offloading

FortiGate SSL/TLS offloading is designed for the proliferation of SSL/TLS applications. The key exchange and encryption/decryption tasks are offloaded to the FortiGate unit where they are accelerated using FortiASIC technology which provides significantly more performance than a standard server or load balancer. This frees up valuable resources on the server farm to give better response to business operations. Server load balancing offloads most SSL/TLS versions including SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, and TLS 1.2, and supports full mode or half mode SSL offloading with DH key sizes up to 4096 bits.

FortiGate SSL offloading allows the application payload to be inspected before it reaches your servers. This prevents intrusion attempts, blocks viruses, stops unwanted applications, and prevents data leakage. SSL/TLS content inspection supports TLS versions 1.0, 1.1, and 1.2 and SSL versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, and 3.0.

### Virtual server requirements

When creating a new virtual server, you must configure the following options:

- Virtual Server Type.
- Load Balancing Methods.

- Health check monitoring (optional).
- Session persistence (optional).
- Virtual Server IP (External IP Address).
- Virtual Server Port (External Port).
- Real Servers (Mapped IP Address & Port).

**Virtual server types**

Select the protocol to be load balanced by the virtual server. If you select a general protocol such as IP, TCP, or UDP, the virtual server load balances all IP, TCP, or UDP sessions. If you select specific protocols such as HTTP, HTTPS, or SSL, you can apply additional server load balancing features such as *Persistence* and *HTTP Multiplexing*.

| | |
|---|---|
| **HTTP** | Select *HTTP* to load balance only HTTP sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 80 for HTTP sessions). You can enable *HTTP Multiplexing*. You can also set *Persistence* to *HTTP Cookie* to enable cookie-based persistence. |
| **HTTPS** | Select *HTTPS* to load balance only HTTPS sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 443 for HTTPS sessions). You can enable *HTTP Multiplexing*. You can also set *Persistence* to *HTTP Cookie* to enable cookie-based persistence, or you can set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*. |
| **IMAPS** | Select *IMAPS* to load balance only IMAPS sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 993 for IMAPS sessions). You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*. |
| **POP3S** | Select *POP3S* to load balance only POP3S sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 995 for POP3S sessions). You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*. |
| **SMTPS** | Select *SMTPS* to load balance only SMTPS sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced (usually port 465 for SMTPS sessions). You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*. |
| **SSL** | Select *SSL* to load balance only SSL sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced. You can also set *Persistence* to *SSL Session ID*. |
| **TCP** | Select *TCP* to load balance only TCP sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced. |
| **UDP** | Select *UDP* to load balance only UDP sessions with the destination port number that matches the *Virtual Server Port* setting. Change *Virtual Server Port* to match the destination port of the sessions to be load balanced. |
| **IP** | Select *IP* to load balance all sessions accepted by the security policy that contains this virtual server. |

### Load balancing methods

The load balancing method defines how sessions are load balanced to real servers.

All load balancing methods do not send traffic to real servers that are down or not responding. FortiGate can only determine if a real server is not responding by using a health check monitor. You should always add at least one health check monitor to a virtual server or to real servers; otherwise load balancing might try to distribute sessions to real servers that are not functioning.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Static** | The traffic load is statically spread evenly across all real servers. Sessions are not assigned according to how busy individual real servers are. This load balancing method provides some persistence because all sessions from the same source address always go to the same real server. Because the distribution is stateless, so if a real server is added, removed, or goes up or down, the distribution is changed and persistence might be lost. |
| **Round Robin** | Directs new requests to the next real server. This method treats all real servers as equals regardless of response time or the number of connections. This method does not direct requests to real servers that down or non responsive. |
| **Weighted** | Real servers with a higher weight value receive a larger percentage of connections. Set the real server weight when adding a real server. |
| **Least Session** | Directs requests to the real server that has the least number of current connections. This method works best in environments where the real servers or other equipment you are load balancing all have similar capabilities. This load balancing method uses the FortiGate session table to track the number of sessions being processed by each real server. The FortiGate unit cannot detect the number of sessions actually being processed by a real server. |
| **Least RTT** | Directs sessions to the real server with the lowest round trip time. The round trip time is determined by a ping health check monitor. The default is 0 if no ping health check monitors are added to the virtual server. |
| **First Alive** | Directs sessions to the first live real server. This load balancing schedule provides real server failover protection by sending all sessions to the first live real server. If a real server fails, all sessions are sent to the next live real server. Sessions are not distributed to all real servers so all sessions are processed by the first real server only. |
| **HTTP Host** | Load balances HTTP host connections across multiple real servers using the host's HTTP header to guide the connection to the correct real server. |

### Health check monitoring

In the FortiGate GUI, you can configure health check monitoring so that the FortiGate unit can verify that real servers are able respond to network connection attempts. If a real server responds to connection attempts, the load balancer continues to send sessions to it. If a real server stops responding to connection attempts, the load balancer assumes that the server is down and does not send sessions to it. The health check monitor configuration determines how the load balancer tests real servers. You can use a single health check monitor for multiple load balancing configurations. You can configure TCP, HTTP, and Ping health check monitors. You usually set the health check monitor to use the same protocol as the traffic being load balanced to it. For example, for an HTTP load balancing configuration, you would normally use an HTTP health check monitor.

### Session persistence

Use persistence to ensure a user is connected to the same real server every time the user makes an HTTP, HTTPS, or SSL request that is part of the same user session. For example, if you are load balancing HTTP and HTTPS sessions to a collection of eCommerce web servers, when users make a purchase, they will be starting multiple sessions as they navigate the eCommerce site. In most cases, all the sessions started by this user during one eCommerce session should be processed by the same real server. Typically, the HTTP protocol keeps track of these related sessions using cookies. HTTP cookie persistence ensure all sessions that are part of the same user session are processed by the same real server.

When you configure persistence, the FortiGate unit load balances a new session to a real server according to the load balance method. If the session has an HTTP cookie or an SSL session ID, the FortiGate unit sends all subsequent sessions with the same HTTP cookie or SSL session ID to the same real server.

### Real servers

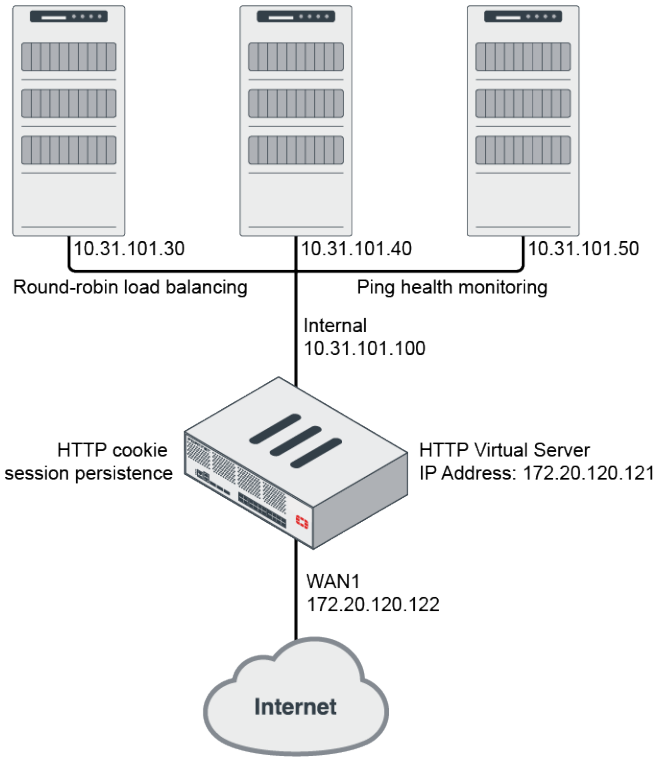
Add real servers to a load balancing virtual server to provide information the virtual server requires to send sessions to the server. A real server configuration includes the IP address of the real server and port number the real server receives sessions on. The FortiGate unit sends sessions to the real server's IP address using the destination port number in the real server configuration.

When configuring a real server, you can also specify the weight (if the load balance method is set to *Weighted*) and you can limit the maximum number of open connections between the FortiGate unit and the real server. If the maximum number of connections is reached for the real server, the FortiGate unit automatically switches all further connection requests to other real servers until the connection number drops below the limit. Setting *Maximum Connections* to 0 means that the FortiGate unit does not limit the number of connections to the real server.

## Sample of HTTP load balancing to three real web servers

This example describes the steps to configure the load balancing configuration below. In this configuration, a FortiGate unit is load balancing HTTP traffic from the Internet to three HTTP servers on the internal network. HTTP sessions are accepted at the wan1 interface with destination IP address 172.20.120.121 on TCP port 8080, and forwarded from the internal interface to the web servers. When forwarded, the destination address of the session is translated to the IP address of one of the web servers.

This load balancing configuration also includes session persistence using HTTP cookies, round-robin load balancing, and TCP health monitoring for the real servers. Ping health monitoring consists of the FortiGate unit using ICMP ping to ensure the web servers can respond to network traffic.




**General steps:**

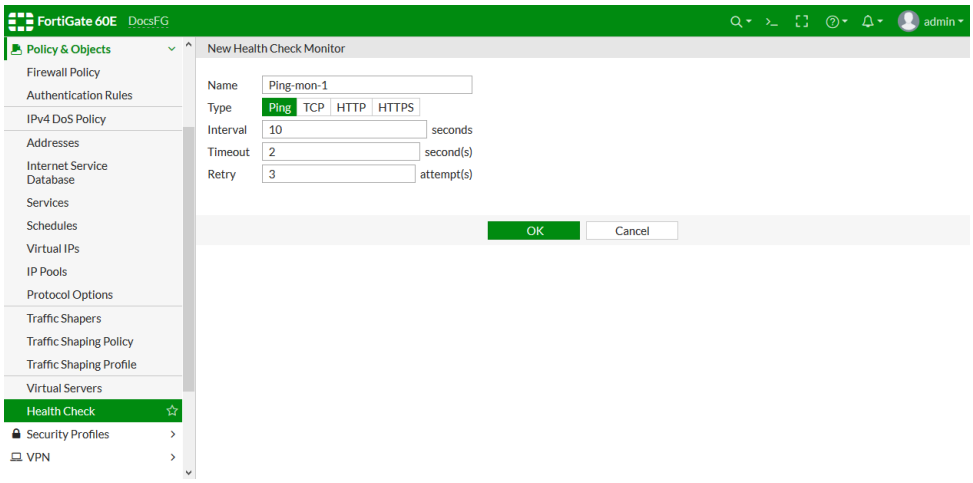
1. Create a health check monitor.
   A ping health check monitor causes the FortiGate to ping the real servers every 10 seconds. If one of the servers does not respond within 2 seconds, the FortiGate unit will retry the ping 3 times before assuming that the HTTP server is not responding.
2. Create a load balance virtual server with three real servers.
3. Add the load balancing virtual server to a policy as the destination address.

To see the virtual servers and health check monitors options in the GUI, *Load Balance* must be selected in *Feature Visibility* > *Additional Features*. See Feature visibility on page 761 on page 1 for details.

**Configure a load balancing virtual server in the GUI**

**To create a health check monitor:**

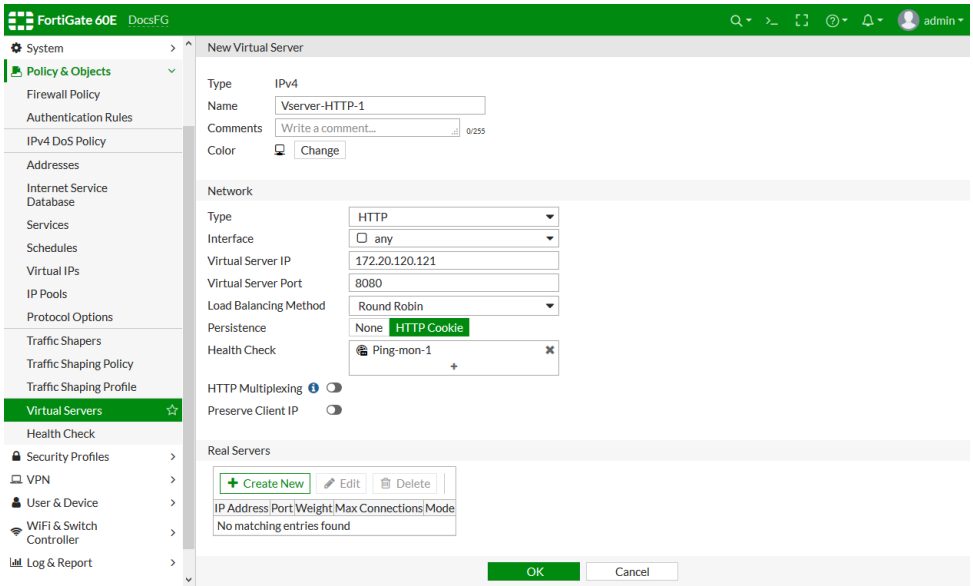
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Health Check*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name* to *Ping-mon-1*
   - *Type* to *Ping*
   - *Interval* to *10* seconds
   - *Timeout* to *2* seconds
   - *Retry* to *3* attempt(s)




4. Click *OK*.

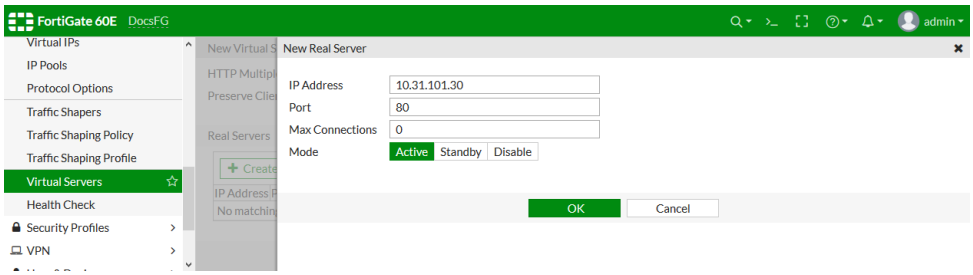
**To create a virtual server:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Virtual Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name* to *Vserver-HTTP-1*
   - *Type* to *HTTP*
   - *Interface* to *wan1*
   - *Virtual Server IP* to *172.20.120.121*
   - *Virtual Server Port* to *8080*
   - *Load Balance Method* to *Round Robin*
   - *Persistence* to *HTTP Cookie*
   - *Health Check* to *Ping-mon-1*




4. In the *Real Servers* table, click *Create New*.

5. Set the following for the first real server:
   - *IP Address* to *10.31.101.30*
   - *Port* to *80*
   - *Max Connections* to *0*
   - *Mode* to *Active*

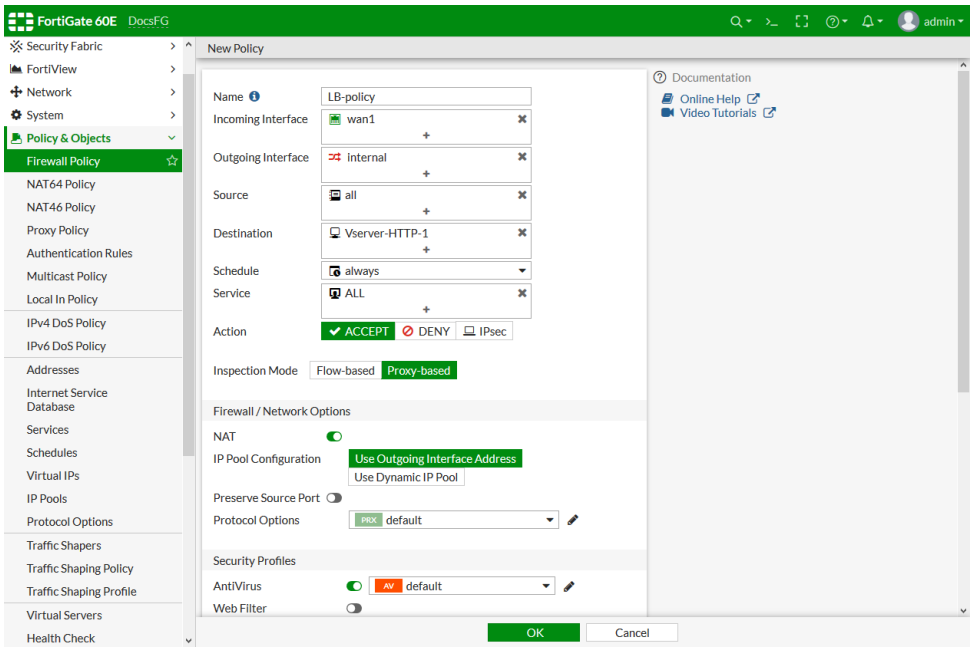



6. Configure two more real servers with IP addresses 10.31.101.40 and 10.31.101.50, and the remaining settings the same as the first real server.
7. Click *OK*.

**To create a security policy that includes the load balance virtual server as the destination address:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*. The new virtual server will not be available if the inspection mode is *Flow-based*.
4. Set the following:
   - *Name* to *LB-policy*
   - *Incoming Interface* to *wan1*
   - *Outgoing Interface* to *internal*
   - *Source* to *all*
   - *Destination* to *Vserver-HTTP-1*
   - *Schedule* to *always*
   - *Service* to *ALL*
   - *Action* to *ACCEPT*
5. Enable *NAT* and set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Outgoing Interface Address*.

6. Enable *AntiVirus* and select an antivirus profile.




7. Click *OK*.

### Configure a load balancing virtual server in the CLI

### To configure HTTP load balancing to three real web servers in the CLI:

1. Create a health check monitor:

```
config firewall ldb-monitor
    edit "Ping-mon-1"
        set type ping
        set interval 10
        set timeout 2
        set retry 3
    next
end
```

2. Create a virtual server:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "Vserver-HTTP-1"
        set type server-load-balance
        set extip 172.20.120.121
        set extintf "any"
        set server-type http
        set monitor "Ping-mon-1"
        set ldb-method round-robin
        set persistence http-cookie
        set extport 8080
        config realservers
            edit 1
                set ip 10.31.101.30
                set port 80
```

```
            next
            edit 2
                set ip 10.31.101.40
                set port 80
            next
            edit 3
                set ip 10.31.101.50
                set port 80
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Add the load balancing virtual server to a policy as the destination address:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set name "LB-policy"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Vserver-HTTP-1"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**Results**

Traffic accessing 172.20.120.121:8080 is forwarded in turn to the three real servers.

If the access request has an http-cookie, FortiGate forwards the access to the corresponding real server according to the cookie.

## Policy with Internet Service

The following topics provide instructions on configuring policies with Internet Service:


- Using Internet Service in policy on page 809
- Using custom Internet Service in policy on page 811
- Using extension Internet Service in policy on page 813
- Global IP address information database on page 816
- IP reputation filtering on page 818
- Internet service groups in policies on page 819
- Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information on page 823
- Internet service customization on page 825

## Using Internet Service in policy

This topic shows how to apply a predefined Internet Service entry into a policy.

The Internet Service Database is a comprehensive public IP address database that combines IP address range, IP owner, service port number, and IP security credibility. The data comes from the FortiGuard service system. Information is regularly added to this database, for example, geographic location, IP reputation, popularity & DNS, and so on. All this information helps users define Internet security more effectively. You can use the contents of the database as criteria for inclusion or exclusion in a policy.

From FortiOS version 5.6, Internet Service is included in the firewall policy. It can be applied to a policy only as a destination object. From version 6.0, Internet Service can be applied both as source and destination objects in a policy. You can also apply Internet Services to shaping policy.

There are three types of Internet Services you can apply to a firewall policy:

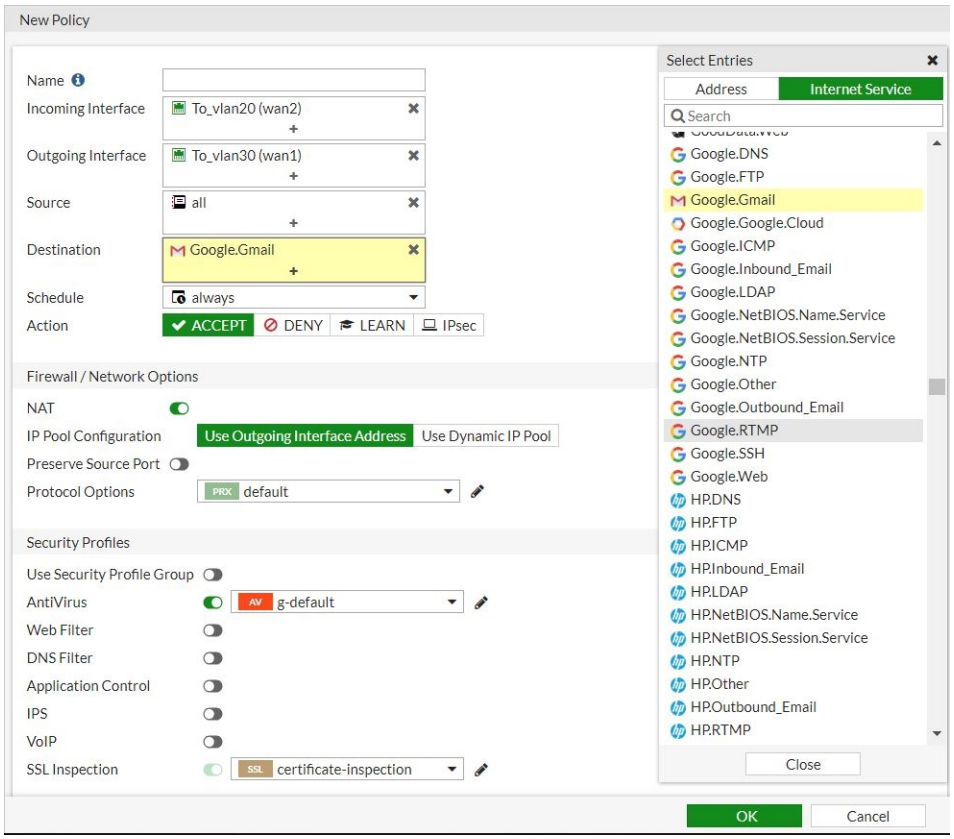
- Predefined Internet Services
- Custom Internet Services
- Extension Internet Services

### Sample configuration

**To apply a predefined Internet Service entry to a policy using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* and create a new policy.
2. In the *Source* or *Destination* field, click +.
3. In the *Select Entries* pane, click *Internet Service*.

4. Locate and click *Google.Gmail*.




5. Configure the other fields and then click *OK*.

**To apply a predefined Internet Service entry to a policy using the CLI:**

In the CLI, enable the `internet-service` first and then use its ID to apply the policy.

This example uses Google Gmail and its ID is 65646. Each Internet Service has a unique ID.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 9
        set name "Internet Service in Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 65646
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To diagnose an Internet Service entry using the CLI:**

```
# diagnose internet-service id-summary 65646
Version: 0000600096
Timestamp: 201902111802
Total number of IP ranges: 444727
Number of Groups: 7
Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
Internet Service: 65646(Google.Gmail)
Number of IP range: 60
Number of IP numbers: 322845
Singularity: 15
Reputation: 5(Known and verified safe sites such as Gmail, Amazon, eBay, etc.)
Icon Id: 510
Second Level Domain: 53(gmail.com)
Direction: dst
Data source: isdb
```

**Result**

Because the IP and services related to Google Gmail on the Internet are included in this Internet Service (65646), all traffic to Google Gmail is forwarded by this policy.

## Using custom Internet Service in policy

Custom Internet Services can be created and used in firewall policies.

When creating a custom Internet Service, you must set following elements:

- IP or IP ranges
- Protocol number
- Port or port ranges
- Reputation

You must use CLI to create a custom Internet Service, except for geographic based services (see Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information on page 823).

### CLI syntax

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
    edit <name>
       set comment <comment>
       set reputation {1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5}
       config entry
           edit <ID>
               set protocol <protocol #>
               set dst <object_name>
               config port-range
```

```
                    edit <ID>
                        set start-port <port #>
                        set end-port <port #>
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
end
```

## Sample configuration

**To configure a custom Internet Service:**

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
   edit "test-isdb-1"
       set comment "Test Custom Internet Service"
       set reputation 4
       config entry
          edit 1
              set protocol 6
              config port-range
                  edit 1
                      set start-port 80
                      set end-port 443
                  next
              end
              set dst "10-1-100-0"
          next
          edit 2
              set protocol 6
              config port-range
                  edit 1
                      set start-port 80
                      set end-port 80
                  next
              end
              set dst "172-16-200-0"
          next
       end
   next
end
```

**To apply a custom Internet Service into a policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Internet Service in Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 65646
        set internet-service-custom "test-isdb-1"
        set action accept
```

```
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**Result**

In addition to the IP address, IP address ranges, and services allowed by Google.Gmail, this policy also allows the traffic which access to 10.1.100.0/24 and TCP/80-443 and 172.16.200.0/24 and TCP/80.

## Using extension Internet Service in policy

Extension Internet Service lets you add custom or remove existing IP address and port ranges to an existing predefined Internet Service entries. Using an extension type Internet Service is actually editing a predefined type Internet Service entry and adding IP address and port ranges to it.

When creating an extension Internet Service and adding custom ranges, you must set following elements:

- IP or IP ranges
- Protocol number
- Port or port ranges

You must use CLI to add custom IP address and port entries into a predefined Internet Service.

You must use GUI to remove entries from a predefined Internet Service.

### Custom extension Internet Service CLI syntax

```
config firewall internet-service-extension
    edit <ID #>
        set comment <comment>
        config entry
            edit <ID #>
                set protocol <number #>
                set dst <object_name>
                config port-range
                    edit <ID #>
                         set start-port <number #>
                         set end-port <number #>
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
end
```

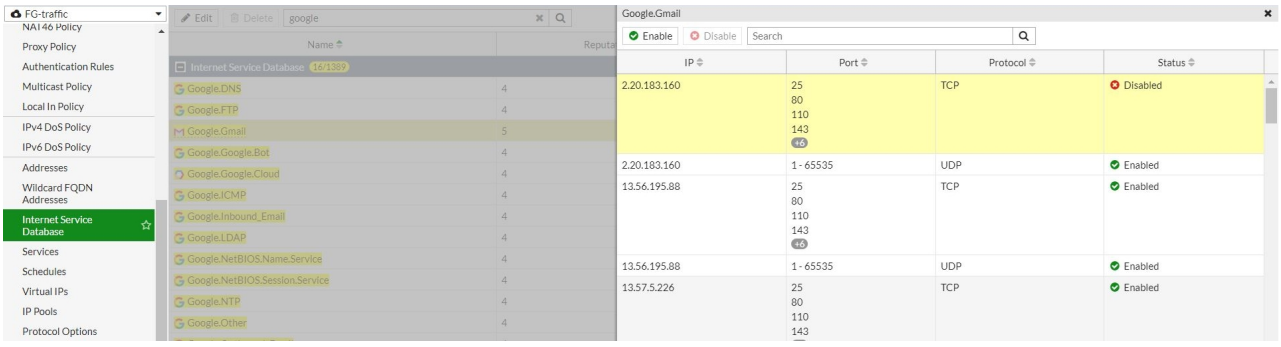
## Sample configuration

### To configure an extension Internet Service using the CLI:

```
config firewall internet-service-extension
    edit 65646
        set comment "Test Extension Internet Service 65646"
        config entry
            edit 1
                set protocol 6
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 80
                        set end-port 443
                    next
                end
                set dst "172-16-200-0"
            next
            edit 2
                set protocol 17
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 53
                        set end-port 53
                    next
                end
                set dst "10-1-100-0"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

### To remove IP address and port entries from an existing Internet Service:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Internet Service Database*.
2. Search for *Google.Gmail*.
3. Select *Google.Gmail* and click *Edit*.
4. Locate the *IP* entry you want to remove and click *Disable* beside that entry.




5. Click *Return*.
6. When you complete the actions in the GUI, the CLI automatically generates the configuration from your GUI actions:

```
config firewall internet-service-extension
    edit 65646
```

```
set comment "Test Extension Internet Service 65646"
config entry
    edit 1
        set protocol 6
        config port-range
            edit 1
                set start-port 80
                set end-port 443
            next
        end
        set dst "172-16-200-0"
    next
    edit 2
        set protocol 17
        config port-range
            edit 1
                set start-port 53
                set end-port 53
            next
        end
        set dst "10-1-100-0"
    next
end
config disable-entry
    edit 1
        set protocol 6
        config port-range
            edit 1
                set start-port 25
                set end-port 25
            next
            edit 2
                set start-port 80
                set end-port 80
            next
            edit 3
                set start-port 110
                set end-port 110
            next
            edit 4
                set start-port 143
                set end-port 143
            next
            edit 5
                set start-port 443
                set end-port 443
            next
            edit 6
                set start-port 465
                set end-port 465
            next
            edit 7
                set start-port 587
                set end-port 587
            next
            edit 8
```

```
                        set start-port 993
                        set end-port 993
                    next
                    edit 9
                        set start-port 995
                        set end-port 995
                    next
                    edit 10
                        set start-port 2525
                        set end-port 2525
                    next
                end
                config ip-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-ip 2.20.183.160
                        set end-ip 2.20.183.160
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To apply an extension Internet Service into policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 9
        set name "Internet Service in Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-id 65646
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**Result**

In addition to the IP addresses, IP address ranges, and services allowed by Google.Gmail, this policy also allows the traffic which accesses 10.1.100.0/24 and UDP/53 and 172.16.200.0/24 and TCP/80-443. At the same time, the traffic that accesses 2.20.183.160 is dropped because this IP address and port is disabled from Google.Gmail.

## Global IP address information database

The Internet Service and IP Reputation databases download details about public IP address, including: ownership, known services, geographic location, blocklisting information, and more. The details are available in drilldown information, tooltips, and other mechanisms in the FortiView and other pages.

The global IP address database is an integrated database containing all public IP addresses, and is implemented in the Internet Service Database.

**To view the owner of the IP address:**

```
(global) # get firewall internet-service-owner ?
    id    Internet Service owner ID.
    1  Google
    2  Facebook
    3  Apple
    4  Yahoo
    5  Microsoft
    ......
    115  Cybozu
    116  VNC
```

**To check for any known service running on an IP address:**

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service info FG-traffic 6 80 8.8.8.8
    Internet Service: 65537(Google.Web)
```

**To check GeoIP location and blocklist information:**

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service id 65537 | grep 8.8.8.8
```

**To check a known malicious server:**

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service id-summary 3080383
    Version: 0000600096
    Timestamp: 201902111802
    Total number of IP ranges: 444727
    Number of Groups: 7
    Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
    Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
    Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
    Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
    Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
    Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
    Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
    Internet Service: 3080383(Botnet.C&C.Server)
    Number of IP range: 111486
    Number of IP numbers: 111486
    Singularity: 20
    Reputation: 1(Known malicious sites related to botnet servers, phishing sites, etc.)
    Icon Id: 591
    Second Level Domain: 1(other)
    Direction: dst
    Data source: irdb
```

**To check questionable usage:**

```
(global) # diagnose internet-service id-summary 2818238
    Version: 0000600096
    Timestamp: 201902111802
    Total number of IP ranges: 444727
```

```
    Number of Groups: 7
    Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
    Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
    Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
    Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
    Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
    Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
    Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
    Internet Service: 2818238(Tor.Relay.Node)
    Number of IP range: 13718
    Number of IP numbers: 13718
    Singularity: 20
    Reputation: 2(Sites providing high risk services such as TOR, proxy, P2P, etc.)
    Icon Id: 43
    Second Level Domain: 1(other)
    Direction: dst
    Data source: irdb

(global) # diagnose internet-service id-summary 2818243
    Version: 0000600096
    Timestamp: 201902111802
    Total number of IP ranges: 444727
    Number of Groups: 7
    Group(0), Singularity(20), Number of IP ranges(142740)
    Group(1), Singularity(19), Number of IP ranges(1210)
    Group(2), Singularity(16), Number of IP ranges(241)
    Group(3), Singularity(15), Number of IP ranges(38723)
    Group(4), Singularity(10), Number of IP ranges(142586)
    Group(5), Singularity(8), Number of IP ranges(5336)
    Group(6), Singularity(6), Number of IP ranges(113891)
    Internet Service: 2818243(Tor.Exit.Node)
    Number of IP range: 1210
    Number of IP numbers: 1210
    Singularity: 19
    Reputation: 2(Sites providing high risk services such as TOR, proxy, P2P, etc.)
    Icon Id: 43
    Second Level Domain: 1(other)
    Direction: src
    Data source: irdb
```

## IP reputation filtering

There are currently five reputation levels in the Internet Service Database (ISDB), and custom reputation levels can be defined in a custom internet service. You can configure firewall policies to filter traffic according to the desired reputation level. If the reputation level of either the source or destination IP address is equal to or greater than the level set in the policy, then the packet is forwarded, otherwise, the packet is dropped.

The five default reputation levels are:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Known malicious sites, such as phishing sites or sites related to botnet servers |
| 2 | High risk services sites, such as TOR, proxy, and P2P |
| 3 | Unverified sites |

| | |
|---|---|
| 4 | Reputable social media sites, such as Facebook and Twitter |
| 5 | Known and verified safe sites, such as Gmail, Amazon, and eBay |

The default minimum reputation level in a policy is zero, meaning that the reputation filter is disabled.

For IP addresses that are not included in the ISDB, the default reputation level is three.

The default reputation direction is `destination`.

**To set the reputation level and direction in a policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set reputation-minimum 3
        set reputation-direction source
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Packets from the source IP address with reputation levels three, four, or five will be forwarded by this policy.



In a policy, if `reputation-minimum` is set, and the `reputation-direction` is `destination`, then the `dstaddr`, `service`, and `internet-service` options are removed from the policy.

If `reputation-minimum` is set, and the `reputation-direction` is `source`, then the `srcaddr`, and `internet-service-src` options are removed from the policy.

## Internet service groups in policies

This feature provides support for Internet Service Groups in traffic shaping and firewall policies. Service groups can be used as the source and destination of the policy. Internet Service Groups are used as criteria to match traffic; the shaper will be applied when the traffic matches.

To use a group as a destination, `internet-service` must be enabled. To use a group as a source, `internet-service-src` must be enabled.

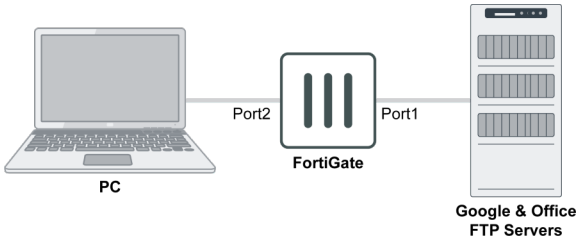
The following CLI variables are available in the `firewall policy` and `firewall shaping-policy` commands:

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| internet-service-group <string> | Internet Service group name. |
| internet-service-custom-group <string> | Custom Internet Service group name. |

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| internet-service-src-group <string> | Internet Service source group name. |
| internet-service-src-custom-group <string> | Custom Internet Service source group name. |

**Examples**

The following examples use the below topology.




## Example 1

In this example, the PC is allowed to access Google, so all Google services are put into an Internet Service Group.

**To configure access to Google services using an Internet Service Group using the CLI:**

1. Create a Service Group:

```
config firewall internet-service-group
    edit "Google_Group"
        set direction destination
        set member 65537 65538 65539 65540 65542 65543 65544 65545 65550 65536 65646
    next
end
```

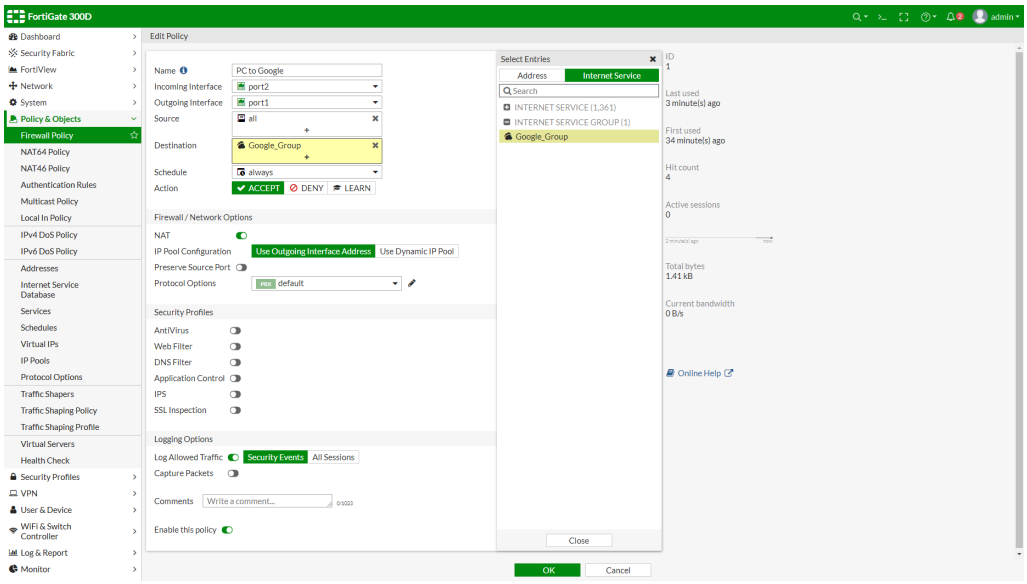
2. Create a firewall policy to allow access to all Google Services from the PC:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "PC to Google"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "PC"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-group "Google_Group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

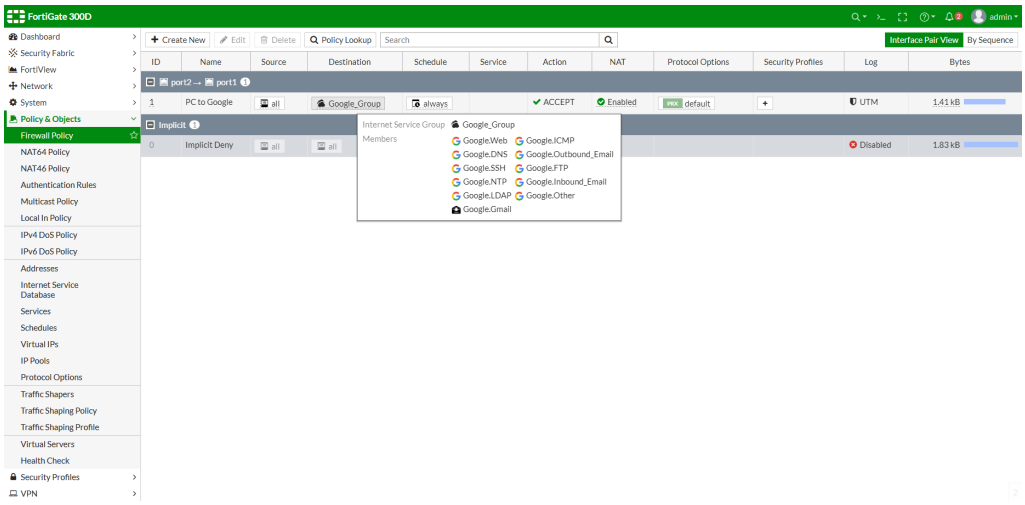
**To configure access to Google services using an Internet Service Group in the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, create a Service Group using the CLI.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, and create a new policy.

3. Set the *Destination* as the just created Internet Service Group.




4. Configure the remaining options as shown, then click *OK*.
   On the policy page, hover over the group to view a list of its members.




## Example 2

In this example, two office FTP servers are put into an Internet Custom Service Group, and the PC connection to the FTP servers is limited to 1Mbps.

**To put two FTP servers into a custom service group and limit the PC connection speed to them using the CLI:**

1. Create custom internet services for the internal FTP servers:

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
    edit "FTP_PM"
        config entry
```

```
            edit 1
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 21
                        set end-port 21
                    next
                end
                set dst "PM_Server"
            next
        end
    next
    edit "FTP_QA"
        config entry
            edit 1
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 21
                        set end-port 21
                    next
                end
                set dst "QA_Server"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Create a custom internet server group and add the just created custom internet services to it:

```
config firewall internet-service-custom-group
    edit "Internal_FTP"
        set member "FTP_QA" "FTP_PM"
    next
end
```

3. Create a traffic shaper to limit the maximum bandwidth:

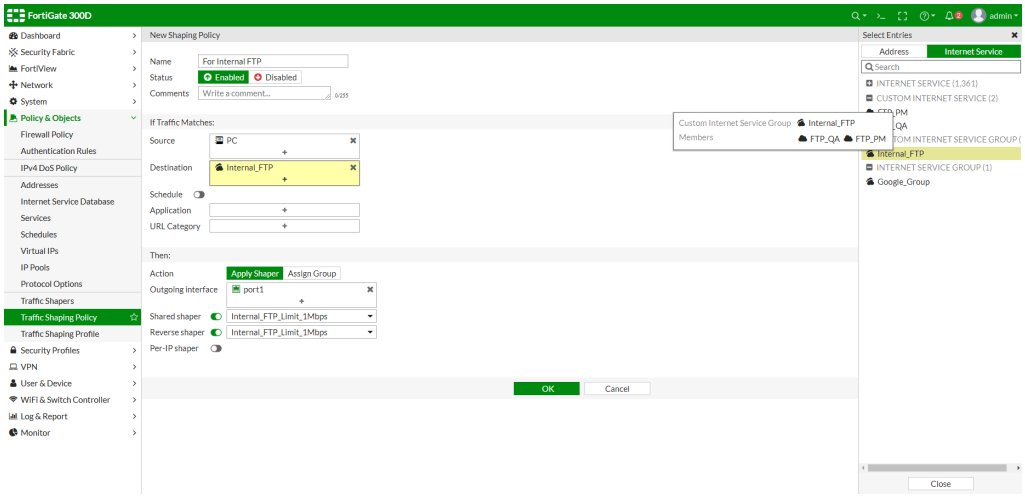
```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 500
        set maximum-bandwidth 1000
        set priority medium
    next
end
```

4. Create a firewall shaping policy to limit the speed from the PC to the internal FTP servers:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "For Internal FTP"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-custom-group "Internal_FTP"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps"
        set srcaddr "PC"
    next
end
```

**To put two FTP servers into a custom service group and limit the PC connection speed to the using the GUI:**

1. Create custom internet services for the internal FTP servers using the CLI.
2. Create a custom internet server group and add the just created custom internet services to it using the CLI.
3. Create a traffic shaper to limit the maximum bandwidth:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers*, and click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a *Name* for the shaper, such as *Internal_FTP_Limit_1Mbps*.
   c. Set the *Traffic Priority* to *Medium*.
   d. Enable *Max Bandwidth* and set it to *1000*.
   e. Enable *Guaranteed Bandwidth* and set it to *500*.
   f. Click *OK*.
4. Create a firewall shaping policy to limit the speed from the PC to the internal FTP servers:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*, and click *Create New*.
   b. Set the *Destination* as the just created Custom Internet Service Group, and apply the just create traffic shaper.




   c. Configure the remaining options as shown, then click *OK*.

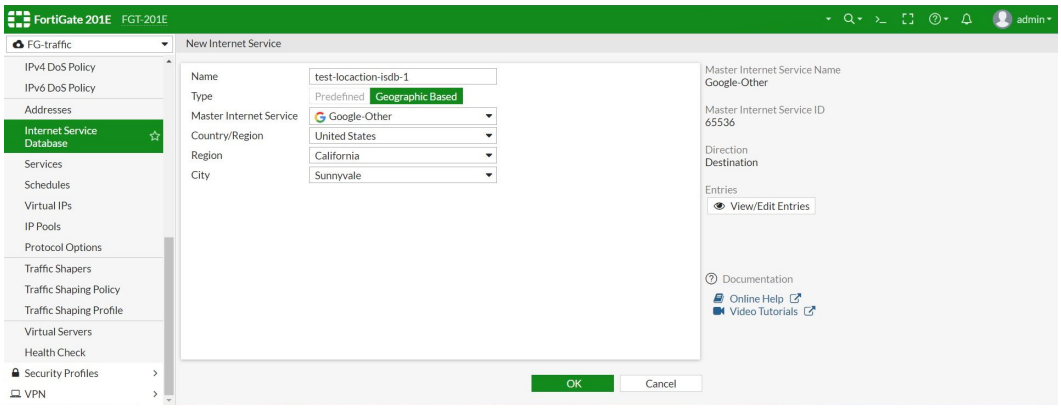
## Allow creation of ISDB objects with regional information

Geographic-based Internet Service Database (ISDB) objects allow users to define a country, region, and city. These objects can be used in firewall policies for more granular control over the location of the parent ISDB object. ISDB objects are now referenced in policies by name instead of ID.

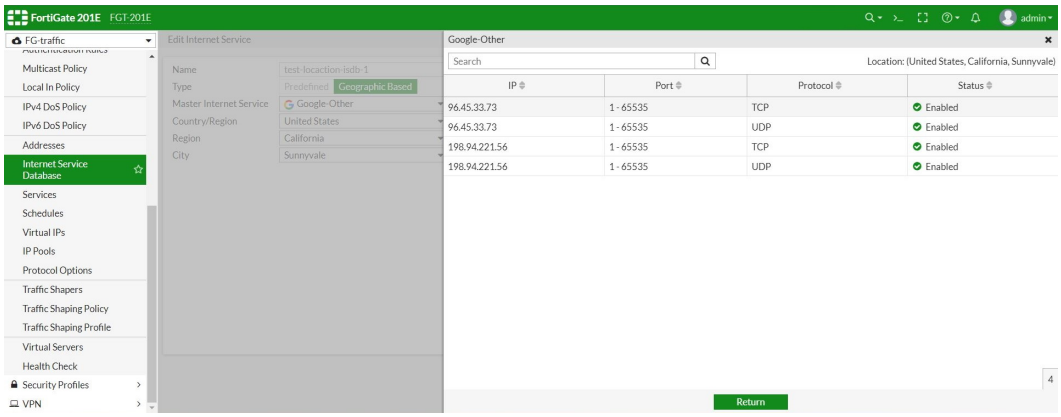
**To apply a location-based ISDB object to a policy in the GUI:**

1. Create the ISDB object:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Internet Service Database* > *Create New*.
   b. For *Type*, select *Geographic Based*, and configure the other settings as needed.

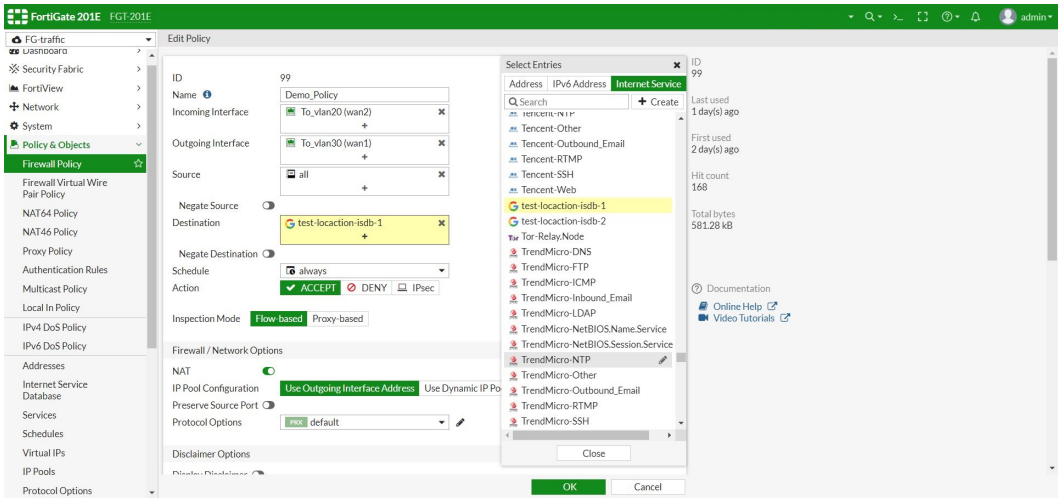
c. Click *OK*.




2. View the IP ranges in the location-based internet service:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Internet Service Database* .
   b. In the table, hover over the object created in step 1 and click *View/Edit Entries*. The list of IPs is displayed:




   c. Click *Return*.
3. Add the ISDB object to a policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.
   b. For *Destination*, click *Internet Service* and select the ISDB object created in step 1.
   c. Configure the other settings as needed.




   d. Click *OK*.

**To apply a location-based ISDB object to a policy in the CLI:**

1. Create the ISDB object:

```
config firewall internet-service-name
    edit "test-locaction-isdb-1"
        set type location
        set internet-service-id 65536
        set country-id 840
        set region-id 283
        set city-id 23352
    next
end
```

2. View the IP ranges in the location-based internet service:

```
# diagnose internet-service id 65536 | grep "country(840) region(283) city(23352)"
```

3. Add the ISDB object to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 99
        set name "Demo_Policy"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set internet-service enable
        set internet-service-name "test-locaction-isdb-1"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set logtraffic-start enable
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set comments "1"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Internet service customization

Internet Service Database (ISDB) entries can be tuned for their environments by adding custom ports and port ranges, as well as port mapping.

**To add a custom port range:**

```
config firewall internet-service-addition
    edit 65646
        set comment "Add custom port-range:tcp/8080-8090 into 65646"
        config entry
            edit 1
                set protocol 6
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 8080
                        set end-port 8090
                    next
```

```
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
Warning: Configuration will only be applied after rebooting or using the 'execute internet-
service refresh' command.
```

**To verify that the change was applied:**

```
# diagnose internet-service info FG-traffic 6 8080 2.20.183.160
Internet Service: 65646(Google.Gmail)
```

**To configure additional port mapping:**

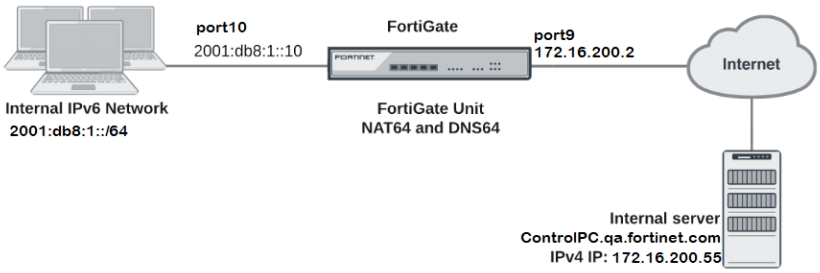
```
config firewall internet-service-append
    set match-port 10
    set append-port 20
end
Warning: Configuration will only be applied after rebooting or using the 'execute internet-
service refresh' command.
```

## NAT64 policy and DNS64 (DNS proxy)

NAT64 policy translates IPv6 addresses to IPv4 addresses so that a client on an IPv6 network can communicate transparently with a server on an IPv4 network.

NAT64 policy is usually implemented in combination with the DNS proxy called DNS64. DNS64 synthesizes AAAA records from A records and is used to synthesize IPv6 addresses for hosts that only have IPv4 addresses. DNS proxy and DNS64 are interchangeable terms.

### Sample topology




In this example, a host on the internal IPv6 network communicates with `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com` that only has IPv4 address on the Internet.

1. The host on the internal network does a DNS lookup for `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com` by sending a DNS query for an AAAA record for `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com`.
2. The DNS query is intercepted by the FortiGate DNS proxy. The DNS proxy performs an A-record query for `ControlPC.qa.fortinet.com` and gets back an RRSet containing a single A record with the IPv4 address `172.16.200.55`.

3. The DNS proxy then synthesizes an AAAA record. The IPv6 address in the AAAA record begins with the configured NAT64 prefix in the upper 96 bits and the received IPv4 address in the lower 32 bits. By default, the resulting IPv6 address is `64:ff9b::172.16.200.55`.
4. The host on the internal network receives the synthetic AAAA record and sends a packet to the destination address `64:ff9b::172.16.200.55`.
5. The packet is routed to the FortiGate internal interface (port10) where it is accepted by the NAT64 security policy.
6. The FortiGate unit translates the destination address of the packets from IPv6 address `64:ff9b::172.16.200.55` to IPv4 address `172.16.200.55` and translates the source address of the packets to `172.16.200.200` (or another address in the IP pool range) and forwards the packets out the port9 interface to the Internet.

## Sample configuration

**To enable display for IPv6, NAT46/NAT64, and DNS Database using the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. In the *Basic Features* section, enable *IPv6*.
3. In the *Additional Features* section, enable the following features:
   - *NAT46 & NAT64*
   - *DNS Database*
4. Click *Apply*.

**To enable display for IPv6, NAT46/NAT64, and DNS Database using the CLI:**

```
config system global
   set gui-ipv6 enable
end
config system settings
   set gui-nat46-64 enable
   set gui-dns-database enable
end
```

**To enable DNS proxy on the IPv6 interface using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
2. In *DNS Service on Interface*, click *Create New*.
3. For *Interface*, select *port10*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To enable DNS proxy on the IPv6 interface using the CLI:**

```
config system dns-server
   edit "port10"
       set mode forward-only
   next
end
```

**To configure IPv6 DHCP server using the CLI:**

```
config system dhcp6 server
   edit 1
       set subnet 2001:db8:1::/64
       set interface "port10"
       config ip-range
           edit 1
               set start-ip 2001:db8:1::11
               set end-ip 2001:db8:1::20
           next
       end
       set dns-server1 2001:db8:1::10
   next
end
```

**To enable NAT64 and related settings using the CLI:**

Enabling NAT64 with the `config system nat64` command means that all IPv6 traffic received by the current VDOM can be subject to NAT64 if the source and destination address matches an NAT64 security policy.

By default, the setting `always-synthesize-aaaa-record` is enabled. If you disable this setting, the DNS proxy (DNS64) will attempt to find an AAAA records for queries to domain names and therefore resolve the host names to IPv6 addresses. If the DNS proxy cannot find an AAAA record, it synthesizes one by adding the NAT64 prefix to the A record.

`nat64-prefix` setting is the `nat64` prefix. By default, it is `64:ff9b::/96`.

```
config system nat64
   set status enable
end
```

**To create NAT64 policy using the GUI:**

1. Add an IPv4 firewall address for the external network.
   a. Go to *Policy & Object* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Name*, enter *external-net4*.
   d. For *IP/Network*, enter *17216.200.0/24*.
   e. For *Interface*, select *port9*.
   f. Click *OK*.
2. Add an IPv6 firewall address for the internal network.
   a. Go to *Policy & Object* > *Addresses*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Change *Category* to *IPv6 Address*.
   d. For *Name*, enter *internal-net6*.
   e. For *IPv6 Address*, enter *2001:db8:1::/48*.
   f. Click *OK*.
3. Add an IP pool containing the IPv4 address that is used as the source address of the packets exiting port9.
   a. Go to *Policy & Object* > *IP Pools*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Name*, enter *exit-pool4*.

**d.** For *External IP Range*, enter *172.16.200.200-172.16.200.210*.
**e.** Click *OK*.
**4.** Add a NAT64 policy that allows connections from the internal IPv6 network to the external IPv4 network.
**a.** Go to *Policy & Object* > *NAT64 Policy*.
**b.** Click *Create New*.
**c.** For *Incoming Interface*, select *port10*.
**d.** For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port9*.
**e.** For *Source Address*, select *internal-net6*.
**f.** For *Destination Address*, select *external-net4*.
**g.** Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Dynamic IP Pool* and select the IP pool *exit-pool4*.
**h.** Click *OK*.

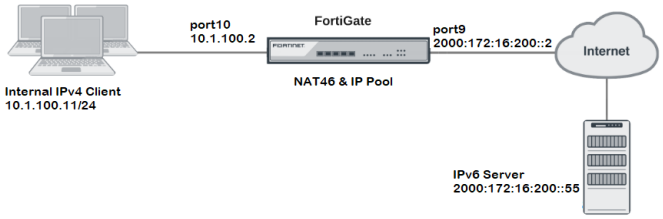
**To create NAT64 policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall address
    edit "external-net4"
        set associated-interface "port9"
        set subnet 172.16.200.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address6
    edit "internal-net6"
        set ip6 2001:db8:1::/48
    next
end
config firewall ippool
    edit "exit-pool4"
        set startip 172.16.200.200
        set endip 172.16.200.210
    next
end
config firewall policy64
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "internal-net6"
        set dstaddr "external-net4"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set ippool enable
        set poolname "exit-pool4"
    next
end
```

## NAT46 policy

NAT46 refers to the mechanism that allows IPv4 addressed hosts to communicate with IPv6 hosts. Without such a mechanism, IPv4 environments cannot connect to IPv6 networks.

## Sample topology




In this example, an IPv4 client tries to connect to an IPv6 server. A VIP is configured on FortiGate to map the server IPv6 IP address `2000:172:16:200:55` to an IPv4 address `10.1.100.55`. On the other side, an IPv6 IP pool is configured and the source address of packets from client are changed to the defined IPv6 address. In this setup, the client PC can access the server by using IP address `10.1.100.55`.

## Sample configuration

**To enable display for IPv6 and NAT46/NAT64 using the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
2. In the *Basic Features* section, enable *IPv6*.
3. In the *Additional Features* section, enable *NAT46 & NAT64*.
4. Click *Apply*.

**To enable display for IPv6 and NAT46/NAT64 using the CLI:**

```
config system global
    set gui-ipv6 enable
end
config system settings
    set gui-nat46-64 enable
end
```

**To configure VIP46 using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Object* > *Virtual IPs*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Name*, enter *vip46_server*.
4. For *External IP Address/Range*, enter *10.1.100.55- 10.1.100.55*.
5. For *Mapped IP Address/Range*, enter *2000:172:16:200::55*.
6. Click *OK*.

**To configure VIP46 using the CLI:**

```
config firewall vip46
    edit "vip46_server"
        set extip 10.1.100.55
        set mappedip 2000:172:16:200::55
    next
end
```

**To configure IPv6 IP pool using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Object* > *IP Pools*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Name*, enter *client_expternal*.
4. For *External IP Range*, enter *2000:172:16:201::11- 2000:172:16:201::20*.
5. Click *OK*.

**To configure IPv6 IP pool using the CLI:**

```
config firewall ippool6
    edit "client_external"
        set startip 2000:172:16:201::11
        set endip 2000:172:16:201::20
    next
end
```

**To enable NAT64 and configure address prefix using the CLI:**

```
config system nat64
    set status enable
    set secondary-prefix-status enable
    config secondary-prefix
        edit "1"
            set nat64-prefix 2000:172:16:201::/96
        next
    end
end
```

**To create NAT46 policy using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Object* > *NAT46 Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port10*.
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port9*.
5. For *Source Address*, select *all*.
6. For *Destination Address*, select *vip46_server*.
7. Set *IP Pool Configuration* to *Use Dynamic IP Pool* and select the IP pool *client_expernal*.
8. Click *OK*.

**To create NAT46 policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy46
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "vip46_server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set ippool enable
```

```
        set poolname "client_external"
    next
end
```

## Sample troubleshooting

Example to trace flow to see the whole process.

```
# diagnose debug flow filter saddr 10.1.100.11
# diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
show function name
# diagnose debug flow show iprope enable
show trace messages about iprope
# diagnose debug flow trace start 5

id=20085 trace_id=1 func=print_pkt_detail line=5401 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet
(proto=1, 10.1.100.11:27592->10.1.100.55:2048) from port10. type=8, code=0, id=27592,
seq=1."
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=init_ip_session_common line=5561 msg="allocate a new session-
000003b9"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_dnat_check line=4948 msg="in-[port10], out-[]"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_dnat_tree_check line=822 msg="len=1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_dnat_policy line=4822 msg="checking gnum-100000
policy-1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=get_vip46_addr line=998 msg="find DNAT46: IP-2000:172:16:200::55,
port-27592"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_dnat_policy line=4904 msg="matched policy-1,
act=accept, vip=1, flag=100, sflag=2000000"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_dnat_check line=4961 msg="result: skb_flags-02000000, vid-1,
ret-matched, act-accept, flag-00000100"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=fw_pre_route_handler line=183 msg="VIP-10.1.100.55:27592, outdev-
unkown"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__ip_session_run_tuple line=3220 msg="DNAT 10.1.100.55:8-
>10.1.100.55:27592"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2594 msg="find a route: flag=80000000
gw-10.1.100.55 via root"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=ip4_nat_af_input line=601 msg="nat64 ipv4 received a packet
proto=1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check line=2112 msg="gnum-100012, check-ffffffffa0024ebe"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_policy line=1873 msg="checked gnum-100012
policy-1, ret-matched, act-accept"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_user_identity_check line=1677 msg="ret-matched"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=get_new_addr46 line=1047 msg="find SNAT46: IP-2000:172:16:201::13
(from IPPOOL), port-27592"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check_one_policy line=2083 msg="policy-1 is matched, act-
accept"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=__iprope_check line=2131 msg="gnum-100012 check result: ret-
matched, act-accept, flag-08050500, flag2-00200000"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=iprope_policy_group_check line=4358 msg="after check: ret-matched,
act-accept, flag-08050500, flag2-00200000"
id=20085 trace_id=1 func=resolve_ip6_tuple line=4389 msg="allocate a new session-00000081"
```

# Multicast processing and basic Multicast policy

You need to add firewall policies to allow packets to pass from one interface to another. Multicast packets require multicast security policies. Similar to firewall policies, in a multicast policy, the administrator specifies the source interface, destination interfaces, the allowed source address ranges, and destination addresses of the multicast traffic. You can also use multicast policies to configure source NAT and destination NAT for multicast packets.

## Multicast forwarding in NAT mode

When `multicast-forward` is enabled, the FortiGate forwards any multicast IP packets in which the TTL is 2 or higher to all interfaces and VLAN interfaces except the receiving interface. The TTL in the IP header is reduced by 1. Even though the multicast packets are forwarded to all interfaces, you must add multicast policies to allow multicast packets through the FortiGate.

If `multicast-forward` is disabled, then FortiGate unit drops packets that have multicast source or destination addresses.

In NAT mode, there is a per-VDOM configuration to disable forwarding any multicast traffic. This command is only available in NAT mode.

```
config system settings
    set multicast-forward <disable|enable(default)>
end
```

You can also use the `multicast-ttl-notchange` option so that FortiGate doesn't increase the TTL value for forwarded multicast packets. Use this option only if packets are expiring before reaching the multicast router.

```
config system settings
    set multicast-ttl-notchange enable
end
```

## Multicast processing in transparent mode

When `multicast-skip-policy` is enabled, no check is performed based on multicast policy. A multicast packet received on an interface is flooded unconditionally to all interfaces (except the incoming interface) belonging to the same forwarding domain. Multicast packets are forwarded even when there is no multicast policy or the multicast policy is set to deny. To forward multicast traffic based on multicast policy, `multicast-skip-policy` must be disabled.

In transparent mode, there is a per-VDOM configuration to skip policy check and forward all multicast traffic. This command is only available in transparent mode, and is disabled by default.

```
config system settings
    set multicast-skip-policy {disable | enable}
end
```

## Sample configuration

**To allow RIP2 packets from port1 to port2 using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Object* > *Multicast Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port1*.

4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port2*.
5. For *Source Address*, select *10.10.0.10/32*.
6. For *Destination Address*, select *RIPv2*.
7. Click *OK*.

**To allow RIP2 packets from port1 to port2 using the CLI:**

```
config firewall address
    edit "10.10.0.10/32"
        set subnet 10.10.0.10 255.255.255.255
    next
end
config firewall multicast-address
    edit "RIPv2"
        set start-ip 224.0.0.9
        set end-ip 224.0.0.9
    next
end
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "10.10.0.10/32"
        set dstaddr "RIPv2"
    next
end
```

## Local-in policies

While security profiles control traffic flowing through the FortiGate, local-in policies control inbound traffic that is going to a FortiGate interface.

Administrative access traffic (HTTPS, PING, SSH, and others) can be controlled by allowing or denying the service in the interface settings. Trusted hosts can be configured under an administrator to restrict the hosts that can access the administrative service.

Local-in policies allow administrators to granularly define the source and destination addresses, interface, and services. Traffic destined for the FortiGate interface specified in the policy that meets the other criteria is subject to the policies action.

Local-in policies can be used to restrict administrative access or other services, such as VPN, that can be specified as services. You can define source addresses or address groups to restrict access from. For example, by using a geographic type address you can restrict a certain geographic set of IP addresses from accessing the FortiGate.

By default, no local-in policies are defined, so there are no restrictions on local-in traffic.



Local-in policies can only be created or edited in the CLI. You can view the existing local-in policies in the GUI by enabling it in *System* > *Feature Visibility* under the *Additional Features* section. This page does not list the custom local-in policies.

**To configure a local-in policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall {local-in-policy | local-in-policy6}
    edit <policy_number>
        set intf <interface>
        set srcaddr <source_address> [source_address] ...
        set dstaddr <destination_address> [destination_address] ...
        set action {accept | deny}
        set service <service_name> [service_name] ...
        set schedule <schedule_name>
        set comments <string>
    next
end
```

For example, to prevent the source subnet 10.10.10.0/24 from pinging port1, but allow administrative access for PING on port1:

```
config firewall address
    edit "10.10.10.0"
        set subnet 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall local-in-policy
    edit 1
        set intf "port1"
        set srcaddr "10.10.10.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "PING"
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```

**To test the configuration:**

1. From the PC at 10.10.10.12, start a continuous ping to port1:

   ```
   ping 192.168.2.5 -t
   ```

2. On the FortiGate, enable debug flow:

   ```
   # diagnose debug flow filter addr 10.10.10.12
   # diagnose debug flow filter proto 1
   # diagnose debug enable
   # diagnose debug flow trace start 10
   ```

3. The output of the debug flow shows that traffic is dropped by local-in policy 1:

   ```
   # id=20085 trace_id=1 func=print_pkt_detail line=5746 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet
   (proto=1, 10.10.10.12:1->192.168.2.5:2048) from port1. type=8, code=0, id=1, seq=128."
   id=20085 trace_id=1 func=init_ip_session_common line=5918 msg="allocate a new session-
   0017c5ad"
   id=20085 trace_id=1 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2615 msg="find a route:
   flag=80000000 gw-192.168.2.5 via root"
   id=20085 trace_id=1 func=fw_local_in_handler line=474 msg="iprope_in_check() check
   failed on policy 1, drop"
   ```

### Additional options

To disable or re-enable the local-in policy, use the `set status {enable | disable}` command.

To dedicate the interface as an HA management interface, use the `set ha-mgmt-intf-only enable` command.

## IPv4/IPv6 access control lists

Access control lists (ACL) in the FortiOS firmware is a granular or more specifically targeted blocklist. ACL drop IPv4 and IPv6 packets at the physical network interface before the packets are analyzed by the CPU. On a busy appliance, this can really improve performance.

ACL is available on FortiGates with NP6-accelerated interfaces. ACL checking is one of the first things that happens to the packet and checking is done by the NP6 processor. The result is very efficient protection that does not use CPU or memory resources.

The following platforms support ACL:

- FGT_100D, FGT_100E, FGT_100EF, FGT_101E.
- FGT_140D, FGT_140D_POE, FGT_140E, FGT_140E_POE.
- FGT_301E, FGT_500E, FGT_501E.
- FGT_1200D, FGT_1500D, FGT_1500DT.
- FGT_2000E, FGT_2500E.
- FGT_3000D, FGT_3100D, FGT_3200D, FGT_3700D.
- FGT_3800D, FGT_3810D, FGT_3815D.
- FGT_3960E, FGT_3980E.

### Limitation

The configuration of ACL allows you to specify which interface the ACL is applied to. You should be aware of a hardware limitation. The ACL is a Layer 2 function and is offloaded to the ISF hardware. Therefore, no CPU resources are used in the processing of the ACL. It is handled by the inside switch chip which can do hardware acceleration, which increases the performance of the FortiGate. The drawback is that the ACL function is only supported on switch fabric driven interfaces. It also cannot be applied to hardware switch interfaces or their members. Ports such as WAN1 or WAN2 on some models that use network cards that connect to the CPU through a PCIe bus do not support ACL.

### Sample configuration

**To block all IPv4 and IPv6 Telnet traffic from port2 to Company_Servers using the CLI:**

```
config firewall acl
    edit 1
       set interface "port2"
       set srcaddr "all"
       set dstaddr "Company_Servers"
       set service "TELNET"
    next
end
config firewall acl6
    edit 1
```

```
        set interface "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "Company_Servers_v6"
        set service "TELNET"
    next
end
```

### Sample troubleshooting

**To check the number of packets drop by an ACL:**

```
# diagnose firewall acl counter
ACL id 1 dropped 0 packets
```

**To clear the packet drop counter:**

```
# diagnose firewall acl clearcounter
```

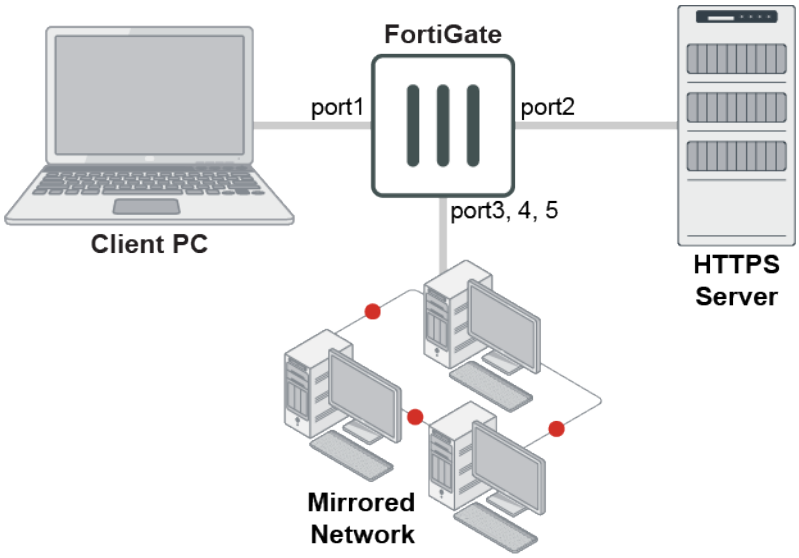
Use the same commands for IPv6 ACL.

```
# diagnose firewall acl
counter          Show number of packets dropped by ACL.
counter6         Show number of packets dropped by ACL6.
clearcounter     Clear ACL packet counter.
clearcounter6    Clear ACL6 packet counter.
```

## Mirroring SSL traffic in policies

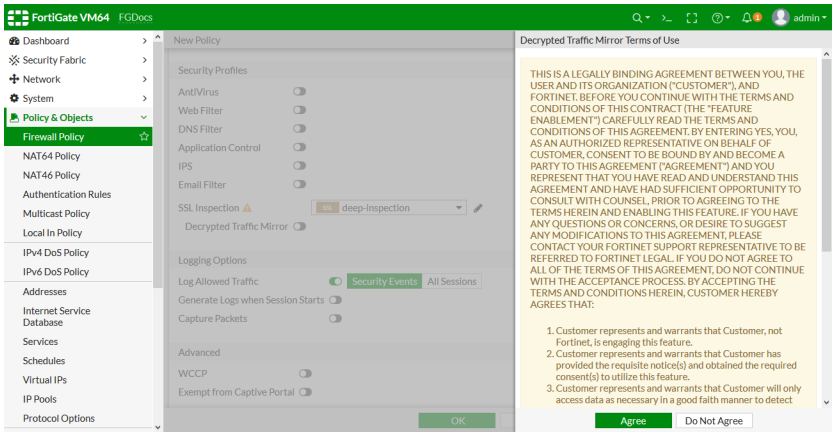
SSL mirroring allows the FortiGate to decrypt and mirror traffic to a designated port. A new decrypted traffic mirror profile can be applied to IPv4, IPv6, and explicit proxy firewall policies in both flow and proxy mode. Full SSL inspection must be used in the policy for the traffic mirroring to occur.

SSL inspection is automatically enabled when you enable a security profile on the policy configuration page.

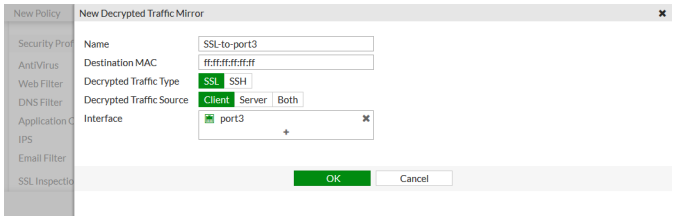


### To configure SSL mirroring in a policy in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy, or edit an existing one.
3. Configure the interfaces, sources, and other required information.
4. In the *Security Profiles* section, for *SSL Inspection*, select *deep-inspection*, or another profile that uses *Full SSL Inspection*.
5. Enable *Decrypted Traffic Mirror* . The terms of use agreement opens.




6. Click *Agree* to accept the terms.
7. In the drop-down list, select a decrypted traffic mirror, or click *Create* to create a new one.
   In this example, a new decrypted traffic mirror is created using the port3 interface.




8. Click *OK* to save the policy.

### To configure SSL mirroring in proxy mode in the CLI:

1. Create the decrypted traffic mirror profile:

```
config firewall decrypted-traffic-mirror
    edit SSL-to-port3
        set dstmac ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        set traffic-type ssl
        set traffic-source client
        set interface port3
    next
end
```

2. Configure the policy to enable SSL traffic mirroring:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "mirror-policy"
        set srcintf "port1"
```

```
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set decrypted-traffic-mirror "SSL-to-port3"

THIS IS A LEGALLY BINDING AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU, THE USER AND ITS ORGANIZATION
("CUSTOMER"), AND FORTINET. BEFORE YOU CONTINUE WITH THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS
CONTRACT (THE "FEATURE ENABLEMENT") CAREFULLY READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS
AGREEMENT. BY ENTERING YES, YOU, AS AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE ON BEHALF OF CUSTOMER,
CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY AND BECOME A PARTY TO THIS AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") AND YOU
REPRESENT THAT YOU HAVE READ AND UNDERSTAND THIS AGREEMENT AND HAVE HAD SUFFICIENT
OPPORTUNITY TO CONSULT WITH COUNSEL, PRIOR TO AGREEING TO THE TERMS HEREIN AND ENABLING
THIS FEATURE. IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS OR CONCERNS, OR DESIRE TO SUGGEST ANY
MODIFICATIONS TO THIS AGREEMENT, PLEASE CONTACT YOUR FORTINET SUPPORT REPRESENTATIVE TO
BE REFERRED TO FORTINET LEGAL. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ALL OF THE TERMS OF THIS
AGREEMENT, DO NOT CONTINUE WITH THE ACCEPTANCE PROCESS. BY ACCEPTING THE TERMS AND
CONDITIONS HEREIN, CUSTOMER HEREBY AGREES THAT:

1. Customer represents and warrants that Customer, not Fortinet, is engaging this
feature.

2. Customer represents and warrants that Customer has provided the requisite notice(s)
and obtained the required consent(s) to utilize this feature.

3. Customer represents and warrants that Customer will only access data as necessary in
a good faith manner to detect malicious traffic and will put in place processes and
controls to ensure this occurs.

4. Customer represents and warrants that Customer has the right to enable and utilize
this feature, and Customer is fully in compliance with all applicable laws in so doing.

5. Customer shall indemnify Fortinet in full for any of the above certifications being
untrue.

6. Customer shall promptly notify Fortinet Legal in writing of any breach of these Terms
and Conditions and shall indemnify Fortinet in full for any failure by Customer or any
of its employees or representatives to abide in full by the Terms and Conditions above.

7. Customer agrees that these Terms and Conditions shall be governed by the laws of the
State of California, without regards to the choice of laws provisions thereof and
Customer hereby agrees that any dispute related to these Terms and Conditions shall be
resolved in Santa Clara County, California, USA, and Customer hereby consents to
personal jurisdiction in Santa Clara County, California, USA.

Do you want to continue? (y/n) y
    next
end
```

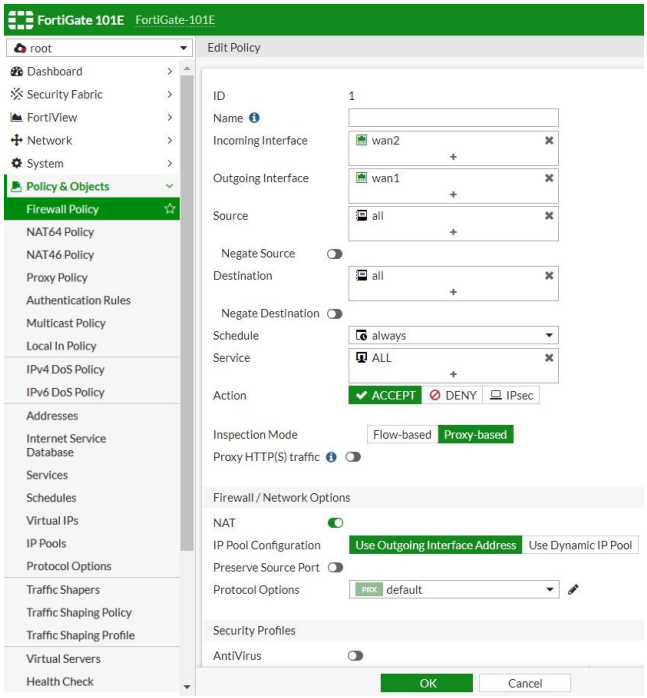
# Inspection mode per policy

Inspection mode is configured on a per-policy basis in NGFW mode. This gives you more flexibility when setting up different policies.

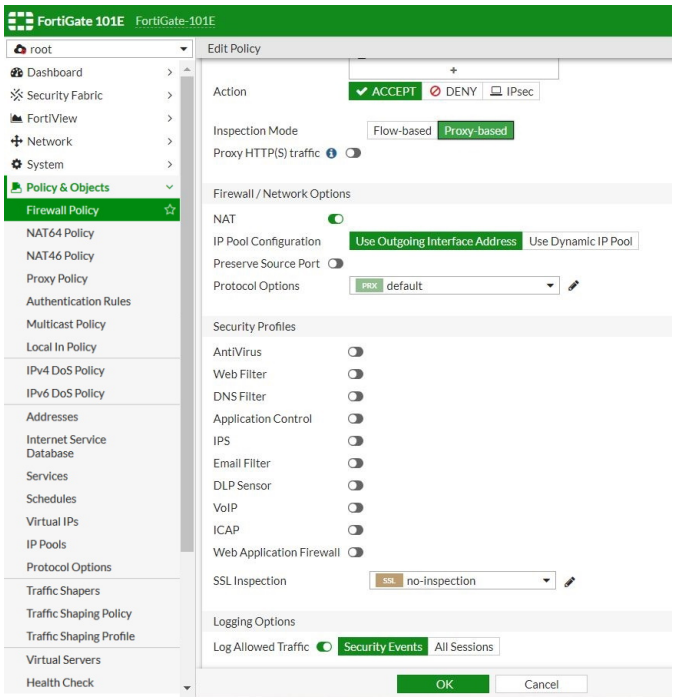
When configuring a firewall policy, you can select a *Flow-based* or *Proxy-basedInspection Mode*. The default setting is *Flow-based*.

**To configure inspection mode in a policy:**

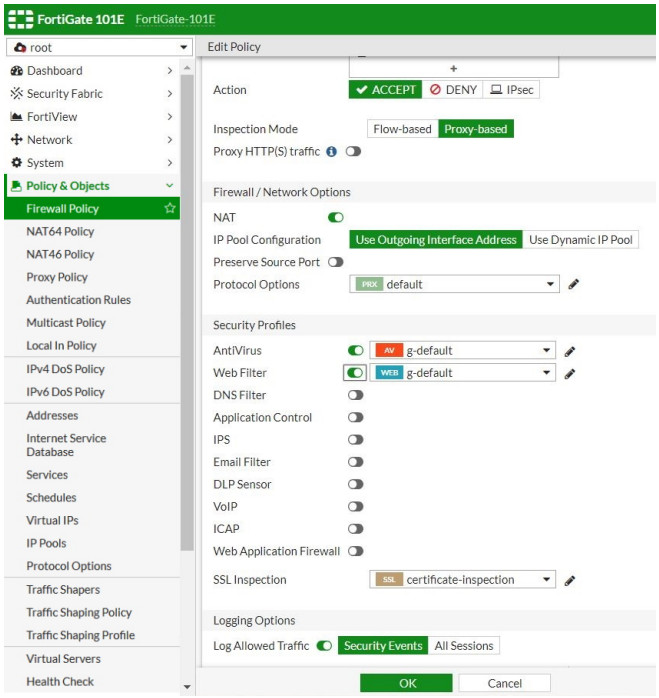
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy, or edit an existing policy.
3. Configure the policy as needed.
   a. If you change the *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*, the *Proxy HTTP(S) traffic* option displays.



**b.** In the *Security Profiles* section, if no security profiles are enabled, the default *SSL Inspection* is *no-inspection*.




**c.** In the *Security Profiles* section, if you enable any security profile, the *SSL Inspection* changes to *certificate-inspection*.




**To see the inspection mode changes using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
```

```
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To see the HTTP and SSH policy redirect settings when inspection mode is set to proxy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set http-policy-redirect enable
        set ssh-policy-redirect enable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To see the default SSL-SSH policy set to no inspection using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
       show fu | grep ssl-ssh-profile
        set ssl-ssh-profile "no-inspection"
    next
end
```

## OSPFv3 neighbor authentication

OSPFv3 neighbor authentication is available for enhanced IPv6 security.

**To configure an OSPF6 interface:**

```
config router ospf6
    config ospf6-interface
        edit <name>
            set authentication {none | ah | esp | area}
            set key-rollover-interval <integer>
            set ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
            set ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}
            config ipsec-keys
                edit <spi>
```

```
                    set auth-key <string>
                    set enc-key <string>
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure an OSPF6 virtual link:**

```
config router ospf6
    config area
        edit <id>
            config virtual-link
                edit <name>
                    set authentication {none | ah | esp | area}
                    set key-rollover-interval <integer>
                    set ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
                    set ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}
                    config ipsec-keys
                        edit <spi>
                            set auth-key <string>
                            set enc-key <string>
                        next
                    end
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

**To configure an OSPF6 area:**

```
config router ospf6
    config area
        edit <id>
            set authentication {none | ah | esp}
            set key-rollover-interval <integer>
            set ipsec-auth-alg {md5 | sha1 | sha256 | sha384 | sha512}
            set ipsec-enc-alg {null | des | 3des | aes128 | aes192 | aes256}
            config ipsec-keys
                edit <spi>
                    set auth-key <string>
                    set enc-key <string>
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

**CLI command descriptions**

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| <id> | Area entry IP address. |
| authentication {none \| ah \| esp \| area} | Authentication mode:<br>• `none`: Disable authentication<br>• `ah`: Authentication Header<br>• `esp`: Encapsulating Security Payload<br>• `area`: Use the routing area authentication configuration |
| key-rollover-interval <integer> | Enter an integer value (300 - 216000, default = 300). |
| ipsec-auth-alg {md5 \| sha1 \| sha256 \| sha384 \| sha512} | Authentication algorithm. |
| ipsec-enc-alg {null \| des \| 3des \| aes128 \| aes192 \| aes256} | Encryption algorithm. |
| <spi> | Security Parameters Index. |
| auth-key <string> | Authentication key should be hexadecimal numbers.<br>Key length for each algorithm:<br>• MD5: 16 bytes<br>• SHA1: 20 bytes<br>• SHA256: 32 bytes<br>• SHA384:48 bytes<br>• SHA512:84 bytes<br>If the key is shorter than the required length, it will be padded with zeroes. |
| enc-key <string> | Encryption key should be hexadecimal numbers.<br>Key length for each algorithm:<br>• DES: 8 bytes<br>• 3DES: 24 bytes<br>• AES128: 16 bytes<br>• AES192: 24 bytes<br>• AES256: 32 bytes<br>If the key is shorter than the required length, it will be padded with zeroes. |

## Firewall anti-replay option per policy

When the global anti-replay option is disabled, the FortiGate does not check TCP flags in packets. The per policy anti-replay option overrides the global setting. This allows you to control whether or not TCP flags are checked per policy.

**To enable the anti-replay option so TCP flags are checked using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "policyid-1"
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
```

```
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set anti-replay enable
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

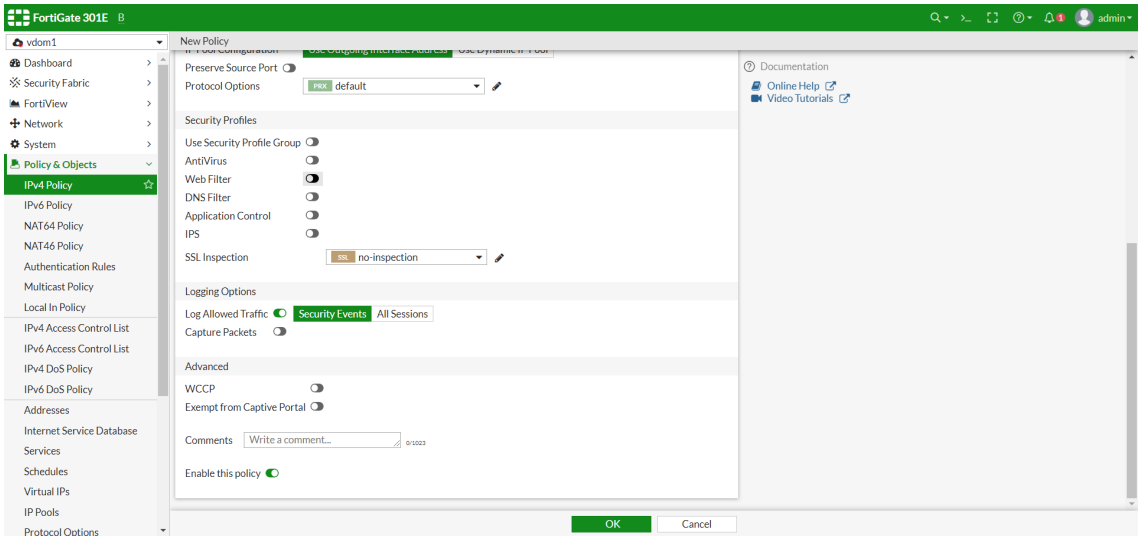
## Enabling advanced policy options in the GUI

Advanced policy options can be enabled so you can configure the options in the GUI.

**To enable advanced policy options:**

```
config system settings
    set gui-advanced-policy enable
end
```

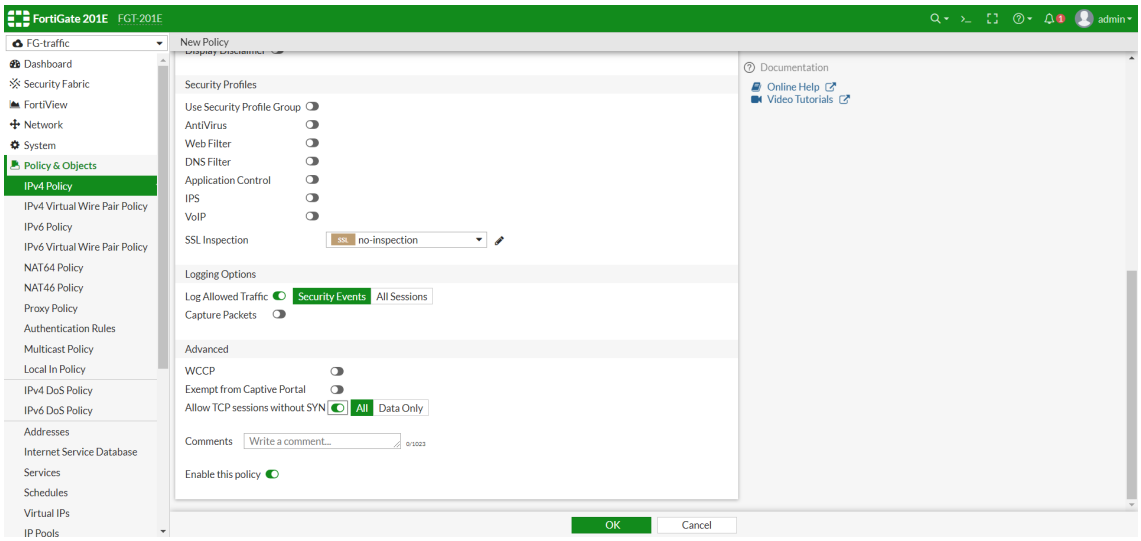
Advanced policy options are now available when creating or editing a policy in the GUI:




**To enable configuring TCP sessions without SYN:**

```
config system settings
    set tcp-session-without-syn enable
end
```

TCP sessions without SYN can now be configured when creating or editing a policy in the GUI:




## Recognize anycast addresses in geo-IP blocking

An anycast IP can be advertised from multiple locations and the router selects a path based on latency, distance, cost, number of hops, and so on. This technique is widely used by providers to route users to the closest server. Since the IP is hosted in multiple geographic locations, there is no way to specify one single location to that IP.

In FortiOS 6.4.1, there is an option to bypass anycast IP ranges in geo-IP blocking. The ISDB contains a list of confirmed anycast IP ranges that can be used for this purpose.

When the source or destination is set to `geoip`, you can enable the `geoip-anycast` option. Once enabled, IPs where the anycast option is set to `1` in `geoip_db` are bypassed in country matching and blocking.

You can only use the CLI to configure this feature.

**To enable the geoip-anycast option using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "policyid-1"
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "test-geoip-CA_1"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set geoip-anycast enable
      set logtraffic all
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

**To check the geoip-anycast option for an IP address using the CLI:**

```
diagnose geoip ip2country 1.0.0.1
   1.0.0.1 - Australia, is anycast ip
```

The anycast IP is `1.0.0.1`.

## Matching GeoIP by registered and physical location

IP addresses have both a physical and registered location in the geography IP database. Sometimes these two locations are different. The `geoip-match` command allows users to match an IPv4 address in an firewall policy to its physical or registered location when a GeoIP is used as a source or destination address. IPv6 policies currently support geography address objects but do not support `geoip-match`.

In the following example, the physical location of 220.243.219.10 is CA (Canada), the registered location is CN (China), and it is not an anycast IP.

**To configure GeoIP matching based on registered location:**

1. Create a firewall policy to match the IP:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "policy_id_1"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "test-geoip-CA"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set geoip-match registered-location
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

   Since CA is applied as a destination address and registered location IP matching is enabled, if the destination IP of the traffic is 220.243.219.10, then the traffic will be blocked because the registered location is CN.

2. Verify that the policy is blocking traffic from the IP address:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp]
5.383798 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
6.381982 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
7.382608 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
^C
3 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

**To configure GeoIP matching based on physical location:**

1. Create a firewall policy to match the IP:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "policy_id_1"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "test-geoip-CA"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set geoip-match physical-location
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

   Since CA is applied as a destination address and physical location IP matching is enabled, if the destination IP of the traffic is 220.243.219.10, then the traffic will pass through.

2. Verify that the policy is allowing traffic from the IP address:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any icmp 4
interfaces=[any]
filters=[icmp]
5.273985 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
5.274176 wan1 out 172.16.200.10 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
6.274426 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
6.274438 wan1 out 172.16.200.10 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
7.273978 wan2 in 10.1.100.41 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
7.273987 wan1 out 172.16.200.10 -> 220.243.219.10: icmp: echo request
^C
6 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

## Authentication policy extensions

By default, unauthenticated traffic is permitted to fall to the next policy. This means that unauthenticated users are only forced to authenticate against a policy when there are no other matching policies. To avoid this, you can force authentication to always take place.

**To set that authentication requirement:**

```
config user setting
    set auth-on-demand {always | implicitly}
end
```

Where:

| | |
|---|---|
| `always` | Always trigger firewall authentication on demand. |

| | |
|---|---|
| `implicitly` (default) | Implicitly trigger firewall authentication on demand. This is the default setting (and the behavior in FortiOS 6.0 and earlier). |

In the following example, authentication is required; traffic that would otherwise be allowed by the second policy is instead blocked by the first policy.

**To use forced authentication:**

```
config user setting
    set auth-on-demand always
end
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "QA to Database"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "QA_subnet"
        set dstaddr "Database"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set groups "qa_group"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 2
        set name "QA to Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "QA_subnet"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## HTTP to HTTPS redirect for load balancing

You can configure a virtual server with HTTP to HTTPS redirect enabled. When enabled, a virtual server can convert a client's HTTP requests to HTTPS requests. Through this mandatory conversion, HTTP traffic is converted to HTTPS traffic. This conversion improves the security of the user network.

You can only enable this feature by using the CLI. After you enable this feature, traffic flows as follows:

- When FortiGate receives an HTTP request for an external IP, such as 10.1.100.201 in the following example, FortiGate sends an HTTP 303 response back to the original client and redirects HTTP to HTTPS, instead of forwarding the HTTP request to the real backend servers.
- The client browser restarts the TCP session to HTTPS.
- The HTTPS session comes to the FortiGate where a matching firewall policy allows the HTTPS traffic and establishes a secure SSL connection, and then forwards the request to the real backend servers.

**To configure virtual server with HTTPS redirect enabled:**

1. Create a virtual server with `server-type` set to `http`:
```
config firewall vip
   edit "virtual-server-http"
      set type server-load-balance
      set extip 10.1.100.201
      set extintf "wan2"
      set server-type http
      set ldb-method round-robin
      set extport 80
      config realservers
         edit 1
            set ip 172.16.200.44
            set port 80
         next
         edit 2
            set ip 172.16.200.55
            set port 80
         next
      end
   next
end
```
2. Create a virtual server with `server-type` set to `https` and with the same external IP address:
```
config firewall vip
   edit "virtual-server-https"
      set type server-load-balance
      set extip 10.1.100.201
      set extintf "wan2"
      set server-type https
      set ldb-method round-robin
      set extport 443
         config realservers
            edit 1 set ip 172.16.200.44
            set port 443
         next
         edit 2
            set ip 172.16.200.55
            set port 443
         next
      end
      set ssl-certificate "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
   next
end
```
3. Enable the `http-redirect` option for the virtual server with `server-type` set to `http`:
```
config firewall vip
   edit "virtual-server-http"
      set http-redirect enable
   next
end
```
4. Add the two virtual servers to a policy:
```
config firewall policy
   edit 9
      set srcintf "wan2"
      set dstintf "wan1"
      set srcaddr "all"
```

```
        set dstaddr "virtual-server-http" "virtual-server-https"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inspection-mode proxy set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
      next
    end
```

## GTPv2 in policies

You can use GTPv2 in the policy section of a GTP profile.

GTPv2 is only available for the following advanced fields:

- `apnmember`
- `apn-sel-mode`
- `messages`
- `max-apn-restriction`
- `imsi-prefix`
- `msisdn-prefix`
- `rat-type`
- `mei`
- `uli`

GTPv2 support includes the following changes for overall GTP support:

- `rai` is no longer supported in any GTP version.
- `uli` can coexist with CGI, SAI, RAI, TAI, ECGI, or LAI, each of which has the pattern MCC.MNC.ID or MCC.MNC.ID.ID2.
- `mei` can take IMEI (15 digits) or IMEISV (16 digits).

**To configure a new GTPv2 policy:**

```
config firewall gtp
    edit "gtpv2"
        config policy-v2
            edit 1
                set messages create-ses-req
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the new ULI format:**

This example matches packets with TAI 510-519.01-09.d02a and ECGI 505.02.1409900-14099ff.

```
config firewall gtp
    edit "gtpv2"
        config policy-v2
            edit 1
```

```
                set messages create-ses-req
                set uli "0" "0" "0" "51*.01-09.d02a" "505.02.14099*"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the GTPv2 message type:**

```
config firewall gtp
    edit "gtpv2"
        config policy-v2
            edit 1
                set messages create-ses-req create-ses-res modify-bearer-req modify-bearer-
res
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the RAT type:**

This example includes virtual and NB-IoT types.

```
config firewall gtp
    edit "gtpv2"
        config policy-v2
            edit 1
                set messages create-ses-req
                set rat-type virtual nbiot
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## Use active directory objects directly in policies

Active Directory (AD) groups can be used directly in identity-based firewall policies. You do not need to add remote AD groups to local FSSO groups before using them in policies.

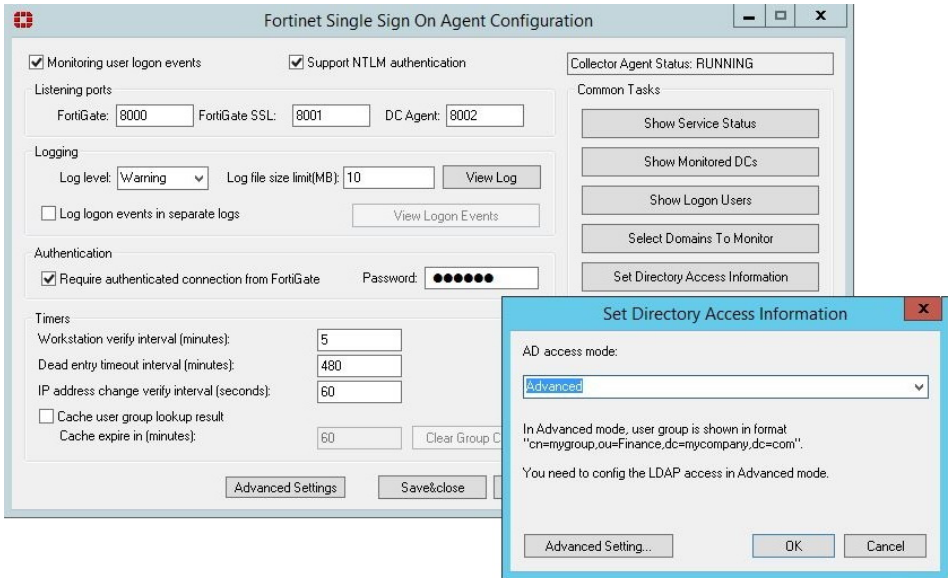
FortiGate administrators can define how often group information is updated from AD LDAP servers.

**To retrieve and use AD user groups in policies:**

1. Set the FSSO Collector Agent AD access mode on page 853
2. Add an LDAP server on page 853
3. Create the FSSO collector that updates the AD user groups list on page 854
4. Use the AD user groups in a policy on page 855

## Set the FSSO Collector Agent AD access mode

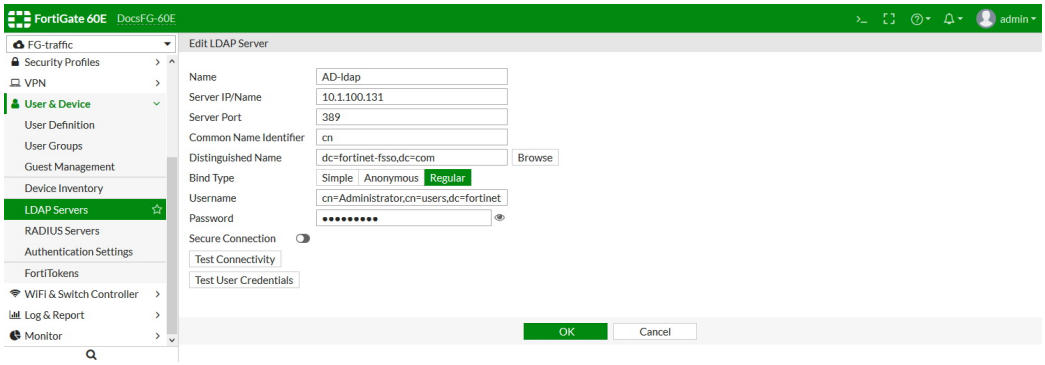
To use this feature, you must set FSSO Collector Agent to *Advanced* AD access mode. If the FSSO Collector Agent is running in the default mode, FortiGate cannot correctly match user group memberships.




## Add an LDAP server

**To add an LDAP server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the settings as needed.




4. If secure communication over TLS is supported by the remote AD LDAP server:
   a. Enable *Secure Connection* .
   b. Select the protocol.
   c. Select the certificate from the CA that issued the AD LDAP server certificate.
   If the protocol is LDAPS, the port will automatically change to 636.
5. Click *OK*.

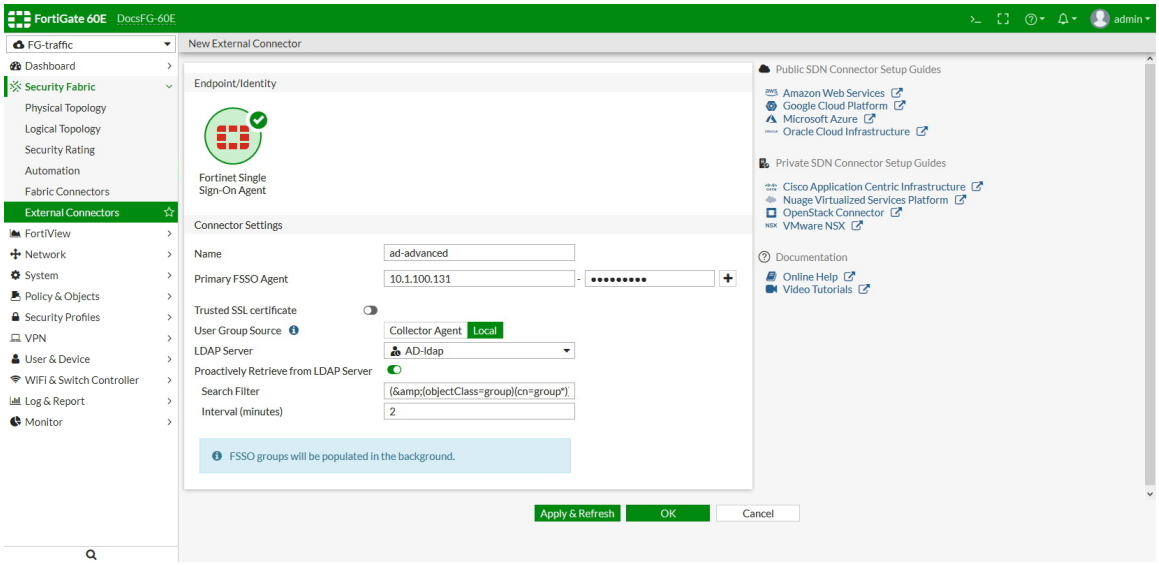
**To add an LDAP server in the CLI:**

```
config user ldap
    edit "AD-ldap"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
    next
end
```

## Create the FSSO collector that updates the AD user groups list

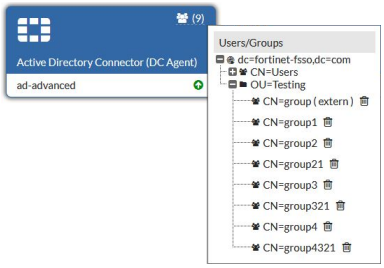
**To create an FSSO agent connector in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, click *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.
4. Fill in the *Name*
5. Set the *Primary FSSO Agent* to the IP address of the FSSO Collector Agent, and enter its password.
6. Set the *User Group Source* to *Local*.
7. Set the *LDAP Server* to the just created *AD-ldap* server.
8. Enable *Proactively Retrieve from LDAP Server*.
9. Set the *Search Filter* to *(&(objectClass=group)(cn=group*))*.
   The default search filter retrieves all groups, including Microsoft system groups. In this example, the filter is configured to retrieve *group1*, *group2*, etc, and not groups like *grp199*.
   The filter syntax is not automatically checked; if it is incorrect, the FortiGate might not retrieve any groups.
10. Set the *Interval (minutes)* to configure how often the FortiGate contacts the remote AD LDAP server to update the group information.




11. Click *OK*.

12. To view the AD user groups that are retrieved by the FSSO agent, hover the cursor over the group icon on the fabric connector listing.



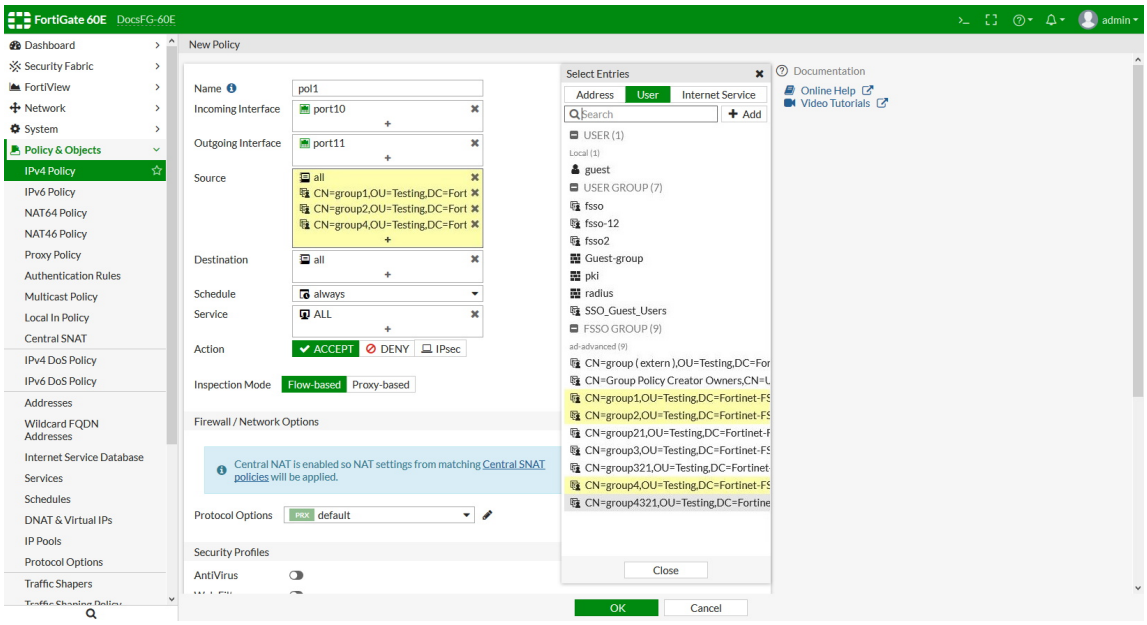

**To create an FSSO agent connector in the CLI:**

```
config user fsso
    edit "ad-advanced"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
        set ldap-server "AD-ldap"
        set ldap-poll enable
        set ldap-poll-interval 2
        set ldap-poll-filter "(&amp;(objectClass=group)(cn=group*))"
    next
end
```

You view the retrieved AD user groups with the `show user adgrp` command.

## Use the AD user groups in a policy

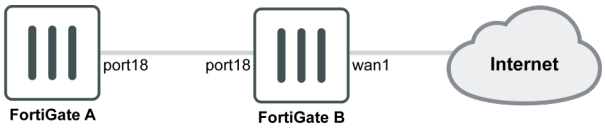
The AD user groups retrieved by the FortiGate can be used directly in firewall policies.



## FortiGate Cloud / FDN communication through an explicit proxy

Explicit proxy communication to FortiGate Cloud and FortiGuard servers from FortiGate is enabled. A proxy server can be configured in the FortiGuard settings so that all FortiGuard connections under the `forticldd` process can be established through the proxy server.

Not all FortiGuard services are supported by these proxy settings. For example, web filter service traffic to FortiGuard will not be directed to the configured proxy.




**To configure a proxy server and communicate with FortiGate Cloud though it:**

1. Configure FortiGate B as a proxy server:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
    edit 1
        set proxy explicit-web
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "webproxy"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set logtraffic all
        set users "guest1"
    next
end
config user local
    edit "guest1"
        set type password
        set passwd 123456
    next
end
config authentication scheme
    edit "local-basic"
        set method basic
        set user-database "local-user-db"
    next
end
config authentication rule
    edit "local-basic-rule"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set ip-based disable
        set active-auth-method "local-basic"
    next
end
```

2. Configure a firewall policy on FortiGate B to allow FortiGate A to get DNS resolution:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "dns"
        set srcintf "port18"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "DNS"
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure the FortiGuard proxy settings on FortiGate A:

```
config system fortiguard
    set proxy-server-ip 10.2.2.2
    set proxy-server-port 8080
    set proxy-username "guest1"
    set proxy-password 123456
end
```

4. On FortiGate A, log in to FortiGate Cloud to activate the logging service:

```
execute fortiguard-log login <username> <password>
```

5. On FortiGate A, view the `forticldd` debug message to see the connection to the log controller through the proxy server:

```
# diagnose test application forticldd 1
```

## No session timeout

To allow clients to permanently connect with legacy medical applications and systems that do not have keepalive or auto-reconnect features, the session timeout can be set to never for firewall services, policies, and VDOMs.

The options to disable session timeout are hidden in the CLI.

**To set the session TTL value of a custom service to never:**

```
config firewall service custom
    edit "tcp_23"
        set tcp-portrange 23
        set session-ttl never
    next
end
```

**To set the session TTL value of a policy to never:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 201
        set srcintf "wan1"
        set dstintf "wan2"
```

```
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "TCP_8080"
        set logtraffic disable
        set session-ttl never
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To set the session TTL value of a VDOM to never:**

```
config system session-ttl
    set default never
    config port
        edit 1
            set protocol 6
            set timeout never
            set start-port 8080
            set end-port 8080
        next
    end
end
```

**To view a session list with the timeout set to never:**

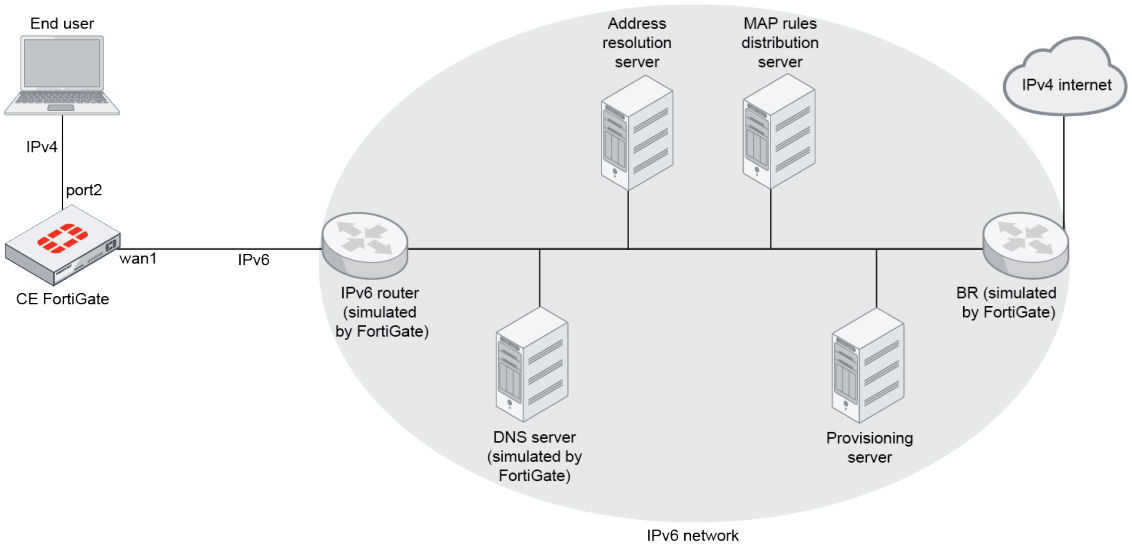
```
# diagnose sys session list

session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=9 expire=never timeout=never flags=00000000
sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=3
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ vlan_cos=0/255
state=log may_dirty f00
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=2290/42/1 reply=2895/34/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 238/1 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 301/2
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=18->17/17->18 gwy=172.16.200.55/10.1.100.41
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.41:34256->172.16.200.55:23(172.16.200.10:34256)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:23->172.16.200.10:34256(10.1.100.41:34256)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=9 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=1
serial=00000b27 tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000 ngfwid=n/a
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x000001 no_offload
no_ofld_reason:  disabled-by-policy
total session 1
```

## MAP-E support

On a customer edge (CE) FortiGate, an IPv4-over-IPv6 (MAP-E) tunnel can be created between the FortiGate and the border relay (BR) operating in an IPv6 network. A tunnel interface is created between the FortiGate and BR, which can

be applied to firewall policies and IPsec VPN.




**To configure a MAP-E tunnel between the FortiGate and the BR:**

1. Configure fixed IP mode.
   a. Configure IPv6 on the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        config ipv6
            set autoconf enable
            set unique-autoconf-addr enable
            set interface-identifier ::6f:6c1f:3400:0
        end
    next
end
```

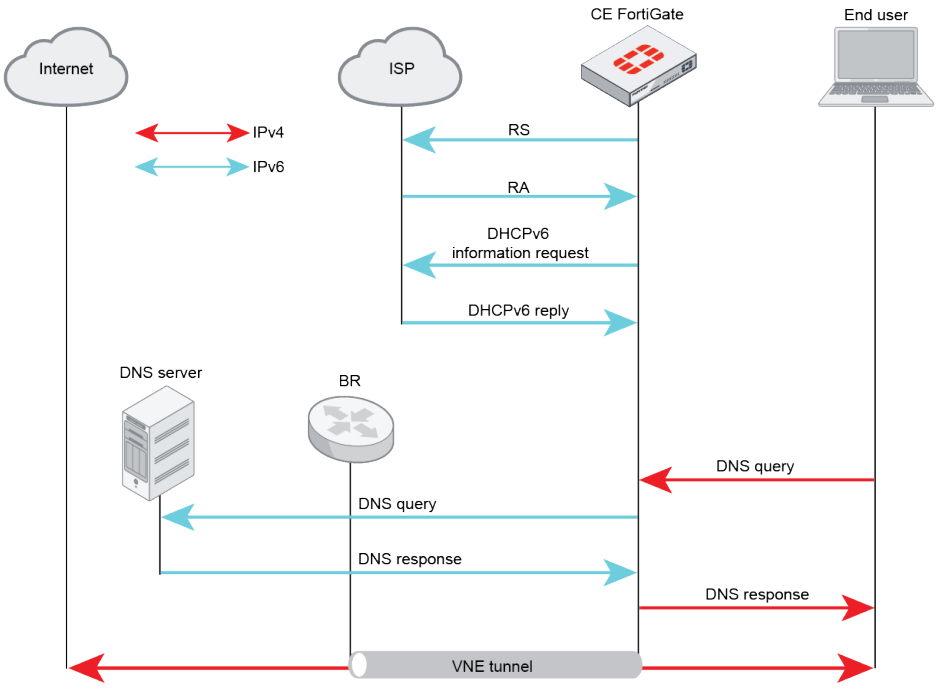
   The `interface-identifier` is an IPv6 address. Its last 64-bit will be kept and the rest will be cleared automatically. It will combine with the IPv6 prefix it gets from the IPv6 router to generate the IPv6 address of the interface.

   By default, `unique-autoconf-addr` is disabled. It must be enabled so it can handle IPv6 prefix changing.

   b. Configure the VNE tunnel:

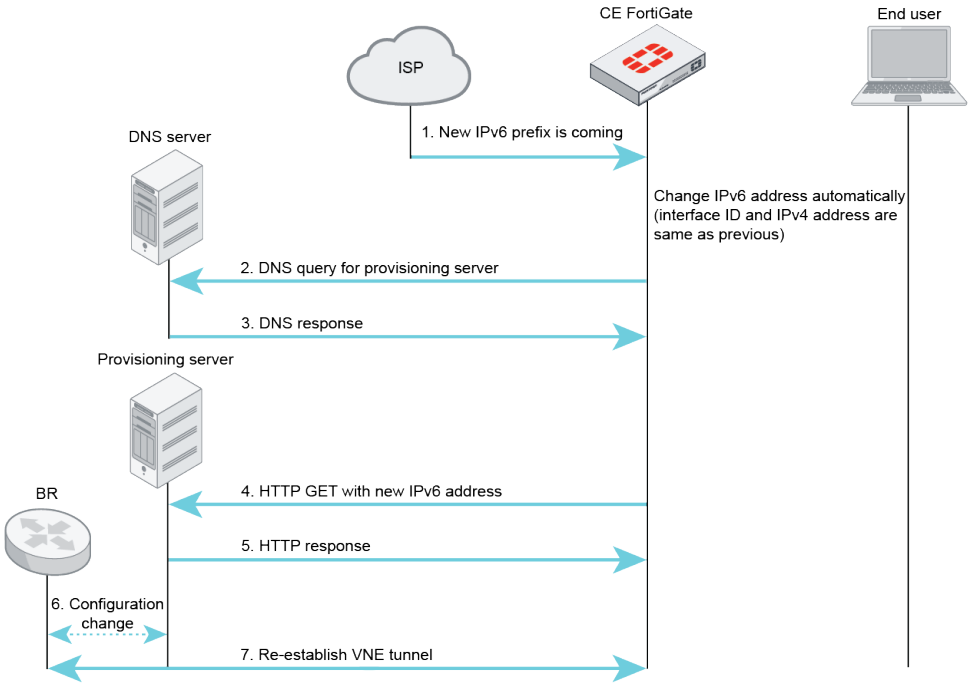
```
config system vne-tunnel
    set status enable
    set interface "wan1"
    set mode fixed-ip
    set ipv4-address 10.10.81.81 255.255.255.0
    set br 2001:160::82
    set update-url "http://qa.forosqa.com/update?user=xxxx&pass=yyyy"
end
```

   Initial sequence overview of VNE tunnel under fixed IP mode:




Once the IPv6 address of the FortiGate changes, the tunnel will be down because the BR does not know the FortiGate's new IPv6 address. The FortiGate uses `update-url` to update the new IPv6 address to the provisioning server. The provisioning server updates the FortiGate's IPv6 address to the BR so the VNE tunnel can be re-established.

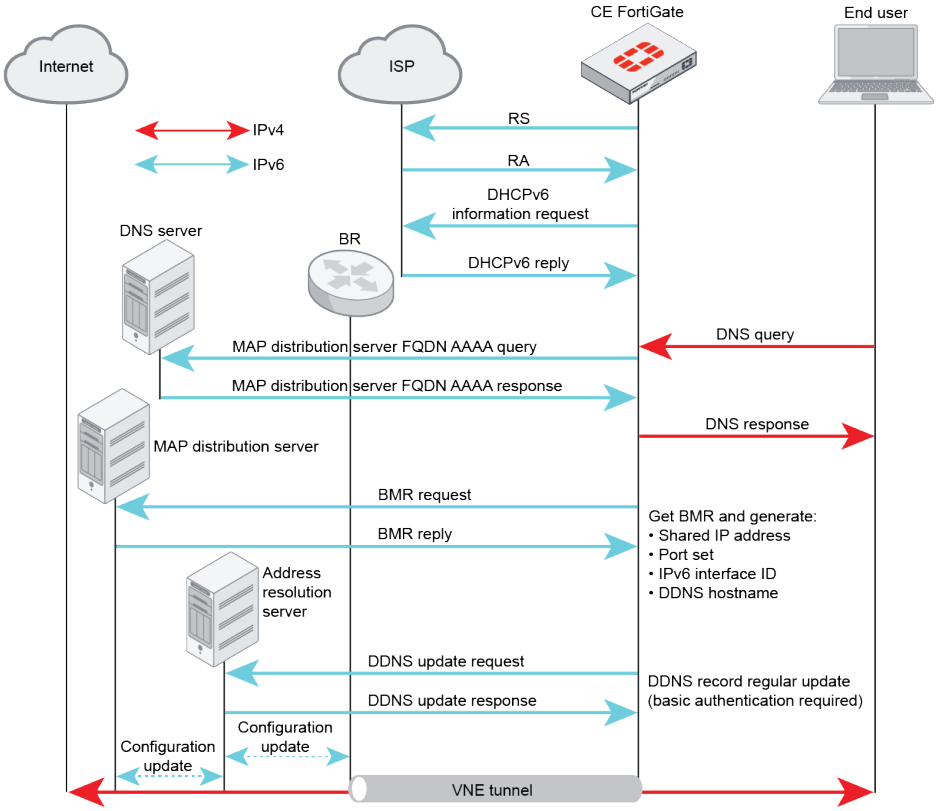
Communication sequence overview of re-establishing VNE tunnel:



2. Configure the VNE tunnel to use MAP-E mode:

```
config system vne-tunnel
    set status enable
    set interface 'wan1'
    set ssl-certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
    set bmr-hostname ********
    set auto-asic-offload enable
    set mode map-e
end
```

Initial sequence overview of VNE tunnel under MAP-E mode:




The FortiGate sends a MAP rule request to the MAP distribution server once the IPv6 address is configured on the FortiGate by RS/RA. Next, the FortiGate will send an AAAA query to get the IPv6 address of the MAP distribution server. After sending the BMR request to the MAP distribution server, the FortiGate will get the IPv4 address, port set, BR IPv6 address, and hostname of the address resolution server from the BMR reply. The VNE tunnel between the FortiGate and BR is now established.

The address resolution server is actually a dynamic DNS. The hostname is used for the FortiGate to maintain an IPv6 address when it changes.

The FortiGate updates the DDNS server with its IPv6 address whenever it updates, which in turn provides the update to the MAP distribution server and BR so they know how to resolve the FortiGate by hostname.

Once the VNE tunnel is established, a tunnel interface is created (`vne.root`), and an IPv4-over-IPv6 tunnel is set up between the FortiGate and BR. The route, firewall policy, and DNS server can now be configured to let the traffic go through the VNE tunnel and the and protect the end-user. The VNE tunnel can also be used in IPsec phase 1.

3. Configure the route:

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set device "vne.root"
    next
end
```

4. Configure the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 111
        set name "ff"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "vne.root"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set av-profile "default"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure the DNS server:

```
config system dns-server
    edit "port2"
    next
end
```

# Objects

The following topics provide information about objects:


- Address group exclusions on page 862
- MAC addressed-based policies on page 864
- ISDB well-known MAC address list on page 866
- Dynamic policy — fabric devices on page 868
- FSSO dynamic address subtype on page 870
- ClearPass integration for dynamic address objects on page 873
- Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager on page 878
- Using wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies on page 880
- IPv6 geography-based addresses on page 882
- Array structure for address objects on page 884

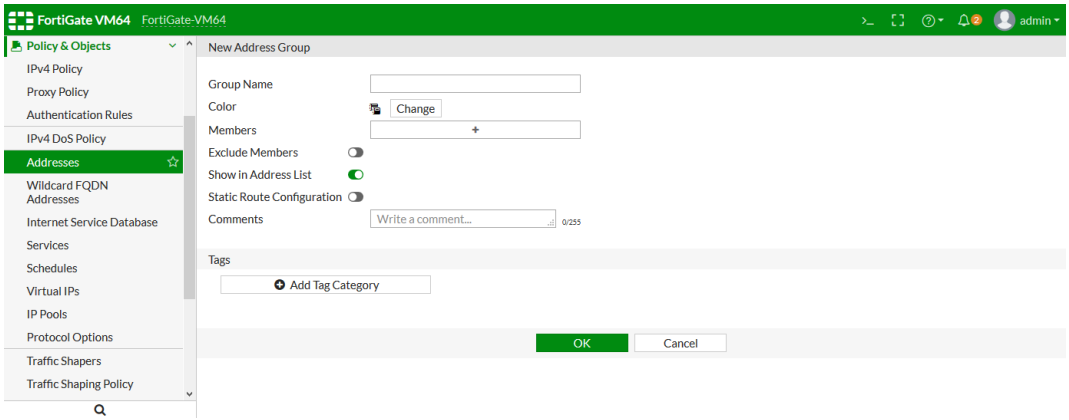

## Address group exclusions

Specific IP addresses or ranges can be subtracted from the address group with the *Exclude Members* setting in IPv4 address groups.

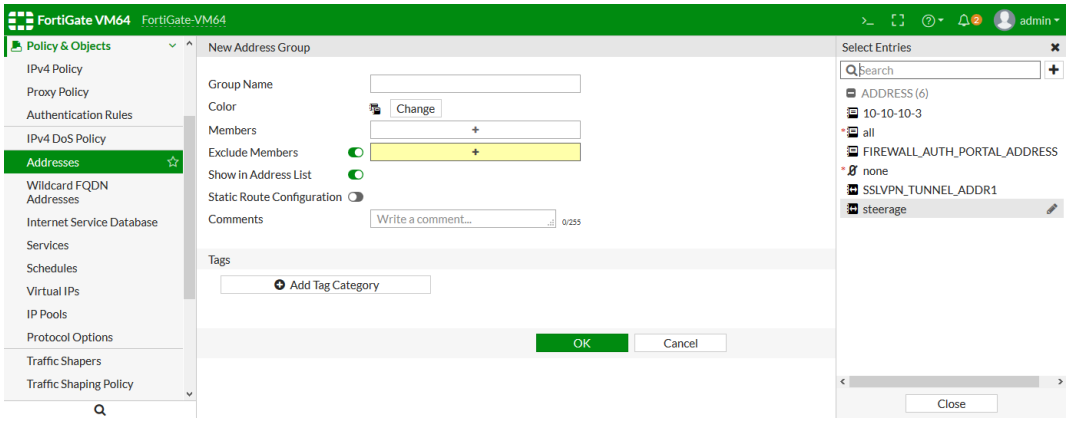
This feature is only supported for IPv4 address groups, and only for addresses with a *Type* of *IP Range* or *Subnet*.

**To exclude addresses from an address group using the GUI:**

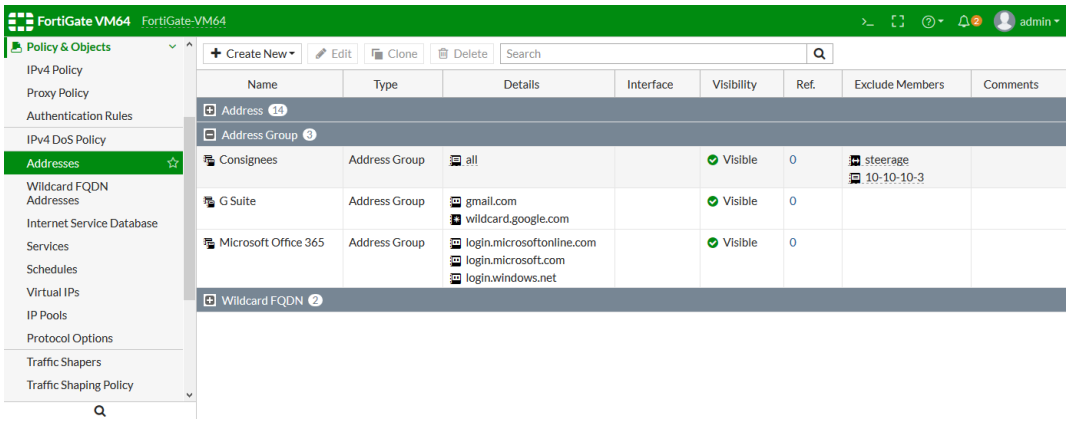
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Create a new address group, or edit an existing address group.




3. Enable *Exclude Members*. The *Select Entries* pane opens.
4. Select the addresses you want to exclude from the group.
5. Click *OK*.




The excluded members are listed in the *Exclude Members* column.




**To exclude addresses from an address group using the CLI:**

```
config firewall addrgrp
   edit <address group>
      set exclude enable
      set exclude-member <address> <address> ... <address>
   next
end
```

## MAC addressed-based policies

MAC address ranges can be added to the following IPv4 policies:

- Firewall
- Virtual wire pair
- ACL
- Central SNAT
- DoS

A MAC address is a link layer-based address type and it cannot be forwarded across different IP segments.

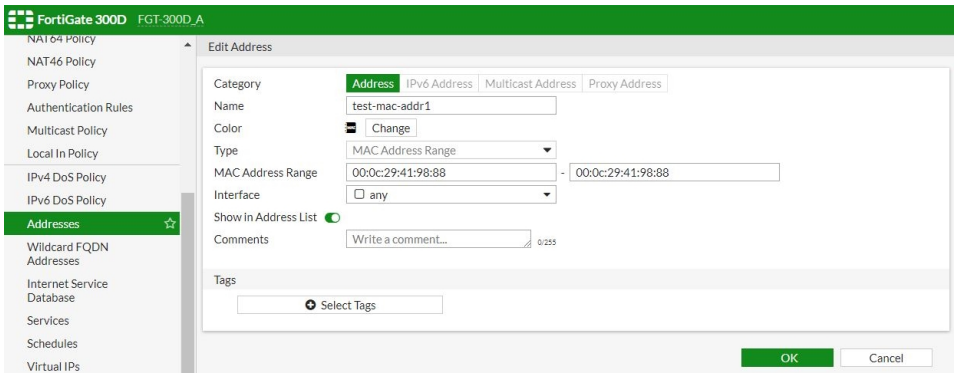
FortiOS only supports the MAC address type as source address for policies in NAT mode VDOM. When you use the MAC address type in a policy as source address in NAT mode VDOM, IP address translation (NAT) is still performed according to the rules defined in the policy. The MAC address type only works for source address matching. It does not have any association with NAT actions.

For policies in transparent mode or the virtual wire pair interface, you can use the MAC address type as source or destination address.

**To configure a MAC address range using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* to create or edit an address:
   a. For *Category*, select *Address*.
   b. For *Type*, select *MAC Address Range*.
   c. Enter the address range in the empty fields.
   d. Configure the other fields as needed.

e. Click *OK*.

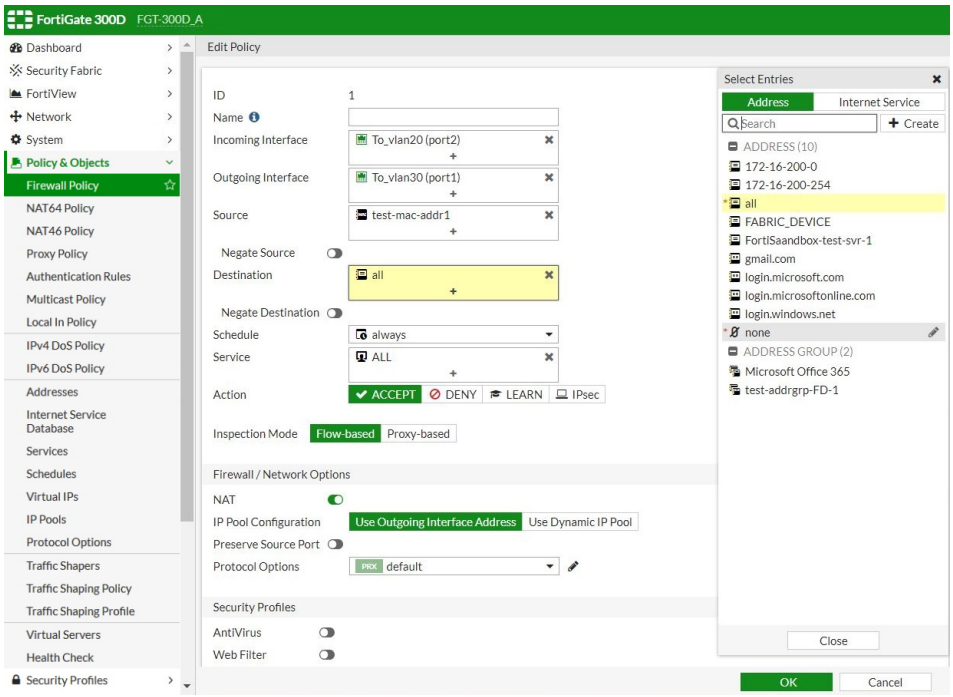



2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* to apply the address type to a policy in NAT mode VDOM:
   a. For *Source*, select the MAC address you just configured.
   b. For *Destination*, select an address.



In NAT mode VDOM, this address type cannot be used as destination address.

   c. Click *OK*.




**To configure a MAC address range using the CLI:**

1. Create a new MAC address range type:

```
config firewall address
    edit <object_name>
        set type mac
```

```
        set start-mac <mac_address_start #>
        set end-mac <mac_address_end #>
    next
end
```

2. Apply the address type to a policy. In transparent mode or the virtual wire pair interface, this address type can be mixed with other address types in the policy:

```
config firewall address
    edit "test-mac-addr1"
        set type mac
        set start-mac 00:0c:29:41:98:88
        set end-mac 00:0c:29:41:98:88
    next
end
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "test-mac-addr1" "10-1-100-42"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## ISDB well-known MAC address list

The Internet Service Database (ISDB) includes well-known vendor MAC address range lists. The lists can only be used for source MAC addresses in IPv4 policies, and include the vendor name and the MAC address ranges that the vendor belongs to.

**To view the vendor list:**

```
# diagnose vendor-mac id
Please input Vendor MAC ID.
ID: 1 name: "Asus"
ID: 2 name: "Acer"
ID: 3 name: "Amazon"
ID: 4 name: "Apple"
ID: 5 name: "Xiaomi"
ID: 6 name: "BlackBerry"
ID: 7 name: "Canon"
ID: 8 name: "Cisco"
ID: 9 name: "Linksys"
ID: 10 name: "D-Link"
ID: 11 name: "Dell"
ID: 12 name: "Ericsson"
ID: 13 name: "LG"
ID: 14 name: "Fujitsu"
ID: 15 name: "Fitbit"
ID: 16 name: "Fortinet"
```

```
ID: 17 name: "OPPO"
ID: 18 name: "Hitachi"
ID: 19 name: "HTC"
ID: 20 name: "Huawei"
ID: 21 name: "HP"
ID: 22 name: "IBM"
ID: 23 name: "Juniper"
ID: 24 name: "Lenovo"
ID: 25 name: "Microsoft"
ID: 26 name: "Motorola"
ID: 27 name: "Netgear"
ID: 28 name: "Nokia"
ID: 29 name: "Nintendo"
ID: 30 name: "PaloAltoNetworks"
ID: 31 name: "Polycom"
ID: 32 name: "Samsung"
ID: 33 name: "Sharp"
ID: 34 name: "Sony"
ID: 35 name: "Toshiba"
ID: 36 name: "VMware"
ID: 37 name: "Vivo"
ID: 38 name: "Zyxel"
ID: 39 name: "ZTE"
```

**To view the MAC address ranges for a vendor:**

```
# diagnose vendor-mac id 16
Vendor MAC: 16(Fortinet)
Version: 0000700021
Timestamp: 201908081432
Number of MAC ranges: 6
00:09:0f:00:00:00 - 00:09:0f:ff:ff:ff
04:d5:90:00:00:00 - 04:d5:90:ff:ff:ff
08:5b:0e:00:00:00 - 08:5b:0e:ff:ff:ff
70:4c:a5:00:00:00 - 70:4c:a5:ff:ff:ff
90:6c:ac:00:00:00 - 90:6c:ac:ff:ff:ff
e8:1c:ba:00:00:00 - e8:1c:ba:ff:ff:ff
```

**To query the vendor of a specific MAC address or range:**

```
# diagnose vendor-mac match 00:09:0f:ff:ff:ff 48
Vendor MAC: 16(Fortinet), matched num: 1
```

**To use the vendor ID in a firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 9
        set name "policy_id_9"
        set uuid 6150cf30-308d-51e9-a7a3-bcbd05d61f93
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set vendor-mac 36 16
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
```

```
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

Only packets whose source MAC address belong to Fortinet or VMware are passed by the policy.

## Dynamic policy — fabric devices

The dynamic address group represents the configured IP addresses of all Fortinet devices connected to the Security Fabric. It currently includes FortiManager, FortiAnalyzer, FortiClient EMS, FortiMail, FortiAP(s), and FortiSwitch(es). Like other dynamic address groups for fabric connectors, it can be used as an IPv4 address in firewall policies and objects.

The list of firewall addresses includes a default address object called `FABRIC_DEVICE`. You can apply the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object to the following types of policies:

- Firewall policy (including virtual wire pairs)
- IPv4 shaping policy
- IPv4 ACL policy
- `policy64` and `policy46` (IPv4 only)

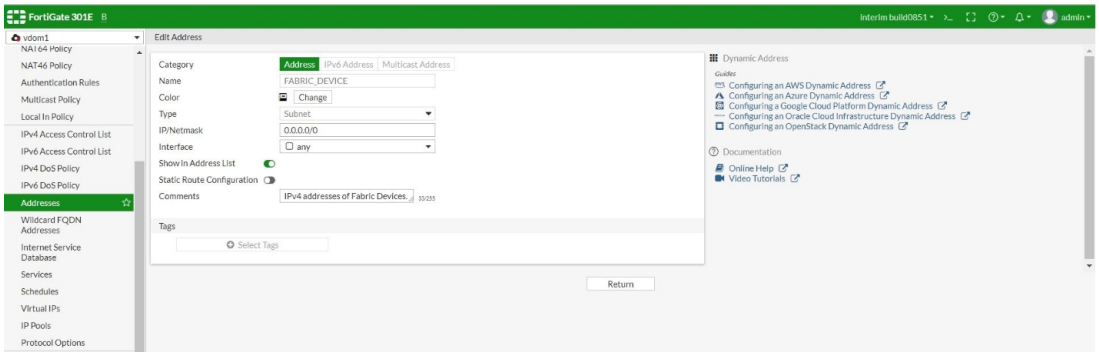
You cannot apply the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object to the following types of policies:

- IPv4 explicit proxy policy

You also cannot use the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object with the following settings:

- Custom extension on `internet-service`
- Exclusion of `addrgrp`

Initially the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object does not have an address value. The address value is populated dynamically as things change. As a result, you cannot edit the `FABRIC_DEVICE` object, add any addresses to the object, or remove any addresses from the object. The *Edit Address* pane in the GUI only has a *Return* button because the object is read-only:



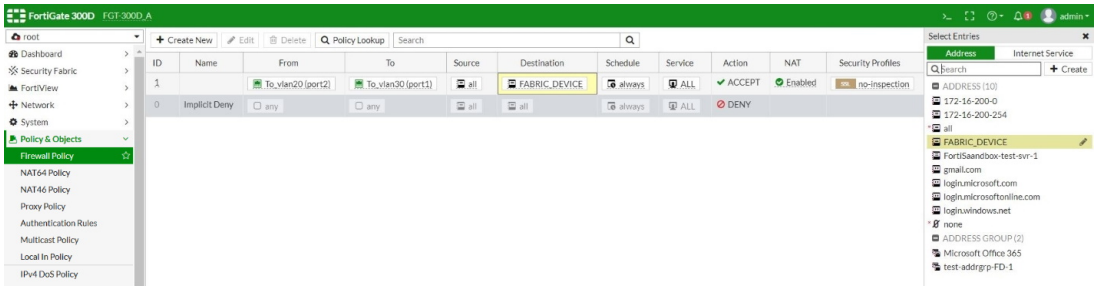

The `FABRIC_DEVICE` object address values are populated based on:

- FortiAnalyzer IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiManager IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiMail IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)
- FortiClient EMS IP (from the *Fabric Settings* pane)

- FortiAP IPs (from the *FortiAP Setup* pane or DHCP)
- FortiSwitch IPs (from the *FortiSwitch Setup* page or DHCP)

**To apply the FABRIC_DEVICE object to a firewall policy using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.
3. For the *Destination* field, select *FABRIC_DEVICE* from the list of address entries.




4. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.
5. Click *OK*.

**To apply the FABRIC_DEVICE object to a firewall policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall address
    edit "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set type ipmask
        set comment "IPv4 addresses of Fabric Devices."
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
        set allow-routing disable
        set subnet 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Diagnose command

You can use the diagnose command to list IP addresses of Fortinet devices that are configured in the Security Fabric.

**To run the diagnose command using the CLI:**

```
(root) # diagnose firewall sf-addresses list

FabricDevices: 172.18.64.48
FortiAnalyzer: 172.18.60.25
FortiSandbox: 172.18.52.154
FortiManager: 172.18.28.31
FortiClientEMS: 172.18.62.6
FortiAP:
FortiSwitch:
FortiAP/SW-DHCP:
```

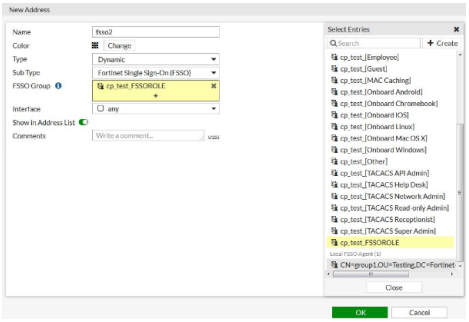
## FSSO dynamic address subtype

The Fortinet Single Sign-ON (FSSO) dynamic firewall address subtype can be used in policies that support dynamic address types. The FortiGate will update the dynamic address used in firewall policies based on the source IP information for the authenticated FSSO users.

It can also be used with FSSO group information that is forwarded by ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) via FortiManager, and other FSSO groups provided by the FSSO collector agent or FortiNAC.

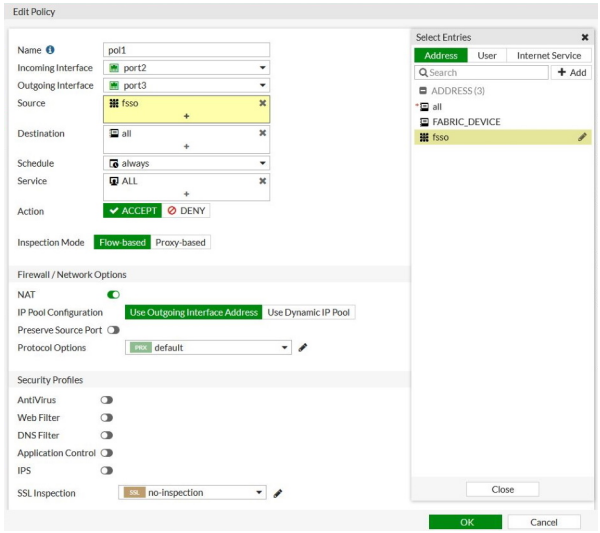
**To configure FSSO dynamic addresses with CPPM and FortiManager in the GUI:**

1. Create the dynamic address object:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*, and click *Create New* > *Address*.
   b. For *Type*, select *Dynamic*.
   c. For *Sub Type*, select *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*. The *Select Entries* pane opens and displays all available FSSO groups.
   d. Select one or more groups.
   e. Click *OK* to save the configuration.




   In the address table, there will be an error message for the address you just created (*Unresolved dynamic address: fsso*). This is expected because there are currently no authenticated FSSO users (based on source IP) in the local FSSO user list.
2. Add the dynamic address object to a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.
   c. For *Source*, add the dynamic FSSO address object you just created.
   d. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.

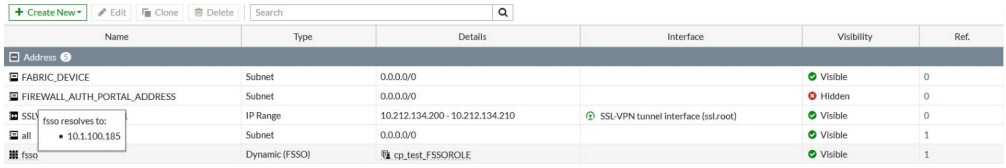
**e.** Click *OK* to save your changes.




3. Test the authentication to add a source IP address to the FSSO user list:
   **a.** Log in as user and use CPPM for user authentication to connect to an external web server. After successful authentication, CPPM forwards the user name, source IP address, and group membership to the FortiGate via FortiManager.
   **b.** Go to *Monitor* > *Firewall User Monitor* to view the user name (*fsso1*) and IP address.

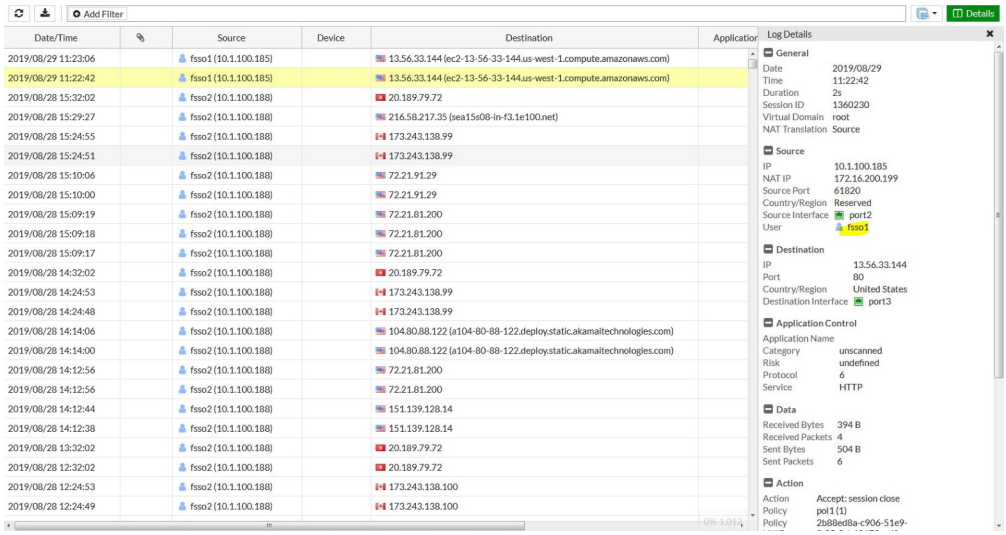



   **c.** Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* to view the updated address table. The error message no longer appears.
   **d.** Hover over the dynamic FSSO address to view the IP address (*fsso resolves to: 10.1.100.185*).

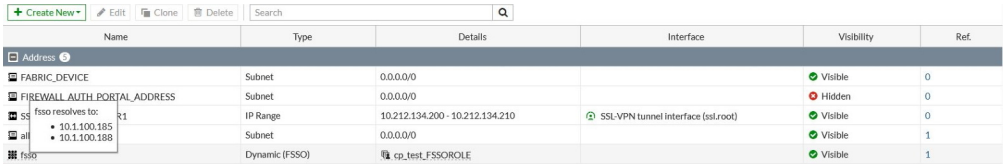



### To verify user traffic in the GUI:

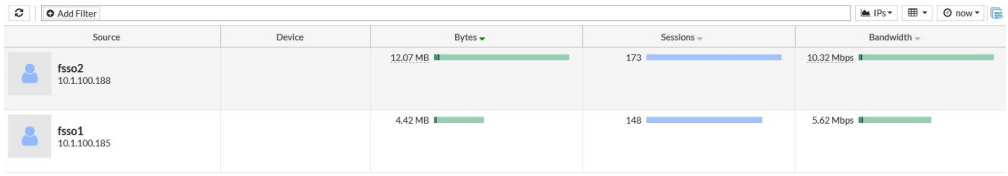
1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
   Details for the user *fsso1* are visible in the traffic log:




- If another user is authenticated by CPPM, then the dynamic address *fsso* entry in the address table will be updated. The IP address for user *fsso2* (*10.1.100.188*) is now visible:




2. Go to *FortiView* > *Sources* to verify that the users were able to successfully pass the firewall policy.




If a user logs off and CPPM receives log off confirmation, then CPPS updates the FortiGate FSSO user list via FortiManager. The user IP address is deleted from the dynamic FSSO address, and the user is no longer be able to pass the firewall policy.

**To configure FSSO dynamic addresses with CPPM and FortiManager in the CLI:**

1. Create the dynamic address object:

```
config firewall address
    edit "fsso"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type fsso
        set fsso-group "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
    next
end
```

2. Add the dynamic address object to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "pol1"
```

```
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "fsso"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To verify user traffic in the CLI:**

1. Check the FSSO user list:

```
diagnose debug authd fsso list
----FSSO logons----
IP: 10.1.100.185  User: fsso1  Groups: cp_test_FSSOROLE  Workstation:  MemberOf: FSSO-
CPPM cp_test_FSSOROLE
Total number of logons listed: 1, filtered: 0
----end of FSSO logons----
```

2. Check the authenticated firewall users list:

```
diagnose firewall auth list
10.1.100.185, fsso1
type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 2928, idled: 2928
server: FortiManager
packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
group_id: 2 33554433
group_name: FSSO-CPPM cp_test_FSSOROLE
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

After user traffic passes through the firewall, the nu

```
diagnose firewall auth list
10.1.100.185, fsso1
type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 3802, idled: 143
server: FortiManager
packets: in 1629 out 1817, bytes: in 2203319 out 133312
group_id: 2 33554433
group_name: FSSO-CPPM cp_test_FSSOROLE
----- 1 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

## ClearPass integration for dynamic address objects

ClearPass Policy Manager (CPPM) can gather information about the statuses of network hosts, for example, the latest patches or virus infections. Based on this information, CPPM send the IP addresses and current states, such as Healthy or Infected, to the FortiGate.

On the FortiGate, the IP addresses received from CPPM are added to a dynamic firewall address with the *clearpass-spt* subtype. This address can be used in any policy that supports dynamic addresses, such as Firewall or SSL-VPN policies.

In this example, you create two dynamic IP addresses that are used in two firewall policies (deny and allow). One policy allows traffic (host state = Healthy), and the other denies traffic (host state = Infected). When CPPM sends the information, the IP addresses are assigned according to their host state: Healthy or Infected.

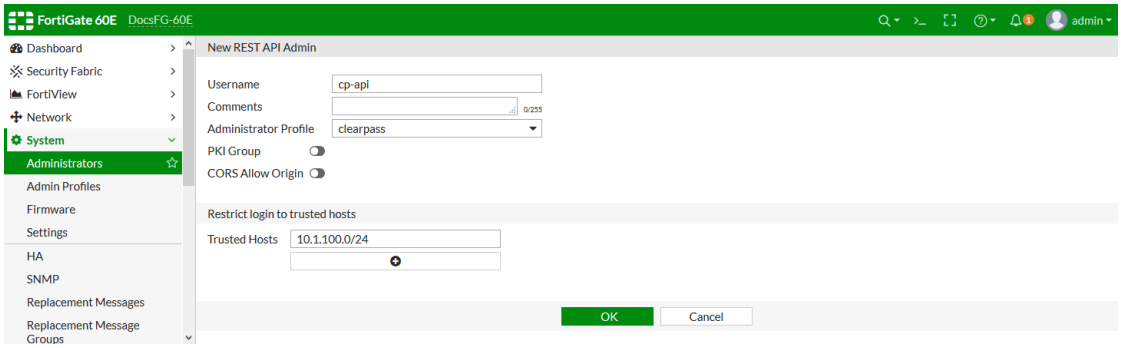
You can then verify that traffic from the Infected host is denied access by the deny policy, and traffic from the Healthy host is allowed access by the allow policy.

## Create a REST API administrator

A RESET API administrator is required to generate an authorization token for REST API messages, and to limit hosts that can send REST API messages to the FortiGate.

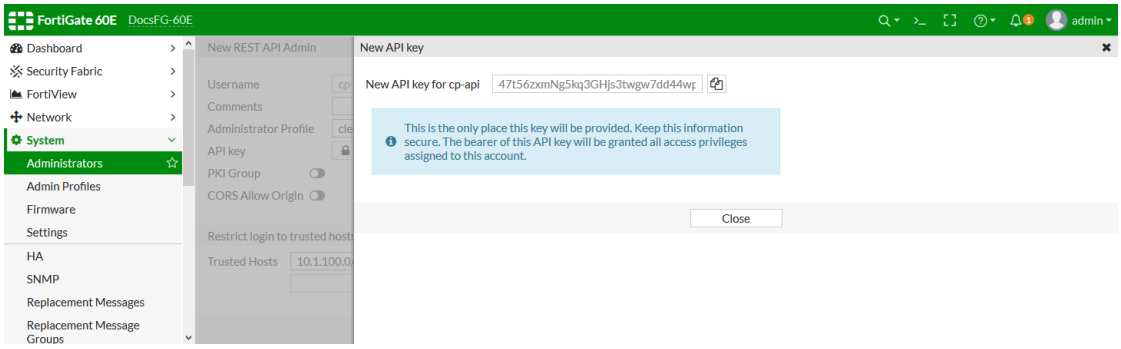
**To create a REST API administrator in the GUI:**

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
3. Configure the *Username* and other information as needed.
4. Disable *PKI Group*.
5. In the *Trusted Hosts* field, enter *10.1.100.0/24*.




For this example, an administrator profile called *clearpass* was created with full read/write access. See Administrator profiles on page 654 for details.

6. Click *OK*.
The *New API key* pane opens.




The API key is the REST API authorization token that is used in REST API messages sent by CPPM to the FortiGate.

7. Copy the API key to a secure location. A new key can be generated if this one is lost or compromised.
8. Click *Close*.

**To create a REST API administrator in the CLI:**

```
config system api-user
    edit "cpi-back"
        set accprofile "clearpass"
        config trusthost
            edit 1
                set ipv4-trusthost 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

```
execute api-user generate-key cp-api
    New API key: 0f1HxGHh9r9p74k7qgfHNH40p51bjs
    NOTE: The bearer of this API key will be granted all access privileges assigned to the
api-user cp-api.
```

## Create dynamic IP addresses with the clearpass subtype

Two dynamic IP addresses are required, one for the allow policy, and the other for the deny policy.

**To create the dynamic IP addresses:**

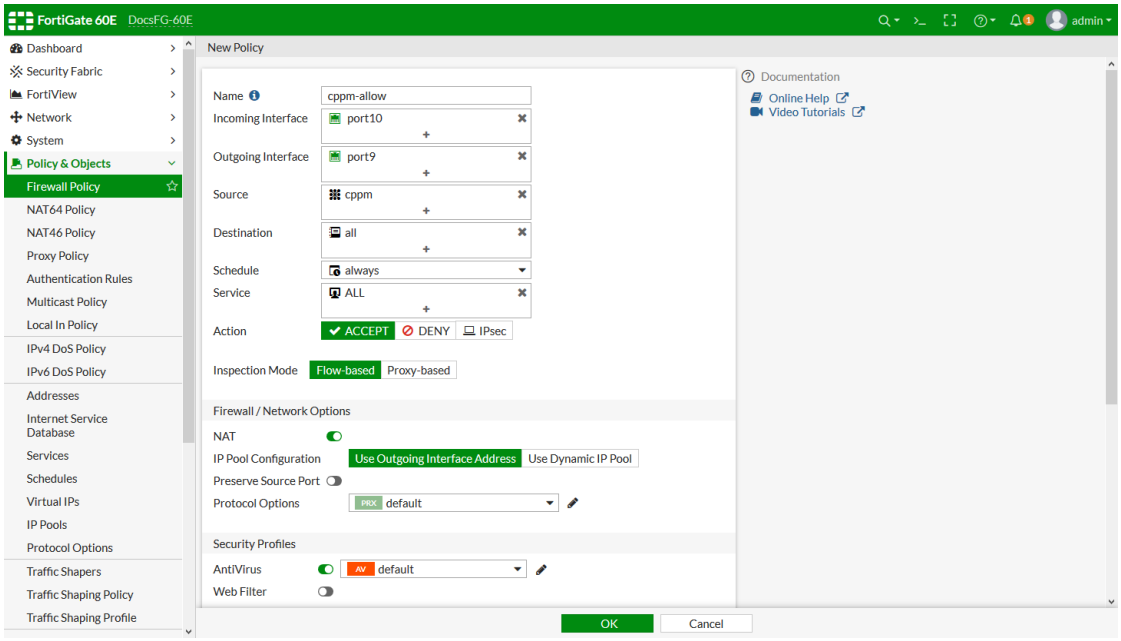
```
config firewall address
    edit "cppm"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt healthy
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
    edit "cppm-deny"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt infected
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
end
```

## Create firewall policies

Two firewall policies are required, one to accept traffic (*cppm-allow*), and the other to deny traffic (*cppm-deny*).

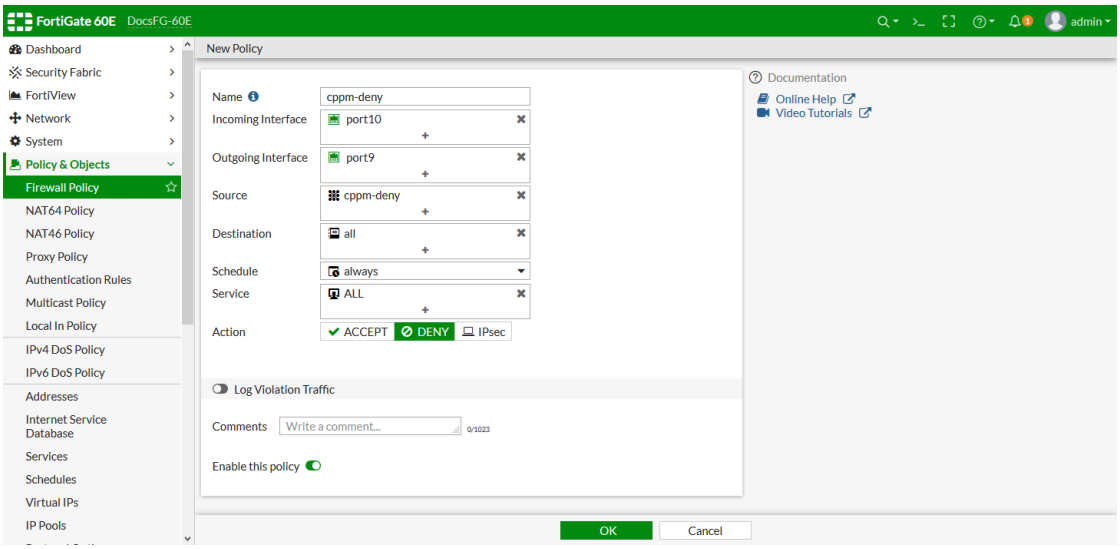
**To create the firewall policies in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Configure the allow policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name for the policy.
   c. Set *Source* set to *cppm*.
   d. Set *Action* to *ACCEPT*.
   e. Configure the remaining settings as needed.




   f. Click *OK*.
3. Configure the deny policy:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name for the policy.
   c. Set *Source* set to *cppm-deny*.
   d. Set *Action* to *DENY*.

e. Configure the remaining settings as needed.




f. Click *OK*.

**To create the firewall policies in the CLI:**

```
config firewall address
    edit "cppm"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt healthy
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
    edit "cppm-deny"
        set type dynamic
        set sub-type clearpass-spt
        set clearpass-spt infected
        set comment ''
        set visibility enable
        set associated-interface ''
        set color 0
    next
end
```

## Verification

Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to review traffic logs and ensure that traffic is allowed or denied as expected.

To verify that FortiGate addresses are assigned correctly, enter the following CLI command:

```
diagnose firewall dynamic list
List all dynamic addresses:
cppm-deny: ID(141)
        ADDR(10.1.100.188)
```

```
cppm: ID(176)
        ADDR(10.1.100.185)
        ADDR(10.1.100.186)
```

## Group address objects synchronized from FortiManager

Address objects from external connectors that are learned by FortiManager are synchronized to FortiGate. These objects can be grouped together with the FortiGate CLI to simplify selecting connector objects in the FortiGate GUI. Multiple groups can be created.

This option is only available for objects that are synchronized from FortiManager.

**To add an object to a connector group:**

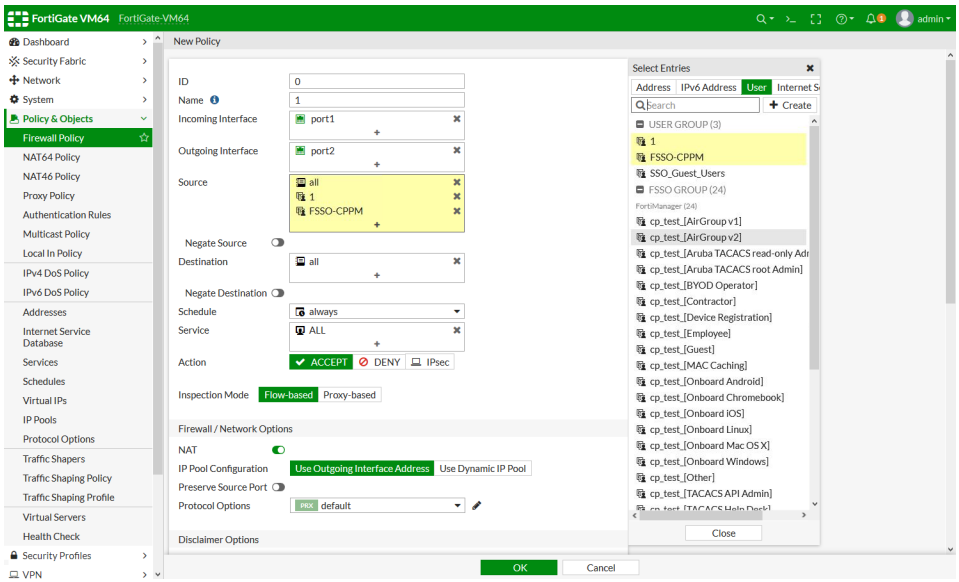
```
config user adgrp
    edit <object_name>
        set server-name "FortiManager"
        set connector-source <group_name>
    next
end
```

### Example

In this example, objects learned by the FortiManager from an Aruba ClearPass device are synchronized to the FortiGate. Some of the objects are then added to a group called *ClearPass* to make them easier to find in the object list when creating a firewall policy.



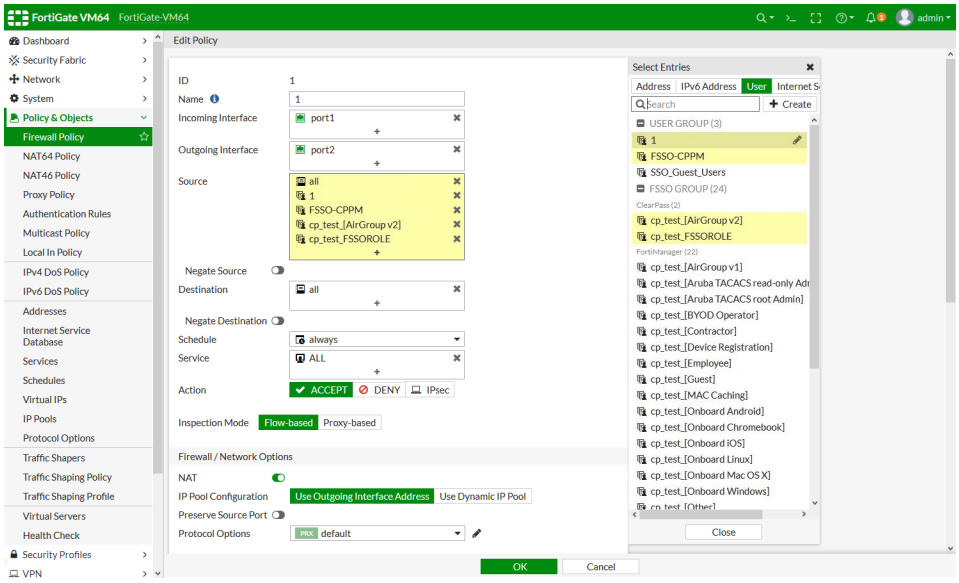

Prior to being grouped, the synchronized objects are listed under the FortiManager heading in the object lists.




## To add some of the objects to a group:

```
config user adgrp
    edit "cp_test_FSSOROLE"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
        set connector-source "ClearPass"
    next
    edit "cp_test_[AirGroup v2]"
        set server-name "FortiManager"
        set connector-source "ClearPass"
    next
end
```

The objects are now listed under the *ClearPass* heading.



## Using wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies

You can use wildcard FQDN addresses in firewall policies.

The firewall policy types that support wildcard FQDN addresses include IPv4, IPv6, ACL, local, shaping, NAT64, NAT46, and NGFW.

For wildcard FQDN addresses to work, the FortiGate should allow DNS traffic to pass through. Clients behind the FortiGate should use the same DNS server(s) as the FortiGate to ensure the FortiGate and the clients are resolving to the same addresses.

Initially, the wildcard FQDN object is empty and contains no addresses. When the client tries to resolve a FQDN address, the FortiGate will analyze the DNS response. The IP address(es) contained in the answer section of the DNS response will be added to the corresponding wildcard FQDN object.



Since FortiGate must analyze the DNS response, it does not work with DNS over HTTPS.

When the wildcard FQDN gets the resolved IP addresses, FortiOS loads the addresses into the firewall policy for traffic matching.

The FortiGate will keep the IP addresses in the FQDN object table as long as the DNS entry itself has not expired. Once it expires, the IP address is removed from the wildcard FQDN object until another query is made. At any given time, a single wildcard FQDN object may have up to 1000 IP addresses.

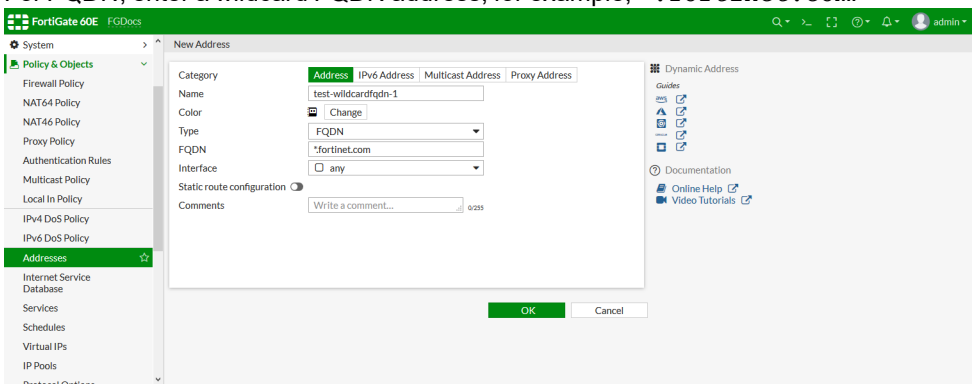


The DNS expiry TTL value is set by the authoritative name server for that DNS record. If the TTL for a specific DNS record is very short and you would like to cache the IP address longer, then you can extend it with the CLI. See To extend the TTL for a DNS record in the CLI: on page 882

For more information, see FQDN address firewall object type.

### To create a wildcard FQDN using the GUI:

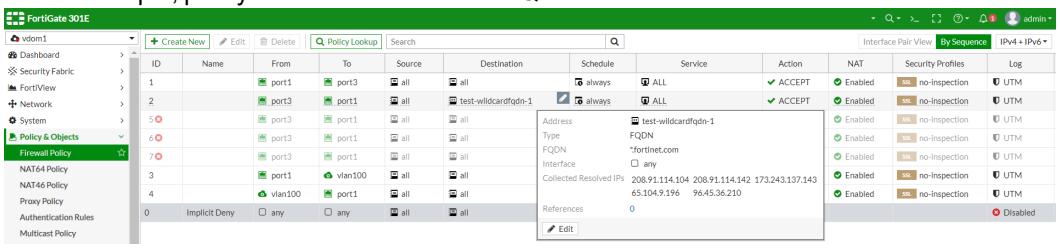
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Specify a *Name*.
3. For *Type*, select *FQDN*.
4. For *FQDN*, enter a wildcard FQDN address, for example, `*.fortinet.com`.




5. Click *OK*.

### To use a wildcard FQDN in a firewall policy using the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. For *Destination*, select the wildcard FQDN.
3. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.
4. Click *OK*.
   In this example, policy ID 2 uses the wildcard FQDN:




### To create a wildcard FQDN using the CLI:

```
config firewall address
    edit "test-wildcardfqdn-1"
        set type fqdn
        set fqdn "*.fortinet.com"
    next
end
```

### To use wildcard FQDN in a firewall policy using the CLI:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
```

```
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "test-wildcardfqdn-1"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To use the diagnose command to list resolved IP addresses of wildcard FQDN objects:**

```
# diagnose firewall fqdn list
List all FQDN:
*.fortinet.com: ID(48) ADDR(96.45.36.159) ADDR(192.168.100.161) ADDR(65.39.139.161)
```

Alternatively:

```
diagnose test application dnsproxy 6
worker idx: 0
vfid=0 name=*.fortinet.com ver=IPv4  min_ttl=3266:0, cache_ttl=0 , slot=-1, num=3,
wildcard=1
      96.45.36.159 (ttl=68862:68311:68311) 192.168.100.161 (ttl=3600:3146:3146)
65.39.139.161
(ttl=3600:3481:3481)
```

**To use the diagnose command for firewall policies which use wildcard FQDN:**

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100004
...
destination fqdn or dynamic address (1):*.fortinet.com ID(48) uuid_idx=57 ADDR
(208.91.114.104) ADDR(208.91.114.142) ADDR(173.243.137.143) ADDR(65.104.9.196) ADDR
(96.45.36.210)
...
```

**To extend the TTL for a DNS record in the CLI:**

In this the example the `set cache-ttl` value has been extended to 3600 seconds.

```
config firewall address
   edit "fortinet.com"
      set type fqdn
      set fqdn "www.fortinet.com”
      set cache-ttl 3600
   next
end
```

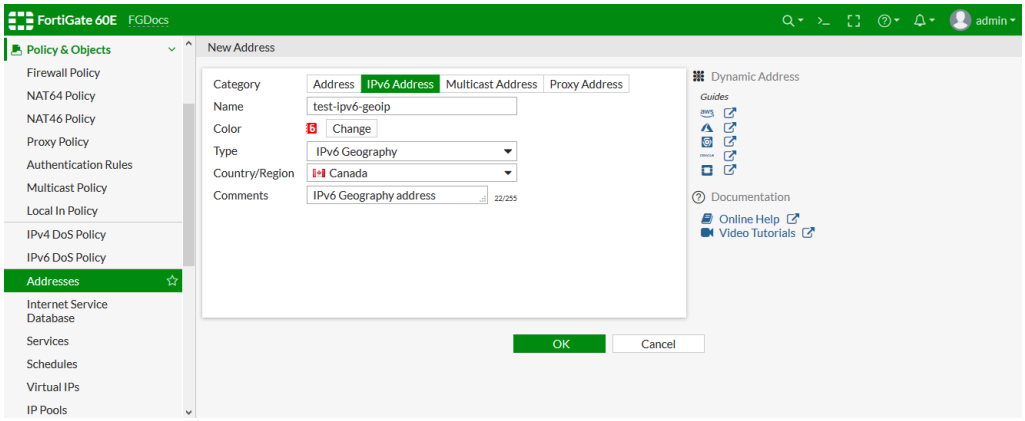
## IPv6 geography-based addresses

Geography-based IPv6 addresses can be created and applied to IPv6 firewall policies.

IPv6 geography-based addresses do not support `geoip-override` or `geoip-anycast`.

**To create an IPv6 geography-based address in the GUI:**

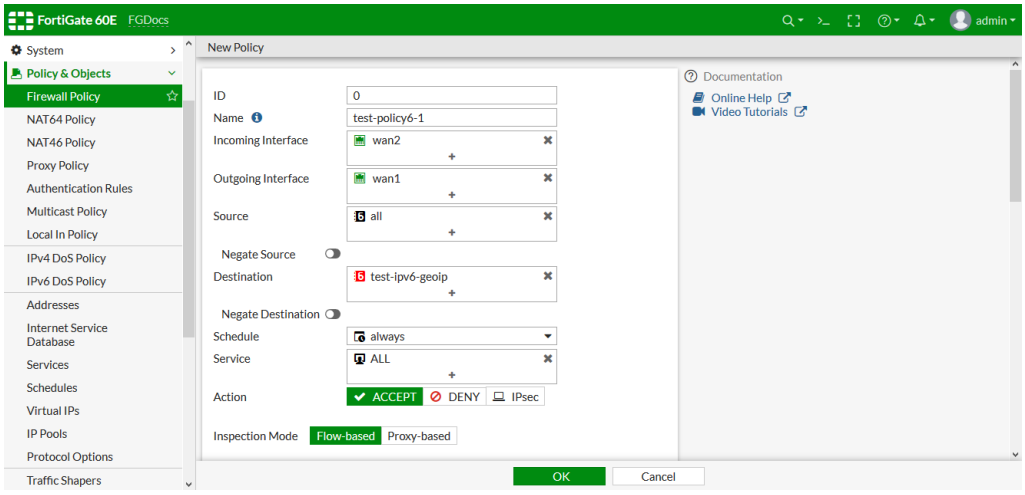
1. Go to *Policy and Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Set *Category* to *IPv6 Address*.
4. Enter a name for the address.
5. Set *Type* to *IPv6 Geography*.
6. Select the *Country/Region* from the list.
7. Optionally, enter comments.



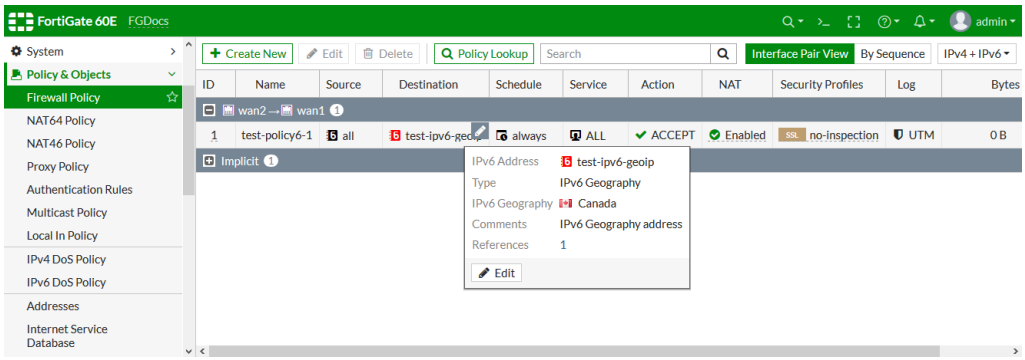

8. Click *OK*.

**To use the IPv6 geography address in a policy:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Edit an existing policy, or create a new one, using the IPv6 geography address as the *Source* or *Destination Address*.



3. In the policy list, hover over the address to view details.




**To configure an IPv6 geography-based address in the CLI:**

1. Create an IPv6 geography-based address:

```
config firewall address6
    edit "test-ipv6-geoip"
        set type geography
        set color 6
        set comment "IPv6 Geography address"
        set country "CA"
    next
end
```

2. Use the IPv6 geography-based address in a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "test-policy6-1"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr6 "all"
        set dstaddr6 "test-ipv6-geoip"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

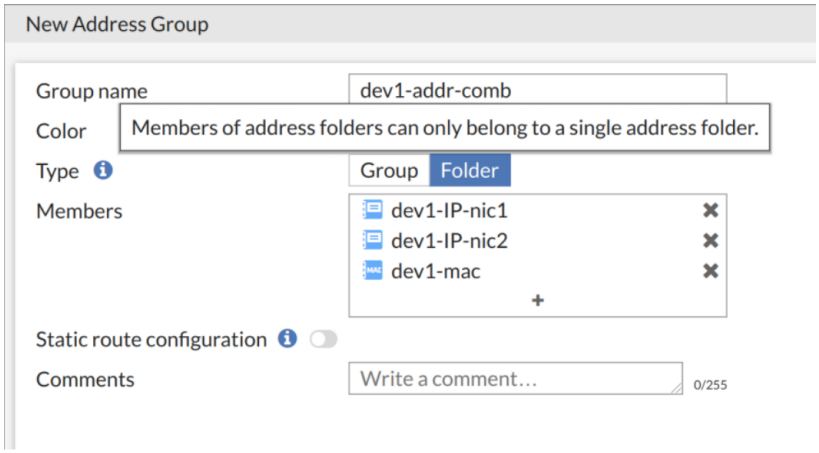
## Array structure for address objects

Some address objects logically belong to the same device, such as two IPs from the same computer. These address objects can be grouped into an address folder, which is an exclusive list of address objects that do not appear in other address groups or folders.

In the CLI, the folder type can be set after the member list is already populated. If the member list contains an incompatible entry, then the setting will be discarded when the `next`/`end` command is issued. If the folder type is set before the member list is populated, then the possible member entry list will be filtered according to the selected type.

### To create an address folder in the GUI:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address Group* and enter a name.
3. For *Type*, select *Folder*.
4. For *Members*, click the + to add the addresses. Address folders and groups are exclusive, so the *Select Entries* window filters out address objects that are a member of an existing group or folder.




5. Click *OK*.
6. In the address table, expand the *Address Group* section to view the folder (*dev1-addr-comb*). The expandable folder view shows the address folder's child objects:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | safe-network1-devices | Address Group (Folder) | 2 entries | | 0 |
| | dev1-addr-comb | Address Group (Folder) | 3 entries | | 1 |
| | dev1-IP-nic1 | Subnet | 192.168.1.25/32 | | 1 |
| | dev1-IP-nic2 | Subnet | 192.168.1.22/32 | | 1 |
| | dev1-mac | Device (MAC Address) | 00:0a:95:9d:68:16 | | 1 |
| | dev2-addr-comb | Address Group (Folder) | 4 entries | | 1 |
| | dev2-IP-nic1 | Subnet | 192.168.1.101/32 | | 1 |
| | dev2-IP-nic2 | Subnet | 192.168.1.102/32 | | 1 |
| | dev2-IP-nic3 | Subnet | 192.168.1.103/32 | | 1 |
| | dev2-mac | Device (MAC Address) | 11:5b:12:2c:87:02 | | 1 |

### To configure an address folder in the CLI:

notes

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "safe-network1-devices"
        set type folder
        set member "dev1-addr-comb" "dev2-addr-comb"
        set comment ''
        set exclude disable
        set color 13
    next
end
```

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "dev1-addr-comb"
        set type folder
```

```
        set member "dev1-IP-nic1" "dev1-IP-nic2" "dev1-mac"
        set comment ''
        set exclude disable
        set color 18
    next
end

config firewall addrgrp
    edit "dev2-addr-comb"
        set type folder
        set member "dev2-IP-nic1" "dev2-IP-nic2" "dev2-IP-nic3" "dev2-mac"
        set comment ''
        set exclude disable
        set color 5
    next
end
```

# Traffic shaping

QoS (quality of service) is the capability to adjust quality aspects of your overall network traffic, including techniques such as priority-based queuing and traffic policing. Because bandwidth is finite and some types of traffic are slow, jitter or packet loss sensitive, bandwidth intensive, or critical for operations, QoS is a useful tool to optimize the performance of various applications in your network. QoS is especially important for managing voice and streaming multimedia traffic because these types of traffic can rapidly consume bandwidth and are sensitive to latency. You can implement QoS on FortiGate devices using the following techniques:

| Technique | Description |
|---|---|
| Traffic policing | The FortiGate drops packets that do not conform to the configured bandwidth limitations.<br>Note that excessive traffic policing can degrade network performance rather than improve it. |
| Traffic shaping | The FortiGate ensures that traffic consumes bandwidth at least at the guaranteed rate by assigning a greater priority queue to the traffic if the guaranteed rate is not being met.<br>The FortiGate ensures that traffic does not consume more than the maximum configured bandwidth. Traffic that exceeds the maximum rate is subject to traffic policing. |
| Queuing | The FortiGate transmits packets in the order of their assigned priority queue for that physical interface. All traffic in a higher priority traffic queue must be completely transmitted before traffic in lower priority queues is transmitted. |

When determining how to configure QoS, it is helpful to know when a FortiGate uses each technique in the overall traffic processing flow and the considerations for each technique. After the FortiGate accepts packets, it classifies the traffic and may apply traffic policing at additional points during traffic processing. The FortiGate may also apply QoS techniques, such as prioritization and traffic shaping. Traffic shaping consists of both traffic policing to enforce bandwidth limits and adjusting priority queues to help packets achieve the guaranteed rate.

Traffic shaping accuracy is optimal for security policies without a protection profile where no FortiGate content inspection is processed.



You can enable traffic shaping in *System* > *Feature Visibility* under the *Additional Features* section.

The following topics provide information about configuring traffic shaping policies:


- Determining your QoS requirements on page 887
- Packet rates on page 888
- Changing traffic shaper bandwidth unit of measurement on page 890
- Shared traffic shaper on page 890
- Per-IP traffic shaper on page 895
- Type of Service-based prioritization and policy-based traffic shaping on page 897
- Interface-based traffic shaping profile on page 900
- Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration on page 909
- Classifying traffic by source interface on page 910
- Configuring traffic class IDs on page 911
- Traffic shaping schedules on page 914
- QoS assignment and rate limiting for quarantined VLANs on page 915
- Weighted random early detection queuing on page 916


## Determining your QoS requirements

Before implementing QoS, you should identify the types of traffic that:

- Are important to your organization
- Use high amounts of bandwidth
- Are sensitive to latency or packet loss

Discovering the needs and relative importance of each traffic type on your network will help you design an appropriate overall approach, including how you configure each available QoS component technique. Some organizations discover they only need to configure bandwidth limits for some services. Other organizations determine they need to fully configure interface and security policy bandwidth limits for all services, and prioritize the queuing of critical services relative to traffic rate.

For example, your organization wants to guarantee sufficient bandwidth for revenue-producing e-commerce traffic. You need to ensure that customers complete transactions and do not experience service delays. At the same time, you need to ensure low latency for voice over IP (VoIP) traffic that sales and customer support teams use, while traffic latency and bursts may be less critical to the success of other network applications, such as long term, resumable file transfers.

### Best practices

The following list includes recommendations and considerations when configuring QoS in your network:

- Ensure maximum bandwidth limits at the source interface and security policy are not too low. This can cause the FortiGate to discard an excessive number of packets.
- Consider the ratios of how packets are distributed between the available queues, and which queues are used by which types of services. Assigning most packets to the same priority queue can reduce the effects of configuring

prioritization. Assigning a lot of high bandwidth services to high priority queues may take too much bandwidth away from lower priority queues and cause increased or indefinite latency. For example, you may want to prioritize a latency-sensitive service, such as SIP, over a bandwidth-intensive service, such as FTP. Also consider that bandwidth guarantees can affect queue distribution, and assign packets to queue 0 instead of their regular queue in high-volume situations.

- Decide whether or not to guarantee bandwidth because it causes the FortiGate to assign packets to queue 0 if the guaranteed packet rate is not being met. When you compare queuing behavior for low and high bandwidth situations, this means the effect of prioritization only becomes visible as traffic volumes rise and exceed their guarantees. Because of this, you might want only some services to use bandwidth guarantees. This way, you can avoid the possibility that all traffic uses the same queue in high-volume situations, which negates the effects of configuring prioritization.
- Configure prioritization for all through traffic by either ToS (type of service)-based priority or security policy priority, not both, to simplify analysis and troubleshooting. Traffic subject to both ToS-based and security policy priorities use a combined priority from both parts of the configuration. Traffic subject to only one of the prioritization methods will use only that priority. If you configure both methods, or if you configure either method for only a subset of traffic, packets that apply to the combined configuration may receive a lower priority queue than packets that apply to only one of the priority methods, as well as packets that do not apply to the configured prioritization. For example, if both the ToS-based priority and security policy priority dictate that a packet should receive a medium priority, in the absence of bandwidth guarantees, a packet will use queue 3. If only ToS-based priority is configured, the packet will use queue 1. If only security policy priority is configured, the packet will use queue 2. If no prioritization is configured, the packet will use queue 0.
  - Because you can configure QoS using a combination of security policies and ToS-based priorities, and to distribute traffic over the six possible queues for each physical interface, the results of those configurations can be more difficult to analyze because of their complexity. In those cases, prioritization behavior can vary by several factors, including: traffic volume, ToS or differentiated services (DiffServ) markings, and correlation of session to a security policy.

    The FortiGate does not prioritize traffic based on the differentiated services code point (DSCP) marking configured in the security policy. However, ToS-based prioritization can be used for ingress traffic.

- Use the UDP protocol to obtain more accurate testing results. Packets that are discarded by traffic shapers impact flow-control mechanisms, such as TCP.
- Do not oversubscribe outbandwidth throughput. For example, sum [guaranteed bandwidth] < outbandwidth. For accurate bandwidth calculations, you must set the outbandwidth parameter on interfaces.

## Packet rates

The formula for packet rates specified for maximum bandwidth or guaranteed bandwidth is:

rate = amount / time

where rate is in Kbps

Burst size cannot exceed the configured maximum bandwidth. The FortiGate drops packets that exceed the configured maximum bandwidth. Packets deduct from the amount of bandwidth available to subsequent packets, and available bandwidth regenerates at a fixed rate. As a result, the available bandwidth for a packet may be less than the configured rate, down to a minimum of 0 Kbps.

Alternatively, rate calculation and behavior can be described using the token bucket metaphor. A traffic flow has an associated bucket, which represents burst size bounds and is the size of the configured bandwidth limit. The bucket receives tokens, which represent available bandwidth at the fixed configured rate. As time passes, tokens are added to

the bucket up to capacity, and excess tokens are discarded. When a packet arrives at the FortiGate, the packet must deduct bandwidth tokens from the bucket equal to its size in order to leave the FortiGate. If there are not enough tokens, the packet cannot leave the FortiGate and is dropped.

Bursts are not redistributed over a longer interval, so bursts are propagated rather than smoothed. However, peak size is limited. The maximum burst size is the capacity of the bucket, which is the configured bandwidth limit. The actual size varies depending on the current number of tokens in the bucket, which may be less than the capacity of the bucket due to deductions made by previous packets and the fixed rate at which tokens accumulate. A depleted bucket refills at the rate of the configured bandwidth limit. Bursts cannot borrow tokens from other time intervals.

By limiting traffic peaks and token regeneration, the available bandwidth may be less than the capacity of the bucket, but the limit of the total amount per time interval is ensured. Total bandwidth use during each interval of one second is, at most, the integral of the configured rate.

### Rate discrepancy

You may observe that external clients, such as FTP or BitTorrent, initially report rates between the maximum bandwidth and twice the amount of the maximum bandwidth depending on the size of their initial burst. For example, when a connection is initiated following a period of no network activity. The apparent discrepancy in rates is caused by a difference in perspective when delimiting time intervals. A burst from the client may initially consume all tokens in the bucket, and before the end of one second as the bucket regenerates, is allowed to consume almost another bucket worth of bandwidth. From the perspective of the client, this equals one time interval. However, from the perspective of the FortiGate, the bucket cannot accumulate tokens when it is full. Therefore, the time interval for token regeneration begins after the initial burst and does not contain the burst. These different points of reference result in an initial discrepancy equal to the size of the burst. The client's rate contains it, but the FortiGate's rate does not. However, if the connection is sustained to its limit and time progresses over an increasing number of intervals, this discrepancy decreases in importance relative to the bandwidth total. The client reported rate will eventually approach the configured rate limit for the FortiGate.

### Example

The maximum bandwidth is 50 Kbps, there has been no network activity for one or more seconds, and the bucket is full. A burst from an FTP client immediately consumes 50 kilobits. Because the bucket completely regenerates over one second, by the time another second elapses from the initial burst, traffic can consume another 49.999 kilobits, for a total of 99.999 kilobits between the two points in time. From the vantage point of an external FTP client regulated by this bandwidth limit, it initially appears that the bandwidth limit is 99.999 Kbps. This is almost twice the configured limit of 50 Kbps. However, bucket capacity only regenerates at the configured rate of 50 Kbps, and the connection can only consume a maximum of 50 kilobits during each subsequent second. The result is that as bandwidth consumption is averaged over an increasing number of time intervals, each of which are limited to 50 Kbps, the effect of the first interval's doubled bandwidth size diminishes proportionately, and the client's reported rate eventually approaches the configured rate limit. The following table shows the effects of a 50 Kbps limit on client reported rates:

| Total size transferred (kilobits) | Time (seconds) | Rate reported by client (Kbps) |
|---|---|---|
| 99.999 (50 + 49.999) | 1 | 99.999 |
| 149.999 | 2 | 74.999 |
| 199.999 | 3 | 66.666 |
| 249.999 | 4 | 62.499 |

| Total size transferred (kilobits) | Time (seconds) | Rate reported by client (Kbps) |
|---|---|---|
| 299.999 | 5 | 59.998 |
| 349.999 | 6 | 58.333 |

Guaranteed bandwidth can also be described using a token bucket metaphor. However, because this feature attempts to achieve or exceed a rate rather than limit it, the FortiGate does not discard non-conforming packets, as it does for maximum bandwidth. Instead, when the flow does not achieve the rate, the FortiGate increases the packet priority queue, in an effort to increase the rate.

Guaranteed and maximum bandwidth rates apply to the bidirectional total for all sessions controlled by the security policy. For example, an FTP connection may entail two separate connections for the data and control portion of the session. Some packets may be reply traffic rather than initiating traffic. All packets for both connections are counted when calculating the packet rate for comparison with the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth rate.

## Changing traffic shaper bandwidth unit of measurement

Bandwidth speeds are measured in kilobits per second (Kbps), and bytes that are sent and received are measured in megabytes (MB). In some cases, this can cause confusion depending on whether your ISP uses kilobits per second (Kbps), kilobytes per second (KBps), megabits per second (Mbps), or gigabits per second (Gbps).

You can change the unit of measurement for traffic shapers in the CLI.

**To change the bandwidth unit of measurement for a shared traffic shaper:**

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit <traffic_shaper_name>
        set bandwidth-unit {kbps | mbps | gbps}
    next
end
```

**To change the bandwidth unit of measurement for a per-IP traffic shaper:**

```
config firewall shaper per-ip-shaper
    edit <traffic_shaper_name>
        set bandwidth-unit {kbps | mbps | gbps}
    next
end
```

## Shared traffic shaper

Shared traffic shaper is used in a firewall shaping policy to indicate the priority and guaranteed and maximum bandwidth for a specified type of traffic use.

The maximum bandwidth indicates the largest amount of traffic allowed when using the policy. You can set the maximum bandwidth to a value between 1 and 16776000 Kbps. The GUI displays an error if any value outside this range is used. If you want to allow unlimited bandwidth, use the CLI to enter a value of 0.

The guaranteed bandwidth ensures that there is a consistent reserved bandwidth available. When setting the guaranteed bandwidth, ensure that the value is significantly less than the interface's bandwidth capacity. Otherwise, the interface will allow very little or no other traffic to pass through, potentially causing unwanted latency.

In a shared traffic shaper, the administrator can prioritize certain traffic as high, medium, or low. FortiOS provides bandwidth to low priority connections only when high priority connections do not need the bandwidth. For example, you should assign a high traffic priority to a policy for connecting a secure web server that needs to support e-commerce traffic. You should assign less important services a low priority.

When you configure a shared traffic shaper, you can apply bandwidth shaping per policy or for all policies. By default, a shared traffic shaper applies traffic shaping evenly to all policies that use the shared traffic shaper.

When configuring a per-policy traffic shaper, FortiOS applies the traffic shaping rules defined for each security policy individually. For example, if a per-policy traffic shaper is configured with a maximum bandwidth of 1000 Kbps, any security policies that have that traffic shaper enabled get 1000 Kbps of bandwidth each.

If a traffic shaper for all policies is configured with a maximum bandwidth of 1000 Kbps, all policies share the 1000 Kbps on a first-come, first-served basis.

The configuration is as follows:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
   edit "traffic_shaper_name"
      set per-policy enable
   next
end
```

The shared traffic shaper selected in the traffic shaping policy affects traffic in the direction defined in the policy. For example, if the source port is LAN and the destination is WAN1, the traffic shaping affects the flow in this direction only, affecting the outbound traffic's upload speed. You can define the traffic shaper for the policy in the opposite direction (reverse shaper) to affect the inbound traffic's download speed. In this example, that would be from WAN1 to LAN.

The following example shows how to apply different speeds to different types of service. The example configures two shared traffic shapers to use in two firewall shaping policies. One policy guarantees a speed of 10 Mbps for VoIP traffic. The other policy guarantees a speed of 1 Mbps for other traffic. In the example, FortiOS communicates with a PC using port10 and the Internet using port9.

**To configure shared traffic shapers in the FortiOS GUI:**

1. Create a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Name* field, enter Internet Access.
   d. From the *Incoming Interface* dropdown list, select *port10*.
   e. From the *Outgoing Interface* dropdown list, select *port9*.
   f. For the *Source* and *Destination* fields, select *all*.
   g. From the *Schedule* dropdown list, select *always*.
   h. For the *Service* field, select *ALL*.
   i. Click *OK*.
2. Create the shared traffic shapers:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Name* field, enter 10Mbps. This shaper is for VoIP traffic.

d. From the *Traffic Priority* dropdown list, select *High*.
e. Enable *Max Bandwidth* and enter 20000. This equates to 20 Mbps.
f. Enable *Guaranteed Bandwidth* and enter 10000. This equates to 10 Mbps.
g. Click *OK*.
h. Repeat the process above to create another traffic shaper named 1Mbps. Set the *Traffic Priority* to *Low*, the *Max Bandwidth* to 10000, and the *Guaranteed Bandwidth* to 1000.

3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
b. Click *Create New*.
c. In the *Name* field, enter VoIP_10Mbps_High. This policy is for VoIP traffic.
d. For the *Source* and *Destination* fields, select *all*.
e. For the *Service* field, select all VoIP services.
f. For the *Outgoing Interface* field, select *port9*.
g. Enable *Shared shaper*. Select 10Mbps from the dropdown list.
h. Enable *Reverse shaper*. Select 10Mbps from the dropdown list.
i. Click *OK*.
j. Repeat the process above to create a firewall shaping policy named Other_1Mbps_Low for other traffic. Set the *Source* and *Destination* to *all*, *Service* to *ALL*, *Outgoing Interface* to *port9*, and *Shared shaper* and *Reverse shaper* to 1Mbps.

**To configure shared traffic shapers using the FortiOS CLI:**

1. Create a firewall policy:
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "Internet Access"
      set srcintf "port10"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set fsso disable
      set nat enable
   next
end
```
2. Create the shared traffic shapers:
```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
   edit "10Mbps"
      set guaranteed-bandwidth 10000
      set maximum-bandwidth 20000
   next
   edit "1Mbps"
      set guaranteed-bandwidth 1000
      set maximum-bandwidth 10000
      set priority low
   next
end
```
3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
```
config firewall shaping-policy
   edit 1
```

```
      set name "VOIP_10Mbps_High"
      set service "H323" "IRC" "MS-SQL" "MYSQL" "RTSP" "SCCP" "SIP" "SIP-MSNmessenger"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set traffic-shaper "10Mbps"
      set traffic-shaper-reverse "10Mbps"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "Other_1Mbps_Low"
      set service "ALL"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set traffic-shaper "1Mbps"
      set traffic-shaper-reverse "1Mbps"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
   next
end
```

**To troubleshoot shared traffic shapers:**

1. To check if specific traffic is attached to the correct traffic shaper, run the `diagnose firewall iprope list 100015` command. The example output shows the traffic attached to the 10Mbps and 1Mbps shapers:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=1 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=10Mbps(2/1280000/2560000)
cos_fwd=0 cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=4 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
service(15):
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1720,1720)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1503,1503)] helper:auto
   [17:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1719,1719)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(6660,6669)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1433,1433)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1434,1434)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(3306,3306)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(554,554)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(7070,7070)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(8554,8554)] helper:auto
   [17:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(554,554)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(2000,2000)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(5060,5060)] helper:auto
   [17:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(5060,5060)] helper:auto
   [6:0x0:0/(1,65535)->(1863,1863)] helper:auto

policy index=2 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: orig=1Mbps(4/128000/1280000)
cos_fwd=0 cos_rev=0
```

```
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=4 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 38
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=0,
service(1):
   [0:0x0:0/(0,0)->(0,0)] helper:auto
```

2. To check if the correct traffic shaper is applied to the session, run the `diagnose sys session list` command. The example output shows that the 1Mbps shaper is applied to the session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=11 expire=3599 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
     sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=5
origin-shaper=1Mbps prio=4 guarantee 128000Bps max 1280000Bps traffic 1050Bps drops 0B
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=
class_id=0 shaping_policy_id=2 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty npu npd os mif route_preserve
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=868/15/1 reply=752/10/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 76/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 66/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=39->38/38->39 gwy=172.16.200.55/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:58241->172.16.200.55:21(172.16.200.1:58241)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:21->172.16.200.1:58241(10.1.100.11:58241)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=4
serial=0003255f tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x100000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
     vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason: offload-denied helper
total session 1
```

3. To check statuses of shared traffic shapers, run the `diagnose firewall shaper traffic-shaper list` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper traffic-shaper list

name 10Mbps
maximum-bandwidth 2500 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 1250 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 2
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0

name 1Mbps
maximum-bandwidth 1250 KB/sec
guaranteed-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
current-bandwidth 0 B/sec
priority 4
tos ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0
```

## Per-IP traffic shaper

With per-IP traffic shaping, you can limit each IP address's behavior to avoid a situation where one user uses all of the available bandwidth. In addition to controlling the maximum bandwidth used per IP address, you can also define the maximum number of concurrent sessions for an IP address. For example, if you apply a per-IP shaper of 1 Mbps to your entire network, FortiOS allocates each user/IP address 1 Mbps of bandwidth. Even if the network consists of a single user, FortiOS allocates them 1 Mbps. If there are ten users, each user gets 1 Mbps of bandwidth, totaling 10 Mbps of outgoing traffic.

For shared shapers, all users share the set guaranteed and maximum bandwidths. For example, if you set a shared shaper for all PCs using an FTP service to 10 Mbps, all users uploading to the FTP server share the 10 Mbps.

Shared shapers affect upload speed. If you want to limit the download speed from the FTP server in the example, you must configure the shared shaper as a reverse shaper. Per-IP shapers apply the speed limit on both upload and download operations.

The following example shows how to apply a per-IP shaper to a traffic shaping policy. This shaper assigns each user a maximum bandwidth of 1 Mbps and allows each user to have a maximum of ten concurrent connections to the FTP server. In the example, FortiOS communicates with users using port10 and the FTP server using port9.

**To configure a per-IP shaper in the FortiOS GUI:**

1. Create a firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Name* field, enter FTP Access.
   d. From the *Incoming Interface* dropdown list, select *port10*.
   e. From the *Outgoing Interface* dropdown list, select *port9*.
   f. For the *Source* and *Destination* fields, select *all* and *FTP_Server*, respectively.
   g. From the *Schedule* dropdown list, select *always*.
   h. For the *Service* field, select *ALL*.
   i. Click *OK*.
2. Create the per-IP traffic shaper:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shapers*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. For *Type*, select *Per-IP*.
   d. In the *Name* field, enter FTP_Max_1M. This shaper is for VoIP traffic.
   e. Enable *Max Bandwidth* and enter 1000. This equates to 1 Mbps.
   f. Enable *Max Concurrent Connections* and enter 10. This means that each user can have up to ten concurrent connections to the FTP server.
   g. Click *OK*.
3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. In the *Name* field, enter FTP speed 1M.
   d. For the *Source* fields, select the users that need to access the FTP server.
   e. For the *Destination* field, select *FTP_Server*.
   f. For the *Service* field, select *ALL*.
   g. For the *Outgoing Interface* field, select *port9*.

h. Enable *Per-IP shaper*. Select FTP_Max_1M from the dropdown list.
i. Click *OK*.

**To configure a per-IP traffic shaper using the FortiOS CLI:**

1. Create a firewall policy:
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "FTP Access"
      set srcintf "port10"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "FTP_Server"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set fsso disable
      set nat enable
   next
end
```
2. Create the per-IP traffic shaper:
```
config firewall shaper per-ip-shaper
   edit "FTP_Max_1M"
      set max-bandwidth 1000
      set max-concurrent-session 10
   next
end
```
3. Create a firewall shaping policy:
```
config firewall shaping-policy
   edit 1
      set name "FTP speed 1M"
      set service "ALL"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set per-ip-shaper "FTP_Max_1M"
      set srcaddr "PC1" "WinPC" "PC2"
      set dstaddr "FTP_Server"
   next
end
```

**To troubleshoot per-IP traffic shapers:**

1. To check if specific traffic is attached to the correct traffic shaper, run the `diagnose firewall iprope list 100015` command. The example output shows the traffic attached to the FTP_Max_1M shaper:
```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=3 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
shapers: per-ip=FTP_Max_1M
cos_fwd=0 cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=2 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 38
source(3): 10.1.100.11-10.1.100.11, uuid_idx=30, 10.1.100.143-10.1.100.143, uuid_idx=32,
     10.1.100.22-10.1.100.22, uuid_idx=31,
```

```
dest(1): 172.16.200.55-172.16.200.55, uuid_idx=89,
service(1):
   [0:0x0:0/(0,65535)->(0,65535)] helper:auto
```

2. To check if the correct traffic shaper is applied to the session, run the `diagnose sys session list` command. The example output shows that the FTP_Max_1M shaper is applied to the session:

```
# diagnose sys session list
session info: proto=6 proto_state=01 duration=36 expire=3567 timeout=3600 flags=00000000
     sockflag=00000000 sockport=0 av_idx=0 use=4
origin-shaper=
reply-shaper=
per_ip_shaper=FTP_Max_1M
class_id=0 shaping_policy_id=3 ha_id=0 policy_dir=0 tunnel=/ helper=ftp vlan_cos=0/255
state=may_dirty per_ip npu npd mif route_preserve
statistic(bytes/packets/allow_err): org=506/9/1 reply=416/6/1 tuples=2
tx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0 rx speed(Bps/kbps): 0/0
orgin->sink: org pre->post, reply pre->post dev=39->38/38->39 gwy=172.16.200.55/0.0.0.0
hook=post dir=org act=snat 10.1.100.11:58275->172.16.200.55:21(172.16.200.1:58275)
hook=pre dir=reply act=dnat 172.16.200.55:21->172.16.200.1:58275(10.1.100.11:58275)
pos/(before,after) 0/(0,0), 0/(0,0)
misc=0 policy_id=1 auth_info=0 chk_client_info=0 vd=2
serial=0000211a tos=ff/ff app_list=0 app=0 url_cat=0
rpdb_link_id = 00000000
dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
npu_state=0x100000
npu info: flag=0x00/0x00, offload=0/0, ips_offload=0/0, epid=0/0, ipid=0/0,
     vlan=0x0000/0x0000
vlifid=0/0, vtag_in=0x0000/0x0000 in_npu=0/0, out_npu=0/0, fwd_en=0/0, qid=0/0
no_ofld_reason: offload-denied helper
```

3. To check statuses of per-IP traffic shapers, run the `diagnose firewall shaper per-ip-shaper list` command. The output should resemble the following:

```
# diagnose firewall shaper per-ip-shaper list

name FTP_Max_1M
maximum-bandwidth 125 KB/sec
maximum-concurrent-session 10
tos ff/ff
packets dropped 0
bytes dropped 0
addr=10.1.100.11 status: bps=0 ses=3
```

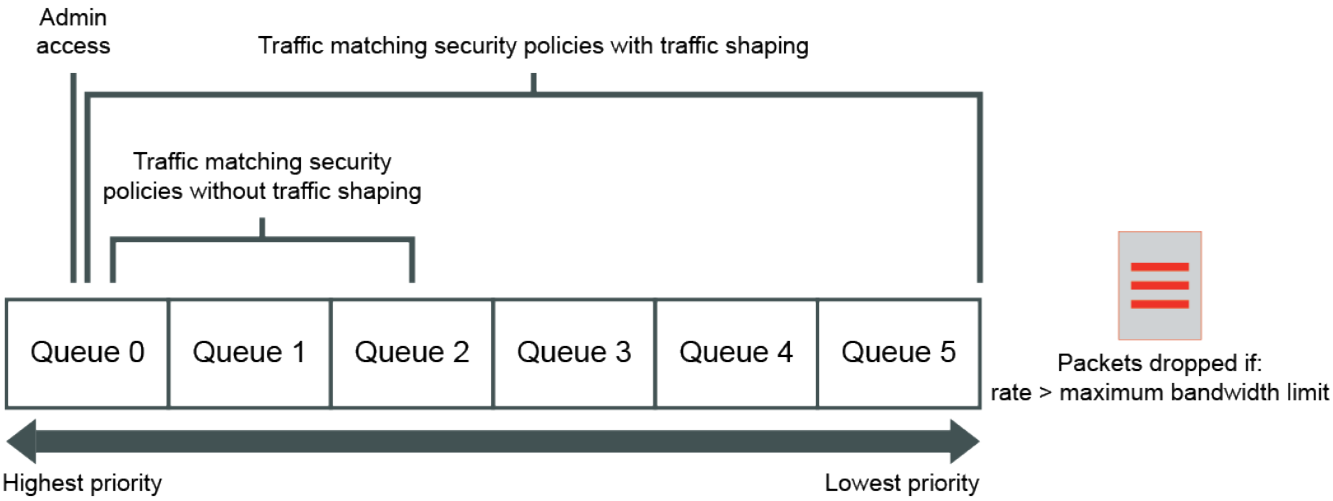
# Type of Service-based prioritization and policy-based traffic shaping

## Priority queues

After packet acceptance, FortiOS classifies traffic and may apply Quality of Service (QoS) techniques, such as prioritization and traffic shaping. Traffic shaping consists of a mixture of traffic policing to enforce bandwidth limits and priority queue adjustment to assist packets in achieving the guaranteed rate.

If you have configured prioritization, FortiOS prioritizes egressing packets by distributing them among first in first out (FIFO) queues associated with each possible priority number. Each physical interface has six priority queues. Virtual interfaces use the priority queues of the physical interface that they are bound to.

The physical interface's six queues are queue 0 to 5, where queue 0 is the highest priority queue. You might observe that your traffic uses only a subset of those six queues. For example, some traffic may always use a certain queue number. Queuing may also vary by the packet rate or mixture of services. Some queue numbers may only be used by through traffic for which you have configured traffic shaping in the security policy that applies to that traffic session.




- Administrative access traffic always uses queue 0.
- Traffic matching firewall policies without traffic shaping may use queue 0, 1, or 2. The queue is selected based on the priority value you have configured for packets with that ToS bit value, if you have configured ToS-based priorities.
- Traffic matching firewall shaping policies with traffic shaping enabled can use any queue. The queue is selected based on whether the packet rate is currently below the guaranteed bandwidth (queue 0), or above the guaranteed bandwidth. Packets at rates greater than the maximum bandwidth limit are dropped.

## Priority types

Packets can be assigned a priority in one of three types:

- On entering ingress – for packets flowing through the firewall.
- Upon generation – for packets generated by the firewall (including packets generated due to AV proxying).
- On passing through a firewall policy – for packets passing through a firewall policy (firewall shaping policy) that has a traffic shaper defined.

### ToS priority

The first and second types, ingress priority and priority for generated packets, are controlled by two different CLI settings:

```
config system global
    set traffic-priority-level {high | medium | low}
end
config system tos-based-priority
    edit 1
        set tos [0-15]      <---- type of service bit in the IP datagram header with a value
between 0 and 15
        set priority (high | medium | low)      <---- priority of this type of service
```

```
    next
end
```

Each priority level is mapped to a value as follows:

| ToS priority | Value |
|---|---|
| High | 0 |
| Medium | 1 |
| Low | 2 |



ToS-based traffic prioritization cannot be used to apply bandwidth limits and guarantees, but can be used to prioritize traffic at per-packet levels.

**Example**

In the following example configuration, packets with ToS bit values of 10 are prioritized as medium and packets with ToS bit values of 20 are prioritized as high. All the other traffic is prioritized as low.

```
config system global
    set traffic-priority-level low
end
config system tos-based-priority
    edit 1
        set tos 10
        set priority medium
    next
    edit 2
        set tos 20
        set priority high
    next
end
```

## Firewall shaping policy priority

You can enable traffic shaping in a firewall shaping policy. In the shared traffic shaper, you can set the firewall priority to high, medium, or low:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit 1
        set priority {high | medium | low}
    next
end
```

As the priority in a traffic shaper is set to high by default, you must set some traffic at a lower priority to see results. Each priority level is mapped to a value as follows:

| Firewall policy priority | Value |
|---|---|
| High (default) | 1 |

| Firewall policy priority | Value |
|---|---|
| Medium | 2 |
| Low | 3 |

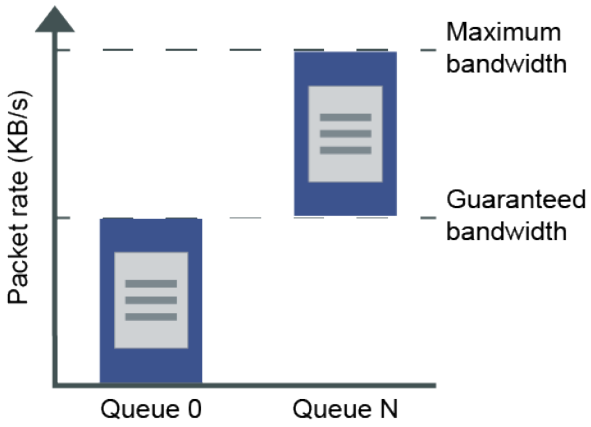
### Combination of two priority types

To combine the two priority types, the global or ingress ToS-based priority value is combined with the firewall policy priority value:

ToS priority (0, 1, 2) + policy priority (1, 2, 3) = total priority (queue number)

Consider the following scenarios:

- If the current packet rate is less than the guaranteed bandwidth, packets use priority queue 0. Packet priority is 0.
- If the current packet rate exceeds the maximum bandwidth, excess packets are dropped.
- If the current packet rate is greater than the guaranteed bandwidth but less than the maximum bandwidth, FortiOS assigns a priority queue by adding the ToS-based priority and the firewall priority.
  For example, if you have enabled traffic shaping in the security policy and the security policy's traffic priority is low (value 3), and the priority normally applied to packets with that ToS bit is medium (value 1), the packets have a total packet priority of 4, and use priority queue 4.




## Interface-based traffic shaping profile

A traffic shaping policy can be used for interface-based traffic shaping by organizing traffic into 30 class IDs. The shaping profile defines the percentage of the interface bandwidth that is allocated to each class. Each traffic class ID is shaped to the assigned speed according to the outgoing bandwidth limit configured to the interface.

### Traffic classification

A shaping policy classifies traffic and organizes it into different class IDs, based on matching criteria. For traffic matching a criteria, you can choose to put it into 30 different shaping classes, identified by class ID 2 to 31.

You must select an outgoing interface for the traffic. The shaping policy is only applied when the traffic goes to one of the selected outgoing interfaces.

| Criterion | Description |
|---|---|
| **Source** | • Address: match the source address of the traffic to the selected address or address group.<br>• User: use the user credentials of the traffic to match the selected user or user group. At least one address, address group, or internet service must also be selected.<br>• Internet service: match the traffic to the selected internet service. Internet services cannot be used if addresses or address or groups are used. |
| **Destination** | • Address: match the destination address of the traffic to the selected address or address group.<br>• Internet service: match the traffic to the selected internet service. Internet services cannot be used if addresses or address or groups are used. |
| **Schedule** | Match the current date and time to the selected schedule. You can select a one-time schedule, recurring schedule, or schedule group. This setting is optional. |
| **Service** | Match the service of the traffic to the selected service or service group. |
| **Application** | Match the application of the traffic to the selected application, application category, or application group.<br>Application control must be enabled in the related firewall policy to know the application of the traffic. See Application control on page 1028 for more information. |
| **URL category** | Match the URL of the traffic to the selected URL category.<br>Web filter must be enabled in the related firewall policy to know the URL of the traffic. See Web filter on page 964 for more information. |



When multiple items are selected in one criterion, it is considered a match when traffic matches any one of them.

## Traffic prioritization

Shaping profiles define how different shaping classes of traffic are prioritized. For each class, you can define three prioritization strategies: guaranteed bandwidth, maximum bandwidth, and priority.

For each shaping profile, a default shaping class must be defined. Traffic is prioritized based on the default shaping group in the following two circumstances:

- All traffic to the outgoing interface that does not match to any shaping policy
- Traffic with a shaping group that is not defined in a shaping profile

| Prioritization strategy | Description |
|---|---|
| **Guaranteed bandwidth** | The percentage of the link speed that is reserved for the shaping group.<br>The total guaranteed bandwidth for all shaping groups cannot exceed 100%. |

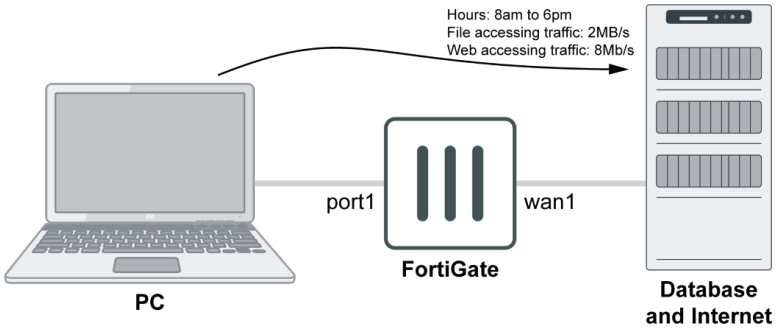
| Prioritization strategy | Description |
|---|---|
| **Maximum bandwidth** | The maximum percentage of the link speed that the shaping group can use. |
| **Priority** | The shaping class priority: top, critical, high, medium, or low. When groups are competing for bandwidth on the interface, the group with the higher priority wins. |

## Applying a shaping profile to an interface

Traffic shaping is accomplished by configuring the outgoing bandwidth and outgoing shaping profile on an interface. The shaping profile uses the outgoing bandwidth of the interface as the maximum link speed, and it only works when the outgoing bandwidth is configured.

This example shows how to apply interface-based traffic shaping to web and file accessing traffic according to a schedule:

- The link speed of the wan1 interface is 10 Mb/s.
- File access can use up to 2 Mb/s from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.
- Web access can use 8 Mb/s from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.




### Putting the traffic into shaping classes

**To create a recurring schedule in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Schedules*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Schedule*.
3. Configure a recurring schedule called *Day_Hours* for everyday from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.
4. Click *OK*.

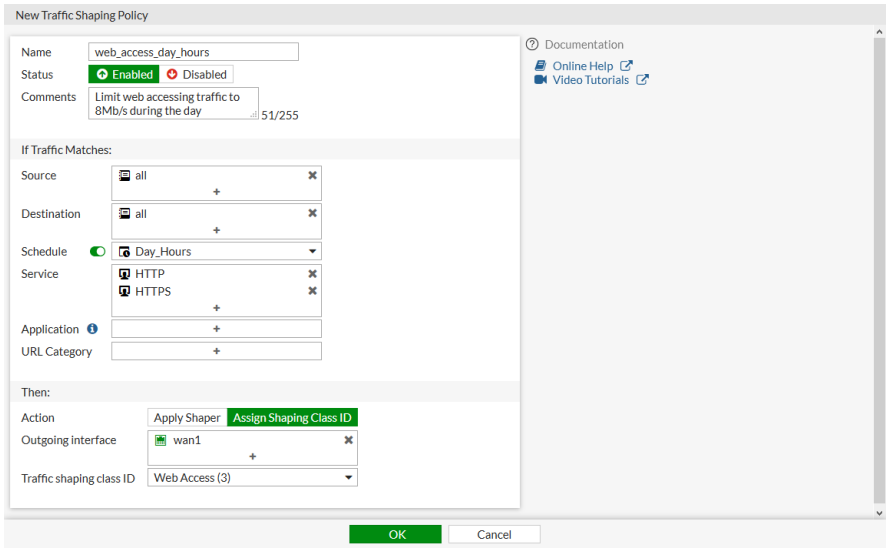
**To create a traffic shaping policy and class ID for the web accessing traffic in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the policy, such as *web_access_day_hours*.
3. Enable *Schedule* and select the schedule you just created.
4. Set *Service* to web accessing services, such as *HTTP* and *HTTPS*.
5. Set *Action* to *Assign Shaping Class ID*, and *Outgoing interface* to *wan1*
6. Click the *Traffic shapping class ID* drop down then click *Create*.

7. Enter a value for the *ID* (integer) and a description for the *Name*, such as *Web Access*.



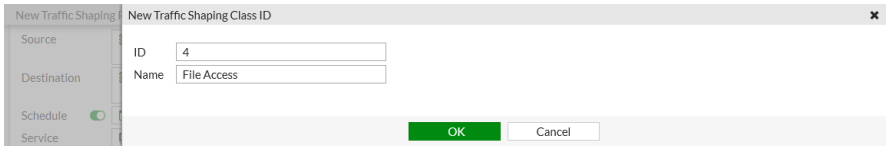

8. Click *OK*.
9. Set *Traffic shaping class ID* to the just created class ID.




10. Configure the remaining settings as required.
11. Click *OK*.

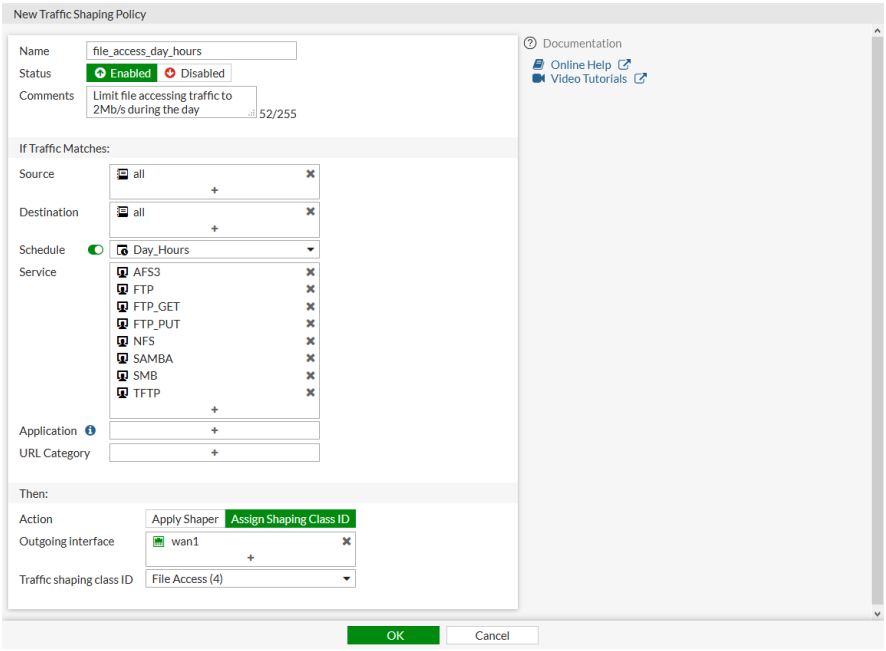
**To create a traffic shaping policy and class ID for the file accessing traffic in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the policy, such as *file_access_day_hours*.
3. Enable *Schedule* and select the schedule you just created.
4. Set *Service* to file accessing services, such as *ASF3*, *FTP* and *SMB*.
5. Set *Action* to *Assign Shaping Class ID*, and *Outgoing interface* to *wan1*
6. Click the *Traffic shapping class ID* drop down then click *Create*.
7. Enter a value for the *ID* (integer) and a description for the *Name*, such as *File Access*.




8. Click *OK*.

9. Set *Traffic shaping class ID* to the just created class ID.




10. Configure the remaining settings as required.
11. Click *OK*.

### To put the traffic into shaping classes in the CLI:

1. Create a recurring schedule:

```
config firewall schedule recurring
    edit "Day_Hours"
        set start 08:00
        set end 18:00
        set day sunday monday tuesday wednesday thursday friday saturday
    next
end
```

2. Create the traffic class IDs:

```
config firewall traffic-class
    edit 3
        set class-name "Web Access"
    next
    edit 4
        set class-name "File Access"
    next
end
```

3. Create the web and file accessing traffic shaping policies:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 2
        set name "web_access_day_hours"
        set comment "Limit web accessing traffic to 8Mb/s in day time"
        set service "HTTP" "HTTPS"
        set schedule "Day_Hours"
```

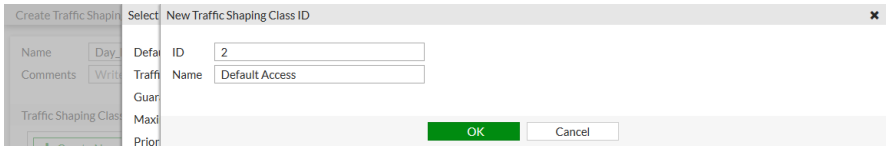
```
            set dstintf "wan1"
            set class-id 3
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
        next
        edit 3
            set name "file_access_day_hours"
            set comment "Limit file accessing traffic to 2Mb/s during the day"
            set service "AFS3" "FTP" "FTP_GET" "FTP_PUT" "NFS" "SAMBA" "SMB" "TFTP"
            set schedule "Day_Hours"
            set dstintf "wan1"
            set class-id 4
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
        next
    end
```

## Allocating bandwidth to the shaping classes

A traffic shaping profile defines the guaranteed and maximum bandwidths each class receives. In this example, file access can use up to 2 Mb/s and web access can use 8 Mb/s from 8:00 AM to 6:00 PM.

### To create a traffic shaping profile using the GUI:

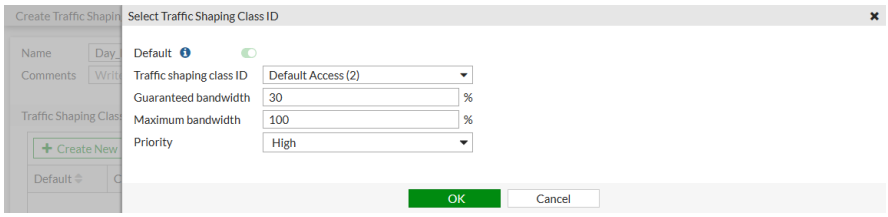
1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Profile* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name for the profile, such as *Day_Hours_Profile*.
3. Configure a default traffic shaping class:
   This class has a high priority, meaning that when the other classes have reached their guaranteed bandwidths, this default class will use the rest of the available bandwidth.
   a. In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* table click *Create New*.
   b. Click the *Traffic shapping class ID* drop down then click *Create*.
   c. Enter a name for the class, such as *Default Access*.




   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Set *Traffic shaping class ID* to the just created class ID.

**f.** Configure the following settings, then click *OK*:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Guaranteed bandwidth** | 30 |
| **Maximum bandwidth** | 100 |
| **Priority** | High |

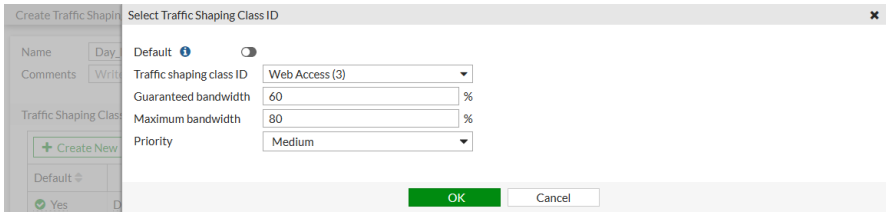



**4.** Configure a web accessing traffic shaping class:
When other types of traffic are competing for bandwidth, this class is guaranteed to 6 Mb/s, or 60% of the bandwidth.

**a.** In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* table click *Create New*.

**b.** Configure the following settings, then click *OK*:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Traffic shaping class ID** | Web Access |
| **Guaranteed bandwidth** | 60 |
| **Maximum bandwidth** | 80 |
| **Priority** | High |

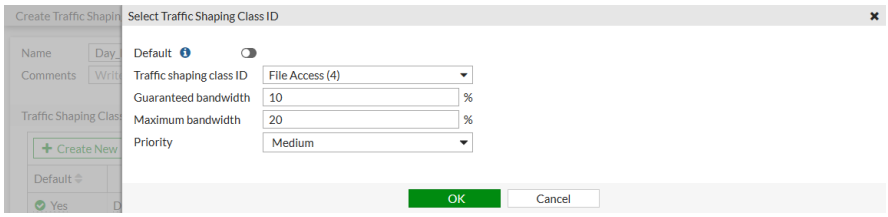


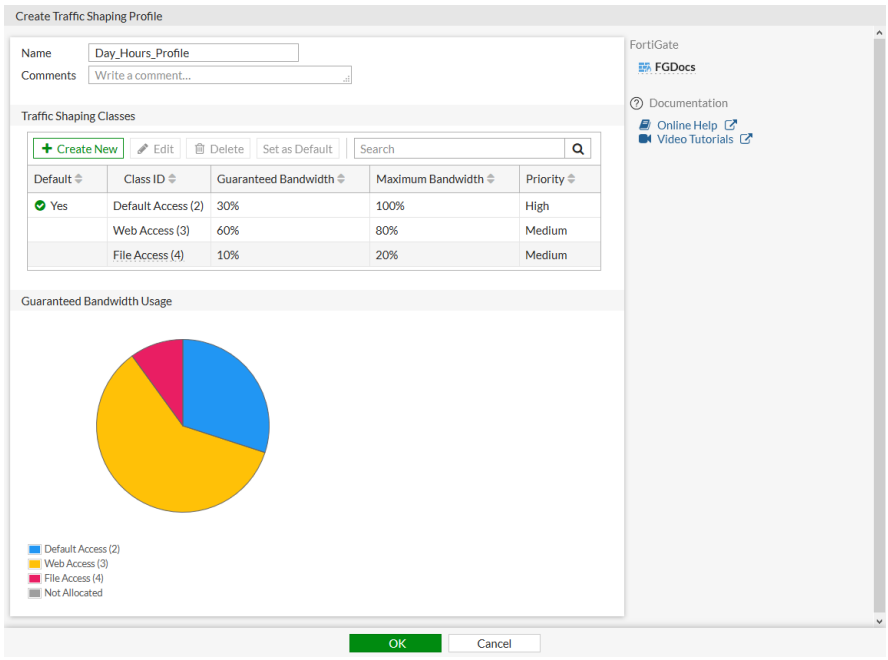

**5.** Configure a file accessing traffic shaping class:
When other types of traffic are competing for bandwidth, this group is guaranteed to 1 Mb/s, or 10% of the bandwidth.

**a.** In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* table click *Create New*.

**b.** Configure the following settings, then click *OK*:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Traffic shaping class ID** | File Access |
| **Guaranteed bandwidth** | 10 |
| **Maximum bandwidth** | 20 |
| **Priority** | High |




6. Click *OK*.

### To create a traffic shaping profile using the CLI:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "Day_Hours_Profile"
        set default-class-id 2
        config shaping-entries
            edit 1
                set class-id 2
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 30
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
            next
            edit 2
                set class-id 3
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 60
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 80
            next
            edit 3
                set class-id 4
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 20
            next
        end
```

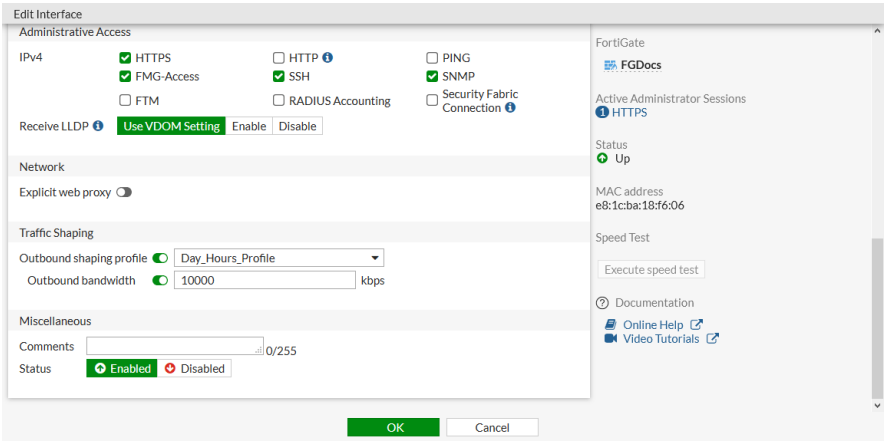
```
    next
end
```

## Defining the available bandwidth on an interface

In this example, the link speed of the wan1 interface is 10 Mb/s.

### To set the bandwidth of the wan1 interface in the GUI:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the wan1 interface.
3. Under Traffic Shaping, enable *Outbound shaping profile* and select the profile that you just created, *Day_Hours_Profile*.
4. Enable *Outbound Bandwidth* and set it to *10000* Kbps.




5. Click *OK*.

### To set the bandwidth of the wan1 interface in the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        ....
        set egress-shaping-profile "Day_Hours_Profile"
        set outbandwidth 10000
        ....
    next
end
```

## Diagnose commands

### To check that the specific traffic is put into the correct shaping group or class ID:

```
# diagnose firewall iprope list 100015
```

### To check the speed limit for each class ID on an interface:

```
# diagnose netlink interface list wan1
```

## Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration

Interface-based traffic shaping with NP acceleration is supported on some devices.

An administrator configures the WAN interface's maximum outbound bandwidth and, based on that, creates a traffic shaping profile with a percentage based shaper. This allows for proper QoS and traffic shaping. VLAN interfaces are not supported.



This feature is supported on FortiGate 600E, 500E, and 300E models.

**To configure interface-based traffic shaping:**

1. Enable NPU offloading when doing interface-based traffic shaping according to the egress-shaping-profile:

```
config system npu
    set intf-shaping-offload enable
end
```

2. Configure shaping profiles:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "sdwan"
        set default-class-id 4
        config shaping-entries
            edit 1
                set class-id 4
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 3
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 5
            next
            edit 2
                set class-id 3
                set priority medium
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 50
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
            next
            edit 3
                set class-id 2
                set priority low
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 1
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 5
            next
        end
    next
end
```

   The class number is limited to 16.

3. Configure a traffic shaper and shaping policy:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "Transactional"
        set priority medium
    next
end
```

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "any"
        set traffic-shaper "Transactional"
        set class-id 3
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

4. Apply the egress shaping profile on the interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.23 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set type physical
        set outbandwidth 500
        set egress-shaping-profile "sdwan"
        set snmp-index 4
    next
end
```

5. Configure a firewall policy:

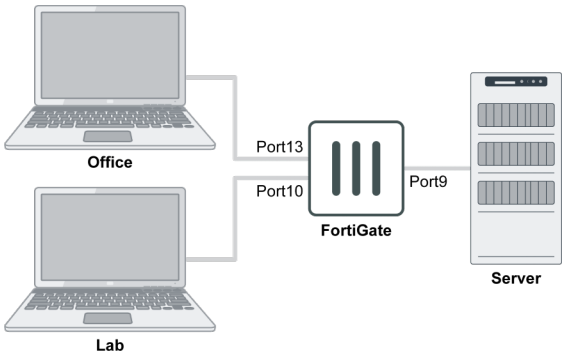
```
config firewall policy
    edit 3
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Classifying traffic by source interface

In firewall shaping policies, you can classify traffic by source interface with the following command:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
  edit 1
    set srcintf <interface_name>
    ......
  next
end
```

### Sample configuration




For this example, there are two shaping policies:

- Policy 1 is for traffic from the Office to the Server, with the speed limited to 5 MB/s.
- Policy 2 is for traffic from the Lab to the Server, with the speed limited to 1 MB/s.

**To configure the traffic shaping policy:**

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "Office_Speed_5MB"
        set service "ALL"
        set srcintf "port13"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set traffic-shaper "5MB/s"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "5MB/s"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "Lab_Speed_1MB"
        set service "ALL"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set traffic-shaper "1MB/s"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "1MB/s"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

## Configuring traffic class IDs

As of FortiOS 6.2.2, you can configure traffic class IDs with a descriptive name in the GUI or CLI. Class IDs can help you correlate traffic shaping policy and profile entries.

### GUI configurations

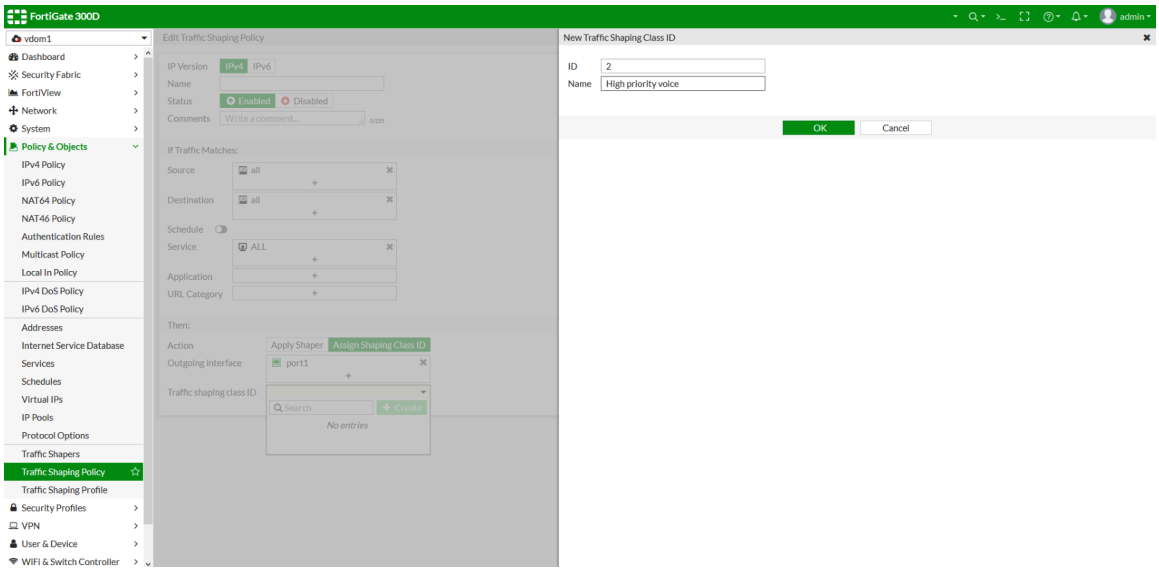
Within the GUI, there are three locations to configure the traffic class ID:

- Traffic shaping policy
- Traffic shaping profile
- Interface

*Assign Shaping Class ID* replaces the *Assign Group* functionality in earlier versions of FortiOS.

**To configure the traffic class ID in a traffic shaping policy:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
2. Edit an existing policy, or create a new one.
3. In the *Then: Action* section, click *Assign Shaping Class ID*.
4. In *Traffic shaping class ID*, click *Create*.
5. Enter a value for the *ID* (integer) and a description for the *Name*.
6. Click *OK* to save the class ID.

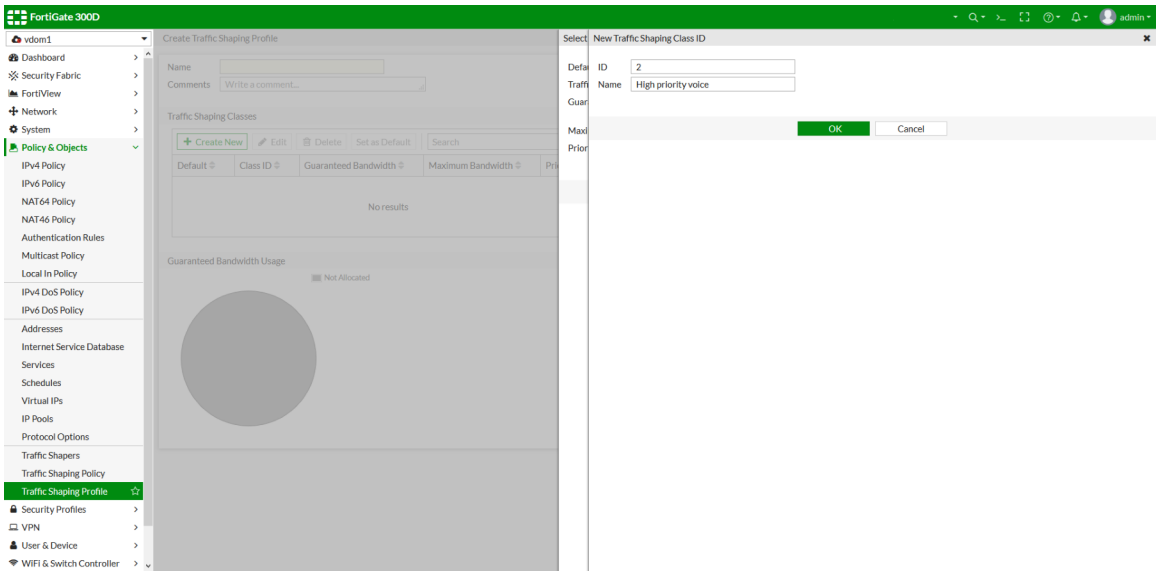



7. Configure the rest of the policy as needed.
8. Click *OK* to save the policy.

**To configure the traffic class ID in a traffic shaping profile:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Profile*.
2. Edit an existing profile, or create a new one.
3. In the *Traffic Shaping Classes* section, click *Create New*. The *Select Traffic Shaping Class ID* window opens.
4. Click *Create*. The *New Traffic Shaping Class ID* window opens.
5. Enter a value for the *ID* (integer) and a description for the *Name*.

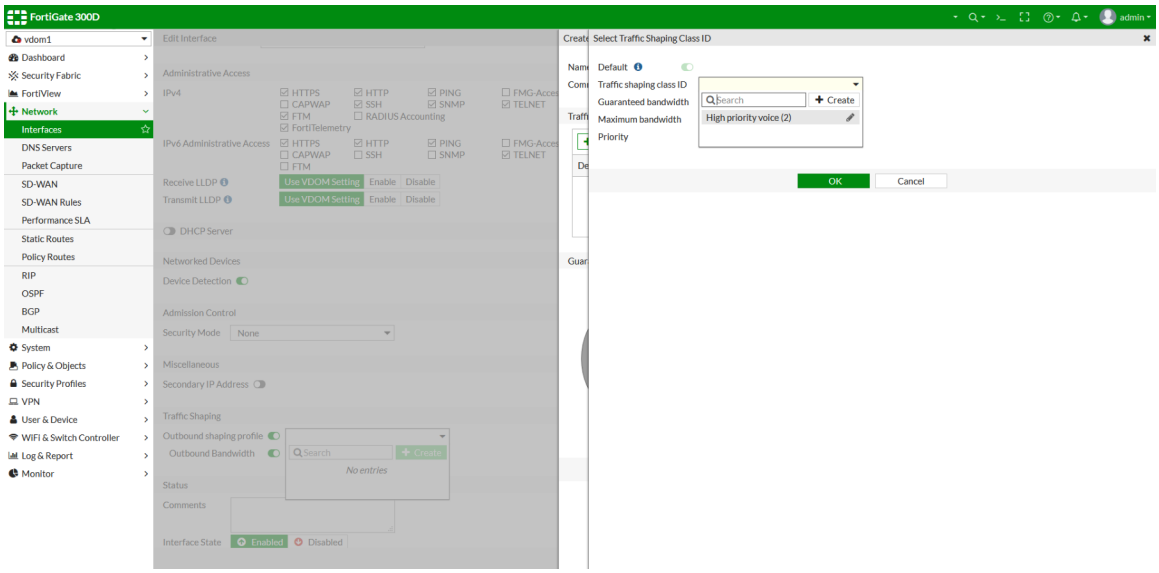
6. Click *OK* to save the class ID.




7. Click *OK* to add the class ID.
8. Configure the rest of the profile as needed.
9. Click *OK* to save the profile.

### To configure the traffic class ID in an interface:

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit an existing interface, or create a new one.
3. In the *Traffic Shaping* section, enable *Outbound shaping profile* and *Outbound Bandwidth*.
4. Click *Create*. The *Create Traffic Shaping Profile* window opens.
5. Click *Create New*. The *Select Traffic Shaping Class ID* window opens.
6. Select an existing class ID, or create a new one.
7. Click *OK* to save the class ID.




8. Click *OK* to add the class ID .

9. Configure the rest of the interface as needed.
10. Click *OK* to save the interface.

### CLI configuration

**To configure the traffic class ID in the CLI:**

```
config firewall traffic-class
    edit 2
        set class-name "High priority voice."
    next
    ...
end
```

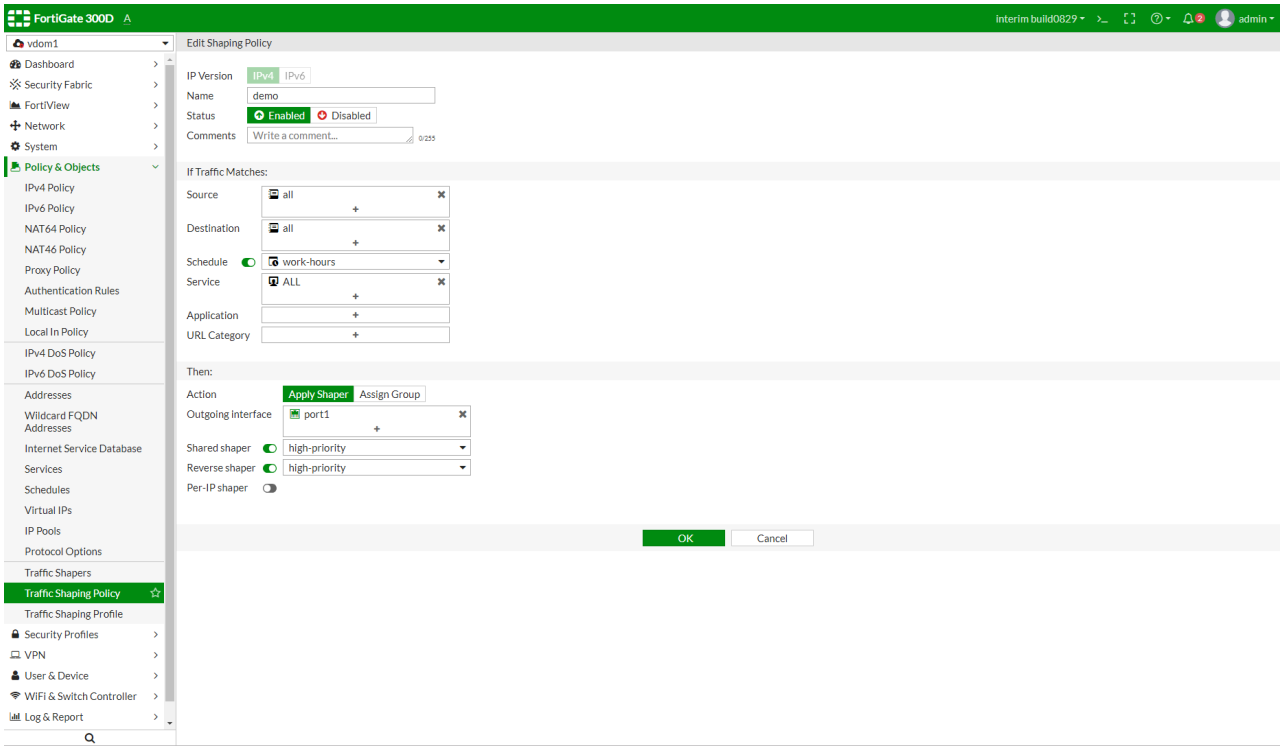
## Traffic shaping schedules

In a shaping policy, there are many matching criteria available for administrators to match a specific traffic and apply a traffic shaper or shaping group to the traffic, including using schedules. This feature gives shaping policy the ability to apply different shaping profiles at different times. Administrators can select a one-time schedule, recurring schedule, or schedule group.

*Schedule* is not a mandatory setting. If it is not set, then the current date and time are not used to match the traffic.

**To configure a traffic shaping policy in the GUI:**

1. Navigate to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
2. Create or edit a *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
3. Enable *Schedule* and select a schedule option.



4. Configure other options and click *OK*.

**To configure a traffic shaping policy in the CLI:**

```
config firewall schedule recurring
    edit "work-hours"
        set start 07:00
        set end 20:00
        set day monday tuesday wednesday thursday friday
    next
end

config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "demo"
        set service "ALL"
        set schedule "work-hours"  <<< Can select schedule from one-time schedule, recurring
schedule or schedule group
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "high-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "high-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

**To troubleshoot a traffic shaping policy in the CLI:**

The selected schedule is listed in the `iprope`.

```
diagnose firewall iprope list 100015

policy index=1 uuid_idx=0 action=accept
flag (0):
schedule(work-hours)
shapers: orig=high-priority(2/0/134217728) reply=high-priority(2/0/134217728)
cos_fwd=0  cos_rev=0
group=00100015 av=00000000 au=00000000 split=00000000
host=1 chk_client_info=0x0 app_list=0 ips_view=0
misc=0 dd_type=0 dd_mode=0
zone(1): 0 -> zone(1): 9
source(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=28,
dest(1): 0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255, uuid_idx=28,
service(1):
    [0:0x0:0/(0,65535)->(0,65535)] helper:auto
```

## QoS assignment and rate limiting for quarantined VLANs

When devices are quarantined, they are isolated from the rest of the network. However, they can still impact the network if not controlled beyond isolation. A quarantined host, which offers heavy traffic, could congest the network and create a DOS-style reduction in service to authorized hosts.

Within the quarantined VLAN, two restrictions are available within the network:

- Traffic policing (also known as rate limiting)
- QoS (Quality of Service) assignment (also known as priority assignment)

Each quarantined host's traffic can be subject to rate limiting and priority adjustment. This reduces the impact that any quarantined host can have on authorized traffic on the network.

**To configure QoS assignment and rate limiting for quarantined VLANs:**

1. Configure a traffic policy, or use the default "quarantine" policy:

```
config switch-controller traffic-policy
    edit "quarantine"
        set description "Rate control for quarantined traffic"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 163840
        set guaranteed-burst 8192
        set maximum-burst 163840
        set cos-queue 0
    next
end
```

2. Configure an interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "qtn.aggr1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.254.254 255.255.255.0
        set description "Quarantine VLAN"
        set security-mode captive-portal
        set replacemsg-override-group "auth-intf-qtn.aggr1"
        set device-identification enable
        set snmp-index 30
        set switch-controller-access-vlan enable
        set switch-controller-traffic-policy "quarantine"
        set color 6
        set interface "aggr1"
        set vlanid 4093
    next
end
```

By default, `switch-controller-traffic-policy` is empty. You need to apply the necessary traffic policy (not only limited to "quarantine").

## Weighted random early detection queuing

You can use the weighted random early detection (WRED) queuing function within traffic shaping.

This topic includes three parts:

- Traffic shaping with queuing
- Burst control in queuing mode
- Multi-stage DSCP marking and class ID in traffic shapers

You cannot configure or view WRED in the GUI; you must use the CLI.



WRED is not supported when traffic is offloaded to an NPU.

## Traffic shaping with queuing

Traffic shaping has a queuing option. Use this option to fine-tune the queue by setting the profile queue size or performing random early drop (RED) according to queue usage.

This example shows setting the profile queue size limit to 5 so that the queue can contain a maximum of five packets and more packets are dropped.

### To set the profile queue size limit:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "profile"
        set type queuing
        set default-class-id 31
        config shaping-entries
            edit 31
                set class-id 31
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 5
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set limit 5  <range from 5 to 10000; default: 1000>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

This example shows performing RED according to queue usage by setting `red-probability`, `min`, and `max`. Setting `red-probability` to `10` means start to drop packets when queue usage reaches the `min` setting. When queue usage reaches the `max` setting, drop 10% of the packets.

- Level 1: when queue is less than `min` packets, drop 0% of packets.
- Level 2: when queue reaches `min` packets, start to drop packets.
- Level 3: when queue usage is between `min` and `max` packets, drop 0–10% of packets by proportion.
- Level 4: when queue (average queue size) is more than `max` packets, drop 100% of packets.

### To set RED according to queue usage:

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "profile"
        set type queuing
        set default-class-id 31
        config shaping-entries
            edit 31
                set class-id 31
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 5
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 10
                set red-probability 10 <range from 0 to 20; default: 0 no drop>
                set min 100 <range from 3 to 3000>
                set max 300 <range from 3 to 3000>
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

**To troubleshoot this function, use the following diagnose commands:**

```
diagnose netlink intf-class list <intf>
diagnose netlink intf-qdisc list <intf>
```

## Burst control in queuing mode

In a hierarchical token bucket (HTB) algorithm, each traffic class has buckets to allow a burst of traffic. The maximum burst is determined by the bucket size `burst` (for guaranteed bandwidth) and `cburst` (for maximum bandwidth). The shaping profile has `burst-in-msec` and `cburst-in-msec` parameters for each shaping entry (`class id`) to control the bucket size.

This example uses the outbandwidth of the interface as 1 Mbps and the maximum bandwidth of class is 50%.

burst = burst-in-msec * guaranteed bandwidth = 100 ms × 1 Mbps x 50% = 50000 b = 6250 B

cburst = cburst-in-msec * maximum bandwidth = 200 ms × 1 Mbps x 50% = 100000 b = 12500 B

The following example sets `burst-in-msec` to 100 and `cburst-in-msec` to 200.

**To set burst control in queuing mode:**

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit "profile"
        set type queuing
        set default-class-id 31
        config shaping-entries
            edit 31
                set class-id 31
                set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 5
                set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 50
                set burst-in-msec 100 <range from 0 to 2000>
                set cburst-in-msec 200 <range from 0 to 2000>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## Multi-stage DSCP marking and class ID in traffic shapers

Traffic shapers have a multi-stage method so that packets are marked with a different differentiated services code point (DSCP) and `class id` at different traffic speeds. Marking packets with a different DSCP code is for the next hop to classify the packets. The FortiGate benefits by marking packets with a different `class id`. Combined with the egress interface shaping profile, the FortiGate can handle the traffic differently according to its `class id`.

| Rule | DSCP code | Class ID |
|---|---|---|
| speed < guarantee bandwidth | `diffservcode` | `class id` in shaping policy |
| guarantee bandwidth < speed < exceed bandwidth | `exceed-dscp` | `exceed-class-id` |
| exceed bandwidth < speed | `maximum-dscp` | `exceed-class-id` |

This example sets the following parameters:

- When the current bandwidth is less than 50 Kbps, mark packets with `diffservcode` 100000 and set `class id` to 10.
- When the current bandwidth is between 50 Kbps and 100 Kbps, mark packets with `exceed-dscp` 111000 and set `exceed-class-id` to 20.
- When the current bandwidth is more than 100 Kbps, mark packets with `maximum-dscp` 111111 and set `exceed-class-id` to 20.

**To set multi-stage DSCP marking and class ID in a traffic shaper:**

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "50k-100k-150k"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 50
        set maximum-bandwidth 150
        set diffserv enable
        set dscp-marking-method multi-stage
        set exceed-bandwidth 100
        set exceed-dscp 111000
        set exceed-class-id 20
        set maximum-dscp 111111
        set diffservcode 100000
    next
end
```

```
config firewall shaping-policy
     edit 1
         set service "ALL"
         set dstintf PORT2
         set srcaddr "all"
         set dstaddr "all"
         set class-id 10
     next
end
```

Traffic shapers also have an `overhead` option that defines the per-packet size overhead used in rate computation.

**To set the traffic shaper overhead option:**

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "testing"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 50
        set maximum-bandwidth 150
        set overhead 14 <range from 0 to 100>
    next
end
```

## Examples

### Enabling RED for FTP traffic from QA

This first example shows how to enable RED for FTP traffic from QA. This example sets a maximum of 10% of the packets to be dropped when queue usage reaches the maximum value.

**To configure the firewall address:**

```
config firewall address
    edit QA_team
        set subnet 10.1.100.0/24
    next
end
```

**To set the shaping policy to classify traffic into different class IDs:**

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set service HTTPS HTTP
        set dstintf port1
        set srcaddr QA_team
        set dstaddr all
        set class-id 10
    next
    edit 2
        set service FTP
        set dstintf port1
        set srcaddr QA_team
        set dstaddr all
        set class-id 20
    next
end
```

**To set the shaping policy to define the speed of each class ID:**

```
config firewall shaping-profile
    edit QA_team_profile
       set type queuing
       set default-class-id 30
            config shaping-entries
                edit 1
                    set class-id 10
                    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 50
                    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 100
                next
                edit 2
                    set class-id 20
                    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 30
                    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 60
                    set red-probability 10
                next
                edit 3
                    set class-id 30
                    set guaranteed-bandwidth-percentage 20
```

```
                    set maximum-bandwidth-percentage 50
                next
            end
    next
end
```

**To apply the shaping policy to the interface:**

```
config sys interface
    edit port1
        set outbandwidth 10000
        set egress-shaping-profile QA_team_profile
    next
end
```

**To use diagnose commands to troubleshoot:**

```
# diagnose netlink intf-class list port1
class htb 1:1 root rate 1250000Bps ceil 1250000Bps burst 1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst
1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 7 buffer [00004e20] cbuffer [00004e20]
 Sent 11709 bytes 69 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 226Bps 2pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 3 borrowed: 0 giants: 0
 tokens: 18500 ctokens: 18500
class htb 1:10 parent 1:1 leaf 10: prio 1 quantum 62500 rate 625000Bps ceil 1250000Bps burst
1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst 1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 0 buffer [00009c40]
cbuffer [00004e20]
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 0Bps 0pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 0 borrowed: 0 giants: 0
 tokens: 40000 ctokens: 20000
class htb 1:20 parent 1:1 leaf 20: prio 1 quantum 37500 rate 375000Bps ceil 750000Bps burst
1599B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst 1599B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 0 buffer [0001046a]
cbuffer [00008235]
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 0Bps 0pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 0 borrowed: 0 giants: 0
 tokens: 66666 ctokens: 33333
class htb 1:30 parent 1:1 leaf 30: prio 1 quantum 25000 rate 250000Bps ceil 625000Bps burst
1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B cburst 1600B/8 mpu 0B overhead 0B level 0 buffer [000186a0]
cbuffer [00009c40]
 Sent 11709 bytes 69 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 rate 226Bps 2pps backlog 0B 0p
 lended: 66 borrowed: 3 giants: 0
 tokens: 92500 ctokens: 37000
class red 20:1 parent 20:0
```

```
 # diagnose netlink intf-qdisc list port1
qdisc htb 1: root refcnt 5 r2q 10 default 30 direct_packets_stat 0 ver 3.17
 Sent 18874 bytes 109 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 5 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
qdisc pfifo 10: parent 1:10 refcnt 1 limit 1000p
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
qdisc red 20: parent 1:20 refcnt 1 limit 4000000B min 300000B max 1000000B ewma 9 Plog 23
Scell_log 20 flags 0
```

```
 Sent 0 bytes 0 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
  marked 0 early 0 pdrop 0 other 0
qdisc pfifo 30: parent 1:30 refcnt 1 limit 1000p
 Sent 18874 bytes 109 pkt (dropped 0, overlimits 0 requeues 0)
 backlog 0B 0p
```

### Marking QA traffic with a different DSCP

This second example shows how to mark QA traffic with a different DSCP according to real-time traffic speed.

### To configure the firewall address:

```
config firewall address
    edit QA_team
        set subnet 10.1.100.0/24
    next
end
```

### To configure the firewall shaper traffic shaper:

```
config firewall shaper traffic-shaper
    edit "500k-1000k-1500k"
        set guaranteed-bandwidth 500
        set maximum-bandwidth 1500
        set diffserv enable
        set dscp-marking-method multi-stage
        set exceed-bandwidth 1000
        set exceed-dscp 111000
        set maximum-dscp 111111
        set diffservcode 100000
    next
end
```

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit QA_team
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf port1
        set traffic-shaper "500k-1000k-1500k"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "500k-1000k-1500k"
        set srcaddr "QA_team"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

# Security Profiles

This section contains information about configuring FortiGate security features, including:


- Inspection modes on page 923
- Antivirus on page 928
- Web filter on page 964
- DNS filter on page 1006
- Application control on page 1028
- Intrusion prevention on page 1039
- File filter on page 1044
- Email filter on page 1050
- Data leak prevention on page 1057
- VoIP solutions on page 1068
- ICAP on page 1079
- Web application firewall on page 1085
- SSL & SSH Inspection on page 1088
- Custom signatures on page 1096
- Overrides on page 1099




If you are unable to view a security profile feature, go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* to enable it.

## Inspection modes

FortiOS supports flow-based and proxy-based inspection in firewall policies. You can select the inspection mode when configuring a policy.

Flow-based inspection takes a snapshot of content packets and uses pattern matching to identify security threats in the content.

Proxy-based inspection reconstructs content that passes through the FortiGate and inspects the content for security threats.

Certain security profiles allows users to display flow-based or proxy-based feature sets.

This following topics provide information about inspection modes for various security profile features:


- Flow mode inspection (default mode) on page 924
- Proxy mode inspection on page 924
- Inspection mode feature comparison on page 926

## Flow mode inspection (default mode)

When a firewall policy's inspection mode is set to *flow*, traffic flowing through the policy will not be buffered by the FortiGate. Unlike proxy mode, the content payload passing through the policy will be inspected on a packet by packet basis with the very last packet held by the FortiGate until the scan returns a verdict. If a violation is detected in the traffic, a reset packet is issued to the receiver, which terminates the connection, and prevents the payload from being sent successfully.

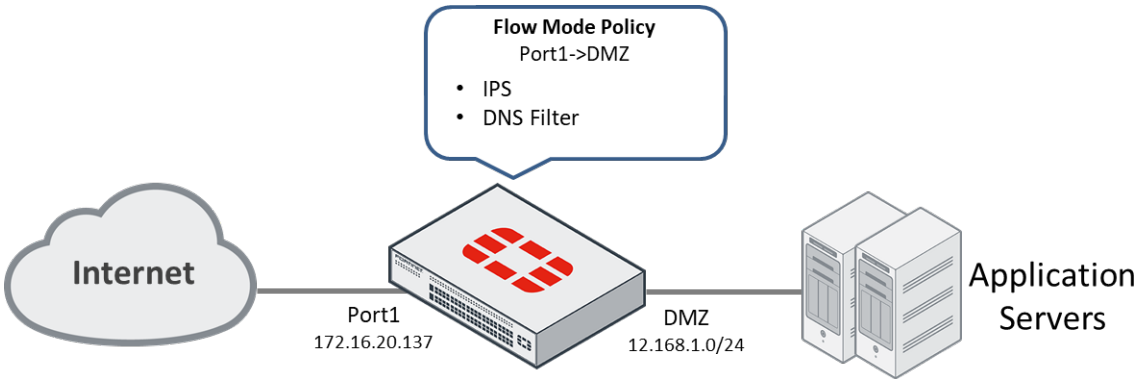
Flow-based inspection identifies and blocks security threats in real time as they are identified. All applicable flow-based security modules are applied simultaneously in one single pass, using Direct Filter Approach (DFA) pattern matching to identify possible attacks or threats. Pattern matching is offloaded and accelerated by CP8 or CP9 processors.

Flow-based inspection typically requires lower processing resources than proxy-based inspection and does not change packets, unless a threat is found and packets are blocked.

### Use case

It is recommended that flow inspection is applied to policies that prioritize traffic throughput, such as allowing connections to be made towards a streaming or file server.

You have an application server which accepts connections from users for the daily quiz show app, HQ. Each HQ session sees 500,000+ participants, and speed is very important because participants have less than 10 seconds to answer the quiz show questions.




In this scenario, a flow inspection policy is recommended to prioritize throughput. The success of the application depends on providing reliable service for large numbers of concurrent users. We will apply an IPS sensor to this policy to protect the server from external DOS attacks.

## Proxy mode inspection

When a firewall policy's inspection mode is set to *proxy*, traffic flowing through the policy will be buffered by the FortiGate for inspection. This means that the packets for a file, email message, or web page will be held by the FortiGate until the entire payload is inspected for violations (virus, spam, or malicious web links). After FortiOS has finished the inspection, the payload is either released to the destination (if traffic is clean) or dropped and replaced with a replacement message (if traffic contains violations).

To optimize inspection, the policy can be configured to block or ignore files or messages that exceed a certain size. To prevent the receiving end user from timing out, client comforting can be applied, which allows small portions of the payload to be sent while it is undergoing inspection.

Proxy mode provides the most thorough inspection of the traffic; however, its thoroughness sacrifices performance, making its throughput slower than that of a flow-mode policy. Under normal traffic circumstances, the throughput difference between a proxy-based and flow-based policy is not significant.

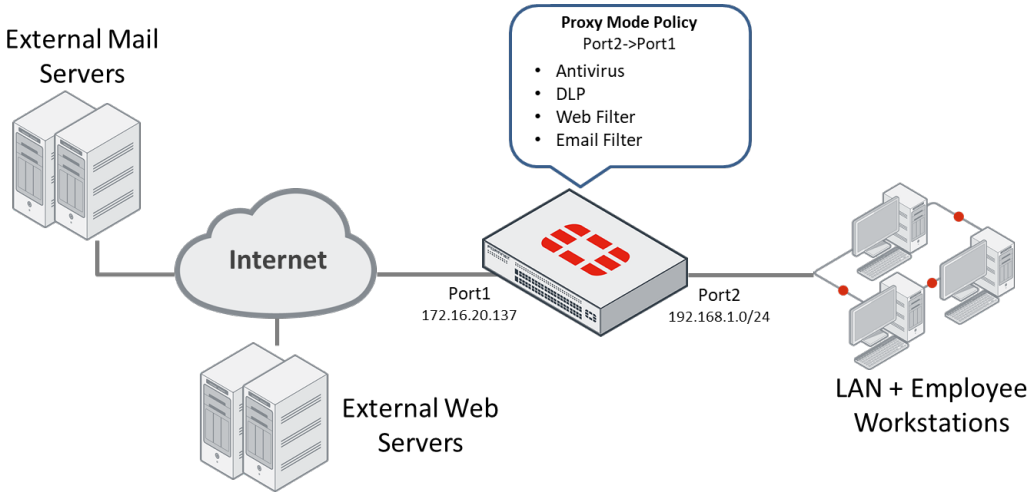
### Use case

We want traffic inspection to be as thorough as possible to avoid any data leaks from exiting the LAN and any malicious content from entering it.

The following scenarios demonstrate common use cases for proxy inspection.

## Scenario 1

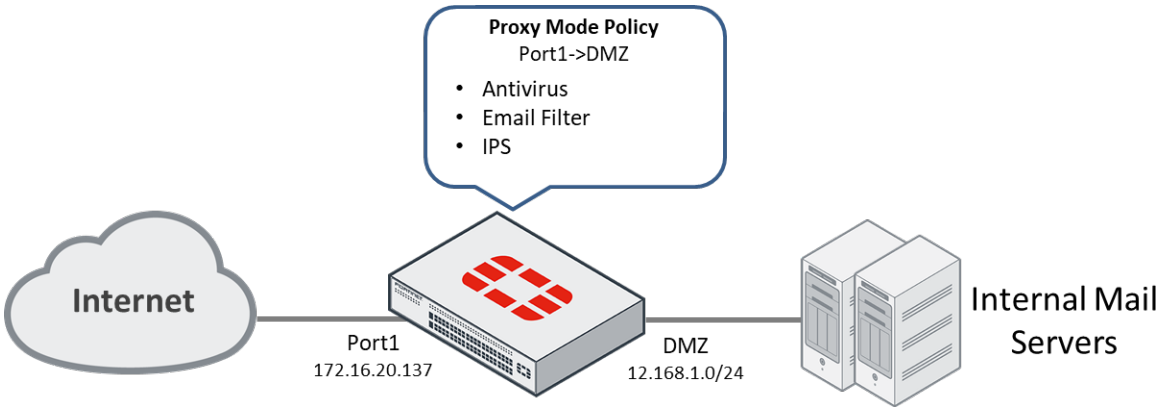
Your organization deals with sensitive data on a regular basis and a data leak would significantly harm your business. At the same time, you wish to protect your employees from malicious content, such as viruses and phishing emails, which could be used to gain access to your network and the sensitive data on your systems.




In this scenario, a proxy inspection policy is recommended to prioritize network security. We want traffic inspection to be as thorough as possible to avoid any data leaks from exiting the LAN and any malicious content from entering it. On this policy, we will apply the virus filter, DLP filter, Web Filter, and email filter all operating in proxy mode.

### Scenario 2

You have a corporate mail server in your domain, which is used by your employees for everyday business activities. You want to protect your employees from phishing emails and viruses. At the same time, you want to also protect your web servers from external attacks.




In this scenario, a proxy inspection policy is recommended to prioritize the safety of employee emails. Applying the antivirus and email filter in this mode allows us to most reliably filter out any malware and spam emails received by the mail servers via SMTP or MAPI. The IPS sensor can be used to prevent DOS attacks on the mail servers.

## Inspection mode feature comparison

The following table shows which UTM profile can be configured on a flow mode or proxy mode inspection policy.

Some UTM profiles are hidden in the GUI and can only be configured using the CLI. To configure profiles in a firewall policy in CLI, enable the `utm-status` setting.

Some profiles might have feature differences between flow-based and proxy-based Inspection. From the GUI and CLI, you can set the *Feature set* option to be *Flow-based* or *Proxy-based* to display only the settings for that mode.

| | Flow Mode Inspection Policy | | Proxy Mode Inspection Policy | | Feature set option |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| UTM Profile | GUI | CLI | GUI | CLI | |
| AntiVirus | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | GUI/CLI |
| Web Filter | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | GUI/CLI |
| DNS Filter | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | N/A |
| Application Control | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | N/A |
| Intrusion Prevention System | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | N/A |
| File Filter | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | GUI/CLI |
| Email Filter | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | GUI/CLI |
| Data Leak Prevention | No | Yes | No | Yes | CLI |
| VoIP | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | N/A |

| UTM Profile | Flow Mode Inspection Policy | | Proxy Mode Inspection Policy | | Feature set option |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | GUI | CLI | GUI | CLI | |
| ICAP | No | No | Yes | Yes | N/A |
| Web Application Firewall | No | No | Yes | Yes | N/A |
| SSL/SSH Inspection | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | N/A |

The following sections outline differences between flow-based and proxy-based inspection for a security profile.

## Feature comparison between Antivirus inspection modes

The following table indicates which Antivirus features are supported by their designated scan modes.

| Part1 | Replacement Message | Content Disarm | Mobile Malware | Virus Outbreak | Sandbox Inspection | NAC Quarantine |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Flow | Yes* | No | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |

*IPS Engine caches the URL and a replacement message is presented after the second attempt.

| Part 2 | Archive Blocking | Emulator | Client Comforting | Infection Quarantine | Heuristics | Treat EXE as Virus |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes (1) | Yes | Yes (2) |
| Flow | Yes | Yes | No | Yes | Yes | Yes (2) |

1. Only available on FortiGate models with HDD or when FortiAnalyzer or FortiGate Cloud is connected and enabled.
2. Only applies to inspection on IMAP, POP3, SMTP, and MAPI protocols.

## Feature comparison between Web Filter inspection modes

The following table indicates which Web Filter features are supported by their designated inspection modes.

| | FortiGuard Category-Based Filter | Category Usage Quota | Override Blocked Categories | Search Engines | Static URL Filter | Rating Option | Proxy Option | Web Profile Override |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Flow | Yes (1) | No | Yes (2) | No | Yes | Yes | Limited (3) | No |

1. Local Category and Remote Category filters do not support the warning and authenticate actions.
2. Local Category and Remote Category filters cannot be overridden.

3. Only HTTP POST Action is supported.

### Feature comparison between Email Filter inspection modes

The following tables indicate which Email Filters are supported by the specified inspection modes for local filtering and FortiGuard-assisted filtering.

| Local Filtering | Banned Word Check | Block/Allow List | HELO/ EHLO DNS Check | Return Address DNS Check | DNSBL/ ORBL Check | MIME Header Check |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Flow | Yes | Yes | No | No | No | Yes |

| FortiGuard-Assisted Filtering | Phishing URL Check | Anti-Spam Block List Check | Submit Spam to FortiGuard | Spam Email Checksum Check | Spam URL Check |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Flow | No | No | No | No | No |

### Feature comparison between DLP inspection modes

The following table indicates which DLP filters are supported by their designated inspection modes.

| | Credit Card Filter | SSN Filter | Regex Filter | File-Type Filter | File-Pattern Filter | Fingerprint Filter | Watermark Filter | Encrypted Filter | File-Size Filter |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Flow | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | No | Yes | Yes* |

*File-size filtering only works if file size is present in the protocol exchange.

# Antivirus

FortiOS offers the unique ability to implement both flow-based and proxy-based antivirus concurrently, depending on the traffic type, users, and locations. Flow-based antivirus offers higher throughput performance.

FortiOS includes two preloaded antivirus profiles:

- *default*
- *wifi-default*

You can customize these profiles, or you can create your own to inspect certain protocols, remove viruses, analyze suspicious files with FortiSandbox, and apply botnet protection to network traffic. Once configured, you can add the antivirus profile to a firewall policy.



This functionality requires a subscription to FortiGuard Antivirus.

## Protocol comparison between antivirus inspection modes

The following table indicates which protocols can be inspected by the designated antivirus scan modes.

| | HTTP | FTP | IMAP | POP3 | SMTP | NNTP | MAPI | CIFS | SSH |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes* | Yes |
| Flow | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | Yes | No |

* Proxy mode antivirus inspection on CIFS protocol has the following limitations:

- Cannot detect infections within some archive files.
- Cannot detect oversized files.

## Other antivirus differences between inspection modes

Starting from 6.4.0, the scan mode option is no longer available for flow-based AV.

This means that AV no longer exclusively uses the default or legacy scan modes when handling traffic on flow-based firewall policies. Instead, AV in flow-based policies uses a hybrid of the two scan modes. Flow AV may use a pre-filtering database for malware detection in some circumstances as opposed to the full AV signature database in others. The scan method is determined by the IPS engine algorithm that is based on the type of file being scanned.

In contrast, proxy mode maintains the scan mode option, which can be toggled between default or legacy mode. In default mode, the WAD daemon uses a stream-based approach, while legacy mode disables this stream-based approach. Proxy default scan-mode uses pre-scanning and stream-based scanning for HTTP traffic.

Stream-based scanning provides the following AV improvements:

- Archive files (ZIP, GZIP, BZIP2, TAR, ISO) that exceed the oversize limit are uncompressed and scanned for infections.
- The contents of large archive files are scanned without having to buffer the entire file.
- Small files are scanned locally by the WAD daemon if only AV scanning is needed in the policy.
- File filtering on HTTP/HTTPS is handled locally by the WAD daemon.

This means that the overall memory usage is optimized when an archive file is scanned, and better security is achieved by scanning archives that would otherwise be bypassed.

However, stream-based scanning has limitations on the more complex features that it can scan. For the following features, traffic will be automatically handed off to the scanunit daemon for scanning (as in the case of legacy mode):

- Heuristic AV scan
- DLP
- Quarantine
- FortiGuard outbreak prevention and external block list
- Content disarm

**To configure the scan mode:**

```
config antivirus profile
    edit <name>
        set feature-set proxy
        ...
        set scan-mode {default | legacy}
    next
end
```

The following topics provide information about antivirus profiles:

- Content disarm and reconstruction for antivirus on page 931
- FortiGuard outbreak prevention on page 934
- External malware block list for antivirus on page 936
- Checking flow antivirus statistics on page 939
- CIFS support on page 942
- Databases on page 930

The following topics provide information about sandbox inspection with antivirus:

- Using FortiSandbox appliance with antivirus on page 946
- Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus on page 956

## Databases

The AntiVirus scanning engine uses a virus signatures database to record the unique attributes of each infection. The AntiVirus scan searches for these signatures and when one is discovered, the FortiGate unit determines if the file is infected and takes action.

All FortiGate units have the normal AntiVirus signature database. Some models have additional databases that you can use. The database you use depends on your network and security needs, and on your FortiGate model.

The extended virus definitions database is the default setting and provides comprehensive antivirus protection. Low end FortiGate models cannot support the extreme database and the `use-extreme-db` setting is only available on models that support the extreme database.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Extended** | This is the default setting. This database includes currently spreading viruses, as determined by the FortiGuard Global Security Research Team, plus recent viruses that are no longer active. These viruses may have been spreading within the last year but have since nearly or completely disappeared. |
| **Extreme** | Includes the extended database, plus a large collection of zoo viruses. These are viruses that have not spread in a long time and are largely dormant. Some zoo viruses might rely on operating systems and hardware that are no longer widely used. |

**To change the antivirus database:**

```
config antivirus settings
    set use-extreme-db {enable | disable}
end
```

# Content disarm and reconstruction for antivirus

Content disarm and reconstruction (CDR) allows the FortiGate to sanitize Microsoft documents and PDF (disarm) by removing active content such as hyperlinks, embedded media, javascript, macros, and so on from the Office document files without affecting the integrity of its textual content (reconstruction).

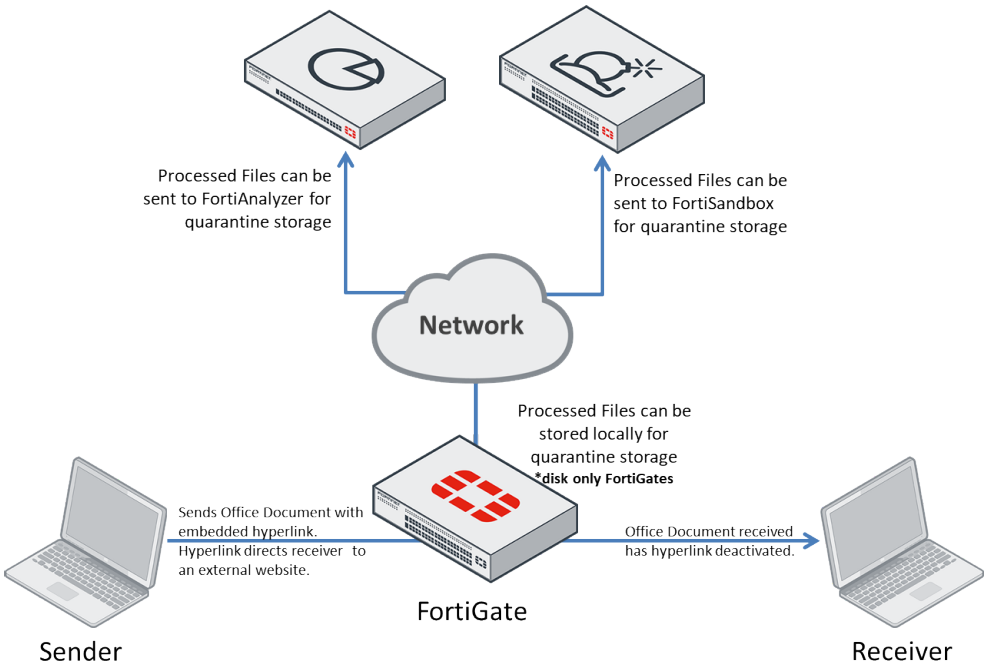
This feature allows network admins to protect their users from malicious Office document files.

Files processed by CDR can have the original copy quarantined on the FortiGate, allowing admins to observe them. These original copies can also be obtained in the event of a false positive.

## Support and limitations

- CDR can only be performed on Microsoft Office document and PDF files.
- Local disk CDR quarantine is only possible on FortiGate models that contain a hard disk.
- CDR is only supported on HTTP, SMTP, POP3, IMAP.
  - SMTP splice and client-comfort mode is not supported.
- CDR does not work on flow-based inspection modes.
- CDR can only work on files in .ZIP type archives.

## Network topology example

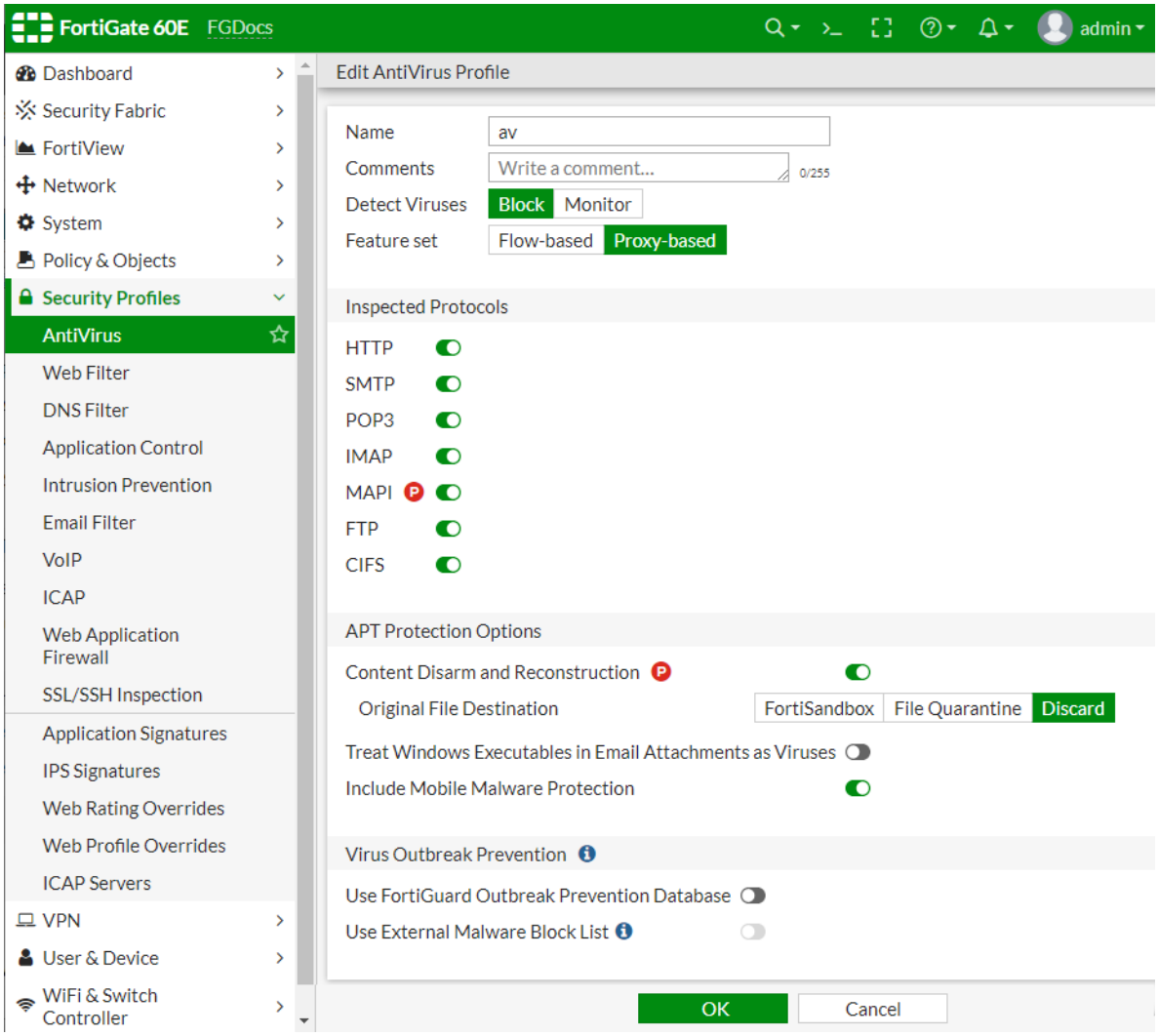



## Configuring the feature

In order to configure antivirus to work with CDR, you must enable CDR on your antivirus profile, set the quarantine location, and then fine-tune the CDR detection parameters.

**To enable CDR on your antivirus profile:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.
3. Enable the toggle for *Content Disarm and Reconstruction* under *APT Protection Options*.




**To set a quarantine location:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.

3. Select a quarantine location from the available options: *Discard*, *File Quarantine*, or *FortiSandbox*.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Discard** | The default setting, which discards the original document file. |
| **File Quarantine** | Saves the original document file to disk (if possible) or a connected FortiAnalyzer based on the FortiGate's log settings, visible through *Config Global > Config Log FortiAnalyzer Setting*. |
| **FortiSandbox** | Saves the original document file to a connected FortiSandbox. |

4. Click *Apply*.

**To fine-tune CDR detection parameters in the CLI:**

- Select which active content to detect/process:
  By default, all active office and PDF content types are enabled. To fine-tune CDR to ignore certain content, you must disable that particular content parameter. The example below configures the CDR to ignore Microsoft Office macros.

```
config antivirus profile
    edit av
        config content-disarm
            set ?
                original-file-destination    Destination to send original file if active
content is removed.
                office-macro             Enable/disable stripping of macros in Microsoft
Office documents.
                office-hylink            Enable/disable stripping of hyperlinks in
Microsoft Office documents.
                office-linked            Enable/disable stripping of linked objects in
Microsoft Office documents.
                office-embed             Enable/disable stripping of embedded objects in
Microsoft Office documents.
                office-dde               Enable/disable stripping of Dynamic Data
Exchange events in Microsoft Office documents.
                office-action            Enable/disable stripping of PowerPoint action
events in Microsoft Office documents.
                pdf-javacode             Enable/disable stripping of JavaScript code in
PDF documents.
                pdf-embedfile            Enable/disable stripping of embedded files in
PDF documents.
                pdf-hyperlink            Enable/disable stripping of hyperlinks from PDF
documents.
                pdf-act-gotor            Enable/disable stripping of PDF document
actions that access other PDF documents.
                pdf-act-launch           Enable/disable stripping of PDF document
actions that launch other applications.
                pdf-act-sound            Enable/disable stripping of PDF document
actions that play a sound.
                pdf-act-movie            Enable/disable stripping of PDF document
actions that play a movie.
                pdf-act-java             Enable/disable stripping of PDF document
actions that execute JavaScript code.
                pdf-act-form             Enable/disable stripping of PDF document
actions that submit data to other targets.
                cover-page               Enable/disable inserting a cover page into the
```

```
disarmed document.
                detect-only             Enable/disable only detect disarmable files, do
not alter content.
            set office-macro disable
        end
    next
end
```

- Detect but do not modify active content:
  By default, CDR will disarm any detected documents containing active content. To prevent CDR from disarming documents, you can set it to operate in detect-only mode. To do this, the option *detect-only* must be enabled.

```
config antivirus profile
    edit av
        config content-disarm
            set detect-only enable
        end
    next
end
```

- Enable/disable the CDR cover page:
  By default, a cover page will be attached to the file's content when the file has been processed by CDR. To disable the cover page, the `cover-page` parameter needs to be disabled.

```
config antivirus profile
    edit av
        config content-disarm
            set cover-page disable
        end
    next
end
```

## FortiGuard outbreak prevention

FortiGuard Virus Outbreak Protection Service (VOS) allows the FortiGate antivirus database to be subsidized with third-party malware hash signatures curated by FortiGuard. The hash signatures are obtained from FortiGuard's Global Threat Intelligence database. The antivirus database queries FortiGuard with the hash of a scanned file. If FortiGuard returns a match, the scanned file is deemed to be malicious.

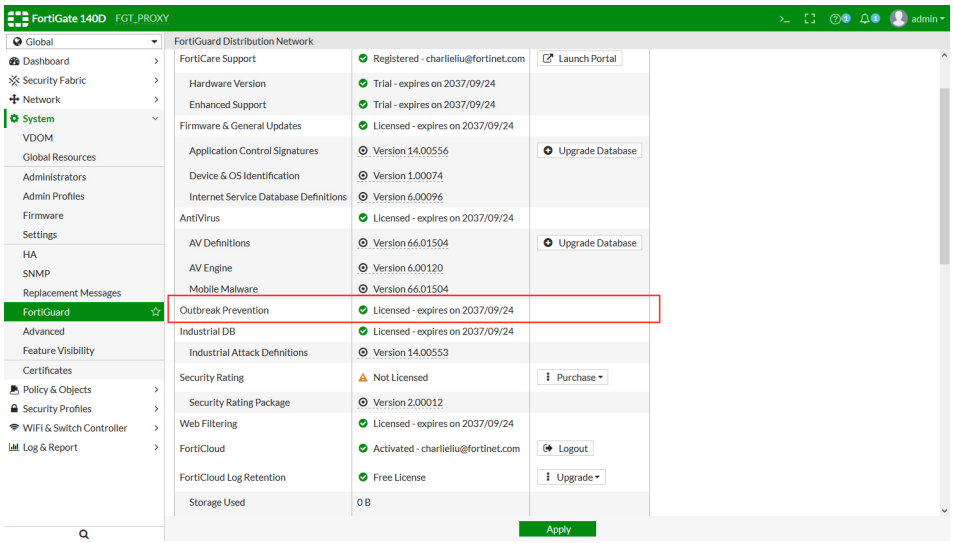
FortiGuard VOS can be used in both proxy-based and flow-based policy inspections across all supported protocols. However, there is limited support in flow-based AV.



The FortiGate must be registered with a valid FortiGuard outbreak prevention license.

**To verify FortiGuard antivirus license information:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* and locate the *Outbreak Prevention* section in the table.




2. See the instructions in the video, How to Purchase or Renew FortiGuard Services, if required.

**To enable FortiGuard outbreak prevention:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Edit an antivirus profile, or create a new one.
3. Under *Virus Outbreak Protection*, enable *Use FortiGuard Outbreak Prevention Database*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To verify FortiGuard antivirus license information:**

```
# diagnose debug rating
Locale       : english

Service      : Web-filter
Status       : Enable
License      : Contract

Service      : Antispam
Status       : Disable

Service      : Virus Outbreak Prevention
Status       : Enable
License      : Contract

-=- Server List (Tue Feb 19 16:36:15 2019) -=-

IP                    Weight    RTT Flags  TZ    Packets  Curr Lost Total Lost
   Updated Time
192.168.100.185         -218      2 DI     -8        113          0          0 Tue Feb
19 16:35:55 2019
```

**To enable all scanunit debug categories:**

```
# diagnose sys scanunit debug all
Set meta-category: all(0xffffffff)
Enabled categories(0xffffffff): daemon job quarantine analytics outbreak-prevention dlp
antispam file-filter
```

```
# diagnose debug enable
# su 4739 open
su 4739 req vfid 1 id 1 ep 0 new request, size 313, policy id 1, policy type 0
su 4739 req vfid 1 id 1 ep 0 received; ack 1, data type: 0
su 4739 job 1 request info:
su 4739 job 1   client 10.1.100.11:39412 server 172.16.200.44:80
su 4739 job 1   object_name 'zhvo_test.com'
su 4739 file-typing NOT WANTED options 0x0 file_filter no
su 4739 enable databases 0b (core mmdb extended)
su 4739 job 1 begin http scan
su 4739 scan file 'zhvo_test.com' bytes 68
su 4739 job 1 outbreak-prevention scan, level 0, filename 'zhvo_test.com'
su 4739 scan result 0
su 4739 job 1 end http scan
su 4739 job 1 inc pending tasks (1)
su 4739 not wanted for analytics: analytics submission is disabled (m 0 r 0)
su 4739 job 1 suspend
su 4739 outbreak-prevention recv error
su 4739 ftgd avquery id 0 status 1
su 4739 job 1 outbreak-prevention infected entryid=0
su 4739 report AVQUERY infection priority 1
su 4739 insert infection AVQUERY SUCCEEDED loc (nil) off 0 sz 0 at index 0 total infections
1 error 0
su 4739 job 1 dec pending tasks 0
su 4739 job 1 send result
su 4739 job 1 close
su 4739 outbreak-prevention recv error
```

## External malware block list for antivirus

The external malware block list is a new feature introduced in FortiOS 6.2.0, which falls under the umbrella of outbreak prevention.

This feature provides another means of supporting the AV Database by allowing users to add their own malware signatures in the form of MD5, SHA1, and SHA256 hashes.

This feature provides a mechanism for antivirus to retrieve an external malware hash list from a remote server and polls the hash list every *n* minutes for updates.

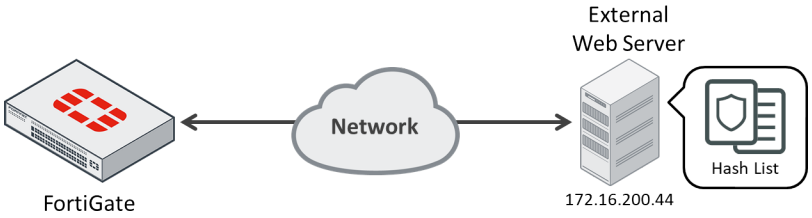
### Support and limitations

Malware detection using the external malware block list can be used in both proxy-based and flow-based policy inspections.

Just like FortiGuard outbreak prevention, external dynamic block list is not supported in AV quick scan mode.

Using different types of hashes simultaneously may slow down the performance of malware scanning. For this reason, users are recommended to only using one type of hash (either MD5, SHA1, or SHA256), not all three simultaneously.

## Network topology example




## Configuring the feature

**To configure antivirus to work with external block list:**

1. Create the malware hash list
   The malware hash list follows a strict format in order for its contents to be valid. Malware hash signature entries must be separated into each line. A valid signature needs to follow the format below:

```
# MD5 Entry with hash description
aa67243f746e5d76f68ec809355ec234  md5_sample1

# SHA1 Entry with hash description
a57983cb39e25ab80d7d3dc05695dd0ee0e49766  sha1_sample2

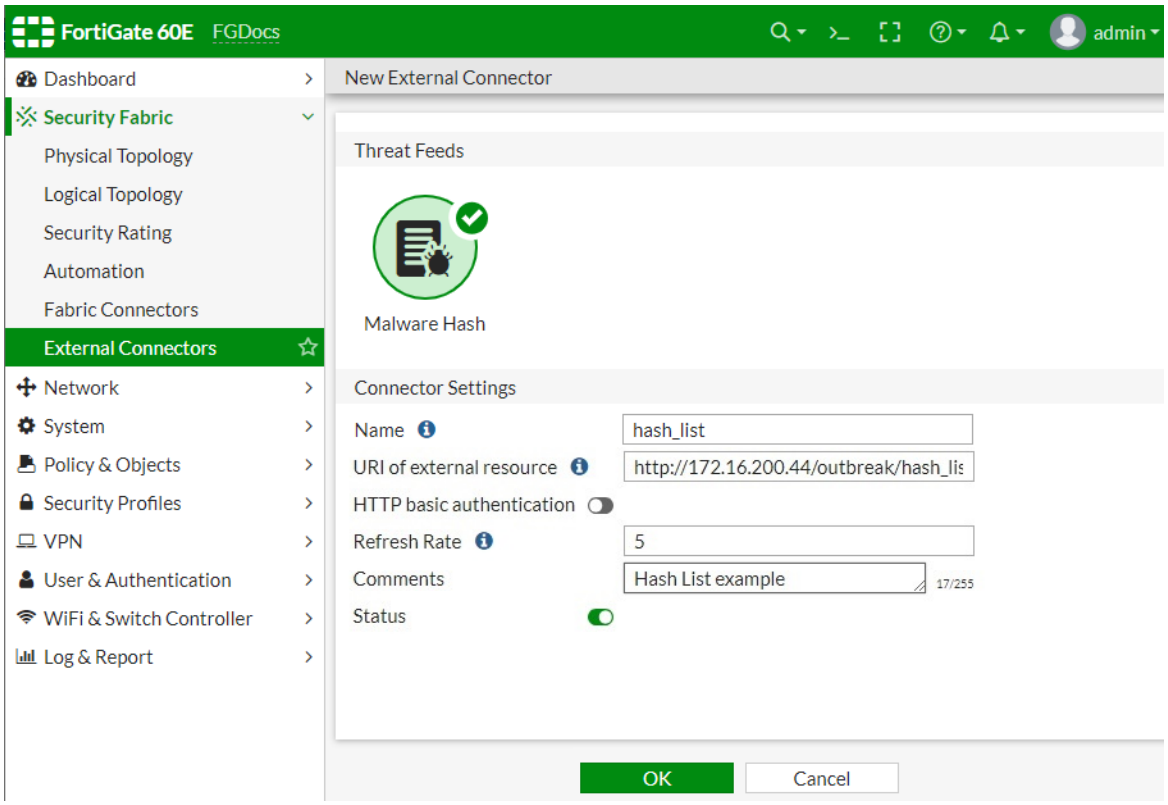
# SHA256 Entry with hash description
ae9bc0b4c5639d977d720e4271da06b50f7c60d1e2070e9c75cc59ab30e49379  sha256_sample1

# Entry without hash description
0289b0d967cb7b1fb1451339c7b9818a621903090e0020366ab415c549212521

# Invalid entries
7688499dc71b932feb126347289c0b8a_md5_sample2
7614e98badca10b5e2d08f8664c519b7a906fbd5180ea5d04a82fce9796a4b87sha256_sample3
```

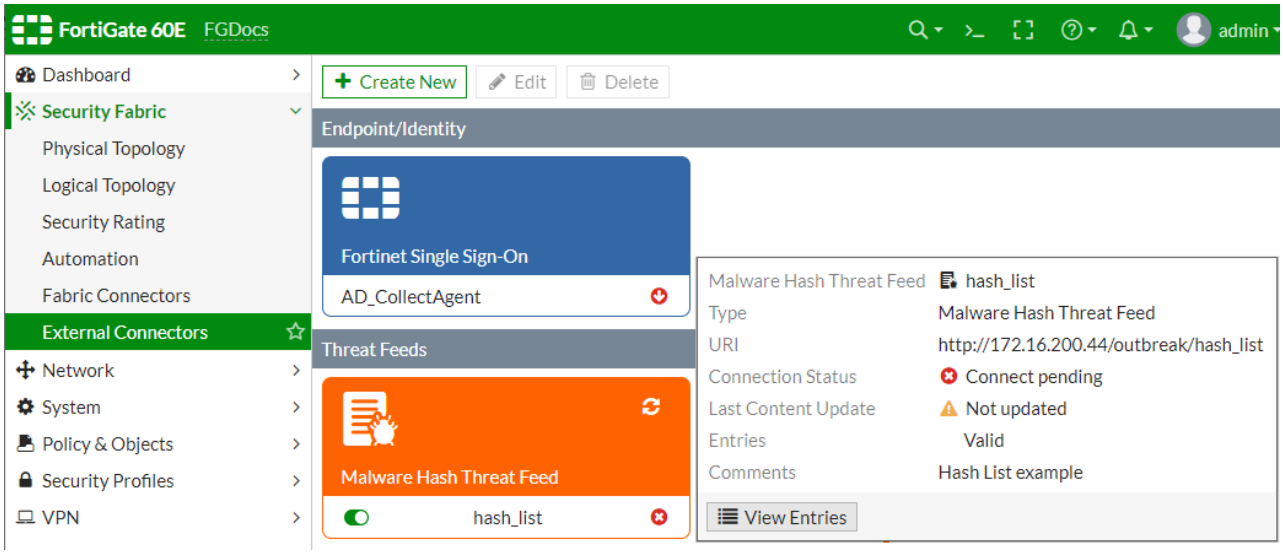
2. Configure the external malware block list source:
   a. Go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select *Malware Hash*.

**c.** Fill out the fields as shown. The URI must point to the malware hash list on the remote server.

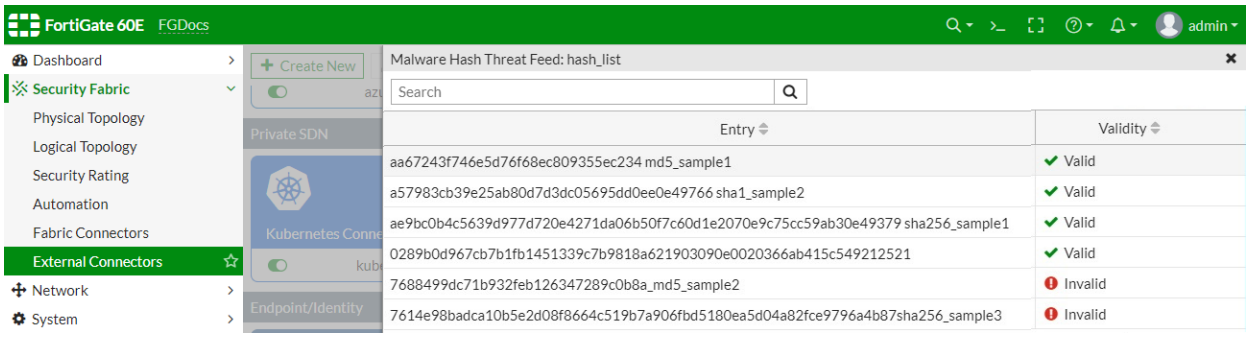



**d.** Click *OK*.
The malware hash source object is now created.

**3.** To view entries inside the malware block list, hover the pointer over the malware hash card and click the *View Entries* button.




The malware hash threat feed displays (*hash_list*):




4. Enable the external malware block list in the antivirus profile:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit <av_profile>
        config outbreak-prevention
            set external-blocklist enable
        end
    next
end
```

Antivirus is now ready to use the external malware block list.

### Diagnostics and debugging

Check if the `scanunit` daemon has updated itself with the external hashes:

```
FGT_PROXY # config global
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose sys scanunit malware-list list
md5 'aa67243f746e5d76f68ec809355ec234' profile 'hash_list' description 'md5_sample1'
sha1 'a57983cb39e25ab80d7d3dc05695dd0ee0e49766' profile 'hash_list' description 'sha1_
sample2'
sha256 '0289b0d967cb7b1fb1451339c7b9818a621903090e0020366ab415c549212521' profile 'hash_
list' description ''
sha256 'ae9bc0b4c5639d977d720e4271da06b50f7c60d1e2070e9c75cc59ab30e49379' profile 'hash_
list' description 'sha256_sample1'
```

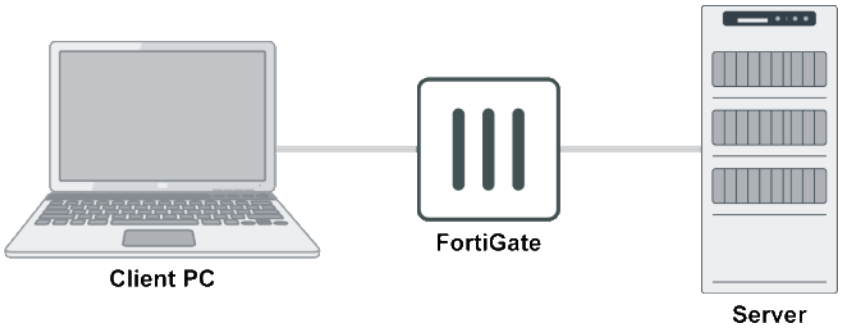
## Checking flow antivirus statistics

This feature provides a flow antivirus statistics check, and an API for SNMP to get AV statistics.

Two CLI commands are used to show and clear the antivirus statistics:

```
diagnose ips av stats show
diagnose ips av stats clear
```

This example uses the following topology:




**To check flow antivirus statistics:**

1. Create an antivirus profile:

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av-test"
        config http
            set options scan avmonitor
        end
        config ftp
            set options scan quarantine
        end
    next
end
```

2. Enable the profile on a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "policy1"
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set fsso disable
        set av-profile "av-test"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "custom-deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

3. On the client PC, download the EICAR Standard Anti-Virus Test File via HTTP.
4. Check the antivirus statistics on the FortiGate. As the action is set to monitor for HTTP, `HTTP virus detected` is increased by 1:

```
# diagnose ips av stats show
AV stats:
HTTP virus detected: 1
HTTP virus blocked: 0
SMTP virus detected: 0
SMTP virus blocked: 0
```

```
POP3 virus detected: 0
POP3 virus blocked: 0
IMAP virus detected: 0
IMAP virus blocked: 0
NNTP virus detected: 0
NNTP virus blocked: 0
FTP virus detected: 0
FTP virus blocked: 0
SMB virus detected: 0
SMB virus blocked: 0
```

5. On the client PC, download the EICAR file via FTP.
6. Check the antivirus statistics on the FortiGate. As the action is set to quarantine for FTP, `FTP virus detected` and `FTP virus blocked` are both increased by 1:

```
# diagnose ips av stats show
AV stats:
HTTP virus detected: 1
HTTP virus blocked: 0
SMTP virus detected: 0
SMTP virus blocked: 0
POP3 virus detected: 0
POP3 virus blocked: 0
IMAP virus detected: 0
IMAP virus blocked: 0
NNTP virus detected: 0
NNTP virus blocked: 0
FTP virus detected: 1
FTP virus blocked: 1
SMB virus detected: 0
SMB virus blocked: 0
```

7. Check the antivirus statistics using snmpwalk:

```
root:~# snmpwalk -c public -v 1 10.1.100.6 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.1.1 = Counter32: 2  (fgAvVirusDetected)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.2.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvVirusBlocked)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.3.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvHTTPVirusDetected)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.4.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.5.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.6.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.7.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.8.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.9.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.10.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.11.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvFTPVirusDetected)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.12.1 = Counter32: 1  (fgAvFTPVirusBlocked)
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.13.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.14.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.15.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.16.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.17.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.18.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.19.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.20.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.21.1 = Counter32: 0
iso.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.8.2.1.1.22.1 = Counter32: 0
```

8. Optionally, reset the antivirus statistics to zero:

```
diagnose ips av stats clear
```

## CIFS support

Antivirus scanning on Common Internet File System (CIFS) traffic is supported in flow-based and proxy-based inspection. The file filter profile handles the configuration of file filtering on CIFS. The antivirus profile handles the antivirus configuration for CIFS scanning.

File filtering for CIFS is performed by inspecting the first 4 KB of the file to identify the file's magic number. If a match occurs, CIFS file filtering prevents the CIFS command that contains that file from running. The file filter functions differently for un-encrypted and encrypted CIFS traffic:

- For un-encrypted CIFS traffic, the standalone file filter works in flow and proxy mode.
- For encrypted CIFS traffic, the CIFS profile must be enabled in the firewall policy because the SMB server's credential settings are still be configured in CIFS profile. Using the standalone file filter only works in proxy mode.

For a CIFS profile to be available for assignment in a policy, the policy must use proxy inspection mode. See Proxy mode inspection on page 924 for details. Note that in proxy inspection mode, special condition archive files (encrypted, corrupted, mailbomb, and so on) marked by the antivirus engine are blocked automatically.

### Configure file-type filtering and antivirus scanning on CIFS traffic

**To configure file-type filtering and antivirus scanning on CIFS traffic:**

1. Configure a CIFS domain controller on page 942
2. Configure a CIFS profile on page 942
3. Configure an antivirus profile on page 944

### Configure a CIFS domain controller

The domain controller must be configured when CIFS traffic is encrypted. The configuration tells the FortiGate the network location of the domain controller and the superuser credentials.

**To configure the CIFS domain controller:**

```
config credential-store domain-controller
    edit "SERVER_NAME"
        set domain-name "EXAMPLE.COM"
        set username "admin-super"
        set password **********
        set ip 172.16.201.40
    next
end
```

### Configure a CIFS profile

To create a CIFS profile, configure the server credential type and create a file filter profile.

### Set the CIFS server credential type

The CIFS server credential type can be `none`, `credential-replication`, or `credential-keytab`.

#### none

The CIFS profile assumes the CIFS traffic is unencrypted. This is the default value.

```
config cifs profile
    edit "cifs"
        set server-credential-type none
    next
end
```

#### credential-replication

To decrypt CIFS traffic, FortiOS obtains the session key from the domain controller by logging in to the superuser account. The domain controller must be configured.

```
config cifs profile
    edit "cifs"
        set server-credential-type credential-replication
        set credential-store domain-controller "SERVER_NAME"
    next
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| domain-controller <string> | The previously configured domain to decrypt CIFS traffic for. |

#### credential-keytab

To decrypt CIFS traffic, FortiOS uses a series of keytab values. This method is used when the SMB connection is authenticated by Kerberos. Keytab entries must be configured, and are stored in FortiOS in plaintext.

```
config cifs profile
    edit "cifs"
        set server-credential-type credential-keytab
        config server-keytab
            edit "keytab1"
                set keytab
"BQIAAABFAAEAC0VYQU1QTEUuQ09NAAdleGFtcGxlAAAAAVUmAlwBABIAILdV5P6NXT8RrTvapcMJQxDYCjRQiD0Bzxh
wS9h0VgyM"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| keytab <keytab> | Base64 encoded keytab file containing the credentials of the server. |

### Configure CIFS file filtering

Multiple rules can be added to a file filter profile. See File filter on page 1044.

**To configure a file filter for CIFS traffic:**

```
config file-filter profile
    edit "cifs"
        set comment "block zip files on unencrypted cifs traffic"
        set feature-set flow
        set replacemsg-group ''
        set log enable
        config rules
            edit "rule1"
                set protocol cifs
                set action block
                set direction any
                set password-protected any
                set file-type zip
            next
        end
    next
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| comment <string> | A brief comment describing the entry. |
| feature-set {flow \| proxy} | Flow or proxy mode feature set (default = `flow`). |
| replacemsg-group <string> | Replacement message group. |
| log {enable \| disable} | Enable/disable file filter logging (default = `enable`). |
| scan-archive-contents [enable \| disable] | Enable/disable scanning of archive contents (default = `enable`). |
| protocol {http ftp smtp imap pop3 mapi cifs ssh} | Filter based on the specified protocol(s). |
| action {log-only \| block} | The action to take for matched files:<br>• `log-only`: Allow the content and write a log message (default).<br>• `block`: Block the content and write a log message. |
| direction {incoming \| outgoing \| any} | Match files transmitted in the session's originating (`incoming`) and/or reply (`outgoing`) direction (default = `any`). |
| password-protected [yes \| any] | Match only password-protected files (`yes`) or any file (default = `any`). |
| file-type <file_type> | The file types to be matched. See Supported file types on page 1048 for details. |

## Configure an antivirus profile

The antivirus profile handles the antivirus configuration for CIFS scanning.

**To configure an antivirus profile:**

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av"
        ...
        config cifs
```

```
            set options {scan avmonitor quarantine}
            set archive-block {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested
mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled}
            set archive-log {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested
mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled}
            set emulator {enable | disable}
            set outbreak-prevention {disabled | files | full-archive}
        end
    next
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| options {scan avmonitor quarantine} | Enable/disable CIFS antivirus scanning, monitoring, and quarantine. |
| archive-block {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled} | Select the archive types to block:<br>• `encrypted`: Block encrypted archives.<br>• `corrupted`: Block corrupted archives.<br>• `partiallycorrupted`: Block partially corrupted archives.<br>• `multipart`: Block multipart archives.<br>• `nested`: Block nested archives.<br>• `mailbomb`: Block mail bomb archives.<br>• `fileslimit`: Block exceeded archive files limit.<br>• `timeout`: Block scan timeout.<br>• `unhandled`: Block archives that FortiOS cannot open. |
| archive-log {encrypted corrupted partiallycorrupted multipart nested mailbomb fileslimit timeout unhandled} | Select the archive types to log:<br>• `encrypted`: Log encrypted archives.<br>• `corrupted`: Log corrupted archives.<br>• `partiallycorrupted`: Log partially corrupted archives.<br>• `multipart`: Log multipart archives.<br>• `nested`: Log nested archives.<br>• `mailbomb`: Log mail bomb archives.<br>• `fileslimit`: Log exceeded archive files limit.<br>• `timeout`: Log scan timeout.<br>• `unhandled`: Log archives that FortiOS cannot open. |
| emulator {enable \| disable} | Enable/disable the virus emulator (default = `enable`). |
| outbreak-prevention {disabled \| files \| full-archive} | Enable the virus outbreak prevention service:<br>• `disabled`: Disabled (default).<br>• `files`: Analyze files as sent, not the content of archives.<br>• `full-archive`: Analyze files, including the content of archives. |

## Log samples

File-type detection events generated by CIFS profiles are logged in the `utm-cifs` log category. Antivirus detection over the CIFS protocol generates logs in the `utm-virus` category. See the FortiOS Log Message Reference for more information.

**Logs generated by CIFS profile file filter:**

```
date=2019-03-28 time=10:39:19 logid="1800063001" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794757 msg="File was detected by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="passthrough" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33372 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="1154"
filename="virus\\test.png" filtername="2" filetype="png"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:39:12 logid="1800063001" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794751 msg="File was detected by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="passthrough" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33370 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="81975"
filename="virus\\screen.png" filtername="2" filetype="png"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:33:55 logid="1800063000" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794434 msg="File was blocked by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="blocked" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33352 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="28432"
filename="filetypes\\mpnotify.exe" filtername="3" filetype="exe"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:33:45 logid="1800063000" type="utm" subtype="cifs" eventtype="cifs-
filefilter" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553794424 msg="File was blocked by file
filter." direction="incoming" action="blocked" service="CIFS" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=33348 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=16 profile="cifs" filesize="96528"
filename="filetypes\\winmine.exe" filtername="3" filetype="exe"
```

**Logs generated by AV profile for infections detected over CIFS:**

```
date=2019-04-09 time=15:19:02 logid="0204008202" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="outbreak-prevention" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554848342519005401
msg="Blocked by Virus Outbreak Prevention service." action="blocked" service="SMB"
sessionid=177 srcip=10.1.100.11 dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=37444 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2"
srcintfrole="wan" dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="outbreak\\zhvo_test.com" quarskip="File-was-not-quarantined."
virus="503e99fe40ee120c45bc9a30835e7256fff3e46a" dtype="File Hash"
filehash="503e99fe40ee120c45bc9a30835e7256fff3e46a" filehashsrc="fortiguard" profile="av"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=50 craction=2 crlevel="critical"

date=2019-04-09 time=15:18:59 logid="0211008192" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="infected" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554848339909808987 msg="File is
infected." action="blocked" service="SMB" sessionid=174 srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.44 srcport=37442 dstport=445 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" policyid=1 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="sample\\eicar.com" quarskip="File-was-not-quarantined." virus="EICAR_TEST_FILE"
dtype="Virus" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ve?vn=EICAR_TEST_FILE" virusid=2172 profile="av"
analyticscksum="275a021bbfb6489e54d471899f7db9d1663fc695ec2fe2a2c4538aabf651fd0f"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=50 craction=2 crlevel="critical"
```

## Using FortiSandbox appliance with antivirus

Antivirus can use FortiSandbox to supplement its detection capabilities. In real-world situations, networks are always under the threat of zero-day attacks.

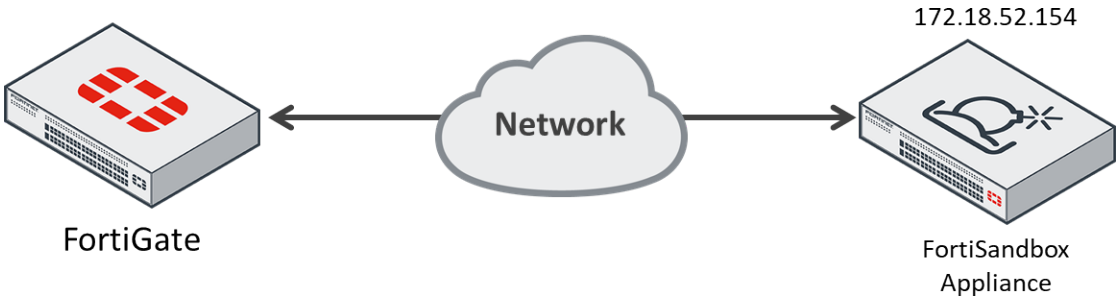
Antivirus can submit potential zero-day viruses to FortiSandbox for inspection. Based on FortiSandbox's analysis, the FortiGate can supplement its own antivirus database with FortiSandbox's database to detect files determined as malicious or risky by FortiSandbox. This helps FortiGate antivirus detect zero-day viruses and malware whose signatures are not found in the FortiGate antivirus database.

For more information, see FortiSandbox on page 134.

## Support and limitations

- FortiSandbox can be used with antivirus in both proxy-based and flow-based inspection modes.
- With FortiSandbox enabled, full scan mode antivirus can do the following:
  - Submit only suspicious files to FortiSandbox for inspection.
  - Submit every file to FortiSandbox for inspection.
  - Do not submit anything.
- Quick scan mode antivirus cannot submit suspicious files to FortiSandbox. It can only do the following:
  - Submit every file to FortiSandbox for inspection.
  - Do not submit anything.

## Network topology example




## Configuring the feature

To configure antivirus to work with an external block list, the following steps are required:

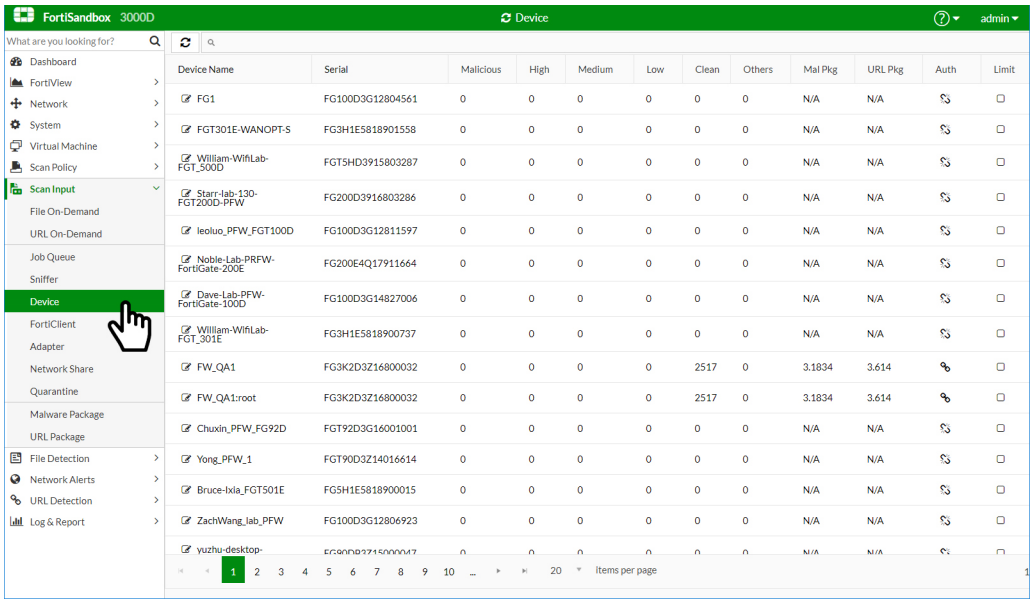
1. Enable FortiSandbox on the FortiGate.
2. Authorize FortiGate on the FortiSandbox.
3. Enable FortiSandbox inspection.
4. Enable use of the FortiSandbox database.

**To enable FortiSandbox on the FortiGate:**

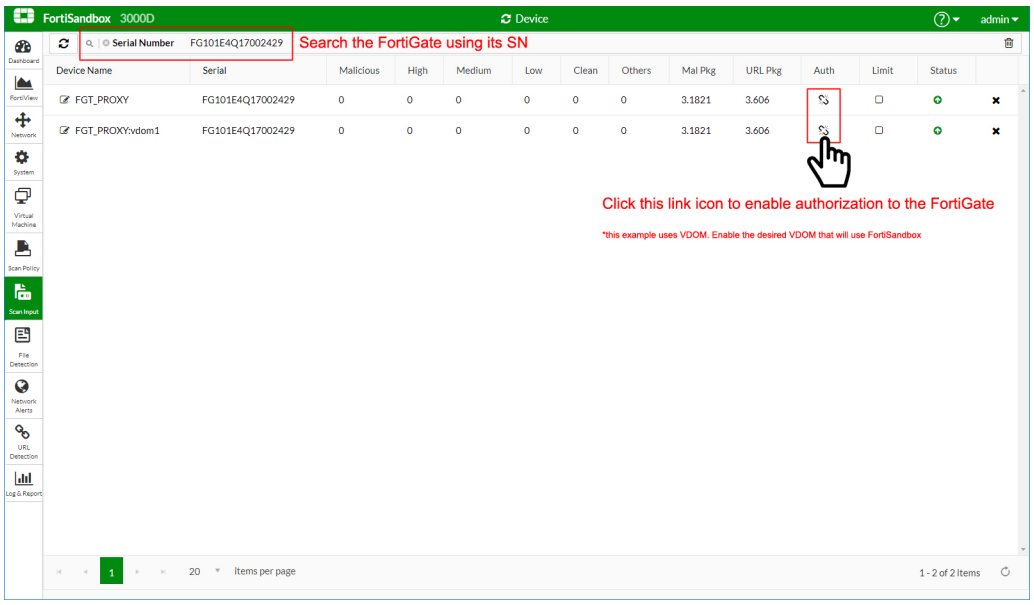
1. Go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. For status, click *Enable*.
3. For *Type*, click *On-Premise*.
4. Enter the IP address of the FortiSandbox, and enter an optional *Notifier email*.
5. At this point, clicking *Test connectivity* returns an unreachable status. This is expected, because the FortiGate is not yet authorized by FortiSandbox.
6. Click *OK* to save the settings.

### To authorize FortiGate on the FortiSandbox:

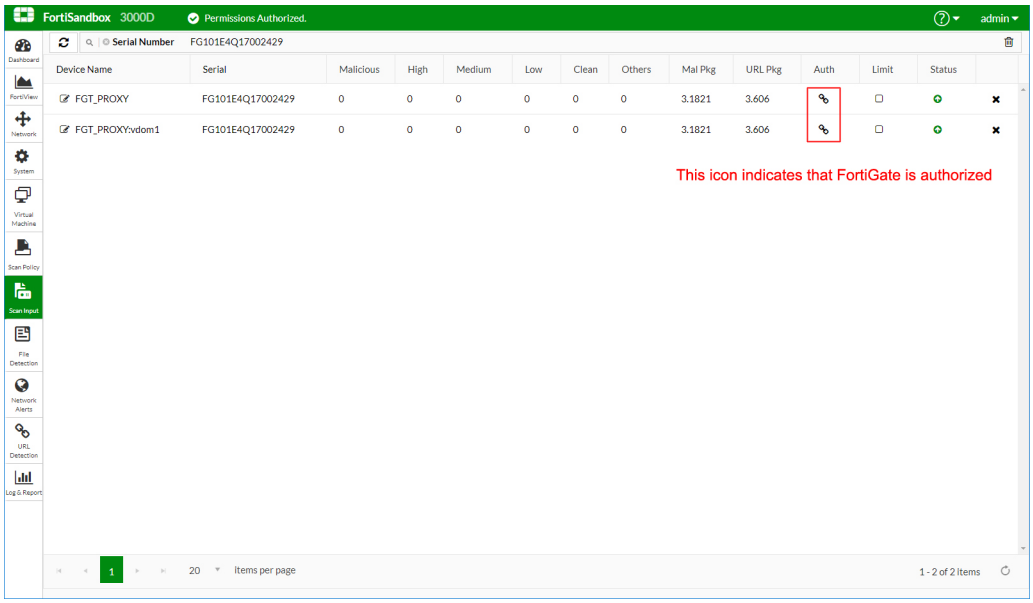
1. In the FortiSandbox Appliance GUI, go to *Scan Input* > *Device*.



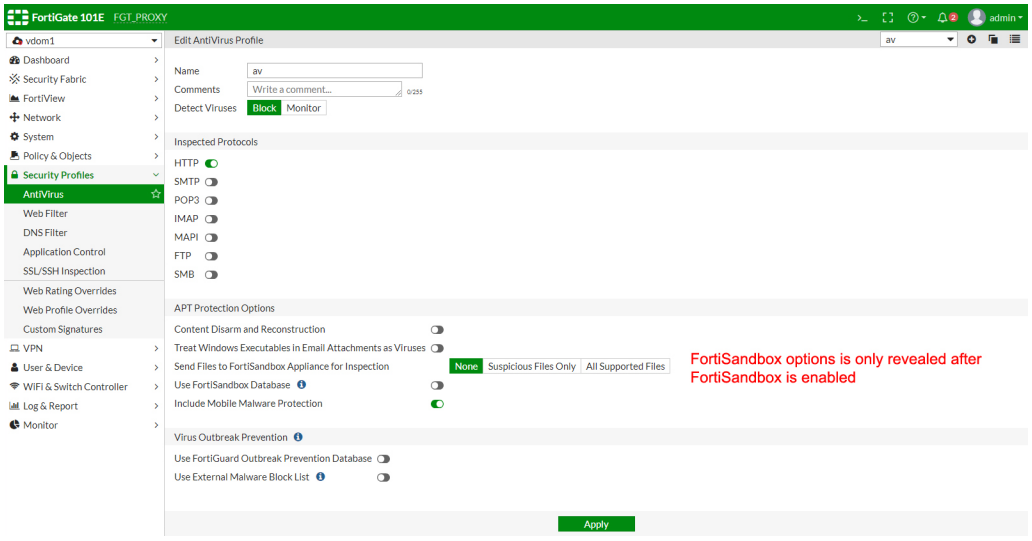

2. Use the FortiGate serial number to quickly locate the desired FortiGate and select the *link* icon to authorize the FortiGate.
3. Enable the desired VDOM in the same manner.




4. The *link* icon changes from an open to closed link. This indicates that the FortiSandbox has authorized this FortiGate.

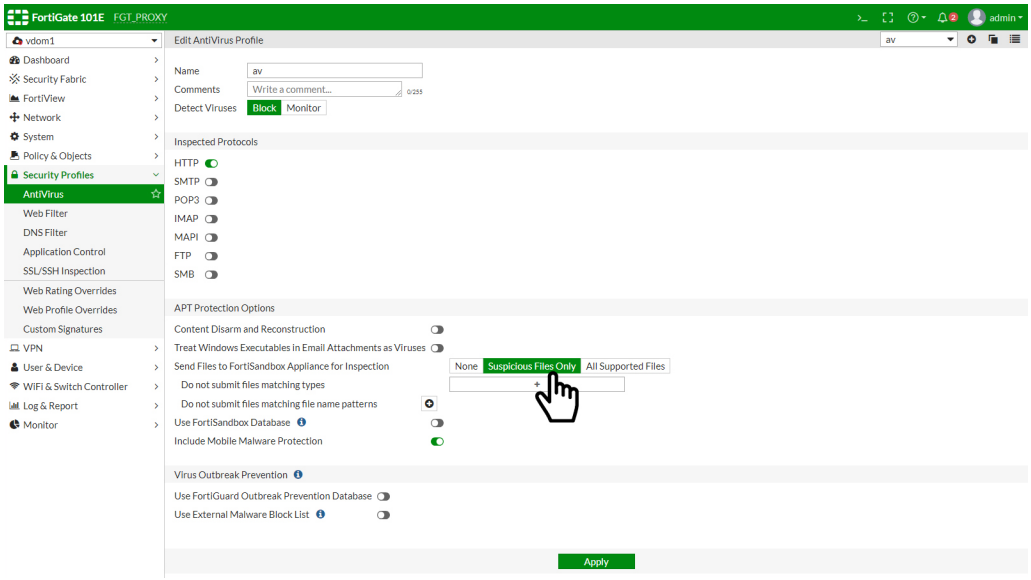



5. In the FortiGate GUI, go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
6. Click *Test connectivity*. The FortiGate is now authorized and the status displays as *Connected*.
7. FortiSandbox options are now displayed in the *AV Profile* page.

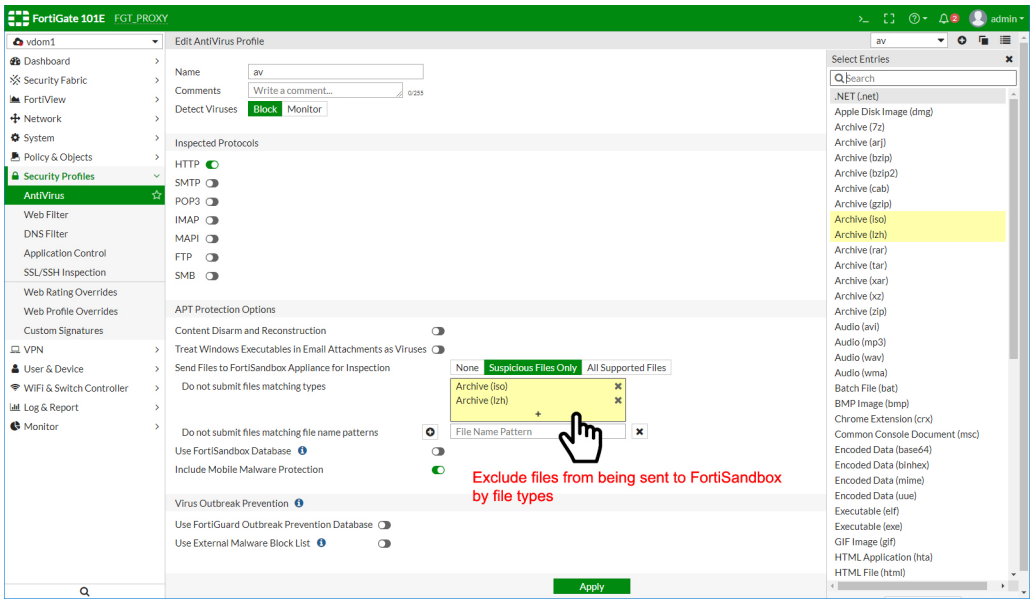


**To enable FortiSandbox inspection:**

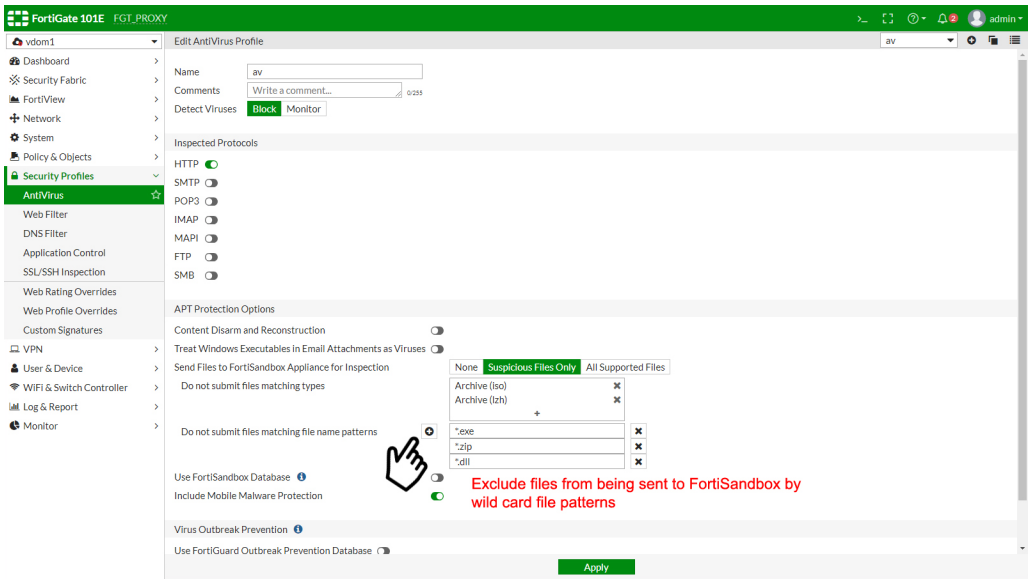
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Enable FortiSandbox inspection by selecting either *Suspicious Files Only* or *All Supported Files*.




3. Files can be excluded from being sent to FortiSandbox based on their file types by choosing from a list of supported file types.



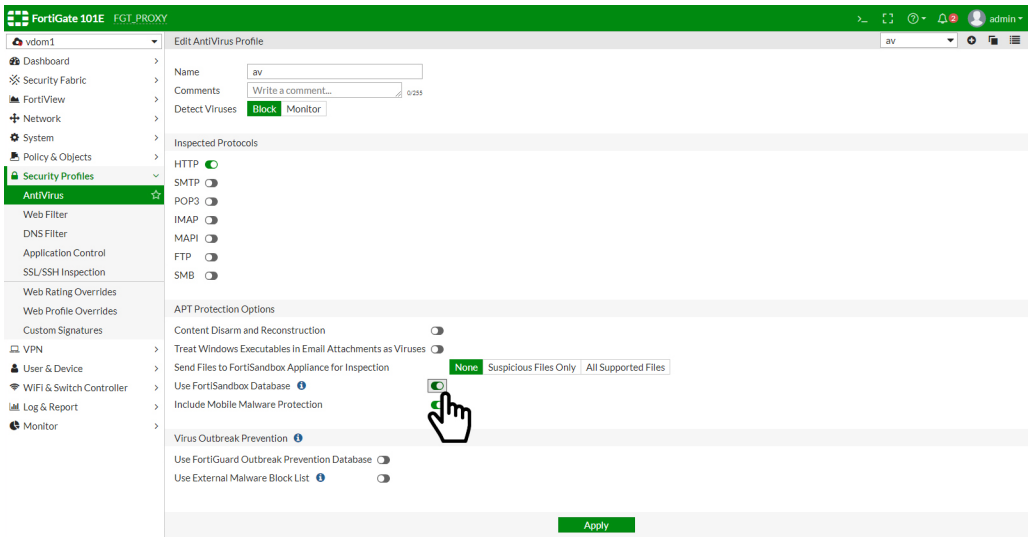
4. Files can also be excluded from being sent to FortiSandbox by using wildcard patterns.




5. Click *Apply*.

**To enable use of the FortiSandbox database:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*
2. Enable *Use FortiSandbox Database*.




3. Click *Apply*.

## Diagnostics and Debugging

### Debug on the FortiGate side

- Update daemon:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose debug application quarantined -1
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose debug enable

quar_req_fsa_file()-890: fsa ext list new_version (1547781904)
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb5, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb5-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root
ca Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=337, type=4) for vdom-vdom1, len=99, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=99
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=337, type=4) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb2, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb2, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb3 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=338, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=338, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb3, xfer_
```

```
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb3, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb5 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=340, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=340, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb5, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb5, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb2) received a packet: len=69, type=1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[337] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb2).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 337 deleted
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb4 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=339, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=339, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb4, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb4, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=336, type=4) for vdom-root, len=98, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=98
...
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb1, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb1-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root
ca Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=2, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=2, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb1, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb1, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb1) received a packet: len=767, type=1
quar_store_analytics_report()-590: Analytics-report return
file=/tmp/fsb/83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18.json.gz,
buf_sz=735
quar_store_analytics_report()-597: The request
'83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18' score is 1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[2] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb1).
```

```
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 2 deleted
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_stop_connection()-1006: close connection to server(fortisandbox-fsb1)
[193] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[805] ssl_free: Done
[185] __ssl_cert_ctx_free: Done
[815] ssl_ctx_free: Done
[796] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
```

- Appliance FortiSandbox diagnostics:

```
FGT_PROXY # config global
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application quarantined 1
Total remote&local devices: 8, any task full? 0
System have disk, vdom is enabled, mgmt=1, ha=2
xfer-fas is enabled: ips-archive dlp-archive, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=0.0.0.0/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=0, hmac_alg=0
    License=0, content_archive=0, arch_pause=0.

global-fas is disabled.
forticloud-fsb is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb1 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb2 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb3 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb4 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb5 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb6 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
global-faz is disabled.
global-faz2 is disabled.
global-faz3 is disabled.
```

- Checking FortiSandbox analysis statistics:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application quarantine 7
Total: 0

Statistics:
        vfid: 0, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
```

```
        vfid: 3, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 4, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0

FGT_PROXY (global) #
```

### Debug on the FortiSandbox side

- Appliance FortiSandbox OFTP debug:

```
# diagnose-debug device FG101E4Q17002429

[2019/01/31 00:48:21] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17002429), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 suspicious stats START_TIME: 1548290749
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 suspicious stats END_TIME: 1548895549
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 opd_data_len=37 clean=2 detected=2 risk_low=0
risk_med=0 risk_high=0 sus_limit=0
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 ENTERING->HANDLE_SEND_FILE.
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 ENTERING->HANDLE_SEND_FILE.
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->FGT->VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->FGT->VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->IMG_VERSION: 6.2.0.0818
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->IMG_VERSION: 6.2.0.0818
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] INCOMING->FGT: FG101E4Q17002429, VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] INCOMING->FGT: FG101E4Q17002429, VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->TYPE: 0
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->TYPE: 1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->VERSION: 3 . 1795
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->VERSION: 3 . 595
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 VDOM: root
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 ENTERING->HANDLE_SEND_FILE.
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 suspicious stats START_TIME: 1548290749
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->FGT->VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 suspicious stats END_TIME: 1548895549
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->IMG_VERSION: 6.2.0.0818
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] INCOMING->FGT: FG101E4Q17002429, VDOM: vdom1
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 INCOMING->TYPE: 4
[2019/01/31 00:48:21] FG101E4Q17002429 opd_data_len=37 clean=0 detected=0 risk_low=0
risk_med=0 risk_high=0 sus_limit=0
[2019/01/31 00:48:22] FG101E4Q17002429 RETRIEVE->PKG: TYPE: av, ENTRY_VERSION: 1795,
PACKAGE_PATH: /Storage/malpkg/pkg/avsig/avsigrel_1795.pkg
[2019/01/31 00:48:22] FG101E4Q17002429 RETRIEVE->PKG: TYPE: url, ENTRY_VERSION: 595,
PACKAGE_PATH: /Storage/malpkg/pkg/url/urlrel_595.pkg.gz
[2019/01/31 00:48:29] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17002429), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:48:32] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17002429), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:48:59] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17002429), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
[2019/01/31 00:49:03] LOGIN->SUCCEED: Serial(FG101E4Q17002429), HOSTNAME(FGT_PROXY)
```

# Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus

## Feature overview

FortiSandbox Cloud allows users to take advantage of FortiSandbox features without having to purchase, operate, and maintain a physical appliance. It works the same way as the physical FortiSandbox appliance.

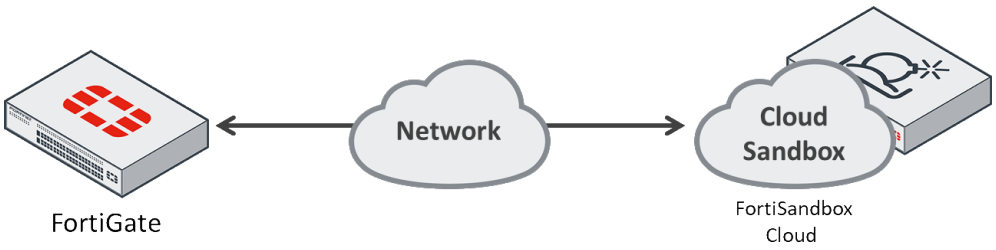
FortiSandbox Cloud allows you to control the region where your traffic is sent to for analysis. This allows you to meet your country's compliances regarding data storage locations.

For more information, see FortiSandbox on page 134.

## Support and limitations

- In FortiOS 6.2 and later, users do not require a FortiGate Cloud account to use FortiSandbox Cloud.
- Without a valid AVDB license, FortiGate devices are limited to 100 FortiGate Cloud submissions per day.
- Unlimited FortiGate Cloud submissions are allowed if the FortiGate has a valid AVDB license.
  - There is a limit on how many submissions are sent per minute.
  - The per-minute submission rate is based on the FortiGate model.
- FortiSandbox can be used with antivirus in both proxy-based and flow-based policy inspection modes.
- With FortiSandbox enabled, full scan mode antivirus can do the following:
  - Submit only suspicious files to FortiSandbox for inspection.
  - Submit every file to FortiSandbox for inspection.
  - Do not submit anything.
- Quick scan mode antivirus cannot submit suspicious files to FortiSandbox. It can only do the following:
  - Submit every file to FortiSandbox for inspection.
  - Do not submit anything.

## Network topology example



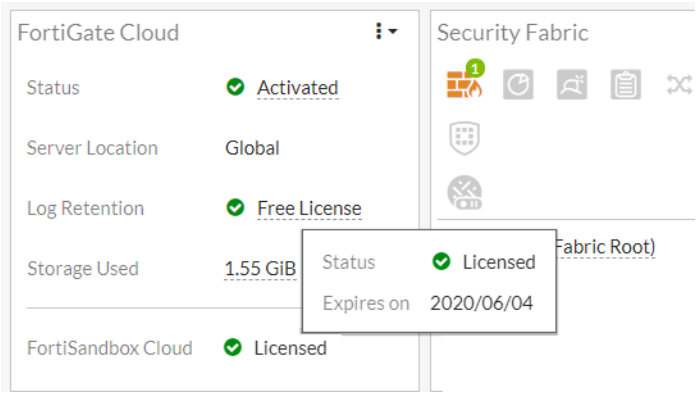

## Configuring the feature

To configure antivirus to work with an external block list, the following steps are required:

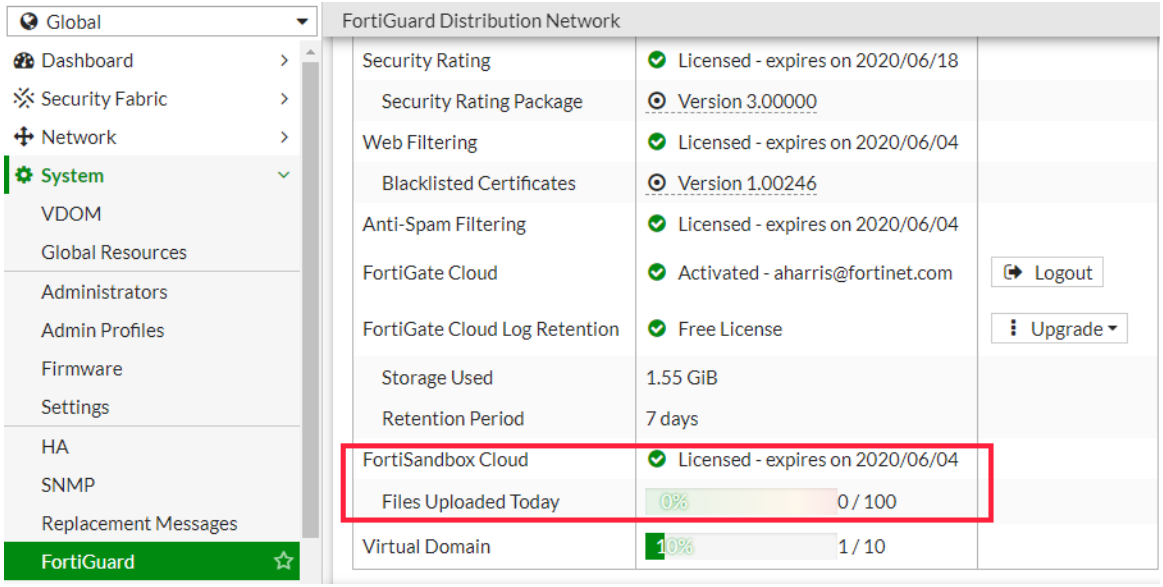
1. Through FortiCare, register the FortiGate device and purchase a FortiGuard antivirus license
2. Enable FortiSandbox Cloud on the FortiGate
3. Enable FortiSandbox inspection
4. Enable the use of the FortiSandbox database

**To obtain or renew an AVDB license:**

1. Please see the video How to Purchase or Renew FortiGuard Services for FortiGuard antivirus license purchase instructions.
2. Once a FortiGuard license has been purchased or activated, users will be provided with a paid FortiSandbox Cloud license.
   a. Go to *Global* > *Dashboard* > *Status* to view the FortiSandbox Cloud license indicator.




   b. Users can also view this indicator at *Global* > *System* > *FortiGuard*.

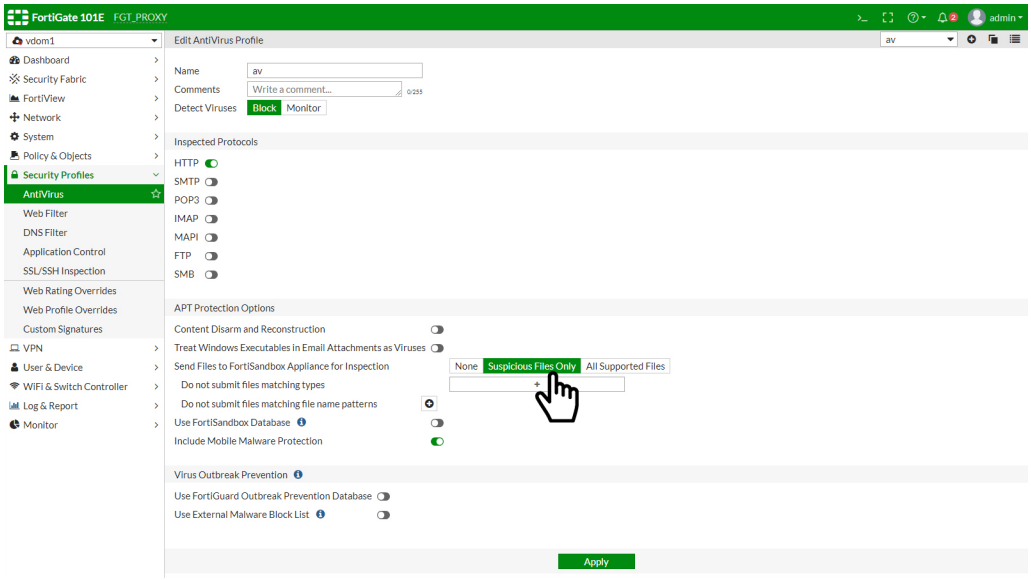



**To enable FortiSandbox Cloud on the FortiGate:**

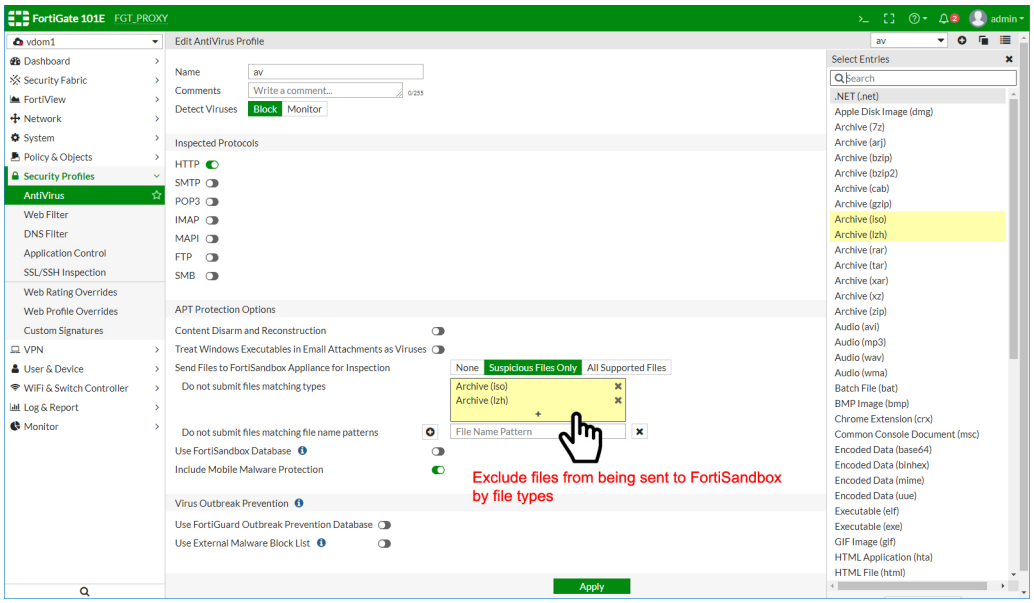
1. Go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors* and double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. For status, click *Enable*.
3. For *Type*, click *FortiSandbox Cloud* and choose a region from the dropdown list.
4. Click *OK* to save the settings.
5. When the FortiGate is connected to the FortiSandbox Cloud, FortiSandbox's current database version is displayed.

**To enable FortiSandbox inspection:**

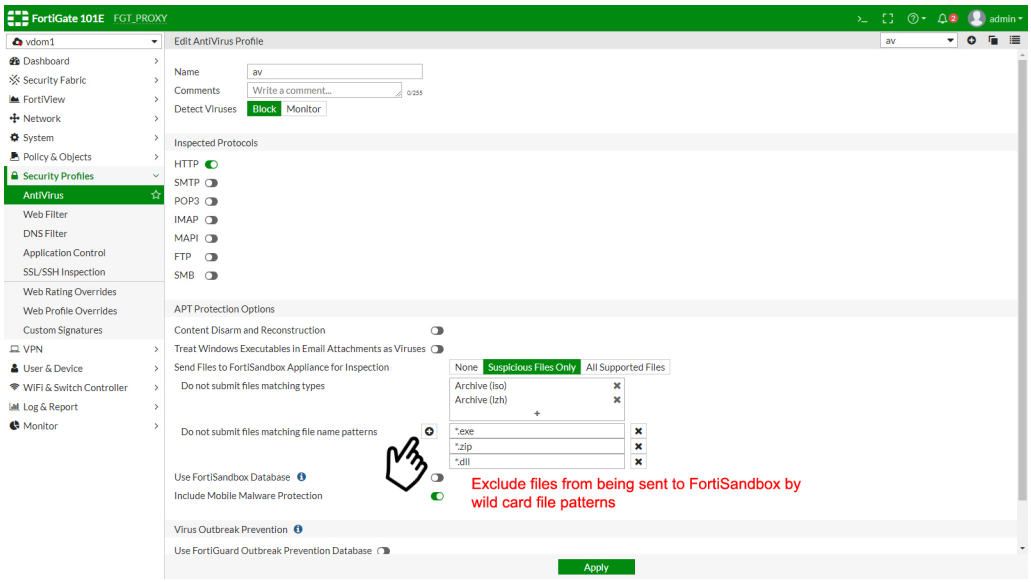
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Enable FortiSandbox inspection by selecting either *Suspicious Files Only* or *All Supported Files*.




3. Files can be excluded from being sent to FortiSandbox based on their file types by choosing from a list of supported file types.



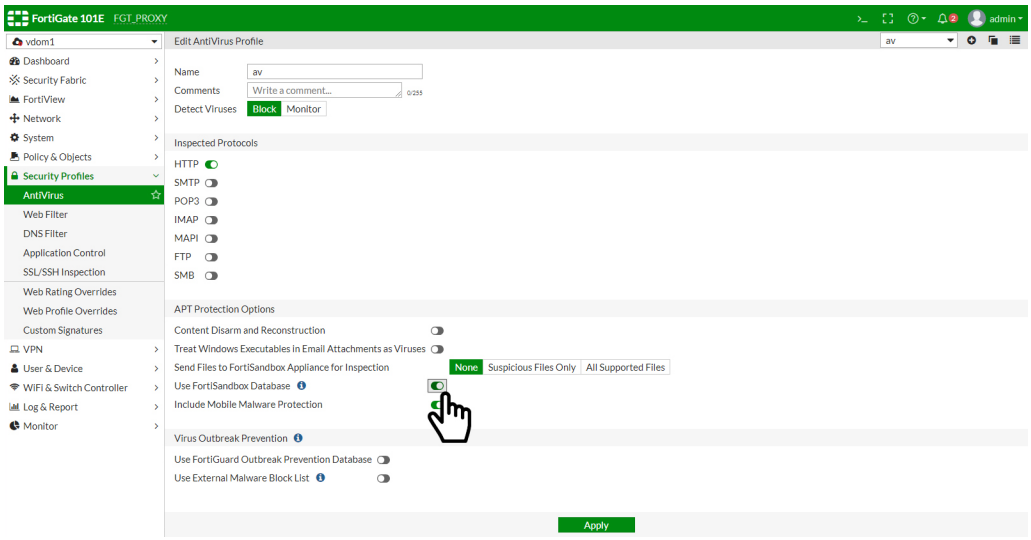
4. Files can also be excluded from being sent to FortiSandbox by using wildcard patterns.




5. Click *Apply*.

### To enable the use of the FortiSandbox database:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *AntiVirus*.
2. Enable *Use FortiSandbox Database*.




3. Click *Apply*.

## Diagnostics and debugging

- Checking FortiGate Cloud controller status:

```
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose test application forticldd 2
Server: log-controller, task=0/10, watchdog is off
Domain name: logctrl1.fortinet.com
```

```
Address of log-controller: 1
        172.16.95.168:443
        Statistics: total=3, discarded=1, sent=2, last_updated=12163 secs ago
http connection: is not in progress
        Current address: 172.16.95.168:443
        Calls: connect=9, rxtx=12
Current tasks number: 0
Account: name=empty, status=0, type=basic
Current volume: 0B
Current tasks number: 0
Update timer fires in 74240 secs
```

- Checking Cloud APT server status:

```
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose test application forticldd 3
Debug zone info:
    Domain:
    Home log server: 0.0.0.0:0
    Alt log server: 0.0.0.0:0
    Active Server IP:      0.0.0.0
    Active Server status:  down
    Log quota:      0MB
    Log used:       0MB
    Daily volume:   0MB
    fams archive pause: 0
    APTContract : 1                          <====
    APT server: 172.16.102.51:514            <====
    APT Altserver: 172.16.102.52:514         <====
    Active APTServer IP:      172.16.102.51  <====
    Active APTServer status:  up             <====
```

- FortiSandbox Cloud diagnostics:

```
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose test application quarantine 1
Total remote&local devices: 4, any task full? 0
System have disk, vdom is enabled, mgmt=3, ha=1
xfer-fas is enabled: ips-archive dlp-archive, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=0.0.0.0/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=1, hmac_alg=0
    License=0, content_archive=0, arch_pause=0.

global-fas is disabled.
forticloud-fsb is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.16.102.51/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=1, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb1 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb2 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb3 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb4 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb5 is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb6 is disabled.
global-faz is disabled.
global-faz2 is disabled.
global-faz3 is disabled.
```

- Checking FortiSandbox Cloud submission statistics:

```
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose test application quarantined 2
Quarantine daemon state:
QUAR mem: mem_used=0, mem_limit=97269, threshold=72951
dropped(0 by quard, 0 by callers)
pending-jobs=0, tot-mem=0, last_ipc_run=12353, check_new_req=1
alloc_job_failed=0, job_wrong_type=0, job_wrong_req_len=0, job_invalid_qfd=0
tgz_create_failed=0, tgz_attach_failed=0, qfd_mmap_failed=0, buf_attached=0
xfer-fas:
    ips: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    quar: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    archive: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    analytics: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0, local_dups=0
    analytics stats: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    last_rx=0, last_tx=0, error_rx=0, error_tx=0
    max_num_tasks=10000, num_tasks=0, mem_used=0, ttl_drops=0, xfer_status=0
forticloud-fsb:
    ips: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    quar: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    archive: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0
    analytics: total=0, handled=0, accepted=0, local_dups=0
num_buffer=0(per-minute:10) last_min_count=0 last_vol_count=0 next_vol_reset_tm='Sun Feb
17 00:00:00 2019
'
    analytics stats: total=24, handled=24, accepted=24
    last_rx=1224329, last_tx=1224329, error_rx=2, error_tx=0
    max_num_tasks=200, num_tasks=0, mem_used=0, ttl_drops=0, xfer_status=0
```

- Checking FortiSandbox analysis statistics:

```
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose test application quarantine 7
Total: 0

Statistics:
        vfid: 0, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 3, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0
        vfid: 4, detected: 0, clean: 0, risk_low: 0, risk_med: 0, risk_high: 0, limit_
reached:0

FGT_FL_FULL (global) #
```

- Update Daemon debug:

```
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose debug application quarantined -1
FGT_FL_FULL (global) # diagnose debug enable

quar_req_fsa_file()-890: fsa ext list new_version (1547781904)
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb5, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb5-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root
ca Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
```

```
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=337, type=4) for vdom-vdom1, len=99, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=99
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=337, type=4) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb2, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb2, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb3 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=338, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=338, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb3, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb3, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb5 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=340, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=340, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb5, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb5, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb2 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb2) received a packet: len=69, type=1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[337] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb2).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 337 deleted
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb4 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=339, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=339, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb4, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb4, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
```

```
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=336, type=4) for vdom-root, len=98, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=98
...
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_fsb_handle_quar()-1439: added a req-6 to fortisandbox-fsb1, vfid=1, oftp-name=[].
__quar_start_connection()-908: start server fortisandbox-fsb1-172.18.52.154 in vdom-1
[103] __ssl_cert_ctx_load: Added cert /etc/cert/factory/root_Fortinet_Factory.cer, root
ca Fortinet_CA, idx 0 (default)
[551] ssl_ctx_create_new_ex: SSL CTX is created
[578] ssl_new: SSL object is created
upd_cfg_extract_av_db_version[378]-version=06002000AVDB00201-00066.01026-1901301530
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000NIDS02403-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000APDB00103-00006.00741-1512010230
upd_cfg_extract_ids_db_version[437]-version=06002000ISDB00103-00014.00537-1901300043
upd_cfg_extract_ibdb_botnet_db_version[523]-version=06002000IBDB00101-00004.00401-
1901281000
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=0
__quar_build_pkt()-408: build req(id=2, type=6) for vdom-vdom1, len=93, oftp_name=
__quar_send()-470: dev buffer -- pos=0, len=93
quar_remote_send()-520: req(id=2, type=6) read response, dev=fortisandbox-fsb1, xfer_
status=1, buflen=12
quar_remote_recv_send()-770: dev-fortisandbox-fsb1, oevent=4, nevent=1, xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv_send()-731: dev=fortisandbox-fsb1 xfer-status=1
quar_remote_recv()-662: dev(fortisandbox-fsb1) received a packet: len=767, type=1
quar_store_analytics_report()-590: Analytics-report return
file=/tmp/fsb/83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18.json.gz,
buf_sz=735
quar_store_analytics_report()-597: The request
'83bb2d9928b03a68b123730399b6b9365b5cc9a5a77f8aa007a6f1a499a13b18' score is 1
quar_remote_recv()-718: file-[2] is accepted by server(fortisandbox-fsb1).
quar_put_job_req()-332: Job 2 deleted
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
__get_analytics_stats()-19: Received an ANALYTICS_STATS request, vfid: 0
__quar_req_handler()-127: Request 0 was handled successfully
quar_monitor_connection_func()-978: monitoring dev fortisandbox-fsb1
quar_stop_connection()-1006: close connection to server(fortisandbox-fsb1)
[193] __ssl_data_ctx_free: Done
[805] ssl_free: Done
[185] __ssl_cert_ctx_free: Done
[815] ssl_ctx_free: Done
[796] ssl_disconnect: Shutdown
```

- Appliance FortiSandbox diagnostics:

```
FGT_PROXY # config global
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application quarantined 1
```

```
Total remote&local devices: 8, any task full? 0
System have disk, vdom is enabled, mgmt=1, ha=2
xfer-fas is enabled: ips-archive dlp-archive, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=0.0.0.0/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=0, hmac_alg=0
    License=0, content_archive=0, arch_pause=0.

global-fas is disabled.
forticloud-fsb is disabled.
fortisandbox-fsb1 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb2 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb3 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb4 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb5 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
fortisandbox-fsb6 is enabled: analytics, realtime=yes, taskfull=no
    addr=172.18.52.154/514, source-ip=0.0.0.0, keep-alive=no.
    ssl_opt=3, hmac_alg=0
global-faz is disabled.
global-faz2 is disabled.
global-faz3 is disabled.
```

# Web filter

Web filtering restricts or controls user access to web resources and can be applied to firewall policies.

In FortiOS, there are three main components of web filtering:

- Web content filter: blocks web pages containing words or patterns that you specify.
- URL filter: uses URLs and URL patterns to block or exempt web pages from specific sources, or block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox.
- FortiGuard Web Filtering service: provides many additional categories you can use to filter web traffic.

These components interact with each other to provide maximum control over what users on your network can view and protect your network from many internet content threats.

Web filters are applied in the following order:

1. URL filter
2. FortiGuard Web Filtering
3. Web content filter
4. Web script filter
5. Antivirus scanning

FortiOS includes three preloaded web filter profiles:

- *default*
- *monitor-all* (monitors and logs all URLs visited, flow-based)
- *wifi-default* (default configuration for offloading WiFi traffic)

You can customize these profiles, or you can create your own to manage network user access.

Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Web Filtering.

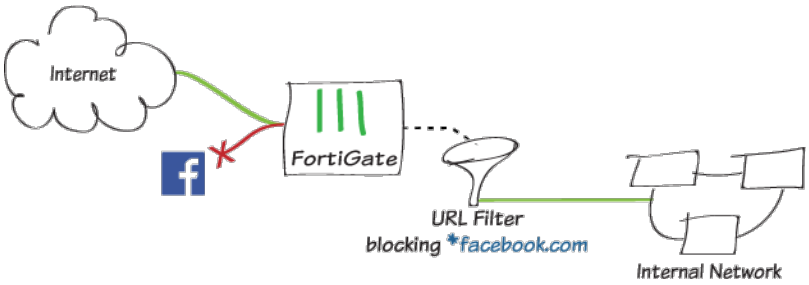
The following topics provide information about web filters:


- URL filter on page 965
- FortiGuard filter on page 971
- Credential phishing prevention on page 978
- Usage quota on page 980
- Web content filter on page 983
- Advanced filters 1 on page 986
- Advanced filters 2 on page 990
- External resources for web filter on page 995
- Flow-based web filtering on page 1004
- URL certificate blocklist on page 1005


## URL filter

URL filter is also called static URL filter. By adding specific URLs with patterns containing text and regular expressions, FortiGate can allow, block, exempt, and monitor web pages matching any specified URLs or patterns, and can display a replacement message instead.

### Sample topology

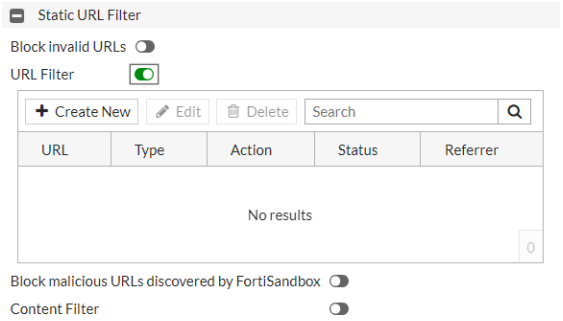



### Create URL filter

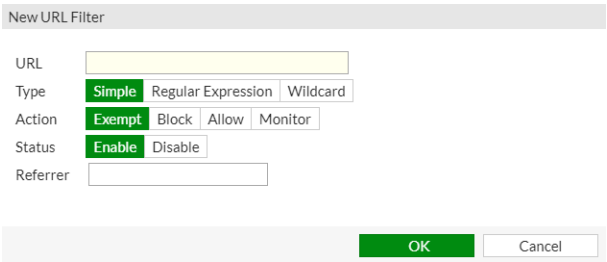
You can create a URL filter using the GUI or CLI. After creating the URL filter, attach it to a web filter profile.

**To create URL filter in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Go the *Static URL Filter* section and enable *URL Filter*.




3. Under *URL Filter*, click *Create New* to display the *New URL Filter* pane.

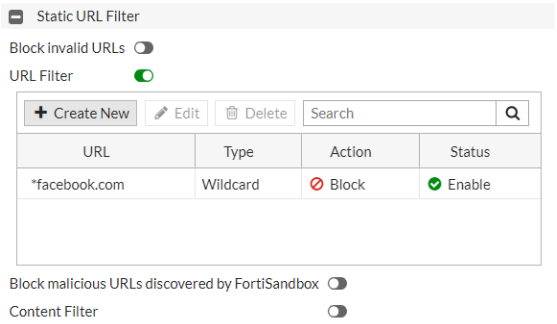



| URL Filter Type | Description |
|---|---|
| **Simple** | FortiGate tries to strictly match the full context. For example, if you enter *www.facebook.com* in the *URL* field, it only matches traffic with *www.facebook.com*. It won't match *facebook.com* or *message.facebook.com*.<br>When FortiGate finds a match, it performs the selected URL *Action*. |
| **Regular Expression or Wildcard** | FortiGate tries to match the pattern based on the rules of regular expressions or wildcards. For example, if you enter **fa** in the *URL* field, it matches all the content that has *fa* such as *www.facebook.com*, *message.facebook.com*, *fast.com*, etc.<br>When FortiGate finds a match, it performs the selected URL *Action*. |

For more information, see the URL Filter expressions technical note in https://kb.fortinet.com/kb/documentLink.do?externalID=FD37057.

| URL Filter Action | Description |
|---|---|
| **Block** | Denies or blocks attempts to access any URL matching the URL pattern. FortiGate displays a replacement message. |
| **Allow** | The traffic is passed to the remaining FortiGuard web filters, web content filters, web script filters, antivirus proxy operations, and DLP proxy operations. If the URL does not appear in the URL list, the traffic is permitted. |
| **Monitor** | The traffic is processed the same way as the *Allow* action. For the *Monitor* action, a log message is generated each time a matching traffic pattern is established. |
| **Exempt** | The traffic is allowed to bypass the remaining FortiGuard web filters, web content filters, web script filters, antivirus scanning, and DLP proxy operations |

4. Enter **facebook.com*, select *Wildcard*, and select *Block*.




5. Click *OK*.

After creating the URL filter, attach it to a webfilter profile.

### Create URL filter using CLI

To create and enable a URL filter using the CLI, create the URL filter and then attach it to a `webfilter` profile. The CLI commands below show the full configuration of creating a URL filter.

```
config webfilter urlfilter
   edit {id}
   # Configure URL filter lists.
      set name {string}   Name of URL filter list. size[35]
      config entries
         edit {id}
         # URL filter entries.
            set url {string}   URL to be filtered. size[511]
            set type {simple | regex | wildcard}  Filter type (simple, regex, or wildcard).
                    simple    Simple URL string.
                    regex     Regular expression URL string.
                    wildcard  Wildcard URL string.
            set action {exempt | block | allow | monitor}  Action to take for URL filter
matches.
                    exempt   Exempt matches.
                    block    Block matches.
                    allow    Allow matches (no log).
                    monitor  Allow matches (with log).
            set status {enable | disable}   Enable/disable this URL filter.
            set exempt {option}   If action is set to exempt, select the security profile
operations that exempt URLs skip. Separate multiple options with a space.
                    av                   AntiVirus scanning.
                    web-content          Web Filter content matching.
                    activex-java-cookie  ActiveX, Java, and cookie filtering.
                    dlp                  DLP scanning.
                    fortiguard           FortiGuard web filter.
                    range-block          Range block feature.
                    pass                 Pass single connection from all.
                    all                  Exempt from all security profiles.
            set referrer-host {string}   Referrer host name. size[255]
         next
   next
end
```

**To create URL filter to filter Facebook using the CLI:**

```
config webfilter urlfilter
    edit 1
        set name "webfilter"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set url "*facebook.com"
                set type wildcard
                set action block
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To attach the URL filter to a web filter profile:**

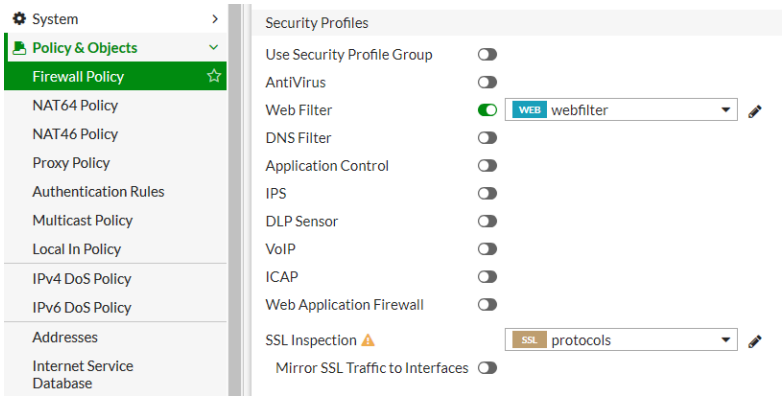
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"                <-- the name of the webfilter profile
        config web
            set urlfilter-table 1   <-- the URL filter created with ID number 1
        end
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
        end
    next
end
```

## Attach web filter profile to the firewall policy

After you have created the URL filter and attached it to a web filter profile, you must attach the profile to a firewall policy.

**To attach a web filter profile to a firewall policy using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Edit the policy that you want to enable the webfilter.
3. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *Web Filter* and select the profile you created.

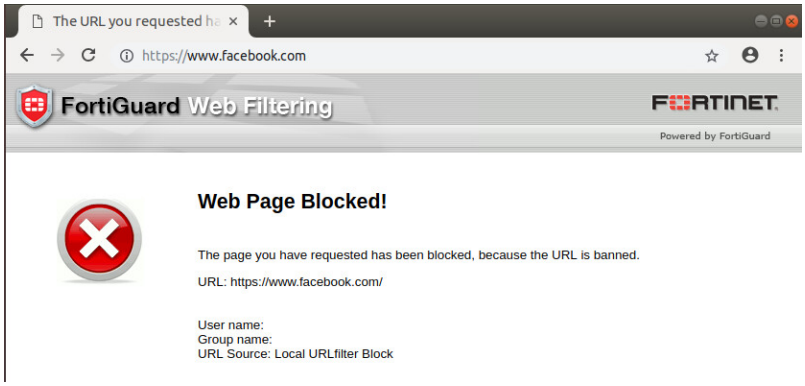


**To attach a web filter profile to a firewall policy using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "WF"
        set srcintf "wan2"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic all
        set webfilter-profile "webfilter"    <-- attach the webfilter profile you just
created.
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Validate the URL filter results

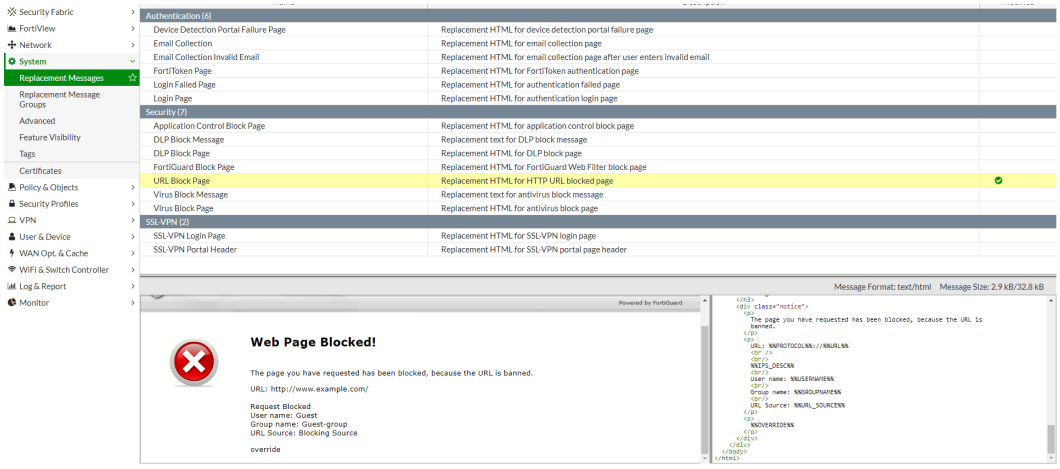
Validate the URL filter results by going to a blocked website. For example, when you go to the Facebook website, you see the replacement message.




**To customize the URL web page blocked message:**

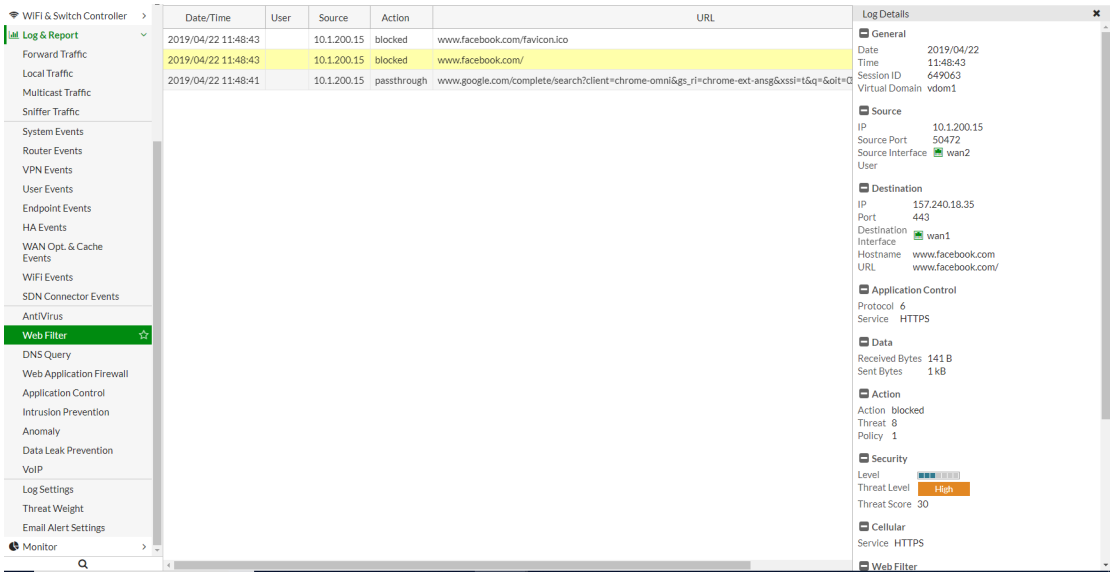
1. Go to *System* > *Replacement Messages*.
2. Go to the *Security* section and select *URL Block Page*.

3. Set up a custom message for blocked pages.




## To check web filter logs in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Web Filter*.




2. If there are too many log entries, click *Add Filter* and select *Event Type* > *urlfilter* to display logs generated by the URL filter.

## To check web filter logs in the CLI:

```
# execute log filter category utm-webfilter

# execute log display

1: date=2019-04-22 time=11:48:43 logid="0315012544" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="urlfilter" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1555958923322174610
urlfilteridx=0 urlsource="Local URLfilter Block" policyid=1 sessionid=649063
srcip=10.1.200.15 srcport=50472 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan" dstip=157.240.18.35
dstport=443 dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
hostname="www.facebook.com" profile="webfilter" action="blocked" reqtype="direct" url="/"
```

```
sentbyte=1171 rcvdbyte=141 direction="outgoing" msg="URL was blocked because it is in the
URL filter list" crscore=30 craction=8 crlevel="high"
```

# FortiGuard filter

To use this service, you must have a valid subscription on your FortiGate.

FortiGuard filter enhances the web filter features supplied with your FortiGate unit by sorting billions of web pages into a wide range of categories that users can allow or block.

The FortiGuard Web Filtering service includes over 45 million individual website ratings that apply to more than two billion pages. When the FortiGuard filter is enabled in a web filter and is applied to firewall policies, if a request for a web page appears in traffic controlled by one of the firewall policies, the URL is sent to the nearest FortiGuard server. The URL category or rating is returned. If the category is blocked, the FortiGate shows a replacement message in place of the requested page. If the category is not blocked, the page request is sent to the requested URL as normal.

## FortiGuard web filter actions

You can select one of the following FortiGuard web filter actions:

| FortiGuard Web Filter Action | Description |
|---|---|
| **Allow** | Permit access to the sites in the category. |
| **Block** | Prevent access to the sites in the category. Users trying to access a blocked site sees a replacement message indicating the site is blocked. |
| **Monitor** | Permits and logs access to sites in the category. You can enable user quotas when you enable this action. |
| **Warning** | Displays a message to the user allowing them to continue if they choose. |
| **Authenticate** | Requires the user to authenticate with the FortiGate before allowing access to the category or category group. |

## FortiGuard web filter categories

FortiGuard has many web filter categories including two local categories and a special remote category. For more information on the different categories, see the table below.

| FortiGuard Web Filter category | Where to find more information |
|---|---|
| All URL categories | https://fortiguard.com/webfilter/categories. |
| Remote category | External resources for web filter on page 995. |

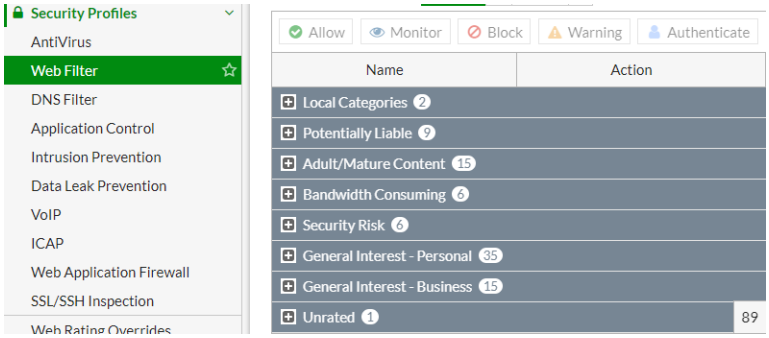
The priority of categories is local category > external category > FortiGuard built-in category. If a URL is configured as a local category, it only follows the behavior of local category and not external or FortiGuard built-in category.

## Sample configuration of blocking a web category

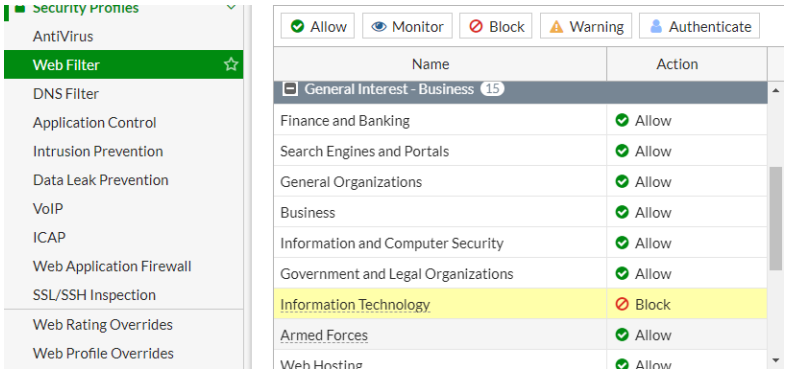
This example shows blocking a website based on its category (rating), for example, information technology.

### To block a category in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *FortiGuard category based filter* section.




2. Open the *General Interest - Business* section by clicking the + icon beside it.
3. Select *Information Technology* and then select *Block*.

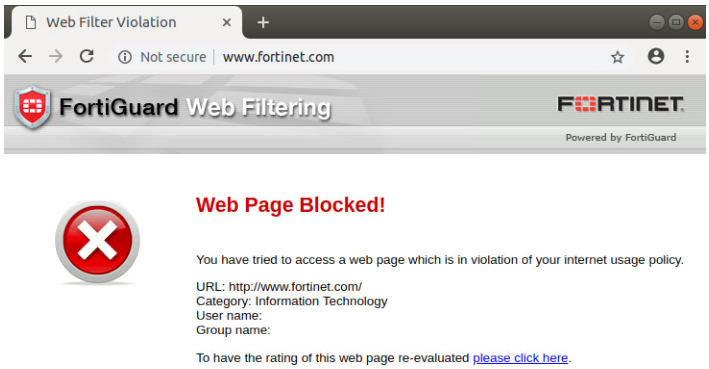



### To block a category in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
      config ftgd-wf
         unset options
         config filters
            edit 1
               set category 52     <-- the pre-set id of "information technology" caterogy
               set action block    <-- set action to block
            next
         end
      end
   next
end
```

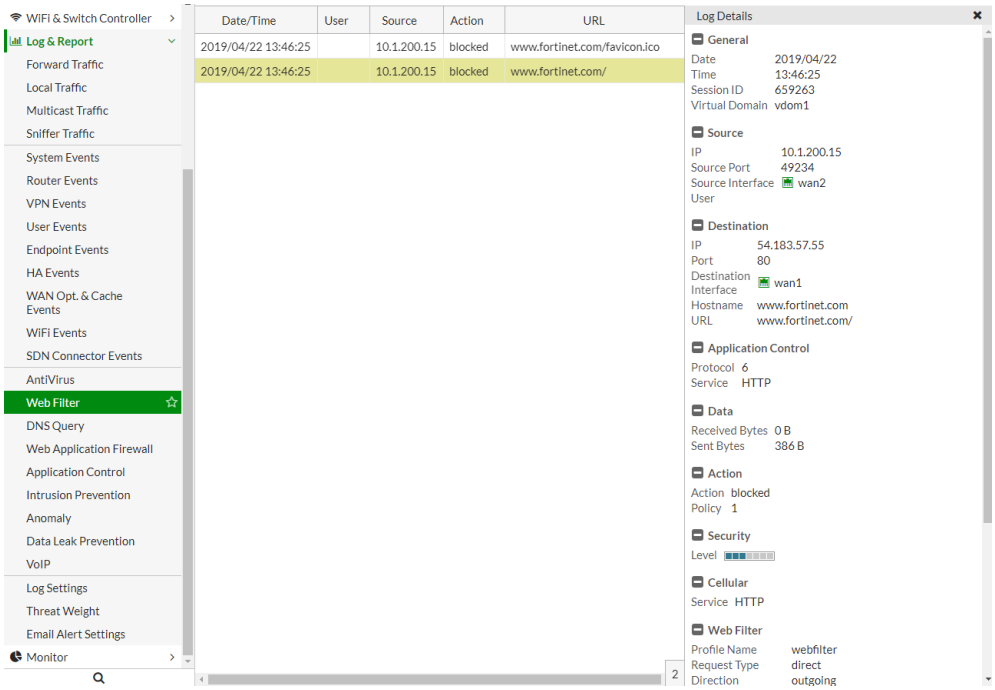
### To validate that you have blocked a category:

1. Go to a website belonging to the blocked category, for example, www.fortinet.com, and you see a blocked page and the category that is blocked.




### To view the log of a blocked website in the GUI:

1. Go to Log & Report > Web Filter.




### To view the log of a blocked website in the CLI:

```
FGT52E-NAT-WF # execute log filter category utm-webfilter

FGT52E-NAT-WF # execute log display

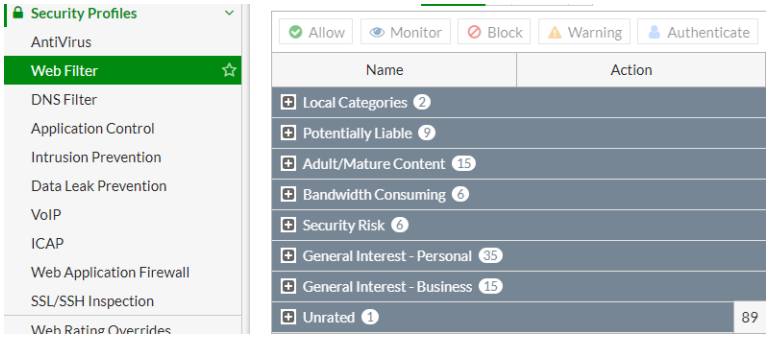
1: date=2019-04-22 time=13:46:25 logid="0316013056" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_blk" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1555965984972459609 policyid=1
sessionid=659263 srcip=10.1.200.15 srcport=49234 srcintf="wan2" srcintfrole="wan"
dstip=54.183.57.55 dstport=80 dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTP"
hostname="www.fortinet.com" profile="webfilter" action="blocked" reqtype="direct" url="/"
sentbyte=386 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs to a denied category in
policy" method="domain" cat=52 catdesc="Information Technology"
```

## Sample configuration of issuing a warning

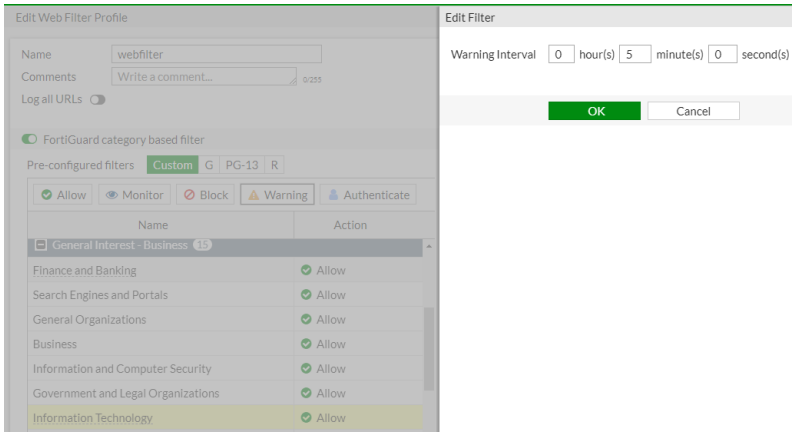
This example shows issuing a warning when a user visits a website based on its category (rating), for example, information technology.

### To configure a warning in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *FortiGuard category based filter* section.




2. Open the *General Interest - Business* section by clicking the + icon beside it.
3. Select *Information Technology* and then select *Warning*.



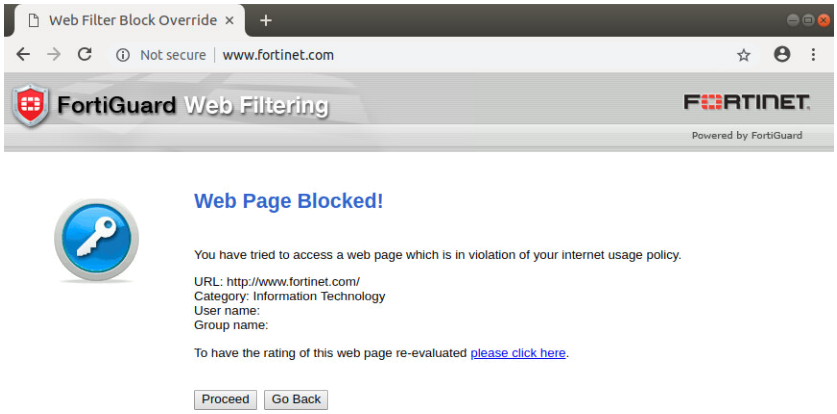

4. Set the *Warning Interval* which is the interval when the warning page appears again after the user chooses to continue.

### To configure a warning in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
            config filters
                edit 1
                    set category 52
                    set action warning  <-- set action to warning
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

**To validate that you have configured the warning:**

1. Go to a website belonging to the selected category, for example, www.fortinet.com, and you see a warning page where you can choose to *Proceed* or *Go Back*.

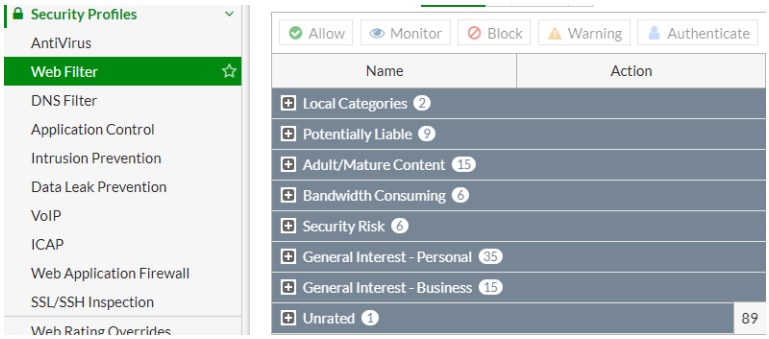



## Sample configuration of authenticating a web category

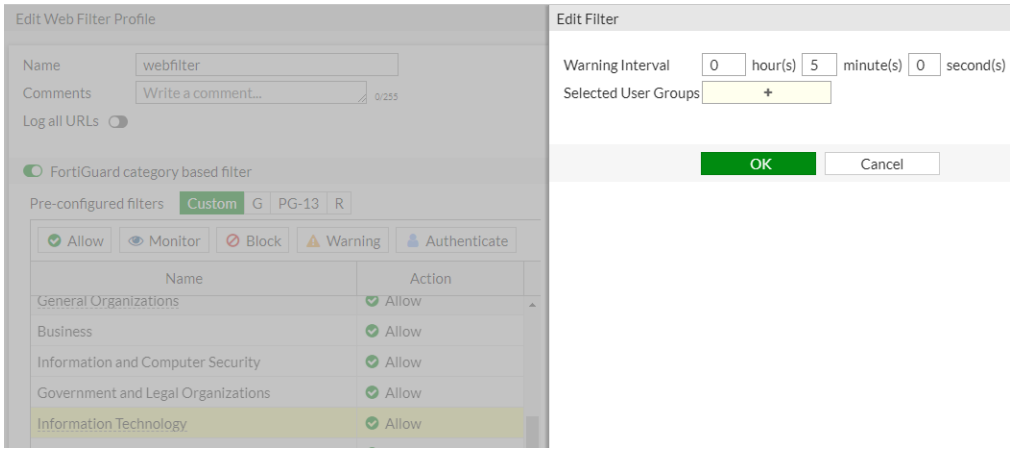
This example shows authenticating a website based on its category (rating), for example, information technology.

**To authenticate a category in the GUI:**

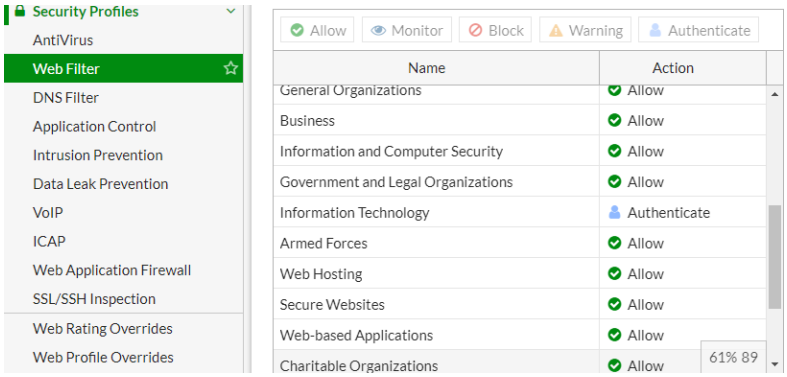
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *FortiGuard category based filter* section.




2. Open the *General Interest - Business* section by clicking the + icon beside it.
3. Select *Information Technology* and then select *Authenticate*.



4. Set the *Warning Interval* which is the interval when the authentication page appears again after authentication.
5. Click the + icon beside Selected User Group and select a user group. You must have a valid user group to use this feature.

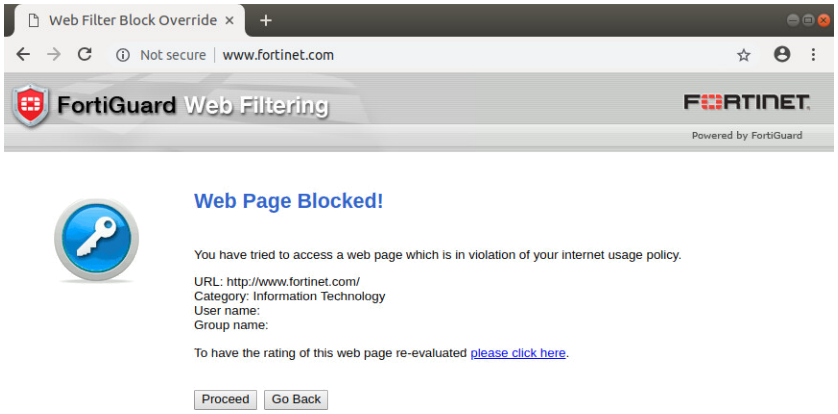



### To authenticate a category in the CLI:

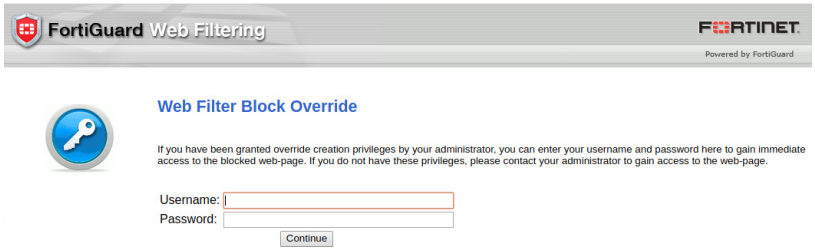
```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
     config ftgd-wf
        unset options
        config filters
          edit 1
            set category 52
            set action authenticate          <-- set the action of authenticate
            set auth-usr-grp "local_group"   <-- user to authenticate
          next
        end
     end
   next
end
```

### To validate that you have configured authentication:

1. Go to a website belonging to the selected category, for example, www.fortinet.com. First, you see a warning page where you can choose to *Proceed* or *Go Back*.



2. Click *Proceed* to check that the authentication page appears.



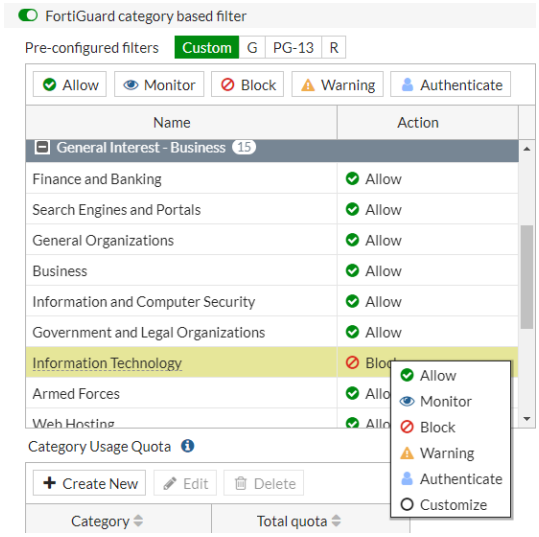

3. Enter the username and password of the user group you selected, and click *Continue*.
   If the credentials are correct, the traffic is allowed through.

## Sample customization of the replacement page

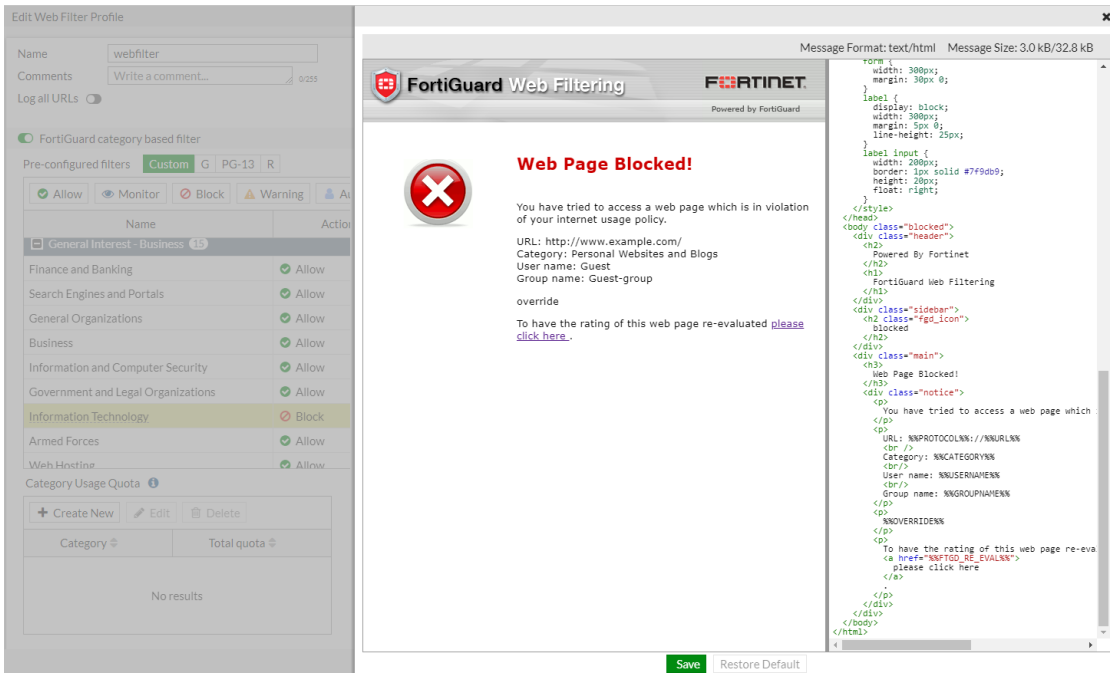
When the FortiGuard Web Filter action is *Block*, *Warning*, or *Authenticate*, there is a *Customize* option for you to customize the replace page.

### To customize the replace page:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *FortiGuard category based filter* section.
2. Right-click the item and select *Customize*.



3. A pane appears for you to customize the page.




## Credential phishing prevention

When credential phishing prevention is enabled, the FortiGate scans for corporate credentials submitted to external websites and compares them to sensitive credentials stored in the corporate domain controller. Based on the configured antiphishing rules in proxy mode web filter profiles, the FortiGate will block the URL or alert the user if the credentials match ones that are stored on the corporate domain controller.

- The corporate domain controller must be configured on the credential-store. Credentials are matched based on sAMAccountName. UPN format is not currently supported.
- The antiphishing profile defines the corporate domain controller, antiphishing check option, default action if no rules match, antiphishing status, and so on.
- Inspection entries in the profile define what action occurs when the submission request matches the specified FortiGuard categories.
- The profile scans for pre-defined and custom username and password fields in the HTTP request, such as `username`, `auth`, and `password`. You can evaluate custom fields by configuring custom patterns.
- The URL filter defines individual URLs that the antiphish action (block or log) is applied to when the URL submission request matches.

---

Web-based URL filter actions and FortiGuard category-based filtering have higher priority than antiphishing URL filter actions and FortiGuard filtering:

- If a request is blocked by the web-based URL filter or FortiGuard filter, there is no further antiphishing scanning. Antiphishing scanning only happens after the web-based URL filtes and FortiGuard filters allow the traffic.
- If a submission matches an entry in the URL filter table that has an antiphishing action, the defined action is taken. No further FortiGuard category-based rules are applied.
- Like firewall rules, the URL filter table and Fortiguard category-based antiphishing rules use a top-down priority. The rule that matches first is the one that is used.

---

In this example, URLs that match FortiGuard category 37 (social networking) will be blocked and other categories will be logged.

**To configure credential phishing prevention:**

1. Configure the corporate domain controller:

```
config credential-store domain-controller
    edit "win2016"
        set domain-name "corpserver.local"
        set username "Administrator"
        set password **********
        set ip <server_ip>
    next
end
```



The domain controller entry name must be the hostname of the DC (`win2016` in the example). Both it and the domain name are case sensitive.

2. Configure the antiphishing profile, which includes the FortiGuard category rule:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "<profile-name>"
        set feature-set proxy
        ...
        config web
            ...
        end
        config antiphish
            set status enable
            set domain-controller "win2016"
            set default-action block
            set check-uri enable
            set check-basic-auth enable
            set max-body-len 65536
            config inspection-entries
                edit "inspect-37"
                    set fortiguard-category 37
                    set action block
                next
                edit "inspect-others"
                    set fortiguard-category all
                    set action log
                next
            end
            config custom-patterns
                edit "customer-name"
                    set category username
                next
                edit "customer-passwd"
                   set category password
                next
            end
        end
```

```
        ...
        set web-antiphishing-log enable
    next
end
```

- `check-uri` enables support for scanning HTTP GET URI parameters.
- `check-basic-auth` enables support for scanning the HTTP Basic Auth field.

3. Configure the URL filter to scan specific URLs.
   The antiphish action is added to the URL filter table entry, and the URL filter is applied to the webfilter profile.

```
config webfilter urlfilter
    edit 1
        set name "antiphish-table"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set url "www.example.com"
                set type simple
                set antiphish-action block
                set status enable
                set referrer-host ''
            next
        end
    next
end
config webfilter profile
    edit "<profile-name>"
        config web
            set urlfilter-table 1
        end
        ...
    next
end
```

4. Optionally, define custom patterns to scan fields other than the built-in username and password keywords are needed:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "<profile-name>"
        config custom-patterns
                edit "customer-name"
                    set category username
                next
                edit "customer-passwd"
                   set category password
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

## Usage quota

In addition to using category and classification blocks and overrides to limit user access to URLs, you can set a daily quota by category, category group, or classification. Quotas allow access for a specified length of time or a specific bandwidth, and is calculated separately for each user. Quotas are reset everyday at midnight.

Quotas can be set only for the actions of *Monitor*, *Warning*, or *Authenticate*. When the quota is reached, the traffic is blocked and the replacement page displays.

You can only use quotas when inspection mode is *Proxy*.

## Sample topology

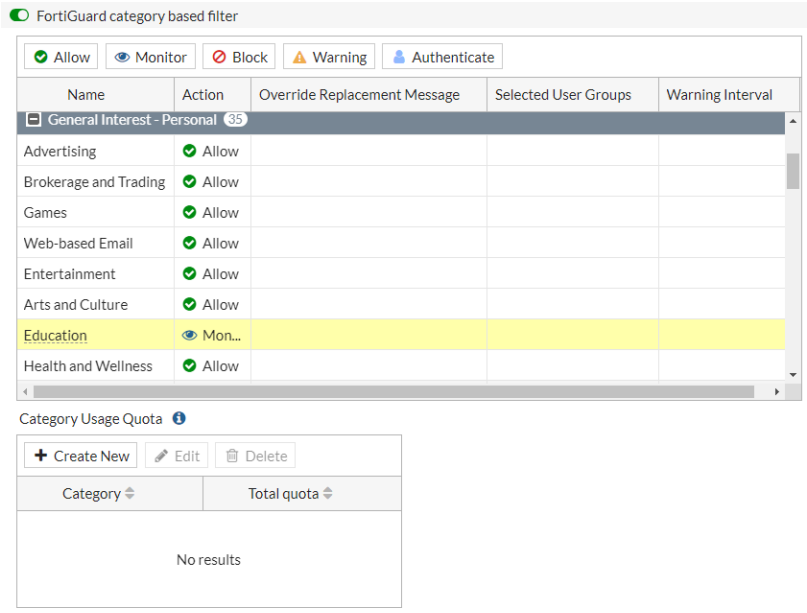



## Sample configuration of setting a quota

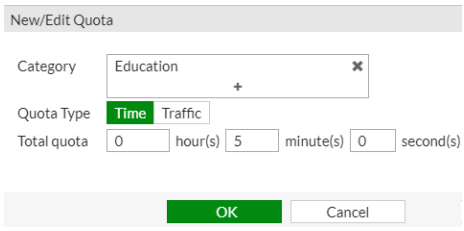
This example shows setting a time quota for a category, for example, the Education category.

**To configure a quota in the GUI:**

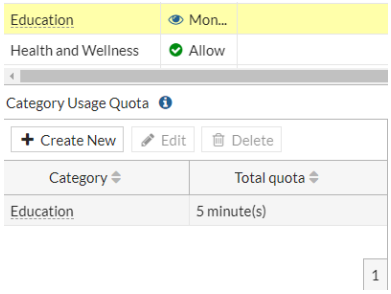
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *FortiGuard category based filter* section.
2. Open the *General Interest - Personal* section by selecting the + icon beside it.
3. Select *Education* and then select *Monitor*.
4. In the *Category Usage Quota* section, select *Create New*.



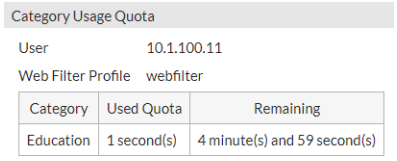
5. In the right pane, select the *Category* field and then select *Education*.
6. For the *Quota Type*, select *Time* and set the *Total quota* to 5 *minute(s)*.



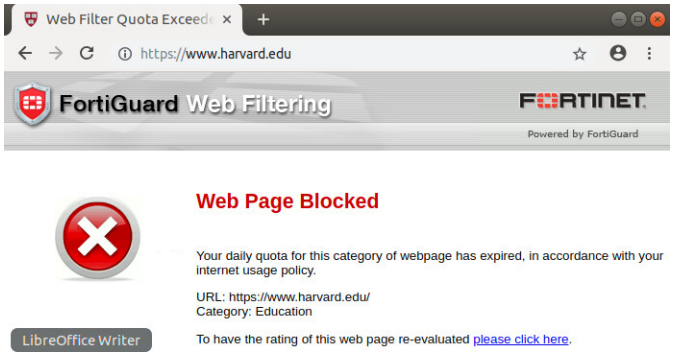

7. Select *OK* and the Category Usage Quota section displays the quota.




8. Validate the configuration by visiting a website in the education category, for example https://www.harvard.edu/. You can view websites in the education category.
9. Check the used and remaining quota in *Monitor* > *FortiGuard Quota*.




10. When the quota reaches its limit, traffic is blocked and the replacement page displays.




### To configure a quota in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
           unset options
           config filters
              edit 1
                 set category 30 <-- the id of education category
              next
           end
```

```
            config quota
               edit 1
                  set category 30
                  set type time
                  set duration 5m
               next
            end
         end
      next
end
```

## Web content filter

You can control access to web content by blocking web pages containing specific words or patterns. This helps to prevent access to pages with questionable material. You can specify words, phrases, patterns, wildcards and Perl regular expressions to match content on web pages. You can use multiple web content filter lists and select the best web content filter list for each Web Filter profile.

### Pattern type

When you have created the Web Filter content list, you need to add web content patterns to it. There are two types of patterns: wildcard and regular expression.

#### Wildcard

Use the wildcard setting to block or exempt one word or text strings of up to 80 characters. You can also use wildcard symbols such as **?** or ***** to represent one or more characters. For example, a wildcard expression *forti*.com* matches *fortinet.com* and *forticare.com*. The ***** represents any character appearing any number of times.

#### Regular expression

Use the regular expression setting to block or exempt patterns of Perl expressions which use some of the same symbols as wildcard expressions but for different purposes. In regular expressions, ***** represents the character before the symbol. For example, *forti*.com* matches *fortiii.com* but not *fortinet.com* or *fortiice.com*. In this case, the symbol ***** represents **i** appearing any number of times.

The maximum number of web content patterns in a list is 5000.

### Content evaluation

The web content filter feature scans the content of every web page that is accepted by a security policy. The system administrator can specify banned words and phrases and attach a numerical value, or score, to the importance of those words and phrases. When the web content filter scan detects banned content, it adds the scores of banned words and phrases found on that page. If the sum is higher than a threshold set in the Web Filter profile, FortiGate blocks the page.

The default score for web content filter is 10 and the default threshold is 10. This means that by default, a web page is blocked by a single match.

Banned words or phrases are evaluated according to the following rules:

- The score for each word or phrase is counted only once, even if that word or phrase appears many times in the web page.

- The score for any word in a phrase without quotation marks is counted.
- The score for a phrase in quotation marks is counted only if it appears exactly as written.

## Sample of applying banned pattern rules

The following table is an example of how rules are applied to the contents of a web page. For example, a web page contains only this sentence:

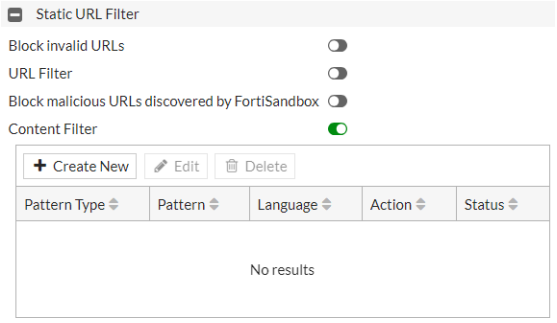
*The score for each word or phrase is counted only once, even if that word or phrase appears many times in the web page.*

| Banned pattern | Assigned score | Score added to the sum for the entire page | Threshold score | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| word | 20 | 20 | 20 | Appears twice but only counted once. Web page is blocked. |
| word phrase | 20 | 40 | 20 | Each word appears twice but only counted once giving a total score of 40. Web page is blocked. |
| word sentence | 20 | 20 | 20 | “word” appears twice, “sentence” does not appear, but since any word in a phrase without quotation marks is counted, the score for this pattern is 20. Web page is blocked. |
| "word sentence" | 20 | 0 | 20 | This phrase does not appear exactly as written. Web page is allowed. |
| "word or phrase" | 20 | 20 | 20 | This phrase appears twice but is counted only once. Web page is blocked. |

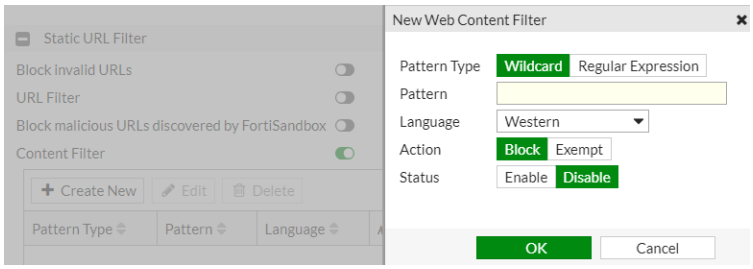
## Sample configuration

**To configure web content filter in the GUI:**

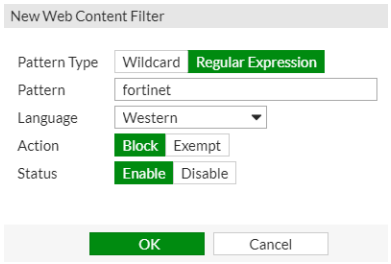
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Static URL Filter* section.
2. Enable *Content Filter* to display its options.



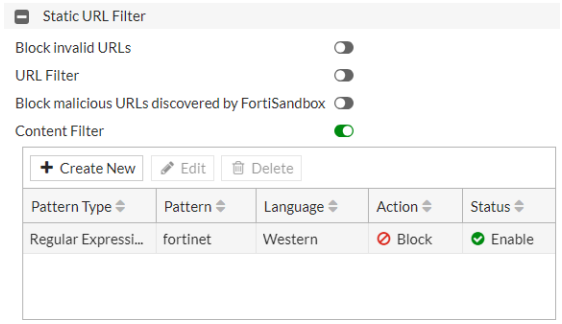
3. Select *Create New* to display the content filter options.



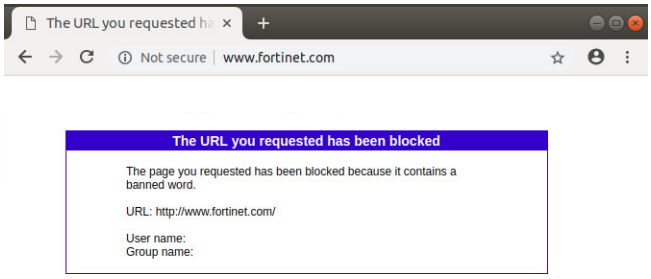

4. For *Pattern Type*, select *Regular Expression* and enter *fortinet* in the *Pattern* field.
   - Leave *Language* as *Western*.
   - Set *Action* to *Block*.
   - Set *Status* to *Enable*.




5. Select *OK* to see the updated *Static URL Filter* section.




6. Validate the configuration by visiting a website with the word *fortinet*, for example, www.fortinet.com. The website is blocked and a replacement page displays.




### To configure web content filter in the CLI:

1. Create a content table:

```
config webfilter content
   edit 1                          <-- the id of this content
      set name "webfilter"
```

```
      config entries
         edit "fortinet"            <-- the banned word
           set pattern-type regexp  <-- the type is regular expression
           set status enable
           set lang western
           set score 10             <-- the score for this word is 10
           set action block
         next
      end
   next
end
```

2. Attach the content table to the Web Filter profile:

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
      config web
         set bword-threshold 10  <-- the threshold is 10
         set bword-table 1       <-- the id of content table we created in the previous
step
      end
      config ftgd-wf
         unset options
      end
   next
end
```

# Advanced filters 1

This topic gives examples of the following advanced filter features:


- Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox on page 986
- Allow websites when a rating error occurs on page 987
- Rate URLs by domain and IP address on page 987
- Block invalid URLs on page 988
- Rate images by URL on page 989


## Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox

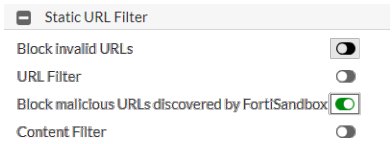
To use this feature, you must be registered to a FortiSandbox and be connected to it.

This feature blocks malicious URLs that FortiSandbox finds.

For information on configuring FortiSandbox, see Using FortiSandbox Cloud with antivirus on page 956.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing profile.
2. Go the *Static URL Filter* section and enable *Block malicious URLs discovered by FortiSandbox*.



**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set blacklist enable
        end
    next
end
```

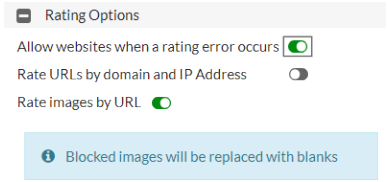
## Allow websites when a rating error occurs

If you don't have a FortiGuard license but you have enabled services that need a FortiGuard license, such as FortiGuard filter, then you'll get a rating error message.

Use this setting to allow access to websites that return a rating error from the FortiGuard Web Filter service.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Rating Options* section.
2. Enable *Allow websites when a rating error occurs*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            set options error-allow
        end
    next
end
```

## Rate URLs by domain and IP address

If you enable this feature, in addition to only sending domain information to FortiGuard for rating, FortiGate always sends both the URL domain name and the TCP/IP packet's IP address (except for private IP addresses) to FortiGuard for the rating.

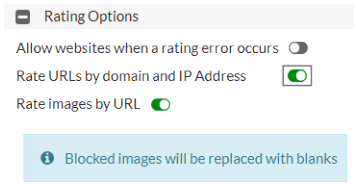
FortiGuard server might return a different category of IP address and URL domain. If they are different, FortiGate uses the rating weight of the IP address or domain name to determine the rating result and decision. This rating weight is hard-coded in FortiGate.

For example, if we use a spoof IP of Google as www.irs.gov, FortiGate will send both the IP address and domain name to FortiGuard to get the rating. In this example, we get two different ratings, one is search engine and portals which belongs to the IP of Google, another is government and legal organizations which belongs to www.irs.gov. As the search engine

and portals has a higher weight than government and legal organizations, this traffic will be rated as search engine and portals and not rated as government and legal organizations.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Rating Options* section.
2. Enable *Rate URLs by domain and IP address*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            set options rate-server-ip
        end
    next
end
```

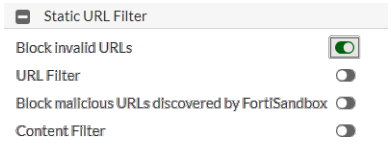
## Block invalid URLs

Use this feature to block websites when their SSL certificate CN field does not contain a valid domain name.

For example, this option blocks URLs which contains spaces. If there is a space in the URL, it must be written as: *http://www.example.com/space%20here.html*.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Static URL Filter* section.
2. Enable *Block invalid URLs* .




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

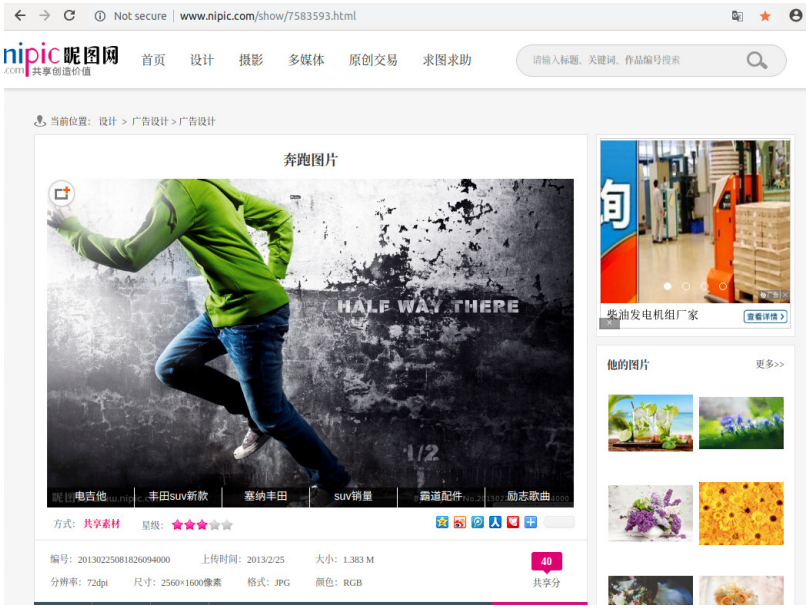
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        set options block-invalid-url
    next
end
```

## Rate images by URL

This feature enable FortiGate to retrieve ratings for individual images in addition to websites. Images in a blocked category are not displayed even if they are part of a site in an allowed category. Blocked images are replaced with blank placeholders. These image file types are rated: GIF, JPEG, PNG, BMP, and TIFF.

This feature requires a valid FortiGuard license, otherwise rating errors will occur. By default, this feature is enabled.

For example, if the Other Adult Materials category is blocked, before enabling *Rate images by URL*, the image is not blocked:

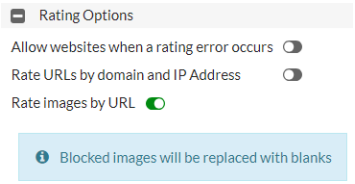



After enabling *Rate images by URL*, images in the Other Adult Materials category are blocked. For example:



**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Rating Options* section.
2. Enable *Rate images by URL*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
            set rate-image-urls enable
        end
    next
end
```

## Advanced filters 2

This topic gives examples of the following advanced filter features:


- Safe search on page 990
- YouTube education filters on page 991
  - Restrict YouTube access on page 991
  - YouTube channel filtering on page 992
- Log all search keywords on page 993
- Restrict Google account usage to specific domains on page 993
- HTTP POST Action on page 994
- Remove Java applets, remove ActiveX, and remove cookies on page 994




These advanced filters are only available when inspection mode is *Proxy*.

### Safe search

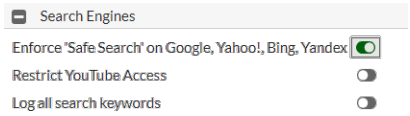
This feature applies to popular search sites and prevents explicit websites and images from appearing in search results.

Supported search sites are:

- Google
- Yahoo
- Bing
- Yandex

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Search Engines* section.
2. Enable *Enforce 'Safe Search' on Google, Yahoo!, Bing, Yandex*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set safe-search url
        end
    next
end
```

## YouTube education filters

Use these features to limit users' access to YouTube channels, such as in an education environment where you want students and users to be able to access YouTube education videos but not other YouTube videos.

### Restrict YouTube access

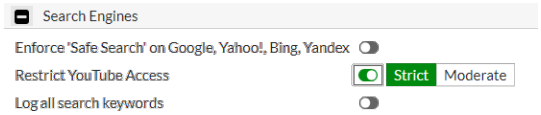
Formerly, YouTube for Schools was a way to access educational videos inside a school network. This YouTube feature lets schools access educational videos on YouTube EDU and to specify the videos accessible within the school network.

When Google stopped supporting YouTube for Schools on July 1, 2016, YouTube safe search also stopped working.

Google provides information on restricting YouTube content such as Restrict YouTube content available to G Suite users. At this time, the options Google offers to restrict inappropriate content includes: DNS, HTTP headers, and Chromebooks..

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Search Engines* section.
2. Enable *Restrict YouTube Access* and select *Strict* or *Moderate*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set youtube-restrict strict
        end
    next
end
```

## YouTube channel filtering

This Web Filter feature is also called *Restrict YouTube access to specific channels*. Use this feature to block or only allow matching YouTube channels.

The following identifiers are used:

```
given <channel-id>, affect on:
   www.youtube.com/channel/<channel-id>
   www.youtube.com/user/<user-id>
```

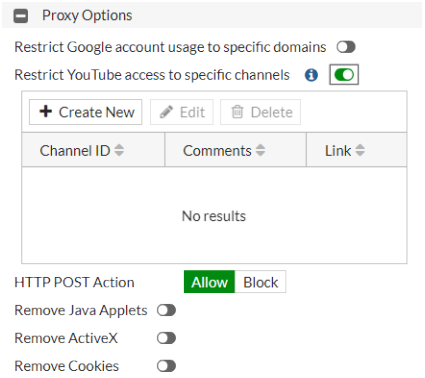
matches channel-id from <meta itemprop="channelId" content="UCGzuiiLdQZu9wxDNJHO_JnA">

```
   www.youtube.com/watch?v=<string>
```

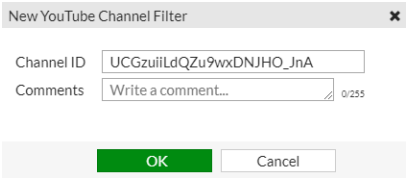
matches channel-id from <meta itemprop="channelId" content="UCGzuiiLdQZu9wxDNJHO_JnA">

### To enable this feature in the GUI:

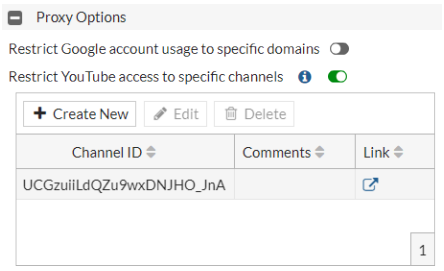
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Proxy Options* section.
2. Enable *Restrict YouTube access to specific channels*.




3. Select *Create New* and specify the *Channel ID*, for example, `UCGzuiiLdQZu9wxDNJHO_JnA`.




4. Select *OK* and the option shows the *Channel ID* and its *Link*.




### To enable this feature in the CLI:

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
```

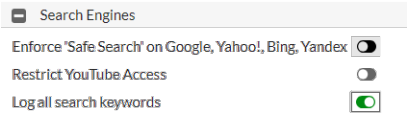
```
      set youtube-channel-status whitelist  <-- whitelist: only allow the traffic belongs to
this channel id and relative identifiers
                                                blacklist: only block the traffic belongs to
this channel id and relative identifiers and allow the other traffic pass
      config youtube-channel-filter
         edit 1
            set channel-id "UCGzuiiLdQZu9wxDNJHO_JnA"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Log all search keywords

Use this feature to log all search phrases.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Search Engines* section.
2. Enable *Log all search keywords*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

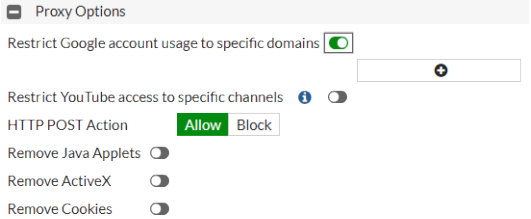
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config web
            set log-search enable
        end
    next
end
```

## Restrict Google account usage to specific domains

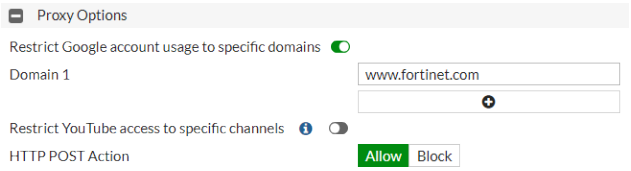
Use this feature to block access to some Google accounts and services while allowing access to accounts in the domains in the exception list.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Proxy Options* section.
2. Enable *Restrict Google account usage to specific domains*.



3. Select the + button and enter the domains that Google can access, for example, www.fortinet.com.




When you try to use Google services like Gmail, only traffic from the domain of www.fortinet.com can go through. Traffic from other domains is blocked.

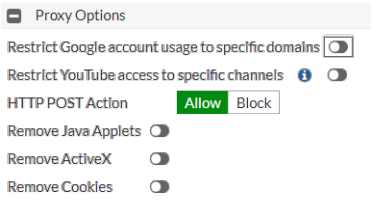
## HTTP POST Action

Select the action to take with HTTP POST traffic. HTTP POST is the command used by your browser when you send information, such as a form you have filled-out or a file you are uploading to a web server.

The action options are Allow or Block. The default is Allow.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Proxy Options* section.
2. For *HTTP POST Action*, select *Allow* or *Block*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        set post-action [normal/block]
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
        end
    next
end
```

## Remove Java applets, remove ActiveX, and remove cookies

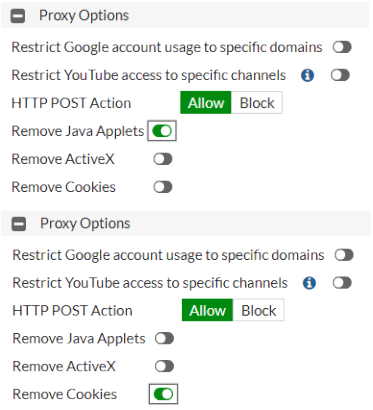
The *Remove Java Applets* feature filters java applets from web traffic. Websites using java applets might not function properly if you enable this filter.

The *Remove ActiveX* feature filters ActiveX scripts from web traffic. Websites using ActiveX might not function properly with if you enable this filter.

The *Remove Cookies* feature filters cookies from web traffic. Websites using cookies might not function properly if you enable this filter.

**To enable this feature in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter* and go to the *Proxy Options* section.
2. Select the filters you want to use: *Remove Java Applets*, *Remove ActiveX*, and/or *Remove Cookies*.




**To enable this feature in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter profile
   edit "webfilter"
      set options activexfilter cookiefilter javafilter <-- enable one or more of
activexfilter cookiefilter javafilter.
      config ftgd-wf
         unset options
      end
   next
end
```

## External resources for web filter

External resources is a new feature introduced in FortiOS 6.0, which provides a capability to import an external blocklist which sits on an HTTP server. This feature helps FortiGate retrieve a dynamic URL/Domain Name/IP Address/Malware hash list from an external HTTP server periodically. FortiGate uses these external resources as Web Filter's remote categories, DNS Filter's remote categories, policy address objects or antivirus profile's malware definitions. If the external resource is updated, FortiGate objects will update dynamically.

External Resource are categorized into 4 types:

- URL list (Type=*category*)
- Domain Name List (Type=*domain*)
- IP Address list (Type=*address*)
- Malware hash list (Type=*malware*)

For Web Filter profile, it can use category type external resources. Category type external resources file is a URL entries list in a plain text file.

When a *category* type external resource is configured in Web Filter profile, it will be treated as a Remote Category. If the URL in a HTTP/HTTPS request matches the entry inside this external resource file, it will be treated as the Remote Category and follow the action configured for this category in Web Filter profile.

External resource type *category* also can be used in *ssl-ssh-profile* configuration for category-based *SSL-Exempt*. When a Remote Category is configured in *ssl-ssh-profile SSL-Exempt*, if a HTTPS request's URL matches in the Remote Category's entry list, HTTPS request with destination for this URL can be exempted from SSL Deep Inspection.

## External resources file format

External resources file should follow the following requirements:

- The external resource file is a plain text format file and each URL list/IP Address/Domain Name occupies a single line.
- The file is limited to 10M, line is limited 128K (128 x 1024 entries), and the line length limit is 4K characters.
- The entries limited also follow table size limitation defined by CMDB per model.
- The external resource update period can be set to 1 minute, hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly (43200 min, 30 days).
- The external resource type as category (URL list) and domain (Domain Name list) share the category number range 192-221 (total 30 categories).
- There's no duplicated entry validation for external resources file (entry inside each file or inside different files).

For URL list (Type=category):

Scheme is optional, and will be truncated if found (http://, https:// is not needed).

Wildcard (*) is supported (from 6.2). It supports the '*' at beginning and ending of URL, and not in the middle of URL as follows:

```
   + support *.domain2.com, domain.com.* + not support: domain3.*.com
```

IDN (International Domain Name) and UTF encoding URL is supported (from 6.2).

IPv4,IPv6 format URL is supported. IPv6 in URL list must in [ ] form.

## Configure external resources from CLI

We can use CLI to configure the external resources files that is located on external HTTP Server. Under Global, configure the external resource file location and specify the resource type.

Web Filter will use *category* type external resources as Remote Categories. In the following example, it is configured a file *Ext-Resource-Type-as-Category-1.txt* as type as category, it will be treated in Web Filter as Remote Category, the category name configured as *Ext-Resource-Type-as-Category-1* and category-id as *192*:

```
config system external-resource
   edit "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Category-1"
     set type category  <----
     set category 192   <----
     set resource "http://172.16.200.66/external-resources/Ext-Resource-Type-as-Category-
1.txt"
     set refresh-rate 1
   next
end
```

Now in each VDOM, category type external resource can be used in Web Filter as Remote Cateogry. In the example above, URL list in "Ext-Resource-Type-as-Category-1.txt" file will be treated as remote category (category-id 192). Configure the action for this remote category in Web Filter profile and apply it in the policy:

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
```

```
            config filters
                edit 1
                    set category 2
                    set action warning
                next
                ......

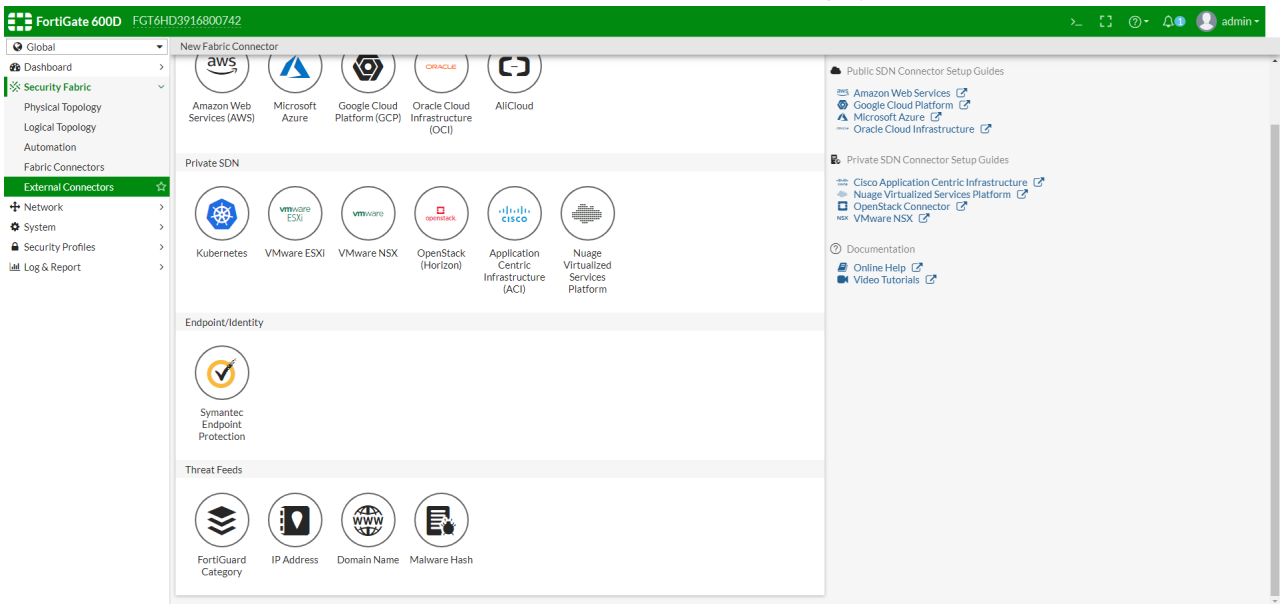
                edit 24
                    set category 192  <----
                    set action block
                next
                edit 25
                    set category 221
                    set action warning
                next
                edit 26
                    set category 193
                next
            end
        end
        set log-all-url enable
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "WebFilter"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic all
        set webfilter-profile "webfilter"
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

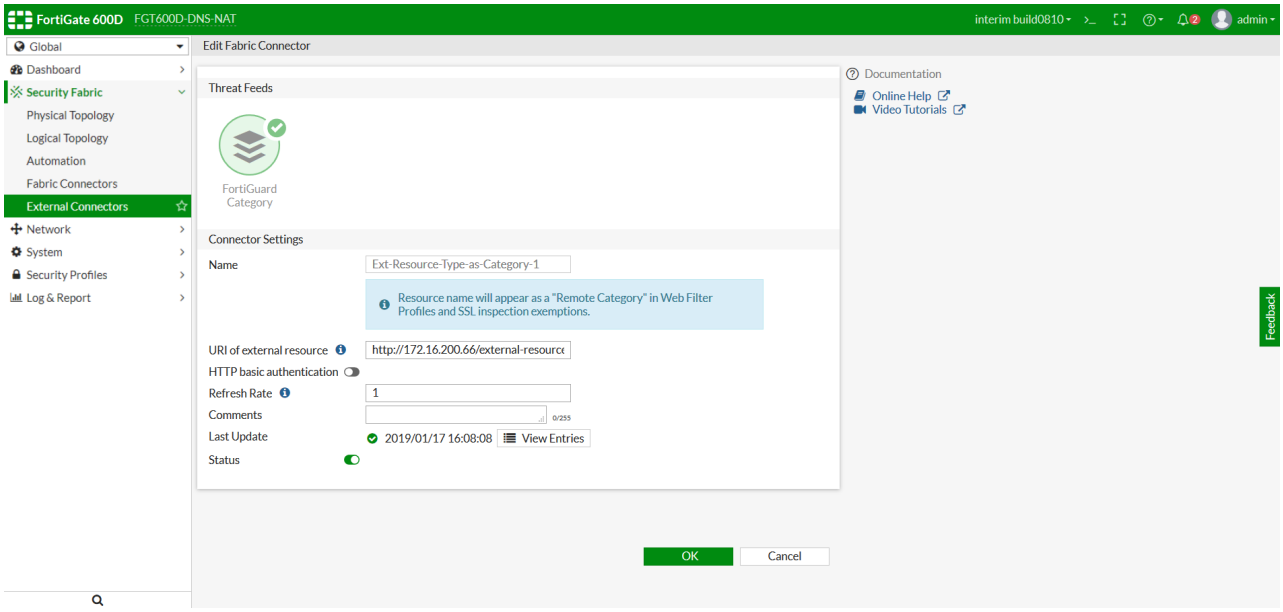
## Configure external resources from GUI

**To configure, edit, or view the Entries for external resources from GUI:**

1. Go to *Global* > *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*, and in the *Threat Feeds* section, select *FortiGuard Category*.

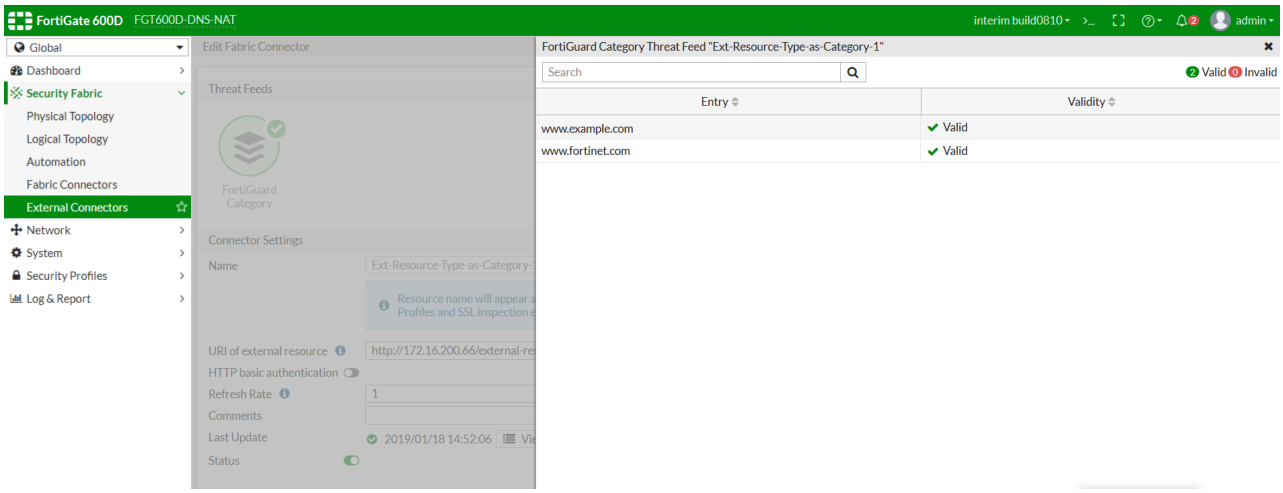



3. Enter the resource name, URI location of the resource file, resource authentication credential, and *Refresh Rate*.

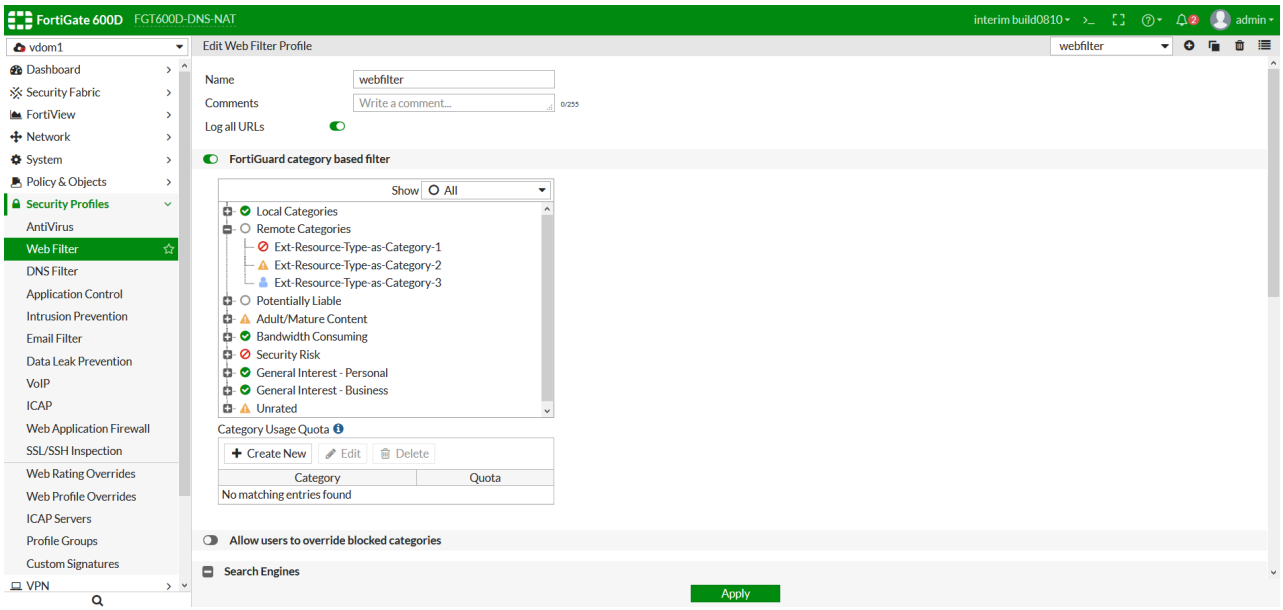



4. Click *OK*.
5. After a few minutes, double-click the *Threat Feeds Object* you just configured. It is shown in the *Edit* page.

6. Click *View Entries* to view the entry list in the external resources file:



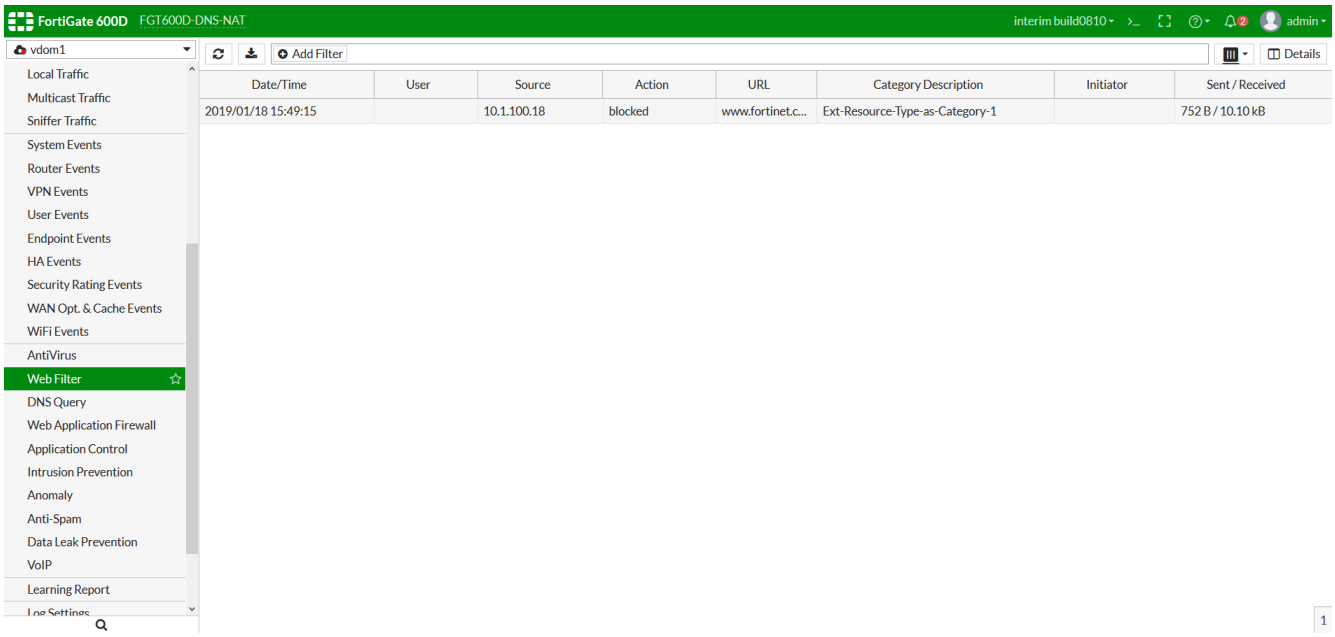

7. Go to *VDOM* > *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*. The configured external resources is shown and configured in each Web Filter Profile:




## Log sample

If an HTTP/HTTPS request URL is matched in remote category's entry list, it will override its original FortiGuard URL rating and be treated as a remote category.

Go to *VDOM* > *Log & Report* > *Web Filter*:



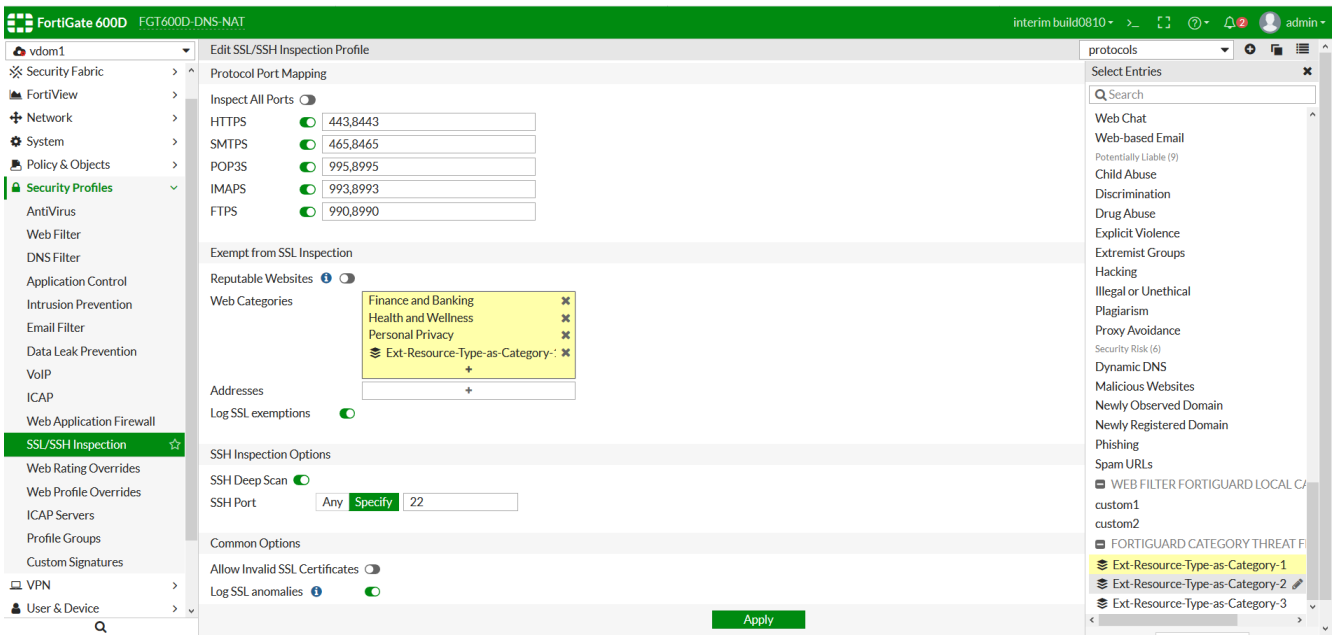

**CLI example:**

```
1: date=2019-01-18 time=15:49:15 logid="0316013056" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_blk" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547855353 policyid=1
sessionid=88922 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=39886 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=216.58.193.67 dstport=443 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTPS" hostname="www.fortinet.com" profile="webfilter" action="blocked"
reqtype="direct" url="/" sentbyte=752 rcvdbyte=10098 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs
to a denied category in policy" method="domain" cat=192 catdesc="Ext-Resource-Type-as-
Category-1"
```

## Remote category in ssl-ssh-profile category-based SSL-exempt

Remote category can be applied in *ssl-ssh-profile category-based SSL-Exempt*.

Go to *VDOM > Security Profiles > SSL/SSH Inspection*:




HTTPS request URLs matched in this remote category will be exempted from SSL deep inspection.

**Log sample:**

```
3: date=2019-01-18 time=16:06:21 logid="0345012688" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ssl-exempt" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1547856379 policyid=1
sessionid=90080 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=39942 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=216.58.193.67 dstport=443 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTPS" hostname="www.fortinet.com" profile="webfilter" action="passthrough"
reqtype="direct" url="/" sentbyte=517 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="The SSL session
was exempted." method="domain" cat=192 catdesc="Ext-Resource-Type-as-Category-1"
urlsource="exempt_type_user_cat"
```

### Local category and remote category priority

Web Filter can have both local category and remote category at the same time. There's no duplication check between local category URL override and remote category resource file. For example, a URL like www.example.com may be shown both in remote category entry list and in FortiGate's local category URL override configuration. We recommend avoiding this scenario since FortiGate does not check for duplicates. However, if a URL is duplicated in both local category and remote category, it is rated as local category.

## Reliable web filter statistics

FortiOS provides command line tools to view the Web Filter statistics report. These command line tools currently fall into either proxy-based or flow-based Web Filter statistics commands.

## Proxy-based Web Filter statistics report

- The proxy-based Web Filter statistics command line tools are as follows. These commands are available in both global or per-VDOM command lines.

```
#diagnose wad filter   <----define the interested objects for output
(global) # diagnose wad ?
console-log    Send WAD log messages to the console.
debug          Debug setting.
stats          Show statistics.
filter         Filter for listing sessions or tunnels. <----use filter to filter-out
interested object and output
kxp            SSL KXP diagnostics.
user           User diagnostics.
memory         WAD memory diagnostics.
restore        Restore configuration defaults.
history        Statistics history.
session        Session diagnostics.
tunnel         Tunnel diagnostics.
webcache       Web cache statistics.
worker         Worker diagnostics.
csvc           Cache service diagnostics.

#diagnose wad stat filter list/clear <----list/clear Web Filter/DLP statistics
report
```

- In the example below, there are two VDOMs using proxy-based policies which have Web Filter profiles enabled. The command line can be used to view the proxy-based Web Filter statistics report.

```
(global) # diagnose wad filter ?
list                    Display current filter.
clear                   Erase current filter settings.
src                     Source address range to filter by.
dst                     Destination address range to filter by.
sport                   Source port range to filter by.
dport                   Destination port range to filter by.
vd                      Virtual Domain Name.  <----filter for per-vdom or global
statistics report
explicit-policy         Index of explicit-policy. -1 matches all.
firewall-policy         Index of firewall-policy. -1 matches all.
drop-unknown-session    Enable drop message unknown sessions.
negate                  Negate the specified filter parameter.
protocol                Select protocols to filter by.

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad filter vd
<vdom>    Virtual Domain Name.
ALL     all vdoms
root    vdom
vdom1   vdom

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad filter vd root  <----filter-out root vdom
statistics
Drop_unknown_session is enabled.

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad stats filter list
filtering of vdom root  <----Displayed the WF statistics for root vdom
  dlp          = 0      <----Number of Reuqest that DLP Sensor processed;
```

```
  content-type = 0      <----Number of Reuqest that matching content-type filter;
  urls:
    examined = 6  <----Number of Request that Proxy Web-Filter(all wad daemons)
examined;
    allowed = 3   <----Number of Request that be allowed in the examined requests;
    blocked = 0   <----Number of Request that be blocked in the examined requests;
    logged = 0    <----Number of Request that be logged in the examined requests;
    overridden = 0 <----Number of Request that be overrided to another Web Filter
profile in the examined requests;

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad filter vd vdom1  <----filter-out vdom1
statistics

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad stats filter list
filtering of vdom vdom1  <----Displayed the WF statistics for vdom1
  dlp          = 0
  content-type = 0
  urls:
    examined = 13
    allowed = 2
    blocked = 9
    logged = 8
    overridden = 0

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad filter vd ALL

FGT_600D-ICAP-NAT (global) # diagnose wad stats filter list
filtering of all accessible vdoms  <----global statistics is sum of two VDOMs
  dlp          = 0
  content-type = 0
  urls:
    examined = 19
    allowed = 5
    blocked = 9
    logged = 8
    overridden = 0
```

## Flow-based Web Filter statistics report

- The command to check the flow-based Web Filter statistics is:
  `# diag webfilter stats list <vdom/global>`
  This command is available in both VDOM and global command lines.
- In the example below, the VDOM is using flow-based policies which have Web Filter profiles enabled.

```
FGT # diag webfilter stats list root

Proxy/flow URL filter stats:

request:   9474 <----Number of Requests that Flow Web-Filter(all ips engines) received;

blocked:   8606 <----Number of Request that Flow Web-Filter blocked;

allowed:   868 <----Number of Request that Flow Web-Filter allowed;

overridden:0 <----Number of Request that be overrided to another Web Filter profile in
the examined requests;

logged:    8606 <----Number of Request that be logged in the examined requests;
```

```
pending:    0 <----Number of Requests that under processing at that moment;
```

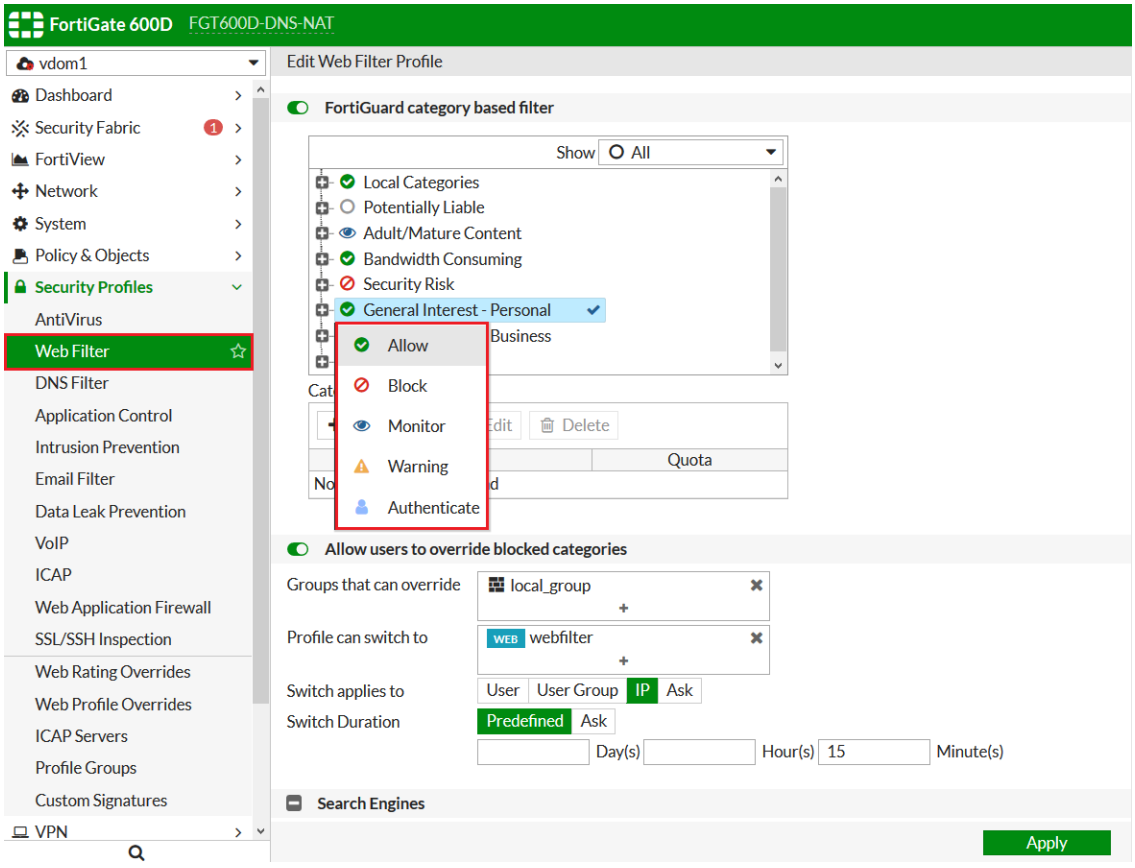
## Flow-based web filtering

Flow-based web filtering includes the following options:

- Authenticate: requires user authentication for specific website categories.
- Warn: displays a warning message for specific website categories, but allows users to continue to the website.
- Override: allows users with valid credentials to override their web filter profile.

**To enable *Authenticate* and *Warning* web filters:**

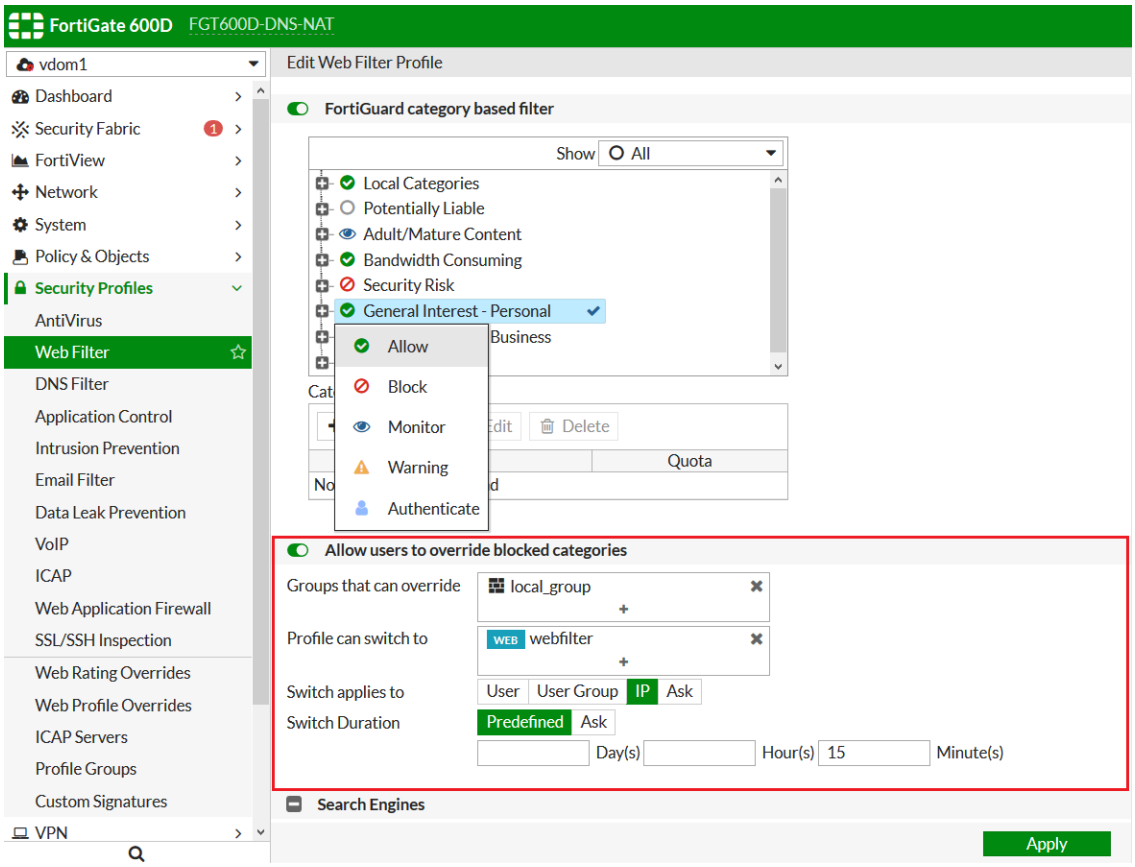
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Edit an existing profile, or create a new one.
3. In the *FortiGuard category based filter* section, right-click on a category.
4. Select the *Authenticate* or *Warning* web filter.
5. Configure other settings as needed.
6. Click *Apply*.




**To allow users to override blocked categories:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Edit an existing profile, or create a new one.

3. Enable *Allow users to override blocked categories*.
4. Enter information in the following fields:
   - *Groups that can override*
   - *Profile can switch to*
   - *Switch applies to*
   - *Switch Duration*
5. Configure other settings as needed.
6. Click *Apply*.




## URL certificate blocklist

As increasing numbers of malware have started to use SSL to attempt to bypass IPS, maintaining a fingerprint-based certificate blocklist is useful to block botnet communication that relies on SSL.

This feature adds a dynamic package that is distributed by FortiGuard and is part of the Web Filtering service. It is enabled by default for SSL/SSH profiles, and can be configured using the following CLI commands:

```
config vdom
    edit <vdom>
        config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
            edit "certificate-inspection"
                set block-blacklisted-certificates enable
            next
            edit "deep-inspection"
```

```
                set block-blacklisted-certificates enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

# DNS filter

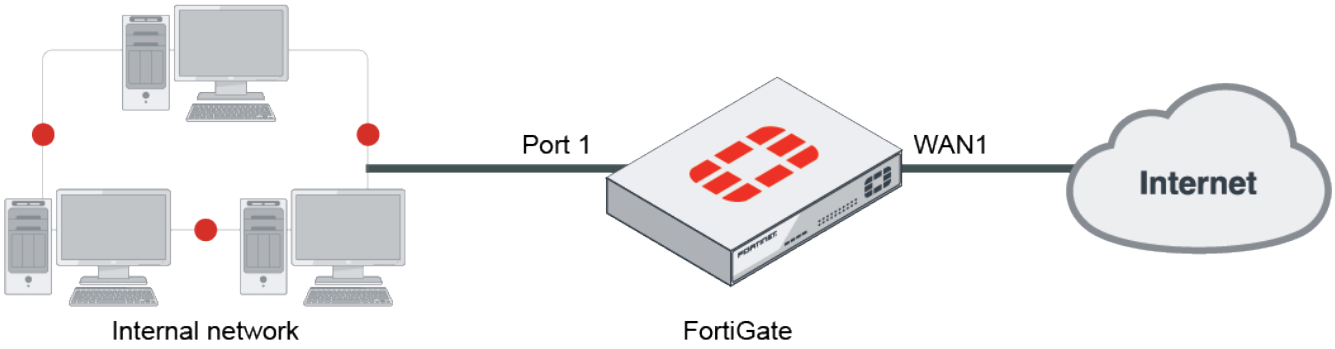
You can apply DNS category filtering to control user access to web resources. You can customize the default profile, or create your own to manage network user access and apply it to a firewall policy, or you can add it to a DNS server on a FortiGate interface. For more information about configuring DNS, see DNS on page 394.

DNS filtering has the following features:

- FortiGuard Filtering: filters the DNS request based on the FortiGuard domain rating.
- Botnet C&C domain blocking: blocks the DNS request for the known botnet C&C domains.
- External dynamic category domain filtering: allows you to define your own domain category.
- DNS safe search: enforces Google, Bing, and YouTube safe addresses for parental controls.
- Local domain filter: allows you to define your own domain list to block or allow.
- External IP block list: allows you to define an IP block list to block resolved IPs that match this list.
- DNS translation: maps the resolved result to another IP that you define.

DNS filtering connects to the FortiGuard secure DNS server over anycast by default. For more information about this configuration, see DNS over TLS on page 405.

The following sample topology is used in the topics of this section. It includes an internal network and a FortiGate that is used as a gateway device that all DNS traffic traverses.




Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Web Filtering.

The following topics provide information about DNS filters:

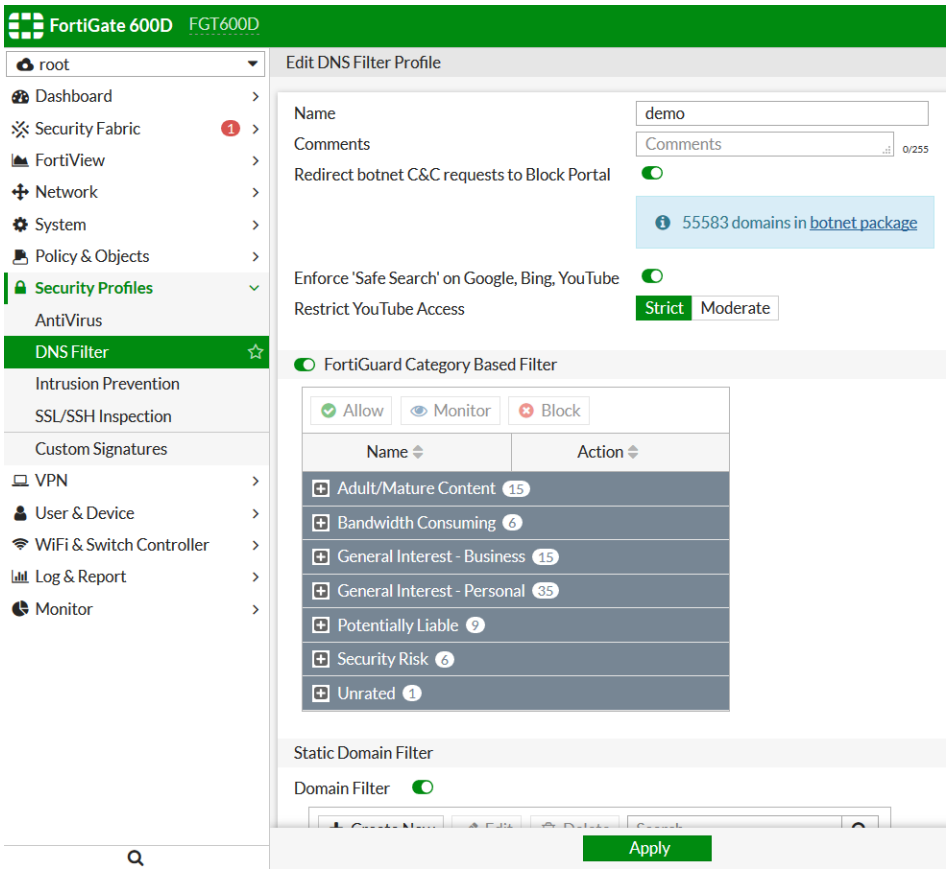
- How to configure and apply a DNS filter profile on page 1007
- FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering on page 1009
- Botnet C&C domain blocking on page 1013
- DNS safe search on page 1017

- Local domain filter on page 1018
- DNS translation on page 1021
- Using a FortiGate as a DNS server on page 1024
- Troubleshooting for DNS filter on page 1026

## How to configure and apply a DNS filter profile

**To create or configure DNS Filter profile in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter*.
2. You can modify the default DNS Filter and enable the options you want or you can click + at the top right to create a new DNS Filter.




**To create or configure DNS Filter profile in the CLI:**

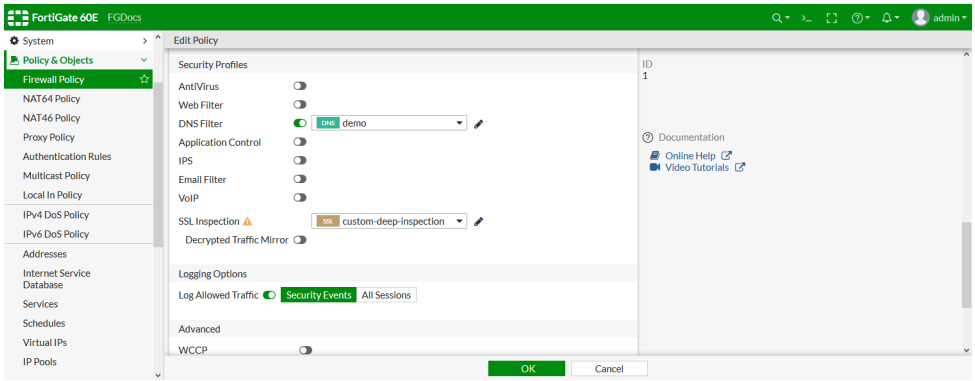
```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "demo"
        set comment ''
        config domain-filter
            unset domain-filter-table
        end
        config ftgd-dns
            set options error-allow
            config filters
```

```
                edit 2
                    set category 2
                    set action monitor
                next
                edit 7
                    set category 7
                    set action block
                next
                ...
                edit 22
                    set category 0
                    set action monitor
                next
            end
        end
        set log-all-domain enable
        set sdns-ftgd-err-log enable
        set sdns-domain-log enable
        set block-action redirect
        set block-botnet enable
        set safe-search enable
        set redirect-portal 93.184.216.34
        set redirect-portal6 ::
        set youtube-restrict strict
    next
end
```

After you have created the DNS Filter profile, you can apply it to the policy. DNS filters also support IPv6 policies.

**To apply DNS Filter profile to the policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Edit or create a new policy.
3. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *DNS Filter* and select the DNS filter.




**To apply DNS Filter profile to the policy in the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Demo"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
```

```
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set dnsfilter-profile "demo"  <<<====
        set profile-protocol-options "default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## FortiGuard category-based DNS domain filtering



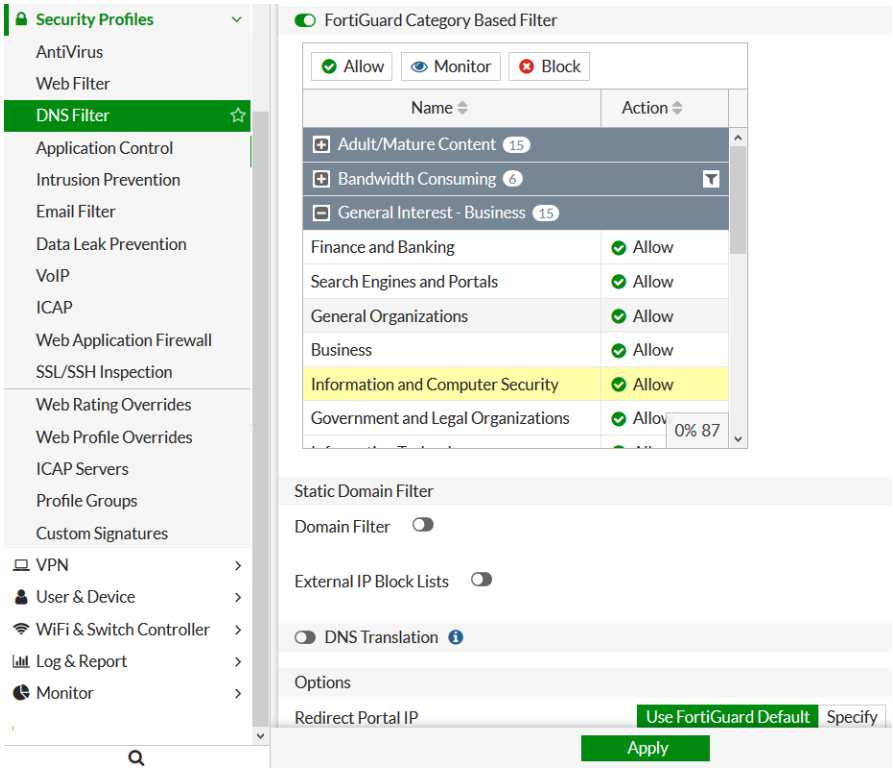
The FortiGate must have a FortiGuard Web Filter license to use FortiGuard Category Based Filter.

You can use the FortiGuard category-based DNS Domain Filter to inspect DNS traffic. This makes use of FortiGuard's continually updated domain rating database for more reliable protection.

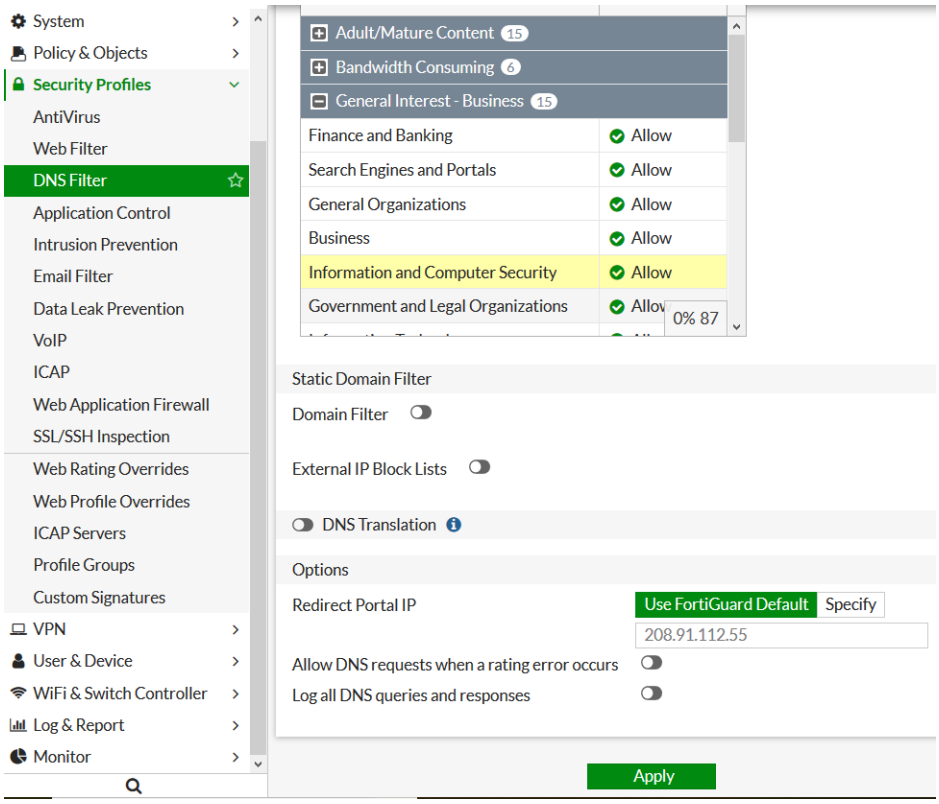
**To configure FortiGuard category-based DNS Domain Filter by GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and edit or create a DNS Filter.
2. Enable *FortiGuard Category Based Filter*.

3. Select the category and then select *Allow*, *Monitor*, or *Block* for that category.




4. If you select *Block*, there are two options:
   - *Redirect Portal IP*. If the DNS query domain will be blocked, FortiGate will use portal IP to replace the resolved IP in DNS response packet. You can use the default portal IP 208.91.112.55 or click *Specify* to enter another portal IP.
   - *Block*. Blocked DNS query has no response return and the DNS query client will timeout.




**To configure FortiGuard category-based DNS Domain Filter by CLI:**

```
config dnsfilter profile
   edit "demo"
      set comment ''
      config domain-filter
         unset domain-filter-table
      end
      config ftgd-dns
         set options error-allow
         config filters  <<<==== FortiGuard Category Based Filter
             edit 2
                 set category 2
                 set action monitor
             next
             edit 7
                 set category 7
                 set action monitor
             next
            ...
             edit 22
                 set category 0
                 set action monitor
             next
         end
      end
      set log-all-domain enable
      set sdns-ftgd-err-log enable
```

```
      set sdns-domain-log enable
      set block-action redirect/block  <<<==== You can specify Block or Redirect
      set block-botnet enable
      set safe-search enable
      set redirect-portal 93.184.216.34  <<<==== Specify Redirect portal-IP.
      set redirect-portal6 ::
      set youtube-restrict strict
   next
end
```

## Sample

To see an example of how this works, from your internal network PC, use a command line tool such as dig or nslookup to do DNS query for some domains, for example:

```
#dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 61252
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 13; ADDITIONAL: 11

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        17164   IN      A       93.184.216.34

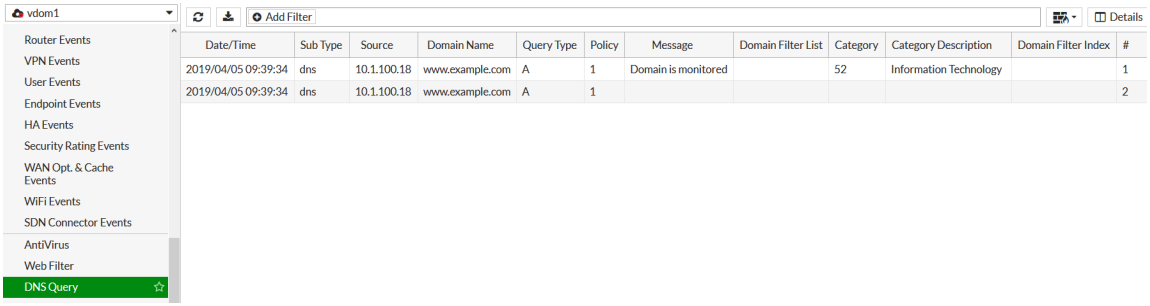
;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
com.                    20027   IN      NS      h.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      i.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      f.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      d.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      j.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      l.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      e.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      a.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      k.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      g.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      m.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      c.gtld-servers.net.
com.                    20027   IN      NS      b.gtld-servers.net.

;; ADDITIONAL SECTION:
a.gtld-servers.net.     21999   IN      A       192.5.6.30
a.gtld-servers.net.     21999   IN      AAAA    2001:503:a83e::2:30
b.gtld-servers.net.     21997   IN      A       192.33.14.30
b.gtld-servers.net.     21997   IN      AAAA    2001:503:231d::2:30
c.gtld-servers.net.     21987   IN      A       192.26.92.30
c.gtld-servers.net.     20929   IN      AAAA    2001:503:83eb::30
d.gtld-servers.net.     3340    IN      A       192.31.80.30
d.gtld-servers.net.     3340    IN      AAAA    2001:500:856e::30
e.gtld-servers.net.     19334   IN      A       192.12.94.30
e.gtld-servers.net.     19334   IN      AAAA    2001:502:1ca1::30
f.gtld-servers.net.     3340    IN      A       192.35.51.30

;; Received 509 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 09:39:33 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 3.8 ms
```

**To check the DNS Filter log in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query* to view the DNS traffic that just traverse the FortiGate and the FortiGuard rating for this domain name.




**To check the DNS log in the CLI:**

```
#execute log filter category utm-dns

# execute log display
2 logs found.
2 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-05 time=09:39:34 logid="1501054802" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554482373 policyid=1 sessionid=50868
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=34308 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=17647
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="93.184.216.34" msg="Domain
is monitored" action="pass" cat=52 catdesc="Information Technology"

2: date=2019-04-05 time=09:39:34 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554482373 policyid=1 sessionid=50868
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=34308 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=17647
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

## Botnet C&C domain blocking

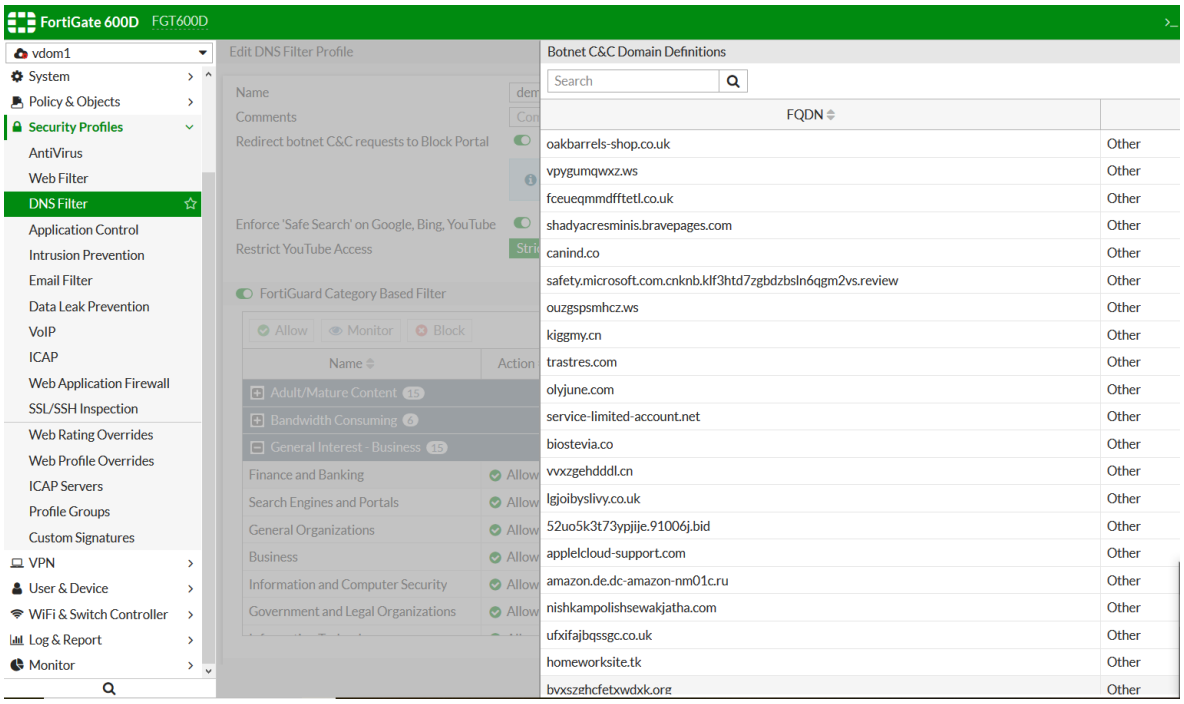
FortiGuard Service continually updates the Botnet C&C domain list (Domain DB). The botnet C&C domain blocking feature can block the botnet website access at the DNS name resolving stage. This provides additional protection for your network.

**To configure botnet C&C domain blocking in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and edit or create a DNS Filter.
2. Enable *Redirect botnet C&C requests to Block Portal*.



3. Click the *botnet package* link to see the latest botnet C&C domain list.




## Sample

To see an example of how this works, select a botnet domain from that list. Then from your internal network PC, use a command line tool such as dig or nslookup to send a DNS query to traverse the FortiGate to see the query blocked as a botnet domain. For example:

```
#dig canind.co
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 997
;; Flags: qr rd; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

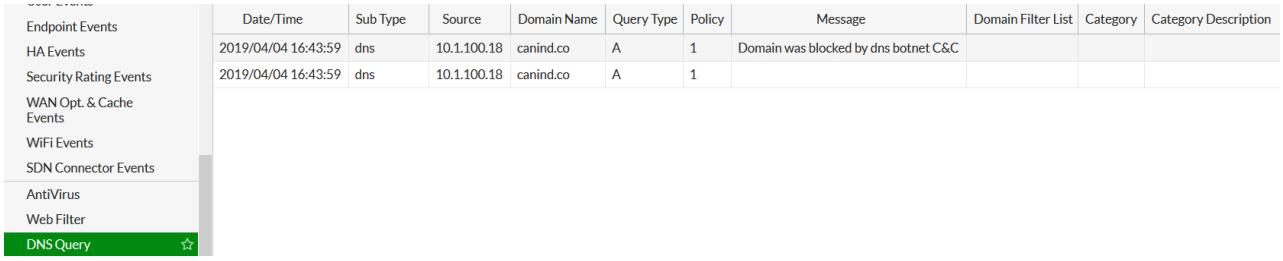
;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; canind.co.                   IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
canind.co.              60      IN      A       208.91.112.55  <<<==== botnet domain query
blocked, redirect with portal-IP.

;; Received 43 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 09:55:21 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.3 ms
```

**To check the DNS Filter log in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query* to view the DNS query blocked as a botnet domain.




**To check the DNS Filter log in the CLI:**

```
(vdom1) # execute log filter category utm-dns

(vdom1) # execute log display
2 logs found.
2 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-04 time=16:43:59 logid="1501054601" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554421439 policyid=1 sessionid=14135
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=57447 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=24339
qname="canind.co" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" msg="Domain was blocked by dns botnet
C&C" action="redirect" botnetdomain="canind.co"

2: date=2019-04-04 time=16:43:59 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554421439 policyid=1 sessionid=14135
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=57447 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=24339
qname="canind.co" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

## Botnet C&C IPDB blocking

FortiGate also maintains a botnet C&C IP address database (botnet IPDB). If a DNS query response IP address (resolved IP address) matches an entry inside the botnet IPDB, this DNS query is also blocked by DNS Filter botnet C&C blocking.

**To view the botnet IPDB list in the CLI:**

```
(global) # diagnose sys botnet list 9000 10
9000. proto=TCP ip=103.228.28.166, port=80, rule_id=7630075, name_id=3, hits=0
9001. proto=TCP ip=5.9.32.166, port=481, rule_id=4146631, name_id=7, hits=0
9002. proto=TCP ip=91.89.44.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9003. proto=TCP ip=46.211.46.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9004. proto=TCP ip=77.52.52.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9005. proto=TCP ip=98.25.53.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9006. proto=TCP ip=70.120.67.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9007. proto=TCP ip=85.253.77.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9008. proto=TCP ip=193.106.81.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
9009. proto=TCP ip=58.13.84.166, port=80, rule_id=48, name_id=96, hits=0
```

To see an example of how DNS Filter botnet C&C IPDB blocking works, select an IP address from the IPDB list and use Internet reverse lookup service to find its corresponding domain name. Then from your internal network PC, use a command line tool such as dig or nslookup to query this domain and see that it's blocked by DNS Filter botnet C&C blocking. For example:

```
# dig cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 35135
;; Flags: qr rd; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com.              IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com. 60      IN      A       208.91.112.55  <<<====  Since
resolved IP address match the botnet IPDB, dns query blocked with redirect portal IP.

;; Received 64 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 11:06:47 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.6 ms
```

**To check the DNS Filter log in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query* to view the DNS query blocked by botnet C&C IPDB blocking.

| Date/Time | Sub Type | Source | Domain Name | Query Type | Policy | Message | Domain Filter List | Category | Category Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2019/04/05 11:06:48 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com | A | 1 | Domain was blocked by dns botnet C&C | | | |
| 2019/04/05 11:06:48 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com | A | 1 | | | | |

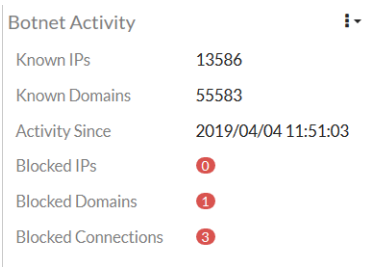
**To check the DNS Filter log in the CLI:**

```
1: date=2019-04-05 time=11:06:48 logid="1501054600" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554487606 policyid=1 sessionid=55232
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=60510 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=16265
qname="cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
ipaddr="93.184.216.34" msg="Domain was blocked by dns botnet C&C" action="redirect"
botnetip=98.25.53.166

2: date=2019-04-05 time=11:06:48 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554487606 policyid=1 sessionid=55232
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=60510 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=16265
qname="cpe-98-25-53-166.sc.res.rr.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

**To check botnet activity:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status* and see the *Botnet Activity* widget.
   If you cannot find the *Botnet Activity* widget, click the *Settings* button at the bottom right, select *Add Widget*, and add the *Botnet Activity* widget.



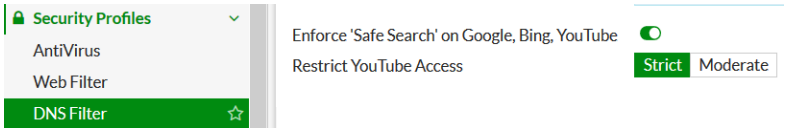

## DNS safe search

Enable DNS Filter safe search so that FortiGate responds with the search engine's children and school safe domain or IP address. Users might not be aware of this filter. Explicit contents are filtered by the search engine itself. This feature isn't 100% accurate but it can help you avoid explicit and inappropriate search results.

This feature currently supports Google, Bing, and YouTube.

**To configure DNS Filter Safe Search on GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and edit or create a DNS Filter.
2. Enable *Enforce 'Safe search' on Google, Bing, YouTube*.
3. For *Restrict YouTube Access*, select *Strict* or *Moderate*.




**To configure DNS Filter Safe Search on CLI:**

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "demo"
        config ftgd-dns
            set options error-allow
            config filters
                edit 2
                    set category 2
                next
               ...
            end
        end
        set log-all-domain enable
        set block-botnet enable
        set safe-search enable  <<<==== DNS Filter Safe Search option
    next
end
```

### Sample

To see an example of how this works, enable this option. Then from your internal network PC, use a command line tool such as dig or nslookup to do a DNS query on www.bing.com. For example:

```
# dig www.bing.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 46568
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 2; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.bing.com.                IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.bing.com.           103     IN      CNAME   strict.bing.com.  <<<====
strict.bing.com.        103     IN      A       204.79.197.220

;; Received 67 B
;; Time 2019-04-05 14:34:52 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 196.0 ms
```

The DNS query for www.bing.com returns with a CNAME strict.bing.com, and A record for the CNAME. The user's web browser then connects to this address with the same search engine UI but any explicit content search is filtered out. Check the DNS Filter log for the message *DNS Safe Search enforced*.

| Date/Time | Sub Type | Source | Domain Name | Query Type | Policy | Message | Domain Filter List | Category | Category Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2019/04/05 14:34:53 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.bing.com | A | 1 | DNS Safe Search enforced | | 41 | Search Engines and Portals |
| 2019/04/05 14:34:53 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.bing.com | A | 1 | | | | |

**To check the DNS Filter Safe Search log in the CLI:**

```
1: date=2019-04-05 time=14:34:53 logid="1501054804" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554500093 policyid=1 sessionid=65955
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=36575 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=59573
qname="www.bing.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="204.79.197.220" msg="DNS Safe
Search enforced" action="pass" sscname="strict.bing.com" cat=41 catdesc="Search Engines and
Portals"

2: date=2019-04-05 time=14:34:53 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554500092 policyid=1 sessionid=65955
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=36575 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=59573
qname="www.bing.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

### Additional information

For each search engine's safe search specifications, see its specification page:

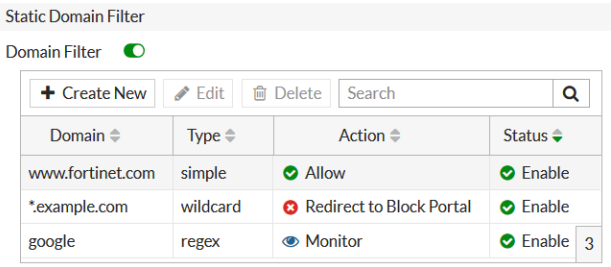
- https://help.bing.microsoft.com/#apex/18/en-US/10003/0
- https://support.google.com/websearch/answer/510?co=GENIE.Platform%3DDesktop&hl=en
- https://support.google.com/youtube/answer/174084?co=GENIE.Platform%3DDesktop&hl=en

## Local domain filter

In addition to FortiGuard's category-based domain filter, you can also can define your own local static domain filter to allow or block specific domains.

### To configure DNS local domain filter on GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and edit or create a DNS Filter.
2. In the *Static Domain Filter* section, enable *Domain Filter*.
3. Click *Create New* to create your local domain filter entries.




### To configure DNS local domain filter on CLI:

```
config dnsfilter domain-filter
    edit 1
        set name "demo"
        set comment ''
        config entries
            edit 1
                set domain "www.fortinet.com"
                set type simple
                set action allow
                set status enable
            next
            edit 2
                set domain "*.example.com"
                set type wildcard
                set action block
                set status enable
            next
            edit 3
                set domain "google"
                set type regex
                set action monitor
                set status enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Wildcard entries are converted to regular expressions by FortiOS. As a result of this conversion, wildcards will match any suffix, as long as there is a word boundary following the search term.

For example:

```
config entries
    edit 1
        set domain "*.host"
        set type wildcard
    next
end
```

will match `wp36.host` and `wp36.host.pressdns.com`, but not `wp36.host123.pressdnds.com`.

To avoid this, use an explicit regular expression search string:

```
config entries
    edit 1
        set domain "^.*\\.host$"
        set type regexp
    next
end
```

### To check the DNS local domain filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *DNS Query* to view the DNS query log.

| Date/Time | Sub Type | Source | Domain Name | Query Type | Policy | Message | Domain Filter List | Category | Category Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2019/04/05 15:37:06 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.google.com | A | 1 | Domain belongs to a denied category in policy | | 41 | Search Engines and Port |
| 2019/04/05 15:37:06 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.google.com | A | 1 | | | | |
| 2019/04/05 15:36:59 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.example.com | A | 1 | Domain was blocked because it is in the domain-filter list | demo | | |
| 2019/04/05 15:36:59 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.example.com | A | 1 | | | | |
| 2019/04/05 15:36:51 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.fortinet.com | A | 1 | Domain was allowed because it is in the domain-filter list | demo | | |
| 2019/04/05 15:36:51 | dns | 10.1.100.18 | www.fortinet.com | A | 1 | | | | |

Since the local domain list "google" action is Monitor, it's blocked by FortiGuard category-based domain filter.

### To check the DNS local domain filter log in the CLI:

```
7: date=2019-04-05 time=15:37:06 logid="1501054803" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503826 policyid=1 sessionid=69132 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=49832 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=4612 qname="www.google.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" ipaddr="208.91.112.55" msg="Domain belongs to a denied category in policy" action="redirect" cat=41 catdesc="Search Engines and Portals"

8: date=2019-04-05 time=15:37:06 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503826 policyid=1 sessionid=69132 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=49832 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=4612 qname="www.google.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"

9: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:59 logid="1501054400" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-response" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503818 policyid=1 sessionid=69121
```

```
srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=40659 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.95.16
dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17 profile="demo" xid=24730
qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN" msg="Domain was blocked because it
is in the domain-filter list" action="redirect" domainfilteridx=1 domainfilterlist="demo"

10: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:59 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns"
eventtype="dns-query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503818 policyid=1
sessionid=69121 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=40659 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="demo" xid=24730 qname="www.example.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"

11: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:51 logid="1501054401" type="utm" subtype="dns"
eventtype="dns-response" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503810 policyid=1
sessionid=69118 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=33461 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="demo" xid=53801 qname="www.fortinet.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
ipaddr="13.56.55.78, 54.183.57.55" msg="Domain was allowed because it is in the domain-
filter list" action="pass" domainfilteridx=1 domainfilterlist="demo"

12: date=2019-04-05 time=15:36:51 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns"
eventtype="dns-query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554503810 policyid=1
sessionid=69118 srcip=10.1.100.18 srcport=33461 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.95.16 dstport=53 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="demo" xid=53801 qname="www.fortinet.com" qtype="A" qtypeval=1 qclass="IN"
```

### Sequence and priority

In DNS Filter, local domain filter has a higher priority than FortiGuard category-based domain filter.

A DNS query is scanned and matched with local domain filter first. If an entry matches and the local filter entry's action is block, then that DNS query is blocked or redirected.

If local domain filter list has no match, then the FortiGuard category-based domain filter is used. If a DNS query domain name rating belongs to the block category, this query is blocked or redirected. If the FortiGuard category-based filter has no match, then the original resolved IP address is returned to the client DNS resolver.

The local domain filter action can be Block, Allow, or Monitor. If the local domain filter action is Allow and an entry matches, it will skip the FortiGuard category-based domain filter and directly return to client DNS resolver. If the local domain filter action is Monitor and an entry matches, it will go to FortiGuard category-based domain filter scanning and matching.

## DNS translation

Using this feature, you can translate a DNS resolved IP address to another IP address you specify on a per-policy basis.

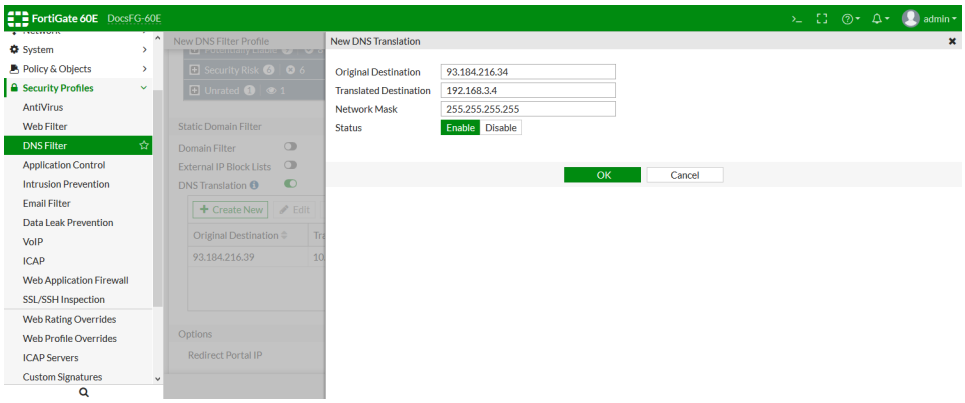
For example, website A has a public address 1.2.3.4. However, when your internal network users visit this website, you want them to connect to an internal host, say, 192.168.3.4. In this case, you can use DNS translation to translate the DNS resolved address 1.2.3.4 to 192.168.3.4. Reverse use of DNS translation is also applicable, for example, if you want public DNS query of your internal server to get a public IP address, then you can translate a DNS resolved private IP to a public IP address.

## Example

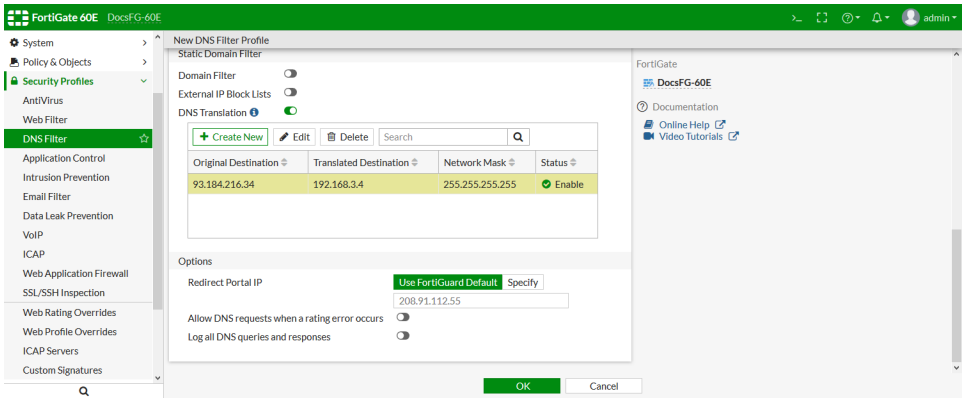
This example configuration forces the DNS Filter profile to translate 93.184.216.34 (www.example.com) to 192.168.3.4. When internal network users do a DNS query for www.example.com, they do not get the original www.example.com IP address of 93.184.216.34. Instead, it is replaced with 192.168.3.4.

### To configure DNS translation in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter* and edit or create a DNS Filter profile.
2. Enable *DNS Translation* and click *Create New*.
3. Enter the *Original Destination* (the domain's original IP address), the *Translated Destination* IP address, and the *Network Mask*, and set *Status* to *Enable*.




4. Click *OK*.




5. Click *OK* to create or edit the DNS profile.

### To configure DNS translation in the CLI:

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "demo"
        set comment ''
        ...
        config dns-translation
            edit 1
                set src 93.184.216.34
                set dst 192.168.3.4
                set netmask 255.255.255.255
            next
```

```
        end
        set redirect-portal 0.0.0.0
        set redirect-portal6 ::
        set youtube-restrict strict
    next
end
```

**To check DNS translation using a command line tool before DNS translation:**

```
# dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 27030
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 2; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        33946   IN      A       93.184.216.34

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
example.com.            18578   IN      NS      b.iana-servers.net.
example.com.            18578   IN      NS      a.iana-servers.net.

;; Received 97 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 10:47:26 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.5 ms
```

**To check DNS translation using a command line tool after DNS translation:**

```
# dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 62060
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 2; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        32491   IN      A       192.168.3.4   <<<==== resolved IP translated
into 192.168.3.4

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
example.com.            17123   IN      NS      b.iana-servers.net.
example.com.            17123   IN      NS      a.iana-servers.net.

;; Received 97 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 11:11:41 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 0.5 ms
```

## DNS translation network mask

The following is an example of DNS translation and result:

```
config dns-translation
        edit 1
           set src 93.184.216.34
           set dst 1.2.3.4
```

```
            set netmask 255.255.224.0
        next
    end
```

```
# dig www.example.com
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 6736
;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 2; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.example.com.             IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.example.com.        29322   IN      A       1.2.24.34

;; AUTHORITY SECTION:
example.com.            13954   IN      NS      a.iana-servers.net.
example.com.            13954   IN      NS      b.iana-servers.net.

;; Received 97 B
;; Time 2019-04-08 12:04:30 PDT
;; From 172.16.95.16@53(UDP) in 2.0 ms
```

```
1) AND src(Orginal IP) with negative netmask (93.184.216.34 & ~255.255.224.0)
01011101.10111000.11011000.00100010 93.184.216.34 <-- ip
00000000.00000000.00011111.11111111 ~255.255.224.0 <-- ~netmask
-------------------------------------------------------- &
00000000.00000000.00011000.00100010 0.0.24.34 <- right bits


2) AND dst(Translated IP) with netmask
00000001.00000010.00000011.00000100 1.2.3.4 <- dst
11111111.11111111.11100000.00000000 255.255.224.0 <- netmask
-------------------------------------------------------- &
00000001.00000010.00000000.00000000 1.2.0.0 <- left bits

3) Final step 2 bitwise-OR 3:
00000000.00000000.00011000.00100010 0.0.24.34
00000001.00000010.00000000.00000000 1.2.0.0
-------------------------------------------------------- |
00000001.00000010.00011000.00100010 1.2.24.34
```

## Using a FortiGate as a DNS server

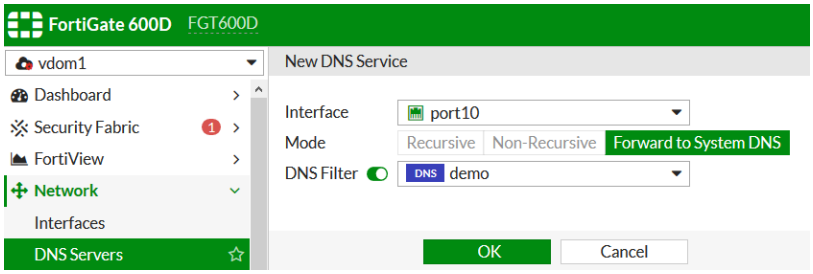
You can configure and use FortiGate as a DNS server in your network. When you enable DNS Service on a specific interface, FortiGate will listen for DNS Service on that interface.

Depending on the configuration, DNS Service on FortiGate can work in three modes: *Recursive*, *Non-Recursive*, or *Forward to System DNS* (server). For details on how to configure DNS Service on FortiGate, see the FortiGate System Configuration Guide.

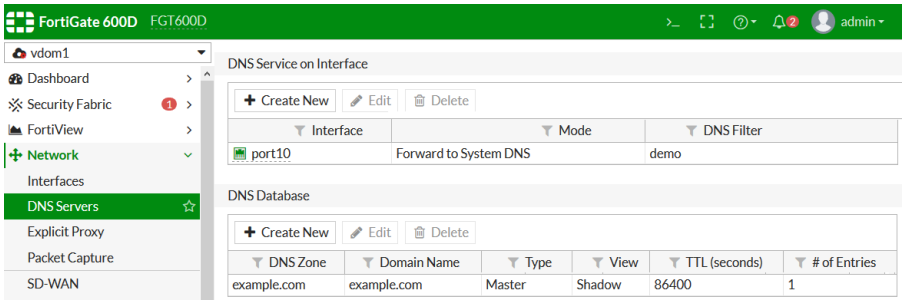
You can apply a DNS Filter profile to Recursive Mode and Forward to System DNS Mode. This is the same as FortiGate working as a transparent DNS Proxy for DNS relay traffic.

**To configure DNS Service on FortiGate using GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *DNS Servers*.
2. In the *DNS Service on Interface*, click *Create New* and select an *Interface*.




The *Recursive* and *Non-Recursive Mode* is available only after you configure the DNS database.




**To configure DNS Service on FortiGate using CLI:**

```
config system dns-server
    edit "port10"   <<<==== Enable DNS Serive on Interface
        set mode forward-only
        set dnsfilter-profile "demo"   <<<==== apply DNS Filter Profile for the service
    next
end
```

## Sample configuration

In this example, FortiGate port 10 is enabled as a DNS Service with the DNS Filter profile "demo". Suppose port 10 has an IP address 10.1.100.5 and DNS Filter profile "demo" is set to block category 52 (Information Technology), then from your internal network PC, use a command line tool such as dig or nslookup to do a DNS query. For example:

```
# dig @10.1.100.5 www.fortinet.com    <<<====Specify FortiGate interface address as DNS
Server
;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 52809
;; Flags: qr rd; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 1; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

;; QUESTION SECTION:
;; www.fortinet.com.            IN      A

;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.fortinet.com.       60      IN      A       208.91.112.55   <<<==== DNS Filter profile
will filter the relay DNS traffic based on profile configuration. It blocked with redirect
portal IP

;; Received 50 B
```

```
;; Time 2019-04-08 14:36:34 PDT
;; From 10.1.100.5@53(UDP) in 13.6 ms
```

## Troubleshooting for DNS filter

If you have trouble with the DNS Filter profile in your policy, start with the following troubleshooting steps:

- Check the connection between FortiGate and FortiGuard DNS rating server (SDNS server).
- Check that FortiGate has a valid FortiGuard Web Filter license.
- Check the FortiGate DNS Filter configuration.

### Troubleshooting connection between FortiGate and FortiGuard SDNS server

Ensure FortiGate can connect to the FortiGuard SDNS server. By default, FortiGate uses UDP port 53 to connect to the SDNS server.

**To check the connection between FortiGate and the SDNS server in the CLI:**

1. In the CLI Console, run the `diagnose test application dnsproxy 3` command to find the FortiGuard SDNS server.

   ```
   ...
   FDG_SERVER:208.91.112.220:53
   FGD_CATEGORY_VERSION:8
   SERVER_LDB: gid=6f00, tz=-420, error_allow=0
   FGD_REDIR:208.91.112.55
   ```

2. Check the `FDG_SERVER` line. The SDNS server IP address might be different depending on location. For this example, it is:

   ```
   FDG_SERVER:208.91.112.220:53
   ```

3. In the CLI Console under the management VDOM, run the command `execute ping 208.91.112.220` to check the communication between the FortiGate and the SDNS server.
4. Optionally, you can also check the communication using a PC on the internal network.
   a. Disable the DNS Filter profile so that it does not affect your connection check.
   b. Ping your ISP or a public DNS service provides's DNS server, for example, Google's public DNS server of 8.8.8.8:

      ```
      #dig @8.8.8.8 www.fortinet.com
      ```

      Or specify the SDNS server as DNS server:

      ```
      #dig @208.91.112.220 www.fortinet.com
      ```

   c. Check that you can get domain www.fortinet.com A record from the DNS server which shows that UDP port 53 connection path is not blocked.

      ```
      #dig @8.8.8.8 www.fortinet.com
      ;; ->>HEADER<<- opcode: QUERY; status: NOERROR; id: 35121
      ;; Flags: qr rd ra; QUERY: 1; ANSWER: 3; AUTHORITY: 0; ADDITIONAL: 0

      ;; QUESTION SECTION:
      ;; www.fortinet.com.            IN      A
      ```

```
;; ANSWER SECTION:
www.fortinet.com.       289     IN      CNAME   fortinet-prod4-858839915.us-west-
1.elb.amazonaws.com.
fortinet-prod4-858839915.us-west-1.elb.amazonaws.com. 51        IN      A
52.8.142.247
fortinet-prod4-858839915.us-west-1.elb.amazonaws.com. 51        IN      A
13.56.55.78

;; Received 129 B
;; Time 2019-04-29 14:13:18 PDT
;; From 8.8.8.8@53(UDP) in 13.2 ms
```

## Checking FortiGuard DNS Rating Service license

The FortiGuard DNS Rating Service shares the license with FortiGuard Web Filter so you must have a valid Web Filter license for the DNS Rating Service to work. While the license is shared, the DNS Rating Service uses a separate connection mechanism from the Web Filter Rating.

**To check the DNS Rating Service license in the CLI:**

1. In the CLI Console, run the command `diagnose test application dnsproxy 3`.
2. Look for the `LICENSE` line and check that the license has not expired, for example:
   `LICENSE: expiry=2029-08-21, expired=0, type=2`
3. Check the `dns-server` lines. Some `dns-server` lines show `secure=1 ready=1`. These lines show the functioning SDNS servers. For example:
   `dns-server:208.91.112.220:53 tz=-480 req=7 to=0 res=7 rt=1` **`secure=1 ready=1`** `timer=0 probe=0 failure=0 last_failed=0`

## Checking FortiGate DNS Filter profile configuration

**To check the FortiGate DNS Filter profile configuration:**

1. Create a local domain filter and set the *Action* to *Redirect to Block Portal*.
   See Local domain filter on page 1018.
2. Apply this DNS Filter profile to the policy.
3. From the client PC, DNS query this domain.

If you get the profile's redirected portal address, that shows that the DNS Filter profile works as expected.

## More troubleshooting steps

**To reload the DNS proxy in the CLI:**

```
(global)#diagnose test application dnsproxy 99
```

**To debug DNS proxy details:**

These commands might create more output in your console.

```
#diagnose debug application dnsproxy -1

#diagnose debug enable/disable
```

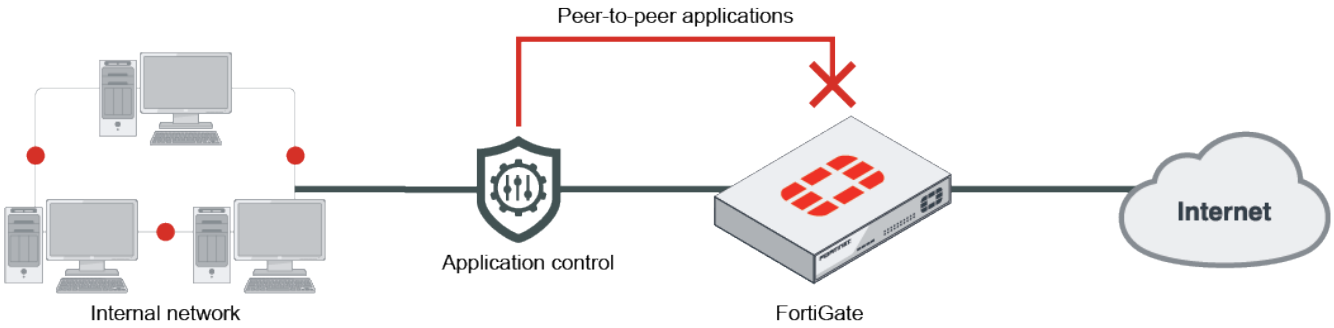
### DNS proxy command reference

Use the following `diagnose test application dnsproxy` command line options to check DNS proxy status and help with troubleshooting.

```
(global) # diagnose test application dnsproxy ?
worker idx: 0
1. Clear DNS cache
2. Show stats
3. Dump DNS setting
4. Reload FQDN
5. Requery FQDN
6. Dump FQDN
7. Dump DNS cache
8. Dump DNS DB
9. Reload DNS DB
10. Dump secure DNS policy/profile
11. Dump Botnet domain
12. Reload Secure DNS setting
13. Show Hostname cache
14. Clear Hostname cache
15. Show SDNS rating cache
16. Clear SDNS rating cache
17. DNS debug bit mask
99. Restart dnsproxy worker
```

## Application control

FortiGates can recognize network traffic generated by a large number of applications. Application control sensors specify what action to take with the application traffic. Application control uses IPS protocol decoders that can analyze network traffic to detect application traffic, even if the traffic uses non-standard ports or protocols. Application control supports traffic detection using the HTTP protocol (versions 1.0, 1.1, and 2.0).




FortiOS includes three preloaded application sensors:

- *default* (monitors all applications)
- *wifi-default* (default configuration for offloading WiFi traffic)

- *block-high-risk*

You can customize these sensors, or you can create your own to log and manage the applications on your network.

Once configured, you can add the application sensor to a firewall policy.



This functionality requires a subscription to FortiGuard Application Control.

The following topics provide information about application control:


- Basic category filters and overrides on page 1029
- Port enforcement check on page 1033
- Protocol enforcement on page 1033
- SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic in a sandwich topology on page 1035
- Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures on page 1036


## Basic category filters and overrides

Once you have created an application sensor, you can define the applications that you want to control. You can add applications and filters using categories, application overrides, and/or filter overrides.

- **Categories**: Choose groups of signatures based on a category type.
- **Application overrides**: Choose individual applications.
- **Filter overrides**: Select groups of applications and override the application signature settings for them.

### Categories

Categories allow you to choose groups of signatures based on a category type. Applications belonging to the category trigger the action that is set for the category.

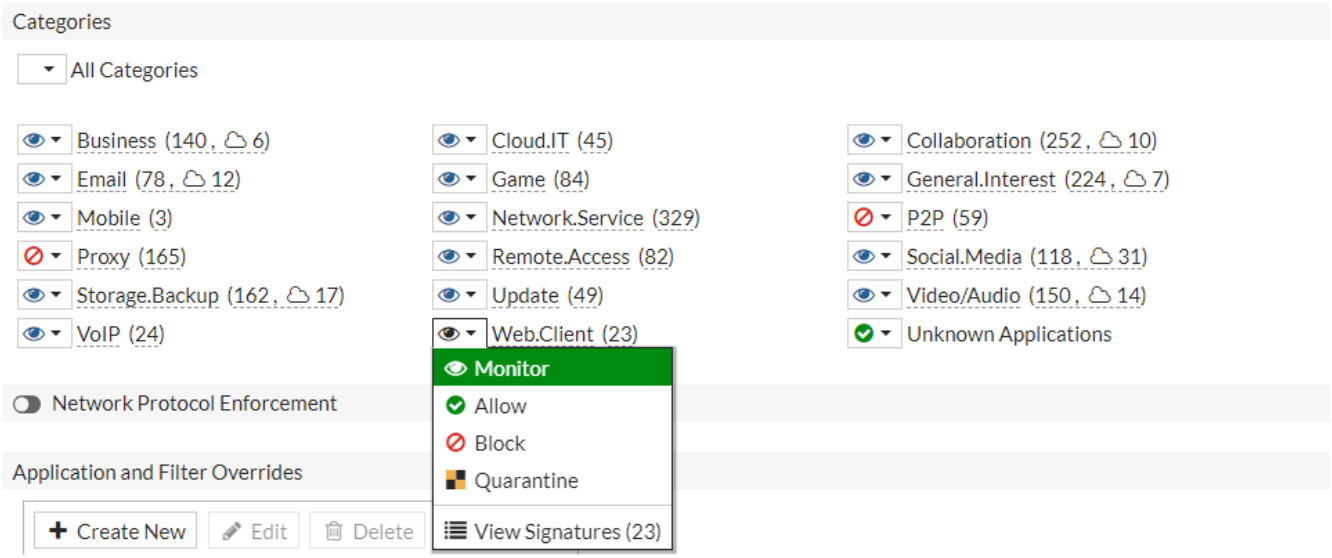
**To set category filters in the CLI:**

```
config application list
    edit {id}
        config entries
            edit 1
                set category <id>
                    ID           Select Category ID
                    2            P2P
                    3            VoIP
                    5            Video/Audio
                    6            Proxy
                    7            Remote.Access
                    8            Game
                    12           General.Interest
                    15           Network.Service
                    17           Update
                    21           Email
                    22           Storage.Backup
                    23           Social.Media
```

```
                    25          Web.Client
                    26          Industrial
                    28          Collaboration
                    29          Business
                    30          Cloud.IT
                    31          Mobile
                set action {pass | block | reset}
                    pass     Pass or allow matching traffic.
                    block    Block or drop matching traffic.
                    reset    Reset sessions for matching traffic.
                set log {enable | disable}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To set category filters in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Under *Categories*, left click the icon next to the category name to view a dropdown of actions:
   - Allow
   - Monitor
   - Block
   - Quarantine
   - View signatures
3. Select *OK*.




## Application and filter overrides

| Override type | Setting |
|---|---|
| **Application** | **Type**: Choose *Application* for application overrides. |
| | **Action**: Can be set to Monitor/Allow/Block/Quarantine. |

| Override type | Setting |
|---|---|
| | **Application**: Multiple app signatures can be added for one entry. A slide-in presenting an application list will be shown to select specific app signatures, and the search box can be used to filter matched signatures. |
| **Filter** | **Type**: Choose *Filter* for filter overrides. |
| | **Action**: Can be set to Monitor/Allow/Block/Quarantine. |
| | **Filter**: Filters can be selected by behavior, application category, technology, popularity, protocol, risk, or vendor subtypes. |
| | **Search box**: Can be used to determine if the input signature is included in selected filters, where matched applications are shown at the bottom. |

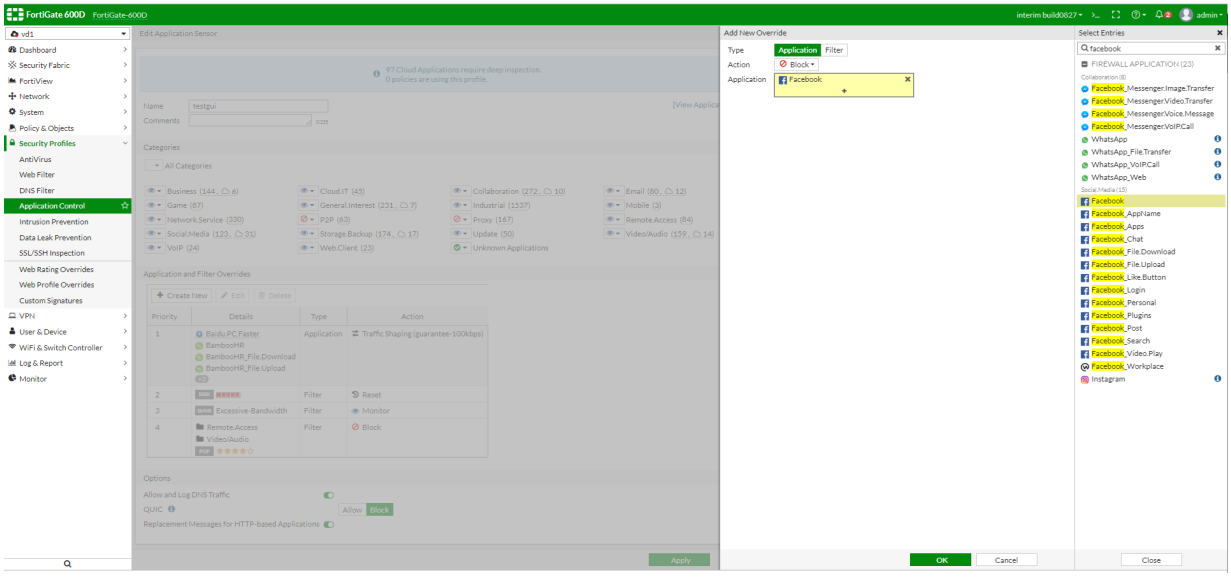
**To set overrides in the CLI:**

```
config application list
    edit {id}
        config entries
            edit 1
                set protocols <0-47>    #network protocol ID
                set risk <id>
                    *level    Risk of allowing traffic from this application to occur (1 -
5; Low, Elevated, Medium, High, and Critical).
                set vendor <0-25>       #vendor ID
                set technology <id>
                    All          All
                    0            Network-Protocol
                    1            Browser-Based
                    2            Client-Server
                    4            Peer-to-Peer
                set behavior <id>
                    All          All
                    2            Botnet
                    3            Evasive
                    5            Excessive-Bandwidth
                    6            Tunneling
                    9            Cloud
                set popularity <1-5>    #Popularity level 1-5
                set action {pass | block | reset}
                    pass     Pass or allow matching traffic.
                    block    Block or drop matching traffic.
                    reset    Reset sessions for matching traffic.
                set log {enable | disable}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

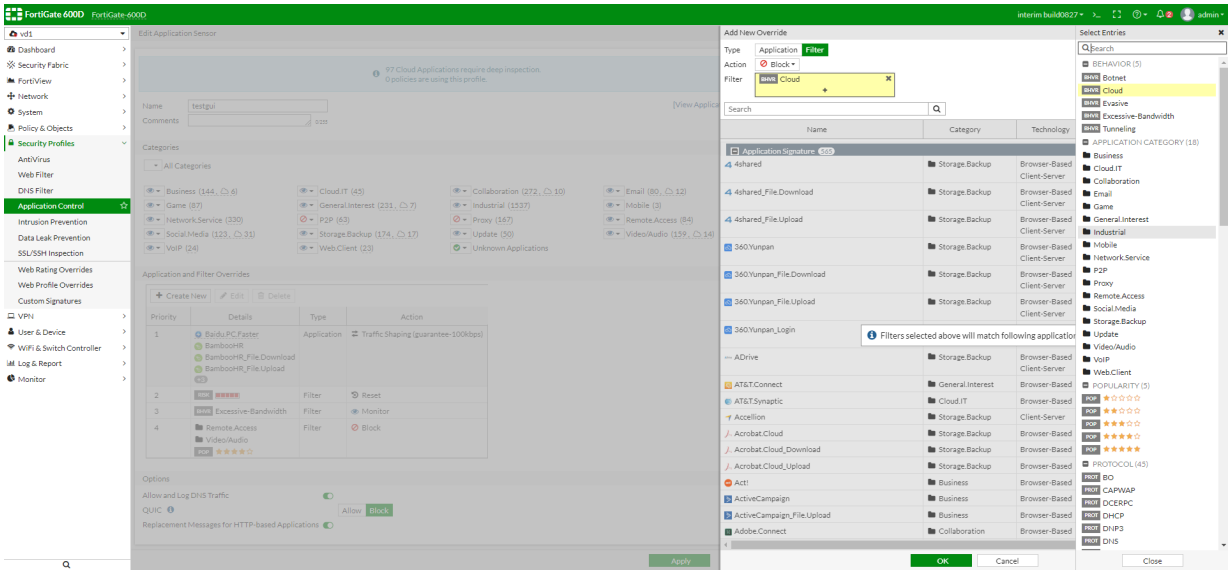
**To set overrides in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Under the *Application and Filter Overrides* table, click *Create New*.

3. To add individual applications:
   a. Select *Application* as the *Type*.
   b. Choose an action to be associated with the application.
   c. Click the + button in the *Application* field and choose the specific applications from the list where app signatures are displayed. Multiple applications may be selected.



   d. Click *OK*.
4. To add advanced filters:
   a. Create another entry in the *Application and Filter Overrides* table.
   b. Select *Filter* as the *Type*.
   c. Select *Cloud* under the behavior section from the *Select Entries* list.
   Matched signatures are shown along the bottom.



   d. Click *OK*.

## Port enforcement check

Most networking applications run on specific ports. For example, SSH runs on port 22, and Facebook runs on ports 80 and 443.

If the default network service is enabled in the Application Control profile, a port enforcement check is done at the application profile level, and any detected application signatures running on the non-standard TCP/IP port are blocked. This means that each application allowed by the app control sensor is only run on its default port.

**To set port enforcement check in the CLI:**

```
config application list
    edit "default_port"
        set enforce-default-app-port {enable | disable}
            disable        Disable default application port enforcement.
            enable         Enable default application port enforcement.
        config entries
            edit 1
                set application 15896
                set action pass
            next
        end
    next
end
```

For example, when applying the above appctrl sensor, FTP traffic with the standard port (port 21) is allowed, while the non-standard port (port 2121) is blocked.

## Protocol enforcement

Protocol enforcement allows you to configure networking services (e.g. FTP, HTTP, HTTPS) on known ports (e.g. 21, 80, 443). For protocols that are not allowlisted under select ports, the IPS engine performs the violation action to block, allow, or monitor that traffic.

This feature can be used in the following scenarios::

- When one protocol dissector confirms the service of network traffic, protocol enforcement can check whether the confirmed service is allowlisted under the server port. If it is not allowlisted, the traffic is considered a violation and IPS can take the action specified in the configuration (block or monitor it).
- When there is no confirmed service for the network traffic, the traffic is considered a service violation if IPS dissectors rule out all of the services enforced under its server port.

In an applicable profile, a default-network-service list can be created to associate well known ports with accepted services.

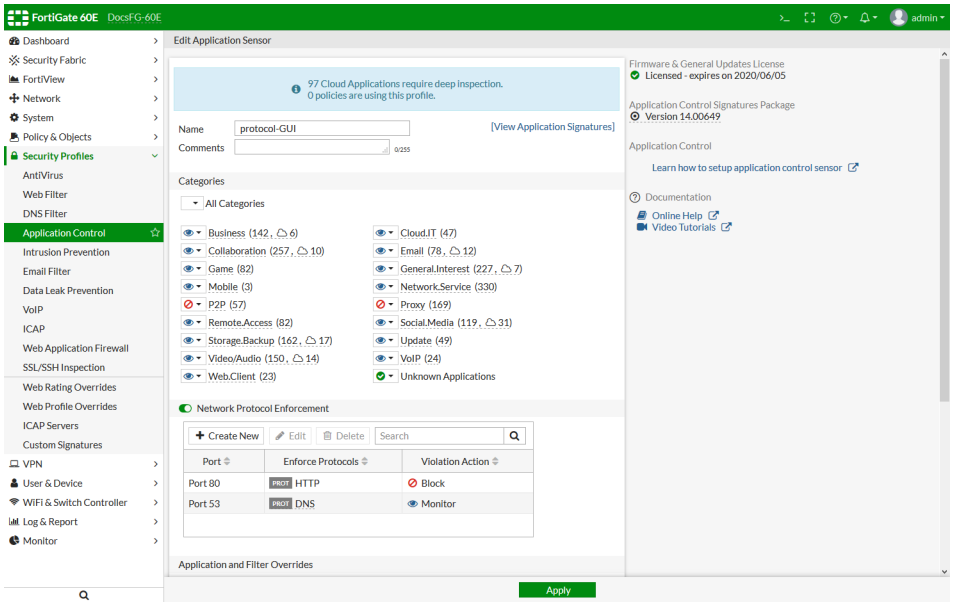
**To setup protocol enforcement in the CLI:**

```
config application list
   edit "protocol-GUI"
      set other-application-log enable
      set control-default-network-services {enable | disable}   # Enable/Disable enforcement
of protocols over select ports
      config default-network-services                           # Default network service
entries
```

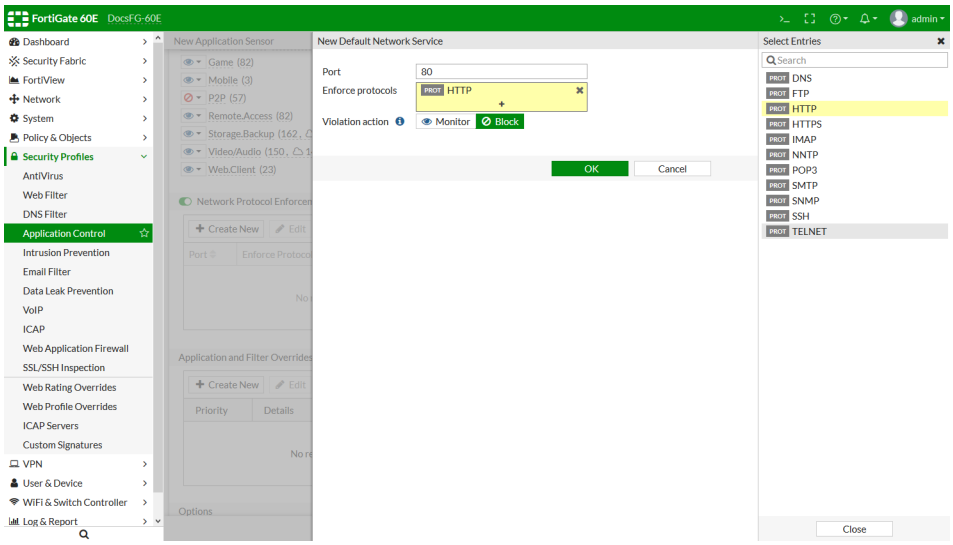
```
        edit 1
          set port 80                          # Port number, enter an integer value from <0>
to <65535>
          set services http                    # Network protocols: http, ssh, ftp, dns,
smtp, pop3, imap, snmp, nntp, and https
        next
        edit 2
          set port 53
          set services dns
          set violation-action {pass | monitor | block}      # Pass, Log, or block when
non-DNS traffic run over port 53
        next
      end
   next
end
```

**To setup protocol enforcement in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control*.
2. Create a new application sensor or edit an existing one.
3. Enable *Network Protocol Enforcement*.
   Enforcement entries can be created, edited, or deleted to configure network services on certain ports and determine the violation action.



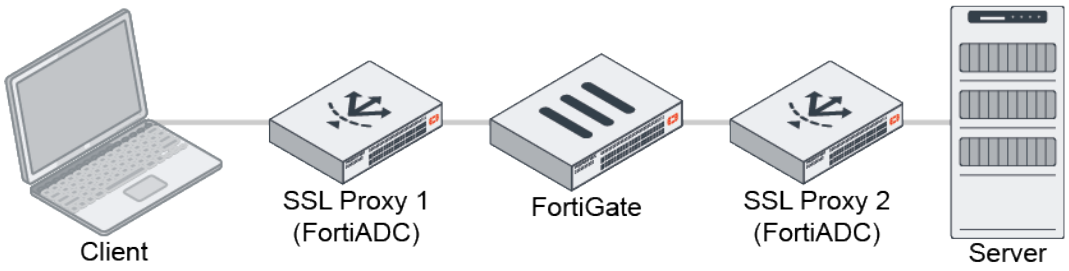
4. Click *Create New* in the *Network Protocol Enforcement* table.




5. In the *New Default Network Service* pane:
   a. Enter a *Port* number.
   b. Select *Enforced protocols*.
   c. Choose the *Violation action*.
   d. Click *OK*.
6. Click *OK*.

## SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic in a sandwich topology

When a FortiGate is sandwiched between SSL encryption and decryption devices, the FortiGate can process the decrypted traffic that passes between those devices. This feature adds support for decrypted traffic in application control. In some pre-defined signatures, the signature is pre-marked with the *require_ssl_di* tag. The `force-inclusion-ssl-di-sigs` option under `application list` allows users to control the inspection of dissected traffic. When this option is enabled, the IPS engine forces the pre-marked SSL-based signatures to be applied to the decrypted traffic of the respective applications. In the following topology, SSL Proxy 1 handles the client connection and SSL Proxy 2 handles the server connection, leaving the content unencrypted as traffic passes through the FortiGate.




**To configure SSL-based application detection over decrypted traffic:**

```
config application list
    edit "test"
        set force-inclusion-ssl-di-sigs {enable | disable}
```

```
    next
end
```

**Example pre-marked SSL-based signature:**

*F-SBID( --vuln_id 15722; --attack_id 42985; --name "Facebook_Chat"; --group im; --protocol tcp; --default_action pass; --revision 4446; --app_cat 23; --vendor 3; --technology 1; --behavior 9; --pop 4; --risk 2; --language "Multiple"; --weight 20; --depend-on 15832; --depend-on 38468;* ***--require_ssl_di "Yes"****; --casi 1; --casi 8; --parent 15832; --app_port "TCP/443"; --severity info; --status hidden; --service http; --flow from_client; --pattern "/pull?"; --context uri; --no_case; --pattern ".facebook.com"; --context host; --no_case; --tag set,Tag.Facebook.Pull; --tag quiet; --scan-range 10m,all; --date 20190301; )*

All signatures that include the *require_ssl_di* tag are pre-defined and cannot be customized.

## Matching multiple parameters on application control signatures

Application control signatures that support parameters (such as SCADA protocols) can have multiple parameters grouped together and matched at the same time. Multiple application parameter groups can be added to an override. Traffic will be flagged if it matches at least one parameter group.

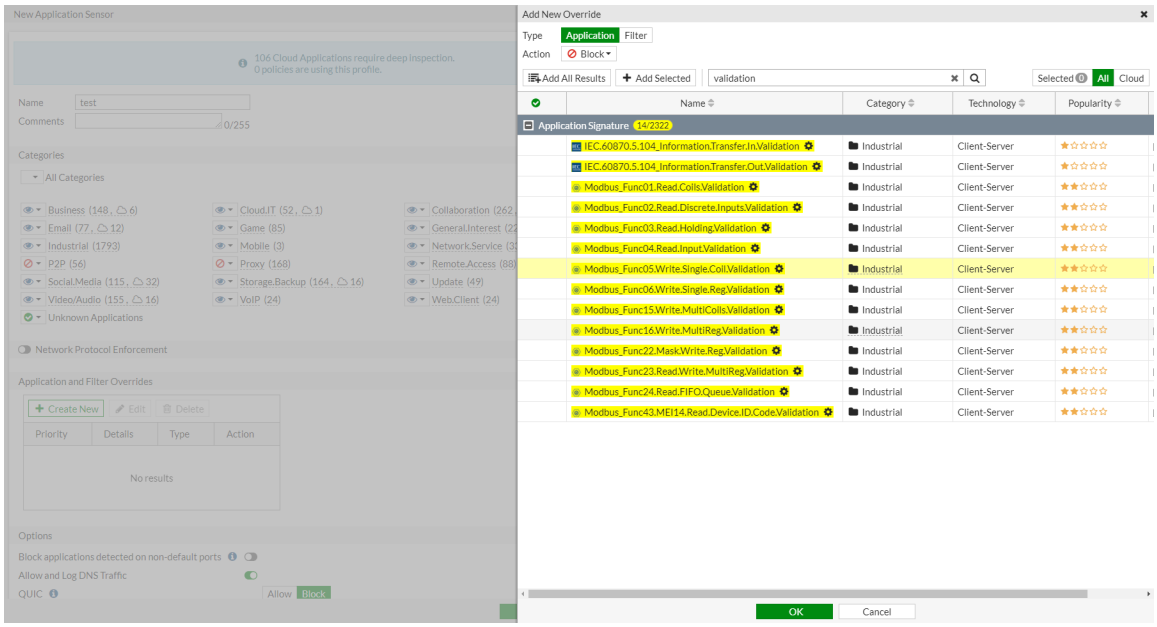
This example uses the Modbus_Func05.Write.Single.Coil.Validation signature. This is an industrial signature, so ensure that no signatures are excluded:

```
config ips global
    set exclude-signatures none
end
```

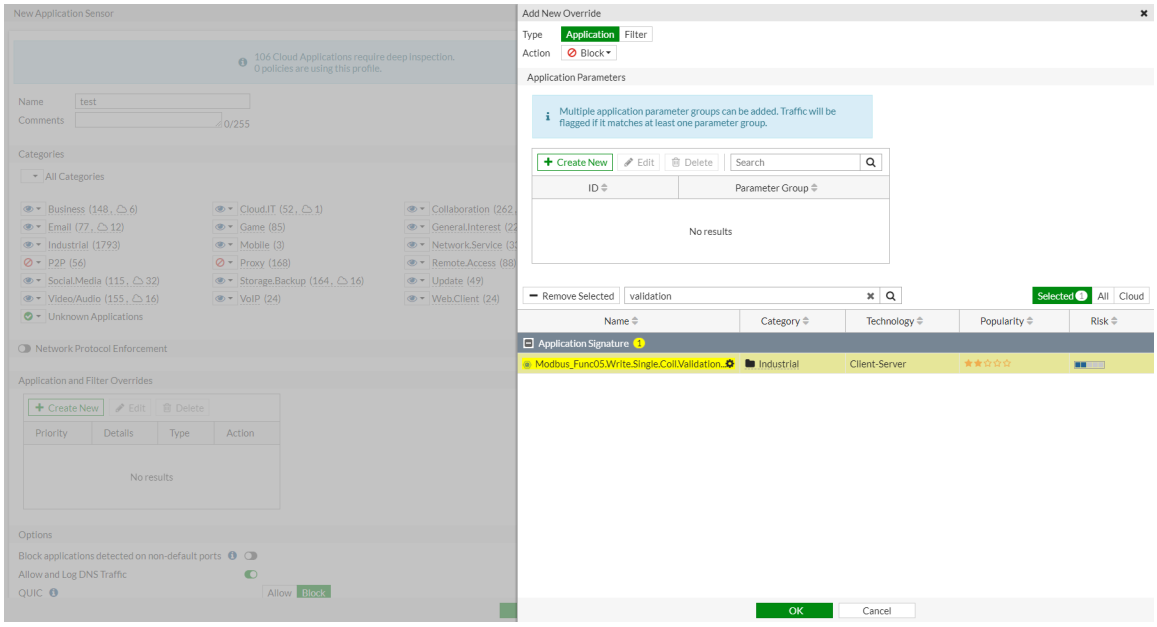
**To configure an application sensor with multiple parameters in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Control* and click *Create New*, or edit an existing sensor.
2. In the *Application and Filter Overrides* table, click *Create New*.
3. Search for *Modbus_Func05.Write.Single.Coil.Validation* and press `Enter`. A gear icon beside the signature name indicates it has configurable application parameters.

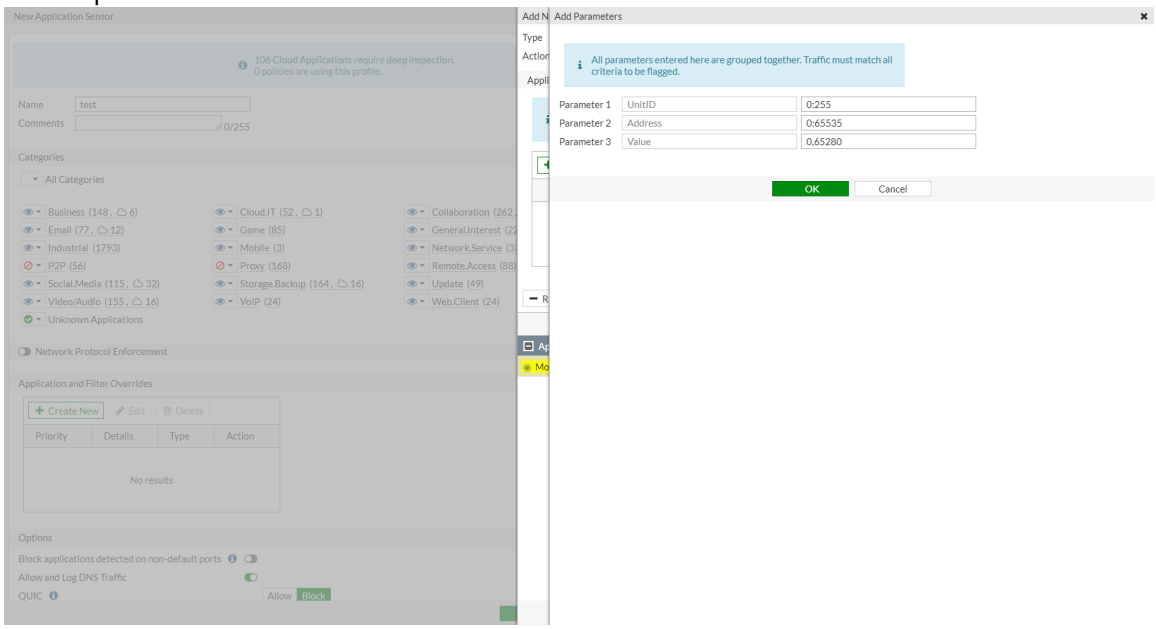
4. In the search results, select *Modbus_Func05.Write.Single.Coil.Validation* and click *Add Selected*.




5. Click the *Selected* tab. In the *Application Parameters* section, click *Create New*.



6. Edit the parameter values as needed.




7. Click *OK*.
8. Add more signatures if needed.
9. Click *OK*.

**To configure an application sensor with multiple parameters in the CLI:**

```
config application list
    edit "test"
        set other-application-log enable
        config entries
            edit 1

                set application 48885
                config parameters
                    edit 1
                        config members
                            edit 1
                                set name "UnitID"
                                set value "0:255"
                            next
                            edit 2
                                set name "Address"
                                set value "0:65535"
                            next
                            edit 3
                                set name "Value"
                                set value "0,65280"
                            next
                        end
                    next
                end
            next
            edit 2
```

```
                set category 2 6
            next
        end
    next
end
```

# Intrusion prevention

With the FortiOS intrusion prevention system (IPS), you can detect and block network-based attacks. You can configure IPS sensors based on IPS signatures, IPS filters, outgoing connections to botnet sites, and rate-based signatures.

FortiOS includes eight preloaded IPS sensors:

- *all_default*
- *all_default_pass*
- *default*
- *high_security*
- *protect_client*
- *protect_email_server*
- *protect_http_server*
- *wifi-default*

You can customize these sensors, or you can create your own and apply it to a firewall policy.



This functionality requires a subscription to FortiGuard IPS Service.

The following topic provides information about IPS sensors:


- Botnet C&C IP blocking on page 1039
- Detecting IEC 61850 MMS protocol in IPS on page 1043

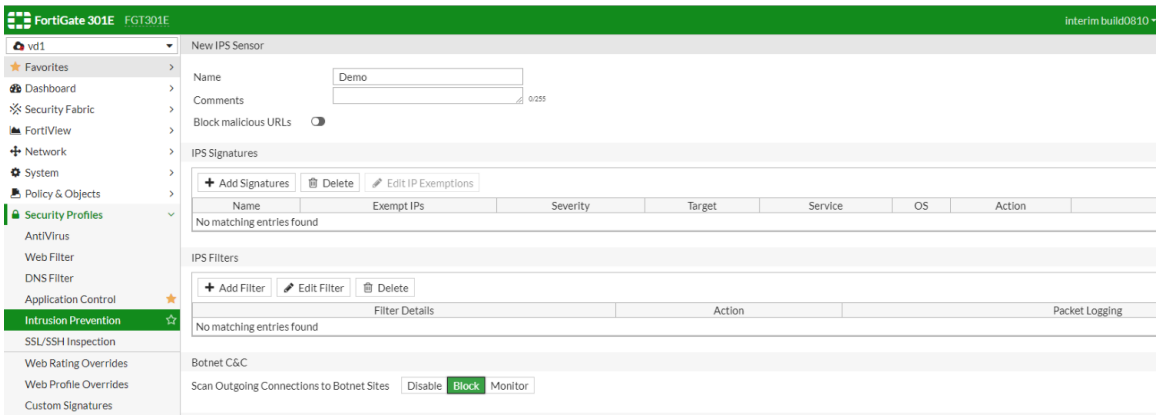

## Botnet C&C IP blocking

The *Botnet C&C* section consolidates multiple botnet options in the IPS profile. This allows you to enable botnet blocking across all traffic that matches the policy by configuring one setting in the GUI, or by the `scan-botnet-connections` option in the CLI.

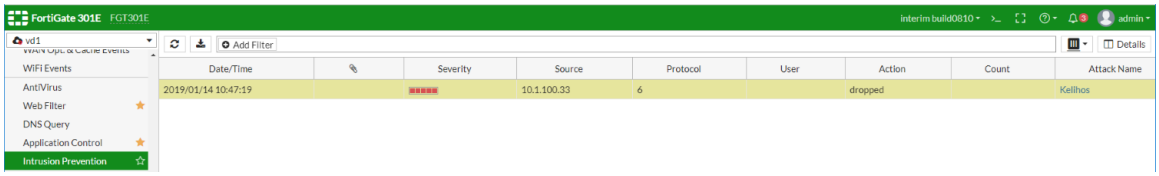
**To configure botnet C&C IP blocking using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*.
2. Edit an existing sensor, or create a new one.
3. Navigate to the *Botnet C&C* section.

4. For *Scan Outgoing Connections to Botnet Sites*, click *Block* or *Monitor*.




5. Configure other settings as needed.
6. Click *Apply*. Botnet C&C is now enabled for the sensor.
7. Add this sensor to the firewall policy.
   The IPS engine will scan outgoing connections to botnet sites. If you access a botnet IP, an IPS log is generated for this attack.
8. Go to *Log & Report* > *Intrusion Prevention* to view the log.




**To configure botnet C&C IP blocking using the CLI:**

```
config ips sensor
   edit "Demo"
      set scan-botnet-connections <disable | block | monitor>
   next
end
```

---

The `scan-botnet-connections` option is no longer available in the following CLI commands:

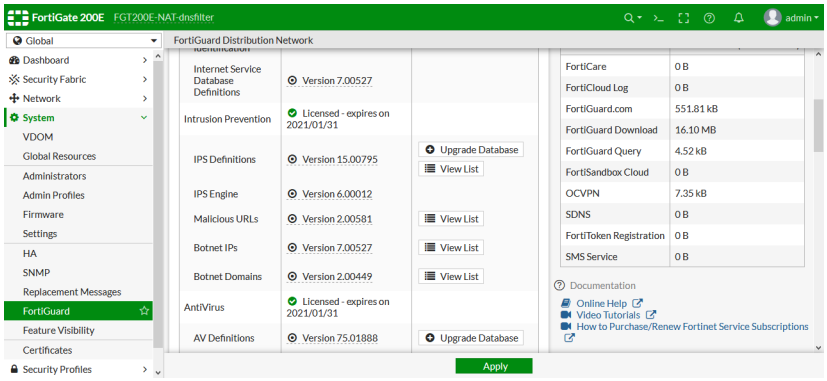
- `config firewall policy`
- `config firewall interface-policy`
- `config firewall proxy-policy`
- `config firewall sniffer`

---

## Botnet IPs and domains lists

**To view botnet IPs and domains lists using the GUI:**

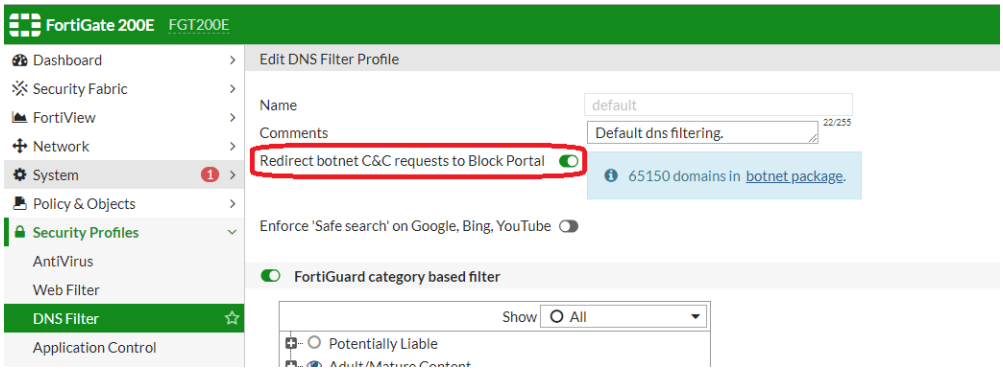
1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*. *Botnet IPs* and *Botnet Domains* are visible in the *Intrusion Prevention* section.
2. Click *View List* for more details.




## Botnet C&C domain blocking

**To block connections to botnet domains using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *DNS Filter*.
2. Edit an existing filter, or create a new one.
3. Enable *Redirect botnet C&C requests to Block Portal*.



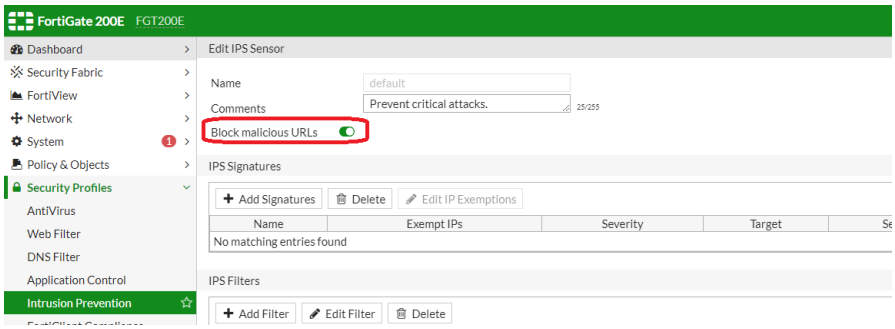

4. Configure other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Add this filter profile to a firewall policy.

## Botnet C&C URL blocking

**To block malicious URLs using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*.
2. Edit an existing sensor, or create a new one.

3. Enable *Block malicious URLs*.

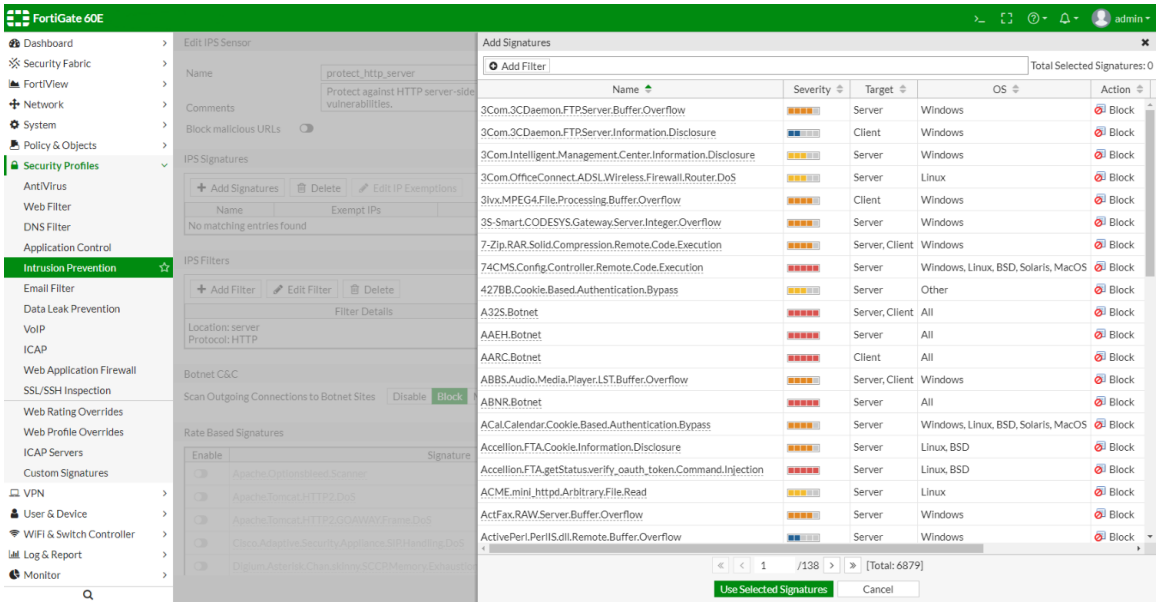



4. Configure other settings as needed.
5. Click *OK*.
6. Add this sensor to a firewall policy.

## Botnet C&C signature blocking

### To add IPS signatures to a sensor using the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Intrusion Prevention*.
2. Edit an existing sensor, or create a new one.
3. In the *IPS Signatures* section, click *Add Signatures*. A list of available signatures appears.
4. Select the signatures you want to include from the list.
5. Click *Use Selected Signatures*.



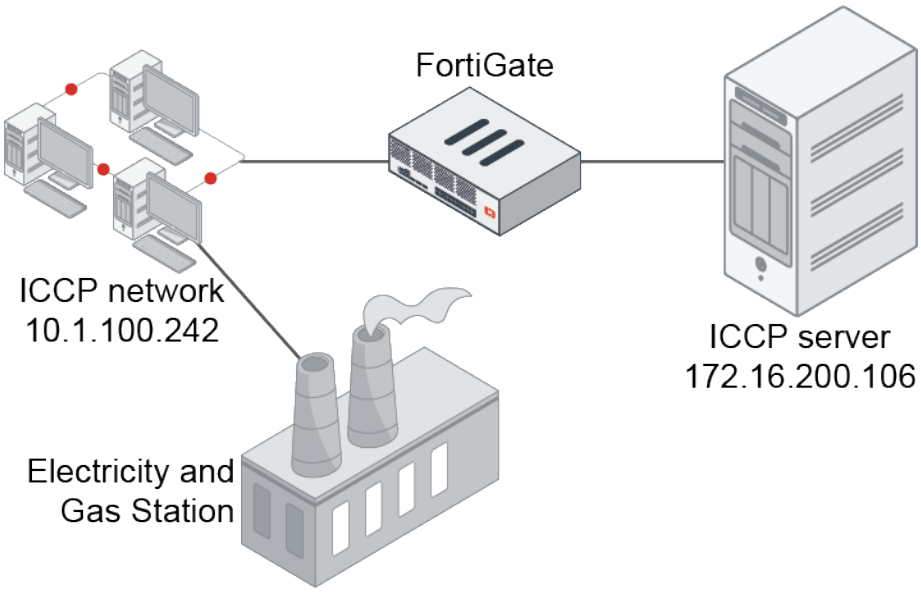

6. Configure other settings as needed.
7. Add this sensor to a firewall policy to detect or block attacks that match the IPS signatures.

## Detecting IEC 61850 MMS protocol in IPS

IEC 61850 is a SCADA protocol whose services are mapped to a number of protocols, including MMS services. MMS/ICCP detection is supported in IPS. The purpose of the MMS dissectors is to identify every IEC 61850 service to distinguish different MMS/ICCP messages. IPS engine 6.0.12 and later support MMS dissectors.

The following scenarios are also supported:

- Multiple MMS PDUs are transferred in one TCP payload, and the IPS engine identifies individuals.
- An MMS message is split over multiple TCP segments, where MMS runs over COTP segments.
- ICCP/TASE.2 that also uses MMS transport (ISO transport over TCP for ICCP) is detected.




Industrial signatures must be enabled in the global IPS settings to receive MMS/ICCP signatures. By default, industrial signatures are excluded.

```
config ips global
    set exclude-signatures none
end
```

Below are some industrial signatures for MMS/ICCP messages that can be detected by the IPS engine. This is not an exhaustive list.

- MMS_GetNameList.Request
- MMS_GetNamedVariableListAttributes.Request
- MMS_GetVariableAccessAttributes.Request
- MMS_Identify.Request
- MMS_Initiate.Request
- MMS_Read.Request
- MMS_Reset.Request
- ICCP_Transfer.Reporting
- ICCP_Create.Dataset
- ICCP_Abort
- ICCP_Start.Transfer.DSTransferSet
- ICCP_Get.Dataset.Element.Values

- ICCP_Get.Next.DSTransfer.Set.Value
- ICCP_Delete.Dataset
- ICCP_Start.Transfer.IMTransferSet

### Diagnose command

The COTP dissector adds support for identifying every MMS PDU, and let the IPS engine separate them, like the Modbus and IEC-104 services for example.

```
# diagnose ips debug enable all
# diagnose debug enable
[284@78]ips_l7_dsct_processor: serial=8142 create: cotp
[284@78]ips_l7_dsct_processor: serial=8142 create: iec104
[284@78]ips_l7_dsct_processor: serial=8142 create: modbus
```

### Log samples

MMS dissectors can be triggered, and MMS/ICCP signatures can be monitored and logged.

**Log samples:**

```
date=2020-03-26 time=15:51:10 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1585263070836106492 tz="-0700"
appid=43699 srcip=10.1.100.242 dstip=172.16.200.106 srcport=50963 dstport=102
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="tcp/26112" direction="outgoing" policyid=1 sessionid=2711 applist="test"
action="pass" appcat="Industrial" app="MMS_Read.Request" incidentserialno=376610508
msg="Industrial: MMS_Read.Request," apprisk="elevated"
```

```
date=2020-03-26 time=16:15:45 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="signature" level="information" vd="vd1" eventtime=1585091746264983273 tz="-0700"
appid=44684 srcip=10.1.100.242 dstip=172.16.200.106 srcport=41665 dstport=102
srcintf="port13" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port14" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="tcp/26112" direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=194463 applist="test"
action="pass" appcat="Industrial" app="ICCP_Transfer.Reporting" incidentserialno=762763993
msg="Industrial: ICCP_Transfer.Reporting," apprisk="elevated"
```

## File filter

The file filter can be applied directly to firewall policies and supports various traffic protocols in proxy or flow mode.

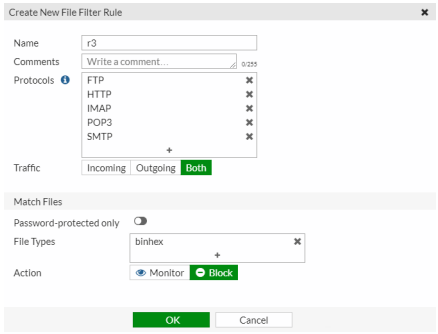
| Protocol | Proxy mode | Flow mode |
|---|---|---|
| CIFS | Yes | Yes |
| FTP | Yes | Yes |
| HTTP | Yes | Yes |
| IMAP | Yes | Yes |
| MAPI | Yes | No |

| Protocol | Proxy mode | Flow mode |
|---|---|---|
| POP3 | Yes | Yes |
| SMTP | Yes | Yes |
| SSH | Yes | No |

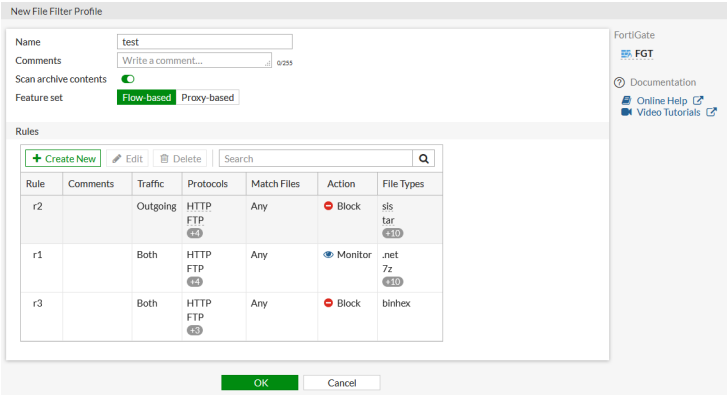
Prior to FortiOS 6.4.1, file filter was embedded in the web filter, email filter, SSH inspection, and CIFS profiles.

**To configure a file filter in the GUI:**

1. Configure the filter profile:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *File Filter* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select a *Feature set*.
   c. In the *Rules* section, click *Create New*.
   d. Configure the settings as needed for the protocols, traffic, and file matching.
   e. Click *OK* to save the rule.

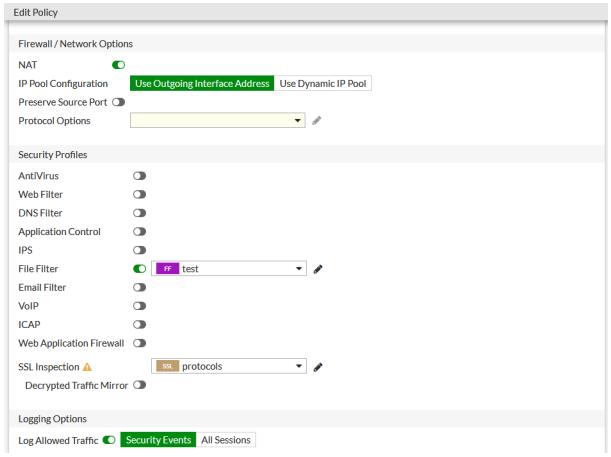



   f. Optionally, create more rules if needed.
   g. Click *OK* to save the filter profile.




2. Apply the filter to a policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*, and edit an existing policy or create a new one.
   b. In the *Security Profiles* section, enable *File Filter*.

c. Select the filter from the dropdown box.




d. Configure the other settings as needed.

e. Click *OK*.

**To configure a file filter in the CLI:**

1. Configure the file filter profile:

```
config file-filter profile
    edit "test"
        set comment ''
        set feature-set flow
        set replacemsg-group ''
        set log enable
        set scan-archive-contents enable
        config rules
            edit "r2"
                set comment ''
                set protocol http ftp smtp imap pop3 cifs
                set action block
                set direction outgoing
                set password-protected any
                set file-type "sis" "tar" "tiff" "torrent" "upx" "uue" "wav" "wma" "xar"
"xz" "zip"
            next
            edit "r1"
                set comment ''
                set protocol http ftp smtp imap pop3 cifs
                set action log-only
                set direction any
                set password-protected any
                set file-type ".net" "7z" "activemime" "arj" "aspack" "avi" "base64"
"bat" "binhex" "bmp" "bzip" "bzip2"
            next
            edit "r3"
                set comment ''
                set protocol http ftp smtp imap pop3
                set action block
                set direction any
                set password-protected any
```

```
                set file-type "binhex"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Apply the filter to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "filefilter-policy"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set srcaddr6 "all"
        set dstaddr6 "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "protocols"
        set file-filter-profile "test"
        set auto-asic-offload disable
        set np-acceleration disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Log samples

```
date=2020-04-21 time=17:04:02 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513843211612684 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1751 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=57382 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=445 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="CIFS" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" filtername="1" filename="sample\\putty.exe" filesize=454656 filetype="exe"
msg="File was blocked by file filter."
```

```
date=2020-04-21 time=17:03:54 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513834376811325 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1742 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=36754 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=22 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="SSH" subservice="SCP" profile="filefilter"
direction="incoming" action="blocked" filtername="1" filename="test.pdf" filesize=571051
filetype="pdf" msg="File was blocked by file filter."
```

```
date=2020-04-21 time=17:00:30 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513630482716465 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1684 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=58524 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=143 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="IMAP" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" from="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" to="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com"
recipient="pc4user2" subject="QA Test" filtername="1" filename="test.JPG" filesize=48079
filetype="jpeg" msg="File was blocked by file filter."
```

```
date=2020-04-21 time=16:59:58 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513598866551739 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1674 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=39854 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=110 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="POP3" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" from="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" to="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com"
recipient="pc4user2" subject="QA Test" filtername="1" filename="test.JPG" filesize=48079
filetype="jpeg" msg="File was blocked by file filter."

date=2020-04-21 time=16:58:31 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513511516745955 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1619 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=53144 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=25 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="SMTP" profile="filefilter" direction="outgoing"
action="blocked" from="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" to="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com"
sender="pc4user1@qa.fortinet.com" recipient="pc4user2@qa.fortinet.com" subject="QA Test"
filtername="1" filename="test.PNG" filesize=65173 filetype="png" msg="File was blocked by
file filter."

date=2020-04-21 time=16:58:14 logid="1900064000" type="utm" subtype="file-filter"
eventtype="file-filter" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1587513494608988795 tz="-0700"
policyid=1 sessionid=1605 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=43186 srcintf="port21"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=21 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 service="FTP" profile="filefilter" direction="incoming"
action="blocked" filtername="1" filename="index.html" filesize=21 filetype="html" msg="File
was blocked by file filter."
```

## Supported file types

File filter allows the FortiGate to block files passing through based on file type based on the file's meta data only, and not on file size or file content. A DLP sensor must be configured to block files based on size or content, such as SSN numbers, credit card numbers, or regexp.

The following file types are supported in file filter and DLP profiles:

| Type | Description |
|---|---|
| .net | Match .NET files |
| 7z | Match 7-Zip files |
| activemime | Match ActiveMime files |
| arj | Match ARJ compressed files |
| aspack | Match ASPack files |
| avi | Match AVI files |
| base64 | Match Base64 files |
| bat | Match Windows batch files |
| binhex | Match BinHex files |
| bmp | Match BMP files |

| Type | Description |
|---|---|
| bzip | Match Bzip files |
| bzip2 | Match Bzip2 files |
| cab | Match Windows CAB files |
| chm | Match Windows compiled HTML help files |
| class | Match CLASS files |
| cod | Match COD files |
| crx | Match Chrome extension files |
| dmg | Match Apple disk image files |
| elf | Match ELF files |
| exe | Match Windows executable files |
| flac | Match FLAC files |
| fsg | Match FSG files |
| gif | Match GIF files |
| gzip | Match Gzip files |
| hlp | Match Windows help files |
| hta | Match HTA files |
| html | Match HTML files |
| iso | Match ISO archive files |
| jad | Match JAD files |
| javascript | Match JavaScript files |
| jpeg | Match JPEG files |
| lzh | Match LZH compressed files |
| mach-o | Match Mach object files |
| mime | Match MIME files |
| mov | Match MOV files |
| mp3 | Match MP3 files |
| mpeg | Match MPEG files |
| msc | Match MSC files |
| msi | Match Windows Installer MSI Bzip files |
| msoffice | Match MS-Office files. For example, DOC, XLS, PPT, and so on. |

| Type | Description |
|---|---|
| msofficex | Match MS-Office XML files. For example, DOCX, XLSX, PPTX, and so on. |
| pdf | Match PDF files |
| petite | Match Petite files |
| png | Match PNG files |
| rar | Match RAR archives |
| rm | Match RM files |
| sis | Match SIS files |
| tar | Match TAR files |
| tiff | Match TIFF files |
| torrent | Match torrent files |
| unknown* | Match unknown files |
| upx | Match UPX files |
| uue | Match UUE files |
| wav | Match WAV files |
| wma | Match WMA files |
| xar | Match XAR archive files |
| xz | Match XZ files |
| zip | Match ZIP files |

* This file type is only available in DLP profiles.

# Email filter

Email filters can be configured to perform spam detection and filtering. You can customize the default profile, or create your own and apply it to a firewall policy.



Two kinds of filtering can be defined in a single profile, and they will act independent of one another.

Filter options can be organized according to the source of the decision:

- Local options: the FortiGate qualifies the email based on local conditions, such as block/allowlists, banned words, or DNS checks using FortiGuard Antispam.
- FortiGuard-based options: the FortiGate qualifies the email based on the score or verdict returned from FortiGuard Antispam.

- Third-party options: the FortiGate qualifies the email based on information from a third-party source (like an ORB list).

Local and FortiGuard block/allowlists can be enabled and combined in a single profile. When combined, the local block/allowlist has a higher priority than the FortiGuard block list during a decision making process. For example, if a client IP address is blocklisted in the FortiGuard server, but you want to override this decision and allow the IP to pass through the filter, you can define the IP address or subnet in a local block/allowlist with the *clear* action. Because the information coming from the local list has a higher priority than the FortiGuard service, the email will be considered clean.



Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Antispam.

## Protocol comparison between Email filter inspection modes

The following table indicates which Email filters are supported by their designated inspection modes.

| | SMTP | POP3 | IMAP | MAPI |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Flow | Yes | Yes | Yes | No |

The following topics provide information about email filter profiles:


- Local-based filters on page 1051
- FortiGuard-based filters on page 1055
- Protocols and actions on page 1055
- Configuring webmail filtering on page 1056


## Local-based filters

You can make block/allowlists from emails or IP subnets to forbid or allow them to send or receive emails.

You can also define a list of banned words. Emails that contain any of these banned words are considered spam.

With the `spamhelodns` and `spamraddrdns` commands, the FortiGate performs a standard DNS check on the machine name used in the HELO SMTP message, and/or the return-to field to determine if these names belong to a registered domain. The FortiGate does not check the FortiGuard service during these operations.

**To configure a local-based email filter in the CLI:**

1. Configure a BWL:

```
config emailfilter bwl
    edit 1
        set name "mtBWL"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set type ip
```

```
                set action spam
                set addr-type ipv4
                set ip4-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure an email filter profile:

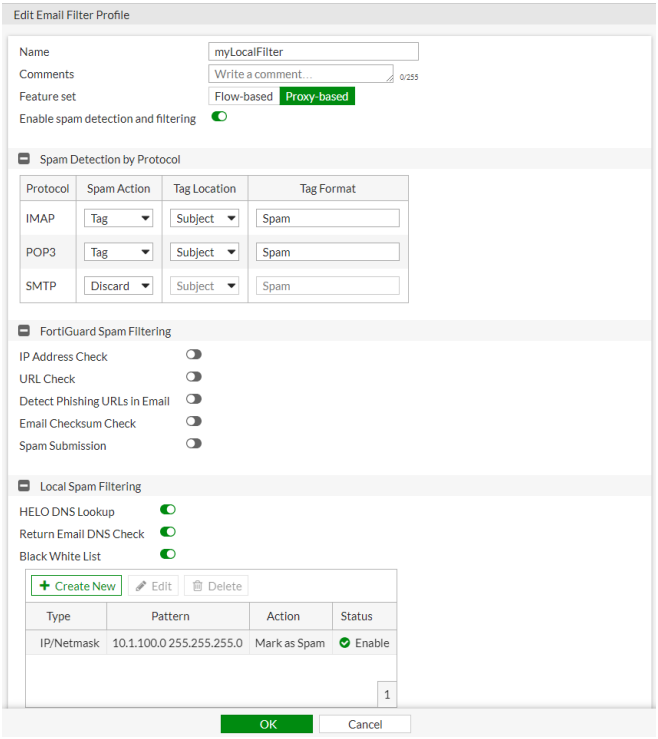
```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myLocalEmailFilter"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options spambwl spamhelodns spamraddrdns
        config smtp
            set action tag
        end
        set spam-bwl-table 1
    next
end
```

3. Use the profile in a firewall policy:

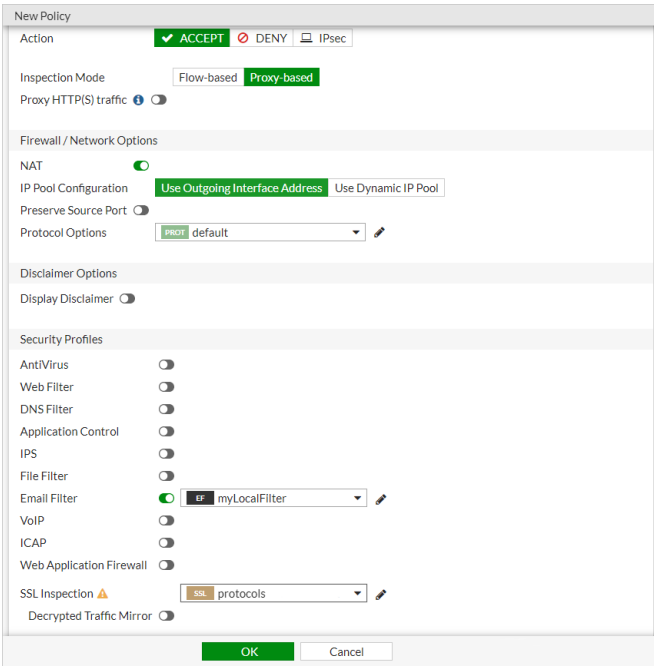
```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        .....
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set emailfilter-profile "myLocalEmailFilter"
    next
end
```

**To configure a local-based email filter in the GUI:**

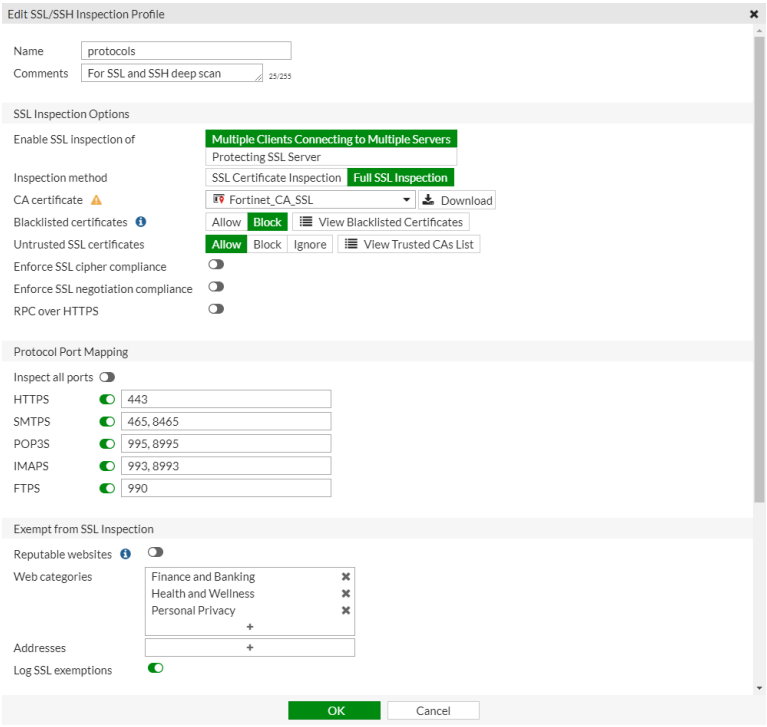
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Email Filter*.
2. Click *Create New* or select an existing profile and click *Edit*.




3. In the firewall policy, create or edit a rule.
4. Set the inspection-mode to *Proxy-based*.
5. Enable the *Email Filter* option and select the previously created profile.



6. Set *SSL Inspection* to a profile that has deep SSL inspection enabled.
   Deep inspection is required if you intend to filter SMTP, POP3, IMAP, or any SSL/TLS encapsulated protocol. The following SSL-inspection profile has deep inspection enabled:




7. Click *OK*.

### To configure banned words in the CLI:

1. Configure a banned words list:

```
config emailfilter bword
    edit 1
        set name "banned"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set pattern "undesired_word"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Configure an email filter profile:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myBannedWordsProfile"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options bannedword
        set spam-bword-table 1
    next
end
```

3. Use the profile in a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        .....
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set emailfilter-profile "myBannedWordsProfile"
    next
end
```

Once created, this profile should be set in the firewall policy.



Banned words can only be configured in the CLI.

## FortiGuard-based filters

The FortiGate consults FortiGuard servers to help identify spammer IP address or emails, known phishing URLs, known spam URLs, known spam email checksums, and others.

FortiGuard servers have maintained databases that contain blocklists, which are fed from Fortinet sensors and labs distributed all over the world.

**To configure the FortiGuard filters in the CLI:**

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myEmailFilterProfile"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options spamfsip spamfssubmit spamfschksum spamfsurl spamrbl spamhdrcheck
spamfsphish
    next
end
```

**To configure the FortiGuard filters in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Email Filter*.
2. In the *FortiGuard Spam Filtering Spam Filtering* section, you can enable or disable the following filters:
   - IP Address Check
   - URL Check
   - Detect Phising URLs in Email
   - Email Checksum Check
   - Spam Submission
3. Click *OK*.

## Protocols and actions

In an email filtering profile, there are sections for SMTP, POP3, and IMAP protocols. In each section, you can set an action to either discard, tag, or pass the log for that protocol.

| Protocol | Available action |
|---|---|
| **SMTP** | **Pass**: Allow spam email to pass through. |
| | **Tag**: Tag spam email with configured text in the subject or header. |
| | **Discard**: Discards (blocks) spam email. |
| **POP3 & IMAP** | **Pass**: Allow spam email to pass through. |
| | **Tag**: Tag spam email with configured text in the subject or header. |
| **MAPI:** | **Pass**: Allow spam email to pass through. |
| | **Discard**: Discards (blocks) spam email. |

For example, to tag spam SMTP email, use the following commands:

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "smtpFilter"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options <options>
        ...
        config smtp
            set log enable
            set action tag
        end
    next
end
```

### MAPI email filtering

MAPI is a proprietary protocol from Microsoft. It uses HTTPS to encapsulate email requests and responses between Microsoft Outlook clients and Microsoft Exchange servers. The configuration of MAPI email filters are only possible through the CLI.

**To configure the MAPI email filter in the CLI:**

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myMapiFilter"
        set spam-filtering enable
        set options spamfsip spamfssubmit spamfsurl spamfsphish
        config mapi
            set log enable
            set action "discard or pass"
        end
    next
end
```

## Configuring webmail filtering

You can configure an email filter to detect and log emails sent via Gmail and Hotmail. These interfaces do not use standard email protocols (SMTP, POP3, or IMAP) and instead use HTTPS. However, you can still configure the email filter to detect emails that pass through the FortiGate.

The FortiGate only detects and logs the emails, it does not discard or tag them.

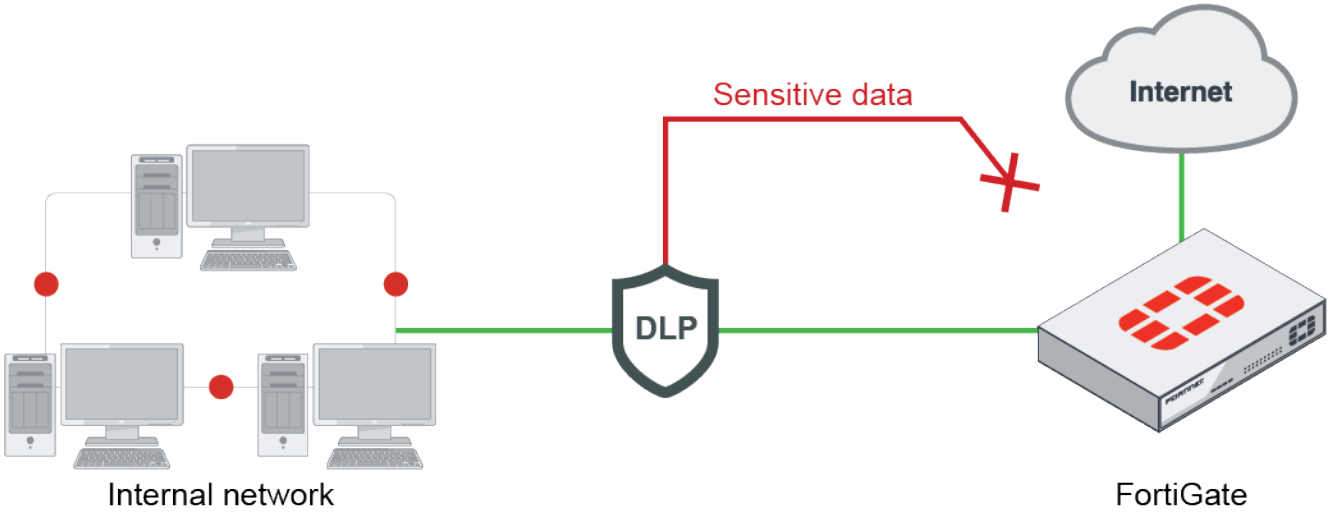
**To configure webmail filtering in the CLI:**

```
config emailfilter profile
    edit "myWebMailDetector"
        set spam-filtering enable
        config msn-hotmail
            set log enable
        end
        config gmail
            set log enable
        end
    next
end
```

# Data leak prevention

The FortiGate data leak prevention (DLP) system prevents sensitive data from leaving or entering your network. You can customize the default sensor or create your own by adding individual filters based on file type, file size, a regular expression, an advanced rule, or a compound rule. Once configured, you can apply the DLP sensor to a firewall policy. Data matching defined sensitive data patterns is blocked, logged, or allowed when it passes through the FortiGate.

DLP can only be configured in the CLI.




The filters in a DLP sensor can examine traffic for the following:

- Known files using DLP fingerprinting
- Known files using DLP watermarking
- Particular file types
- Particular file names

- Files larger than a specified size
- Data matching a specified regular expression
- Credit card and social security numbers



Filters are ordered, but there is no precedence between the possible actions

DLP is primarily used to stop sensitive data from leaving your network. DLP can also be used to prevent unwanted data from entering your network and to archive some or all of the content that passes through the FortiGate. DLP archiving is configured per filter, which allows a single sensor to archive only the required data. You can configure the DLP archiving protocol in the CLI (see Configure DLP sensors).

There are two forms of DLP archiving:

- Summary only: a summary of all the activity detected by the sensor is recorded. For example, when an email message is detected, the sender, recipient, message subject, and total size are recorded. When a user accesses the web, every URL that they visit is recorded.
- Full: detailed records of all the activity detected by the sensor is recorded. For example, when an email message is detected, the message itself, including any attachments, is recorded. When a user accesses the web, every page that they visit is archived.

## Protocol comparison between DLP inspection modes

The following table indicates which protocols can be inspected by DLP based on the specified inspection modes.

| | HTTP | FTP | IMAP | POP3 | SMTP | NNTP | MAPI | CIFS | SFTP/SCP |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proxy | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | Yes |
| Flow | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | No | No | Yes | No |

The following topics provide information about DLP:

- Basic DLP filter types on page 1058
- DLP fingerprinting on page 1061
- DLP watermarking on page 1065

## Basic DLP filter types

Basic filter types can be configured in the CLI and include:

- File type and name
- File size
- Regular expression
- Credit card and SSN

## File type and name

A file type filter allows you to block, allow, log, or quarantine based on the file type specified in the file filter list (see Supported file types on page 1048).

**To configure file type and name filtering:**

1. Create a file pattern to filter files based on the file name patter or file type:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit <filepatern_entry_integer>
        set name <string>
        config entries
            edit <file pattern>
                set filter-type <type | pattern>
                set file-type <file type>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

   For example, to filter for GIFs and PDFs:

```
config dlp filepattern
    edit 11
        set name "sample_config"
        config entries
            edit "*.gif"
                set filter-type pattern
            next
            edit "pdf"
                set filter-type type
                set file-type pdf
            next
        end
    next
end
```

2. Attach the file pattern to a DLP sensor, and specify the protocols and actions:

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <string>
      config filter
         edit <integer>
            set name <string>
            set proto <smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp |
mapi>
            set filter-by file-type
            set file-type 11    <-- Previously configured filepattern
            set action <allow | log-only| block | quarantine-ip>
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## File size

A file size filter checks for files that exceed the specific size, and performs the DLP sensor's configured action on them.

**To configure file size filtering:**

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <string>
      config filter
         edit <integer>
            set name <string>
            set proto <smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi>
            set filter-by file-size  <-- Match any file over with a size over the
threshold
            set file-type 11   <-- Previously configured filepattern
            set action <allow | log-only| block | quarantine-ip>
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Regular expression

A regular expression filter is used to filter files or messages based on the configured regular expression pattern.

**To configure regular expression filtering:**

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <string>
      config filter
         edit <integer>
            set name <string>
            set type <file | message>   <-- Check contents of a file or of messages, web
pages, etc.
            set proto <smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi>
            set filter-by regexp   <-- Use a regular expression to match content
            set regexp <regexp>   <-- Input a regular expression pattern
            set action <allow | log-only| block | quarantine-ip>
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## Credit card and SSN

The credit card sensor can match the credit card number formats used by American Express, Mastercard, and Visa. It can be used to filter files or messages.

The SSN sensor can be used to filter files or messages for Social Security Numbers.

**To configure credit card or SSN filtering:**

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <string>
      config filter
         edit <integer>
            set name <string>
            set type <file | message>  <-- Check contents of a file, or of messages, web
pages, etc.
            set proto <smtp | pop3 | imap | http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi>
            set filter-by < credit-card | ssn >   <-- Match credit cards or social security
numbers
            set action <allow | log-only| block | quarantine-ip>
         next
      end
   next
end
```

## DLP fingerprinting

DLP fingerprinting can be used to detect sensitive data. The file that the DLP sensor will filter for is uploaded and the FortiGate generates and stores a checksum fingerprint. The FortiGate unit generates a fingerprint for all of the files that are detected in network traffic, and compares all of the checksums stored in its database. If a match is found, the configured action is taken.

Any type of file can be detected by DLP fingerprinting, and fingerprints can be saved for each revision of a file as it is updated.

To use fingerprinting:

- Select the files to be fingerprinted by targeting a document source.
- Add fingerprinting filters to DLP sensors.
- Add the sensors to firewall policies that accept traffic that the fingerprinting will be applied on.



The document fingerprint feature requires a FortiGate device that has internal storage.

**To configure a DLP fingerprint document:**

```
    config dlp fp-doc-source
        edit <name_str>
            set server-type smb
            set server <string>
            set period {none | daily | weekly | monthly}
            set vdom {mgmt | current}
            set scan-subdirectories {enable | disable}
            set remove-deleted {enable | disable}
            set keep-modified {enable | disable}
            set username <string>
            set password <password>
            set file-path <string>
            set file-pattern <string>
```

```
            set sensitivity <Critical | Private | Warning>
            set tod-hour <integer>
            set tod-min <integer>
            set weekday {sunday | monday | tuesday | wednesday | thursday | friday |
saturday}
            set date <integer>
        next
end
```

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| server-type smb | The protocol used to communicate with document server. Only Samba (SMB) servers are supported. |
| server <string> | IPv4 or IPv6 address of the server. |
| period {none \| daily \| weekly \| monthly} | The frequency that the FortiGate checks the server for new or changed files. |
| vdom {mgmt \| current} | The VDOM that can communicate with the file server. |
| scan-subdirectories {enable \| disable} | Enable/disable scanning subdirectories to find files. |
| remove-deleted {enable \| disable} | Enable/disable keeping the fingerprint database up to date when a file is deleted from the server. |
| keep-modified {enable \| disable} | Enable/disable keeping the old fingerprint and adding a new one when a file is changed on the server. |
| username <string> | The user name required to log into the file server. |
| password <password> | The password required to log into the file server. |
| file-path <string> | The path on the server to the fingerprint files. |
| file-pattern <string> | Files matching this pattern on the server are fingerprinted. |
| sensitivity <Critical \| Private \| Warning> | The sensitivity or threat level for matches with this fingerprint database. |
| tod-hour <integer> | Set the hour of the day. This option is only available when `period` is not `none`. |
| tod-min <integer> | Set the minute of the hour. This option is only available when `period` is not `none`. |
| weekday {sunday \| monday \| tuesday \| wednesday \| thursday \| friday \| saturday} | Set the day of the week. This option is only available when `period` is `weekly`. |
| date <integer> | Set the day of the month. This option is only available when `period` is `monthly`. |

**To configure a DLP fingerprint sensor:**

```
config dlp sensor
    edit <sensor name>
        config filter
            edit <id number of filter>
                set proto {smtp | pop3 | imap http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi}
```

```
                set filter-by fingerprint
                set sensitivity {Critical | Private | Warning}
                set match-percentage <integer>
                set action {allow | log-only | block | ban | quarantine-ip}
            next
        end
    next
end
```

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| proto {smtp \| pop3 \| imap http-get \| http-post \| ftp \| nntp \| mapi} | The protocol to inspect. |
| filter-by fingerprint | Match against a fingerprint sensitivity. |
| sensitivity {Critical \| Private \| Warning} | Select a DLP file pattern sensitivity to match. |
| match-percentage <integer> | The percentage of the checksum required to match before the sensor is triggered. |
| action {allow \| log-only \| block \| ban \| quarantine-ip} | The action to take with content that this DLP sensor matches. |

## View the DLP fingerprint database on the FortiGate

The CLI debug command `diagnose test application dlpfingerprint` can be used to display the fingerprint information that is on the FortiGate.

```
Fingerprint Daemon Test Usage;
-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-
  1 : This menu
  2 : Dump database
  3 : Dump all files
  5 : Dump all chunk
  6 : Refresh all doc sources in all VDOMs
  7 : Show the db file size and the limit
  9 : Display stats
 10 : Clear stats
 99 : Restart this daemon
```

For example, option 3 will dump all fingerprinted files:

```
DLP_WANOPT-CLT (global) # diagnose test application dlpfingerprint 3
DLPFP diag_test_handler called
File DB:
--------------------------------------
id, filename,                              vdom, archive, deleted, scanTime,   docSourceSrvr,
sensitivity, chunkCnt, reviseCnt,
1,  /fingerprint/upload/1.txt,             vdom1,  0,      0,      1494868196,   1,      2,
1,    0,
2,  /fingerprint/upload/30percentage.xls,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
13,      0,
3,  /fingerprint/upload/50.pdf,            vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
122,  0,
4,  /fingerprint/upload/50.pdf.tar.gz,     vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
114,     0,
5,  /fingerprint/upload/check-list_AL-SIP_HA.xls,   vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,     1,
```

```
2,       32,     0,
6,  /fingerprint/upload/clean.zip,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
1,    0,
7,  /fingerprint/upload/compare.doc,        vdom1,  0,      0,      1522097410,   1,      2,
18,      0,
8,  /fingerprint/upload/dlpsensor-watermark.pdf,    vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,     1,
2,       11,     0,
9,  /fingerprint/upload/eicar.com,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
1,    0,
10, /fingerprint/upload/eicar.zip,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
1,    0,
11, /fingerprint/upload/EMAIL-CONTENT-ARCHIVE.ppt,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,     1,
2,       11,     0,
12, /fingerprint/upload/encrypt.zip,        vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
77,      0,
13, /fingerprint/upload/extension_7_8_1.crx,        vdom1,  0,      0,      1528751781,     1,
2,       2720,   0,
14, /fingerprint/upload/fingerprint.txt,    vdom1,  0,      0,      1498582679,   1,      2,
37,      0,
15, /fingerprint/upload/fingerprint90.txt,  vdom1,  0,      0,      1498582679,   1,      2,
37,      0,
16, /fingerprint/upload/fo2.pdf,            vdom1,  0,      0,      1450488049,   1,      2,
1,    0,
17, /fingerprint/upload/foo.doc,            vdom1,  0,      0,      1388538131,   1,      2,
9,    0,
18, /fingerprint/upload/fortiauto.pdf,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
146,     0,
19, /fingerprint/upload/image.out,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1531802940,   1,      2,
5410, 0,
20, /fingerprint/upload/jon_file.txt,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1536596091,   1,      2,    1,
      0,
21, /fingerprint/upload/machotest,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1528751955,   1,      2,
19,   0,
22, /fingerprint/upload/nntp-server.doc,    vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
17,      0,
23, /fingerprint/upload/notepad++.exe,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1456090734,   1,      2,
1061,    0,
24, /fingerprint/upload/nppIExplorerShell.exe,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1438559930,     1,
2,       5,      0,
25, /fingerprint/upload/NppShell_06.dll,    vdom1,  0,      0,      1456090736,   1,      2,
111,     0,
26, /fingerprint/upload/PowerCollections.chm,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1533336889,     1,
2,       728,    0,
27, /fingerprint/upload/reflector.dmg,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1533336857,   1,      2,
21117,   0,
28, /fingerprint/upload/roxio.iso,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1517531765,   1,      2,
49251,0,
29, /fingerprint/upload/SciLexer.dll,       vdom1,  0,      0,      1456090736,   1,      2,
541,     0,
30, /fingerprint/upload/screen.jpg,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
55,   0,
31, /fingerprint/upload/Spec to integrate FASE into FortiOS.doc,    vdom1,  0,    0,
1356118251,    1,      2,      31,     0,
32, /fingerprint/upload/subdirectory1/subdirectory2/subdirectory3/hibun.aea,        vdom1,  0,
0,       1529019743,     1,      2,      1,      0,
33, /fingerprint/upload/test.pdf,           vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,
5,    0,
34, /fingerprint/upload/test.tar,           vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
3,    0,
35, /fingerprint/upload/test.tar.gz,        vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,    1,
```

```
      0,
36, /fingerprint/upload/test1.txt,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1540317547,   1,      2,
1,    0,
37, /fingerprint/upload/thousand-files.zip, vdom1,  0,      0,      1536611774,   1,      2,
241,     0,
38, /fingerprint/upload/Thumbs.db,          vdom1,  0,      0,      1445878135,   1,      2,
3,    0,
39, /fingerprint/upload/widget.pdf,         vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,
18,   0,
40, /fingerprint/upload/xx00-xx01.tar,      vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118250,   1,      2,    5,
      0,
41, /fingerprint/upload/xx02-xx03.tar.gz,   vdom1,  0,      0,      1356118251,   1,      2,    1,
      0,
```

## DLP watermarking

Watermarking marks files with a digital pattern to designate them as proprietary to a specific company. A small pattern is added to the file that is recognized by the DLP watermark filter, but is invisible to the end user (except for text files).

FortiExplorer client, or a Linux-based command line tool, can be used to add a watermark to the following file types:

- .txt
- .doc and .docx
- .pdf
- .ppt and .pptx
- .xls and .xlsx

The following information is covered in this section:

- Watermarking a file with FortiExplorer.
- Watermarking a file with the Linux tool.
- Configuring a DLP sensor to detect watermarked files.

### FortiExplorer

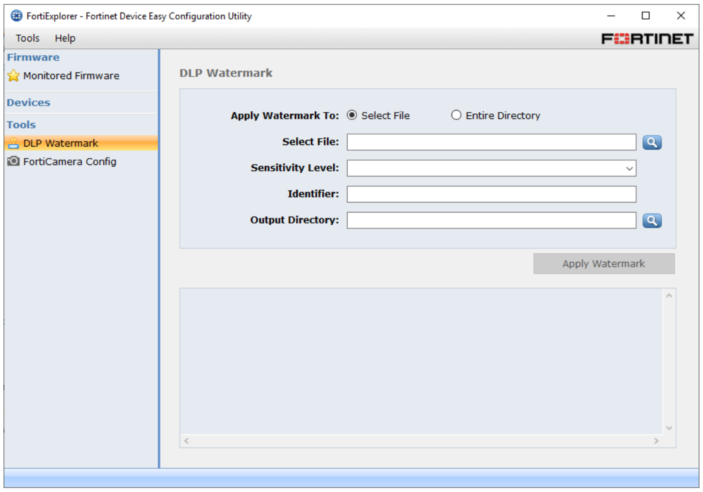
In this example, a watermark will be added to small text file. The content of the file is:

```
This is to show how DLP watermarking is done using FortiExplorer.
```

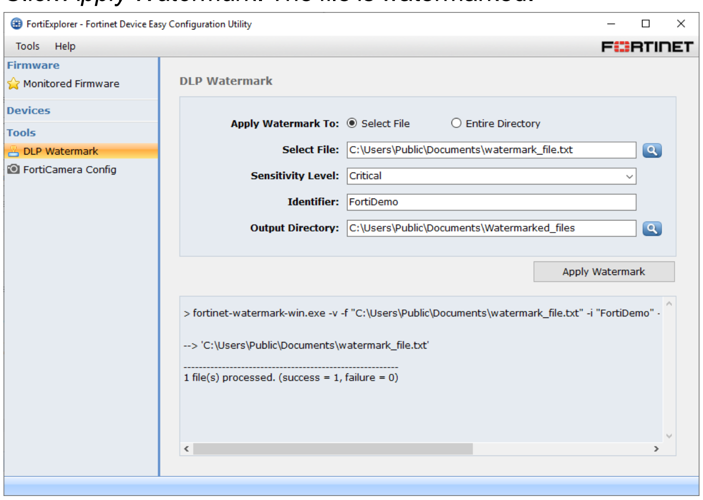
FortiExplorer can also be used to watermark an entire directory.

#### To watermark the text file with FortiExplorer:

1. Open the FortiExplorer client.
2. Select DLP Watermark from the left side bar.




3. Set *Apply Watermark To* to *Select File*.
4. Browse for the file, copy the file's path into the *Select File* field.
5. Set the *Sensitivity Level*. The available options are: *Critical*, *Private*, and *Warning*.
6. Enter a company identifier in the *Identifier* field.
7. Select the *Output Directory* where the watermarked file will be saved.
8. Click *Apply Watermark*. The file is watermarked.




9. The watermarked file content is changed to:

```
This is to show how DLP watermarking is done using FortiExplorer.=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-
    =-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=identifier=FortiDemo sensitivity=Critical=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-=-
    =-=-=-=-=-=-=-=
```

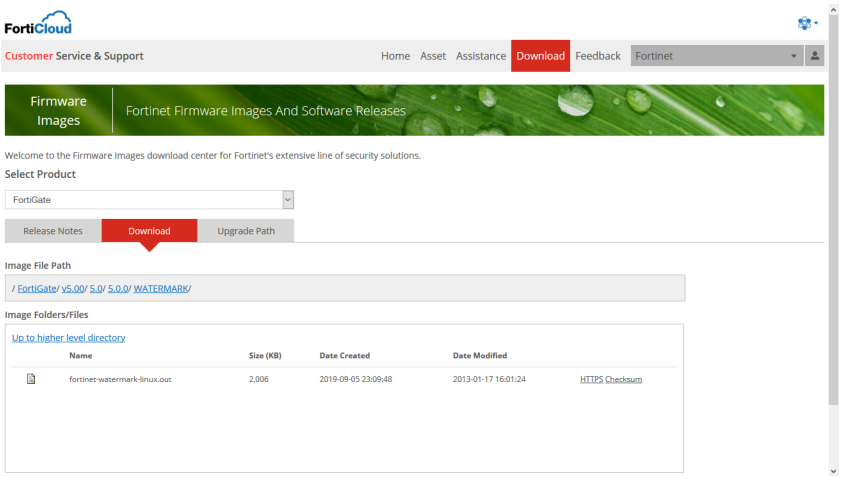
The watermark pattern is visible in text files. For all other supported file types, it is invisible.

## Linux-based command line tool

A Linux-based command line tool can be used to watermark files. The tool can be executed is a Linux environment by passing in files or directories of files.

### To download the tool:

1. Log in to Fortinet Service and Support. A valid support contract is required.
2. Go to *Download* > *Firmware Images*.
3. Select the *Download* tab, and go to *FortiGate/v5.00/5.0/5.0.0/WATERMARK*.




4. Download the *fortinet-watermark-linux.out* file.

### To run the tool:

Enter the following to run the tool on a file:

```
watermark_linux_amd64 <options> -f <file name> -i <identifier> -l <sensitivity level>
```

Enter the following to run the tool on a directory:

```
watermark_linux_amd64 <options> -d <directory> -i <identifier> -l <sensitivity level>
```

The following options are available:

| | |
|---|---|
| `-h` | Print this help. |
| `-I` | Watermark the file in place (don't make a copy of the file). |
| `-o` | The output file or directory. |
| `-e` | Encode <to non-readable>. |
| `-i` | Add a watermark identifier. |
| `-l` | Add a watermark sensitivity level. |
| `-D` | Delete a watermark identifier. |
| `-L` | Delete a watermark sensitivity level. |

### DLP watermark sensor

A DLP watermark sensor must be configured to detect watermarked files.

**To configure a DLP watermark sensor:**

```
config dlp sensor
   edit <sensor name>
      config filter
         edit <id number of filter>
           set proto {smtp | pop3 | imap http-get | http-post | ftp | nntp | mapi} <--
Protocol to inspect
           set filter-by watermark
           set sensitivity {Critical | Private | Warning}
           set company-identifier <string>
           set action {allow | log-only | block | ban | quarantine-ip}
         next
      end
   next
end
```

# VoIP solutions

You can configure VoIP profiles to allow SIP and SCCP traffic and to protect your network from SIP- and SCCP-based attacks.

FortiOS includes two preloaded VoIP profiles:

- *default*
- *strict*

You can customize these profiles, or you can create your own and add them to firewall policies that allow VoIP.

The following topics provide information about VoIP profiles:


- General use cases on page 1068
- SIP message inspection and filtering on page 1072
- SIP pinholes on page 1074
- SIP over TLS on page 1075
- Custom SIP RTP port range support on page 1076
- Voice VLAN auto-assignment on page 1078


## General use cases

There are three scenarios in which the FortiOS session initiation protocol (SIP) solution is usually deployed:

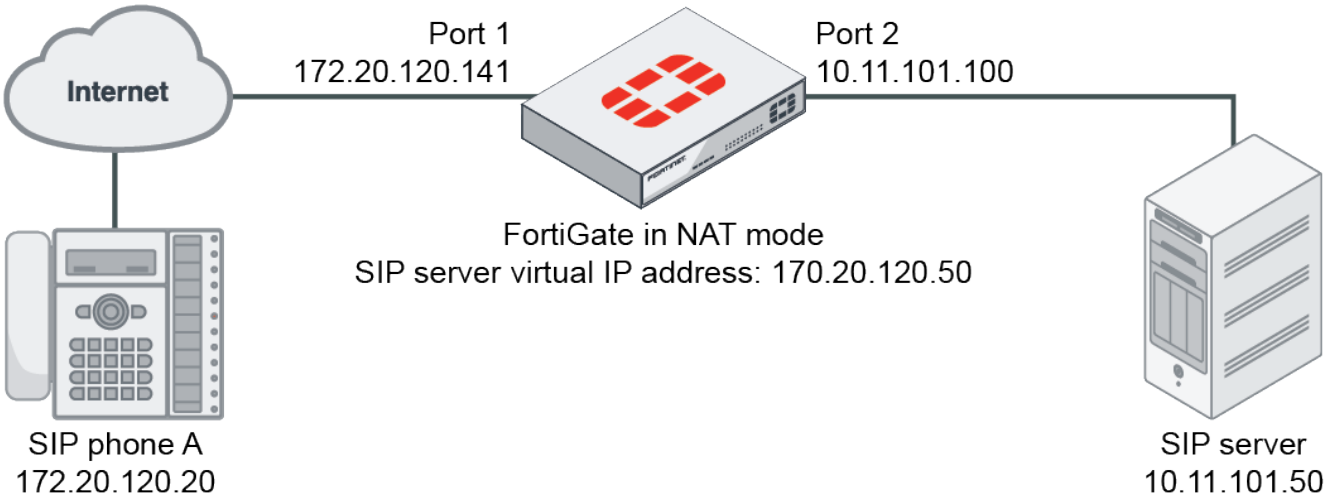
1. The SIP server is in a private network, protected from the internet by a FortiOS device.
2. The SIP clients are in a private network, protected from the internet by a FortiOS device.

3. The SIP server is in a private network, such as a corporation's internal network or an ISP's network, protected from the Internet by a FortiOS device. The SIP clients are in a remote private network, such as a SOHO network, and behind a NAT device that is not aware of SIP applications.

The following VIP, NAT, and HNT examples show configurations for each of the three common scenarios.

## VIP

A FortiGate with SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) or SIP Session Helper protects the SIP server from the internet, while SIP phones from the internet need to register to the SIP server and establish calls through it.




A VIP needs to be configured for the SIP server, and the VIP must be applied in a firewall policy for the phones to send REGISTER messages through the FortiGate from port1 to port2.

Only one firewall policy needs to be configured for all SIP phones on both the internet and private network to register to the SIP server through Port1 and set up SIP calls.

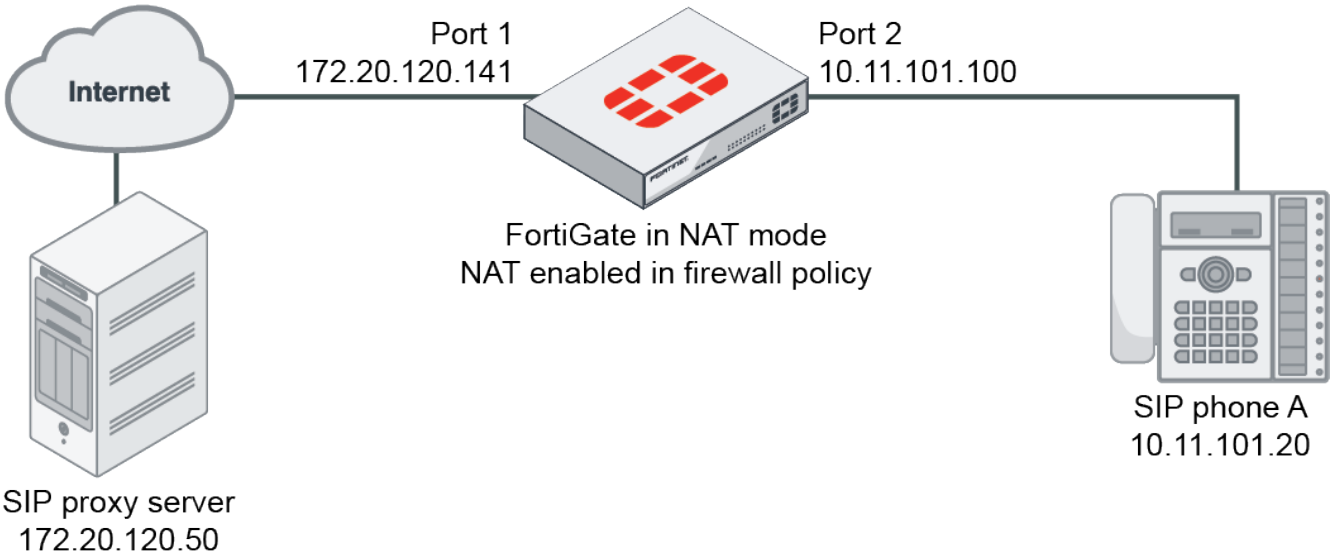
Assuming either SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper is enabled, configure the FortiGate with the following CLI commands:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set extip 172.20.120.50
        set extintf "port1"
        set mappedip "10.11.101.50"
    next
end
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
    next
end
```

Setting `service` to `SIP` and not `All` in the firewall policy can improve protection by restricting the data traffic passing through the FortiGate to the SIP call traffic only.

## NAT

A FortiGate with SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper protects the SIP phones and the internal network from the internet, while SIP phones in the internal network need to register to the SIP server installed on the internet and establish calls through it.




One firewall policy needs to be configured with NAT enabled for SIP phones to send REGISTER messages through the FortiGate from port2 to port1.

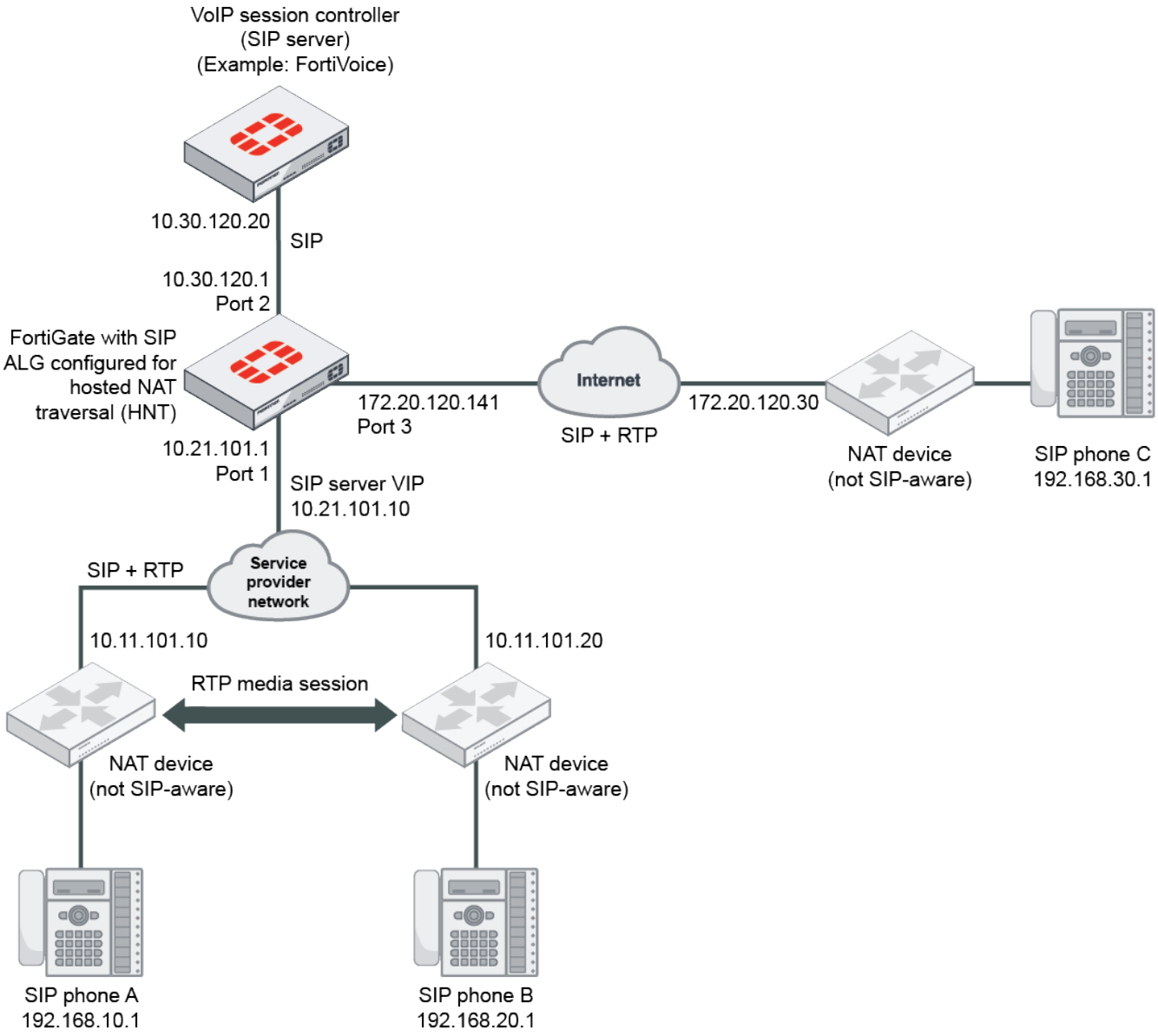
Assuming either SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper is enabled, configure the FortiGate with the following CLI commands:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port2"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## HNT

A FortiGate with SIP ALG or SIP Session Helper protects the SIP server from the internet, while SIP phones are in remote private networks behind NAT devices that are not aware of the SIP application.

For example, the SIP server is located in an ISP's service cloud that is protected by the FortiGate SIP ALG, and the SIP phones are installed in the home networks of the ISP's customers.




The SIP messages traversing the remote NAT devices might have their IP addresses translated by the NAT device at the network layer, but untranslated at the SIP application layer because those NAT devices are not aware of the SIP applications. This causes problems in a SIP session initiated process. Special configurations for the Hosted NAT Traversal (HNT) are required to resolve this issue.

**To configure the FortiGate with HNT support for SIP phones A and B to set up calls with each other:**

1. Identify port1 as the external interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set external enable
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Configure VIP for the SIP server:

```
config firewall vip
    edit "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set extip 10.21.101.10
        set extintf "port1"
        set mappedip "10.30.120.20"
    next
end
```

3. Configure a VoIP profile with HNT enabled:

```
config voip profile
    edit "hnt"
        config sip
            set hosted-nat-traversal enable
            set hnt-restrict-source-ip enable
        end
    next
end
```



`hosted-nat-traversal` must be enabled.

`hnt-restrict-source-ip` does not have to be enabled, but can be enabled to restrict the RTP packets' source IP to be the same as the SIP packets' source IP.

4. Apply the VoIP profile and VIP in a firewall policy for phone A and B to register and set up SIP calls through the FortiGate and SIP server:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "VIP_for_SIP_Server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
        set utm-status enable
        set voip-profile "hnt"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```



`nat` must be enabled in the firewall policy.

## SIP message inspection and filtering

SIP ALG provides users with security features to inspect and control SIP messages that are transported through FortiOS devices, including:

- Verifying the SIP message syntax.
- Blocking particular types of SIP requests.
- Restricting the rate of particular SIP requests.

These features are configured in the VoIP profile:

```
config voip profile
    edit <voip_profile_name>
        config sip set ...
```

The VoIP profile can then be applied to a firewall policy to process the SIP call traffic.

## SIP message syntax inspection

For syntax verification, the following attributes are available for configuration in the VoIP profile to determine what action is taken when a specific syntax error or attack based on invalid syntax is detected. For example, the action can be set to pass or discard it.

```
malformed-request-line
malformed-header-via
malformed-header-from
malformed-header-to
malformed-header-call-id
malformed-header-cseq
malformed-header-rack
malformed-header-rseq
malformed-header-contact
malformed-header-record-route
malformed-header-route
malformed-header-expires
malformed-header-content-type
malformed-header-content-length
malformed-header-max-forwards
malformed-header-allow
malformed-header-p-asserted-identity
malformed-header-sdp-v
malformed-header-sdp-o
malformed-header-sdp-s
malformed-header-sdp-i
malformed-header-sdp-c
malformed-header-sdp-b
malformed-header-sdp-z
malformed-header-sdp-k
malformed-header-sdp-a
malformed-header-sdp-t
malformed-header-sdp-r
malformed-header-sdp-m
```

## SIP message blocking

The following options are available in the VoIP profile to block SIP messages:

```
block-long-lines
block-unknown
block-ack
```

```
block-bye
block-cancel
block-info
block-invite
block-message
block-notify
block-options
block-prack
block-publish
block-refer
block-register
block-subscribe
block-update
block-geo-red-options
```

### SIP message rate limiting

The rate of certain types of SIP requests that are passing through the SIP ALG can be restricted :

```
register-rate
invite-rate
subscribe-rate
message-rate
notify-rate
refer-rate
update-rate
options-rate
ack-rate
prack-rate
info-rate
publish-rate
bye-rate
cancel-rate
```

## SIP pinholes

When SIP ALG processes a SIP call, it usually opens pinholes for SIP signaling and RTP/RTCP packets. NAT usually takes place during the process at both the network and SIP application layers. SIP ALG ensures that, with NAT happening, corresponding SIP and RTP/RTCP pinholes are created during the process when it is necessary for call sessions to be established through FortiOS devices.

By default, SIP ALG manages pinholes automatically, but some special configurations can be used to restrict the pinholes if required.

### SIP pinhole restriction

By default, the *strict-register* attribute is enabled. When enabled, after a SIP endpoint registers to the SIP server through a firewall policy on the FortiOS device, only the SIP messages sent from the same IP address as the SIP server are allowed to pass through the SIP pinhole that is created in the FortiOS device to reach the SIP endpoints. If the attribute is disabled, SIP messages from any IP addresses can pass through the pinhole created after the registration.

```
config voip profile
    edit "voip-profile-name"
        config sip
            set strict-register [enable|disable]
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

### RTP/RTCP pinhole restriction

In a SIP call through SIP ALG, the NATed RTP/RTCP port range is 5117 to 65533 by default. If required, the port range can be restricted.

```
config voip profile
    edit "voip-profile-name"
        config sip
            set nat-port-range <start_port_number>-<end_port_number>
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

In a SIP call session, the RTP port number is usually an even number and the RTCP port number is an odd number that is one more than the RTP port number. It is best practice to configure `start_port_number` to an even number, and `end_port_number` to an odd number, for example:

```
config voip profile
    edit "voip-profile-name"
        conf sip
            set nat-port-range 30000-39999
        end
    next
end
```

## SIP over TLS

Some SIP phones and servers can communicate using TLS to encrypt the SIP signaling traffic. To allow SIP over TLS calls to pass through the FortiGate, the encrypted signaling traffic must be unencrypted and inspected. The FortiGate SIP ALG intercepts, unencrypts , and inspects the SIP packets, which are then re-encrypted and forwarded to their destination.

The SIP ALG only supports full mode TLS. This means that the SIP traffic between SIP phones and the FortiGate, and between the FortiGate and the SIP server, is always encrypted. The highest TLS version supported by SIP ALG is TLS 1.2.

To enable SIP over TLS support, the SSL mode in the VoIP profile must be set to `full`. The SSL server and client certificates can be provisioned so that the FortiGate can use them to establish connections to SIP phones and servers, respectively.

**To configure SIP over TLS:**

1. Configure a VoIP profile with SSL enabled:

```
config voip profile
    edit "tls"
        config sip
            set ssl-mode full
            set ssl-client-certificate "ssl_client_cert"
            set ssl-server-certificate "ssl_server_cert"
        end
    next
end
```

   The `ssl_server_cert`, `ssl_client_cert`, and key files can be generated using a certification tool, such as OpenSLL, and imported to the local certificate store of the FortiGate from *System* > *Certificates* in the GUI. Existing local certificates in the certificate store can also be used. As always for TLS connections, the certificates used must be verified and trusted at the other end of the connection when required.

   For example, the CA certificate of the SIP server's certificate should be imported to the FortiGate as an external CA certification, such that the FortiGate can use it to verify the SIP server's certificate when setting up the TLS connection. The CA certificate configured as the `ssl_server_cert` should be installed as the trusted certificate on the SIP phones. The deployment of the certificates across the network depends on the SIP client and server devices that are used in the system.

2. Apply the profile to the firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port1"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "vip_sip_server"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "SIP"
        set utm-status enable
        set voip-profile "tls"
    next
end
```

## Custom SIP RTP port range support

The `nat-port-range` variable is used to specify a port range in the VoIP profile to restrict the NAT port range for real-time transport protocol/real-time transport control protocol (RTP/RTCP) packets in a session initiation protocol (SIP) call session that is handled by the SIP application layer gateway (ALG) in a FortiGate device.

When NAT is enabled, or VIP is used in a firewall policy for SIP ALG to handle a SIP call session established through a FortiGate device, the SIP ALG can perform NAT to translate the ports used for the RTP/RTCP packets when they are flowing through the device between the external and internal networks.

You can control the translated port range for RTP/RTCP packets using the CLI:

```
config voip profile
   edit <profile-name>
      config sip
         set nat-port-range <port range>
      end
```

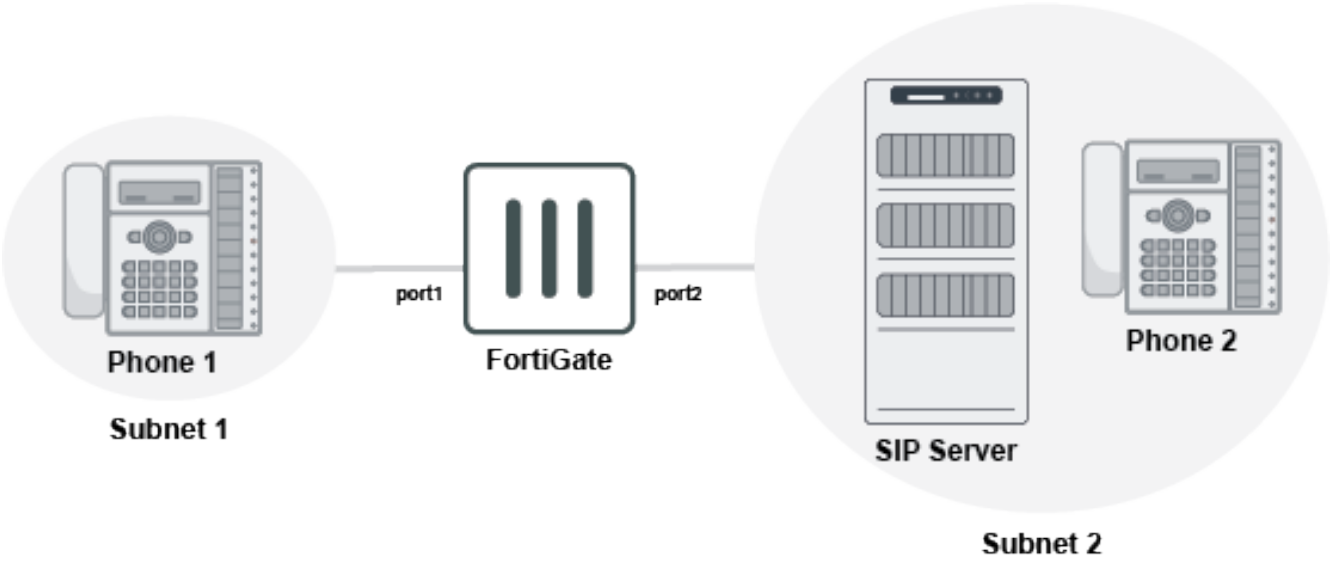
```
   next
end
```

| Command | Description |
|---|---|
| nat-port-range <port range> | The NAT port range (minimum port number = 5117, default = 5117-65535). |

## Example

In this example, Phone1 is in subnet_1, and the SIP server and phone are in subnet_2. All SIP signaling messages and RTP/RTCP packets go through the SIP Server. The RTP/RTCP ports on Phone1 are configured as 17078/17079.

The FortiGate administrator wants to use NAT for the port 17078/17079 to 30000/30001. As a result, all RTP/RTCP packets going out of port2 have source ports of 30000/30001, and all RTP/RTCP packets going into port2 also have destination ports of 30000/30001, which is specified in `nat-port-range`.




**To configure the custom port range:**

```
config voip profile
   edit "natPortRange"
         config sip
            set nat-port-range 30000-30001
         end
   next
end
configure firewall policy
   edit 1
         set srcintf port1
         set  dstintf port2
         set srcaddr all
         set dstaddr all
         set service SIP
         set action accept
         set schedule always
         set voip-profile natPortRange
         set nat enable
```

```
end
```

If phone1 and phone2 are registered to the SIP server, and they establish a call session between them through the FortiGate and the SIP server, then the RTP/RTCP ports 17078/17079 of phone1 will be translated to ports 30000/30001 at the FortiGate unit based on the NAT port range setting. That is, the RTP/RTCP packets egressing port2 of the Fortigate will have source ports of 30000/30001, and the RTP/RTCP packets ingressing port2 will have destination ports of 30000/30001.

## Voice VLAN auto-assignment

You can leverage LLDP-MED to assign voice traffic to the desired voice VLAN. After detection and setup, the IP phone on the network is segmented to its own VLAN for policy, prioritization, and reporting. The LLDP reception capabilities in FortiOS have been extended to support LLDP-MED assignment for voice, voice signaling, guest, guest voice signaling, softphone, video conferencing, streaming video, and video signaling.

You can configure this feature using the following steps:

1. Setting up the VLAN for the voice device
2. Setting up the DHCP server for the voice VLAN
3. Setting up the LLDP network policy
4. Enabling LLDP on the physical interface that the VLAN belongs to
5. Applying the LLDP network policy on the physical interface
6. Confirming that the VLAN was assigned

**To set up the VLAN for the voice device:**

```
config system interface
    edit "vlan_100"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
        set alias "voice_vlan"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 25
        set interface "port10"
        set vlanid 100
    next
end
```

**To set up the DHCP server for the voice VLAN:**

```
config system dhcp server
    edit 1
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 192.168.1.99
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "vlan_100"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 192.168.1.110
                set end-ip 192.168.1.210
            next
        end
```

```
    next
end
```

**To set up the LLDP network policy:**

```
config system lldp network-policy
    edit "1"
        config voice
            set status enable
            set tag dot1q
            set vlan 100
        end
    next
end
```

**To enable LLDP on the physical interface that the VLAN belongs to:**

```
config system interface
    edit "port10"
        set vdom "root"
        set type physical
        set lldp-reception enable
        set lldp-transmission enable
        set snmp-index 14
    next
end
```

**To apply the LLDP network policy on the physical interface:**

```
config system interface
    edit "port10"
        set lldp-network-policy "1"
    next
end
```

**To confirm that the VLAN was assigned as expected:**

1. Connect an IP phone to the network.
2. Check the IP address on the phone.
   The IP address should belong to the voice VLAN.
3. Sniff on the FortiGate incoming interface to see if traffic from the IP phone has the desired VLAN tag.
   In the example commands above, the voice VLAN was configured as VLAN 100. Therefore, voice traffic from the IP phone should be in VLAN 100.

# ICAP

Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) is an application layer protocol that is used to offload tasks from the firewall to separate, specialized servers. For more information see RFC 3507.

ICAP profiles can only be applied to policies that use proxy-based inspection. If you enable ICAP in a policy, HTTP and HTTPS (if HTTPS inspection is supported) traffic that is intercepted by the policy is transferred to the ICAP server

specified by the selected ICAP profile. Responses from the ICAP server are returned to the FortiGate, and then forwarded to their destination.



By default, *ICAP* is not visible in the GUI. See Feature visibility on page 761 for instructions on making it visible.

**To configure ICAP:**

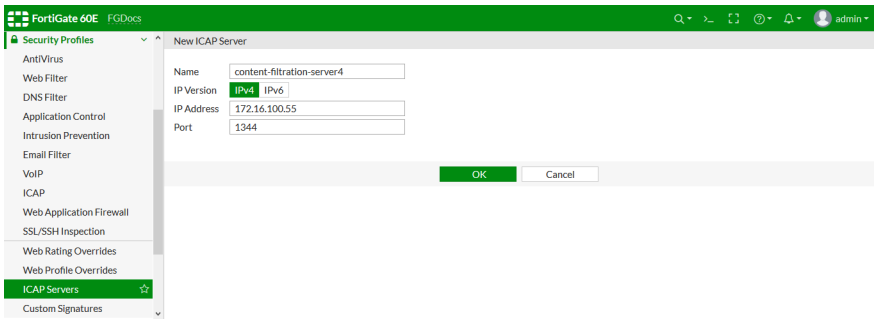
1. Set up your ICAP server.
2. On the FortiGate, add an ICAP server.
3. Create an ICAP profile.
4. Use the ICAP profile in a firewall policy that covers the traffic that needs to be offloaded to the ICAP server.

## ICAP configuration example

In this example, the ICAP server performs proprietary content filtering on HTTP and HTTPS requests. If the content filter is unable to process a request, then the request is blocked. Streaming media is not considered by the filter, so it is allowed through and is not processed.

**To add the ICAP server to the FortiGate in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *ICAP Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Name* field, enter a name for the ICAP server, such as *content-filtration-server4*.
4. Select the *IP Version*.
5. In the *IP Address* field, enter the IP address of the ICAP server.
6. In the *Port* field, enter a new port number if required. The default value is *1344*.



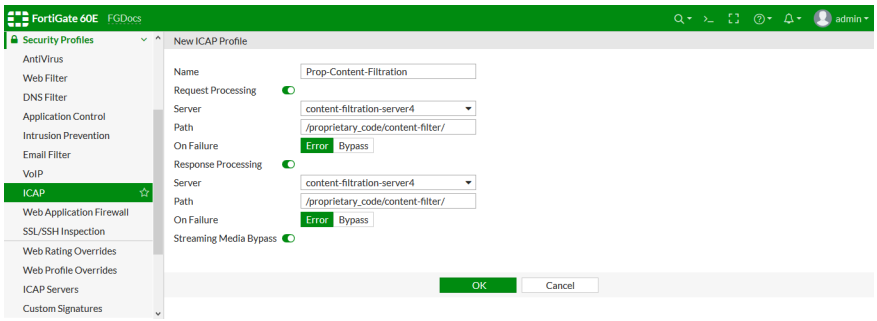

7. Click *OK*.



The maximum number of concurrent connections to ICAP server can be configured in the CLI. The default setting is 100 connections.

**To create an ICAP profile in the GUI:**

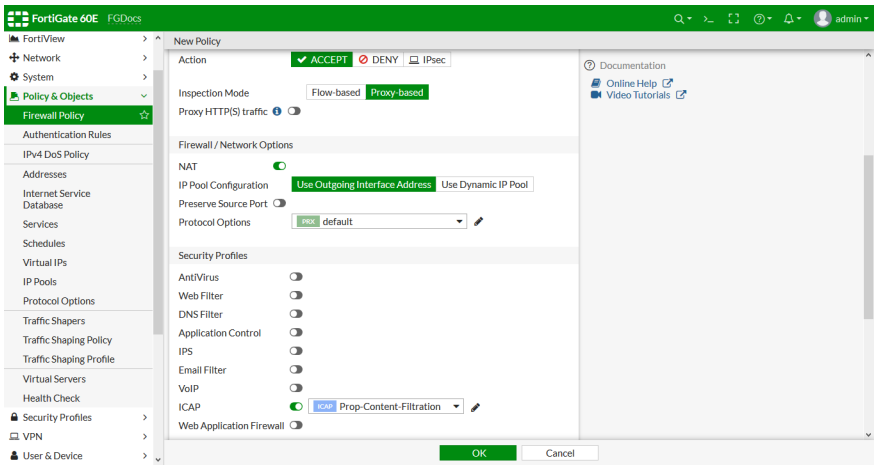
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *ICAP*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Name* field, enter a name for the ICAP profile, such as *Prop-Content-Filtration*.
4. Enable *Request Processing* then set the following:
   - *Server* - Select the ICAP server. In this example, select *content-filtration-server4*
   - *Path* - The path to the processing component on the server, such as */proprietary_code/content-filter/*.
   - *On Failure* - Select *Error* to block the request. If the message cannot be processed, it will not be blocked.
5. Enable *Response Processing* then set the following:
   - *Server* - Select the ICAP server: *content-filtration-server4*
   - *Path* - The path to the processing component on the server, such as */proprietary_code/content-filter/*.
   - *On Failure* - Select *Error* to block the request. If the message cannot be processed, it will not be blocked.
6. Enable *Streaming Media Bypass* to not offload streaming media to the ICAP server.




7. Click *OK*.

**To add the ICAP profile to a policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the policy as needed to apply to the required traffic.
4. Set *Inspection Mode* to *Proxy-based*.
5. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *ICAP* and select the ICAP server.




6. Click *OK*.

**To configure the ICAP setup in the CLI:**

1. Add the ICAP server:

```
config icap server
    edit "content-filtration-server4"
        set ip-version 4
        set ip-address 172.16.100.55
        set port 1344
        set max-connections 200
    next
end
```

2. Create the ICAP profile:

```
config icap profile
    edit "Prop-Content-Filtration"
        set request enable
        set response enable
        set streaming-content-bypass enable
        set request-server "content-filtration-server4"
        set response-server "content-filtration-server4"
        set request-failure error
        set response-failure error
        set request-path "/proprietary_code/content-filter/"
        set response-path "/proprietary_code/content-filter/"
        set methods delete get head options post put trace other
    next
end
```

3. Add the ICAP profile to a policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "icap_filter3"
        set srcintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set dstintf "virtual-wan-link"
        set srcaddr "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set dstaddr "FABRIC_DEVICE"
        set dstaddr-negate enable
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set icap-profile "Prop-Content-Filtration"
        set logtraffic disable
        set fsso disable
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## ICAP response filtering

ICAP HTTP responses can be forwarded or bypassed based on the HTTP header value and status code.

When configuring the ICAP profile, if `response` is enabled, the `respmod-default-action` option can be configured:

- If `respmod-default-action` is set to forward, FortiGate will treat every HTTP response, and send ICAP requests to the ICAP server.
- If `respmod-default-action` is set to bypass, FortiGate will only send ICAP requests if the HTTP response matches the defined rules, and the rule's action is set to forward.

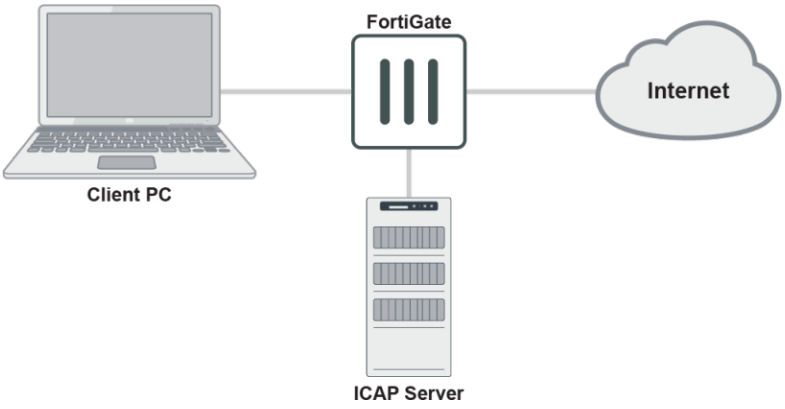
When configuring a response rule:

- The `http-resp-status-code` option is configured to specific HTTP response codes. If the HTTP response has any one of the configured values, then the rule takes effect.
- Multiple header value matching groups can be configured. If the header value matches one of the groups, then the rule takes effect.
- If both status codes and header values are specified in a rule, the response must match at least one of each.

The UTM ICAP log category is used for logging actions when FortiGate encounters errors with the ICAP server, such as no service, unreachable, error response code, or timeout. If an error occurs, a traffic log and an associated UTM ICAP log will be created.

## Example

The FortiGate acts as a gateway for the client PC and connects to a reachable ICAP server. The ICAP server can be in NAT, transparent, or proxy mode.




In this example, client request HTTP responses will be forwarded to the ICAP server from all hosts if they have an HTTP status code of 200, 301, or 302, and have `content-type: image/jpeg` in the their header.

**To configure an ICAP profile with HTTP response rules:**

```
config icap profile
    edit "icap_profile2"
        set request disable
        set response enable
        set streaming-content-bypass disable
        set preview disable
        set response-server "icap_server1"
        set response-failure error
        set response-path ''
        set methods delete get head options post put trace other
        set response-req-hdr disable
        set respmod-default-action bypass
        config respmod-forward-rules
```

```
            edit "rule2"
                set host "all"
                set action forward
                set http-resp-status-code 200 301 302
                config header-group
                    edit 2
                        set header-name "content-type"
                        set header "image/jpeg"
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To view the logs if an error occurs:**

1. View the traffic log:

```
# execute log filter category 0
# execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

 1: date=2019-10-25 time=17:43:47 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1572050627037314464 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.145
srcport=47968 srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.46 dstport=80
dstintf="port2" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="a4d5324e-f6c3-51e9-ce2d-f360994fb547"
sessionid=43549 proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP"
dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.1
transport=47968 duration=1 sentbyte=485 rcvdbyte=398 sentpkt=6 rcvdpkt=5
appcat="unscanned" wanin=478 wanout=165 lanin=165 lanout=165 utmaction="block"
counticap=1 crscore=5 craction=262144 crlevel="low" utmref=65532-0
```

2. View the UTM ICAP log:

```
# execute log filter category 20
# execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

 1: date=2019-10-25 time=17:43:46 logid="2000060000" type="utm" subtype="icap"
eventtype="icap" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1572050626010097145 tz="-0700"
msg="Request blocked due to ICAP server error" service="HTTP" srcip=10.1.100.145
dstip=172.16.200.46 srcport=47968 dstport=80 srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstintf="port2" dstintfrole="undefined" policyid=1 sessionid=43549 proto=6
action="blocked" profile="icap_profile1" url="/icap_test/"
```

The logs show that, in this case, the ICAP services stopped before the access. When the client tried to access HTTP and ICAP took effect, the FortiGate sent the ICAP request to the ICAP server and received an error. The client sees a *502 Bad Gateway* message, and FortiGate writes the two logs. In the GUI, the logged traffic is displayed as *Result: Deny: UTM Blocked*.

# Web application firewall

Web application firewall (WAF) profiles can detect and block known web application attacks. You can configure WAF profiles to use signatures and constraints to examine web traffic. You can also enforce an HTTP method policy, which controls the HTTP method that matches the specified pattern.

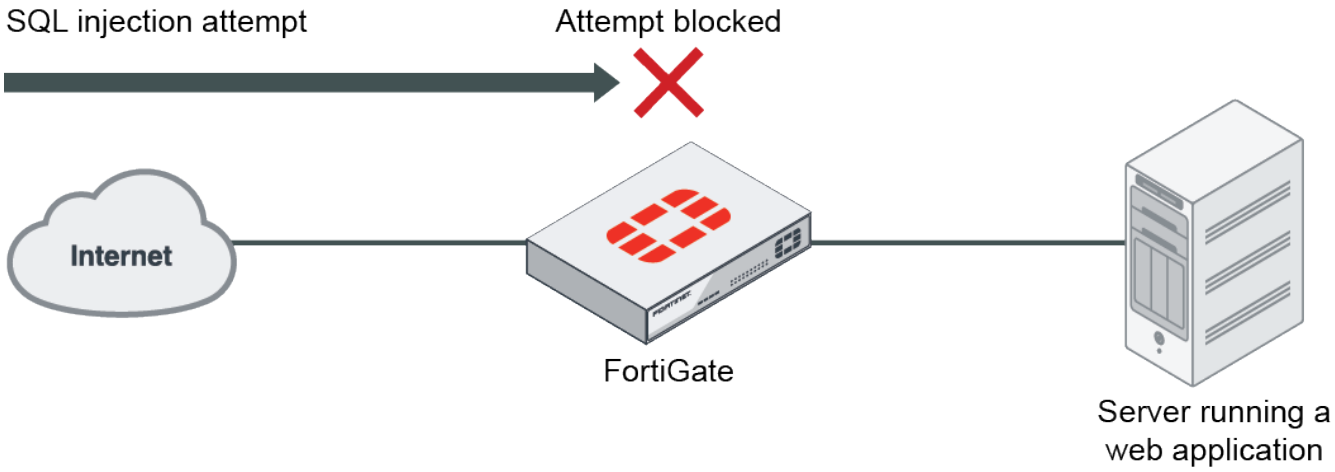
You can customize the default profile, or you can create your own profile to apply access rules and HTTP protocol constraints to traffic. You can apply WAF profiles to firewall policies when the inspection mode is set to proxy-based.

The following topic provides information about WAF profiles:

- Protecting a server running web applications on page 1085

## Protecting a server running web applications

You can use a web application firewall profile to protect a server that is running a web application, such as webmail.




Web application firewall profiles are created with a variety of options called signatures and constraints. Once these options are enabled, the action can be set to allow, monitor, or block. The severity can be set to high, medium, or low.

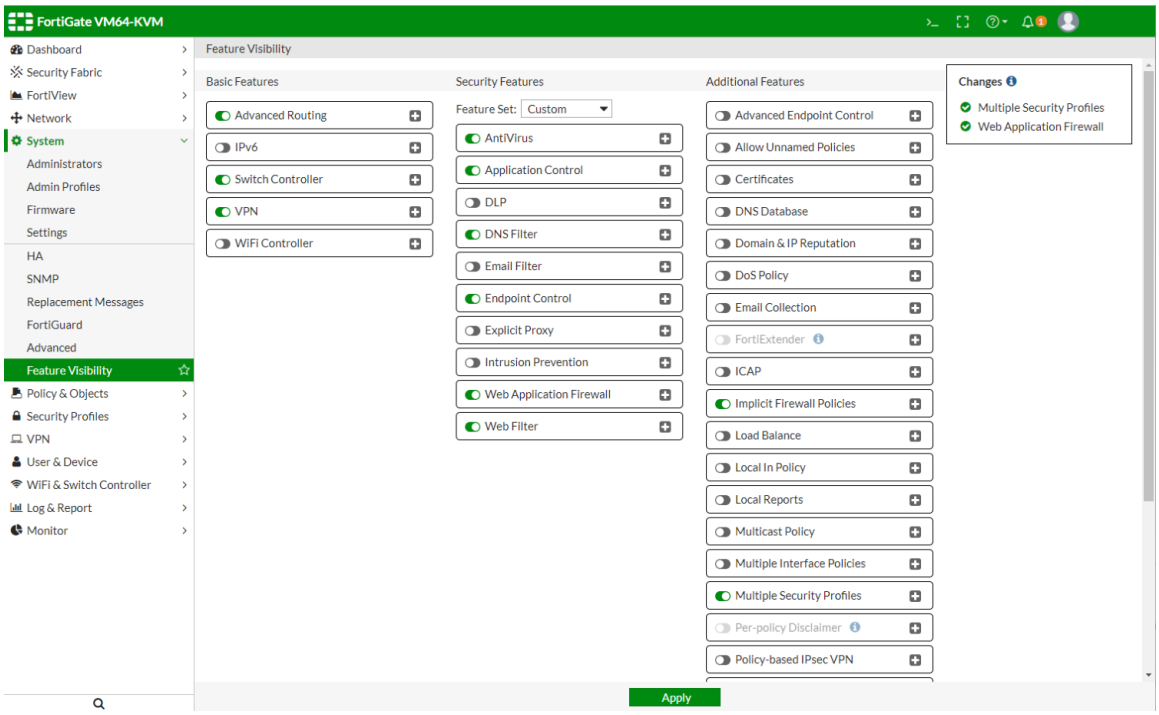
In the following example, the default profile will be targeted to block SQL injection attempts and generic attacks.

The web application firewall feature is only available when the policy inspection mode is proxy-based.

**To protect a server running web applications:**

1. Enable the web application firewall:
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*.
   b. Under *Security Features*, enable *Web Application Firewall*.
   c. Under *Additional Features*, click *Show More* and enable *Multiple Security Profiles*.

**d.** Click *Apply*.




**2.** Edit the default web application firewall profile:
*Trojans* and *Known Exploits* are blocked by default.

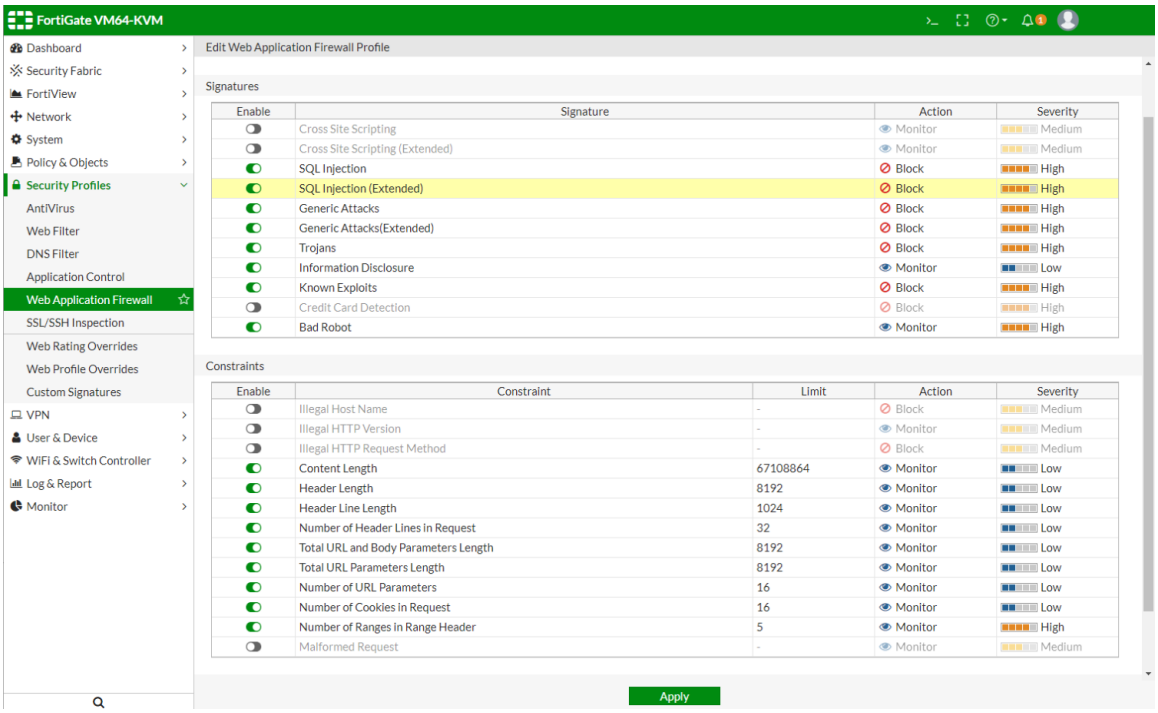
**a.** Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Application Firewall*.

**b.** Edit the *default* profile signature:

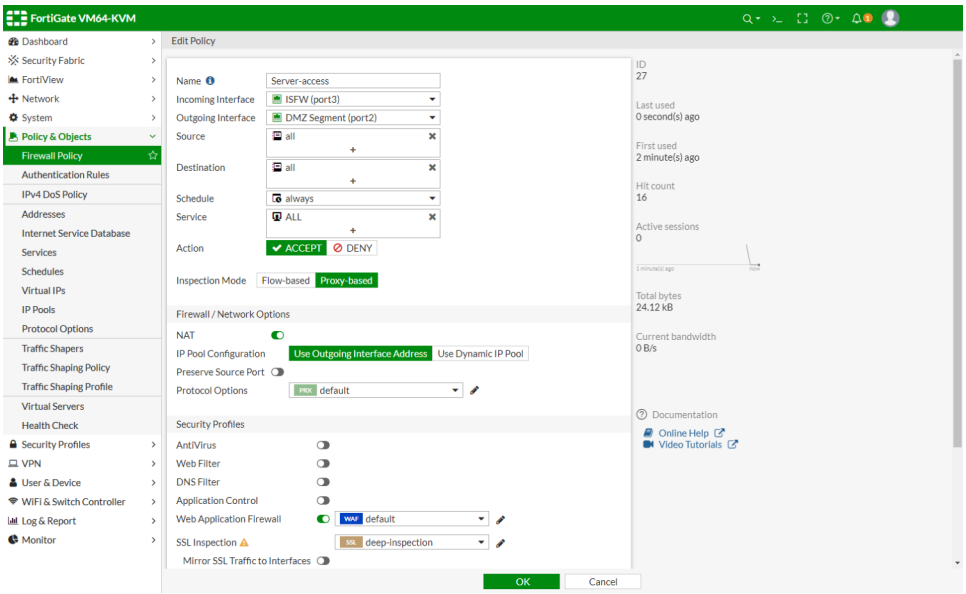
**i.** Enable *SQL Injection (Extended)* and *Generic Attacks (Extended)*.

**ii.** For both signatures, set the *Action* to *Block* and the *Severity* to *High*.

iii. Click *Apply*.




3. Apply the profile to a security policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Edit the policy that allows access to the web server:
      i. Under *Firewall / Network Options*, select the appropriate *Protocol Option*.
      ii. Under *Security Profiles*, enable *Web Application Firewall* and set it to use the *default* profile.
      iii. Set the *SSL Inspection* to use the *deep-inspection* profile.
      iv. Click *OK*.



4. Verify that the web application firewall blocks traffic:
   a. Use the following URL to simulate an attack on your web server and substitute the IP address of your server:
   `http://<server IP>/index.php?username=1'%20or%20'1'%20=%20'1&password=1'%20or%20'1'%20=%20'1`
   An error message appears, stating that the web application firewall has blocked the traffic:

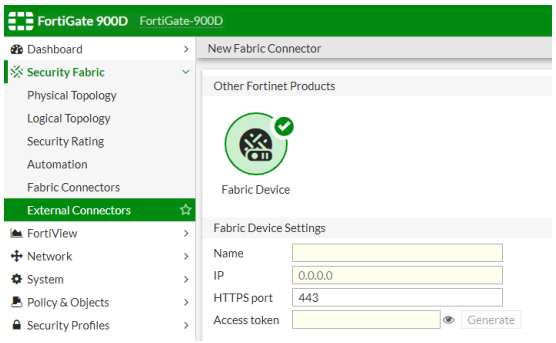



### Offloading to a FortiWeb

If you have a FortiWeb, you may be able to offload the functions of the web application control to your FortiWeb. To find out if this option is available, refer to the FortiOS or FortiWeb Release Notes for information about device compatibility.

**To offload to a FortiWeb:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*, and click *Fabric Device*.
3. Enter the following for the device:
   a. Name (`FortiWeb`)
   b. FortiWeb IP address
   c. HTTPS service port




4. Click *Generate*.
5. Enter your credentials to generate the access token.
6. Click *OK*.

# SSL & SSH Inspection

Secure sockets layer (SSL) content scanning and inspection allows you to apply antivirus scanning, web filtering, and email filtering to encrypted traffic. You can apply SSL inspection profiles to firewall policies.

FortiOS includes four preloaded SSL/SSH inspection profiles, three of which are read-only and can be cloned:

- *certificate-inspection*
- *deep-inspection*
- *no-inspection*

The *custom-deep-inspection* profile can be edited, or you can create your own SSL/SSH inspection profiles.

Deep inspection (also known as SSL/SSH inspection) is typically applied to outbound policies where destinations are unknown. Depending on your policy requirements, you can configure the following:

- Which CA certificate will be used to decrypt the SSL encrypted traffic
- Which SSL protocols will be inspected
- Which ports will be associated with which SSL protocols for inspection
- Whether or not to allow invalid SSL certificates
- Whether or not SSH traffic will be inspected
- Which addresses or web category allowlists can bypass SSL inspection

The following topics provide information about SSL & SSH Inspection:


- Certificate inspection on page 1089
- Deep inspection on page 1090
- Protecting an SSL server on page 1092
- Ignoring the AUTH TLS command on page 1093
- SSH traffic file scanning on page 1094
- Redirect to WAD after handshake completion on page 1095


# Certificate inspection

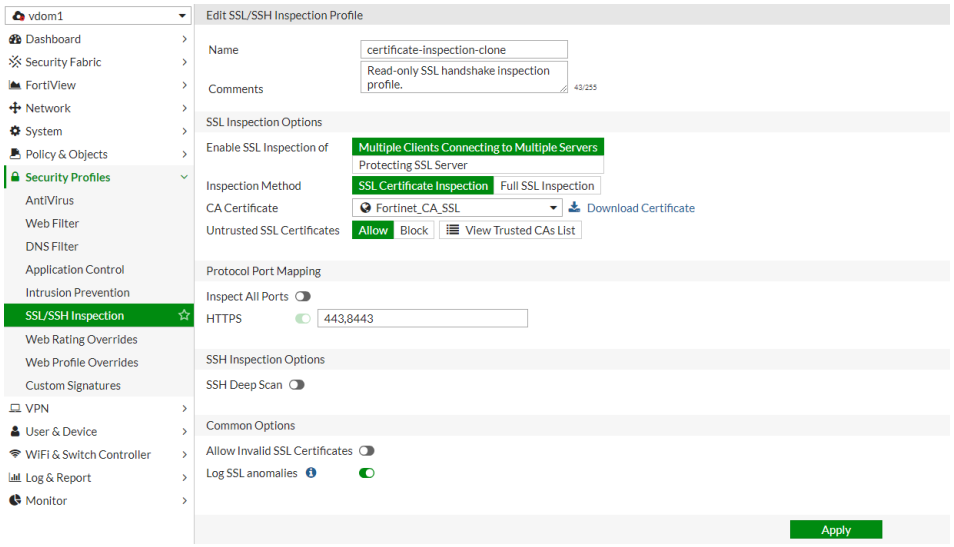
FortiGate supports certificate inspection. The default configuration has a built-in *certificate-inspection* profile which you can use directly. When you use certificate inspection, the FortiGate only inspects the headers up to the SSL/TLS layer.

If you do not want to deep scan for privacy reasons but you want to control web site access, you can use *certificate-inspection*.

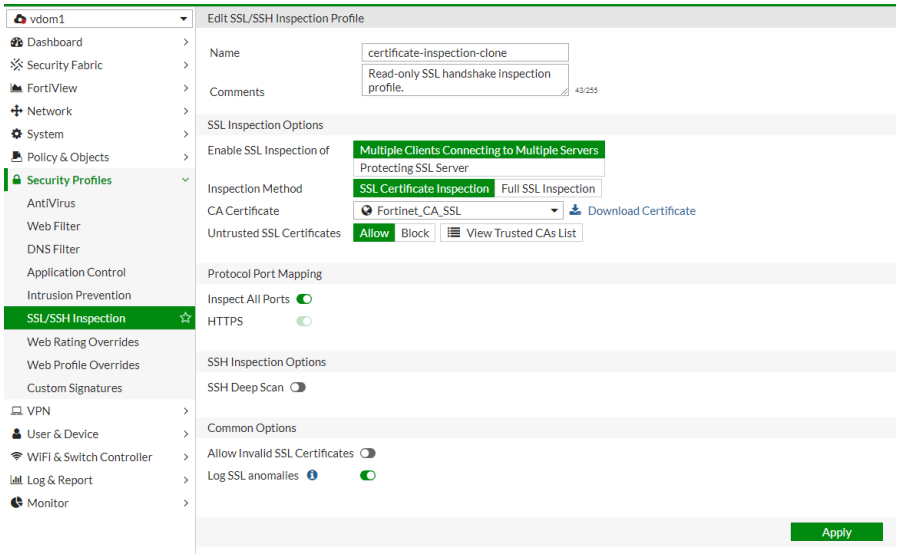
## Inspect non-standard HTTPS ports

The built-in *certificate-inspection* profile is read-only and only listens on port 443. If you want to make changes, you must create a new certificate inspection profile.

If you know the non-standard port that the web server uses, such as port 8443, you can add this port to the *HTTPS* field.



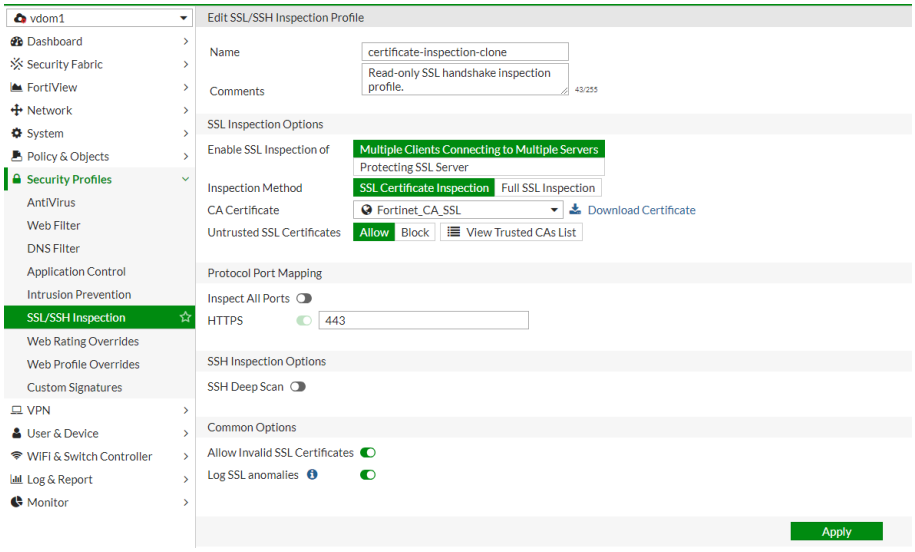
If you do not know which port is used in the HTTPS web server, you can select *Inspect All Ports*.




## Block untrusted or allow invalid certificate

The default setting in the *certificate-inspection* profile is to block invalid certificates and allow untrusted certificates.

For example, the server certificate has expired but you still want to access this server until you have a new server certificate. But because certificate inspection cannot do an exemption, you have to allow the invalid certificate in your SSL profile. This means you need to create a new certificate inspection profile using the built-in read-only *certificate-inspection*.




# Deep inspection

You can configure address and web category allowlists to bypass SSL deep inspection.

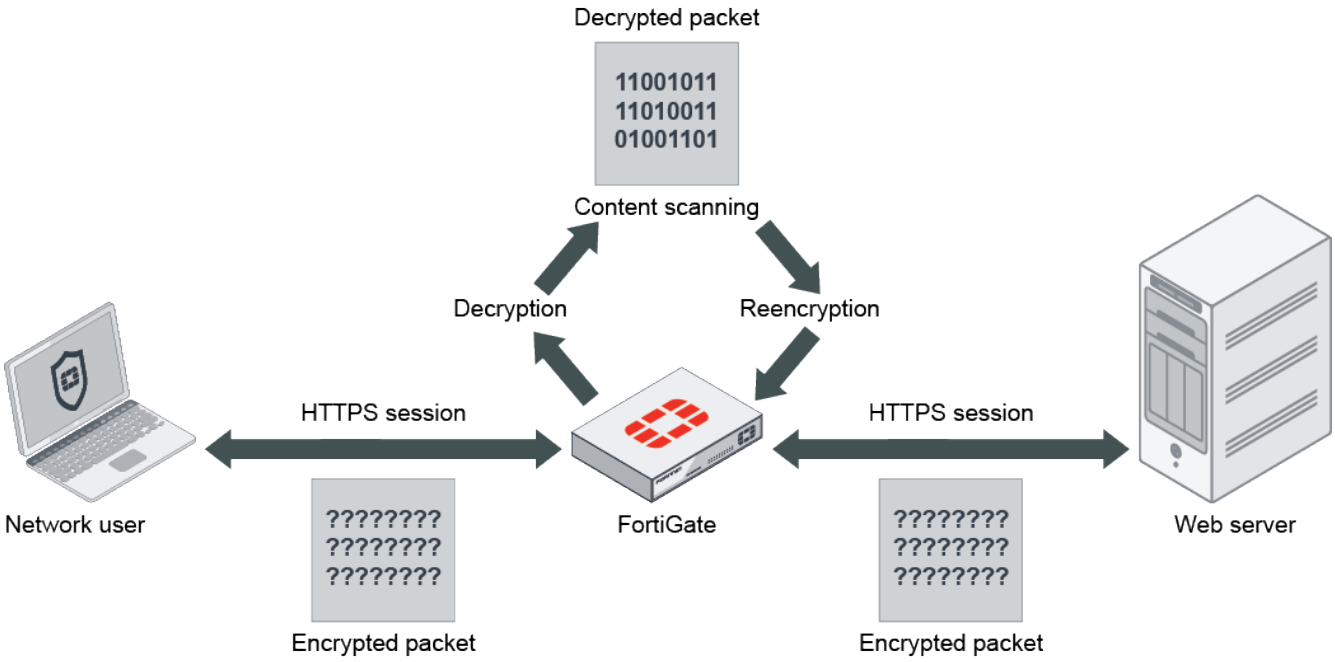
## Reasons for using deep inspection

While Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) offers protection on the Internet by applying Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) encryption to web traffic, encrypted traffic can be used to get around your network's normal defenses.

For example, you might download a file containing a virus during an e-commerce session, or you might receive a phishing email containing a seemingly harmless download that, when launched, creates an encrypted session to a command and control (C&C) server and downloads malware onto your computer. Because the sessions in these attacks are encrypted, they might get past your network's security measures.

When you use deep inspection, the FortiGate impersonates the recipient of the originating SSL session, then decrypts and inspects the content to find threats and block them. It then re-encrypts the content and sends it to the real recipient.

Deep inspection not only protects you from attacks that use HTTPS, it also protects you from other commonly-used SSL-encrypted protocols such as SMTPS, POP3S, IMAPS, and FTPS.




## Browser messages when using deep inspection

When FortiGate re-encrypts the content, it uses a certificate stored on the FortiGate such as *Fortinet_CA_SSL*, *Fortinet_CA_Untrusted*, or your own CA certificate that you uploaded.

Because there is no *Fortinet_CA_SSL* in the browser trusted CA list, the browser displays an untrusted certificate warning when it receives a FortiGate re-signed server certificate. To stop the warning messages, trust the FortiGate-trusted CA *Fortinet_CA_SSL* and import it into your browser.

After importing *Fortinet_CA_SSL* into your browser, if you still get messages about untrusted certificate, it must be due to *Fortinet_CA_Untrusted*. Never import the *Fortinet_CA_Untrusted* certificate into your browser.

**To import *Fortinet_CA_SSL* into your browser:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection* and edit the *deep-inspection* profile. The default *CA Certificate* is *Fortinet_CA_SSL*.
2. Click *Download* and save the certificate to the management computer.

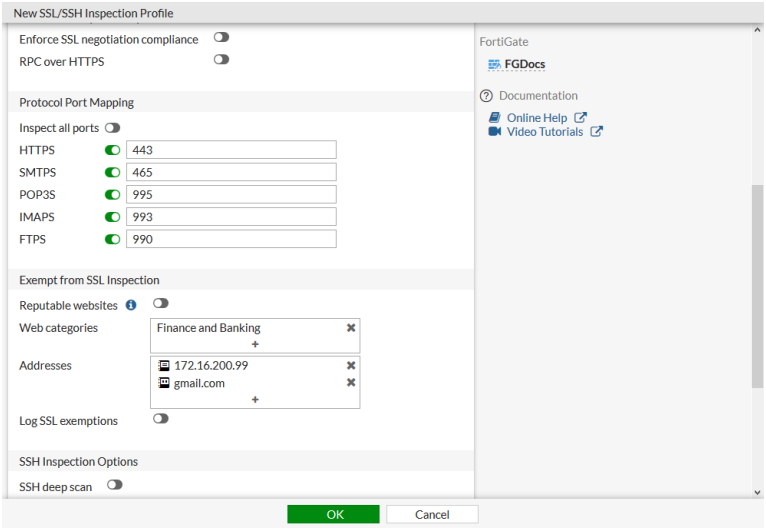
3. On the client PC, use the *Certificate Import Wizard* to install the certificate into the *Trusted Root Certificate Authorities* store.
   If a security warning appears, select *Yes* to install the certificate.

### Exempt web sites from deep inspection

If you do not want to apply deep inspection for privacy or other reasons, you can exempt the session by address, category, or allowlist.

If you know the address of the server you want to exempt, you can exempt that address. You can exempt specific address type including IP address, IP address range, IP subnet, FQDN, wildcard-FQDN, and geography.

If you want to exempt all bank web sites, an easy way is to exempt the *Finance and Banking* category which includes all finance and bank web sites identified in FortiGuard.




If you want to exempt commonly trusted web sites, you can bypass the SSL allowlist in the SSL/SSH profile by enabling *Reputable Websites*. The allowlist includes common web sites trusted by FortiGuard.

## Protecting an SSL server

You typically use the FortiGate *Protecting SSL Server* profile as an inbound policy for clients on the internet that access the server through the internal side of the FortiGate.

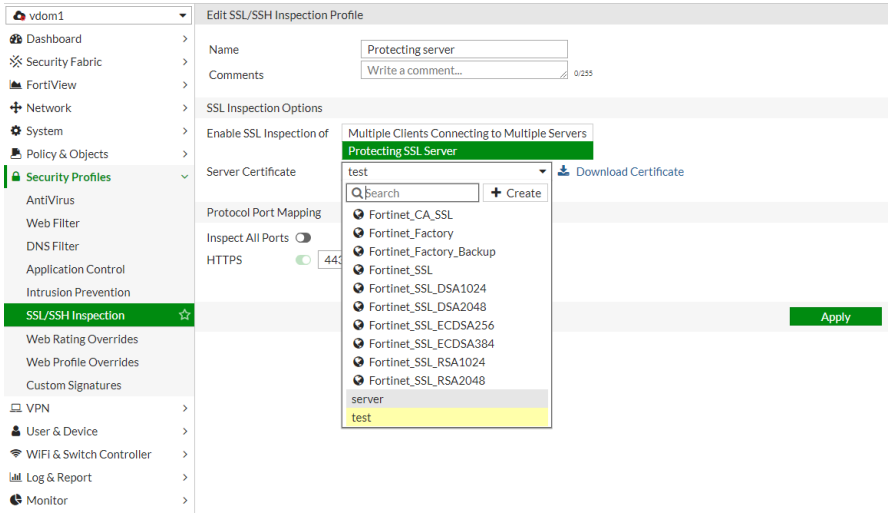
*Protecting SSL Server* uses a server certificate to protect a single server.

You can use *Protecting SSL Server* if you do not want a client on the internet to directly access your internal server, and you want the FortiGate to simulate your real server.

**To upload a server certificate into FortiGate and use that certificate in the SSL/SSH inspection profile:**

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
2. Select *Import* > *Local Certificate* and upload the certificate.
3. Go to *Security Profiles* > *SSL/SSH Inspection* and edit or create a new profile.
4. For *Enable SSL Inspection of*, select *Protecting SSL Server*.
5. For *Server Certificate*, select the local certificate you imported.

6. Click *Apply*.




When you apply the *Protecting SSL Server* profile in a policy, the FortiGate will send the server certificate to the client as your server does.

## Ignoring the AUTH TLS command

If the FortiGate receives an AUTH TLS (PBSZ and PROT) command before receiving plain text traffic from a decrypted device, by default, it will expect encrypted traffic, determine that the traffic belongs to an abnormal protocol, and bypass the traffic.

When the `ssl-offloaded` command is enabled, the AUTH TLS command is ignored, and the traffic is treated as plain text rather than encrypted data. SSL decryption and encryption are performed by an external device.

**To enable SSL offloading:**

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "test"
        config ftp
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
        config imap
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
        config pop3
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
        config smtp
            set ssl-offloaded yes
        end
    next
end
```

## SSH traffic file scanning

FortiGates can buffer, scan, log, or block files sent over SSH traffic (SCP and SFTP) depending on the file size, type, or contents (such as viruses or sensitive content).



This feature is supported in proxy-based inspection mode. It is currently not supported in flow-based inspection mode.

You can configure the following SSH traffic settings in the CLI:

- Protocol options
- DLP sensor
- Antivirus (profile and quarantine options)

**To configure SSH protocol options:**

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "protocol"
        config ssh
           set options [oversize | clientcomfort | servercomfort]
           set comfort-interval [1 - 900]
           set comfort-amount [1 - 65535]
           set oversize-limit [1 - 798]
           set uncompressed-oversize-limit [0 - 798]
           set uncompressed-nest-limit [2 - 100]
           set scan-bzip2 [enable | disable]
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure SCP block and log options:**

```
config ssh-filter profile
    edit "ssh-test"
        set block scp
        set log scp
    next
end
```

**To configure the DLP sensor:**

```
config dlp sensor
    edit "test"
        set full-archive-proto ssh
        set summary-proto ssh
        config filter
            edit 1
                set proto ssh
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the antivirus profile options:**

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "av"
        config ssh
            set options [scan | avmonitor | quarantine]
            set archive-block [encrypted | corrupted | partiallycorrupted | multipart |
nested | mailbomb | fileslimit | timeout | unhandled]
            set archive-log [encrypted | corrupted | partiallycorrupted | multipart | nested
| mailbomb | fileslimit | timeout | unhandled]
            set emulator [enable | disable]
            set outbreak-prevention [disabled | files | full-archive]
        end
    next
end
```

**To configure the antivirus quarantine options:**

```
config antivirus quarantine
    set drop-infected ssh
    set store-infected ssh
    set drop-blocked ssh
    set store-blocked ssh
    set drop-heuristic ssh
    set store-heuristic ssh
end
```

## Redirect to WAD after handshake completion

In a proxy-based policy, the TCP connection is proxied by the FortiGate. A TCP 3-way handshake can be established with the client even though the server did not complete the handshake.

This option uses IPS to handle the initial TCP 3-way handshake. It rebuilds the sockets and redirects the session back to proxy only when the handshake with the server is established.

**To enable proxy after a TCP handshake in an SSL/SSH profile:**

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "test"
        config https
            set ports 443
            set status certificate-inspection
            set proxy-after-tcp-handshake enable
        end
        .....
   next
end
```

**To enable proxy after a TCP handshake in protocol options:**

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
    edit "test"
        config http
            set ports 80
```

```
            set proxy-after-tcp-handshake enable
            unset options
            unset post-lang
        end
        ....
    next
end
```

# Custom signatures

You can create the following custom signatures and apply them to firewall policies:

- IPS signature
- Application signature
- Application group

The following topic provides information about custom signatures:

- Application groups in policies on page 1096

## Application groups in policies

This feature provides an application group command for firewall shaping policies.

The following CLI command is used:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
   edit 1
      set app-group <application group>...
      ......
   next
end
```

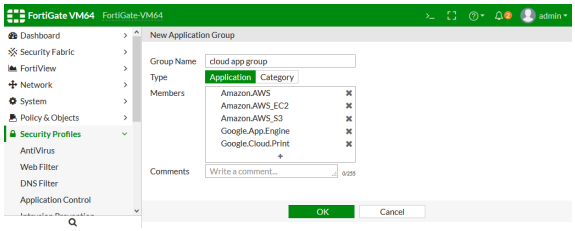
### Example

In this example, there are two traffic shaping policies:

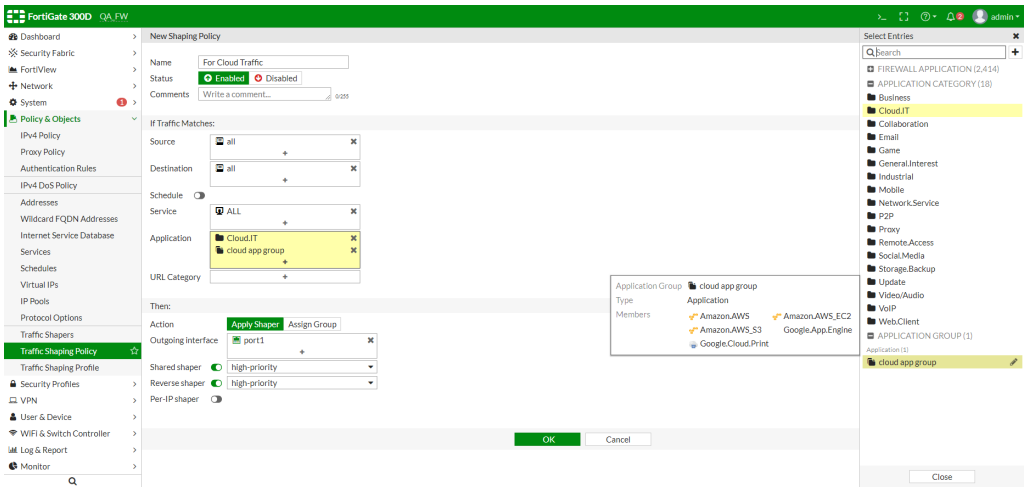
- Policy 1 is for traffic related to cloud applications that has high priority.
- Policy 2 is for other traffic and has low priority.

**To create the shaping policies using the GUI:**

1. Configure an application group for cloud applications:
   a. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Application Signatures*.
   b. Click *Create New* > *Application Group*. The *New Application Group* page opens.




   c. Enter a name for the group, select the type, and then add the group the members.
   d. Click *OK*.
2. Create the shaping policy for the high priority cloud application traffic:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Traffic Shaping Policy*.
   b. Click *Create New*. The *New Shaping Policy* page opens.



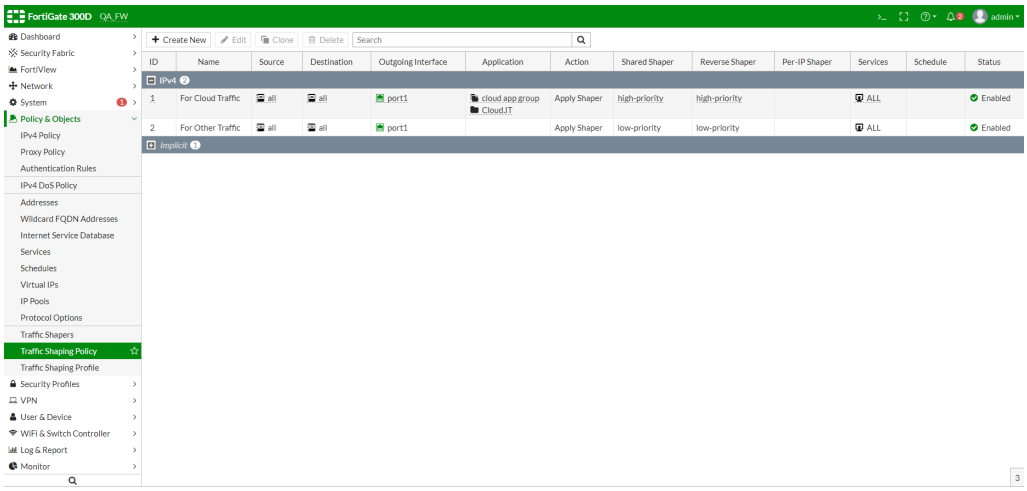

   c. Configure the shaping policy, selecting the previously created cloud application group, and setting both the *Shared shaper* and *Reverse shaper* to *high-priority*.
   d. Click *OK*.

---

At least one firewall policy must have application control enabled for the applications to match any policy traffic.

---

3. Create the shaping policy for all other traffic, setting both the *Shared shaper* and *Reverse shaper* to *low-priority*.




### To create the shaping policies using the CLI:

1. Configure an application group for cloud applications:

```
config application group
    edit "cloud app group"
        set application 27210 36740 35944 24467 33048
    next
end
```

2. Create the shaping policies for the high priority cloud application traffic and the other, low priority traffic:

```
config firewall shaping-policy
    edit 1
        set name "For Cloud Traffic"
        set service "ALL"
        set app-category 30
        set app-group "cloud app group"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "high-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "high-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "For Other Traffic"
        set service "ALL"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set traffic-shaper "low-priority"
        set traffic-shaper-reverse "low-priority"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
    next
end
```

# Overrides

Web filter configuration can be separated into profile configuration and profile overrides.

You can also override web filter behavior based on the FortiGuard website categorization:

- Use alternate categories (web rating overrides): this method manually assigns a specific website to a different Fortinet category or a locally-created category.
- Use alternate profiles: configured users or IP addresses can use an alternative web filter profile when attempting to access blocked websites.

Some features of this functionality require a subscription to FortiGuard Web Filtering.

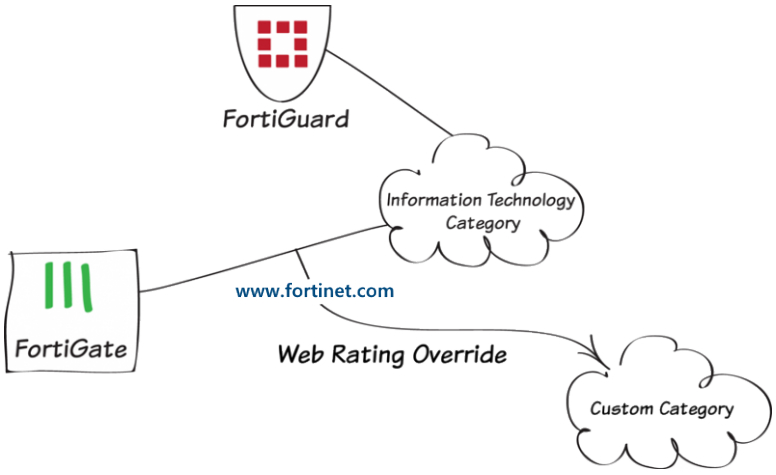
The following topics provide information about web overrides:


- Web rating override on page 1099
- Web profile override on page 1102


## Web rating override

Web rating override requires a FortiGuard license.

This option is for you to categorize websites by different criteria. Even for the same criterion, an organization might want to block most websites in a category while allowing access to specific URLs in that category.




For example, a website called example.com is in the subcategory of pornography and the organization uses FortiGuard Web Filter to block access to sites in the category of pornography. However, in this example, example.com is a client and that website is for artists that specialize in nudes and erotic images. In this example, there are two approaches. The first is to use the web rating override function to assign example.com to the nudity and risque category instead of pornography category to match the criteria that the organization goes by. The second approach is to assign the website to a custom category that is not blocked because the website belongs to a client and staff need to access that website.

Another example from the reverse perspective is a school decides that a website specializing in selling books online should not be accessible because it sells books with violent subject matter. Fortinet categorizes this website,

example2.com, as General Interest - Business with the subcategory of Shopping and Auction, which is a category that is allowed. In this example, the school can reassign this website to the category Adult Material which is a blocked category.

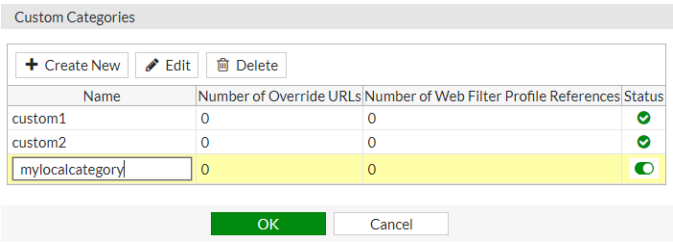
You can assign a website to a built-in category or a custom category.

## Create a local custom category

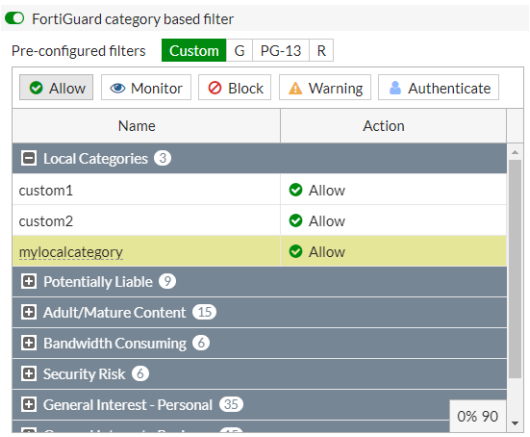
You can create a custom or local category and assign a URL to it.

### To create a custom category in the GUI:

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides* and click *Custom Categories*.
2. In the *Custom Categories* pane, click *Create New*.
3. Enter the category *Name*, for example, *mylocalcategory*.




4. Click *OK*.
   The custom category appears in *Web Filter* under *Local Categories* where you can change the *Action* for that category.




### To create a custom category in the CLI:

```
config webfilter ftgd-local-cat
    edit "custom1"
        set id 140
    next
    edit "custom2"
        set id 141
    next
    edit "mylocalcategory"    <<---- the name of category you created
        set id 142            <<---- the id for this category in Web Filter profile
    next
end
```

**To change the action to block for a custom category in the CLI:**

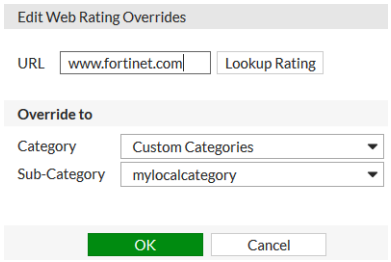
```
config webfilter profile
    edit "webfilter"
        config ftgd-wf
            unset options
            config filters
                edit 142                <<---- this is the id of local category
                    set action block    <<---- set the action to block
                next
            end
        end
    next
end
```

## Override URL category

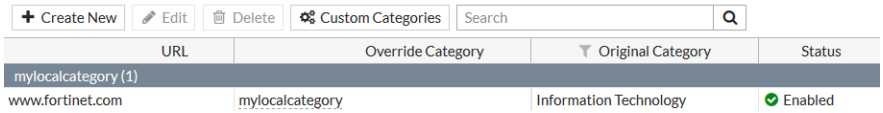
You can override a URL to another category or to a custom category. This example shows overriding www.fortinet.com to the custom category: *mylocalcategory*.

**To override a URL category in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Rating Overrides* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *New Web Rating Overrides* pane, enter the URL you want to re-categorize.
3. To view the URL's current rating, click *Lookup Rating*.
4. In the *Override to* section:
   a. For *Category*, select *Custom Categories*.
   b. For *Sub-Category*, select *mylocalcategory*.




5. Click *OK*.
   The URL www.fortinet.com now belongs to the *mylocalcategory* category.



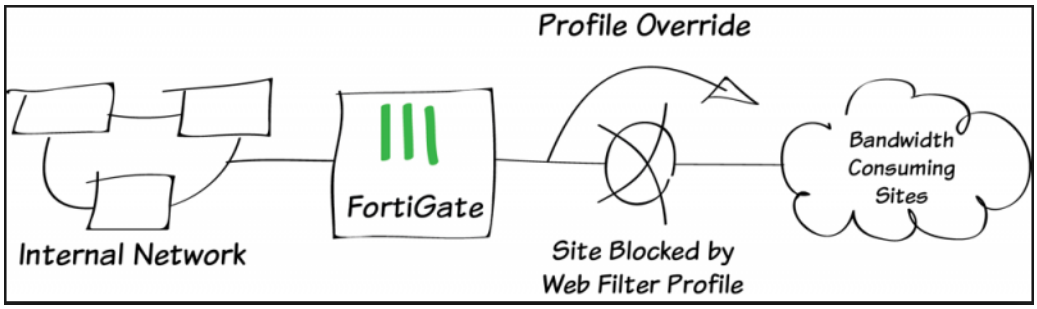

**To override a URL category in the CLI:**

```
config webfilter ftgd-local-rating
    edit "www.fortinet.com"
        set rating 142       <<---- this is the id of mylocalcategory
    next
end
```

# Web profile override

You can use the following profile override methods:

- Administrative override
- Allow users to override blocked categories




## Administrative override

Administrators can grant temporary access to sites that are otherwise blocked by a web filter profile. You can grant temporary access to a user, user group, or source IP address. You can set the time limit for days, hours, or minutes. The default is 15 minutes.

When the administrative web profile override is enabled, a blocked access page or replacement message does not appear, and authentication is not required.

### Scope range

You can choose one of the following scope ranges:

- User: authentication for permission to override is based on whether or not the user is using a specific user account.
- User group: authentication for permission to override is based on whether or not the user account supplied as a credential is a member of the specified user group.
- Source IP: authentication for permission to override is based on the IP address of the computer that was used to authenticate. This would be used for computers that have multiple users. For example, if a user logs on to the computer, engages the override by using their credentials, and then logs off, anyone who logs on with an account on that computer would be using the alternate override web filter profile.



When you enter an IP address in the administrative override method, only individual IP addresses are allowed.

### Differences between IP and identity-based scope

Using the IP scope does not require using an identity-based policy.

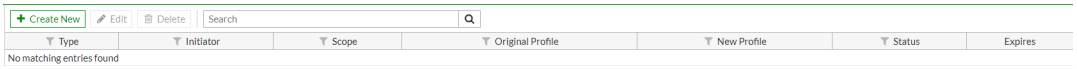
When using the administrative override method and IP scope, you might not see a warning message when you change from using the original web filter profile to using the alternate profile. There is no requirement for credentials from the user so, if allowed, the page will just appear in the browser.

## Example of configuring a web profile administrative override

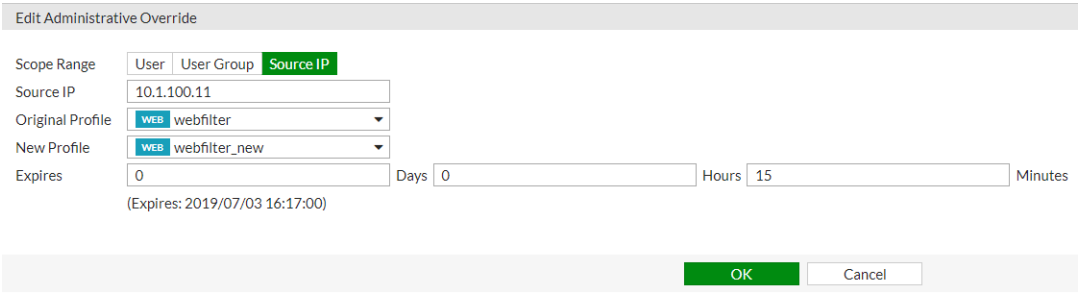
This example describes how to override a *webfilter* profile with a *webfilter_new* profile.

### To configure web profile administrative override using the GUI:

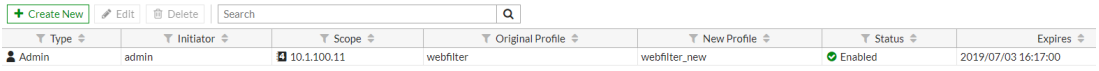
1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Profile Overrides*.
2. Click *Create New*.




   The *New Administrative Override* pane opens.
3. Configure the administrative override:
   a. For *Scope Range*, click *Source IP*.
   b. In the *Source IP* field, enter the IP address for the client computer (`10.1.100.11` in this example).
   c. In the *Original Profile* dropdown, select *webfilter*.
   d. In the *New Profile* dropdown, select *webfilter_new*.
   In the *Minutes* field, the default *15* minutes appears, which is the desired duration for this example.




4. Click *OK*. The list of web profile overrides appears.
   The actual expiration time displays instead of the number of minutes.



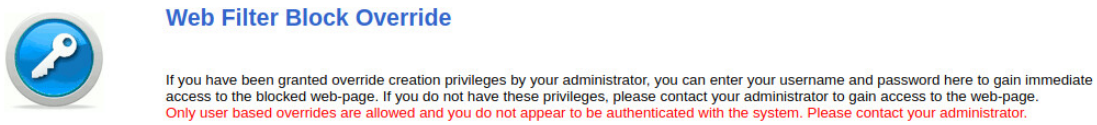

### To configure web profile administrative override using the CLI:

```
config webfilter override
   edit 1
      set status enable
      set scope ip
      set old-profile "webfilter"
      set new-profile "webfilter_new"
      set expires 2019/04/10 14:33:00
      set initiator "admin"
      set ip 10.1.100.11
   next
end
```

## Allow users to override blocked categories

For both override methods, the scope ranges (for specified users, user groups, or IP addresses) allow sites blocked by web filtering profiles to be overridden for a specified length of time.

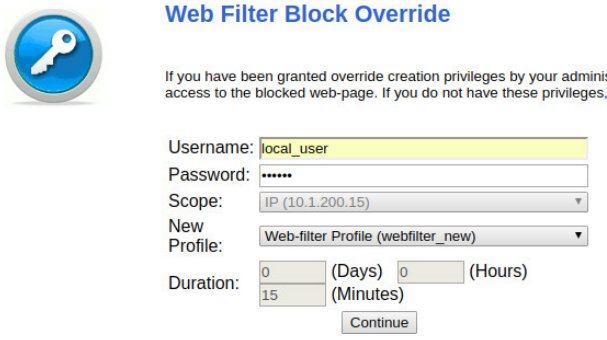
But there is a difference between the override methods when the users or user group scope ranges are selected. In both cases, you would need to apply the user or user group as source in the firewall policy. With administrative override, if you do not apply the source in the firewall policy, the traffic will not match the override and will be blocked by the original profile. With *Allow users to override blocked categories*, the traffic will also be blocked, but instead of displaying a blocking page, the following message appears:




When you choose the user group scope, once one user overrides, it will affect the other users in the group when they attempt to override. For example, user1 and user2 both belong to the local_user group. Once user1 successfully overrides, this will generate an override entry for the local_user group instead of one specific user. This means that if user2 logs in from another PC, they can override transparently.

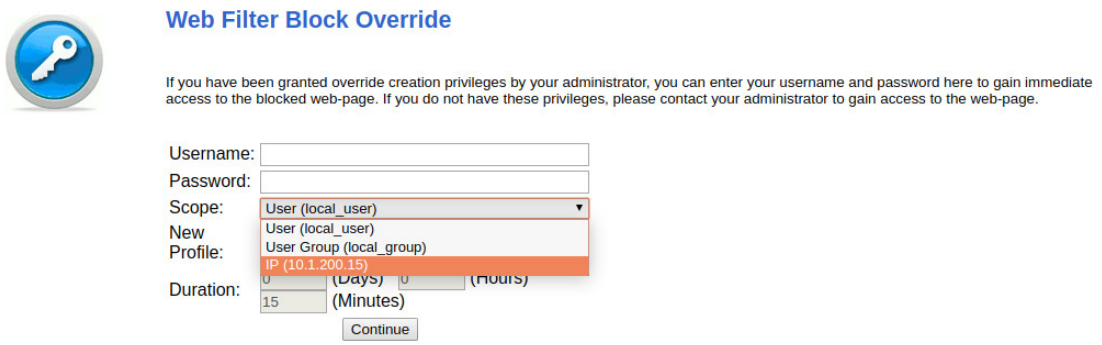
## Ask feature

This option is only available in the *Allow users to override blocked categories* method. It configures the message page to have the user choose which scope they want to use. Normally on the message page, the scope options are greyed out and not editable. In the following example, the *Scope* is predefined with *IP*.




When the ask option is enabled (through the *Switch applies to* field in the GUI), the *Scope* dropdown is editable. Users can choose one of the following:

- User
- User Group
- IP




*User* and *User Group* are only available when there is a user group in the firewall policy. You must specify a user group as a source in the firewall policy so the scope includes *User* and *User Group*; otherwise, only the IP option will be available.

### Other features

Besides the scope, there are some other features in *Allow users to override blocked categories*.

### Apply to group(s)

Individual users can not be selected. You can select one or more of the user groups recognized by the FortiGate. They can be local to the system or from a third party authentication device, such as an AD server through FSSO.

### Switch duration

Administrative override sets a specified time frame that is always used for that override. The available options in *Allow users to override blocked categories* are:

- *Predefined*: the value entered is the set duration (length of time in days, hours, or minutes) that the override will be in effect. If the duration variable is set to 15 minutes, the length of the override will always be 15 minutes. The option will be visible in the override message page, but the setting will be greyed out.
- *Ask*: the user has the option to set the override duration once it is engaged. The user can set the duration in terms of days, hours, or minutes.

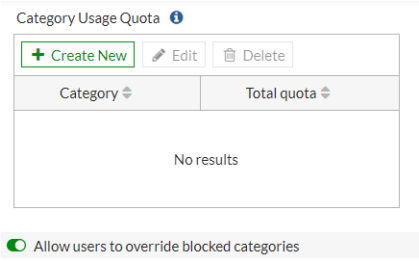
## Example of creating a web profile users override

This example describes how to allow users in the *local_group* to override the *webfilter_new* profile.

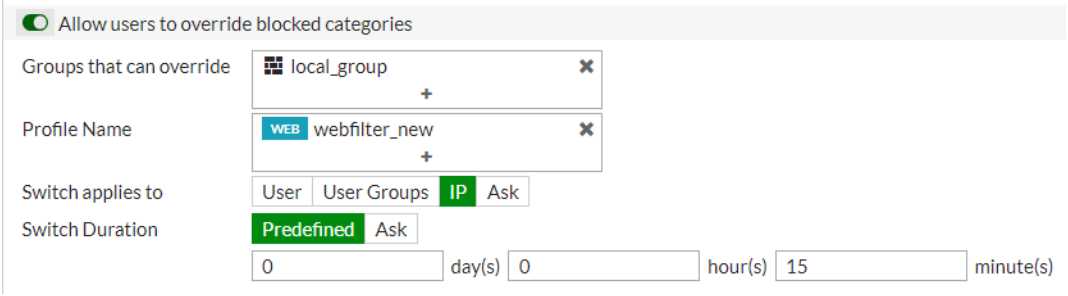
**To allow users to override blocked categories using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Profiles* > *Web Filter*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. Under the *Category Usage Quota* section, toggle on *Allow users to override blocked categories*.




4. Configure the web filter profile:
   a. Click the *Groups that can override* field, and select a group (*local_group* in this example).
   b. Click the *Profile Name* field, and select the *webfilter_new* profile.
   c. For the *Switch applies to* field, click *IP*.
   d. For the *Switch Duration* field, click *Predefined*. The default *15* minutes appears, which is the desired duration for this example.
   e. Configure the rest of the profile as needed.




5. Click *OK*.

# VPN

Virtual Private Network (VPN) technology lets remote users connect to private computer networks to gain access to their resources in a secure way. For example, an employee traveling or working at home can use a VPN to securely access the office network through the Internet.

Instead of remotely logging into a private network using an unencrypted and unsecured Internet connection, using a VPN ensures that unauthorized parties cannot access the office network and cannot intercept information going between the employee and the office. Another common use of a VPN is to connect the private networks of multiple offices.

Fortinet offers VPN capabilities in the FortiGate Unified Threat Management (UTM) appliance and in the FortiClient Endpoint Security suite of applications. You can install a FortiGate unit on a private network and install FortiClient software on the user's computer. You can also use a FortiGate unit to connect to the private network instead of using FortiClient software.

The following sections provide information about VPN:


- IPsec VPNs on page 1107
- SSL VPN on page 1343


## IPsec VPNs

The following sections provide instructions on configuring IPsec VPN connections in FortiOS 6.4.1.


- General IPsec VPN configuration on page 1107
- Site-to-site VPN on page 1132
- Remote access on page 1177
- Aggregate and redundant VPN on page 1211
- Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) on page 1246
- ADVPN on page 1277
- Other VPN topics on page 1310
- VPN IPsec troubleshooting on page 1336


### General IPsec VPN configuration

The following sections provide instructions on general IPsec VPN configurations:


- Network topologies on page 1108
- Phase 1 configuration on page 1108
- Phase 2 configuration on page 1123
- VPN security policies on page 1127
- Blocking unwanted IKE negotiations and ESP packets with a local-in policy on page 1131

## Network topologies

The topology of your network will determine how remote peers and clients connect to the VPN and how VPN traffic is routed.

| Topology | Description |
|---|---|
| Site-to-Site | Standard one-to-one VPN between two FortiGates. See Site-to-site VPN on page 1132. |
| Hub and spoke/ADVPN | One central FortiGate (hub) has multiple VPNs to other remote FortiGates (spokes). In ADVPN, shortcuts can be created between spokes for direct communication. See ADVPN on page 1277. |
| OCVPN | Fortinet's cloud based solution for automating VPN setup between devices registered to the same account. See Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) on page 1246. |
| FortiClient dialup | Typically remote FortiClient dialup clients use dynamic IP addresses through NAT devices. The FortiGate acts as a dialup server allowing dialup VPN connections from multiple sources. See FortiClient as dialup client on page 1183. |
| FortiGate dialup | Similar to site-to-site except one end is a dialup server and the other end is a dialup client. This facilitates scenarios in which the remote dialup end has a dynamic address, or does not have a public IP, possibly because it is behind NAT. See FortiGate as dialup client on page 1177. |
| Aggregate VPN | Natively support aggregating multiple VPN tunnels to increase performance and provide redundancy over multiple links. See IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1228. |
| Redundant VPN | Options for supporting redundant and partially redundant IPsec VPNs, using route-based approaches. See Redundant hub and spoke VPN on page 1238. |
| L2TP over IPsec | Configure VPN for Microsoft Windows dialup clients using the built in L2TP software. Users do not have to install any Fortinet software. See L2TP over IPsec on page 1201. |
| GRE over IPsec | Legacy support for routers requiring point-to-point GRE over IPsec for tunneling. See GRE over IPsec on page 1144. |

## Phase 1 configuration

Phase 1 configuration primarily defines the parameters used in IKE (Internet Key Exchange) negotiation between the ends of the IPsec tunnel. The local end is the FortiGate interface that initiates the IKE negotiations. The remote end is the remote gateway that responds and exchanges messages with the initiator. Hence, they are sometimes referred to as the initiator and responder. The purpose of phase 1 is to secure a tunnel with one bi-directional IKE SA (security association) for negotiating IKE phase 2 parameters.

The `auto-negotiate` and `negotiation-timeout` commands control how the IKE negotiation is processed when there is no traffic, and the length of time that the FortiGate waits for negotiations to occur.

IPsec tunnels can be configured in the GUI using the *VPN Creation Wizard*. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*. The wizard includes several templates (site-to-site, hub and spoke, remote access), but a custom tunnel can be configured with the following settings:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Name** | | Phase 1 definition name.<br>The maximum length is 15 characters for an interface mode VPN and 35 characters for a policy-based VPN.<br>For a policy-based VPN, the name normally reflects where the remote connection originates. For a route-based tunnel, the FortiGate also uses the name for the virtual IPsec interface that it creates automatically. |
| **Network** | | |
| | **IP Version** | Protocol, either IPv4 or IPv6. |
| | **Remote Gateway** | Category of the remote connection:<br>• *Static IP Address*: the remote peer has a static IP address.<br>• *Dialup User*: one or more FortiClient or FortiGate dialup clients with dynamic IP addresses will connect to the FortiGate.<br>• *Dynamic DNS*: a remote peer that has a domain name and subscribes to a dynamic DNS service will connect to the FortiGate. |
| | **IP Address** | The IP address of the remote peer. This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Static IP Address*. |
| | **Dynamic DNS** | The domain name of the remote peer. This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Dynamic DNS*. |
| | **Interface** | The interface through which remote peers or dialup clients connect to the FortiGate. This option is only available in NAT mode.<br>By default, the local VPN gateway IP address is the IP address of the interface that was selected (*Primary IP* in the *Local Gateway* field). |
| | **Local Gateway** | IP address for the local end of the VPN tunnel (*Primary IP* is used by default):<br>• *Secondary IP*: secondary address of the interface selected in the *Interface* field.<br>• *Specify*: manually enter an address.<br>Interface mode cannot be configured in a transparent mode VDOM. |
| | **Mode Config** | This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Dialup User*.<br>Configure the client IP address range, subnet mask/prefix length, DNS server, and split tunnel capability to automate remote client addressing. |
| | **NAT Traversal** | This option is only available when the *Remote Gateway* is *Static IP Address* or *Dynamic DNS*.<br>ESP (encapsulating security payload), the protocol for encrypting data in the VPN session, uses IP protocol 50 by default. However, it does not use any port numbers so when traversing a NAT device, the packets cannot be demultiplexed. Enabling NAT traversal encapsulates the ESP packet inside a UDP packet, thereby adding a unique source port to the packet. This allows the NAT device to map the packets to the correct session.<br>• *Enable*: a NAT device exists between the local FortiGate and the VPN |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | peer or client. Outbound encrypted packets are wrapped inside a UDP IP header that contains a port number. The local FortiGate and the VPN peer or client must have the same NAT traversal setting (both selected or both cleared) to connect reliably. When in doubt, enable NAT traversal.<br>• *Disable*: disable the NAT traversal setting.<br>• *Forced*: the FortiGate will use a port value of zero when constructing the NAT discovery hash for the peer. This causes the peer to think it is behind a NAT device, and it will use UDP encapsulation for IPsec, even if no NAT is present. This approach maintains interoperability with any IPsec implementation that supports the NAT-T RFC. |
| | **Keepalive Frequency** | Keepalive frequency setting. This option is only available when *NAT Traversal* is set to *Enable* or *Forced*. The NAT device between the VPN peers may remove the session when the VPN connection remains idle for too long.<br>The value represents an interval in seconds where the connection will be maintained with periodic keepalive packets. The keepalive interval must be smaller than the session lifetime value used by the NAT device.<br>The keepalive packet is a 138-byte ISAKMP exchange. |
| | **Dead Peer Detection** | Reestablishes VPN tunnels on idle connections and cleans up dead IKE peers if required. This feature minimizes the traffic required to check if a VPN peer is available or unavailable (dead). The available options are:<br>• *Disable*: disable dead peer detection (DPD).<br>• *On Idle*: triggers DPD when IPsec is idle.<br>• *On Demand*: Passively sends DPD to reduce load on the firewall. Only triggers DPD when IPsec outbound packets are sent, but no reply is received from the peer. When there is no traffic and the last DPD-ACK has been received, IKE will not send DPDs periodically.<br>Notifications are received whenever a tunnel goes up or down, or to keep the tunnel connection open when no traffic is being generated inside the tunnel. For example, in scenarios where a dialup client or dynamic DNS peer connects from an IP address that changes periodically, traffic may be suspended while the IP address changes.<br><br>When *Dead Peer Detection* is selected, optionally specify a retry count and a retry interval using `dpd-retrycount` and `dpd-retryinterval`. See Dead peer detection on page 1114. |
| | **Forward Error Correction** | Enable on both ends of the tunnel to correct errors in data transmission by sending redundant data across the VPN. |
| | **Device creation** | Advanced option. When enabled, a dynamic interface (network device) is created for each dialup tunnel. See Dynamic tunnel interface creation on page 1121. |
| | **Aggregate member** | Advanced option. When enabled, the tunnel can be used as an aggregate member candidate. |
| **Authentication** | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Method** | Either *Pre-shared Key* or *Signature*. |
| **Pre-shared Key** | The pre-shared key that the FortiGate will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. The same key must be defined at the remote peer or client. See Pre-shared key. |
| **Certificate Name** | The server certificate that the FortiGate will use to authenticate itself to the remote peer or dialup client during phase 1 negotiations. See Digital certificates. |
| **IKE Version** | Either *1* or *2*. See Choosing IKE version 1 and 2 on page 1116. |
| **Mode** | This option is only available when IKEv1 is selected. The two available options are:<br>• *Aggressive*: the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in a single message with unencrypted authentication information.<br>• *Main (ID protection)*: the phase 1 parameters are exchanged in multiple rounds with encrypted authentication information.<br>When the remote VPN peer has a dynamic IP address and is authenticated by a pre-shared key, you must select *Aggressive* mode if there is more than one dialup phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address.<br>When the remote VPN peer has a dynamic IP address and is authenticated by a certificate, you must select *Aggressive* mode if there is more than one phase 1 configuration for the interface IP address and these phase 1 configurations use different proposals. |
| **Peer Options** | Options to authenticate VPN peers or clients depending on the *Remote Gateway* and *Authentication Method* settings. |
| **Any peer ID** | Accepts the local ID of any remote VPN peer or client. The FortiGate does not check identifiers (local IDs). *Mode* can be set to *Aggressive* or *Main*.<br>This option can be used with digital certificate authentication, but for higher security, use *Peer certificate*. |
| **Specific peer ID** | This option is only available when *Aggressive Mode* is enabled. Enter the identifier that is used to authenticate the remote peer. The identifier must match the local ID configured by the remote peer's administrator.<br>If the remote peer is a FortiGate, the identifier is specified in the *Local ID* field of the *Phase 1 Proposal* settings.<br>If the remote peer is a FortiClient user, the identifier is specified in the *Local ID* field.<br>In circumstances where multiple remote dialup VPN tunnels exist, each tunnel must have a peer ID set. |
| **Peer certificate** | Define the CA certificate used to authenticate the remote peer when the authentication mode is *Signature*.<br>If the FortiGate will act as a VPN client, and you are using security certificates for authentication, set the *Local ID* to the distinguished name (DN) of the local server certificate that the FortiGate unit will use for authentication purposes. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Peer ID from dialup group** | Authenticate multiple FortiGate or FortiClient dialup clients that use unique identifiers and unique pre-shared keys (or unique pre-shared keys only) through the same VPN tunnel.<br><br>You must create a dialup user group for authentication purposes. Select the group from the list next to the *Peer ID from dialup group* option.<br><br>You must set *Mode* to *Aggressive* when the dialup clients use unique identifiers and unique pre-shared keys. If the dialup clients use unique pre-shared keys only, you can set *Mode* to *Main* if there is only one dialup Phase 1 configuration for this interface IP address. |
| **Phase 1 Proposal** | | The encryption and authentication algorithms used to generate keys for the IKE SA.<br>There must be a minimum of one combination. The remote peer or client must be configured to use at least one of the proposals that you define. |
| | **Encryption** | The following symmetric-key encryption algorithms are available:<br>• *DES*: Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.<br>• *3DES*: triple-DES; plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.<br>• *AES128*: Advanced Encryption Standard, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.<br>• *AES128GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key. Only available for IKEv2.<br>• *AES192*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.<br>• *AES256*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.<br>• *AES256GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key. Only available for IKEv2.<br>• *CHACHA20POLY1305*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key and a symmetric cipher. Only available for IKEv2. See also HMAC settings. |
| | **Authentication** | The following message digests that check the message authenticity during an encrypted session are available:<br>• *MD5*: message digest 5.<br>• *SHA1*: secure hash algorithm 1; a 160-bit message digest.<br>• *SHA256*: a 256-bit message digest.<br>• *SHA384*: a 384-bit message digest.<br>• *SHA512*: a 512-bit message digest.<br>In IKEv2, encryption algorithms include authentication, but a PRF (pseudo random function) is still required (*PRFSHA1*, *PRFSHA256*, *PRFSHA384*, *PRFSHA512*). See also HMAC settings. |
| | **Diffie-Hellman Groups** | Asymmetric key algorithms used for public key cryptography.<br>Select one or more from groups 1, 2, 5, and 14 through 32. At least one of the *Diffie-Hellman Groups* (DH) settings on the remote peer or client must match one the selections on the FortiGate. Failure to match one or more DH groups will result in failed negotiations. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Key Lifetime** | The time (in seconds) that must pass before the IKE encryption key expires. When the key expires, a new key is generated without interrupting service. The keylife can be from 120 to 172 800 seconds. |
| | **Local ID** | Optional setting. This value must match the peer ID value given for the remote VPN peer's *Peer Options*.<br>• If the FortiGate will act as a VPN client and you are using peer IDs for authentication purposes, enter the identifier that the FortiGate will supply to the VPN server during the phase 1 exchange.<br>• If the FortiGate will act as a VPN client and you are using security certificates for authentication, select the distinguished name (DN) of the local server certificate that the FortiGate will use for authentication purposes. |
| **XAUTH** | | This option supports the authentication of dialup clients. It is only available for IKE version 1.<br>• *Disable*: do not use XAuth.<br>• *Client*: available only if the *Remote Gateway* is set to *Static IP Address* or *Dynamic DNS*. If the FortiGate is a dialup client, enter the user name and password for the FortiGate to authenticate itself to the remote XAuth server.<br>• *PAP Server*, *CHAP Server*, *Auto Server*: available only if *Remote Gateway* is set to *Dialup User*. Dialup clients authenticate as members of a dialup user group. A user group must be created first for the dialup clients that need access to the network behind the FortiGate.<br>The FortiGate must be configured to forward authentication requests to an external RADIUS or LDAP authentication server.<br>Select the server type based on the encryption method used between the FortiGate, the XAuth client, and the external authentication server. Then select the user group (*Inherit from policy* or *Choose*). See Using XAuth authentication on page 1119. |
| | **Username** | User name used for authentication. |
| | **Password** | Password used for authentication. |

## Additional CLI configurations

The following phase 1 settings can be configured in the CLI:

| | |
|---|---|
| **VXLAN over IPsec** | Packets with a VXLAN header are encapsulated within IPsec tunnel mode.<br><br>**To configure VXLAN over IPsec:**<br><br>`config vpn ipsec phase1-interface/phase1`<br>`  edit ipsec`<br>`  set interface <name>`<br>`  set encapsulation vxlan/gre`<br>`  set encapsulation-address ike/ipv4/ipv6`<br>`  set encap-local-gw4 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx` |

| | |
|---|---|
| | set encap-remote-gw xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx<br>next<br>end |
| **IPsec tunnel idle timer** | Define an idle timer for IPsec tunnels. When no traffic has passed through the tunnel for the configured `idle-timeout` value, the IPsec tunnel will be flushed.<br><br>**To configure IPsec tunnel idle timeout:**<br><br>config vpn ipsec phase1-interface<br>edit p1<br>set idle-timeout [enable \| disable]<br>set idle-timeoutinterval <integer> *IPsec tunnel idle timeout in minutes (10 - 43200).*<br>next<br>end |
| **Monitor tunnel for failover** | Monitor a site-to-site tunnel to guarantee operational continuity if the primary tunnel fails. Configure the secondary phase 1 interface to monitor the primary interface.<br><br>**To configure the monitor:**<br><br>config vpn ipsec phase1-interface<br>edit <secondary phase1-interface><br>set monitor <primary phase1-interface><br>next<br>end |
| **Passive mode** | Passive mode turns one side of the tunnel to be a responder only. It does not initiate VPN tunnels either by auto-negotiation, rekey, or traffic initiated behind the FortiGate.<br><br>**To configure passive mode:**<br><br>config vpn ipsec phase1-interface<br>edit <example><br>set rekey {enable \| disable}<br>set passive-mode {enable \| disable}<br>set passive-tunnel-interface {enable \| disable}<br>next<br>end |

## Dead peer detection

By default, dead peer detection (DPD) sends probe messages every five seconds. If you are experiencing high network traffic, you can experiment with increasing the ping interval. However, longer intervals will require more traffic to detect dead peers, which will result in more traffic.



In a dynamic (dialup) connection, the *On Idle* option encourages dialup server configurations to more proactively delete tunnels if the peer is unavailable.

In the GUI, the dead peer detection option can be configured in the GUI when defining phase 1 options. The following CLI commands support additional options for specifying a retry count and a retry interval.

For example, enter the following to configure DPD on the existing IPsec phase 1 configuration to use 15-second intervals and to wait for three missed attempts before declaring the peer dead and taking action.

**To configure DPD:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit <value>
        set dpd [disable | on-idle | on-demand]
        set dpd-retryinveral 15
        set dpd-retrycount 3
    next
end
```

### DPD scalability

On a dialup server, if many VPN connections are idle, the increased DPD exchange could negatively impact the performance/load of the daemon. The `on-demand` option in the CLI triggers DPD when IPsec traffic is sent, but no reply is received from the peer.

When there is no traffic and the last DPD-ACK had been received, IKE will not send DPDs periodically. IKE will only send out DPDs if there are outgoing packets to send, but no inbound packets have since been received.

## HMAC settings

The FortiGate uses the HMAC based on the authentication proposal that is chosen in phase 1 or phase 2 of the IPsec configuration. Each proposal consists of the encryption-hash pair (such as `3des-sha256`). The FortiGate matches the most secure proposal to negotiate with the peer.

**To view the chosen proposal and the HMAC hash used:**

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list

vd: root/0
name: MPLS
version: 1
interface: port1 3
addr: 192.168.2.5:500 -> 10.10.10.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 172.31.0.2 -> 172.31.0.1
created: 1015820s ago
IKE SA: created 1/13 established 1/13 time 10/1626/21010 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/24 established 1/24 time 0/11/30 ms

  id/spi: 124 43b087dae99f7733/6a8473e58cd8990a
  direction: responder
  status: established 68693-68693s ago = 10ms
  proposal: 3des-sha256
```

```
key: e0fa6ab8dc509b33-aa2cc549999b1823-c3cb9c337432646e
lifetime/rekey: 86400/17436
DPD sent/recv: 000001e1/00000000
```

## Choosing IKE version 1 and 2

If you create a route-based VPN, you have the option of selecting IKE version 2. Otherwise, IKE version 1 is used.

IKEv2, defined in RFC 4306, simplifies the negotiation process that creates the security association (SA).

If you select IKEv2:

- There is no choice in phase 1 of aggressive or main mode.
- Extended authentication (XAUTH) is not available.
- You can utilize EAP and MOBIKE.

### Repeated authentication in IKEv2

This feature provides the option to control whether a device requires its peer to re-authenticate or whether re-key is sufficient. It does not influence the re-authentication or re-key behavior of the device itself, which is controlled by the peer (the default being to re-key). This solution is in response to RFC 4478. As described by the IETF, "the purpose of this is to limit the time that security associations (SAs) can be used by a third party who has gained control of the IPsec peer".

To configure IKE SA re-authentication:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit p1
        set reauth [enable | disable]
    next
end
```

### IKEv2 quick crash detection

There is support for IKEv2 quick crash detection (QCD) as described in RFC 6290.

RFC 6290 describes a method in which an IKE peer can quickly detect that the gateway peer it has and established an IKE session with has rebooted, crashed, or otherwise lost IKE state. When the gateway receives IKE messages or ESP packets with unknown IKE or IPsec SPIs, the IKEv2 protocol allows the gateway to send the peer an unprotected IKE message containing INVALID_IKE_SPI or INVALID_SPI notification payloads.

RFC 6290 introduces the concept of a QCD token, which is generated from the IKE SPIs and a private QCD secret, and exchanged between peers during the protected IKE AUTH exchange.

### To configure QCD:

```
config system settings
    set ike-quick-crash-detect [enable | disable]
end
```

### IKEv1 quick crash detection

Based on the IKEv2 QCD feature previously described, IKEv1 QCD is implemented using a new IKE vendor ID (Fortinet Quick Crash Detection) so both endpoints must be FortiGates. The QCD token is sent in the phase 1 exchange and must be encrypted, so this is only implemented for IKEv1 in main mode (aggressive mode is not supported as there is no available AUTH message to include the token). Otherwise, the feature works the same as in IKEv2 (RFC 6290).

### IKEv1 fragmentation

UDP fragmentation can cause issues in IPsec when either the ISP or perimeter firewall(s) cannot pass or fragment the oversized UDP packets that occur when using a very large public security key (PSK). The result is that IPsec tunnels do not come up. The solution is IKE fragmentation.

For most configurations, enabling IKE fragmentation allows connections to automatically establish when they otherwise might have failed due to intermediate nodes dropping IKE messages containing large certificates, which typically push the packet size over 1500 bytes.

FortiOS will fragment a packet on sending if only all the following are true:

- Phase 1 contains `set fragmentation enable`.
- The packet is larger than the minimum MTU (576 for IPv4, 1280 for IPv6).
- The packet is being re-transmitted.

By default, IKE fragmentation is enabled.

#### To configure IKEv1 fragmentation:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit 1
        set fragmentation [enable | disable]
    next
end
```

### IKEv2 fragmentation

RFC 7383 requires each fragment to be individually encrypted and authenticated. With IKEv2, a copy of the unencrypted payloads around for each outgoing packet would need to be kept in case the original single packet was never answered and would retry with fragments. With the following implementation, if the IKE payloads are greater than a configured threshold, the IKE packets are preemptively fragmented and encrypted.

#### To configure IKEv2 fragmentation:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit ike
        set ike-version 2
        set fragmentation [enable|disable]
        set fragmentation-mtu [500-16000]
    next
end
```

## Pre-shared key vs digital certificates

A FortiGate can authenticate itself to remote peers or dialup clients using either a pre-shared key or a digital certificate.

### Pre-shared key

Using a pre-shared key is less secure than using certificates, especially if it is used alone, without requiring peer IDs or extended authentication (XAuth). There also needs to be a secure way to distribute the pre-shared key to the peers.

If you use pre-shared key authentication alone, all remote peers and dialup clients must be configured with the same pre-shared key. Optionally, you can configure remote peers and dialup clients with unique pre-shared keys. On the FortiGate, these are configured in user accounts, not in the phase 1 settings.

The pre-shared key must contain at least six printable characters and should be known by network administrators. For optimum protection against currently known attacks, the key must consist of a minimum of 16 randomly chosen alphanumeric characters. The limit is 128 characters.

If you authenticate the FortiGate using a pre-shared key, you can require remote peers or dialup clients to authenticate using peer IDs, but not client certificates.

**To authenticate the FortiGate using a pre-shared key:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network* section as needed.
3. Configure or edit the *Authentication* settings as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Method** | *Pre-shared Key* |
| **Pre-shared Key** | <string> |
| **IKE Version** | *1* or *2* |
| **Mode** | *Aggressive* or *Main* |
| **Peer Options** | Select an *Accept Type* and the corresponding peer. Options vary based on the *Remote Gateway* and *Authentication Method* settings in the *Network* section. *Peer Options* are only available in *Aggressive* mode. |

4. For the *Phase 1 Proposal* section, keep the default settings unless changes are needed to meet your requirements.
5. Optionally, for authentication parameters for a dialup user group, define *XAUTH* parameters.
6. Click *OK*.

**Digital certificates**

To authenticate the FortiGate using digital certificates, you must have the required certificates installed on the remote peer and on the FortiGate. The signed server certificate on one peer is validated by the presence of the root certificate installed on the other peer. If you use certificates to authenticate the FortiGate, you can also require the remote peers or dialup clients to authenticate using certificates. See Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1137 for a detailed example.

**To authenticate the FortiGate using a digital certificate:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network* section as needed.
3. Configure or edit the *Authentication* settings as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Method** | *Signature* |
| **Certificate Name** | Select the certificate used to identify this FortiGate. If there are no imported certificates, use *Fortinet_Factory*. |
| **IKE Version** | *1* or *2* |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mode** | *Aggressive* is recommended. |
| **Peer Options** | For *Accept Type*, select *Peer certificate* and select the peer and the CA certificate used to authenticate the peer. If the other end is using the Fortinet_Factory certificate, then use the *Fortinet_CA* certificate here. |

4. For the *Phase 1 Proposal* section, keep the default settings unless changes are needed to meet your requirements.
5. Optionally, for authentication parameters for a dialup user group, define *XAUTH* parameters.
6. Click *OK*.

## Using XAuth authentication

Extended authentication (XAuth) increases security by requiring remote dialup client users to authenticate in a separate exchange at the end of phase 1. XAuth draws on existing FortiGate user group definitions and uses established authentication mechanisms such as PAP, CHAP, RADIUS, and LDAP to authenticate dialup clients. You can configure a FortiGate to function either as an XAuth server or client. If the server or client is attempting a connection using XAuth and the other end is not using XAuth, the failed connection attempts that are logged will not specify XAuth as the reason.

### XAuth server

A FortiGate can act as an XAuth server for dialup clients. When the phase 1 negotiation completes, the FortiGate challenges the user for a user name and password. It then forwards the user's credentials to an external RADIUS or LDAP server for verification.

If the user records on the RADIUS server have suitably configured Framed-IP-Address fields, you can assign client virtual IP addresses by XAuth instead of from a DHCP address range.

The authentication protocol you use for XAuth depends on the capabilities of the authentication server and the XAuth client:

- Select *PAP Server* whenever possible.
- You must select *PAP Server* for all implementations of LDAP and some implementations of Microsoft RADIUS.
- Select *Auto Server* when the authentication server supports *CHAP Server* but the XAuth client does not. The FortiGate will use PAP to communicate with the XAuth client and CHAP to communicate with the authentication server. You can also use *Auto Server* to allow multiple source interfaces to be defined in an IPsec/IKE policy.

Before you begin, create user accounts and user groups to identify the dialup clients that need to access the network behind the FortiGate dialup server. If password protection will be provided through an external RADIUS or LDAP server, you must configure the FortiGate dialup server to forward authentication requests to the authentication server.

### To configure XAuth to authenticate a dialup user group:

1. On the FortiGate dialup server, go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network*, *Authentication*, and *Phase 1 Proposal* sections as needed.
3. In the *XAUTH* section, select the encryption method *Type* to use between the XAuth client, the FortiGate, and the authentication server.
4. For *User Group*:
   a. Click *Inherit from policy* for multiple user groups defined in the IPsec/IKE policy, or
   b. Click *Choose* and in the dropdown, select the user group that needs to access the private network behind the FortiGate.



Only one user group may be defined for *Auto Server*.

5. Click *OK*.
6. Create as many policies as needed, specifying the source user(s) and destination address.

### XAuth client

If the FortiGate acts as a dialup client, the remote peer, acting as an XAuth server, might require a username and password. You can configure the FortiGate as an XAuth client with its own username and password, which it provides when challenged.

**To configure the FortiGate dialup client as an XAuth client:**

1. On the FortiGate dialup client, go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and create a new tunnel, or edit an existing one.
2. Configure or edit the *Network*, *Authentication*, and *Phase 1 Proposal* sections as needed.
3. In the *XAUTH* section, for *Type*, select *Client*.
4. For *Username*, enter the FortiGate PAP, CHAP, RADIUS, or LDAP user name that the FortiGate XAuth server will compare to its records when the FortiGate XAuth client attempts to connect.
5. Enter the *Password* for the user name.
6. Click *OK*.

## Dynamic IPsec route control

You can add a route to a peer destination selector by using the `add-route` option, which is available for all dynamic IPsec phases 1 and 2, for both policy-based and route-based IPsec VPNs.

The `add-route` option adds a route to the FortiGate routing information base when the dynamic tunnel is negotiated. You can use the distance and priority options to set the distance and priority of this route. If this results in a route with the lowest distance, it is added to the FortiGate forwarding information base.

You can also enable `add-route` in any policy-based or route-based phase 2 configuration that is associated with a dynamic (dialup) phase 1. In phase 2, `add-route` can be enabled, disabled, or set to use the same route as phase 1.

The `add-route` option is enabled by default.

**To configure add-route in phase 1:**

```
config vpn ipsec
    edit <name>
        set type dynamic
        set add-route {enable | disable}
    next
end
```

**To configure add-route in phase 2:**

```
config vpn ipsec {phase2 | phase2-interface}
    edit <name>
        set add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}
```

```
    next
end
```

### Blocking IPsec SA negotiation

For interface-based IPsec, IPsec SA negotiation blocking can only be removed if the peer offers a wildcard selector. If a wildcard selector is offered, then the wildcard route will be added to the routing table with the distance/priority value configured in phase 1. If that is the route with the lowest distance, it will be installed into the forwarding information base.

In this scenario, it is important to ensure that the distance value configured for phase 1 is set appropriately.

## Dynamic tunnel interface creation

When configuring route-based IPsec dialup tunnels, the `net-device` setting controls how traffic is routed on the hub:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "Spoke"
        set type dynamic
        set net-device {disable | enable}
        set tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}
    next
end
```

The key settings are `net-device` and `tunnel-search`. When `net-device` is disabled, all dialup tunnels share an interface on the hub. The tunnel selection process is based on the tunnel search method. Using a shared interface eliminates the time needed for dynamic interface creation and tear-down. When `net-device` is enabled, dynamic interfaces are created on the hub for each dialup tunnel. This means that potentially many dynamic interfaces could be created at start-up in a large scale deployment.

### Behavior with net-device disabled

After a successful dial-in negotiation, the following occurs on the hub:

1. A dialup tunnel is created for each successful dial-in.
2. The tunnel name takes the form of `<phase1Name_index>`.
   a. For example, the first dialup tunnel to connect is Spoke_1, the second is Spoke_2, and so on.
   To view the tunnel name and the phase 1 parent:

```
Hub # diagnose vpn tunnel list name Spoke_3
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=Spoke_3 ver=1 serial=8 198.51.100.1:0->198.51.100.4:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/320 options
[0140]=search-nexthop rgwy_chg parent=Spoke index=3
```

3. No dynamic interface is created.
4. The networks accessible over dialup tunnels are all bound to the same shared phase 1 interface.
   a. To view the routing table:

```
Hub # get router info routing-table bgp
Routing table for VRF=0
B       192.168.2.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.2, Spoke, 01:04:49
B       192.168.3.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.3, Spoke, 01:04:47
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.4, Spoke, 00:35:01
B       192.168.5.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.5, Spoke, 01:04:51
```

When forwarding a packet to the spoke shared interface:

1. The cleartext packet is first sent to the IPsec engine.
2. The IPsec engine finds which tunnel's IPsec security association (SA) is used for protecting this packet.
3. The search logic is based on `set tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}`.

**Tunnel search selectors**

This is the default setting, which dictates that IPsec routes are learned from the traffic selectors of the IPsec SA negotiation. These routes are also called IKE routes, and can be displayed using `diagnose vpn ike routes list`.

**Tunnel search next hop**

This setting is used when you want IPsec routes to be learned from a dynamic routing protocol. The IPsec engine checks the search method associated with the shared interface spoke, and searches the tunnel index associated with the next hop. In this example, while searching for the index associated with next hop 10.10.10.4, index 3 is found corresponding to the Spoke_3 tunnel.

```
Hub # diagnose vpn tunnel list name Spoke
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=Spoke ver=1 serial=1 198.51.100.1:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/64 options[0040]=search-nexthop
proxyid_num=0 child_num=4 refcnt=26 ilast=4159 olast=4159 ad=/0 itn-status=7b
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=4
ipv4 route tree:
10.10.10.2 2
10.10.10.3 0
10.10.10.4 3
10.10.10.5 1
198.51.100.2 2
198.51.100.3 0
198.51.100.4 3
198.51.100.5 1
```

### Behavior with net-device enabled

After a successful dial-in negotiation, the following occurs on the hub:

1. A dialup tunnel is created for each successful dial-in.
2. The tunnel name takes the form of `<phase1Name_index>`.
   a. For example, the first dialup tunnel to connect is Spoke_1, the second is Spoke_2, and so on.
   To view the tunnel name and the phase 1 parent:

```
Hub # diagnose vpn tunnel list name Spoke_3
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=Spoke_3 ver=1 serial=6 198.51.100.1:0->198.51.100.4:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/0 parent=Spoke
index=3
```

3. A dynamic interface is created for each dialup tunnel.
   a. To view the interface list:

```
Hub # diagnose netlink interface list | grep "Spoke_"
if=Spoke_0 family=00 type=768 index=22 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
if=Spoke_1 family=00 type=768 index=23 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
if=Spoke_2 family=00 type=768 index=24 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
if=Spoke_3 family=00 type=768 index=26 mtu=1438 link=16 master=0
```

4. The networks accessible over dialup tunnels are bound to the corresponding tunnel interface.
   a. To view the routing table:

```
Hub # get router info routing-table bgp
Routing table for VRF=0
B       192.168.2.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.2, Spoke_0, 01:04:49
B       192.168.3.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.3, Spoke_1, 01:04:47
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.4, Spoke_3, 00:35:01
B       192.168.5.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.5, Spoke_2, 01:04:51
```

When forwarding a packet to the dialup IPsec interface:

1. The cleartext packet sent to the dynamic interface is sent to the IPsec engine.
2. The IPsec engine protects the cleartext packets with the IPsec security association (SA) of the corresponding tunnel.
3. The ESP packet is then sent on the wire.

## Phase 2 configuration

After phase 1 negotiations end successfully, phase 2 begins. In Phase 2, the VPN peer or client and the FortiGate exchange keys again to establish a secure communication channel. The phase 2 proposal parameters select the encryption and authentication algorithms needed to generate keys for protecting the implementation details of security associations (SAs). The keys are generated automatically using a Diffie-Hellman algorithm.

The basic phase 2 settings associate IPsec phase 2 parameters with the phase 1 configuration that specifies the remote end point of the VPN tunnel. In most cases, you need to configure only basic Phase 2 settings.

Some settings can be configured in the CLI. The following options are available in the *VPN Creation Wizard* after the tunnel is created:

| **New Phase 2** | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Phase 2 definition name. |
| **Local Address** | A value of `0.0.0.0/0` means all IP addresses behind the local VPN peer. Add a specific address or range to allow traffic from and to only this local address.<br>See Quick mode selectors on page 1125. |
| **Remote Address** | Enter the destination IP address that corresponds to the recipients or network behind the remote VPN peer. A value of `0.0.0.0/0` means all IP addresses behind the remote VPN peer.<br>See Quick mode selectors on page 1125. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Advanced** | | Select the encryption and authentication algorithms that will be proposed to the remote VPN peer. To establish a VPN connection, at least one of the proposals specified must match the configuration on the remote peer. |
| | **Encryption** | The following symmetric-key encryption algorithms are available:<br>• *NULL*: do not use an encryption algorithm.<br>• *DES*: Digital Encryption Standard, a 64-bit block algorithm that uses a 56-bit key.<br>• *3DES*: triple-DES; plain text is encrypted three times by three keys.<br>• *AES128*: Advanced Encryption Standard, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key.<br>• *AES128GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key. Only available for IKEv2.<br>• *AES192*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 192-bit key.<br>• *AES256*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key.<br>• *AES256GCM*: AES in Galois/Counter Mode, a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 256-bit key. Only available for IKEv2.<br>• *CHACHA20POLY1305*: a 128-bit block algorithm that uses a 128-bit key and a symmetric cipher. Only available for IKEv2.<br>See ChaCha20 and Poly1305 AEAD cipher on page 1127, AES-GCM for IKEv2 phase 1 on page 1127, and HMAC settings. |
| | **Authentication** | The following message digests that check the message authenticity during an encrypted session are available:<br>• NULL: do not use a message digest.<br>• *MD5*: message digest 5.<br>• *SHA1*: secure hash algorithm 1; a 160-bit message digest.<br>• *SHA256*: a 256-bit message digest.<br>• *SHA384*: a 384-bit message digest.<br>• *SHA512*: a 512-bit message digest.<br>See also HMAC settings. |
| | **Enable Replay Detection** | Replay attacks occur when an unauthorized party intercepts a series of IPsec packets and replays them back into the tunnel.<br>Replay detection allows the FortiGate to check all IPsec packets to see if they have been received before. If any encrypted packets arrive out of order, the FortiGate discards them.<br>Note that 64-bit extended sequence numbers (as described in RFC 4303, RFC 4304 as an addition to IKEv1, and RFC 5996 for IKEv2) are supported for IPsec when replay detection is enabled. |
| | **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)** | Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) improves security by forcing a new Diffie-Hellman exchange whenever keylife expires. |
| | **Diffie-Hellman Group** | Asymmetric key algorithms used for public key cryptography. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | Select one or more from groups 1, 2, 5, and 14 through 32. At least one of the *Diffie-Hellman Groups* (DH) settings on the remote peer or client must match one the selections on the FortiGate. Failure to match one or more DH groups will result in failed negotiations. |
| | **Local Port** | Enter the port number that the local VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). The range is from 0 to 65535. To specify all ports, select *All*, or enter `0`. |
| | **Remote Port** | Enter the port number that the remote VPN peer uses to transport traffic related to the specified service (protocol number). To specify all ports, select *All*, or enter `0`. |
| | **Protocol** | Enter the IP protocol number of the service. To specify all services, select *All*, or enter `0`. |
| | **Auto-negotiate** | Select this option for the tunnel to be automatically renegotiated when the it expires. See Auto-negotiate on page 1126. |
| | **Autokey Keep Alive** | Select this option for the tunnel to remain active when no data is being processed. |
| | **Key Lifetime** | Select the method for determining when the phase 2 key expires:<br>• *Seconds*<br>• *Kilobytes*<br>• *Both*<br>Enter a corresponding value for *Seconds* and/or *Kilobytes* in the text boxes. If *Both* is selected, the key expires when either the time has passed or the number of kilobytes have been processed. |

## Quick mode selectors

Quick mode selectors determine which IP addresses can perform IKE negotiations to establish a tunnel. By only allowing authorized IP addresses access to the VPN tunnel, the network is more secure.

The default settings are as broad as possible: any IP address or configured address object using any protocol on any port.



While the dropdown menus for specifying an address also show address groups, the use of address groups may not be supported on a remote endpoint device that is not a FortiGate.

When configuring a quick mode selector for *Local Address* and *Remote Address*, valid options include IPv4 and IPv6 single addresses, subnets, or ranges.

There are some configurations that require specific selectors:

- The VPN peer is a third-party device that uses specific phase2 selectors.
- The FortiGate connects as a dialup client to another FortiGate, in which case (usually) you must specify a local IP address, IP address range, or subnet. However, this is not required if you are using dynamic routing and `mode-cfg`.

With FortiOS VPNs, your network has multiple layers of security, with quick mode selectors being an important line of defense:

- Routes guide traffic from one IP address to another.
- Phase 1 and phase 2 connection settings ensure there is a valid remote end point for the VPN tunnel that agrees on the encryption and parameters.
- Quick mode selectors allow IKE negotiations only for allowed peers.
- Security policies control which IP addresses can connect to the VPN.
- Security policies also control what protocols are allowed over the VPN along with any bandwidth limiting.

If you are editing an existing phase 2 configuration, the local address and remote address fields are unavailable if the tunnel has been configured to use firewall addresses as selectors. This option exists only in the CLI.

## Using the add-route option

Consider using the `add-route` option to add a route to a peer destination selector in phase 2 to automatically match the settings in phase 1.

**To configure add-route:**

```
config vpn ipsec {phase2 | phase2-interface}
    edit <name>
        set add-route {phase1 | enable | disable}
    next
end
```

## Auto-negotiate

By default, the phase 2 security association (SA) is not negotiated until a peer attempts to send data. The triggering packet and some subsequent packets are dropped until the SA is established. Applications normally resend this data, so there is no loss, but there might be a noticeable delay in response to the user.

If the tunnel goes down, the auto-negotiate feature (when enabled) attempts to re-establish the tunnel. Auto-negotiate initiates the phase 2 SA negotiation automatically, repeating every five seconds until the SA is established.

Automatically establishing the SA can be important for a dialup peer. It ensures that the VPN tunnel is available for peers at the server end to initiate traffic to the dialup peer. Otherwise, the VPN tunnel does not exist until the dialup peer initiates traffic.

**To configure auto-negotiate:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit <phase2_name>
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

### Installing dynamic selectors via auto-negotiate

The IPsec SA connect message generated is used to install dynamic selectors. These selectors can be installed via the auto-negotiate mechanism. When phase 2 has `auto-negotiate` enabled, and phase 1 has `mesh-selector-type` set to `subnet`, a new dynamic selector will be installed for each combination of source and destination subnets. Each dynamic selector will inherit the auto-negotiate option from the template selector and begin SA negotiation. Phase 2 selector sources from dialup clients will all establish SAs without traffic being initiated from the client subnets to the hub.

### DHCP

The `dhcp-ipsec` option lets the FortiGate assign VIP addresses to FortiClient dialup clients through a DHCP server or relay. This option is only available if the remote gateway in the phase 1 configuration is set to dialup user, and it only works in policy-based VPNs.

With `dhcp-ipsec`, the FortiGate dialup server acts as a proxy for FortiClient dialup clients that have VIP addresses on the subnet of the private network behind the FortiGate. In this case, the FortiGate dialup server acts as a proxy on the local private network for the FortiClient dialup client. A host on the network behind the dialup server issues an ARP request, corresponding to the device MAC address of the FortiClient host (when a remote server sends an ARP to the local FortiClient dialup client). The FortiGate then answers the ARP request on behalf of the FortiClient host, and then forwards the associated traffic to the FortiClient host through the tunnel.

Acting as a proxy prevents the VIP address assigned to the FortiClient dialup client from causing possible ARP broadcast problems—the normal and VIP addresses can confuse some network switches when two addresses have the same MAC address.

### ChaCha20 and Poly1305 AEAD cipher

In IKEv2 to support RFC 7634, the ChaCha20 and Poly1305 crypto algorithms can be used together as a combined mode AEAD cipher (like AES-GCM) in the `crypto_ftnt` cipher in `cipher_chacha20poly1305.c`:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit <name>
        set phase1name <name>
        set proposal chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

### AES-GCM for IKEv2 phase 1

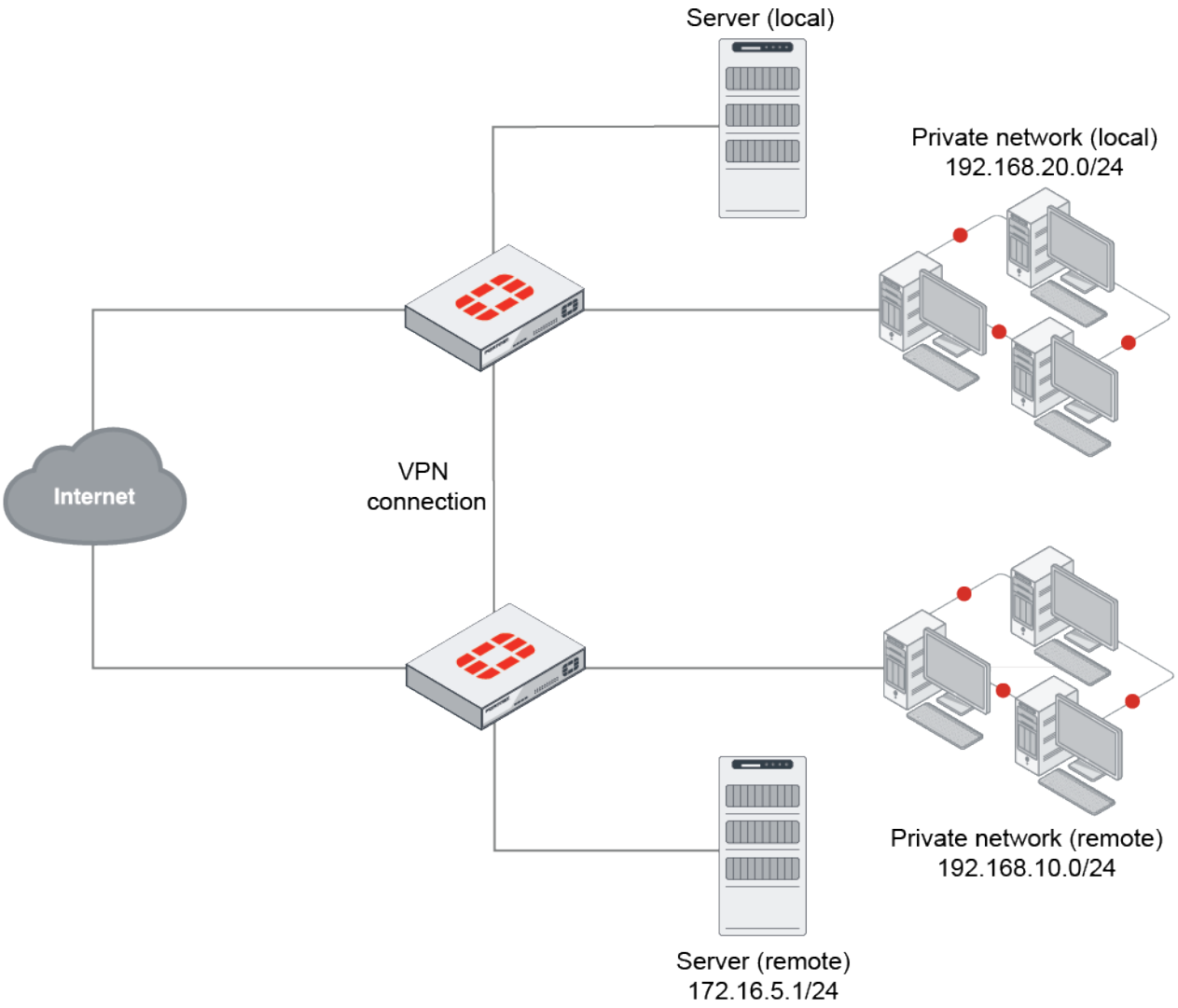
In IKEv2 to support RFC 5282, the AEAD algorithm AES-GCM supports 128- and 256-bit variants:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit <name>
        set phase1name <name>
        set proposal [aes128gcm | aes256gcm]
    next
end
```

## VPN security policies

This section explains how to specify the source and destination IP addresses of traffic transmitted through an IPsec VPN, and how to define appropriate security policies.

## Topology




## Defining policy addresses

In a gateway-to-gateway, hub-and-spoke, dynamic DNS, redundant tunnel, or transparent configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of the network behind the remote VPN peer (for example, `192.168.10.0/255.255.255.0` or `192.168.10.0/24`).

In a peer-to-peer configuration, you need to define a policy address for the private IP address of a server or host behind the remote VPN peer (for example, `172.16.5.1/255.255.255.255`, `172.16.5.1/32`, or `172.16.5.1`).

For a FortiGate dialup server in a dialup-client or internet-browsing configuration, the source IP should reflect the IP addresses of the dialup clients:

## Defining security policies

Policy-based and route-based VPNs require different security policies.

- A policy-based VPN requires an IPsec policy. You specify the interface to the private network, the interface to the remote peer and the VPN tunnel. A single policy can enable traffic inbound, outbound, or in both directions.
- A route-based VPN requires an accept policy for each direction. For the source and destination interfaces, you specify the interface to the private network and the virtual IPsec interface (phase 1 configuration) of the VPN. The IPsec interface is the destination interface for the outbound policy and the source interface for the inbound policy. One security policy must be configured for each direction of each VPN interface.



If the policy that grants the VPN connection is limited to certain services, DHCP must be included, otherwise the client will not be able to retrieve a lease from the FortiGate's (IPsec) DHCP server because the DHCP request (coming out of the tunnel) will be blocked.

**Policy-based VPN**

An IPsec policy enables the transmission and reception of encrypted packets, specifies the permitted direction of VPN traffic, and selects the VPN tunnel. In most cases, a single policy is needed to control both inbound and outbound IP traffic through a VPN tunnel. For a detailed example, see Policy-based IPsec tunnel on page 1149. Be aware of the following before creating an IPsec policy.

## Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site

Policies specify which IP addresses can initiate a tunnel. By default, traffic from the local private network initiates the tunnel. When the *Allow traffic to be initiated form the remote site* option is selected, traffic from a dialup client, or a computer on a remote network, initiates the tunnel. Both can be enabled at the same time for bi-directional initiation of the tunnel.

## Outbound and inbound NAT

When a FortiGate operates in NAT mode, you can enable inbound or outbound NAT. Outbound NAT may be performed on outbound encrypted packets or IP packets in order to change their source address before they are sent through the tunnel. Inbound NAT is performed to intercept and decrypt emerging IP packets from the tunnel.

By default, these options are not selected in security policies and can only be set through the CLI.

## Defining multiple IPsec policies for the same tunnel

You must define at least one IPsec policy for each VPN tunnel. If the same remote server or client requires access to more than one network behind a local FortiGate, the FortiGate must be configured with an IPsec policy for each network. Multiple policies may be required to configure redundant connections to a remote destination or control access to different services at different times.

To ensure a secure connection, the FortiGate must evaluate policies with *Action* set to *IPsec* before *ACCEPT* and *DENY*. Because the FortiGate unit reads policies starting at the top of the list, you must move all IPsec policies to the top of the list, and be sure to reorder your multiple IPsec policies that apply to the tunnel so that specific constraints can be evaluated before general constraints. If you create two equivalent IPsec policies for two different tunnels, the system will select the correct policy based on the specified source and destination addresses.



Adding multiple IPsec policies for the same VPN tunnel can cause conflicts if the policies specify similar source and destination addresses, but have different settings for the same service. When policies overlap in this manner, the system may apply the wrong IPsec policy or the tunnel may fail.

### Route-based VPN

When you define a route-based VPN, you create a virtual IPsec interface on the physical interface that connects to the remote peer. You create ordinary accept policies to enable traffic between the IPsec interface and the interface that connects to the private network. This makes configuration simpler than for policy-based VPNs.

#### To configure policies for a route-based VPN:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* and define an *ACCEPT* policy to permit communication between the local private network and the private network behind the remote peer and enter these settings in particular:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the security policy. |
| **Incoming Interface** | Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate. |
| **Outgoing Interface** | Select the IPsec interface you configured. |
| **Source** | Select the address name you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate. |
| **Destination** | Select the address name you defined for the private network behind the remote peer. |
| **Action** | Select *ACCEPT*. |
| **NAT** | Disable *NAT*. |

3. Click *OK*.
   To permit the remote client to initiate communication, you need to define a security policy for communication in that direction.
4. Click *Create New* and enter these settings in particular:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the security policy. |
| **Incoming Interface** | Select the IPsec interface you configured. |
| **Outgoing Interface** | Select the interface that connects to the private network behind this FortiGate. |
| **Source** | Select the address name you defined for the private network behind the remote peer. |
| **Destination** | Select the address name you defined for the private network behind this FortiGate. |
| **Action** | Select *ACCEPT*. |
| **NAT** | Disable *NAT*. |

5. Click *OK*.

## Blocking unwanted IKE negotiations and ESP packets with a local-in policy

It is not unusual to receive IPsec connection attempts or malicious IKE packets from all over the internet. Malicious parties use these probes to try to establish an IPsec tunnel in order to gain access to your private network. A good way to prevent this is to use local-in policies to deny such traffic.

Sometimes there are malicious attempts using crafted invalid ESP packets. These invalid attempts are automatically blocked by the FOS IPsec local-in handler when it checks the SPI value against the SAs of existing tunnels. The IPsec local-in handler processes the packet instead of the firewall's local-in handler. So when these attempts are blocked, you will notice an `unknown SPI` message in your VPN logs instead of being silently blocked by your local-in policy. These log messages are rate limited.

### Sample log and alert email

```
Message meets Alert condition
```

```
date=2020-08-11 time=09:28:40 devname=toSite1 devid=FGT60Fxxxxxxxxxx logid="0101037131"
type="event" subtype="vpn" level="error" vd="root" eventtime=1597163320747963100 tz="-0700"
logdesc="IPsec ESP" msg="IPsec ESP" action="error" remip=131.62.25.102 locip=192.157.116.88
remport=40601 locport=500 outintf="wan1" cookies="N/A" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="N/A" status="esp_error" error_
num="Received ESP packet with unknown SPI." spi="f6c9e2x1" seq="02000400"
```

Note that invalid SPIs may not always indicate malicious activity. For example, the SPI may not match during rekey, or when one unit flushes its tunnel SAs. Administrators should collect as much information as possible before making a conclusion.

### To block undesirable IPsec connection attempts and IKE packets using a local-in policy:

1. Configure an address group that excludes legitimate IPs:

```
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "All_exceptions"
        set member "all"
        set exclude enable
        set exclude-member "remote-vpn"
    next
end
```

2. Create a local-in policy that blocks IKE traffic from the address group:

```
config firewall local-in-policy
    edit 1
        set intf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "All_exceptions"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "IKE"
        set schedule "always"
    next
end
```



The default action is deny.

3. Verify the traffic blocked by the local-in policy:

```
# diagnose debug flow filter dport 500
# diagnose debug flow trace start 10
# diagnose debug enable

id=20085 trace_id=290 func=print_pkt_detail line=5588 msg="vd-root:0 received a packet
(proto=17, 10.10.10.13:500->10.10.10.1:500) from wan1. "
id=20085 trace_id=290 func=init_ip_session_common line=5760 msg="allocate a new session-
003442e7"
id=20085 trace_id=290 func=vf_ip_route_input_common line=2598 msg="find a route:
flag=84000000 gw-10.10.10.1 via root"
id=20085 trace_id=290 func=fw_local_in_handler line=430 msg="iprope_in_check() check
failed on policy 1, drop"
```

## Site-to-site VPN

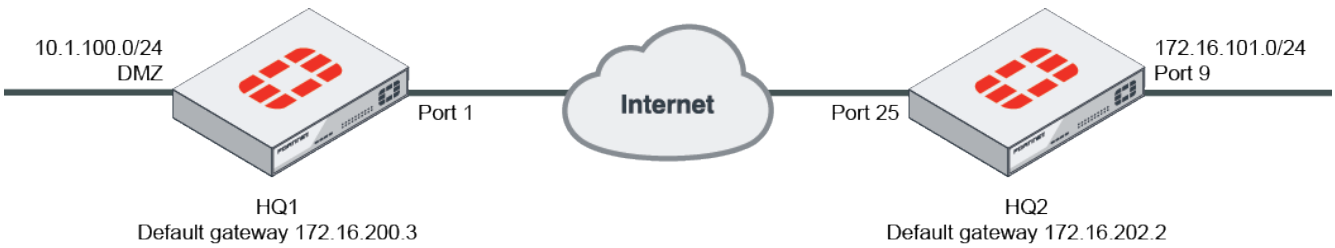
A site-to-site VPN connection lets branch offices use the Internet to access the main office's intranet. A site-to-site VPN allows offices in multiple, fixed locations to establish secure connections with each other over a public network such as the Internet.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring basic site-to-site VPN:


- Basic site-to-site VPN with pre-shared key on page 1132
- Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate on page 1137
- GRE over IPsec on page 1144
- Policy-based IPsec tunnel on page 1149
- IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway on page 1155
- IPsec VPN to Azure with virtual network gateway on page 1162
- IPsec VPN to an Azure with virtual WAN on page 1172
- IPSec VPN between a FortiGate and a Cisco ASA with multiple subnets on page 1176


### Basic site-to-site VPN with pre-shared key

This is a sample configuration of IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a pre-shared key.




**To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a pre-shared key in the GUI:**

1. Configure the HQ1 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.

iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
v. Click *Next*.

b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.202.1*.
iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port1*.
iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
vi. Click *Next*.

c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
iv. Click *Create*.

2. Configure the HQ2 FortiGate.
a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
i. Enter a VPN name.
ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
v. Click *Next*.

b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.2001*.
iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port25*.
iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
vi. Click *Next*.

c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
ii. Configure *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
iv. Click *Create*.

**To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a pre-shared key using the CLI:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface. The internal interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   **a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "dmz"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

   **b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface.
   **a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set interface "port1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set psksecret sample
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
        set interface "port25"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret  sample
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure the static routes. Two static routes are added to reach the remote protected subnet. The blackhole route is important to ensure that IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ2"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ1"
    next
```

```
    edit 3
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
     next
end
```

6. Configure two firewall policies to allow bidirectional IPsec traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ2"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "to_HQ2"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ1"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ1"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

7. Run `diagnose` commands. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish. If the PSK failed to match, the following error shows up in the debug output:

```
ike 0:to_HQ2:15037: parse error
ike 0:to_HQ2:15037: probable pre-shared secret mismatch'
```

The following commands are useful to check IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status.

a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

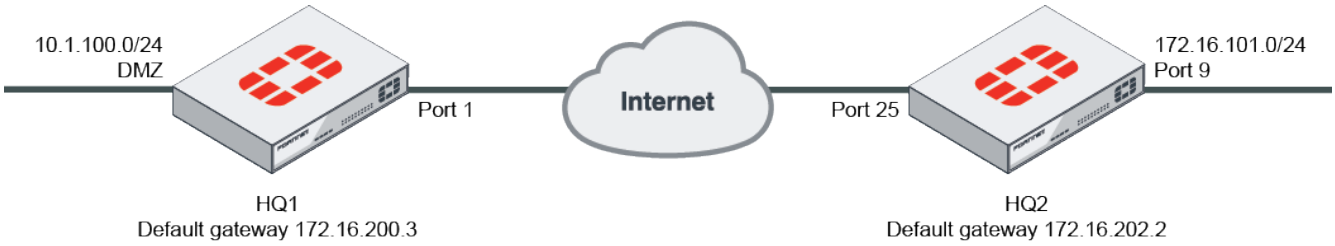
```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 5s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 2/2 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 12 6e8d0532e7fe8d84/3694ac323138a024
direction: responder
status: established 5-5s ago = 0ms
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: b3efb46d0d385aff-7bb9ee241362ee8d
lifetime/rekey: 86400/86124
DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000
```

b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
dev frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=7 olast=87 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42927/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200
dec: spi=ef9ca700 esp=aes key=16 a2c6584bf654d4f956497b3436f1cfc7
ah=sha1 key=20 82c5e734bce81e6f18418328e2a11aeb7baa021b
enc: spi=791e898e esp=aes key=16 0dbb4588ba2665c6962491e85a4a8d5a
ah=sha1 key=20 2054b318d2568a8b12119120f20ecac97ab730b3
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

## Site-to-site VPN with digital certificate

This is a sample configuration of IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a certificate. The certificate on one peer is validated by the presence of the CA certificate installed on the other peer.




**To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a digital certificate in the GUI:**

1. Import the certificate.
2. Configure user peers.
3. Configure the HQ1 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.202.1*.
      iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port1*.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Signature*.
      v. In the *Certificate name* field, select the imported certificate.
      vi. From the *Peer Certificate CA* dropdown list, select the desired peer CA certificate.
      vii. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
      iv. Click *Create*.
4. Configure the HQ2 FortiGate.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *No NAT Between Sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. For the IP address, enter *172.16.2001*.
      iii. For *Outgoing interface*, enter *port25*.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Signature*.
      v. In the *Certificate name* field, select the imported certificate.

vi. From the *Peer Certificate CA* dropdown list, select the peer CA certificate.
vii. Click *Next*.
c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
ii. Configure *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
iv. Click *Create*.

**To configure IPsec VPN authenticating a remote FortiGate peer with a digital certificate using the CLI:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface. The internal interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "dmz"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the import certificate and its CA certificate information. The certificate and its CA certificate must be imported on the remote peer FortiGate and on the primary FortiGate before configuring IPsec VPN tunnels. If the built-in Fortinet_Factory certificate and the Fortinet_CA CA certificate are used for authentication, you can skip this step.

   **a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn certificate local
    edit "test1"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
config vpn certificate ca
    edit "CA_Cert_1"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
```

   **b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn certificate local
    edit "test2"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
config vpn certificate ca
    edit "CA_Cert_1"
        ...
        set range global
    next
end
```

4. Configure the peer user. The peer user is used in the IPsec VPN tunnel peer setting to authenticate the remote peer FortiGate.

   **a.** If not using the built-in Fortinet_Factory certificate and Fortinet_CA CA certificate, do the following:

      **i.** Configure HQ1.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer1"
        set ca "CA_Cert_1"
    next
end
```

      **ii.** Configure HQ2.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer2"
        set ca "CA_Cert_1"
```

```
        next
    end
```

**b.** If the built-in Fortinet_Factory certificate and Fortinet_CA CA certificate are used for authentication, the peer user must be configured based on Fortinet_CA.

**i.** Configure HQ1.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer1"
        set ca "Fortinet_CA"
    next
end
```

**ii.** Configure HQ2.

```
config user peer
    edit "peer2"
        set ca "Fortinet_CA"
    next
end
```

**5.** Configure the IPsec phase1-interface.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set interface "port1"
        set authmethod signature
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set certificate "test1"
        set peer "peer1"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
        set interface "port25"
        set authmethod signature
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set certificate "test2"
        set peer "peer2"
    next
end
```

**6.** Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
```

```
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

**7.** Configure the static routes. Two static routes are added to reach the remote protected subnet. The blackhole route is important to ensure that IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ2"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ1"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
     next
end
```

**8.** Configure two firewall policies to allow bidirectional IPsec traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ2"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
```

```
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "to_HQ2"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "to_HQ1"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ1"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**9.** Run `diagnose` commands. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish. If the remote FortiGate certificate cannot be validated, the following error shows up in the debug output:

```
ike 0: to_HQ2:15314: certificate validation failed
```

The following commands are useful to check IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status.

**a.** Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 7s ago
peer-id: C = CA, ST = BC, L = Burnaby, O = Fortinet, OU = QA, CN = test2
peer-id-auth: yes
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 70/70/70 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 80/80/80 ms
id/spi: 15326 295be407fbddfc13/7a5a52afa56adf14 direction: initiator status:
```

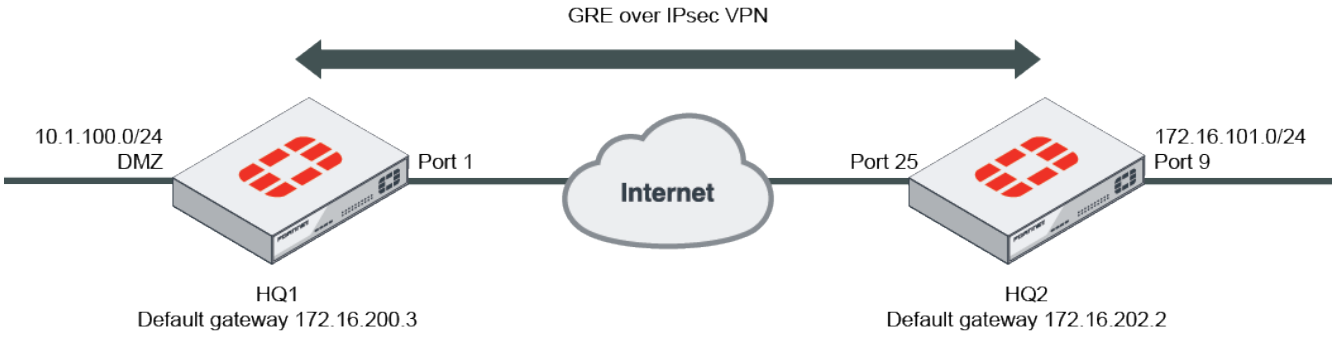
```
established 7-7s ago = 70ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: 4aa06dbee359a4c7-
43570710864bcf7b lifetime/rekey: 86400/86092 DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000 peer-
id: C = CA, ST = BC, L = Burnaby, O = Fortinet, OU = QA, CN = test2
```

**b.** Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on HQ1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
dev frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=19 olast=179 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vpn-f proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42717/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42897/43200
dec: spi=72e87de7 esp=aes key=16 8b2b93e0c149d6f22b1c0b96ea450e6c
ah=sha1 key=20 facc655e5f33beb7c2b12e718a6d55413ce3efa2
enc: spi=5c52c865 esp=aes key=16 8d0c4e4adbf2338beed569b2b3205ece
ah=sha1 key=20 553331628612480ab6d7d563a00e2a967ebabcdd
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

## GRE over IPsec

This is an example of GRE over an IPsec tunnel using a static route over GRE tunnel and `tunnel-mode` in the `phase2-interface` settings.




**To configure GRE over an IPsec tunnel:**

1. Enable subnet overlapping at both HQ1 and HQ2.

```
config system settings
    set allow-subnet-overlap enable
end
```

2. Configure the WAN interface and static route.
   a. HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
```

```
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "dmz"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

**b.** HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port9"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
    next
end
```

**3.** Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

**a.** HQ1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set interface "port1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set phase1name "greipsec"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set protocol 47
    next
end
```

**b.** HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set interface "port25"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
```

```
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set phase1name "greipsec"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set protocol 47
    next
end
```

4. Configure IPsec tunnel interface IP address.
   a. HQ1.

```
config system interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config system interface
    edit "greipsec"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

5. Configure the GRE tunnel.
   a. HQ1.

```
config system gre-tunnel
    edit "gre_to_HQ2"
        set interface "greipsec"
        set remote-gw 10.10.10.2
        set local-gw 10.10.10.1
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config system gre-tunnel
    edit "gre_to_HQ1"
        set interface "greipsec"
        set remote-gw 10.10.10.1
        set local-gw 10.10.10.2
    next
end
```

6. Configure the firewall policy.
   a. HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "dmz"
```

```
            set dstintf "gre_to_HQ2"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 2
            set srcintf "gre_to_HQ2"
            set dstintf "dmz"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 3
            set srcintf "greipsec"
            set dstintf "greipsec"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

**b.** HQ2.

```
    config firewall policy
        edit 1
            set srcintf "port9"
            set dstintf "gre_to_HQ1"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 2
            set srcintf "gre_to_HQ1"
            set dstintf "port9"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 3
            set srcintf "greipsec"
            set dstintf "greipsec"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
```

```
        next
    end
```

7. Configure the static route.
   a. HQ1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "gre_to_HQ2"
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "gre_to_HQ1"
    next
end
```

**To view the VPN tunnel list on HQ1:**

```
diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=greipsec ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/16 options[0010]=create_dev
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=19 olast=861 ad=/0
stat: rxp=347 txp=476 rxb=58296 txb=51408
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=8
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=greipsec proto=47 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2
  src: 47:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 47:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41689/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=15c esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=0000015c itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=9897bd09 esp=aes key=16 5a60e67bf68379309715bd83931680bf
       ah=sha1 key=20 ff35a329056d0d506c0bfc17ef269978a4a57dd3
  enc: spi=e362f336 esp=aes key=16 5574acd8587c5751a88950e1bf8fbf57
       ah=sha1 key=20 d57ec76ac3c543ac89b2e4d0545518aa2d06669b
  dec:pkts/bytes=347/37476, enc:pkts/bytes=347/58296
```

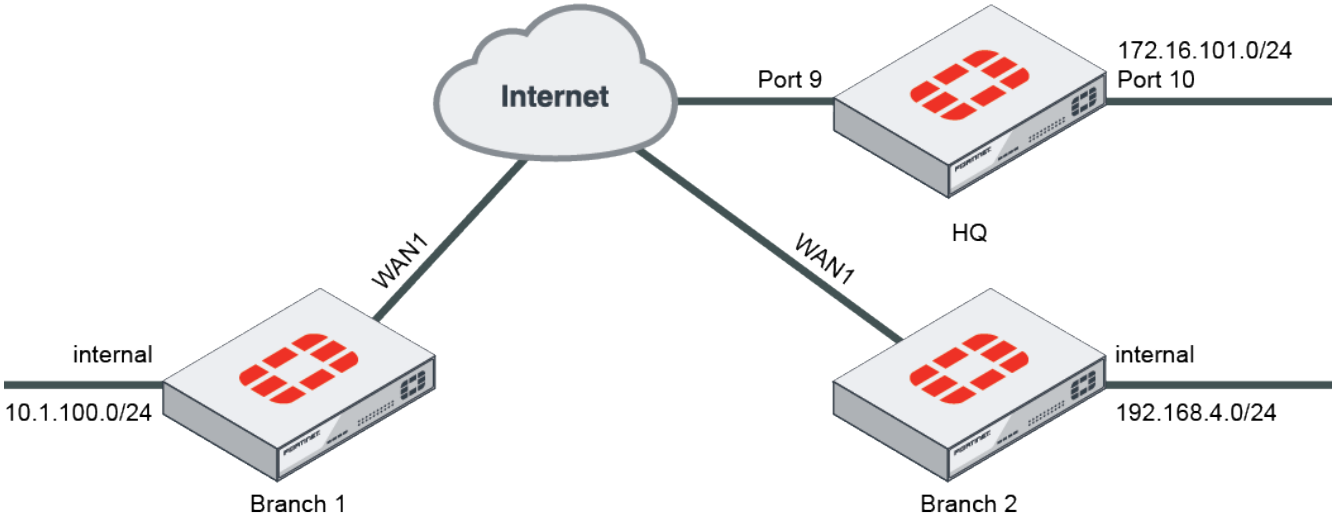
**To view the static routing table on HQ1:**

```
get router info routing-table static
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.3, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [10/0] is directly connected, gre_to_HQ2
```

## Policy-based IPsec tunnel

This is an example of policy-based IPsec tunnel using site-to-site VPN between branch and HQ. HQ is the IPsec concentrator.

### Sample topology




### Sample configuration

To configure a policy-based IPsec tunnel using the GUI:

- Configure the IPsec VPN at HQ.
- Configure the IPsec concentrator at HQ.
- Configure the firewall policy at HQ.
- Configure IPsec VPN at branch 1.
- Configure the firewall policy at branch 1.
- Configure IPsec VPN at branch 2.
- Configure the firewall policy at branch 2.

**To configure the IPsec VPN at HQ:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 1.
   a. Enter a VPN *Name*. In this example, *to_branch1*.
   b. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
   c. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
   d. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
   e. Enter IP address, in this example, *15.1.1.2*.
   f. For *Interface*, select *port9*.
   g. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   h. Click *OK*.

2. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 2.
   a. Enter a VPN *Name*. In this example, *to_branch2*.
   b. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
   c. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
   d. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
   e. Enter IP address, in this example, *13.1.1.2*.
   f. For *Interface*, select *port9*.
   g. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   h. Click *OK*.

**To configure the IPsec concentrator at HQ:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Concentrator* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a name. In this example, *branch*.
3. Add the *Members to_branch1* and *to_branch2*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To configure the firewall policy at HQ:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a policy *Name*.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port10*.
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port9*.
5. Select the *Source*, *Destination*, *Schedule*, *Service*, and set *Action* to *IPsec*.
6. Select the *VPN Tunnel*, in this example, *Branch1/Branch2*.
7. In this example, enable *Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site*.
8. Click *OK*.

**To configure IPsec VPN at branch 1:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 1.
2. Enter a VPN name. In this example, *to_HQ*.
3. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
4. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
5. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
6. Enter IP address, in this example, *22.1.1.1*.
7. For *Interface*, select *wan1*.
8. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
9. Click *OK*.

**To configure the firewall policy at branch 1:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a policy *Name*.
3. Choose the *Incoming Interface*, in this example, *internal*.
4. Choose the *Outgoing Interface*, in this example, *wan1*.
5. Select the *Source*, *Destination*, *Schedule*, *Service*, and set *Action* to *IPsec*.

6. Select the *VPN Tunnel*, in this example, *Branch1/Branch2*.
7. In this example, enable *Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site*.
8. Click *OK*.

**To configure IPsec VPN at branch 2:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* to set up branch 1.
2. Enter a VPN name. In this example, *to_HQ*.
3. For *Template Type*, click *Custom*. Click *Next*.
4. Uncheck *Enable IPsec Interface Mode*.
5. For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address*.
6. Enter IP address, in this example, *22.1.1.1*.
7. For *Interface*, select *wan1*.
8. In the *Authentication* section, for *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
9. Click *OK*.

**To configure the firewall policy at branch 2:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Enter a policy *Name*.
3. Choose the *Incoming Interface*, in this example, *internal*.
4. Choose the *Outgoing Interface*, in this example, *wan1*.
5. Select the *Source*, *Destination*, *Schedule*, *Service*, and set *Action* to *IPsec*.
6. Select the *VPN Tunnel*, in this example, *to_HQ*.
7. In this example, enable *Allow traffic to be initiated from the remote site*.
8. Click *OK*.

**To configure a policy-based IPsec tunnel using the CLI:**

1. Configure the HQ WAN interface and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the HQ IPsec phase1 and phase2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit "to_branch1"
```

```
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 15.1.1.2
        set psksecret sample
        next
    edit "to_branch2"
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 13.1.1.2
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "to_branch1"
        set phase1name "to_branch1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
    edit "to_branch2"
        set phase1name "to_branch2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy at HQ.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_branch1"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.4.0"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_branch2"
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec concentrator at HQ.

```
config vpn ipsec concentrator
    edit "branch"
        set member "to_branch1" "to_branch2"
    next
end
```

5. Configure the branch WAN interface and static route.
   a. For branch 1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

   b. For branch 2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

6. Configure the branch IPsec phase1 and phase2.
   a. For branch 1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit "to_HQ"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2
```

```
    edit "to_HQ"
        set phase1name "to_HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

**b.** For branch 2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
    edit "to_HQ"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "to_HQ"
        set phase1name "to_HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

7. Configure the branch firewall policy.

**a.** For branch 1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_HQ"
    next
end
```

**b.** For branch 2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "192.168.4.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action ipsec
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set inbound enable
        set vpntunnel "to_HQ"
    next
end
```

**To view the IPsec VPN tunnel list at HQ:**

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list

list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=to_branch1 ver=1 serial=4 22.1.1.1:0->15.1.1.2:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=tunnel/1 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=8 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=305409 txp=41985 rxb=47218630 txb=2130108
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_branch1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42604/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42932/43200
  dec: spi=ca646442 esp=aes key=16 58c91d4463968dddccc4fd97de90a4b8
       ah=sha1 key=20 c9176fe2fbc82ef7e726be9ad4af83eb1b55580a
  enc: spi=747c10c4 esp=aes key=16 7cf0f75b784f697bc7f6d8b4bb8a83c1
       ah=sha1 key=20 cdddc376a86f5ca0149346604a59af07a33b11c5
  dec:pkts/bytes=1664/16310, enc:pkts/bytes=0/16354
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=3 dec_npuid=2 enc_npuid=2
----
name=to_branch2 ver=1 serial=5 22.1.1.1:0->13.1.1.2:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=tunnel/1 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=7 ilast=2 olast=43228 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_branch2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1280 expire=40489/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=ca646441 esp=aes key=16 57ab680d29d4aad4e373579fb50e9909
       ah=sha1 key=20 12a2bc703d2615d917ff544eaff75a6d2c17f1fe
  enc: spi=f9cffb61 esp=aes key=16 3d64da9feb893874e007babce0229259
       ah=sha1 key=20 f92a3ad5e56cb8e89c47af4dac10bf4b4bebff16
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=4 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

**To view the IPsec VPN concentrator at HQ:**

```
# diagnose vpn concentrator list

list all ipsec concentrator in vd 0
name=branch              ref=3          tuns=2 flags=0
```

## IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway

This is a sample configuration of an IPsec site-to-site VPN connection between an on-premise FortiGate and an AWS virtual private cloud (VPC).

AWS uses unique identifiers to manipulate a VPN connection's configuration. Each VPN connection is assigned an identifier and is associated with two other identifiers: the customer gateway ID for the FortiGate and virtual private gateway ID.

This example includes the following IDs:

- VPN connection ID: vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749
- Customer gateway ID: cgw-0440c1aebed2f418a
- Virtual private gateway ID

This example assumes that you have configured VPC-related settings in the AWS management portal as described in Create a Secure Connection using AWS VPC.

This example includes creating and configuring two tunnels. You must configure both tunnels on your FortiGate.

**To configure IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an AWS VPN gateway:**

1. Configure the first VPN tunnel:
   a. Configure Internet Key Exchange (IKE).
   b. Configure IPsec.
   c. Configure the tunnel interface.
   d. Configure border gateway protocol (BGP).
   e. Configure firewall policies.
2. Configure the second VPN tunnel:
   a. Configure Internet Key Exchange (IKE).
   b. Configure IPsec.
   c. Configure the tunnel interface.
   d. Configure BGP.
   e. Configure firewall policies.

**To configure IKE for the first VPN tunnel:**

A policy is established for the supported ISAKMP encryption, authentication, Diffie-Hellman (DH), lifetime, and key parameters. These sample configurations fulfill the minimum requirements for AES128, SHA1, and DH Group 2. Category VPN connections in the GovCloud AWS region have a minimum requirement of AES128, SHA2, and DH Group 14. To take advantage of AES256, SHA256, or other DH groups such as 14-18, 22, 23, and 24, you must modify these sample configuration files. Higher parameters are only available for VPNs of category "VPN", not for "VPN-Classic".

Your FortiGate's external interface's address must be static. Your FortiGate may reside behind a device performing NAT. To ensure NAT traversal can function, you must adjust your firewall rules to unblock UDP port 4500. If not behind NAT, it is recommended to disable NAT traversal.

Begin configuration in the root VDOM. The interface name must be shorter than 15 characters. It is best if the name is shorter than 12 characters. IPsec dead peer detection (DPD) causes periodic messages to be sent to ensure a security association remains operational.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0
      set interface "wan1"
      set dpd enable
      set local-gw 35.170.66.108
      set dhgrp 2
      set proposal aes128-sha1
```

```
      set keylife 28800
      set remote-gw 3.214.239.164
      set psksecret iCelks0UOob8z4SYMRM6zlx.rU2C3jth
      set dpd-retryinterval 10
   next
end
```

**To configure IPsec for the first VPN tunnel:**

The IPsec transform set defines the encryption, authentication, and IPsec mode parameters.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set phase1name "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set pfs enable
      set keylifeseconds 3600
   next
end
```

**To configure the tunnel interface for the first VPN tunnel:**

You must configure a tunnel interface as the logical interface associated with the tunnel. All traffic routed to the tunnel interface must be encrypted and transmitted to the VPC. Similarly, traffic from the VPC will be logically received on this interface.

You must configure the interface's address with your FortiGate's address. If the address changes, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with Amazon VPC.

The `tcp-mss` option causes the router to reduce the TCP packets' maximum segment size to prevent packet fragmentation.

```
config system interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.45.90 255.255.255.255
      set allowaccess ping
      set type tunnel
      set tcp-mss 1379
      set remote-ip 169.254.45.89
      set mtu 1427
      set interface "wan1"
   next
end
```

**To configure BGP for the first VPN tunnel:**

BGP is used within the tunnel to exchange prefixes between the virtual private gateway and your FortiGate. The virtual private gateway announces the prefix according to your VPC.

The local BGP autonomous system number (ASN) (65000) is configured as part of your FortiGate. If you must change the ASN, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with AWS.

Your FortiGate may announce a default route (0.0.0.0/0) to AWS. This is done using a prefix list and route map in FortiOS.

```
config router bgp
```

```
   set as 65000
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.45.89
         set remote-as 64512
      end
   end
end
config router bgp
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.45.89
         set capability-default-originate enable
      end
   end
end
config router prefix-list
   edit "default_route"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set prefix 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
         next
      end
   end
end
config router route-map
   edit "routemap1"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set match-ip-address "default_route"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To advertise additional prefixes to the Amazon VPC, add these prefixes to the network statement and identify the prefix you want to advertise. Ensure that the prefix is present in the routing table of the device with a valid next-hop. If you want to advertise 192.168.0.0/16 to Amazon, you would do the following:

```
config router bgp
config network
   edit 1
      set prefix 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0
   next
end
```

**To configure firewall policies for the first VPN tunnel:**

Create a firewall policy permitting traffic from your local subnet to the VPC subnet, and vice-versa.

This example policy permits all traffic from the local subnet to the VPC. First, view all existing policies using the `show firewall policy` command. Then, create a new firewall policy starting with the next available policy ID. In this example, running `show firewall policy` displayed policies 1, 2, 3, and 4, so you would proceed to create policy 5.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 5
      set srcintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set dstintf internal
      set srcaddr all
      set dstaddr all
```

```
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set service ANY
   next
end
config firewall policy
   edit 5
      set srcintf internal
      set dstintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-0"
      set srcaddr all
      set dstaddr all
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set service ANY
   next
end
```

**To configure IKE for the second VPN tunnel:**

A policy is established for the supported ISAKMP encryption, authentication, DH, lifetime, and key parameters. These sample configurations fulfill the minimum requirements for AES128, SHA1, and DH Group 2. Category VPN connections in the GovCloud AWS region have a minimum requirement of AES128, SHA2, and DH Group 14. To take advantage of AES256, SHA256, or other DH groups such as 14-18, 22, 23, and 24, you must modify these sample configuration files. Higher parameters are only available for VPNs of category "VPN", not for "VPN-Classic".

Your FortiGate's external interface's address must be static. Your FortiGate may reside behind a device performing NAT. To ensure NAT traversal can function, you must adjust your firewall rules to unblock UDP port 4500. If not behind NAT, it is recommended to disable NAT traversal.

Begin configuration in the root VDOM. The interface name must be shorter than 15 characters. It is best if the name is shorter than 12 characters. IPsec DPD causes periodic messages to be sent to ensure a security association remains operational.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1
      set interface "wan1"
      set dpd enable
      set local-gw 35.170.66.108
      set dhgrp 2
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set keylife 28800
      set remote-gw 100.25.187.58
      set psksecret IjFzyDneUtDdAT4RNmQ85apUG3y4Akre
      set dpd-retryinterval 10
   next
end
```

**To configure IPsec for the second VPN tunnel:**

The IPsec transform set defines the encryption, authentication, and IPsec mode parameters.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set phase1name "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set pfs enable
```

```
      set keylifeseconds 3600
   next
end
```

**To configure the tunnel interface for the second VPN tunnel:**

You must configure a tunnel interface as the logical interface associated with the tunnel. All traffic routed to the tunnel interface must be encrypted and transmitted to the VPC. Similarly, traffic from the VPC will be logically received on this interface.

You must configure the interface's address with your FortiGate's address. If the address changes, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with Amazon VPC.

The `tcp-mss` option causes the router to reduce the TCP packets' maximum segment size to prevent packet fragmentation.

```
config system interface
   edit "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.44.162 255.255.255.255
      set allowaccess ping
      set type tunnel
      set tcp-mss 1379
      set remote-ip 169.254.44.161
      set mtu 1427
      set interface "wan1"
   next
end
```

**To configure BGP for the second VPN tunnel:**

BGP is used within the tunnel to exchange prefixes between the virtual private gateway and your FortiGate. The virtual private gateway announces the prefix according to your VPC.

The local BGP ASN (65000) is configured as part of your FortiGate. If you must change the ASN, you must recreate the FortiGate and VPN connection with AWS.

Your FortiGate may announce a default route (0.0.0.0/0) to AWS. This is done using a prefix list and route map in FortiOS.

```
config router bgp
   set as 65000
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.44.161
         set remote-as 64512
      end
config router bgp
   config neighbor
      edit 169.254.44.161
         set capability-default-originate enable
      end
   end
config router prefix-list
   edit "default_route"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set prefix 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0
         next
```

```
      end
   end
end
config router route-map
   edit "routemap1"
      config rule
         edit 1
            set match-ip-address "default_route"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

To advertise additional prefixes to the Amazon VPC, add these prefixes to the network statement and identify the prefix you want to advertise. Ensure that the prefix is present in the routing table of the device with a valid next-hop. If you want to advertise 192.168.0.0/16 to Amazon, you would do the following:

```
config router bgp
config network
   edit 1
      set prefix 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0
   next
end
```

**To configure firewall policies for the second VPN tunnel:**

Create a firewall policy permitting traffic from your local subnet to the VPC subnet, and vice-versa.

This example policy permits all traffic from the local subnet to the VPC. First, view all existing policies using the `show firewall policy` command. Then, create a new firewall policy starting with the next available policy ID. In this example, running `show firewall policy` displayed policies 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, so you would proceed to create policy 6.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 6
      set srcintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
      set dstintf internal
      set srcaddr all
      set dstaddr all
      set action accept
      set schedule always
      set service ANY
   next
end
config firewall policy
   edit 6
         set srcintf internal
         set dstintf "vpn-07e988ccc1d46f749-1"
         set srcaddr all
         set dstaddr all
         set action accept
         set schedule always
         set service ANY
   next
end
```

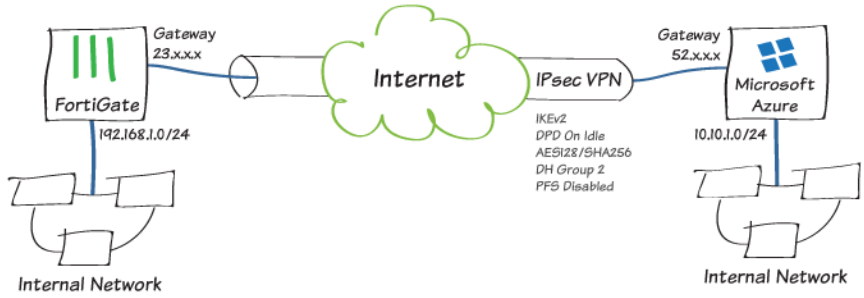
## IPsec VPN to Azure with virtual network gateway

This example shows how to configure a site-to-site IPsec VPN tunnel to Microsoft Azure. It shows how to configure a tunnel between each site, avoiding overlapping subnets, so that a secure tunnel can be established.

### Prerequisites

- A FortiGate with an Internet-facing IP address
- A valid Microsoft Azure account

### Sample topology




### Sample configuration

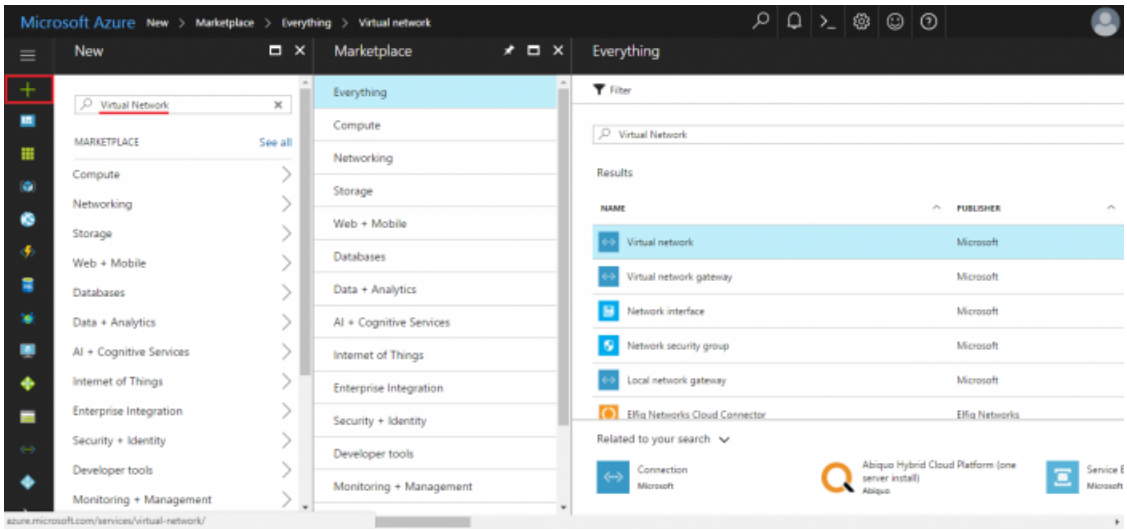
This sample configuration shows how to:

1. Configure an Azure virtual network
2. Specify the Azure DNS server
3. Configure the Azure virtual network gateway
4. Configure the Azure local network gateway
5. Configure the FortiGate tunnel
6. Create the Azure firewall object
7. Create the FortiGate firewall policies
8. Create the FortiGate static route
9. Create the Azure site-to-site VPN connection
10. Check the results

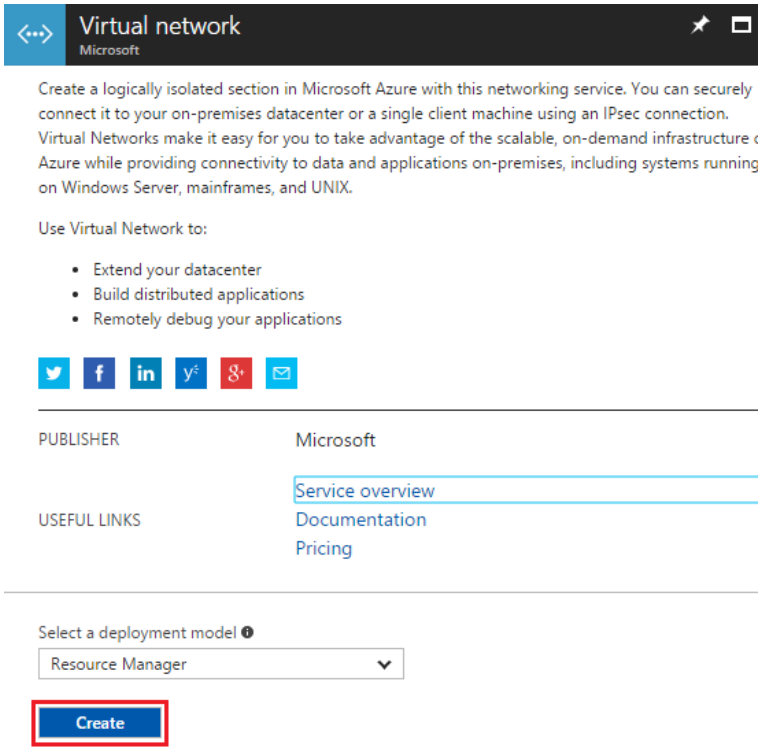
**To configure an Azure virtual network:**

1. Log in to Azure and click *New*.
2. In *Search the Marketplace*, type *Virtual network*.

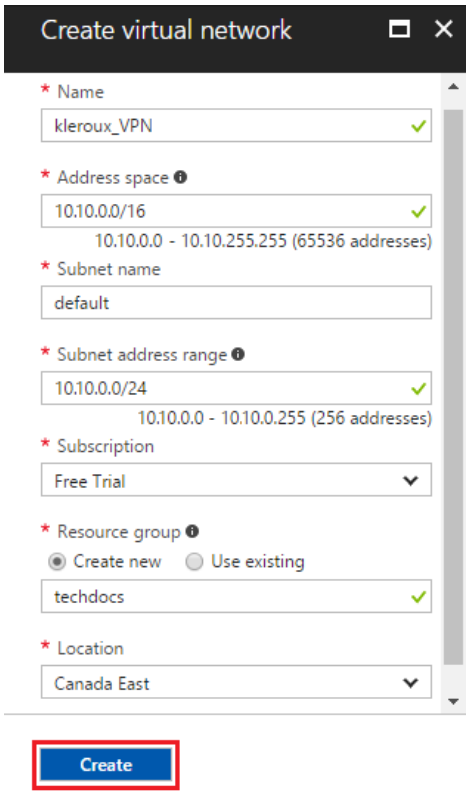
3. Click *Virtual network* to open the *Virtual network* pane.




4. At the bottom of the *Virtual network* pane, click the *Select a deployment model* dropdown list and select *Resource Manager*.
5. Click *Create*.

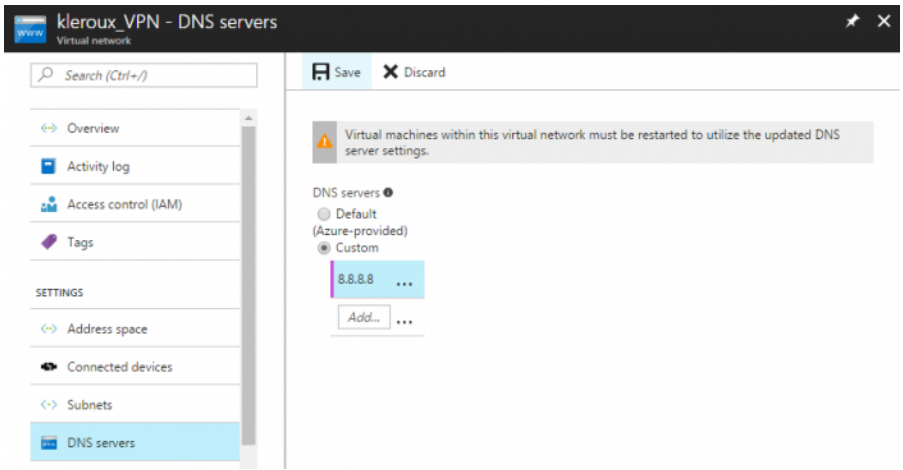


6. On the *Create virtual network* pane, enter you virtual network settings, and click *Create*.



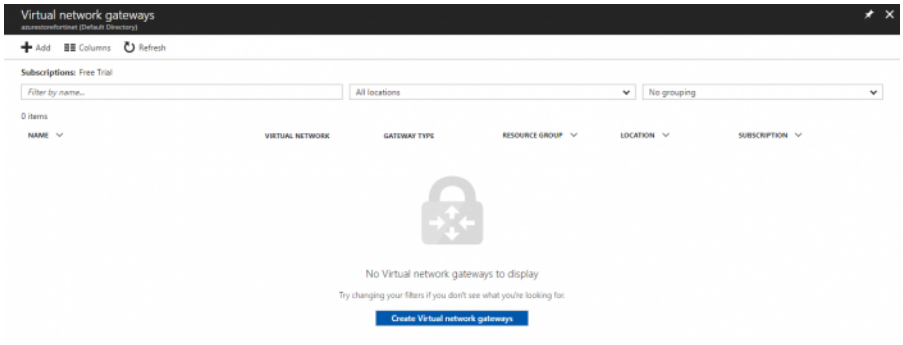

**To specify the Azure DNS server:**

1. Open the virtual network you just created.
2. Click *DNS servers* to open the *DNS servers* pane.
3. Enter the IP address of the DNS server and click *Save*.

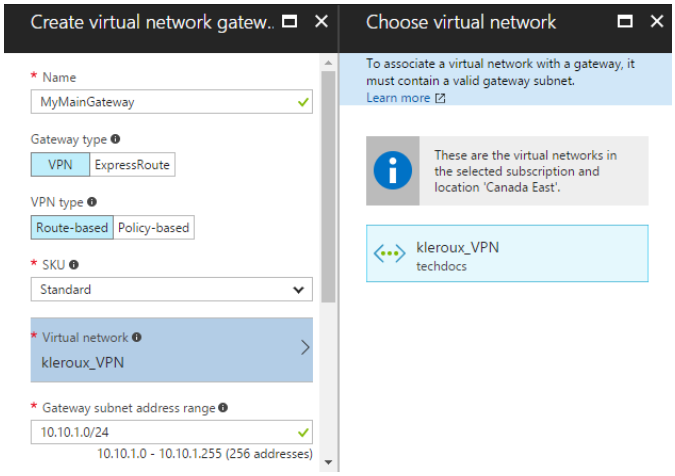


**To configure the Azure virtual network gateway:**

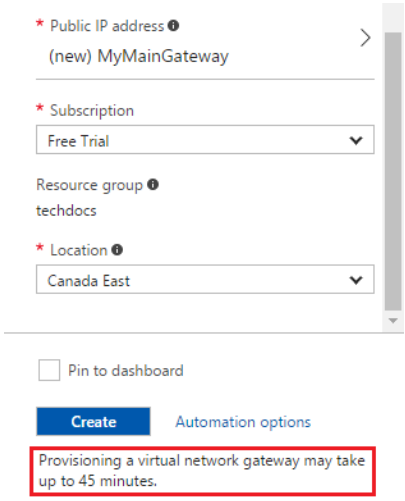
1. In the portal dashboard, go to *New*.
2. Search for *Virtual Network Gateway* and click it to open the *Virtual network gateway* pane.



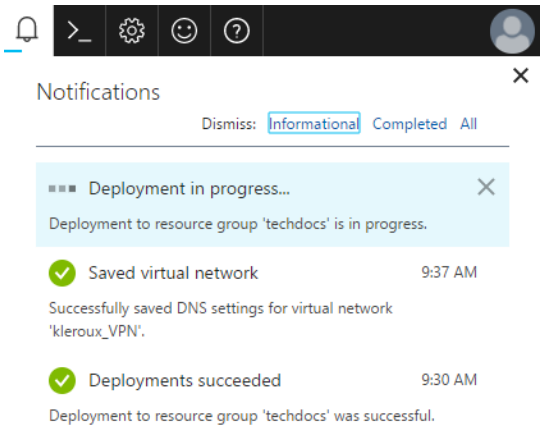

3. Click *Create Virtual network gateways* and enter the settings for your virtual network gateway.




4. If needed, create a Public IP address.

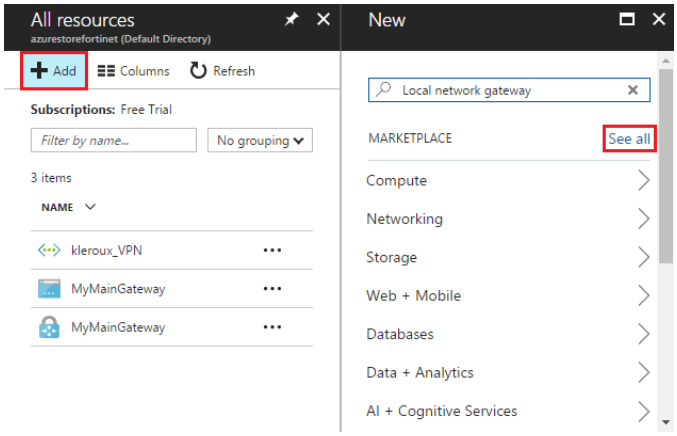



5. Click *Create*.
   Creating the virtual network gateway might take some time. When the provisioning is done, you'll receive a notification.

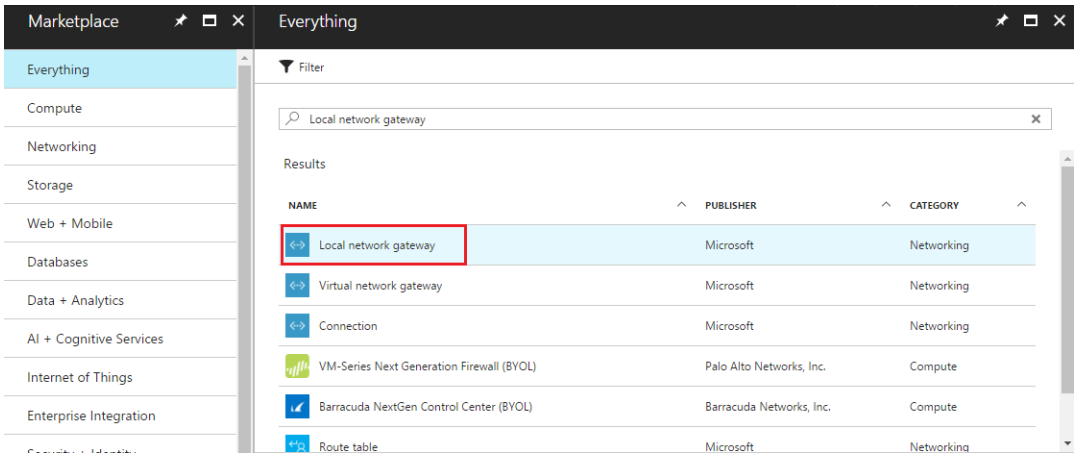



**To configure the Azure local network gateway:**

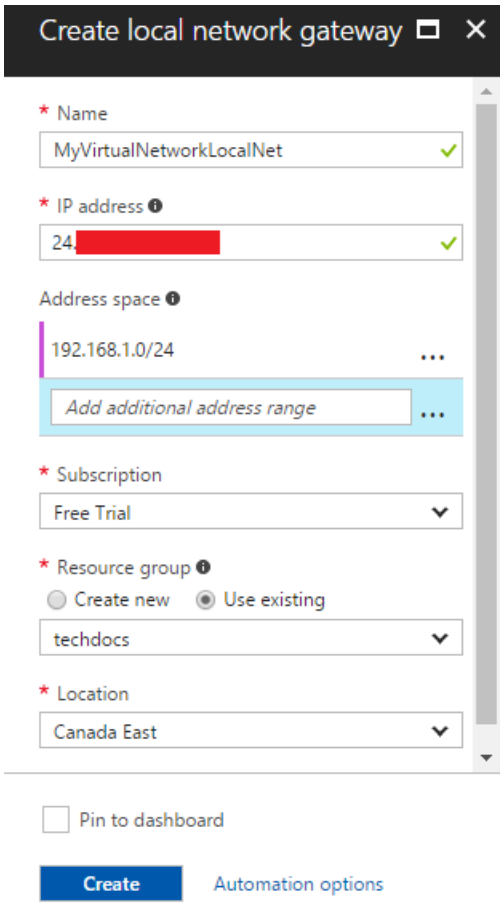
1. In the portal dashboard, click *All resources*.
2. Click *Add* and then click *See all*.




3. In the *Everything* pane, search for *Local network gateway* and then click *Create local network gateway*.



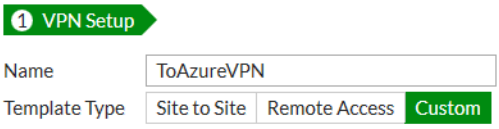
4. For the *IP address*, enter the local network gateway IP address, that is, the FortiGate's external IP address.



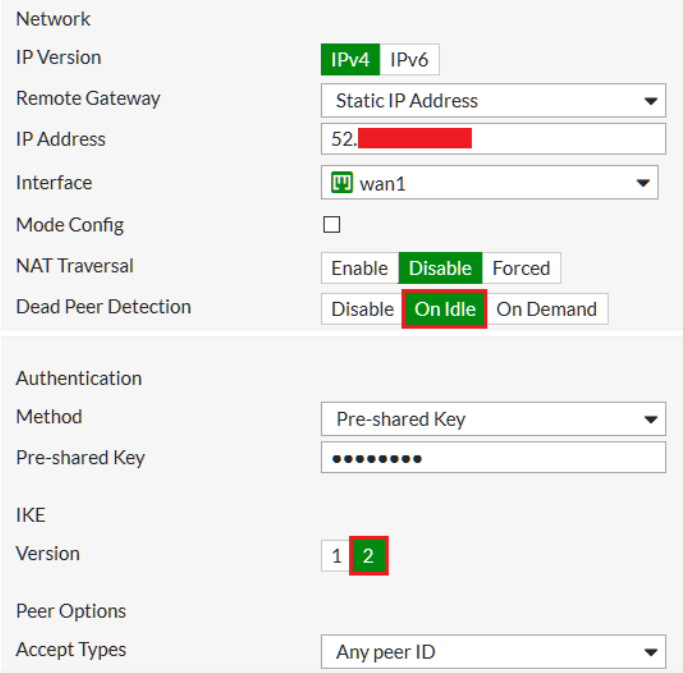

5. Set the remaining values for your local network gateway and click *Create*.

**To configure the FortiGate tunnel:**

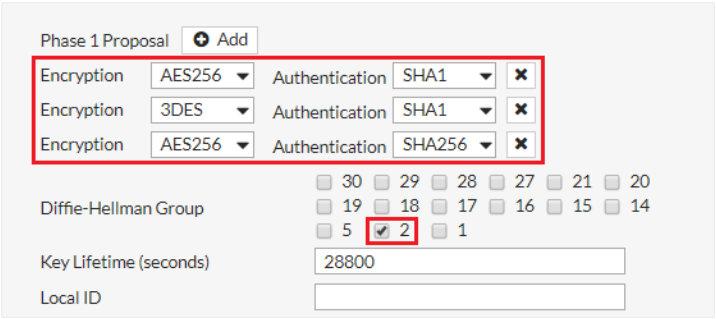
1. In the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *IP Wizard*.
2. Enter a *Name* for the tunnel, click *Custom*, and then click *Next*.



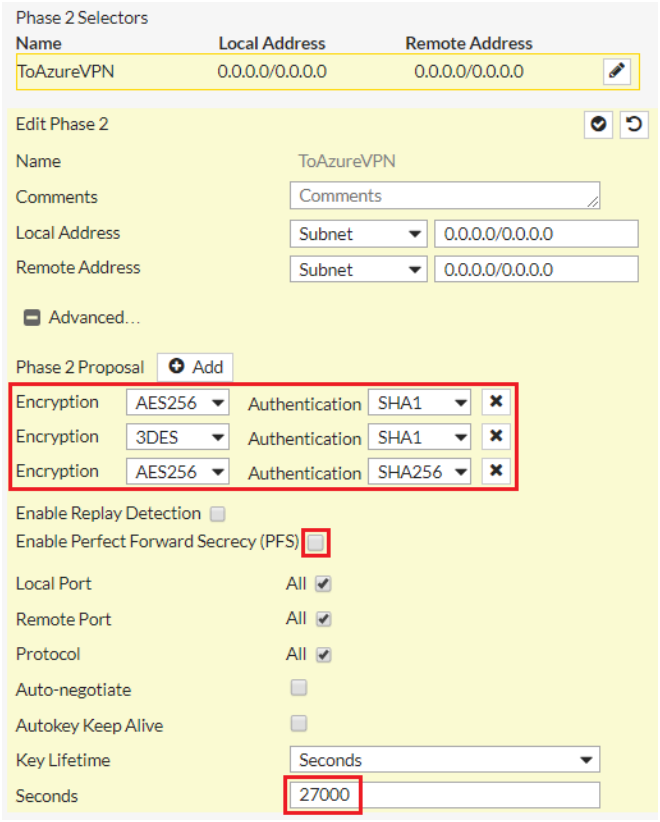

3. Configure the *Network* settings.
   - For *Remote Gateway*, select *Static IP Address* and enter the IP address provided by Azure.
   - For *Interface*, select *wan1*.
   - For *NAT Traversal*, select *Disable*,
   - For *Dead Peer Detection*, select *On Idle*.
   - In the Authentication section, select
4. Configure the *Authentication* settings.
   - For *Method*, select *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   - For *IKE*, select *2*.




5. Configure the *Phase 1 Proposal* settings.
   - Set the Encryption and Authentication combination to the three supported encryption algorithm combinations accepted by Azure.
     - AES256 and SHA1
     - 3DES and SHA1
     - AES256 and SHA256
   - For *Diffie-Hellman Groups*, select *2*.
   - Set *Key Lifetime (seconds)* to *28800*.




6. In *Phase 2 Selectors*, expand the *Advanced* section to configure the *Phase 2 Proposal* settings.
   - Set the Encryption and Authentication combinations.
     - AES256 and SHA1
     - 3DES and SHA1
     - AES256 and SHA256
   - Uncheck *Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)*.
   - Set *Key Lifetime (seconds)* to *27000*.



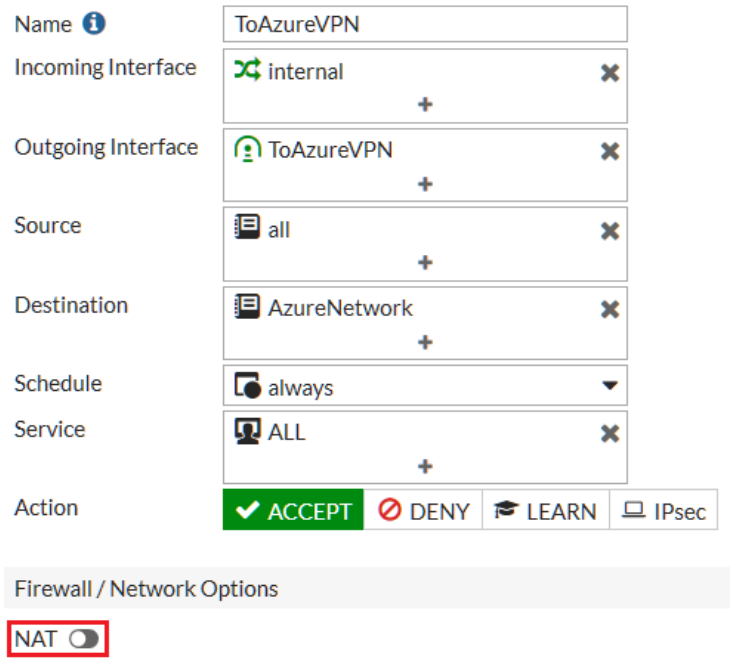

7. Click *OK*.

**To create the Azure firewall object:**

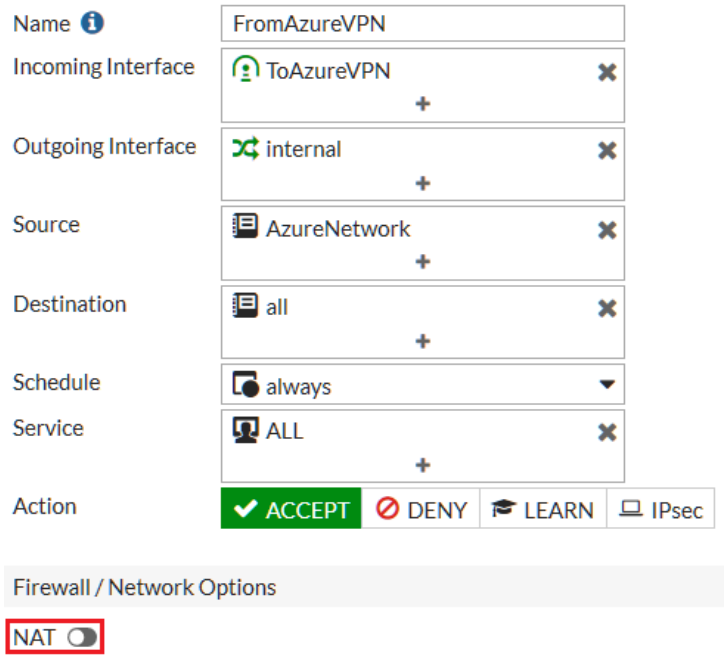
1. In the FortiGate, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Create a firewall object for the Azure VPN tunnel.

**To create the FortiGate firewall policies:**

1. In the FortiGate, go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Create a policy for the site-to-site connection that allows outgoing traffic.
   - Set the *Source* address and *Destination* address using the firewall objects you just created.
   - Disable *NAT*.




3. Create another policy that allows incoming traffic.
   - For this policy, reverse the *Source* address and *Destination* address.



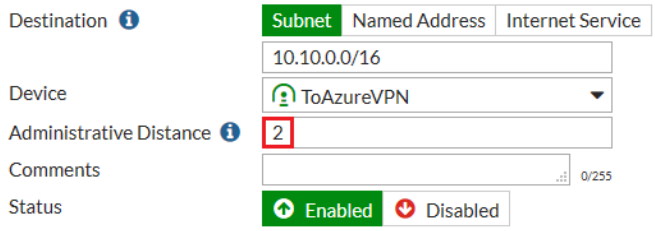

4. We recommend limiting the TCP maximum segment size (MSS) being sent and received so as to avoid packet drops and fragmentation.

To do this, use the following CLI commands on both policies.

```
config firewall policy
   edit <policy-id>
      set tcp-mss-sender 1350
      set tcp-mss-receiver 1350
   next
end
```

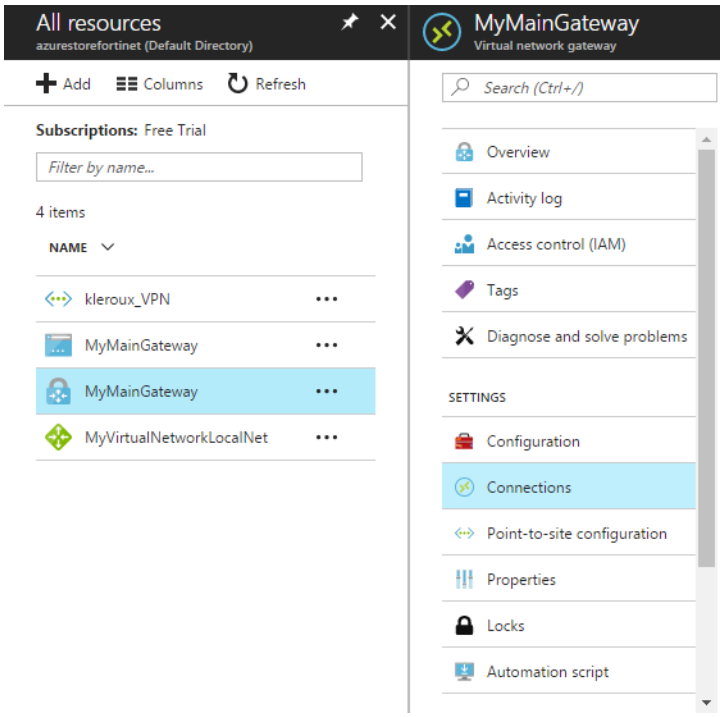
**To create the FortiGate static route:**

1. In the FortiGate, go to *Network* > *Static Routes*.
2. Create an IPv4 Static Route that forces outgoing traffic going to Azure to go through the route-based tunnel.
3. Set the *Administrative Distance* to a value lower than the existing default route value.




**To create the Azure site-to-site VPN connection:**

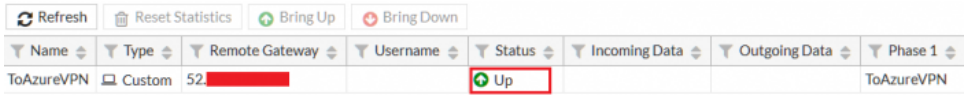
1. In the Azure portal, locate and select your virtual network gateway.
2. In the *Settings* pane, click *Connections* and then click *Add*.



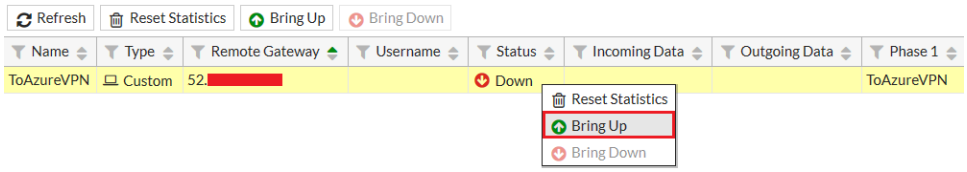

3. Enter the settings for your connection. Ensure the *Shared Key (PSK)* matches the *Pre-shared Key* for the FortiGate tunnel.

**To check the results:**

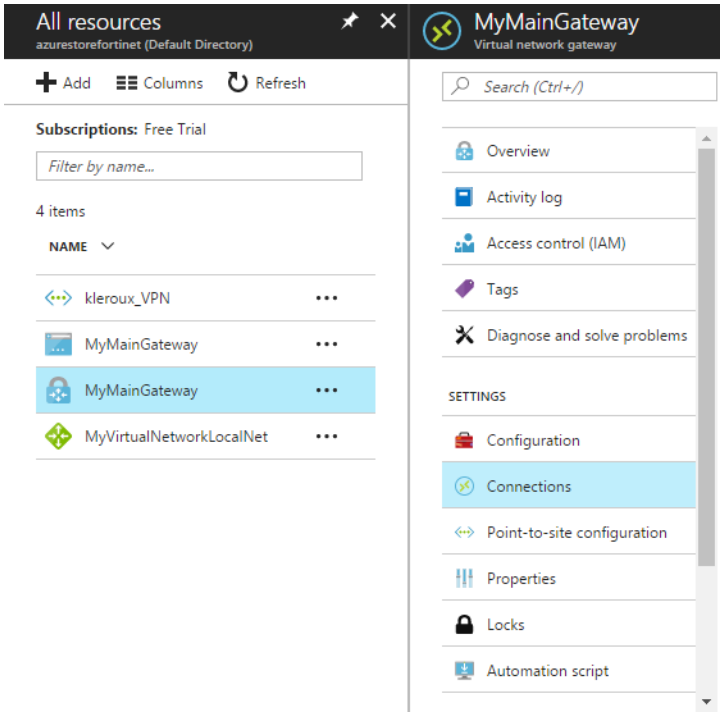
1. In the FortiGate, go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor*.
   - Check that the tunnel is up.




   - If the tunnel is down, right-click the tunnel and select *Bring Up*.




2. In the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Events*.
   - Select an event to view more information and verify the connection.
3. In the Azure portal dashboard, click *All resources* and locate your virtual network gateway.
   a. In your virtual network gateway pane, click *Connections* to see the status of each connection.




   b. Click a connection to open the *Essentials* pane to view more information about that connection.
      - If the connection is successful, the *Status* shows *Connected*.
      - See the *ingress* and *egress* bytes to confirm traffic flowing through the tunnel.

## IPsec VPN to an Azure with virtual WAN

This is a sample configuration of an IPsec site-to-site VPN connection between an on-premise FortiGate and an Azure virtual network (VNet). This example uses Azure virtual WAN (vWAN) to establish the VPN connection.



- Azure must use IPsec v2 for this configuration.
- Azure uses overlapped subnet IP addresses for the IPsec interfaces.

**To configure IKEv2 IPsec site-to-site VPN to an Azure VPN gateway:**

1. In the Azure management portal, configure vWAN-related settings as described in Tutorial: Create a Site-to-Site connection using Azure Virtual WAN.
2. Download the VPN configuration. The following shows an example VPN configuration:

```
[ {"configurationVersion":{"LastUpdatedTime":"2019-07-
    16T22:16:28.0409002Z","Version":"be5c5787-b903-43b1-a237-
    49eae1b373e4"},"vpnSiteConfiguration":
    {"Name":"toaws","IPAddress":"3.220.252.93","BgpSetting":
    {"Asn":7225,"BgpPeeringAddress":"169.254.24.25","PeerWeight":32768},"LinkName":"toa
    ws"},"vpnSiteConnections":[{"hubConfiguration":
    {"AddressSpace":"10.1.0.0/16","Region":"West US","ConnectedSubnets":
    ["10.2.0.0/16"]},"gatewayConfiguration":{"IpAddresses":
    {"Instance0":"52.180.90.47","Instance1":"52.180.89.94"},"BgpSetting":
    {"Asn":65515,"BgpPeeringAddresses":
    {"Instance0":"10.1.0.7","Instance1":"10.1.0.6"},"PeerWeight":0}},"connectionConfigu
    ration":{"IsBgpEnabled":true,"PSK":"Fortinet123#","IPsecParameters":
    {"SADataSizeInKilobytes":102400000,"SALifeTimeInSeconds":3600}}}]} ]
```

3. Configure the following on the FortiGate. Note for `set proposal`, you can select from several proposals.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "toazure1"
      set interface "port1"
      set ike-version 2
      set keylife 28800
      set peertype any
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set remote-gw 52.180.90.47
      set psksecret ENC
           BJeE+CnBFbdepvvMMfXmb1QlWmB/QfxAvSuj0/Ol3KI3LgP0ac1Rc80YJRHN2Q7ocGpF96/7F0MCN
           RjAEk62wQHeHNi8zQKc0DGTffRIyf/ln6l3JMp+r2hVFTv41HlzfKlE5L+rOuSPj4y941rJVPjIx9
           aID7dAYUMUh/D1elTB/PqAXAt
      0JU+9gDbki4br5Zq8tQ==
   next
   edit "toazure2"
      set interface "port1"
      set ike-version 2
      set keylife 28800
      set peertype any
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set remote-gw 52.180.89.94
      set psksecret ENC
           sNVpQEGX79oH3u57I6AjipdPALYIERj7CMDSJY7RG39g0yUmPVJVcq1+u5v3gA6URhzaD3NjqUoIf
           JD3yOE34mIWFo9Q6skowGnQURlQxukENC8kTpEl3YqYESCKULoRc3/sVKDZItyjWcZ/0iHsqkCyWv
           m/jDJuy3UPxI7uOktkDtZPho8
      wjnMYeKmMR5EaG28oSA==
   next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "toazure1"
```

```
      set phase1name "toazure1"
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set keylifeseconds 3600
   next
   edit "toazure2"
      set phase1name "toazure2"
      set proposal aes256-sha1
      set dhgrp 2
      set keylifeseconds 3600
   next
end
config system settings
   set allow-subnet-overlap enable
end
config system interface
   edit "toazure1"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.24.25 255.255.255.255
      set type tunnel
      set remote-ip 10.1.0.7 255.255.255.255
      set snmp-index 4
      set interface "port1"
   next
   edit "toazure2"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 169.254.24.25 255.255.255.255
      set type tunnel
      set remote-ip 10.1.0.6 255.255.255.255
      set snmp-index 5
      set interface "port1"
   next
end
config router bgp
   set as 7225
   set router-id 169.254.24.25
   config neighbor
      edit "10.1.0.7"
         set remote-as 65515
      next
      edit "10.1.0.6"
         set remote-as 65515
      next
   end
   config network
      edit 1
         set prefix 172.30.101.0 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
   config redistribute "connected"
      set status enable
   end
   config redistribute "rip"
   end
   config redistribute "ospf"
   end
   config redistribute "static"
```

```
    end
    config redistribute "isis"
    end
    config redistribute6 "connected"
    end
    config redistribute6 "rip"
    end
    config redistribute6 "ospf"
    end
    config redistribute6 "static"
    end
    config redistribute6 "isis"
    end
end
```

4. Run `diagnose vpn tunnel list`. If the configuration was successful, the output should resemble the following:

```
name=toazure1 ver=2 serial=3 172.30.1.83:4500->52.180.90.47:4500
bound_if=3 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=15 ilast=16 olast=36 ad=/0
stat: rxp=41 txp=41 rxb=5104 txb=2209
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=keepalive draft=0 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=toazure1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=4
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=8926 expire=2463/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000029 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3300/3600
  dec: spi=c13f7928 esp=aes key=32
009a86bb0d6f5fee66af7b8232c8c0f22e6ec5c61ba19c93569bd0cd115910a9
       ah=sha1 key=20 f05bfeb0060afa89d4afdfac35960a8a7a4d4856
  enc: spi=b40a6c70 esp=aes key=32
a1e361075267ba72b39924c5e6c766fd0b08e0548476de2792ee72057fe60d1d
       ah=sha1 key=20 b1d24bedb0eb8fbd26de3e7c0b0a3a799548f52f
  dec:pkts/bytes=41/2186, enc:pkts/bytes=41/5120
---------------------------------------------------
name=toazure2 ver=2 serial=4 172.30.1.83:4500->52.180.89.94:4500
bound_if=3 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=16 ilast=16 olast=16 ad=/0
stat: rxp=40 txp=40 rxb=4928 txb=2135
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=keepalive draft=0 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=toazure2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=4
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10626 type=00 soft=0 mtu=8926 expire=2427/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=29 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000028 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3299/3600
  dec: spi=c13f791d esp=aes key=32
759898cbb7fafe448116b1fb0fb6d2f0eb99621ea6ed8dd4417ffdb901eb82be
       ah=sha1 key=20 533ec5dc8a1910221e7742b12f9de1b41205622c
  enc: spi=67934bfe esp=aes key=32
9b5710bfb4ba784722241ec371ba8066629febcd75da6f8471915bdeb874ca80
       ah=sha1 key=20 5099fed7edac2b960294094f1a8188ab42f34d7b
  dec:pkts/bytes=40/2087, enc:pkts/bytes=40/4976
```

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] via 172.30.1.1, port1
B       10.1.0.0/16 [20/0] via 10.1.0.6, toazure2, 00:15:01
C       10.1.0.6/32 is directly connected, toazure2
C       10.1.0.7/32 is directly connected, toazure1
B       10.2.0.0/16 [20/0] via 10.1.0.6, toazure2, 00:15:01
C       169.254.24.25/32 is directly connected, toazure1
                         is directly connected, toazure2
C       172.30.1.0/24 is directly connected, port1
C       172.30.101.0/24 is directly connected, port2
```

## IPSec VPN between a FortiGate and a Cisco ASA with multiple subnets

When a Cisco ASA unit has multiple subnets configured, multiple phase 2 tunnels must be created on the FortiGate to allocate to each subnet (rather than having multiple subnets on one phase 2 tunnel).

The FortiGate uses the same SPI value to bring up the phase 2 negotiation for all of the subnets, while the Cisco ASA expects different SPI values for each of its configured subnets. Using multiple phase 2 tunnels on the FortiGate creates different SPI values for each subnet.

**To configure multiple phase 2 interfaces in route-based mode:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "First subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.142.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
    edit "Second subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.143.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
end
```

**To configure multiple phase 2 interfaces in policy-based mode:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase2
    edit "First subnet"
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.142.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
    edit "Second subnet"
```

```
        set phase1name "VPN to Cisco"
        set src-subnet 192.168.227.253 255.255.255.255
        set dst-subnet 10.143.0.0 255.255.254.0
    next
end
```

# Remote access

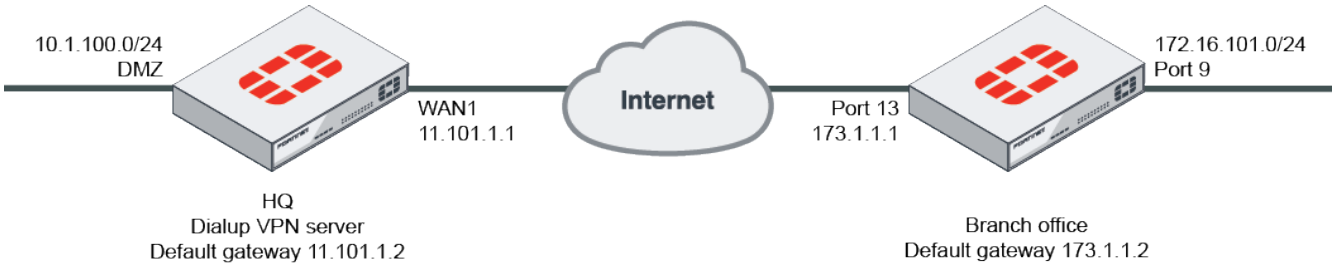
Remote access lets users connect to the Internet using a dialup connection over traditional POTS or ISDN telephone lines. Virtual private network (VPN) protocols are used to secure these private connections.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring remote access:


- FortiGate as dialup client on page 1177
- FortiClient as dialup client on page 1183
- Add FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1188
- Add LDAP user authentication on page 1189
- iOS device as dialup client on page 1190
- IPsec VPN with external DHCP service on page 1195
- L2TP over IPsec on page 1201
- Tunneled Internet browsing on page 1205


## FortiGate as dialup client

This is a sample configuration of dialup IPsec VPN and the dialup client. In this example, a branch office FortiGate connects via dialup IPsec VPN to the HQ FortiGate.




You can configure dialup IPsec VPN with FortiGate as the dialup client using the GUI or CLI.

**To configure IPsec VPN with FortiGate as the dialup client in the GUI:**

1. Configure the dialup VPN server FortiGate:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *The remote site is behind NAT*.
      v. Click *Next*.

b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   i. For *Incoming Interface*, select the incoming interface.
   ii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   iii. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
   iv. Click *Next*.
c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
   ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0/24*.
   iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0/24*.
   iv. Click *Create*.

2. Configure the dialup VPN client FortiGate:
a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   i. Enter a VPN name.
   ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
   iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
   iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *This site is behind NAT*.
   v. Click *Next*.
b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   i. For *IP Address*, enter *11.101.1.1*.
   ii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *port13*.
   iii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   iv. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
   v. Click *Next*.
c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface. In this example, it is *port9*.
   ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
   iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *10.1.100.0*.
   iv. Click *Create*.

**To configure IPsec VPN with FortiGate as the dialup client in the CLI:**

1. In the CLI, configure the user, user group, and firewall address. Only the HQ dialup server FortiGate needs this configuration. The address is an IP pool to assign an IP address for the dialup client FortiGate.

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "client_range"
        set type iprange
        set start-ip 10.10.10.1
```

```
        set end-ip 10.10.10.200
    next
end
```

2. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 11.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 11.101.1.2
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "port13"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 173.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 173.1.1.2
        set device "port13"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the internal interface and protected subnet. The internal interface connects to the internal network. Traffic from this interface will route out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "dmz"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "10.1.100.0"
        set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set vdom "root"
```

```
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "172.16.101.0"
        set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. In this example, PSK is used as the authentication method. Signature authentication is also an option.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "for_Branch"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "vpngroup"
        set net-device enable
        set assign-ip-from name
        set dns-mode auto
        set ipv4-split-include "10.1.100.0"
        set ipv4-name "client_range"
        set save-password enable
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ"
        set interface "port13"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set xauthtype client
        set authusr "vpnuser1"
        set authpasswd vpnuser1-password
        set remote-gw 11.101.1.1
        set psksecret sample
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "for_Branch_p2"
        set phase1 name "for_Branch"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ_p2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

6. Configure the static routes on the branch office FortiGate. The blackhole route is important to ensure that IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set device "to_HQ"
    next
    edit 3
        set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        set blackhole enable
        set distance 254
    next
end
```

7. Configure the firewall policy to allow the branch office to HQ network flow over the IPsec tunnel. This configuration only supports traffic from the branch office FortiGate to the HQ FortiGate. Traffic is dropped from the HQ FortiGate to the branch office FortiGate.
   a. Configure the HQ FortiGate.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "for_Branch"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

   b. Configure the branch office FortiGate.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound"
```

```
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ"
        set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

8. Run `diagnose` commands to check the IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on the HQ FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: for_Branch_0
version: 1
interface: wan1 5
addr: 11.101.1.1:500 -> 173.1.1.1:500
created: 1972s ago
xauth-user: vpnuser1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.10.1/255.255.255.252
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 184 5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2
direction: responder
status: established 1972-1972s ago = 10ms
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: 8046488e92499247-fbbb4f6dfa4952d0
lifetime/rekey: 86400/84157
DPD sent/recv: 00000020/00000000
```

   b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on the HQ FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=for_Branch_0 ver=1 serial=9 11.101.1.1:0->173.1.1.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/208 options
[00d0]=create_dev no-sysctlrgwy-chg
parent=for_Branch index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=8 txp=8 rxb=1216 txb=672
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=31
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=for_Branch_p2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
src: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
SA: ref=3 options=226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41297/0B replaywin=2048 seqno=9
esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000009 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43190/43200
dec: spi=747c10c6 esp=aes key=16 278c2430e09e74f1e229108f906603b0
ah=sha1 key=20 21dad76b008d1e8b8e53148a2fcbd013a277974a
enc: spi=ca646448 esp=aes key=16 b7801d125804e3610a556da7caefd765
ah=sha1 key=20 a70164c3094327058bd84c1a0c954ca439709206
dec:pkts/bytes=8/672, enc:pkts/bytes=8/1216
```

```
name=for_Branchver=1 serial=6 11.101.1.1:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/16 options[0010]=create_
dev
proxyid_num=0 child_num=1 refcnt=14 ilast=8523 olast=8523 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=0
```

**c.** Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command on the branch office FortiGate. The system should return the following:

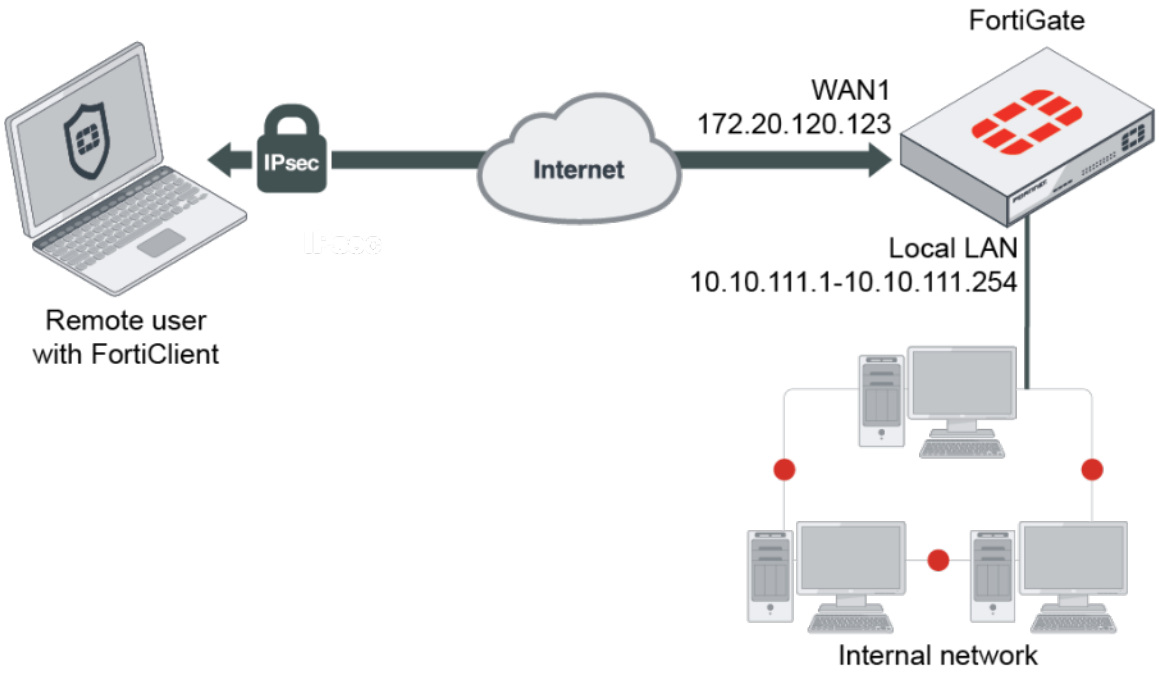
```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ
version: 1
interface: port13 42
addr: 173.1.1.1:500 -> 11.101.1.1:500
created: 2016s ago
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.10.1/255.255.255.252
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 93 5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2
direction: initiator
status: established 2016-2016s ago = 0ms
proposal: aes128-sha256
key: 8046488e92499247-fbbb4f6dfa4952d0
lifetime/rekey: 86400/84083
DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000020
```

**d.** Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on the branch office FortiGate. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=to_HQver=1 serial=7 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=18 olast=58 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=2 rxb=152 txb=168
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
SA: ref=6 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41015/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=3 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
dec: spi=ca646448 esp=aes key=16 b7801d125804e3610a556da7caefd765
ah=sha1 key=20 a70164c3094327058bd84c1a0c954ca439709206
enc: spi=747c10c6 esp=aes key=16 278c2430e09e74f1e229108f906603b0
ah=sha1 key=20 21dad76b008d1e8b8e53148a2fcbd013a277974a
dec:pkts/bytes=1/84, enc:pkts/bytes=2/304
npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=5 dec_npuid=2 enc_
npuid=2
```

## FortiClient as dialup client

This is a sample configuration of dialup IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client.




You can configure dialup IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client using the GUI or CLI.

If multiple dialup IPsec VPNs are defined for the same dialup server interface, each phase1 configuration must define a unique peer ID to distinguish the tunnel that the remote client is connecting to. When a client connects, the first IKE message that is in aggressive mode contains the client's local ID. FortiGate matches the local ID to the dialup tunnel referencing the same Peer ID, and the connection continues with that tunnel.

**To configure IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client on the GUI:**

1. Configure a user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *vpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *vpngroup* with the member *vpnuser1*.
2. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   a. Enter a VPN name.
   b. For *Template Type*, select *Remote Access*.
   c. For *Remote Device Type*, select *Client-based* > *FortiClient*.
   d. Click *Next*.
3. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   a. For *Incoming Interface*, select *wan1*.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
   d. From the *User Group* dropdown list, select *vpngroup*.
   e. Click *Next*.
4. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   a. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *lan*.
   b. Configure the *Local Address* as *local_network*.
   c. Configure the *Client Address Range* as *10.10.2.1-10.10.2.200*.

   d. Keep the default values for the *Subnet Mask*, *DNS Server*, *Enable IPv4 Split tunnel*, and *Allow Endpoint Registration*.
   e. Click *Next*.
5. Adjust the *Client Options* as needed, then click *Create*.
6. Optionally, define a unique Peer ID in the phase1 configuration:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and edit the just created tunnel.
   b. Click *Convert To Custom Tunnel*.
   c. In the *Authentication* section, click *Edit*.
   d. Under *Peer Options*, set *Accept Types* to *Specific peer ID*.
   e. In the *Peer ID* field, enter a unique ID, such as *dialup1*.
   f. Click *OK*.

**To configure IPsec VPN with FortiClient as the dialup client using the CLI:**

1. In the CLI, configure the user and group.

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface. The LAN interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel. Creating an address group for the protected network behind this FortiGate causes traffic to this network group to go through the IPsec tunnel.

```
config system interface
    edit "lan"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.111.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "local_subnet_1"
        set subnet 10.10.111.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "local_subnet_2"
        set subnet 10.10.112.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "local_network"
        set member "local_subnet_1" "local_subnet_2"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the WAN interface. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

4. Configure the client address pool. You must create a firewall address to assign an IP address to a client from the address pool.

```
config firewall address
    edit "client_range"
        set type iprange
        set comment "VPN client range"
        set start-ip 10.10.2.1
        set end-ip 10.10.2.200
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. In this example, PSK is used as the authentication method. Signature authentication is also an option.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "for_client"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype one
        set peerid "dialup1"
        set net-device enable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "vpngroup"
        set assign-ip-from name
        set ipv4-name "client_range"
        set dns-mode auto
        set ipv4-split-include "local_network"
        set save-password enable
        set psksecret your-psk
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

6. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "for_client"
        set phase1name "for_client"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

7. Configure the firewall policy to allow client traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
```

```
            set name "inbound"
            set srcintf "for_client"
            set dstintf "lan"
            set srcaddr "client_range"
            set dstaddr "local_network"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

**To configure FortiClient:**

1. In FortiClient, go to *Remote Access* and click *Add a new connection*.
2. Set the *VPN* to *IPsec VPN* and the *Remote Gateway* to the FortiGate IP address.
3. Set the *Authentication Method* to *Pre-Shared Key* and enter the key.
4. Expand *Advanced Settings* > *Phase 1* and in the *Local ID* field, enter *dialup1*.
5. Configure remaining settings as needed, then click *Save*.
6. Select the VPN, enter the username and password, then select *Connect*.

## Diagnose the connection

Run `diagnose` commands to check the IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.

1. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: for_client_0
version: 1
interface: port1 15
addr: 172.20.120.123:4500 ->172.20.120.254:64916
created: 37s ago
xauth-user: vpnuser1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.1.1/255.255.255.255
nat: me peer
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
id/spi: 1 b40a32d878d5e262/8bba553563a498f4
direction: responder
status: established 37-37s ago = 10ms
proposal: aes256-sha256
key: f4ad7ec3a4fcfd09-787e2e9b7bceb9a7-0dfa183240d838ba-41539863e5378381
lifetime/rekey: 86400/86092
DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000a0e
```

2. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
=
=
name=for_client_0 ver=1 serial=3 172.20.120.123:4500->172.20.120.254:64916
bound_if=15 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/984 options
[03d8]=npucreate_dev no-sysctlrgwy-chgrport-chg frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
parent=for_client index=0
```

```
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=3 olast=3 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=0 rxb=16402 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=64916
proxyid=for_client proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 add-route
src: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
dst: 0:10.10.1.1-10.10.1.1:0
SA: ref=4 options=2a6 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=42867/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000001 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43189/43200
dec: spi=36274d14 esp=aes key=16 e518b84b3c3b667b79f2e61c64a225a6
ah=sha1 key=20 9cceaa544ed042fda800c4fe5d3fd9d8b811984a
enc: spi=8b154deb esp=aes key=16 9d50f004b45c122e4e9fb7af085c457c
ah=sha1 key=20 f1d90b2a311049e23be34967008239637b50a328
dec:pkts/bytes=1/16330, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
npu_flag=02 npu_rgwy=172.20.120.254 npu_lgwy=172.20.120.123npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=2 enc_
npuid=0
name=for_clientver=1 serial=2 172.20.120.123:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=15 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/536 options
[0218]=npucreate_dev frag-rfcaccept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=0 child_num=1 refcnt=11 ilast=350 olast=350 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
```

## Add FortiToken multi-factor authentication

This configuration adds multi-factor authentication (MFA) to the FortiClient dialup VPN configuration (FortiClient as dialup client on page 1183). It uses one of the two free mobile FortiTokens that is already installed on the FortiGate.

### To configure MFA using the GUI:

1. Edit the user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and edit local user *vpnuser1*.
   b. Enter the user's *Email Address*.
   c. Enable *Two-factor Authentication* and select one mobile *Token* from the list,
   d. Enable *Send Activation Code* and select *Email*.
   e. Click *Next* and click *Submit*.
2. Activate the mobile token.
   a. When a FortiToken is added to user *vpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

### To configure MFA using the CLI:

1. Edit the user and user group:

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken <select mobile token for the option list>
        set email-to <user's email address>
```

```
        set passwd <user's password>
    next
end
```

2. Activate the mobile token.
   a. When a FortiToken is added to user *vpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

## Add LDAP user authentication

This configuration adds LDAP user authentication to the FortiClient dialup VPN configuration (FortiClient as dialup client on page 1183). You must have already generated and exported a CA certificate from your AD server.

### To configure LDAP user authentication using the GUI:

1. Import the CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
      If the *Certificates* option is not visible, enable it in *Feature Visibility*. See Feature visibility on page 761 for details.
   b. Click *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Set *Type* to *File*.
   d. Click *Upload* then find and select the certificate file.
   e. Click *OK*.
      The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   f. Optionally, rename the system generated *CA_Cert_1* to something more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

2. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Name* to *ldaps-server* and specify *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Specify *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Specify *Username* and *Password*.
   f. Enable *Secure Connection* and set *Protocol* to *LDAPS*.
   g. For *Certificate*, select *LDAP server CA LDAPS-CA* from the list.
   h. Click *OK*.
3. Add the LDAP user to the user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and edit the *vpngroup* group.
   b. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add the *ldaps-server* remote server.
   c. Click *OK*.

**To configure LDAP user authentication using the CLI:**

1. Import the CA certificate using the GUI.
2. Configure the LDAP user:

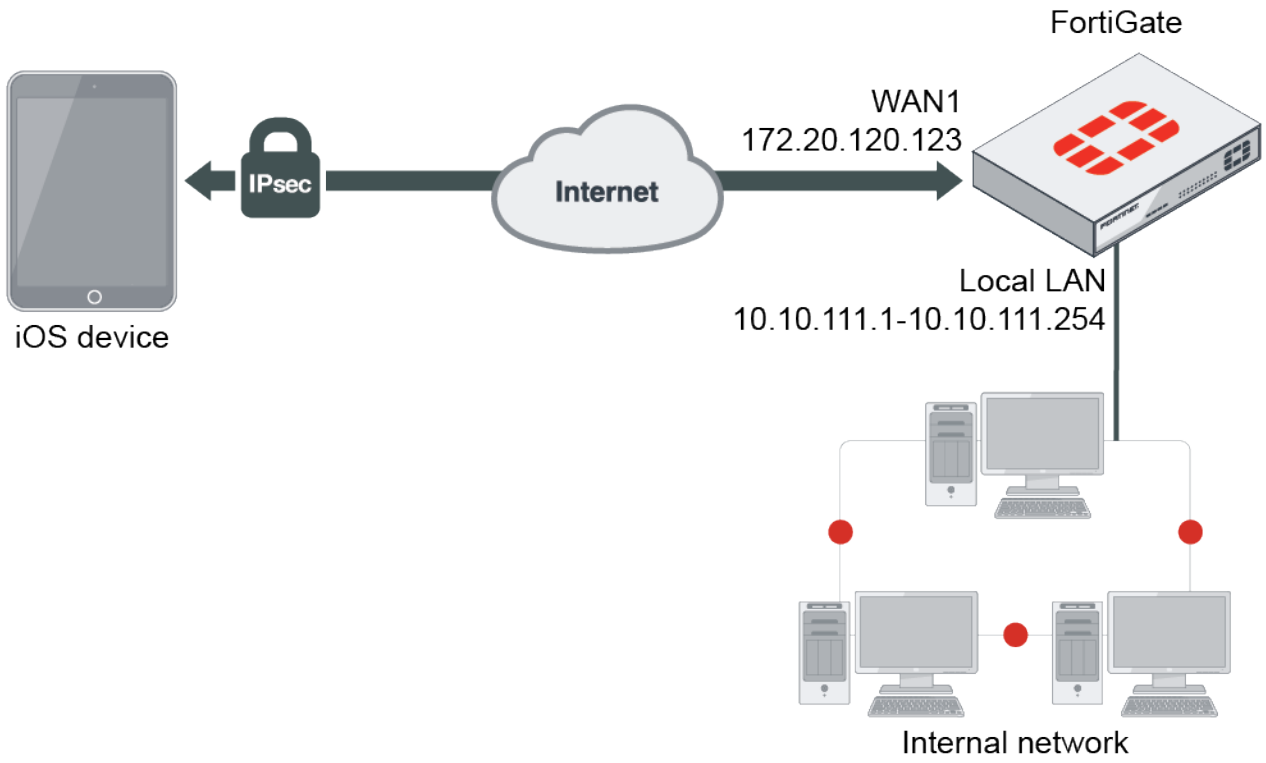
```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "cn=Users,dc=qa,dc=fortinet,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=Administrator,cn=users,DC=qa,DC=fortinet,DC=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "LDAPS-CA"
        set port 636
    next
end
```

3. Add the LDAP user to the user group:

```
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        append member "ldaps-server"
    next
end
```

## iOS device as dialup client

This is a sample configuration of dialup IPsec VPN with an iPhone or iPad as the dialup client.




You can configure dialup IPsec VPN with an iOS device as the dialup client using the GUI or CLI.

**To configure IPsec VPN with an iOS device as the dialup client on the GUI:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   a. Enter a VPN name.
   b. For *Template Type*, select *Remote Access*.
   c. For *Remote Device Type*, select *Native* > *iOS Native*.
   d. For *NAT Configuration*, set *No NAT Between Sites*.
   e. Click *Next*.
2. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   a. For *Incoming Interface*, select *wan1*.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
   d. From the *User Group* dropdown list, select *vpngroup*.
   e. Deselect *Require 'Group Name' on VPN client*.
   f. Click *Next*.
3. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   a. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *lan*.
   b. Configure the *Local Address* as *local_network*.
   c. Configure the *Client Address Range* as *10.10.2.1-10.10.2.200*.
   d. Keep the default values for the *Subnet Mask*, *DNS Server*, and *Enable IPv4 Split tunnel*.
   e. Click *Create*.

**To configure IPsec VPN with an iOS device as the dialup client using the CLI:**

1. In the CLI, configure the user and group.

```
config user local
    edit "vpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "vpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface. The LAN interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel. Creating an address group for the protected network behind this FortiGate causes traffic to this network group to go through the IPsec tunnel.

```
config system interface
    edit "lan"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.10.111.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "local_subnet_1"
        set ip 10.10.111.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "local_subnet_2"
        set ip 10.10.112.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall addrgrp
    edit "local_network"
        set member "local_subnet_1" "local_subnet_2"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the WAN interface. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

4. Configure the client address pool. You must create a firewall address to assign an IP address to a client from the address pool.

```
config firewall address
    edit "client_range"
        set type iprange
        set comment "VPN client range"
        set start-ip 10.10.2.1
        set end-ip 10.10.2.200
    next
end
```

5. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. In this example, PSK is used as the authentication method. Signature authentication is also an option.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "for_ios_p1"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256 aes256-md5 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 14 5 2
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "vpngroup"
        set assign-ip-from name
        set ipv4-name "client_range"
        set dns-mode auto
        set ipv4-split-include "local_network"
        set psksecret your-psk
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

6. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "for_ios_p2"
        set phase1name "for_ios_p1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set pfs disable
        set keepalive enable
    next
end
```

7. Configure the firewall policy to allow client traffic flow over the IPsec VPN tunnel.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "ios_vpn"
        set srcintf "for_ios_p1"
        set dstintf "lan"
        set srcaddr "ios_range"
        set dstaddr "local_network"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
    next
end
```

8. Configure the iOS device.
   a. In the iOS device, go to *Settings* > *General* > *VPN* and select *Add VPN Configuration*.
   b. Set the *Type* to *IPsec* and enter a *Description*. Set the *Server* to the FortiGate's Internet-facing interface, and enter the username in *Account*. Enter the user password, the preshared IPsec VPN secret, then select *Done*.
   c. Ensure that the IPsec VPN configuration is highlighted (indicated by a checkmark), and select the *Not Connected* button. The IPsec VPN connects with the user's credentials and secret. The status changes to *Connected*, and a VPN icon appears at the top of the screen.
9. Run `diagnose` commands to check the IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: for_ios_p1_0
version: 1
interface: port1 15
addr: 172.20.120.123:4500 -> 172.20.120.254:64916
created: 17s ago
xauth-user: u1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.2.1/255.255.255.255
nat: me peer
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 150/150/150 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
id/spi: 2 3c844e13c75591bf/80c2db92c8d3f602 direction: responder status: established
17-17s ago = 150ms proposal: aes256-sha256 key: 0032ea5ee160d775-51f3bf1f9909101b-
b89c7b5a77a07784-2c92cf9c921801ac lifetime/rekey: 3600/3312 DPD sent/recv:
00000000/00000000
```

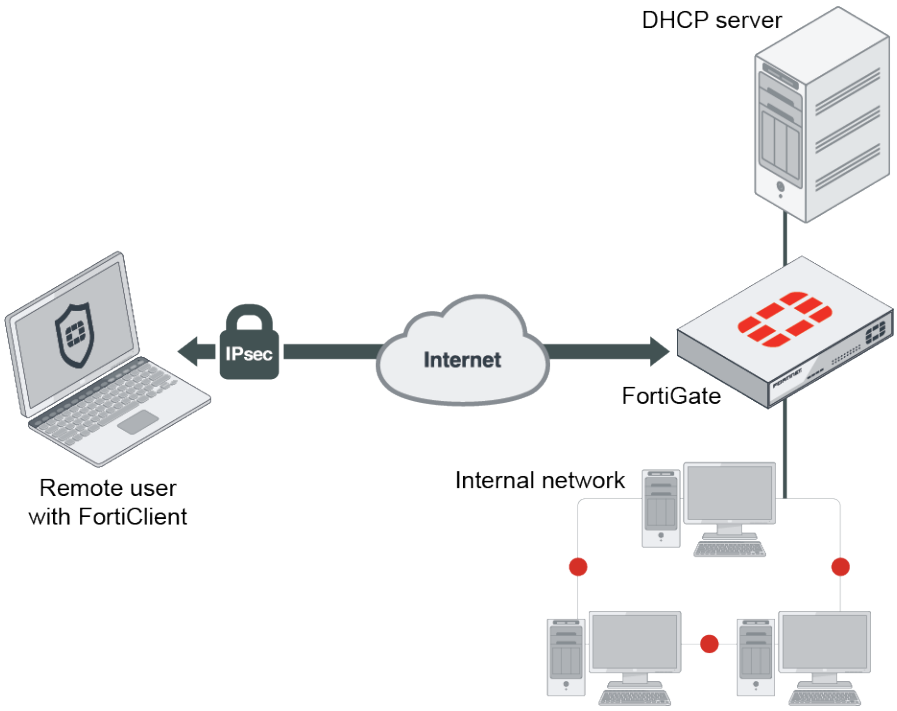
   b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
=
=
name=for_ios_p1_0 ver=1 serial=172.20.120.123:4500->172.20.120.254:64916
bound_if=15 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/984 options
[03d8]=npu create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg rport-chg frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
parent=for_ios_p1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=23 olast=23 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=64916
proxyid=for_ios_p1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 add-route
src: 0:10.10.111.0-10.10.111.255:0 dst: 0:10.10.2.1-10.10.2.1:0 SA: ref=3 options=a7
type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=3564/0B replaywin=2048
seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3587/3600 dec: spi=36274d15 esp=aes key=32
5a599d796f8114c83d6589284f036fc33bdf4456541e2154b4ac2217b6aec869
ah=sha1 key=20 f1efdeb77d6f856a8dd3a30cbc23cb0f8a3e0340
enc: spi=00b0d9ab esp=aes key=32
e9232d7a1c4f390fd09f8409c2d85f80362d940c08c73f245908ab1ac3af322f
ah=sha1 key=20 a3890d6c5320756291cad85026d3a78fd42a1b42
dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0 npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=172.20.120.254 npu_
lgwy=172.20.120.123 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

## IPsec VPN with external DHCP service

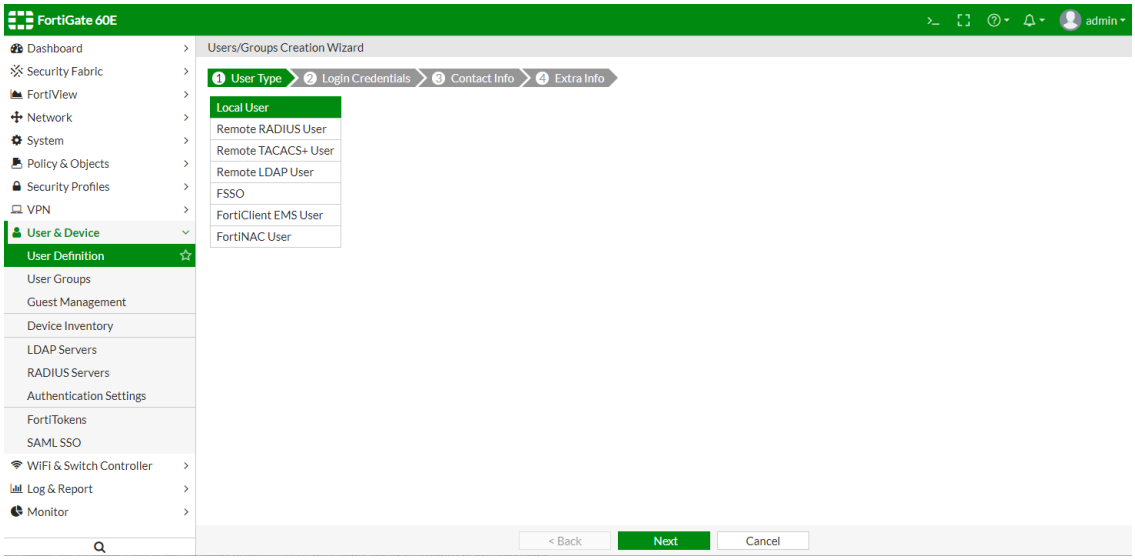
You can use an external DHCP server to assign IP addresses to your IPsec VPN clients. This is a common scenario found in enterprises where all DHCP leases need to be managed centrally.

In this example, the DHCP server assigns IP addresses in the range of 172.16.6.100 to 172.16.6.120. The server is attached to internal2 on the FortiGate and has an IP address of 192.168.3.70.

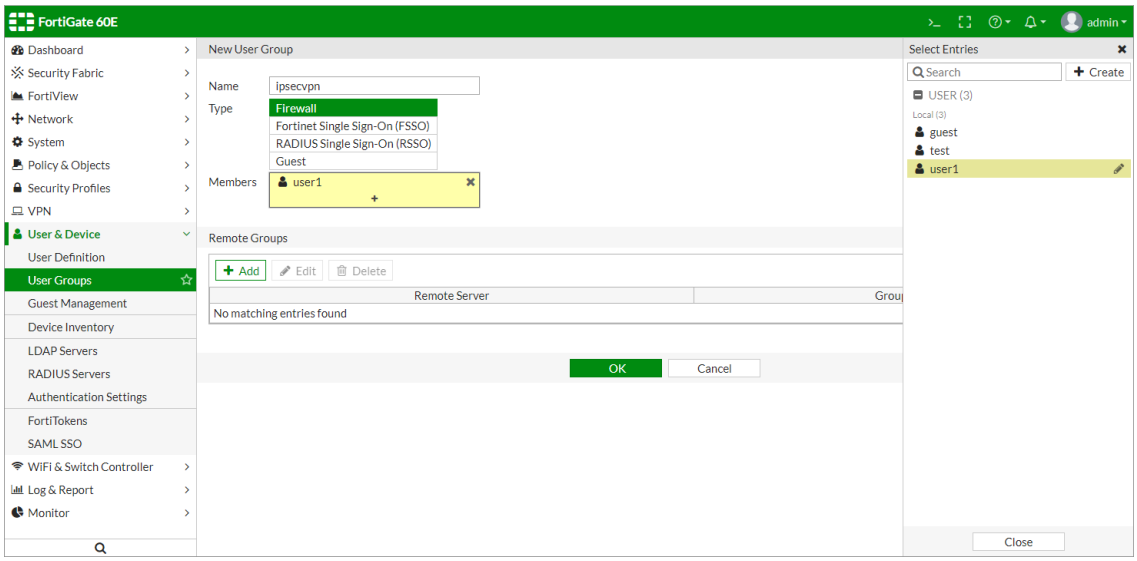


**To configure a DHCP server to assign IP addresses to IPsec VPN clients:**

1. Create a user group for remote users:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and click *Create New*.
   b. For *User Type*, select *Local User*.

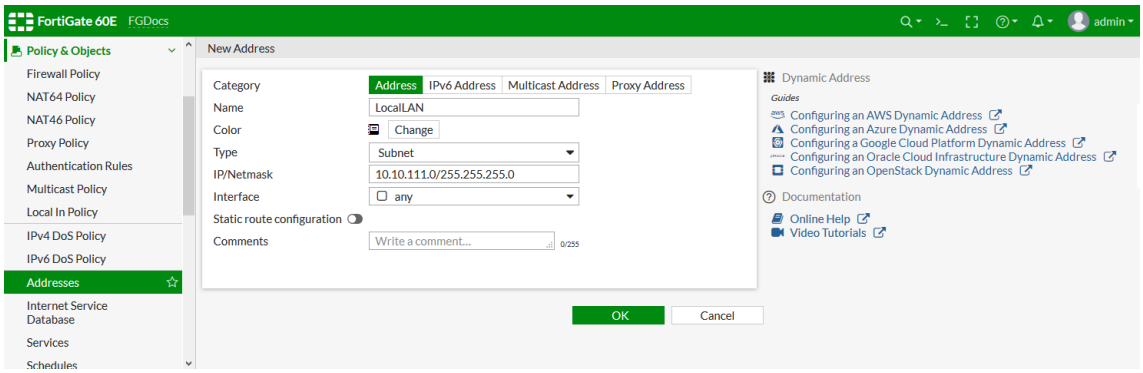



   c. Complete the wizard, and click *Submit*.
   d. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*..
   e. Create a *Firewall* user group for your remote users.
   f. For *Members*, add the user you just created.
   g. Click *OK*.



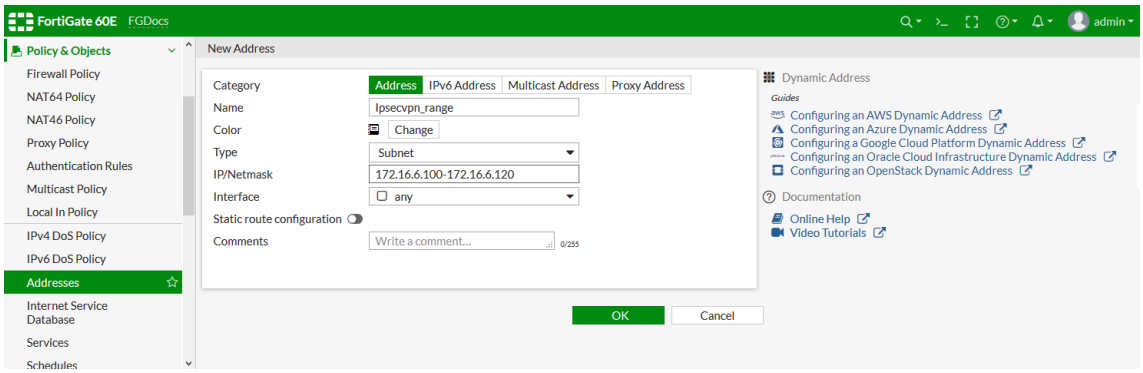

2. Add a firewall address for the local network and IPsec VPN client range:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
   b. Create a new *Subnet* address for the LAN, including the IP mask and local interface (*internal2*).

c. Click *OK*.




d. Create a new *IP Range* address for the IPsec VPN client range (`172.16.6.100–172.16.6.120`).

e. Click *OK*.

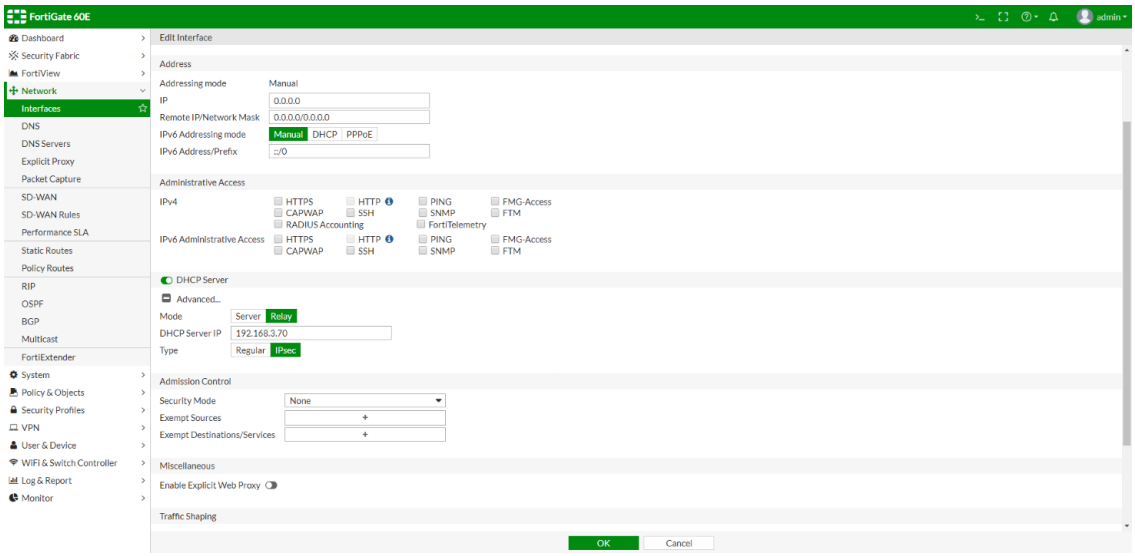



3. Configure the IPsec VPN using a VPN tunnel in the CLI:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "dhcp_vpn"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "wan1"
        set mode aggressive
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 5
        set xauthtype auto
        set authusrgrp "ipsecvpn"
        set psksecret <xxxxxx>
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end

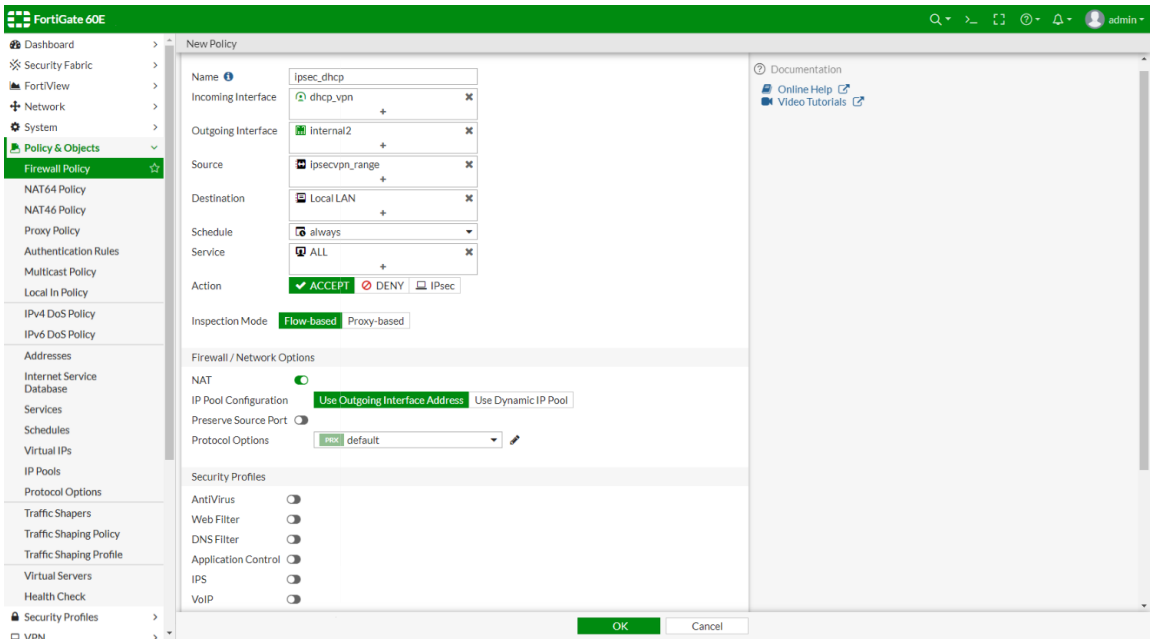
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "toclient"
        set phase1name "dhcp_vpn"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set dhgrp 5
        set dhcp-ipsec enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the IPsec VPN interface:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the newly created IPsec VPN interface.
   b. Enable the *DHCP Server*.
   c. Expand *Advanced* and change the *Mode* to *Relay*.
   d. Enter the external DHCP server IP address (`192.168.3.70`).
   e. Change the *Type* to *IPsec*.
   f. Click *OK*.



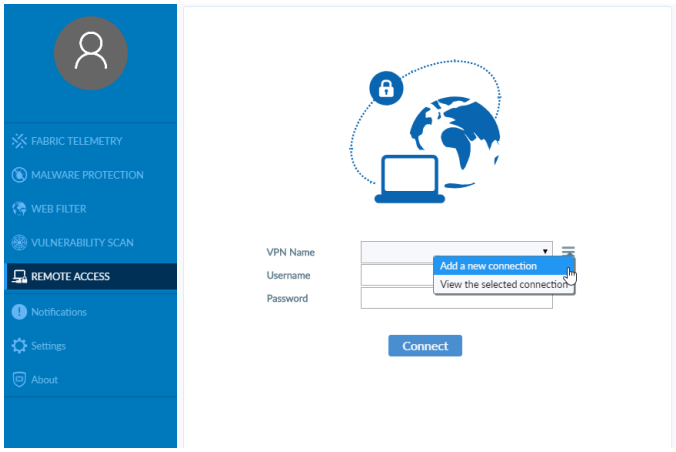

5. Create a security policy for access to the local network:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following parameters:
      i. Set the *Incoming Interface* to the tunnel interface created in step 3 (*dhcp_vpn*).
      ii. Set the *Outgoing Interface* (*internal2*).
      iii. Set the *Source* to the IPsec VPN client range defined in step 2 (*ipsecvpn_range*).
      iv. Set the *Destination* to the subnet address defined in step 2 (*Local LAN*).
      v. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.

c. Click *OK*.




6. Configure FortiClient:

a. In FortiClient, go to *REMOTE ACCESS* > *Add a new connection*.




b. Configure the following parameters:

i. Set the *VPN* type to *IPsec VPN*.

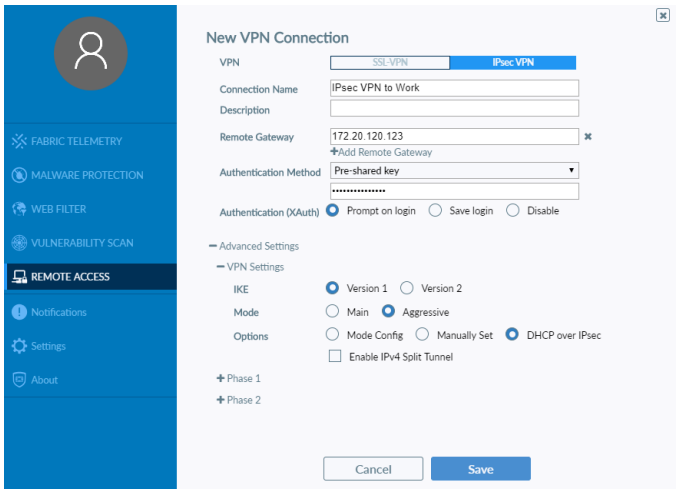
ii. Enter a connection name.

iii. Set the *Remote Gateway* to the FortiGate external IP address.

iv. Set the *Authentication Method* to *Pre-shared key* and enter the key below.

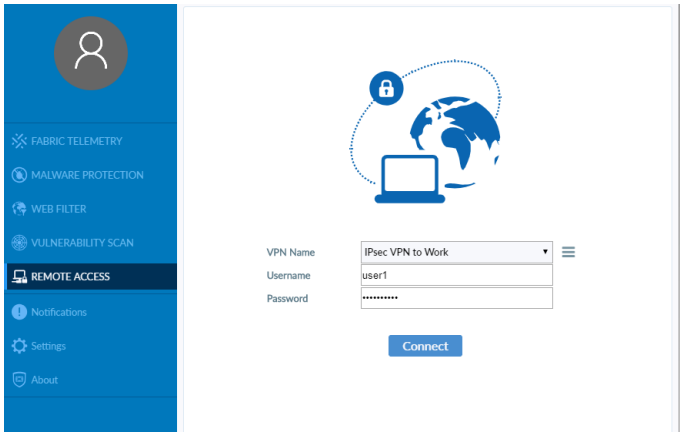
v. Expand the *Advanced Settings* > *VPN Settings* and for *Options*, select *DHCP over IPsec*.

**vi.** Click *Save*.




**c.** Select the new connection, and enter the user name and password.

**d.** Click *Connect*.




Once the connection is established, the external DHCP server assigns the user an IP address and FortiClient displays the connection status, including the IP address, connection duration, and bytes sent and received.

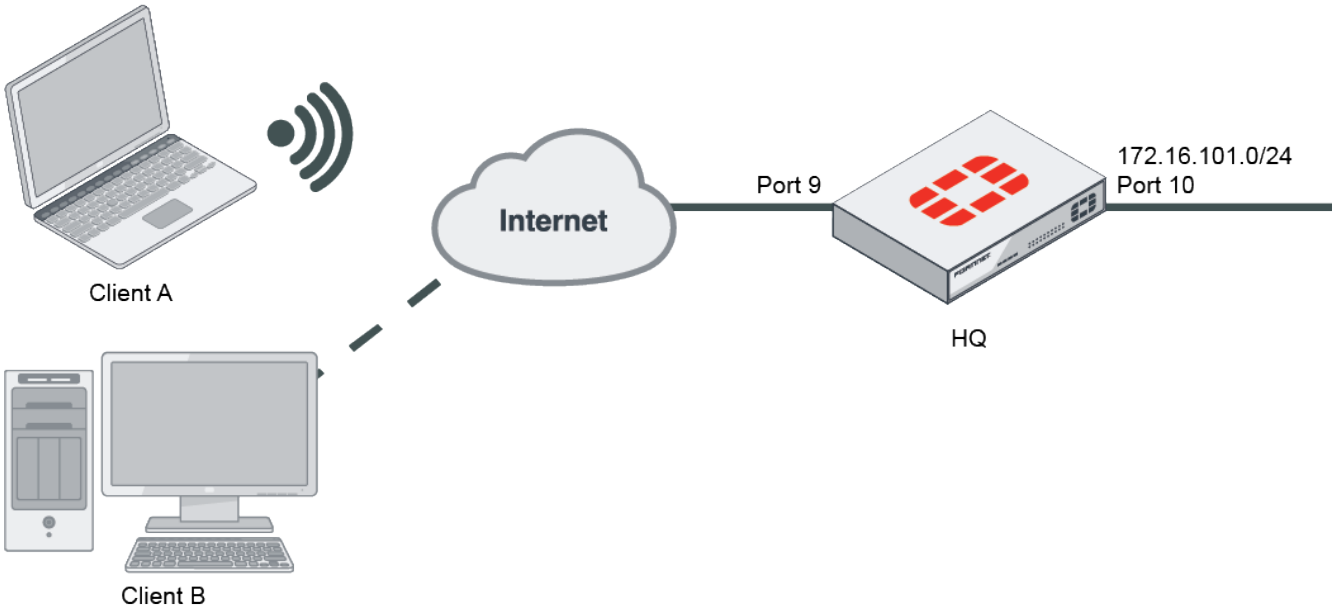
### Verification

1. In FortiOS, go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor* and verify that the tunnel *Status* is *Up*.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and verify the *Sent / Received* column displays the traffic flow through the tunnel.

## L2TP over IPsec

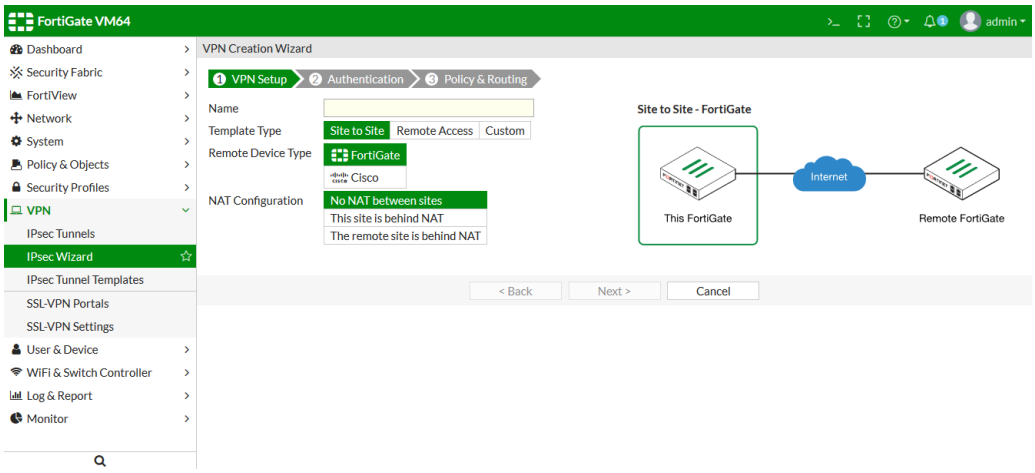
This is an example of L2TP over IPsec.

This example uses a locally defined user for authentication, a Windows PC or Android tablet as the client, and `net-device` is set to `enable` in the `phase1-interface` settings. If `net-device` is set to `disable`, only one device can establish an L2TP over IPsec tunnel behind the same NAT device.




**To configure L2TP over an IPsec tunnel using the GUI:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.




2. Enter a VPN *Name*. In this example, *L2tpoIPsec*.
3. configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
   a. For *Template Type*, select *Remote Access*.
   b. For *Remote Device Type*, select *Native* and *Windows Native*.
   c. Click *Next*.

4. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
   a. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port9*.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *your-psk* as the key.
   d. For *User Group*, select *L2tpusergroup*
   e. Click *Next*.
5. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
   a. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *port10*.
   b. Configure the *Local Address* as *172.16.101.0*.
   c. Configure the *Client Address Range* as *10.10.10.1-10.10.10.100*.
   d. Leave the *Subnet Mask* at its default value.
   e. Click *Create*.

**To configure L2TP over an IPsec tunnel using the CLI:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route on HQ.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface on HQ.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "L2tpoIPsec"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes256-md5 3des-sha1 aes192-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 2
        set net-device enable
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "L2tpoIPsec"
        set phase1name "L2tpoIPsec"
        set proposal aes256-md5 3des-sha1 aes192-sha1
        set pfs disable
```

```
        set encapsulation transport-mode
        set l2tp enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure a user and user group on HQ.

```
config user local
    edit "usera"
        set type password
        set passwd usera
        next
end
config user group
    edit "L2tpusergroup"
        set member "usera"
    next
end
```

4. Configure L2TP on HQ.

```
config vpn l2tp
    set status enable
    set eip 10.10.10.100
    set sip 10.10.10.1
    set usrgrp "L2tpusergroup"
end
```

5. Configure a firewall address that is applied in L2TP settings to assign IP addresses to clients once the L2TP tunnel is established.

```
config firewall address
    edit "L2TPclients"
        set type iprange
        set start-ip 10.10.10.1
        set end-ip 10.10.10.100
    next
end
```

6. Configure a firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "Bridge_IPsec_port9_for_l2tp negotiation"
        set srcintf "L2tpoIPsec"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "L2TP"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "L2tpoIPsec"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "L2TPclients"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
```

```
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

**To view the VPN tunnel list on HQ:**

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list

list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=L2tpoIPsec_0 ver=1 serial=8 22.1.1.1:0->10.1.100.15:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/216 options[00d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg
 parent=L2tpoIPsec index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=470 txp=267 rxb=57192 txb=12679
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=L2tpoIPsec proto=17 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 transport-mode add-route
  src: 17:22.1.1.1-22.1.1.1:1701
  dst: 17:10.1.100.15-10.1.100.15:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a6 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1470 expire=2339/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=10c esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=000001d6 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=3585/3600
  dec: spi=ca646443 esp=3des key=24 af62a0fffe85d3d534b5bfba29307aafc8bfda5c3f4650dc
       ah=sha1 key=20 89b4b67688bed9be49fb86449bb83f8c8d8d7432
  enc: spi=700d28a0 esp=3des key=24 5f68906eca8d37d853814188b9e29ac4913420a9c87362c9
       ah=sha1 key=20 d37f901ffd0e6ee1e4fdccebc7fdcc7ad44f0a0a
  dec:pkts/bytes=470/31698, enc:pkts/bytes=267/21744
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=10.1.100.15 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
----
name=L2tpoIPsec_1 ver=1 serial=a 22.1.1.1:4500->22.1.1.2:64916
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/472 options[01d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg rport-chg
 parent=L2tpoIPsec index=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=/0
stat: rxp=5 txp=4 rxb=592 txb=249
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=64916
proxyid=L2tpoIPsec proto=17 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 transport-mode add-route
  src: 17:22.1.1.1-22.1.1.1:1701
  dst: 17:22.1.1.2-22.1.1.2:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a6 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1454 expire=28786/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000005 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=28790/28800
  dec: spi=ca646446 esp=aes key=32
ea60dfbad709b3c63917c3b7299520ff7606756ca15d2eb7cbff349b6562172e
       ah=md5 key=16 2f2acfff0b556935d0aab8fc5725c8ec
  enc: spi=0b514df2 esp=aes key=32
a8a92c2ed0e1fd7b6e405d8a6b9eb3be5eff573d80be3f830ce694917d634196
       ah=md5 key=16 e426c33a7fe9041bdc5ce802760e8a3d
  dec:pkts/bytes=5/245, enc:pkts/bytes=4/464
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_selid=8 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0
```

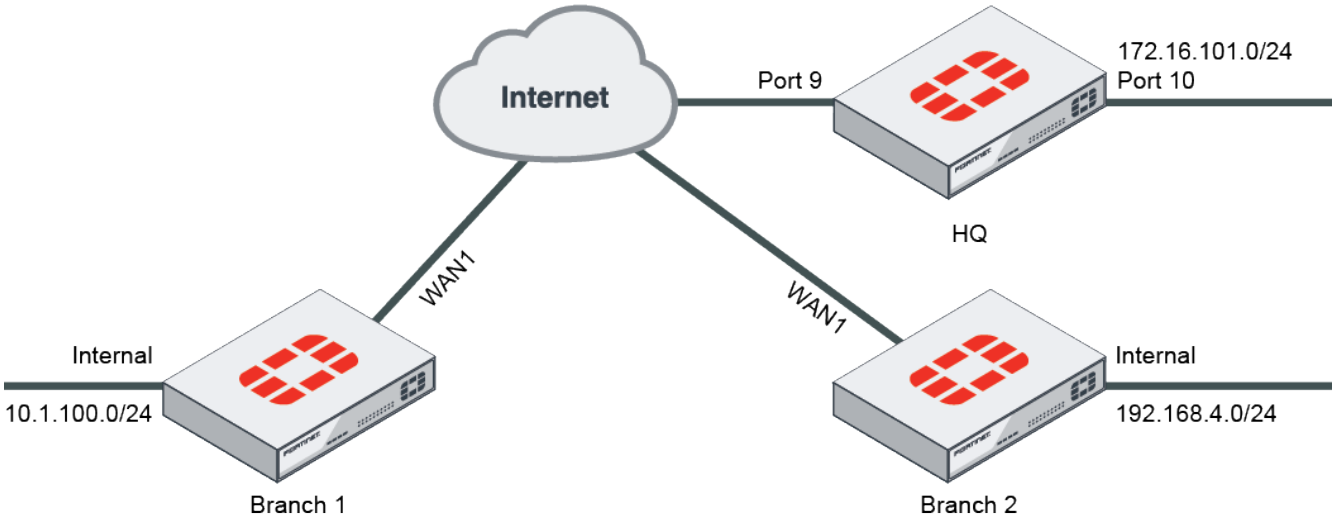
**To view the L2TP VPN status:**

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose vpn l2tp status
----
----

HQ # Num of tunnels: 2
----
Tunnel ID = 1 (local id), 42 (remote id)  to 10.1.100.15:1701
   control_seq_num = 2, control_rec_seq_num = 4,
   last recv pkt = 2
Call ID = 1 (local id), 1 (remote id), serno = 0, dev=ppp1,
      assigned ip = 10.10.10.2
      data_seq_num = 0,
      tx = 152 bytes (2), rx= 21179 bytes (205)
Tunnel ID = 3 (local id), 34183 (remote id)  to 22.1.1.2:58825
   control_seq_num = 2, control_rec_seq_num = 4,
   last recv pkt = 2
Call ID = 3 (local id), 18820 (remote id), serno = 2032472593, dev=ppp2,
      assigned ip = 10.10.10.3
      data_seq_num = 0,
      tx = 152 bytes (2), rx= 0 bytes (0)
----
--VD 0: Startip = 10.10.10.1, Endip = 10.10.10.100
        enforece-ipsec = false
----
```

## Tunneled Internet browsing

This is a sample configuration of tunneled internet browsing using a dialup VPN. To centralize network management and control, all branch office traffic is tunneled to HQ, including Internet browsing.



**To configure a dialup VPN to tunnel Internet browsing using the GUI:**

1. Configure the dialup VPN server FortiGate at HQ:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name, in this example, *HQ*.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *The remote site is behind NAT*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Incoming Interface*, select *port9*.
      ii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      iii. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
      iv. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *port10*.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *172.16.101.0*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *0.0.0.0/0*.
      iv. For *Internet Access*, select *Share Local*.
      v. For *Shared WAN*, select *port9*.
      vi. Click *Create*.
2. Configure the dialup VPN client FortiGate at a branch:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name, in this example, *Branch1* or *Branch2*.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, select *The remote site is behind NAT*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *IP Address*, select *Remote Device* and enter *22.1.1.1*.
      ii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select *wan1*.
      iii. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      iv. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter *sample* as the key.
      v. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select *internal*.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0/192.1684.0*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *0.0.0.0/0*.
      iv. For *Internet Access*, select *Use Remote*.
      v. Configure the *Local Gateway* to *15.1.1.1/13.1.1.1*.
      vi. Click *Create*.

**To configure a dialup VPN to tunnel Internet browsing using the CLI:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route on the FortiGate at HQ.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface configuration at HQ.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "HQ"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "HQ"
        set phase1name "HQ"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

3. Configure the firewall policy at HQ.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "HQ"
        set dstintf "port9" "port10"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0" "192.168.4.0"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the WAN interface and static route on the FortiGate at the branches.
   a. Branch1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

   b. Branch2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface configuration at the branches.
   a. Branch1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "branch1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "branch1"
        set phase1name "branch1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
        set src-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

**b.** Branch2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "branch2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "branch2"
        set phase1name "branch2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
        set src-subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

**6.** Configure the firewall policy at the branches.

**a.** Branch1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "branch1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound"
        set srcintf "branch1"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**b.** Branch2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound"
```

```
            set srcintf "internal"
            set dstintf "branch2"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 2
            set name "inbound"
            set srcintf "branch2"
            set dstintf "internal"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

7. Configure the static routes at the branches.
   a. Branch1.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 22.1.1.1/32
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
        set distance 1
    next
    edit 3
        set device "branch1"
        set distance 5
    next
end
```

   b. Branch2.

```
config router static
    edit 2
        set dst 22.1.1.1/32
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
        set distance 1
    next
    edit 3
        set device "branch2"
        set distance 5
    next
end
```

8. Optionally, view the VPN tunnel list on a branch with the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=branch1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu create_
dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1
```

```
proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=1661 rxb=65470 txb=167314
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2986
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=branch1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=697/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=13a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2368/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f7e esp=aes key=16 ecee0cd48664d903d3d6822b1f902fd2
       ah=sha1 key=20 2440a189126c222093ca9acd8b37127285f1f8a7
  enc: spi=6e3636fe esp=aes key=16 fdaa20bcc96f74ae9885e824d3efa29d
       ah=sha1 key=20 70c0891c769ad8007ea1f31a39978ffbc73242d0
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/16348, enc:pkts/bytes=313/55962
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

9. Optionally, view static routing table on a branch with the `get router info routing-table static` command:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
S*      0.0.0.0/0 [5/0] is directly connected, branch1
S*      22.1.1.1/32 [1/0] via 15.1.1.1, wan1
```

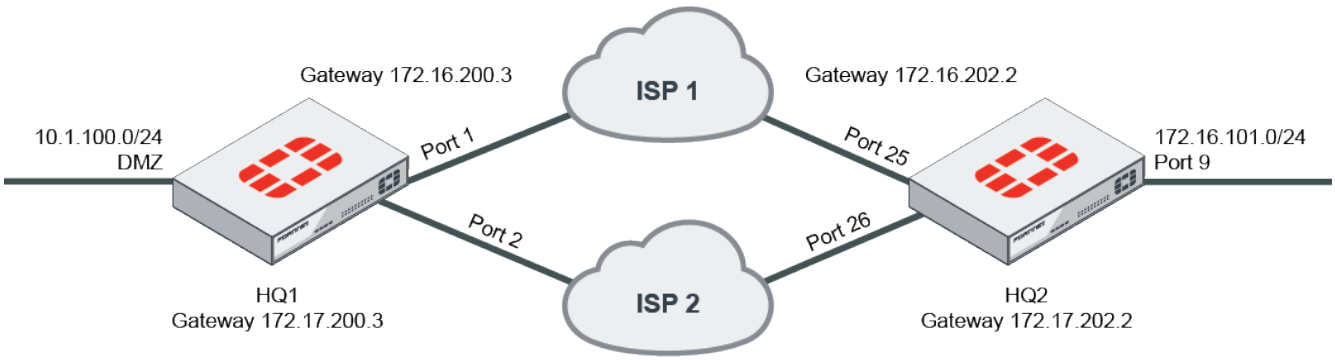
## Aggregate and redundant VPN

The following topics provide instructions on configuring aggregate and redundant VPNs:

- OSPF with IPsec VPN for network redundancy on page 1211
- IPsec VPN in an HA environment on page 1219
- Adding IPsec aggregate members in the GUI on page 1224
- Represent multiple IPsec tunnels as a single interface on page 1227
- IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing on page 1228
- Per packet distribution and tunnel aggregation on page 1234
- Redundant hub and spoke VPN on page 1238
- Weighted round robin for IPsec aggregate tunnels on page 1244

### OSPF with IPsec VPN for network redundancy

This is a sample configuration of using OSPF with IPsec VPN to set up network redundancy. Route selection is based on OSPF cost calculation. You can configure ECMP or primary/secondary routes by adjusting OSPF path cost.




Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

**To configure OSPF with IPsec VPN to achieve network redundancy using the CLI:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route.
   Each FortiGate has two WAN interfaces connected to different ISPs. The ISP1 link is for the primary FortiGate and the IPS2 link is for the secondary FortiGate.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "port1"
         set alias to_ISP1
         set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit "port2"
         set alias to_ISP2
         set ip 172.17.200.1 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
   config router static
      edit 1
         set gateway 172.16.200.3
         set device "port1"
      next
      edit 2
         set gateway 172.17.200.3
         set device "port2"
         set priority 100
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "port25"
         set alias to_ISP1
         set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
      next
      edit "port26"
         set alias to_ISP2
         set ip 172.17.202.1 255.255.255.0
      next
   end
   config router static
      edit 1
   ```

```
      set gateway 172.16.202.2
      set device "port25"
    next
    edit 2
      set gateway 172.17.202.2
      set device "port26"
      set priority 100
    next
  end
```

2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config system interface
     edit "dmz"
       set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
     next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config system interface
     edit "port9"
       set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
     next
   end
   ```
3. Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase-2 interface. On each FortiGate, configure two IPsec tunnels: a primary and a secondary.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
     edit "pri_HQ2"
       set interface "port1"
       set peertype any
       set net-device enable
       set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
       set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
       set psksecret sample1
     next
     edit "sec_HQ2"
       set interface "port2"
       set peertype any
       set net-device enable
       set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
       set remote-gw 172.17.202.1
       set psksecret sample2
     next
     end
   config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
     edit "pri_HQ2"
       set phase1name "pri_HQ2"
       set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
            aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
       set auto-negotiate enable
     next
     edit "sec_HQ2"
       set phase1name "sec_HQ2"
       set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
            aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
       set auto-negotiate enable
     next
   ```

```
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "pri_HQ1"
      set interface "port25"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
      set psksecret sample1
   next
   edit "sec_HQ1"
      set interface "port26"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.200.1
      set psksecret sample2
   next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "pri_HQ1"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
   edit "sec_HQ1"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

4. Configure an inbound and outbound firewall policy for each IPsec tunnel.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "pri_inbound"
      set srcintf "pri_HQ2"
      set dstintf "dmz"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "pri_outbound"
      set srcintf "dmz"
      set dstintf "pri_HQ2"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
```

```
    next
    edit 3
       set name "sec_inbound"
       set srcintf "sec_HQ2"
       set dstintf "dmz"
       set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
       set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
       set action accept
       set schedule "always"
       set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 4
       set name "sec_outbound"
       set srcintf "dmz"
       set dstintf "sec_HQ2"
       set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
       set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
       set action accept
       set schedule "always"
       set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
       set name "pri_inbound"
       set srcintf "pri_HQ1"
       set dstintf "port9"
       set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
       set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
       set action accept
       set schedule "always"
       set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
       set name "pri_outbound"
       set srcintf "port9"
       set dstintf "pri_HQ1"
       set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
       set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
       set action accept
       set schedule "always"
       set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 3
       set name "sec_inbound"
       set srcintf "sec_HQ1"
       set dstintf "port9"
       set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
       set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
       set action accept
       set schedule "always"
       set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 4
       set name "sec_outbound"
       set srcintf "port9"
```

```
      set dstintf "sec_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
    next
  end
```

5. Assign an IP address to the IPsec tunnel interface.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
  edit "pri_HQ2"
    set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
    set remote-ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
  next
  edit "sec_HQ2"
    set ip 10.10.11.1 255.255.255.255
    set remote-ip 10.10.11.2 255.255.255.255
  next
end
```

   b. Configure HQ2.

```
config system interface
  edit "pri_HQ1"
    set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
    set remote-ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
  next
  edit "sec_HQ1"
    set ip 10.10.11.2 255.255.255.255
    set remote-ip 10.10.11.1 255.255.255.255
  next
end
```

6. Configure OSPF.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config router ospf
  set router-id 1.1.1.1
  config area
    edit 0.0.0.0
    next
  end
  config ospf-interface
    edit "pri_HQ2"
      set interface "pri_HQ2"
      set cost 10
      set network-type point-to-point
    next
    edit "sec_HQ2"
      set interface "sec_HQ2"
      set cost 20
      set network-type point-to-point
    next
  end
  config network
    edit 1
      set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit 2
```

```
            set prefix 10.10.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 3
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
   config router ospf
      set router-id 2.2.2.2
      config area
         edit 0.0.0.0
         next
      end
      config ospf-interface
         edit "pri_HQ1"
            set interface "pri_HQ1"
            set cost 10
            set network-type point-to-point
         next
         edit "sec_HQ1"
            set interface "sec_HQ1"
            set cost 20
            set network-type point-to-point
         next
      end
      config network
         edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 2
            set prefix 10.10.11.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 3
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   end
```

**To check VPN and OSPF states using diagnose and get commands:**

1. Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: pri_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 10.10.10.1 -> 10.10.10.2
created: 1024s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/3 established 1/2 time 0/5/10 ms
   id/spi: 45 d184777257b4e692/e2432f834aaf5658 direction: responder status: established
        1024-1024s ago = 0ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: 9ed41fb06c983344-
        189538046f5ad204 lifetime/rekey: 86400/85105 DPD sent/recv: 00000003/00000000
        vd: root/0
name: sec_HQ2
```

```
version: 1
interface: port2 12
addr: 172.17.200.1:500 -> 172.17.202.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 10.10.11.1 -> 10.10.11.2
created: 346s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/10/15 ms
   id/spi: 48 d909ed68636b1ea5/163015e73ea050b8 direction: initiator status: established
        0-0s ago = 0ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: b9e93c156bdf4562-29db9fbafa256152
        lifetime/rekey: 86400/86099 DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000
```

2. Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=pri_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
     frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=/0
stat: rxp=102 txp=105 rxb=14064 txb=7816
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=3
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=pri_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42254/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=6a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000067 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42932/43200 dec: spi=1071b4ee esp=aes key=16
        032036b24a4ec88da63896b86f3a01db
      ah=sha1 key=20 3962933e24c8da21c65c13bc2c6345d643199cdf
   enc: spi=ec89b7e3 esp=aes key=16 92b1d85ef91faf695fca05843dd91626
      ah=sha1 key=20 2de99d1376506313d9f32df6873902cf6c08e454
   dec:pkts/bytes=102/7164, enc:pkts/bytes=105/14936
name=sec_HQ2 ver=1 serial=2 172.17.200.1:0->172.17.202.1:0
bound_if=12 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
     frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=3 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=110 txp=114 rxb=15152 txb=8428
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=3
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=sec_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42927/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=2 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200 dec: spi=1071b4ef esp=aes key=16
        bcdcabdb7d1c7c695d1f2e0f5441700a
      ah=sha1 key=20 e7a0034589f82eb1af41efd59d0b2565fef8d5da
   enc: spi=ec89b7e4 esp=aes key=16 234240b69e61f6bdee2b4cdec0f33bea
      ah=sha1 key=20 f9d4744a84d91e5ce05f5984737c2a691a3627e8
   dec:pkts/bytes=1/68, enc:pkts/bytes=1/136
```

3. Run the `HQ1 # get router info ospf neighbor` command. The system should return the following:

```
OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Address Interface
2.2.2.2 1. Full/ - 00:00:37 10.10.10.2 pri_HQ2
2.2.2.2 1. Full/ - 00:00:32 10.10.11.2 sec_HQ2
```

4. Run the `HQ1 # get router info routing-table ospf` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
O 172.16.101.0/24 [110/20] via 10.10.10.2, pri_HQ2 , 00:03:21
```

In case the primary tunnel is down after route convergence.

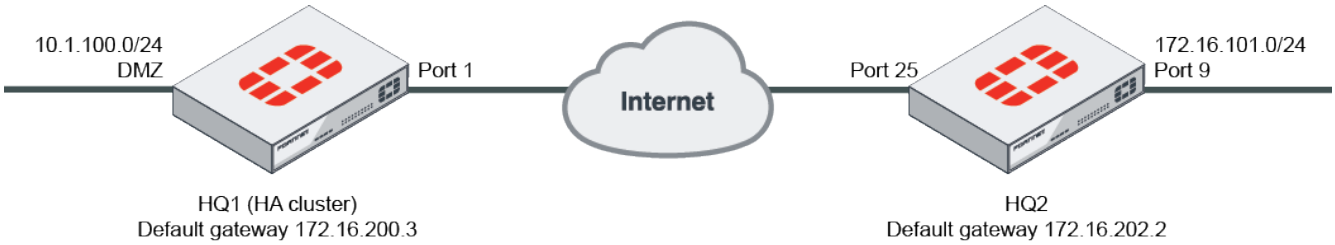
5. Run the `HQ1 # get router info routing-table ospf` command. The system should return the following:
```
Routing table for VRF=0
O 172.16.101.0/24 [110/110] via 10.10.11.2, sec_HQ2 , 00:00:01
```

## IPsec VPN in an HA environment

This is a sample configuration of site-to-site IPsec VPN in an HA environment.

For this example, set up HA as described in the HA topics. When setting up HA, enable the following options to ensure IPsec VPN traffic is not interrupted during an HA failover:

- `session-pickup` under HA settings.
- `ha-sync-esp-seqno` under IPsec phase1-interface settings.




You can configure IPsec VPN in an HA environment using the GUI or CLI.

In this example, the VPN name for HQ1 is "to_HQ2", and the VPN name for HQ2 is "to_HQ1".

### To configure IPsec VPN in an HA environment in the GUI:

1. Set up IPsec VPN on HQ1 (the HA cluster):
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, set *No NAT between sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. In the *IP address* field, enter *172.16.202.1*.
      iii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select port1.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter an example key.
      vi. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the local interface.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as *10.1.100.0/24*.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as *172.16.101.0/24*.
      iv. Click *Create*.

2. Set up IPsec VPN on HQ2:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard* and configure the following settings for *VPN Setup*:
      i. Enter a VPN name.
      ii. For *Template Type*, select *Site to Site*.
      iii. For *Remote Device Type*, select *FortiGate*.
      iv. For *NAT Configuration*, set *No NAT between sites*.
      v. Click *Next*.
   b. Configure the following settings for *Authentication*:
      i. For *Remote Device*, select *IP Address*.
      ii. In the *IP address* field, enter 172.16.200.1.
      iii. For *Outgoing Interface*, select port13.
      iv. For *Authentication Method*, select *Pre-shared Key*.
      v. In the *Pre-shared Key* field, enter an example key.
      vi. Click *Next*.
   c. Configure the following settings for *Policy & Routing*:
      i. From the *Local Interface* dropdown menu, select the desired local interface. In this example, it is port9.
      ii. Configure the *Local Subnets* as 172.16.101.0.
      iii. Configure the *Remote Subnets* as 10.1.100.0
      iv. Click *Create*.

**To configure IPsec VPN in an HA environment using the CLI:**

1. Configure HA. In this example, two FortiGates work in active-passive mode. The HA heartbeat interfaces are WAN1 and WAN2:
```
config system ha
   set group-name "FGT-HA"
   set mode a-p
   set password sample
   set hbdev "wan1" 50 "wan2" 50
   set session-pickup enable
   set priority 200
   set override-wait-time 10
end
```
2. Configure the WAN interface and default route. The WAN interface is the interface connected to the ISP. It can work in static mode (as shown in this example), DHCP, or PPPoE mode. The IPsec tunnel is established over the WAN interface.
   a. Configure HQ1:
```
config system interface
   edit "port1"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.3
      set device "port1"
   next
end
```
   b. Configure HQ2:
```
config system interface
```

```
    edit "port25"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
  config router static
    edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.202.2
      set device "port25"
    next
  end
```

3. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface. The internal interface connects to the corporate internal network. Traffic from this interface routes out the IPsec VPN tunnel.
   a. Configure HQ1:
   ```
   config system interface
     edit "dmz"
       set vdom "root"
       set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
     next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2:
   ```
   config system interface
     edit "port9"
       set vdom "root"
       set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
     next
   end
   ```
4. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface. This example uses PSK as the authentication method. You can also use signature authentication.
   a. Configure HQ1:
   ```
   config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
     edit "to_HQ2"
       set interface "port1"
       set peertype any
       set net-device enable
       set ha-sync-esp-seqno enable
       set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
       set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
       set psksecret sample
     next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2:
   ```
   config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
     edit "to_HQ1"
       set interface "port25"
       set peertype any
       set net-device enable
       set ha-sync-esp-seqno enable
       set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
       set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
       set psksecret sample
     next
   ```
5. Configure the IPsec phase2-interface:
   a. Configure HQ1:
   ```
   config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   ```

```
    edit "to_HQ2"
      set phase1name "to_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
  end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2:

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
      set phase1name "to_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

6. Configure static routes. Two static routes are added to reach the remote protected subnet. The blackhole route is important to ensure IPsec traffic does not match the default route when the IPsec tunnel is down.

**a.** Configure HQ1:

```
config router static
    edit 2
      set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      set device "to_HQ2"
    next
    edit 3
      set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      set blackhole enable
      set distance 254
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2:

```
config router static
    edit 2
      set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
      set device "to_HQ1"
    next
    edit 3
      set dst 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
      set blackhole enable
      set distance 254
    next
end
```

7. Configure two firewall policies to allow bi-directional IPsec traffic flow over the IPsec tunnel:

**a.** Configure HQ1:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
      set name "inbound"
      set srcintf "to_HQ2"
      set dstintf "dmz"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
    next
```

```
    edit 2
      set name "outbound"
      set srcintf "dmz"
      set dstintf "to_HQ2"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
      set name "inbound"
      set srcintf "to_HQ1"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
      set name "outbound"
      set srcintf "port9"
      set dstintf "to_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**8.** Use the following `diagnose` commands to check IPsec phase1/phase2 interface status including the sequence number on the secondary FortiGate. The `diagnose debug application ike -1` command is the key to troubleshoot why the IPsec tunnel failed to establish.

**a.** Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: to_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 5s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 2/2 time 0/0/0 ms
   id/spi: 12 6e8d0532e7fe8d84/3694ac323138a024 direction: responder status:
        established 5-5s ago = 0ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key: b3efb46d0d385aff-
        7bb9ee241362ee8d lifetime/rekey: 86400/86124 DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000
```

**b.** Run the `HQ1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0

name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=7 olast=87 ad=/0
```

```
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42927/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200 dec: spi=ef9ca700 esp=aes key=16
        a2c6584bf654d4f956497b3436f1cfc7
      ah=sha1 key=20 82c5e734bce81e6f18418328e2a11aeb7baa021b
   enc: spi=791e898e esp=aes key=16 0dbb4588ba2665c6962491e85a4a8d5a
      ah=sha1 key=20 2054b318d2568a8b12119120f20ecac97ab730b3
   dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

ESP seqno synced to primary FortiGate every five minutes, and big gap between primary and secondary to ensure that no packet is dropped after HA failover caused by tcp-replay. Check ESP sequence number synced on secondary FortiGate.

**c.** Run the `HQ1 # execute ha manage 0 admin` command.

**d.** Run the `HQ1-Sec # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0

name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=13 olast=274 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=27 type=00
        soft=0 mtu=1280 expire=42740/0B replaywin=2048
      seqno=47868c01 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200 dec: spi=ef9ca700 esp=aes key=16
        a2c6584bf654d4f956497b3436f1cfc7
      ah=sha1 key=20 82c5e734bce81e6f18418328e2a11aeb7baa021b
   enc: spi=791e898e esp=aes key=16 0dbb4588ba2665c6962491e85a4a8d5a
      ah=sha1 key=20 2054b318d2568a8b12119120f20ecac97ab730b3
   dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
```

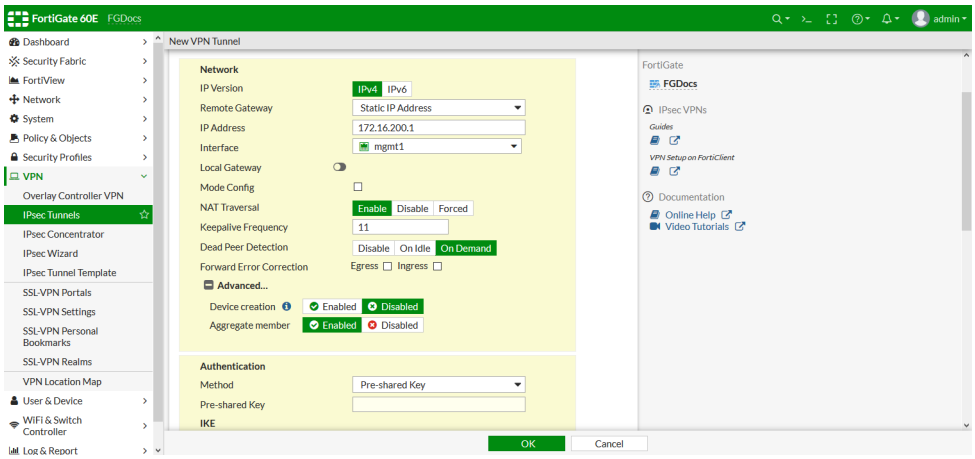
## Adding IPsec aggregate members in the GUI

You can configure the *Device creation* and *Aggregate member* settings in the *VPN Creation Wizard* so that a tunnel can be an IPsec aggregate member candidate. You can create a new IPsec aggregate within the IPsec tunnels dropdown list. You can also monitor the traffic for each aggregate member.

**To configure an IPsec tunnel with aggregate members in the GUI:**

1. Create the IPsec aggregate tunnel candidate:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
   b. Enter the tunnel name.
   c. Set *Template Type* to *Custom*, then click *Next*.

d. In the *Network* section, expand the *Advanced* field and enable *Aggregate member*.




e. Configure the other settings as needed.

f. Click *OK*.

2. Repeat step 1 to create more tunnel candidates as needed.

3. Create the IPsec aggregate:

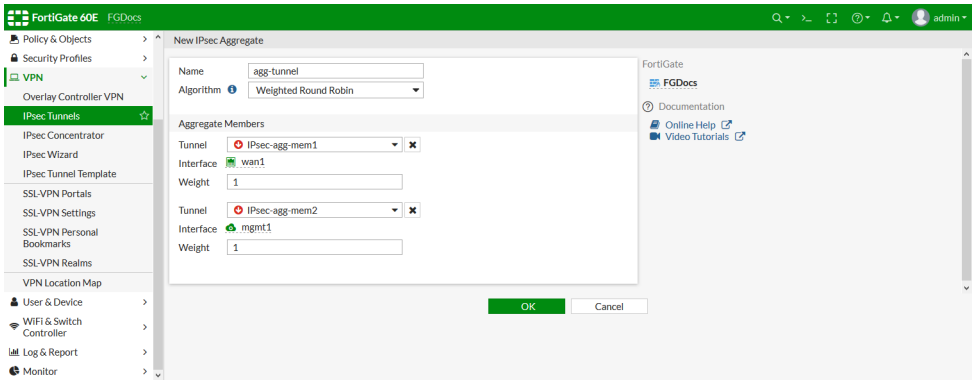
a. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and click *Create New* > *IPsec Aggregate*.

b. Enter an aggregate name.

c. Select a load balancing algorithm. The options include: *Weighted Round Robin* (default), *L3*, *L4*, and *Redundant*. Round-robin is available in the CLI.

d. Add the tunnels that you created in steps 1 and 2. If required, enter weights for each tunnel.

e. Click *OK*.

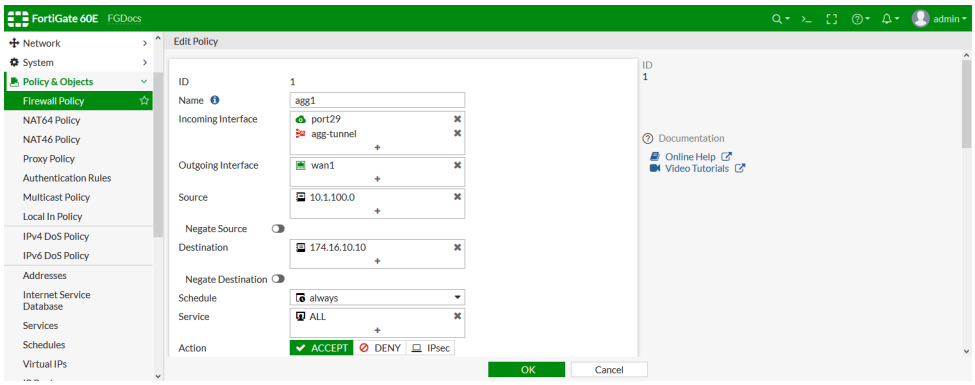



4. Configure the firewall policy:

a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.

b. Create a new policy or edit an existing policy.

c. Set *Incoming Interface* to the aggregate tunnel created in step 3.




d. Configure the other settings as needed.

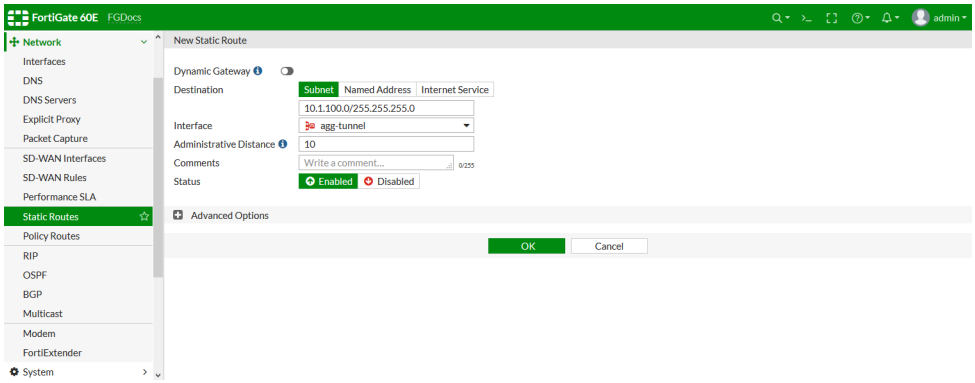
e. Click *OK*.

5. Configure the static route:

a. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*.

b. Click *Create New* > *IPv4 Static Route*.

c. Set *Interface* to the IPsec aggregate tunnel.



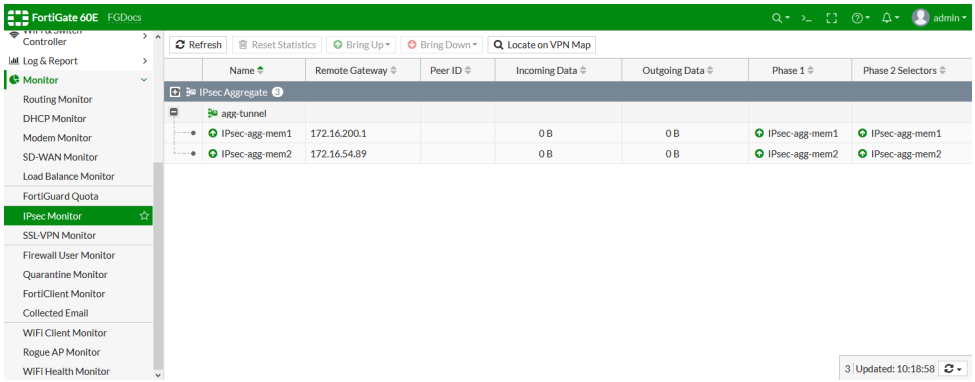

d. Configure the other settings as needed.

e. Click *OK*.

6. Monitor the traffic:

a. Go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor*.

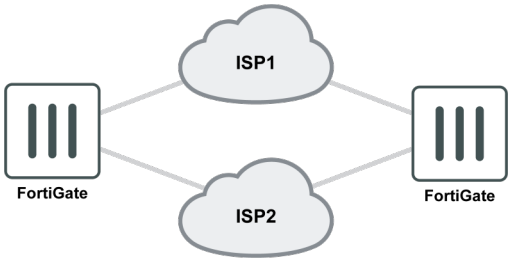
b. Expand the IPsec aggregate tunnel (*agg-tunnel*) to view statistics for each aggregate member.



## Represent multiple IPsec tunnels as a single interface

Use this function to create a static aggregate interface using IPsec tunnels as members, with traffic load balanced between the members. You can assign an IP address to the aggregate interface, dynamic routing can run on the interface, and the interface can be a member interface in SD-WAN.

The supported load balancing algorithms are: L3, L4, round-robin (default), and redundant.




**To configure multiple IPsec tunnels as a single interface :**

1. Create a site to site VPN phase1 interface with net-device disabled:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit tunnel1
        set interface port1
        set net-device disable
        set remote-ge 172.16.100.1
        set psksecret sample
    next
    edit tunnel2
        set interface port2
        set net-device disable
        set remote-ge 172.31.1.1
        set psksecret sample
    next
end
```

2. Configure IPsec aggregation:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit agg1
        set member tunnel1 tunnel2
    next
end
```

3. Configure a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcaddr all
        set srcintf port10
        set dstaddr all
        set dstintf agg1
        set schedule always
        set action accept
        set service ALL
    next
end
```

4. Configure a static route:

```
config router static
    edit 0
        set device agg1
    next
end
```

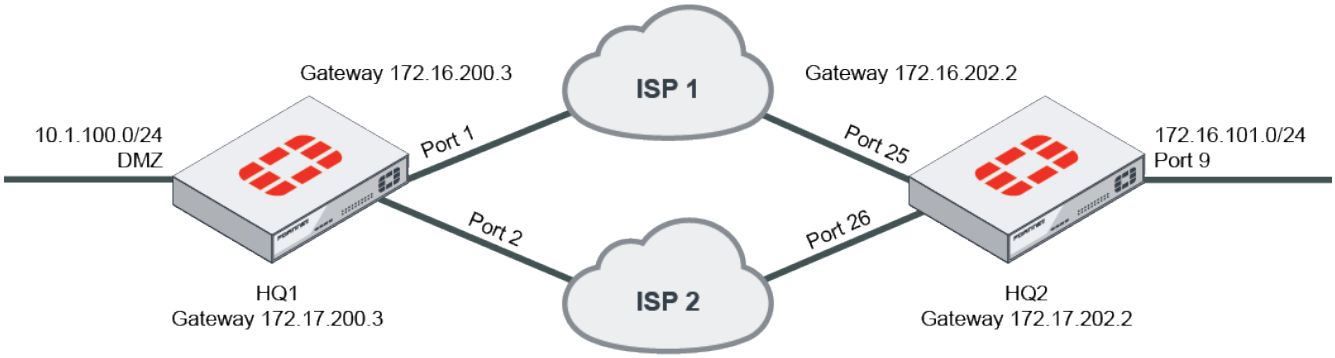
**To debug the IPsec aggregation list:**

```
#diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list
    agg1 algo=RR member=2 run_tally=2
    members:
        tunnel1
        tunnel2
```

## IPsec aggregate for redundancy and traffic load-balancing

This is a sample configuration of using IPsec aggregate to set up redundancy and traffic load-balancing. The the following options are available:

- Multiple site-to-site IPsec VPN `(net-device disable)` tunnel interfaces as member of `ipsec-aggregate`.
- The supported load balancing algorithms are: L3, L4, round-robin (default), and redundant.




Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

**To configure IPsec aggregate to achieve redundancy and traffic load-balancing using the CLI:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and static route. Each FortiGate has two WAN interfaces connected to different ISPs. The ISP1 link is for the primary FortiGate and the IPS2 link is for the secondary FortiGate.
   a. Configure HQ1.

```
config system interface
   edit "port1"
      set alias to_ISP1
      set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
   next
   edit "port2"
      set alias to_ISP2
      set ip 172.17.200.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
```

```
    edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.3
      set device "port1"
    next
    edit 2
      set gateway 172.17.200.3
      set device "port2"
      set priority 100
    next
  end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
  config system interface
    edit "port25"
      set alias to_ISP1
      set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port26"
      set alias to_ISP2
      set ip 172.17.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
  config router static
    edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.202.2
      set device "port25"
    next
    edit 2
      set gateway 172.17.202.2
      set device "port26"
      set priority 100
    next
  end
```

2. Configure the internal (protected subnet) interface.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
  config system interface
    edit "dmz"
      set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
  config system interface
    edit "port9"
      set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
```

3. Configure the IPsec phase-1 and phase-2 interfaces. On each FortiGate, configure two site-to-site phase-1 interfaces with `net-device disable`.

**a.** Configure HQ1.

```
  config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "pri_HQ2"
      set interface "port1"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
```

```
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set psksecret sample1
    next
    edit "sec_HQ2"
      set interface "port2"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.202.1
      set psksecret sample2
    next
    end
  config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "pri_HQ2"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "sec_HQ2"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ2"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
  end
```

**b.** Configure HQ2.

```
  config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "pri_HQ1"
      set interface "port25"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
      set psksecret sample1
    next
    edit "sec_HQ1"
      set interface "port26"
      set peertype any
      set net-device disable
      set aggregate-member enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.17.200.1
      set psksecret sample2
    next
  end
  config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "pri_HQ1"
      set phase1name "pri_HQ1"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "sec_HQ1"
      set phase1name "sec_HQ1"
```

```
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
   next
end
```

4. Configure ipsec-aggregate.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config system ipsec-aggregate
      edit "agg_HQ2"
         set member "pri_HQ2" "sec_HQ2"
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config system ipsec-aggregate
      edit "agg_HQ1"
         set member "pri_HQ" "sec_HQ1"
      next
   end
   ```
5. Configure the firewall policy.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config firewall policy
      edit 1
         set name "inbound"
         set srcintf "agg_HQ2"
         set dstintf "dmz"
         set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
         set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
         set action accept
         set schedule "always"
         set service "ALL"
      next
      edit 2
         set name "outbound"
         set srcintf "dmz"
         set dstintf "agg_HQ2"
         set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
         set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
         set action accept
         set schedule "always"
         set service "ALL"
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config firewall policy
      edit 1
         set name "inbound"
         set srcintf "agg_HQ1"
         set dstintf "port9"
         set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
         set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
         set action accept
         set schedule "always"
         set service "ALL"
      next
      edit 2
   ```

```
      set name "outbound"
      set srcintf "port9"
      set dstintf "agg_HQ1"
      set srcaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

6. Assign an IP address to the `ipsec-aggregate` interface. In this example, OSPF runs over the `ipsec-aggregate` interface. No IP address is required for the static route HQ1.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "agg_HQ2"
         set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
         set remote-ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
      next
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config system interface
      edit "agg_HQ1"
         set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
         set remote-ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
      next
   end
   ```
7. Configure OSPF.
   a. Configure HQ1.
   ```
   config router ospf
      set router-id 1.1.1.1
      config area
         edit 0.0.0.0
         next
      end
      config network
         edit 1
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 2
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
         next
      end
   end
   ```
   b. Configure HQ2.
   ```
   config router ospf
      set router-id 2.2.2.2
      config area
         edit 0.0.0.0
         next
      end
      config network
         edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
         next
         edit 2
   ```

```
        set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
      next
    end
end
```

8. Run `diagnose` commands.
   a. Run the `diagnose vpn ike gateway list` command. The system should return the following:

```
vd: root/0
name: pri_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port1 11
addr: 172.16.200.1:500 -> 172.16.202.1:500
created: 1520s ago
IKE SA: created 1/2 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
  id/spi: 173 dcdede154681579b/e32f4c48c4349fc0 direction: responder status:
       established 1498-1498s ago = 10ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key:
       d7230a68d7b83def-588b94495cfa9d38 lifetime/rekey: 86400/84631 DPD sent/recv:
       0000000d/00000006
vd: root/0
name: sec_HQ2
version: 1
interface: port2 12
addr: 172.17.200.1:500 -> 172.17.202.1:500
created: 1520s ago
IKE SA: created 1/2 established 1/1 time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 2/2 established 1/1 time 0/0/0 ms
  id/spi: 174 a567bd7bf02a04b5/4251b6254660aee2 direction: responder status:
       established 1498-1498s ago = 10ms proposal: aes128-sha256 key:
       9f44f500c28d8de6-febaae9d1e6a164c lifetime/rekey: 86400/84631 DPD sent/recv:
       00000008/0000000c
```

   b. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
name=sec_HQ2 ver=1 serial=2 172.17.200.1:0->172.17.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-rfc
     run_state=1 accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=7 ilast=5 olast=5 ad=/0
stat: rxp=39 txp=40 rxb=5448 txb=2732
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=15
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=sec_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
       soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41230/0B replaywin=2048
    seqno=29 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000028 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200 dec: spi=1071b4f9 esp=aes key=16
       1f4dbb78bea8e97650b52d8170b5ece7
    ah=sha1 key=20 cd9bf2de0f49296cf489dd915d7baf6d78bc8f12
  enc: spi=ec89b7ee esp=aes key=16 0546efecd0d1b9ba5944f635896e4404
    ah=sha1 key=20 34599bc7dc25e1ce63ac9615bd50928ce0667dc8
  dec:pkts/bytes=39/2796, enc:pkts/bytes=40/5456
name=pri_HQ2 ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/512 options[0200]=frag-
     rfc run_state=1 accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=5 ilast=15 olast=15 ad=/0
stat: rxp=38 txp=39 rxb=5152 txb=2768
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=20
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=pri_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
```

```
src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227 type=00
     soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41231/0B replaywin=2048
  seqno=28 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000027 itn=0
life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200 dec: spi=1071b4f8 esp=aes key=16
     142cce377b3432ba41e64128ade6848c
  ah=sha1 key=20 20e64947e2397123f561584321adc0e7aa0c342d
enc: spi=ec89b7ed esp=aes key=16 2ec13622fd60dacce3d28ebe5fe7ab14
  ah=sha1 key=20 c1787497508a87f40c73c0db0e835c70b3c3f42d
dec:pkts/bytes=38/2568, enc:pkts/bytes=39/5432
```

c. Run the `diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list` command. The system should return the following:

```
agg_HQ2 algo=RR member=2 run_tally=2
members:
  pri_HQ2
  sec_HQ2
```

d. Run the `get router info ospf neighbor` command. The system should return the following:

```
OSPF process 0, VRF 0:
Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Address Interface
2.2.2.2 1. Full/ - 00:00:34 10.10.10.2 agg1_HQ2
```

e. Run the `get router info routing-table ospf` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
O 172.16.101.0/24 [110/20] via 10.10.10.2, agg1_HQ2 , 00:18:43
```

## Per packet distribution and tunnel aggregation

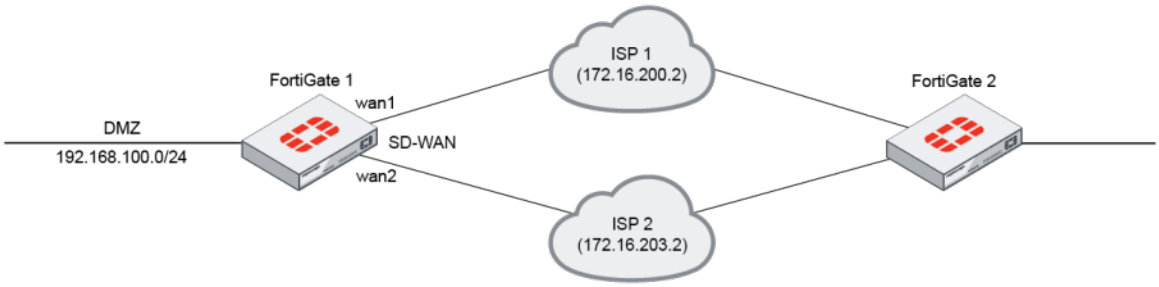
This is a sample configuration of aggregating IPsec tunnels by using per-packet load-balancing.



This feature only allows static and DDNS tunnels to be members.

Dynamic (dialup) tunnels are not allowed because dialup instances tend to have different locations and hence different routing. This conflicts with the rule that all the members of an aggregate must have the same routing.

For example, a customer has two ISP connections, wan1 and wan2. On each FortiGate, two IPsec VPN interfaces are created. Next, an `ipsec-aggregate` interface is created and added as an SD-WAN member.




### Configuring FortiGate 1

**To create two IPsec VPN interfaces:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
```

```
        set net-device disable
        set aggregate-member enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.201.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set aggregate-member enable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.2
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vd1-p1"
        set phase1name "vd1-p1"
    next
    edit "vd1-p2"
        set phase1name "vd1-p2"
    next
end
```

**To create an IPsec aggregate interface:**

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit "agg1"
        set member "vd1-p1" "vd1-p2"
        set algorithm L3
    next
end

config system interface
    edit "agg1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.11.1 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set remote-ip 172.16.11.2 255.255.255.255
end
```

**To configure the firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf ""virtual-wan-link""
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure SD-WAN:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "agg1"
            set gateway 172.16.11.2
        next
    end
end
```

## Configuring FortiGate 2

**To create two IPsec VPN interfaces:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "vd2-p1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
    edit "vd2-p2"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes256-sha256
        set dhgrp 14
        set remote-gw 172.16.203.1
        set psksecret ftnt1234
    next
end
```

```
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "vd2-p1"
        set phase1name "vd2-p1"
    next
    edit "vd2-p2"
        set phase1name "vd2-p2"
    next
end
```

**To create an IPsec aggregate interface:**

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit "agg2"
        set member "vd2-p1" "vd2-p2"
```

```
        set algorithm L3
    next
end
```

```
config system interface
    edit "agg2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.16.11.2 255.255.255.255
        set allowaccess ping
        set remote-ip 172.16.11.1 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

**To configure the firewall policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "1"
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf ""virtual-wan-link""
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To configure SD-WAN on FortiGate 2:**

```
config system sdwan
    set status enable
    config members
        edit 1
            set interface "agg2"
            set gateway 172.16.11.1
        next
    end
end
```

## Related diagnose commands

**To display aggregate IPsec members:**

```
# diagnose sys ipsec-aggregate list
agg1 algo=L3 member=2 run_tally=2
members:
        vd1-p1
        vd1-p2
```

**To check the VPN status:**

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
```

```
----------------------------------------------------
name=vd1-p1 ver=1 serial=2 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.201.2:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=10 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/520 options[0208]=npu frag-rfc
run_state=1 accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=5 ilast=15 olast=676 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd1-p1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=1 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----------------------------------------------------
name=vd1-p2 ver=1 serial=3 172.16.203.1:0->172.16.202.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=28 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/520 options[0208]=npu frag-rfc
run_state=1 accept_traffic=1

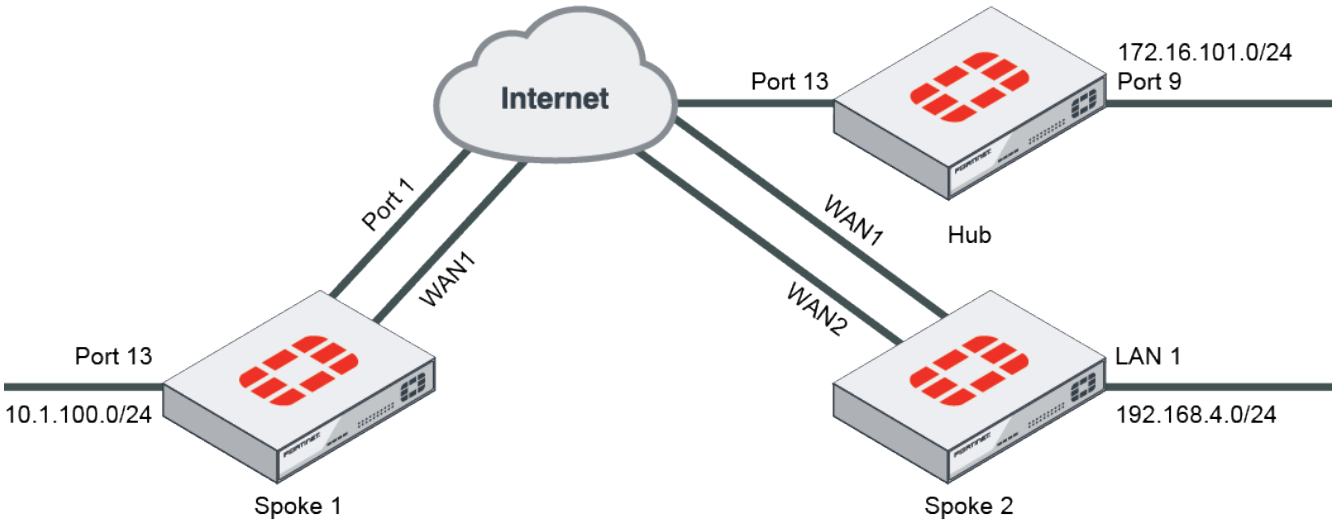
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=12 ilast=1 olast=1 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=1686 rxb=16602 txb=111717
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=vd1-p2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=9 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=4 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42164/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=697 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42902/43200
  dec: spi=f6ae9f83 esp=aes key=16 f6855c72295e3c5c49646530e6b96002
       ah=sha1 key=20 f983430d6c161d0a4cd9007c7ae057f1ff011334
  enc: spi=8c72ba1a esp=aes key=16 6330f8c532a6ca5c5765f6a9a6034427
       ah=sha1 key=20 e5fe385ed5f0f6a33f1d507601b15743a8c70187
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16536, enc:pkts/bytes=1686/223872
  npu_flag=02 npu_rgwy=172.16.202.2 npu_lgwy=172.16.203.1 npu_selid=2 dec_npuid=1 enc_
npuid=0
```

## Redundant hub and spoke VPN

A redundant hub and spoke configuration allows VPN connections to radiate from a central FortiGate unit (the hub) to multiple remote peers (the spokes). Traffic can pass between private networks behind the hub and private networks behind the remote peers. Traffic can also pass between remote peer private networks through the hub.

This is a sample configuration of hub and spoke IPsec VPN. The following applies for this scenario:

- The spokes have two WAN interfaces and two IPsec VPN tunnels for redundancy.
- The secondary VPN tunnel is up only when the primary tunnel is down by dead peer detection.




Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

**To configure redundant hub and spoke VPN using the FortiOS CLI:**

1. Configure the hub.
   a. Configure the WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
   edit "port13"
      set alias "WAN"
      set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
   next
   edit "port9"
      set alias "Internal"
      set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.202.2
      set device "port13"
   next
end
```

   b. Configure the IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "hub"
      set type dynamic
      set interface "port13"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set dpd on-idle
      set psksecret sample
      set dpd-retryinterval 60
   next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
   edit "hub"
      set phase1name "hub"
```

```
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
   next
end
```

**c.** Configure the firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "spoke-hub"
      set srcintf "hub"
      set dstintf "port9"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
   edit 2
      set name "spoke-spoke"
      set srcintf "hub"
      set dstintf "hub"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "all"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
   next
end
```

**2.** Configure the spokes.

**a.** Configure the WAN, internal interface, and static route.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
   edit "port1"
      set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
   next
   edit "wan1"
      set mode dhcp
      set distance 10
      set priority 100
   next
   edit "dmz"
      set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
   next
end
config router static
   edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.2
      set device "port1"
   next
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config system interface
   edit "wan1"
      set ip 172.16.200.3 255.255.255.0
   next
   edit "wan2"
      set mode dhcp
```

```
      set distance 10
      set priority 100
    next
    edit "lan1"
      set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
  config router static
    edit 1
      set gateway 172.16.200.2
      set device "wan1"
    next
  end
```

**b.** Configure IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit "primary"
    set interface "port1"
    set peertype any
    set net-device enable
    set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
    set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
    set psksecret sample
    next
  edit "secondary"
    set interface "wan1"
    set peertype any
    set net-device enable
    set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
    set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
    set monitor "primary"
    set psksecret sample
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
  edit "primary"
    set phase1name "primary"
    set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
         aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    set auto-negotiate enable
    set src-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
  next
  edit "secondary"
    set phase1name "secondary"
    set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
         aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    set auto-negotiate enable
    set src-subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
  next
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit "primary"
    set interface "wan1"
    set peertype any
    set net-device enable
```

```
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set psksecret sample
      next
    edit "secondary"
      set interface "wan2"
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
      set monitor "primary"
      set psksecret sample
      next
  end
  config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "primary"
      set phase1name "primary"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
      set src-subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "secondary"
      set phase1name "secondary"
      set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
           aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
      set auto-negotiate enable
      set src-subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
    next
  end
```

**c.** Configure the firewall policy.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set srcintf "dmz"
    set dstintf "primary" "secondary"
    set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
    set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config firewall policy
  edit 1
    set srcintf "lan1"
    set dstintf "primary" "secondary"
    set srcaddr "192.168.4.0"
    set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
    set action accept
    set schedule "always"
    set service "ALL"
  next
end
```

**d.** Configure the static route.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config router static
   edit 3
      set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      set distance 1
      set device "primary"
   next
   edit 4
      set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      set distance 3
      set device "secondary"
   next
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config router static
   edit 3
      set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      set distance 1
      set device "primary"
   next
   edit 4
      set dst 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
      set distance 3
      set device "secondary"
   next
end
```

**3.** Run `diagnose` and `get` commands.

**a.** Run the `Spoke1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list` command. The system should return the following:

```
name=primary ver=1 serial=1 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=15 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1879 txp=1881 rxb=225480 txb=112860
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=primary proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0 SA: ref=3 options=18227
        type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41002/0B replaywin=2048
     seqno=758 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000758 itn=0
   life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200 dec: spi=0908732f esp=aes key=16
        20770dfe67ea22dd8ec32c44d84ef4d5
     ah=sha1 key=20 edc89fc2ec06309ba13de95e7e486f9b795b8707
   enc: spi=a1d9eed1 esp=aes key=16 8eeea2526fba062e680d941083c8b5d1
     ah=sha1 key=20 f0f5deaf88b2a69046c3154e9f751739b3f411f5
   dec:pkts/bytes=1879/112740, enc:pkts/bytes=1879/225480
name=secondary ver=1 serial=2 172.17.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_
     dev frag-rfc accept_traffic=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=1892 olast=1892 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=secondary proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
   src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0 dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

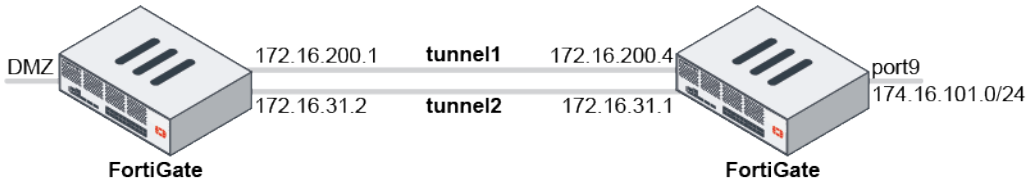
**b.** Run the `Spoke1 # get router info routing-table static` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
.................
S 172.16.101.0/24 [1/0] is directly connected, primary
```

## Weighted round robin for IPsec aggregate tunnels

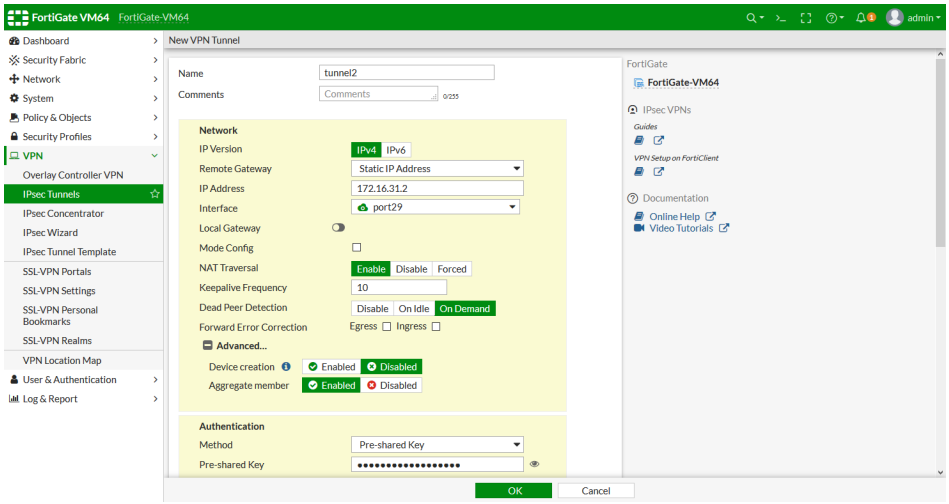
A weighted round robin algorithm can be used for IPsec aggregate tunnels to distribute traffic by the weight of each member tunnel.

In this example, the FortiGate has two IPsec tunnels put into IPsec aggregate. Traffic is distributed among the members, with one third over *tunnel1*, and two thirds over *tunnel2*. To achieve this, the weighted round robin algorithm is selected, *tunnel1* is assigned a weight of 10, and *tunnel2* is assigned a weight of 20.



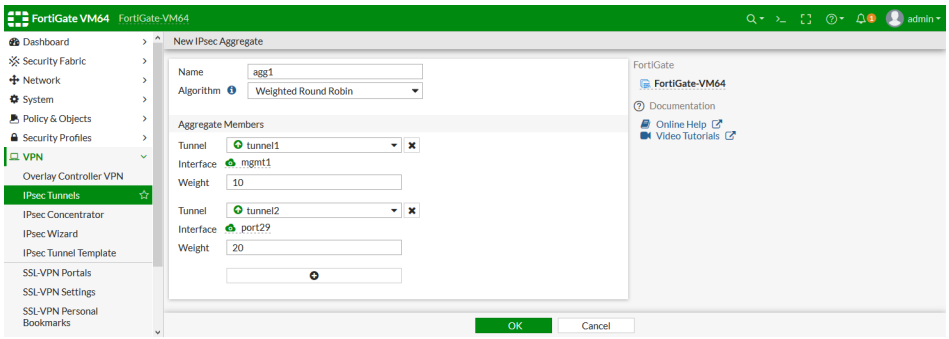

### To create the IPsec aggregate in the GUI:

1. Create the *tunnel1* and *tunnel2* custom IPsec tunnels. Ensure that *Aggregate member* is *Enabled* for each tunnel.

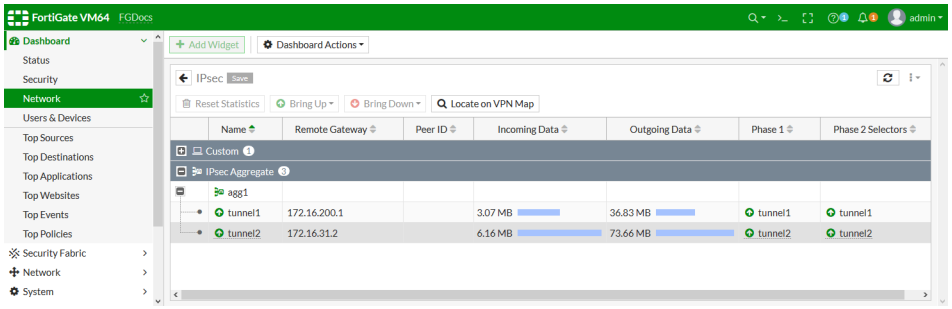



2. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Tunnels* and click *Create New* > *IPsec Aggregate*.
3. Enter a name for the aggregate, such as *agg1*, and ensure that *Algorithm* is *Weighted Round Robin*.
4. Add *tunnel1* as an aggregate members, and set *Weight* to *10*.

5. Add *tunnel2* as a second aggregate members, and set its *Weight* to *20*.




6. Click *OK*.
7. To view and monitor the aggregate tunnel statistics, go to the *IPsec* widget on the *Network* dashboard.




### To create the IPsec aggregate in the CLI:

1. Create the *tunnel1* and *tunnel2* custom IPsec tunnels with aggregate-member enabled and aggregate-weight set for both tunnels:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "tunnel1"
        ...
        set aggregate-member enable
        set aggregate-weight 10
        ...
    next
    edit "tunnel2"
        ...
        set aggregate-member enable
        set aggregate-weight 20
        ...
    next
end
```

2. Create the IPsec aggregate:

```
config system ipsec-aggregate
    edit "agg1"
        set member "tunnel1" "tunnel2"
        set algorithm weighted-round-robin
    next
end
```

# Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN)

Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN) is a cloud based solution to simplify IPsec VPN setup. When OCVPN is enabled, IPsec phase1-interfaces, phase2-interfaces, static routes, and firewall policies are generated automatically on all FortiGates that belong to the same community network. A community network is defined as all FortiGates registered to FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

If the network topology changes on any FortiGates in the community (such as changing a public IP address in DHCP mode, adding or removing protected subnets, failing over in dual WAN), the IPsec-related configuration for all devices is updated with Cloud assistance in self-learning mode. No intervention is required.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring OCVPN:


- Full mesh OCVPN on page 1246
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with ADVPN shortcut on page 1251
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT on page 1255
- OCVPN portal on page 1259
- SD-WAN integration with OCVPN on page 571
- Allow FortiClient to join OCVPN on page 1260
- Troubleshooting OCVPN on page 1264


## Full mesh OCVPN

This example shows how to configure a full mesh Overlay Controller VPN (OCVPN), establishing full mesh IPsec tunnels between all of the FortiGates.

### License

- Free license: Three devices full mesh, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.
- Full License: Maximum of 16 devices, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.

### Prerequisites

- All FortiGates must be running FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.
- All FortiGates must have Internet access.
- All FortiGates must be registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

### Restrictions

- Non-root VDOMs do not support OCVPN.
- FortiOS 6.2.x is not compatible with FortiOS 6.0.x.

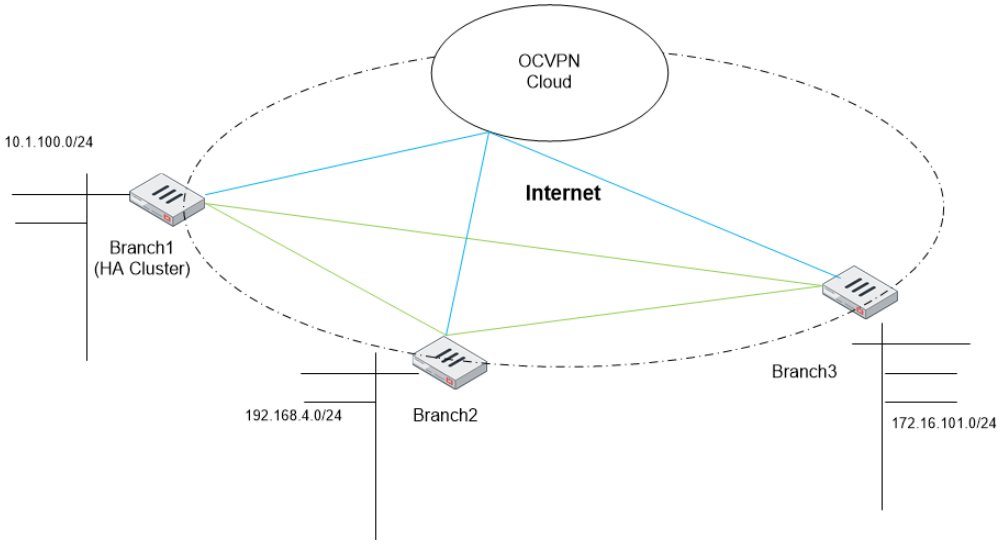
### Terminology

| | |
|---|---|
| **Poll-interval** | How often FortiGate tries to fetch OCVPN-related data from OCVPN Cloud. |
| **Role** | The device OCVPN role of spoke, primary-hub, or secondary-hub. |
| **Overlay** | Defines network overlays and bind to subnets. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Subnet** | Internal network subnet (IPsec protected subnet). Traffic to or from this subnet enters the IPsec tunnel encrypted by IPsec SA. |

## Sample topology

The following example shows three FortiGate units registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account. Each FortiGate unit has one internal subnet, and no NAT exists between the units.




## Sample configuration

The following overlays and subnets are used:

- Branch1:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 10.1.100.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 10.2.100.0/24
- Branch2:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local interfaces: lan1
  - Overlay name: PM. Local interfaces: lan2
- Branch3:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 172.16.101.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 172.16.102.0/24



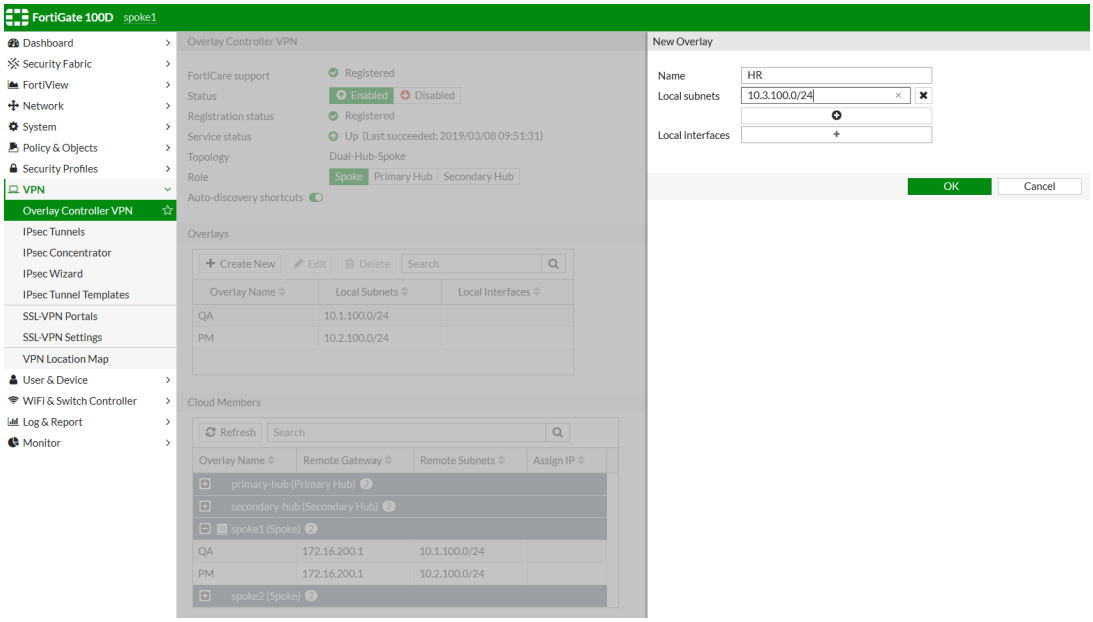
The overlay names on each device must be the same for local and remote selector pairs to be negotiated.

**To register FortiGates on FortiCare:**

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* > *License Information* > *FortiCare Support*.
2. To register, click *Register* or *Launch Portal*.
3. Complete the options to register FortiGate on FortiCare.

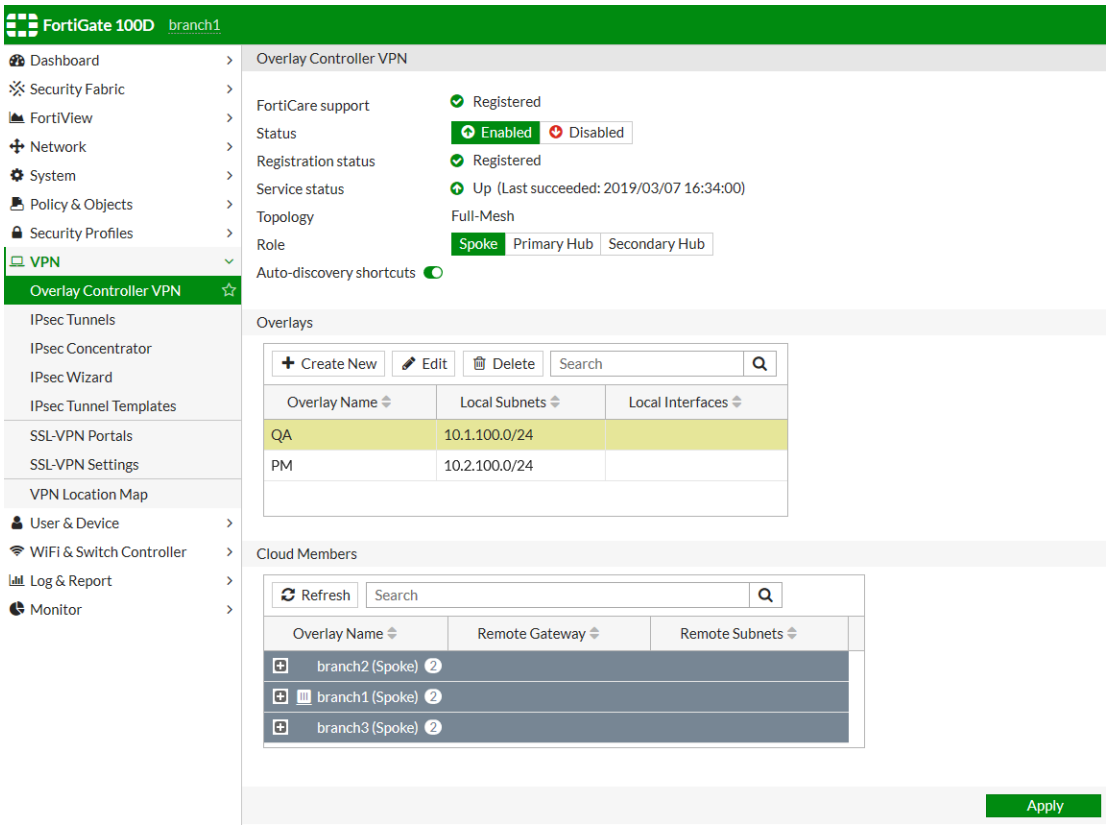
**To enable OCVPN in the GUI:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN*.
2. Create the first overlay by setting the following options:
   a. For *Status*, click *Enabled*.
   b. For *Role*, click *Spoke*.
   c. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New* to create a network overlay.




3. Specify the *Name*, *Local subnets*, and/or *Local interfaces*.
   The local subnet must be routable and interfaces must have IP addresses.

4. Click *OK*.




5. Click *Apply* to commit the configuration.
6. Repeat this procedure to create all the overlays.

### To enable OCVPN in the CLI:

1. Configure Branch1:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set multipath disable
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.2.100.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
```

```
    end
end
```

2. Configure Branch2:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set multipath disable
    config overlays
         edit 1
             set name "QA"
             config subnets
                  edit 1
                        set type interface
                        set interface "lan1"
                  next
             end
         next
         edit 2
             set name "PM"
             config subnets
                  edit 1
                        set type interface
                        set interface "lan2"
                  next
             end
         next
    end
end
```

3. Configure Branch3:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set multipath disable
    config overlays
         edit 1
             set name "QA"
             config subnets
                 edit 1
                     set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                 next
             end
         next
         edit 1
             set name "PM"
             config subnets
                 edit 1
                     set subnet 172.16.102.0 255.255.255.0
                 next
             end
         next
    end
end
```

## Hub-spoke OCVPN with ADVPN shortcut

This topic shows a sample configuration of a hub-spoke One-Click VPN (OCVPN) with an Auto Discovery VPN (ADVPN) shortcut. OCVPN automatically detects the network topology based on members' information. To form a hub-spoke OCVPN, at least one device must announce its role as the primary hub, another device can work as the secondary hub (for redundancy), while others function as spokes.

### License

- Free license: Hub-spoke network topology not supported.
- Full license: Maximum of 2 hubs, 10 overlays, 64 subnets per overlay; 512 spokes, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.

### Prerequisites

- All FortiGates must be running FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.
- All FortiGates must have Internet access.
- All FortiGates must be registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

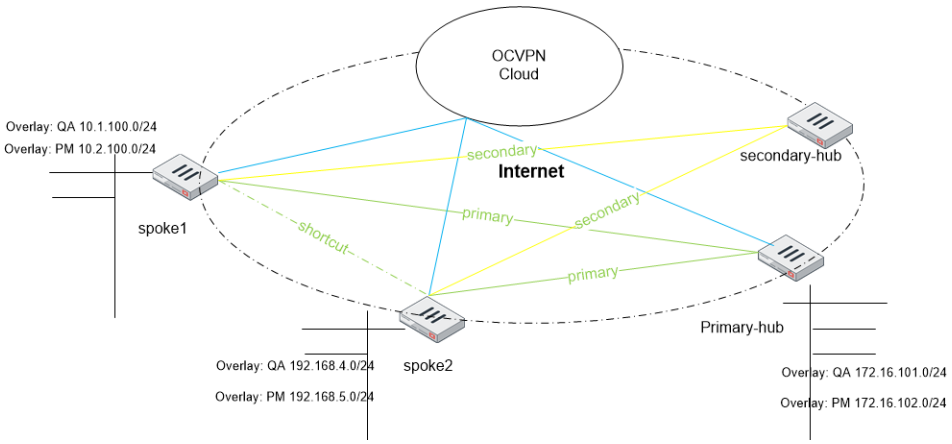
### Restrictions

- Non-root VDOMs do not support OCVPN.
- FortiOS 6.2.x is not compatible with FortiOS 6.0.x.

### OCVPN device roles

- Primary hub.
- Secondary hub.
- Spoke (OCVPN default role).

### Sample topology



## Sample configuration

The steps below use the following overlays and subnets for the sample configuration:

- Primary hub:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 172.16.101.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 172.16.102.0/24
- Secondary hub:
  - Overlays are synced from primary hub.
- Spoke1:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local subnets: 10.1.100.0/24
  - Overlay name: PM. Local subnets: 10.2.100.0/24
- Spoke2:
  - Overlay name: QA. Local interfaces: lan1
  - Overlay name: PM. Local interfaces: lan2



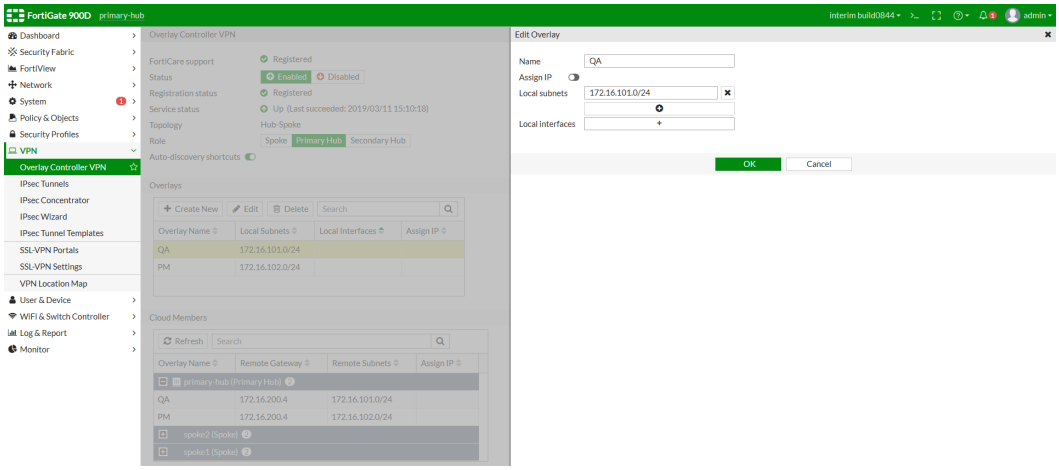
The overlay names on each device must be the same for local and remote selector pairs to be negotiated.

### To register FortiGates on FortiCare:

1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* > *License Information* > *FortiCare Support*.
2. To register, click *Register* or *Launch Portal*.
3. Complete the options to register FortiGate on FortiCare.

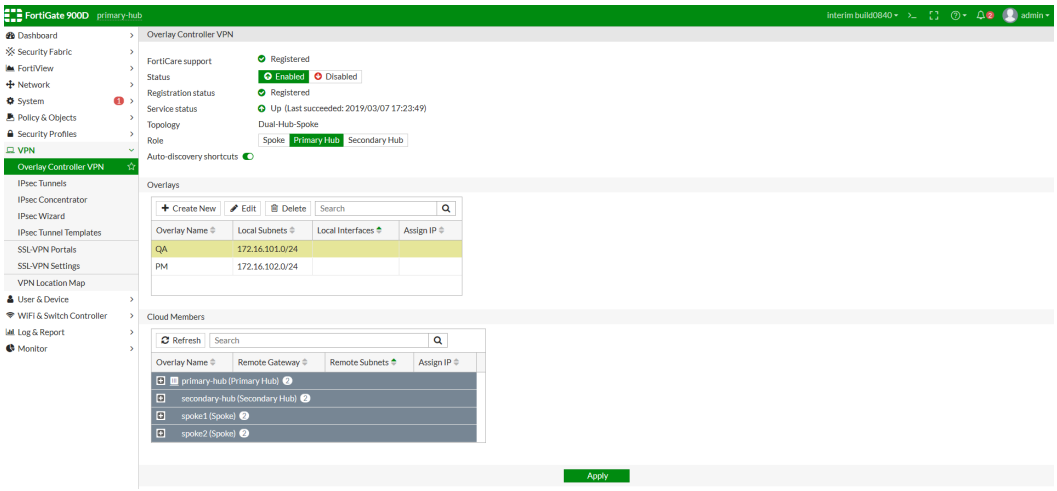
### To enable hub-spoke OCVPN in the GUI:

1. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN*.
2. Configure the OCVPN primary hub by setting the following options:
   a. For *Status*, click *Enabled*.
   b. For *Role*, click *Primary Hub*.
   c. In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New* to create a network overlay.




   d. Specify the *Name*, *Local subnets*, and/or *Local interfaces*. Then click *OK*.

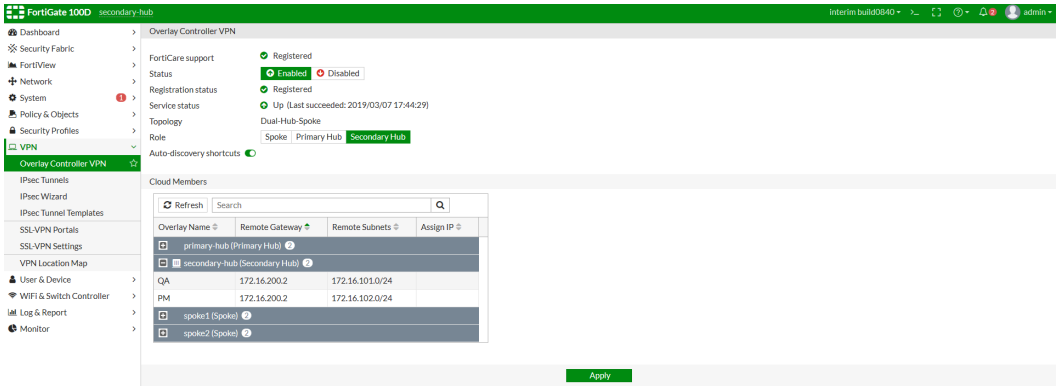
**e.** Click *Apply* to commit the configuration.




**3.** Configure the OCVPN secondary hub:
Overlays are synced from the primary hub and cannot be defined in the secondary hub.

**a.** In the *Overlay Controller VPN* pane, select *Secondary Hub* for the *Role*.

**b.** Select *Apply* to commit the configuration.



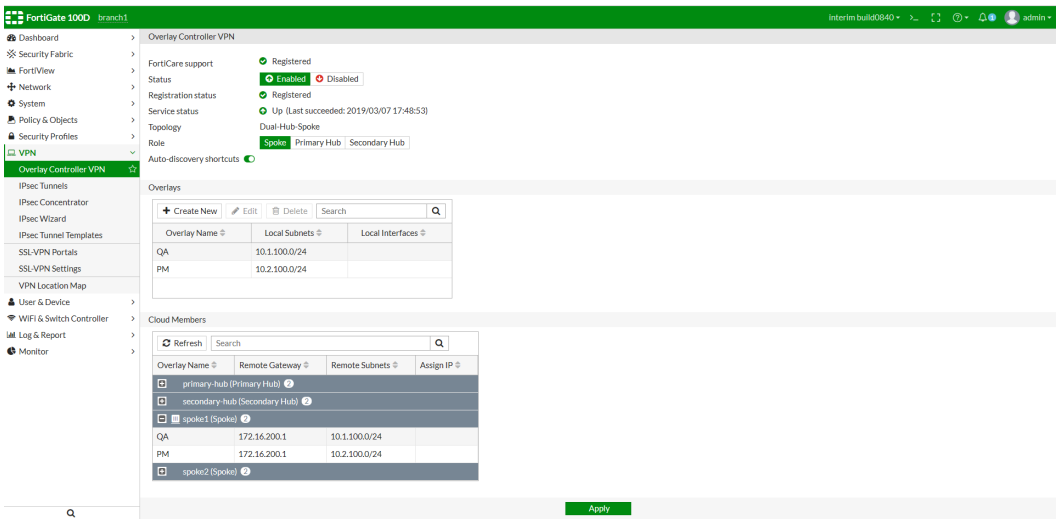

**4.** Configure the OCVPN spokes:

**a.** In the *Overlay Controller VPN* pane, select *Spoke* for the *Role*.

**b.** In the *Overlays* section, click *Create New* to create a network overlay.

**c.** Specify the *Name*, *Local subnets*, and/or *Local interfaces*.
The local subnet must be routable and interfaces must have IP addresses.

**d.** Click *OK* and then click *Apply* to commit the configuration.




### To enable hub-spoke OCVPN in the CLI:

**1.** Configure the OCVPN primary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role primary-hub
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.102.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

**2.** Configure the OCVPN secondary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role secondary-hub
end
```

**3.** Configure the OCVPN spoke1:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
```

```
        config overlays
            edit 1
                set name "QA"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
            edit 2
                set name "PM"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 10.2.100.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
```

4. Configure the OCVPN spoke2:

```
    config vpn ocvpn
        set status enable
        config overlays
            edit 1
                set name "QA"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
            edit 2
                set name "PM"
                config subnets
                    edit 1
                        set subnet 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    end
```

## Hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT

This topic shows a sample configuration of hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT. OCVPN isolates traffic between overlays by default. With NAT enabled on spokes and `assign-ip` enabled on hub, you can have inter-overlay communication.

Inter-overlay communication means devices from any source addresses and any source interfaces can communicate with any devices in overlays' subnets when the overlay option `assign-ip` is enabled.

You must first disable `auto-discovery` before you can enable NAT.

## License

- Free license: Hub-spoke network topology not supported.
- Full License: Maximum of 2 hubs, 10 overlays, 64 subnets per overlay; 512 spokes, 10 overlays, 16 subnets per overlay.

## Prerequisites

- All FortiGates must be running FortiOS 6.2.0 or later.
- All FortiGates must have Internet access.
- All FortiGates must be registered on FortiCare using the same FortiCare account.

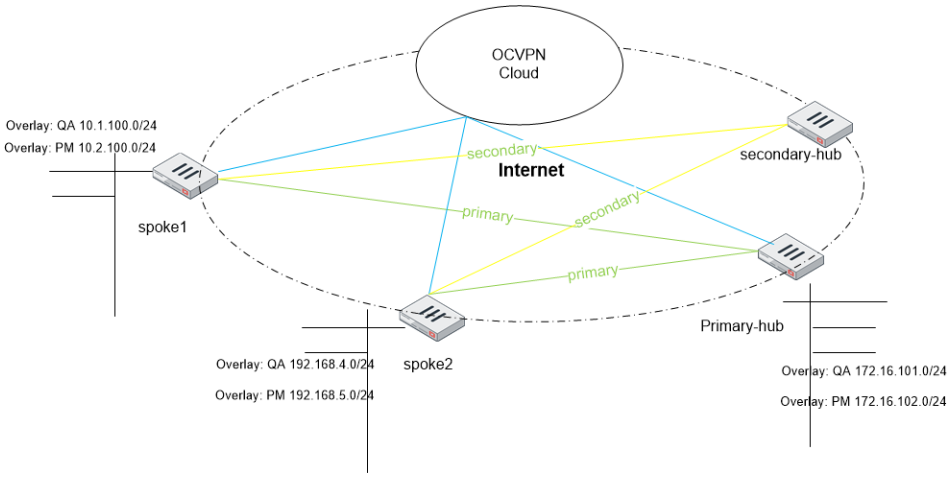
## Restrictions

- Non-root VDOMs do not support OCVPN.
- FortiOS 6.2.x is not compatible with FortiOS 6.0.x.

## OCVPN device roles

- Primary hub.
- Secondary hub.
- Spoke (OCVPN default role).

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

You can only configure this feature using the CLI.



The overlay names on each device must be the same for local and remote selector pairs to be negotiated.

**To enable inter-overlay source NAT in the CLI:**

1. Configure the primary hub, enable overlay QA, and configure `assign-ip` and IP range:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role primary-hub
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            set assign-ip enable
            set ipv4-start-ip 172.16.101.100
            set ipv4-end-ip 172.16.101.200
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            set assign-ip enable
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 172.16.102.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

2. Configure the secondary hub:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role secondary-hub
end
```

3. Configure spoke1 and enable NAT on the spoke:

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set auto-discovery disable
    set nat enable
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 10.2.100.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

4. Configure spoke2 and enable NAT on the spoke:

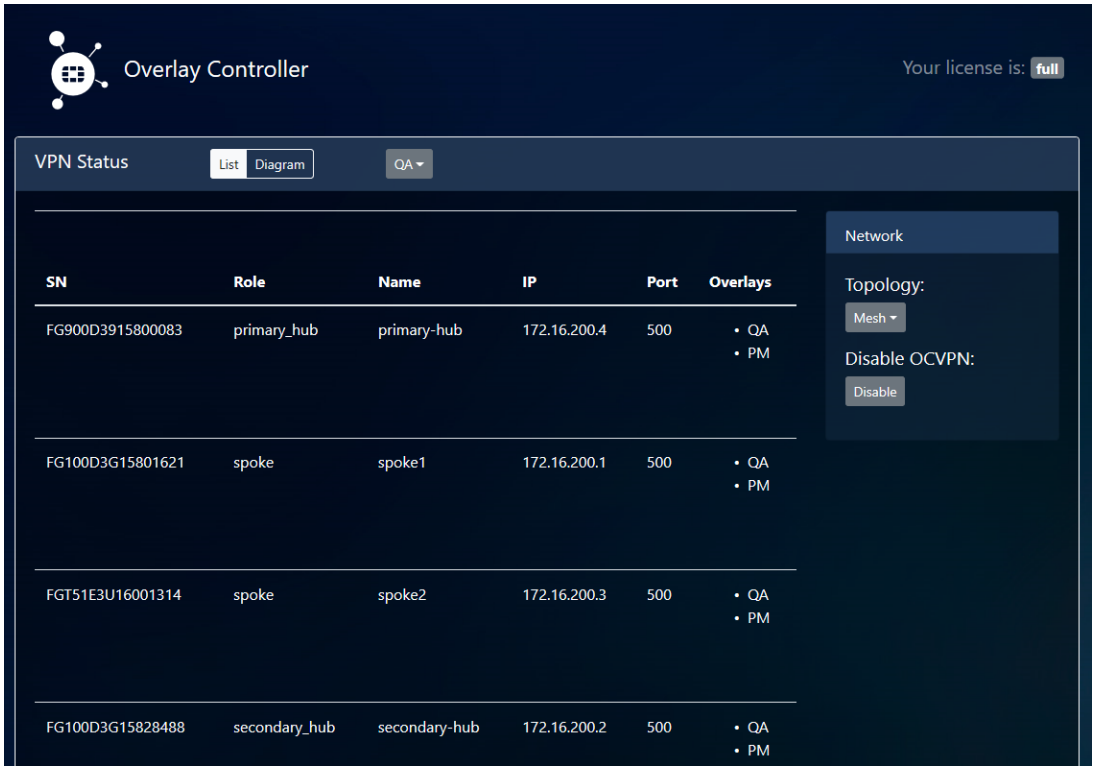
```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set auto-discovery disable
    set nat enable
    config overlays
        edit 1
            set name "QA"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit 2
            set name "PM"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

A firewall policy with NAT is generated on the spoke:

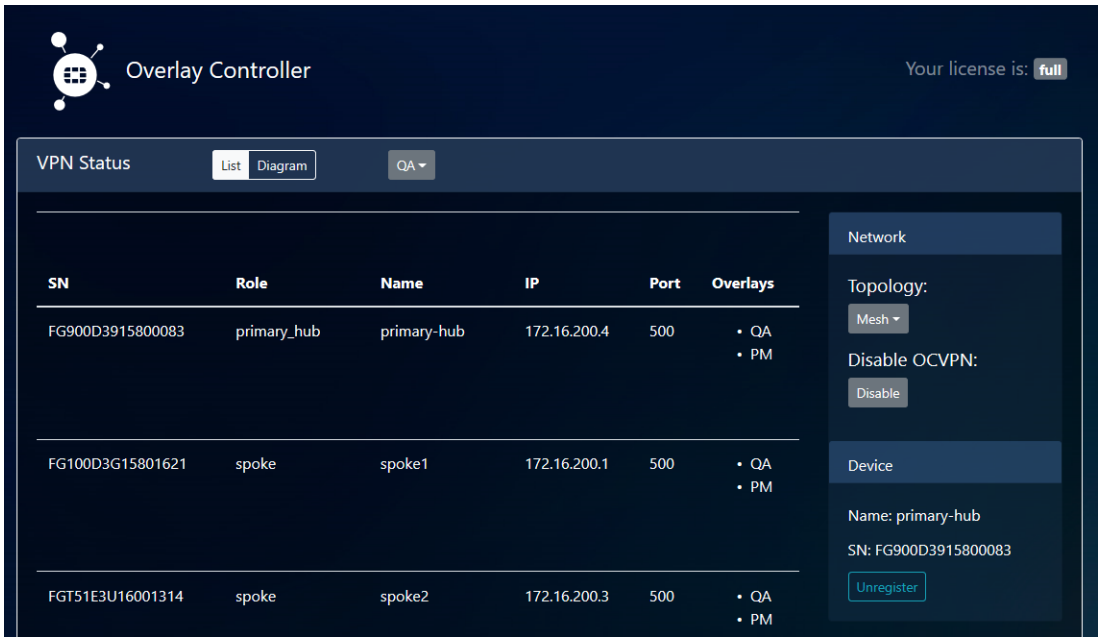
```
edit 9
   set name "_OCVPN2-1.1_nat"
   set uuid 3f7a84b8-3d36-51e9-ee97-8f418c91e666
   set srcintf "any"
   set dstintf "_OCVPN2-1.1"
   set srcaddr "all"
   set dstaddr "_OCVPN2-1.1_remote_networks"
   set action accept
   set schedule "always"
   set service "ALL"
   set comments "Generated by OCVPN Cloud Service."
   set nat enable
next
```

## OCVPN portal

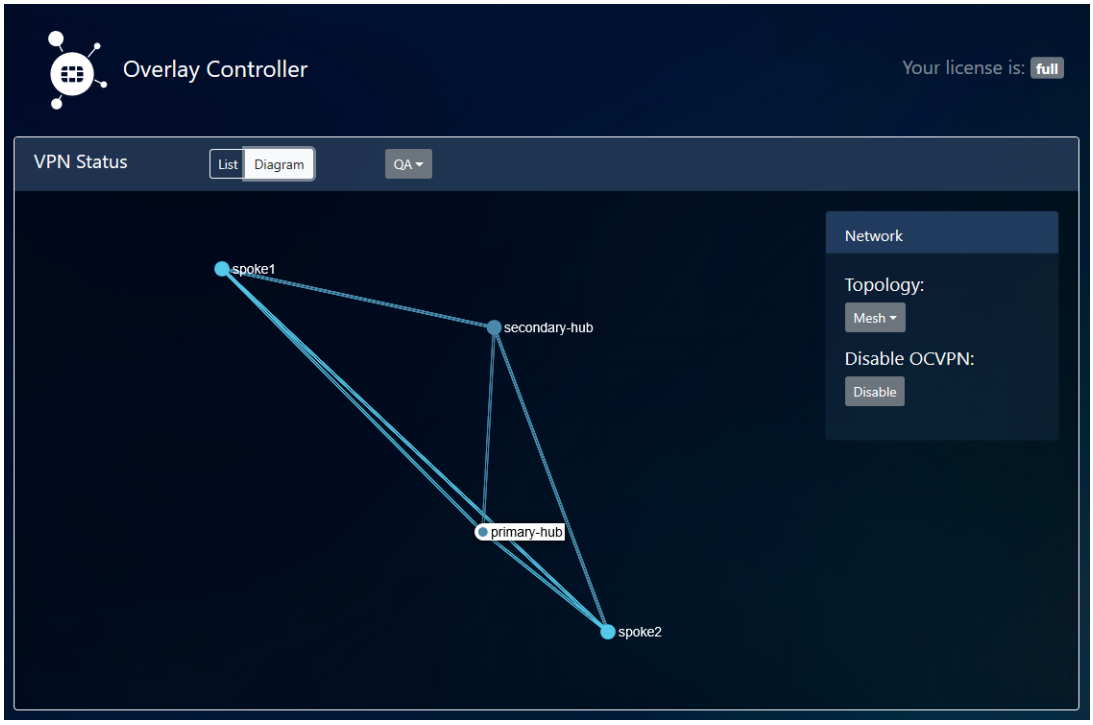
When you log into the OCVPN portal, the OCVPN license type and device information display. The device information includes the device serial number, OCVPN role, hostname, public IP address, port number, and overlays.




You can unregister an OCVPN device from the OCVPN portal under *Device* on the right pane.

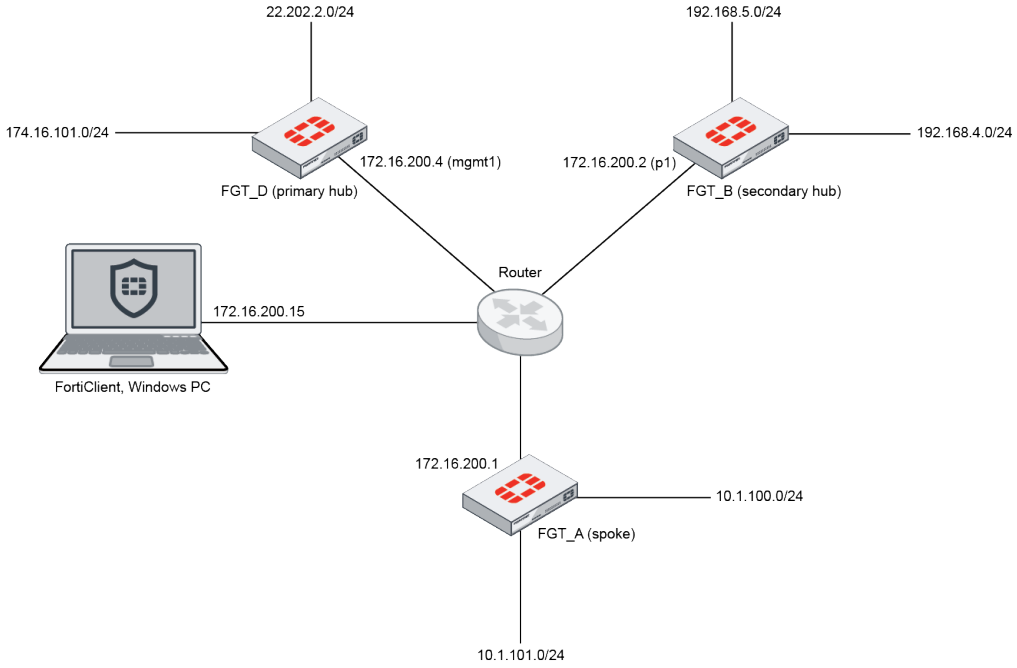


Use the OCVPN *Diagram* to show the OCVPN network topology.



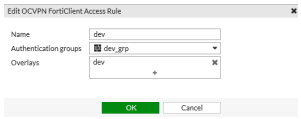

## Allow FortiClient to join OCVPN

Administrators can configure remote access for FortiClient within an OCVPN hub. This provides simple configurations to allow a user group access to an overlay network.



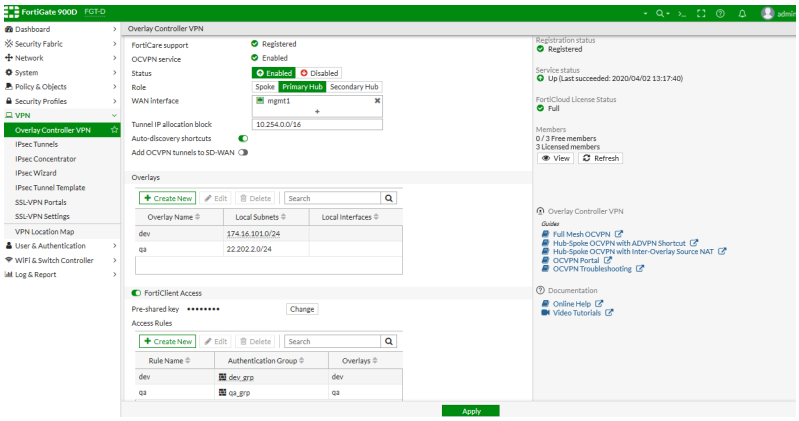
**To configure remote FortiClient access to an OCVPN hub in the GUI:**

1. On the primary hub, configure the users and user groups required for the FortiClient dialup user authentication and authorization. In this example, there are two user groups (*dev_grp* and *qa_grp*).
2. Go to *VPN* > *Overlay Controller VPN* and in the *Overlays* section, click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name and the local subnet (174.16.101.0/24 for *dev* and 22.202.2.0/24 for *qa*).
4. Enable *FortiClient Access*.
5. In the *Access Rules* section, click *Create New*.
6. Enter a name, and select the authentication groups and overlays.



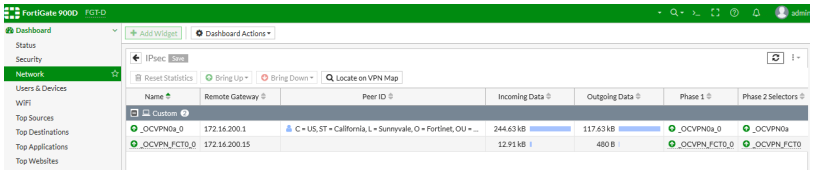

The authentication groups will be used by the IPsec phase 1 interface for authentication, and by firewall policies for authorization. The overlay allows access to the resource.

7. Click *OK*.
8. Create more rules if needed.
9. Click *Apply*.




**To view the tunnel status and activity in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network*.
2. Click the *IPsec* widget to expand to full screen view.




**To configure remote FortiClient access to an OCVPN hub in the CLI:**

```
config vpn ocvpn
    set status enable
    set role primary-hub
    set wan-interface "mgmt1"
    set ip-allocation-block 10.254.0.0 255.255.0.0
    config overlays
        edit "dev"
```

```
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 174.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
        edit "qa"
            config subnets
                edit 1
                    set subnet 22.202.2.0 255.255.255.0
                next
            end
        next
    end
    config forticlient-access
        set status enable
        set psksecret xxxxxxxxxxxx
        config auth-groups
            edit "dev"
                set auth-group "dev_grp"
                set overlays "dev"
            next
            edit "qa"
                set auth-group "qa_grp"
                set overlays "qa"
            next
        end
    end
end
```

**To view the tunnel status and activity in the CLI:**

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list

vd: root/0
name: _OCVPN_FCT0_0
version: 1
interface: mgmt1 4
addr: 172.16.200.4:4500 -> 172.16.200.15:64916
created: 110s ago
xauth-user: usera
groups:
  dev_grp 1
assigned IPv4 address: 10.254.128.1/255.255.255.255
nat: peer
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 20/20/20 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms

  id/spi: 72 1ccd2abf2d981123/fd8da107f9e4d312
  direction: responder
  status: established 110-110s ago = 20ms
  proposal: aes256-sha256
  key: 105a0291b0c05219-3decdf78938a7bea-78943651e1720536-625114d66e46f668
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/86019
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000af3
```

**To view data on the PC running FortiClient:**

```
C:\ route print
===========================================================================

IPv4 Route Table
===========================================================================
Active Routes:
Network Destination        Netmask          Gateway       Interface  Metric
          0.0.0.0          0.0.0.0       10.1.100.5      10.1.100.13    281
       10.1.100.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
      10.1.100.13  255.255.255.255         On-link      10.1.100.13    281
       10.1.101.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
        10.6.30.0    255.255.255.0         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
       10.6.30.13  255.255.255.255         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
      10.6.30.255  255.255.255.255         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
       10.254.0.0      255.255.0.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
     10.254.128.1  255.255.255.255         On-link     10.254.128.1    257
       22.202.2.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
        127.0.0.0        255.0.0.0         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
        127.0.0.1  255.255.255.255         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
  127.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
     172.16.200.4  255.255.255.255       10.1.100.5      10.1.100.13     25
     174.16.101.0    255.255.255.0     10.254.128.2     10.254.128.1      1
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link      10.254.128.1    257
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
        224.0.0.0        240.0.0.0         On-link       10.1.100.13    281
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link         127.0.0.1    331
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link      10.254.128.1    257
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link        10.6.30.13    281
  255.255.255.255  255.255.255.255         On-link       10.1.100.13    281
===========================================================================
Persistent Routes:
  Network Address          Netmask  Gateway Address  Metric
          0.0.0.0          0.0.0.0       10.1.100.5  Default
```

The PC can access the *dev* resource overlay, but not *qa*:

```
C:\Users\tester>ping 174.16.101.44

Pinging 174.16.101.44 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63
Reply from 174.16.101.44: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=63

Ping statistics for 174.16.101.44:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
    Minimum = 1ms, Maximum = 1ms, Average = 1ms

C:\Users\tester>ping 22.202.2.2

Pinging 22.202.2.2 with 32 bytes of data:
Request timed out.
Request timed out.
```

```
Request timed out.
Request timed out.

Ping statistics for 22.202.2.2:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 0, Lost = 4 (100% loss),
```

## Troubleshooting OCVPN

This document includes troubleshooting steps for the following OCVPN network topologies:

- Full mesh OCVPN.
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with ADVPN shortcut.
- Hub-spoke OCVPN with inter-overlay source NAT.

For OCVPN configurations in other network topologies, see the other OCVPN topics.

### Troubleshooting full mesh network topology

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

  ```
  Current State        : Registered
  Topology             : Full-Mesh
  Role                 : Spoke
  Server Status        : Up
  Registration time    : Thu Feb 28 18:42:25 2019
  Update time          : Thu Feb 28 15:57:18 2019
  Poll time            : Fri Mar  1 15:02:28 2019
  ```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-meta`

  ```
  Topology :: auto
  License  :: full
  Members  :: 3
  Max-free :: 3
  ```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-overlays`

  ```
  QA
  PM
  ```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-members`

  ```
  Member: { "SN": "FG100D3G15801621", "IPv4": "172.16.200.1", "port": "500", "slot": 1000,
  "overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "10.1.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
  range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
  "10.2.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "Name": "FortiGate-
  100D", "topology_role": "spoke" }
  Member: { "SN": "FG900D3915800083", "IPv4": "172.16.200.4", "port": "500", "slot": 1001,
  "overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
  range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
  "172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "Name": "Branch3",
  "topology_role": "spoke" }
  Member: { "SN": "FGT51E3U16001314", "IPv4": "172.16.200.199", "port": "500", "slot":
  1002, "overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "192.168.4.0\/255.255.255.0" ],
  "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
  "192.168.5.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "Name": "Branch2",
  "topology_role": "spoke" }
  ```

- Branch_1 # `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-3.1 ver=2 serial=4 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.199:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=7 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=7 rxb=0 txb=588
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=6
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=8 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0-10.1.100.255:0
  dst: 0:192.168.4.0-192.168.4.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42923/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb752 esp=aes key=16 3c5ceeff3cac1eaa2702b5ccb713ab9b
       ah=sha1 key=20 5903e358b3d8938ee64f0412887a0fe741ccb105
  enc: spi=b5bd4fe1 esp=aes key=16 8ae97a8abe24dae725d614d2a6efdcb0
       ah=sha1 key=20 9ec200d9c0cef9e1b7cf76e05dbf344c70f53214
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=7/1064
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-4.1 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=19 olast=19 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=7 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0-10.1.100.255:0
  dst: 0:172.16.101.0-172.16.101.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42911/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb750 esp=aes key=16 8c9844a8bcd3fda6c7bd8a4f2ec81ef1
       ah=sha1 key=20 680c7144346f5b52126cbad9f325821b048c7192
  enc: spi=f2d1f2d4 esp=aes key=16 f9625fc8590152829eb39eecab3a3999
       ah=sha1 key=20 5df8447416da541fa54dde9fa3e5c35fbfc4723f
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-3.2 ver=2 serial=3 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.199:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=6 olast=6 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
```

```
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=8 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0-10.2.100.255:0
  dst: 0:192.168.5.0-192.168.5.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42923/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb753 esp=aes key=16 58ddfad9a3699f1c49f3a9f369145c28
       ah=sha1 key=20 e749c7e6a7aaff119707c792eb73cd975127873b
  enc: spi=b5bd4fe2 esp=aes key=16 8f2366e653f5f9ad6587be1ce1905764
       ah=sha1 key=20 5347bf24e51219d483c0f7b058eceab202026204
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-3.2 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-4.2 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=17 olast=17 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=7 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0-10.2.100.255:0
  dst: 0:172.16.102.0-172.16.102.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42905/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42927/43200
  dec: spi=c34bb751 esp=aes key=16 41449ee5ea43d3e1f80df05fc632cd44
       ah=sha1 key=20 3ca2aea1c8764f35ccf987cdeca7cf6eb54331fb
  enc: spi=f2d1f2d5 esp=aes key=16 9010dd57e502c6296b27a4649a45a6ba
       ah=sha1 key=20 caf86a176ce04464221543f15fc3c63fc573b8ee
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-4.2 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

- Branch_1 # `get router info routing-table all`

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-3.2
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-4.1
```

```
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-4.2
S       192.168.4.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-3.1
```

## Troubleshooting hub-spoke with ADVPN shortcut

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Primary-Hub
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 11:31:54 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 11:46:02 2019
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Spoke
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 11:41:22 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 11:46:44 2019
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-members`

```
Member: { "sn": "FG900D3915800083", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.4", "port": 500, "slot": 0,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Primary-
Hub", "topology_role": "primary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15828488", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.2", "port": 500, "slot": 1,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Secondary-
Hub", "topology_role": "secondary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15801621", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.1", "port": 500, "slot": 1000,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "10.1.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"10.2.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke1",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
Member: { "sn": "FGT51E3U16001314", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.3", "port": 500, "slot": 1001,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "192.168.4.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"192.168.5.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke2",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-meta`

```
Topology :: auto
License  :: full
Members  :: 4
Max-free :: 3
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-overlays`

```
QA
PM
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=34 rxb=152 txb=2856
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=46
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42895/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c7 esp=aes key=16 240e064c0f1c980ca31980b9e7605c9d
       ah=sha1 key=20 6ff022cbebcaff4c5de62eefb2e6180c40a3adb2
  enc: spi=dfcffa86 esp=aes key=16 862208de164a02af377756c2bcabd588
       ah=sha1 key=20 af6e54781fd42d7a2ba2119ec95d0f95629c8448
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=8 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=934 olast=934 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=12 olast=12 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=46
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42895/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c8 esp=aes key=16 701ec608767f4988b76c2f662464e654
       ah=sha1 key=20 93c65d106dc610d7ee3f04487f08601a9e00ffdd
  enc: spi=dfcffa87 esp=aes key=16 02b2d04dce3d81ebab69e128d45cb7ca
       ah=sha1 key=20 4a9283847f852c83a75691fad44d07d8409a2267
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=7 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
```

```
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=934 olast=934 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

- Spoke1 # `get router info routing-table all`

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
```

- Generate traffic from spoke1 to spoke2 to trigger the ADVPN shortcut and check the VPN tunnel and routing-table again on spoke1.

```
branch1 # diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0_0 ver=2 serial=a 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.3:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/720 options
[02d0]=create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=_OCVPN2-0.0 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=7 txp=7 rxb=1064 txb=588
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate add-route adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0-10.1.100.255:0
  dst: 0:192.168.4.0-192.168.4.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=43180/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000008 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=43187/43200
  dec: spi=048477c9 esp=aes key=16 27c35d53793013ef24cf887561e9f313
       ah=sha1 key=20 2c8cfd328c3b29104db0ca74a00c6063f46cafe4
  enc: spi=fb9e13fd esp=aes key=16 9d0d3bf6c84b7ddaf9d9196fe74002ed
       ah=sha1 key=20 d1f541db787dea384c6a4df16fc228abeb7ae334
```

```
  dec:pkts/bytes=7/588, enc:pkts/bytes=7/1064
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=12 ilast=7 olast=7 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=2 txp=35 rxb=304 txb=2940
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=65
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42500/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c7 esp=aes key=16 240e064c0f1c980ca31980b9e7605c9d
       ah=sha1 key=20 6ff022cbebcaff4c5de62eefb2e6180c40a3adb2
  enc: spi=dfcffa86 esp=aes key=16 862208de164a02af377756c2bcabd588
       ah=sha1 key=20 af6e54781fd42d7a2ba2119ec95d0f95629c8448
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/84, enc:pkts/bytes=1/152
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=8 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=1328 olast=1328 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=5 olast=5 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=66
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42500/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=048477c8 esp=aes key=16 701ec608767f4988b76c2f662464e654
       ah=sha1 key=20 93c65d106dc610d7ee3f04487f08601a9e00ffdd
  enc: spi=dfcffa87 esp=aes key=16 02b2d04dce3d81ebab69e128d45cb7ca
       ah=sha1 key=20 4a9283847f852c83a75691fad44d07d8409a2267
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=7 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
```

```
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=1328 olast=1328 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0


Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [15/0] via 172.16.200.3, _OCVPN2-0.0_0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
```

- Simulate the primary hub being unavailable where all spokes' dialup VPN tunnels will switch to the secondary hub, to check VPN tunnel status and routing-table.

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=6 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=25 olast=25 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=82
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=8 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=14 olast=14 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=9
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
```

```
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42723/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=048477cd esp=aes key=16 9bb363a32378b5897cd42890c92df811
       ah=sha1 key=20 2ed40583b9544e37867349b4adc7c013024d7e17
  enc: spi=f345fb42 esp=aes key=16 3ea31dff3310b245700a131db4565851
       ah=sha1 key=20 522862dfb232514b845e436133b148da0e67b7c4
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=5 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=19 olast=19 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=83
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
-----------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=7 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=12 olast=12 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=9
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42728/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42902/43200
  dec: spi=048477cf esp=aes key=16 b6f0ca7564abcd8559b5b0ebb3fd04c1
       ah=sha1 key=20 4130d040554b39daca72adac7583b9cc83cce3c8
  enc: spi=f345fb43 esp=aes key=16 727582f20fcedff884ba693ed2164bcd
       ah=sha1 key=20 b0a625803fde701ed9d28d256079e908954b7fc8
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0


Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
```

```
S       172.16.102.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.101.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [21/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-1.1
```

### Troubleshooting hub-spoke with inter-overlay source NAT

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Primary-Hub
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 11:31:54 2019
Update time          : Sat Mar  2 13:57:05 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 14:03:31 2019
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn ocvpn status`

```
Current State        : Registered
Topology             : Dual-Hub-Spoke
Role                 : Spoke
Server Status        : Up
Registration time    : Sat Mar  2 13:58:01 2019
Poll time            : Sat Mar  2 14:04:22 2019
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-members`

```
Member: { "sn": "FG900D3915800083", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.4", "port": 500, "slot": 0,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "172.16.101.100-172.16.101.200" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "172.16.102.100-172.16.102.200" } ],
"name": "Primary-Hub", "topology_role": "primary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_
discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15828488", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.2", "port": 500, "slot": 1,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "172.16.101.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"172.16.102.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Secondary-
Hub", "topology_role": "secondary_hub", "eap": "disable", "auto_discovery": "enable" }
Member: { "sn": "FGT51E3U16001314", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.3", "port": 500, "slot": 1001,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "192.168.4.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"192.168.5.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke2",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
Member: { "sn": "FG100D3G15801621", "ip_v4": "172.16.200.1", "port": 500, "slot": 1000,
"overlay": [ { "id": 0, "name": "QA", "subnets": [ "10.1.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_
range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" }, { "id": 1, "name": "PM", "subnets": [
"10.2.100.0\/255.255.255.0" ], "ip_range": "0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0" } ], "name": "Spoke1",
"topology_role": "spoke" }
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-meta`

```
Topology :: auto
License  :: full
Members  :: 4
Max-free :: 3
```

- Primary-Hub # `diagnose vpn ocvpn show-overlays`

```
QA
PM
```

- Spoke1 # `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.0 ver=2 serial=c 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=3 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=17 olast=17 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=29
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42299/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42899/43200
  dec: spi=0484795d esp=aes key=16 10eeb76fadd49f00c333350d83509095
       ah=sha1 key=20 971bde5dcfca7e52fd1573cb3489e9c855f6154e
  enc: spi=dfcffaaa esp=aes key=16 d07a4dd683ee093af2dca9485aa436eb
       ah=sha1 key=20 65369be35d5ecad8cae63557318419cd6005c230
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0_nat proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=3 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:172.16.101.101-172.16.101.101:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42303/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42898/43200
  dec: spi=04847961 esp=aes key=16 ea181036b02e8bc8711fb520b3e98a60
       ah=sha1 key=20 b3c449d96d5d3f090975087a62447f6918ce7930
  enc: spi=dfcffaac esp=aes key=16 f7ea5e42e9443698e6b8b32161ace40e
       ah=sha1 key=20 a7e36dd1ec0bdb6eff0aa66e442707427400c700
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.0_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
------------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.0 ver=2 serial=e 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=599 olast=599 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.0_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

```
---------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-0.1 ver=2 serial=b 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.4:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=3 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=17 olast=17 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=29
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42297/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42897/43200
  dec: spi=0484795e esp=aes key=16 106eaa95a2be64b566e7d1ca0aa88f6a
       ah=sha1 key=20 5dddfba7070b03d5a31931d41db06ff96e7bc542
  enc: spi=dfcffaab esp=aes key=16 29c774dbd7e54464ee298c381e71a94e
       ah=sha1 key=20 c3da7372789c0a53b3752e69baaba1a42d798820
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1_nat proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=3 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:172.16.102.101-172.16.102.101:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0-255.255.255.255:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=18627 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42307/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42902/43200
  dec: spi=04847962 esp=aes key=16 b7daa5807cfa86906592a012a9d2478f
       ah=sha1 key=20 39c8bb4c9e3f1e9e451f22c58a172ff01155055d
  enc: spi=dfcffaad esp=aes key=16 2ecc644def4cebe6b0c4b7729da43d8e
       ah=sha1 key=20 469c6f319e83bd73468f55d430566afcd6215138
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-0.1_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
---------------------------------------------------
name=_OCVPN2-1.1 ver=2 serial=d 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.200.2:0 dst_mtu=0
bound_if=11 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/528 options[0210]=create_dev
frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=2 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=599 olast=599 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1 proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:10.2.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
proxyid=_OCVPN2-1.1_nat proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=2 auto-negotiate
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

- Spoke1 # `get router info routing-table all`

```
Routing table for VRF=0
Codes: K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
       O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
```

```
       i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
       * - candidate default

S*      0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.16.200.254, port1
C       10.1.100.0/24 is directly connected, dmz
C       10.2.100.0/24 is directly connected, loop
C       11.101.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
C       11.102.1.0/24 is directly connected, wan2
S       172.16.101.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.101.101/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
C       172.16.200.0/24 is directly connected, port1
S       172.16.102.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
C       172.16.102.101/32 is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.4.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.0
S       192.168.5.0/24 [20/0] is directly connected, _OCVPN2-0.1
```

- Spoke1 # `show firewall policy`

```
 ..............................

    edit 9
        set name "_OCVPN2-1.1_nat"
        set uuid 3f7a84b8-3d36-51e9-ee97-8f418c91e666
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "_OCVPN2-1.1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "_OCVPN2-1.1_remote_networks"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "Generated by OCVPN Cloud Service."
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 12
        set name "_OCVPN2-1.0_nat"
        set uuid 3fafec98-3d36-51e9-80c0-5d99325bad83
        set srcintf "any"
        set dstintf "_OCVPN2-1.0"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "_OCVPN2-1.0_remote_networks"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set comments "Generated by OCVPN Cloud Service."
        set nat enable
    next
   ..............................
```

# ADVPN

Auto-Discovery VPN (ADVPN) allows the central hub to dynamically inform spokes about a better path for traffic between two spokes.

The following topics provide instructions on configuring ADVPN:


- IPsec VPN wizard hub-and-spoke ADVPN support on page 1277
- ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol on page 1280
- ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol on page 1290
- ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol on page 1298
- UDP hole punching for spokes behind NAT on page 1307

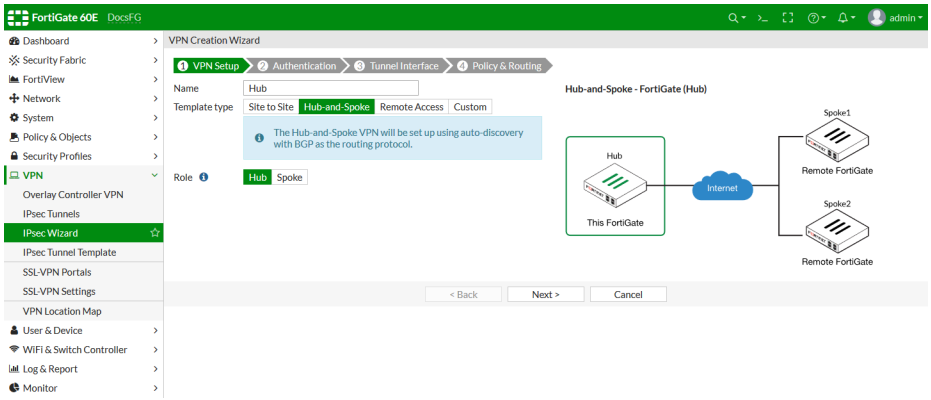

## IPsec VPN wizard hub-and-spoke ADVPN support

The IPsec Wizard can be used to create hub-and-spoke VPNs, with ADVPN enabled to establish tunnels between spokes.

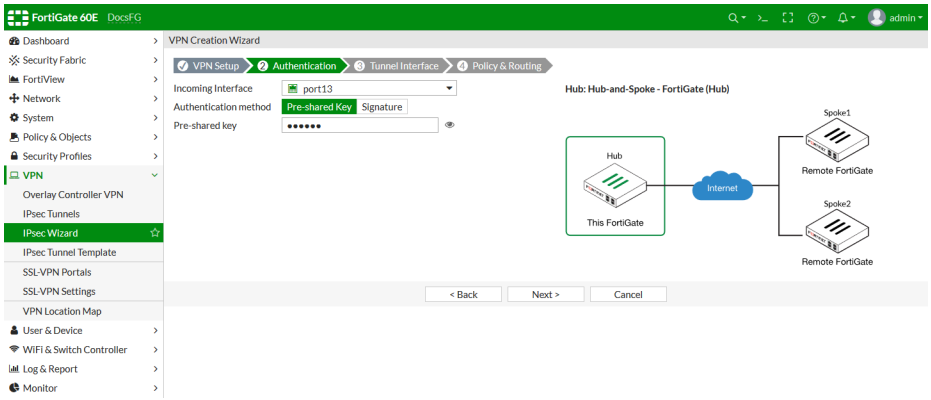
The following example shows the steps in the wizard for configuring a hub and a spoke.

### To configure the hub:

1. On the hub FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.

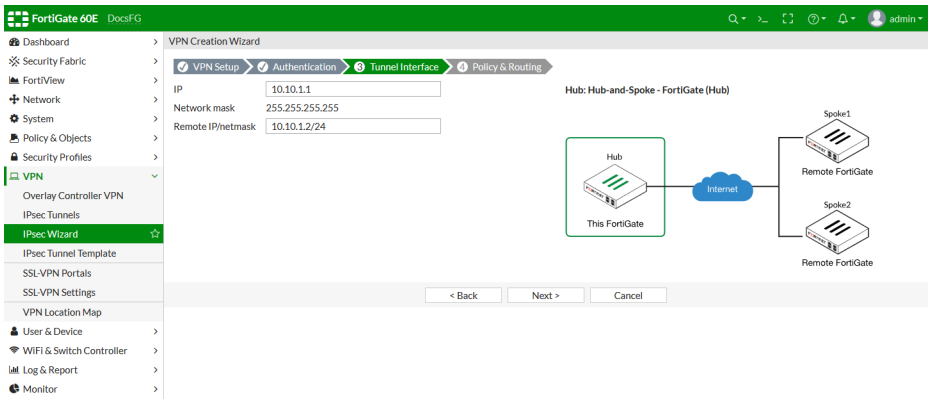



2. Enter a name, set the *Template Type* to *Hub-and-Spoke*, and set the *Role* to *Hub*.
3. Click *Next*.

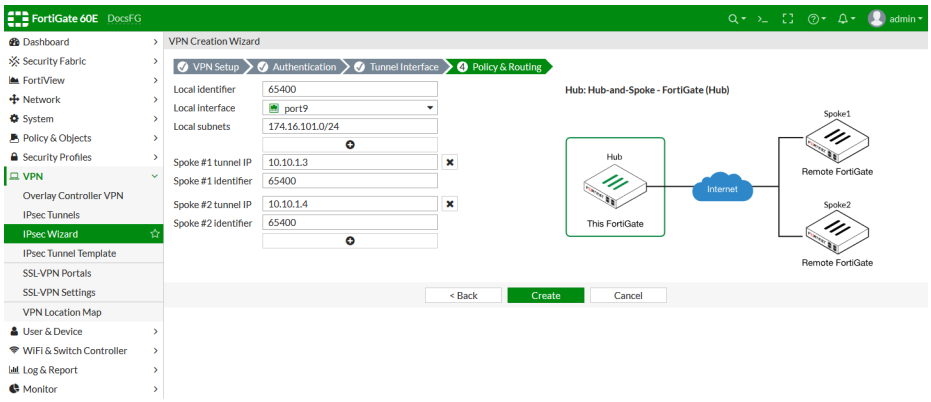



4. Select the *Incoming Interface* and configure the *Authentication method*.

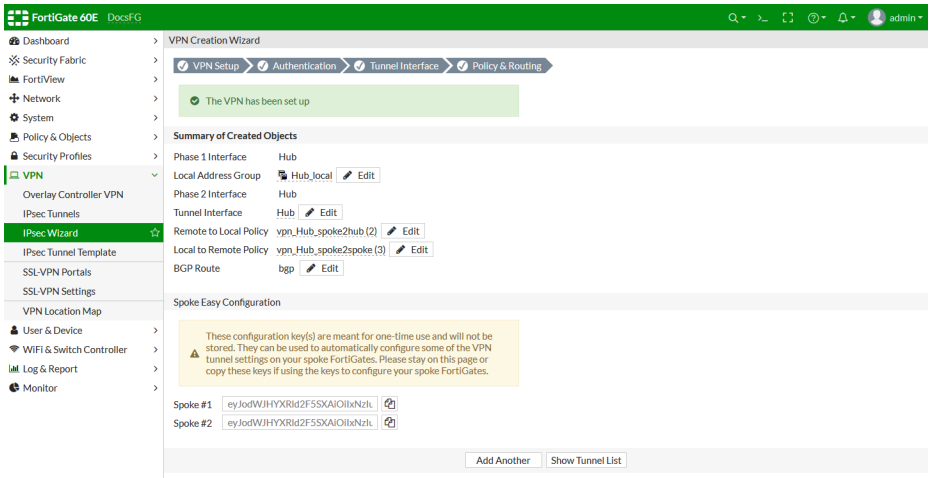
5. Click *Next*.




6. Set the *IP* address and *Remote IP/netmask*.
7. Click *Next*.



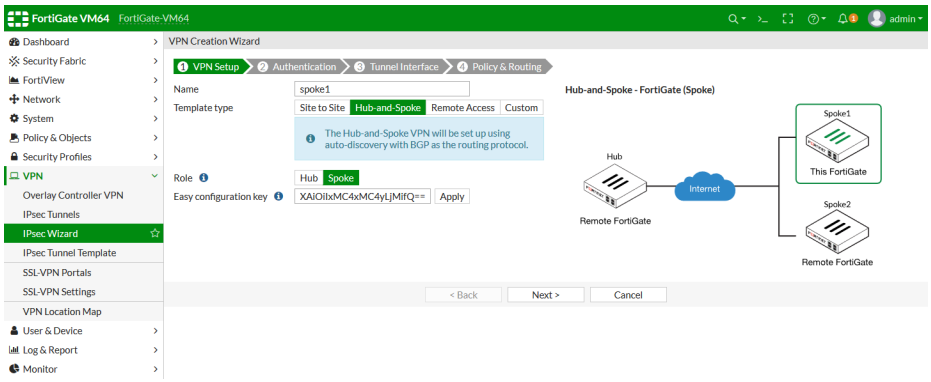

8. Configure the *Local identifier*, *Local interface*, and *Local subnets*, then configure the tunnel IP addresses and identifiers for the spokes.
9. Click *Create*.



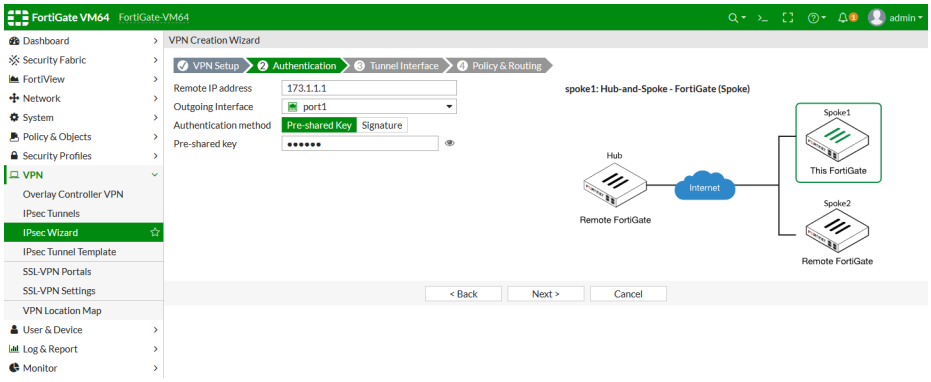

10. Review the summary to ensure that everything looks as expected.
11. Copy the spokes' easy configuration keys to a temporary location for use when configuring the spokes.

### To configure a spoke:

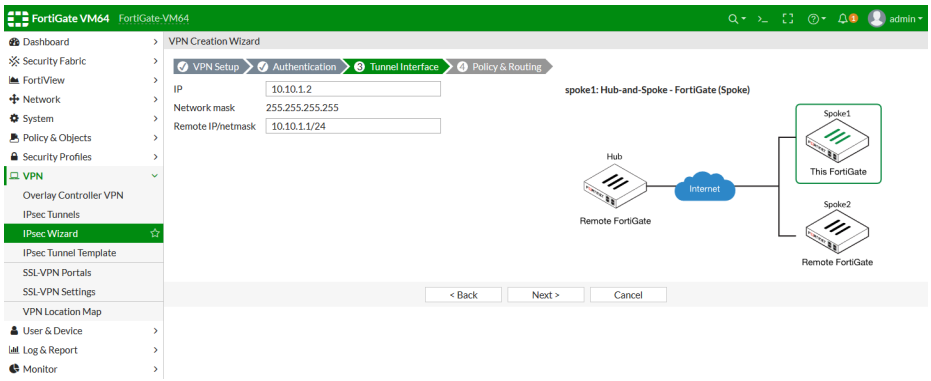
1. On the spoke FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.




2. Enter a name, set the *Template Type* to *Hub-and-Spoke*, set the *Role* to *Spoke*, and paste in the requisite *Easy configuration key* that you saved when configuring the hub.
3. Click *Next*.

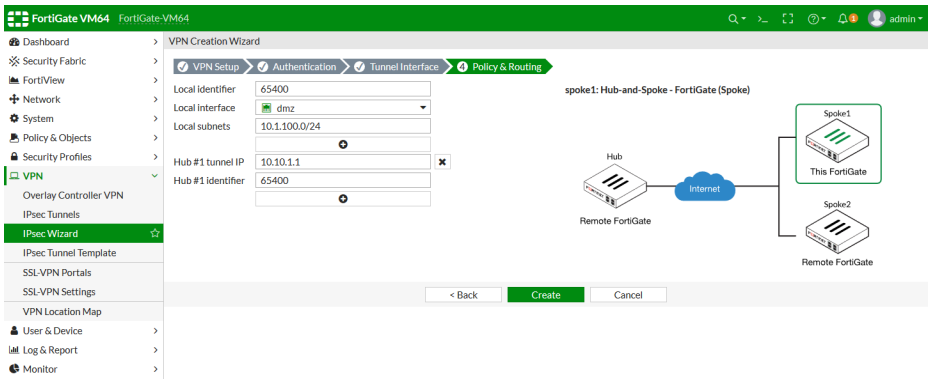



4. Set the *Remote IP address*, select the *Incoming Interface*, and configure the *Authentication method*.
5. Click *Next*.

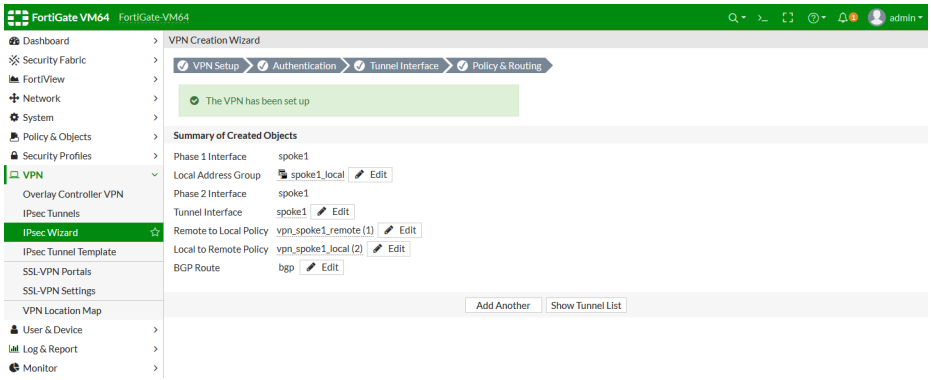



6. Set the *IP* address and *Remote IP/netmask*.

7. Click *Next*.



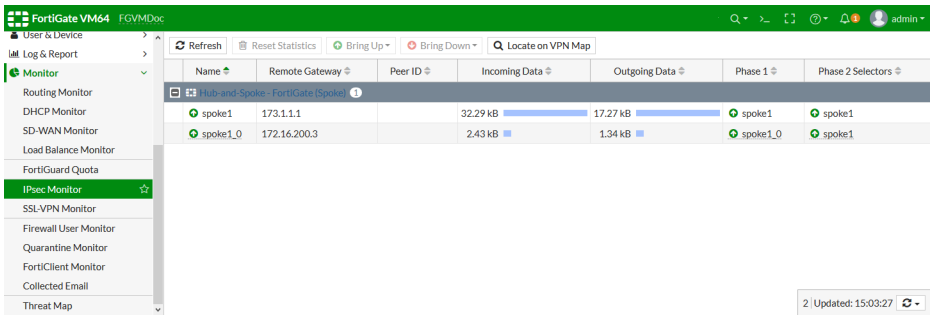

8. Configure the *Local identifier*, *Local interface*, and *Local subnets*, then configure the IP address and identifier of the hub FortiGate.
9. Click *Create*.




10. Review the summary to ensure that everything looks as expected.

### To check the ADVPN shortcut with the IPsec monitor:

1. On either the hub or spoke FortiGate, go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor*.

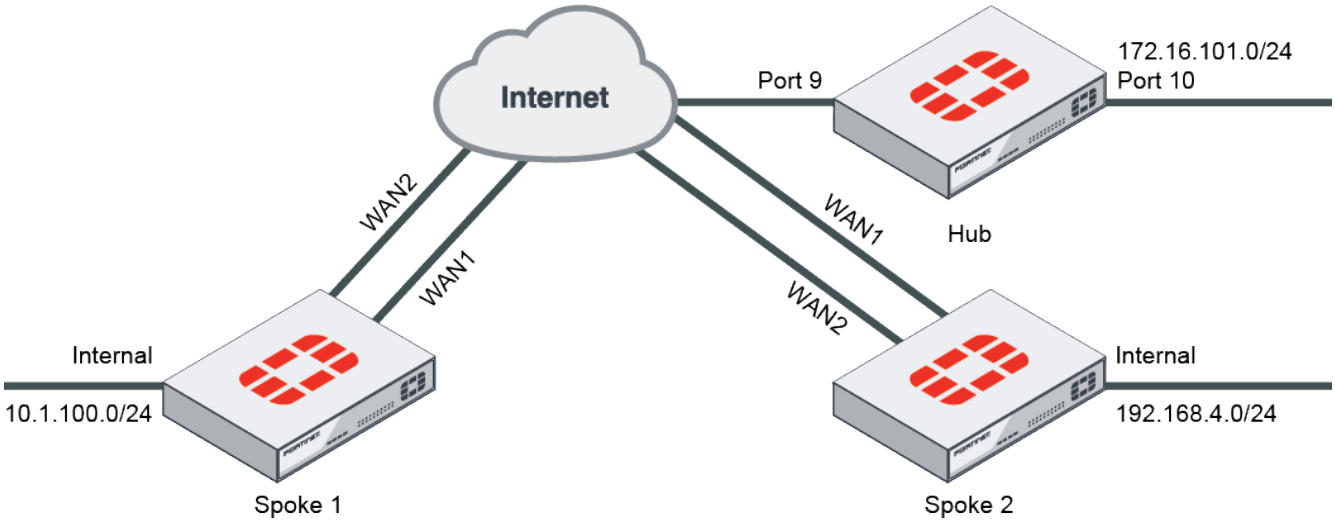



## ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol

This is a sample configuration of ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol. The following options must be enabled for this configuration:

- On the hub FortiGate, IPsec phase1-interface `net-device disable` must be run.
- IBGP must be used between the hub and spoke FortiGates.

- `bgp neighbor-group/neighbor-range` must be reused.




Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

**To configure ADVPN with BGP as the routing protocol using the CLI:**

1. Configure hub FortiGate's WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the hub FortiGate.
   a. Configure the hub FortiGate IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
3des-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
```

```
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set phase1name "advpn-hub"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
3des-sha256
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure the hub FortiGate firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "advpn-hub"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**c.** Configure the hub FortiGate's IPsec tunnel interface IP address.

```
config system interface
    edit "advpn-hub1"
        set ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

**d.** Configure the hub FortiGate's BGP.

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    config neighbor-group
        edit "advpn"
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65412
            set route-reflector-client enable
        next
    end
    config neighbor-range
```

```
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
            set neighbor-group "advpn"
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the spoke FortiGates.
   a. Configure the spoke FortiGates' WAN, internal interfaces, and static routes.
      i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

      ii. Configure the Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 17.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
```

```
    edit 1
        set gateway 17.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke1"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set phase1name "spoke1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke1_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke2"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set phase1name "spoke2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke2_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

c. Configure the spoke FortiGates' firewall policies.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
        next
        edit 2
            set name "inbound_advpn"
            set srcintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
            set dstintf "internal"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
    config firewall policy
        edit 1
            set name "outbound_advpn"
            set srcintf "internal"
            set dstintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 2
            set name "inbound_advpn"
            set srcintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
            set dstintf "internal"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

**d.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' tunnel interface IP addresses.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
    config system interface
        edit "spoke1"
            set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit "spoke1_backup"
            set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
    config system interface
        edit "spoke2"
            set ip 10.10.10.3 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
```

```
        next
        edit "spoke2_backup"
            set ip 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
```

**e.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' BGP.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.10.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65412
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config router bgp
    set as 65412
    config neighbor
        edit "10.10.10.254"
            set advertisement-interval 1
            set link-down-failover enable
            set remote-as 65412
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**4.** Run `diagnose` and `get` commands run on Spoke1 to check VPN and BGP states.

**a.** Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=1 olast=1 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=160 rxb=16428 txb=8969
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=628
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=6 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
```

```
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1225/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=a1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2369/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f5b esp=aes key=16 cbe88682ad896a69290027b6dd8f7162
       ah=sha1 key=20 7bb704b388f83783ac76c2ab0b6c9f7dcf78e93b
  enc: spi=6e3633fc esp=aes key=16 1a0da3f4deed3d16becc9dda57537355
       ah=sha1 key=20 368544044bd9b82592d72476ff93d5055056da8d
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16364, enc:pkts/bytes=160/19168
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

**b.** Run the `get router info bgp summary` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
BGP router identifier 7.7.7.7, local AS number 65412
BGP table version is 2
1 BGP AS-PATH entries
0 BGP community entries

Neighbor             V         AS [[QualityAssurance62/MsgRcvd]]
[[QualityAssurance62/MsgSent]]   [[QualityAssurance62/TblVer]]  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
10.10.10.254       1.          65412     143     142         1.     1.     1.
00:24:45                   2

Total number of neighbors 1
```

**c.** Run the `get router info routing-table bgp` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
B       172.16.101.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:23:57
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:22:03
```

**d.** Generate traffic between the spokes and check the shortcut tunnel and routing table. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=268 rxb=16428 txb=31243
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=714
```

```
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=6 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=345/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=10d esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2369/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f5b esp=aes key=16 cbe88682ad896a69290027b6dd8f7162
       ah=sha1 key=20 7bb704b388f83783ac76c2ab0b6c9f7dcf78e93b
  enc: spi=6e3633fc esp=aes key=16 1a0da3f4deed3d16becc9dda57537355
       ah=sha1 key=20 368544044bd9b82592d72476ff93d5055056da8d
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16364, enc:pkts/bytes=268/48320
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----
name=spoke1_0 ver=1 serial=9 15.1.1.2:4500->13.1.1.2:4500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=spoke1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=17 ilast=4 olast=4 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=100 rxb=112 txb=4686
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=231
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=447/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=65 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2368/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f5c esp=aes key=16 73fd9869547475db78851e6c057ad9b7
       ah=sha1 key=20 6ad3a5b1028f6b33c82ba494a370f13c7f462635
  enc: spi=79cb0f2b esp=aes key=16 52ab0acdc830d58c00e5956a6484654a
       ah=sha1 key=20 baa82aba4106dc60618f6fe95570728656799239
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/46, enc:pkts/bytes=100/11568
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=5 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

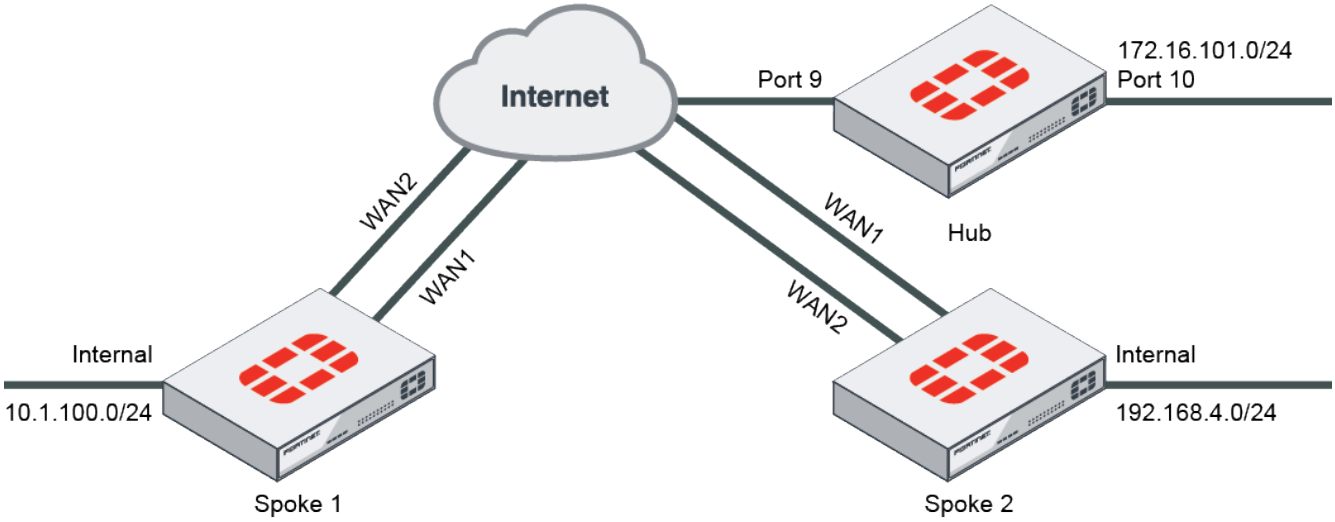
**e.** Run the `get router info routing-tale bgp` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
B       172.16.101.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:23:57
B       192.168.4.0/24 [200/0] via 10.10.10.3, spoke1_0 , 00:22:03
```

## ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol

This is a sample configuration of ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol. The following options must be enabled for this configuration:

- On the hub FortiGate, IPsec phase1-interface `net-device enable` must be run.
- OSPF must be used between the hub and spoke FortiGates.




Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

**To configure ADVPN with OSPF as the routing protocol using the CLI:**

1. Configure hub FortiGate's WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the hub FortiGate.
   a. Configure the hub FortiGate IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
```

```
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
3des-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set phase1name "advpn-hub"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
3des-sha256
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure the hub FortiGate firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "advpn-hub"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**c.** Configure the hub FortiGate's IPsec tunnel interface IP address.

```
config system interface
    edit "advpn-hub1"
        set ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

**d.** Configure the hub FortiGate's OSPF.

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 1.1.1.1
    config area
```

```
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the spoke FortiGates.
   a. Configure the spoke FortiGates' WAN, internal interfaces, and static routes.
      i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

      ii. Configure the Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 17.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 17.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke1"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set phase1name "spoke1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke1_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke2"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set phase1name "spoke2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke2_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

c. Configure the spoke FortiGates' firewall policies.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
```

```
        next
        edit 2
            set name "inbound_advpn"
            set srcintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
            set dstintf "internal"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
    config firewall policy
        edit 1
            set name "outbound_advpn"
            set srcintf "internal"
            set dstintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 2
            set name "inbound_advpn"
            set srcintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
            set dstintf "internal"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

**d.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' tunnel interface IP addresses.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
    config system interface
        edit "spoke1"
            set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit "spoke1_backup"
            set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
    config system interface
        edit "spoke2"
            set ip 10.10.10.3 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
```

```
        next
        edit "spoke2_backup"
            set ip 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.255
            set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
```

**e.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' OSPF.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 7.7.7.7
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config router ospf
    set router-id 8.8.8.8
    config area
        edit 0.0.0.0
        next
    end
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**4.** Run `diagnose` and `get` commands on Spoke1 to check VPN and OSPF states.

**a.** Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=5 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=263 rxb=16452 txb=32854
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2283
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
```

```
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1057/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=108 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000003 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2371/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f78 esp=aes key=16 7cc50c5c9df1751f6497a4ad764c5e9a
       ah=sha1 key=20 269292ddbf7309a6fc05871e63ed8a5297b5c9a1
  enc: spi=6e363612 esp=aes key=16 42bd49bced1e85cf74a24d97f10eb601
       ah=sha1 key=20 13964f166aad48790c2e551d6df165d7489f524b
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/16394, enc:pkts/bytes=263/50096
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=8 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

**b.** Run the `get router info ospf neighbor` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
OSPF process 0, VRF 0: Neighbor ID Pri State Dead Time Address Interface 8.8.8.8 1.
Full/ - 00:00:35 10.10.10.254 spoke1 1.1.1.1 1. Full/ - 00:00:35 10.10.10.254 spoke1
```

**c.** Run the `get router info routing-table ospf` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
O       172.16.101.0/24 [110/110] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:23:23
O       192.168.4.0/24   [110/110] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:22:35
```

**d.** Generate traffic between the spokes, then check the shortcut tunnel and routing table. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=19 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=313 rxb=16452 txb=35912
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=2303
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=782/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=13a esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000003 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2371/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f78 esp=aes key=16 7cc50c5c9df1751f6497a4ad764c5e9a
```

```
        ah=sha1 key=20 269292ddbf7309a6fc05871e63ed8a5297b5c9a1
    enc: spi=6e363612 esp=aes key=16 42bd49bced1e85cf74a24d97f10eb601
        ah=sha1 key=20 13964f166aad48790c2e551d6df165d7489f524b
    dec:pkts/bytes=1/16394, enc:pkts/bytes=313/56432
    npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=13 olast=13 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----
name=spoke1_0 ver=1 serial=e 15.1.1.2:4500->13.1.1.2:4500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=spoke1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=19 ilast=4 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=641 txp=1254 rxb=278648 txb=161536
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=184
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=1 ref=10 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=922/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=452 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000280 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2370/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f79 esp=aes key=16 324f8cf840ba6722cc7abbba46b34e0e
       ah=sha1 key=20 a40e9aac596b95c4cd83a7f6372916a5ef5aa505
  enc: spi=ef3327b5 esp=aes key=16 5909d6066b303de4520d2b5ae2db1b61
       ah=sha1 key=20 1a42f5625b5a335d8d5282fe83b5d6c6ff26b2a4
  dec:pkts/bytes=641/278568, enc:pkts/bytes=1254/178586
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=a dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

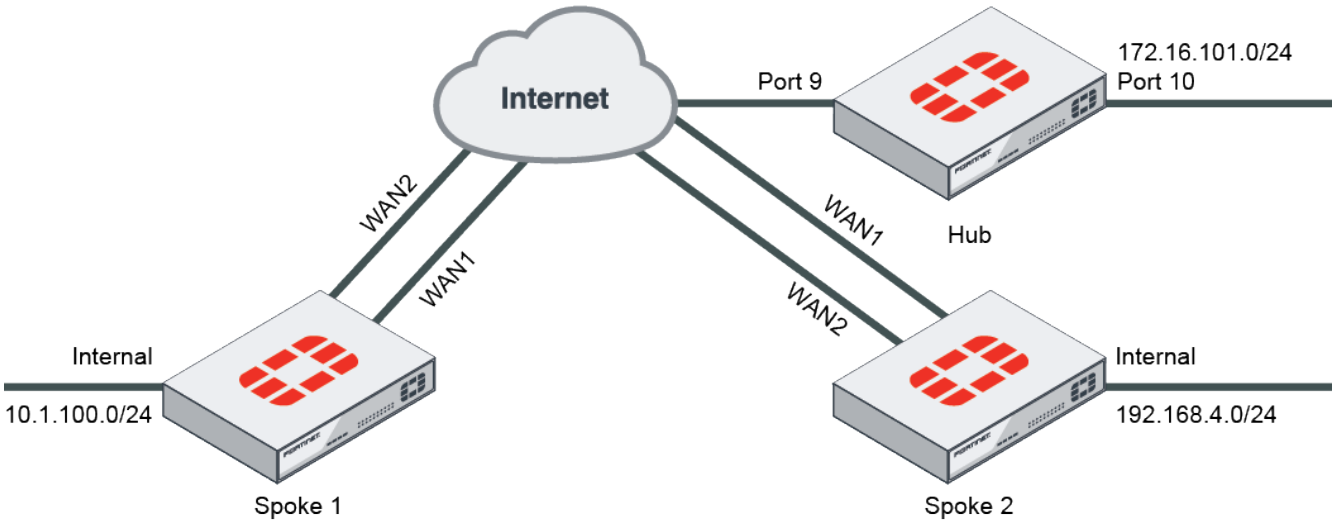
**e.** Run the `get router info routing-tale ospf` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
O       172.16.101.0/24 [110/110] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:27:14
O       192.168.4.0/24  [110/110] via  10.10.10.3, spoke1_0, 00:26:26
```

## ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol

This is a sample configuration of ADVPN with RIP as routing protocol. The following options must be enabled for this configuration:

- On the hub FortiGate, IPsec phase1-interface `net-device disable` must be run.
- RIP must be used between the hub and spoke FortiGates.
- `split-horizon-status enable` must be run on the hub FortiGate.




Because the GUI can only complete part of the configuration, we recommend using the CLI.

**To configure ADVPN with RIP as the routing protocol using the CLI:**

1. In the CLI, configure hub FortiGate's WAN, internal interface, and static route.

```
config system interface
    edit "port9"
        set alias "WAN"
        set ip 22.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "port10"
        set alias "Internal"
        set ip 172.16.101.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 22.1.1.2
        set device "port9"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the hub FortiGate.
   a. Configure the hub FortiGate IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port9"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 3des-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
3des-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-sender enable
        set tunnel-search nexthop
        set psksecret sample
```

```
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "advpn-hub"
        set phase1name "advpn-hub"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 3des-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
3des-sha256
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure the hub FortiGate firewall policy.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "spoke2hub"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "port10"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "172.16.101.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "spoke2spoke"
        set srcintf "advpn-hub"
        set dstintf "advpn-hub"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**c.** Configure the hub FortiGate's IPsec tunnel interface IP address.

```
config system interface
    edit "advpn-hub1"
        set ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.253 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

**d.** Configure the hub FortiGate's RIP.

```
config router rip
    set default-information-originate enable
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 172.16.101.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
    config interface
        edit "advpn-hub"
```

```
            set split-horizon-status disable
        next
    end
end
```

3. Configure the spoke FortiGates.
   a. Configure the spoke FortiGates' WAN, internal interfaces, and static routes.
      i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 15.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 12.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 10.1.100.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 12.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 15.1.1.1
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

      ii. Configure the Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set alias "primary_WAN"
        set ip 13.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "wan2"
        set alias "secondary_WAN"
        set ip 17.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "internal"
        set ip 192.168.4.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 17.1.1.1
        set device "wan2"
        set distance 15
    next
    edit 2
        set gateway 13.1.1.1
```

```
        set device "wan1"
    next
end
```

**b.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' IPsec phase1-interface and phase2-interface.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set interface "wan2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
        set dpd on-idle
        set auto-discovery-receiver enable
        set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
        set monitor "spoke1"
        set psksecret sample
        set dpd-retryinterval 5
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set phase1name "spoke1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set phase1name "spoke1_backup"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
        set auto-negotiate enable
    next
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set interface "wan1"
        set peertype any
        set net-device enable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set add-route disable
```

```
            set dpd on-idle
            set auto-discovery-receiver enable
            set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
            set psksecret sample
            set dpd-retryinterval 5
        next
        edit "spoke2_backup"
            set interface "wan2"
            set peertype any
            set net-device enable
            set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
            set add-route disable
            set dpd on-idle
            set auto-discovery-receiver enable
            set remote-gw 22.1.1.1
            set monitor "spoke2"
            set psksecret sample
            set dpd-retryinterval 5
        next
    end
    config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
        edit "spoke2"
            set phase1name "spoke2"
            set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
    aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
            set auto-negotiate enable
        next
        edit "spoke2_backup"
            set phase1name "spoke2_backup"
            set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256
    aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
            set auto-negotiate enable
        next
    end
```

**c.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' firewall policies.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke1" "spoke1_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
```

```
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "outbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "internal"
        set dstintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "inbound_advpn"
        set srcintf "spoke2" "spoke2_backup"
        set dstintf "internal"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

d. Configure the spoke FortiGates' tunnel interface IP addresses.

i. Configure Spoke1.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke1"
        set ip 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke1_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

ii. Configure Spoke2.

```
config system interface
    edit "spoke2"
        set ip 10.10.10.3 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "spoke2_backup"
        set ip 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.255
        set remote-ip 10.10.10.254 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

**e.** Configure the spoke FortiGates' RIP.

**i.** Configure Spoke1.

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**ii.** Configure Spoke2.

```
config router rip
    config network
        edit 1
            set prefix 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
        next
        edit 2
            set prefix 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0
        next
    end
end
```

**4.** Run `diagnose` and `get` commands on Spoke1.

**a.** Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=1 refcnt=17 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=87 rxb=200 txb=6208
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1040
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=7 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1793/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=57 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2370/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f60 esp=aes key=16 6b54e32d54d039196a74d96e96d1cf14
       ah=sha1 key=20 e4903474614eafc96eda6400a3a5e88bbcb26a7f
  enc: spi=6e36349d esp=aes key=16 914a40a7993eda75c4dea2f42905f27d
       ah=sha1 key=20 8040eb08342edea2dae5eee058fd054a46688267
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/132, enc:pkts/bytes=86/11696
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
```

```
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
```

**b.** Run the `get router info rip database` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Codes: R - RIP, Rc - RIP connected, Rs - RIP static, K - Kernel,
       C - Connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP

   Network            Next Hop         Metric From            If     Time
Rc 10.1.100.0/24                             1.                 internal
Rc 10.10.10.2/32                               1.                 spoke1
R  172.16.101.0/24    10.10.10.254             1. 10.10.10.254      spoke1 02:28
R  192.168.4.0/24      10.10.10.254              1. 10.10.10.254       spoke1 02:44
```

**c.** Run the `get router info routing-table rip` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
R       172.16.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:08:38
R       192.168.4.0/24 [120/3] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:08:38
```

**d.** Generate traffic between the spokes, then check the shortcut tunnel and routing table. Run the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command on Spoke1. The system should return the following:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=spoke1 ver=1 serial=2 15.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=19 ilast=3 olast=3 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=78 rxb=200 txb=5546
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=1039
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=5 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=7 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=1807/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=4e esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2370/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f60 esp=aes key=16 6b54e32d54d039196a74d96e96d1cf14
       ah=sha1 key=20 e4903474614eafc96eda6400a3a5e88bbcb26a7f
  enc: spi=6e36349d esp=aes key=16 914a40a7993eda75c4dea2f42905f27d
       ah=sha1 key=20 8040eb08342edea2dae5eee058fd054a46688267
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/132, enc:pkts/bytes=77/10456
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=22.1.1.1 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=1 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
----
name=spoke1_backup ver=1 serial=1 12.1.1.2:0->22.1.1.1:0
bound_if=6 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/536 options[0218]=npu
create_dev frag-rfc  accept_traffic=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=20 olast=20 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
```

```
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=spoke1_backup proto=0 sa=0 ref=2 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
----
name=spoke1_0 ver=1 serial=a 15.1.1.2:4500->13.1.1.2:4500
bound_if=7 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dial_inst/3 encap=none/728 options[02d8]=npu
create_dev no-sysctl rgwy-chg frag-rfc  accept_traffic=1

 parent=spoke1 index=0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=20 ilast=2 olast=0 ad=r/2
stat: rxp=1 txp=7 rxb=112 txb=480
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=5000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=keepalive draft=32 interval=10 remote_port=4500
proxyid=spoke1 proto=0 sa=1 ref=8 serial=1 auto-negotiate adr
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=1a227 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=2358/0B replaywin=1024
       seqno=8 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=2367/2400
  dec: spi=c53a8f61 esp=aes key=16 c66aa7ae9657068108ed47c048ff56b6
       ah=sha1 key=20 60661c68e20bbc913c2564ade85e01ea3769e703
  enc: spi=79cb0f30 esp=aes key=16 bf6c898c2e1c64baaa679ed5d79c3b58
       ah=sha1 key=20 146ca78be6c34eedb9cd66cc328216e08682ecb1
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/46, enc:pkts/bytes=7/992
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=13.1.1.2 npu_lgwy=15.1.1.2 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=1 enc_npuid=1
```

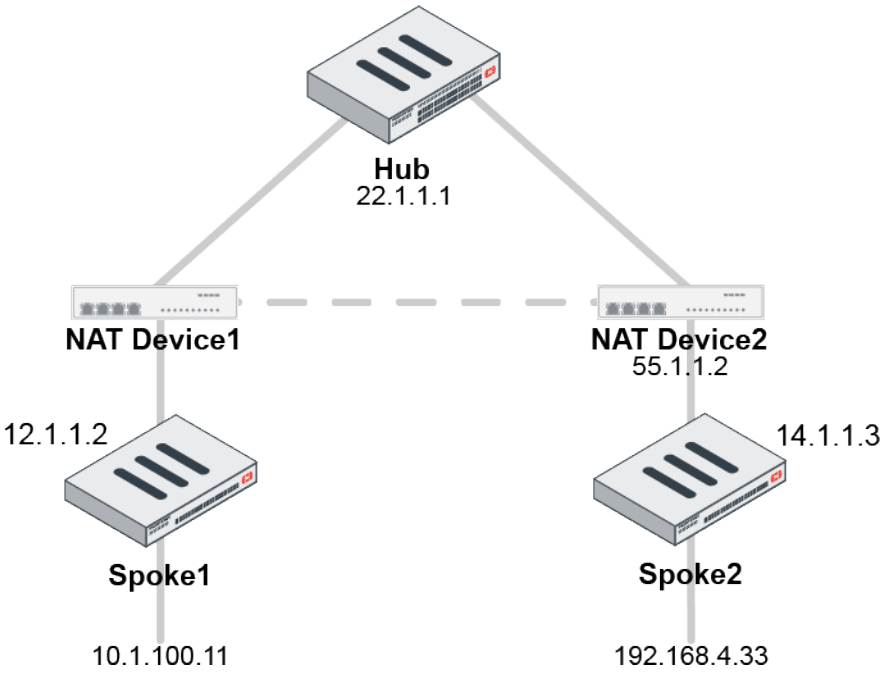
**e.** Run the `get router info routing-tale rip` command. The system should return the following:

```
Routing table for VRF=0
R       172.16.101.0/24 [120/2] via 10.10.10.254, spoke1, 00:09:04
R       192.168.4.0/24 [120/2] via 10.10.10.3, spoke1_0, 00:00:02
```

## UDP hole punching for spokes behind NAT

UDP hole punching allows ADVPN shortcuts to be established through a UDP hole on a NAT device. The NAT device must support RFC 4787 Endpoint-Independent Mapping.

In the following example, device 10.1.100.11 behind Spoke1 needs to reach device 192.168.4.33 behind Spoke2. Spoke1 and Spoke2 are behind NAT devices and have established IPsec tunnels to the Hub. The hole punching creates a shortcut between Spoke1 and Spoke2 that bypasses the Hub.




**To verify the ADVPN shortcut is established between both spokes behind NAT:**

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application ike -1
ike 0: comes 22.1.1.1:4500->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Informational id=3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63:58ac7c02 len=204
ike 0:toHub1:35: notify msg received: SHORTCUT-OFFER
ike 0:toHub1: shortcut-offer 10.1.100.11->192.168.4.33 psk 64 ppk 0 ver 1 mode 0
ike 0 looking up shortcut by addr 192.168.4.33, name toHub1
ike 0:toHub1: send shortcut-query 1438189781753480593 d3fdd1bfbc94caee/0000000000000000
12.1.1.2 10.1.100.11->192.168.4.33 psk 64 ttl 32 nat 1 ver 1 mode 0
ike 0:toHub1:35: sent IKE msg (SHORTCUT-QUERY): 12.1.1.2:4500->22.1.1.1:4500, len=236,
id=3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63:12e263f7
ike 0: comes 22.1.1.1:4500->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Informational id=3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63:4976e1ac len=236
ike 0:toHub1:35: notify msg received: SHORTCUT-REPLY
ike 0:toHub1: recv shortcut-reply 1438189781753480593 d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
14.1.1.3 to 10.1.100.11 psk 64 ppk 0 ver 1 mode 0 nat 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1: iif 22 192.168.4.33->10.1.100.11 route lookup oif 21
ike 0:toHub1: shortcut-reply received from 55.1.1.2:64916, local-nat=yes, peer-nat=yes
ike 0:toHub1: NAT hole punching to peer at 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1: created connection: 0x5e71f58 6 12.1.1.2->55.1.1.2:64916.
<==55.1.1.2:64916 this is UDP hole of NAT device
ike 0:toHub1: adding new dynamic tunnel for 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1_0: added new dynamic tunnel for 55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode is sending 1st message...
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: cookie d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (ident_i1send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=632,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Identity Protection id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23 len=252
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode get 1st response...
…
```

```
…
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: negotiation result
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:   protocol id = ISAKMP:
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:      trans_id = KEY_IKE.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:      encapsulation = IKE/none
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=OAKLEY_ENCRYPT_ALG, val=AES_CBC, key-len=128
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=OAKLEY_HASH_ALG, val=SHA2_256.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=AUTH_METHOD, val=PRESHARED_KEY.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:         type=OAKLEY_GROUP, val=MODP2048.
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: ISAKMP SA lifetime=86400
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (ident_i2send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=380,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Identity Protection id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23 len=380
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode get 2nd response...
…
…
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: add INITIAL-CONTACT
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: add INTERFACE-ADDR4 10.10.1.100
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (ident_i3send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=140,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Identity Protection id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23 len=124
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: initiator: main mode get 3rd response...
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: received p1 notify type INTERFACE-ADDR4
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: INTERFACE-ADDR4 10.10.1.102
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: peer identifier IPV4_ADDR 14.1.1.3
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: PSK authentication succeeded
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: authentication OK
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: established IKE SA d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: auto-discovery receiver
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: auto-discovery 2
ike 0:toHub1_0: add R/32 route 10.10.1.102 via 10.10.1.102, intf=toHub1(22)
ike 0:toHub1_0: add peer route 10.10.1.102
ike 0:toHub1: schedule auto-negotiate
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: no pending Quick-Mode negotiations
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: IPsec SA connect 6 12.1.1.2->55.1.1.2:64916
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: using existing connection
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: traffic triggered, serial=1 1:10.1.100.11:2048->1:192.168.4.33:0
ike 0:toHub1:toHub1: config found
ike 0:toHub1_0:toHub1: IPsec SA connect 6 12.1.1.2->55.1.1.2:64916 negotiating
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: cookie d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23:8465e467
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: natt flags 0x1f, encmode 1->3
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: initiator selectors 0 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0-
>0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0
ike 0:toHub1_0:48: sent IKE msg (quick_i1send): 12.1.1.2:4500->55.1.1.2:64916, len=620,
id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23:8465e467
ike 0: comes 55.1.1.2:64916->12.1.1.2:4500,ifindex=6....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Quick id=d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23:8465e467 len=444
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: responder selectors 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0->0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: my proposal:
…
…
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: add IPsec SA: SPIs=79654cf1/5e9936a5
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: IPsec SA dec spi 79654cf1 key
```

```
16:5E21180992B8892DE5142E1F53ABD29E auth 20:49AA4AE14994A39A138392AC517B6E79D98CA673
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: IPsec SA enc spi 5e9936a5 key
16:BE16B8EF4E75F7B3CF97A1D58D996890 auth 20:2F46B57CAC6F3185BB182F9280312263325F6BAF
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: added IPsec SA: SPIs=79654cf1/5e9936a5
ike 0:toHub1_0:48:toHub1:109: sending SNMP tunnel UP trapp
```

**To verify the spoke-to-spoke IPsec phase 1 tunnel shortcut is established:**

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list
vd: root/0
name: toHub1
version: 1
interface: wan2 6
addr: 12.1.1.2:4500 -> 22.1.1.1:4500
created: 503s ago
assigned IPv4 address: 10.10.1.100/255.255.255.0
nat: me
auto-discovery: 2 receiver
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/3  established 1/3  time 0/0/0 ms

  id/spi: 35 3c10fb6a76f1e264/6c7b397100dffc63
  direction: initiator
  status: established 503-503s ago = 0ms
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: 7fca86063ea2e72f-4efea6f1bec23948
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/85596
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000

vd: root/0
name: toHub1_0
version: 1
interface: wan2 6
addr: 12.1.1.2:4500 -> 55.1.1.2:64916
created: 208s ago
nat: me peer
auto-discovery: 2 receiver
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 20/20/20 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 10/10/10 ms

  id/spi: 48 d3fdd1bfbc94caee/16a1eb5b0f37ee23
  direction: initiator
  status: established 208-208s ago = 20ms
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: 9bcac400d8e14e11-fffde33eaa3a8263
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/85891
  DPD sent/recv: 0000000a/00000000
```

## Other VPN topics

The following topics provide instructions on configuring other VPN topics.

- VPN and ASIC offload on page 1311
- Encryption algorithms on page 1320
- Fragmenting IP packets before IPsec encapsulation on page 1328

- VXLAN over IPsec tunnel on page 1328
- Defining gateway IP addresses in IPsec with mode-config and DHCP on page 1332
- FQDN support for remote gateways on page 1334

## VPN and ASIC offload

This topic provides a brief introduction to VPN traffic offloading.

### IPsec traffic processed by NPU

1. Check the device ASIC information. For example, a FortiGate 900D has an NP6 and a CP8.

```
# get hardware status
Model name: [[QualityAssurance62/FortiGate]]-900D
ASIC version: CP8
ASIC SRAM: 64M
CPU: Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E3-1225 v3 @ 3.20GHz
Number of CPUs: 4
RAM: 16065 MB
Compact Flash: 1925 MB /dev/sda
Hard disk: 244198 MB /dev/sdb
USB Flash: not available
Network Card chipset: [[QualityAssurance62/FortiASIC]] NP6 Adapter (rev.)
```

2. Check port to NPU mapping.

```
# diagnose npu np6 port-list
Chip   XAUI Ports            Max   Cross-chip
                             Speed offloading
----
np6_0  0
        1.    port17           1G    Yes
        1.    port18           1G    Yes
        1.    port19           1G    Yes
        1.    port20           1G    Yes
        1.    port21           1G    Yes
        1.    port22           1G    Yes
        1.    port23           1G    Yes
        1.    port24           1G    Yes
        1.    port27           1G    Yes
        1.    port28           1G    Yes
        1.    port25           1G    Yes
        1.    port26           1G    Yes
        1.    port31           1G    Yes
        1.    port32           1G    Yes
        1.    port29           1G    Yes
        1.    port30           1G    Yes
        1.    portB            10G   Yes
        1.
----
np6_1  0
        1.    port1            1G    Yes
        1.    port2            1G    Yes
        1.    port3            1G    Yes
        1.    port4            1G    Yes
```

```
        1.    port5           1G    Yes
        1.    port6           1G    Yes
        1.    port7           1G    Yes
        1.    port8           1G    Yes
        1.    port11          1G    Yes
        1.    port12          1G    Yes
        1.    port9           1G    Yes
        1.    port10          1G    Yes
        1.    port15          1G    Yes
        1.    port16          1G    Yes
        1.    port13          1G    Yes
        1.    port14          1G    Yes
        1.    portA           10G   Yes
        1.
----
```

3. Configure the option in IPsec phase1 settings to control NPU encrypt/decrypt IPsec packets (enabled by default).

```
config vpn ipsec phase1/phase1-interface
    edit "vpn_name"
        set npu-offload enable/disable
    next
end
```

4. Check NPU offloading. The NPU encrypted/decrypted counter should tick. The `npu_flag 03` flag means that the traffic processed by the NPU is bi-directional.

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=test ver=2 serial=1 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=2 olast=2 ad=/0
stat: rxp=12231 txp=12617 rxb=1316052 txb=674314
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=test proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=7
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=10626 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42921/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=802 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000680 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42930/43200
  dec: spi=e313ac46 esp=aes key=16 0dcb52642eed18b852b5c65a7dc62958
       ah=md5 key=16 c61d9fe60242b9a30e60b1d01da77660
  enc: spi=706ffe03 esp=aes key=16 6ad98c204fa70545dbf3d2e33fb7b529
       ah=md5 key=16 dcc3b866da155ef73c0aba15ec530e2e
  dec:pkts/bytes=1665/16352, enc:pkts/bytes=2051/16826
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=2 enc_npuid=2

FGT_900D # diagnose vpn ipsec st
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
```

```
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1664             2047
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1664             2047
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 3                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 3                1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 1                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
```

```
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1                1.
        sha1             : 1                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 29882            29882
        aria             : 21688            21688
        seed             : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 29521            29521
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 59403            59403
        md5              : 0                 1.
        sha1             : 175462           175462
        sha256           : 0                 1.
        sha384           : 0                 1.
        sha512           : 0                 1.
```

5. If traffic cannot be offloaded by the NPU, the CP will try to encrypt/decrypt the IPsec packets.

## IPsec traffic processed by CP

1. Check the NPU flag and CP counter.

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=test ver=2 serial=1 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=8418 txp=8418 rxb=1251248 txb=685896
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=test proto=0 sa=1 ref=3 serial=7
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=42037/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=20e3 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=000020e3 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42928/43200
  dec: spi=e313ac48 esp=aes key=16 393770842f926266530db6e43e21c4f8
       ah=md5 key=16 b2e4e025e8910e95c1745e7855479cca
  enc: spi=706ffe05 esp=aes key=16 7ef749610335f9f50e252023926de29e
       ah=md5 key=16 0b81e4d835919ab2b8ba8edbd01aec9d
  dec:pkts/bytes=8418/685896, enc:pkts/bytes=8418/1251248
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=6 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0

FGT-D # diagnose vpn ipsec status
```

```
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1664             2047
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1664             2047
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 3                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 3                1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
```

```
        Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
            null              : 1                 1.
            des               : 0                 1.
            3des              : 0                 1.
            aes               : 8499              8499
            aes-gcm           : 0                 1.
            aria              : 0                 1.
            seed              : 0                 1.
            chacha20poly1305  : 0                 1.
        Integrity (generated/validated)
            null              : 0                 1.
            md5               : 8499              8499
            sha1              : 1                 1.
            sha256            : 0                 1.
            sha384            : 0                 1.
            sha512            : 0                 1.

    SOFTWARE:
        Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
            null              : 0                 1.
            des               : 0                 1.
            3des              : 0                 1.
            aes               : 0                 1.
            aes-gcm           : 29882             29882
            aria              : 21688             21688
            seed              : 153774            153774
            chacha20poly1305  : 29521             29521
        Integrity (generated/validated)
            null              : 59403             59403
            md5               : 0                 1.
            sha1              : 175462            175462
            sha256            : 0                 1.
            sha384            : 0                 1.
            sha512            : 0                 1.
```

2. Two options are used to control if the CP processes packets. If disabled, packets are processed by the CPU.

```
config system global
    set ipsec-asic-offload disable
    set ipsec-hmac-offload disable
end
```

## IPsec traffic processed by CPU

IPsec traffic might be processed by the CPU for the following reasons:

- Some low end models do not have NPUs.
- NPU offloading and CP IPsec traffic processing manually disabled.
- Some types of proposals - SEED, ARIA, chacha20poly1305 - are not supported by the NPU or CP.
- NPU flag set to 00 and software encrypt/decrypt counter ticked.

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=test ver=2 serial=1 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/0
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=14 ilast=0 olast=0 ad=/0
```

```
stat: rxp=12162 txp=12162 rxb=1691412 txb=1008216
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=test proto=0 sa=1 ref=4 serial=8
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10602 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1453 expire=42903/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=2d70 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00002d70 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42931/43200
  dec: spi=e313ac4d esp=chacha20poly1305 key=36
812d1178784c1130d1586606e44e1b9ab157e31a09edbed583be1e9cc82e8c9f2655a2cf
       ah=null key=0
  enc: spi=706ffe0a esp=chacha20poly1305 key=36
f2727e001e2243549b140f1614ae3df82243adb070e60c33911f461b389b05a7a642e11a
       ah=null key=0
  dec:pkts/bytes=11631/976356, enc:pkts/bytes=11631/1627692
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=7 dec_npuid=0 enc_npuid=0

FGT_900D # diagnose vpn ipsec status
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 1664             2047
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 1664             2047
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

```
NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 3                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 3                1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 1                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 8865             8865
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 8865             8865
        sha1             : 1                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 531              531
        aes-gcm          : 29882            29882
        aria             : 21688            21688
        seed             : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 41156            41156
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 71038            71038
        md5              : 531              531
        sha1             : 175462           175462
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

### Disable automatic ASIC offloading

When `auto-asic-offload` is set to `disable` in the firewall policy, traffic is not offloaded and the NPU hosting counter is ticked.

```
# diagnose vpn ipsec status
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 14976            15357
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 110080           2175
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 110080           2175
        sha1             : 14976            15357
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 3                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 111090           1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 111090           1.
        sha1             : 3                1.
```

```
        sha256          : 0                1.
        sha384          : 0                1.
        sha512          : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null            : 1                1.
        des             : 0                1.
        3des            : 0                1.
        aes             : 8865             8865
        aes-gcm         : 0                1.
        aria            : 0                1.
        seed            : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0               1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null            : 0                1.
        md5             : 8865             8865
        sha1            : 1                1.
        sha256          : 0                1.
        sha384          : 0                1.
        sha512          : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null            : 0                1.
        des             : 0                1.
        3des            : 0                1.
        aes             : 539              539
        aes-gcm         : 29882            29882
        aria            : 21688            21688
        seed            : 153774           153774
        chacha20poly1305 : 41259           41259
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null            : 71141            71141
        md5             : 539              539
        sha1            : 175462           175462
        sha256          : 0                1.
        sha384          : 0                1.
        sha512          : 0                1.
```

## Encryption algorithms

This topic provides a brief introduction to IPsec phase 1 and phase 2 encryption algorithms and includes the following sections:

- IKEv1 phase 1 encryption algorithm
- IKEv2 phase 1 encryption algorithm
- IKEv2 phase 2 encryption algorithm
- HMAC settings

### IKEv1 phase 1 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
```

DES is a symmetric-key algorithm, which means the same key is used for encrypting and decrypting data. FortiOS supports:

- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

3DES applies the DES algorithm three times to each data. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

AES is a symmetric-key algorithm with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512

The ARIA algorithm is based on AES with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384

- aria192-sha512
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

SEED is a symmetric-key algorithm. FortiOS supports:

- seed128-md5
- seed128-sha1
- seed128-sha256
- seed128-sha384
- seed128-sha512

Suite-B is a set of AES encryption with ICV in GCM mode. FortiOS supports Suite-B on new kernel platforms only. IPsec traffic **cannot** offload to NPU. CP9 supports Suite-B offloading, otherwise packets are encrypted and decrypted by software. FortiOS supports:

- suite-b-gcm-128
- suite-b-gcm-256

### IKEv1 phase 2 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
```

With null encryption, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- null-md5
- null-sha1
- null-sha256
- null-sha384
- null-sha512

With the DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- des-null
- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

With the 3DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-null
- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

With the AES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aes128-null
- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes192-null
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-null
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512

With the AESGCM encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aes128gcm
- aes256gcm

With the chacha20poly1305 encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- chacha20poly1305

With the ARIA encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aria128-null
- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-null
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-null
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

With the SEED encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- seed-null
- seed-md5
- seed-sha1
- seed-sha256
- seed-sha384
- seed-sha512

### IKEv2 phase 1 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm-prfsha256 aes256gcm-prfsha384 chacha20poly1305-
     prfsha256
```

DES is a symmetric-key algorithm, which means the same key is used for encrypting and decrypting data. FortiOS supports:

- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

3DES applies the DES algorithm three times to each data. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

AES is a symmetric-key algorithm with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes128gcm-prfsha1
- aes128gcm-prfsha256
- aes128gcm-prfsha384
- aes128gcm-prfsha512
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256

- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512
- aes256gcm-prfsha1
- aes256gcm-prfsha256
- aes256gcm-prfsha384
- aes256gcm-prfsha512

The ARIA algorithm is based on AES with different key lengths (128, 192, and 256 bits). FortiOS supports:

- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

With the chacha20poly1305 encryption algorithm, FortiOS supports:

- chacha20poly1305-prfsha1
- chacha20poly1305-prfsha256
- chacha20poly1305-prfsha384
- chacha20poly1305-prfsha512

SEED is a symmetric-key algorithm. FortiOS supports:

- seed128-md5
- seed128-sha1
- seed128-sha256
- seed128-sha384
- seed128-sha512

Suite-B is a set of AES encryption with ICV in GCM mode. FortiOS supports Suite-B on new kernel platforms only. IPsec traffic **cannot** offload to NPU. CP9 supports Suite-B offloading, otherwise packets are encrypted and decrypted by software. FortiOS supports:

- suite-b-gcm-128
- suite-b-gcm-256

### IKEv2 phase 2 encryption algorithm

The default encryption algorithm is:

```
aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
```

With null encryption, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- null-md5
- null-sha1
- null-sha256
- null-sha384
- null-sha512

With the DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- des-null
- des-md5
- des-sha1
- des-sha256
- des-sha384
- des-sha512

With the 3DES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- 3des-null
- 3des-md5
- 3des-sha1
- 3des-sha256
- 3des-sha384
- 3des-sha512

With the AES encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic can offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aes128-null
- aes128-md5
- aes128-sha1
- aes128-sha256
- aes128-sha384
- aes128-sha512
- aes192-null
- aes192-md5
- aes192-sha1
- aes192-sha256
- aes192-sha384
- aes192-sha512
- aes256-null
- aes256-md5
- aes256-sha1
- aes256-sha256
- aes256-sha384
- aes256-sha512

With the AESGCM encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU. CP9 supports AESGCM offloading. FortiOS supports:

- aes128gcm
- aes256gcm

With the chacha20poly1305 encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- chacha20poly1305

With the ARIA encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- aria128-null
- aria128-md5
- aria128-sha1
- aria128-sha256
- aria128-sha384
- aria128-sha512
- aria192-null
- aria192-md5
- aria192-sha1
- aria192-sha256
- aria192-sha384
- aria192-sha512
- aria256-null
- aria256-md5
- aria256-sha1
- aria256-sha256
- aria256-sha384
- aria256-sha512

With the SEED encryption algorithm, IPsec traffic **cannot** offload NPU/CP. FortiOS supports:

- seed-null
- seed-md5
- seed-sha1
- seed-sha256
- seed-sha384
- seed-sha512

### HMAC settings

The FortiGate uses the HMAC based on the authentication proposal that is chosen in phase 1 or phase 2 of the IPsec configuration. Each proposal consists of the encryption-hash pair (such as 3des-sha256). The FortiGate matches the most secure proposal to negotiate with the peer.

**To view the chosen proposal and the HMAC hash used:**

```
# diagnose vpn ike gateway list

vd: root/0
name: MPLS
```

```
version: 1
interface: port1 3
addr: 192.168.2.5:500 -> 10.10.10.1:500
virtual-interface-addr: 172.31.0.2 -> 172.31.0.1
created: 1015820s ago
IKE SA: created 1/13 established 1/13 time 10/1626/21010 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/24 established 1/24 time 0/11/30 ms

  id/spi: 124 43b087dae99f7733/6a8473e58cd8990a
  direction: responder
  status: established 68693-68693s ago = 10ms
  proposal: 3des-sha256
  key: e0fa6ab8dc509b33-aa2cc549999b1823-c3cb9c337432646e
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/17436
  DPD sent/recv: 000001e1/00000000
```

## Fragmenting IP packets before IPsec encapsulation

The `ip-fragmentation` command controls packet fragmentation before IPsec encapsulation, which can benefit packet loss in some environments.

The following options are available for the `ip-fragmentation` variable.

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| pre-encapsulation | Fragment before IPsec encapsulation. |
| post-encapsulation (default value) | Fragment after IPsec encapsulation (RFC compliant). |

**To configure packet fragmentation using the CLI:**

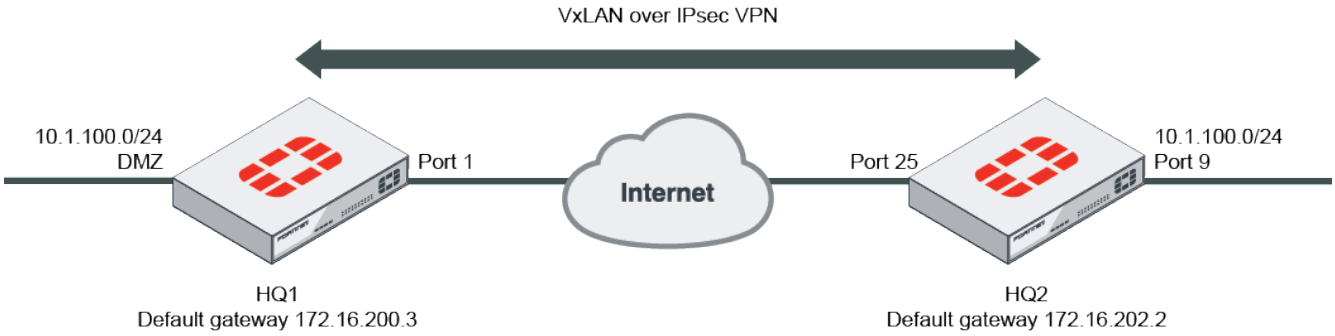
```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
   edit "demo"
      set interface "port1"
      set authmethod signature
      set peertype any
      set net-device enable
      set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
      set ip-fragmentation pre-encapsulation
      set remote-gw 172.16.200.4
      set certificate "Fortinet_Factory"
   next
end
```

## VXLAN over IPsec tunnel

This is an example of VXLAN over IPsec tunnel. VXLAN encapsulation is used in the `phase1-interface` setting and virtual-switch is used to bridge the internal with VXLAN over IPsec tunnel.

For more information, see Remote access on page 1177.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

**To configure VXLAN over an IPsec tunnel:**

1. Configure the WAN interface and default route:
   a. HQ1:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set ip 172.16.200.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.200.3
        set device "port1"
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2:

```
config system interface
    edit "port25"
        set ip 172.16.202.1 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config router static
    edit 1
        set gateway 172.16.202.2
        set device "port25"
    next
end
```

2. Configure IPsec phase1-interface:
   a. HQ1:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set interface "port1"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set encapsulation VXLAN
```

```
        set encapsulation-address ipv4
        set encap-local-gw4 172.16.200.1
        set encap-remote-gw4 172.16.202.1
        set remote-gw 172.16.202.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ2"
        set phase1name "to_HQ2"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

**b.** HQ2:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
        set interface "port25"
        set peertype any
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1
        set encapsulation VXLAN
        set encapsulation-address ipv4
        set encap-local-gw4 172.16.202.1
        set encap-remote-gw4 172.16.200.1
        set remote-gw 172.16.200.1
        set psksecret sample
        next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "to_HQ1"
        set phase1name "to_HQ1"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm
aes256gcm chacha20poly1305
    next
end
```

**3.** Configure the virtual switch.

**a.** HQ1

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "VXLAN-HQ2"
        set member "dmz" "to_HQ2"
        set intra-switch-policy explicit
    next
end
```

**b.** HQ2

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "VXLAN-HQ1"
        set member "port9" "to_HQ1"
        set intra-switch-policy explicit
    next
end
```

4. Configure the firewall policy:
   a. HQ1:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "to_HQ2"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "to_HQ2"
        set dstintf "dmz"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

   b. HQ2:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port9"
        set dstintf "to_HQ1"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set srcintf "to_HQ1"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set dstaddr "10.1.100.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

5. Optionally, view the VPN tunnel list on HQ1 with the `diagnose vpn tunnel list` command:

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
name=to_HQ2 ver=1 serial=2 172.16.200.1:0->172.16.202.1:0
bound_if=5 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=VXLAN/2 options[0002]=
encap-addr: 172.16.200.1->172.16.202.1
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=11 ilast=8 olast=0 ad=/0
stat: rxp=13 txp=3693 rxb=5512 txb=224900
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=45
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
```

```
proxyid=to_HQ2 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1390 expire=41944/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=e6e esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=0000000e itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=635e9bb1 esp=aes key=16 c8a374905ef9156e66504195f46a650c
       ah=sha1 key=20 a09265de7d3b0620b45441fb5af44dab125f2afe
  enc: spi=a4d0cd1e esp=aes key=16 e9d0f3f0bb7e15a833f80c42615a3b91
       ah=sha1 key=20 609a315c385471b8909b771c76e4fa7214996e50
  dec:pkts/bytes=13/4640, enc:pkts/bytes=3693/623240
```

6. Optionally, view the bridge control interface on HQ1 with the `diagnose netlink brctl name host VXLAN-HQ1` command:

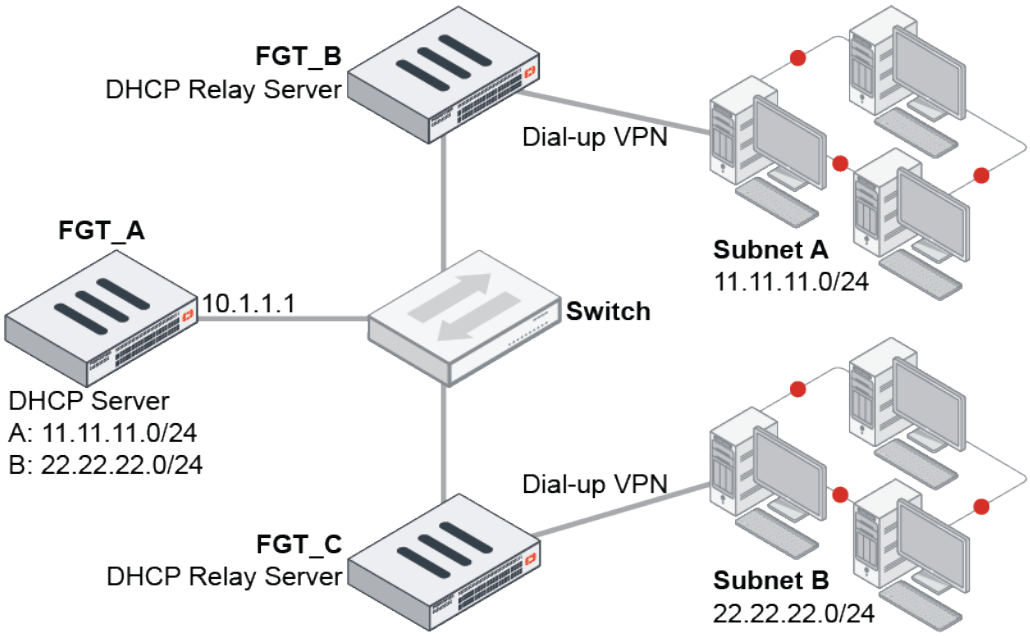
```
show bridge control interface VXLAN-HQ1 host.
fdb: size=2048, used=17, num=17, depth=1
Bridge VXLAN-a host table
port no device  devname mac addr                ttl     attributes
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:4e:33:c9        1.        Hit(1)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:a8:c3:ea      105      Hit(105)
  1      1.       dmz     90:6c:ac:53:76:29       18       Hit(18)
  1      1.       dmz     08:5b:0e:dd:69:cb        1.       Local Static
  1      1.       dmz     90:6c:ac:84:3e:5d        1.        Hit(5)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0b:fd:eb:21:d6        1.        Hit(0)
  2     38        to_HQ2  56:45:c3:3f:57:b4        1.       Local Static
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:d2:66:40       78       Hit(78)
  2     38        to_HQ2  90:6c:ac:5b:a6:eb      124      Hit(124)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:a6:bc:e6       19       Hit(19)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:f0:a2:e7        1.        Hit(0)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:d6:c4:66      164      Hit(164)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:e7:68:19        1.        Hit(0)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:bf:79:30       19       Hit(19)
  1      1.       dmz     00:0c:29:e0:64:7d        1.        Hit(0)
  1      1.       dmz     36:ea:c7:30:c0:f1       25       Hit(25)
  1      1.       dmz     36:ea:c7:30:cc:71        1.        Hit(0)
```

## Defining gateway IP addresses in IPsec with mode-config and DHCP

For an IPsec tunnel, the gateway IP address (giaddr) can be defined on a DHCP relay agent. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported. An IPsec tunnel with mode-config and DHCP relay cannot specify a DHCP subnet range to the DHCP server.

The DHCP server assigns an IP address based on the giaddr set on the IPSec phase1 interface and sends an offer to this subnet. The DHCP server must have a route to the specified subnet giaddr.

## Example




**To define the gateway IP address on the DHCP relay server:**

1. Configure the VPN IPsec phase1 interface:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ipv4"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal des-md5 des-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
        set dhgrp 5
        set assign-ip-from dhcp
        set dhcp-ra-giaddr 11.11.11.1
        set psksecret ***********
        set dpd-retryinterval 60
    next
end
```

IPv6 could also be configured:

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ipv6"
        set type dynamic
        set interface "port2"
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set mode-cfg enable
        set proposal des-md5 des-sha1
        set dpd on-idle
```

```
            set dhgrp 5
            set assign-ip-from dhcp
            set dhcp6-ra-linkaddr 2000:11:11:11::1
            set psksecret **********
            set dpd-retryinterval 60
        next
    end
```

2. Enable DHCP proxy and configure the DHCP server IP address:

```
config system settings
    set dhcp-proxy enable
    set dhcp-server-ip "10.1.1.1"
end
```

3. Repeat the above steps for FGT_C and subnet B.

## FQDN support for remote gateways

FortiGate supports FQDN when defining an IPsec remote gateway with a dynamically assigned IPv6 address. When FortiGate attempts to connect to the IPv6 device, FQDN will resolve the IPv6 address even when the address changes.

Using FQDN to configure the remote gateway is useful when the remote end has a dynamic IPv6 address assigned by their ISP or DHCPv6 server.

**To set the VPN to DDNS and configure FQDN:**

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
    edit "ddns6"
        set type ddns
        set interface "agg1"
        set ip-version 6
        set ike-version 2
        set peertype any
        set net-device disable
        set proposal aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm-prfsha256 aes256gcm-prfsha384
chacha20poly1305-prfsha256
        set dpd on-idle
        set remotegw-ddns "rgwa61.vpnlab.org"
        set psksecret xxxxxxx
    next
end

config vpn ipsec phase2-interface
    edit "ddns6"
        set phase1name "ddns6"
        set proposal aes128-sha1 aes256-sha1 aes128-sha256 aes256-sha256 aes128gcm aes256gcm
chacha20poly1305
        set src-addr-type subnet6
        set dst-addr-type subnet6
        set src-subnet6 2003:1:1:1::/64
    next
end
```

**FQDN resolves the IPv6 address**

```
# diagnose test application dnsproxy 7

vfid=0, name=rgwa61.vpnlab.org, ttl=3600:3547:1747
         2003:33:1:1::22 (ttl=3600)
```

**FortiGate uses FQDN to connect to the IPv6 device**

```
# diagnose vpn tunnel list name ddns6
list ipsec tunnel by names in vd 0
------------------------------------------------------
name=ddns6 ver=2 serial=2 2003:33:1:1::1:0->2003:33:1:1::22:0 dst_mtu=1500
bound_if=32 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/520 options[0208]=npu frag-rfc
run_state=0 accept_traffic=1 overlay_id=0

proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=9 olast=9 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=72340
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=ddns6 proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:2003:1:1:1::/64:0
  dst: 0:::/0:0
  SA:  ref=3 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1422 expire=42680/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=1 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000000 itn=0 qat=0 hash_search_len=1
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42901/43200
  dec: spi=ac7a5718 esp=aes key=16 9976b66280cc49f500d8edca093e03fb
       ah=sha1 key=20 4d94d76fc18df5a180c52e0a6cd5f430fde48fe8
  enc: spi=7ab888ec esp=aes key=16 841a95d3ee5ea5108a2ba269b74998d1
       ah=sha1 key=20 ed0b52d27776e30149ee36af4fd4626681c2a3a1
  dec:pkts/bytes=0/0, enc:pkts/bytes=0/0
  npu_flag=00 npu_rgwy=2003:33:1:1::22 npu_lgwy=2003:33:1:1::1 npu_selid=0 dec_npuid=0 enc_
npuid=0
run_tally=1
```

**The tunnel can still connect to the FQDN address when the IPv6 address changes**

```
# diagnose debug application ike -1
# diagnose debug enable
ike 0:ddns6: set oper down
ike 0:ddns6: carrier down
ike shrank heap by 159744 bytes
ike 0: cache rebuild start
ike 0:ddns6: sending DNS request for remote peer rgwa61.vpnlab.org
ike 0: send IPv6 DNS query : rgwa61.vpnlab.org
ike 0: cache rebuild done
ike 0:ddns6: remote IPv6 DDNS gateway is empty, retry to resolve it
ike 0: DNS response received for remote gateway rgwa61.vpnlab.org
ike 0: DNS rgwa61.vpnlab.org -> 2003:33:1:1::33
ike 2:test:46932: could not send IKE Packet(P1_RETRANSMIT):50.1.1.1:500->50.1.1.2:500,
len=716: error 101:Network is unreachable
ike 0:ddns6: remote IPv6 DDNS gateway is empty, retry to resolve it
ike 0:ddns6: 'rgwa61.vpnlab.org' resolved to 2003:33:1:1::33
ike 0: cache rebuild start
ike 0:ddns6: local:2003:33:1:1::1, remote:2003:33:1:1::33
ike 0:ddns6: cached as static-ddns.
```

```
ike 0: cache rebuild done
ike 0:ddns6: auto-negotiate connection
ike 0:ddns6: created connection: 0x155aa510 32 2003:33:1:1::1->2003:33:1:1::33:500.

.....................................................................................
.......................
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: add IPsec SA: SPIs=ac7a5719/7ab888ed
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: IPsec SA dec spi ac7a5719 key
16:0F27F1D1D02496F90D15A30E2C032678 auth 20:46564E0E86A054374B31E58F95E4458340121BCE
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: IPsec SA enc spi 7ab888ed key
16:926B12908EE670E1A5DDA6AD8E96607B auth 20:42BF438DC90867B837B0490EAB08E329AB62CBE3
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: added IPsec SA: SPIs=ac7a5719/7ab888ed
ike 0:ddns6:46933:ddn6:47779: sending SNMP tunnel UP trap
ike 0:ddns6: carrier up
```

# VPN IPsec troubleshooting

See the following IPsec troubleshooting examples:

- Understanding VPN related logs
- IPsec related diagnose commands on page 1338

## Understanding VPN related logs

This section provides some IPsec log samples.

### IPsec phase1 negotiating

```
logid="0101037127" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 1" msg="progress IPsec phase 1" action="negotiate"
remip=11.101.1.1

    locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
    cookies="e41eeecb2c92b337/0000000000000000" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
    xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="to_HQ" status="success" init="local"
    mode="aggressive" dir="outbound" stage=1 role="initiator" result="OK"
```

### IPsec phase1 negotiated

```
logid="0101037127" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 1" msg="progress IPsec phase 1" action="negotiate"
remip=11.101.1.1

    locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
    cookies="e41eeecb2c92b337/1230131a28eb4e73" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
    xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="to_HQ" status="success" init="local"

mode="aggressive" dir="outbound" stage=2 role="initiator" result="DONE"
```

### IPsec phase1 tunnel up

```
logid="0101037138" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="IPsec connection status changed" msg="IPsec connection status change"
action="tunnel-up" remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
```

```
cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ" tunnelip=N/A tunnelid=1530910918
tunneltype="ipsec" duration=0 sentbyte=0 rcvdbyte=0 nextstat=0
```

### IPsec phase2 negotiate

```
logid="0101037129" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 2" msg="progress IPsec phase 2" action="negotiate"
remip=11.101.1.1

locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ" status="success" init="local"

mode="quick" dir="outbound" stage=1 role="initiator" result="OK"
```

### IPsec phase2 tunnel up

```
logid="0101037139" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="IPsec phase 2 status changed" msg="IPsec phase 2 status change" action="phase2-up"

    remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
    cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
    xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ"

phase2_name="to_HQ"
```

### IPsec phase2 sa install

```
logid="0101037133" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132604
logdesc="IPsec SA installed" msg="install IPsec SA" action="install_sa" remip=11.101.1.1
locip=173.1.1.1

    remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13" cookies="5b1c59fab2029e43/bf517e686d3943d2"
    user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1
    vpntunnel="to_HQ" role="initiator" in_spi="ca646448" out_spi="747c10c6"
```

### IPsec tunnel statistics

```
logid="0101037141" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544131118
logdesc="IPsec tunnel statistics" msg="IPsec tunnel statistics" action="tunnel-stats"
remip=10.1.100.15 locip=172.16.200.4 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="mgmt1"
cookies="3539884dbd8f3567/c32e4c1beca91b36"

    user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A
    vpntunnel="L2tpoIPsec_0" tunnelip=10.1.100.15 tunnelid=1530910802 tunneltype="ipsec"
    duration=6231 sentbyte=57343 rcvdbyte=142640 nextstat=60
```

### IPsec phase2 tunnel down

```
logid="0101037138" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="IPsec connection status changed" msg="IPsec connection status change"
action="tunnel-down" remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500
outintf="port13" cookies="30820aa390687e39/886e72bf5461fb8d" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ" tunnelip=N/A
tunnelid=1530910786 tunneltype="ipsec" duration=6425 sentbyte=504 rcvdbyte=152 nextstat=0
```

### IPsec phase1 sa deleted

```
logid="0101037134" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1544132571
logdesc="IPsec phase 1 SA deleted" msg="delete IPsec phase 1 SA" action="delete_phase1_sa"
remip=11.101.1.1 locip=173.1.1.1 remport=500 locport=500 outintf="port13"
cookies="30820aa390687e39/886e72bf5461fb8d" user="N/A" group="N/A" xauthuser="N/A"
xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=11.11.11.1 vpntunnel="to_HQ"
```

## IPsec related diagnose commands

This section provides IPsec related diagnose commands.

- Daemon IKE summary information list: `diagnose vpn ike status`

```
connection: 2/50
IKE SA: created 2/51  established 2/9  times 0/13/40 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/13  established 1/7  times 0/8/30 ms
```

- IPsec phase1 interface status: `diagnose vpn ike gateway list`

```
vd: root/0
name: tofgtc
version: 1
interface: port13 42
addr: 173.1.1.1:500 -> 172.16.200.3:500
created: 4313s ago
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 10/10/10 ms
IPsec SA: created 0/0

  id/spi: 92 5639f7f8a5dc54c0/809a6c9bbd266a4b
  direction: initiator
  status: established 4313-4313s ago = 10ms
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: 74aa3d63d88e10ea-8a1c73b296b06578
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/81786
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000000

vd: root/0
name: to_HQ
version: 1
interface: port13 42
addr: 173.1.1.1:500 -> 11.101.1.1:500
created: 1013s ago
assigned IPv4 address: 11.11.11.1/255.255.255.252
IKE SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms
IPsec SA: created 1/1  established 1/1  time 0/0/0 ms

  id/spi: 95 255791bd30c749f4/c2505db65210258b
  direction: initiator
  status: established 1013-1013s ago = 0ms
  proposal: aes128-sha256
  key: bb101b9127ed5844-1582fd614d5a8a33
  lifetime/rekey: 86400/85086
  DPD sent/recv: 00000000/00000010
```

- IPsec phase2 tunnel status: `diagnose vpn tunnel list`

```
list all ipsec tunnel in vd 0
----
nname=L2tpoIPsec ver=1 serial=6 172.16.200.4:0->0.0.0.0:0
bound_if=4 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=dialup/2 encap=none/24 options[0018]=npu
create_dev
proxyid_num=0 child_num=0 refcnt=10 ilast=13544 olast=13544 ad=/0
stat: rxp=0 txp=0 rxb=0 txb=0
dpd: mode=on-idle on=0 idle=60000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=0
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
run_tally=0
----
name=to_HQ ver=1 serial=7 173.1.1.1:0->11.101.1.1:0
bound_if=42 lgwy=static/1 tun=intf/0 mode=auto/1 encap=none/8 options[0008]=npu
proxyid_num=1 child_num=0 refcnt=13 ilast=10 olast=1112 ad=/0
stat: rxp=1 txp=4 rxb=152 txb=336
dpd: mode=on-demand on=1 idle=20000ms retry=3 count=0 seqno=5
natt: mode=none draft=0 interval=0 remote_port=0
proxyid=to_HQ proto=0 sa=1 ref=2 serial=1
  src: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  dst: 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
  SA:  ref=6 options=10226 type=00 soft=0 mtu=1438 expire=41773/0B replaywin=2048
       seqno=5 esn=0 replaywin_lastseq=00000002 itn=0
  life: type=01 bytes=0/0 timeout=42900/43200
  dec: spi=ca64644a esp=aes key=16 6cc873fdef91337a6cf9b6948972c90f
       ah=sha1 key=20 e576dbe3ff92605931e5670ad57763c50c7dc73a
  enc: spi=747c10c8 esp=aes key=16 5060ad8d0da6824204e3596c0bd762f4
       ah=sha1 key=20 52965cbd5b6ad95212fc825929d26c0401948abe
  dec:pkts/bytes=1/84, enc:pkts/bytes=4/608
  npu_flag=03 npu_rgwy=11.101.1.1 npu_lgwy=173.1.1.1 npu_selid=5 dec_npuid=2 enc_npuid=2
```

- Packets encrypted/decrypted counter: `diagnose vpn ipsec status`

```
All ipsec crypto devices in use:
NP6_0:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NP6_1:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
```

```
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 337152           46069
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 337152           46069
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

NPU Host Offloading:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 38               1.
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 38               1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

CP8:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 1337             1582
        aes              : 71               11426
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 48               28
        sha1             : 1360             12980
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.

SOFTWARE:
    Encryption (encrypted/decrypted)
        null             : 0                1.
        des              : 0                1.
        3des             : 0                1.
        aes              : 0                1.
```

```
        aes-gcm          : 0                1.
        aria             : 0                1.
        seed             : 0                1.
        chacha20poly1305 : 0                1.
    Integrity (generated/validated)
        null             : 0                1.
        md5              : 0                1.
        sha1             : 0                1.
        sha256           : 0                1.
        sha384           : 0                1.
        sha512           : 0                1.
```

- diagnose debug application ike -1
  - diagnose vpn ike log-filter dst-addr4 11.101.1.1
  - diagnose vpn ike log-filter src-addr4 173.1.1.1

```
# ike 0:to_HQ:101: initiator: aggressive mode is sending 1st message...
ike 0:to_HQ:101: cookie dff03f1d4820222a/0000000000000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (agg_i1send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=912,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/0000000000000000
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Aggressive id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75 len=624
ike 0:to_HQ:101: initiator: aggressive mode get 1st response...
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID RFC 3947 4A131C81070358455C5728F20E95452F
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID DPD AFCAD71368A1F1C96B8696FC77570100
ike 0:to_HQ:101: DPD negotiated
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID draft-ietf-ipsra-isakmp-xauth-06.txt 09002689DFD6B712
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID CISCO-UNITY 12F5F28C457168A9702D9FE274CC0204
ike 0:to_HQ:101: peer supports UNITY
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID FORTIGATE 8299031757A36082C6A621DE00000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: peer is [[QualityAssurance62/FortiGate]]/FortiOS (v0 b0)
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID FRAGMENTATION 4048B7D56EBCE88525E7DE7F00D6C2D3
ike 0:to_HQ:101: VID FRAGMENTATION 4048B7D56EBCE88525E7DE7F00D6C2D3C0000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: peer identifier IPV4_ADDR 11.101.1.1
ike 0:to_HQ:101: negotiation result
ike 0:to_HQ:101: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:   protocol id = ISAKMP:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:      trans_id = KEY_IKE.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:      encapsulation = IKE/none
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=OAKLEY_ENCRYPT_ALG, val=AES_CBC, key-len=128
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=OAKLEY_HASH_ALG, val=SHA2_256.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=AUTH_METHOD, val=PRESHARED_KEY_XAUTH_I.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:         type=OAKLEY_GROUP, val=MODP2048.
ike 0:to_HQ:101: ISAKMP SA lifetime=86400
ike 0:to_HQ:101: received NAT-D payload type 20
ike 0:to_HQ:101: received NAT-D payload type 20
ike 0:to_HQ:101: selected NAT-T version: RFC 3947
ike 0:to_HQ:101: NAT not detected
ike 0:to_HQ:101: ISAKMP SA dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75 key
16:D81CAE6B2500435BFF195491E80148F3
ike 0:to_HQ:101: PSK authentication succeeded
ike 0:to_HQ:101: authentication OK
ike 0:to_HQ:101: add INITIAL-CONTACT
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (agg_i2send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=172,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75
ike 0:to_HQ:101: established IKE SA dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75
```

```
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Mode config id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:97d88fb4 len=92
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 16521 request 0:
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 16522 request 0:
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (cfg_send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=108,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:97d88fb4
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Mode config id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3724f295 len=92
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (cfg_send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=92,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3724f295
ike 0:to_HQ:101: initiating mode-cfg pull from peer
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request APPLICATION_VERSION
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request INTERNAL_IP4_ADDRESS
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request INTERNAL_IP4_NETMASK
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request UNITY_SPLIT_INCLUDE
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg request UNITY_PFS
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (cfg_send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=140,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3bca961f
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Mode config id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:3bca961f len=172
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 1 response 4:0B0B0B01
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received INTERNAL_IP4_ADDRESS 11.11.11.1
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 2 response 4:FFFFFFFC
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received INTERNAL_IP4_NETMASK 255.255.255.252
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received UNITY_PFS 1
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg type 28676 response
28:0A016400FFFFFF000000000000000A016500FFFFFF00000000000000
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received UNITY_SPLIT_INCLUDE 0 10.1.100.0/255.255.255.0:0
local port 0
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received UNITY_SPLIT_INCLUDE 0 10.1.101.0/255.255.255.0:0
local port 0
ike 0:to_HQ:101: mode-cfg received APPLICATION_VERSION 'FortiGate-100D
v6.0.3,build0200,181009 (GA)'
ike 0:to_HQ: mode-cfg add 11.11.11.1/255.255.255.252 to 'to_HQ'/58
ike 0:to_HQ: set oper up
ike 0:to_HQ: schedule auto-negotiate
ike 0:to_HQ:101: no pending Quick-Mode negotiations
ike shrank heap by 159744 bytes
ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: IPsec SA connect 42 173.1.1.1->11.101.1.1:0
ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: using existing connection

# ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: config found
ike 0:to_HQ:to_HQ: IPsec SA connect 42 173.1.1.1->11.101.1.1:500 negotiating
ike 0:to_HQ:101: cookie dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: initiator selectors 0 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0-
>0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (quick_i1send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=620,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01
ike 0: comes 11.101.1.1:500->173.1.1.1:500,ifindex=42....
ike 0: IKEv1 exchange=Quick id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01 len=444
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: responder selectors 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0->0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: my proposal:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   protocol id = IPSEC_ESP:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   PFS DH group = 14
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
```

```
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA1
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA1
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA2_256
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA2_256
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_GCM_16 (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=NULL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_GCM_16 (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=NULL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_CHACHA20_POLY1305 (key_len = 256)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=NULL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: incoming proposal:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: proposal id = 1:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   protocol id = IPSEC_ESP:
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:   PFS DH group = 14
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      trans_id = ESP_AES_CBC (key_len = 128)
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:      encapsulation = ENCAPSULATION_MODE_TUNNEL
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259:         type = AUTH_ALG, val=SHA1
ike 0:to_HQ: schedule auto-negotiate
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: replay protection enabled
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: SA life soft seconds=42902.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: SA life hard seconds=43200.
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: IPsec SA selectors #src=1 #dst=1
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: src 0 4 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: dst 0 4 0:0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0:0
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: add IPsec SA: SPIs=ca64644b/747c10c9
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: IPsec SA dec spi ca64644b key
16:D5C60F1A3951B288CE4DEC7E04D2119D auth 20:F872A7A26964208A9AA368A31AEFA3DB3F3780BC
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: IPsec SA enc spi 747c10c9 key
16:97952E1594F718128D9D7B09400856EA auth 20:4D5E5BC45A9D5A9A4631E911932F5650A4639A37
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: added IPsec SA: SPIs=ca64644b/747c10c9
ike 0:to_HQ:101:to_HQ:259: sending SNMP tunnel UP trap
ike 0:to_HQ:101: sent IKE msg (quick_i2send): 173.1.1.1:500->11.101.1.1:500, len=76,
id=dff03f1d4820222a/6c2caf4dcf5bab75:32f4cc01
```

# SSL VPN

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN in FortiOS 6.4.1.


- SSL VPN best practices on page 1344
- SSL VPN quick start on page 1346
- SSL VPN tunnel mode on page 1353
- SSL VPN web mode for remote user on page 1360
- SSL VPN authentication on page 1363
- SSL VPN to IPsec VPN on page 1445

- SSL VPN protocols on page 1456
- SSL VPN troubleshooting on page 1457

## SSL VPN best practices

Securing remote access to network resources is a critical part of security operations. SSL VPN allows administrators to configure, administer, and deploy a remote access strategy for their remote workers.

Choosing the correct mode of operation and applying the proper levels of security are integral to providing optimal performance and user experience, and keeping your user data safe.

The below guidelines outline selecting the correct SSL VPN mode for your deployment and employing best practices to ensure that your data are protected.

Information about SSL VPN throughput and maximum concurrent users is available on your device's datasheet; see Next-Generation Firewalls Models and Specifications.

### Tunnel mode

In tunnel mode, the SSL VPN client encrypts all traffic from the remote client computer and sends it to the FortiGate through an SSL VPN tunnel over the HTTPS link between the user and the FortiGate.

The FortiGate establishes a tunnel with the client, and assigns a virtual IP (VIP) address to the client from a range reserved addresses. While the underlying protocols are different, the outcome is very similar to a IPsec VPN tunnel. All client traffic is encrypted, allowing the users and networks to exchange a wide range of traffic, regardless of the application or protocols.

Use this mode if you require:

- A wide range of applications and protocols to be accessed by the remote client.
- No proxying is done by the FortiGate.
- Straightforward configuration and administration, as traffic is controlled by firewall policies.
- A transparent experience for the end user. For example, a user that needs to RDP to their server only requires a tunnel connection; they can then use the usual client application, like Windows Remote Desktop, to connect.

Full tunneling forces all traffic to pass through the FortiGate (see SSL VPN full tunnel for remote user on page 1353). Split tunneling only routes traffic to the designated network through the FortiGate (see SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user on page 1346).

#### Limitations

Tunnel mode requires that the FortiClient VPN client be installed on the remote end. The standalone FortiClient VPN client is free to use, and can accommodate SSL VPN and IPsec VPN tunnels. For supported operating systems, see the FortiClient Technical Specifications.

### Web mode

Web-only mode provides clientless network access using a web browser with built-in SSL encryption. Users authenticate to FortiGate's SSL VPN Web Portal, which provides access to network services and resources, including HTTP/HTTPS, Telnet, FTP, SMB/CIFS, VNC, RDP, and SSH. When a user starts a connection to a server from the web

portal, FortiOS proxies this communication with the server. All communication between the FortiGate and the user continues to be over HTTPS, regardless of the service that is being accesssed.

Use this mode if you require:

- A clientless solution in which all remote services are access through a web portal.
- Tight control over the contents of the web portal.
- Limited services provided to the remote users.

#### Limitations

- Multiple applications and protocols are not supported.
- VNC and RDP access might have limitations, such as certain shortcut keys not being supported.
- In some configurations RDP can consume a significant amount of memory and CPU time.
- Firewall performance might decrease as remote usage increases.
- Highly customized web pages might not render correctly.

## Security best practices

#### Integrate with authentication servers

For networks with many users, integrate your user configuration with existing authentication servers through LDAP, RADIUS, or FortiAuthenticator.

By integrating with existing authentication servers, such as Windows AD, there is a lower change of making mistakes when configuring local users and user groups. Your administration effort is also reduces.

See SSL VPN with LDAP user authentication on page 1364 for more information.

#### Use a non-factory SSL certificate for the SSL VPN portal

Your certificate should identify your domain so that a remote user can recognize the identity of the server or portal that they are accessing through a trusted CA.

The default Fortinet factory self-signed certificates are provided to simplify initial installation and testing. If you use these certificates you are vulnerable to man-in-the-middle attacks, where an attacker spoofs your certificate, compromises your connection, and steals your personal information. It is highly recommended that you purchase a server certificate from a trusted CA to allow remote users to connect to SSL VPN with confidence. See Purchase and import a signed SSL certificate on page 767 for more information.

Enabling the *Do not Warn Invalid Server Certificate* option on the client disables the certificate warning message, potentially allowing users to accidentally connect to untrusted servers. Disabling invalid server certificate warnings is not recommended.

#### Use multi-factor authentication

Multi-factor authentication (MFA) ensures that the end-user is who they claim to be by requiring at least two factors - a piece of information that the user knows (password), and an asset that the user has (OTP). A third factor, something a user is (fingerprint or face), may be enabled as well. FortiToken Mobile is typically used for MFA.

FortiGate comes with two free FortiTokens, and more can be purchased from the FortiToken Mobile iOS app or through Fortinet partners.

See SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication on page 1386 for more information.

2FA, a subset of MFA, can also be set up with email tokens. See Email Two-Factor Authentication on FortiGate for information.

#### Deploy user certificates for remote SSL VPN users

This method of 2FA uses a user certificate as the second authentication factor. This is more secure, as it identifies the end user using a certificate. The configuration and administration of this solution is significantly more complicated, and requires administrators with advanced knowledge of the FortiGate and certificate deployment.

See SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1424 for more information.

#### Define your minimum supported TLS version and cipher suites

Minimum and maximum supported TLS version can be configured in the FortiGate CLI. The cipher algorithm can also be customized.

See How to control the SSL version and cipher suite for SSL VPN for more information.

#### Properly administer firewall policies and profiles against only the access level required for the remote user

Users do not all require the same access. Access should only be granted after careful considerations. Typically, users are placed in groups, and each group is allowed access to limited resources.

Using SSL VPN realms simplifies defining the control structure for mapping users and groups to the appropriate resources.

See SSL VPN multi-realm on page 1438 for more information.

## SSL VPN quick start

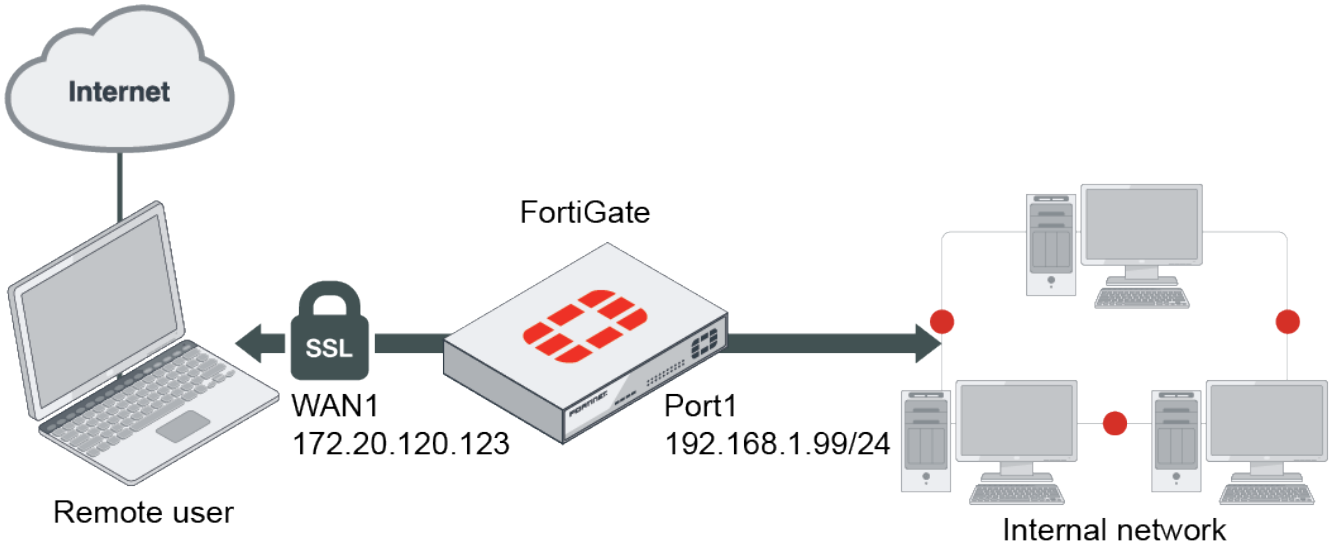
The following topics provide introductory instructions on configuring SSL VPN:


- SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user on page 1346
- Connecting from FortiClient VPN client on page 1349
- Set up FortiToken multi-factor authentication on page 1351
- Connecting from FortiClient with FortiToken on page 1352


### SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network and internet through an SSL VPN by tunnel mode using FortiClient but accessing the Internet without going through the SSL VPN tunnel.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

The split tunneling routing address cannot use an FQDN or an address group that includes an FQDN.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internal subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a tunnel mode only portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.
   b. Enable *Split Tunneling*.
   c. Select *Routing Address* to define the destination network that will be routed through the tunnel. Leave undefined to use the destination in the respective firewall policies.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.

c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.
e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *tunnel-access*.
f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.

5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn split tunnel access*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. In this example, the *Destination* is *all*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
```

```
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set split-tunneling  enable
        set split-tunneling-routing-address "192.168.1.0"
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        next
    next
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn split tunnel access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

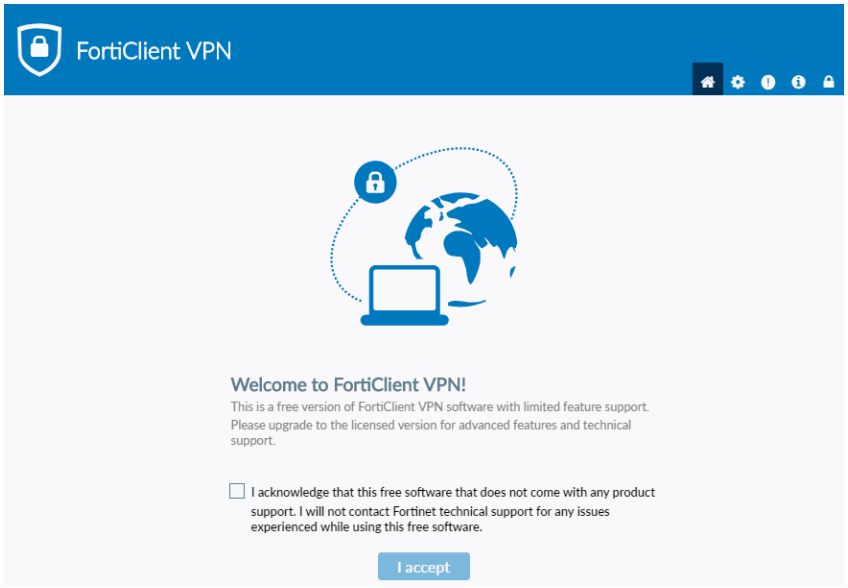
## Connecting from FortiClient VPN client

For FortiGate administrators, a free version of FortiClient VPN is available which supports basic IPsec and SSL VPN and does not require registration with EMS. This version does not include central management, technical support, or some advanced features.

### Downloading and installing the standalone FortiCient VPN client

You can download the free VPN client from FNDN or FortiClient.com.

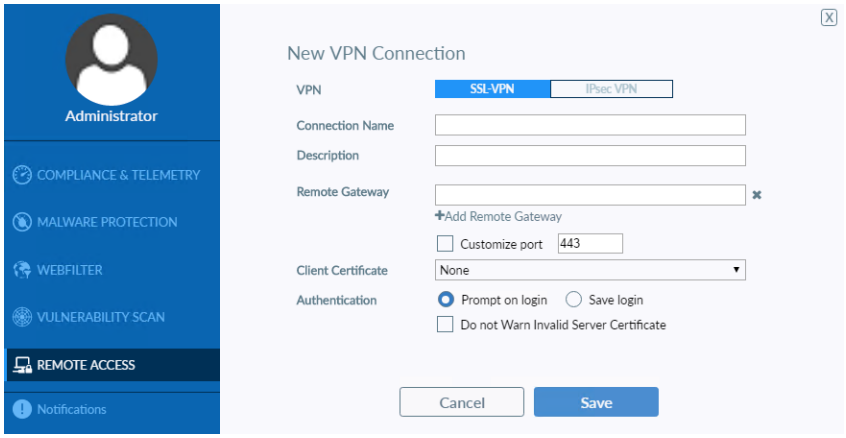
When the free VPN client is run for the first time, it displays a disclaimer. You cannot configure or create a VPN connection until you accept the disclaimer and click *I accept*:




## Configuring an SSL VPN connection

### To configure an SSL VPN connection:

1. On the *Remote Access* tab, click on the settings icon and then *Add a New Connection*.



2. Select *SSL-VPN*, then configure the following settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Connection Name** | SSLVPNtoHQ |
| **Description** | (Optional) |
| **Remote Gateway** | 172.20.120.123 |
| **Customize port** | 10443 |
| **Client Certificate** | Select *Prompt on connect* or the certificate from the dropdown list. |
| **Authentication** | Select *Prompt on login* for a prompt on the connection screen |

3. Click *Save* to save the VPN connection.

### Connecting to SSL VPN

**To connect to SSL VPN:**

1. On the *Remote Access* tab, select the VPN connection from the dropdown list.
   Optionally, you can right-click the FortiTray icon in the system tray and select a VPN configuration to connect.
2. Enter your username and password.
3. Click the *Connect* button.
4. After connecting, you can now browse your remote network. Traffic to 192.168.1.0 goes through the tunnel, while other traffic goes through the local gateway. FortiClient displays the connection status, duration, and other relevant information.
5. Click the *Disconnect* button when you are ready to terminate the VPN session.

### Checking the SSL VPN connection

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
2. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL entry.

**To check the tunnel log in using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## Set up FortiToken multi-factor authentication

This configuration adds multi-factor authentication (MFA) to the split tunnel configuration (SSL VPN split tunnel for remote user on page 1346). It uses one of the two free mobile FortiTokens that is already installed on the FortiGate.

**To configure MFA using the GUI:**

1. Configure a user and user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and edit local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enter the user's *Email Address*.
   c. Enable *Two-factor Authentication* and select one mobile *Token* from the list,
   d. Enable *Send Activation Code* and select *Email*.
   e. Click *Next* and click *Submit*.
2. Activate the mobile token.
   When a FortiToken is added to user *sslvpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

**To configure MFA using the CLI:**

1. Configure a user and user group:

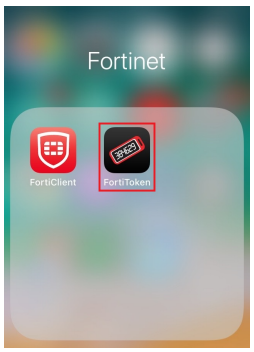
```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken <select mobile token for the option list>
        set email-to <user's email address>
        set passwd <user's password>
    next
end
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

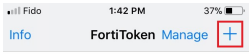
2. Activate the mobile token.
   When a FortiToken is added to user *sslvpnuser1*, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.

## Connecting from FortiClient with FortiToken

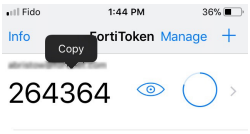
**To activate your FortiToken:**

1. On your device, open FortiToken Mobile. If this is your first time opening the application, it may prompt you to create a PIN for secure access to the application and tokens.



2. You should have received your notification via email, select + and use the device camera to scan the token QR code in your email. 

3. FortiToken Mobile provisions and activates your token and generates token codes immediately. To view the OTP's digits, select the eye icon. After you open the application, FortiToken Mobile generates a new six-digit OTP every 30 seconds.




**To connect to SSL VPN:**

1. On the *Remote Access* tab, select the VPN connection from the dropdown list.
   Optionally, you can right-click the FortiTray icon in the system tray and select a VPN configuration to connect.
2. Enter your username and password.
3. Click the *Connect* button.
4. A Token field will appear, prompting you for the FortiToken code. Enter the FortiToken code from your Mobile device.
5. After connecting, you can now browse your remote network. Traffic to 192.168.1.0 goes through the tunnel, while other traffic goes through the local gateway. FortiClient displays the connection status, duration, and other relevant information.
6. Click the *Disconnect* button when you are ready to terminate the VPN session.

## SSL VPN tunnel mode

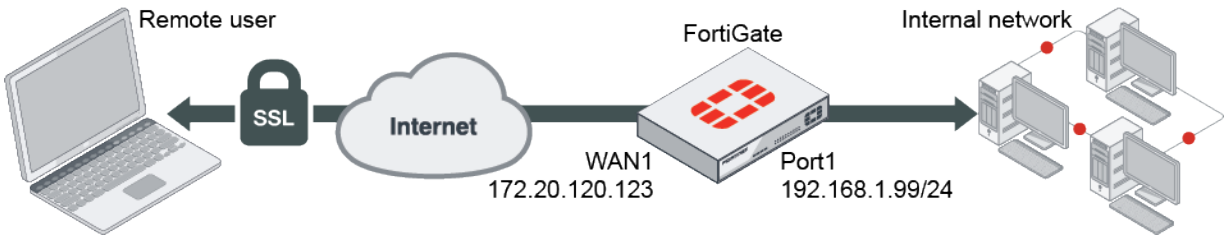
The following topics provide instructions on configuring SSL VPN tunnel mode:

- SSL VPN full tunnel for remote user
- SSL VPN tunnel mode host check

### SSL VPN full tunnel for remote user

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network and internet through an SSL VPN by tunnel mode using FortiClient.

#### Sample topology



## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
2. Configure user and user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a tunnel mode only portal *my-full-tunnel-portal*.
   b. Disable *Split Tunneling*.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.
   e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *tunnel-access*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-full-tunnel-portal*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policies to allow remote user to access the internal network:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
   b. Set *Name* to *sslvpn tunnel mode access*.
   c. Set *Incoming Interface* to *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set *Outgoing Interface* to *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* Address to *all* and User to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. Set *Destination* to *all*, *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   g. Click *OK*.
   h. Click *Create New*.
   i. Set *Name* to *sslvpn tunnel mode outgoing*.
   j. Configure the same settings as the previous policy, except set *Outgoing Interface* to *wan1*.
   k. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
```

```
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal and predefine RDP bookmark for windows server.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-full-tunnel-portal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set split-tunneling disable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-full-tunnel-portal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policies to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn tunnel mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
```

```
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
        edit 2
            set name "sslvpn tunnel mode outgoing"
            set srcintf "ssl.root"
            set dstintf "wan1"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "all"
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
        next
    end
```

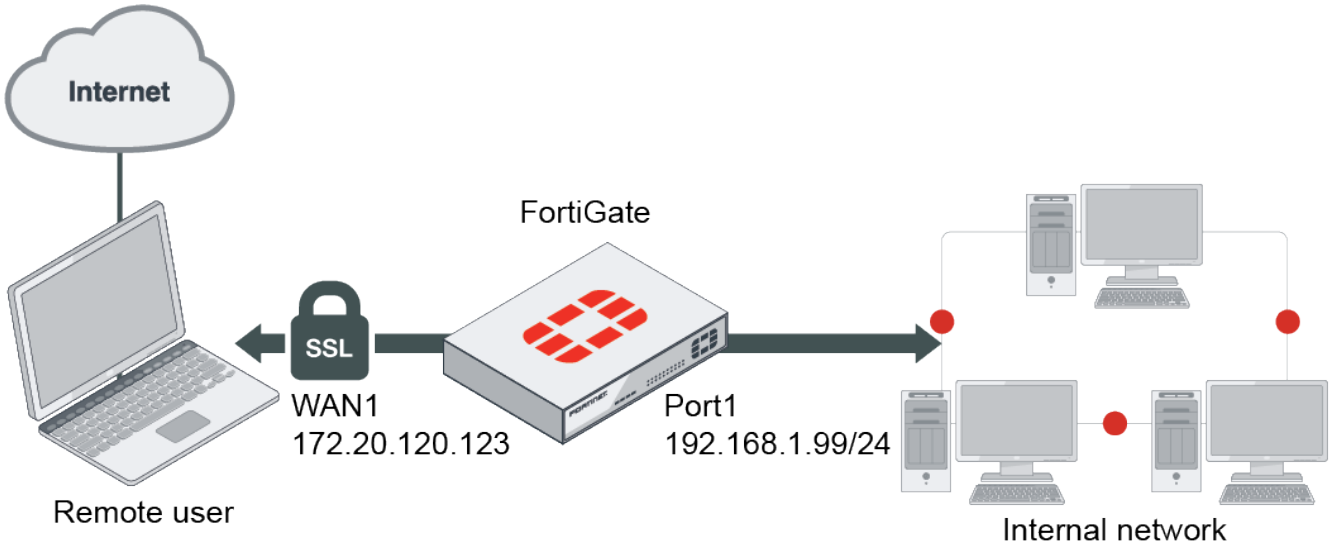
**To see the results:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection:
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
7. After connection, all traffic except the local subnet will go through the tunnel *FGT*.
8. Go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
9. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details for the SSL entry.

## SSL VPN tunnel mode host check

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network through an SSL VPN by tunnel mode using FortiClient with AV host check.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

The split tunneling routing address cannot use an FQDN or an address group that includes an FQDN.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a tunnel mode only portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.
   b. Enable *Tunnel Mode* and *Enable Split Tunneling*.
   c. Select *Routing Address*.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.

d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.
e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *tunnel-access*.
f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-split-tunnel-portal*.

5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn tunnel access with av check*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. In this example, the *Destination* is *all*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Click *OK*.
6. Use CLI to configure SSL VPN web portal to enable the host to check for compliant antivirus software on the user's computer.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit my-split-tunnel-access
        set host-check av
    next
end
```

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
```

```
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set split-tunneling  enable
        set split-tunneling-routing-address "192.168.1.0"
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "my-split-tunnel-portal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

7. Configure SSL VPN web portal to enable the host to check for compliant antivirus software on the user's computer:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit my-split-tunnel-access
        set host-check av
    next
end
```

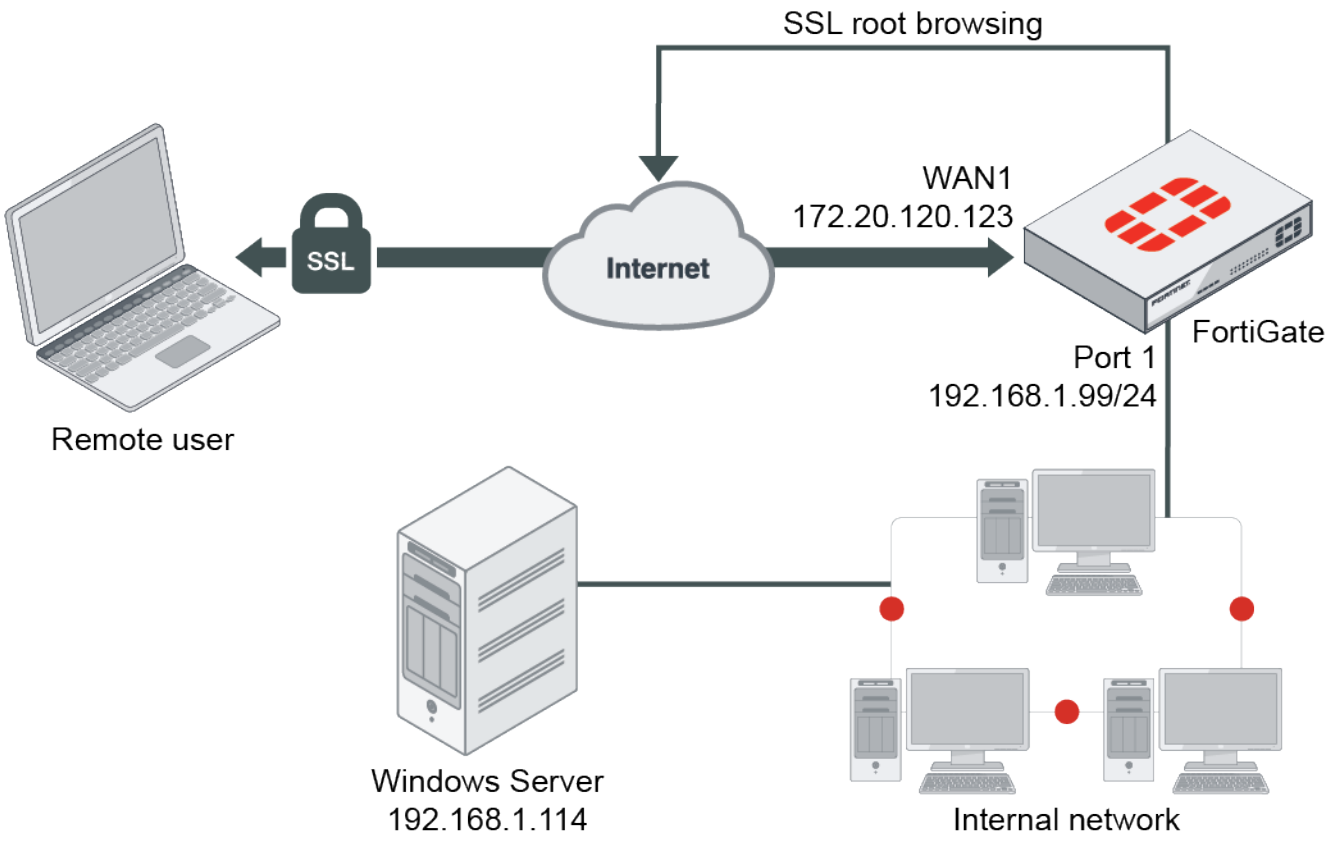
**To see the results:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection:
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
   If the user's computer has antivirus software, a connection is established; otherwise FortiClient shows a compliance warning.
7. After connection, traffic to *192.168.1.0* goes through the tunnel. Other traffic goes through local gateway.
8. On the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
9. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details for the SSL entry.

## SSL VPN web mode for remote user

This is a sample configuration of remote users accessing the corporate network through an SSL VPN by web mode using a web browser.

### Sample topology



## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create a web mode only portal *my-web-portal*.
   b. Set *Predefined Bookmarks for Windows server* to type *RDP*.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.
   e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *web-access*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *my-Web-portal*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn web mode access*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. In this example, the *Destination* is the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure the internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal and predefine RDP bookmark for windows server.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "my-web-portal"
        set web-mode enable
        config bookmark-group
            edit "gui-bookmarks"
                config bookmarks
                    edit "Windows Server"
                        set apptype rdp
                        set host "192.168.1.114"
                        set port 3389
                        set logon-user "your-windows-server-user-name"
                        set logon-password your-windows-server-password
                    next
                end
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
```

```
        set default-portal "full-access"
        config authentication-rule
            edit 1
                set groups "sslvpngroup"
                set portal "my-web-portal"
            next
        end
    end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network. Traffic is dropped from internal to remote client

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**To see the results:**

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *https://172.20.120.123:10443* using the credentials you've set up.
2. In the portal with the predefined bookmark, select the bookmark to begin an RDP session.
3. Go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details for the SSL entry.

## SSL VPN authentication

The following topics provide instructions on configuring SSL VPN authentication:


- SSL VPN with LDAP user authentication on page 1364
- SSL VPN with LDAP user password renew on page 1368
- SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication on page 1373
- SSL VPN for remote users with MFA and user case sensitivity on page 1379
- SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication on page 1386
- SSL VPN with RADIUS on FortiAuthenticator on page 1392
- SSL VPN with RADIUS and FortiToken mobile push on FortiAuthenticator on page 1396
- SSL VPN with RADIUS password renew on FortiAuthenticator on page 1401
- SSL VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS on page 1405
- SSL VPN with multiple RADIUS servers on page 1410
- SSL VPN with local user password policy on page 1419
- SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1424
- Dynamic address support for SSL VPN policies on page 1429

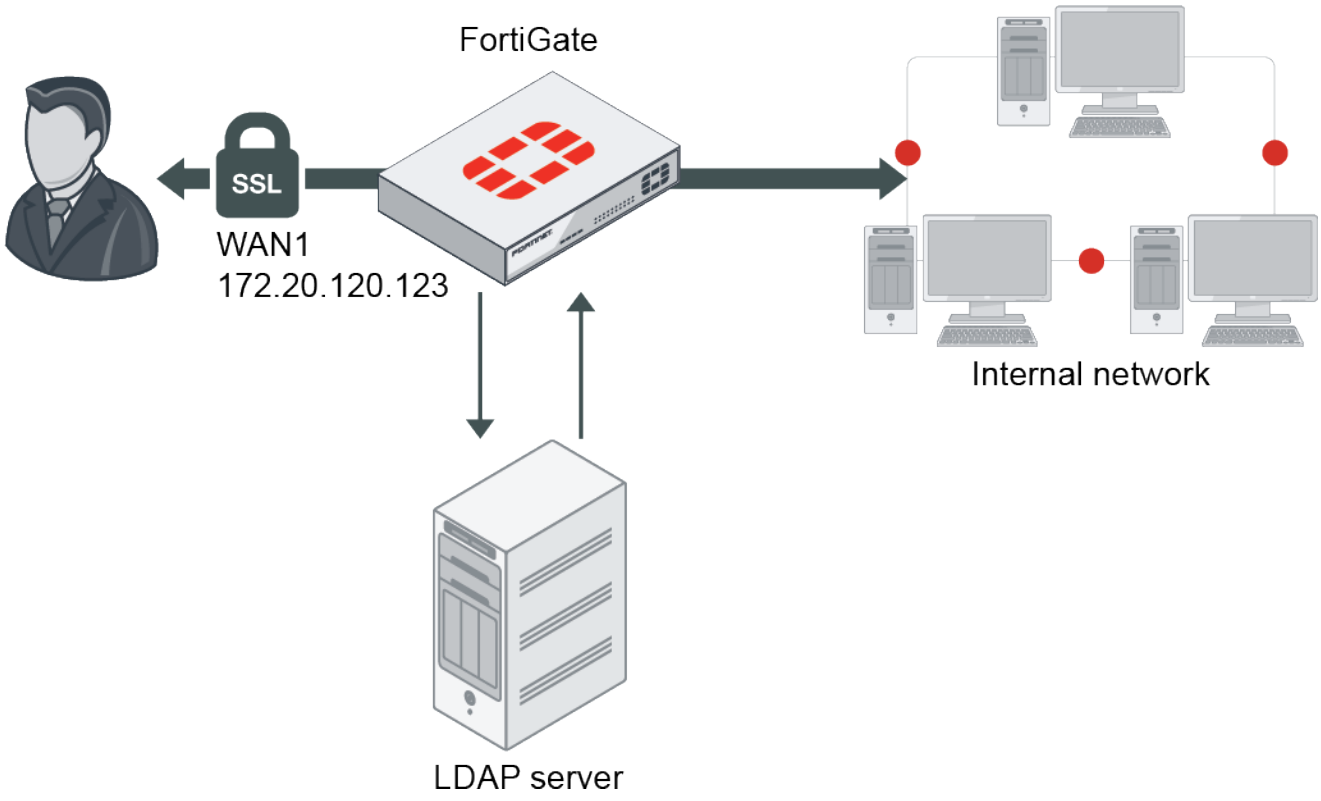
- SSL VPN multi-realm on page 1438
- NAS-IP support per SSL-VPN realm on page 1444

## SSL VPN with LDAP user authentication

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for LDAP users. In this example, the LDAP server is a Windows 2012 AD server. A user *ldu1* is configured on Windows 2012 AD server.

You must have generated and exported a CA certificate from the AD server and then have imported it as an external CA certificate into the FortiGate.

### Sample topology




### Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network:
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.

d. Click *OK*.
e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.

2. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
      The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Specify *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Specify *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Specify *Username* and *Password*.
   f. Enable *Secure Connection* and set *Protocol* to *LDAPS*.
   g. For *Certificate*, select *LDAP server CA LDAPS-CA* from the list.
4. Configure user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group.
   b. Enter a *Name*.
   c. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add *ldaps-server*.
5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
      This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
6. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *ldaps-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
7. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name, in this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *ldaps-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network, in this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.

i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In the example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

4. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "cn=Users,dc=qa,dc=fortinet,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=Administrator,cn=users,DC=qa,DC=fortinet,DC=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "LDAPS-CA"
        set port 636
    next
end
```

5. Configure user group:

```
config user group
    edit "ldaps-group"
        set member "ldaps-server"
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

7. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "ldaps-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

8. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “ldaps-group”
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Enter the *ldu1* user credentials, then click *Login*.
3. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user’s connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *ldu1* credentials.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login using the CLI:**

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         291        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

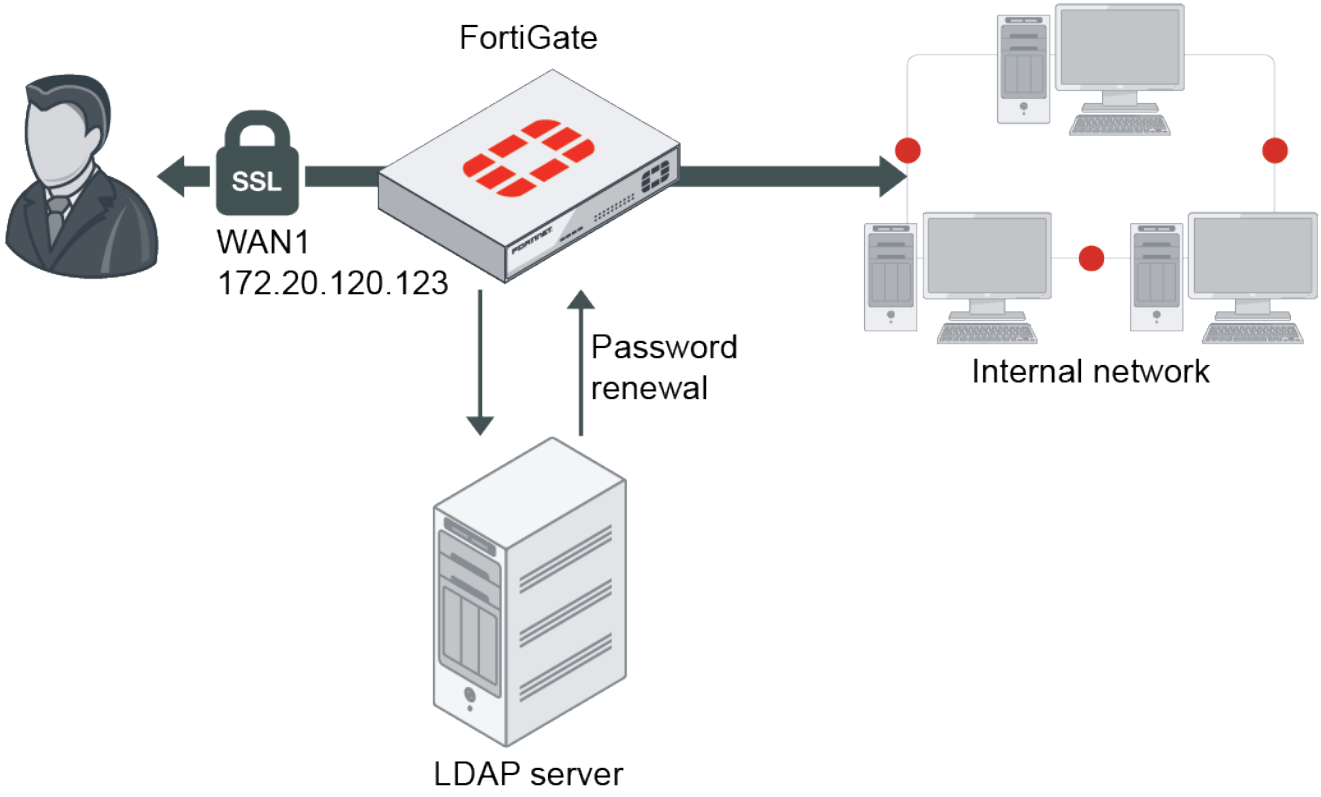
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration    I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       ldu1    10.1.100.254   9           22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with LDAP user password renew

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for LDAP users with *Force Password Change on next logon*. In this example, the LDAP server is a Windows 2012 AD server. A user *ldu1* is configured on Windows 2012 AD server with *Force password change on next logon*.

You must have generated and exported a CA certificate from the AD server and then have imported it as an external CA certificate into the FortiGate.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Specify *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Specify *Common Name Identifier* and *Distinguished Name*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Specify *Username* and *Password*.
   f. Enable *Secure Connection* and set *Protocol* to *LDAPS*.
   g. For *Certificate*, select *LDAP server CA LDAPS-CA* from the list.
   h. To enable the `password-renew` option, use these CLI commands.

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set password-expiry-warning enable
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group.
   b. Enter a *Name*.
   c. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add *ldaps-server*.
5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
6. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *ldaps-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
7. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name, in this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *ldaps-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network, in this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Import CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In the example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

4. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldaps-server"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "cn=Users,dc=qa,dc=fortinet,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "CN=Administrator,cn=users,DC=qa,DC=fortinet,DC=com"
        set password **********
        set group-member-check group-object
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "LDAPS-CA"
        set port 636
        set password-expiry-warning enable
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure user group:

```
config user group
    edit "ldaps-group"
        set member "ldaps-server"
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

7. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "ldaps-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

8. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups “ldaps-group”
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *ldu1* credentials.
   Use a user which is configured on FortiAuthenticator with *Force password change on next logon*.

3. Click *Login*. You are prompted to enter a new password.
4. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *ldu1* credentials.
   You are prompted to enter a new password.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login using the CLI:**

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       ldu1    1(1)         291        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

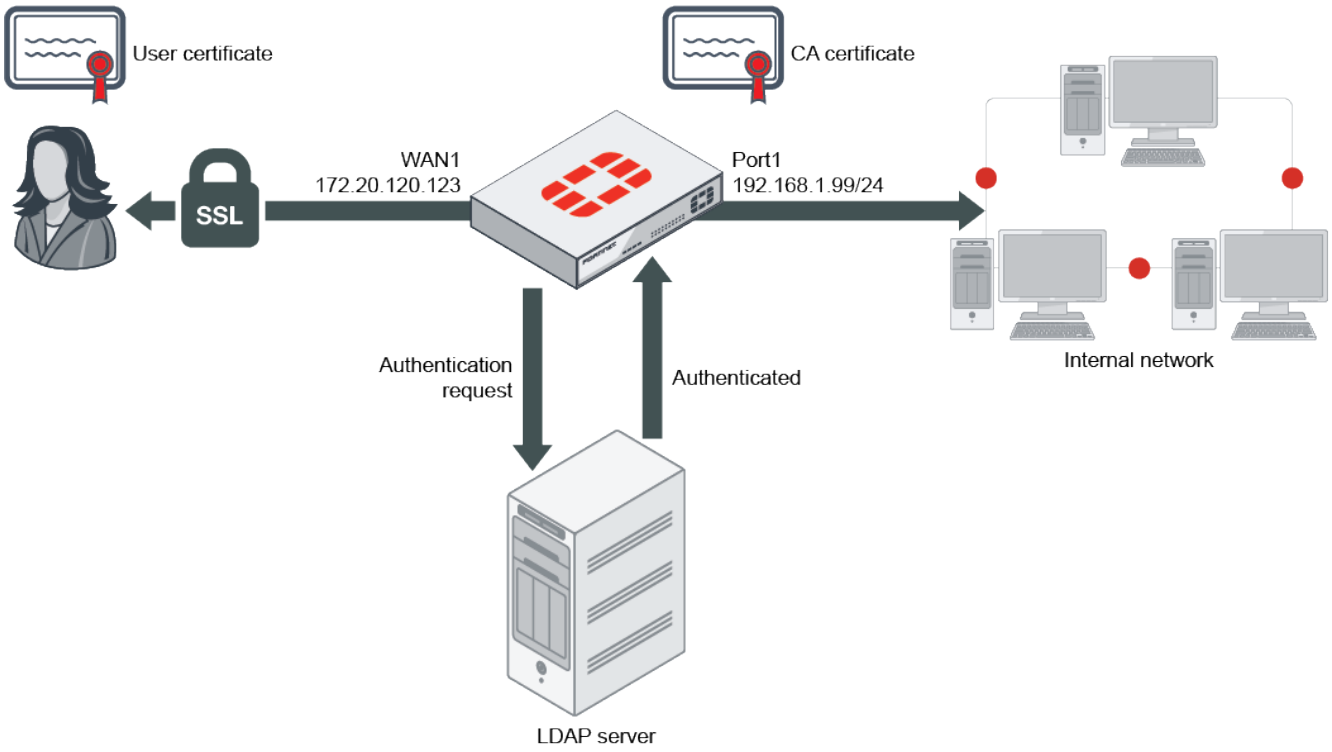
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration    I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       ldu1    10.1.100.254   9           22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that requires users to authenticate using a certificate with LDAP `UserPrincipalName` checking.

This sample uses Windows 2012R2 Active Directory acting as both the user certificate issuer, the certificate authority, and the LDAP server.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

In this sample, the *User Principal Name* is included in the subject name of the issued certificate. This is the user field we use to search LDAP in the connection attempt.

To use the user certificate, you must first install it on the user's PC. When the user tries to authenticate, the user certificate is checked against the CA certificate to verify that they match.

Every user should have a unique user certificate. This allows you to distinguish each user and revoke a specific user's certificate, such as if a user no longer has VPN access.

### To install the server certificate:

The server certificate is used for authentication and for encrypting SSL VPN traffic.

1. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
2. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
3. Set *Type* to *Certificate*.
4. Choose the *Certificate file* and the *Key file* for your certificate, and enter the *Password*.
5. If required, change the *Certificate Name*.
   The server certificate now appears in the list of *Certificates*.

**To install the CA certificate:**

The CA certificate is the certificate that signed both the server certificate and the user certificate. In this example, it is used to authenticate SSL VPN users.

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
2. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure the LDAP server:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Specify *Name* and *Server IP/Name*.
   c. Set *Distinguished Name* to *dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com*.
   d. Set *Bind Type* to *Regular*.
   e. Set *Username* to *cn=admin,ou=testing,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com*.
   f. Set *Password*.
   g. Click *OK*.
3. Configure PKI users and a user group:
   To use certificate authentication, use the CLI to create PKI users.

```
config user peer
    edit user1
        set ca CA_Cert_1
        set ldap-server "ldap-AD"
        set ldap-mode principal-name
    next
end
```

   When you have create a PKI user, a new menu is added to the GUI:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *PKI* to see the new user.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User* > *User Groups* and create a group *sslvpn-group*.
   c. Add the PKI peer object you created as a local member of the group.
   d. Add a remote group on the LDAP server and select the group of interest.
      You need these users to be members using the LDAP browser window.
4. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
      This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.

c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
e. Enable *Require Client Certificate*.
f. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
g. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpn-group* mapping portal *full-access*.

6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpn-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-AD"
        set server "172.18.60.206"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=admin,ou=testing,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password ldap-server-password
```

```
    next
end
```

4. Configure PKI users and a user group:

```
config user peer
    edit user1
        set ca CA_Cert_1
        set ldap-server "ldap-AD"
        set ldap-mode principal-name
    next
end
```

```
config user group
    edit "sslvpn-group"
        set member "ldap-AD" "user1"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "ldap-AD"
                set group-name "CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    set reqclientcert enable
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpn-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

7. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
```

```
            set dstintf "port1"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
            set groups "sslvpn-group"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
   d. Enable *Client Certificate* and select the authentication certificate.
4. Save your settings.
   Connecting to the VPN only requires the user's certificate. It does not require username or password.

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
   A message requests a certificate for authentication.
2. Select the user certificate.
   You can connect to the SSL VPN web portal.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *VPN Events* to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the CLI:**

Below is a sample output of `diagnose debug application fnbamd -1` while the user connects. This is a shortened output sample of a few locations to show the important parts. This sample shows lookups to find the group memberships (three groups total) of the user and that the correct group being found results in a match.

```
[1148] fnbamd_ldap_recv-Response len: 16, svr: 172.18.60.206
[829] fnbamd_ldap_parse_response-Got one MESSAGE. ID:4, type:search-result
[864] fnbamd_ldap_parse_response-ret=0
[1386] __fnbamd_ldap_primary_grp_next-Auth accepted
[910] __ldap_rxtx-Change state to 'Done'
[843] __ldap_rxtx-state 23(Done)
[925] fnbamd_ldap_send-sending 7 bytes to 172.18.60.206
[937] fnbamd_ldap_send-Request is sent. ID 5
[753] __ldap_stop-svr 'ldap-AD'
[53] ldap_dn_list_del_all-Del CN=test3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
```

```
[399] ldap_copy_grp_list-copied CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
[399] ldap_copy_grp_list-copied CN=Domain Users,CN=Users,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
[2088] fnbamd_auth_cert_check-Matching group 'sslvpn-group'
[2007] __match_ldap_group-Matching server 'ldap-AD' - 'ldap-AD'
[2015] __match_ldap_group-Matching group 'CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM' -
'CN=group3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM'
[2091] fnbamd_auth_cert_check-Group 'sslvpn-group' matched
[2120] fnbamd_auth_cert_result-Result for ldap svr[0] 'ldap-AD' is SUCCESS
[2126] fnbamd_auth_cert_result-matched user 'test3', matched group 'sslvpn-group'
```

You can also use `diagnose firewall auth list` to validate that a firewall user entry exists for the SSL VPN user and is part of the right groups.

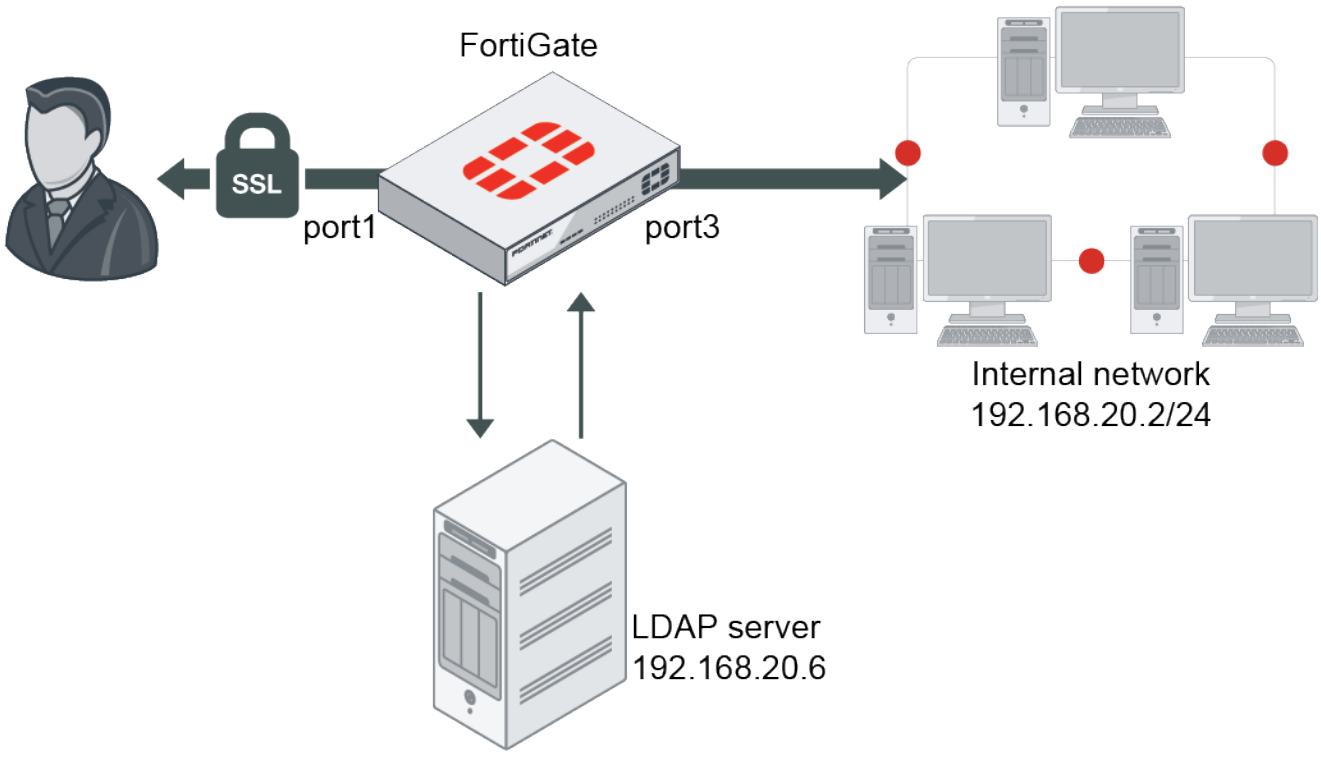
## SSL VPN for remote users with MFA and user case sensitivity

By default, remote LDAP and RADIUS user names are case sensitive. When a remote user object is applied to SSL VPN authentication, the user must type the exact case that is used in the user definition on the FortiGate.

Case sensitivity can be disabled by disabling the `username-case-sensitivity` CLI command, allowing the remote user object to match any case that the end user types in.

In this example, a remote user is configured with multi-factor authentication (MFA). The user group includes the LDAP user and server, and is applied to SSL VPN authentication and the policy.

### Topology



## Example configuration

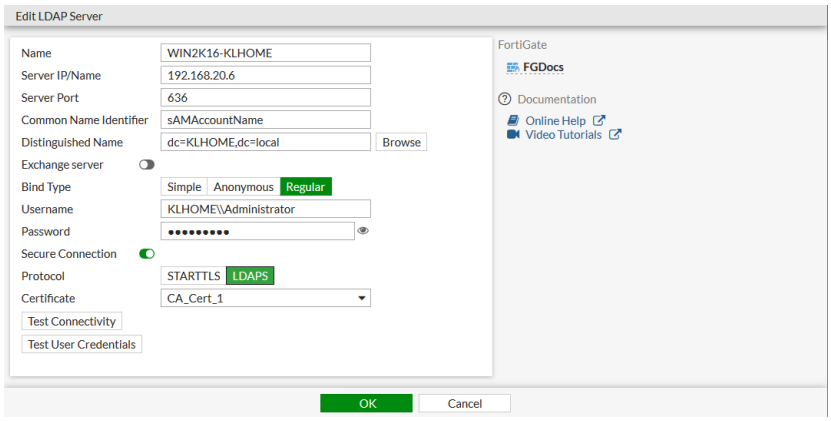
**To configure the LDAP server:**

1. Generate and export a CA certificate from the AD server .
2. Import the CA certificate into FortiGate:
   a. Go to *System* > *Features Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   c. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.
   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
   d. If you want, you can use CLI commands to rename the system-generated *CA_Cert_1* to be more descriptive:

```
config vpn certificate ca
    rename CA_Cert_1 to LDAPS-CA
end
```

3. Configure the LDAP user:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers* and click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following options for this example:

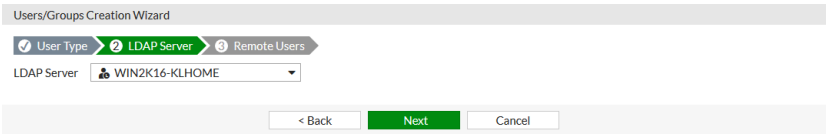
| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | WIN2K16-KLHOME |
| **Server IP/Name** | 192.168.20.6 |
| **Server Port** | 636 |
| **Common Name Identifier** | sAMAccountName |
| **Distinguished Name** | dc=KLHOME,dc=local |
| **Bind Type** | Regular |
| **Username** | KLHOME\\Administrator |
| **Password** | ********* |
| **Secure Connection** | Enable |
| **Protocol** | LDAPS |
| **Certificate** | CA_Cert_1<br>This is the CA certificate that you imported in step 2. |



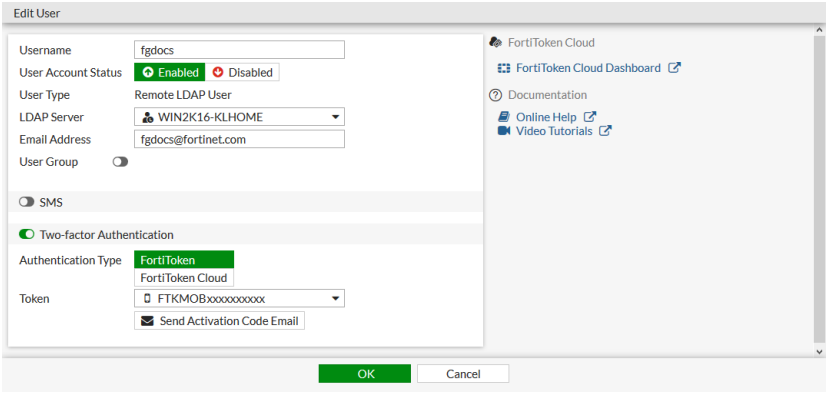
c. Click *OK*.

**To configure an LDAP user with MFA:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* and click *Create New*.
2. Select *Remote LDAP User*, then click *Next*.
3. Select the just created LDAP server, then click *Next*.




4. Right click to add the selected user, then click *Submit*.
5. Edit the user that you just created.
   The username will be pulled from the LDAP server with the same case as it has on the server.
6. Set the *Email Address* to the address that FortiGate will send the FortiToken to.
7. Enable *Two-factor Authentication*.
8. Set *Authentication Type* to *FortiToken*.
9. Set *Token* to a FortiToken device. See Configuring FortiTokens on page 1507 for more information.




10. Click *OK*.

**To disable case sensitivity on the remote user:**

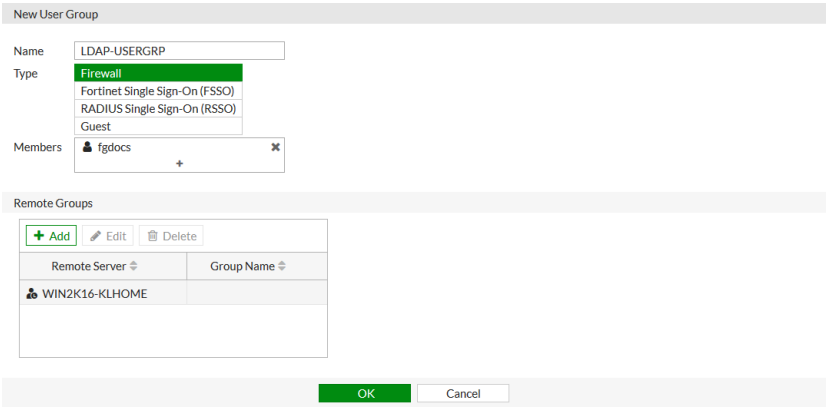
This can only be configured in the CLI.

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set type ldap
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken "FTKMOBxxxxxxxxxx"
        set email-to "fgdocs@fortinet.com"
        set username-case-sensitivity disable
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
    next
end
```

**To configure a user group with the remote user and the LDAP server:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Set the *Name* to *LDAP-USERGRP*.

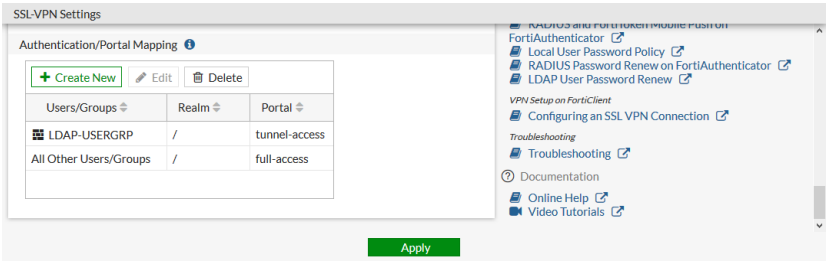
3. Set *Members* to the just created remote user.
4. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*:
   a. Set *Remote Server* to the LDAP server.
   b. Set the group or groups that apply, and right click to add them.
   c. Click *OK*.




5. Click *OK*.

### To apply the user group to the SSL VPN portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. In the *Authentication/Portal Mapping* table, click *Create New*.
   a. Set *Users/Groups* to the just created user group.
   b. Configure the remaining settings as required.
   c. Click *OK*.



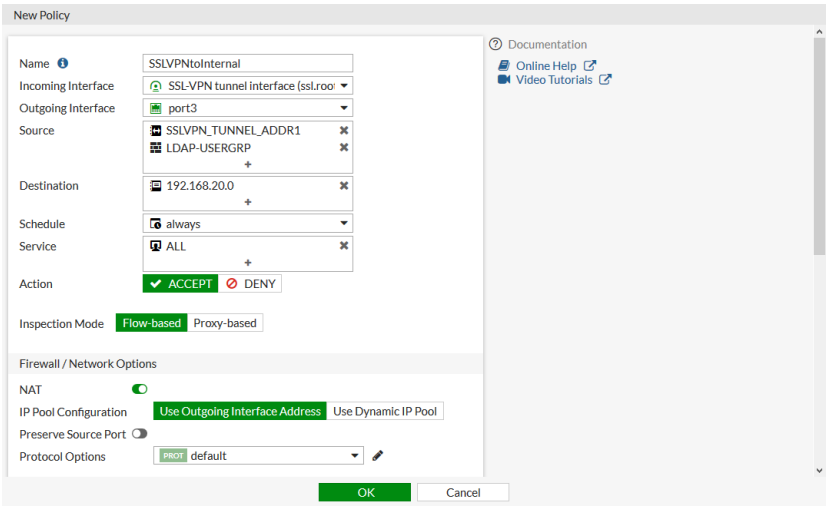

3. Click *Apply*.

### To apply the user group to a firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | SSLVPNtoInteral |
| **Incoming Interface** | SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root) |
| **Outgoing Interface** | port3 |
| **Source** | Address - SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1<br>User - LDAP-USERGRP |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Destination** | The address of the internal network.<br>In this case: 192.168.20.0. |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | Enabled |




3. Configuring the remaining settings as required.
4. Click *OK*.

### To configure this example in the CLI:

1. Configure the LDAP server:

```
config user ldap
    edit "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
        set server "192.168.20.6"
        set cnid "sAMAccountName"
        set dn "dc=KLHOME,dc=local"
        set type regular
        set username "KLHOME\\Administrator"
        set password *********
        set secure ldaps
        set ca-cert "CA_Cert_1"
        set port 636
    next
end
```

2. Configure an LDAP user with MFA:

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set type ldap
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken "FTKMOBxxxxxxxxxx"
        set email-to "fgdocs@fortinet.com"
```

```
        set username-case-sensitivity disable
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
    next
end
```

3. Disable case sensitivity on the remote user:

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set type ldap
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken "FTKMOBxxxxxxxxxx"
        set email-to "fgdocs@fortinet.com"
        set username-case-sensitivity disable
        set ldap-server "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
    next
end
```

4. Configure a user group with the remote user and the LDAP server:

```
config user group
    edit "LDAP-USERGRP"
        set member "fgdocs" "WIN2K16-KLHOME"
    next
end
```

5. Apply the user group to the SSL VPN portal:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert <server certificate>
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "LDAP-USERGRP"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Apply the user group to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 5
        set name "SSLVPNtoInternal"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port3"
        set srcaddr "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set groups "LDAP-USERGRP"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Verification

**To setup the VPN connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface.
   c. If required, set the *Customize Port*.
4. Save your settings.

**To test the connection with case sensitivity disabled:**

1. Connect to the VPN:
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using the same case that it is on the FortiGate.
   b. When prompted, enter your FortiToken code.
   You should now be connected.
2. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

3. Disconnect from the VPN connection.
4. Reconnect to the VPN:
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using a different case than on the FortiGate.
   b. When prompted, enter your FortiToken code.
   You should now be connected.
5. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       FGDOCS          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       FGDOCS          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

In both cases, the remote user is matched against the remote LDAP user object and prompted for multi-factor authentication.

**To test the connection with case sensitivity enabled:**

1. Enable case sensitivity for the user:

```
config user local
    edit "fgdocs"
        set username-case-sensitivity enable
    next
end
```

2. Connect to the VPN
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using the same case that it is on the FortiGate.
   b. When prompted, enter your FortiToken code.
   You should now be connected.
3. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       fgdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

1. Disconnect from the VPN connection.
2. Reconnect to the VPN:
   a. Log in to the tunnel with the username, using a different case than on the FortiGate.
   You will not be prompted for your FortiToken code. You should now be connected.
3. Check the web portal log in using the CLI:

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Group   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out   HTTPS
in/out
 0       FGdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    16(1)           289     192.168.2.202 0/0
0/0

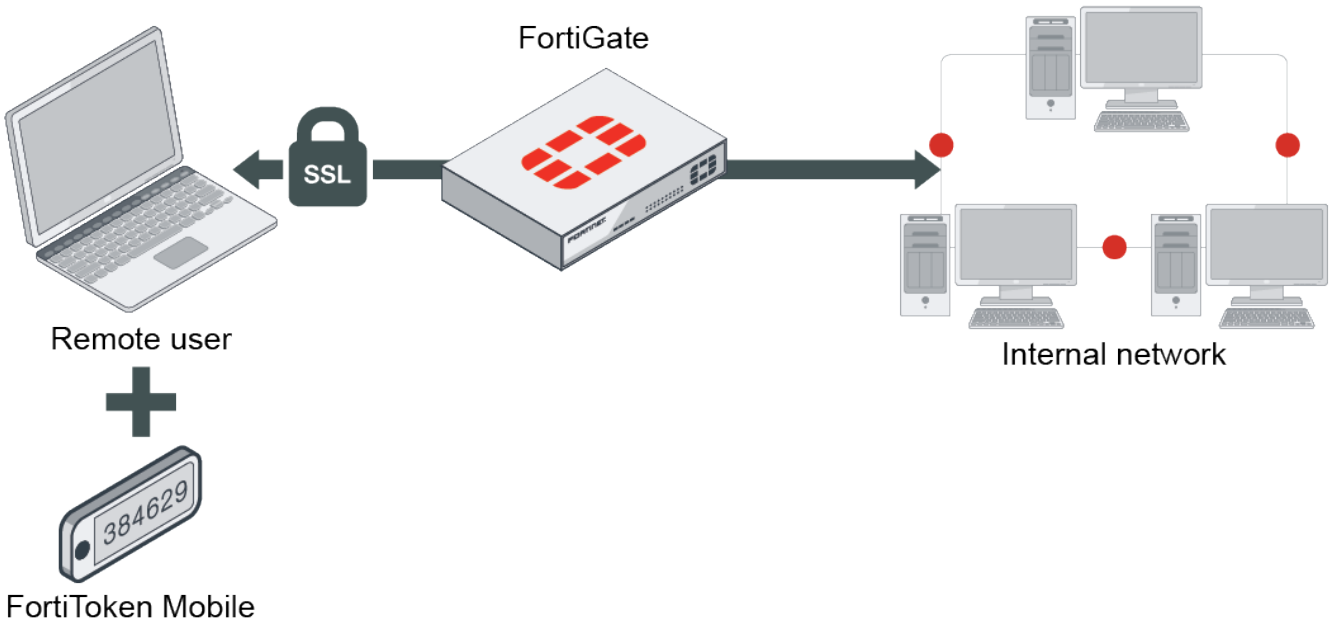
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Group   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       FGdocs          LDAP-USERGRP    192.168.2.202   45      99883/5572
10.212.134.200
```

In this case, the user is allowed to log in without a FortiToken code because the entered user name did not match the name defined on the remote LDAP user object. Authentication continues to be evaluated against the LDAP server though, which is not case sensitive.

## SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that uses FortiToken mobile push two-factor authentication. If you enable push notifications, users can accept or deny the authentication request.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Register FortiGate for FortiCare Support:
   To add or download a mobile token on FortiGate, FortiGate must be registered for FortiCare Support. If your FortiGate is registered, skip this step.
   a. Go to *Dashboard* > *Licenses*.
   b. Hover the pointer on *FortiCare Support* to check if FortiCare registered. If not, click it and select *Register*.
3. Add FortiToken mobile to FortiGate:
   If your FortiGate has FortiToken installed, skip this step.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens* and click *Create New*.
   b. Select *Mobile Token* and type in *Activation Code*.
   c. Every FortiGate has two free mobile tokens. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens* and click *Import Free Trial Tokens*.
4. Enable FortiToken mobile push:
   To use FTM-push authentication, use CLI to enable FTM-Push on the FortiGate.

a. Ensure `server-ip` is reachable from the Internet and enter the following CLI commands:

```
config system ftm-push
    set server-ip 172.20.120.123
    set status enable
end
```

b. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
c. Edit the *wan1* interface.
d. Under *Administrative Access* > *IPv4*, select *FTM*.
e. Click *OK*.

5. Configure user and user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enter the user's *Email Address*.
   c. Enable *Two-factor Authentication* and select one mobile *Token* from the list,
   d. Enable *Send Activation Code* and select *Email*.
   e. Click *Next* and click *Submit*.
   f. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup* with the member *sslvpnuser1*.
6. Activate the mobile token:
   a. When the user *sslvpnuser1* is created, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.
7. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
8. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
9. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Register FortiGate for FortiCare Support.
   To add or download a mobile token on FortiGate, FortiGate must be registered for FortiCare Support. If your FortiGate is registered, skip this step.

```
diagnose forticare direct-registration product-registration -a "your account@xxx.com" -p
"your password" -T "Your Country/Region" -R "Your Reseller" -e 1
```

4. Add FortiToken mobile to FortiGate:

```
execute fortitoken-mobile import <your FTM code>
```

   If your FortiGate has FortiToken installed, skip this step.

   Every FortiGate has two free mobile Tokens. You can download the free token.

```
execute fortitoken-mobile import 0000-0000-0000-0000-0000
```

5. Enable FortiToken mobile push:
   a. To use FTM-push authentication, ensure `server-ip` is reachable from the Internet and enable FTM-push in the FortiGate:

```
config system ftm-push
    set server-ip 172.20.120.123
    set status enable
end
```

   b. Enable FTM service on WAN interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        append allowaccess ftm
    next
end
```

6. Configure user and user group:

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set two-factor fortitoken
        set fortitoken <select mobile token for the option list>
        set email-to <user's email address>
        set passwd <user's password>
    next
end
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "sslvpnuser1"
    next
end
```

7. Activate the mobile token.
   When the user *sslvpnuser1* is created, an email is sent to the user's email address. Follow the instructions to install your FortiToken mobile application on your device and activate your token.
8. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

9. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

10. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
```

```
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   The FortiGate pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken mobile application.
3. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN portal.
4. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials and click *FTM Push*.
   The FortiGate pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken mobile application.
6. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN tunnel.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User           Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1    1(1)         229       10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login using the CLI:**

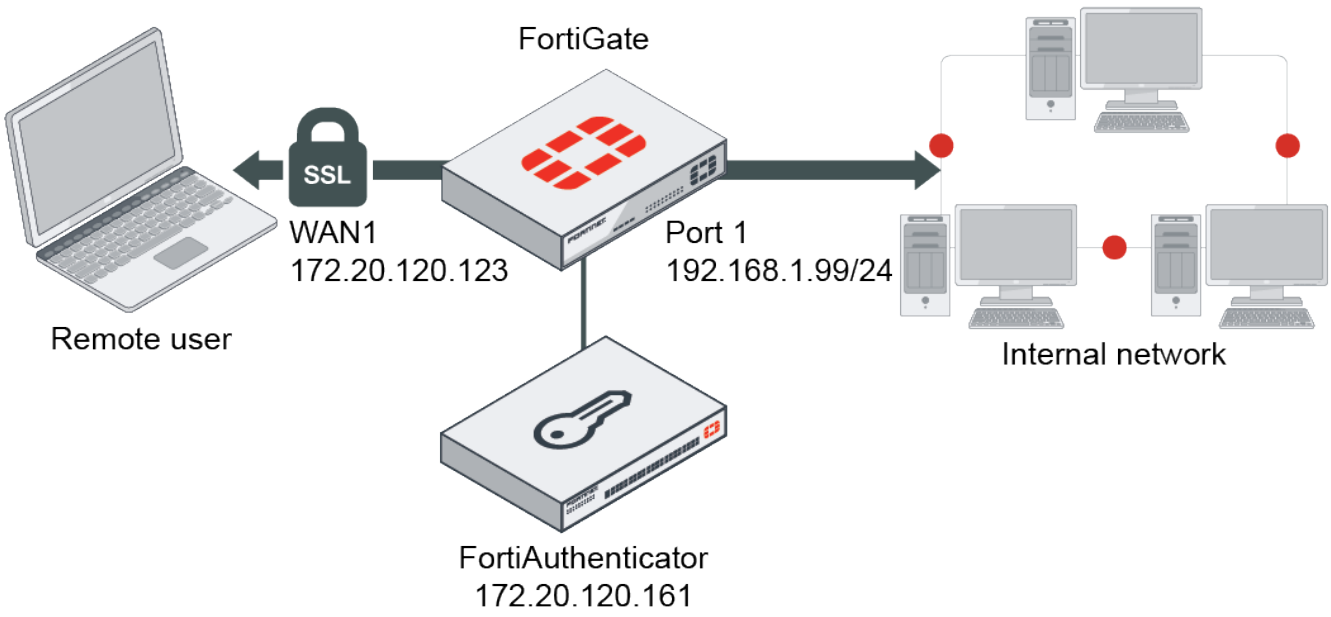
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with RADIUS on FortiAuthenticator

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that uses FortiAuthenticator as a RADIUS authentication server.

### Sample topology




### Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure FortiAuthenticator using the GUI:**

1. Create a user on the FortiAuthenticator.
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *Local Users* to create a user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enable *Allow RADIUS authentication* and click *OK* to access additional settings.
   c. Go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup*.
   d. Add *sslvpnuser1* to the group by moving the user from *Available users* to *Selected users*.
2. Create the RADIUS client (FortiGate) on the FortiAuthenticator.
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *RADIUS Service* > *Clients* to add the FortiGate as a RADIUS client *OfficeServer*).
   b. Enter the FortiGate IP address and set a *Secret*.
   The secret is a pre-shared secure password that the FortiGate uses to authenticate to the FortiAuthenticator.
   c. Set *Realms* to *local* | *Local users*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and create an address for internal subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Create a RADIUS user and user group .
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* to create a user to connect to the RADIUS server (FortiAuthenticator).
   b. For *Name*, use *FAC-RADIUS*.
   c. Enter the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator, and enter the *Secret* created above.
   d. Click *Test Connectivity* to ensure you can connect to the RADIUS server.
   e. Select *Test User Credentials* and enter the credentials for *sslvpnuser1*.
   The FortiGate can now connect to the FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS client.
   f. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New* to map authenticated remote users to a user group on the FortiGate.
   g. For *Name*, use *SSLVPNGroup*.
   h. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add*.
   i. In the *Remote Server* dropdown list, select *FAC-RADIUS*.
   j. Leave the *Groups* field blank.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. *Incoming Interface* must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example: *port1*.
   e. Set the *Source* > *Address* to *all* and *Source* > *User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   f. Set *Destination* > *Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure the remaining options as required.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Create a RADIUS user and user group.

```
config user radius
    edit "FAC-RADIUS"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set secret <FAC client secret>
    next
end

config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "FAC-RADIUS"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
```

```
        config authentication-rule
            edit 1
                set groups "sslvpngroup"
                set portal "full-access"
            next
        end
    end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
    config firewall policy
        edit 1
            set name "sslvpn web mode access"
            set srcintf "ssl.root"
            set dstintf "port1"
            set srcaddr "all"
            set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set action accept
            set schedule "always"
            set service "ALL"
            set nat enable
        next
    end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set the connection name.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials and check that you are logged into the SSL VPN tunnel.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User     Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login using the CLI:**

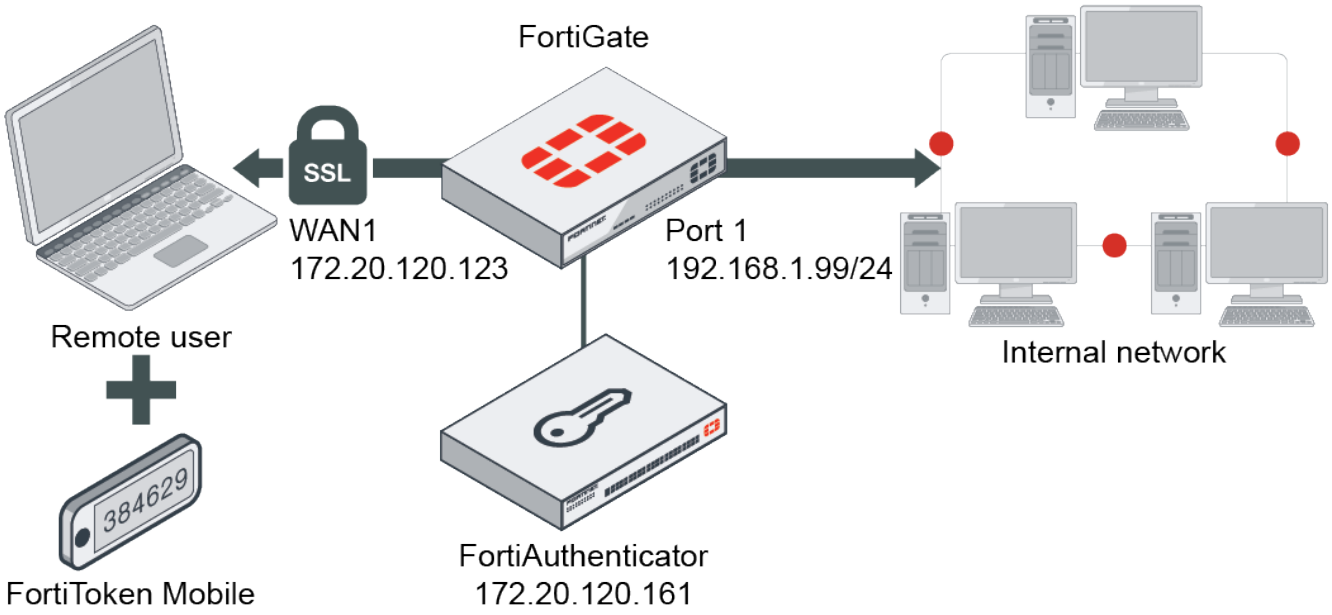
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type   Timeout    From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)        291        10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration     I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9            22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with RADIUS and FortiToken mobile push on FortiAuthenticator

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN that uses FortiAuthenticator as a RADIUS authentication server and FortiToken mobile push two-factor authentication. If you enable push notifications, users can accept or deny the authentication request.

### Sample topology




### Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure FortiAuthenticator using the GUI:**

1. Add a FortiToken mobile license on the FortiAuthenticator:
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *FortiTokens*.
   b. Click *Create New*.
   c. Set *Token type* to *FortiToken Mobile* and enter the *FortiToken Activation codes*.
2. Create the RADIUS client (FortiGate) on the FortiAuthenticator:
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *RADIUS Service* > *Clients* to add the FortiGate as a RADIUS client *OfficeServer*).
   b. Enter the FortiGate IP address and set a *Secret*.
   The secret is a pre-shared secure password that the FortiGate uses to authenticate to the FortiAuthenticator.
   c. Set *Authentication method* to *Enforce two-factor authentication*.
   d. Select *Enable FortiToken Mobile push notifications authentication*.
   e. Set *Realms* to *local* | *Local users*.
3. Create a user and assign FortiToken mobile to the user on the FortiAuthenticator:
   a. On the FortiAuthenticator, go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *Local Users* to create a user *sslvpnuser1*.
   b. Enable *Allow RADIUS authentication* and click *OK* to access additional settings.
   c. Enable *Token-based authentication* and select to deliver the token code by *FortiToken*.
   d. Select the FortiToken added from the FortiToken Mobile dropdown menu.
   e. Set *Delivery method* to *Email* and fill in the *User Information* section.
   f. Go to *Authentication* > *User Management* > *User Groups* to create a group *sslvpngroup*.
   g. Add *sslvpnuser1* to the group by moving the user from *Available users* to *Selected users*.
4. Install the FortiToken mobile application on your Android or iOS smartphone.
   The FortiAuthenticator sends the FortiToken mobile activation to the user's email address.
5. Activate the FortiToken mobile through the FortiToken mobile application by entering the activation code or scanning the QR code.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Create a RADIUS user and user group:
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* to create a user to connect to the RADIUS server (FortiAuthenticator).
   b. For *Name*, use *FAC-RADIUS*.
   c. Enter the IP address of the FortiAuthenticator, and enter the *Secret* created above.
   d. Click *Test Connectivity* to ensure you can connect to the RADIUS server.
   e. Select *Test User Credentials* and enter the credentials for *sslvpnuser1*.
   The FortiGate can now connect to the FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS client.
   f. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New* to map authenticated remote users to a user group on the FortiGate.
   g. For *Name*, use *SSLVPNGroup*.

h. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add*.
i. In the *Remote Server* dropdown list, select *FAC-RADIUS*.
j. Leave the *Groups* field blank.

3. Configure SSL VPN web portal:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
      This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
4. Configure SSL VPN settings:
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
5. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy:
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example: *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

3. Create a RADIUS user and user group:

```
config user radius
    edit "FAC-RADIUS"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set secret <FAC client secret>
    next
end
```

```
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "FAC-RADIUS"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
     next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
```

```
        next
    end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   The FortiAuthenticator pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken Mobile application.
3. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN portal.
4. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example: *172.20.120.123*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials and click *FTM Push*.
   The FortiAuthenticator pushes a login request notification through the FortiToken Mobile application.
6. Check your mobile device and select *Approve*.
   When the authentication is approved, *sslvpnuser1* is logged into the SSL VPN tunnel.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type   Timeout   From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)        229       10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login on CLI:**

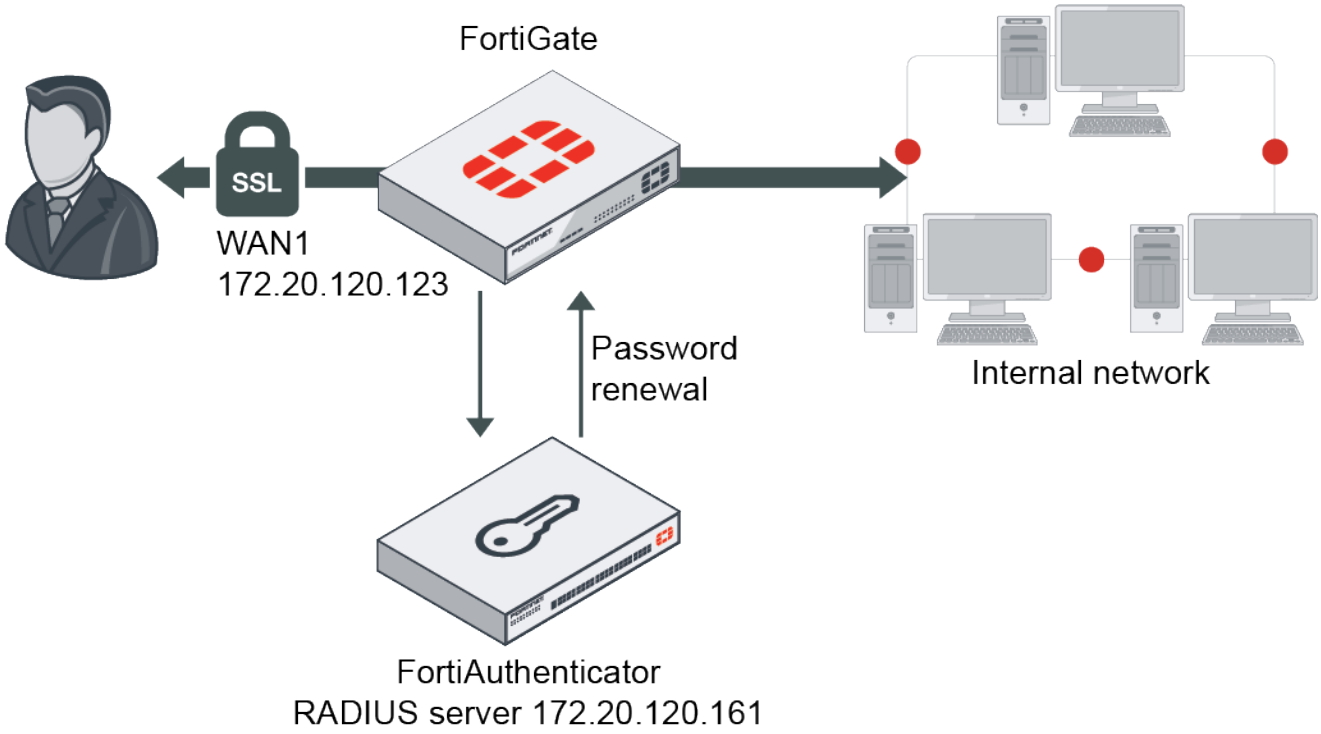
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration    I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9           22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with RADIUS password renew on FortiAuthenticator

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for RADIUS users with *Force Password Change on next logon*. In this example, the RADIUS server is a FortiAuthenticator. A user *test1* is configured on FortiAuthenticator with *Force password change on next logon*.

### Sample topology




### Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Create a RADIUS user.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* to create a user.
   b. Set *Authentication method* to *MS-CHAP-v2*.
   c. Enter the *IP/Name* and *Secret*.

d. Click *Create*.
Password renewal only works with the MS-CHAP-v2 authentication method.
e. To enable the `password-renew` option, use these CLI commands.

```
config user radius
    edit "fac"
        set server "172.20.120.161"
        set secret <fac radius password>
        set auth-type ms_chap_v2
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

3. Configure user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group.
   b. For the *Name*, enter *fac-group*.
   c. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add* to add *Remote Server* you just created.
4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *fac-group* mapping portal *full-access*.
6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name, in this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *fac-group*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network, in this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
```

```
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure the RADIUS server.

```
config user radius
    edit "fac"
        set server "172.18.58.107"
        set secret <fac radius password>
        set auth-type ms_chap_v2
        set password-renewal enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure user group.

```
config user group
    edit "fac-group"
        set member "fac"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "fac-group"
            set portal "full-access"
```

```
        next
    end
end
```

7. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "fac-group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *test1* credentials.
   Use a user which is configured on FortiAuthenticator with *Force password change on next logon*.
3. Click *Login*. You are prompted to enter a new password.
4. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set the connection name.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Log in using the *test1* credentials.
   You are prompted to enter a new password.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
```

```
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout    From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       test1   1(1)         229        10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type    Timeout   From           HTTP in/out  HTTPS in/out
 0       test1   1(1)         291       10.1.100.254   0/0          0/0

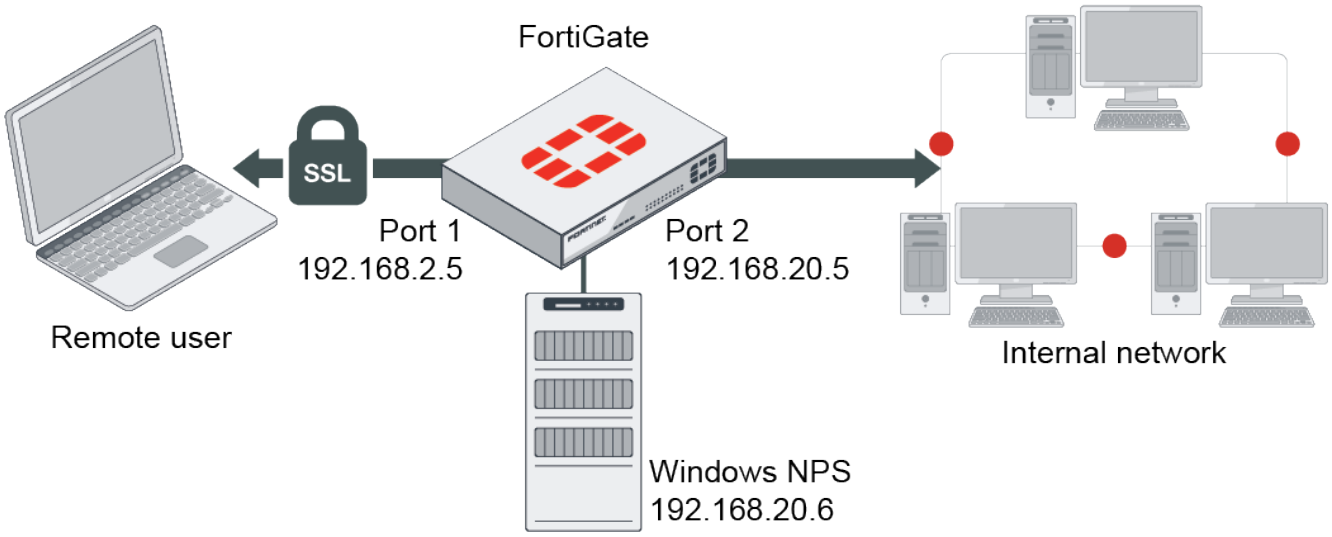
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       test1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS

This is an example configuration of SSL VPN that uses Windows Network Policy Server (NPS) as a RADIUS authentication server.

The NPS must already be configured to accept the FortiGate as a RADIUS client and the choice of authentication method, such as MS-CHAPv2. A shared key must also have been created.

### Example




The user is connecting from their PC to the FortiGate's port1 interface. RADIUS authentication occurs between the FortiGate and the Windows NPS, and the SSL-VPN connection is established once the authentication is successful.

### Configure SSL-VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS in the GUI

#### To configure the internal and external interfaces:

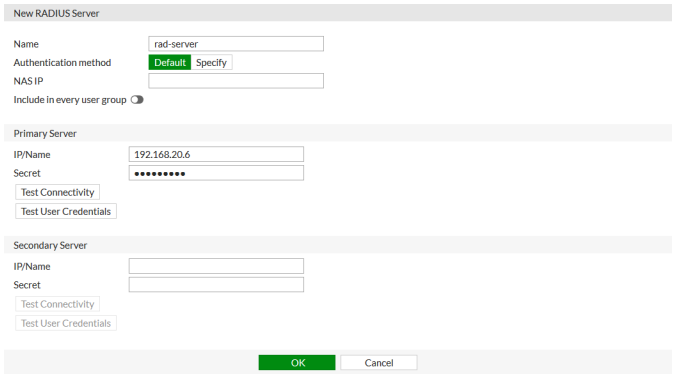
1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*
2. Edit the *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.2.5/24*.
3. Edit the *port2* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.20.5/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

#### To create a firewall address:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *192.168.20.0*.
3. Leave *Type* as *Subnet*
4. Set *IP/Netmask* to *192.168.20.0/24*.
5. Click *OK*.

#### To add the RADIUS server:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *rad-server*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.20.6* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. Optionally, click *Test User Credentials* to test user credentials. Testing from the GUI is limited to PAP.

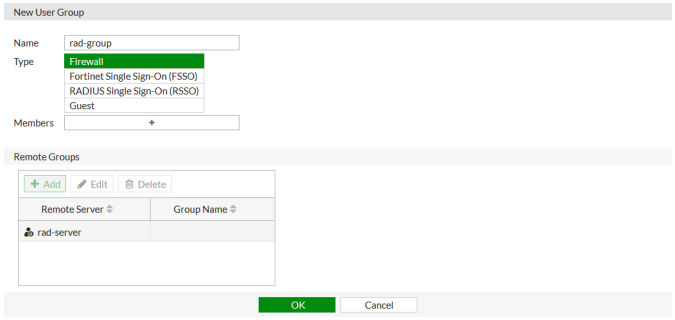



7. Click *OK*.

#### To configure a user group:

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *rad-group*.

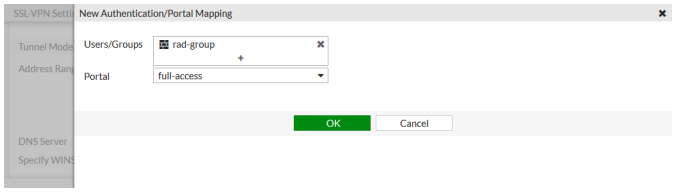
3. Under *Remote Groups*, click *Add* and add the *rad-server*.




4. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN settings:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *port1*.
3. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
4. If you have a server certificate, set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
5. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*:
   a. Edit *All Other Users/Groups* and set *Portal* to *web-access*.
   b. Click *Create New* and create a mapping for the *rad-group* user group with *Portal* set to *full-access*.

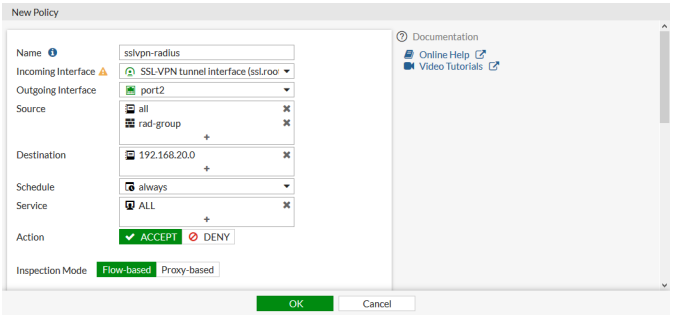



   c. Click *OK*.
6. Click *Apply*.

**To configure an SSL VPN firewall policy:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and click *Create New*.
2. Set the policy name, in this example, *sslvpn-radius*.
3. Set *Incoming Interface* to *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
4. Set *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port2*.
5. Set the *Source* > *Address* to *all* and *Source* > *User* to *rad-group*.
6. Set *Destination* > *Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.20.0*.
7. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.

8. Enable *NAT*.




9. Configure the remaining options as required.
10. Click *OK*.

### Configure SSL-VPN with RADIUS on Windows NPS in the CLI

### To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:

1. Configure the internal and external interfaces:

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.2.5 255.255.255.0
        set alias internal
    next
    edit "port2"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.20.5 255.255.255.0
        set alias external
    next
end
```

2. Configure the firewall address:

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.20.0"
        set subnet 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Add the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
    edit "rad-server"
        set server "192.168.20.6"
        set secret *********
    next
end
```

4. Create a user group and add the RADIUS server to it:.

```
config user group
    edit "rad-group"
        set member "rad-server"
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "rad-group"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Configure an SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn-radius"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port2"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
        set groups "rad-group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**Results**

**To connect with FortiClient in tunnel mode:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection:
   a. Set the connection name.
   b. Set *Remote Gateway* to *192.168.2.5*.
   c. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
4. Save your settings.
5. Log in using the RADIUS user credentials.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type drop-down list to view the details of the SSL VPN connection event log.
3. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check the login using the CLI:**

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User     Group    Auth Type      Timeout          From      HTTP in/out     HTTPS in/out
 0       radkeith         rad-group        2(1)             295     192.168.2.202   0/0      0/0

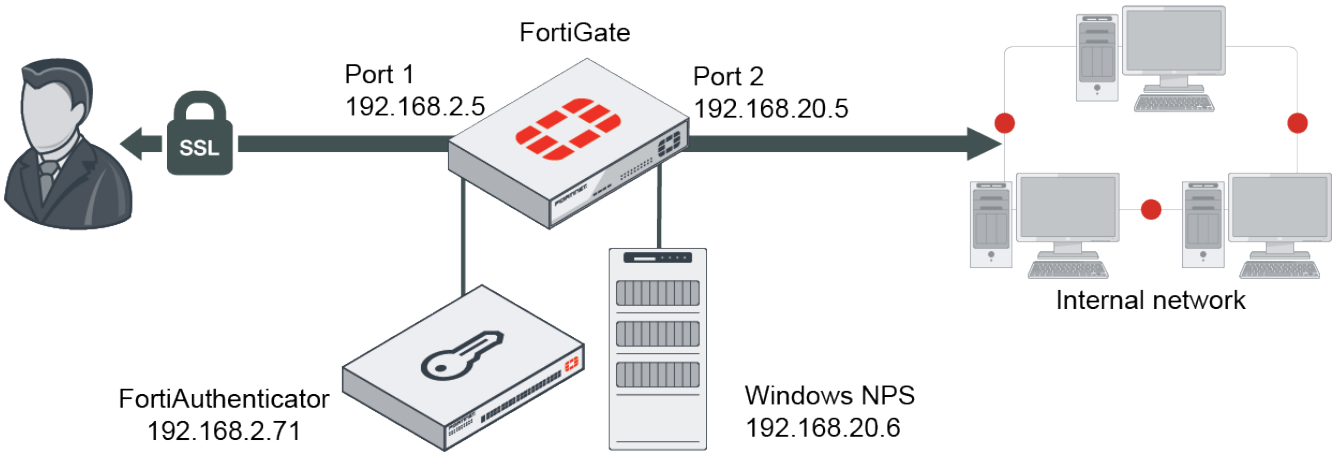
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User     Group    Source IP      Duration         I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       radkeith         rad-group        192.168.2.202    18      28502/4966
10.212.134.200
```

## SSL VPN with multiple RADIUS servers

When configuring two or more RADIUS servers, you can configure a Primary and Secondary server within the same RADIUS server configurations for backup purposes. You can also configure multiple RADIUS servers within the same User Group to service the access request at the same time.

A tertiary server can be configured in the CLI.

### Sample topology




### Sample configurations

- Configure a Primary and Secondary server for backup on page 1410
- Authenticating to two RADIUS servers concurrently on page 1414

### Configure a Primary and Secondary server for backup

When you define a Primary and Secondary RADIUS server, the access request will always be sent to the Primary server first. If the request is denied with an Access-Reject, then the user authentication fails. However, if there is no response from the Primary server after another attempt, the access request will be sent to the Secondary server.

In this example, you will use a Windows NPS server as the Primary server and a FortiAuthenticator as the Secondary server. It is assumed that users are synchronized between the two servers.

**To configure the internal and external interfaces:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.2.5/24*.
3. Edit the *port2* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.20.5/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To create a firewall address:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *192.168.20.0*.
3. Leave *Type* as *Subnet*
4. Set IP/*Netmask* to *192.168.20.0/24*.
5. Click *OK*.

**To add the RADIUS servers:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *PrimarySecondary*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.20.6* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. Under *Secondary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.2.71* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
7. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
8. *Click OK.*

**To configure the user group:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Name* field, enter *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
3. In the *Remote Groups* area, click *Add*, and from the *Remote Server* dropdown, select *PrimarySecondary*.
4. Click *OK*, and then click *OK* again.

**To configure the SSL VPN settings:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. From the *Listen on Interface(s)* dropdown select *port1*.
3. In the *Listen on Port* field enter *10443*.
4. Optionally, from the *Server Certificate* dropdown, select the authentication certificate if you have one for this SSL VPN portal.
5. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set the default portal web-access.
   a. Select *All Other Users/Groups* and click *Edit*.
   b. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *web-access*.

   c. Click *OK*.
6. Create a web portal for *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
   a. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, click *Create New*.
   b. Click *Users/Groups* and select *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
   c. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *full-access*.
   d. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN firewall policy:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* to create a new policy, or double-click an existing policy to edit it and configure the following settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the policy. |
| **Incoming Interface** | *SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root)* |
| **Outgoing interface** | Set to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network.<br>For this example, select *port3*. |
| **Source** | In the *Address* tab, select *SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1*<br>In the *User* tab, select *PrimarySecondaryGroup* |
| **Destination** | Select the internal protected subnet *192.168.20.0*. |
| **Schedule** | *always* |
| **Service** | *All* |
| **Action** | *Accept* |
| **NAT** | *Enable* |

3. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as required.
4. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the internal interface and firewall address:
```
config system interface
   edit "port3"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 192.168.20.5 255.255.255.0
      set alias "internal"
   next
end
config firewall address
   edit "192.168.20.0"
      set uuid cc41eec2-9645-51ea-d481-5c5317f865d0
      set subnet 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```
2. Configure the RADIUS server:
```
config user radius
```

```
    edit "PrimarySecondary"
       set server "192.168.20.6"
       set secret <secret>
       set secondary-server "192.168.2.71"
       set secondary-secret <secret>
    next
end
```

3. Add the RADIUS user to the user group:

```
config user group
    edit "PrimarySecondaryGroup"
       set member "PrimarySecondary "
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN settings:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
       edit 1
          set groups "PrimarySecondaryGroup "
          set portal "full-access"
       next
    end
end
```

5. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote users to access the internal network:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
       set name "sslvpn-radius"
       set srcintf "ssl.root"
       set dstintf "port3"
       set srcaddr "all"
       set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
       set groups "PrimarySecondaryGroup"
       set action accept
       set schedule "always"
       set service "ALL"
       set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To verify the connection:**

User *radkeith* is a member of both the NPS server and the FAC server.

When the Primary server is up, it will connect to the SSL VPN tunnel using FortiClient.

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 16:26:50.838453 port3 out 192.168.20.5.2374 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:26:50.883166 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.2374: udp 20
2020-05-15 16:26:50.883374 port3 out 192.168.20.5.2374 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 182
2020-05-15 16:26:50.884683 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.2374: udp 228
```

The access request is sent to the Primary NPS server 192.168.20.6, and the connection is successful.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User            Group                   Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       radkeith       PrimarySecondaryGroup   2(1)            285     192.168.2.202
 0/0     0/0

SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User       Group                   Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
Tunnel/Dest IP

0       radkeith   PrimarySecondaryGroup   192.168.2.202   62              132477/4966
10.212.134.200
```

When the Primary server is down, and the Secondary server is up, the connection is made to the SSLVPN tunnel again:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 16:31:23.016875 port3 out 192.168.20.5.7989 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:31:28.019470 port3 out 192.168.20.5.7989 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:31:30.011874 port1 out 192.168.2.5.23848 -> 192.168.2.71.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 16:31:30.087564 port1 in 192.168.2.71.1812 -> 192.168.2.5.23848: udp 20
```

Access request is sent to the Primary NPS server 192.168.20.6, but there was no response. RADIUS authentication falls through to the Secondary FortiAuthenticator 192.168.2.71, and the authentication was accepted. The VPN connection is established.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User            Group                  Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       radkeith        PrimarySecondaryGroup   2(1)            287     192.168.2.202
0/0       0/0

SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User            Group                    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
   Tunnel/Dest IP

0       radkeith        PrimarySecondaryGroup   192.168.2.202   48              53544/4966
  10.212.134.200
```

## Authenticating to two RADIUS servers concurrently

There are times where users are located on separate RADIUS servers. This may be the case when migrating from an old server to a new one for example. In this scenario, a Windows NPS server and a FortiAuthenticator are configured in the same User Group. The access-request is sent to both servers concurrently. If FortiGate receives an access-accept from either server, authentication is successful.

**To configure the internal and external interfaces:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit the *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.2.5/24*.

3. Edit the *port2* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.20.5/24*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To create a firewall address:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses* and click *Create New* > *Address*.
2. Set *Name* to *192.168.20.0*.
3. Leave *Type* as *Subnet*
4. Set IP/*Netmask* to *192.168.20.0/24*.
5. Click *OK*.

**To configure the first RADIUS server:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *win2k16*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.20.6* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. *Click OK.*

**To configure the second RADIUS server:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers* and click *Create New*.
2. Set *Name* to *fac*.
3. Leave *Authentication method* set to *Default*. The PAP, MS-CHAPv2, and CHAP methods will be tried in order.
4. Under *Primary Server*, set *IP/Name* to *192.168.2.71* and *Secret* to the shared secret configured on the RADIUS server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to test the connection to the server, and ensure that *Connection status* is *Successful*.
6. *Click OK.*

**To configure the user group:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* and click *Create New*.
2. In the *Name* field, enter *dualPrimaryGroup.*.
3. In the *Remote Groups* area, click *Add*, and from the *Remote Server* dropdown, select *fac*.
4. Click *Add* again. From the *Remote Server* dropdown select *win2k16* and click *OK*.
5. Click *OK*, and then click *OK* again.

**To configure the SSL VPN settings:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. From the *Listen on Interface(s)* dropdown select *port1*.
3. In the *Listen on Port* field enter *10443*.
4. Optionally, from the *Server Certificate* dropdown, select the authentication certificate if you have one for this SSL VPN portal.

5. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set the default portal web-access.
   a. Select *All Other Users/Groups* and click Edit.
   b. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *web-access*.
   c. Click *OK*.
6. Create a web portal for *PrimarySecondaryGroup*.
   a. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, click *Create New*.
   b. Click *Users/Groups* and select *dualPrimaryGroup*.
   c. From the *Portal* dropdown, select *full-access*.
   d. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN firewall policy:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* to create a new policy, or double-click an existing policy to edit it.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter a name for the policy. |
| **Incoming Interface** | *SSL-VPN tunnel interface (ssl.root)* |
| **Outgoing interface** | Set to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network.<br>For this example, select *port3*. |
| **Source** | In the *Address* tab, select *SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1*<br>In the *User* tab, select *dualPrimaryGroup* |
| **Destination** | Select the internal protected subnet *192.168.20.0*. |
| **Schedule** | *always* |
| **Service** | *All* |
| **Action** | *Accept* |
| **NAT** | *Enable* |

3. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as required.
4. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the internal interface and firewall address:

```
config system interface
   edit "port3"
      set vdom "root"
      set ip 192.168.20.5 255.255.255.0
      set alias "internal"
   next
end
config firewall address
   edit "192.168.20.0"
      set uuid cc41eec2-9645-51ea-d481-5c5317f865d0
      set subnet 192.168.20.0 255.255.255.0
   next
end
```

2. Configure the RADIUS server:
```
config user radius
   edit "win2k16"
      set server "192.168.20.6"
      set secret <secret>
   next
   edit "fac"
      set server "192.168.2.71"
      set secret <secret>
   next
end
```
3. Add the RADIUS user to the user group:
```
config user group
   edit "dualPrimaryGroup"
      set member "win2k16" "fac"
   next
end
```
4. Configure SSL VPN settings:
```
config vpn ssl settings
   set servercert "server_certificate"
   set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
   set source-interface "port1"
   set source-address "all"
   set default-portal "web-access"
   config authentication-rule
      edit 1
         set groups "dualPrimaryGroup"
         set portal "full-access"
      next
   end
end
```
5. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote users to access the internal network:
```
config firewall policy
   edit 1
      set name "sslvpn-radius"
      set srcintf "ssl.root"
      set dstintf "port3"
      set srcaddr "all"
      set dstaddr "192.168.20.0"
      set groups "dualPrimaryGroup"
      set action accept
      set schedule "always"
      set service "ALL"
      set nat enable
   next
end
```

**To verify the connection:**

User *fackeith* is a member of the FortiAuthenticator server only.

User *radkeith* is a member of both the NPS server and the FortiAuthenticator server, but has different passwords on each server.

### Case 1: Connect to the SSLVPN tunnel using FortiClient with user FacAdmin:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 17:21:31.217985 port3 out 192.168.20.5.11490 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:21:31.218091 port1 out 192.168.2.5.11490 -> 192.168.2.71.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:21:31.219314 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.11490: udp 20 <--
     access-reject
2020-05-15 17:21:31.219519 port3 out 192.168.20.5.11490 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 182
2020-05-15 17:21:31.220219 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.11490: udp 42
2020-05-15 17:21:31.220325 port3 out 192.168.20.5.11490 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 119
2020-05-15 17:21:31.220801 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.11490: udp 20
2020-05-15 17:21:31.236009 port1 in 192.168.2.71.1812 -> 192.168.2.5.11490: udp 20 <--
     access-accept
```

Access is denied by the NPS server because the user does not exist. However, access is accepted by FortiAuthenticator. The end result is the authentication is successful.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User       Group             Auth Type      Timeout          From       HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       fackeith  dualPrimaryGroup   2(1)            292        192.168.2.202      0/0
      0/0

SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User       Group                  Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
Tunnel/Dest IP

0       fackeith  dualPrimaryGroup        192.168.2.202   149              70236/4966
 10.212.134.200
```

### Case 2: Connect to the SSLVPN tunnel using FortiClient with user radkeith:

```
# diagnose sniffer packet any 'port 1812' 4 0 l
interfaces=[any]
filters=[port 1812]
2020-05-15 17:26:07.335791 port1 out 192.168.2.5.17988 -> 192.168.2.71.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:26:07.335911 port3 out 192.168.20.5.17988 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 118
2020-05-15 17:26:07.337659 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.17988: udp 20 <--
     access-accept
2020-05-15 17:26:07.337914 port3 out 192.168.20.5.17988 -> 192.168.20.6.1812: udp 182
2020-05-15 17:26:07.339451 port3 in 192.168.20.6.1812 -> 192.168.20.5.17988: udp 228
2020-05-15 17:26:08.352597 port1 in 192.168.2.71.1812 -> 192.168.2.5.17988: udp 20 <--
     access-reject
```

There is a password mismatch for this user on the Secondary RADIUS server. However, even though the authentication was rejected by FortiAuthenticator, it was accepted by Windows NPS. Therefore, the end result is authentication successful.

```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:

Index   User       Group            Auth Type      Timeout          From        HTTP
in/out    HTTPS in/out

0       radkeith  dualPrimaryGroup   2(1)            290        192.168.2.202    0/0
      0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:

Index   User      Group                Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes
Tunnel/Dest IP

0       radkeith dualPrimaryGroup   192.168.2.202   142             64875/4966
10.212.134.200
```

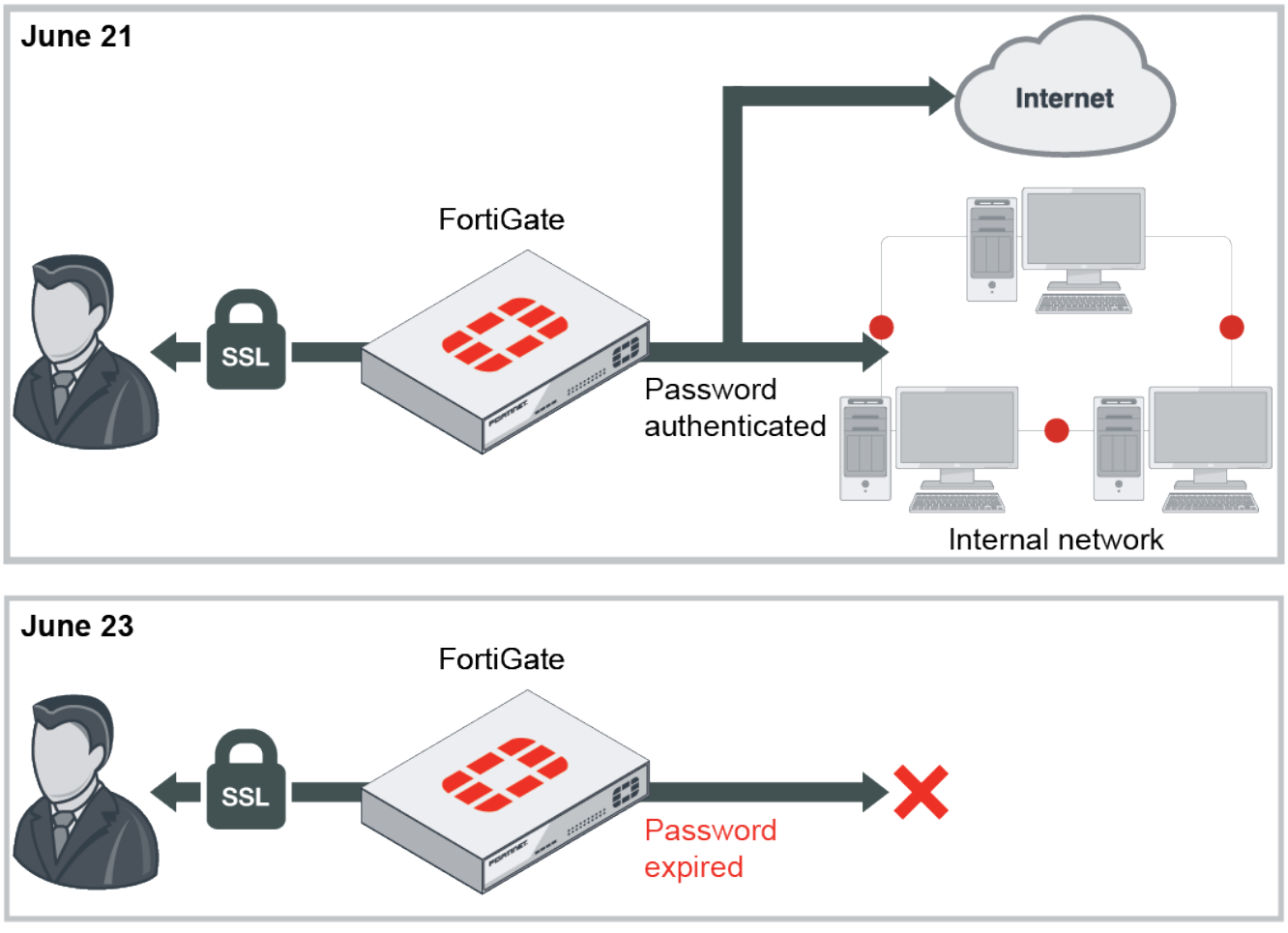
## SSL VPN with local user password policy

This is a sample configuration of SSL VPN for users with passwords that expire after two days. Users are warned after one day about the password expiring. The password policy can be applied to any local user password. The password policy cannot be applied to a user group or a local remote user such as LDAP/RADIUS/TACACS+.

In FortiOS 6.2, users are warned after one day about the password expiring and have one day to renew it. If the password expires, the user cannot renew the password and must contact the administrator for assistance.

In FortiOS 6.0/5.6, users are warned after one day about the password expiring and have to renew it. If the password expires, the user can still renew the password.

### Sample topology



## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create a local user.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create a user group and add that local user to it.
3. Configure and assign the password policy using the CLI.
   a. Configure a password policy that includes an expiry date and warning time. The default start time for the password is the time the user was created.

```
config user password-policy
    edit "pwpolicy1"
        set expire-days 2
        set warn-days 1
    next
end
```

   b. Assign the password policy to the user you just created.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd-policy "pwpolicy1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
   This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.
6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.

d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
h. Enable *NAT*.
i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

```
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "sslvpnuser1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "sslvpngroup"
        set member "vpnuser1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure and assign the password policy.
   a. Configure a password policy that includes an expiry date and warning time. The default start time for the password is the time the user was created.

```
config user password-policy
    edit "pwpolicy1"
        set expire-days 2
        set warn-days 1
```

```
        next
    end
```

**b.** Assign the password policy to the user you just created.

```
    config user local
        edit "sslvpnuser1"
            set type password
            set passwd-policy "pwpolicy1"
        next
    end
```

**5.** Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "full-access"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling disable
    next
end
```

**6.** Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "server_certificate"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set default-portal "web-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "sslvpngroup"
            set portal "full-access"
        next
    end
end
```

**7.** Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. From a remote device, use a web browser to log into the SSL VPN web portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
2. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   When the warning time is reached, the user is prompted to enter a new password.
   In FortiOS 6.2, when the password expires, the user cannot renew the password and must contact the administrator.
   In FortiOS 6.0/5.6, when the password expires, the user can still renew the password.
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set the connection name.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Log in using the *sslvpnuser1* credentials.
   When the warning time is reached, the user is prompted to enter a new password.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the user's connection.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* to view the details of the SSL VPN traffic.

**To check that login failed due to password expired on GUI:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to see the SSL VPN alert labeled `ssl-login-fail`.
2. Click *Details* to see the log details about the *Reason* `sslvpn_login_password_expired`.

**To check the web portal login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User         Auth Type   Timeout    From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1  1(1)        229        10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
```

**To check the tunnel login using the CLI:**

```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User          Auth Type   Timeout    From           HTTP in/out   HTTPS in/out
 0       sslvpnuser1   1(1)        291        10.1.100.254   0/0           0/0
```

```
SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User          Source IP      Duration   I/O Bytes      Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       sslvpnuser1   10.1.100.254   9          22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

**To check the FortiOS 6.2 login password expired event log:**

```
FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  filter category event

FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  filter field subtype vpn

FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  filter field action ssl-login-fail

FG201E4Q17901354 # execute log  display
1: date=2019-02-15 time=10:57:56 logid="0101039426" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="alert"
vd="root" eventtime=1550257076 logdesc="SSL VPN login fail" action="ssl-login-fail"
tunneltype="ssl-web" tunnelid=0 remip=10.1.100.254 user="u1" group="g1" dst_host="N/A"
reason="sslvpn_login_password_expired" msg="SSL user failed to logged in"
```

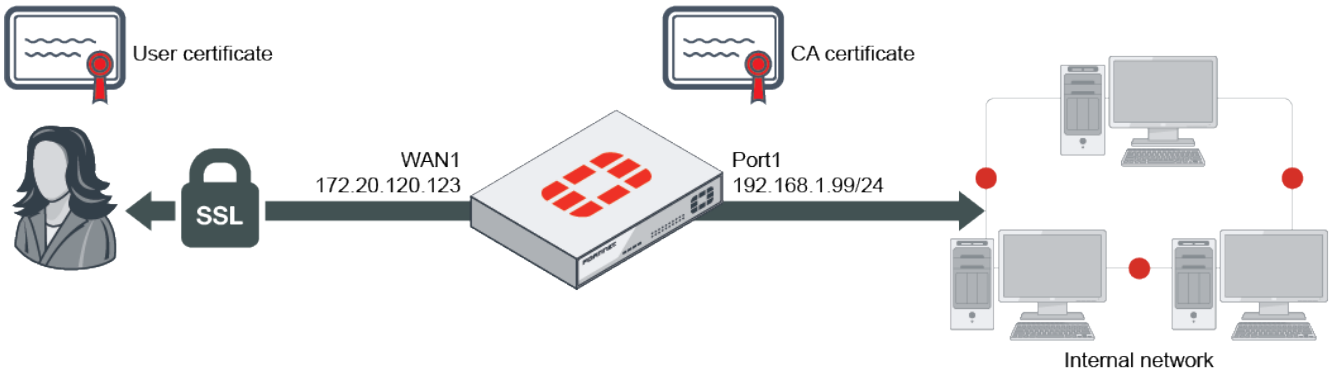
## SSL VPN with certificate authentication

This is an example configuration of SSL VPN that requires users to authenticate using a client certificate. In this example, the server and client certificates are signed by the same Certificate Authority (CA).

Self-signed certificates are provided by default to simplify initial installation and testing. It is **HIGHLY** recommended that you acquire a signed certificate for your installation.

Continuing to use these certificates can result in your connection being compromised, allowing attackers to steal your information, such as credit card details.

For more information, please review the Use a non-factory SSL certificate for the SSL VPN portal on page 1345 and learn how to Purchase and import a signed SSL certificate on page 767.




### Configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet subnet *192.168.1.0*.
2. Install the server certificate. The server certificate is used for authentication and for encrypting SSL VPN traffic.
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* and ensure *Certificates* is enabled.
   b. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *Local Certificate*.
      - Set *Type* to *Certificate*.
      - Choose the *Certificate file* and the *Key file* for your certificate, and enter the *Password*.
      - If required, you can change the *Certificate Name*.

   The server certificate now appears in the list of *Certificates*.
3. Install the CA certificate.
   The CA certificate is the certificate that signed both the server certificate and the user certificate. In this example, it is used to authenticate SSL VPN users.
   a. Go to *System* > *Certificates* and select *Import* > *CA Certificate*.
   b. Select *Local PC* and then select the certificate file.

   The CA certificate now appears in the list of *External CA Certificates*. In this example, it is called *CA_Cert_1*.
4. Configure PKI users and a user group.
   To use certificate authentication, use the CLI to create PKI users.

   ```
   config user peer
       edit pki01
           set ca CA_Cert_1
           set subject User01
       next
   end
   ```

   Ensure that the subject matches the name of the user certificate. In this example, *User01*.

   When you have create a PKI user, a new menu is added to the GUI.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *PKI* to see the new user.
   b. Edit the user account and expand *Two-factor authentication*.
   c. Enable *Require two-factor authentication* and set a password for the account.
   d. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User* > *User Groups* and create a group *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Add the PKI user *pki01* to the group.
5. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to edit the *full-access* portal.
      This portal supports both web and tunnel mode.
   b. Disable *Enable Split Tunneling* so that all SSL VPN traffic goes through the FortiGate.
6. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. Select the *Listen on Interface(s)*, in this example, *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Set *Server Certificate* to the authentication certificate.
   e. Enable *Require Client Certificate*.

f. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, set default Portal *web-access* for *All Other Users/Groups*.
g. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *sslvpngroup* mapping portal *full-access*.

7. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *sslvpn certificate auth*.
   c. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   d. Set the *Source Address* to *all* and *Source User* to *sslvpngroup*.
   e. Set the *Outgoing Interface* to the local network interface so that the remote user can access the internal network. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set *Destination Address* to the internal protected subnet *192.168.1.0*.
   g. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   h. Enable *NAT*.
   i. Configure any remaining firewall and security options as desired.
   j. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet., then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end
config firewall address
    edit "192.168.1.0"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Install the CA certificate.
   The server certificate is used for encrypting SSL VPN traffic and will be used for authentication. It is easier to install the server certificate from GUI. However, CLI can import a p12 certificate from a tftp server.
   If you want to import a p12 certificate, put the certificate *server_certificate.p12* on your tftp server, then run following command on the FortiGate.

```
execute vpn certificate local import tftp server_certificate.p12 <your tftp_server> p12
<your password for PKCS12 file>
```

   To check server certificate is installed:

```
show vpn certificate local server_certificate
```

4. Install the CA certificate.
   The CA certificate is the certificate that signed both the server certificate and the user certificate. In this example, it is used to authenticate SSL VPN users.
   It is easier to install the server certificate from GUI. However, CLI can import a CA certificates from a tftp server.
   If you want to import a CA certificate, put the CA certificate on your tftp server, then run following command on the FortiGate.

   ```
   execute vpn certificate ca import tftp <your CA certificate name> <your tftp server>
   ```

   To check that a new CA certificate is installed:

   ```
   show vpn certificate ca
   ```

5. Configure PKI users and a user group.

   ```
   config user peer
       edit pki01
           set ca CA_Cert_1
           set subject User01
           set two-factor enable
           set passwd <your-password>
       next
   end
   config user group
       edit "sslvpngroup"
           set member "pki01"
       next
   end
   ```

6. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

   ```
   config vpn ssl web portal
       edit "full-access"
           set tunnel-mode enable
           set web-mode enable
           set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
           set split-tunneling disable
        next
   end
   ```

7. Configure SSL VPN settings.

   ```
   config vpn ssl settings
       set servercert "server_certificate"
       set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
       set source-interface "wan1"
       set source-address "all"
       set default-portal "web-access"
       set reqclientcert enable
       config authentication-rule
           edit 1
               set groups "sslvpngroup"
               set portal "full-access"
           next
       end
   end
   ```

8. Configure one SSL VPN firewall policy to allow remote user to access the internal network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn web mode access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "192.168.1.0"
        set groups "sslvpngroup"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

## Installation

To use the user certificate, you must first install it on the user's PC. When the user tries to authenticate, the user certificate is checked against the CA certificate to verify that they match.

Every user should have a unique user certificate. This allows you to distinguish each user and revoke a specific user's certificate, such as if a user no longer has VPN access.

**To install the user certificate on Windows 7, 8, and 10:**

1. Double-click the certificate file to open the *Import Wizard*.
2. Use the *Import Wizard* to import the certificate into the *Personal store* of the current user.

**To install the user certificate on Mac OS X:**

1. Open the certificate file, to open *Keychain Access*.
2. Double-click the certificate.
3. Expand *Trust* and select *Always Trust*.

**To see the results of tunnel connection:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access* > *Configure VPN*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to the IP of the listening FortiGate interface, in this example, *172.20.120.123*.
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Enable *Client Certificate* and select the authentication certificate.
6. Save your settings.
7. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
   If the certificate is correct, you can connect.

**To see the results of web portal:**

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *http://172.20.120.123:10443*.
   A message requests a certificate for authentication.
2. Select the user certificate.
3. Enter your user credentials.
   If the certificate is correct, you can connect to the SSL VPN web portal.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the GUI:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
2. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list to view the details for the SSL connection log.

**To check the SSL VPN connection using the CLI:**

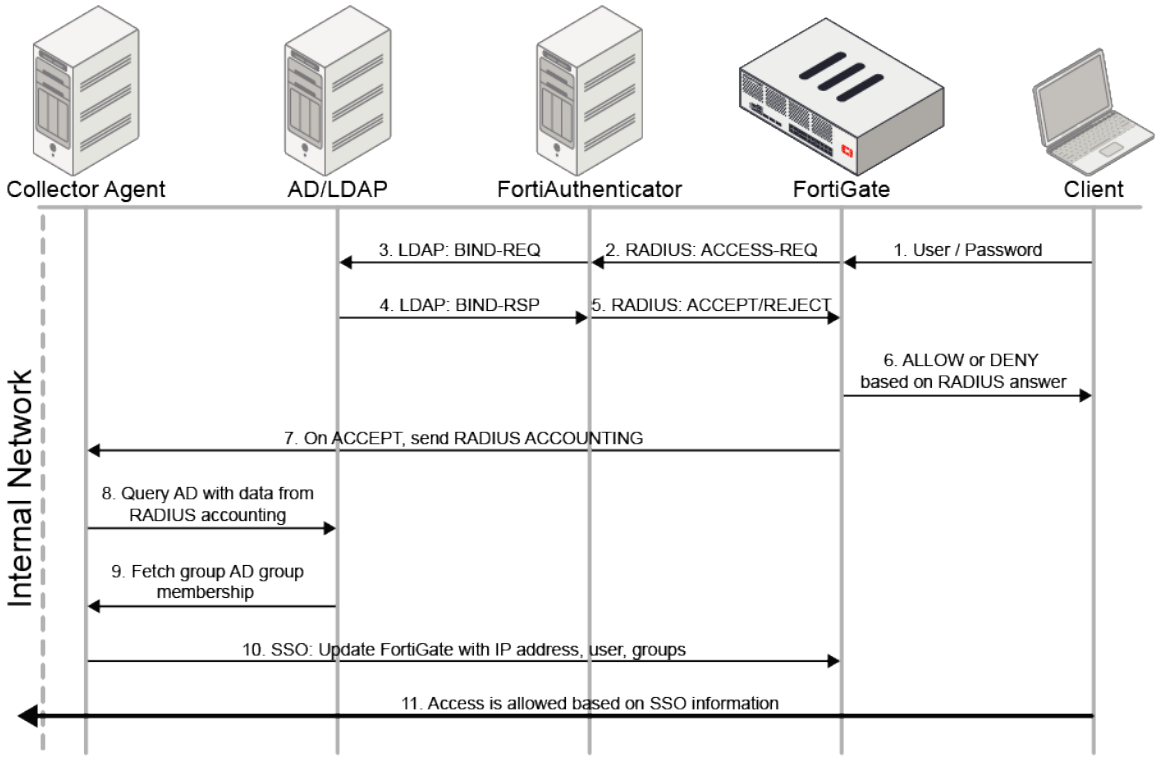
```
get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out    HTTPS in/out
 0       pki01,cn=User01          1(1)            229     10.1.100.254   0/0     0/0
 1       pki01,cn=User01          1(1)            291     10.1.100.254   0/0     0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       pki01,cn=User01          10.1.100.254    9       22099/43228    10.212.134.200
```

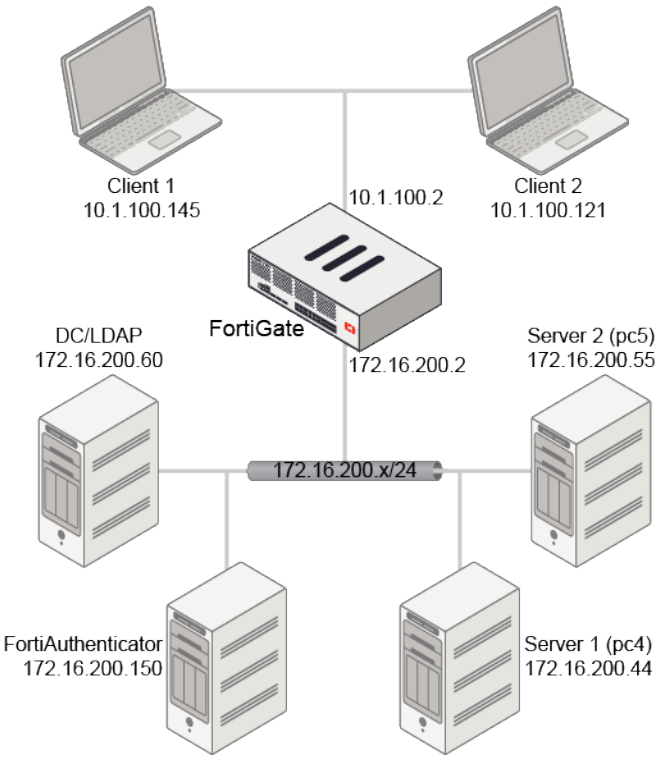
## Dynamic address support for SSL VPN policies

Dynamic SSO user groups can be used in place of address objects when configuring SSL VPN policies. This allows dynamic IP addresses to be used in SSL VPN policies. A remote user group can be used for authentication while an FSSO group is separately used for authorization. Using a dummy policy for remote user authentication and a policy for FSSO group authorization, FSSO can be used with SSL VPN tunnels

This image shows the authentication and authorization flow:




In this example, FortiAuthenticator is used as a RADIUS server. It uses a remote AD/LDAP server for authentication, then returns the authentication results to the FortiGate. This allows the client to have a dynamic IP address after successful authentication.

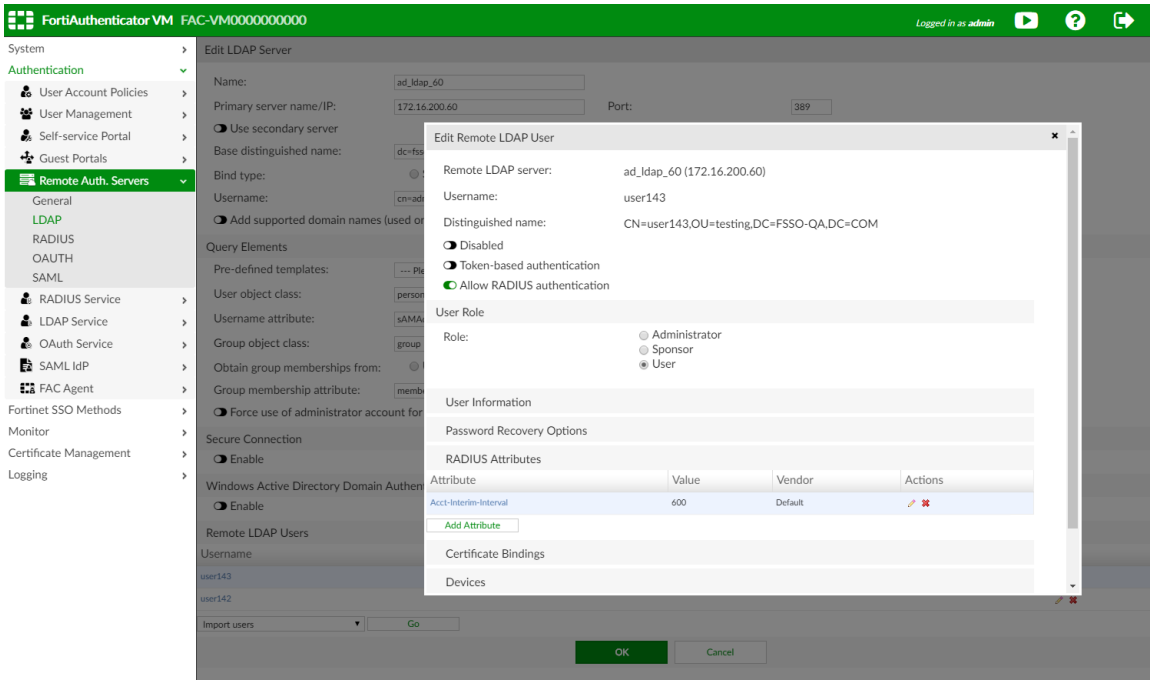


First, on the LDAP server, create two users each in their own group, *user142* in group *pc_group1*, and *user143* in group *pc_group2*.

## Configure the FortiAuthenticator

**To add a remote LDAP server and users on the FortiAuthenticator:**

1. Go to *Authentication* > *Remote Auth. Servers* > *LDAP*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Set the following:
   - *Name*: *ad_ldap_60*
   - *Primary server name/IP*: *172.16.200.60*
   - *Base distinguished name*: *dc=fsso-qa,dc=com*
   - *Bind type*: Regular
   - *Username*: *cn=administrator,cn=User*
   - *Password*: <enter a password>
4. Click *OK*.
5. Edit the new LDAP server.
6. Import the remote LDAP users.
7. Edit each user to confirm that they have the RADIUS attribute *Acct-Interim-Interval*. This attribute is used by FortiGate to send interim update account messages to the RADIUS server.




**To create a RADIUS client for FortiGate as a remote authentication server:**

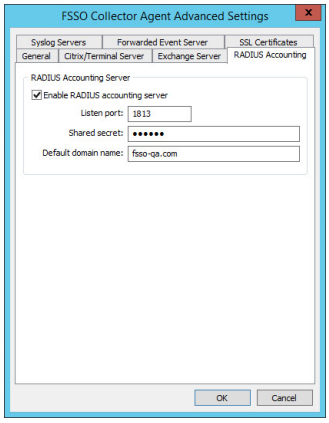
1. Go to *Authentication* > *RADIUS Service* > *Clients*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. Set the following:
   - *Name*: *fsso_ldap*
   - *Client address*: *Range 172.16.200.1~172.16.200.10*
   - *Secret*: <enter a password>
4. In the *Realms* table, set the realm to the LDAP server that was just added: *ad_ldap_60*.
5. Click *OK*.
   FortiAuthenticator can now be used as a RADIUS server, and the authentication credentials all come from the DC/LDAP server.

## Fortinet Single Sign-On Collector Agent

**To configure the Fortinet Single Sign-On Collector Agent:**

1. Select *Require authenticated connection from FortiGate* and enter a *Password*.
2. Click *Advanced Settings*.
3. Select the *RADIUS Accounting* tab.
4. Select *Enable RADIUS accounting server* and set the *Shared secret*.




5. Click *OK*, then click *Save&close*.
   The collector agent can now accept accounting requests from FortiGate, and retrieve the IP addresses and usernames of SSL VPN client from the FortiGate with accounting request messages.

## Configure the FortiGate

**To configure the FortiGate in the CLI:**

1. Create a Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent fabric connector:

```
config user fsso
    edit "AD_CollectAgent"
        set server "172.16.200.60"
        set password 123456
    next
end
```

2. Add the RADIUS server:

```
config user radius
    edit "rad150"
```

```
        set server "172.16.200.150"
        set secret 123456
        set acct-interim-interval 600
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server "172.16.200.60"
                set secret 123456
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Create a user group for the RADIUS server:

```
config user group
    edit "rad_group"
        set member "rad150"
    next
end
```

4. Create user groups for each of the FSSO groups:

```
config user group
    edit "fsso_group1"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM"
    next
    edit "fsso_group2"
        set group-type fsso-service
        set member "CN=PC_GROUP2,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM"
    next
end
```

5. Create an SSL VPN portal and assign the RADIUS user group to it:

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "testportal"
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set ipv6-tunnel-mode enable
        set web-mode enable
        ...
    next
end
config vpn ssl settings
    ...
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "rad_group"
            set portal "testportal"
        next
    end
end
```

6. Create firewall addresses:

```
config firewall address
    edit "none"
```

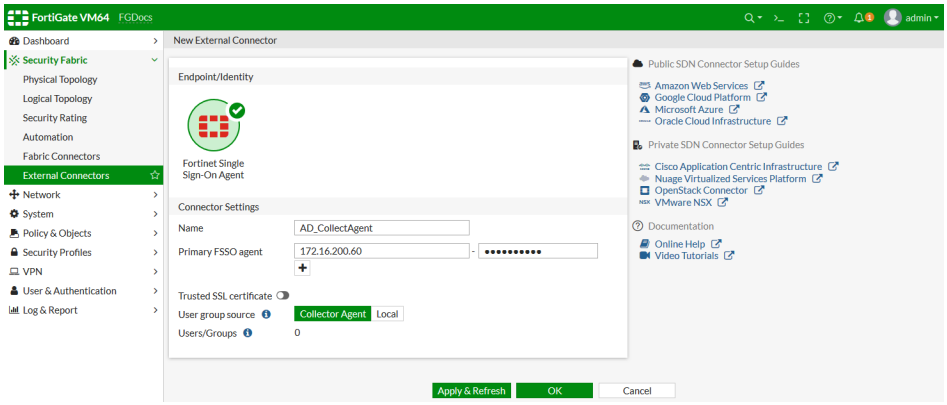
```
        set subnet 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc4"
        set subnet 172.16.200.44 255.255.255.255
    next
    edit "pc5"
        set subnet 172.16.200.55 255.255.255.255
    next
end
```

7. Create one dummy policy for authentication only, and two normal policies for authorization:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn_authentication"
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "none"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "rad_group"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 3
        set name "sslvpn_authorization1"
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc4"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "fsso_group1"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 4
        set name "sslvpn_authorization2"
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc5"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set groups "fsso_group2"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

**To create an FSSO agent fabric connector in the GUI:**

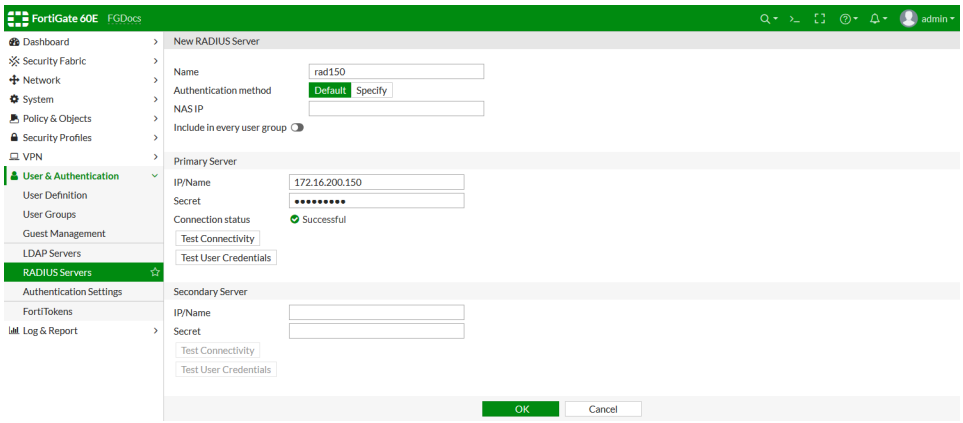
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.
4. Enter the name and *Primary FSSO agent* information.




5. Click *Apply & Refresh*.
   The FSSO groups are retrieved from the collector agent.

**To add the RADIUS server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the server.
4. Enter the *IP/Name* and *Secret* for the primary server.
5. Click *Test Connectivity* to ensure that there is a successful connection.



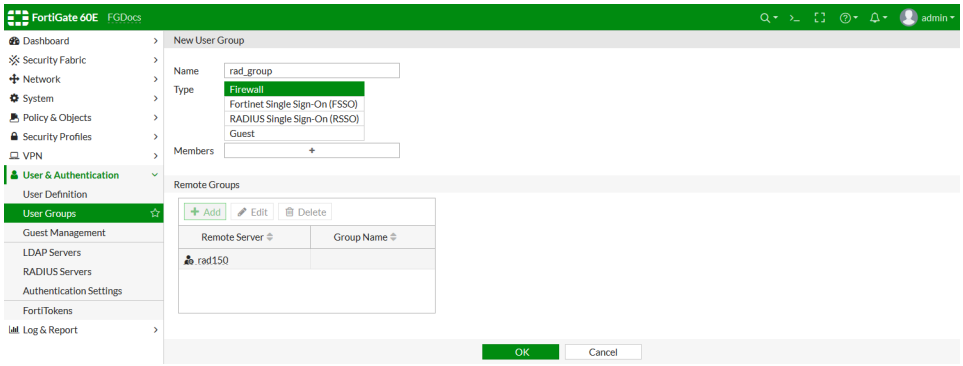

6. Click *OK*.
7. Configure an accounting server with the following CLI command:

```
config user radius
    edit rad150
        set acct-interim-interval 600
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
```

```
                set server 172.16.200.60
                set secret *********
            next
        end
    next
end
```

**To create a user group for the RADIUS server in the GUI:**

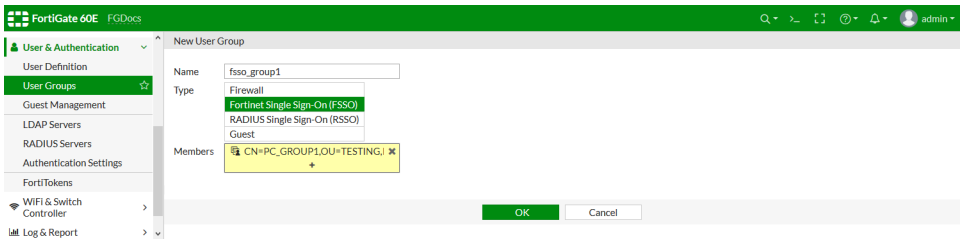
1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group and set the *Type* to *Firewall*.
4. Add the RADIUS server as a remote group.



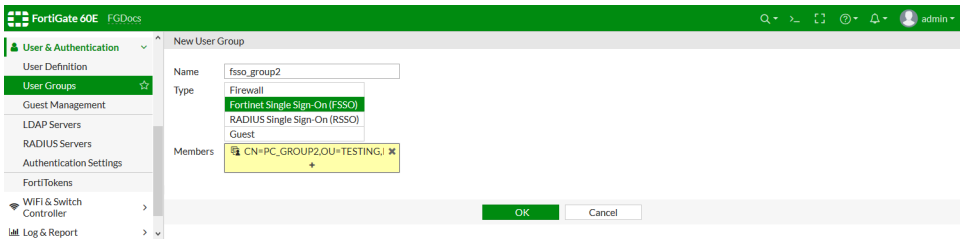

5. Click *OK*.

**To create user groups for each of the FSSO groups in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group and set the *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*.
4. Add PC_GROUP1 as a member:
   `CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM`




5. Click *OK*.
6. Add a second user group with PC_GROUP2 as a member:
   `CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM`



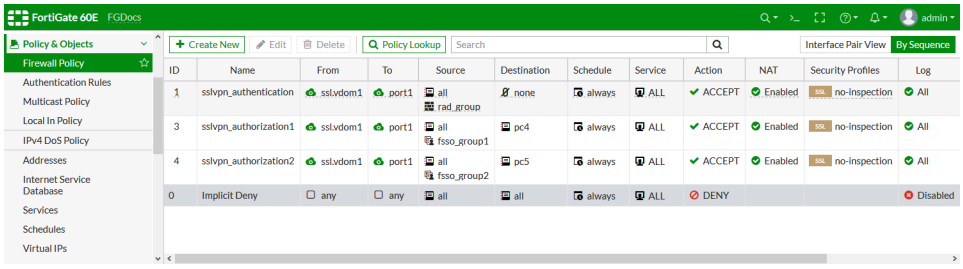

7. Click *OK*.

**To create an SSL VPN portal and assign the RADIUS user group to it in the GUI:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL VPN Portals*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the portal, then click *OK*.
4. Go to *VPN* > *SSL VPN Settings*.
5. Configure the required settings.
6. Create an *Authentication/Portal Mapping* table entry:
   a. Click *Create New*.
   b. Set *User/Groups* to *rad_group*.
   c. Set *Portal* to *testportal*.
   d. Click *OK*.
7. Click *OK*.

**To create policies for authentication and authorization in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Object* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Configure a dummy policy for authentication. Set the destination to *none* so that traffic is not allowed through the FortiGate, and add *rad_group* as a source.
3. Configure two authorization policies, with the FSSO groups as sources.




## Confirmation

On *Client 1*, log in to FortiClient using *user142*. Traffic can go to *pc4* (172.16.200.44), but cannot go to *pc5* (172.16.200.55).

On *Client 2*, log in to FortiClient using *user143*. Traffic can go to *pc5* (172.16.200.55), but cannot go to *pc4* (172.16.200.44).

On the FortiGate, check the authenticated users list and the SSL VPN status:

```
# diagnose firewall auth list
```

```
10.212.134.200, USER142
        type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 173, idled: 173
        server: AD_CollectAgent
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        user_id: 16777229
        group_id: 3 33554434
        group_name: fsso_group1 CN=PC_GROUP1,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM

10.212.134.200, user142
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 174, idled: 174
        expire: 259026, allow-idle: 259200
        flag(80): sslvpn
        server: rad150
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 4
        group_name: rad_group

10.212.134.201, USER143
        type: fsso, id: 0, duration: 78, idled: 78
        server: AD_CollectAgent
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 1 33554435
        group_name: fsso_group2 CN=PC_GROUP2,OU=TESTING,DC=FSSO-QA,DC=COM

10.212.134.201, user143
        type: fw, id: 0, duration: 79, idled: 79
        expire: 259121, allow-idle: 259200
        flag(80): sslvpn
        server: rad150
        packets: in 0 out 0, bytes: in 0 out 0
        group_id: 4
        group_name: rad_group

----- 4 listed, 0 filtered ------
```

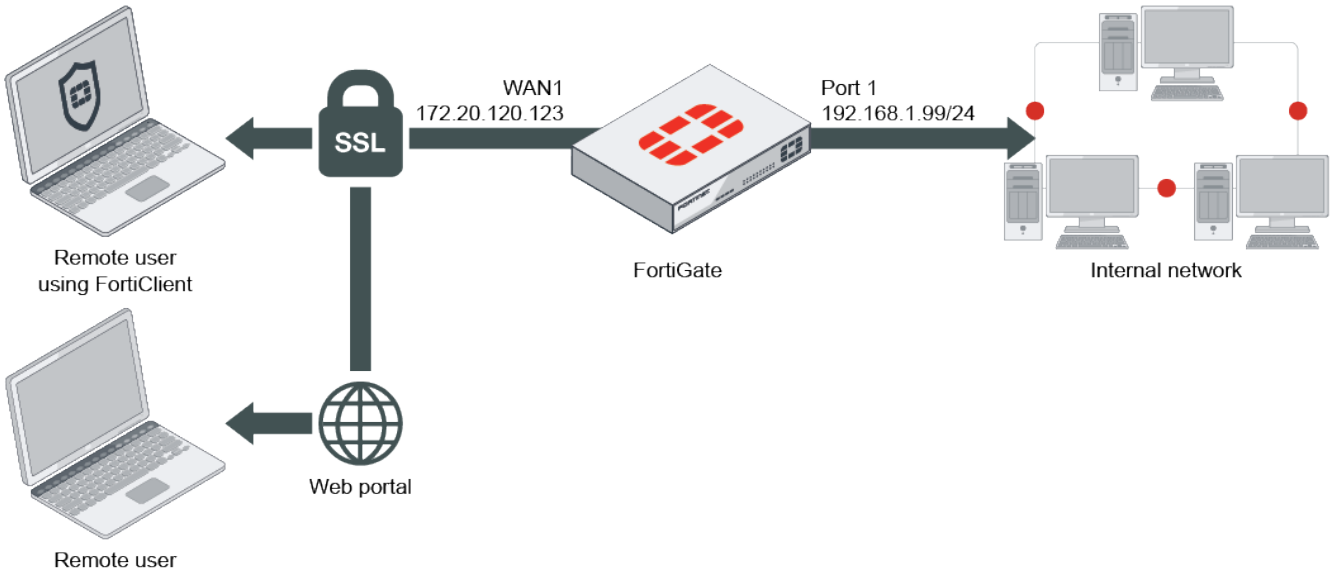
```
# get vpn ssl monitor
SSL VPN Login Users:
 Index   User    Auth Type      Timeout         From     HTTP in/out    HTTPS in/out
 0       user142         2(1)            600     10.1.100.145   0/0     0/0
 1       user143         2(1)            592     10.1.100.254   0/0     0/0

SSL VPN sessions:
 Index   User    Source IP      Duration        I/O Bytes       Tunnel/Dest IP
 0       user142         10.1.100.145    104     32190/16480    10.212.134.200
 1       user143         10.1.100.254    11      4007/4966      10.212.134.201
```

## SSL VPN multi-realm

This sample shows how to create a multi-realm SSL VPN that provides different portals for different user groups.

## Sample topology




## Sample configuration

WAN interface is the interface connected to ISP. This example shows static mode. You can also use DHCP or PPPoE mode. The SSL VPN connection is established over the WAN interface.

The split tunneling routing address cannot use an FQDN or an address group that includes an FQDN.

**To configure SSL VPN using the GUI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address. The port1 interface connects to the internal network.
   a. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* and edit the *wan1* interface.
   b. Set *IP/Network Mask* to *172.20.120.123/255.255.255.0*.
   c. Edit *port1* interface and set *IP/Network Mask* to *192.168.1.99/255.255.255.0*.
   d. Click *OK*.
   e. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Address* and create an address for internet *QA_subnet* with subnet *192.168.1.0/24* and *HR_subnet* with subnet *10.1.100.0/24*.
2. Configure user and user group.
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition* to create local users *qa-user1* and *hr-user1*.
   b. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups* to create separate user groups for web-only and full-access portals:
      - *QA_group* with member *qa-user1*.
      - *HR_group* with the member *hr-user1*.
3. Configure SSL VPN web portal.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* to create portal *qa-tunnel*.
   b. Enable *Tunnel Mode*.

   c. Create a portal *hr-web* with *Web Mode* enabled.
4. Configure SSL VPN realms.
   a. Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility* to enable *SSL-VPN Realms*.
   b. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Realms* to create realms for *qa* and *hr*.
   c. (Optional) To access each realm with FQDN instead of the default URLs *https://172.20.120.123:10443/hr* and *https://172.20.120.123:10443/qa*, you can configure a virtual-host for the realm in the CLI.
   ```
   config vpn ssl web realm
      edit hr
         set virtual-host hr.mydomain.com
      next
      edit qa
         set virtual-host qa.mydomain.com
      next
   end
   ```
   Where `mydomain.com` is the name of your domain. Ensure FQDN resolves to the FortiGate wan1 interface and that your certificate is a wildcard certificate.
5. Configure SSL VPN settings.
   a. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   b. For *Listen on Interface(s)*, select *wan1*.
   c. Set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
   d. Choose a certificate for *Server Certificate*. The default is *Fortinet_Factory*.
   e. In *Authentication/Portal Mapping All Other Users/Groups*, set the *Portal* to *web-access*.
   f. Create new *Authentication/Portal Mapping* for group *QA_group* mapping portal *qa-tunnel*.
   g. Specify the realm *qa*.
   h. Add another entry for group *HR_group* mapping portal *hr-web*.
   i. Specify the realm *hr*.
6. Configure SSL VPN firewall policy.
   a. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
   b. Create a firewall policy for QA access.
   c. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *QA sslvpn tunnel mode access*.
   d. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   e. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   f. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *QA_group*.
   g. In this example, the *Destination* is the internal protected subnet *QA_subnet*.
   h. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   i. Click *OK*.
   j. Create a firewall policy for HR access.
   k. Fill in the firewall policy name. In this example, *HR sslvpn web mode access*.
   l. Incoming interface must be *SSL-VPN tunnel interface(ssl.root)*.
   m. Choose an *Outgoing Interface*. In this example, *port1*.
   n. Set the *Source* to *all* and group to *HR_group*.
   o. In this example, the *Destination* is the internal protected subnet *HR_subnet*.
   p. Set *Schedule* to *always*, *Service* to *ALL*, and *Action* to *Accept*.
   q. Click *OK*.

**To configure SSL VPN using the CLI:**

1. Configure the interface and firewall address.

```
config system interface
    edit "wan1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 172.20.120.123 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

2. Configure internal interface and protected subnet, then connect the port1 interface to the internal network.

```
config system interface
    edit "port1"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 192.168.1.99 255.255.255.0
    next
end

config firewall address
    edit "QA_subnet"
        set subnet 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
    next
    edit "HR_subnet"
        set subnet 10.1.100.0 255.255.255.0
    next
end
```

3. Configure user and user group.

```
config user local
    edit "qa_user1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "QA_group"
        set member "qa_user1"
    next
end

config user local
    edit "hr_user1"
        set type password
        set passwd your-password
    next
end
config user group
    edit "HR_group"
        set member "hr_user1"
    next
end
```

4. Configure SSL VPN web portal.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "qa-tunnel"
```

```
        set tunnel-mode enable
        set ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
        set split-tunneling enable
        set split-tunneling-routing-address "QA_subnet"
    next
end

config vpn ssl web portal
    edit "hr-web"
        set web-mode enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure SSL VPN realms.

```
config vpn ssl web realm
   edit hr
      set virtual-host hr.mydomain.com
   next
   edit qa
        set virtual-host qa.mydomain.com
   next
end
```

The `set virtual-host` setting is optional. For example:

```
config vpn ssl web realm
   edit hr
   next
   edit qa
   next
end
```

6. Configure SSL VPN settings.

```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "wan1"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "QA_group"
            set portal "qa-tunnel"
            set realm qa
        next
        edit 2
            set groups "HR_group"
            set portal "hr-web"
            set realm hr
        next
    end
end
```

7. Configure two SSL VPN firewall policies to allow remote QA user to access internal QA network and HR user to access HR network.

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "QA sslvnpn tunnel access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "QA_subnet"
        set groups "QA_group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
    edit 2
        set name "HR sslvpn web access"
        set srcintf "ssl.root"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "HR_subnet"
        set groups "HR_group"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
    next
end
```

**To see the results for QA user:**

1. Download FortiClient from www.forticlient.com.
2. Open the FortiClient Console and go to *Remote Access*.
3. Add a new connection.
   - Set *VPN Type* to *SSL VPN*.
   - Set *Remote Gateway* to *https://172.20.120.123:10443/qa.*.
   - If a virtual-host is specified, use the FQDN defined for the realm (*qa.mydomain.com*).
4. Select *Customize Port* and set it to *10443*.
5. Save your settings.
6. Use the credentials you've set up to connect to the SSL VPN tunnel.
   If the user's computer has antivirus software, a connection is established; otherwise FortiClient shows a compliance warning.
7. After connection, traffic to subnet *192.168.1.0* goes through the tunnel.
8. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the list of SSL users.
9. On the FortiGate, go to *VPN* > *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* to verify the list of SSL users.
10. On the FortiGate, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of the traffic.

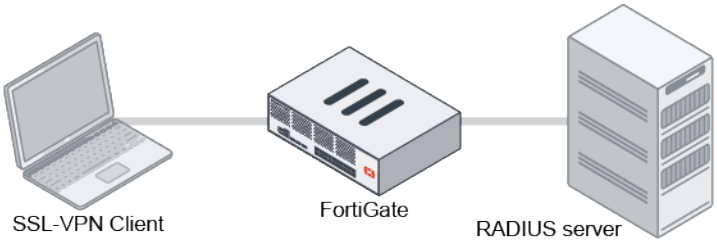
**To see the results for HR user:**

1. In a web browser, log into the portal *https://172.20.120.123:10443/hr* using the credentials you've set up.
2. Alternatively, if a virtual-host is specified, use the FQDN defined for the realm (*hr.mydomain.com*).
3. On the FortiGate, go to *Dashboard* > *Network* and expand the *SSL-VPN* widget to verify the list of SSL users.
4. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of the traffic.

## NAS-IP support per SSL-VPN realm

For RADIUS authentication and authorization, the RADIUS client (the FortiGate) passes the username, password, and NAS-IP to the RADIUS server in its access request. The RADIUS server authenticates and authorizes based on this information. Each RADIUS server can be configured with multiple NAS-IPs for authenticating different groups and NAS clients.

On the FortiGate, configuring the NAS-IP in the realm settings overrides the RADIUS server setting, allowing multiple NAS-IPs to be mapped to the same RADIUS server.




In this example, the user wants to present one FortiGate VDOM with different NAS-IPs to a single RADIUS server based on specific rules.

**To configure the SSL-VPN to use the NAS-IP in the realm settings:**

1. Configure a RADIUS user and add it to a group:

```
config user radius
    edit "fac150"
        set server "172.16.200.150"
        set secret ********
        set nas-ip 172.16.200.2
        config accounting-server
            edit 1
                set status enable
                set server "172.16.200.150"
                set secret ********
            next
        end
    next
end
config user group
    edit "radgrp"
        set member "fac150"
    next
end
```

2. Configure a realm for the user with a different NAS-IP:

```
config vpn ssl web realm
    edit "realm1"
        set login-page '.......'
        set radius-server "fac150"
        set nas-ip 10.1.100.2
    next
end
```

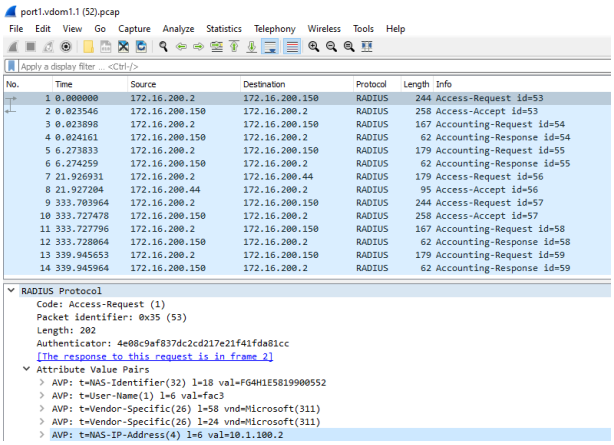
3. Configure SSL-VPN with an authentication rule that includes the user group and the realm:

```
config vpn ssl settings
    ...
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groupd "radgrp"
            set portal "testportal1"
            set realm "realm1"
        next
    end
end
```

4. Create a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "sslvpn1"
        ...
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set groups "radgrp"
    next
end
```

Because the RADIUS server and NAS-IP are specified in realm1, its NAS-IP is used for authentication.



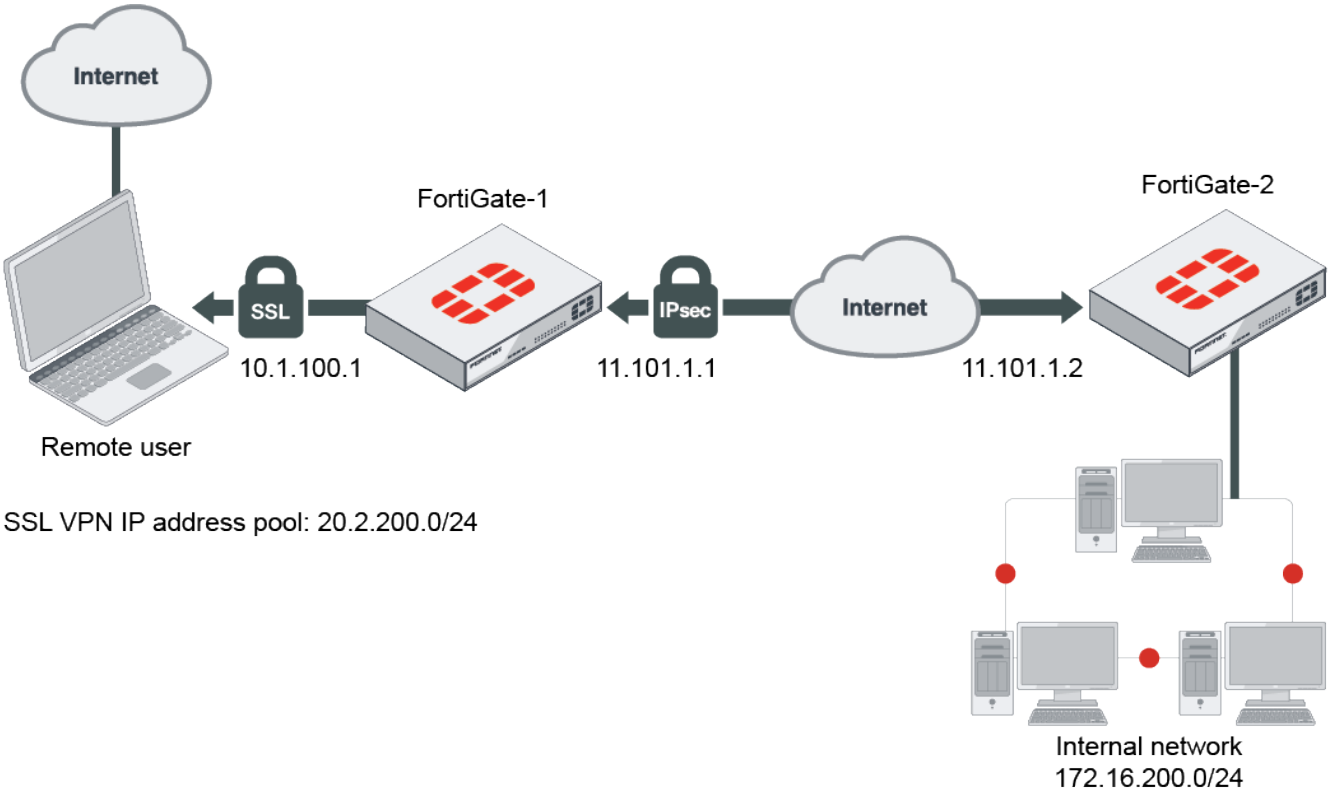

## SSL VPN to IPsec VPN

This is a sample configuration of site-to-site IPsec VPN that allows access to the remote endpoint via SSL VPN.

This example uses a pre-existing user group, a tunnel mode SSL VPN with split tunneling, and a route-based IPsec VPN between two FortiGates. All sessions must start from the SSL VPN interface.

If you want sessions to start from the FGT_2 subnet, you need more policies. Also, if the remote subnet is beyond FGT_2 (if there are multiple hops), you need to include the SSL VPN subnet in those routers as well.

## Sample topology

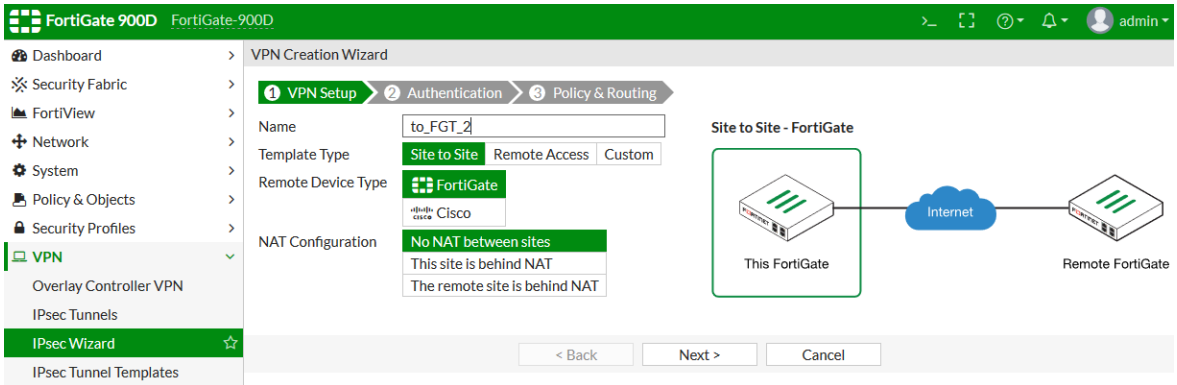



SSL VPN IP address pool: 20.2.200.0/24

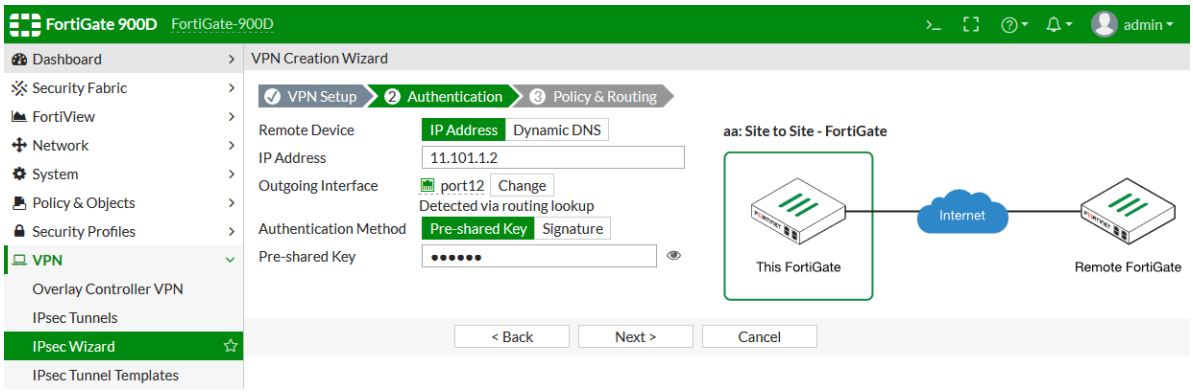
## Sample configuration

**To configure the site-to-site IPsec VPN on FGT_1:**

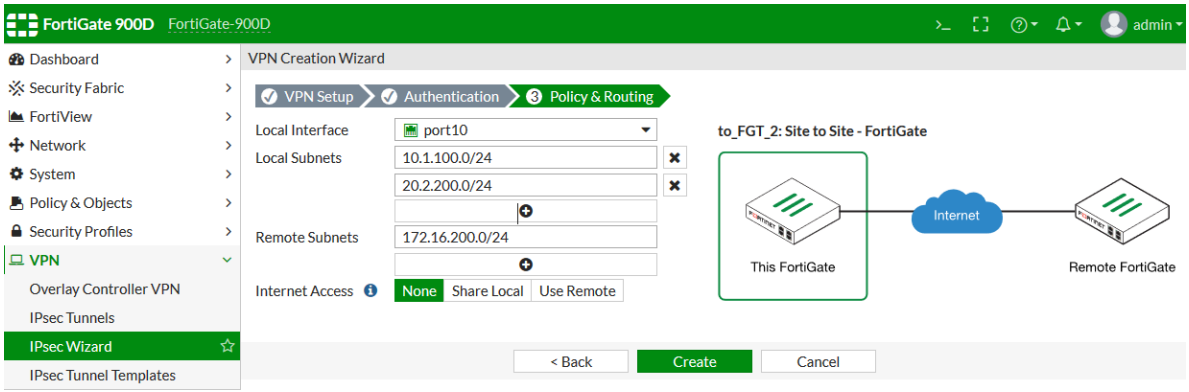
1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. In the *VPN Setup* pane:
   a. Specify the VPN connection *Name* as *to_FGT_2*.
   b. Select *Site to Site*.
   c. Click *Next*.



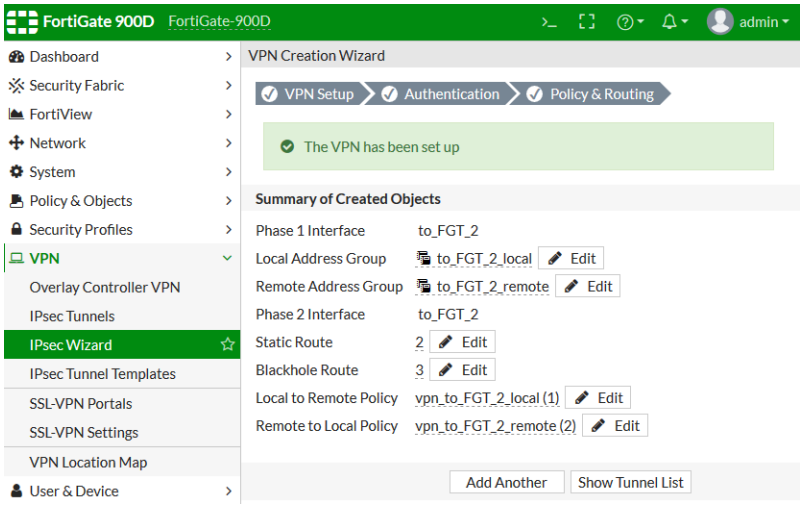
3. In the *Authentication* pane:
   a. Enter the *IP Address* to the Internet-facing interface.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, click *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key*.
   c. Click *Next*.




4. In the *Policy & Routing* pane:
   a. Set the *Local Interface* to the internal interface.
   b. Set the *Local Subnets* to include the internal and SSL VPN subnets for FGT_1.
   c. Set *Remote Subnets* to include the internal subnet for FGT_2.
   d. Click *Create*.

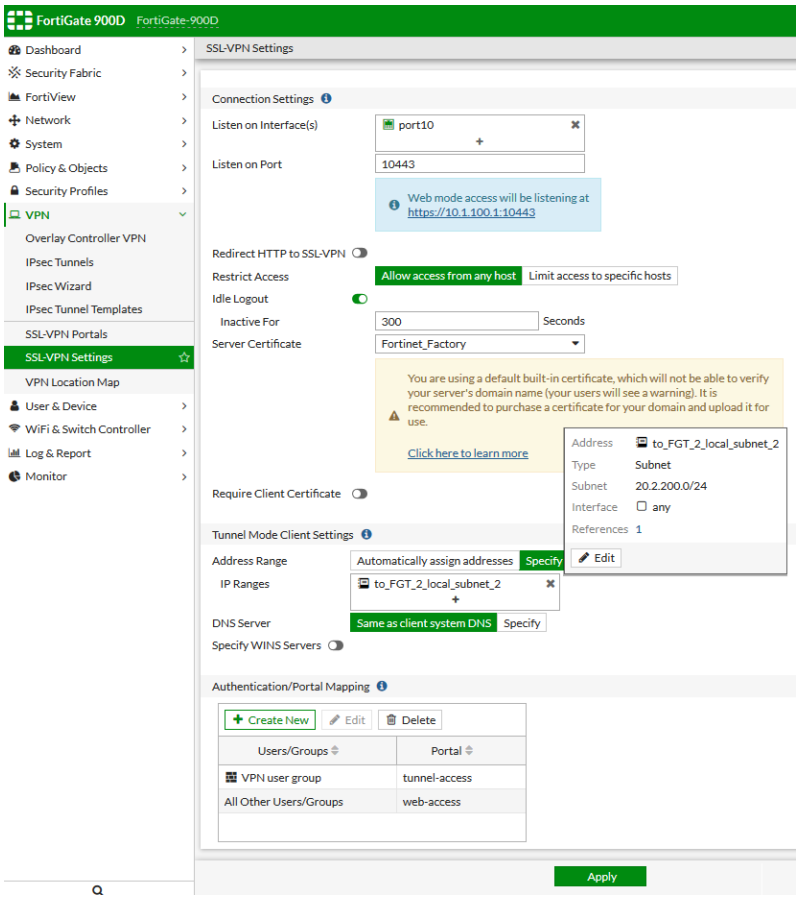


A confirmation screen shows a summary of the configuration including the firewall address groups for both the local and remote subnets, static routes, and security policies.




### To configure SSL VPN settings:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Set *Listen on Interface(s)* to *wan1*.
3. To avoid port conflicts, set *Listen on Port* to *10443*.
4. For *Restrict Access*, select *Allow access from any host*.
5. In the Tunnel Mode Client Settings section, select *Specify custom IP ranges* and include the SSL VPN subnet range created by the *IPsec Wizard*.
6. In the *Authentication/Portal Mapping* section, add the *VPN user group* to the *tunnel-access Portal*. Set *All Other Users/Groups* to the *web-access Portal*.

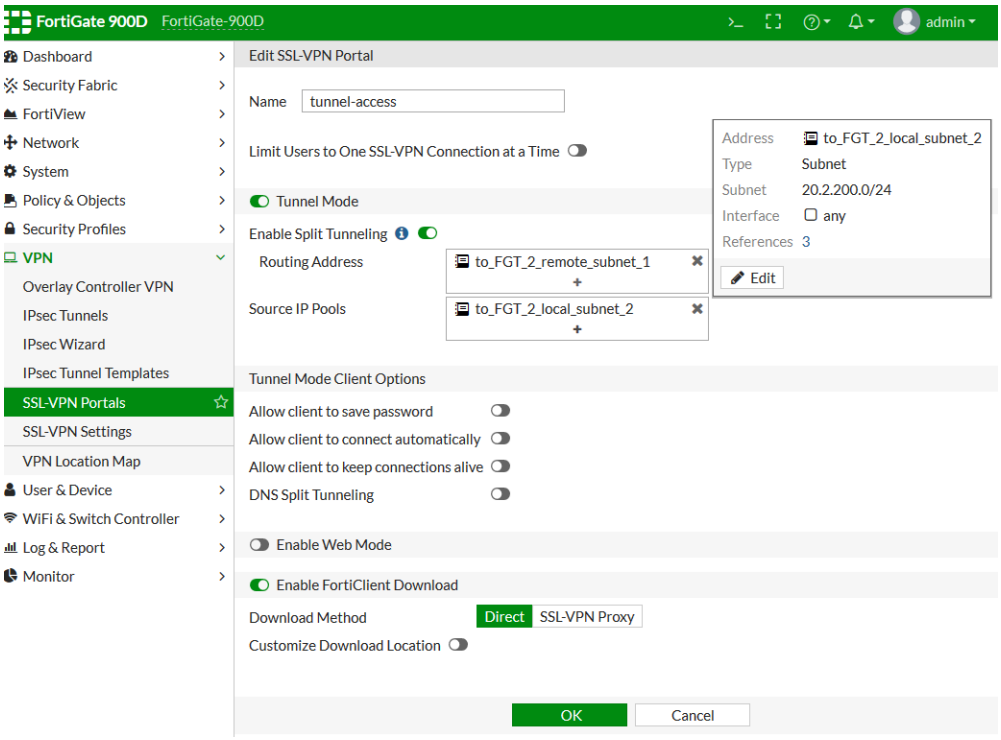



7. Click *Apply*.

### To configure SSL VPN portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals*.
2. Select *tunnel-access* and click *Edit*.
3. Turn on *Enable Split Tunneling* so that only traffic intended for the local or remote networks flow through FGT_1 and follows corporate security profiles.
4. For *Routing Address*, add the local and remote IPsec VPN subnets created by the *IPsec Wizard*.

5. For *Source IP Pools*, add the SSL VPN subnet range created by the *IPsec Wizard*.

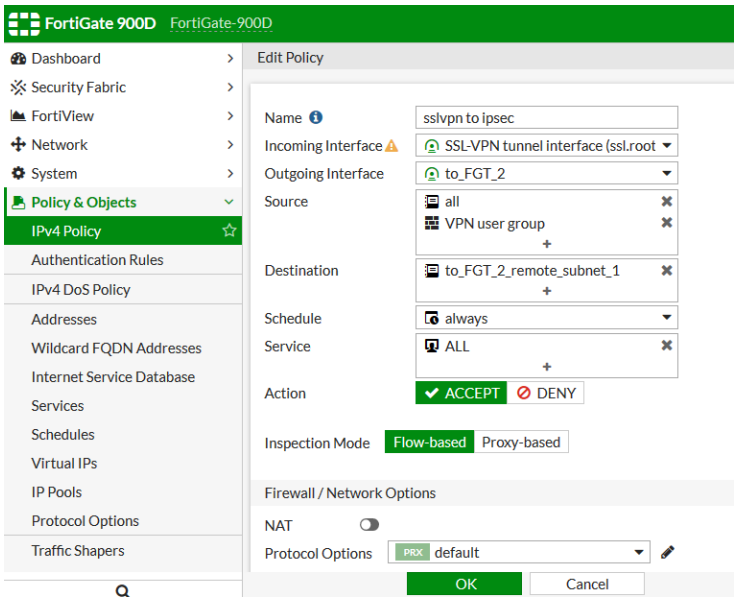



6. Click *OK*.

### To add policies to FGT_1:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New* to create a policy that allows SSL VPN users access to the IPsec VPN tunnel.
3. For *Incoming Interface*, select *ssl.root*.
4. For *Outgoing Interface*, select the IPsec tunnel interface *to_FGT_2*.
5. Set the *Source* to *all* and the *VPN user group*.
6. Set *Destination* to the remote IPsec VPN subnet.
7. Specify the *Schedule*.
8. Set the *Service* to *ALL*.

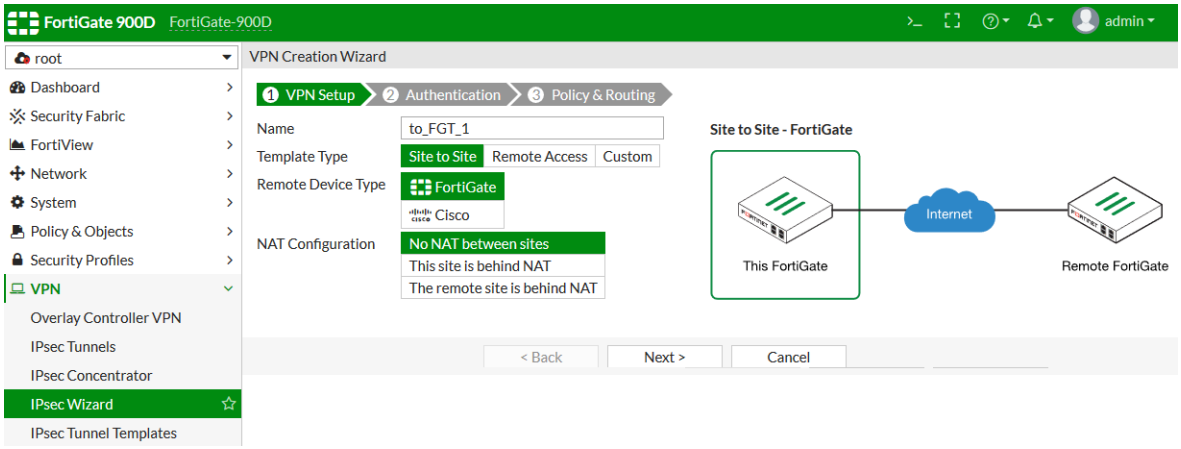
9. In the *Firewall/Network Options* section, disable *NAT*.




10. Click *OK*.

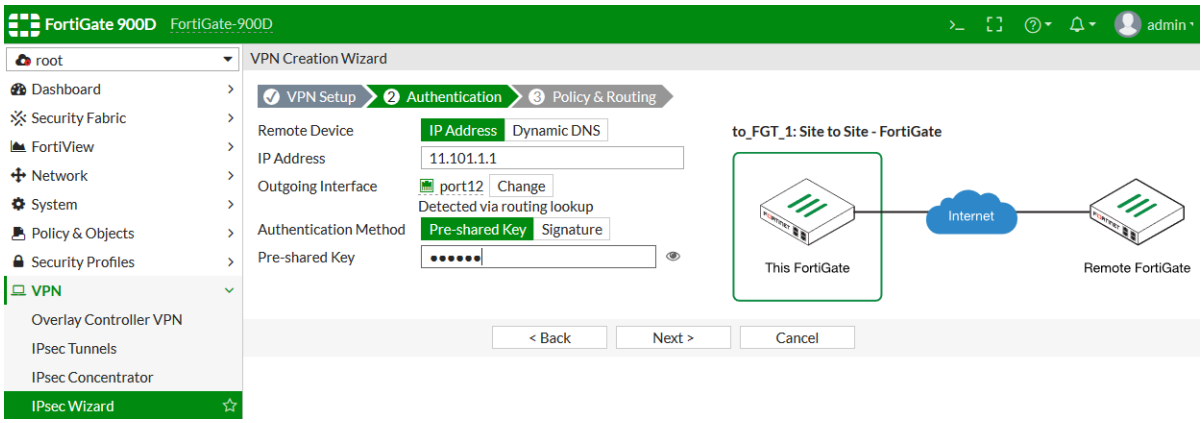
### To configure the site-to-site IPsec VPN on FGT_2:

1. Go to *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*.
2. In the *VPN Setup* pane:
   a. Specify the VPN connection *Name* as *to FGT_1*.
   b. Select *Site to Site*.
   c. Click *Next*.

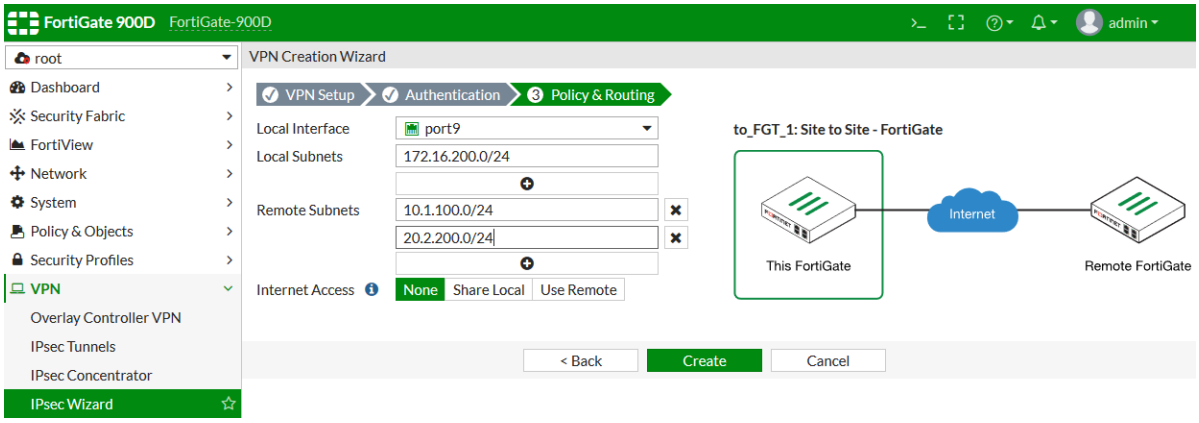



3. In the *Authentication* pane:
   a. Enter the *IP Address* to the Internet-facing interface.
   b. For *Authentication Method*, click *Pre-shared Key* and enter the *Pre-shared Key* of the FGT_1.

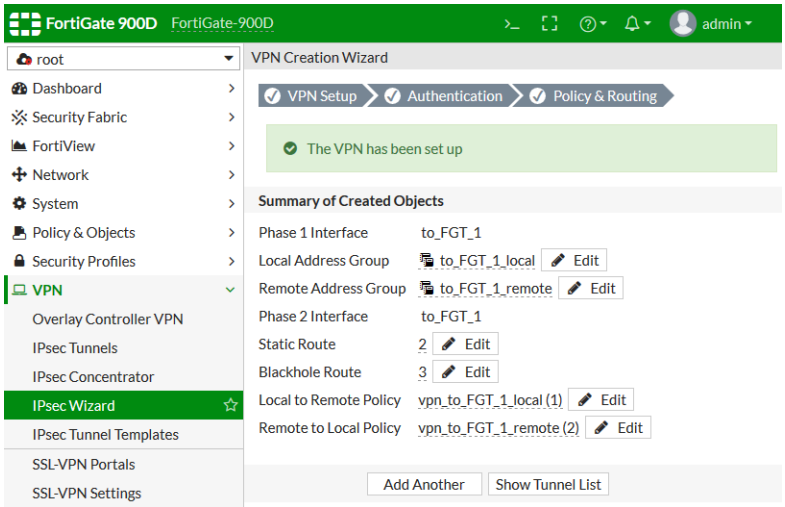
c. Click *Next*.




4. In the *Policy & Routing* pane:
   a. Set the *Local Interface* to the internal interface.
   b. Set the *Local Subnets* to include the internal and SSL VPN subnets for FGT_2.
   c. Set *Remote Subnets* to include the internal subnet for FGT_1.
   d. Click *Create*.

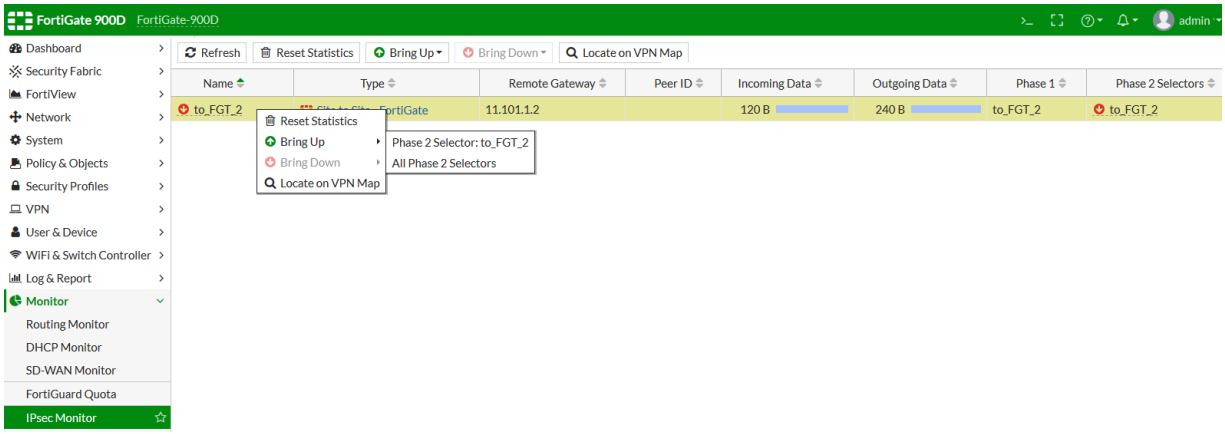



A confirmation screen shows a summary of the configuration including the firewall address groups for both the local and remote subnets, static routes, and security policies.

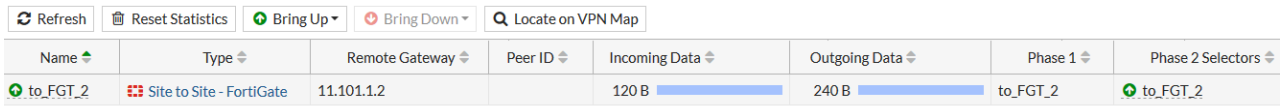


**To check the results:**

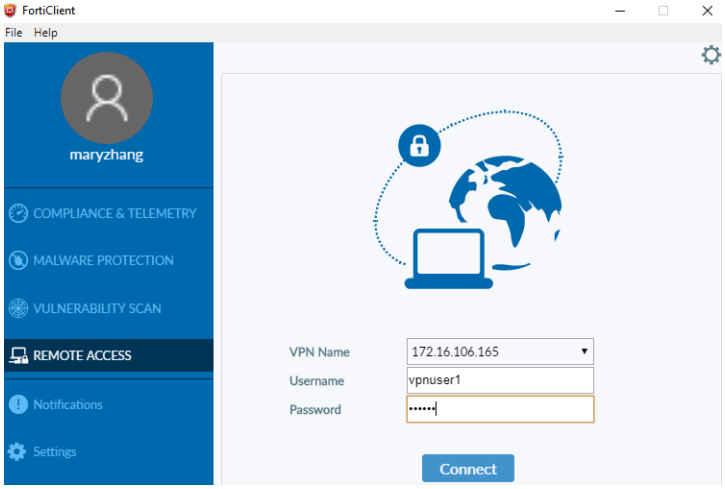
1. Go to *Monitor* > *IPsec Monitor*.
2. Select the tunnel and click *Bring Up*.



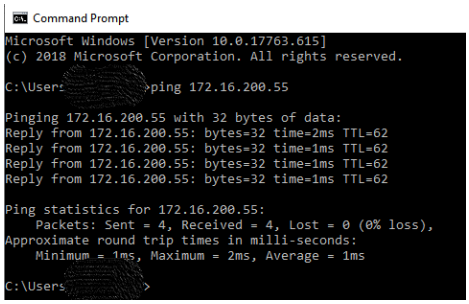

3. Verify that the *Status* changes to *Up*.



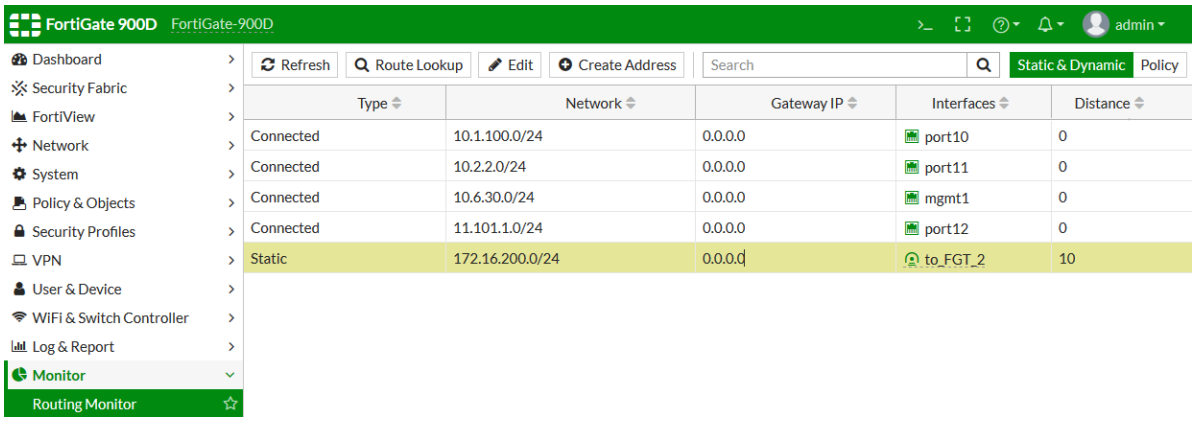

4. Configure the SSL VPN connection on the user's FortiClient and connect to the tunnel.



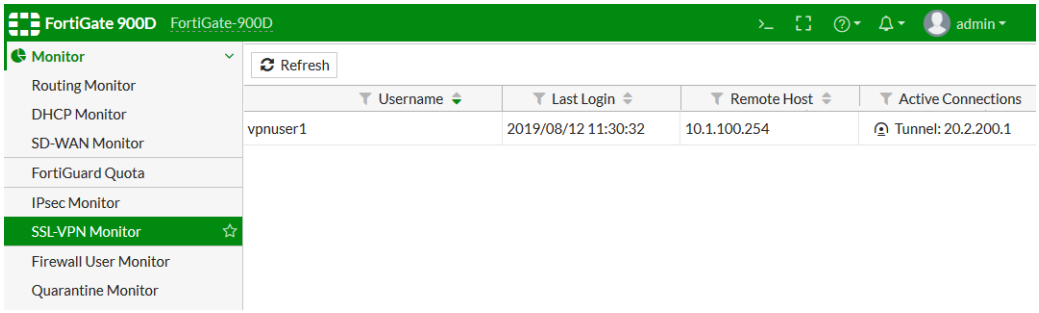

5. On the user's computer, use CLI to send a ping though the tunnel to the remote endpoint to confirm access.



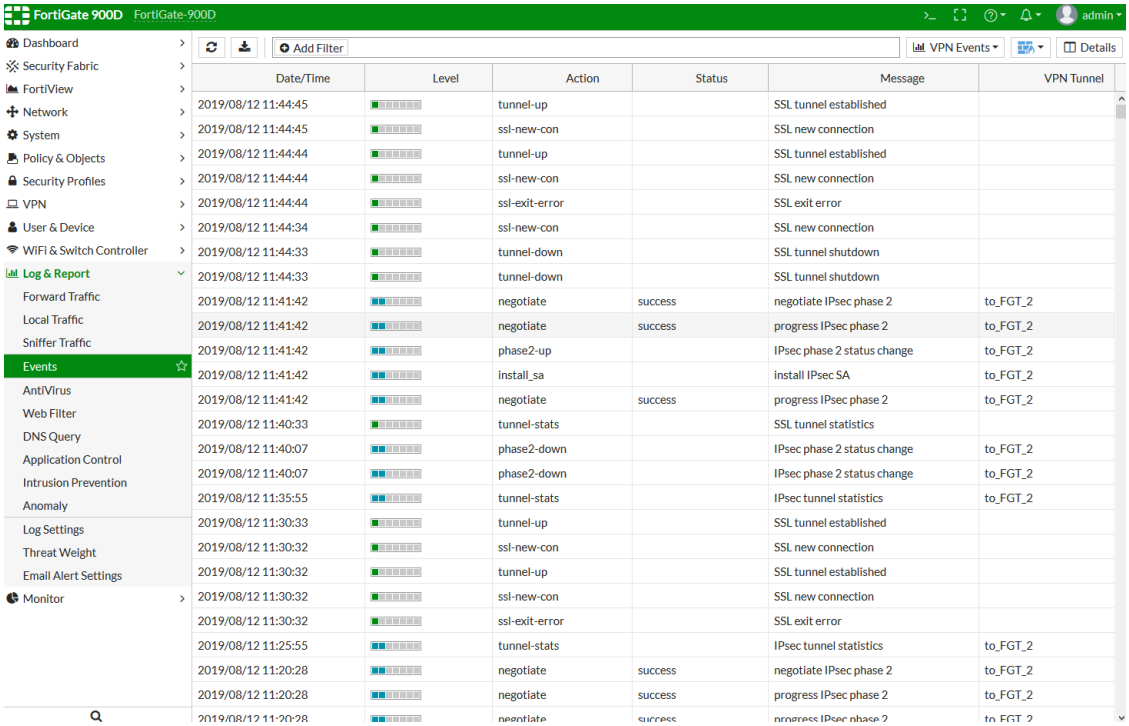
6. Go to *Monitor* > *Routing Monitor* and verify that the routes for the IPsec and SSL VPNs are added.



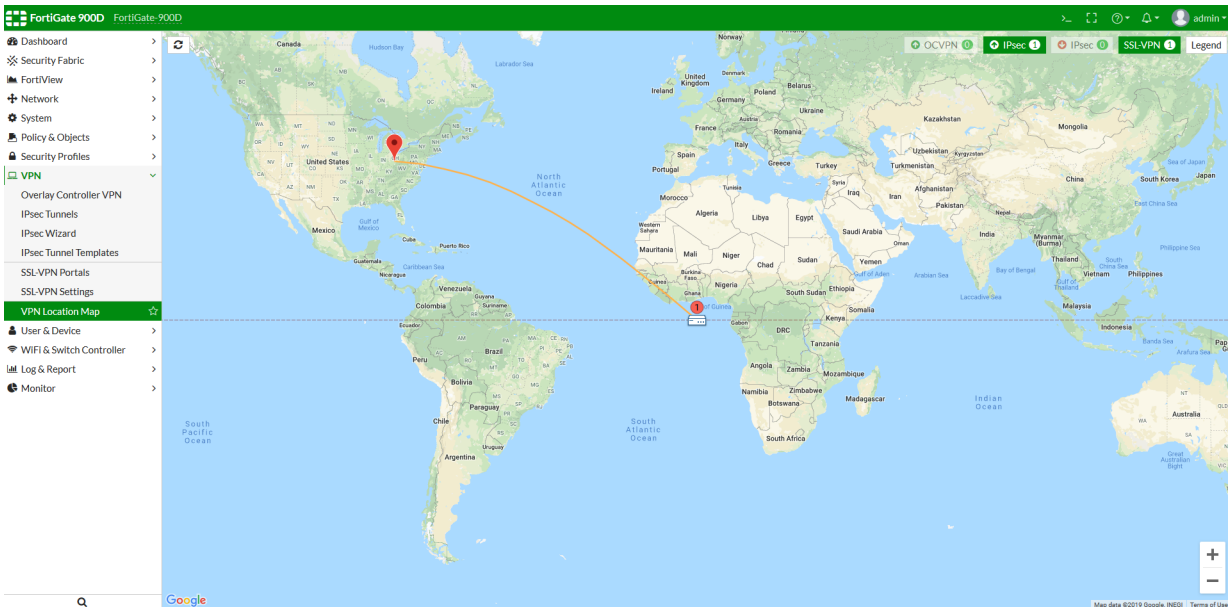

7. Go to *Monitor* > *SSL-VPN Monitor* and verify user connectivity.



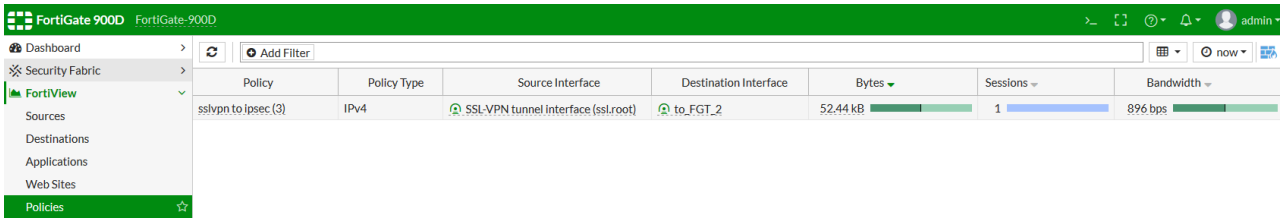

8. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events*, select *VPN Events* from the event type dropdown list, and view the IPsec and SSL tunnel statistics.



9. Go to *VPN* > *VPN Location Map* and view VPN connection activity.




10. Go to *FortiView* > *Policies* and view policy usage.




## Troubleshooting

### To troubleshoot on FGT_1, use the following CLI commands:

```
diagnose debug reset
diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
diagnose debug flow show iprope enable
diagnose debug flow filter addr 172.16.200.55
diagnose debug flow filter proto 1
diagnose debug flow trace start 2
diagnose debug enable
```

### To troubleshoot using ping:

1. Send a ping through the SSL VPN tunnel to 172.16.200.55 and analyze the output of the debug.
2. Disable the debug output with this command: `diagnose debug disable`.

If traffic is entering the correct VPN tunnel on FGT_1, then run the same commands on FGT_2 to check whether the traffic is reaching the correct tunnel. If it is reaching the correct tunnel, confirm that the SSL VPN tunnel range is configured in the remote side quick mode selectors.

**To troubleshoot using a sniffer command:**

```
diagnose sniff packet any "host 172.16.200.44 and icmp" 4
```

**To troubleshoot IPsec VPN issues, use the following commands on either FortiGate:**

```
diagnose debug reset
diagnose vpn ike gateway clear
diagnose debug application ike -1
diagnose debug enable
```

## SSL VPN protocols

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN protocols:


- TLS 1.3 support on page 1456
- SMBv2 support on page 1457


### TLS 1.3 support

FortiOS supports TLS 1.3 for SSL VPN.



TLS 1.3 support requires IPS engine 4.205 or later and endpoints running FortiClient 6.2.0 or later.

**To establish a client SSL VPN connection with TLS 1.3 to the FortiGate:**

1. Enable TLS 1.3 support using the CLI:
   ```
   config vpn ssl setting
      set ssl-max-proto-ver tls1-3
      set ssl-min-proto-ver tls1-3
   end
   ```
2. Configure the SSL VPN and firewall policy:
   a. Configure the SSL VPN settings and firewall policy as needed.
3. For Linux clients, ensure OpenSSL 1.1.1a is installed:
   a. Run the following commands in the Linux client terminal:
      ```
      root@PC1:~/tools# openssl
      OpenSSL> version
      ```
      If OpenSSL 1.1.1a is installed, the system displays a response like the following:
      ```
      OpenSSL 1.1.1a 20 Nov 2018
      ```
4. For Linux clients, use OpenSSL with the TLS 1.3 option to connect to SSL VPN:
   a. Run the following command in the Linux client terminal:
      ```
      #openssl s_client -connect 10.1.100.10:10443 -tls1_3
      ```
5. Ensure the SSL VPN connection is established with TLS 1.3 using the CLI:
   ```
   # diagnose debug application sslvpn -1
   # diagnose debug enable
   ```
   The system displays a response like the following:
   ```
   [207:root:1d]SSL established: TLSv1.3 TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
   ```

### Deep inspection (flow-based)

FortiOS supports TLS 1.3 for policies that have the following security profiles applied:

- Web filter profile with flow-based inspection mode enabled.
- Deep inspection SSL/SSH inspection profile.

For example, when a client attempts to access a website that supports TLS 1.3, FortiOS sends the traffic to the IPS engine. The IPS engine then decodes TLS 1.3 and the client is able to access the website.

## SMBv2 support

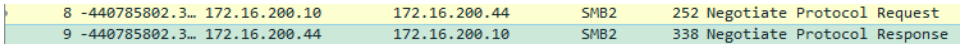
On all FortiGate models, SMBv2 is enabled by default for SSL VPN. Client PCs can access the SMBv2 server using SSL VPN web-only mode.

**To configure SMBv2:**

1. Set the minimum and maximum SMB versions.

```
config vpn ssl web portal
    edit portal-name
       set smb-min-version smbv2
       set smb-max-version smbv3
    next
end
```

2. Configure SSL VPN and firewall policies as usual.
3. Connect to the SSL VPN web portal and create an SMB bookmark for the SMBv2 server.
4. Click the bookmark to connect to the SMBv2 server.
5. On the FortiGate, use package capture to verify that SMBv2 works:




# SSL VPN troubleshooting

The following topics provide information about SSL VPN troubleshooting:


- Debug commands on page 1457
- Troubleshooting common issues on page 1458


## Debug commands

### SSL VPN debug command

Use the following diagnose commands to identify SSL VPN issues. These commands enable debugging of SSL VPN with a debug level of -1 for detailed results.

```
diagnose debug application sslvpn -1
diagnose debug enable
```

The CLI displays debug output similar to the following:

```
FGT60C3G10002814 # [282:root]SSL state:before/accept initialization (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 read client hello A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 write server hello A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 write change cipher spec A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 write finished B (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 flush data (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 read finished A:system lib(172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSLv3 read finished A (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL state:SSL negotiation finished successfully (172.20.120.12)
[282:root]SSL established: DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA SSLv3 Kx=DH Au=RSA Enc=AES(256) Mac=SHA1
```

### To disable the debug:

```
diagnose debug disable
diagnose debug reset
```

### Remote user authentication debug command

Use the following diagnose commands to identify remote user authentication issues.

```
diagnose debug application fnbamd -1
diagnose debug reset
```

## Troubleshooting common issues

**To troubleshoot getting no response from the SSL VPN URL:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
   a. Check the SSL VPN port assignment.
   b. Check the *Restrict Access* setting to ensure the host you are connecting from is allowed.
2. Go to *Policy* > *Firewall Policy*.
   a. Check that the policy for SSL VPN traffic is configured correctly.
   b. Check the URL you are attempting to connect to. It should follow this pattern:

      ```
      https://<FortiGate IP>:<Port>
      ```

   c. Check that you are using the correct port number in the URL. Ensure FortiGate is reachable from the computer.

      ```
      ping <FortiGate IP>
      ```

   d. Check the browser has *TLS 1.1*, *TLS 1.2*, and *TLS 1.3* enabled.

**To troubleshoot FortiGate connection issues:**

1. Check the Release Notes to ensure that the FortiClient version is compatible with your version of FortiOS.
2. FortiClient uses IE security setting, In IE *Internet options* > *Advanced* > *Security*, check that *Use TLS 1.1* and *Use TLS 1.2* are enabled.
3. Check that SSL VPN *ip-pools* has free IPs to sign out. The default *ip-poolsSSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1* has 10 IP addresses.
4. Export and check FortiClient debug logs.
   a. Go to *File* > *Settings*.
   b. In the *Logging* section, enable *Export logs*.
   c. Set the *Log Level* to *Debug* and select *Clear logs*.

d. Try to connect to the VPN.
e. When you get a connection error, select *Export logs*.

**To troubleshoot SSL VPN hanging or disconnecting at 98%:**

1. A new SSL VPN driver was added to FortiClient 5.6.0 and later to resolve SSL VPN connection issues. If your FortiOS version is compatible, upgrade to use one of these versions.
2. Latency or poor network connectivity can cause the login timeout on the FortiGate. In FortiOS 5.6.0 and later, use the following commands to allow a user to increase the SSL VPN login timeout setting.

```
config vpn ssl settings
  set login-timeout 180 (default is 30)
  set dtls-hello-timeout 60 (default is 10)
end
```

**To troubleshoot tunnel mode connections shutting down after a few seconds:**

This might occur if there are multiple interfaces connected to the Internet, for example, SD-WAN. This can cause the session to become “dirty”. To allow multiple interfaces to connect, use the following CLI commands.

If you are using a FortiOS 6.0.1 or later:

```
config system interface
  edit <name>
    set preserve-session-route enable
  next
end
```

If you are using a FortiOS 6.0.0 or earlier:

```
config vpn ssl settings
   set route-source-interface enable
end
```

**To troubleshoot users being assigned to the wrong IP range:**

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Portals* and *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings* and ensure the same *IP Pool* is used in both places. Using the same *IP Pool* prevents conflicts. If there is a conflict, the portal settings are used.

**To troubleshoot slow SSL VPN throughput:**

Many factors can contribute to slow throughput.

This recommendation tries to improve throughput by using the FortiOS Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) tunnel option, available in FortiOS 5.4 and above.

DTLS allows SSL VPN to encrypt traffic using TLS and uses UDP as the transport layer instead of TCP. This avoids retransmission problems that can occur with TCP-in-TCP.

FortiClient 5.4.0 to 5.4.3 uses DTLS by default. FortiClient 5.4.4 and later uses normal TLS, regardless of the DTLS setting on the FortiGate.

To use DTLS with FortiClient:

1. Go to *File* > *Settings* and enable *Preferred DTLS Tunnel*.

To enable DTLS tunnel on FortiGate, use the following CLI commands:

```
config vpn ssl settings
  set dtls-tunnel enable
end
```

# User & Authentication

In *User & Authentication*, you can control network access for different users and devices in your network. FortiGate authentication controls system access by user group. By assigning individual users to the appropriate user groups you can control each user's access to network resources. You can define local users and peer users on the FortiGate unit. You can also define user accounts on remote authentication servers and connect them to FortiOS.

You can control network access for different device types in your network by doing the following:

- Identifying and monitoring the types of devices connecting to your network
- Using MAC address based access control to allow or deny individual devices
- Using Telemetry data received from FortiClient endpoints to construct a policy to deny access to endpoints with known vulnerabilities or to quarantine compromised endpoints

The following sections provide information about users and devices:


- Endpoint control and compliance on page 1461
- User Definition on page 1471
- User Groups on page 1472
- Guest Management on page 1473
- LDAP Servers on page 1476
- RADIUS Servers on page 1487
- TACACS+ servers on page 1500
- SAML on page 1501
- Authentication Settings on page 1504
- FortiTokens on page 1505
- PKI on page 1513
- Configuring the maximum log in attempts and lockout period on page 1512
- Configuring firewall authentication on page 1514


# Endpoint control and compliance

The section contains the following topics:


- Per-policy disclaimer messages on page 1461
- Compliance on page 1464
- FortiGuard distribution of updated Apple certificates on page 1470


## Per-policy disclaimer messages

FortiOS supports a customizable captive portal to direct users to install or enable required software.

Per-policy custom disclaimers in each VDOM are supported. For example, you may want to configure three firewall policies, each of which matches traffic from endpoints with different FortiClient statuses:

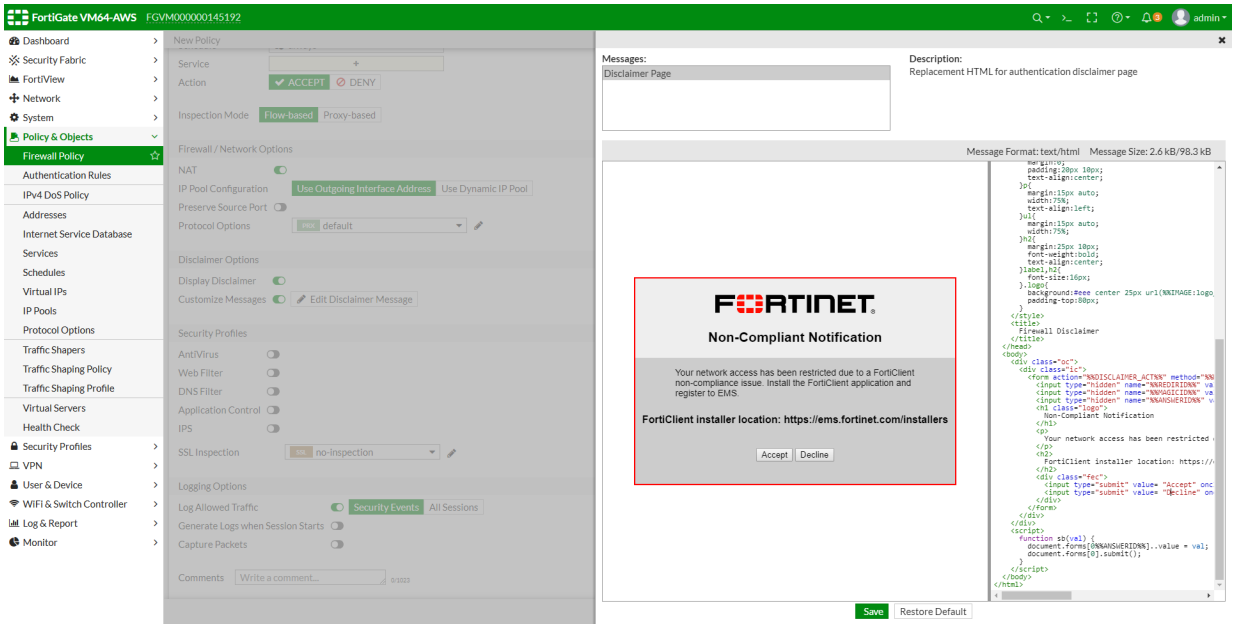
| Endpoint status | FortiOS behavior |
|---|---|
| Endpoint does not have FortiClient installed. | Traffic matches a firewall policy that displays an in-browser warning to install FortiClient from the provided link. |
| Endpoint has FortiClient installed, registered to EMS, and connected to the FortiGate. | Traffic matches a dynamic firewall policy which allows the endpoint to reach its destination via this policy. |
| Endpoint is deregistered from EMS and disconnected from the FortiGate. | Traffic matches another dynamic firewall policy that displays warning to register FortiClient to EMS. |

**To enable per-policy disclaimer messages:**

```
config user setting
    set auth-cert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set per-policy-disclaimer enable
end
```

**To configure per-policy disclaimers in the GUI:**

1. Ensure the per-policy disclaimer messages option is enabled.
2. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
3. Edit the policy that applies when an endpoint does not have FortiClient installed.
4. Under *Disclaimer Options*, enable *Display Disclaimer*.
5. Enable *Customize Messages* then click *Edit Disclaimer Message*. The default disclaimer message is shown.
6. Edit the message to warn users to install FortiClient, and provide the FortiClient download link.




7. Click *Save*.
8. Repeat the above steps for each policy that requires a custom disclaimer message.

**To configure per-policy disclaimers in the CLI:**

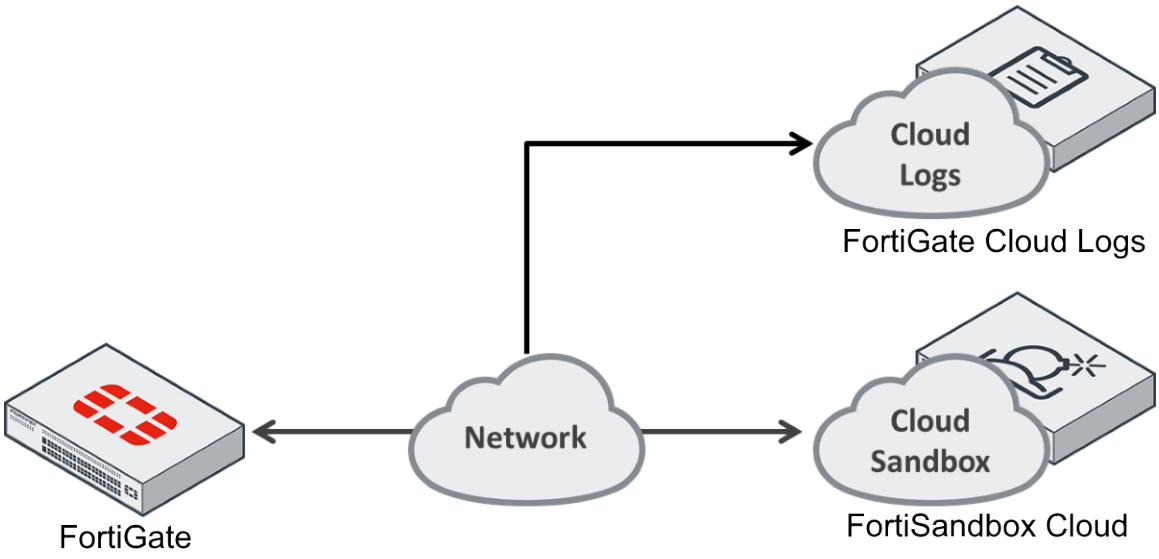
```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "111"
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc155_address"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set wsso disable
        set groups "ems_03_group"
        set disclaimer enable
        set replacemsg-override-group "test"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 4
        set name "44"
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc5-address"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set wsso disable
        set groups "ems_03_group"
        set disclaimer enable
        set replacemsg-override-group "test2"
        set nat enable
    next
    edit 6
        set name "66"
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set status disable
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
        set block-notification enable
        set replacemsg-override-group "endpoint-override"
    next
end
```

# Compliance

## FortiSandbox Cloud region selection

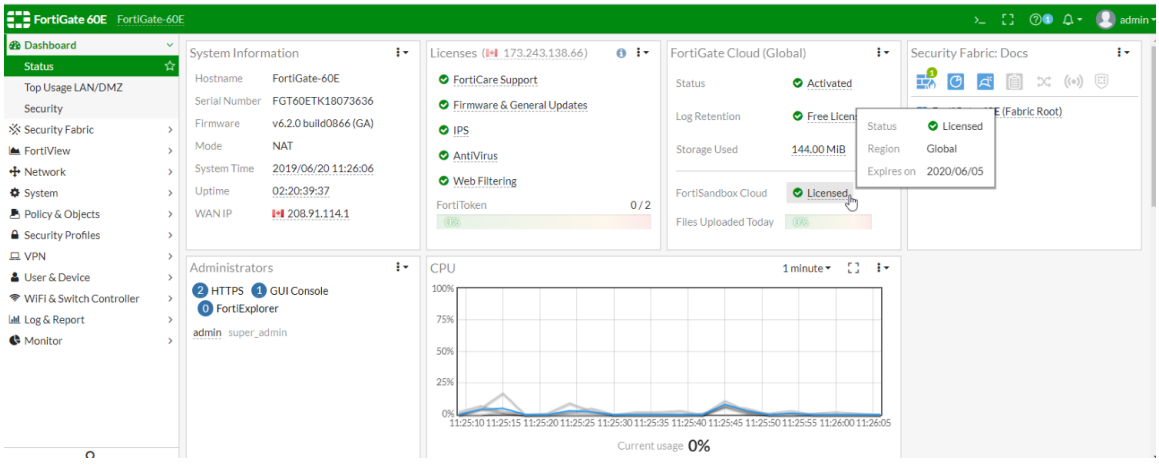
In FortiOS, FortiSandbox Cloud services are decoupled from the FortiGate Cloud license. This allows you to specify a FortiSandbox Cloud region and take advantage of FortiSandbox features without a FortiGate Cloud account.

The following topology demonstrates how FortiGate Cloud Logs and FortiSandbox Cloud are separated in FortiOS:



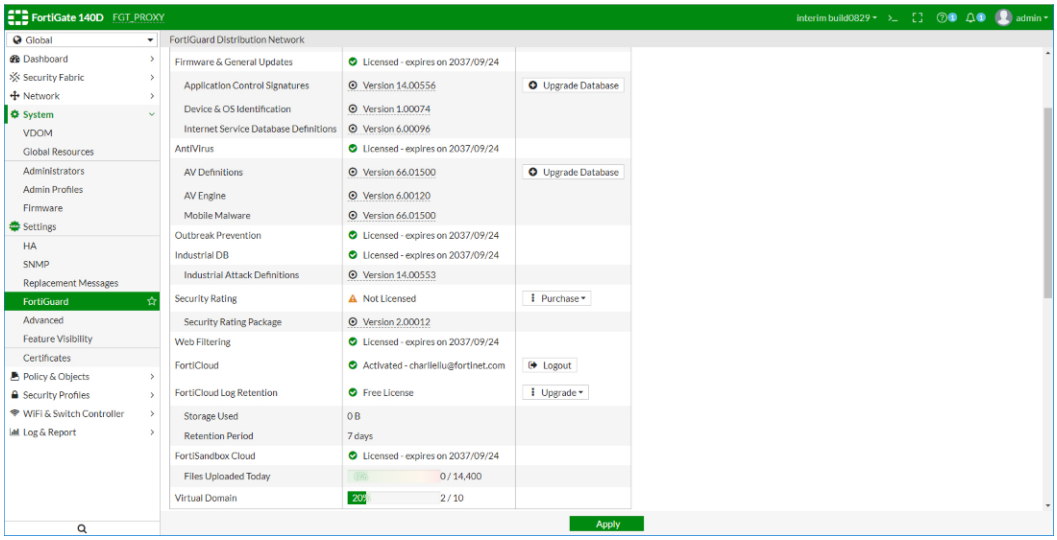

**To view the FortiGate Cloud Log and FortiSandbox licenses:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. The *FortiGate Cloud* widget shows separate license statuses for *Log Retention* and *FortiSandbox Cloud*.
   In the following example, the FortiGate Cloud account is using a free license, and FortiSandbox Cloud is using a paid license:



**To obtain a FortiSandbox Cloud license:**

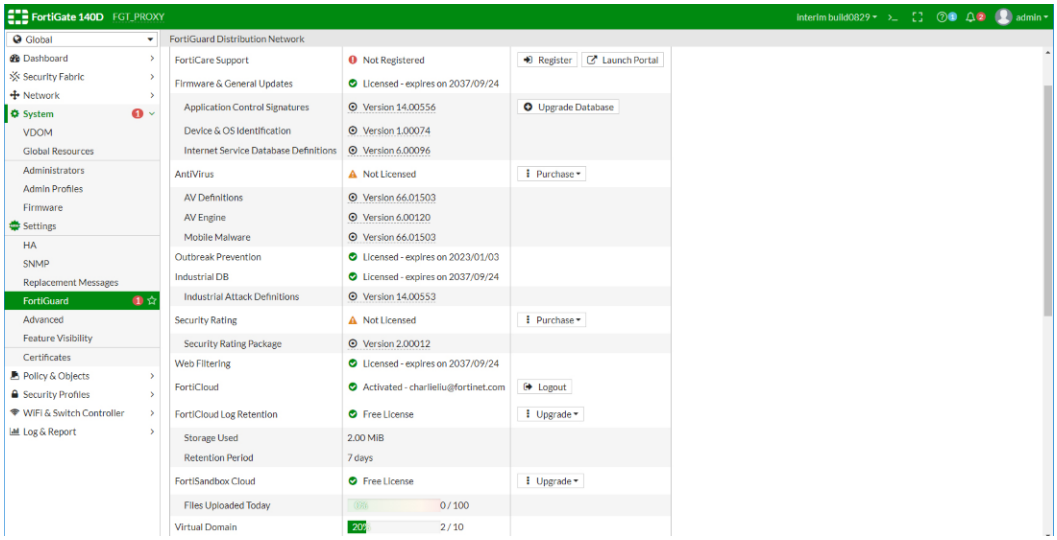
1. Go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
2. Under *License Information* > *FortiSandbox Cloud*, click *Activate*.
3. Complete the prompts to obtain your license.






The FortiSandbox Cloud license is linked to your antivirus license, so they will expire at the same time.

- If the FortiGate is not registered with a paid antivirus license, the FortiGate will use the free FortiGate Cloud license. This license limits the FortiGate to 100 FortiSandbox Cloud submissions per day.




**To set the FortiSandbox Cloud region in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Fabric Connectors*. Double-click the *FortiSandbox* card.
2. For type, click *FortiSandbox Cloud*.

3. Select a region from the *FortiSandbox cloud region* dropdown.
   The following regions are available:
   - Europe
   - Global
   - Japan
   - US
4. Click *OK*.

**To set the FortiSandbox Cloud region in the CLI:**

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # execute forticloud-sandbox region
0  Europe
1  Global
2  Japan
3  US
Please select cloud sandbox region[0-3]:3
Cloud sandbox region is selected: US
```

The separation of the FortiGate Cloud Log and FortiSandbox services are visible in the following example:

```
FGT_PROXY (global) # diagnose test application forticldd 3
Debug zone info:
    Domain:FortiCloud ReleaseQA Global - 172.16.95.16
    Home log server: 172.16.95.93:514
    Alt log server: 172.16.95.27:514
    Active Server IP:      172.16.95.93
    Active Server status:  up
    Log quota:      102400MB
    Log used:       0MB
    Daily volume:   20480MB
    fams archive pause: 0
    APTContract : 1
    APT server: 172.16.102.52:514
    APT Altserver: 172.16.102.51:514
    Active APTServer IP:      172.16.102.52
    Active APTServer status:  up
```

## FortiGate VM unique certificate

To safeguard against certificate compromise, FortiGate VM and FortiAnalyzer VM use the same deployment model as FortiManager VM where the license file contains a unique certificate tied to the serial number of the virtual device.

A hardware appliance usually comes with a BIOS certificate with a unique serial number that identifies the hardware appliance. This built-in BIOS certificate is different from a firmware certificate. A firmware certificate is distributed in all appliances with the same firmware version.

Using a BIOS certificate with a built-in serial number provides a high trust level for the other side in X.509 authentication.

Since a VM appliance has no BIOS certificate, a signed VM license can provide an equivalent of a BIOS certificate. The VM license assigns a serial number in the BIOS equivalent certificate. This gives the certificate an abstract access ability, which is similar to a BIOS certificate with the same high trust level.

This feature is only supported in new, registered VM licenses.

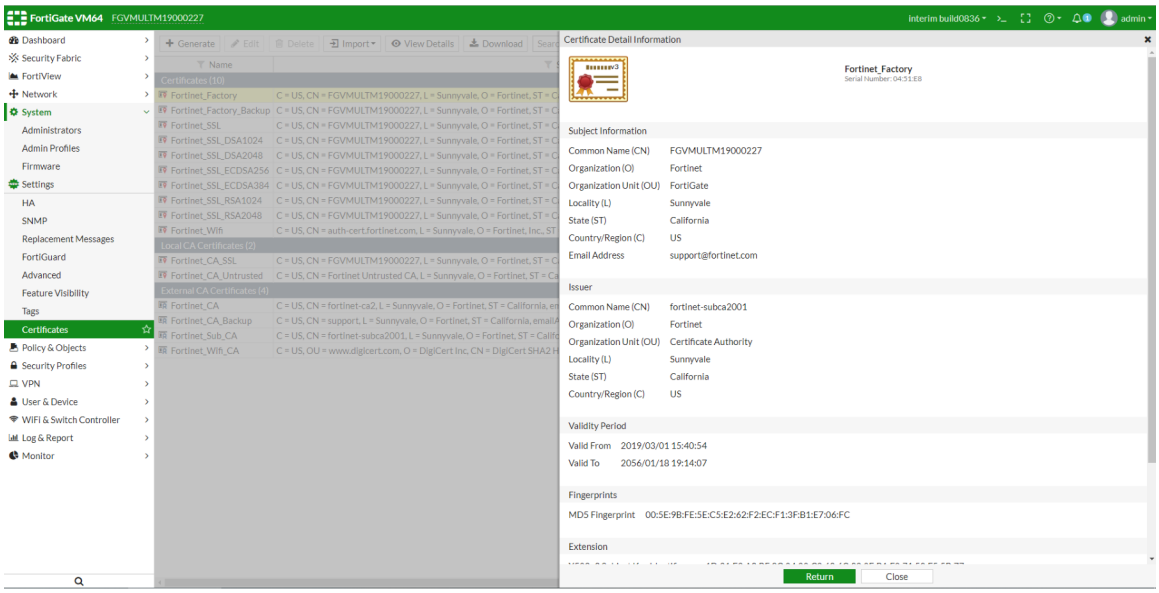
### Sample configurations

Depending on the firmware version and VM license, the common name (CN) on the certificate will be configured differently.

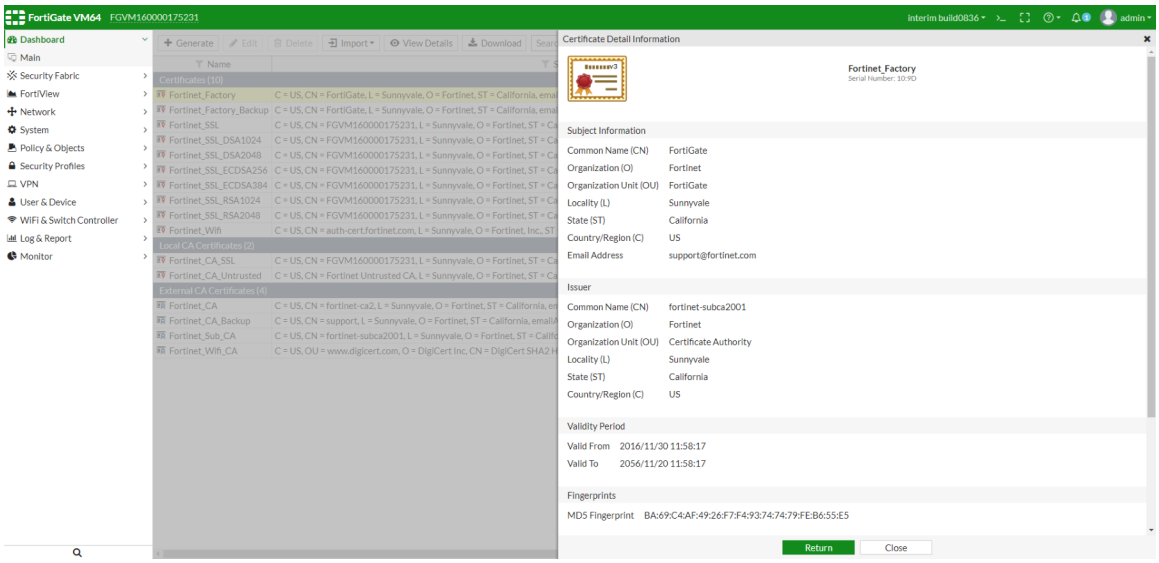
### To view validated certificates:

1. Go to *System* > *Certificates*.
2. Double-click on a VM certificate. There are two VM certificates:
   - *Fortinet_Factory*
   - *Fortinet_Factory_Backup*

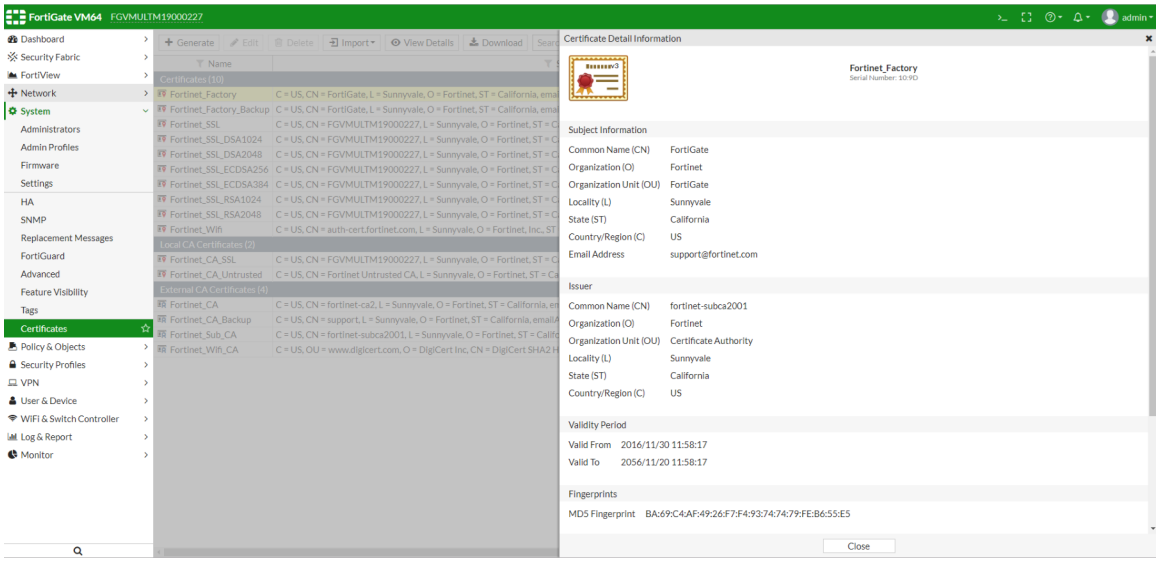
   The *Certificate Detail Information* window displays.
   - If you are using new firmware (6.2.0 and later) with a new VM license, the *CN* becomes the FortiGate VM serial number.




   - If you are using new firmware (6.2.0) with an old VM license, the *CN* remains as *FortiGate*. It does not change to the VM serial number.




- If you are using old firmware (6.0.2) with a new VM license, the *CN* remains as *FortiGate*.

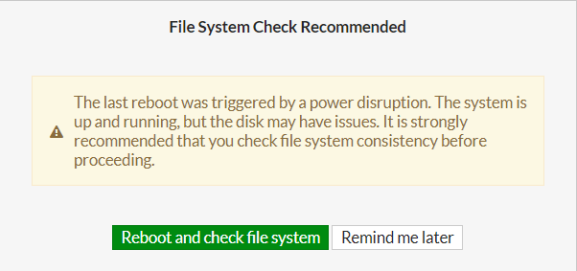



## Running a file system check automatically

There is an option in FortiOS to enable automatic file system checks if the FortiGate shuts down ungracefully.

By default, the automatic file system check is disabled. When an administrator logs in after an ungraceful shutdown, a warning message appears advising them to manually run a file system check.

GUI warning:




CLI warning:

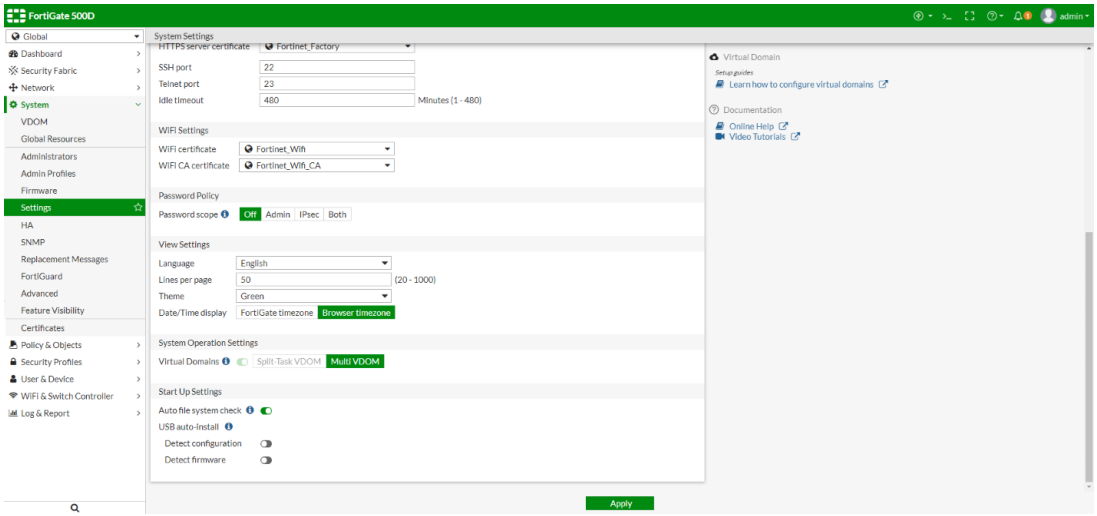
```
WARNING: File System Check Recommended! Unsafe reboot may have caused inconsistency in disk drive.
It is strongly recommended that you check file system consistency before proceeding.
Please run 'execute disk scan 17'
Note: The device will reboot and scan during startup. This may take up to an hour
```

### Enabling automatic file system checks

You can enable automatic file system checks in both the GUI and CLI.

### To enable automatic file system checks in the GUI:

1. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
2. In the *Start Up Settings* section, enable *Auto file system check*.
3. Click *Apply*.




### To enable automatic file system checks using the CLI:

```
config system global
   set autorun-log-fsck enable
end
```

## FortiGuard distribution of updated Apple certificates

Push notifications for iPhone (for the purpose of two-factor authentication) require a TLS server certificate to authenticate to Apple. As this certificate is only valid for one year, a service extension allows FortiGuard to distribute updated TLS server certificates to FortiGate when needed.

FortiGuard update service updates local Apple push notification TLS server certificates when the local certificate is expired. FortiGuard update service also reinstalls certificates when the certificates are lost.

You can verify that the feature is working on the FortiGate by using the CLI shell.

**To verify certificate updates:**

1. Using FortiOS CLI shell, verify that all certificates are installed:

```
/data/etc/apns # ls -al
drwxr-xr-x    2 0        0       Tue Jan 15 08:42:39 2019          1024 .
drwxr-xr-x   12 0        0       Tue Jan 15 08:45:00 2019          2048 ..
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          2377 apn-dev-cert.pem
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          1859 apn-dev-key.pem
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          8964 apn-dis-cert.pem
-rw-r--r--    1 0        0       Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019          4482 apn-dis-key.pem
```

2. Rename all current Apple certificates.
   Apple push notification no longer works after you rename the certificates.

```
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dis-cert.pem apn-dis-cert.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dev-key.pem apn-dev-key.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dev-cert.pem apn-dev-cert.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # mv apn-dis-key.pem apn-dis-key.pem.save
/data/etc/apns # ls -al
drwxr-xr-x   2 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:51:15 2019   1024 .
drwxr-xr-x  12 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:45:00 2019   2048 ..
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   2377 apn-dev-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   1859 apn-dev-key.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   8964 apn-dis-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   4482 apn-dis-key.pem.save
```

3. Run a FortiGuard update, and verify that all certificates are installed again:

```
/data/etc/apns # ls -al
drwxr-xr-x   2 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019   1024 .
drwxr-xr-x  12 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:15 2019   2048 ..
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   2377 apn-dev-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   1859 apn-dev-key.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019   2167 apn-dis-cert.pem  <-- downloaded
from FortiGuard
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   8964 apn-dis-cert.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019   1704 apn-dis-key.pem   <-- downloaded
from FortiGuard
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Sat Jan 12 00:06:30 2019   4482 apn-dis-key.pem.save
-rw-r--r--   1 0  0   Tue Jan 15 08:56:20 2019     41 apn-version.dat   <-- downloaded
from FortiGuard
/data/etc/apns #
```

# User Definition

The following topics provide information about user definition:


- User types on page 1471
- Removing a user on page 1471


## User types

You can configure FortiOS users in FortiOS or on an external authentication server. The following summarizes user account types and authentication in FortiOS:

| User type | Authentication |
|---|---|
| Local | Username and password must match a user account stored in FortiOS. Authentication by FortiOS security policy. |
| Remote | Username and password must match a user account stored in FortiOS and on the remote authentication server. FortiOS supports LDAP, RADIUS, and TACACS+ servers. |
| Authentication server | A FortiOS user group can include user accounts or groups that exist on a remote authentication server. |
| FSSO | Microsoft Windows or Novell network users can use their network credentials to access resources through FortiOS. You can control access using FSSO user groups that contain Windows or Novell user groups as members. |
| PKI/peer | Digital certificate holder who authenticates using a client certificate. No password is required unless two-factor authentication is enabled. |
| IM | FortiOS does not authenticate IM users. FortiOS allows or blocks each IM user from accessing IM protocols. A global policy for each IM protocol governs unknown users' access to these protocols. |
| Guest | Guest user accounts are temporary. The account expires after a selected period of time. See Guest Management on page 1473. |

## Removing a user

When a user account is no longer in use, you should delete it. If any configuration objects, such as a user group, reference the user account, you must remove the references before deleting the user.

**To remove references to a user:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*.
2. If the value in the *Ref.* column is not 0, click it.
3. FortiOS displays a list of object references to the user. Use this information to remove these references.

**To remove a user using the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*.
2. Select the desired user.
3. Click *Delete*, then *OK*.

**To remove a user using the CLI:**

```
config user local
   delete exampleuser
end
```

# User Groups

A user group is a list of users. Security policies and some VPN configurations only allow access to specified user groups. This restricted access enforces role-based access control (RBAC) to your organization's network and resources. Users must be in a group and that group must be part of the security policy.

In most cases, FortiOS authenticates a user by requesting their username and password. FortiOS checks local user accounts first. Then, if it does not find a match, FortiOS checks the RADIUS, LDAP, and TACACS+ servers that belong to the user group. Authentication succeeds when FortiOS finds a matching username and password. If the user belongs to multiple groups on a server, FortiOS matches those groups as well.



FortiOS does not allow username overlap between RADIUS, LDAP, and TACACS+ servers.

## Configuring POP3 authentication

FortiOS can authenticate users who have accounts on POP3 or POP3s email servers.

**To configure POP3 authentication:**

```
config user pop3
   edit pop3_server1
      set server pop3.fortinet.com
      set secure starttls
      set port 110
   next
end
```

**To configure a POP3 user group:**

A user group can list up to six POP3 servers as members.

```
config user group
   edit pop3_grp
      set member pop3_server1
   next
```

```
end
```

# Guest Management

## Configuring guest access

A visitor to your premises may need a user account on your network during their stay. If you are hosting a large event, such as a conference, you may need to create many temporary accounts for the attendees. You can create many guest accounts simultaneously using randomly generated user IDs and passwords to reduce your workload for these large events.

The following describes managing guest access:

1. Create one or more guest user groups. All members of a group have the same user ID type, password type, information fields used, and type and time of expiry.
2. Create guest accounts.
3. Use captive portal authentication and select the appropriate guest group.
4. The guest receives an email, SMS message, or printout containing their user ID and password from the FortiOS administrator.
5. The guest logs onto the network using the provided credentials.
6. After the configured expiry time, the credentials are no longer valid.

This configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Add an SMS service.
2. Create a guest management administrator.
3. Create a guest user group.
4. Create guest user accounts.

**To add an SMS service:**

To send SMS notifications to guest users, add an email to SMS service to your FortiGate using the following commands:

```
config system sms-server
   edit <server-name>
      set mail-server <server-name>
   next
end
```

**To create a guest management administrator:**

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Administrator*.
3. Enable *Restrict admin to guest account provisioning only*.
4. For *Guest Group*, select the desired guest groups.

**To create a guest user group:**

The guest group configuration determines the provided fields when you create a guest user account.

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *Guest*.
4. If desired, enable *Batch Guest Account Creation*. When this is enabled, the following is true:
   - User IDs and passwords are auto-generated.
   - User accounts only have the *User ID*, *Password*, and *Expiration* fields. You can only edit the *Expiration* field. If the expiry time is a duration, such as eight hours, the countdown starts at initial login.
   - You can print the account information to provide to the guest. Guests do not receive email or SMS notifications.
5. For *User ID*, select one of the following:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Email | Guest's email address. |
| Auto Generated | FortiOS creates a random user ID for the guest. |
| Specify | The administrator assigns a user ID to the guest. |

6. For *Password*, select one of the following:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Disable | No password. |
| Auto Generated | FortiOS creates a random password for the guest. |
| Specify | The administrator assigns a password to the guest. |

7. For *Start Countdown*, select one of the following:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| On Account Creation | FortiOS counts expiry time from time of account creation. |
| After First Login | FortiOS counts expiry time from the guest's first login. |

8. For *Time*, configure the expiry time. You can change this for individual users.
9. Configure any other field as required, then click *OK*.

## Creating guest user accounts

**To create a guest user account:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *Guest Management*.
2. Select the desired guest group.
3. Click *Create New*.
4. Configure the guest as desired.
5. Click *OK*.

**To create multiple guest user accounts automatically:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *Guest Management*.
2. Select the desired guest group. This group must have *Batch Guest Account Creation* enabled.
3. Click *Create New* > *Multiple Users*.

4. Enter the *Number of Accounts*.
5. If desired, change the expiry.
6. Click *OK*.

## Retail environment guest access

Businesses such as coffee shops provide free Internet access for customers. In this scenario, you do not need to configure guest management, as customers can access the WiFi access point without logon credentials.

However, consider that the business wants to contact customers with promotional offers to encourage future patronage. You can configure an email collection portal to collect customer email addresses for this purpose. You can configure a security policy to grant network access only to users who provide a valid email address. The first time a customer's device attempts WiFi connection, FortiOS requests an email address, which it validates. The customers' subsequent connections go directly to the Internet without interruption.

This configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Creating an email collection portal on page 1475
2. Creating a security policy on page 1475
3. Checking for harvested emails on page 1476

### Creating an email collection portal

The customer's first contact with your network is a captive portal that presents a webpage requesting an email address. When FortiOS has validated the email address, the customer's device MAC address is added to the Collected Emails device group.

This example modifies the `freewifi` WiFi interface to present an email collection captive portal.

**To create an email collection portal:**

```
config wireless-controller vap
    edit freewifi
        set security captive-portal
        set portal-type email-collect
    next
end
```

### Creating a security policy

You must configure a security policy that allows traffic to flow from the WiFi SSID to the internet interface only for members of the Collected Emails device group. This policy must be listed first. Unknown devices are not members of the Collected Emails device group, so they do not match the policy.

**To create a security policy:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 3
        set srcintf "freewifi"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
```

```
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set nat enable
        set email-collect enable
    next
end
```

### Checking for harvested emails

**To check for harvested emails in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Users & Devices*.
2. Hover over the *Device Inventory* widget and click *Expand to Full Screen*.

**To check for harvested emails in the CLI:**

```
# diagnose user device list
    hosts
      vd 0 d8:d1:aa:aa:69:0f gen 35 req 30 redir 1 last 43634s 7-11_2-int
        ip 10.0.2.101 ip6 fe80::dad2:cbff:feab:610f
        type 2 'iPhone' src http c 1 gen 29
        os 'iPhone' version 'iOS 6.0.1' src http id 358 c 1
        email 'yo@yourdomain.com'
      vd 0 74:e1:bb:bb:69:f9 gen 36 req 20 redir 0 last 39369s 7-11_2-int
        ip 10.0.2.100 ip6 fe80::76e2:b6ff:fedd:69f9
        type 1 'iPad' src http c 1 gen 5
        os 'iPad' version 'iOS 6.0' src http id 293 c 1
        host 'Joes's-iPad' src dhcp
        email 'you@fortinet.com'
```

# LDAP Servers

## Configuring an LDAP server

FortiOS can be configured to use an LDAP server for authentication.

**To configure an LDAP server on the FortiGate:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the following:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | This connection name is for reference within the FortiGate only. |
| **Server IP/Name** | LDAP server IP address or FQDN resolvable by the FortiGate. |
| **Server Port** | By default, LDAP uses port 389 and LDAPS uses 636. Use this field to specify a custom port if necessary. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Common Name Identifier** | Attribute field of the object in LDAP that the FortiGate uses to identify the connecting user. The identifier is case sensitive. Common attributes are:<br>• *cn* (Common Name)<br>• *sAMAccountName* (SAMAccountName)<br>• *uid* (User ID) |
| **Distinguished Name** | Used to look up user account entries on the LDAP server. It reflects the hierarchy of LDAP database object classes above the CN identifier in which you are doing the lookup.<br>Enter *dc=COMPANY,dc=com* to specify the root of the domain to include all objects.<br>Enter *ou=VPN-Users,dc=COMPANY,dc=com* to look up users under a specific organization unit. |
| **Exchange server** | Enable to specify the exchange server connector to collect information about authenticated users from a corporate exchange server. See Exchange Server connector on page 278 for more details. |
| **Bind Type** | Select one of the following options:<br>• *Simple*: bind using simple password authentication using the client name. The LDAP server only looks up against the distinguished name (DN), but does not search on the subtree.<br>• *Anonymous*: bind using an anonymous user, and search starting from the DN and recurse over the subtrees. Many LDAP servers do not allow this.<br>• *Regular*: bind using the username and password provided, and search starting from the DN and recurse over the subtrees. |
| **Username** | If using regular bind, enter a username with sufficient privileges to access the LDAP server. The following formats are supported:<br>• *username\administrator*<br>• *administrator@domain*<br>• *cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=domain,dc=com* |
| **Password** | If using regular bind, enter the password associated with the username. |
| **Secure Connection** | Enable to apply security to the LDAP connection through STARTTLS or LDAPS. |
| **Protocol** | If *Secure Connection* is enabled, select *STARTTLS* or *LDAPS*. Selecting *STARTTLS* changes the port to 389 and selecting *LDAPS* changes the port to 636. |
| **Certificate** | The FortiGate will only accept a certificate from the LDAP server that is signed by this CA. |



When specifying a secure connection, there are some considerations for the certificate used by LDAP to secure the connection. The FortiGate checks the certificate presented by the LDAP server for the IP address or FQDN as specified in the *Server IP/Name* field with the following logic:

- If there is a Subject Alternative Name (SAN), it will ignore any Common Name (CN) value and look for a match in any of the SAN fields.
- If there is no SAN, it will check the CN for a match.

4. Optionally, click *Test User Credentials* to ensure that the account has sufficient access rights.
5. Click *OK*.
   The FortiGate checks the connection and updates the *Connection Status*.

## FSSO polling connector agent installation

This topic gives an example of configuring a local FSSO agent on the FortiGate. The agent actively pools Windows Security Event log entries on Windows Domain Controller (DC) for user log in information. The FSSO user groups can then be used in a firewall policy.

This method does not require any additional software components, and all the configuration can be done on the FortiGate.

**To configure a local FSSO agent on the FortiGate:**

1. Configure an LDAP server on the FortiGate on page 1478
2. Configure a local FSSO polling connector on page 1478
3. Add the FSSO groups to a policy on page 1480

### Configure an LDAP server on the FortiGate

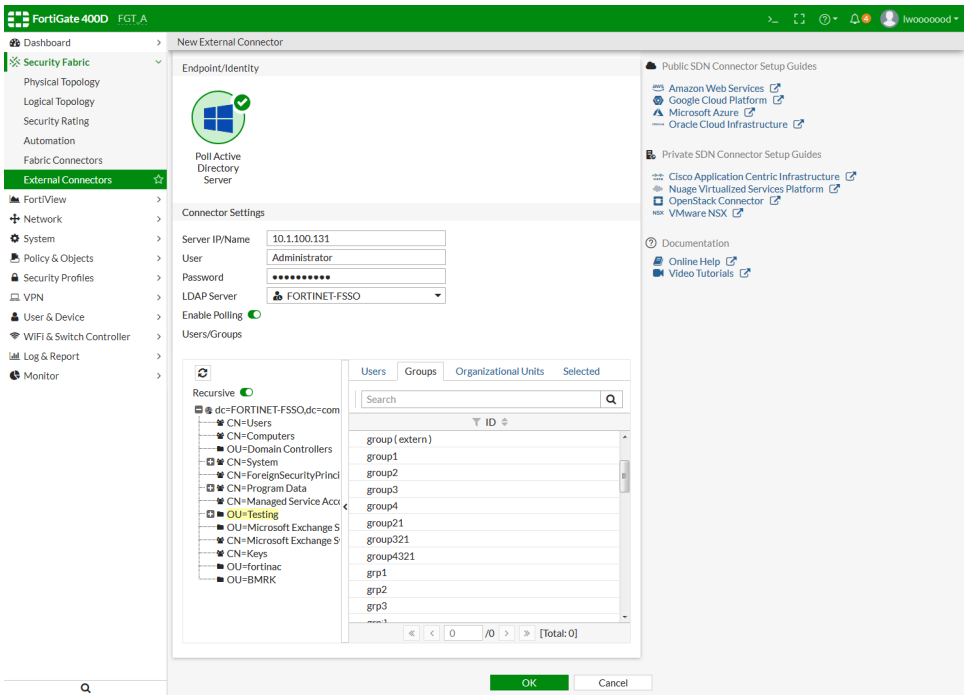
Refer to Configuring an LDAP server on page 1476. The connection must be successful before configuring the FSSO polling connector.

### Configure a local FSSO polling connector

**To configure a local FSSO polling connector:**

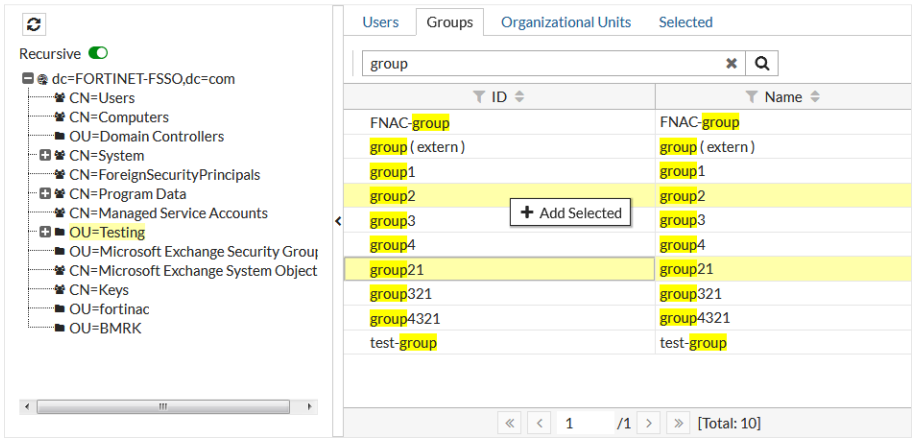
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. In the *Endpoint/Identity* section, select *Poll Active Directory Server*.

4. Fill in the required information.

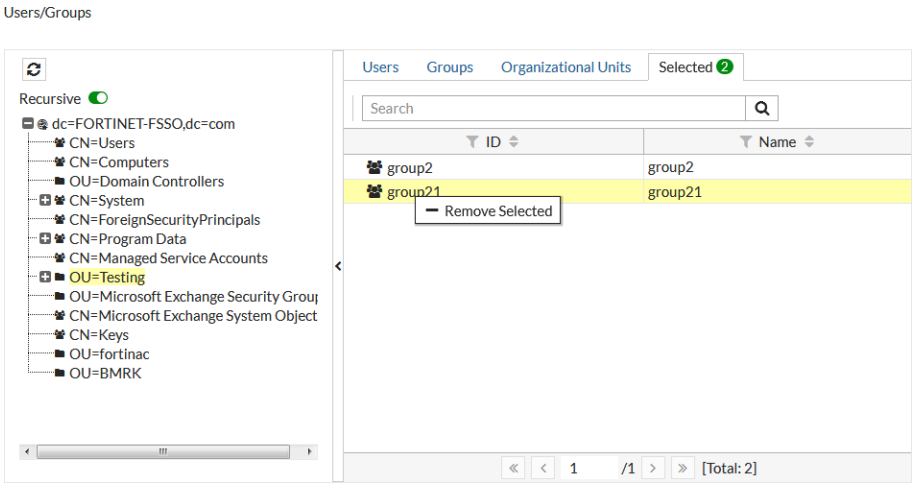



5. Select the just created LDAP server from the *LDAP Server* dropdown list.
   The structure of the LDAP tree will be shown in the *Users/Groups* section.
6. Go to the *Groups* tab.
7. Select the required groups, right click on them, and select *Add Selected*. Multiple groups can be selected at one time by holding the CTRL or SHIFT keys. The groups list can be filtered or searched to limit the number of groups that are displayed.

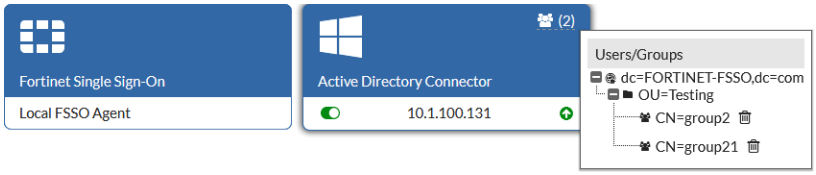
Users/Groups




8. Go to the *Selected* tab and verify that all the required groups are listed. Unneeded groups can be removed by right clicking and selecting *Remove Selected*.




9. Click *OK*.
10. Go back to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
11. There should be two new connectors:




- The *Local FSSO Agent* is the backend process that is automatically created when the first FSSO polling connector is created.
- The *Active Directory Connector* is the front end connector that can be configured by FortiGate administrators.

To verify the configuration, hover the cursor over the top right corner of the connector; a popup window will show the currently selected groups. A successful connection is also shown by a green up arrow in the lower right corner of the connector.

If you need to get log in information from multiple DCs, then you must configure other Active Directory connectors for each additional DC to be monitored.

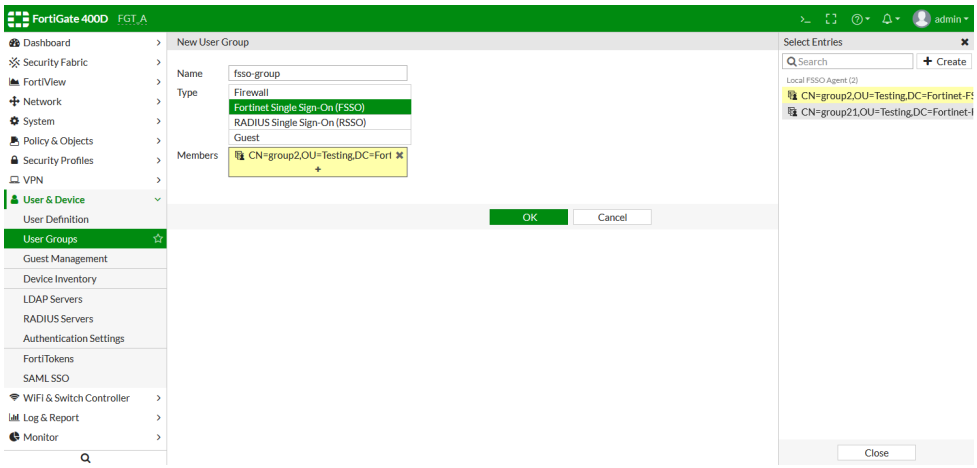
## Add the FSSO groups to a policy

FSSO groups can be used in a policy by either adding them to the policy directly, or by adding them to a local user group and then adding the group to a policy.

**To add the FSSO groups to a local user group:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group in the *Name* field.
4. Set the *Type* to *Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO)*.

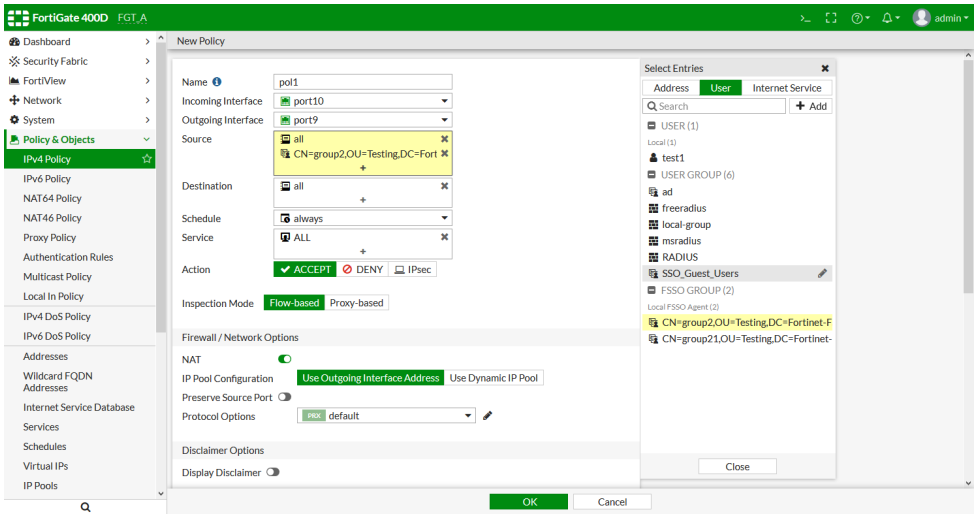
5. Add the FSSO groups as members.




6. Click *OK*.
7. Add the local FSSO group to a policy.

### To add the FSSO groups directly to a firewall policy:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Click in the *Source* field.
4. In the *Select Entries* pane, select the *User* tab.
5. Select the FSSO groups.




6. Configure the remaining settings as required.
7. Click *OK*.

## Troubleshooting

**If an authenticated AD user cannot access the internet or pass the firewall policy, verify the local FSSO user list:**

```
# diagnose debug authd fsso list
----FSSO logons----
IP: 10.1.100.188 User: test2 Groups: CN=group2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
Workstation: MemberOf: CN=group2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
Total number of logons listed: 1, filtered: 0
----end of FSSO logons----
```

1. Check that the group in *MemberOf* is allowed by the policy.
2. If the expected AD user is not in list, but other users are, it means that either:
   - The FortiGate missed the log in event, which can happen if many users log in at the same time, or
   - The user's workstation is unable to connect to the DC, and is currently logged in with cached credentials, so there is no entry in the DC security event log.
3. If there are no users in the local FSSO user list:
   a. Ensure that the local FSSO agent is working correctly:

   ```
   # diagnose debug enable
   # diagnose debug authd fsso server-status

   Server Name                          Connection Status    Version            Address
   -----------                          -----------------    -------            -------
   FGT_A (vdom1) # Local FSSO Agent     connected            FSAE server 1.1    127.0.0.1
   ```

   The connection status must be `connected`.

   b. Verify the Active Directory connection status:

   ```
   # diagnose debug fsso-polling detail 1
   AD Server Status (connected):
   ID=1, name(10.1.100.131),ip=10.1.100.131,source(security),users(0)
   port=auto username=Administrator
   read log eof=1, latest logon timestamp: Fri Jul 26 10:36:20 2019

   polling frequency: every 10 second(s) success(274), fail(0)
   LDAP query: success(0), fail(0)
   LDAP max group query period(seconds): 0
   LDAP status: connected

   Group Filter: CN=group2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-
   FSSO,DC=com+CN=group21,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
   ```

   If the polling frequency shows successes and failures, that indicates sporadic network problems or a very busy DC. If it indicates no successes or failures, then incorrect credentials could be the issue.

   If the LDAP status is connected, then the FortiGate can access the configured LDAP server. This is required for AD group membership lookup of authenticated users because the Windows Security Event log does not include group membership information. The FortiGate sends an LDAP search for group membership of authenticated users to the configure LDAP server.

   FortiGate adds authenticated users to the local FSSO user list only if the group membership is one of the groups in `Group Filter`.
4. If necessary, capture the output of the local FortiGate daemon that polls Windows Security Event logs:

   ```
   # diagnose debug application fssod -1
   ```

This output contains a lot of detailed information which can be captured to a text file.

### Limitations

- NTLM based authentication is not supported.
- If there are a large number of user log ins at the same time, the FSSO daemon may miss some. Consider using FSSO agent mode if this will be an issue. See External connectors on page 203 for information.
- The FSSO daemon does not support all of the security log events that are supported by other FSSO scenarios. For example, only Kerberos log in events 4768 and 4769 are supported.

## Enabling Active Directory recursive search

By default, nested groups (groups that are members or other groups) are not searched in Windows Active Directory (AD) LDAP servers because this can slow down the group membership search. There is an option in FortiOS to enable the searching of nested groups for user group memberships on AD LDAP servers.



This option is not available for other LDAP servers, such as OpenLDAP-based servers.

The default behavior does not include nested groups:

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-ad"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
    next
end
```

The default search results only show groups that have the user as member, and no groups that have groups as members:

```
diagnose test authserver ldap ldap-ad nuser nuser
    authenticate 'nuser' against 'ldap-ad' succeeded!
    Group membership(s) - CN=nested3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=Domain Users,CN=Users,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
```

**To enable recursive search to include nested groups in the results:**

```
config user ldap
    edit "ldap-ad"
        set server "10.1.100.131"
        set cnid "cn"
        set dn "dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set type regular
        set username "cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=fortinet-fsso,dc=com"
        set password XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
        set search-type recursive
```

```
    next
end
```

The search results now include groups that have other groups as members:

```
diagnose test authserver ldap ldap-ad nuser nuser
    authenticate 'nuser' against 'ldap-ad' succeeded!
    Group membership(s) - CN=nested3,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=Domain Users,CN=Users,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=nested2,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
                          CN=nested1,OU=Testing,DC=Fortinet-FSSO,DC=COM
```

The group nested3 is a member of the group nested2, which is a member of the group nested1.

## Configuring LDAP dial-in using a member attribute

In this configuration, users defined in Microsoft AD can set up a VPN connection based on an attribute that is set to `TRUE`, instead of their user group. You can activate the *Allow Dialin* property in AD user properties, which sets the `msNPAllowDialin` attribute to *TRUE*. You can use this procedure for other member attributes as your system requires.

This configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Ensure that the AD server has the `msNPAllowDialin` attribute set to *TRUE* for the desired users.
2. Configure user LDAP member attribute settings.
3. Configure LDAP group settings.
4. Ensure that you configured the settings correctly.

**To configure user LDAP member attribute settings:**

```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap_server"
      set server "192.168.201.3"
      set cnid "sAMAccountName"
      set dn "DC=fortilabanz,DC=com,DC=au"
      set type regular
      set username "fortigate@sample.com"
      set password ******
      set member-attr "msNPAllowDialin"
   next
end
```

**To configure LDAP group settings:**

```
config user group
   edit "ldap_grp"
      set member "ldap_server"
      config match
         edit 1
            set server-name "ldap_server"
            set group-name "TRUE"
         next
      end
   next
end
```

**To ensure that you configured the settings correctly:**

Users that are members of the `ldap_grp` user group should be able to authenticate. The following shows sample `diagnose debug` output when the `Allow Dial-in` attribute is set to `TRUE`:

```
get_member_of_groups-Get the memberOf groups.
get_member_of_groups- attr='msNPAllowDialin', found 1 values
get_member_of_groups-val[0]='TRUE'
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Auth accepted
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Going to DONE state res=0
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Result for ldap svr 192.168.201.3 is SUCCESS
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Passed group matching
```

If the attribute is not set to `TRUE` but is expected, you may see the following output:

```
get_member_of_groups-Get the memberOf groups.
get_member_of_groups- attr='msNPAllowDialin', found 1 values
get_member_of_groups-val[0]='FALSE'
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Auth accepted
fnbamd_ldap_get_result-Going to DONE state res=0
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Result for ldap svr 192.168.201.3 is SUCCESS
fnbamd_auth_poll_ldap-Failed group matching
```

The difference between the two outputs is the last line, which shows passed or failed depending on whether the member attribute is set to the expected value.

## Configuring wildcard admin accounts

To avoid setting up individual admin accounts in FortiOS, you can configure an admin account with the wildcard option enabled, allowing multiple remote admin accounts to match one local admin account. This way, multiple LDAP admin accounts can use one FortiOS admin account.

Benefits include:

- Fast configuration of the FortiOS admin account to work with your LDAP network, saving effort and avoiding potential errors incurred when setting up multiple admin accounts
- Reduced ongoing maintenance. As long as LDAP users belong to the same group and you do not modify the wildcard admin account in FortiOS, you do not need to configure changes on the LDAP accounts. If you add or remove a user from the LDAP group, you do not need to perform changes in FortiOS.

Potential issues include:

- Multiple users may be logged in to the same account simultaneously. This may cause issues if both users make changes simultaneously.
- Security is reduced since multiple users have login access to the same account, as opposed to an account for each user.

Wildcard admin configuration also applies to RADIUS. If configuring for RADIUS, configure the RADIUS server and RADIUS user group instead of LDAP. When using the GUI, wildcard admin is the only remote admin account that does not require you to enter a password on account creation. That password is normally used when the remote authentication server is unavailable during authentication.

This example uses default values where possible. If a specific value is not mentioned, the example sets it to its default value.



You can configure an admin account in Active Directory for LDAP authentication to allow an admin to perform lookups and reset passwords without being a member of the Account Operators or Domain Administrators built-in groups. See Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory on page 1487.

**To configure the LDAP server:**

The important parts of this configuration are the username and group lines. The username is the domain administrator account. The group binding allows only the GRP group access.

This example uses an example domain name. Configure as appropriate for your own network.

```
config user ldap
   edit "ldap_server"
      set server "192.168.201.3"
      set cnid "sAMAccountName"
      set dn "DC=example,DC=com,DC=au"
      set type regular
      set username "CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=example,DC=COM”
      set password *
      set group-member-check group-object
      set group-object-filter (&
           (objectcategory=group)member="CN=GRP,OU=training,DC=example,DC=COM"))
   next
end
```

**To configure the user group and add the LDAP server:**

```
config user group
   edit "ldap_grp"
      set member "ldap_server"
         config match
                 edit 1
                    set server-name "ldap_server"
                    set group-name "CN=GRP,OU=training,DC=example,DC=COM"
                 next
              end
           next
         end
      end
   end
end
```

**To configure the wildcard admin account:**

```
config system admin
   edit "test"
      set remote-auth enable
      set accprofile "super_admin"
      set wildcard enable
      set remote-group "ldap_grp"
   next
end
```

## Configuring least privileges for LDAP admin account authentication in Active Directory

An administrator should only have sufficient privileges for their role. In the case of LDAP admin bind, you can configure an admin account in Active Directory for LDAP authentication to allow an admin to perform lookups and reset passwords without being a member of the Account Operators or Domain Administrators built-in groups.

For information about Active Directory, see the product documentation.

**To configure account privileges for LDAP authentication in Active Directory:**

1. In the *Active Directory Users and Computers* administrative console, right-click the Organizational Unit (OU) or the top-level domain you want to configure and select *Delegate Control*.
2. In the *Delegation of Control Wizard* dialog, click *Next*.
3. In the *Users or Groups* dialog, click *Add...* and search Active Directory for the users or groups.
4. Click *OK* and then click *Next*.
5. In the *Tasks to Delegate* dialog, select *Create a custom task to delegate* and click *Next*.
6. Select *Only the following objects in the folder* and scroll to the bottom of the list. Select *User objects* and click *Next*.
7. In the *Permissions* dialog, select *General*.
8. From the *Permissions* list, select the following:
   - *Change password*
   - *Reset password*
9. Clear the *General* checkbox and select *Property-specific*.
10. From the *Permissions* list, select the following:
    - *Write lockoutTime*
    - *Read lockoutTime*
    - *Write pwdLastSet*
    - *Read pwdLastSet*
    - *Write UserAccountControl*
    - *Read UserAccountControl*
11. Click *Next* and click *Finish*.

# RADIUS Servers

Topics about RADIUS servers include the following:


- Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication on page 1487
- RSA ACE (SecurID) servers on page 1493
- Support for Okta RADIUS attributes filter-Id and class on page 1498

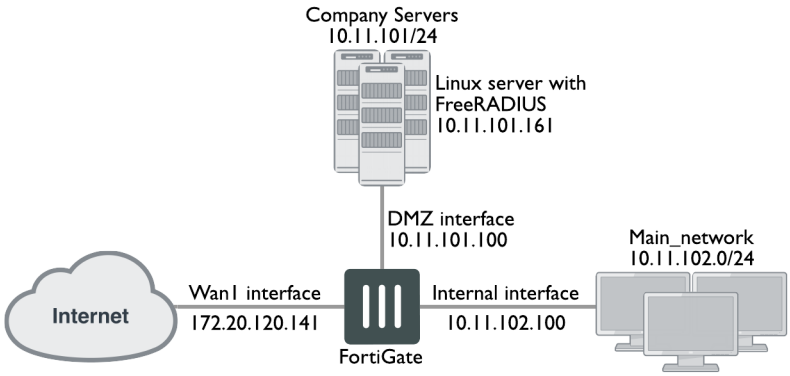

## Configuring RADIUS SSO authentication

A common RADIUS SSO (RSSO) topology involves a medium-sized company network of users connecting to the Internet through the FortiGate and authenticating with a RADIUS server. The following describes how to configure FortiOS for this scenario. The example makes the following assumptions:

- VDOMs are not enabled.
- The super_admin account is used for all FortiGate configuration.
- A RADIUS server is installed on a server or FortiAuthenticator and uses default attributes.
- BGP is used for any dynamic routing.
- You have configured authentication event logging under *Log & Report*.

Example.com has an office with 20 users on the internal network who need access to the Internet. The office network is protected by a FortiGate-60C with access to the Internet through the wan1 interface, the user network on the internal interface, and all servers are on the DMZ interface. This includes an Ubuntu sever running FreeRADIUS. This example configures two users:

| User | Account |
|---|---|
| Pat Lee | plee@example.com |
| Kelly Green | kgreen@example.com |




Configuring this example consists of the following steps:

1. Configure RADIUS.
2. Configure FortiGate interfaces.
3. Configure a RSSO agent.
4. Create a RSSO user group.
5. Configure security policies.
6. Test the configuration.

### To configure RADIUS:

Configuring RADIUS includes configuring a RADIUS server such as FreeRADIUS on user's computers and configuring users in the system. In this example, Pat and Kelly belong to the exampledotcom_employees group. After completing the configuration, you must start the RADIUS daemon. The users have a RADIUS client installed on their PCs that allow them to authenticate through the RADIUS server.

For any problems installing FreeRADIUS, see the FreeRADIUS documentation.

### To configure FortiGate interfaces:

You must define a DHCP server for the internal network, as this network type typically uses DHCP. The wan1 and dmz interfaces are assigned static IP addresses and do not need a DHCP server. The following table shows the FortiGate interfaces used in this example:

| Interface | Subnet | Act as DHCP server | Devices |
|---|---|---|---|
| wan1 | 172.20.120.141 | No | Internet service provider |
| dmz | 10.11.101.100 | No | Servers including RADIUS server |
| internal | 10.11.102.100 | Yes: x.x.x.110-250 | Internal user network |

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit wan1:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Alias** | Internet |
| **Addressing Mode** | Manual |
| **IP/Network Mask** | 172.20.120.141/255.255.255.0 |
| **Administrative Access** | HTTPS, SSH |
| **Enable DHCP Server** | Not selected |
| **Comments** | Internet |
| **Administrative Status** | Up |

3. Click *OK*.
4. Edit dmz:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Alias** | Servers |
| **Addressing Mode** | Manual |
| **IP/Network Mask** | 10.11.101.100/255.255.255.0 |
| **Administrative Access** | HTTPS, SSH, PING, SNMP |
| **Enable DHCP Server** | Not selected |
| **Listen for RADIUS Accounting Messages** | Select |
| **Comments** | Servers |
| **Administrative Status** | Up |

5. Click *OK*.
6. Edit internal:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Alias** | Internal network |
| **Addressing Mode** | Manual |
| **IP/Network Mask** | 10.11.102.100/255.255.255.0 |
| **Administrative Access** | HTTPS, SSH, PING |
| **Enable DHCP Server** | Select |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Address Range** | 10.11.102.110 - 10.11.102.250 |
| **Netmask** | 255.255.255.0 |
| **Default Gateway** | Same as Interface IP |
| **Comments** | Internal network |
| **Administrative Status** | Up |

**To create a RADIUS SSO agent:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Under *Endpoint/Identity*, select *RADIUS Single Sign-On Agent*.
4. Enable *Use RADIUS Shared Secret*. Enter the RADIUS server's shared secret.
5. Enable *Send RADIUS Responses*. Click *OK*.

**To create a RADIUS SSO user group:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *RADIUS Single Sign-On (RSSO)*.
4. In *RADIUS Attribute Value*, enter the name of the RADIUS user group that this local user group represents.
5. Click *OK*.

## Configuring security policies

The following security policies are required for RADIUS SSO:

| Sequence Number | From | To | Type | Schedule | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | internal | wan1 | RADIUS SSO | Business hours | Authenticate outgoing user traffic |
| 2 | internal | wan1 | Regular | Always | Allow essential network services and VoIP |
| 3 | dmz | wan1 | Regular | Always | Allow servers to access the Internet |
| 4 | internal | dmz | Regular | Always | Allow users to access servers |
| 5 | any | any | Deny | Always | Implicit policy denying all traffic that has not been matched |

You must place the RADIUS SSO policy at the top of the policy list so that it is matched first. The only exception to this is if you have a policy to deny access to a list of banned users. In this case, you must put that policy at the top so that the RADIUS SSO does not mistakenly match a banned user or IP address.

You must configure lists before creating security policies.

### Schedule

You must configure a business_hours schedule. You can configure a standard Monday to Friday 8 AM to 5 PM schedule, or whatever days and hours covers standard work hours at the company.

### Address groups

You must configure the following address groups:

| Name | Interface | Address range included |
|---|---|---|
| internal_network | internal | 10.11.102.110 to 10.11.102.250 |
| company_servers | dmz | 10.11.101.110 to 10.11.101.250 |

### Service groups

You must configure the service groups. The services listed are suggestions and you may include more or less as required:

| Name | Interface | Description of services to be included |
|---|---|---|
| essential_network_services | internal | Any network protocols required for normal network operation such as DNS, NTP, BGP |
| essential_server_services | dmz | All the protocols required by the company servers such as BGP, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, IMAP, POP3, SMTP, IKE, SQL, MYSQL, NTP, TRACEROUTE, SOCKs, and SNMP |
| user_services | internal | Any protocols required by users such as HTTP, HTTPS, FTP |

The following security policy configurations are basic and only include logging and default AV and IPS. These policies allow or deny access to non-RADIUS SSO traffic. These are essential as network services including DNS, NTP, and FortiGuard require access to the Internet.

### To configure security policies:

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the policy as follows, then click *OK*:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Incoming Interface** | Internal |
| **Source Address** | internal_network |
| **Outgoing Interface** | wan1 |
| **Destination Address** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Service** | essential_network_services |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | ON |
| **Security Profiles** | ON: AntiVirus, IPS |
| **Log Allowed Traffic** | ON |
| **Comments** | Essential network services |

4. Click *Create New*, and configure the new policy as follows, then click *OK*:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Incoming Interface** | dmz |
| **Source Address** | company_servers |
| **Outgoing Interface** | wan1 |
| **Destination Address** | all |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | essential_server_services |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | ON |
| **Security Profiles** | ON: AntiVirus, IPS |
| **Log Allowed Traffic** | enable |
| **Comments** | Company servers accessing the Internet |

5. Click *Create New*, and configure the new policy as follows, then click *OK*:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Incoming Interface** | Internal |
| **Source Address** | internal_network |
| **Outgoing Interface** | dmz |
| **Destination Address** | company_servers |
| **Schedule** | always |
| **Service** | all |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | ON |
| **Security Profiles** | ON: AntiVirus, IPS |
| **Log Allowed Traffic** | enable |
| **Comments** | Access company servers |

6. Click *Create New*, and configure the RADIUS SSO policy as follows, then click *OK*. This policy allows access for members of specific RADIUS groups.

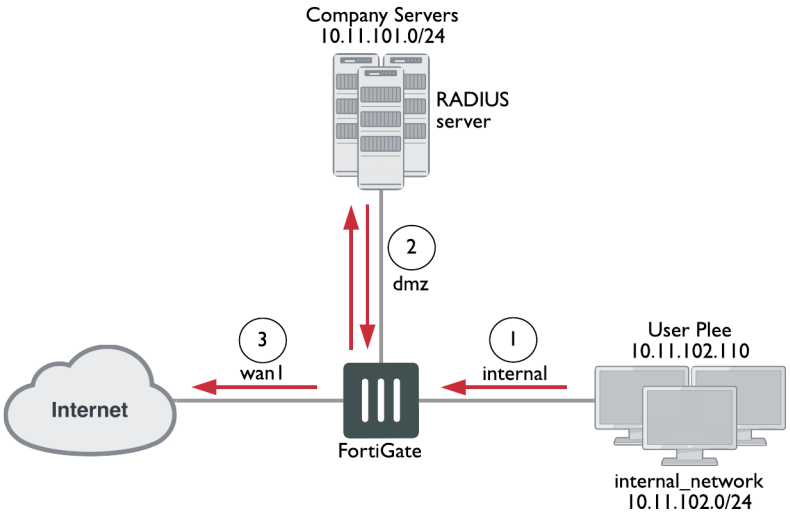
| | |
|---|---|
| **Incoming Interface** | Internal |
| **Source Address** | internal_network |
| **Source User(s)** | Select the user groups that you created for RSSO. |
| **Outgoing Interface** | wan1 |
| **Destination Address** | all |
| **Schedule** | business_hours |
| **Service** | ALL |
| **Action** | ACCEPT |
| **NAT** | ON |
| **Security Profiles** | ON: AntiVirus, Web Filter, IPS, and Email Filter. In each case, select the default profile. |

7. Place the RSSO policy higher in the security policy list than more general policies for the same interfaces. Click *OK*.

**To test the configuration:**

Once configured, a user only needs to log in to their PC using their RADIUS account. After that, when they attempt to access the Internet, the FortiGate uses their session information to get their RADIUS information. Once the user is verified, they can access the website.

1. The user logs on to their PC and tries to access the Internet.
2. The FortiGate contacts the RADIUS server for the user's information. Once confirmed, the user can access the Internet. Each step generates logs that enable you to verify that each step succeeded.
3. If a step does not succeed, confirm that your configuration is correct.




## RSA ACE (SecurID) servers

SecurID is a two-factor system produced by the company RSA that uses one-time password (OTP) authentication. This system consists of the following:

- Portable tokens that users carry
- RSA ACE/Server
- Agent host (the FortiGate)

When using SecurID, users carry a small device or "token" that generates and displays a pseudo-random password. According to RSA, each SecurID authenticator token has a unique 64-bit symmetric key that is combined with a powerful algorithm to generate a new code every 60 seconds. The token is time-synchronized with the SecurID RSA ACE/Server.

The RSA ACE/Server is the SecurID system's management component. It stores and validates the information about the SecurID tokens allowed on your network. Alternately, the server can be an RSA SecurID 130 appliance.

The agent host is the server on your network. In this case, this is the FortiGate, which intercepts user logon attempts. The agent host gathers the user ID and password entered from the SecurID token and sends the information to the RSA ACE/Server for validation. If valid, the RSA ACE/Server returns a reply indicating that it is a valid logon and FortiOS allows the user access to the network resources specified in the associated security policy.

Configuring SecurID with FortiOS consists of the following:

1. Configure the RSA and RADIUS servers to work with each other. See RSA server documentation.
2. Do one of the following:
   a. Configure the RSA SecurID 130 appliance.
   b. Configure the FortiGate as an agent host on the RSA ACE/Server.
3. Configure the RADIUS server in FortiOS.
4. Create a SecurID user group.
5. Create a SecurID user.
6. Configure authentication with SecurID.

The following instructions are based on RSA ACE/Server 5.1 and RSA SecurID 130 appliance. They assume that you have successfully completed all external RSA and RADIUS server configuration.

In this example, the RSA server is on the internal network and has an IP address of 192.128.100.000. The FortiOS internal interface address is 192.168.100.3. The RADIUS shared secret is fortinet123, and the RADIUS server is at IP address 192.168.100.202.

### To configure the RSA SecurID 130 appliance:

1. Log on to the SecurID IMS console.
2. Go to *RADIUS* > *RADIUS clients*, then select *Add New*.

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| **RADIUS Client Basics** | |
| Client Name | FortiGate |
| Associated RSA Agent | FortiGate |
| **RADIUS Client Settings** | |
| IP Address | Enter the FortiOS internal interface. In this example, it is 192.168.100.3. |
| Make / Model | Select *Standard Radius*. |
| Shared Secret | Enter the RADIUS shared secret. In this example, it is fortinet123. |

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Accounting | Leave unselected. |
| Client Status | Leave unselected. |

3. Configure your FortiGate as a SecurID client:
4. Click *Save*.

**To configure the FortiGate as an agent host on the RSA ACE/Server:**

1. On the RSA ACE/Server, go to *Start* > *Programs* > *RSA ACE/Server*, then *Database Administration - Host Mode*.
2. From the *Agent Host* menu, select *Add Agent Host*.
3. Configure the following:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Name | FortiGate |
| Network Address | Enter the FortiOS internal interface. In this example, it is 192.168.100.3. |
| Secondary Nodes | You can optionally enter other IP addresses that resolve to the FortiGate. |

For more information, see the RSA ACE/Server documentation.

**To configure the RADIUS server in FortiOS:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*, then click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Name | RSA |
| Authentication method | Select *Default*. |
| **Primary Server** | |
| IP/Name | 192.168.100.102. You can click *Test* to ensure the IP address is correct and that FortiOS can contact the RADIUS server. |
| Secret | fortinet123 |

3. Click *OK*.

**To create a SecurID user group:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Name | RSA_group |
| Type | Firewall |

3. In *Remote Groups*, click *Add*, then select the RSA server.
4. Click *OK*.

**To create a SecurID user:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| User Type | Remote RADIUS User |
| Type | wloman |
| RADIUS Server | RSA |
| Contact Info | (Optional) Enter email or SMS information. |
| User Group | RSA_group |

3. Click *Create*.

You can test the configuration by entering the `diagnose test authserver radius RSA auto wloman 11111111` command. The series of 1s is the OTP that your RSA SecurID token generates that you enter for access.

## Configuring authentication with SecurID

You can use the SecurID user group in several FortiOS features that authenticate by user group:

- Security policy on page 1496
- IPsec VPN XAuth on page 1497
- PPTP VPN on page 1497
- SSL VPN

Unless stated otherwise, the following examples use default values.

### Security policy

The example creates a security policy that allows HTTP, FTP, and POP3 traffic from the internal interface to WAN1. If these interfaces are not available in FortiOS, substitute other similar interfaces.

**To configure a security policy with SecurID authentication:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.

3. Configure the following:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Incoming Interface | internal |
| Source Address | all |
| Source User(s) | RSA_group |
| Outgoing Interface | wan1 |
| Destination Address | all |
| Schedule | always |
| Service | HTTP, FTP, POP3 |
| Action | ACCEPT |
| NAT | On |
| Shared Shaper | If you want to limit traffic or guarantee minimum bandwidth for traffic that uses the SecurID security policy, enable and use the default shaper, guarantee-100kbps. |
| Log Allowed Traffic | Enable if you want to generate usage reports on traffic that this policy has authenticated. |

4. Click *OK*.

### IPsec VPN XAuth

In *VPN* > *IPsec Wizard*, select the SecurID user group on the *Authentication* page. The SecurID user group members must enter their SecurID code to authenticate.

### PPTP VPN

When configuring PPTP in the CLI, set `usrgrp` to the SecurID user group.

### SSL VPN

You must map the SecurID user group to the portal that will serve SecurID users and include the SecurID user group in the security policy's *Source User(s)* field.

#### To map the SecurID group to an SSL VPN portal:

1. Go to *VPN* > *SSL-VPN Settings*.
2. Under *Authentication/Portal Mapping*, click *Create New*.

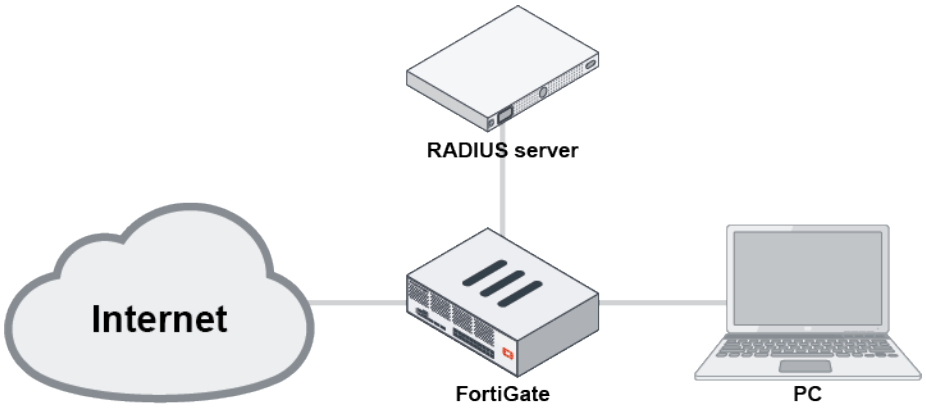
3. Configure the following:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Users/Groups | RSA_group |
| Portal | Select the desired portal. |

4. Click *OK*.

## Support for Okta RADIUS attributes filter-Id and class

RADIUS user group membership information can be returned in the filter-Id (11) and class (25) attributes in RADIUS Access-Accept messages. The group membership information can be used for group matching in FortiGate user groups in firewall policies and for FortiGate wildcard administrators with remote RADIUS authentication.




In this example, a FortiAuthenticator is used as the RADIUS server. A local RADIUS user on the FortiAuthenticator is configure with two groups in the filter-Id attribute: *okta-group1* and *okta-group2*.

**To create the RADIUS user and set the attribute type to override group information:**

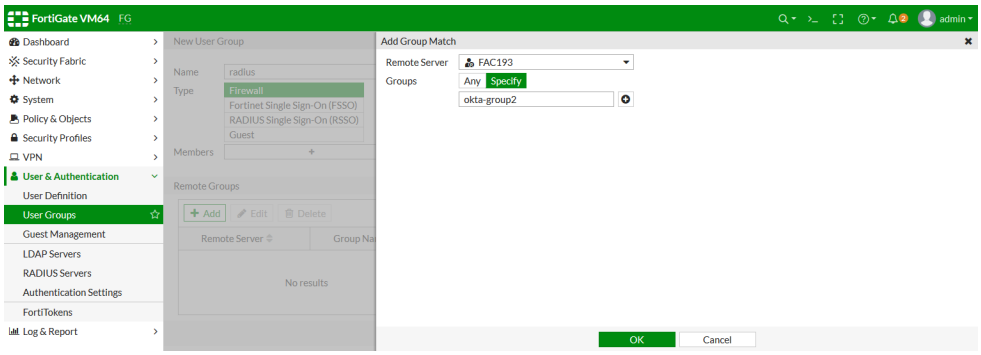
```
config user radius
    edit "FAC193"
        set server "10.1.100.189"
        set secret **********
        set group-override-attr-type filter-Id
    next
end
```

FortiOS will only use the configured filter-Id attribute, even if the RADIUS server sends group names in both class and filter-id attributes. To return group membership information from the class attribute instead, set `group-override-attr-type` to `class`.

**To configure group match in the user group:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Enter a name for the group, and set *Type* to *Firewall*.
4. In the *Remote Groups* table, click *Add*.

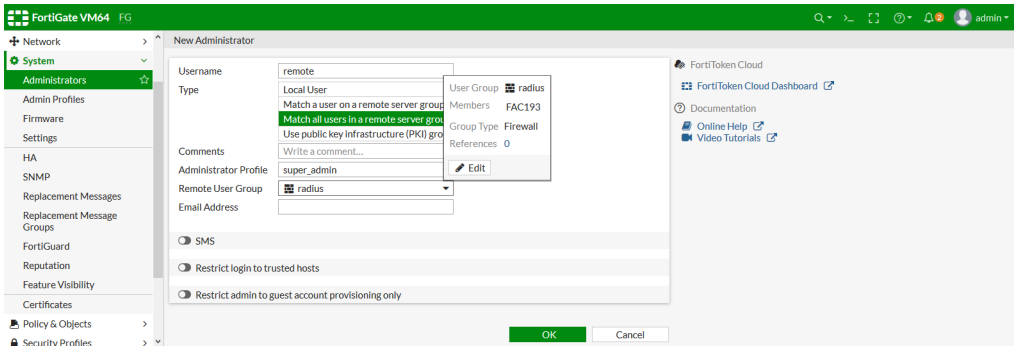
5. Set *Remote Server* to the just created RADIUS server, *FAC193*.
6. Set *Groups* to *Specify*, and enter the group name, `okta-group2`. The string must match the group name configured on the RADIUS server for the filter-Id attribute.




7. Click *OK*.
   The remote server is added to the *Remote Groups* table.
8. Click *OK*.
9. Add the new user group to a firewall policy and generate traffic on the client PC that requires firewall authentication, such as connecting to an external web server.
10. After authentication, on the FortiGate, verify that traffic is authorized in the traffic log:
    a. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
    b. Verify that the traffic was authorized.

**To use the remote user group with group match in a system wildcard administrator configuration:**

1. Go to *System* > *Administrators*.
2. Edit an existing administrator, or create a new one.
3. Set *Type* to *Match all users in a remote server group*.
4. Set *Remote User Group* to the remote server.




5. Configure the remaining settings as required.
6. Click *OK*.
7. Log in to the FortiGate using the remote user credentials on the RADIUS server.
   If the correct group name is returned in the filter-Id attribute, administrative access is allowed.

# TACACS+ servers

TACACS+ is a remote authentication protocol that provides access control for routers, network access servers, and other network devices through one or more centralized servers.

FortiOS sends the following proprietary TACACS+ attributes to the TACACS+ server during authorization requests:

| Attribute | Description |
|---|---|
| `service=<name>` | User must be authorized to access the specified service. |
| `memberof` | Group that the user belongs to. |
| `admin_prof` | Administrator profile (admin access only). |



Only `memberof` and `admin_prof` attributes are parsed in authentication replies.

You can configure up to ten remote TACACS+ servers in FortiOS. You must configure at least one server before you can configure remote users.



A TACACS+ server must first be added in the CLI to make the option visible in the GUI.

**To configure TACACS+ authentication in the CLI:**

1. Configure the TACACS+ server entry:

```
config user tacacs+
    edit "TACACS-SERVER"
        set server <IP address>
        set key <string>
        set authen-type ascii
        set source-ip <IP address>
    next
end
```

2. Configure the remote user group:

```
config user group
    edit "TACACS-GROUP"
        set group-type firewall
        set member "TACACS-SERVER"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the remote user:

```
config system admin
    edit TACACS-USER
        set remote-auth enable
```

```
        set accprofile "super_admin"
        set vdom "root"
        set wildcard enable
        set remote-group "TACACS-GROUP"
    next
end
```

**To configure a TACACS+ server in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *TACACS+ Servers*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the following settings:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Name** | Enter the TACACS+ server name. |
| **Authentication Type** | Select the authentication type used for the TACACS+ server.<br>Selecting *Auto* tries PAP, MSCHAP, and CHAP, in that order. |
| **Server IP/Name** | Enter the domain name or IP address for the primary server. |
| **Server Secret** | Enter the key to access the primary server. |

4. Click *OK*.

# SAML

The following topics provide information about SAML:


- SAML SP for VPN authentication on page 1501

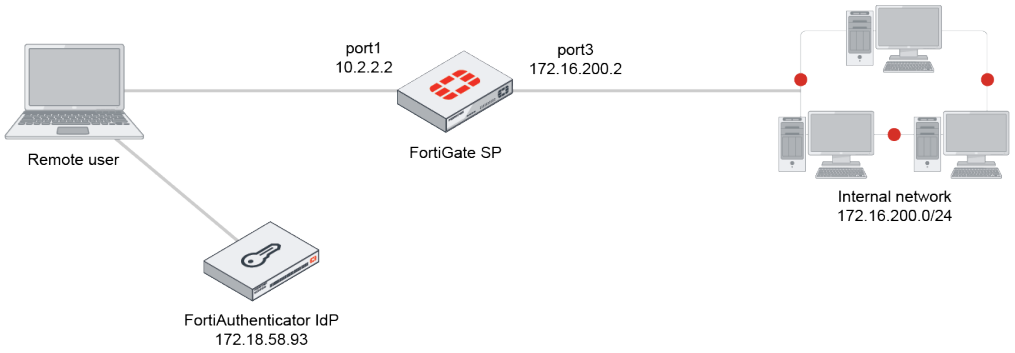

## SAML SP for VPN authentication

When you configure a FortiGate as a service provider (SP), you can create an authentication profile that uses SAML for both firewall and SSL VPN web portal authentication. Once the firewall is authenticated, entering SAML credentials is not required for SSL VPN web portal authentication.



You must use the identity provider's (IdP) remote certificate on the SPs.

The following example uses a FortiGate as an SP and FortiAuthenticator as the IdP server:




**To configure firewall authentication:**

1. Configure the FortiGate SP to be a SAML user:

```
config user saml
    edit "fac-firewall"
        set entity-id "http://10.2.2.2:1000/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.2.2.2:1003/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.2.2.2:1003/saml/logout/"
        set idp-entity-id "http://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/bbbbbb/metadata/"
        set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/bbbbbb/login/"
        set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/bbbbbb/logout/"
        set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_3"
        set user-name "username"
        set group-name "group"
    next
end
```

2. Add the SAML user to the user group (optionally, you can configure group matching):

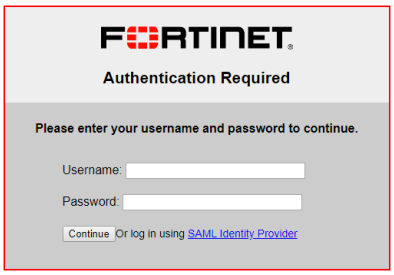
```
config user group
    edit "saml_firewall"
        set member "fac-firewall"
        config match
            edit 1
                set server-name "fac-firewall"
                set group-name "user_group1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

3. Add the SAML user group to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 2
        set srcintf "port3"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "pc4"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic all
        set fsso disable
```

```
        set groups "saml_firewall" "group_local"
        set users "first"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

4. Configure the FortiAuthenticator IdP as needed.
5. Run HTTP/HTTPS authentication for a remote user. The SAML login page appears:




**To configure SSL VPN web portal authentication:**

1. Configure the FortiGate SP to be a SAML user:

```
config user saml
    edit "fac-sslvpn"
        set entity-id "https://10.2.2.2:10443/remote/saml/metadata/"
        set single-sign-on-url "https://10.2.2.2:10443/remote/saml/login/"
        set single-logout-url "https://10.2.2.2:10443/remote/saml/logout/"
        set idp-entity-id "http://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/ssssss/metadata/"
        set idp-single-sign-on-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/ssssss/login/"
        set idp-single-logout-url "https://172.18.58.93:443/saml-idp/ssssss/logout/"
        set idp-cert "REMOTE_Cert_3"
        set user-name "username"
    next
end
```

2. Add the SAML user to the user group (group matching may also be configured):

```
config user group
    edit "saml_sslvpn"
        set member "fac-sslvpn"
    next
end
```

3. Configure SSL VPN:

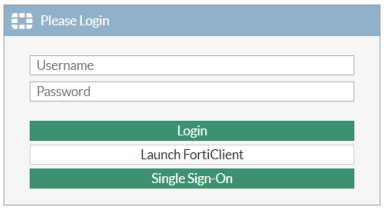
```
config vpn ssl settings
    set servercert "Fortinet_Factory"
    set tunnel-ip-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_ADDR1"
    set tunnel-ipv6-pools "SSLVPN_TUNNEL_IPv6_ADDR1"
    set source-interface "port3"
    set source-address "all"
    set source-address6 "all"
    set default-portal "full-access"
    config authentication-rule
        edit 1
            set groups "saml_sslvpn"
            set portal "web-access"
```

```
        next
    end
end
```

4. Add the SAML user group to a firewall policy:

```
config firewall policy
    edit 8
        set srcintf "ssl.vdom1"
        set dstintf "port1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set groups "local" "saml_sslvpn"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

5. Configure the FortiAuthenticator IdP as needed.
6. Run SSL VPN web mode authentication for a remote user. The SAML login page appears:




# Authentication Settings

You can configure general authentication settings, including timeout, protocol support, and certificates.



You cannot customize FTP and Telnet authentication replacement messages.

**To configure authentication settings using the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *Authentication Settings*.
2. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| Authentication Timeout | Enter the desired timeout in minutes. You can enter a number between 1 and 1440 (24 hours). The authentication timeout controls how long an authenticated connection can be idle before the user must reauthenticate. The default value is 5. |
| Protocol Support | Select the protocols to challenge during firewall user authentication. |

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| | When you enable user authentication within a security policy, the authentication challenge is normally issued for any of four protocols, depending on the connection protocol:<br>• HTTP (you can set this to redirect to HTTPS)<br>• HTTPS<br>• FTP<br>• Telnet<br>The protocols selected here control which protocols support the authentication challenge. Users must connect with a supported protocol first so they can subsequently connect with other protocols. If HTTPS is selected as a protocol support method, it allows the user to authenticate with a customized local certificate.<br>When you enable user authentication within a security policy, FortiOS challenges the security policy user to authenticate. For user ID and password authentication, the user must provide their username and password. For certificate authentication (HTTPS or HTTP redirected to HTTPS only), you can install customized certificates on the unit and the user can also install customized certificates on their browser. Otherwise, users see a warning message and must accept a default Fortinet certificate. The network user's web browser may deem the default certificate invalid. |
| Certificate | If using HTTPS protocol support, select the local certificate to use for authentication. This is available only if *HTTPS* and/or *Redirect HTTP Challenge to a Secure Channel (HTTPS)* are selected. |

**To configure authentication settings using the CLI:**

```
config user setting
   set auth-timeout 5
   set auth-type ftp http https telnet
   set auth-cert Fortinet_Factory
end
```

# FortiTokens

FortiToken is a disconnected one-time password (OTP) generator. It is a small physical device with a button that when pressed displays a six digit authentication code. This code is entered with a user's username and password as two-factor authentication. The code displayed changes every 60 seconds, and when not in use the LCD screen is blank to extend the battery life.

You can attach a lanyard to the FortiToken and wear it around your neck, or store it with other electronic devices. Do not put the FortiToken on a key ring as the metal ring and other metal objects can damage it.

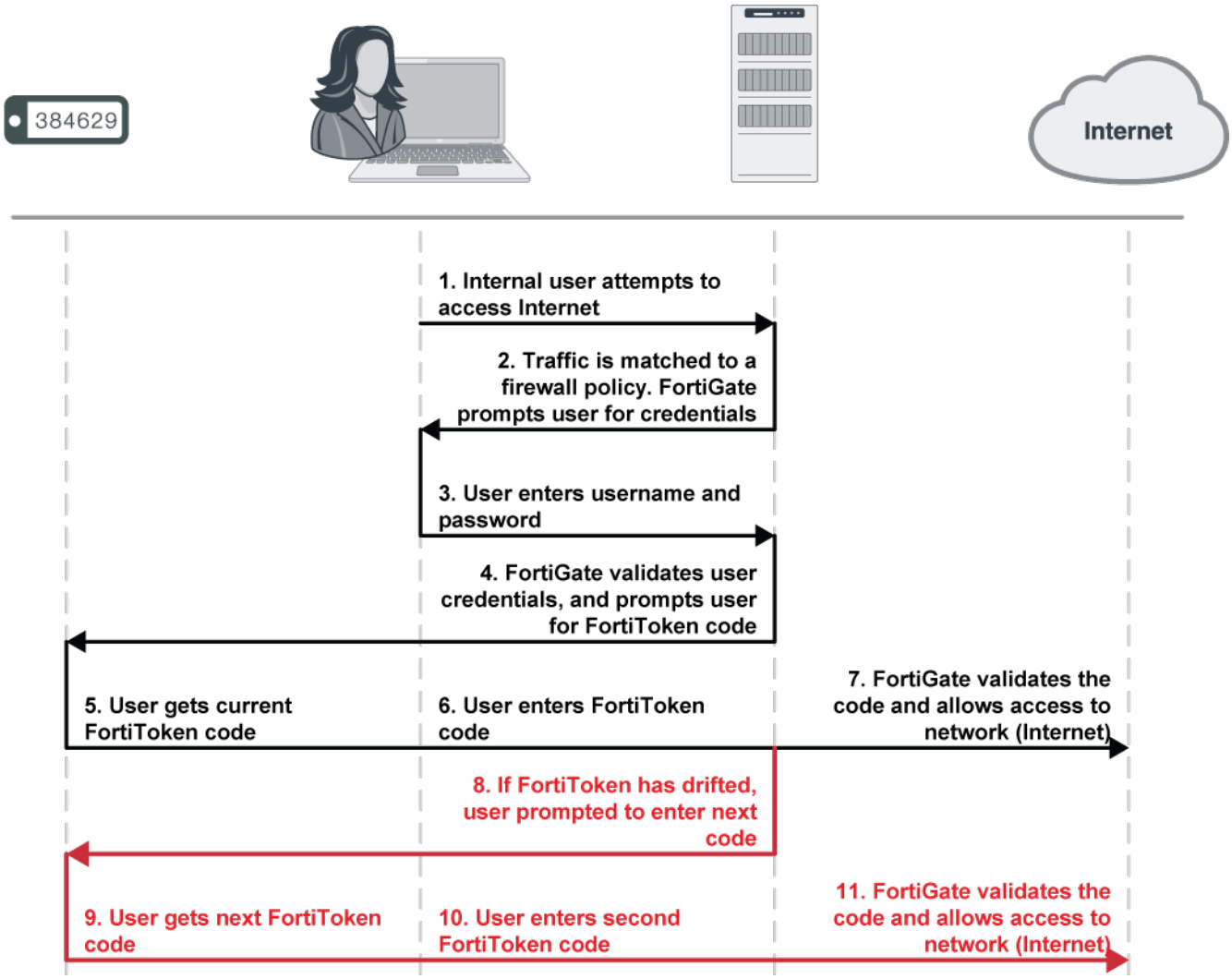
Any time information about the FortiToken is transmitted, it is encrypted. When the FortiGate receives the code that matches a particular FortiToken's serial number, it is delivered and stored encrypted.

The following illustrates the FortiToken two-factor authentication process:

1. The user attempts to access a network resource.
2. FortiOS matches the traffic to an authentication security policy and prompts the user for their username and password.
3. The user enters their username and password.
4. FortiOS verifies their credentials. If valid, it prompts the user for the FortiToken code.
5. The user views the current code on their FortiToken. They enter the code at the prompt.
6. FortiOS verifies the FortiToken code. If valid, it allows the user access to network resources.

If the FortiToken has drifted, the following must take place for the FortiToken to resynchronize with FortiOS:

1. FortiOS prompts the user to enter a second code to confirm.
2. The user gets the next code from the FortiToken. They enter the code at the prompt.
3. FortiOS uses both codes to update its clock to match the FortiToken.




If you attempt to add invalid FortiToken serial numbers, there is no error message. FortiOS does not add invalid serial numbers to the list.

Topics about FortiTokens include the following:


- Configuring FortiTokens on page 1507
- FortiToken Cloud on page 1510
- Starting a FortiToken Cloud trial on page 1
- Steps to use FortiToken Cloud on page 1
- Configuring FortiToken Mobile on page 1510
- FortiToken Mobile Push on page 1512
- FortiToken maintenance on page 1511
- SSL VPN with FortiToken mobile push authentication on page 1386
- SSL VPN with RADIUS and FortiToken mobile push on FortiAuthenticator on page 1396


# Configuring FortiTokens

Configuring FortiTokens consists of the following steps:

1. Add FortiTokens to FortiOS.
2. Activate FortiTokens.
3. Associate FortiTokens with user accounts.

## Adding FortiTokens to FortiOS

You can add FortiTokens to FortiOS in the following ways:

- Add FortiToken serial numbers/activation codes using the GUI
- Add FortiToken serial numbers/activation codes using the CLI
- Import FortiTokens using a serial number or seed file using the GUI
- Import FortiTokens from an external source using the CLI



FortiToken Mobile and physical FortiTokens store their encryption seeds on the cloud. You can only register them to a single FortiGate or FortiAuthenticator.

Because FortiToken-200CD seed files are stored on the CD, you can register these tokens on multiple FortiGates and/or FortiAuthenticators, but not simultaneously.

**To manually add single FortiTokens to FortiOS:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *Hard Token* or *Mobile Token*.
4. In the *Serial Number* field, enter one or more FortiToken serial numbers (for hard tokens) or activation codes (for mobile tokens). FortiToken Mobile activation codes are included in the license certificate after you purchase a license. FortiOS includes a license for two mobile tokens.
5. Click *OK*.

**To add multiple FortiTokens to FortiOS using the CLI:**

```
config user fortitoken
   edit <serial_number>
   next
```

```
   edit <serial_number2>
   next
end
```

**To import multiple FortiTokens to FortiOS using the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. For *Type*, select *Hard Token*.
4. Click *Import*.
5. Select *Serial Number File* or *Seed File*.
6. Click *Upload*.
7. Browse to the file's location on your local machine, select the file, then click *OK*.
8. Click *OK*.

**To import multiple FortiTokens to FortiOS from an external source using the CLI:**

You can import physical and mobile FortiToken seed files from a FTP or TFTP server or USB drive.

```
execute fortitoken import ftp <file name> <ip>[:ftp port] <Enter> <user> <password>
execute fortitoken import tftp <file name> <ip>
execute fortitoken import usb <file name>
```



To import FortiToken Mobile seed files, replace `fortitoken` with `fortitoken-mobile`.

## Activating FortiTokens

You must activate the FortiTokens. During activation, FortiOS queries FortiGuard servers about each FortiToken's validity. FortiOS encrypts the serial number and information before sending for added security. FortiOS requires connection to FortiGuard servers for FortiToken activation.

**To activate a FortiToken using the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *FortiTokens*.
2. Select the desired FortiTokens that have an Available status.
3. Right-click the FortiToken entry, then select *Activate*.
4. Click *Refresh*. The selected FortiTokens' statuses change to *Activated*.

**To activate a FortiToken using the CLI:**

```
config user fortitoken
   edit <token_serial_num>
      set status activate
   next
end
```

## Associating FortiTokens with user accounts

You can associate FortiTokens with local user or administrator accounts.

**To associate a FortiToken to a local user account using the GUI:**

1. Ensure that you have successfully added your FortiToken serial number to FortiOS and that its status is Available.
2. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*. Edit the desired user account.
3. In the *Email Address* field, enter the user's email address.
4. Enable *Two-factor Authentication*.
5. From the *Token* dropdown list, select the desired FortiToken serial number.
6. Click *OK*.



For a mobile token, click *Send Activation Code* to send the activation code to the configured email address. The user uses this code to activate their mobile token. You must have configured an email service in *System* > *Settings* to send the activation code.

**To associate a FortiToken to a local user account using the CLI:**

```
config user local
   edit <username>
      set type password
      set passwd "myPassword"
      set two-factor fortitoken
      set fortitoken <serial_number>
      set email-to "username@example.com"
      set status enable
   next
end
```

**To associate a FortiToken to an administrator account using the GUI:**

1. Ensure that you have successfully added your FortiToken serial number to FortiOS and that its status is Available.
2. Go to *System* > *Administrators*. Edit the admin account. This example assumes that the account is fully configured except for two-factor authentication.
3. In the *Email Address* field, enter the administrator's email address.
4. Enable *Two-factor Authentication*.
5. From the *Token* dropdown list, select the desired FortiToken serial number.
6. Click *OK*.



For a mobile token, click *Send Activation Code* to send the activation code to the configured email address. The admin uses this code to activate their mobile token. You must have configured an email service in *System* > *Settings* to send the activation code.

**To associate a FortiToken to an administrator account using the CLI:**

```
config system admin
   edit <username>
      set password "myPassword"
      set two-factor fortitoken
      set fortitoken <serial_number>
      set email-to "username@example.com"
   next
end
```

The `fortitoken` keyword is not visible until you select `fortitoken` for the `two-factor` option.

Before you can use a new FortiToken, you may need to synchronize it due to clock drift.

## FortiToken Cloud

FortiToken Cloud is an Identity and Access Management as a Service (IDaaS) cloud service offering by Fortinet. It enables FortiGate and FortiAuthenticator customers to add MFA for their respective users, through the use of Mobile tokens or Hard tokens. It protects local and remote administrators as well as firewall and VPN users.

For information, see Getting started—FGT-FTC users in the FortiToken Cloud Administration Guide.

## Configuring FortiToken Mobile

FortiToken Mobile is an OATH compliant, event-based and time-based OTP generator for mobile devices. FortiToken Mobile produces its OTP codes in an application that you can download onto your Android or iOS mobile device without the need for a physical token.

FortiToken Mobile allows you to install multiple tokens for multi-factor authentication (MFA).

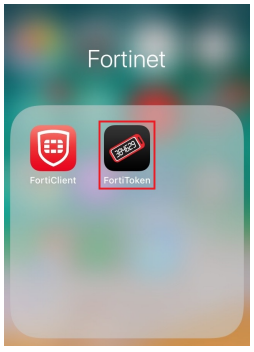
You can download the free FortiToken Mobile application for Android from the Google Play store, and for iOS from the Apple App Store.

After your system administrator assigns your token, you receive a notification with an activation code and expiry date via SMS or email. If you do not activate your token by the expiry date, you must contact your system administrator so that they can reassign your token for activation.

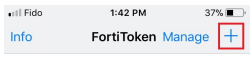
The following instructions describe procedures when using FortiToken Mobile for iOS on an iPhone. Procedures may vary depending on your device and OS.

**To activate a Fortinet or third-party token:**

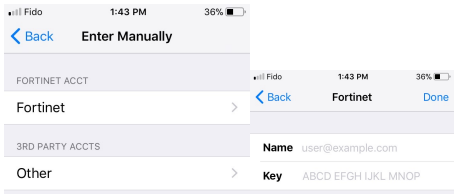
1. On your device, open FortiToken Mobile. If this is your first time opening the application, it may prompt you to create a PIN for secure access to the application and tokens.



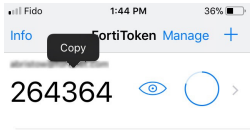

2. Do one of the following:
   a. If you received your notification via email, select + and use the device camera to scan the token QR code in your email.




**b.** If you received your notification via SMS, select *Enter Manually*, then select *Fortinet* or *Other* to add the token as a third-party token. In the *Name* field, enter your email address. In the *Key* field, enter the activation key. Select *Done*.




3. FortiToken Mobile provisions and activates your token and generates token codes immediately. To view the OTP's digits, select the eye icon. After you open the application, FortiToken Mobile generates a new six-digit OTP every 30 seconds. All configured tokens display on the app's homescreen.




---

The MFA process commonly involves:

- **Something you know**: User password
- **Something you have**: The FortiToken OTP

A third factor of authentication may also be added to the authentication process:

- **Something you are**: Your fingerprint or face

---

**To use FortiToken Mobile tokens:**

1. Open FortiToken Mobile.
2. Tap and hold on the OTP code to copy the OTP.
3. Go to where you need to present the token's OTP, such as the FortiClient VPN client or an online portal page.
4. Paste the OTP and log in to pass the 2FA authentication process.

## FortiToken maintenance

**To change a FortiToken's status:**

```
config user fortitoken
   edit <token_serial_num>
      set status <active | lock>
   next
end
```

A user who attempts to log in using a locked FortiToken cannot authenticate.

**To list the drift on all configured FortiTokens:**

```
diagnose fortitoken info
FORTITOKEN DRIFT STATUS
FTK2000BHV1KRZCC 0 token already activated, and seed won't be returned
FTK2001C5YCRRVEE 0 token already activated, and seed won't be returned
```

```
FTKMOB4B94972FBA 0 provisioned
FTKMOB4BA4BE9B84 0 new
Total activated token: 0
Total global activated token: 0
Token server status: reachable
```

This command lists the serial number and drift for each configured FortiToken. You can check if it is necessary to synchronize the FortiGate and any particular FortiTokens.

### FortiToken Mobile Push

You can configure the FortiToken Mobile Push services IP address and port number. Apple (APNS) and Google (GCM) provide the Push service for iPhone and Android, respectively. This helps to avoid locking tokens after disabling an already enabled two-factor authentication user.

```
config system ftm-push
   set server-ip <ip-address>
   set server-port [1-65535]
end
```

The default server port is 4433.

The server IP address is the public IP address of the FortiOS interface that the FTM calls back to. FortiOS uses this IP address for incoming FTM calls.

If an SSL VPN user authenticates with their token, then logs out and attempts to reauthenticate within a minute, a *Please wait x seconds to login again* message displays. This replaces a previous error/permission denied message. The x value depends on the calculation of how much time is left in the current time step.

```
config system interface
   edit <name>
      set allowaccess ftm
   next
end
```



FortiOS supports FortiAuthenticator-initiated FTM Push notifications for users attempting to authenticate through a VPN and/or RADIUS (with FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS server).

## Configuring the maximum log in attempts and lockout period

Failed log in attempts can indicate malicious attempts to gain access to your network. To prevent this security risk, you can limit the number of failed log in attempts. After the configured maximum number of failed log in attempts is reached, access to the account is blocked for the configured lockout period.

**To configure number of maximum log in attempts:**

This example sets the maximum number of log in attempts to five.

```
config user setting
   set auth-lockout-threshold 5
end
```

**To configure the lockout period in seconds:**

This example sets the lockout period to five minutes (300 seconds).

```
config user setting
   set auth-lockout-duration 300
end
```

# PKI

The following topics include information about public key infrastructure (PKI):


- Creating a PKI/peer user on page 1513
- SSL VPN with certificate authentication on page 1424
- SSL VPN with LDAP-integrated certificate authentication on page 1373


## Creating a PKI/peer user

A PKI/peer user is a digital certificate holder. A FortiOS PKI user account contains the information required to determine which CA certificate to use to validate the user's certificate. You can include a peer user in a firewall user group or peer certificate group used in IPsec VPN.

To define a peer user, you need the following:

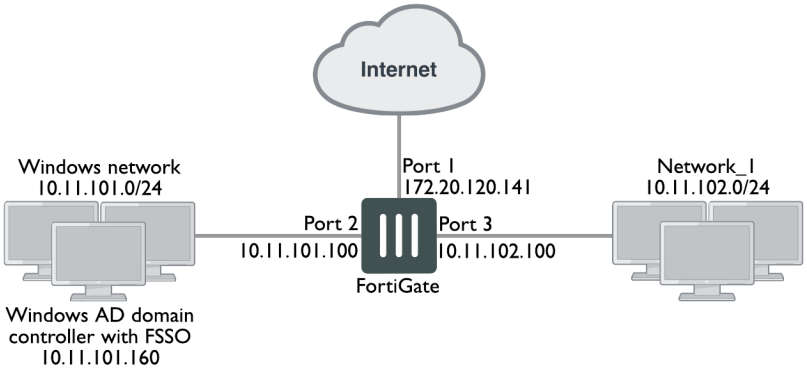
- Peer username
- Text from the user's certificate's subject field, or the name of the CA certificate used to validate the user's certificate

**To create a peer user for PKI authentication:**

```
config user peer
   edit peer1
      set subject peer1@mail.example.com
      set ca CA_Cert_1
   next
end
```

You can add or modify other configuration settings for PKI authentication, including configuring using an LDAP server to check client certificate access rights. See the *FortiOS CLI Reference*.

# Configuring firewall authentication




In this example, a Windows network is connected to the FortiGate on port 2, and another LAN, Network_1, is connected on port 3.

All Windows network users authenticate when they log on to their network. Engineering and Sales groups members can access the Internet without reentering their authentication credentials. The example assumes that you have already installed and configured FSSO on the domain controller.

LAN users who belong to the Internet_users group can access the Internet after entering their username and password. The example shows two users: User1, authenticated by a password stored in FortiOS; and User 2, authenticated on an external authentication server. Both users are local users since you create the user accounts in FortiOS.

1. Create a locally authenticated user account.
2. Create a RADIUS-authenticated user account.
3. Create an FSSO user group.
4. Create a firewall user group.
5. Define policy addresses.
6. Create security policies.

## Creating a locally authenticated user account

User1 is authenticated by a password stored in FortiOS.

**To create a locally authenticated user account in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| User Type | Local User |
| User Name | User1 |
| Password | hardtoguess1@@1 |
| User Account Status | Enabled |

3. Click *Submit*.

**To create a locally authenticated user account in the CLI:**

```
config user local
   edit user1
      set type password
      set passwd hardtoguess1@@1
   next
end
```

## Creating a RADIUS-authenticated user account

You must first configure FortiOS to access the external authentication server, then create the user account.

**To create a RADIUS-authenticated user account in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | OurRADIUSsrv |
| Authentication method | Default |
| **Primary Server** | |
| IP/Name | 10.11.101.15 |
| Secret | OurSecret |

3. Click *OK*.
4. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Definition*. Click *Create New*.
5. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| User Type | Remote RADIUS User |
| User Name | User2 |
| RADIUS Server | OurRADIUSsrv |
| User Account Status | Enabled |

6. Click *Submit*.

**To create a RADIUS-authenticated user account in the CLI:**

```
   config user radius
   edit OurRADIUSsrv
      set server 10.11.102.15
      set secret OurSecret
      set auth-type auto
   next
end
config user local
```

```
    edit User2
      set name User2
      set type radius
      set radius-server OurRADIUSsrv
    next
end
```

## Creating an FSSO user group

This example assumes that you have already set up FSSO on the Windows network and that it used advanced mode, meaning that it uses LDAP to access user group information. You must do the following:

- Configure LDAP access to the Windows AD global catalog
- Specify the collector agent that sends user logon information to FortiOS
- Select Windows user groups to monitor
- Select and add the Engineering and Sales groups to an FSSO user group

**To create an FSSO user group in the GUI:**

1. Configure LDAP for FSSO:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *LDAP Servers*. Click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | ADserver |
| Server Name / IP | 10.11.101.160 |
| Distinguished Name | dc=office,dc=example,dc=com |
| Bind Type | Regular |
| Username | cn=FSSO_Admin,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com |
| Password | Enter a secure password. |

   c. Leave other fields as-is. Click *OK*.
2. Specify the collector agent for FSSO;
   a. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*. Click *Create New*.
   b. Under *Endpoint/Identity*, select *Fortinet Single Sign-On Agent*.

c. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | Enter the Windows AD server name. This name appears in the Windows AD server list when you create user groups. In this example, the name is WinGroups. |
| Server IP/Name | Enter the IP address or name of the server where the agent is installed. The maximum name length is 63 characters. In this example, the IP address is 10.11.101.160. |
| Password | Enter the password of the server where the agent is installed. You only need to enter a password for the collector agent if you configured the agent to require authenticated access.<br>If the TCP port used for FSSO is not the default, 8000, you can run the `config user fsso` command to change the setting in the CLI. |
| Collector Agent AD access mode | Advanced |
| LDAP Server | Select the previously configured LDAP server. In this example, it is ADserver. |
| User/Groups/Organization Units | Select the users, groups, and OUs to monitor. |

d. Click *OK*.

3. Create the FSSO_Internet_users user group:
   a. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*. Click *Create New*.
   b. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | FSSO_Internet_users |
| Type | Fortinet Single Sign-On (FSSO) |
| Members | Engineering, Sales |

   c. Click *OK*.

**To create an FSSO user group in the CLI:**

```
config user ldap
   edit "ADserver"
      set server "10.11.101.160"
      set dn "cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com"
      set type regular
      set username "cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com"
      set password set_a_secure_password
   next
end
config user fsso
   edit "WinGroups"
      set ldap-server "ADserver"
      set password **********
```

```
      set server "10.11.101.160"
   next
end
config user group
   edit FSSO_Internet_users
      set group-type fsso-service
      set member CN=Engineering,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com
           CN=Sales,cn=users,dc=office,dc=example,dc=com
   next
end
```

## Creating a firewall user group

This example shows a firewall user group with only two users. You can add additional members.

**To create a firewall user group in the GUI:**

1. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*. Click *Create New*.
2. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | Internet_users |
| Type | Firewall |
| Members | User1, User2 |

3. Click OK.

**To create a firewall user group in the CLI:**

```
config user group
   edit Internet_users
        set group-type firewall
        set member User1 User2
   next
end
```

## Defining policy addresses

**To define policy addresses:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*.
3. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | Internal_net |

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Type | Subnet |
| IP/Netmask | 10.11.102.0/24 |
| Interface | Port 3 |

4. Click *OK*.
5. Create another new address by repeating steps 2-4 using the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Name | Windows_net |
| Type | Subnet |
| IP/Netmask | 10.11.101.0/24 |
| Interface | Port 2 |

## Creating security policies

You must create two security policies: one for the firewall group connecting through port 3, and one for the FSSO group connecting through port 2.

**To create security policies using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Click *Create New*.
3. Configure the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Incoming Interface | Port2 |
| Source Address | Windows_net |
| Source User(s) | FSSO_Internet_users |
| Outgoing Interface | Port1 |
| Destination Address | all |
| Schedule | always |
| Service | ALL |
| NAT | Enabled. |
| Security Profiles | You can enable security profiles as desired. |

4. Click *OK*.

5. Create another new policy by repeating steps 2-4 using the following settings:

| Setting | Configuration |
|---|---|
| Incoming Interface | Port3 |
| Source Address | Internal_net |
| Source User(s) | Internet_users |
| Outgoing Interface | Port1 |
| Destination Address | all |
| Schedule | always |
| Service | ALL |
| NAT | Enabled. |
| Security Profiles | You can enable security profiles as desired. |

6. Click *OK*.

**To create security policies using the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
     edit 0
     set srcintf port2
     set dstintf port1
     set srcaddr Windows_net
     set dstaddr all
     set action accept
     set groups FSSO_Internet_users
     set schedule always
     set service ANY
     set nat enable
   next
end
config firewall policy
   edit 0
     set srcintf port3
     set dstintf port1
     set srcaddr internal_net
     set dstaddr all
     set action accept
     set schedule always
     set groups Internet_users
     set service ANY
     set nat enable
   next
end
```

# Wireless configuration

See the FortiWiFi and FortiAP Cookbook.

# Switch Controller

Use the Switch Controller function, also known as FortiLink, to remotely manage FortiSwitch units. In the commonly-used layer 2 scenario, the FortiGate that is acting as a switch controller is connected to distribution FortiSwitch units. The distribution FortiSwitch units are in the top tier of stacks of FortiSwitch units and connected downwards with Convergent or Access layer FortiSwitch units. To leverage CAPWAP and the Fortinet proprietary FortiLink protocol, set up data and control planes between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch units.

FortiLink allows administrators to create and manage different VLANs, and apply the full-fledged security functions of FortiOS to them, such as 802.1X authentication and firewall policies. Most of the security control capabilities on the FortiGate are extended to the edge of the entire network, combining FortiGate, FortiSwitch, and FortiAP devices, and providing secure, seamless, and unified access control to users.

The following topics provide information about switch controllers:


- FortiLink setup on page 1522
- Viewing managed FortiSwitches on page 1523
- VLAN interface templates for FortiSwitches on page 1525
- FortiLink auto network configuration policy on page 1529
- FortiLink network sniffer extension on page 1530
- FortiLink MCLAG configuration on page 1532
- Standalone FortiGate as switch controller on page 1533
- HA (A-P) mode FortiGate pairs as switch controller on page 1549
- Authentication and security on page 1566
- Flow and device detection on page 1578
- FortiSwitch multi-tenant support on page 1590
- Persistent MAC learning on page 1593
- Split port mode (for QSFP / QSFP28) on page 1594
- Dynamic VLAN name assignment from RADIUS attribute on page 1596
- MSTI support on page 1596
- Netflow and IPFIX support on page 1597

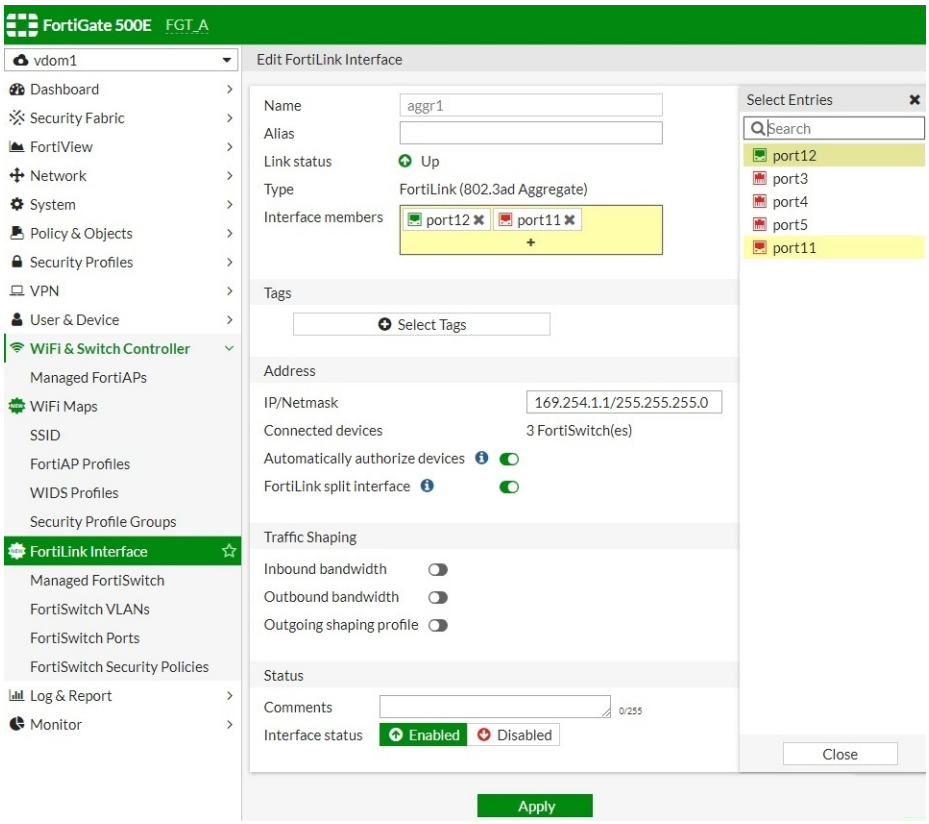

## FortiLink setup

Go to *WiFI & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface* to create or edit FortiLink interfaces. The available options depend on the FortiGate model.

By automatically creating FortiLink interfaces as a logical aggregate or hard/soft switch, you can modify the FortiLink interfaces. If the physical port in use changes, you don't need to migrate existing policies.

**To configure FortiLink interfaces:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.



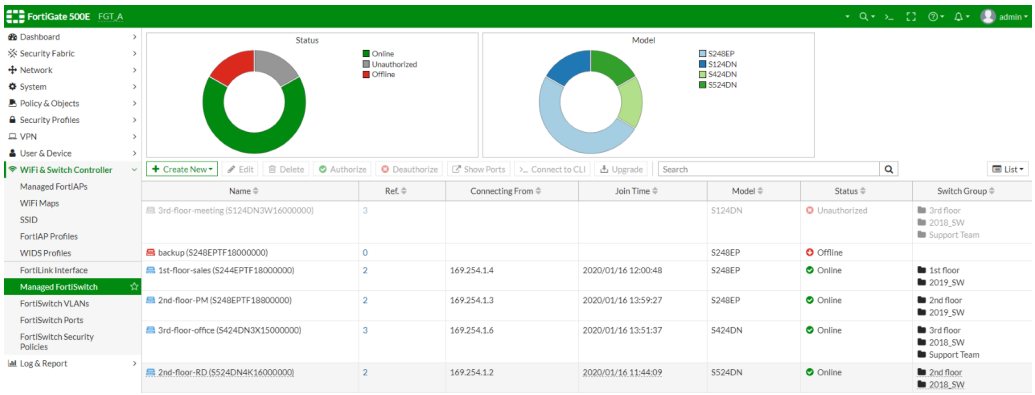

2. Configure the interface settings and click *Apply*.

# Viewing managed FortiSwitches

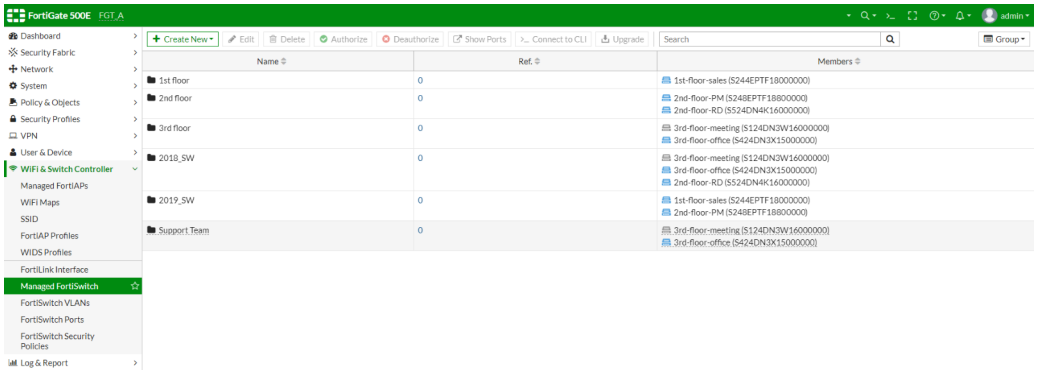
The *Managed FortiSwitch* page includes three view options: *List*, *Group*, and *Topology*. FortiSwitch names and serial numbers can be used as parameters in the *Search* function.

**To view managed FortiSwitches:**

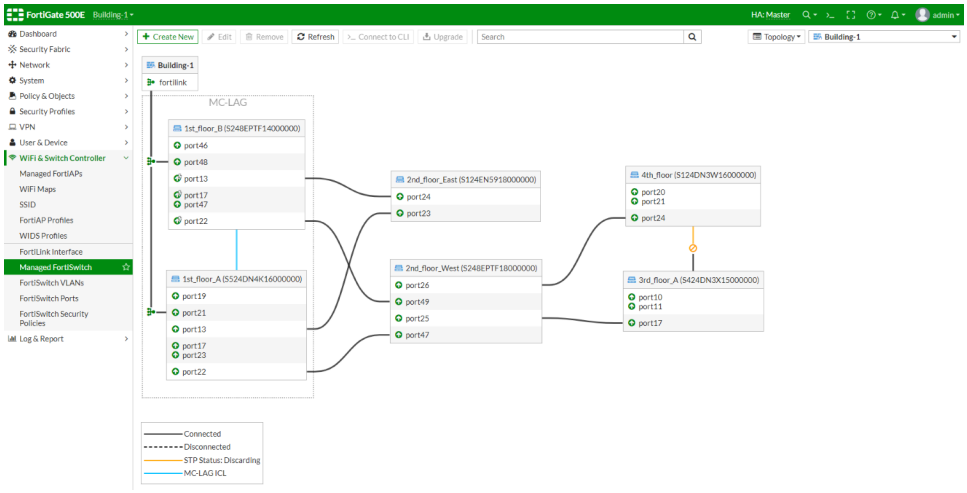
1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. In the toolbar menu, use the dropdown list to change views.
   - *List* view, which includes donut charts for device status and model:



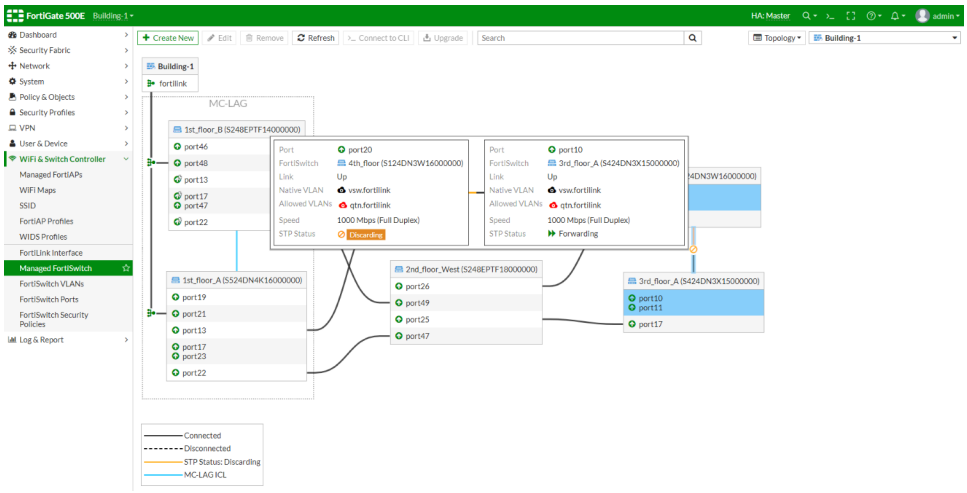

   - *Group* view:



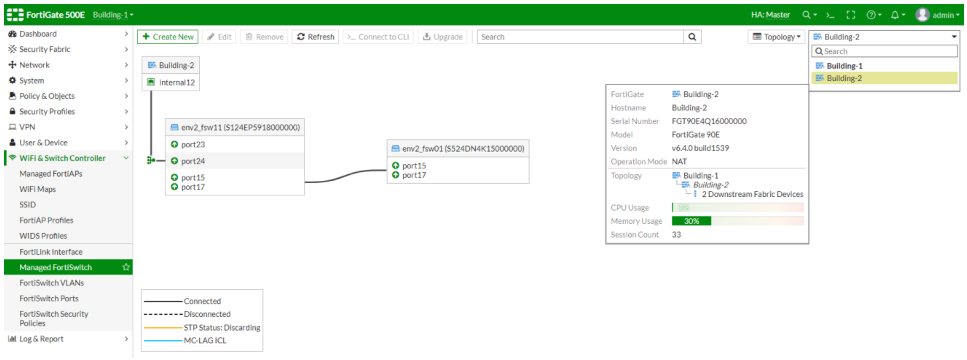

   - *Topology* view:




     Hover over a link between switch ports to view the tooltip:




In the toolbar menu, use the dropdown list to view the *Managed ForitSwitch* page of downstream Security Fabric members:




# VLAN interface templates for FortiSwitches

You can create configuration templates that define the VLAN interfaces and are applied to new FortiSwitch devices when they are discovered and managed by the FortiGate.

For each VDOM, you can create templates, and then assign those templates to the automatically created switch VLAN interfaces for six types of traffic. The network subnet that is reserved for the switch controller can also be customized.

To ensure that switch VLAN interface names are unique for each system, the following naming rules are used:

- root VDOM: the interface names are the same as the template names.
- other VDOMs: the interface name is created from the template name and the SNMP index of the interface. For example, if the template name is *quarantined* and the SNMP index is *29*, then the interface name is *quarantined.29*.

You can also customize the FortiLink management VLAN per FortiLink interface:

```
config system interface
    edit <fortilink interface>
        set fortilink enable
        set switch-controller-mgmt-vlan <integer>
    next
end
```

The management VLAN can be a number from 1 to 4094. the default value is 4094.

## Create VLAN interface templates

**To configure the VLAN interface templates:**

```
config switch-controller initial-config template
    edit <template_name>
        set vlanid <integer>
        set ip <ip/netmask>
        set allowaccess {options}
        set auto-ip {enable | disable}
        set dhcp-server {enable | disable}
    next
end
```

| | |
|---|---|
| <template_name> | The name, or part of the name, of the template. |
| vlanid <integer> | The unique VLAN ID for the type of traffic the template is assigned to (1 - 4094, default = 4094) |
| ip <ip/netmask> | The IP address and subnet mask of the switch VLAN interface. This can only be configured when `auto-ip` is disabled. |
| allowaccess {options} | The permitted types of management access to this interface. |
| auto-ip {enable \| disable} | When enabled, the switch-controller will pick an unused 24 bit subnet from the `switch-controller-reserved-network` (configured in `config system global`). |
| dhcp-server {enable \| disable} | When enabled, the switch-controller will create a DHCP server for the switch VLAN interface |

**To assign the templates to the specific traffic types:**

```
config switch-controller initial-config vlans
    set default-vlan <template>
    set quarantine <template>
    set rspan <template>
    set voice <template>
    set video <template>
    set nac <template>
end
```

| | |
|---|---|
| default-vlan <template> | Default VLAN assigned to all switch ports upon discovery. |
| quarantine <template> | VLAN for quarantined traffic. |
| rspan <template> | VLAN for RSPAN/ERSPAN mirrored traffic. |
| voice <template> | VLAN dedicated for voice devices. |
| video <template> | VLAN dedicated for video devices. |
| nac <template> | VLAN for NAC onboarding devices. |

**To configure the network subnet that is reserved for the switch controller:**

```
config system global
    set switch-controller-reserved-network <ip/netmask>
end
```

The default value is `169.254.0.0 255.255.0.0`.

## Example

In this example, six templates are configured with different VLAN IDs. Except for the default template, all of them have DHCP server enabled. When a FortiSwitch is discovered, VLANs and the corresponding DHCP servers are automatically created.

**To configure six templates and apply them to VLAN traffic types:**

```
config switch-controller initial-config template
    edit "default"
        set vlanid 1
        set auto-ip disable
    next
    edit "quarantine"
        set vlanid 4093
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "rspan"
        set vlanid 4092
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "voice"
        set vlanid 4091
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "video"
        set vlanid 4090
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
    edit "onboarding"
        set vlanid 4089
        set dhcp-server enable
    next
end
config switch-controller initial-config vlans
    set default-vlan "default"
    set quarantine "quarantine"
    set rspan "rspan"
    set voice "voice"
    set video "video"
    set nac "onboarding"
end
```

**To see the automatically created VLANs and DHCP servers:**

```
show system interface
    edit "default"
        set vdom "root"
        set snmp-index 24
        set switch-controller-feature default-vlan
        set interface "fortilink"
        set vlanid 1
    next
    edit "quarantine"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 169.254.11.1 255.255.255.0
        set description "Quarantine VLAN"
        set security-mode captive-portal
        set replacemsg-override-group "auth-intf-quarantine"
        set device-identification enable
        set snmp-index 25
        set switch-controller-access-vlan enable
        set switch-controller-feature quarantine
        set color 6
        set interface "fortilink"
        set vlanid 4093
    next
    ...
end
```

```
show system dhcp server
    edit 2
        set dns-service local
        set ntp-service local
        set default-gateway 169.254.1.1
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "fortilink"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 169.254.1.2
                set end-ip 169.254.1.254
            next
        end
        set vci-match enable
        set vci-string "FortiSwitch" "FortiExtender"
    next
    edit 3
        set dns-service default
        set default-gateway 169.254.11.1
        set netmask 255.255.255.0
        set interface "quarantine"
        config ip-range
            edit 1
                set start-ip 169.254.11.2
                set end-ip 169.254.11.254
            next
        end
        set timezone-option default
    next
```

```
    ...
end
```

# FortiLink auto network configuration policy

The switch controller has a network `auto-config` option which contains configurable defaults, policy customization, and an individual interface override. This gives administrators simple and flexible control.

Following is a description of these options:

| | |
|---|---|
| `auto-config default` | Provides the default actions for the first hop (`fgt-policy`) and lower-tier devices (`isl-policy`). |
| `auto-config policy` | A database containing policies that can be applied as a system-wide default or to a specific interface. |
| `auto-config custom` | Allows for the override of the `auto-config default` on a specific interface. This information is retained and is reapplied if an interface leaves and then is rediscovered. |

**To configure automatic network detection:**

1. Create or modify an auto-config policy:

```
config switch-controller auto-config policy
    edit "test123"
        set qos-policy default      --------> leverage the default qos-policy
        set storm-control-policy auto-config      --------> leverage auto-config storm-
control-policy by default
        set poe-status enable      --------> If target of auto-config is poe port, keep
poe-status enabled by default
    next
end
```

2. Designate the default auto-config policy to FortiLink, ISL, or ICL on managed FortiSwitch devices:

```
config switch-controller auto-config default
    set fgt-policy test123
    set isl-policy test123
    set icl-policy test123
end
```

3. Customize an auto-config policy for a specific FGT, ICL, or ISL interface.

```
config switch-controller auto-config custom
    edit "G5H0E391790XXXX"
        config switch-binding
            edit "S524DN4K1500XXXX"
                set policy <policy>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

# FortiLink network sniffer extension

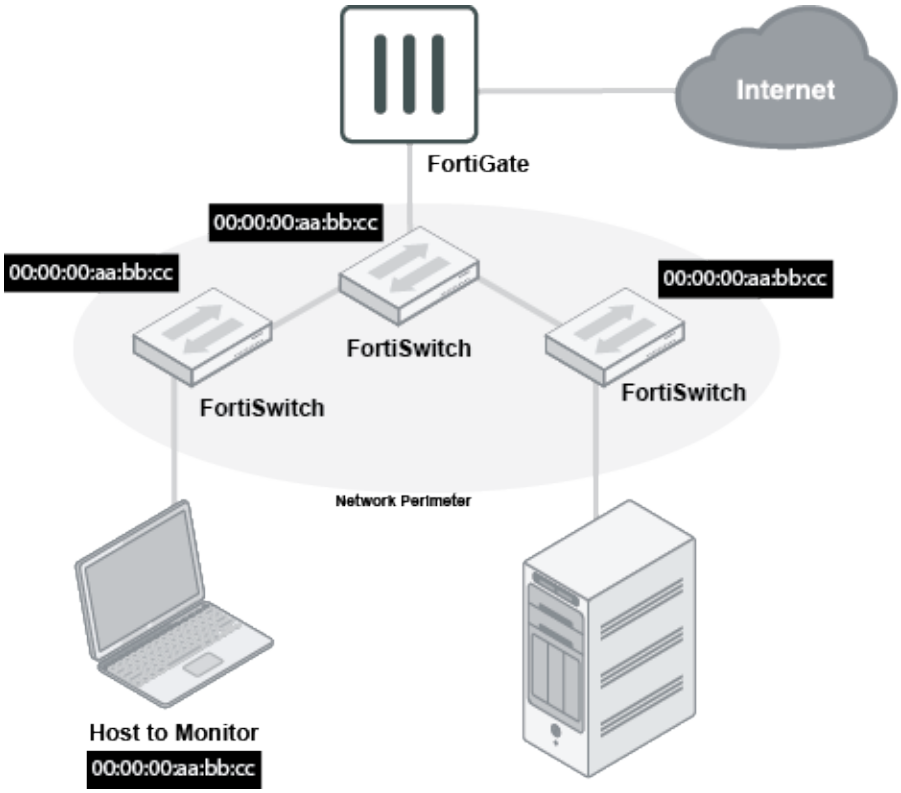
The switch controller has a `traffic-sniffer` option to provide a targeted approach where mirrored traffic is always directed towards the FortiGate on a dedicated VLAN. This allows for easy sniffing by using the CLI or GUI. Also, the traffic can be routed through the FortiGate using Encapsulated Remote Switched Port Analyzer (ERSPAN) for external analysis and storage.

Use this option to define targeted sniffers by IP or MAC address. Traffic matching is replicated to the FortiGate, which is helpful when you know what device you are looking for but don't know where it is located.

FortiLink networks can have multiple switches and traffic typically traverses several switches. If each switch mirrors any match, the sniffer would see multiple copies of traffic. To reduce this, the targets are applied at the perimeter of the FortiSwitch network. Traffic entering by a user port or traffic from FortiGate is considered eligible for mirroring.

You can also enable traditional port-based sniffers in the ingress or egress direction.

All sniffer traffic arrives at the FortiGate using ERSPAN and the traffic is encapsulated in generic routing encapsulation (GRE).




You can only configure this feature using the CLI.

**To use predefined sniffer-used switch VLAN interface:**

```
config system interface
    edit "snf.aggr1"     <---- Created automatically, once first FSW discovered and
authorized.
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 10.254.253.254 255.255.254.0
```

```
        set allowaccess ping
        set description "Sniffer VLAN"
        set snmp-index 33
        set switch-controller-traffic-policy "sniffer"
        set color 6
        set interface "aggr1"
        set vlanid 4092
    next
end
```

**To enable traffic sniffer based on target IP or MAC address on target ports of managed FortiSwitch units:**

```
config switch-controller traffic-sniffer
    set erspan-ip 2.2.2.2
    config target-mac
        edit 11:11:11:11:11:11
        next
    end
    config target-ip
        edit 4.4.4.4
        next
    end
    config target-port
        edit "S524DN4K1500XXXX"
            set in-ports "port2" "port4" "port6"
            set out-ports "port3" "port5" "port7"
        next
    end
end
```

**To use troubleshooting tools:**

```
(root) # diagnose switch-controller switch-info mirror status S524DN4K1500XXXX

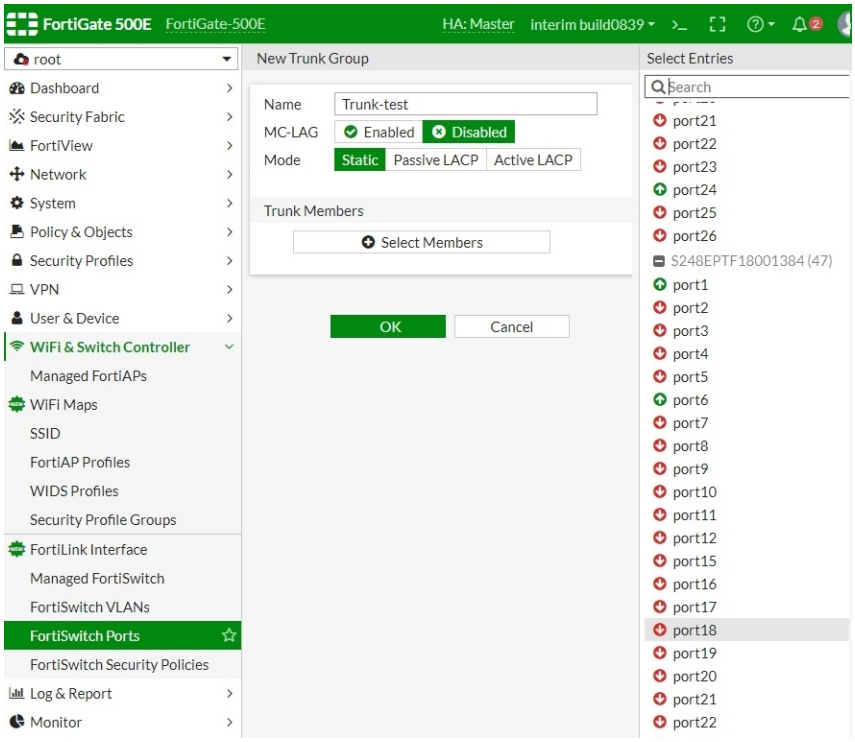
Managed Switch : S524DN4K1500XXXX
flink.sniffer
    Mode                  : ERSPAN-auto
    Status                : Active
    Source-Ports:
        Ingress: port2, port4, port6
        Egress : port3, port5, port7
    Used-by-ACLs          : True
    Auto-config-state     : Resolved/Running
        Last-update  : 1464 seconds ago
        Issues       : None
        Collector-IP : 2.2.2.2
        Source-IP    : 10.254.252.208
        Source-MAC   : 08:5b:0e:ff:40:27
        Next-Hop     :
            IP                   : 10.254.253.254
            MAC                  : 00:09:0f:09:00:0c
            Via-System-Interface : sniffer
            VLAN                 : 4092(tagged)
            Via-Switch-Interface : G5H0E391790XXXX
```

# FortiLink MCLAG configuration

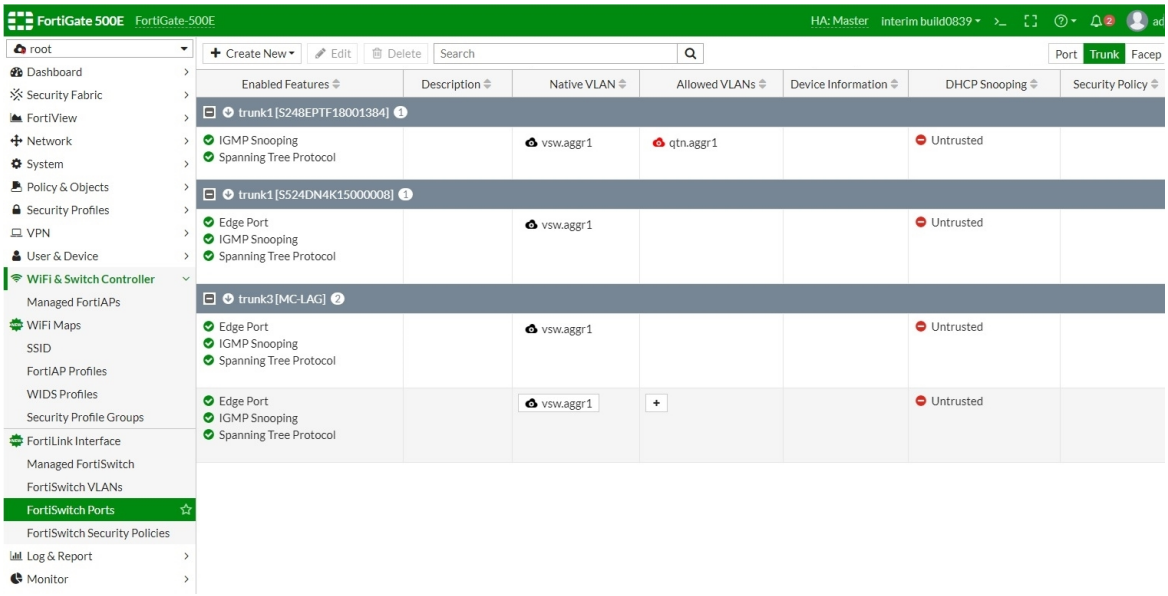
In *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*, you can enable MCLAG and view ports grouped by trunks. You need to configure ports from two switches, that is, two MCLAG peer switches to be included in one MCLAG.

## Sample configuration

In *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*, there is an *MC-LAG* option.



In *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*, there is a *Trunk* view.




# Standalone FortiGate as switch controller

The following topics provide instructions on configuring a standalone FortiGate as a switch controller:

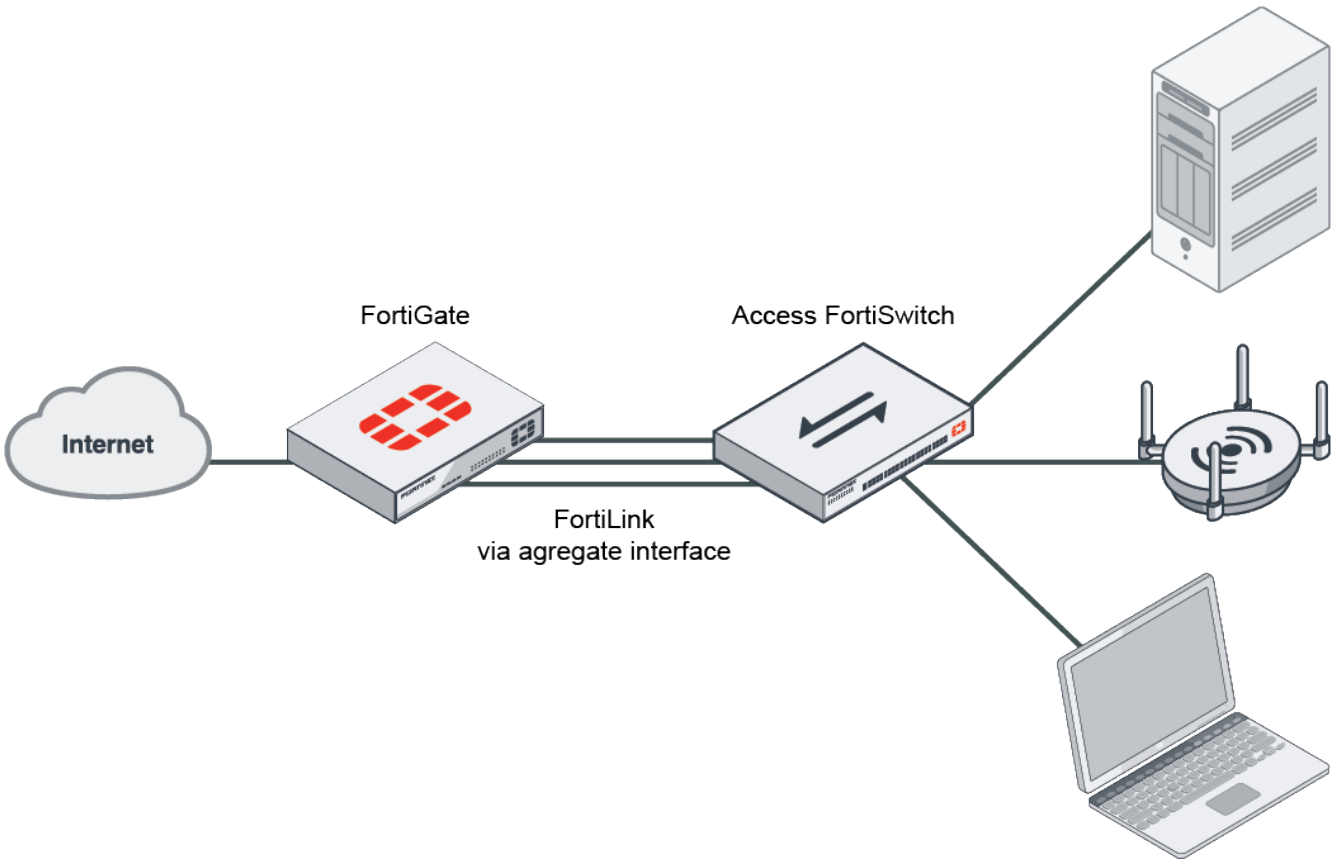
- Standalone FortiGate as switch controller
- Multiple FortiSwitches managed via hardware/software switch on page 1537
- Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with redundant link enabled on page 1541
- Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled only on distribution on page 1545

## Standalone FortiGate as switch controller

In this example, one FortiSwitch is managed by a standalone FortiGate. The FortiGate uses an aggregate interface to operate as a switch controller. This configuration might be used in branch office. It might also be used before increasing the number of connected FortiSwitch units and evolving to a multi-tier structure.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports an aggregate interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.




**Change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**Create an aggregate interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "aggr1"
```

```
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set fortilink enable
        set type aggregate
        set member "port11" "port12"
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select an existing aggregate interface (if there is one) or select one or more physical ports to create an aggregate interface.
3. Configure other fields as necessary.
4. Click *OK*.

**Discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**Extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384

Fortilink interface ... OK
aggr1  enabled

DHCP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec
```

```
ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago

PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

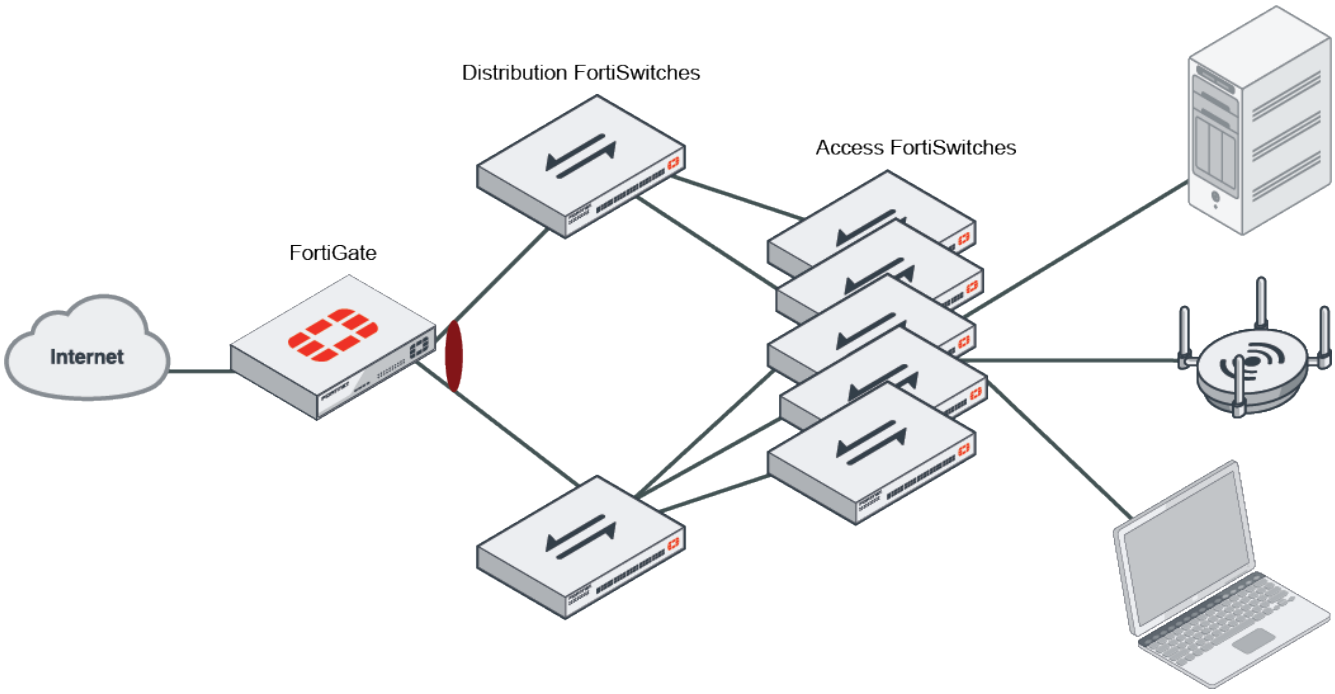
--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

## Multiple FortiSwitches managed via hardware/software switch

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multiple FortiSwitches are managed by a standalone FortiGate as switch controller via hardware or software switch interface; such as when you need multiple distribution FortiSwitches but lack supporting aggregate on FortiGate.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports hardware or software switch interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.




**Change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**Create hardware or software switch interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Create a hardware switch using the CLI:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "hardswitch1"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        config port
            edit "port11"
            next
            edit "port12"
            next
```

```
        end
    next
end
```

Create a software switch using the CLI:

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "softswitch1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set member "port11"  "port12"
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select an existing hardware/software switch interface (if there is one) or select one or more physical ports to create a hardware/software switch interface.
3. Configure other fields as necessary.
4. Click *OK*.

**Discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**Extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Bind FortiLink on hardware switch interface

Fortinet recommends binding FortiLink on the hardware switch interface. Since the hardware switch interface can leverage hardware chips to forward traffic, it does not consume CPU capacity, unlike a software switch.

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384

Fortilink interface ... OK
hardswitch1 enabled

DHCP server ... OK
hardswitch1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
hardswitch1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
```

```
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago

PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

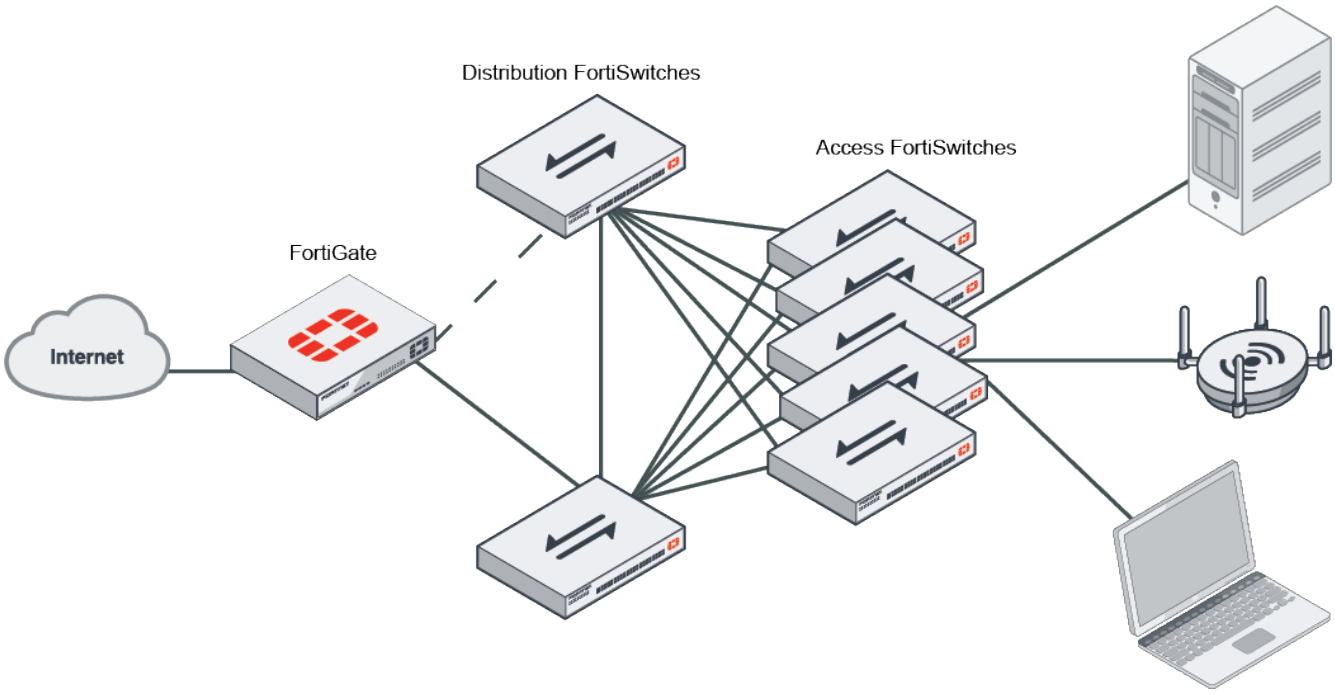
--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

## Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with redundant link enabled

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multi-tier FortiSwitches are managed by a standalone FortiGate as switch controller via aggregate interface, where the FortiGate can provide redundant links to multiple distribution FortiSwitches.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports an aggregate interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.




**To change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**To create an aggregate interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "aggr1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set fortilink enable
        set type aggregate
        set member "port11" "port12"
        set fortilink-split-interface enable
```

```
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select one or more physical ports that are connected to different distribution FortiSwitches to create an aggregate interface.
3. Enable *FortiLink split interface*.
4. Configure other fields as necessary.
5. Click *OK*.

**To discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**To extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
      On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.

2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384

Fortilink interface ... OK
aggr1  enabled

DHCP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
```

```
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago

PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

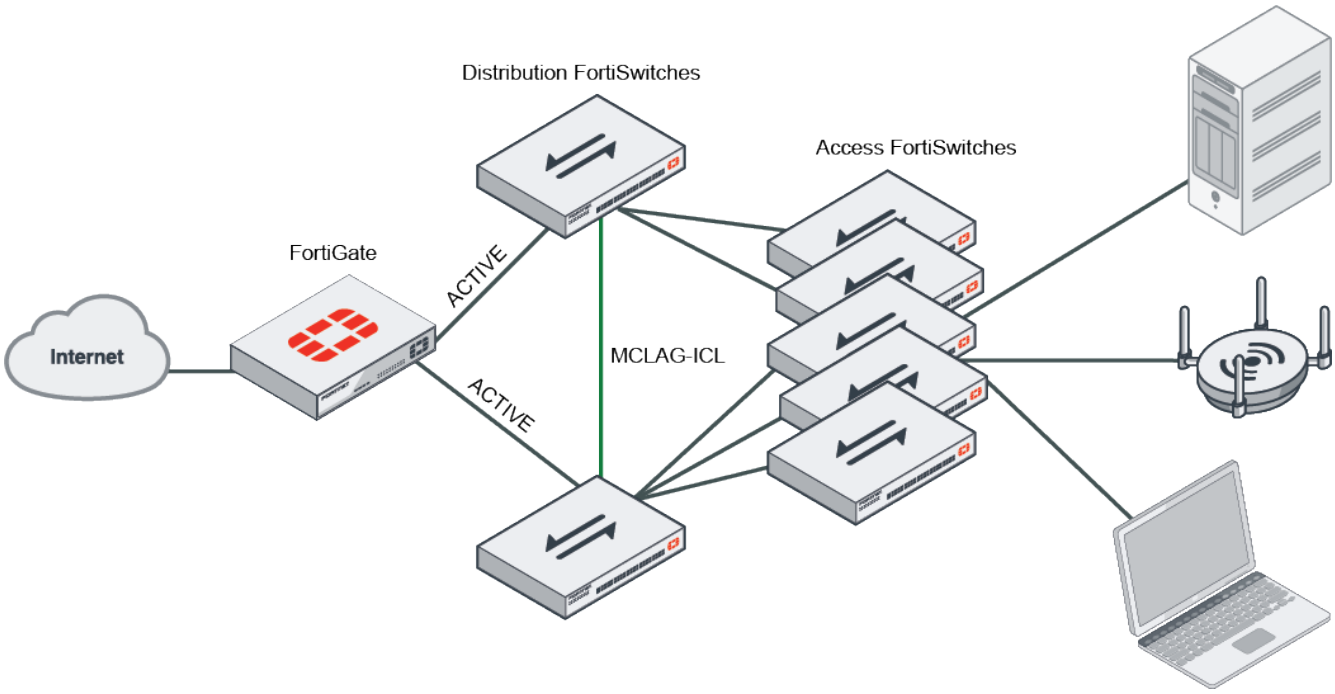
--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

## Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled only on distribution

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multi-tier FortiSwitches are managed by a standalone FortiGate as switch controller via aggregate interface, where the FortiGate can provide active-active links to two distribution FortiSwitches connected to each other by MCLAG.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports an aggregate interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.
- For the FortiSwitch D series, the models above 4 just support MCLAG. For the FortiSwitch E series, the models above 2 just support MCLAG.




**To change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**To create an aggregate interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "aggr1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set fortilink enable
        set type aggregate
        set member "port11" "port12"
        set fortilink-split-interface disable
```

```
    next
end
```

`fortilink-split-interface` must be disabled for MCLAG to work.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select one or more physical ports that are connected to different distribution FortiSwitches to create an aggregate interface.
3. Disable *FortiLink split interface*.
4. Configure other fields as necessary.
5. Click *OK*.

**Discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**Enable MCLAG on the ICL link between the distribution FortiSwitch devices:**

```
conf switch trunk
    edit "4DN4K15000008-0"
        set mclag-icl enable
    next
end
```

When you enable `mclag-icl`, MCLAG on the FortiLink interface is enabled automatically and active-active backup links between the distribution FortiSwitches are established.

**Extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384

Fortilink interface ... OK
aggr1  enabled

DHCP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
```

```
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago

PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

# HA (A-P) mode FortiGate pairs as switch controller

The following topics provide instructions on configuring a FortiGate HA in Active-Passive (A-P) mode as a switch controller:

- Multiple FortiSwitches managed via hardware/software switch on page 1549
- Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with redundant link enabled on page 1553
- Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled only on distribution on page 1557

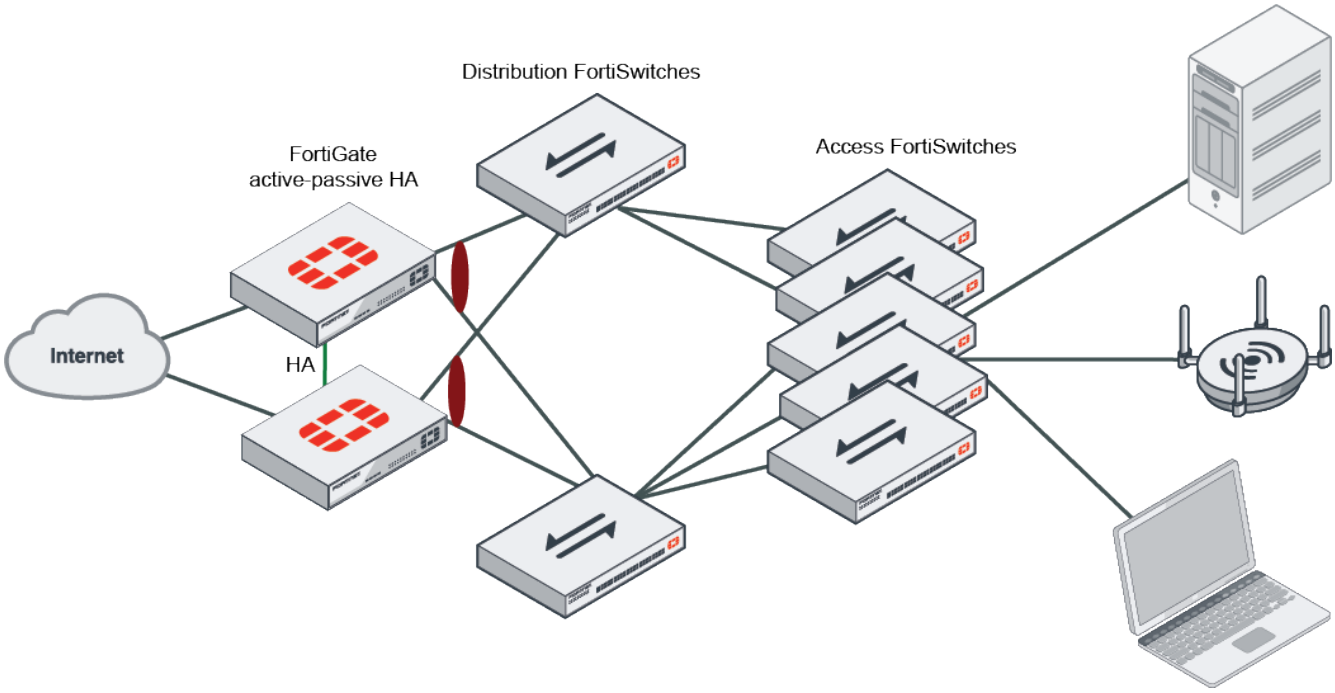
## Multiple FortiSwitches managed via hardware/software switch

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multiple FortiSwitches are managed by an A-P mode HA cluster of FortiGates as switch controller via hardware or software switch interface. An example of common usage is when you need multiple distribution FortiSwitches but lack supporting aggregate on the FortiGate pairs.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports hardware or software switch interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.

- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.




**Change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**Set up an A-P mode HA cluster:**

See HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713.

**Create hardware or software switch interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Create a hardware switch using the CLI:

```
config system virtual-switch
    edit "hardswitch1"
        set physical-switch "sw0"
        config port
            edit "port11"
            next
            edit "port12"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Create a software switch using the CLI:

```
config system switch-interface
    edit "softswitch1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set member "port11"  "port12"
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select an existing hardware/software switch interface (if there is one) or select one or more physical ports to create a hardware/software switch interface.
3. Configure other fields as necessary.
4. Click *OK*.

**Discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**Extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
      On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Bind FortiLink on hardware switch interface

Fortinet recommends binding FortiLink on the hardware switch interface. Since the hardware switch interface can leverage hardware chips to forward traffic, it does not consume CPU capacity, unlike a software switch.

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
# execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384


Fortilink interface ... OK
hardswitch1 enabled

DHCP server ... OK
hardswitch1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
```

```
hardswitch1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago


PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

### HA sync fails

If HA sync fails, use the following command to diagnose and locate the cause.

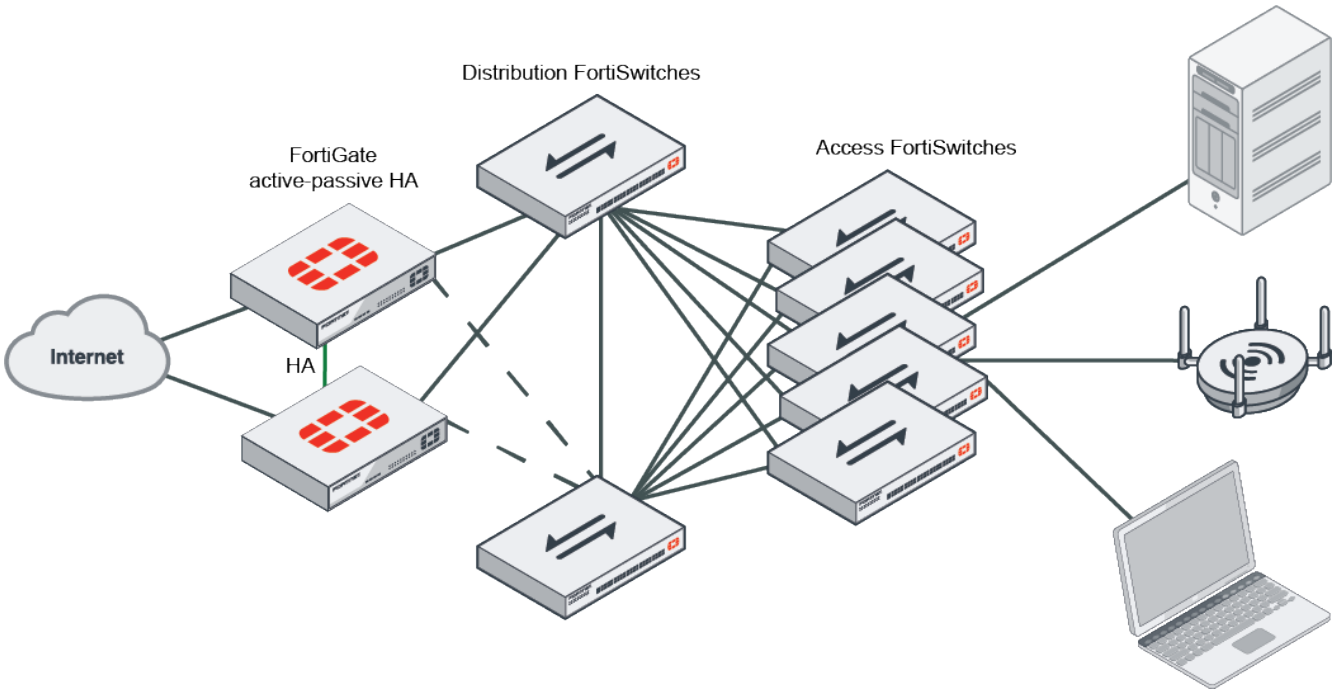
```
# diagnose sys ha checksum cluster
```

## Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with redundant link enabled

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multi-tier FortiSwitches are managed by an A-P mode HA cluster of FortiGates as switch controller via aggregate interface, where each FortiGate cluster member can provide redundant links to multiple (>=2) distribution FortiSwitches.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports an aggregate interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.




**Change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**To set up an A-P mode HA cluster:**

See HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713.

**To create an aggregate interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "aggr1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set fortilink enable
        set type aggregate
        set member "port11" "port12"
        set fortilink-split-interface enable
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select one or more physical ports that are connected to different distribution FortiSwitches to create an aggregate interface.
3. Enable *FortiLink split interface*.
4. Configure other fields as necessary.
5. Click *OK*.

**Discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**Extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384


Fortilink interface ... OK
aggr1  enabled

DHCP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec
```

```
ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago


PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

#### HA sync fails

If HA sync fails, use the command below to diagnose and locate the cause.

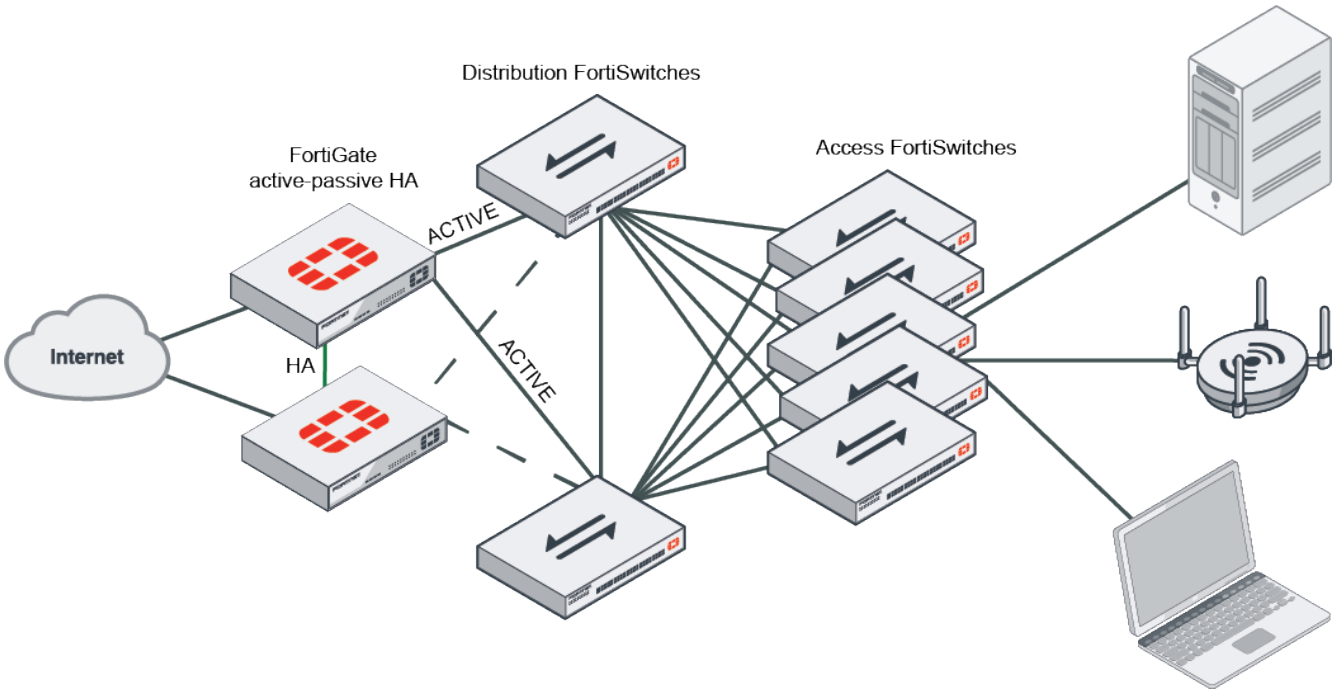
```
# diagnose sys ha checksum cluster
```

## Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled only on distribution

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multi-tier FortiSwitches are managed by an A-P mode HA cluster of FortiGates as switch controller via aggregate interface, where FortiGates provide active-active links to two distribution FortiSwitches connected to each other by MCLAG.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports an aggregate interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.
- For the FortiSwitch D series, the models above 4 just support MCLAG. For the FortiSwitch E series, the models above 2 just support MCLAG.




**To change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**To set up an A-P mode HA cluster:**

See HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713.

**To create an aggregate interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "aggr1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
```

```
        set fortilink enable
        set type aggregate
        set member "port11" "port12"
        set fortilink-split-interface disable
    next
end
```

`fortilink-split-interface` must be disabled for MCLAG to work.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select one or more physical ports that are connected to different distribution FortiSwitches to create an aggregate interface.
3. Disable *FortiLink split interface*.
4. Configure other fields as necessary.
5. Click *OK*.

**To discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**To enable MCLAG on the ICL link between the distribution FortiSwitch devices:**

```
conf switch trunk
    edit "4DN4K15000008-0"
```

```
            set mclag-icl enable
        next
    end
```

When you enable `mclag-icl`, MCLAG on the FortiLink interface is enabled automatically and active-active backup links between the distribution FortiSwitches are established.

**To extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement:
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports:
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384


Fortilink interface ... OK
aggr1  enabled

DHCP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
```

```
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago


PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

#### HA sync fails

If HA sync fails, use the command below to diagnose and locate the cause.

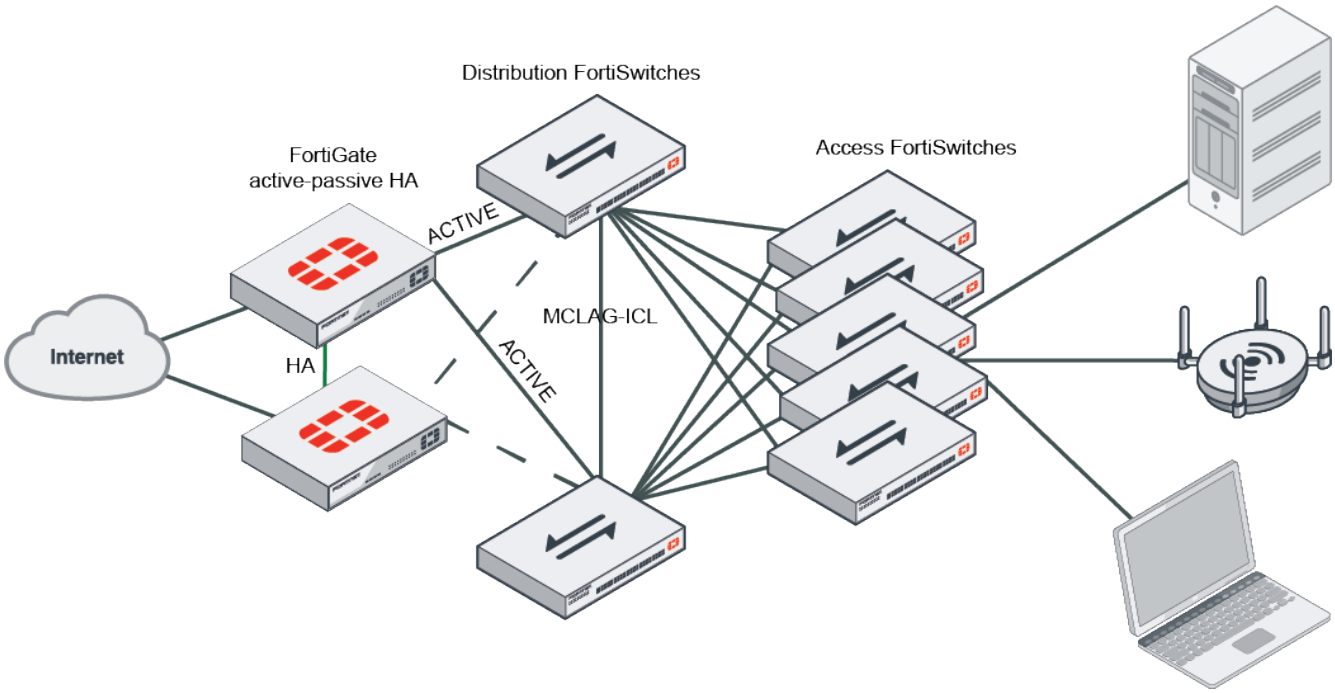
```
# diagnose sys ha checksum cluster
```

## Multiple FortiSwitches in tiers via aggregate interface with MCLAG enabled on all tiers

This example provides a recommended configuration of FortiLink where multi-tier FortiSwitch devices are managed by an A-P mode HA cluster of FortiGates acting as a switch controller via an aggregate interface. The FortiGates provide A-A links to two distribution FortiSwitches that are connected to each other by MCLAG. All access FortiSwitch devices have A-A links with two upper tier FortiSwitches, as long as the MCLAG-ICL has been enabled between the upper tiers.

**Prerequisites:**

- The FortiGate model supports an aggregate interface.
- FortiSwitch units have been upgraded to latest released software version.
- Layer-3 path/route in the management VDOM is available to Internet so that the FortiSwitch units can synchronize NTP.
- For the FortiSwitch D series, the models above 4 just support MCLAG. For the FortiSwitch E series, the models above 2 just support MCLAG.




**To change the FortiSwitch management mode to FortiLink:**

Enter the following CLI commands on the FortiSwitch:

```
config system global
   set switch-mgmt-mode fortilink
end
This operation will cleanup all of the configuration and reboot the system!
Do you want to continue? (y/n)y
Backing up local mode config before entering FortiLink mode....
```

If the FortiSwitch ports used for the FortiLink connection have `auto-discovery-fortilink` enabled, executing authorization on FortiGate will trigger the transformation to FortiLink mode automatically.

```
config switch interface
  edit "port1"
       set auto-discovery-fortilink enable
       ……
  next
end
```

**To set up an A-P mode HA cluster:**

See HA active-passive cluster setup on page 713.

**To create an aggregate interface and designate it as FortiLink interface on the FortiGate:**

Using the CLI:

```
config system interface
    edit "aggr1"
        set vdom "vdom1"
        set fortilink enable
        set type aggregate
        set member "port11" "port12"
        set fortilink-split-interface disable
    next
end
```

`fortilink-split-interface` must be disabled for MCLAG to work.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.
2. In *Interface members*, select one or more physical ports that are connected to different distribution FortiSwitches to create an aggregate interface.
3. Disable *FortiLink split interface*.
4. Configure other fields as necessary.
5. Click *OK*.

**Discover and authorize the FortiSwitch:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "FSWSerialNum"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        ……
    next
end
```

Check the CLI output for `Connection: Connected` to show that FortiLink is up:

```
execute switch-controller get-conn-status FSWSerialNum

Get managed-switch S248EPTF18001384 connection status:
Admin Status: Authorized
Connection: Connected
Image Version: S248EP-v6.2.0-build143,190107 (Interim)
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Join Time: Fri Jan 11 15:22:32 2019

   interface   status   duplex    speed fortilink stacking       poe status
       port1       up     full  1000Mbps       no       no  Delivering Power
       port2     down      N/A     0           no       no         Searching
        ……
```

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *Managed FortiSwitch*.
2. Click *Authorize* and wait for a few minutes for the connection to be established.
   When FortiLink between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch is established, the Link-up ports change to green and the POE port that is supplying power changes to blue. The dotted line between the FortiGate and FortiSwitch changes to a solid line. The Connection status shows that FortiLink is up.

**Enable MCLAG on the ICL link between the distribution FortiSwitch devices:**

```
conf switch trunk
    edit "4DN4K15000008-0"
        set mclag-icl enable
    next
end
```

When you enable `mclag-icl`, MCLAG on the FortiLink interface is enabled automatically and active-active backup links between the distribution FortiSwitches are established.

**Extend the security perimeter to the edge of FortiSwitch:**

1. Configure the VLAN arrangement.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
   b. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
      On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.
2. Configure FortiSwitch ports.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   b. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports and assign them to the switch VLAN.
   c. You can also select *POE/DHCP Snooping*, *STP*, and other parameters for the FortiSwitch ports to show their real-time status such as link status, data statistics, etc.
3. Configure access authentication.
   a. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*.
   b. Configure the *802.1X* security policies.
   c. Select *Port-based* or *MAC-based* mode and select *User groups* from the existing VDOM.
   d. Configure other fields as necessary.
   e. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
   f. Select one or more FortiSwitch ports, click + in the *Security Policy* column, then make a selection from the pane.

## Troubleshooting

### Authorized FortiSwitch always offline

If an authorized FortiSwitch is always offline, go to the FortiGate CLI and use the command below to see all the checkpoints. Inspect each checkpoint to find the cause of the problem.

```
execute switch-controller diagnose-connection  S248EPTF18001384


Fortilink interface ... OK
```

```
aggr1  enabled

DHCP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled

NTP server ... OK
aggr1  enabled
NTP server sync ... OK
synchronized: yes, ntpsync: enabled, server-mode: enabled

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.70 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.113.71 -- reachable(0x80) S:2 T:128
         no data
ipv4 server(ntp2.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.51 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66 selected
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.320411 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 11495 msec

ipv4 server(ntp1.fortiguard.com) 208.91.112.50 -- reachable(0xff) S:2 T:66
        server-version=4, stratum=2
        reference time is dfe3aec5.744404e6 -- UTC Sat Jan 12 00:09:41 2019
        clock offset is -0.448087 sec, root delay is 0.054535 sec
        root dispersion is 0.533081 sec, peer dispersion is 12542 msec

HA mode ... disabled

Fortilink
Status ... SWITCH_AUTHORIZED_READY
Last keepalive ... 1 seconds ago

CAPWAP
Remote Address: 2.2.2.2
Status ... CONNECTED
Last keepalive ... 26 seconds ago


PING 2.2.2.2 (2.2.2.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.1 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=13.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=12.7 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=2.9 ms
64 bytes from 2.2.2.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.2 ms

--- 2.2.2.2 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 1.1/6.3/13.9 ms
```

### HA sync fails

If HA sync fails, use the command below to diagnose and locate the cause.

```
# diagnose sys ha checksum cluster
```

# Authentication and security

The following topics provide instructions on configuring switch related authentication and security:

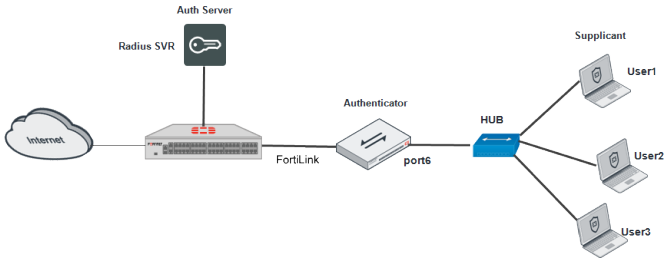

- MAC-based 802.1X authentication on page 1566
- Port-based 802.1X authentication on page 1569
- MAC layer control - Sticky MAC and MAC Learning-limit on page 1572
- Quarantine on page 1573


## MAC-based 802.1X authentication

This example show how to configure MAC-based 802.1X authentication to managed FortiSwitch ports when using FortiLink. Managed FortiSwitch devices will authenticate and record the MAC addresses of user devices. If there is a hub after the FortiSwitch that connects multiple user devices, each device can access the network after passing authentication.

**Prerequisites:**

- The certificates and authentication protocol supported by the supplicant software and RADIUS server are compatible.
- The managed FortiSwitches using FortiLink act as authenticators.




**To create a firewall policy to allow the RADIUS authentication-related traffic from the FortiLink interface to the outbound interface on the FortiGate:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf "fortilink-interface"
        set dstintf "outbound-interface-to-RadiusSVR"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "RADIUS"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

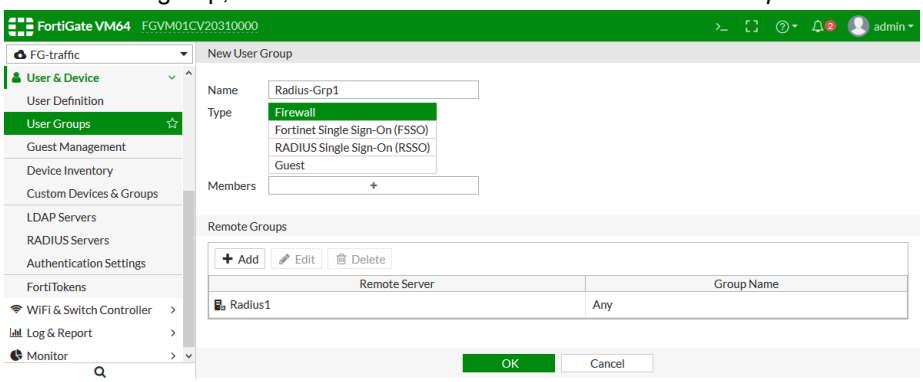
**Designate a RADIUS server and create a user group:**

Using the CLI:

```
config user radius
      edit "Radius1"
          set server "172.18.60.203"
          set secret ENC 1dddddd
     next
end
config user group
     edit "Radius-Grp1"
         set member "Radius1"
     next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*.
2. Edit an existing server, or create a new one.
3. If necessary, add a *Name* for the server.
4. Set the *IP/Name* to *172.18.60.203* and *Secret* to *1dddddd* .
5. Configure other fields as necessary.
6. Click *OK*.
7. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
8. Create a new group, and add the RADIUS server to the *Remote Groups* list.




9. Click *OK*.

### Use the new user group in a security policy:

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller security-policy 802-1X
    edit "802-1X-policy-default"
        set security-mode 802.1X-mac-based
        set user-group "Radius-Grp1"
        set mac-auth-bypass disable
        set open-auth disable
        set eap-passthru enable
        set guest-vlan disable
        set auth-fail-vlan disable
        set framevid-apply enable
        set radius-timeout-overwrite disable
    next
end
```

Configure the guest VLAN, authentication fail VLAN, and other parameters as needed.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*
2. Use the default *802-1X-policy-default*, or create a new security policy.
3. Use the RADIUS server group in the policy.
4. Set the *Security mode* to *MAC-based*.
5. Configure other fields as necessary.
6. Click *OK*.

**Apply the security policy to the ports of the managed FortiSwitches:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller  managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF1800XXXX
        config ports
            edit "port6"
                set port-security-policy "802-1X-policy-default"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

On the FortiSwitch, check the configuration:

```
config switch interface
    edit "port6"
        set allowed-vlans 4093
        set untagged-vlans 4093
        set security-groups "Radius-Grp1"
        set snmp-index 6
        config port-security
            set auth-fail-vlan disable
            set eap-passthru enable
            set framevid-apply enable
            set guest-auth-delay 30
            set guest-vlan disable
            set mac-auth-bypass disable
            set open-auth disable
            set port-security-mode 802.1X-mac-based
            set radius-timeout-overwrite disable
            set auth-fail-vlanid 200
            set guest-vlanid 100
        end
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
2. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.

**Execute 802.1X authentication on a user device:**

On Linux, run wpa_supplicant:

```
wpa_supplicant -c /etc/wpa_supplicant/local_supplicant.conf  -D wired -i eth2 -dd
```

On the FortiGate, view the status of the 802.1X authentication:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info 802.1X
Managed Switch : S248EPTF1800XXXX

   port6 : Mode: mac-based (mac-by-pass disable)     -----> MAC-based
           Link: Link up
           Port State: authorized: (  )              -----> Showing authorized means
auth passed. Otherwise, shown  failed
           EAP pass-through mode : Enable
           Native Vlan : 1
           Allowed Vlan list: 1,4093
           Untagged Vlan list: 1,4093
           Guest VLAN :
           Auth-Fail Vlan :

           Switch sessions 1/240,     Local port sessions:1/20
           Client    MAC          Type    Vlan  Dynamic-Vlan
           00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c     802.1x      1      0          -----> User device of
auth passed can access the network. Its MAC address is recored, while other User Devices
under same FSW ports still not allowed to access.

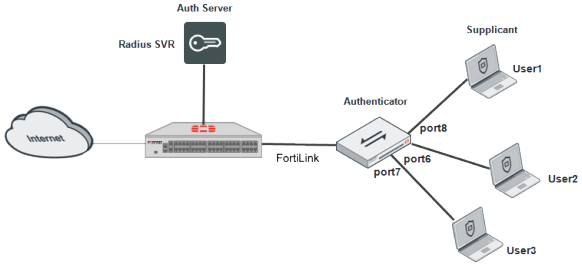
           Sessions info:
           00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c     Type=802.1x,MD5,state=AUTHENTICATED,etime=6,eap_cnt=3
params:reAuth=3600
```

## Port-based 802.1X authentication

This example show how to configure Port-based 802.1X authentication to managed FortiSwitch ports when using FortiLink. Managed FortiSwitch devices will authenticate user devices per each FortiSwitch port. If there is a hub after the FortiSwitch that connects multiple user devices to the same port, they can all access the network after authentication, which is not recommended from a security perspective.

**Prerequisites:**

- The certificates and authentication protocol supported by the supplicant software and RADIUS server are compatible.
- The managed FortiSwitches using FortiLink act as authenticators.



**To create a firewall policy to allow the RADIUS authentication-related traffic from the FortiLink interface to the outbound interface on the FortiGate:**

```
config firewall policy
    edit 0
        set srcintf "fortilink-interface"
        set dstintf "outbound-interface-to-RadiusSVR"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "RADIUS"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

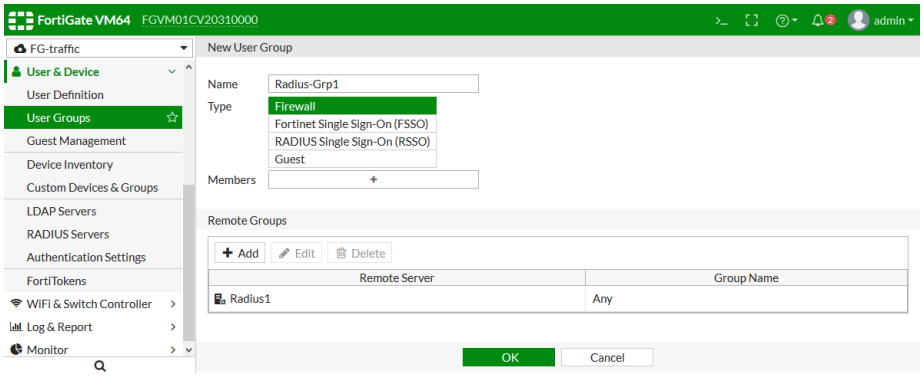
**Designate a RADIUS server and create a user group:**

Using the CLI:

```
config user radius
      edit "Radius1"
          set server "172.18.60.203"
          set secret ENC 1dddddd
     next
end
config user group
     edit "Radius-Grp1"
         set member "Radius1"
     next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *User & Authentication* > *RADIUS Servers*.
2. Edit an existing server, or create a new one.
3. If necessary, add a *Name* for the server.
4. Set the *IP/Name* to *172.18.60.203* and *Secret* to *1dddddd* .
5. Configure other fields as necessary.
6. Click *OK*.
7. Go to *User & Authentication* > *User Groups*.
8. Create a new group, and add the RADIUS server to the *Remote Groups* list.



9. Click *OK*.

**Use the new user group in a security policy:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller security-policy 802-1X
    edit "802-1X-policy-default"
        set security-mode 802.1X
        set user-group "Radius-Grp1"
        set mac-auth-bypass disable
        set open-auth disable
        set eap-passthru enable
        set guest-vlan disable
        set auth-fail-vlan disable
        set framevid-apply enable
        set radius-timeout-overwrite disable
    next
end
```

Configure the guest VLAN, authentication fail VLAN, and other parameters as needed.

Using the GUI:

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Security Policies*
2. Use the default *802-1X-policy-default*, or create a new security policy.
3. Use the RADIUS server group in the policy.
4. Set the *Security mode* to *Port-based*.
5. Configure other fields as necessary.
6. Click *OK*.

**Apply the security policy to the ports of the managed FortiSwitches:**

Using the CLI:

```
config switch-controller  managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF1800XXXX
        config ports
            edit "port6"
                set port-security-policy "802-1X-policy-default"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Using the GUI:

1. On the FortiGate, go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.
2. Configure the VLAN interfaces that are applied on FortiSwitch.
   On FortiGate, these switch VLAN interfaces are treated as layer-3 interfaces and are available to be applied by firewall policy and other security controls in FortiOS. This means that security boundary is extended to FortiSwitch.

**Execute 802.1X authentication on a user device:**

On Linux, run wpa_supplicant:

```
wpa_supplicant -c /etc/wpa_supplicant/local_supplicant.conf  -D wired -i eth2 -dd
```

On the FortiGate, view the status of the 802.1X authentication:

```
diagnose switch-controller switch-info 802.1X Managed Switch : S248EPTF18001384

   port6 : Mode: port-based (mac-by-pass disable)
           Link: Link up
           Port State: authorized: (  )
           Dynamic Authorized Vlan : 0
           EAP pass-through mode : Enable
           Native Vlan : 1
           Allowed Vlan list: 1,4093
           Untagged Vlan list: 4093
           Guest VLAN :
           Auth-Fail Vlan :

           Sessions info:
           00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c     Type=802.1x,MD5,state=AUTHENTICATED,etime=0,eap_cnt=6
params:reAuth=3600
```

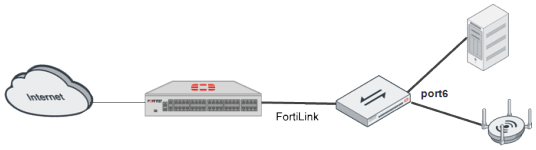
## MAC layer control - Sticky MAC and MAC Learning-limit

Persistent MAC learning, or Sticky MAC, is a port security feature that lets an interface retain dynamically learned MAC addresses when a switch is restarted, or an interface goes down and then is brought back online.

Enabling Sticky MAC along with MAC Learning-limit restricts the number of MAC addresses that are learned. This prevents layer 2 Denial of Service (DoS) attacks, overflow attacks on the Ethernet switching table, and DHCP starvation attacks by limiting the number of MAC addresses that are allowed while still allowing the interface to learn a specified number of MAC addresses. The interface is secured because, after the specified limit has been reached, additional devices cannot connect to the port. Interfaces can be allowed to learn the MAC address of trusted workstations and servers from the time that the interfaces are connected to the network, until the MAC address limit is reached.

### Prerequisites

- Sticky MAC save is hardware and CPU intensive if there are too many entries.
- Dual chip device models (X48 and XX48 FortiSwitch models) do not support MAC Learning-limit on VLANs, but still support it on FortiSwitch ports.




### Enable Sticky MAC on the FortiSwitch ports view:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF18001384
        config ports
            edit port6
                set sticky-mac enable
            next
        end
    next
end
```

Check the MAC-table on the FortiSwitch to see that the status of related MAC items on the Sticky MAC enabled ports has changed from dynamic to static:

Before Sticky-MAC is enabled:

```
diagnose switch mac-address list
   MAC: 08:5b:0e:06:6a:d4 VLAN: 1 Port: port1(port-id 1) Flags: 0x00030440 [ hit
        dynamic src-hit native move ]
```

After Sticky-MAC is enabled:

```
diagnose switch mac-address list
   MAC: 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c VLAN: 1 Port: port6(port-id 6) Flags: 0x00000020 [ static ]
```

**Save Sticky-MAC items into the database and delete others:**

Saving Sticky-MAC items from the running memory into the database, and deleting unsaved items, will ensure that, even after the FortiSwitch is rebooted, the trusted MAC addresses will be kept and will not need to be relearned.

```
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac save all S248EPTF1800XXXX
   S248EPTF1800XXXX: Save started...
   Warning: Please wait save will take longer time upto 30 seconds...
   Collecting config data....Done
   Collecting hardware data....Done
   Saving....Done
   Sticky MAC entries saved = 1 ----------------> Number of saved Sticky MAC items is
        shown

execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac delete-unsaved all S248EPTF1800XXXX
```

**Configure the MAC Learning-limit under the VLAN or managed FortiSwitch ports view:**

VLAN view:

```
config system  interface
    edit vsw.aggr1
        set switch-controller-learning-limit 10
    next
end
```

Ports view:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF1800XXXX
        config ports
            edit port6
                set learning-limit  11
            next
        end
    next
end
```

## Quarantine

There are two quarantine modes available: by redirect or by VLAN. The quarantine mode is configured in the CLI.

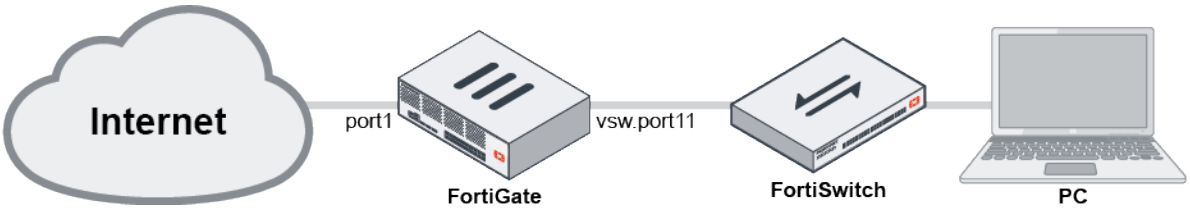
**To configure the quarantine mode:**

```
config switch-controller global
    set quarantine-mode {by-vlan (default)| by-redirect }
end
```

## Quarantine by redirect

Quarantine by redirect makes the FortiSwitch redirect traffic from the quarantined host to the FortiGate, keeping the device on its original network.

Quarantine by VLAN, which moves the device from the normal switch VLAN to the quarantine VLAN, can be complicated for administrators that use DHCP or static IP address assignments. When a device is sent to quarantine, its IP address is no longer valid for the quarantined VLAN segment, making it difficult to perform remediation on the device. This is the default quarantine mode.




In this example, the PC can access the internet when there is an allowed policy from interface vsw.port11 to port1 (called *PC to Internet*). When the PC is quarantined, a firewall address is automatically created for the PC, which is added to an automatically created address group called *QuarantinedDevices*. A policy (called *quarantine*) is created that applies to this address group and blocks traffic from the PC to the internet.

The FortiSwitch configuration is done automatically after the FortiGate configured.

**To quarantine an active device, based on the device's MAC address, in the CLI:**

```
config user quarantine
    set traffic-policy quarantine
    set firewall-groups "QuarantinedDevices"
    config targets
        edit "manual-qtn-1"
            set description "Manually quarantined"
            config macs
                edit 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c
                    set description "manual-qtn"
                    set drop disable
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

Firewall addresses are automatically created for the quarantined MAC address, and the addresses are added to the *QuarantinedDevices* address group:

```
# show firewall address | grep -f qtn
config firewall address
    edit "qtn.mac_00:00:00:00:00:00" <---
        set uuid 9069e73c-3c6e-51ea-28d4-b807167fdcb7
```

```
        set type mac
        set comment "Quarantine dummy MAC to keep the addrgrp"
    next
    edit "qtn.mac_00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c" <---
        set uuid 869847ce-3c84-51ea-59c2-964152415e22
        set type mac
        set start-mac 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c
        set end-mac 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c
        set comment "Quarantine MAC"
    next
end
```

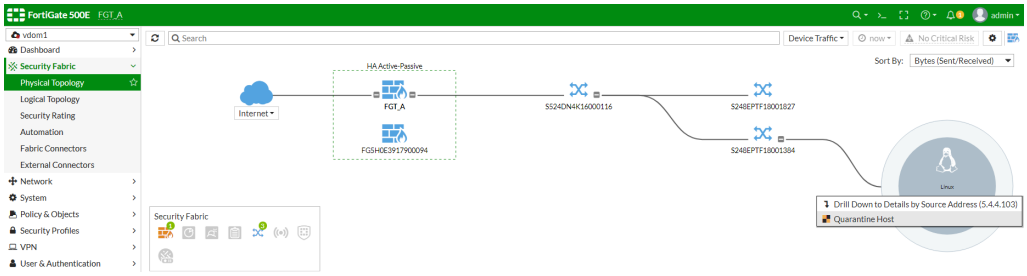
```
# show firewall addrgrp | grep -f Quarantined
config firewall addrgrp
    edit "QuarantinedDevices" <---
        set uuid 9069d332-3c6e-51ea-17e1-cab3dd4dde6c
        set member "qtn.mac_00:00:00:00:00:00" "qtn.mac_00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c"
    next
end
```

**To view the automatic configuration changes on the FortiSwitch:**

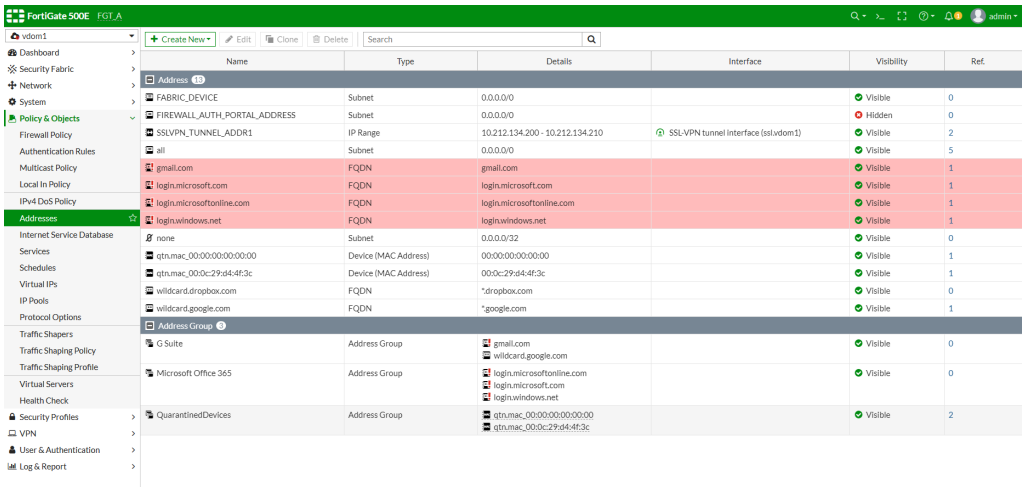
```
config switch quarantine
    edit 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c
        set acl-id 2
        set cos-queue 0
        set description "manual-qtn "
        set policer 1
    next
end
config switch acl ingress
    edit 2
        config action
            set cos-queue 0
            set count enable
            set policer 1
        end
        config classifier
            set src-mac 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c
        end
        set ingress-interface-all enable
    next
end
```

**To quarantine an active device, based on the device's MAC address, in the GUI:**

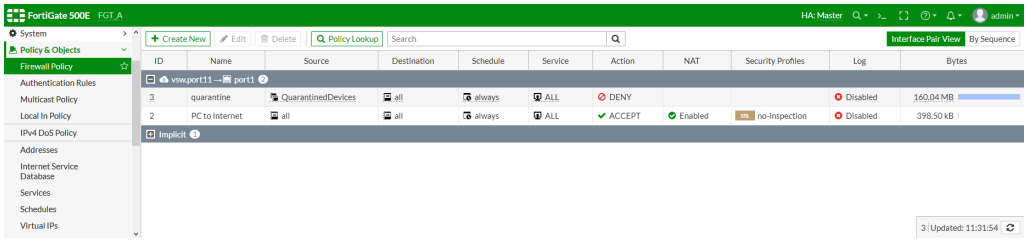
1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology* or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
2. Mouse over the bubble of an active device, and select *Quarantine Host* from the right-click menu.




3. Click *OK* in the *Quarantine Host* page to quarantine the device.
   Firewall addresses and an address group (*QuarantinedDeivces*) are automatically added for the quarantined devices.

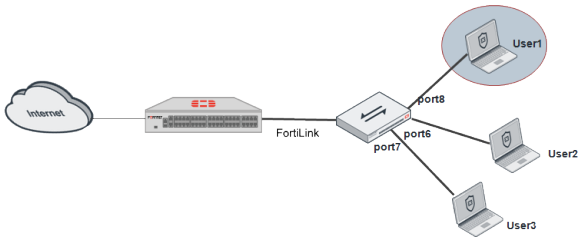



4. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and create a policy to block traffic from quarantined devices to the internet.




## Quarantine by VLAN

When the FortiGate detects devices that have lower trust scores, lack mandatory installed software, or are sending out malicious traffic, an administrator can quarantine the device from the normal switch VLAN to the quarantine VLAN. This can limit the device's access, or provide them specific information on the quarantine portal page.




**To quarantine an active device, based on the device's MAC address, in the CLI:**

```
config user quarantine
    config targets
        edit "manual-qtn-1"
            set description "Manually quarantined"
            config macs
                edit 00:0c:29:d4:4f:3c
                    set description "manual-qtn "
                next
            end
        next
    end
end
```

**To quarantine an active device, based on the device's MAC address, in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*, or *Security Fabric* > *Logical Topology*.
2. Mouse over the bubble of an active device, and select *Quarantine Host* from the right-click menu.
3. Click *OK* in the *Quarantine Host* page to quarantine the device.

The quarantined device is moved to the quarantine VLAN, and the configuration of the FortiSwitch port does not change.

The quarantined device gets its IP address from the DHCP server on the quarantine VLAN interface. The network locations that the device can access depends on the firewall policies that are configured for the quarantine VLAN interface. By default, the device must acknowledge and accept the information on the Quarantine Portal before it can access any part of the network.

## Releasing or clearing the quarantine targets

**To release or clear quarantine targets in the CLI:**

```
config user quarantine
    config targets
        delete "manual-qtn-1"
        ...
    end
end
```

```
config user quarantine
    config targets
        purge
    end
end
```

**To release or clear quarantine targets in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard*> *Status* and click *Add Widget*.
2. In the *Monitor* section, click *Quarantine*.
3. Select the FortiGate from the dropdown box.
4. Click *Add Widget*. The *Quarantine* widget appears in the dashboard.
5. In the *Quarantine* widget, delete the quarantine targets as needed, or click *Remove All* to delete all the targets.



To create a new dashboard for quarantined targets, see Dashboards and widgets on page 58.
To create a standalone *Quarantine* widget, see Using widgets on page 63.

# Flow and device detection

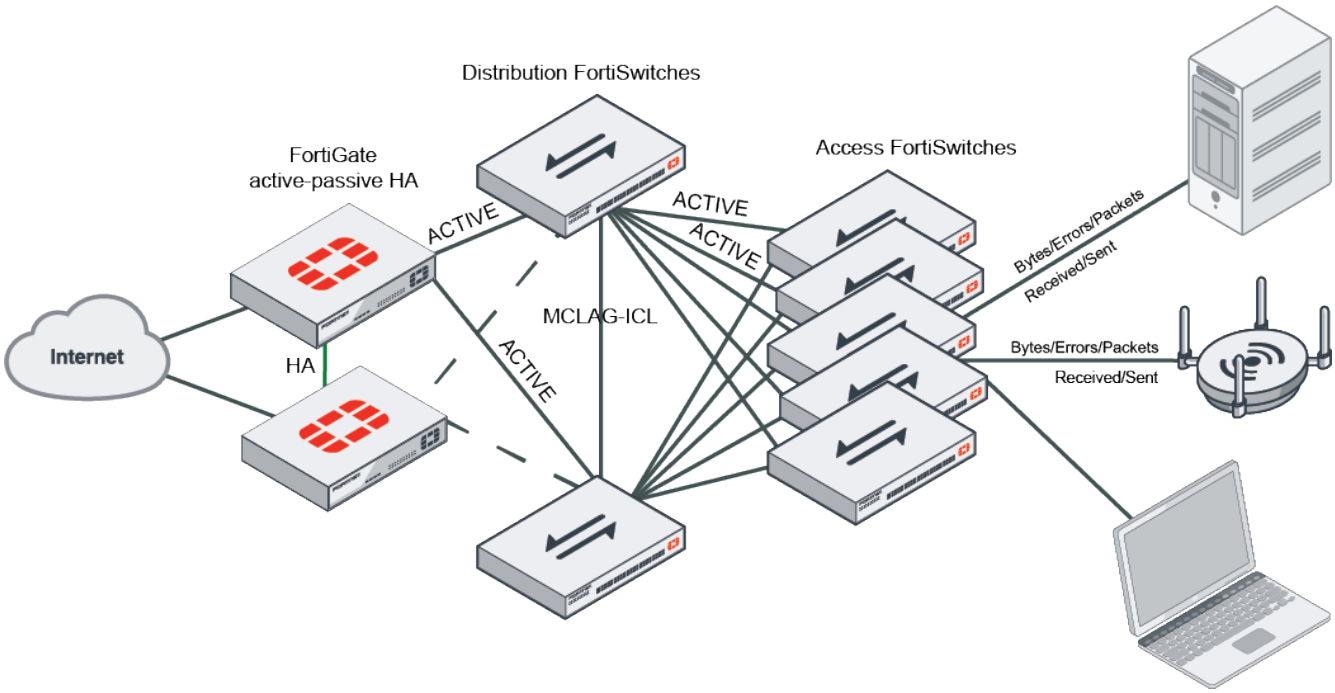
The following topics provide information on flow and device detection:


- Data statistic on page 1578
- Security Fabric showing on page 1580
- NAC policies on switch ports on page 1580
- Use FortiSwitch to query FortiGuard IoT service for device details on page 1584
- Voice device detection on page 1586


## Data statistic

This example shows a FortiLink scenario where the FortiGate acts as the switch controller that collects the data statistics of managed FortiSwitch ports. This is counted by each FortiSwitch and concentrated in the controller.

## Sample topology




**To show data statistics using the GUI:**

1. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
2. Select *Configure Table*.
3. Select *Bytes, Errors and Packets* to make them visible.

The related data statistic of each managed FortiSwitch port is shown.

**To show data statistics using the CLI:**

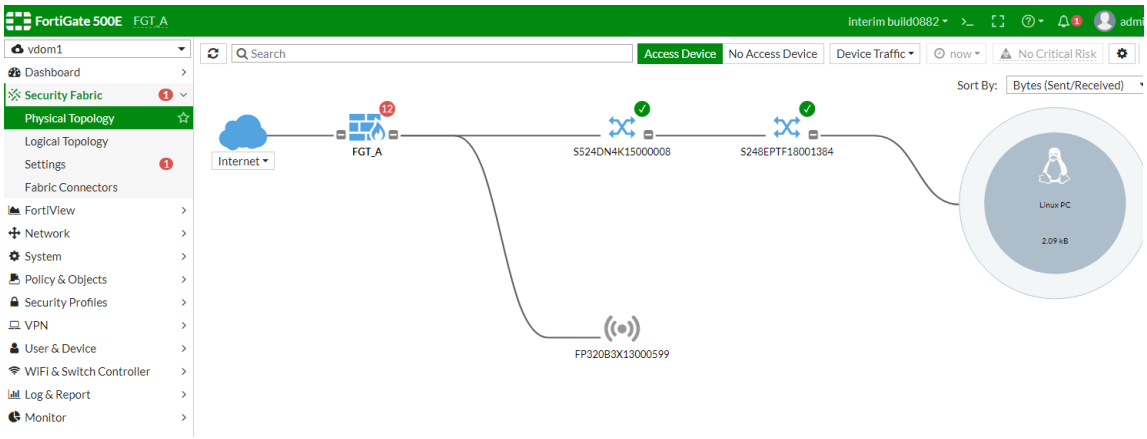
```
# diagnose switch-controller switch-info port-stats S248EPTF180XXXX
    ......

    Port(port50) is Admin up, line protocol is down
    Interface Type is Gigabit Media Independent Interface(GMII)
    Address is 70:4C:A5:E0:F3:8D, loopback is not set
    MTU 9216 bytes, Encapsulation IEEE 802.3/Ethernet-II
    full-duplex, 1000 Mb/s, link type is manual
    input  : 0 bytes, 0 packets, 0 errors, 0 drops, 0 oversizes
        0 unicasts, 0 multicasts, 0 broadcasts, 0 unknowns
    output : 0 bytes, 0 packets, 0 errors, 0 drops, 0 oversizes
        0 unicasts, 0 multicasts, 0 broadcasts
        0 fragments, 0 undersizes, 0 collisions, 0 jabbers
    ......
```

# Security Fabric showing

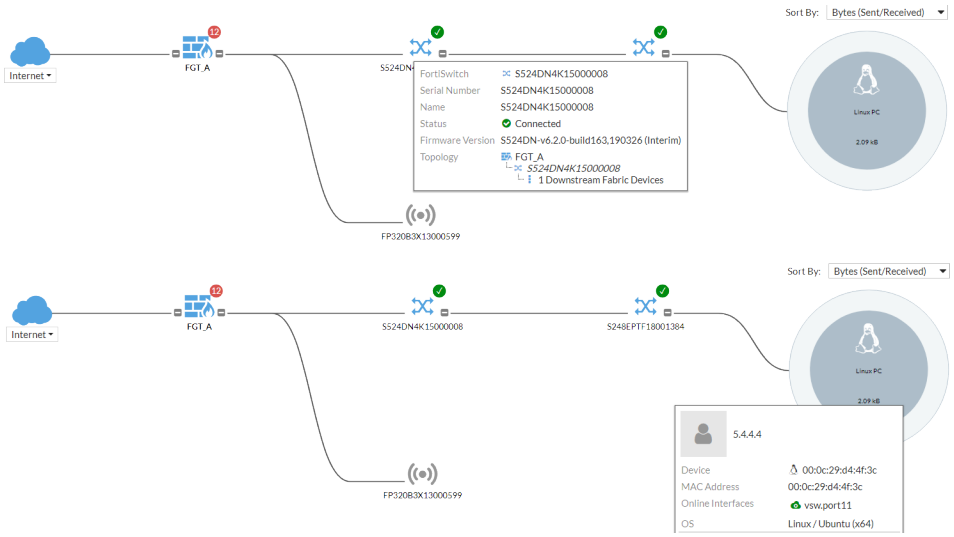
This example shows one of the key components in the concept of Security Fabric: FortiSwitches in FortiLink. In the FortiGate GUI, you can see the whole picture of the Security Fabric working for your network security.

## Sample topology




**To show Security Fabric information:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
2. To see the connection between FortiGates and managed FortiSwitches, hover the pointer over the icons to see information about each network element.




# NAC policies on switch ports

Network access control (NAC) helps administrators implement policies to control the devices and users that have access to their networks. A NAC policy can use user or detected device information, such as device type or OS, to put traffic into a specific VLAN or apply specific port settings.

The NAC function can be enabled on all FortiSwitches, or on specific FortiSwitch ports.

Initially, devices connected to ports with the NAC function enabled are put into an onboarding VLAN. The onboarding VLAN usually has a restrictive security policy, device identification enabled, a DHCP server, and captive portal enabled. The device identification feature collects device information. When the device matches the patterns that are defined in a NAC policy, an action is applied to the device, such as moving it to a specific VLAN or having a security policy applied.

---

The list of managed FortiSwitches that a NAC policy can be applied on can contain a reference to a managed FortiSwitch device. When this reference is set by an administrator, it must be removed before the managed switch can be deleted.

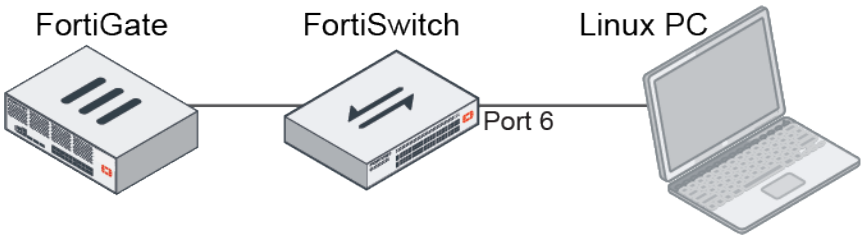
**To remove a switch from the list:**

```
config user nac-policy
    edit <name>
        unselect switch-scope <switch>
    next
end
```

---

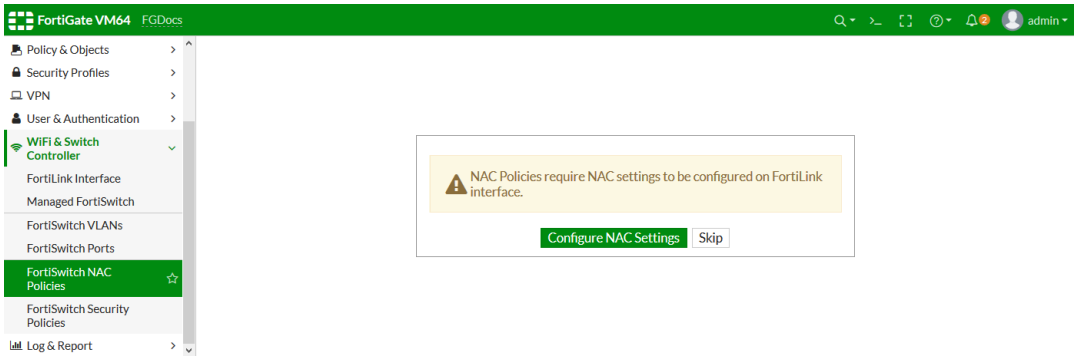
## Example

In this example, NAC settings are enabled and configured so that a Linux PC is automatically moved into a VLAN dedicated to Linux PCs after it comes online and gets identified.

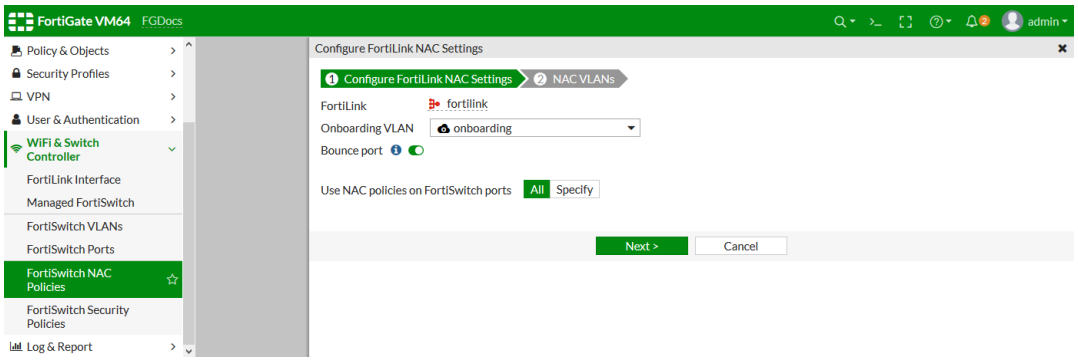



**To configure a NAC policy on a switch in the GUI:**

1. Use the wizard to enable the NAC feature and configure basic settings:
   a. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch NAC Policies*. If FortiSwitch options are not visible, see Feature visibility for instructions on making them visible.
   b. Click *Configure NAC Settings* in the message box.

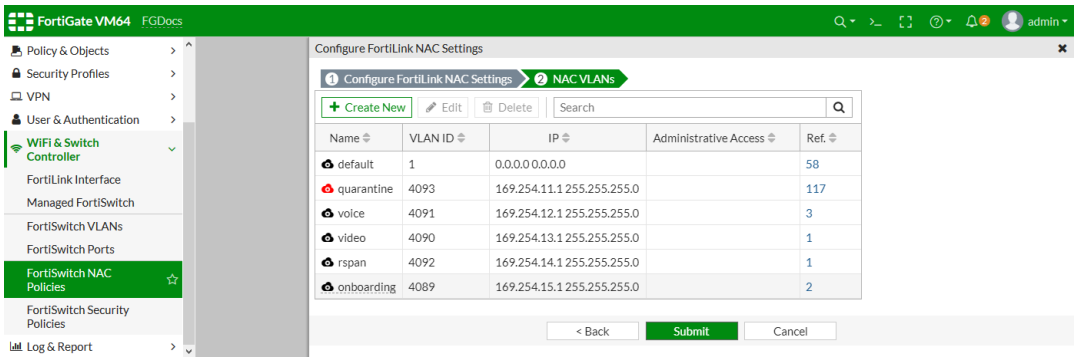



   c. Specify the switch ports that NAC access mode will be enabled on, or enable it on all of them.
   d. Select the onboarding VLAN. If no VLAN exists, click *Create* in the drop down menu to create a new NAC VLAN interface.




e. Click *Next*.

f. Create or modify NAC VLANs (also known as FortiSwitch VLANs) that can be used in NAC policies.




g. Create or edit NAC VLANs as needed. See FortiLink Setup for details.

h. Click *Submit*.

The NAC settings can be edited in *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiLink Interface*.

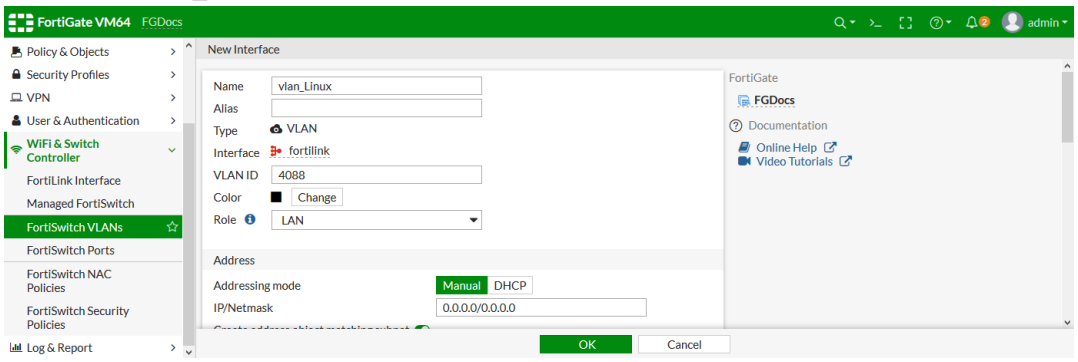
The NAC VLANs can be edited in *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs*.

The access mode of the switch ports is changed to NAC and the native VLAN is set to the onboarding VLAN.

2. Create a NAC VLAN for all Linux PCs:

a. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch VLANs* and click *Create New*.

b. Set *Name* to *vlan_Linux*.




c. Configure the remaining settings as required.

d. Click *OK*.

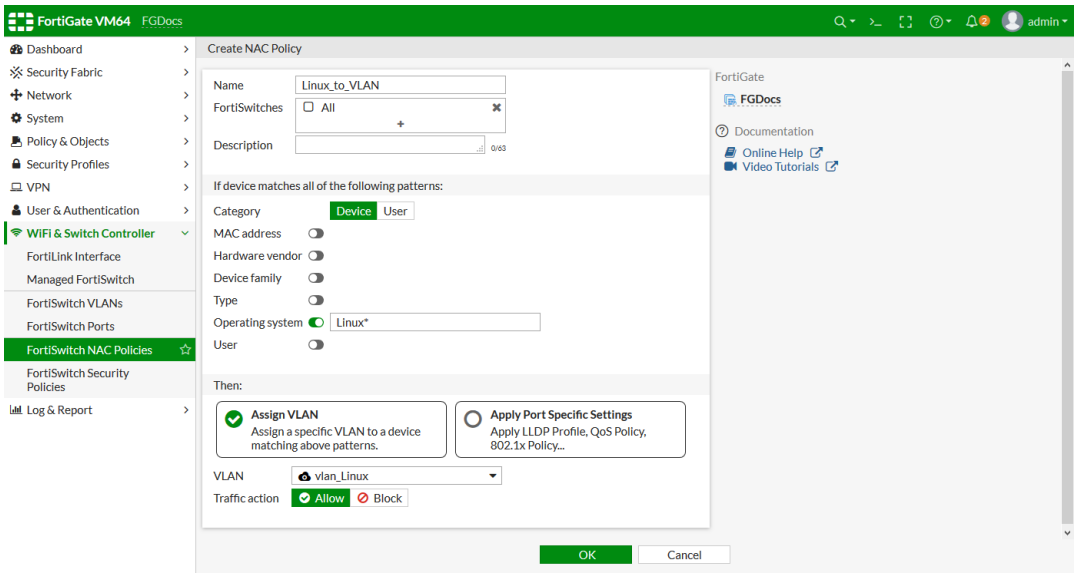
3. Create a NAC policy to match all Linux PCs and assign them to the specific VLAN:

a. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch NAC Policies* and click *Create New*.

b. Enter a name for the policy, such as *Linux_to_VLAN*.

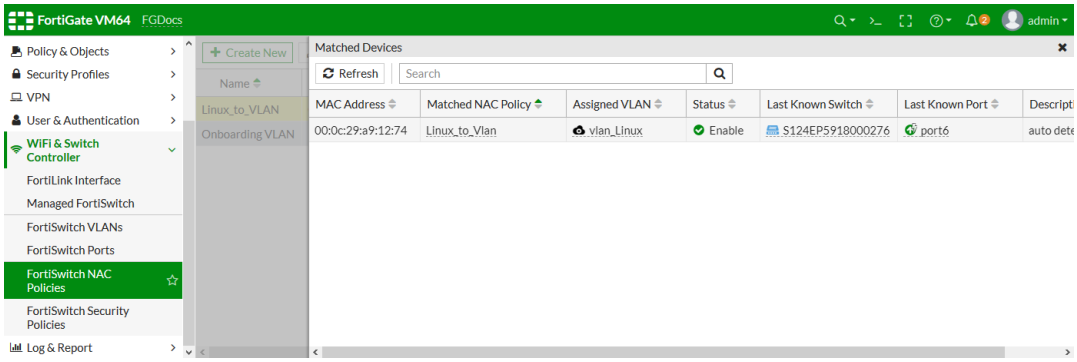
c. Enable *Operating system* and enter *Linux** in the field.

d. Select the *Assign VLAN* card and set *VLAN* to *vlan_Linux*.




e. Click *OK*.

4. After the Linux PC connects, check that it is matched to the policy:
   a. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch NAC Policies*.
   b. Select the *Linux_to_VLAN* policy and click *View Matched Devices*.
   The *Matched Devices* pane opens, showing the devices that matched the policy.




c. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch Ports*.
The port that the Linux PC is connected to will include *vlan_Linux* in the *Allowed VLANs* column.

**To configure a NAC policy on a switch in the CLI:**

1. Configure the FortiLink interface:

```
config system interface
    edit "fortilink"
        set vdom "root"
        set fortilink enable
        set ip 169.254.1.1 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping fabric
        set type aggregate
        set member "internal11"
        set lldp-reception enable
        set lldp-transmission enable
```

```
        set snmp-index 8
        set auto-auth-extension-device enable
        set switch-controller-nac "fortilink"
    next
end
```

2. Configure the integrated NAC settings:

```
config switch-controller nac-settings
    edit "fortilink"
        set mode global
        set onboarding-vlan "onboarding"
    next
end
```

3. Configure the NAC policy matching pattern to identify matching NAC devices:

```
config user nac-policy
    edit "Linux_to_VLAN"
        set os "Linux*"
        set switch-fortilink "fortilink"
        set switch-mac-policy "Linux_to_VLAN"
    next
end
```

4. Configure the MAC policy to be applied on the managed FortiSwitch devices through the NAC device:

```
config switch-controller mac-policy
    edit "Linux_to_VLAN"
        set fortilink "fortilink"
        set vlan "vlan_Linux"
    next
end
```

5. View the NAC devices learned on the managed FortiSwitch ports that match the NAC policy:

```
show switch-controller nac-device
    config switch-controller nac-device
        edit 1
            set description "auto detected @ 2020-04-01 15:36:24"
            set mac 00:0c:29:a9:12:74
            set last-known-switch "S124EP5918000276"
            set last-known-port "port6"
            set matched-nac-policy "Linux_to_VLAN"
            set mac-policy "Linux_to_VLAN"
        next
    end
```

## Use FortiSwitch to query FortiGuard IoT service for device details

FortiSwitch can work with FortiGate and the FortiGuard IoT detection service to perform device identification.

FortiSwitch devices can assist FortiGates with capturing accurate device information, allowing FortiGate to identify devices for the user device list. When the FortiGuard IoT detection service is activated, FortiGate will leverage the IoT detection service to help reduce the workload for device identification.

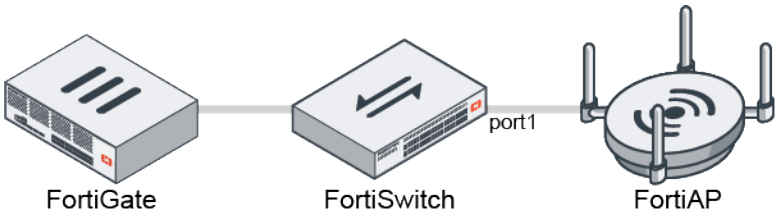
To use this feature, the following are required:
- An IoT detection service subscription, see IoT detection service on page 759.
- FortiSwitch 2.0.3 and higher.

The following CLI commands control when FortiSwitch should start and stop collecting device packets for FortiGate:

```
config switch-controller system
   set iot-weight-threshold <integer>
   set iot-scan-interval <integer>
   set iot-holdoff <integer>
   set iot-mac-idle <integer>
end
```

| Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| iot-weight-threshold | The confidence value for the MAC entry (disable = 0, default = 1). |
| iot-scan-interval | The IoT scan interval, in minutes (2 - 4294967295, disable = 0, default = 60). |
| iot-holdoff | The creation time for the MAC entry, in minutes (default = 5).<br>The time must be greater than this value for an entry to be created. |
| iot-mac-idle | The idle time for the MAC entry, in minutes (default = 1440).<br>The MAC entry is removed after this value. |

## Example




In this example, FortiSwitch will help FortiGate collect packets from FortiAP every 30 minutes and stop for 30 minutes. FortiSwitch will stop collecting packets from FortiAP when the weight of the device information reaches a threshold of 80.

**To configure IoT device information collection for identification:**

1. On the FortiGate, configure the switch controller IoT parameters:

```
config switch-controller system
    set iot-weight-threshold 80
    set iot-scan-interval 30
    set iot-holdoff 5
    set iot-mac-idle 1440
end
```

2. On the FortiSwitch, create a sniffer profile to help collect the data:

```
config system sniffer-profile
    edit "08:5b:0e:06:6a:d4"
        set filter "ether host 08:5b:0e:06:6a:d4"
```

```
        set max-pkt-count 1000
        set max-pkt-len 256
        set switch-interface "port1"
    next
end
```

See the FortiSwitch CLI Reference for more information.

**To confirm that the scan is working:**

1. When the packet capture scheduled time is reached, check that the scan has started:

```
# diagnose switch-controller traffic-capture show
MAC                    session-in-use  switch                 fortilink-interface-name
   port              status

================================================================================================
================================
08:5b:0e:06:6a:d4       1               S248EPTF00000000       port11
   port1             running

Global stats:
================
node add = 16
node delete = 15
node add failed = 0
node delete failed = 0
```

2. Data are collected and sent to the FortiGuard service for identification. Device information is updated in the device list to include `src fortiguard`:

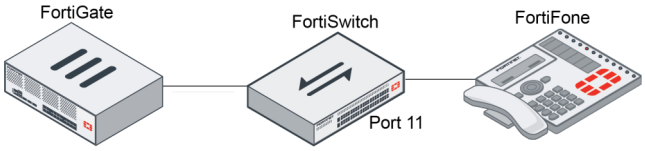
```
# diagnose user device list
hosts
  vd vdom1/1  08:5b:0e:06:6a:d4  gen 17  req OUA/34
    created 42s  gen 13  seen 1s  onboarding.13  gen 4
    hardware vendor 'FORTINET'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
    type 'Network'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
    family 'Router'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
    os 'NULL'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
    hardware version 'FortiAP-320B'  src fortiguard  id 0  weight 100
    host 'FP320B3X13000599'  src capwap
```

## Voice device detection

FortiSwitch is able to parse LLDP messages from voice devices such as FortiFone, and pass this information to FortiGate for device detection. You can use FortiSwitch NAC policies to assign a device to an LLDP profile, QoS policy, and VLAN policy. When a detected device is matched to a NAC policy, the corresponding policy actions will be applied on the switch port.

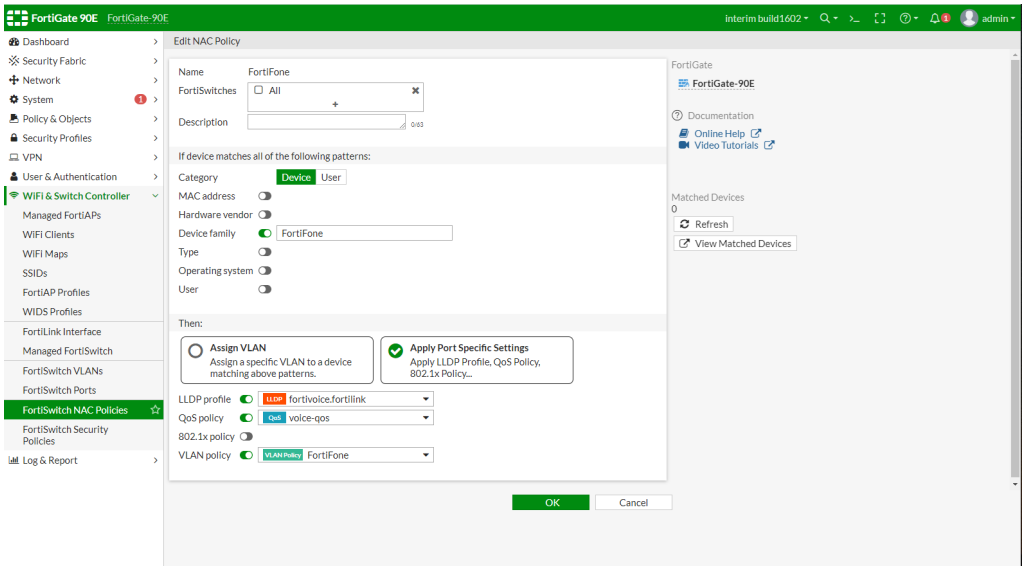
### Example

In the following example, FortiFone is connected to port11 of FortiSwitch. A NAC policy is created to apply a VLAN policy, LLDP policy, and QoS policy to Device Family FortiFone.

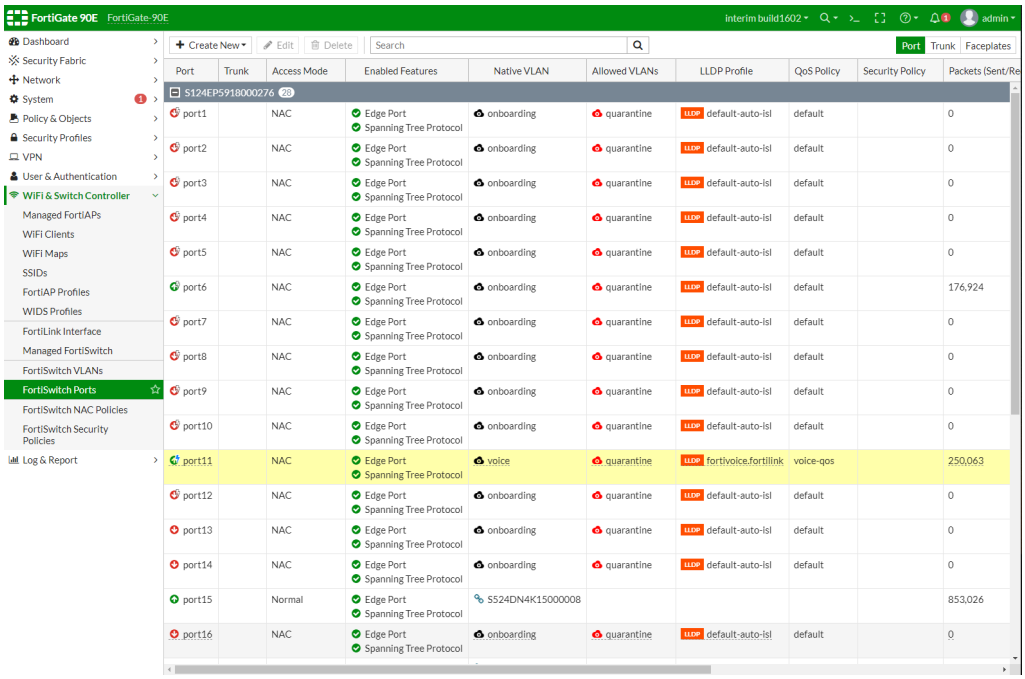



**To create a FortiSwitch NAC policy in the GUI:**

1. Configure a NAC policy on a switch port. See NAC policies on switch ports on page 1580.
2. Go to *WiFi & Switch Controller* > *FortiSwitch NAC Policies*.
3. Create or edit an NAC policy.
4. Set the *Category* to *Device*.
5. Enable *Device family*, and enter name such as *FortiFone*.
6. Select *Apply Port Specific Settings*.
7. Enable *LLDP profile*, and select a voice profile from the dropdown.
8. Enable *QoS policy*, and select a voice policy from the dropdown.
9. Enable *VLAN policy*, and select a voice policy from the dropdown.




10. Click *OK*.
    The NAC policy is applied after a FortiFone is plugged into port11 of the FortiSwitch:




### To create a FortiSwitch NAC policy in the CLI:

1. Assign the FortiFone to a VLAN policy, LLDP policy, and QoS Policy.

```
config user nac-policy
   edit "FortiFone"
      set family "FortiFone"
      set switch-fortilink "fortilink"
      set switch-port-policy "FortiFone"
   next
end
config switch-controller port-policy
   edit "FortiFone"
      set fortilink "fortilink"
      set lldp-profile "fortivoice.fortilink"
      set qos-policy "voice-qos"
      set vlan-policy "fortiFone"
   next
end
config switch-controller vlan-policy
   edit "fortiFone"
      set fortilink "fortilink"
      set vlan "voice"
   next
end
config switch-controller lldp-profile
   edit "fortivoice.fortilink"
      set med-tlvs inventory-management network-policy location-identification
      set auto-isl disable
      config med-network-policy
         edit "voice"
            set status enable
            set vlan-intf "voice"
            set assign-vlan enable
```

```
            set dscp 46
         next
         edit "voice-signaling"
            set status enable
            set vlan-intf "voice"
            set assign-vlan enable
            set dscp 46
         next
         edit "guest-voice"
         next
         edit "guest-voice-signaling"
         next
         edit "softphone-voice"
         next
         edit "video-conferencing"
         next
         edit "streaming-video"
         next
         edit "video-signaling"
         next
      end
   next
end
config switch-controller qos qos-policy
   edit "voice-qos"
      set trust-dot1p-map "voice-dot1p"
      set trust-ip-dscp-map "voice-dscp"
      set queue-policy "voice-egress"
   next
end
```

2. FortiSwitch receives an LLDP message from FortiFone after it is plugged into port11.
3. Run `diagnose switch-controller switch-info` to check the device information on FortiGate. The FortiFone is identified.

```
# diagnose switch-controller switch-info lldp neighbors-detail S124EP5918000276 port11
Vdom: root
Managed Switch : S124EP5918000276 0

Capability codes:
   R:Router, B:Bridge, T:Telephone, C:DOCSIS Cable Device
   W:WLAN Access Point, P:Repeater, S:Station, O:Other

MED TLV Capability codes:
   C:Capabilities, P:Network Policies, L:Location, S:MDI PSE
   D:MDI PD, I:Inventory


_____________________________________________________________
   Neighbor learned on port port11 by LLDP protocol
   Last change 20 seconds ago
   Last packet received 20 seconds ago

   Chassis ID: 169.254.15.3 (ip)
   System Name: FON-675i
   System Description:
   :14.0.0.1.r4

   Time To Live: 60 seconds
```

```
      System Capabilities: BT
      Enabled Capabilities: BT
      MED type: Communication Device Endpoint (Class III)
      MED Capabilities: CP
      Management IP Address: 169.254.15.3

      Port ID: 70:4c:a5:e2:6b:b2 (mac)
      Port description: WAN Port 10M/100M/1000M
      IEEE802.3, Power via MDI:
         Power devicetype: PD
         PSE MDI Power: Not Supported
         PSE MDI Power Enabled: No
         PSE Pair Selection: Can not be controlled
         PSE power pairs: Signal
         Power class: 1 (class-0)
         Power type: 802.3at off
         Power source: Unknown
         Power priority: Unknown
         Power requested: 0.0W
         Power allocated: 0.0W
   LLDP-MED, Network Policies:
      voice: VLAN: 256 (untagged), Priority: 0 DSCP: 46
      voice-signaling: VLAN: 256 (untagged), Priority: 0 DSCP: 46
      streaming-video: VLAN: 256 (untagged), Priority: 0 DSCP: 46

   # diagnose user device list
   hosts
      vd root/0  70:4c:a5:e2:6b:b2  gen 5  req OUA/34
         created 3522s  gen 3  seen 24s  onboarding  gen 2
         hardware vendor 'Fortinet'  src lldp weight 128
         type 'IP Phone'  src lldp  id 1523  weight 128
         family 'FortiFone'  src lldp  id 1523  weight 128
         host 'FON-675i'  src lldp
```

# FortiSwitch multi-tenant support

A virtual switch provides a container for physical ports to be loaned to other VDOMs, allowing local management of the resource.

The following example shows how to export managed FortiSwitch ports to multitenant VDOMs. In this example, the owner VDOM is `vdom1`, and the tenant VDOM is `root`.

**To export managed FortiSwitch ports to multitenant VDOMs:**

1. Configure the switch VLAN interface, and assign it to the tenant VDOM:

```
(vdom1) # config system interface
    edit "fsw_vlan"
        set vdom "root"
        set device-identification enable
        set role lan
        set snmp-index 32
        set interface "fsw"
```

```
        set vlanid 100
    next
end
```

2. In the tenant VDOM, designate the `default-virtual-switch-vlan`, which is used to set the native VLAN of ports leased from the owner VDOM:

```
(root) # config switch-controller global
    set default-virtual-switch-vlan "fsw_vlan"
end
```

3. On `vdom1`, export the managed switch ports to the `root`:

```
(vdom1) # config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF1800XXXX
        set fsw-wan1-peer "fsw"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        set version 1
        set dynamic-capability 100531703
        config ports
            edit "port1"
                set export-to "root"
            next
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

   The lease port is now available under the tenant VDOM:

```
(root) # config switch-controller managed-switch
show
    config switch-controller managed-switch
        edit "S248EPTF1800XXXX"
            set type virtual
            set owner-vdom "vdom1"
            config ports
                edit "port1"
                    set vlan "fsw_vlan"
                next
            end
        next
    end
```

4. Export the managed FortiSwitch port to a virtual port pool for the tenant VDOM to choose from:

```
(vdom1) # config switch-controller virtual-port-pool
    edit "tenant-monthly"
    next
end
```

```
(vdom1) # config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "S248EPTF1800XXXX"
        set fsw-wan1-peer "fsw"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        set version 1
        set dynamic-capability 100531703
        config ports
            edit "port2"
```

```
                set vlan "vsw.fsw"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.fsw"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.fsw"
                set export-to-pool "tenant-monthly"
                set export-to "vdom1"
            next
            ...
        end
    next
end
```

5. Request the available port in the virtual port pool to use the switch port:

```
(root) # execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool request S248EPTF1800XXXX port2
```

```
(root) # config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "S248EPTF1800XXXX"
        set type virtual
        set owner-vdom "vdom1"
        config ports
            edit "port2"
                set vlan "fsw_vlan"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

6. Return the port after use:

```
(root) # execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool return S248EPTF1800XXXX port2
```

7. Configure tags for the switch ports so the tags can be exported to virtual port pools

```
(vdom1) # config switch-controller switch-interface-tag
    edit "vip"
    next
    edit "gold"
    next
    edit "silver"
    next
end
```

```
(vdom1) # config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit "S248EPTF1800XXXX"
        set fsw-wan1-peer "fsw"
        set fsw-wan1-admin enable
        set version 1
        set dynamic-capability 100531703
        config ports
            edit "port2"
                set export-to-pool "tenant-monthly"
                set export-tags "silver"
                set export-to "root"
            next
            edit "port3"
                set vlan "vsw.fsw"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.fsw"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.fsw"
                set export-to-pool "tenant-monthly"
```

```
                set export-tags "vip"
                set export-to "vdom1"
            next
            edit "port4"
                set vlan "vsw.fsw"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.fsw"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.fsw"
                set export-to-pool "tenant-monthly"
                set export-tags "vip" "silver"
                set export-to "vdom1"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

8. Search for ports using tag filters:

```
(vdom1) # execute switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-tag silver
        Switch      Port                  Properties            Tags
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
tenant-monthly(vdom.vdom1)
  S248EPTF1800XXXX port2  (root)          10M/100M/1G/          silver
  S248EPTF1800XXXX port4                  10M/100M/1G/          vip,silver

(vdom1) # exe switch-controller virtual-port-pool show-by-tag vip
        Switch      Port                  Properties            Tags
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
tenant-monthly(vdom.vdom1)
  S248EPTF1800XXXX port3                  10M/100M/1G/          vip
  S248EPTF1800XXXX port4                  10M/100M/1G/          vip,silver
```

# Persistent MAC learning

Persistent MAC learning or sticky MAC is a port security feature where dynamically learned MAC addresses are retained when a switch or interface comes back online. The benefits of this feature include:

- Prevent traffic loss from trusted workstations and servers since there is no need to relearn MAC address after a restart.
- Protect the switch and the whole network when combined with MAC-learning-limit against security attacks such as Layer 2 DoS and overflow attacks.

Persistent MAC learning is configured in FortiGate and implemented in FortiSwitch.

This feature is disabled by default. You can use persistent MAC learning together with MAC limiting to restrict the number of persistent MAC addresses.

This feature is hardware and CPU intensive and can take several minutes depending on the number of entries.

You can only use CLI to configure this feature.



This feature is supported on all FortiSwitch models in FSW 6.0.

This feature is supported on models in FSW 3.6 higher than the 124D series.

**To enable sticky MAC on FortiGate:**

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
   edit <switch-serial-number>
      conf ports
         edit <port-number>
            set sticky-mac enable
         next
      end
   next
end
```

Before saving sticky Mac entries into CMDB, you might want to delete the unsaved sticky MAC items so that only the items you want are saved.

Saving sticky MAC items copies the sticky MAC items from memory to CMDB on FortiSwitches and FortiGates.

**To delete unsaved sticky MAC items:**

```
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac delete-unsaved <all | interface><switch-
     serial-number>
```

**To save sticky MAC items into CMDB:**

```
execute switch-controller switch-action sticky-mac save <all | interface><switch-serial-
     number>
```

# Split port mode (for QSFP / QSFP28)

The quad, small, form-factor pluggable plus (QSFP/QSPF28) is a transceiver module that offers high-density 40/100 Gigabit Ethernet connectivity options for data center and high-performance computing networks. The QSFP transceiver module is a hot-swappable, parallel fiber-optic/copper module with four independent optical transmit and receive channels. These channels can terminate in another Ethernet QSFP transceiver, or the channels can be broken out to four separate physical ports.

Configuration of which FortiSwitch ports are split is controlled directly on the FortiSwitch. An administrator needs to manually log into the FortiSwitch and set the desired split port configuration. After a split port configuration change is made on the FortiSwitch, it will automatically reboot. If the FortiSwitch was previously discovered or authorized, it should be deleted to allow the switch to be newly discovery again.



This feature requires a FortiSwitch model with SFP+ 40G ports, and FortiSwitch must be in Fortlink mode when changing the split configuration.

**To use previously discovered FortiSwitch with split ports with the switch controller:**

1. On FortiSwitch, change the split mode:
   This change requires a reboot.

```
config switch phy-mode
   set port29-phy-mode 4x10G
   set port30-phy-mode 4x10G
```

```
    end
```

2. Delete the FortiSwitch from `managed-switch` stanza.
3. Discover and authorize.

**To use FortiSwitch with factory defaults with split ports with the switch controller:**

1. Discover and Authorize.
   This change requires a reboot.
2. On FortiSwitch, change split mode.
   This change requires a reboot.
3. Delete switch from `managed-switch` stanza.
4. Discover and authorize.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S524DN4K15000008
        config ports
            edit "port29.1"
                set speed 10000
                set vlan "vsw.port11"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set export-to "root"
            next
            ......
            edit "port29.4"
                set speed 10000
                set vlan "vsw.port11"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set export-to "root"
            next
            edit "port30.1"
                set speed 10000
                set vlan "vsw.port11"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set export-to "root"
            next
            ......
            edit "port30.4"
                set speed 10000
                set vlan "vsw.port11"
                set allowed-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set untagged-vlans "qtn.port11"
                set export-to "root"
            next
        end
    next
end
```

# Dynamic VLAN name assignment from RADIUS attribute

On the FortiGate, all VLANs are specified as a system interface. Each system interface has a well-defined and unique name. When running FortiLink, the switch has no knowledge of the name association. The switch communicates directly with the RADIUS server and needs to know the mapping to make the proper selection. This information must be provided to the switch.

In order to make the feature generic and applicable to the switch in standalone mode, the system interface description field is leveraged. The switch-controller synchronizes this field to the switch for information purposes. All descriptions on the FortiGate remain on the FortiGate. The switch-controller synchronizes the FortiGate system interface name to the switch VLAN description.

When FortiSwitch receives a VLAN assignment from a RADIUS server, it determines if the data is an integer or string representation. If the representation is an integer, FortiSwitch assigns the VLAN. If the representation is a string, the 802.1x agent searches each FortiGate VLAN description field and, if a match is found, synchronizes the FortiGate interface name to the switch's VLAN description. If no match is found, it will generate a syslog error stating that the VLAN string was not found, the assingment could not be made, and the result is treated as in unauthorized or a failure.

**To configure dynamic VLAN name assignment:**

1. Configure a RADIUS server:
   - Set Tunnel-Type to "VLAN"
   - Set Tunnel-Medium-Type to "IEEE-802"
   - Set Tunnel-Private-Group-Id to "my.vlan.10"
     Designate the VLAN name instead of VLAN ID.
2. Configure the FortiGate:

```
config system interface
    edit "my.vlan.10"
        set vdom "root"
        set ip 1.1.1.254 255.255.255.0
        set allowaccess ping
        set interface "my.fortlink"
        set vlanid 10
    next
end
```

3. Configure the FortiSwitch:

```
config switch vlan
    edit 10
        set description "my.vlan.10"
    next
end
```

# MSTI support

Administrators can control multiple spanning tree instances (MSTI) one to 14, and allocate VLANs to specific instances. VLANs that are not added to a specific interface are in MSTI-0. FortiLink controls MSTI-0 (CST) and MSTI-15 for FortiLink management (VLAN 4094).

Each instance is a full and complete spanning tree. Any VLAN can be mapped to any instance, allowing the trees to have different topologies for each MSTI. Various parameters can be configured in each instance, such as cost and priority.

**To configure MSTI support:**

1. Create a spanning tree protocol (STP) instance between 1 to 14:

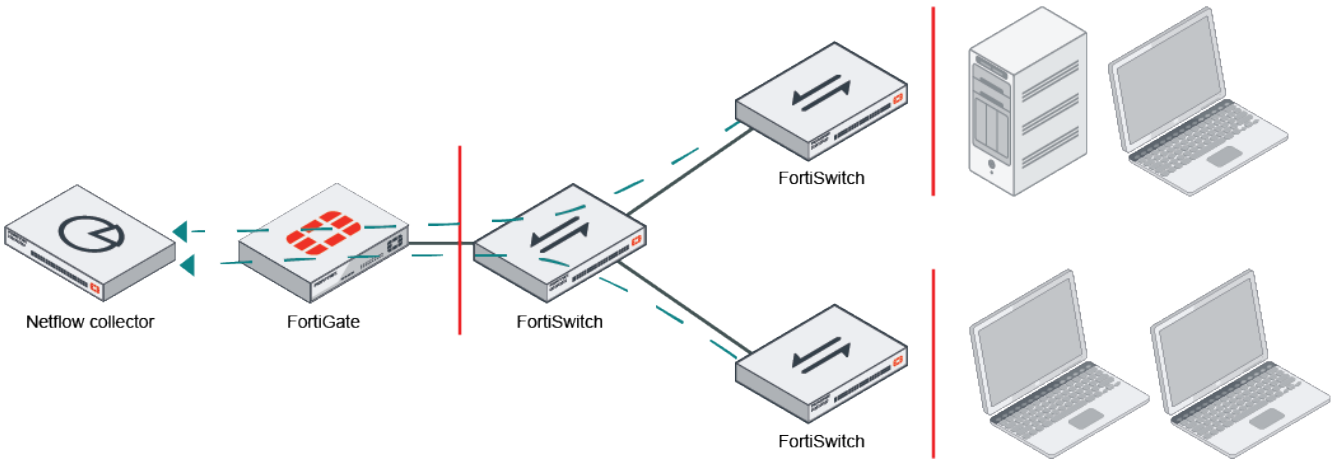
```
config switch-controller  stp-instance
    edit 1
        set vlan-range tenant-vlan3 vsw.aggr1
    next
end
```

2. Configure a specific STP priority on different managed FortiSwitch units:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit S248EPTF1800XXXX
        config stp-instance
            edit 1
                set priority  8192
            next
        end
    next
end
```

# Netflow and IPFIX support

You can configure Netflow (v1, v5, and v9) and IP Flow Information Export (IPFIX) on managed FortiSwitch units on switch controller. The resulting data are available in FortiView and to FortiAnalyzer for traffic statistics and topology views. Traffic sampling data can be used to show which users and device behind a switch are generating the most traffic.




The following CLI can be used to configure flow-tracking parameters:

```
config system flow-tracking
    set sample-mode {local | perimeter | device-ingress}
    set sample-rate <integer>
    set format {netflow1 | netflow5 | netflow9 | ipfix}
    set collector-ip <ip_address>
```

```
    set collector-port <integer>
    set transport {udp | tcp | sctp}
    set level {vlan | ip | port | proto}
    set max-export-pkt-size <integer>
    set timeout-general <integer>
    set timeout-icmp <integer>
    set timeout-max <integer>
    set timeout-tcp <integer>
    set timeout-tcp-fin <integer>
    set timeout-tcp-rst <integer>
    set timeout-udp <integer>
    config aggregates
        edit <id>
            set ip <ip_address>
        next
    end
end
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| sample-mode {local \| perimeter \| device-ingress} | Sample mode for flow tracking.<br>• `local`: Sample on the specific FortiSwitch port. Sampling must be enabled on the specific FortiSwitch ports using the `config switch-controller managed-switch` and `config ports` commands.<br>• `perimeter`: Sample on all non-fabric FortiSwitch ports, including the access and FortiLink ports, but not the FortiLink ISL port.<br>• `device-ingress`: Sample on all FortiSwitch ports. |
| sample-rate <integer> | Sample rate for the perimeter and device-ingress sampling (0 - 99999, default = 512). |
| format {netflow1 \| netflow5 \| netflow9 \| ipfix} | Flow tracking protocol (default = netflow9). |
| collector-ip <ip_address> | Collector IP address.<br>An all-zero IP address implies the feature is disabled |
| collector-port <integer> | Collector port number (0 - 65535, default=0). |
| transport {udp \| tcp \| sctp} | L4 transport protocol for exporting packets (default = udp). |
| level {vlan \| ip \| port \| proto} | Flow tracking level.<br>• `vlan`: Collect srcip/dstip/srcport/dstport/protocol/tos/vlan from the sample packet.<br>• `ip`: Collect srcip/dstip from the sample packet (default).<br>• `port`: Collect srcip/dstip/srcport/dstport/protocol from the sample packet.<br>• `proto`: Collect srcip/dstip/protocol from the sample packet. |
| max-export-pkt-size <integer> | Flow maximum export packet size, in bytes (512 - 9216, default = 512). |
| timeout-general <integer> | Flow session general timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 3600). |
| timeout-icmp <integer> | Flow session ICMP timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 300). |
| timeout-max <integer> | Flow session maximum timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 604800). |

| Variable | Description |
| --- | --- |
| timeout-tcp <integer> | Flow session TCP timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 3600). |
| timeout-tcp-fin <integer> | Flow session TCP FIN timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 300). |
| timeout-tcp-rst <integer> | Flow session TCP RST timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 120). |
| timeout-udp <integer> | Flow session UDP timeout, in seconds (60 - 604800, default = 300). |
| `config aggregates` **subcommand**:<br>Aggregates in which all traffic sessions matching the IP address will be grouped into the same flow. | |
| ip <ip_address> | IP address to group all matching traffic sessions to a flow. |

# Log and Report

Logging and reporting are useful components to help you understand what is happening on your network, and to inform you about certain network activities, such as the detection of a virus, a visit to an invalid website, an intrusion, a failed log in attempt, and myriad others.

Logging records the traffic that passes through, starts from, or ends on the FortiGate, and records the actions the FortiGate took during the traffic scanning process. After this information is recorded in a log message, it is stored in a log file that is stored on a log device (a central storage location for log messages). FortiGates support several log devices, such as FortiAnalyzer, FortiGate Cloud, and syslog servers. Approximately 5% of memory is used for buffering logs sent to FortiAnalyzer. The FortiGate system memory and local disk can also be configured to store logs, so it is also considered a log device.

Reports show the recorded activity in a more readable format. A report gathers all the log information that it needs, then presents it in a graphical format with a customizable design and automatically generated charts showing what is happening on the network. Reports can be generated on FortiGate devices with disk logging and on FortiAnalyzer devices.



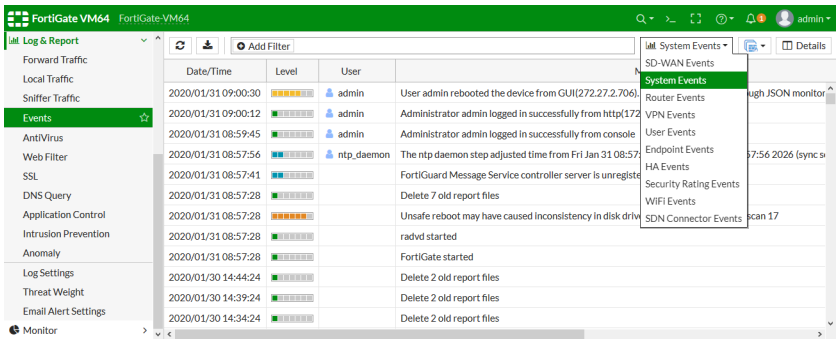
Performance statistics are not logged to disk. Performance statistics can be received by a syslog server or by FortiAnalyzer.

The following topics provide information about logging and reporting:


- Viewing event logs on page 1600
- Sample logs by log type on page 1601
- Log buffer on FortiGates with an SSD disk on page 1620
- Checking the email filter log on page 1623
- Supported log types to FortiAnalyzer, syslog, and FortiAnalyzer Cloud on page 1624
- Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate on page 1624
- Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers (or syslog servers) per VDOM on page 1627
- Source and destination UUID logging on page 1628
- Logging the signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength per client on page 1630
- RSSO information for authenticated destination users in logs on page 1633
- Troubleshooting on page 1636


## Viewing event logs

All event log subtypes are available from the event log subtype dropdown list on the *Log & Report* > *Events* page. Not all of the event log subtypes are available by default.




| | |
|---|---|
| **SD-WAN Events** | Always available. |
| **System Events** | Always available. |
| **Router Events** | Always available. |
| **VPN Events** | Available when *VPN* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*. |
| **User Events** | Always available. |
| **Endpoint Events** | Available when *Endpoint Control* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*. |
| **HA Events** | Always available. |
| **Security Rating Events** | Always available, but logs are only generated when a Security Rating License is registered. |
| **WAN Opt. & Cache Events** | Available on devices with two hard disks by default. On devices with one hard disk, the disk usage must be set to `wanopt` and then *WAN Opt. & Cache* must be enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*. |
| **WiFi Events** | Available on hardware devices when *WiFi Controller* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*. |
| **FortiExtender Events** | Available when *FortiExtender* is enabled in *System* > *Feature Visibility*. |
| **SDN Connector Events** | Always available. |

# Sample logs by log type

This topic provides a sample raw log for each subtype and the configuration requirements.

## Traffic Logs > Forward Traffic

### Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
```

```
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic all
        set application-list "g-default"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "certificate-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=11:37:47 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557513467369913239 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=58012
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=23.59.154.35 dstport=80 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="ae28f494-5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" dstuuid="ae28f494-
5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" poluuid="ccb269e0-5735-51e9-a218-a397dd08b7eb" sessionid=105048
proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" dstcountry="Canada"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=58012 appid=34050
app="HTTP.BROWSER_Firefox" appcat="Web.Client" apprisk="elevated" applist="g-default"
duration=116 sentbyte=1188 rcvdbyte=1224 sentpkt=17 rcvdpkt=16 utmaction="allow" countapp=1
osname="Ubuntu" mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcserver=0
utmref=65500-742
```

## Traffic Logs > Local Traffic

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log setting
    set local-in-allow enable
    set local-in-deny-unicast enable
    set local-in-deny-broadcast enable
    set local-out enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=11:50:48 logid="0001000014" type="traffic" subtype="local"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557514248379911176 srcip=172.16.200.254 srcport=62024
srcintf="port11" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.2 dstport=443 dstintf="vdom1"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=107478 proto=6 action="server-rst" policyid=0
policytype="local-in-policy" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved"
trandisp="noop" app="Web Management(HTTPS)" duration=5 sentbyte=1247 rcvdbyte=1719 sentpkt=5
rcvdpkt=6 appcat="unscanned"
```

## Traffic Logs > Multicast Traffic

### Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall multicast-policy
    edit 1
```

```
        set dstaddr 230-1-0-0
        set dstintf port3
        set srcaddr 172-16-200-0
        set srcintf port25
        set action accept
        set log enable
    next
end
```

```
config system setting
    set multicast-forward enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-03-31 time=06:42:54 logid="0002000012" type="traffic" subtype="multicast"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554039772 srcip=172.16.200.55 srcport=60660
srcintf="port25" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=230.1.1.2 dstport=7878 dstintf="port3"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=1162 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=1
policytype="multicast-policy" service="udp/7878" dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved"
trandisp="noop" duration=22 sentbyte=5940 rcvdbyte=0 sentpkt=11 rcvdpkt=0 appcat="unscanned"
```

## Traffic Logs > Sniffer Traffic

### Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall sniffer
    edit 3
        set logtraffic all
        set interface "port1"
        set ips-sensor-status enable
        set ips-sensor "sniffer-profile"
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=14:18:54 logid="0004000017" type="traffic" subtype="sniffer"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557523134021045897 srcip=208.91.114.4 srcport=50463
srcintf="port1" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=104.80.88.154 dstport=443 dstintf="port1"
dstintfrole="undefined" sessionid=2193276 proto=6 action="accept" policyid=3
policytype="sniffer" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United States" srccountry="Canada"
trandisp="snat" transip=0.0.0.0 transport=0 duration=10 sentbyte=0 rcvdbyte=0 sentpkt=0
rcvdpkt=0 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="allow" countips=1 crscore=5 craction=32768
sentdelta=0 rcvddelta=0 utmref=65162-7772
```

## Event Logs > SD-WAN Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set sdwan enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2020-03-29 time=16:41:30 logid="0113022923" type="event" subtype="sdwan" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1585525290513555981 tz="-0700" logdesc="Virtual WAN Link status"
eventtype="Health Check" healthcheck="ping1" slatargetid=1 oldvalue="1" newvalue="2"
msg="Number of pass member changed."
```

```
date=2020-03-29 time=16:51:27 logid="0113022925" type="event" subtype="sdwan" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1585525888177637570 tz="-0700" logdesc="Virtual WAN Link SLA
information" eventtype="SLA" healthcheck="ping1" slatargetid=1 interface="R150" status="up"
latency="0.013" jitter="0.001" packetloss="100.000%" inbandwidth="0kbps"
outbandwidth="0kbps" bibandwidth="0kbps" slamap="0x0" metric="packetloss" msg="Health Check
SLA status. SLA failed due to being over the performance metric threshold."
```

## Event Logs > System Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set system enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=11:20:54 logid="0100032001" type="event" subtype="system"
level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557771654587081441 logdesc="Admin login
successful" sn="1557771654" user="admin" ui="ssh(172.16.200.254)" method="ssh"
srcip=172.16.200.254 dstip=172.16.200.2 action="login" status="success" reason="none"
profile="super_admin" msg="Administrator admin logged in successfully from ssh
(172.16.200.254)"
```

## Event Logs > Router Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set router enable
end
```

```
config router bgp
    set log-neighbour-changes enable
end
```

```
config router ospf
    set log-neighbour-changes enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=14:12:26 logid="0103020301" type="event" subtype="router"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557781946677737955 logdesc="Routing log" msg="OSPF:
RECV[Hello]: From 31.1.1.1 via port9:172.16.200.1: Invalid Area ID 0.0.0.0"
```

## Event Logs > VPN Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set vpn enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=14:21:42 logid="0101037127" type="event" subtype="vpn" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1557782502722231889 logdesc="Progress IPsec phase 1" msg="progress IPsec
phase 1" action="negotiate" remip=50.1.1.101 locip=50.1.1.100 remport=500 locport=500
outintf="port14" cookies="9091f4d4837ea71c/0000000000000000" user="N/A" group="N/A"
xauthuser="N/A" xauthgroup="N/A" assignip=N/A vpntunnel="test" status="success" init="local"
mode="main" dir="outbound" stage=1 role="initiator" result="OK"
```

## Event Logs > User Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set user enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=15:55:56 logid="0102043008" type="event" subtype="user" level="notice"
vd="root" eventtime=1557788156913809277 logdesc="Authentication success" srcip=10.1.100.11
dstip=172.16.200.55 policyid=1 interface="port10" user="bob" group="local-group1"
authproto="TELNET(10.1.100.11)" action="authentication" status="success" reason="N/A"
msg="User bob succeeded in authentication"
```

## Event Logs > Endpoint Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set endpoint enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-14 time=08:32:13 logid="0107045057" type="event" subtype="endpoint"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557847933900764210 logdesc="FortiClient connection
added" action="add" status="success" license_limit="unlimited" used_for_type=4 connection_
type="sslvpn" count=1 user="skubas" ip=172.18.64.250 name="VAN-200957-PC"
fctuid="52C66FE08F724FE0B116DAD5062C96CD" msg="Add a FortiClient Connection."
```

```
date=2019-05-14 time=08:19:38 logid="0107045058" type="event" subtype="endpoint"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557847179037488154 logdesc="FortiClient connection
closed" action="close" status="success" license_limit="unlimited" used_for_type=5
connection_type="sslvpn" count=1 user="skubas" ip=172.18.64.250 name="VAN-200957-PC"
fctuid="52C66FE08F724FE0B116DAD5062C96CD" msg="Close a FortiClient Connection."
```

## Event Logs > HA Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set ha enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-10 time=09:53:18 logid="0108037894" type="event" subtype="ha" level="critical"
vd="root" eventtime=1557507199208575235 logdesc="Virtual cluster member joined" msg="Virtual
cluster detected member join" vcluster=1 ha_group=0 sn="FG2K5E3916900286"
```

## Event Logs > Security Rating Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set security-rating enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=14:40:59 logid="0110052000" type="event" subtype="security-rating"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557783659536252389 logdesc="Security Rating summary"
auditid=1557783648 audittime=1557783659 auditscore="5.0" criticalcount=1 highcount=6
mediumcount=8 lowcount=0 passedcount=38
```

## Event Logs > WAN Opt & Cache Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set wan-opt enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-14 time=09:37:46 logid="0105048039" type="event" subtype="wad" level="error"
vd="root" eventtime=1557851867382676560 logdesc="SSL fatal alert sent" session_id=0
policyid=0 srcip=0.0.0.0 srcport=0 dstip=208.91.113.83 dstport=636 action="send" alert="2"
desc="certificate unknown" msg="SSL Alert sent"
```

```
date=2019-05-10 time=15:48:31 logid="0105048038" type="event" subtype="wad" level="error"
vd="root" eventtime=1557528511221374615 logdesc="SSL Fatal Alert received" session_
id=5f88ddd1 policyid=0 srcip=172.18.70.15 srcport=59880 dstip=91.189.89.223 dstport=443
action="receive" alert="2" desc="unknown ca" msg="SSL Alert received"
```

## Event Logs > Wireless

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set wireless-activity enable
end
```

```
config wireless-controller log
    set status enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=11:30:08 logid="0104043568" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557772208134721423 logdesc="Fake AP on air"
ssid="fortinet" bssid="90:6c:ac:89:e1:fa" aptype=0 rate=130 radioband="802.11n" channel=6
action="fake-ap-on-air" manuf="Fortinet, Inc." security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES"
signal=-93 noise=-95 live=353938 age=505 onwire="no" detectionmethod="N/A" stamac="N/A"
apscan="N/A" sndetected="N/A" radioiddetected=0 stacount=0 snclosest="FP320C3X17001909"
radioidclosest=0 apstatus=0 msg="Fake AP On-air fortinet 90:6c:ac:89:e1:fa chan 6 live
353938 age 505"
```

## Event Logs > SDN Connector

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set connector enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=16:09:43 logid="0112053200" type="event" subtype="connector"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557788982 logdesc="IP address added" cfgobj="aws1"
action="object-add" addr="54.210.36.196" cldobjid="i-0fe5a1ef16bb94796" netid="vpc-97e81cee"
msg="connector object discovered in addr-obj aws1, 54.210.36.196"
```

```
date=2019-05-13 time=16:09:43 logid="0112053201" type="event" subtype="connector"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557788982 logdesc="IP address removed"
cfgobj="aws1" action="object-remove" addr="172.31.31.101" cldobjid="i-0fe5a1ef16bb94796"
netid="vpc-97e81cee" msg="connector object removed in addr-obj aws1, 172.31.31.101"
```

## Event Logs > FortiExtender Events

### Log configuration requirements

```
config log eventfilter
    set event enable
    set fortiextender enable
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-02-20 time=09:57:22 logid="0111046400" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1550685442 logdesc="FortiExtender system activity"
action="FortiExtender Authorized"    msg="ext SN:FX04DN4N16002352 authorized"

date=2019-02-20 time=09:51:42 logid="0111046401" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1550685102 logdesc="FortiExtender controller activity"
sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="ext session-deauthed" msg="ext
SN:FX04DN4N16002352 deauthorized"

date=2019-02-20 time=10:02:26 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550685746 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Connected"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" apn="N/A" service="LTE"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 STATE: sim with imsi:302720502331361 in slot:2 on carrier:Rogers
connected"

date=2019-02-20 time=10:33:57 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550687636 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Disconnected"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="N/A" iccid="N/A" phonenumber="N/A" carrier="N/A" plan="N/A"
apn="N/A" service="LTE" msg="FX04DN4N16002352 STATE: sim with imsi: in slot:2 on carrier:N/A
disconnected"

date=2019-02-20 time=10:02:24 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550685744 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Connecting"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" apn="N/A" service="N/A"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 STATE: sim with imsi:302720502331361 in slot:2 on carrier:Rogers
connecting

date=2019-02-20 time=10:47:19 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550688438 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="SIM Change" imei="N/A" slot=2
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 SIM: SIM2 is inserted"

date=2019-02-20 time=10:57:50 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550689069 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="SIM Change" imei="359376060442770"
slot=1 msg="FX04DN4N16002352 SIM: SIM2 is plucked out"

date=2019-02-20 time=12:02:24 logid="0111046407" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1550692942 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender warning
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="SIM Switch" imei="359376060442770"
reason="sim-switch can't take effect due to unavailability of 2 sim cards"
```

```
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 SIM: sim-switch can't take effect due to unavailability of 2 sim
cards"

date=2019-02-19 time=18:08:46 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550628524 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Signal Statistics"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" service="LTE" sinr="7.0 dB"
rsrp="-89 dBm" rsrq="-16 dB" signalstrength="92 dBm" rssi="-54" temperature="40 C" apn="N/A"
msg="FX04DN4N16002352 INFO:  LTE RSSI=-54dBm,RSRP=-89dBm,RSRQ=-
16dB,SINR=7.0dB,BAND=B2,CELLID=061C700F,BW=15MHz,RXCH=1025,TXCH=19025,TAC=8AAC,TEMPERATURE=4
0 C"

date=2019-02-19 time=18:09:46 logid="0111046409" type="event" subtype="fortiextender"
level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1550628585 logdesc="Remote FortiExtender info
activity" sn="FX04DN4N16002352" ip=11.11.11.2 action="Cellular Data Statistics"
imei="359376060442770" imsi="302720502331361" iccid="89302720403038146410"
phonenumber="+16045067526" carrier="Rogers" plan="Rogers-plan" service="LTE" rcvdbyte=7760
sentbyte=3315 msg="FX04DN4N16002352 INFO: SIM2 LTE, rx=7760, tx=3315, rx_diff=2538, tx_
diff=567"
```

## Security Logs > Antivirus

### Log configuration requirements

```
config antivirus profile
    edit "test-av"
        config http
            set options scan
        end
        set av-virus-log enable
        set av-block-log enable
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set av-profile "test-av"
        set logtraffic utm
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=11:45:03 logid="0211008192" type="utm" subtype="virus"
eventtype="infected" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557773103767393505 msg="File is
infected." action="blocked" service="HTTP" sessionid=359260 srcip=10.1.100.11
```

```
dstip=172.16.200.55 srcport=60446 dstport=80 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" policyid=4 proto=6 direction="incoming"
filename="eicar.com" quarskip="File-was-not-quarantined." virus="EICAR_TEST_FILE"
dtype="Virus" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ve?vn=EICAR_TEST_FILE" virusid=2172
url="http://172.16.200.55/virus/eicar.com" profile="g-default" agent="curl/7.47.0"
analyticscksum="275a021bbfb6489e54d471899f7db9d1663fc695ec2fe2a2c4538aabf651fd0f"
analyticssubmit="false" crscore=50 craction=2 crlevel="critical"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #
date=2019-05-13 time=11:45:04 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557773104815101919 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=60446
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.55 dstport=80 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="48420c8a-5c88-51e9-0424-a37f9e74621e" dstuuid="187d6f46-
5c86-51e9-70a0-fadcfc349c3e" poluuid="3888b41a-5c88-51e9-cb32-1c32c66b4edf" sessionid=359260
proto=6 action="close" policyid=4 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=60446 appid=15893
app="HTTP.BROWSER" appcat="Web.Client" apprisk="medium" applist="g-default" duration=1
sentbyte=412 rcvdbyte=2286 sentpkt=6 rcvdpkt=6 wanin=313 wanout=92 lanin=92 lanout=92
utmaction="block" countav=1 countapp=1 crscore=50 craction=2 osname="Ubuntu"
mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcserver=0 utmref=65497-770
```

## Security Logs > Web Filter

### Log configuration requirements

```
config webfilter profile
    edit "test-webfilter"
        set web-content-log enable
        set web-filter-activex-log enable
        set web-filter-command-block-log enable
        set web-filter-cookie-log enable
        set web-filter-applet-log enable
        set web-filter-jscript-log enable
        set web-filter-js-log enable
        set web-filter-vbs-log enable
        set web-filter-unknown-log enable
        set web-filter-referer-log enable
        set web-filter-cookie-removal-log enable
        set web-url-log enable
        set web-invalid-domain-log enable
        set web-ftgd-err-log enable
        set web-ftgd-quota-usage enable
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "v4-out"
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set logtraffic utm
```

```
        set utm-status enable
        set webfilter-profile "test-webfilter"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=16:29:45 logid="0316013056" type="utm" subtype="webfilter"
eventtype="ftgd_blk" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557790184975119738 policyid=1
sessionid=381780 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=44258 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=185.244.31.158 dstport=80 dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="HTTP" hostname="morrishittu.ddns.net" profile="test-webfilter" action="blocked"
reqtype="direct" url="/" sentbyte=84 rcvdbyte=0 direction="outgoing" msg="URL belongs to a
denied category in policy" method="domain" cat=26 catdesc="Malicious Websites" crscore=30
craction=4194304 crlevel="high"

# Corresponding traffic log #
date=2019-05-13 time=16:29:50 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557790190452146185 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=44258
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=185.244.31.158 dstport=80 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="ae28f494-5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" dstuuid="ae28f494-
5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" poluuid="ccb269e0-5735-51e9-a218-a397dd08b7eb" sessionid=381780
proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" dstcountry="Germany"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=44258 duration=5
sentbyte=736 rcvdbyte=3138 sentpkt=14 rcvdpkt=5 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="block"
countweb=1 crscore=30 craction=4194304 osname="Ubuntu" mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01"
srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:01" srcserver=0 utmref=65497-796
```

## Security Logs > DNS Query

### Log configuration requirements

```
config dnsfilter profile
    edit "dnsfilter_fgd"
        config ftgd-dns
            set options error-allow
        end
        set log-all-domain enable
        set block-botnet enable
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port12"
        set dstintf "port11"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set dnsfilter-profile "dnsfilter_fgd"
        set logtraffic utm
        set nat enable
```

```
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=15:05:49 logid="1501054802" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
response" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557957949740931155 policyid=1 sessionid=6887
srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50002 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.100.100 dstport=53 dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="dnsfilter_fgd" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" xid=57945 qname="changelogs.ubuntu.com"
qtype="AAAA" qtypeval=28 qclass="IN" ipaddr="2001:67c:1560:8008::11" msg="Domain is
monitored" action="pass" cat=52 catdesc="Information Technology"

date=2019-05-15 time=15:05:49 logid="1500054000" type="utm" subtype="dns" eventtype="dns-
query" level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557957949653103543 policyid=1
sessionid=6887 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50002 srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.100.100 dstport=53 dstintf="port11" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=17
profile="dnsfilter_fgd" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" xid=57945 qname="changelogs.ubuntu.com"
qtype="AAAA" qtypeval=28 qclass="IN"

# Corresponding traffic log #
date=2019-05-15 time=15:08:49 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557958129950003945 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50002
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.100.100 dstport=53 dstintf="port11"
dstintfrole="undefined" srcuuid="ae28f494-5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" dstuuid="ae28f494-
5735-51e9-f247-d1d2ce663f4b" poluuid="ccb269e0-5735-51e9-a218-a397dd08b7eb" sessionid=6887
proto=17 action="accept" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="DNS" dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.2 transport=50002 duration=180
sentbyte=67 rcvdbyte=207 sentpkt=1 rcvdpkt=1 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="allow" countdns=1
osname="Linux" mastersrcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" srcmac="a2:e9:00:ec:40:41" srcserver=0
utmref=65495-306
```

## Security Logs > Application Control

### Log configuration requirements

```
# log enabled by default in application profile entry

config application list
    edit "block-social.media"
        set other-application-log enable
        config entries
            edit 1
                set category 2 5 6 23
                set log enable
            next
        end
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "to_Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
```

```
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic utm
        set application-list "block-social.media"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:36 logid="1059028704" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="app-ctrl-all" level="information" vd="root" eventtime=1557968615 appid=40568
srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=195.8.215.136 srcport=50798 dstport=443 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
direction="outgoing" policyid=1 sessionid=4414 applist="block-social.media"
appcat="Web.Client" app="HTTPS.BROWSER" action="pass" hostname="www.dailymotion.com"
incidentserialno=1962906680 url="/" msg="Web.Client: HTTPS.BROWSER," apprisk="medium"
scertcname="*.dailymotion.com" scertissuer="DigiCert SHA2 High Assurance Server CA"

date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:35 logid="1059028705" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="app-ctrl-all" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557968615 appid=16072
srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=195.8.215.136 srcport=50798 dstport=443 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=4414 applist="block-social.media"
appcat="Video/Audio" app="Dailymotion" action="block" hostname="www.dailymotion.com"
incidentserialno=1962906682 url="/" msg="Video/Audio: Dailymotion," apprisk="elevated"

date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:35 logid="1059028705" type="utm" subtype="app-ctrl"
eventtype="app-ctrl-all" level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557968615 appid=16072
srcip=10.1.100.22 dstip=195.8.215.136 srcport=50798 dstport=443 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6 service="HTTPS"
direction="incoming" policyid=1 sessionid=4414 applist="block-social.media"
appcat="Video/Audio" app="Dailymotion" action="block" hostname="www.dailymotion.com"
incidentserialno=1962906681 url="/" msg="Video/Audio: Dailymotion," apprisk="elevated"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #  date=2019-05-15 time=18:03:41 logid="0000000013"
type="traffic" subtype="forward" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557968619
srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50798 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=195.8.215.136
dstport=443 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="d8ce7a90-7763-51e9-e2be-741294c96f31"
sessionid=4414 proto=6 action="client-rst" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTPS"
dstcountry="France" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.10
transport=50798 appid=16072 app="Dailymotion" appcat="Video/Audio" apprisk="elevated"
applist="block-social.media" appact="drop-session" duration=5 sentbyte=1150 rcvdbyte=7039
sentpkt=13 utmaction="block" countapp=3 devtype="Unknown" devcategory="None"
mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcserver=0 utmref=0-330
```

## Security Logs > Intrusion Prevention

### Log configuration requirements

```
# log enabled by default in ips sensor
```

```
config ips sensor
    edit "block-critical-ips"
        config entries
            edit 1
                set severity critical
                set status enable
                set action block
                set log enable
            next
        end
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "to_Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set logtraffic utm
        set ips-sensor "block-critical-ips"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=17:56:41 logid="0419016384" type="utm" subtype="ips"
eventtype="signature" level="alert" vd="root" eventtime=1557968201 severity="critical"
srcip=10.1.100.22 srccountry="Reserved" dstip=172.16.200.55 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" sessionid=4017 action="dropped" proto=6
service="HTTP" policyid=1 attack="Adobe.Flash.newfunction.Handling.Code.Execution"
srcport=46810 dstport=80 hostname="172.16.200.55" url="/ips/sig1.pdf" direction="incoming"
attackid=23305 profile="block-critical-ips" ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID23305"
incidentserialno=582633933 msg="applications3:
Adobe.Flash.newfunction.Handling.Code.Execution," crscore=50 craction=4096
crlevel="critical"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #  date=2019-05-15 time=17:58:10 logid="0000000013"
type="traffic" subtype="forward" level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557968289
srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=46810 srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=172.16.200.55
dstport=80 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="d8ce7a90-7763-51e9-e2be-741294c96f31"
sessionid=4017 proto=6 action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTP"
dstcountry="Reserved" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.10
transport=46810 duration=89 sentbyte=565 rcvdbyte=9112 sentpkt=9 rcvdpkt=8
appcat="unscanned" utmaction="block" countips=1 crscore=50 craction=4096 devtype="Unknown"
devcategory="None" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcserver=0
utmref=0-302
```

## Security Logs > Anomaly

### Log configuration requirements

```
config firewall DoS-policy
    edit 1
        set interface "port12"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set service "ALL"
        config anomaly
            edit "icmp_flood"
                set status enable
                set log enable
                set action block
                set threshold 50
            next
        end
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-13 time=17:05:59 logid="0720018433" type="utm" subtype="anomaly"
eventtype="anomaly" level="alert" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557792359461869329
severity="critical" srcip=10.1.100.11 srccountry="Reserved" dstip=172.16.200.55
srcintf="port12" srcintfrole="undefined" sessionid=0 action="clear_session" proto=1
service="PING" count=1 attack="icmp_flood" icmpid="0x1474" icmptype="0x08" icmpcode="0x00"
attackid=16777316 policyid=1 policytype="DoS-policy"
ref="http://www.fortinet.com/ids/VID16777316" msg="anomaly: icmp_flood, 51 > threshold 50"
crscore=50 craction=4096 crlevel="critical"
```

## Security Logs > Data Leak Prevention

### Log configuration requirements

```
config dlp sensor
    edit "dlp-file-type-test"
        set comment ''
        set replacemsg-group ''
        config filter
            edit 1
                set name ''
                set severity medium
                set type file
                set proto http-get http-post ftp
                set filter-by file-type
                set file-type 1
                set archive enable
                set action block
            next
        end
        set dlp-log enable
```

```
    next
end

config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set name "to_Internet"
        set srcintf "port10"
        set dstintf "port9"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic utm
        set dlp-sensor "dlp-file-type-test"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### Sample log

```
date=2019-05-15 time=17:45:30 logid="0954024576" type="utm" subtype="dlp" eventtype="dlp"
level="warning" vd="root" eventtime=1557967528 filteridx=1 dlpextra="dlp-file-size11"
filtertype="file-type" filtercat="file" severity="medium" policyid=1 sessionid=3423
epoch=1740880646 eventid=0 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50354 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="lan" dstip=52.216.177.83 dstport=443 dstintf="port9" dstintfrole="wan" proto=6
service="HTTPS" filetype="pdf" direction="incoming" action="block"
hostname="fortinetweb.s3.amazonaws.com" url="/docs.fortinet.com/v2/attachments/be3d0e3d-
4b62-11e9-94bf-00505692583a/FortiOS_6.2.0_Log_Reference.pdf" agent="Wget/1.17.1"
filename="FortiOS_6.2.0_Log_Reference.pdf" filesize=16360 profile="dlp-file-type-test"

# Corresponding Traffic Log #
date=2019-05-15 time=17:45:34 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1557967534 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=50354
srcintf="port10" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=52.216.177.83 dstport=443 dstintf="port9"
dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="d8ce7a90-7763-51e9-e2be-741294c96f31" sessionid=3423 proto=6
action="server-rst" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United
States" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.10 transport=50354
duration=5 sentbyte=2314 rcvdbyte=5266 sentpkt=33 rcvdpkt=12 appcat="unscanned" wanin=43936
wanout=710 lanin=753 lanout=753 utmaction="block" countdlp=1 crscore=5 craction=262144
crlevel="low" devtype="Unknown" devcategory="None" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e"
srcmac="00:0c:29:51:38:5e" srcserver=0 utmref=0-152
```

## Security Logs > SSH and Security Logs > SSL

### Log configuration requirements

```
config ssh-filter profile
    edit "ssh-deepscan"
        set block shell
        set log shell
        set default-command-log disable
```

```
    next
end
```

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "port21"
        set dstintf "port23"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set ssh-filter-profile "ssh-deepscan"
        set profile-protocol-options "protocol"
        set ssl-ssh-profile "ssl"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### For SSL-Traffic-log, enable `logtraffic all`

```
config firewall policy
    edit 1
        set srcintf "dmz"
        set dstintf "wan1"
        set srcaddr "all"
        set dstaddr "all"
        set action accept
        set schedule "always"
        set service "ALL"
        set utm-status enable
        set inspection-mode proxy
        set logtraffic all
        set ssl-ssh-profile "deep-inspection"
        set nat enable
    next
end
```

### For SSL-UTM-log

```
#EVENTTYPE="SSL-ANOMALIES"
```

By default, `ssl-anomalies-log` is enabled.

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "deep-inspection"
        set comment "Read-only deep inspection profile."
        set server-cert-mode re-sign
        set caname "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
        set untrusted-caname "Fortinet_CA_Untrusted"
        set ssl-anomalies-log enable
        set ssl-exemptions-log disable
        set ssl-negotiation-log disable
        set rpc-over-https disable
        set mapi-over-https disable
```

```
        set use-ssl-server disable
    next
end
```

```
# EVENTTYPE="SSL-EXEMPT"
```

Enable `ssl-exemptions-log` to generate ssl-utm-exempt log.

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "deep-inspection"
        set comment "Read-only deep inspection profile."
        set server-cert-mode re-sign
        set caname "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
        set untrusted-caname "Fortinet_CA_Untrusted"
        set ssl-anomalies-log enable
        set ssl-exemptions-log enable
        set ssl-negotiation-log disable
        set rpc-over-https disable
        set mapi-over-https disable
        set use-ssl-server disable
    next
end
```

```
# EVENTTYPE="SSL-negotiation"
```

Enable `ssl-negotiation-log` to log SSL negotiation..

```
config firewall ssl-ssh-profile
    edit "deep-inspection"
        set comment "Read-only deep inspection profile."
        set server-cert-mode re-sign
        set caname "Fortinet_CA_SSL"
        set untrusted-caname "Fortinet_CA_Untrusted"
        set ssl-anomalies-log enable
        set ssl-exemptions-log enable
        set ssl-negotiation-log enable
        set rpc-over-https disable
        set mapi-over-https disable
        set use-ssl-server disable
    next
end
```

### Sample log for SSH

```
date=2019-05-15 time=16:18:17 logid="1601061010" type="utm" subtype="ssh" eventtype="ssh-
channel" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557962296 policyid=1 sessionid=344
profile="ssh-deepscan" srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=43580 dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=22
srcintf="port21" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port23" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" direction="outgoing" login="root" channeltype="shell"
```

```
# Corresponding Traffic Log #
date=2019-05-15 time=16:18:18 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1557962298 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=43580
srcintf="port21" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.16.200.44 dstport=22 dstintf="port23"
dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="49871fae-7371-51e9-17b4-43c7ff119195" sessionid=344 proto=6
action="close" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="SSH" dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.171 transport=43580 duration=8
sentbyte=3093 rcvdbyte=2973 sentpkt=18 rcvdpkt=16 appcat="unscanned" utmaction="block"
countssh=1 utmref=65535-0
```

### Sample log for SSL

### For SSL-Traffic-log

```
date=2019-05-16 time=10:08:26 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1558026506763925658 srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=38572
srcintf="dmz" srcintfrole="dmz" dstip=104.154.89.105 dstport=443 dstintf="wan1"
dstintfrole="wan" poluuid="a17c0a38-75c6-51e9-4c0d-d547347b63e5" sessionid=100 proto=6
action="server-rst" policyid=1 policytype="policy" service="HTTPS" dstcountry="United
States" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.11 transport=38572
duration=5 sentbyte=930 rcvdbyte=6832 sentpkt=11 rcvdpkt=19 appcat="unscanned" wanin=1779
wanout=350 lanin=754 lanout=754 utmaction="block"  countssl=1 crscore=5 craction=262144
crlevel="low" utmref=65467-0
```

### For SSL-UTM-log

```
#EVENTTYPE="SSL-ANOMALIES"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:44:53 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795092 policyid=1 sessionid=10796
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=43602 dstip=104.154.89.105 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-invalid"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:51:17 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795476 policyid=1 sessionid=11110
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49076 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-untrusted"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:55:43 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795742 policyid=1 sessionid=11334
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49082 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-req"

date=2019-03-28 time=10:57:42 logid="1700062053" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553795861 policyid=1 sessionid=11424
service="SMTPS" profile="block-unsupported-ssl" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=41296
dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=8080 srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf=unknown-0
dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6 action="blocked" msg="Connection is blocked due to
unsupported SSL traffic" reason="malformed input"

date=2019-03-28 time=11:00:17 logid="1700062002" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
anomalies" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553796016 policyid=1 sessionid=11554
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49088 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="blocked" msg="Server certificate blocked" reason="block-cert-sni-mismatch"

# EVENTTYPE="SSL-EXEMPT"

date=2019-03-28 time=11:09:14 logid="1701062003" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
exempt" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553796553 policyid=1 sessionid=12079
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=49102 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="exempt" msg="SSL connection exempted" reason="exempt-addr"

date=2019-03-28 time=11:10:55 logid="1701062003" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
exempt" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1553796654 policyid=1 sessionid=12171
```

```
service="HTTPS" srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=47390 dstip=50.18.221.132 dstport=443
srcintf="port2" srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
action="exempt" msg="SSL connection exempted" reason="exempt-ftgd-cat"

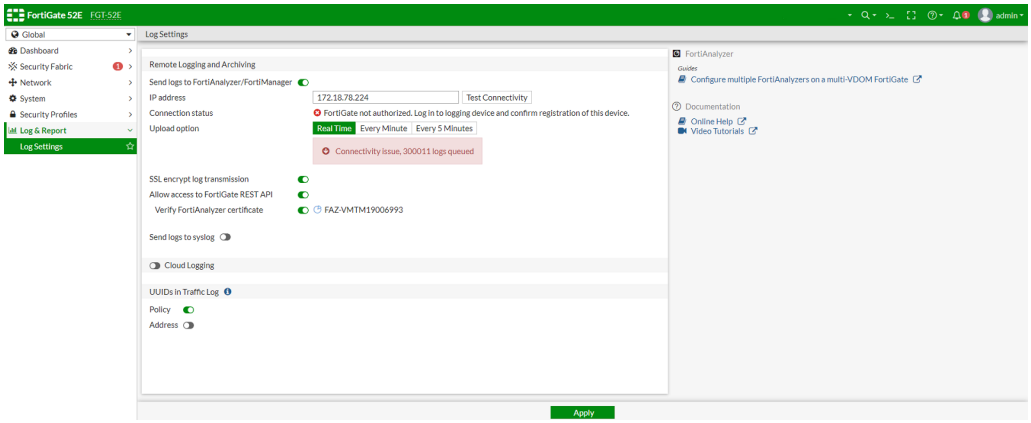
# EVENTYPE="SSL-NEGOTIATION"

date=2020-02-07 time=11:10:58 logid="1702062101" type="utm" subtype="ssl" eventtype="ssl-
negotiation" level="warning" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1581102658589415731 tz="-0800"
action="blocked" policyid=1 sessionid=141224 service="HTTPS" profile="deep-inspection-clone"
srcip=10.1.100.66 srcport=33666 dstip=172.16.200.99 dstport=8080 srcintf="port2"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstintf="port3" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
eventsubtype="unexpected-protocol" msg="SSL connection is blocked."
```

# Log buffer on FortiGates with an SSD disk

FortiGates with an SSD disk have a configurable log buffer. When the connection to FortiAnalyzer is unreachable, the FortiGate is able to buffer logs on disk if the memory log buffer is full. The logs queued on the disk buffer can be sent successfully once the connection to FortiAnalyzer is restored.

The number of logs queued on the disk buffer is visible in the *Log & Report* > *Log Settings* page:




The queued logs are buffered to the memory first and then disk. `Main miglogd` handles the disk buffering job, while `miglogd-children` handles the memory buffering. Disk buffer statistics only appear under `Main miglogd`, and memory buffer statistics only appears under `miglogd-children`. If the total buffer is full, new logs will overwrite the old logs.

**To configure the log buffer:**

1. Allocate disk space (MB) to temporarily store logs to FortiAnalyzer:

   ```
   config system global
       set faz-disk-buffer-size 200
   end
   ```

2. Check the `Main miglogd` and `miglogd-children` statistics. The 200 MB disk buffer has been set, and there are currently no logs buffered in memory or on disk when FortiAnalyzer is reachable:

   ```
   # diagnose test application miglogd 41 0
   cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
   VDOM:root
   ```

```
Queue for: global-faz

    memory queue:
        num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

    disk max queue size:200MB total:0MB
        totol items:0
        disk queue agents:
            devid:-1-10-0-1
            buffer path:/var/log/qbuf/10.0/1
            saved size:0MB cached size:0
            save roll:0 restore roll:0
            restore id:0 space:0MB

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 1
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

    memory queue:
        num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

    disk queue client:
        devid:-1-10-0-1 status:buffering
        Total in cache:0 size:0(0MB) max:4MB logs:0
```

3. Disable the connection between the FortiGate and FortiAnalyzer. For example, delete the FortiGate from the FortiAnalyzer authorized device list.
   Assuming a massive number of logs (~ 300000) are recorded during this downtime, the logs will be queued in the memory buffer first. If the memory buffer is full, then the remaining logs will be queued on the disk buffer.
4. Check the `Main miglogd` and `miglogd-children` statistics again. All 97 MB of the memory buffer is occupied, and 76 of the 200 MB has been taken from the disk buffer:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 41 0
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

        disk max queue size:200MB total:76MB
                totol items:128917
                disk queue agents:
                        devid:-1-10-0-1
                        buffer path:/var/log/qbuf/10.0/1
                        saved size:76MB cached size:3324984
                        save roll:19 restore roll:0
                        restore id:0 space:0MB

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 1
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 165721 used: 101908358(97MB) allocated:
106449280(101MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz
```

```
        memory queue:
                num:165718 size:101906500(97MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:165718

        disk queue client:
                devid:-1-10-0-1 status:restoring
                restore id:1267 space:0MB
                Total in cache:3 size:1858(0MB) max:4MB logs:3
```

The overall `miglogd` statistics shows the total cached logs is the sum of the logs buffered in memory and on disk:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 6
mem=0, disk=11, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=0, faz=300053, faz-cloud=0, webt=0, fds=0
interface-missed=44
Queues in all miglogds: cur:165718  total-so-far:165718
global log dev statistics:
faz 0: sent=0, failed=0, cached=300053, dropped=0 , relayed=0
Num of REST URLs: 0
```

5. Enable the connection between FortiAnalyzer and the FortiGate.
6. After a while, check the `miglogd` statistics to confirm that all buffered logs are being sent to FortiAnalyzer successfully:

```
# diagnose test application miglogd 6
mem=0, disk=11, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=0, faz=300058, faz-cloud=0, webt=0, fds=0
interface-missed=44
Queues in all miglogds: cur:4294832957  total-so-far:165726
global log dev statistics:
faz 0: sent=300058, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
Num of REST URLs: 15

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 0
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

        disk max queue size:200MB total:0MB
                totol items:0
                disk queue agents:
                        devid:-1-10-0-1
                        buffer path:/var/log/qbuf/10.0/1
                        saved size:0MB cached size:0
                        save roll:20 restore roll:20
                        restore id:1267 space:0MB

# diagnose test application miglogd 41 1
cache maximum: 106100940(101MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)
VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:101906636(97MB) logs:0

        disk queue client:
```

```
devid:-1-10-0-1 status:buffering
Total in cache:0 size:0(0MB) max:4MB logs:0
```

# Checking the email filter log

### To check the email filter log in the CLI:

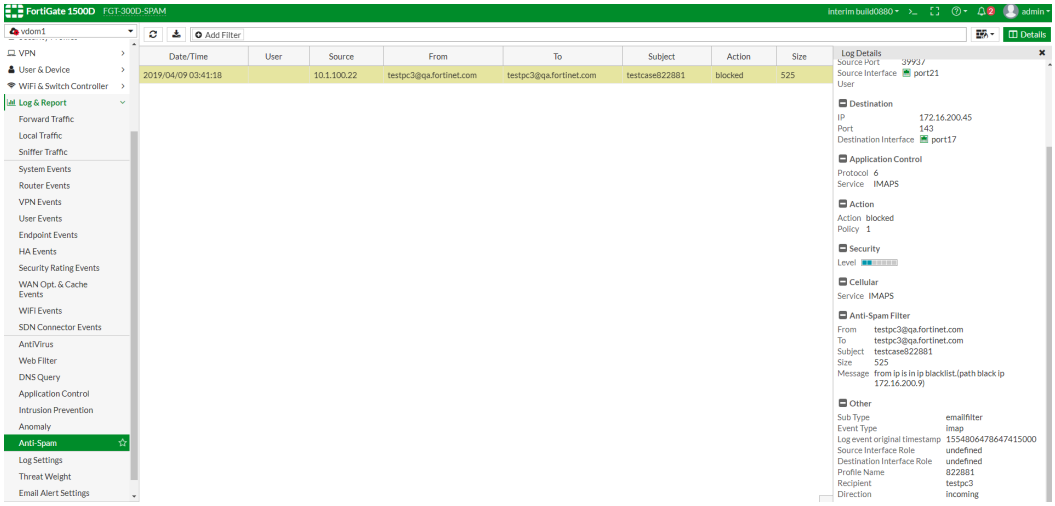
```
execute log filter category 5

execute log display
1 logs found.
1 logs returned.

1: date=2019-04-09 time=03:41:18 logid="0510020491" type="utm" subtype="emailfilter"
eventtype="imap" level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1554806478647415130 policyid=1
sessionid=439 srcip=10.1.100.22 srcport=39937 srcintf="port21" srcintfrole="undefined"
dstip=172.16.200.45 dstport=143 dstintf="port17" dstintfrole="undefined" proto=6
service="IMAPS" profile="822881" action="blocked" from="testpc3@qa.fortinet.com"
to="testpc3@qa.fortinet.com" recipient="testpc3" direction="incoming" msg="from ip is in ip
blacklist.(path black ip 172.16.200.9)" subject="testcase822881" size="525" attachment="no"
```

### To check the email filter log in the GUI:

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Anti-Spam*.



# Supported log types to FortiAnalyzer, syslog, and FortiAnalyzer Cloud

This topic describes which log messages are supported by each logging destination:

| Log Type | FortiAnalyzer | Syslog | FortiAnalyzer Cloud |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Traffic** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **Event** | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| **Virus** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **Webfilter** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **IPS** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **Emailfilter** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **Anomaly** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **VOIP** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **DLP** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **App-Ctrl** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **WAF** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **GTP** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **DNS** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **SSH** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **SSL** | Yes | Yes | No |
| **CIFS** | No | Yes | No |

# Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate

This topic shows a sample configuration of multiple FortiAnalyzers on a multi-VDOM FortiGate.

In this example:

- The FortiGate has three VDOMs:
  - Root (management VDOM)
  - VDOM1
  - VDOM2
- There are four FortiAnalyzers.
  These IP addresses are used as examples in the instructions below.
  - FAZ1: `172.16.200.55`
  - FAZ2: `172.18.60.25`

    - FAZ3: `192.168.1.253`
    - FAZ4: `192.168.1.254`
- Set up FAZ1 and FAZ2 under global.
    - These two collect logs from the root VDOM and VDOM2.
    - FAZ1 and FAZ2 must be accessible from management VDOM root.
- Set up FAZ3 and FAZ4 under VDOM1.
    - These two collect logs from VDOM1.
    - FAZ3 and FAZ4 must be accessible from VDOM1.

**To set up FAZ1 as global FortiAnalyzer 1 from the GUI:**

Prerequisite: FAZ1 must be reachable from the management root VDOM.

1. Go to *Global* > *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.
2. Enable *Send logs to FortiAnalyzer/FortiManager*.
3. Enter the FortiAnalyzer IP.
   In this example: `172.16.200.55`.
4. For *Upload option*, select *Real Time*.
5. Click *Apply*.

**To set up FAZ2 as global FortiAnalyzer 2 from the CLI:**

Prerequisite: FAZ2 must be reachable from the management root VDOM.

```
config log fortianalyzer2 setting
    set status enable
    set server "172.18.60.25"
    set upload-option realtime
end
```

**To set up FAZ3 and FAZ4 as VDOM1 FortiAnalyzer 1 and FortiAnalyzer 2:**

Prerequisite: FAZ3 and FAZ4 must be reachable from VDOM1.

```
config log setting
   set faz-override enable
end

config log fortianalyzer override-setting
   set status enable
   set server "192.168.1.253"
   set upload-option realtime
end

config log fortianalyzer2 override-setting
   set status enable
   set server "192.168.1.254"
   set upload-option realtime
end
```

## Checking FortiAnalyzer connectivity

**To use the diagnose command to check FortiAnalyzer connectivity:**

1. Check the global FortiAnalyzer status:

```
FGTA(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 1
faz: global , enabled
        server=172.16.200.55, realtime=3, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_172.16.200.55, reliable=1
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:

                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: global, id=0, fd=90, ready=1, ipv6=0, 172.16.200.55/514
        oftp-state=5
faz2: global , enabled
        server=172.18.60.25, realtime=1, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_172.18.60.25, reliable=0
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:

                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: global, id=1, fd=95, ready=1, ipv6=0, 172.18.60.25/514
        oftp-state=5
```

2. Check the VDOM1 override FortiAnalyzer status:

```
FGTA(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 3101
faz: vdom, enabled, override
        server=192.168.1.253, realtime=1, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_192.168.1.253, reliable=1
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:
                        (FAZ-VM0000000001,age=17s)
                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
```

```
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: vdom, id=0, fd=72, ready=1, ipv6=0, 192.168.1.253/514
        oftp-state=5
faz2: vdom, enabled, override
        server=192.168.1.254, realtime=1, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_
Log_root_192.168.1.254, reliable=0
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_
verified=N
                SNs: last sn update:1369 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:
                        (FL-1KET318000008,age=17s)
                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
         voip dns ssh ssl
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: vdom, id=1, fd=97, ready=1, ipv6=0, 192.168.1.254/514
        oftp-state=5
faz3: vdom, disabled, override
```

# Configuring multiple FortiAnalyzers (or syslog servers) per VDOM

In a VDOM, multiple FortiAnalyzer and syslog servers can be configured as follows:

- Up to three override FortiAnalyzer servers
- Up to four override syslog servers

If the VDOM `faz-override` and/or `syslog-override` setting is enabled or disabled (default) before upgrading, the setting remains the same after upgrading.

If the override setting is disabled, the GUI displays the global FortiAnalyzer1 or syslog1 setting. If the override setting is enabled, the GUI displays the VDOM override FortiAnalyzer1 or syslog1 setting.

You can only use CLI to enable the override to support multiple log servers.

**To enable FortiAnalyzer and syslog server override under VDOM:**

```
config log setting
    set faz-override enable
    set syslog-override enable
end
```

When `faz-override` and/or `syslog-override` is enabled, the following CLI commands are available for configuring VDOM override:

**To configure VDOM override for FortiAnalyzer:**

1. Configure the FortiAnalyzer override settings:

```
config log fortianalyzer/fortianalyzer2/fortianalyzer3 override-setting
    set status enable
    set server "123.12.123.123"
    set reliable enable
end
```

2. Configure the override filters:

```
config log fortianalyzer/fortianalyzer2/fortianalyzer3 override-filter
    set severity information
    set forward-traffic enable
    set local-traffic enable
    set multicast-traffic enable
    set sniffer-traffic enable
    set anomaly enable
    set voip enable
    set dlp-archive enable
    set dns enable
    set ssh enable
    set ssl enable
end
```

**To configure VDOM override for a syslog server:**

1. Configure the syslog override settings:

```
config log syslogd/syslogd2/syslogd3/syslogd4 override-setting
    set status enable
    set server "123.12.123.12"
    set facility local1
end
```

2. Configure the override filters:

```
config log syslogd/syslogd2/syslogd3/syslogd4 override-filter
    set severity information
    set forward-traffic enable
    set local-traffic enable
    set multicast-traffic enable
    set sniffer-traffic enable
    set anomaly enable
    set voip enable
    set dns enable
    set ssh enable
    set ssl enable
end
```

# Source and destination UUID logging

The `log-uuid` setting in `system global` is split into two settings: `log-uuid-address` and `log-uuid policy`.

The traffic log includes two `internet-service` name fields: *Source Internet Service* (`srcinetsvc`) and *Destination Internet Service* (`dstinetsvc`).

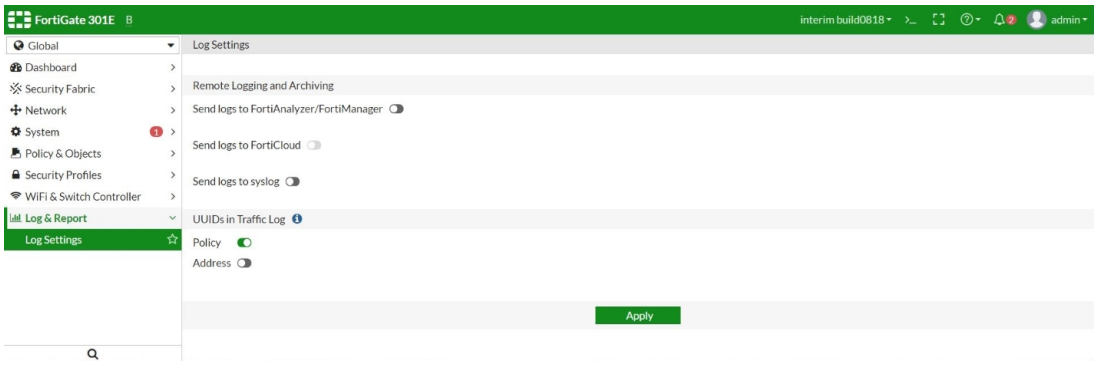
## Log UUIDs

UUIDs can be matched for each source and destination that match a policy that is added to the traffic log. This allows the address objects to be referenced in log analysis and reporting.

As this may consume a significant amount of storage space, this feature is optional. By default, policy UUID insertion is enabled and address UUID insertion is disabled.

**To enable address and policy UUID insertion in traffic logs using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.
2. Under *UUIDs in Traffic Log*, enable *Policy* and/or *Address*.
3. Click *Apply*.




**To enable address and policy UUID insertion in traffic logs using the CLI:**

```
config system global
   set log-uuid-address enable
   set log-uuid-policy enable
end
```

Sample forward traffic log:

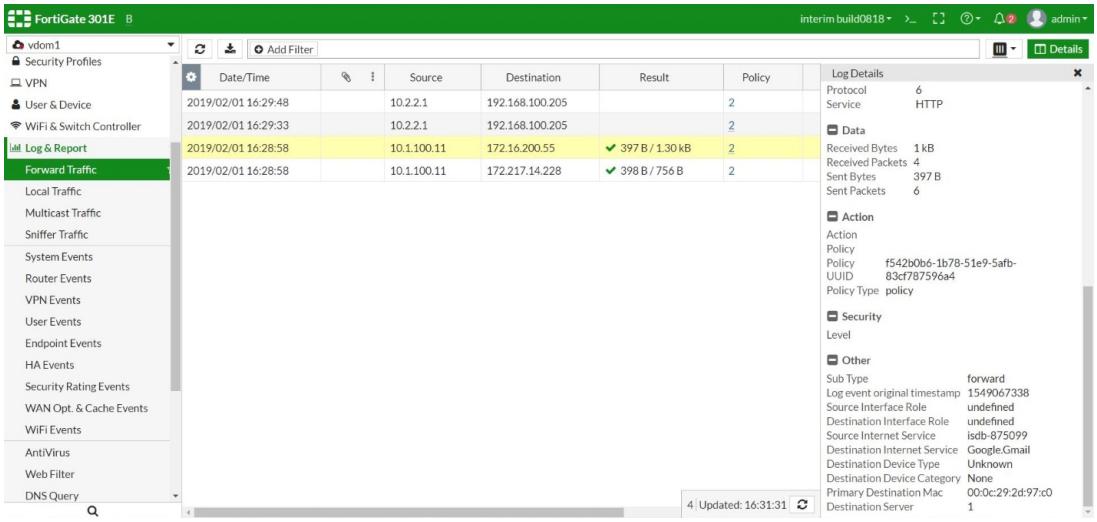
```
# date=2019-01-25 time=11:32:55 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
     level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1528223575 srcip=192.168.1.183 srcname="PC24"
     srcport=33709 srcintf="lan" srcintfrole="lan" dstip=192.168.70.184 dstport=80
     dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" srcuuid="27dd503e-883c-51e7-ade1-7e015d46494f"
     dstuuid="27dd503e-883c-51e7-ade1-7e015d46494f"
     poluuid="9e0fe24c-1808-51e8-1257-68ce4245572c" sessionid=5181 proto=6
     action="client-rst" policyid=4 policytype="policy" service="HTTP" trandisp="snat"
     transip=192.168.70.228 transport=33709 appid=38783 app="Wget"
     appcat="General.Interest" apprisk="low" applist="default" duration=5 sentbyte=450
     rcvdbyte=2305 sentpkt=6 wanin=368 wanout=130 lanin=130 lanout=130 utmaction="block"
     countav=2 countapp=1 crscore=50 craction=2 devtype="Linux PC" devcategory="None"
     osname="Linux" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:36:5c:c3" srcmac="00:0c:29:36:5c:c3"
     srcserver=0 utmref=65523-1018
```

### Internet service name fields

Traffic logs for `internet-service` include two fields: *Source Internet Service* and *Destination Internet Service*.

**To view the `internet-service` fields using the GUI:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
2. Double-click on an entry to view the *Log Details*. The *Source Internet Service* and *Destination Internet Service* fields are visible in the *Log Details* pane.



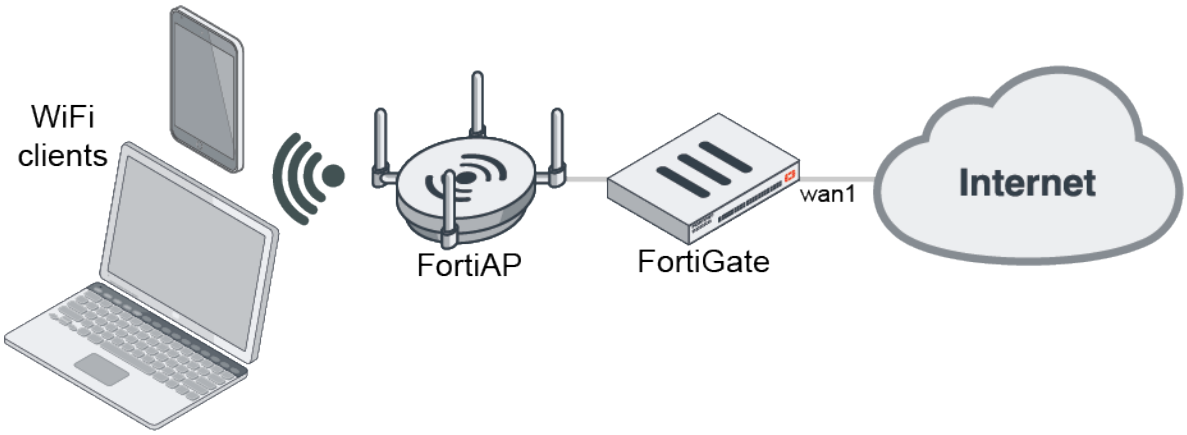

Sample `internet-service` name fields in a forward traffic log:

```
# date=2019-01-25 time=14:17:04 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
     level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1548454622 srcip=10.1.100.11 srcport=51112
     srcintf="port3" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.14.228 dstport=80
     dstintf="port1" dstintfrole="undefined" poluuid="af519380-2094-51e9-391c-
     b78e8edbddfc" srcinetsvc="isdb-875099" dstinetsvc="Google.Gmail" sessionid=6930
     proto=6 action="close" policyid=2 policytype="policy" service="HTTP"
     dstcountry="United States" srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="snat"
     transip=172.16.200.2 transport=51112 duration=11 sentbyte=398 rcvdbyte=756 sentpkt=6
     rcvdpkt=4 appcat="unscanned" devtype="Router/NAT Device" devcategory="Fortinet
     Device" mastersrcmac="90:6c:ac:41:7a:24" srcmac="90:6c:ac:41:7a:24" srcserver=0
     dstdevtype="Unknown" dstdevcategory="Fortinet Device"
     masterdstmac="08:5b:0e:1f:ed:ed" dstmac="08:5b:0e:1f:ed:ed" dstserver=0
```

# Logging the signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength per client

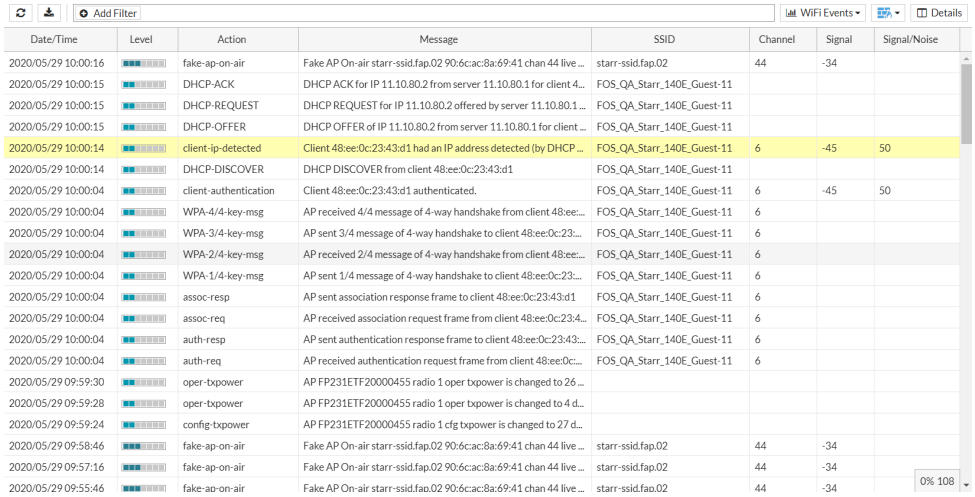
The signal-to-noise ratio (`snr`) and signal strength (`signal`) are logged per client in the WiFi event and traffic logs.

When a WiFi client connects to a tunnel or local-bridge mode SSID on an FortiAP that is managed by a FortiGate, signal-to-noise ratio and signal strength details are included in WiFi event logs for local-bridge traffic statistics and authentication, and in forward traffic logs for tunnel traffic. This allows you to store and view clients' historical signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio information.




**To verify when a client is connecting to an SSID:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *WiFi Events* from the events drop-down list.
   The *Signal* and *Signal/Noise* columns show the signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio for each applicable client.



| Date/Time | Level | Action | Message | SSID | Channel | Signal | Signal/Noise |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2020/05/29 10:00:16 | | fake-ap-on-air | Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ... | starr-ssid.fap.02 | 44 | -34 | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:15 | | DHCP-ACK | DHCP ACK for IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client 4... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:15 | | DHCP-REQUEST | DHCP REQUEST for IP 11.10.80.2 offered by server 11.10.80.1 ... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:15 | | DHCP-OFFER | DHCP OFFER of IP 11.10.80.2 from server 11.10.80.1 for client ... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:14 | | client-ip-detected | Client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 had an IP address detected (by DHCP ... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | -45 | 50 |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:14 | | DHCP-DISCOVER | DHCP DISCOVER from client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | client-authentication | Client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 authenticated. | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | -45 | 50 |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | WPA-4/4-key-msg | AP received 4/4 message of 4-way handshake from client 48:ee:... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | WPA-3/4-key-msg | AP sent 3/4 message of 4-way handshake to client 48:ee:0c:23:... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | WPA-2/4-key-msg | AP received 2/4 message of 4-way handshake from client 48:ee:... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | WPA-1/4-key-msg | AP sent 1/4 message of 4-way handshake to client 48:ee:0c:23:... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | assoc-resp | AP sent association response frame to client 48:ee:0c:23:43:d1 | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | assoc-req | AP received association request frame from client 48:ee:0c:23:4... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | auth-resp | AP sent authentication response frame to client 48:ee:0c:23:43:... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 10:00:04 | | auth-req | AP received authentication request frame from client 48:ee:0c:... | FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11 | 6 | | |
| 2020/05/29 09:59:30 | | oper-txpower | AP FP231ETF20000455 radio 1 oper txpower is changed to 26 ... | | | | |
| 2020/05/29 09:59:28 | | oper-txpower | AP FP231ETF20000455 radio 1 oper txpower is changed to 4 d... | | | | |
| 2020/05/29 09:59:24 | | config-txpower | AP FP231ETF20000455 radio 1 cfg txpower is changed to 27 d... | | | | |
| 2020/05/29 09:58:46 | | fake-ap-on-air | Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ... | starr-ssid.fap.02 | 44 | -34 | |
| 2020/05/29 09:57:16 | | fake-ap-on-air | Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ... | starr-ssid.fap.02 | 44 | -34 | |
| 2020/05/29 09:55:46 | | fake-ap-on-air | Fake AP On-air starr-ssid.fap.02 90:6c:ac:8a:69:41 chan 44 live ... | starr-ssid.fap.02 | 44 | -34 | |

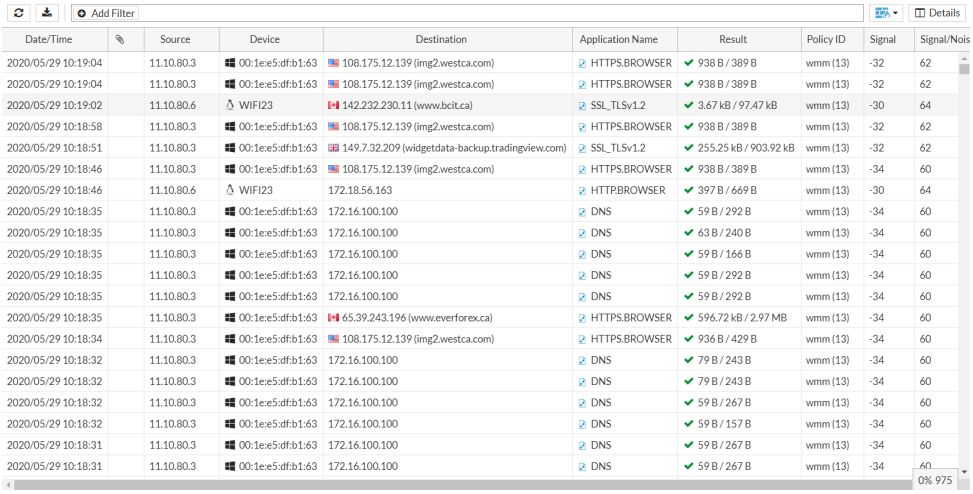
2. WiFi event log messages include the `signal` and `snr` values:

```
date=2020-05-27 time=11:26:28 logid="0104043579" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590603988877156921 tz="-0700" logdesc="Wireless
client IP assigned" sn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455" vap="stability3"
ssid="FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11" radioid=1 user="N/A" group="N/A"
stamac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcip=11.10.80.2 channel=6 radioband="802.11n,g-only"
signal=-45 snr=50 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="client-ip-detected"
reason="Reserved 0" mpsk="N/A" msg="Client 1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49 had an IP address detected
(by DHCP packets)."

date=2020-05-27 time=11:26:11 logid="0104043573" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590603970962702892 tz="-0700" logdesc="Wireless
client authenticated" sn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455" vap="stability3"
ssid="FOS_QA_Starr_140E_Guest-11" radioid=1 user="N/A" group="N/A"
stamac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcip=0.0.0.0 channel=6 radioband="802.11n,g-only" signal=-45
snr=50 security="WPA2 Personal" encryption="AES" action="client-authentication"
reason="Reserved 0" mpsk="N/A" msg="Client 1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49 authenticated."
```

**To verify tunnel traffic when a client is connecting to a tunnel mode SSID:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic*.
   The *Signal* and *Signal/Noise* columns show the signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio for each applicable client.



| Date/Time | Source | Device | Destination | Application Name | Result | Policy ID | Signal | Signal/Nois |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2020/05/29 10:19:04 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com) | HTTPS.BROWSER | 938 B / 389 B | wmm (13) | -32 | 62 |
| 2020/05/29 10:19:04 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com) | HTTPS.BROWSER | 938 B / 389 B | wmm (13) | -32 | 62 |
| 2020/05/29 10:19:02 | 11.10.80.6 | WIFI23 | 142.232.230.11 (www.bcit.ca) | SSL_TLSv1.2 | 3.67 kB / 97.47 kB | wmm (13) | -30 | 64 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:58 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com) | HTTPS.BROWSER | 938 B / 389 B | wmm (13) | -32 | 62 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:51 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 149.7.32.209 (widgetdata-backup.tradingview.com) | SSL_TLSv1.2 | 255.25 kB / 903.92 kB | wmm (13) | -32 | 62 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:46 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com) | HTTPS.BROWSER | 938 B / 389 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:46 | 11.10.80.6 | WIFI23 | 172.18.56.163 | HTTP.BROWSER | 397 B / 669 B | wmm (13) | -30 | 64 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:35 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 292 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:35 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 63 B / 240 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:35 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 166 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:35 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 292 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:35 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 292 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:35 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 65.39.243.196 (www.everforex.ca) | HTTPS.BROWSER | 596.72 kB / 2.97 MB | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:34 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 108.175.12.139 (img2.westca.com) | HTTPS.BROWSER | 936 B / 429 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:32 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 79 B / 243 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:32 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 79 B / 243 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:32 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 267 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:32 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 157 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:31 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 267 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |
| 2020/05/29 10:18:31 | 11.10.80.3 | 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | 172.16.100.100 | DNS | 59 B / 267 B | wmm (13) | -34 | 60 |

2. Forward traffic log messages include the `signal` and `snr` values:

```
date=2020-05-27 time=11:30:26 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590604226533016978 tz="-0700" srcip=11.10.80.2
srcname="WIFI23" srcport=53926 srcintf="stability3" srcintfrole="lan" srcssid="FOS_QA_
Starr_140E_Guest-11" apsn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455" channel=6
radioband="802.11n,g-only" signal=-31 snr=64 dstip=91.189.91.157 dstport=123
dstintf="wan1" dstintfrole="wan" srccountry="United States" dstcountry="United States"
sessionid=322069 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=13 policytype="policy"
poluuid="7c14770c-1456-51e9-4c57-806e9c499782" policyname="wmm" service="NTP"
trandisp="snat" transip=172.16.200.111 transport=53926 appid=16270 app="NTP"
appcat="Network.Service" apprisk="elevated" applist="g-default" duration=180 sentbyte=76
rcvdbyte=76 sentpkt=1 rcvdpkt=1 utmaction="allow" countapp=1 osname="Linux"
mastersrcmac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcmac="1c:87:2c:b6:a8:49" srcserver=0 utmref=65534-66
```

**To verify local-bridge traffic statistics when a client is connecting to a local-bridge mode SSID:**

1. Go to *Log & Report* > *Events* and select *WiFi Events* from the events drop-down list.
   The *Signal* and *Signal/Noise* columns show the signal strength and signal-to-noise ratio for each applicable client.



| Date/Time | Level | Action | Message | SSID | Channel | Signal | Signal/Noise |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2020/05/29 10:44:44 | | sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats | Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB | | -53 | 51 |
| 2020/05/29 10:39:44 | | sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats | Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB | | -54 | 50 |
| 2020/05/29 10:34:44 | | sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats | Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB | | -54 | 51 |
| 2020/05/29 10:29:44 | | sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats | Traffic stats for bridge ssid client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63 | FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB | | -52 | 52 |

2. WiFi event log messages include the `signal` and `snr` values:

```
date=2020-05-26 time=17:48:57 logid="0104043687" type="event" subtype="wireless"
level="information" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590540537841497433 tz="-0700" logdesc="Traffic
stats for station with bridge wlan" sn="FP231ETF20000455" ap="FP231ETF20000455"
vap="wifi.fap.01" ssid="FOS_QA_Starr-140E-LB-cap-2" srcip=10.128.100.4 user="N/A"
stamac="00:1e:e5:df:b1:63" signal=-53 snr=52 sentbyte=8970016 rcvdbyte=985910
nextstat=300 action="sta-wl-bridge-traffic-stats" msg="Traffic stats for bridge ssid
client 00:1e:e5:df:b1:63"
```

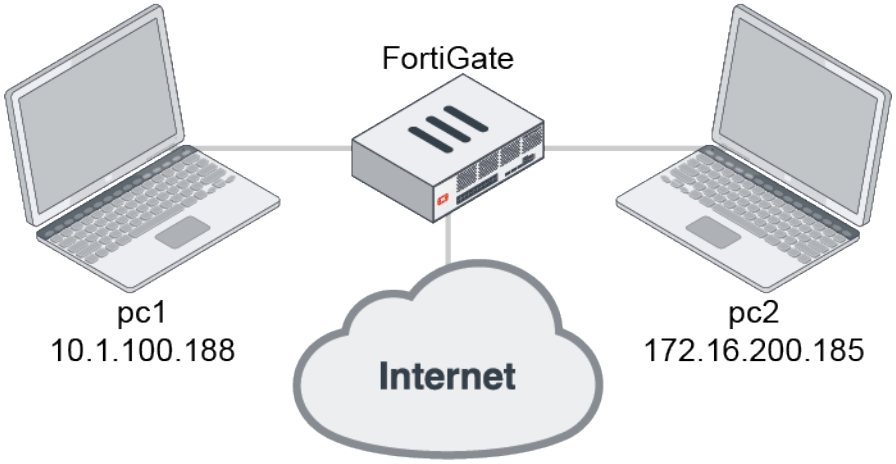
# RSSO information for authenticated destination users in logs

FortiGate can use RSSO accounting information from authenticated RSSO users to populate destination users and groups, along with source users and groups.

RSSO user login information can be forwarded by the RADIUS server to the FortiGate that is listening for incoming RADIUS accounting start messages on the RADIUS accounting port. Accounting start messages usually contain the IP address, user name, and user group information. FortiGate uses this information in traffic logs, which include *dstuser* and *dstgroup* fields for user and group destination information .

For instructions on configuring RSSO, see RADIUS single sign-on (RSSO) agent on page 274.

The three following scenarios show traffic between pc1 and the internet, and pc1 and pc2.




## Scenario 1

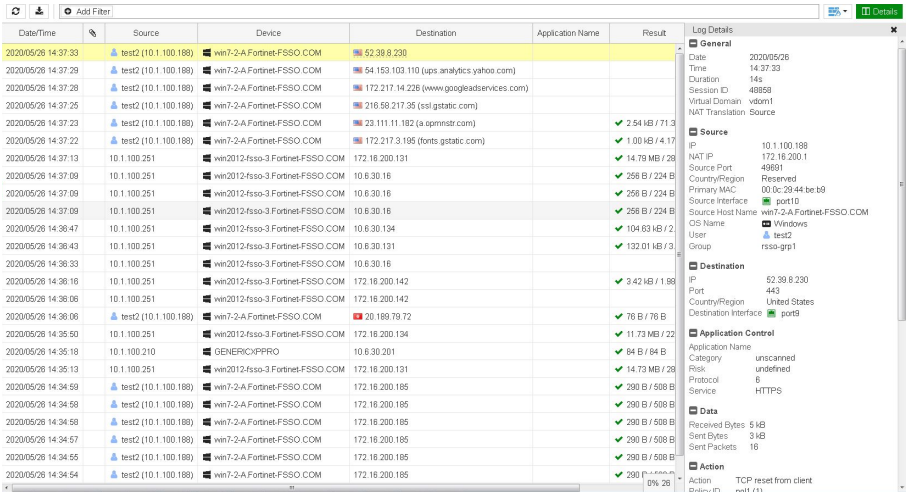
In this scenario, RSSO user *test2* in group *rsso-grp1* is authenticated on pc1. Traffic flows from pc1 to the internet.

**Expected result:**

In the logs, user *test2* is shown as the source user in the *rsso-grp1* group.

**To verify the results:**

1. In the GUI, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of an entry with test2 as the source.
2. In the *Source* section, *User* is *test2* and *Group* is the *rsso-grp1*.




3. The log message shows the user and group:

```
10: date=2020-05-25 time=15:34:43 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590446083718007055 tz="-0700" srcip=10.1.100.188
srcname="win7-2-A.Fortinet-FSSO.COM" srcport=56982 srcintf="port10"
srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=172.217.3.195 dstport=443 dstintf="port9"
dstintfrole="undefined" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="United States"
sessionid=120651 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=1 policytype="policy"
poluuid="d130f886-9ec6-51ea-206e-8c561c5244c6" policyname="pol1" user="test2"
group="rsso-grp1" authserver="vdom1" service="udp/443" trandisp="snat"
transip=172.16.200.1 transport=56982 duration=181 sentbyte=2001 rcvdbyte=1820 sentpkt=6
rcvdpkt=4 appcat="unscanned" sentdelta=0 rcvddelta=0 srchwvendor="VMware"
osname="Windows" srcswversion="7" mastersrcmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9"
srcmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9" srcserver=0
```

## Scenario 2

In this scenario, RSSO user *test2* is authenticated on pc1. Traffic is initialized on pc2 (172.16.200.185) going to pc1 (10.1.100.188).

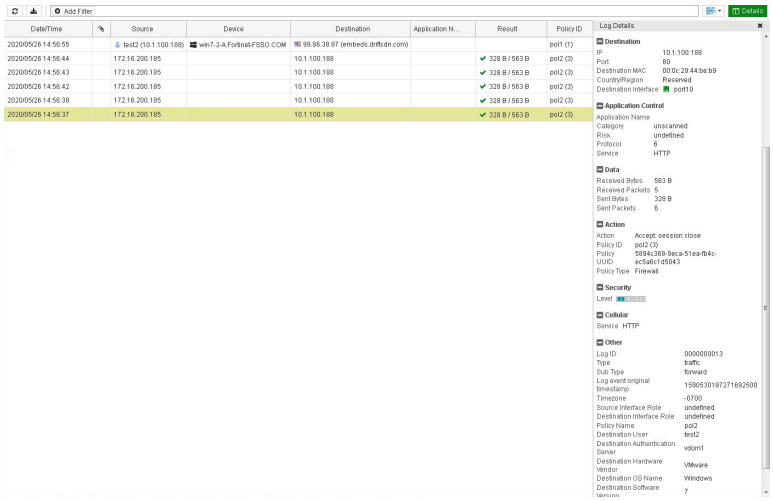
**Expected result:**

In the logs, user *test2* is shown as the destination user (`dstuser`). No destination group (`dstgroup`) is logged because no RSSO user is logged in on pc2, so the traffic from pc2 is unauthenticated.

**To verify the results:**

1. In the GUI, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of an entry with 172.16.200.185 (pc2) as the source.

2. In the *Other* section, *Destination User* is *test2* and no destination group is shown.



3. The log message shows the destination user:

```
1: date=2020-05-22 time=07:38:06 logid="0000000020" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="root" eventtime=1590158286585506922 tz="-0700" srcip=172.16.200.185
identifier=1 srcintf="port9" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=10.1.100.188 dstintf="port10"
dstintfrole="undefined" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="Reserved" sessionid=4395
proto=1 action="accept" policyid=3 policytype="policy" poluuid="d4f18e1e-9c36-51ea-6ec0-
3a354d5910ee" policyname="pol2" dstuser="test2" dstauthserver="root" service="PING"
trandisp="snat" transip=10.1.100.1 transport=0 duration=128 sentbyte=7620 rcvdbyte=5220
sentpkt=127 rcvdpkt=87 appcat="unscanned" sentdelta=7620 rcvddelta=5220
```

## Scenario 3

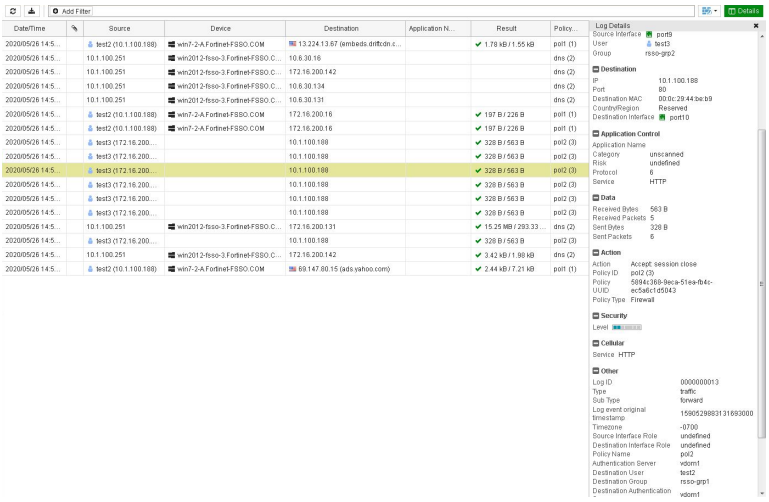
In this scenario, RSSO user *test2* in group *rsso-grp1* is authenticated on pc1, and user *test3* in group *rsso-grp2* is authenticated on pc2. Traffic flows from pc2 to pc1.

**Expected result:**

In the logs, user *test3* is shown as the source user in the *rsso-grp1* group. User *test2* is shown as destination user (`dstuser`) in the *rsso-grp1* destination group (`dstgroup`). The destination group is logged because an RSSO user is logged in to pc2.

**To verify the results:**

1. In the GUI, go to *Log & Report* > *Forward Traffic* and view the details of an entry with 172.16.200.185 (pc2) as the source.
2. In the *Source* section, *User* is *test3* and *Group* is the *rsso-grp2*. In the *Other* section, *Destination User* is *test2* and *Destination Group* is *rsso-grp1*.



3. The log message shows both the source and the destination users and groups:

```
8: date=2020-05-25 time=14:23:07 logid="0000000013" type="traffic" subtype="forward"
level="notice" vd="vdom1" eventtime=1590441786958007914 tz="-0700" srcip=172.16.200.185
srcport=64096 srcintf="port9" srcintfrole="undefined" dstip=10.1.100.188 dstport=80
dstintf="port10" dstintfrole="undefined" srccountry="Reserved" dstcountry="Reserved"
sessionid=112445 proto=6 action="close" policyid=3 policytype="policy"
poluuid="5894c368-9eca-51ea-fb4c-ec5a6c1d5043" policyname="pol2" user="test3"
group="rsso-grp2" authserver="vdom1" dstuser="test2" dstgroup="rsso-grp1"
dstauthserver="vdom1" service="HTTP" trandisp="snat" transip=10.1.100.1 transport=64096
duration=1 sentbyte=328 rcvdbyte=563 sentpkt=6 rcvdpkt=5 appcat="unscanned"
dsthwvendor="VMware" dstosname="Windows" dstswversion="7"
masterdstmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9" dstmac="00:0c:29:44:be:b9" dstserver=0
```

# Troubleshooting

The following topics provide information about troubleshooting logging and reporting:

- Log-related diagnose commands on page 1636
- Backing up log files or dumping log messages on page 1642
- SNMP OID for logs that failed to send on page 1644

## Log-related diagnose commands

This topic shows commonly used examples of log-related diagnose commands.

Use the following diagnose commands to identify log issues:

- The following commands enable debugging log daemon (`miglogd`) at the proper debug level:

```
diagnose debug application miglogd x
diagnose debug enable
```

- The following commands display different status/statistics of `miglogd` at the proper level:

```
diagnose test application miglogd x
diagnose debug enable
```

To get the list of available levels, press `Enter` after `diagnose test/debug application miglogd`. The following are some examples of commonly use levels.

If the debug log display does not return correct entries when log filter is set:

```
diagnose debug application miglogd 0x1000
```

For example, use the following command to display all login system event logs:

```
execute log filter device disk
execute log filter category event
execute log filter field action login

execute log display

Files to be searched:
file_no=65523, start line=0, end_line=237
file_no=65524, start line=0, end_line=429
file_no=65525, start line=0, end_line=411
file_no=65526, start line=0, end_line=381
file_no=65527, start line=0, end_line=395
file_no=65528, start line=0, end_line=458
file_no=65529, start line=0, end_line=604
file_no=65530, start line=0, end_line=389
file_no=65531, start line=0, end_line=384
session ID=1, total logs=3697
back ground search. process ID=26240, session_id=1
 start line=1  view line=10
( action "login" )
ID=1, total=3697, checked=238, found=5
ID=1, total=3697, checked=668, found=13
ID=1, total=3697, checked=1080, found=23
ID=1, total=3697, checked=1462, found=23
ID=1, total=3697, checked=1858, found=23
ID=1, total=3697, checked=2317, found=54
ID=1, total=3697, checked=2922, found=106
ID=1, total=3697, checked=3312, found=111
ID=1, total=3697, checked=3697, found=114
```

You can check and/or debug the FortiGate to FortiAnalyzer connection status.

**To show connect status with detailed information:**

```
diagnose test application miglogd 1

faz: global , enabled
        server=172.18.64.234, realtime=3, ssl=1, state=connected, src=, mgmt_name=FGh_Log_
vdom1_172.18.64.234, reliable=0, sni_prefix_type=none, required_entitlement=none
                status: ver=6, used_disk=0, total_disk=0, global=0, vfid=0 conn_verified=Y
                SNs: last sn update:107 seconds ago.
                        Sn list:
                        (FL-8HFT718900132,age=107s)
                queue: qlen=0.
filter: severity=6, sz_exclude_list=0
```

```
         voip dns ssh ssl cifs
subcategory:
        traffic: forward local multicast sniffer
        anomaly: anomaly

        server: global, id=0, fd=132, ready=1, ipv6=0, 172.18.64.234/514
        oftp-state=5
```

**To collect debug information when FortiAnalyzer is enabled:**

```
diagnose debug application miglogd 0x100

FGT-B-LOG (global) # <16208> miglog_start_rmt_conn()-1552: setting epoll_hd:0x7fc364e125e0
to _rmt_connect
<16209> miglog_start_rmt_conn()-1552: setting epoll_hd:0x7f72647715e0 to _rmt_connect
<16206> miglog_start_rmt_conn()-1552: setting epoll_hd:0x141f69e0 to _rmt_connect
<16209> _rmt_connect()-1433: oftp is ready.
<16209> _rmt_connect()-1435: xfer_status changed from 2 to 2 for global-faz
<16209> _rmt_connect()-1439: setting epoll_hd:0x7f72647715e0 to _rmt_recv
<16209> _check_oftp_certificate()-248: checking sn:FL-8HFT718900132 vs cert sn:FL-
8HFT718900132
<16209> _check_oftp_certificate()-252: Verified the certificate of peer (172.18.64.234) to
match sn=FL-8HFT718900132
<16209> _faz_post_connection()-292: Certificate verification:enabled, Faz verified:1
<16209> _send_queue_item()-518: xfer_status changed from 2 to 1 for global-faz
<16209> _send_queue_item()-523: type=0, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=17 pkt_len=34

<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=253, opt_len=10
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=81, opt_len=12
<16208> _rmt_connect()-1433: oftp is ready.
<16208> _rmt_connect()-1435: xfer_status changed from 2 to 2 for global-faz
<16208> _rmt_connect()-1439: setting epoll_hd:0x7fc364e125e0 to _rmt_recv
<16208> _check_oftp_certificate()-248: checking sn:FL-8HFT718900132 vs cert sn:FL-
8HFT718900132
<16208> _check_oftp_certificate()-252: Verified the certificate of peer (172.18.64.234) to
match sn=FL-8HFT718900132
<16208> _faz_post_connection()-292: Certificate verification:enabled, Faz verified:1
<16208> _send_queue_item()-518: xfer_status changed from 2 to 1 for global-faz
<16208> _send_queue_item()-523: type=0, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16208> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=17 pkt_len=34

<16208> _oftp_send()-487: opt=253, opt_len=10
<16209> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16208> _oftp_send()-487: opt=81, opt_len=12
<16209> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=252
<16209> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-488: ha nmember:1 nvcluster:0 mode:1
<16209> __is_sn_known()-356: MATCHED: idx:0 sn:FL-8HFT718900132
<16209> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-494: Received SN:FL-8HFT718900132 should update:0

<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16208> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=252
<16208> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-488: ha nmember:1 nvcluster:0 mode:1
<16208> __is_sn_known()-356: MATCHED: idx:0 sn:FL-8HFT718900132
```

```
<16208> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-494: Received SN:FL-8HFT718900132 should update:0

<16206> _rmt_connect()-1433: oftp is ready.
<16206> _rmt_connect()-1435: xfer_status changed from 2 to 2 for global-faz
<16206> _rmt_connect()-1439: setting epoll_hd:0x141f69e0 to _rmt_recv
<16206> _check_oftp_certificate()-248: checking sn:FL-8HFT718900132 vs cert sn:FL-
8HFT718900132
<16206> _check_oftp_certificate()-252: Verified the certificate of peer (172.18.64.234) to
match sn=FL-8HFT718900132
<16206> _faz_post_connection()-292: Certificate verification:enabled, Faz verified:1
<16206> _send_queue_item()-518: xfer_status changed from 2 to 1 for global-faz
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=0, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=17 pkt_len=34

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=253, opt_len=10
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=81, opt_len=12
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16206> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=252
<16206> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-488: ha nmember:1 nvcluster:0 mode:1
<16206> __is_sn_known()-356: MATCHED: idx:0 sn:FL-8HFT718900132
<16206> _faz_process_oftp_resp()-494: Received SN:FL-8HFT718900132 should update:0

<16209> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=985

<16209> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=12, opt_len=16
......
<16209> _build_ack()-784: xfer_status changed from 1 to 2 for global-faz
<16209> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=81
......
<16209> _send_queue_item()-523: type=1, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16209> _send_queue_item()-523: type=7, cat=0, logcount=0, len=988
<16209> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16209> _oftp_send()-487: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=58

<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=12, opt_len=16
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=51, opt_len=9
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=49, opt_len=12
<16208> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=52, opt_len=9
<16208> _build_ack()-784: xfer_status changed from 1 to 2 for global-faz
<16208> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=52
<16208> _send_queue_item()-523: type=1, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16208> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16208> _oftp_send()-487: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=985

......
<16208> _send_queue_item()-523: type=3, cat=1, logcount=1, len=301
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=78, opt_len=55
```

```
......
<16206> _build_ack()-784: xfer_status changed from 1 to 2 for global-faz
<16206> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=81
......
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=1, cat=0, logcount=0, len=0
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=7, cat=0, logcount=0, len=988
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=252 pkt_len=1008

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=252, opt_len=996
<16206> _add_change_notice_queue_item()-269: Change notice packect added to queue. len=145
......
<16206> _send_queue_item()-523: type=2, cat=0, logcount=0, len=300
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: dev=global-faz type=37 pkt_len=300

......

<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=152, opt_len=40
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=74, opt_len=40
<16206> _oftp_send()-487: opt=82, opt_len=93
<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: dev=global-faz type=1 pkt_len=24

<16206> _oftp_recv()-1348: opt=1, opt_len=12
<16206> _process_response()-960: checking opt code=1
```

**To check the FortiGate to FortiGate Cloud log server connection status:**

```
diagnose test application miglogd 20

FGT-B-LOG # diagnose test application miglogd 20
Home log server:
    Address: 172.16.95.92:514
Alternative log server:
    Address: 172.16.95.26:514
    oftp status: established
Debug zone info:
    Server IP:      172.16.95.92
    Server port:    514
    Server status:  up
    Log quota:      102400MB
    Log used:       673MB
    Daily volume:   20480MB
    FDS arch pause: 0
    fams archive pause: 0
```

**To check real-time log statistics by log type since the miglogd daemon start:**

```
diagnose test application miglogd 4

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 4
info for vdom: root
disk
event: logs=1238 len=262534, Sun=246 Mon=247 Tue=197 Wed=0 Thu=55 Fri=246 Sat=247
compressed=163038
```

```
dns: logs=4 len=1734, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=4 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=453

report
event: logs=1244 len=225453, Sun=246 Mon=247 Tue=197 Wed=0 Thu=61 Fri=246 Sat=247

faz
event: logs=6 len=1548, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=6 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=5446

info for vdom: vdom1
memory
traffic: logs=462 len=389648, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
event: logs=3724 len=1170237, Sun=670 Mon=700 Tue=531 Wed=0 Thu=392 Fri=747 Sat=684
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=9613, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2
dns: logs=71 len=29833, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=71 Fri=0 Sat=0

disk
traffic: logs=462 len=389648, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
compressed=134638
event: logs=2262 len=550957, Sun=382 Mon=412 Tue=307 Wed=0 Thu=306 Fri=459 Sat=396
compressed=244606
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=9613, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2 compressed=3966
dns: logs=71 len=29833, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=71 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=1499

report
traffic: logs=462 len=375326, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
event: logs=3733 len=1057123, Sun=670 Mon=700 Tue=531 Wed=0 Thu=401 Fri=747 Sat=684
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=9117, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2

faz
traffic: logs=462 len=411362, Sun=93 Mon=88 Tue=77 Wed=0 Thu=13 Fri=116 Sat=75
compressed=307610
event: logs=3733 len=1348297, Sun=670 Mon=700 Tue=531 Wed=0 Thu=401 Fri=747 Sat=684
compressed=816636
app-ctrl: logs=16 len=10365, Sun=3 Mon=3 Tue=3 Wed=0 Thu=0 Fri=5 Sat=2 compressed=8193
dns: logs=71 len=33170, Sun=0 Mon=0 Tue=0 Wed=0 Thu=71 Fri=0 Sat=0 compressed=0
```

### To check log statistics to the local/remote log device since the miglogd daemon start:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 6 1     <<<  1 means the first child daemon

diagnose test application miglogd 6 2     <<<  2 means the second child daemon

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 6 1
mem=4288, disk=4070, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=5513, faz=4307, webt=0, fds=0
interface-missed=208
Queues in all miglogds: cur:0  total-so-far:36974
global log dev statistics:
syslog 0: sent=6585, failed=152, relayed=0
faz 0: sent=13, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
```

### To check the miglogd daemon number and increase/decrease miglogd daemon:

```
diagnose test application miglogd 15     <<<  Show miglog ID

diagnose test application miglogd 13     <<<  Increase one miglogd child

diagnose test application miglogd 14     <<<  Decrease one miglogd child
```

```
FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 15
Main miglogd: ID=0, children=2, active-children=2
        ID=1, duration=70465.
        ID=2, duration=70465.

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 13

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 15
Main miglogd: ID=0, children=3, active-children=3
        ID=1, duration=70486.
        ID=2, duration=70486.
        ID=3, duration=1.

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 14

FGT-B-LOG (global) # diagnose test application miglogd 15
Main miglogd: ID=0, children=2, active-children=2
        ID=1, duration=70604.
        ID=2, duration=70604.
```

**To check the remote queue and see the maximum buffered memory size:**

```
diagnose test application miglogd 41

cache maximum: 105405644(100MB) objects: 0 used: 0(0MB) allocated: 0(0MB)

VDOM:root
Queue for: global-faz

       memory queue:
               num:0 size:0(0MB) max:105405644(100MB) logs:0

Queue for: fds

        memory queue:
                num:0 size:0(0MB) max:97852620(93MB) logs:0
```

## Backing up log files or dumping log messages

When a log issue is caused by a particular log message, it is very help to get logs from that FortiGate. This topic provides steps for using `execute log backup` or dumping log messages to a USB drive.

### Backing up full logs using execute log backup

This command backs up all disk log files and is only available on FortiGates with an SSD disk.

Before running `execute log backup`, we recommend temporarily stopping `miglogd` and `reportd`.

**To stop and kill miglogd and reportd:**

```
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart disable miglogd
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart disable reportd
```

**To store the log file on a USB drive:**

1. Plug in a USB drive into the FortiGate.
2. Run this command:

```
exec log backup /usb/log.tar
```

**To restart `miglogd` and `reportd`:**

```
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart enable miglogd
diagnose sys process daemon-auto-restart enable reportd
```

## Dumping log messages

**To dump log messages:**

1. Enable log dumping for `miglogd` daemon:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 1
miglogd(1) log dumping is enabled
```

2. Display all `miglogd` dumping status:

```
global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0 255
miglogd(0) log dumping is disabled
miglogd(1) log dumping is enabled
miglogd(2) log dumping is disabled
```

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 2
miglogd(2) log dumping is enabled
```

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0
miglogd(0) log dumping is enabled
```

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0 255
miglogd(0) log dumping is enabled
miglogd(1) log dumping is enabled
miglogd(2) log dumping is enabled
```

3. Let the FortiGate run and collect log messages.
4. List the log dump files:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 33
2019-04-17 15:50:02          20828      log-1-0.dat
2019-04-17 15:48:31           4892      log-2-0.dat
```

5. Back up log dump files to the USB drive:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 34

Dumping file miglog1_index0.dat copied to USB disk OK.

Dumping file miglog2_index0.dat copied to USB disk OK.
```

6. Disable log dumping for `miglogd` daemon:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0
miglogd(0) log dumping is disabled
```

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 1
miglogd(1) log dumping is disabled

(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 2
miglogd(2) log dumping is disabled

(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 26 0 255
miglogd(0) log dumping is disabled
miglogd(1) log dumping is disabled
miglogd(2) log dumping is disabled
```

## SNMP OID for logs that failed to send

When a syslog server encounters low-performance conditions and slows down to respond, the buffered syslog messages in the kernel might overflow after a certain number of retransmissions, causing the overflowed messages to be lost. OIDs track the lost messages or failed logs.

SNMP query OIDs include log statistics for global log devices:

- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDeviceNumber 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.1.1
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceEntryIndex 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.1
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceEnabled 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.2
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceName 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.3
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceSentCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.4
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceRelayedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.5
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceCachedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.6
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceFailedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.7
- FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgLog.fgLogDevices.fgLogDeviceTable.fgLogDeviceEntry.fgLogDeviceDroppedCount 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.8

Where:

- fgLogDeviceNumber is the number of devices in the table.
- fgLogDeviceEnabled is either 1 or 0, indicating whether the device is enabled.
- fgLogDeviceName is the name of the device.

A FortiGate connected to a syslog server or FortiAnalyzer generates statistics that can be seen using the `diagnose test application miglogd` command:

```
(global) # diagnose test application miglogd 6
    mem=404, disk=657, alert=0, alarm=0, sys=920, faz=555, webt=0, fds=0
    interface-missed=460
    Queues in all miglogds: cur:0 total-so-far:526
    global log dev statistics:
    syslog 0: sent=254, failed=139, relayed=0
    syslog 1: sent=220, failed=139, relayed=0
    syslog 2: sent=95, failed=73, relayed=0
    faz 0: sent=282, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
    Num of REST URLs: 3
    /api/v2/monitor/system/csf/ : 0 : 300
    /api/v2/cmdb/system/interface/ : 394.0.673.15877729363538323653.1547149763 : 1200
    /api/v2/monitor/system/ha-checksums/ : 0 : 1200
    faz 1: sent=272, failed=0, cached=0, dropped=0 , relayed=0
    Num of REST URLs: 2
    /api/v2/monitor/system/csf/ : 0 : 300
    /api/v2/cmdb/system/interface/ : 394.0.673.15877729363538323653.1547149763 : 1200
```

The same statistics are also available in `snmpwalk/snmpget` on the OID 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.

```
snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1 1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.1.1.0 = INTEGER: 9
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.2 = INTEGER: 2
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.3 = INTEGER: 3
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.4 = INTEGER: 4
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.5 = INTEGER: 5
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.6 = INTEGER: 6
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.7 = INTEGER: 7
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.1.8 = INTEGER: 8
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.0 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.2 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.3 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.4 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.5 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.6 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.7 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.8 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.0 = STRING: "syslog"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.1 = STRING: "syslog2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.2 = STRING: "syslog3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.3 = STRING: "syslog4"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.4 = STRING: "faz"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.5 = STRING: "faz2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.6 = STRING: "faz3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.7 = STRING: "webtrends"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.8 = STRING: "fds"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.0 = Counter32: 254
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.1 = Counter32: 220
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.2 = Counter32: 95
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.4 = Counter32: 282
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.5 = Counter32: 272
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.7 = Counter32: 0
```

```
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.4.8 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.0 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.1 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.2 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.5.8 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.0 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.1 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.2 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.3 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.4 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.5 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.6 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.7 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.6.8 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.0 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.1 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.2 = Counter32: 73
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.8 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.0 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.1 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.2 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.8.8 = Counter32: 0
```

**To get the type of logging device that is attached to the FortiGate:**

```
root@PC05:/home/tester/autolib/trunk# snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.3
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.0 = STRING: "syslog"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.1 = STRING: "syslog2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.2 = STRING: "syslog3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.3 = STRING: "syslog4"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.4 = STRING: "faz"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.5 = STRING: "faz2"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.6 = STRING: "faz3"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.7 = STRING: "webtrends"
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.3.8 = STRING: "fds"
```

**To get the present state of the logging device that is attached to the FortiGate:**

```
root@PC05:/home/tester/autolib/trunk# snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.2
```

```
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.0 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.2 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.3 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.4 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.5 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.6 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.7 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.2.8 = INTEGER: 0
```

**To get the failed log count value:**

```
root@PC05:/home/tester/autolib/trunk# snmpwalk -v2c -c REGR-SYS 172.16.200.1
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.21.2.1.1.7
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.0 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.1 = Counter32: 139
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.2 = Counter32: 73
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.3 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.4 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.5 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.6 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.7 = Counter32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fnFortiGateMib.21.2.1.1.7.8 = Counter32: 0
```

# VM

## Amazon Web Services

See the FortiOS 6.4.1 AWS Cookbook.

## Microsoft Azure

See the FortiOS 6.4.1 Azure Cookbook.

## Google Cloud Platform

See the 6.4.1 FortiOS GCP Cookbook.

## Oracle OCI

See the 6.4.1 FortiOS OCI Cookbook.

## AliCloud

See the 6.4.1 FortiOS SliCloud Cookbook.

## Private cloud

See the Private Cloud section in the Virtualization document library.

## VM license

The *FortiGate VM License* page is accessible from the *Dashboard* > *Status* page in the *Virtual Machine* widget. Click the device license and select *FortiGate VM License*.

The *FortiGate VM License* page displays the following information:

| Field | Description |
|---|---|
| License status | One of the following statuses is displayed:<br>• Valid: the VM can connect and validate the license against a FortiManager or FortiGuard server. All features are available.<br>• Warning: the VM cannot connect and validate against a FortiManager or FortiGuard server. A check is made against how many days the warning status is continuous. If the number is less than 30 days, the status does not change.<br>• Invalid: the VM cannot connect and validate against a FortiManager or FortiGuard server. A check is made against how many days the warning status is continuous. If the number is 30 days or more, the status changes to invalid. GUI access is restricted until a valid license is uploaded. Firewall policies will not work. FortiGuard downloads are not available.<br>• Pending: a temporary state where the VM is attempting to validate its license.<br>Reasons for having a warning or invalid status include:<br>• The network environment does not allow FortiGate-VM to connect to the FortiGuard server.<br>• The license might be expired. Check the expiration date for evaluation or term-based licenses.<br>• Another VM has been already validated with FortiGuard using the same license. See VM license activation for details about duplicated VM instances. |
| Allocated vCPUs | Number of allocated and total allowable vCPUs |
| Allocated RAM | Amount of allocated RAM (in FortiOS 6.2.2 and later, there are no RAM restrictions) |
| Expires on | Expiry date (value depends on the type of license) |

This information is visible in the CLI by running `get system status` (see CLI troubleshooting).

## Uploading a license file

After you submit an order for a FortiGate-VM, Fortinet sends a license registration code to the email address that you entered in the order form. Use this code on the FortiCloud portal to register the FortiGate-VM.

Once the VM is registered, you can download the license file in .LIC format. On the *FortiGate VM License* page, click *Upload*. The system will prompt you to reboot and validate the license with the FortiGuard server. Once validated, your FortiGate-VM is fully functional.

The VM license window may also appear immediately after logging in if you are running a VM with an evaluation license that has expired.

In cases where the GUI is not accessible, you can upload the license using secure copy (SCP).

**To upload the license using SCP:**

1. Enable SCP:

```
config system global
    set admin-scp enable
end
```

2. Enable SSH in the administrative access for the interface where the transfer will take place:

```
config system interface
    edit <interface>
        append allowaccess ssh
    next
end
```

3. On your computer, upload the VM license. This example is for Linux:

```
scp <filename> <admin-user>@<FortiGate_IP>:vmlicense
```

## Types of VM licenses

FortiGate-VM offers perpetual licensing (normal series and V-series) and annual subscription licensing (S-series). SKUs are based on the number of vCPUs (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, or unlimited).

| Feature | Normal series | V-series | S-series |
|---|---|---|---|
| Licensing and support | The VM base is perpetual.<br>You must separately contract support services on an annual basis.<br>See the price list for details. | | Single annually contracted SKU that contains a VM base and a FortiCare service bundle.<br>Four support service bundle types are available:<br>• Only FortiCare<br>• UTM<br>• Enterprise<br>• ATP |
| vCPU number upgrade during contracted term | Not supported. | | Supported. You can also upgrade the support service bundle.<br>Contact a Fortinet sales representative to upgrade. |
| vCPU number downgrade during contracted term | Not supported. | | |
| VDOM support | By default, each CPU level supports up to a certain number of VDOMs.<br>Refer to the FortiGate-VM data sheet for default limits. | By default, all CPU levels do not support adding VDOMs. | |

## CLI troubleshooting

In some cases, more information can be viewed from the CLI to diagnose issues with VM licensing. This is also useful when the GUI is inaccessible due to an invalid contract.

Before you begin, ensure your FortiGate has the proper routes to connect to the internet.

**To view the license status, expiration date, and VM resources:**

```
# get system status
Version: FortiGate-VM64-KVM v6.4.2,build1723,200730 (GA)
...
Serial-Number: FGVM08**********
....
License Status: Valid
License Expiration Date: 2020-12-10
VM Resources: 1 CPU/8 allowed, 2010 MB RAM
...
```

**To display license details:**

```
# diagnose debug vm-print-license
SerialNumber: FGVM08**********
CreateDate: Tue Dec 10 00:57:32 2019
License expires: Thu Dec 10 00:00:00 2020
Expiry: 366
Key: yes
Cert: yes
Key2: yes
Cert2: yes
Model: 08 (11)
CPU: 8
MEM: 2147483647
```

**To display license information from FortiGuard:**

```
# diagnose hardware sysinfo vm full
UUID:     abbe**************************
valid:    1
status:   1
code:     200
warn:     0
copy:     0
received: 4604955037
warning:  4600905081
recv:     202009152207
dup:
```

This combination indicates the license is valid and functioning normally:

```
valid: 1
status: 1
code: 200
```

This combination indicates the license is valid but may be running a duplicate instance:

```
valid: 1
status: 4
code: 401
```

This combination indicates the system cannot connect to FortiGuard:

```
valid:    0
status:   2
code:     502
```

This combination indicates the license is invalid:

```
valid: 0
status: 3
code: 400
```

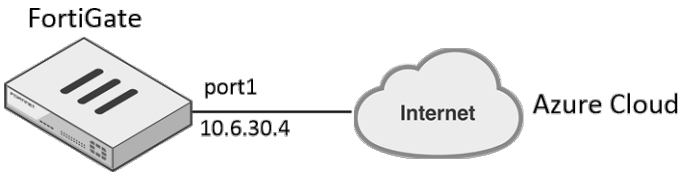
Contact Fortinet Support for assistance if your licensing issue persists.

# FortiGate multiple connector support

This guide shows how to configure Fabric connectors and resolve dynamic firewall addresses through the configured Fabric connector in FortiOS.

FortiOS supports multiple Fabric connectors including public connectors (AWS, Azure, GCP, OCI, AliCloud) and private connectors (Kubernetes, VMware ESXi, VMware NSX, OpenStack, Cisco ACI, Nuage). FortiOS also supports multiple instances for each type of Fabric connector.

This guide uses an Azure Fabric connector as an example. The configuration procedure for all supported Fabric connectors is the same. In the following topology, the FortiGate accesses the Azure public cloud through the Internet:




This process consists of the following:

1. Configure the interface.
2. Configure a static route to connect to the Internet.
3. Configure two Azure Fabric connectors with different client IDs.
4. Check the configured Fabric connectors.
5. Create two firewall addresses.
6. Check the resolved firewall addresses after the update interval.
7. Run diagnose commands.

**To configure the interface:**

1. In FortiOS, go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Edit port1:
   a. From the *Role* dropdown list, select *WAN*.
   b. In the *IP/Network Mask* field, enter 10.6.30.4/255.255.255.0 for the interface connected to the Internet.

**To configure a static route to connect to the Internet:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Static Routes*. Click *Create New*.
2. In the *Destination* field, enter 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0.
3. From the *Interface* dropdown list, select *port1*.
4. In the *Gateway Address* field, enter 10.60.30.254.

**To configure two Azure Fabric connectors with different client IDs:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click *Create New*. Configure the first Fabric connector:
   a. Select *Microsoft Azure*.
   b. In the *Name* field, enter azure1.
   c. In the *Status* field, select *Enabled*.
   d. From the *Server* region dropdown list, select *Global*.
   e. In the *Tenant ID* field, enter the tenant ID. In this example, it is 942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba.
   f. In the *Client ID* field, enter the client ID. In this example, it is 14dbd5c5-307e-4ea4-8133-68738141feb1.
   g. In the *Client secret* field, enter the client secret.
   h. Leave the *Resource path* disabled.
   i. Click *OK*.
3. Click *Create New*. Configure the second Fabric connector:
   a. Select *Microsoft Azure*.
   b. In the *Name* field, enter azure2.
   c. In the *Status* field, select *Enabled*.
   d. From the *Server* region dropdown list, select *Global*.
   e. In the *Tenant ID* field, enter the tenant ID. In this example, it is 942b80cd-1b14-42a1-8dcf-4b21dece61ba.
   f. In the *Client ID* field, enter the client ID. In this example, it is 3baf0a6c-44ff-4f94-b292-07f7a2c36be6.
   g. In the *Client secret* field, enter the client secret.
   h. Leave the *Resource path* disabled.
   i. Click *OK*.

**To check the configured Fabric connectors:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *External Connectors*.
2. Click the *Refresh* icon in the upper right corner of each configured Fabric connector. A green up arrow appears in the lower right corner, meaning that both Fabric connectors are connected to the Azure cloud using different client IDs.

**To create two firewall addresses:**

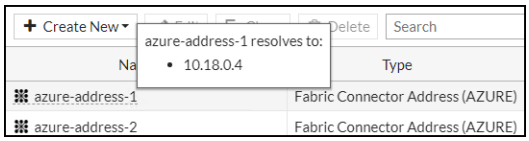
This process creates two Fabric connector firewall addresses to associate with the configured Fabric connectors.

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Click *Create New* > *Address*. Configure the first Fabric connector firewall address:
   a. In the *Name* field, enter azure-address-1.
   b. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector address*.
   c. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select *azure1*.
   d. For *SDN address type*, select *Private*.
   e. From the *Filter* dropdown list, select the desired filter.
   f. For *Interface*, select *any*.
   g. Click *OK*.
3. Click *Create New* > *Address*. Configure the second Fabric connector firewall address:
   a. In the *Name* field, enter azure-address-1.
   b. From the *Type* dropdown list, select *Fabric Connector address*.
   c. From the *SDN Connector* dropdown list, select *azure2*.
   d. For *SDN address type*, select *Private*.
   e. From the *Filter* dropdown list, select the desired filter.
   f. For *Interface*, select *any*.
   g. Click *OK*.

**To check the resolved firewall addresses after the update interval:**

By default, the update interval is 60 seconds.

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Addresses*.
2. Hover over the created addresses. The firewall address that the configured Fabric connectors resolved display.




**To run diagnose commands:**

Run the `show sdn connector status` command. Both Fabric connectors should appear with a status of connected.

Run the `diagnose debug application azd -1` command. The output should look like the following:

```
Level2-downstream-D # diagnose debug application azd -1
...
azd sdn connector azure1 start updating IP addresses
azd checking firewall address object azure-address-1, vd 0
IP address change, new list:
10.18.0.4
...
```

To restart the Azure Fabric connector daemon, run the `diagnose test application azd 99` command.

# Adding VDOMs with FortiGate v-series

Each FortiGate-VM base license type allows a default number of VDOMs. This topic provides sample procedures to add VDOMs beyond the default number using separately purchased VDOM licenses.

This topic consists of the following steps:

1. Activate the FortiGate-VM with the base license.
2. Add more VDOMs to the FortiGate-VM.

**To activate the FortiGate-VM with the base license:**

1. Purchase and register the FortiGate-VM base license in FortiCare:
   a. Purchase the FortiGate-VM base license from Fortinet or a Fortinet reseller.
   b. You receive a license certification with a registration code. Open the certification.
   c. Log in to Fortinet Customer Service & Support.
   d. Go to *Asset* > *Register/Activate* and enter the provided registration code.
   e. Follow the registration process. The serial number generates and displays on the *Registration Completion* page.
   f. Go to *Asset* > *Manage/View Products*. Click the serial number to download the license file.
2. Upload the FortiGate-VM base license file to FortiOS:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM GUI.
   b. In *Dashboard* > *Status*, in the *Virtual Machine* widget, click *FortiGate VM License*.
   c. Click the *Upload* button.
   d. Select the FortiGate-VM base license file, then click *OK*. The FortiGate-VM reboots after applying the base license.
3. Verify the FortiGate-VM base license status and VDOM information:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM GUI.
   b. In *Dashboard* > *Status*, in the *Virtual Machine* widget, ensure that there is a checkmark in front of the FortiGate-VM base license name. The checkmark indicates that the base license is valid.
   c. You can check VDOM information using the CLI. The following output shows that the maximum number of VDOMs is currently one. This is correct since the FortiGate-VM base license only supports the default root VDOM that the system uses.

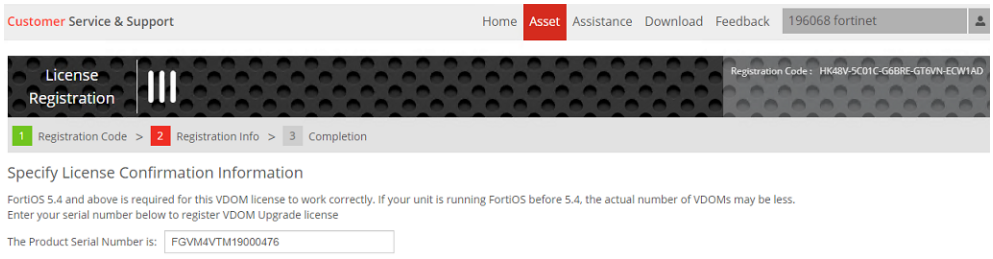
```
FGVM4VTM19000476 # get system status
Version: FortiGate-VM64 v6.2.0,build0866,190328 (GA)
Virus-DB: 69.00091(2019-06-07 12:19)
Extended DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
Extreme DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
IPS-DB: 14.00610(2019-05-09 00:14)
IPS-ETDB: 0.00000(2001-01-01 00:00)
APP-DB: 14.00610(2019-05-09 00:14)
INDUSTRIAL-DB: 14.00610(2019-05-09 00:14)
Serial-Number: FGVM4VTM19000476
IPS Malicious URL Database: 2.00325(2019-06-07 03:56)
Botnet DB: 4.00490(2019-05-30 10:00)
License Status: Valid
License Expires: 2020-04-30
VM Resources: 2 CPU/4 allowed, 3022 MB RAM/6144 MB allowed
Log hard disk: Available
Hostname: FGVM4VTM19000476
Operation Mode: NAT
```

```
Current virtual domain: root
Max number of virtual domains: 1
Virtual domains status: 1 in NAT mode, 0 in TP mode
Virtual domain configuration: disable
FIPS-CC mode: disable
Current HA mode: standalone
Branch point: 0866
Release Version Information: GA
FortiOS x86-64: Yes
System time: Fri Jun 7 14:04:55 2019
```

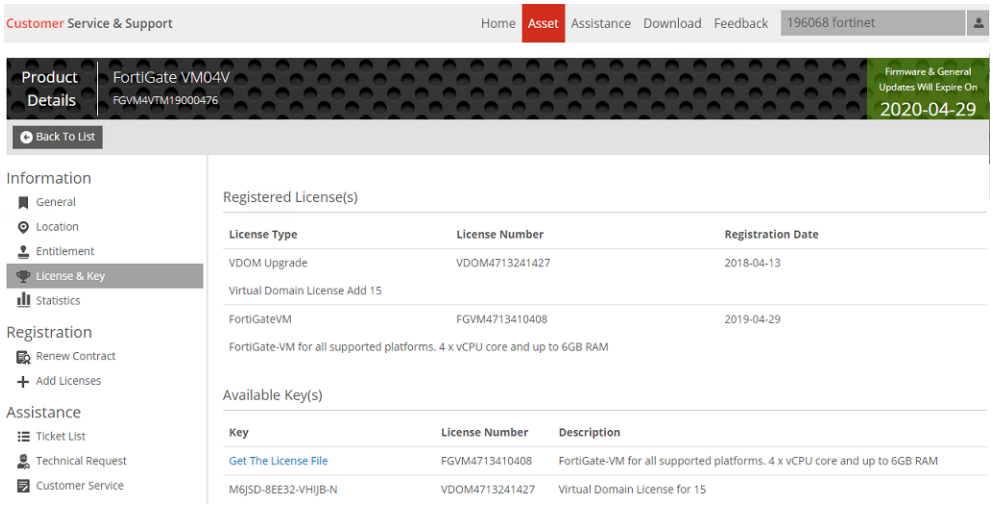
### To add more VDOMs to the FortiGate-VM:

You can repeat this procedure multiple times to stack multiple VDOM licenses on the same FortiGate-VM.

1. Purchase and register the FortiGate-VM upgrade license in FortiCare. This example adds 15 VDOMs:
   a. Purchase the FortiGate-VM upgrade license from Fortinet or a Fortinet reseller.
   b. You receive a license certification with a registration code. Open the certification.
   c. Log in to Fortinet Customer Service & Support.
   d. Go to *Asset* > *Register/Activate* and enter the provided registration code.
   e. On the *Specify License Confirmation Information* screen, enter the FortiGate-VM serial number to apply the VDOM upgrade license to the FortiGate-VM. In this example, the FortiGate-VM serial number is *FGVM4VTM19000476*.




   f. Follow the registration process.
   g. Go to *Asset* > *Manage/View Products* > . Select the desired product, then click *License & Key*. The VDOM upgrade license displays under *Registered License(s)*, and a key for adding 15 VDOMs (in this example *M6JSD-8EE32-VHIJB-N*) displays under *Available Key(s)*.



2. Apply the FortiGate-VM upgrade license key to FortiOS:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM CLI in the local console or using SSH.
   b. Apply the VDOM upgrade license key:
   ```
   FGVM4VTM19000476 # execute upd-vd-license M6JSD-8EE32-VHIJB-N
   update vdom license succeeded
   ```
3. Verify the FortiGate-VM VDOM information:
   a. Log in to the FortiGate-VM CLI in the local console or using SSH.
   b. Check VDOM information using the CLI. The following output shows that the maximum number of VDOMs is currently 15. When you add VDOMs for the first time on a FortiGate-VM v-series instance, FortiOS does not count the default VDOM, as the default VDOM is the so-called root VDOM that the system uses and FortiOS does not treat it as a countable VDOM in terms of VDOM addition. Therefore, as in this example, if your FortiGate-VM had the default VDOM configuration, then you add 15 VDOMs, FortiOS displays the maximum VDOM number as 15, not 16.
   ```
   FGVM4VTM19000476 # get system status
   Version: FortiGate-VM64 v6.2.0,build0866,190328 (GA)
   Virus-DB: 69.00091(2019-06-07 12:19)
   Extended DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
   Extreme DB: 1.00000(2018-04-09 18:07)
   IPS-DB: 14.00610(2019-05-09 00:14)
   IPS-ETDB: 0.00000(2001-01-01 00:00)
   APP-DB: 14.00610(2019-05-09 00:14)
   INDUSTRIAL-DB: 14.00610(2019-05-09 00:14)
   Serial-Number: FGVM4VTM19000476
   IPS Malicious URL Database: 2.00325(2019-06-07 03:56)
   Botnet DB: 4.00490(2019-05-30 10:00)
   License Status: Valid
   License Expires: 2020-04-30
   VM Resources: 2 CPU/4 allowed, 3022 MB RAM/6144 MB allowed
   Log hard disk: Available
   Hostname: FGVM4VTM19000476
   Operation Mode: NAT
   Current virtual domain: root
   Max number of virtual domains: 15
   Virtual domains status: 1 in NAT mode, 0 in TP mode
   Virtual domain configuration: disable
   FIPS-CC mode: disable
   Current HA mode: standalone
   Branch point: 0866
   Release Version Information: GA
   FortiOS x86-64: Yes
   System time: Fri Jun 7 14:39:27 2019
   ```

# Terraform: FortiOS as a provider

Fortinet's Terraform support provides customers with more ways to efficiently deploy, manage, and automate security across physical FortiGate appliances and virtual environments. You can use Terraform to automate various IT infrastructure needs, thereby diminishing mistakes from repetitive manual configurations.

For example, if Fortinet is releasing a new FortiOS version, your organization may require you to test a new functionality to determine how it may impact the environment before globally deploying the new version. In this case, the ability to

rapidly stand up environments and test these functions prior to production environment integration provides a resource-efficient and fault-tolerant approach.

The following example demonstrates how to use the Terraform FortiOS provider to perform simple configuration changes on a FortiGate unit. It requires the following:

- FortiOS 6.0 or later
- FortiOS Provider: This example uses terraform-provider-fortios 1.0.0.
- Terraform: This example uses Terraform 0.11.14.
- REST API administrator created on the FortiGate with the API key

For more information, see the Terraform FortiOS Provider at https://www.terraform.io/docs/providers/fortios/index.html.

**To create a REST API administrator:**

1. On the FortiGate, go to *System* > *Administrators* and click *Create New* > *REST API Admin*.
2. Enter the *Username* and, optionally, enter *Comments*.
3. Select an *Administrator Profile*.
4. We recommend that you create a new profile with minimal privileges for this terraform script:
   a. In the *Administrator Profile* drop down click *Create New*.
   b. Enter a name for the profile.
   c. Configure the *Access Permissions*:
      - *None*: The REST API is not permitted access to the resource.
      - *Read*: The REST API can send read requests (`HTTP GET`) to the resource.
      - *Read/Write*: The REST API can send read and write requests (`HTTP GET`/`POST`/`PUT`/`DELETE`) to the resource.
   d. Click *OK*.
5. Enter *Trusted Hosts* to specify the devices that are allowed to access this FortiGate.
6. Click *OK*.
   An API key is displayed. This key is only shown once, so you must copy and store it securely.

**To configure FortiGate with Terraform Provider module support:**

1. Download the terraform-provider-fortios file to a directory on the management computer.
2. Create a new file with the .tf extension for configuring your FortiGate:
```
root@mail:/home/terraform# ls
terraform-provider-fortios_v1.0.0_x4 test.tf
```
3. Edit the test.tf Terraform configuration file:
   In this example, the FortiGate's IP address is 10.6.30.5, and the API user token is 17b**********63ck. Your provider information must also be changed.
```
# Configure the FortiOS Provider
provider "fortios" {
hostname = "10.6.30.5"
token = "17b**********63ck"
}
```
4. Create the resources for configuring your DNS object and adding a static route:
```
resource "fortios_system_setting_dns" "test1" {
primary = "172.16.95.16"
secondary = "8.8.8.8"
```

```
}
resource "fortios_networking_route_static" "test1" {
dst = "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway = "2.2.2.2"
blackhole = "disable"
distance = "22"
weight = "3"
priority = "3"
device = "port2"
comment = "Terraform test"
}
```

5. Save your Terraform configuration file.
6. In the terminal, enter `terraform init` to initialize the working directory.
   It reads the provider if the name follows the convention `terraform-provider-[name]`:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform init
Initializing the backend...
Terraform has been successfully initialized!
You may now begin working with Terraform. Try running "terraform plan" to see
any changes that are required for your infrastructure. All Terraform commands
should now work.
If you ever set or change modules or backend configuration for Terraform,
rerun this command to reinitialize your working directory. If you forget, other
commands will detect it and remind you to do so if necessary.
```

7. Run `terraform -v` to verify the version of loaded provider module:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform -v
Terraform v0. 11.14
+ provider.fortios v1.0.0
```

8. Enter `terraform plan` to parse the configuration file and read from the FortiGate configuration to see what Terraform changes:
   This example create a static route and updates the DNS address. You can see that Terraform reads the DNS addresses from the FortiGate and then lists them.

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform plan
Refreshing Terraform state in-memory prior to plan...
The refreshed state will be used to calculate this plan, but will not be
persisted to local or remote state storage.
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 2)
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 208.91.112.53)
------------------------------------------------------------------------
An execution plan has been generated and is shown below.
Resource actions are indicated with the following symbols:
+ create
~ update in-place
Terraform will perform the following actions:
+ fortios_networking_route_static.test1
id: <computed>
blackhole: "disable"
comment: "Terraform test"
device: "port2"
distance: "22"
dst: "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway: "2.2.2.2"
```

```
priority: "3"
weight: "3"
~ fortios_system_setting_dns.test1
primary: "208.91.112.53" => "172.16.95.16"
secondary: "208.91.112.22" => "8.8.8.8"
Plan: 1 to add, 1 to change, 0 to destroy.
------------------------------------------------------------------------
Note: You didn't specify an "-out" parameter to save this plan, so Terraform
can't guarantee that exactly these actions will be performed if
"terraform apply" is subsequently run.
```



If you are running terraform-provider-fortios 1.1.0, you may see the following error:

```
Error: Error getting CA Bundle, CA Bundle should be set when
     insecure is false.
```

In this case, add the following line to the FortiOS provider configuration in the test.tf file:

```
insecure = "true"
```

9. Enter `terraform apply` to continue the configuration:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform apply
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 208.91.112.53)
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 2)
An execution plan has been generated and is shown below.
Resource actions are indicated with the following symbols:
+ create
~ update in-place
Terraform will perform the following actions:
+ fortios_networking_route_static.test1
id: <computed>
blackhole: "disable"
comment: "Terraform test"
device: "port2"
distance: "22"
dst: "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway: "2.2.2.2"
priority: "3"
weight: "3"
~ fortios_system_setting_dns.test1
primary: "208.91.112.53" => "172.16.95.16"
secondary: "208.91.112.22" => "8.8.8.8"
Plan: 1 to add, 1 to change, 0 to destroy.
Do you want to perform these actions?
Terraform will perform the actions described above.
Only 'yes' will be accepted to approve.
Enter a value: yes
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Creating...
blackhole: "" => "disable"
comment: "" => "Terraform test"
device: "" => "port2"
distance: "" => "22"
dst: "" => "110.2.2.122/32"
gateway: "" => "2.2.2.2"
priority: "" => "3"
weight: "" => "3"
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifying... (ID: 208.91.112.53)
```

```
primary: "208.91.112.53" => "172.16.95.16"
secondary: "208.91.112.22" => "8.8.8.8"
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Creation complete after 0s (ID: 2)
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifications complete after 0s (ID: 172.16.95.16)
Apply complete! Resources: 1 added, 1 changed, 0 destroyed.
```

The FortiGate is now configured according to the configuration file.

10. To change or delete something in the future, edit the configuration file and then apply it again. In supported cases, it deletes, adds, or updates new entries as configured. For instance, in this example you can remove the static route and revert the DNS address to its original configuration by changing the .tf file:
    a. Edit the configuration file:

```
# Configure the FortiOS Provider
provider "fortios" {
hostname = "10.6.30.5"
token = "17b********************63ck"
}
resource "fortios_system_setting_dns" "test1" {
primary = "208.91.112.53"
secondary = "208.91.112.22"
}
#resource "fortios_networking_route_static" "test1" {
# dst = "110.2.2.122/32"
# gateway = "2.2.2.2"
# blackhole = "disable"
# distance = "22"
# weight = "3"
# priority = "3"
# device = "port2"
# comment = "Terraform test"
#}
```

    b. Entering `terraform apply` deletes the static route that is commented out of the configuration file, and reverts the DNS address to the old address:

```
root@mail:/home/terraform# terraform apply
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 172.16.95.16)
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Refreshing state... (ID: 2)
An execution plan has been generated and is shown below.
Resource actions are indicated with the following symbols:
~ update in-place
- destroy
Terraform will perform the following actions:
- fortios_networking_route_static.test1
~ fortios_system_setting_dns.test1
primary: "172.16.95.16" => "208.91.112.53"
secondary: "8.8.8.8" => "208.91.112.22"
Plan: 0 to add, 1 to change, 1 to destroy.
Do you want to perform these actions?
Terraform will perform the actions described above.
Only 'yes' will be accepted to approve.
Enter a value: yes
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Destroying... (ID: 2)
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifying... (ID: 172.16.95.16)
primary: "172.16.95.16" => "208.91.112.53"
secondary: "8.8.8.8" => "208.91.112.22"
fortios_networking_route_static.test1: Destruction complete after 0s
```

```
fortios_system_setting_dns.test1: Modifications complete after 0s (ID: 208.91.112.53)
Apply complete! Resources: 0 added, 1 changed, 1 destroyed.
```

### Troubleshooting

Use the HTTPS daemon debug to begin troubleshooting why a configuration was not accepted:

```
# diagnose debug enable
# diagnose debug application httpsd -1
```



The REST API 403 error means that your administrator profile does not have sufficient permissions.

The REST API 401 error means that you do not have the correct token or trusted host.

## PF SR-IOV driver support

Physical Function (PF) SR-IOV drivers for i40e and ixgbe interfaces in virtual environments are supported.

PF provides the ability for PCI Passthrough, but requires an entire Network Interface Card (NIC) for a VM. It can usually achieve greater performance than a Virtual Function (VF) based SR-IOV. PF is also expensive; while VF allows one NIC to be shared among multiple guests VMs, PF is allocated to one port on a VM.

The supported driver versions are:

- ixgbe: 5.3.7
- ixgbevf: 4.3.5
- i40evfL 3.5.13
- i40e 2.10.19.82
- iavf 3.7.61.20



All tools and software utilities for UEFI 1.X have been removed from 6.2.0 and later releases. Update to UEFI 2.x to use the UEFI tools or software utilities.

Configuration to use PF or VF is done on the hypervisor, and is not configured on the FortiGate.

To check what driver is being used on the FortiGate:

```
# diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic port2
Name:        port2
Driver:      i40e
Version:     2.4.10
Bus:         0000:03:00.0
Hwaddr:      3c:fd:fe:1e:98:02
Permanent Hwaddr:3c:fd:fe:1e:98:02
State:       up
Link:        up
Mtu:         1500
Supported:   auto 1000full 10000full
```

```
Advertised:  auto 1000full 10000full
Auto:        disabled
Rx packets:      0
Rx bytes:        0
Rx compressed:       0
...
```

# Troubleshooting

This section is intended for administrators with super_admin permissions who require assistance with basic and advanced troubleshooting. Admins with other types of permissions may not be able to perform all of the tasks in this section.

This section contains the following troubleshooting topics:


- Troubleshooting methodologies on page 1664
- Troubleshooting scenarios on page 1668
  - Checking the system date and time on page 1669
  - Checking the hardware connections on page 1670
  - Checking FortiOS network settings on page 1671
  - Troubleshooting CPU and network resources on page 1674
  - FortiGuard server settings on page 1707
  - Troubleshooting high CPU usage on page 1675
  - Checking the modem status on page 1679
  - Running ping and traceroute on page 1680
  - Checking the logs on page 1684
  - Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode on page 1684
  - Verifying the correct route is being used on page 1685
  - Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used on page 1685
  - Checking the bridging information in transparent mode on page 1686
  - Checking wireless information on page 1687
  - Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture) on page 1688
  - Debugging the packet flow on page 1691
  - Testing a proxy operation on page 1694
  - Displaying detail Hardware NIC information on page 1694
  - Performing a traffic trace on page 1697
  - Using a session table on page 1698
  - Finding object dependencies on page 1701
  - Diagnosing NPU-based interfaces on page 1702
  - Identifying the XAUI link used for a specific traffic stream on page 1703
  - Running the TAC report on page 1703
  - Other commands on page 1704
  - FortiGuard troubleshooting on page 1705
- Additional resources on page 1708


## Troubleshooting methodologies

The sections in this topic provide an overview of how to prepare to troubleshoot problems in FortiGate. They include verifiying your user permissions, establishing a baseline, defining the problem, and creating a plan.

## Verify user permissions

Before you begin troubleshooting, verify the following:

- You have administrator privileges for the FortiGate.
- The FortiGate is integrated into your network.
- The operation mode is configured.
- The system time, DNS settings, administrator password, and network interfaces are configured.
- Firmware, FortiGuard AntiVirus, FortiGuard Application Control, and FortiGuard IPS are up to date.



If you are using a FortiGate that has virtual domains (VDOMs) enabled, you can often troubleshoot within your own VDOM. However, you should inform the super_admin for the FortiGate that you willl be performing troubleshooting tasks.

You may also need access to other networking equipment, such as switches, routers, and servers to carry out tests. If you do not have access to this equipment, contact your network administrator for assistance.

## Establish a baseline

FortiGate operates at all layers of the OSI model. For this reason, troubleshooting can be complex. Establishing baseline parameters for your system before a problem occurs helps to reduce the complexity when you need to troubleshoot.

A best practice is to establish and record the normal operating status. Regular operation data shows trends, and allows you to see where changes occur when problems arise. You can gather this data by using logs and SNMP tools to monitor the system performance or by regularly running information gathering commands and saving the output.



You should back up your FortiOS configuration on a regular basis even when you are not troubleshooting. You can restore the backed up configuration as needed to save time recreating it from the factory default settings.

Use the following CLI commands to obtain normal operating data for a FortiGate:

| | |
|---|---|
| `get system status` | Displays firmware versions and FortiGuard engine versions, and other system information. |
| `get system performance status` | Displays CPU and memory states, average network usage, average sessions and session setup rate, viruses caught, IPS attacks blocked, and uptime. |
| `get hardware memory` | Displays information about memory. |
| `get system session status` | Displays total number of sessions. |
| `get router info routing-table all` | Displays all the routes in the routing table, including their type, source, and other useful data. |
| `get ips session` | Displays memory used and maximum amount available to IPS as well as counts |

| | |
|---|---|
| `get webfilter ftgd-statistics` | Displays a list of FortiGuard related counts of status, errors, and other data. |
| `diagnose sys session list` | Displays the list of current detailed sessions. |
| `show sys dns` | Displays the configured DNS servers. |
| `diagnose sys ntp status` | Displays information about NTP servers. |

You can run any commands that apply to your system for information gathering. For example, if you have active VPN connections, use the `get vpn` series of commands to get more information about them.

Use `execute tac report` to get an extensive snapshot of your system. This command runs many diagnostic commands for specific configurations. It also records the current state of each feature regardless of the features deployed on your FortiGate. If you need to troubleshoot later, you can run the same command again and compare the differences to identify any suspicious output.

## Define the problem

The following questions are intended to compare the current behavior of the FortiGate with normal operations to help you define the problem. Be specific with your answers. After you define the problem, search for a solution in the troubleshooting scenarios section, and then create a plan to resolve it.

| | |
|---|---|
| **What is the problem?** | The problem being observed may not be the actual problem. You should determine where the problem lies before starting to troubleshoot the FortiGate. |
| **Was the device working before?** | If the device never worked, it might be defective. For more information, see Troubleshooting your installation on page 51. |
| **Can the problem be reproduced?** | If the problem is intermittent, it may be dependent on system load.<br>Intermittent problems are challenging to troubleshoot because they are difficult to reproduce. |
| **What has changed?** | Use the FortiGate event log to identify possible configuration changes.<br>There may be changes in the operating environment. For example, there might be a gradual increase in load as more sites are forwarded through the firewall.<br>If something has changed, roll back the change and assess the impact. |
| **What is the scope of the problem?** | After you isolate the problem, determine what applications, users, devices, and operating systems the problem affects.<br>The following questions are intended to narrow the scope of the problem and identify what to check during troubleshooting. The more factors you can eliminate, the less you need to check. For this reason, be as specific and accurate as possible when gathering information.<br>• What is not working?<br>• Is more than one thing not working?<br>• Is it partly working? If so, what parts are working?<br>• Is it a connectivity issue for the entire device, or is there an application that isn't reaching the Internet?<br>• Where did the problem occur?<br>• When did the problem occur and to which users or groups of users? |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • What components are involved?<br>• What applications are affected?<br>• Can you use a packet sniffer to trace the problem?<br>• Can you use system debugging or look in the session table to trace the problem?<br>• Do any of the log files indicate a failure has occurred? |

## Create a troubleshooting plan

After you define the problem and its scope, develop a troubleshooting plan.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Create checklist** | Make a list all the possible causes of the problem and how you can test for each cause.<br>Create a checklist to keep track of what has been tried and what is left to test. Checklists are useful when more than one person is performing troubleshooting tasks. |
| **Obtain the required equipment** | Testing your solution may require additional networking equipment, computers, or other devices.<br>Network administrators usually have additional networking equipment available to loan you, or a lab where you can bring the FortiGate unit to test.<br>If you do not have access to equipment, check for shareware applications that can perform the same tasks. Often, there are software solutions you can use when hardware is too expensive. |
| **Consult Fortinet troubleshooting resources** | After the checklist is created, refer to the troubleshooting scenarios sections to assist with implementing your plan. See Troubleshooting scenarios on page 1668. |
| **Gather information for technical support** | If you still require technical assistance after the plan is implemented, be prepared to provide Fortinet technical support with following information:<br>• Firmware build version (use the `get system status` command)<br>• Network topology diagram<br>• Recent configuration file<br>• Recent debug log (optional)<br>• Summary of troubleshooting steps you have taken and the results.<br>  Do not provide the output from the `exec tac` report unless the support team requests it. The output from this command is very large and is not required in many cases. |
| **Contact technical support** | Before contacting technical support, ensure you have login access (preferably with full read/write privileges) to all networking devices that could be relevant to troubleshooting.<br>If you are using VMs, be prepared to have someone who can log in to the virtual hosting platform in case it is necessary to check and possibly modify resource allocation. |

For information about contacting technical support, go to FortiCare Support Service page.

# Troubleshooting scenarios

The following table is intended to help you diagnose common problems and provides links to the corresponding troubleshooting topics:

| Problem | Probable cause | Recommended action |
|---|---|---|
| **Hardware connections** | • Are all of the cables and interfaces connected properly?<br>• Is the LED for the interface green? | Checking the hardware connections on page 1670 |
| **FortiOS network settings** | • If you are having problems connecting to the management interface, is your protocol enabled on the interface for administrative access?<br>• Does the interface have an IP address? | Checking FortiOS network settings on page 1671 |
| **CPU and memory resources** | • Is the CPU running at almost 100 percent usage?<br>• Is your FortiGate running low on memory? | Troubleshooting CPU and network resources on page 1674 |
| **Modem status** | • Is the modem connected?<br>• Are there PPP issues? | Checking the modem status on page 1679 |
| **Ping and traceroute** | Is the FortiGate experiencing complete packet loss? | Running ping and traceroute on page 1680 |
| **Logs** | Do you need to identify a problem? | Checking the logs on page 1684 |
| **Contents of the routing table (in NAT mode)** | • Are there routes in the routing table for default and static routes?<br>• Do all connected subnets have a route in the routing table?<br>• Does a route have a higher priority than it should? | Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode on page 1684 |
| **Traffic routes** | Is the traffic routed correctly? | Verifying the correct route is being used on page 1685 |
| **Firewall policies** | Is the correct firewall policy applied to the expected traffic? | Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used on page 1685 |
| **Bridging information in transparent mode** | Are you having problems in transparent mode? | Checking the bridging information in transparent mode on page 1686 |
| **Firewall session** | • Are there active firewall sessions? | Using a session table on page 1698 |

| Problem | Probable cause | Recommended action |
|---|---|---|
| **list** | | |
| **Wireless Network** | Is the wireless network working properly? | Checking wireless information on page 1687 |
| **FortiGuard connectivity** | Is the FortiGate communicating properly with FortiGuard? | Verifying connectivity to FortiGuard on page 1705 |
| **Sniffer trace** | • Is traffic entering the FortiGate? Does the traffic arrive on the expected interface?<br>• Is the ARP resolution correct for the next-hop destination?<br>• Is the traffic exiting the FortiGate to the destination as expected?<br>• Is the FortiGate sending traffic back to the originator? | Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture) on page 1688 |
| **Packet flow** | Is traffic entering or leaving the FortiGate as expected? | Debugging the packet flow on page 1691 |

## Checking the system date and time

The system date and time are important for FortiGuard services, logging events, and sending alerts. The wrong time makes the log entries confusing and difficult to use.

When possible, use Network Time Protocol (NTP) to set the date and time. This is an automatic method that does not require manual intervention. However, you must ensure that the port is allowed through the firewalls on your network. FortiToken synchronization requires NTP in many situations.

For information about setting the system date and time, see Setting the system time on page 670.

**To view and configure the date and time in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*. The date and time are displayed in the *System Information* widget, next to *System Time*.
2. Go to *System* > *Settings*.
3. In the *System Time* section, select *NTP*, and then configure the *Time Zone*, and *Set Time* settings as required.

**To view the date and time in the CLI:**

```
execute date
execute time
```

**To configure the date and time in the CLI:**

Use the `set timezone ?` command to display a list of timezones and the integers that represent them.

```
config system global
   set timezone <integer>
end
config system ntp
   set type custom
```

```
      config ntpserver
         edit 1
            set server "ntp1.fortinet.net"
         next
         edit 2
            set server "ntp2.fortinet.net"
         next
      end
   set ntpsync enable
   set syncinterval 60
end
```

## Checking the hardware connections

If traffic is not flowing from the FortiGate, there may be a problem with the hardware connection.

**To check hardware connections:**

1. Ensure the network cables are plugged into the interfaces.
2. Verify the LED connection lights for the network cables indicate there is a connection. The lights are typically green when there is a connection.
3. Change the cable when:
   - The cable or its connector are damaged.
   - You are unsure of the type or quality of the cable, such as straight through or crossover.
   - You see exposed wires at the connector.
4. Connect the FortiGate to different hardware.
5. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces* to ensure the link status for the interface is set to *Up*.
   The link status is based on the physical connection and cannot be set in FortiOS.

**To enable an interface in the GUI:**

You should still perform basic software connectivity tests to ensure complete connectivity even if there was a problem with the hardware connection. The interface might also be disabled, or its *Status* might be set to *Down*. See Interfaces on page 356.

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select an interface, such as *Port1*, and click *Edit*.
3. In the *Miscellaneous* area, next to *Status*, click *Enabled*.
4. Click *OK*.

**To enable an interface in the CLI:**

```
config system interface
   edit port1
      set status up
   next
end
```

# Checking FortiOS network settings

Check the FortiOS network settings if you have problems connecting to the management interface. FortiOS network settings include, interface settings, DNS Settings, and DHCP settings.

## Interface settings

If you can access the FortiGate with the management cable only, you can view the interface settings in the GUI.

**To view the interface settings in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select an interface and click *Edit*.
3. Check the following interfaces to ensure they are not blocking traffic.

| Setting | Description |
|---|---|
| **Link Status** | The status is *Up* when a valid cable is plugged in. The status is *Down* when an invalid cable is plugged in.<br>The Link Status is shown physically by the connection LED for the interface. If the LED is green, the connection is good. If Link Status is *Down*, the interface does not work.<br>Link status also appears in the *Network* > *Interfaces* page by default. |
| **Addressing mode** | Do not use *DHCP* if you do not have a DHCP server. You will not be able to log into an interface in DHCP mode as it will not have an IP address. |
| **IP/Network Mask** | An interface requires an IP address to connect to other devices. Ensure there is a valid IP address in this field. The one exception is when *DHCP* is enabled for this interface to get its IP address from an external DHCP server. |
| **IPv6 address** | The same protocol must be used by both ends to complete the connection. Ensure this interface and the remote connection are both using IPv4 or both are using IPv6 addresses. |
| **Administrative access** | If no protocols are selected, you will have to use the local management cable to connect to the unit. If you are using IPv6, configure the IPv6 administrative access protocols. |
| **Status** | Ensure the status is set to *Up* or the interface will not work. |

**To display the internal interface settings in the CLI:**

```
FGT# show system interface <interface_name>
```

**To view the list of possible interface settings:**

```
config system interface
   edit <interface_name>
      get
end
```

## DNS settings

**To view DNS settings in the GUI:**

Go to *Network* > *DNS*.

You can trace many networking problems back to DNS issues. Check the following items:

1. Are there values for both the *Primary DNS server* and *Secondary DNS server* fields.
2. Is the *Local Domain Name* correct?
3. Are you using IPv6 addressing? If so, are the IPv6 DNS settings correct?
4. Are you using Dynamic DNS (DDNS)? If so, is it using the correct server, credentials, and interface?
5. Can you contact both DNS servers to verify the servers are operational?
6. If an interface addressing mode is set to DHCP and is set to override the internal DNS, is that interface receiving a valid DNS entry from the DHCP server? Is it a reasonable address and can it be contacted to verify it is operational?
7. Are there any DENY security policies that need to allow DNS?
8. Can any internal device perform a successful traceroute to a location using the FQDN?

### DHCP server settings

DHCP servers are common on internal and wireless networks. The DHCP server will cause problems if it is not configured correctly.

**To view DHCP server settings in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*.
2. Select an interface, and click *Edit*.

**Check the following items:**

1. Is the DHCP server enabled?
2. Is the DHCP server entry set to *Relay*? If so, verify there is another DHCP server to which requests can be relayed. Otherwise, set it to *Server*.
3. Does the DHCP server use a valid IP address range? Are other devices using the addresses? If one or more devices are using IP addresses in this range, you can use the IP reservation feature to ensure the DHCP server does not use these addresses. See DHCP server on page 452
4. Is there a gateway entry? If not, add a gateway entry to ensure that the server's clients have a default route.
5. Is the system DNS setting being used? A best practice is to avoid confusion by using the system DNS whenever possible. However, you can specify up to three custom DNS servers, and you should use all three entries for redundancy.



There are some situations, such as a new wireless interface, or during the initial FortiGate configuration, where interfaces override the system DNS entries. When this happens, it often shows up as intermittent Internet connectivity.

To fix the problem, go to *Network* > *DNS*, and enable *Use FortiGuard Servers*.

## Checking CPU and memory resources

Check the CPU and memory resources when the FortiGate is not working, the network is slow, or there is a reduced firewall session setup rate. All processes share the system resources in FortiOS, including CPU and memory.

**To view system resources in the GUI:**

Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*.

The resource information is located in the *CPU* and *Memory* widgets. For information, see Dashboards and widgets on page 58.

**To view system resources in the CLI:**

```
get system performance status
```

**Sample output:**

```
FGT# get system performance status
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU0 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU1 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU2 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
CPU3 states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
Memory: 4050332k total, 527148k used (13%), 3381312k free (83%), 141872k freeable (3%)
Average network usage: 41 / 28 kbps in 1 minute, 54 / 44 kbps in 10 minutes, 42 / 34 kbps
     in 30 minutes
Average sessions: 33 sessions in 1 minute, 48 sessions in 10 minutes, 38 sessions in 30
     minutes
Average session setup rate: 0 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 0 sessions per second
     in last 10 minutes, 0 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
Virus caught: 0 total in 1 minute
IPS attacks blocked: 0 total in 1 minute
Uptime: 0 days, 22 hours, 59 minutes
```

The first line of the output shows the CPU usage by category:

```
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle 0% iowait 0% irq 0% softirq
```

The second line of the output shows the memory usage:

```
Memory: 4050332k total, 527148k used (13%), 3381312k free (83%), 141872k freeable (3%)
```

Memory usage should not exceed 90%. Using too much memory prevents some processes from functioning properly. For example, if the system is running low on memory, antivirus scanning enters into *failopen* mode where it drops connections or bypasses the antivirus system.

Other lines of output, such as `average network usage`, `average session setup rate`, `viruses caught`, and `IPS attacks blocked`, help determine why system resource usage is high.

For example:

- A high `average network usage` may indicate high traffic processing on the FortiGate,
- A very low or zero, `average session setup rate` may indicate the proxy is overloaded and unable to do its job.

# Troubleshooting CPU and network resources

### FortiGate has stopped working

If the FortiGate has stopped working, the first line of the output will look similar to this:

```
CPU states: 0% user 0% system 0% nice 100% idle
```

### Network is slow

If your network is running slow, the first line of the output will look similar to this:

```
CPU states: 1% user 98% system 0% nice 1% idle
```

This example shows that all of the CPU is being used by system processes, and the FortiGate is overloaded. When overloading occurs, it is possible a process such as `scanunitid` is using all the resources to scan traffic. In this case you need to reduce the amount of traffic being scanned by blocking unwanted protocols, configuring more security policies to limit scanning to certain protocols, or similar actions.

It is also possible a hacker has accessed your network and is overloading it with malicious activity, such as running a spam server or using zombie PCs to attack other networks on the Internet.

You can use the following command to investigate the problem with the CPU:

```
get system performance top
```

This command shows all of the top processes that are running on the FortiGate and their CPU usage. The process names are on the left. If a process is using most of the CPU cycles, investigate it to determine whether the activity is normal.

### Reduced firewall session setup rate

A reduced firewall session setup rate can be caused by a lack of system resources on the FortiGate, or reaching the session count limit for a VDOM.



As a best practice, administrators should record the session setup rate during normal operation to establish a baseline to help define a problem when your are troubleshooting.

The session setup rate appears in the `average sessions` section of the output.

A reduced firewall session setup rate will look similar to this:

```
Average sessions: 80 sessions in 1 minute, 30 sessions in 10 minutes, 42 sessions in 30
     minutes
Average session setup rate: 3 sessions per second in last 1 minute, 0 sessions per second in
     last 10 minutes, 0 sessions per second in last 30 minutes
```

In the example above, there were 80 sessions in 1 minute, or an average of 3 sessions per second.

The values for `10 minutes` and `30 minutes` allow you to take a longer average for a more reliable value if your FortiGate is working at maximum capacity. The smallest FortiGate can have 1,000 sessions established per second across the unit.



The session setup rate is a global command. If you have multiple VDOMs configured with many sessions in each VDOM, the session setup rate per VDOM will be slower than if there are no VDOMs configured.

### High memory usage

As with any system, a FortiGate has limited hardware resources, such as memory, and all processes running on the FortiGate share the memory. Each process uses more or less memory, depending on its workload. For example, a process usually uses more memory in high traffic situations. If some processes use all of the available memory, other processes will not be able to run.

When high memory usage occurs, the services may freeze up, connections may be lost, or new connections may be refused.

If you see high memory usage in the *Memory* widget, the FotiGate may be handling high traffic volumes. Alternatively, the FortiGate may have problems with connection pool limits that are affecting a single proxy. If the FortiGate receives large volumes of traffic on a specific proxy, the unit may exceed the connection pool limit. If the number of free connections within a proxy connection pool reaches zero, issues may occur.

**To view current memory usage information in the CLI:**

```
diagnose hardware sysinfo memory
```

**Sample output:**

```
total: used: free: shared: buffers: cached: shm:
Mem: 2074185728 756936704 1317249024 0 20701184 194555904 161046528
Swap:       0       0       0
MemTotal:   2025572 kB
MemFree:    1286376 kB
MemShared:        0 kB
Buffers:      20216 kB
Cached:      189996 kB
SwapCached:       0 kB
Active:       56644 kB
Inactive:    153648 kB
HighTotal:        0 kB
HighFree:         0 kB
LowTotal:   2025572 kB
LowFree:    1286376 kB
SwapTotal:        0 kB
SwapFree:         0 kB
```

## Troubleshooting high CPU usage

Connection-related problems may occur when FortiGate's CPU resources are over extended. This occurs when you deploy too many FortiOS features at the same time.

### Examples of CPU intensive features:

- VPN high-level encryption
- Intensive scanning of all traffic
- Logging all traffic and packets
- Dashboard widgets that frequently perform data updates

For information on customizing the CPU use threshold, see Execute a CLI script based on CPU and memory thresholds on page 344.

## Determining the current level of CPU usage

You can view CPU usage levels in the GUI or CLI. For precise usage values for both overall usage and specific processes, use the CLI.

**To view CPU usage in the GUI:**

Go to *Dashboard* > *Status*. Real-time CPU usage information is located in the *CPU* widget.

**To view CPU usage in the CLI:**

- Show top processes information:
  ```
  diagnose sys top
  ```
- Show top threads information:
  ```
  diagnose sys top-all
  ```

**Sample output:**

```
Run Time: 86 days, 0 hours and 10 minutes
0U, 0N, 0S, 100I, 0WA, 0HI, 0SI, 0ST; 3040T, 2437F
     bcm.user 93 S < 3.1 0.4
     httpsd 18922 S 1.5 0.5
     httpsd 19150 S 0.3 0.5
     newcli 20195 R 0.1 0.1
     cmdbsvr 115 S 0.0 0.8
     pyfcgid 20107 S 0.0 0.6
     forticron 146 S 0.0 0.5
     httpsd 139 S 0.0 0.5
     cw_acd 166 S 0.0 0.5
     miglogd 136 S 0.0 0.5
     pyfcgid 20110 S 0.0 0.4
     pyfcgid 20111 S 0.0 0.4
     pyfcgid 20109 S 0.0 0.4
     httpsd 20192 S 0.0 0.4
     miglogd 174 S 0.0 0.4
     miglogd 175 S 0.0 0.4
     fgfmd 165 S 0.0 0.3
     newcli 20191 S 0.0 0.3
     initXXXXXXXXXXX 1 S 0.0 0.3
     httpsd 184 s 0.0 0.3
```

The following table explains the codes in the second line of the output:

| Code | Description |
|---|---|
| U | Percentage of user space applications that are currently using the CPU |
| N | Percentage of time that the CPU spent on low priority processes since the last shutdown |
| S | Percentage of system processes (or kernel processes) that are using the CPU |
| I | Percentage of idle CPU resources |
| WA | Percentage of time that the CPU spent waiting on IO peripherals since the last shutdown |
| HI | Percentage of time that the CPU spent handling hardware interrupt routines since the last shutdown |
| SI | Percentage of time that the CPU spent handling software interrupt routines since the last shutdown |
| ST | Steal time: Percentage of time a virtual CPU waits for the physical CPU when the hypervisor is servicing another virtual processor |
| T | Total FortiOS system memory in MB |
| F | Free memory in MB |

Each additional line of the command output displays information specific to processes or threads that are running on the FortiGate unit. For example, the sixth line of the output is: `newcli 20195 R 0.1 0.1`

The following table describes the data in the sixth line of the output:

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| newcli | The process (or thread) name.<br>Duplicate process or thread names indicate that separate instances of that process or thread are running. |
| 20195 | The process or thread ID, which can be any number. |
| R | Current state of the process or thread. The process or thread state can be:<br>• R - running<br>• S - sleep<br>• Z - zombie<br>• D- disk sleep |
| 0.1 | The percentage of CPU capacity that the process or thread is using.<br>CPU usage can range from 0.0 for a process or thread that is sleeping to higher values for a process or thread that's taking a lot of CPU time. |
| 0.1 | The amount of memory that the process or thread is using.<br>Memory usage can range from 0.1 to 5.5 and higher. |

You can use the following single-key commands when running `diagnose sys top` or `diagnose sys top-all`:

- `q` to quit and return to the normal CLI prompt.
- `p` to sort the processes by the amount of CPU that the processes are using.
- `m` to sort the processes by the amount of memory that the processes are using.

The output only displays the top processes or threads that are running. For example, if 20 are listed, they are the top 20 currently running, sorted by either CPU or memory usage. You can configure the number of processes or threads displayed, using the following CLI commands:

```
diagnose sys top <integer_seconds> <integer_maximum_lines>
diagnose sys top-all <integer_seconds> <integer_maximum_lines>
```

Where:

- `<integer_seconds>` is the delay in seconds (default is 5)
- `<integer_maximum_lines>` is the maximum number of lines (or processes) to list (default is 20)

## Determining which features are using the most CPU resources

You can use the CLI to view the top few processes that are currently running and using the most CPU resources.

**To view processes using the most CPU resources:**

```
get system performance top
```

The entries at the top are using the most CPU resources. The second column from the right shows CPU usage by percentage. Note which processes are using the most resources and try to reduce their CPU load.

Processes you will see include:

- `ipsengine`: the IPS engine that scans traffic for intrusions
- `scanunitd`: antivirus scanner
- `httpsd`: secure HTTP
- `iked`: internet key exchange (IKE) in use with IPsec VPN tunnels
- `newcli`: active whenever you're accessing the CLI
- `sshd`: there are active secure socket connections
- `cmdbsrv`: the command database server application

Go to the features that are at the top of the list and look for evidence of CPU overuse. Generally, the monitor for a feature is a good place to start.

## Checking for unnecessary CPU “wasters”

These are some best practices that will reduce your CPU usage, even if the FortiGate is not experiencing high CPU usage. Note that if the following information instructs you to turn off a feature that you require, disregard that part of the instructions.

- Use hardware acceleration wherever possible to offload tasks from the CPU. Offloading tasks, such as encryption, frees up the CPU for other tasks.
- Avoid the use of GUI widgets that require computing cycles, such as the *Top Sessions* widget. These widgets constantly pol the system for information, which uses CPU and other resources.
- Schedule antivirus, IPS, and firmware updates during off-peak hours. These updates do not usually consume CPU resources but they can disrupt normal operation.
- Check the log levels and which events are being logged. This is the severity of the messages that are recorded. Consider going up one level to reduce the amount of logging. Also, if there are events you do not need to monitor, remove them from the list.

- Log to FortiCloud instead of logging to memory or disk. Logging to memory quickly uses up resources and logging to local disk impacts overall performance and reduces the lifetime of the unit.
  Fortinet recommends logging to FortiCloud to avoid using too much CPU.
- If the disk is almost full, transfer the logs or data off the disk to free up space. When a disk is almost full it consumes a lot of resources to find free space and organize the files.
- If packet logging is enabled on the FortiGate, consider disabling it. When packet logging is enabled, it records every packet that comes through that policy.
- Halt all sniffers and traces.
- Ensure the FortiGate isn't scanning traffic twice. Traffic does not need to be rescanned if it enters the FortiGate on one interface, goes out another, and then comes back in again. Doing so is a waste of resources. However, ensure that traffic truly is being scanned once.
- Reduce the session timers to close unused sessions faster. Enter the following CLI commands, which reduce the default values. Note that, by default, the system adds 10 seconds to `tcp-timewait`.

```
config system global
   set tcp-halfclose-timer 30
   set tcp-halfopen-timer 30
   set tcp-timewait-timer 0
   set udp-idle-timer 60
end
```

- Go to *System* > *Feature Visibility*, and enable only features that you need.

**SNMP monitoring**

When CPU usage is under control, use SNMP to monitor CPU usage. Alternatively, use logging to record CPU and memory usage every 5 minutes.

Once the system is back to normal, you should set up a warning system that sends alerts when CPU resources are used excessively. A common method to do this is using SNMP. SNMP monitors many values in FortiOS and allows you to set high water marks that generate events. You can run an application on your computer to watch for and record these events.

**To enable SNMP:**

1. Go to *System* > *SNMP*.
2. Configure an SNMP community.

See SNMP on page 732.



You can use the *System Resources* widget to record CPU usage if SNMP is too complicated. However, the widget only records problems as they happen and will not send you alerts for problems.

## Checking the modem status

You can use the CLI to troubleshoot a modem that is not working properly, or troubleshoot a FortiGate that does not detect the modem.

**To diagnose modem issues in the CLI:**

```
diagnose sys modem {cmd | com | detect | history | external-modem | query| reset}
```

You should always run the following command after you connect a USB modem to FortiGate:

```
diagnose sys modem detect
```

Use the following command to view the modem's configuration, vendor and custom product identification number:

```
get system modem
```

Use the following commands to resolve connectivity issues:

- `diagnose debug enable`: Activates the debug on the console
- `diagnose debug application modemd`: Dumps communication between the modem and the unit.
- `diagnose debug application ppp`: Dumps the PPP negotiating messages.
- `execute modem dial`: Displays modem debug output.

The modem diagnose output should not contain errors when initializing. You should also verify the number used to dial into your ISP.

## Running ping and traceroute

Ping and traceroute are useful tools in network troubleshooting. Alone, either tool can determine network connectivity between two points. However, ping can be used to generate simple network traffic that you can view using `diagnose` commands in FortiGate. This combination can be very powerful when you are trying to locate network problems.

Ping and traceroute can also tell you if your computer or network device has access to a domain name server (DNS). Both tools can use IP addresses or device domain names to determine why particular services, such as email or web browsing, may not work properly.



If ping does not work, it may be disabled on at least one of the interface settings and security policies for that interface.

Both ping and traceroute require particular ports to be open on firewalls to function. Since you typically use these tools to troubleshoot, you can allow them in the security policies and on interfaces only when you need them. Otherwise, keep the ports disabled for added security.

### Ping

The ping command sends a very small packet to a destination, and waits for a response. The response has a timer that expires when the destination is unreachable.

Ping is part of layer 3 on the OSI Networking Model. Ping sends Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) “echo request” packets to the destination, and listens for “echo response” packets in reply. However, many public networks block ICMP packets because ping can be used in a denial of service (DoS) attack (such as Ping of Death or a smurf attack), or by an attacker to find active locations on the network. By default, FortiGate units have ping enabled while broadcast-forward is disabled on the external interface.

#### What ping can tell you

Beyond the basic connectivity information, ping can tell you the amount of packet loss (if any), how long it takes the packet to make the round trip, and the variation in that time from packet to packet.

If packet loss is detected, you should investigate the following:

- Possible ECMP, split horizon, or network loops.
- Cabling, to ensure there are no loose connections.
- Verify which security policy was used. To do this:
  Go *to Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and view the packet count column.

If there is total packet loss, you should investigate the following:

1. Ensure cabling is correct, and all equipment between the two locations is accounted for.
2. Ensure all IP addresses and routing information along the route is configured as expected.
3. Ensure all firewalls, including FortiGate security policies allow PING to pass through.

## How to use ping

Ping syntax is the same for nearly every type of system on a network.

### To ping from a FortiGate unit:

1. Go to *Dashboad*, and connect to the CLI through either telnet or the CLI widget.
2. Enter `exec ping 10.11.101.101` to send 5 ping packets to the destination IP address. There are no options for this command.

   **Sample output:**

```
Head_Office_620b # exec ping 10.11.101.101
PING 10.11.101.101 (10.11.101.101): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.3 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms
64 bytes from 10.11.101.101: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.2 ms

--- 10.11.101.101 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.2/0.2/0.3 ms
```

### To ping from a Microsoft Windows PC:

1. Open a command window.
2. Enter `ping 10.11.101.100` to ping the default internal interface of the FortiGate with four packets.
   Other options include:
   - `-t` to send packets until you press `Ctrl+C`
   - `-a` to resolve addresses to domain names where possible
   - `-n X` to send X ping packets and stop

**Sample output:**

```
C:\>ping 10.11.101.101

Pinging 10.11.101.101 with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=255
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255
Reply from 10.11.101.101: bytes=32 time=1ms TTL=255
```

```
Ping statistics for 10.11.101.101:
Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 10ms, Average = 3ms
```

**To ping from a Linux PC:**

1. Go to a shell prompt.
2. Enter "`ping 10.11.101.101`".

## Traceroute

Where ping will only tell you if it reached its destination and returned successfully, traceroute shows each step of the journey to its destination and how long each step takes. If ping finds an outage between two points, you can use traceroute to locate exactly where the problem is.

Traceroute works by sending ICMP packets to test each hop along the route. It sends three packets, and then increases the time to live (TTL) setting by one each time. This effectively allows the packets to go one hop farther along the route. This is why most traceroute commands display their maximum hop count before they start tracing the route, which is the maximum number of steps it takes before it declares the destination unreachable. Also, the TTL setting may result in steps along the route timing out due to slow responses. There are many possible reasons for this to occur.

By default, traceroute uses UDP datagrams with destination ports numbered from 33434 to 33534. The traceroute utility may also offer the option to select use of ICMP echo request (type 8) instead, which the Windows tracert utility uses. If you must, allow both protocols inbound through the FortiGate security policies (UDP with ports from 33434 to 33534 and ICMP type 8).

**To track traceroute packets in the GUI:**

Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy* and view the packet count column.

This allows you to verify the connection and confirm which security policy the traceroute packets are using.

### What traceroute can tell you

Both ping and traceroute verify connectivity between two points. However, only traceroute shows you each step in the connection path. Also, ping and traceroute use different protocols and ports, so one may succeed where the other fails.

You can verify your DNS connection using traceroute. If you enter an FQDN instead of an IP address for the traceroute, DNS tries to resolve that domain name. If the name isn't resolved, you have DNS issues.

#### Using traceroute

The traceroute command varies slightly between operating systems. In Microsoft Windows, the command name is shortened to "`tracert`". Also, your output lists different domain names and IP addresses along your route.

**To use traceroute on a Microsoft Windows PC:**

1. Open a command window.
2. Enter `tracert fortinet.com` to trace the route from the PC to the Fortinet web site.

**Sample output:**

```
C:\>tracert fortinet.com

Tracing route to fortinet.com [208.70.202.225]
over a maximum of 30 hops:
1 <1 ms <1 ms <1 ms 172.20.120.2
2 66 ms 24 ms 31 ms 209-87-254-xxx.storm.ca [209.87.254.221]
3 52 ms 22 ms 18 ms core-2-g0-0-1104.storm.ca [209.87.239.129]
4 43 ms 36 ms 27 ms core-3-g0-0-1185.storm.ca [209.87.239.222]
5 46 ms 21 ms 16 ms te3-x.1156.mpd01.cogentco.com [38.104.158.69]
6 25 ms 45 ms 53 ms te8-7.mpd01.cogentco.com [154.54.27.249]
7 89 ms 70 ms 36 ms te3-x.mpd01.cogentco.com [154.54.6.206]
8 55 ms 77 ms 58 ms sl-st30-chi-.sprintlink.net [144.232.9.69]
9 53 ms 58 ms 46 ms sl-0-3-3-x.sprintlink.net [144.232.19.181]
10 82 ms 90 ms 75 ms sl-x-12-0-1.sprintlink.net [144.232.20.61]
11 122 ms 123 ms 132 ms sl-0-x-0-3.sprintlink.net [144.232.18.150]
12 129 ms 119 ms 139 ms 144.232.20.7
13 172 ms 164 ms 243 ms sl-321313-0.sprintlink.net [144.223.243.58]
14 99 ms 94 ms 93 ms 203.78.181.18
15 108 ms 102 ms 89 ms 203.78.176.2
16 98 ms 95 ms 97 ms 208.70.202.225
```

The first column on the left is the hop count, which can't exceed 30 hops. When that number is reached, the traceroute ends.

The second, third, and fourth columns display how much time each of the three packets takes to reach this stage of the route. These values are in milliseconds and normally vary quite a bit. Typically a value of `<1ms` indicates a local connection.

The fifth column (farthest to the right) shows the domain name of the device and its IP address, or possibly only the IP address.

**To perform a traceroute on a Linux PC:**

1. Go to a command line prompt.
2. Enter "`traceroute fortinet.com`".

The Linux traceroute output is very similar to the MicroSoft Windows `tracert` output.

**To trace a route from a FortiGate to a destination IP address in the CLI:**

```
# execute traceroute www.fortinet.com

traceroute to www.fortinet.com (66.171.121.34), 32 hops max, 84 byte packets
1 172.20.120.2 0.637 ms 0.653 ms 0.279 ms
2 209.87.254.221 <static-209-87-254-221.storm.ca> 2.448 ms 2.519 ms 2.458 ms
3 209.87.239.129 <core-2-g0-2.storm.ca> 2.917 ms 2.828 ms 9.324 ms
4 209.87.239.199 <core-3-bdi1739.storm.ca> 13.248 ms 12.401 ms 13.009 ms
5 216.66.41.113 <v502.core1.tor1.he.net> 17.181 ms 12.422 ms 12.268 ms
6 184.105.80.9 <100ge1-2.core1.nyc4.he.net> 21.355 ms 21.518 ms 21.597 ms
7 198.32.118.41 <ny-paix-gni.twgate.net> 83.297 ms 84.416 ms 83.782 ms
8 203.160.228.217 <217-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.579 ms 82.187 ms 82.066 ms
9 203.160.228.229 <229-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.055 ms 82.455 ms 81.808 ms
10 203.78.181.2 82.262 ms 81.572 ms 82.015 ms
11 203.78.186.70 83.283 ms 83.243 ms 83.293 ms
12 66.171.127.177 84.030 ms 84.229 ms 83.550 ms
```

```
13 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 84.023 ms 83.903 ms 84.032 ms
14 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 83.874 ms 84.084 ms 83.810 ms
```

## Checking the logs

A log message records the traffic passing through FortiGate to your network and the action FortiGate takes when it scans the traffic. You should log as much information as possible when you first configure FortiOS. If FortiGate logs are too large, you can turn off or scale back the logging for features that are not in use.

It is difficult to troubleshoot logs without a baseline. Before you can determine if the logs indicate a problem, you need to know what logs result from normal operation.

**When troubleshooting with log files**

- Compare current logs to a recorded baseline of normal operation.
- If you need to, increase the level of logging (such as from Warning to Information) to obtain more information. When increasing logging levels, ensure that you configure email alerts and select both disk usage and log quota. This ensures that you will be notified if the increase in logging causes problems.

**To configure the log settings in the GUI:**

Go to *Log & Report* > *Log Settings*.

Determine the activities that generate the most log entries:

- Check all logs to ensure important information is not overlooked.
- Filter or order log entries based on different fields, such as level, service, or IP address, to look for patterns that may indicate a specific problem, such as frequent blocked connections on a specific port for all IP addresses.

Logs can help identify and locate any problems, but they do not solve them. The purpose of logs is to speed up your problem solving and save you time and effort.

For more information about logging and log reports, see Log and Report on page 1600.

## Verifying routing table contents in NAT mode

Verify the contents of the routing table when a FortiGate has limited or no connectivity.

The routing table stores the routes currently in use for both static and dynamic protocols. Storing a route in the routing table saves time and resources performing a lookup. To ensure the most recently used routes remain in the table, old routes are bumped to make room for new ones. You cannot perform this task when FortiGate is in transparent mode.

If FortiGate is running in NAT mode, verify that all desired routes are in the routing table, including local subnets, default routes, specific static routes, and dynamic routing protocols.

**To view the routing table in the CLI:**

```
get router info routing-table all
```

**Sample output:**

```
FGT# get router info routing-table all
Codes:
```

```
   K - kernel, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, B - BGP
   O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
   N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
   E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
   i - IS-IS, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2, ia - IS-IS inter area
   * - candidate default
S* 0.0.0.0/0 [10/0] via 172.20.120.2, wan1
C 10.31.101.0/24 is directly connected, internal
C 172.20.120.0/24 is directly connected, wan1
```

## Verifying the correct route is being used

Run a trace route from a machine in the local area network (LAN) to ensure traffic is flowing as expected through the correct route when there is more than one default route.

In the following example output:

- The first hop contains the IP address `10.10.1.99`, which is the internal interface of the FortiGate.
- The second hop contains the IP address `172.20.120.2`, to which the wan1 interface of the FortiGate is connected.

This means the route through the wan1 interface is being used for this traffic.

```
C:\>tracert www.fortinet.com
Tracing route to www.fortinet.com [66.171.121.34]
over a maximum of 30 hops:
1 <1 ms <1 ms <1 ms 10.10.1.99
2 1 ms <1 ms <1 ms 172.20.120.2
3 3 ms 3 ms 3 ms static-209-87-254-221.storm.ca [209.87.254.221]
4 3 ms 3 ms 3 ms core-2-g0-2.storm.ca [209.87.239.129]
5 13 ms 13 ms 13 ms core-3-bdi1739.storm.ca [209.87.239.199]
6 12 ms 19 ms 11 ms v502.core1.tor1.he.net [216.66.41.113]
7 22 ms 22 ms 21 ms 100ge1-2.core1.nyc4.he.net [184.105.80.9]
8 84 ms 84 ms 84 ms ny-paix-gni.twgate.net [198.32.118.41]
9 82 ms 84 ms 82 ms 217-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net [203.160.22
8.217]
10 82 ms 81 ms 82 ms 229-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net [203.160.22
8.229]
11 82 ms 82 ms 82 ms 203.78.181.2
12 84 ms 83 ms 83 ms 203.78.186.70
13 84 ms * 85 ms 66.171.127.177
14 84 ms 84 ms 84 ms fortinet.com [66.171.121.34]
15 84 ms 84 ms 83 ms fortinet.com [66.171.121.34]
```

You can also see the route taken for each session by debugging the packet flow in the CLI. For more information, see Debugging the packet flow on page 1691.

## Verifying the correct firewall policy is being used

If you have more than one firewall policy, you can check which policy is being used in the *Policy & Objects* module in the GUI.

**To verify the firewall policy in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Policy & Objects* > *Firewall Policy*.
2. Look in the *Count* column to see which policy is being used. The count must show traffic increasing.

Debugging the packet flow in the CLI shows the policy ID that's allowing the traffic. For information, see Debugging the packet flow on page 1691.

## Checking the bridging information in transparent mode

Checking the bridging information is useful when you are experiencing connectivity problems. When FortiGate is set to transparent mode, it acts like a bridge and sends all incoming traffic out on the other interfaces. Each bridge is a link between interfaces.

When traffic is flowing between the interfaces, you can see the bridges listed in the CLI. If no bridges are listed, this is the likely cause of the connectivity issue. When investigating bridging information, check for the MAC address of the interface or device in question.

### How to check the bridging information

**To view the list of bridge instances in the CLI:**

```
diagnose netlink brctl list
```

**Sample output:**

```
#diagnose netlink brctl list
list bridge information
1. root.b fdb: size=256 used=6 num=7 depth=2 simple=no
Total 1 bridges
```

### How to display forwarding domain information

You can use forwarding domains, or collision domains, in routing to limit where packets are forwarded on the network. Layer 2 broadcasts are limited to the same group. By default, all interfaces are in group 0. For example, if the FortiGate has 12 interfaces, only two may be in the same forwarding domain, which limits packets that are broadcast to those two interfaces. This reduces traffic on the rest of the network.

Collision domains prevent the forwarding of ARP packets to all VLANs on an interface. Without collision domains, duplicate MAC addresses on VLANs may cause ARP packets to be duplicated. Duplicate ARP packets can cause some switches to reset. It's important to know what interfaces are part of which forwarding domains because this determines which interfaces can communicate with each other.

**To manually configure forwarding domains in transparent mode in the CLI:**

```
config system interface
   edit <interface_name>
      set forward-domain <integer>
   end
```

**To display the forward domains information in the CLI:**

```
diagnose netlink brctl domain <name> <id>
```

Where <name> is the name of the forwarding domain to display and <id> is the domain ID.

**Sample output:**

```
diagnose netlink brctl domain ione 101
show bridge root.b ione forward domain.
id=101 dev=trunk_1 6
```

**To list the existing bridge MAC table in the CLI:**

```
diagnose netlink brctl name host <name>
```

**Sample output:**

```
show bridge control interface root.b host.
fdb: size=256, used=6, num=7, depth=2, simple=no
Bridge root.b host table
```

| port no | device | devname | mac addr | ttl | attributes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | 7 | wan2 | 02:09:0f:78:69:00 | 0 | Local Static |
| 5 | 6 | vlan_1 | 02:09:0f:78:69:01 | 0 | Local Static |
| 3 | 8 | dmz | 02:09:0f:78:69:01 | 0 | Local Static |
| 4 | 9 | internal | 02:09:0f:78:69:02 | 0 | Local Static |
| 3 | 8 | dmz | 00:80:c8:39:87:5a | 194 | |
| 4 | 9 | internal | 02:09:0f:78:67:68 | 8 | |
| 1 | 3 | wan1 | 00:09:0f:78:69:fe | 0 | Local Static |

**To list the existing bridge port list in the CLI:**

```
diagnose netlink brctl name port <name>
```

**Sample output:**

```
show bridge root.b data port.
trunk_1 peer_dev=0
internal peer_dev=0
dmz peer_dev=0
wan2 peer_dev=0
wan1 peer_dev=0
```

## Checking wireless information

Check wireless connections, stations, and interfaces when the problem is not caused by a physical interface.

### Troubleshooting station connection issues

**To check if a station entry is created on access control in the CLI:**

```
FG600B3909600253 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac -d sta
* vf=0 wtp=70 rId=2 wlan=open ip=0.0.0.0 mac=00:09:0f:db:c4:03 rssi=0 idle=148 bw=0 use=2
vf=0 wtp=70 rId=2 wlan=open ip=172.30.32.122 mac=00:25:9c:e0:47:88 rssi=-40 idle=0 bw=9
     use=2
```

### Enabling diagnostics for a specific station

This example uses the station MAC address to find where it is failing:

```
FG600B3909600253 # diagnose wireless-controller wlac sta_filter 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 1
Set filter sta 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 level 1
FG600B3909600253 # 71419.245 <ih> IEEE 802.11 mgmt::disassoc <== 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 vap open
     rId 1 wId 0 00:09:0f:db:c4:03
71419.246 <dc> STA del 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 vap open rId 1 wId 0
71419.246 <cc> STA_CFG_REQ(34) sta 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 del ==> ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 1
     wId 0
71419.246 <cc> STA del 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 vap open ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rId 1 wId 0
     00:09:0f:db:c4:03 sec open reason I2C_STA_DEL
71419.247 <cc> STA_CFG_RESP(34) 00:25:9c:e0:47:88 <== ws (0-192.168.35.1:5246) rc 0
     (Success).
```

## Performing a sniffer trace (CLI and packet capture)

When you troubleshoot networks and routing in particular, it helps to look inside the headers of packets to determine if they are traveling the route that you expect them to take. Packet sniffing is also known as network tap, packet capture, or logic analyzing.



For FortiGates with NP2, NP4, or NP6 interfaces that are offloading traffic, disable offloading on these interfaces before you perform a trace or it will change the sniffer trace.

### Sniffing packets

**To perform a sniffer trace in the CLI:**

Before you start sniffing packets, you should prepare to capture the output to a file. A large amount of data may scroll by and you will not be able to see it without saving it first. One method is to use a terminal program like puTTY to connect to the FortiGate CLI. Once the packet sniffing count is reached, you can end the session and analyze the output in the file.

The general form of the internal FortiOS packet sniffer command is:

```
diagnose sniffer packet <interface_name> <'filter'> <verbose> <count> <tsformat>
```

To stop the sniffer, type `CTRL+C`.

| | |
|---|---|
| **<interface_name>** | The name of the interface to sniff, such as `port1` or `internal`. This can also be `any` to sniff all interfaces. |
| **<'filter'>** | What to look for in the information the sniffer reads. `none` indicates no filtering, and all packets are displayed as the other arguments indicate.<br><br>The filter must be inside single quotes (‘). |
| **<verbose>** | The level of verbosity as one of:<br><br>**1 -** print header of packets<br>**2 -** print header and data from IP of packets<br>**3 -** print header and data from Ethernet of packets<br>**4 -** print header of packets with interface name |
| **<count>** | The number of packets the sniffer reads before stopping. If you don't put a number here, the sniffer will run until you stop it with <`CTRL+C`>. |
| **<tsformat>** | The timestamp format.<br>• `a`: absolute UTC time, yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.ms<br>• `l`: absolute LOCAL time, yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss.ms<br>• `otherwise`: relative to the start of sniffing, ss.ms |

**Simple sniffing example:**

```
diagnose sniffer packet port1 none 1 3.
```

This displays the next three packets on the port1 interface using no filtering, and verbose level 1. At this verbosity level, you can see the source IP and port, the destination IP and port, action (such as ack), and sequence numbers.

In the output below, port 443 indicates these are HTTPS packets and that 172.20.120.17 is both sending and receiving traffic.

```
Head_Office_620b # diagnose sniffer packet port1 none 1 3
interfaces=[port1]
filters=[none]
0.545306 172.20.120.17.52989 -> 172.20.120.141.443: psh 3177924955 ack 1854307757
0.545963 172.20.120.141.443 -> 172.20.120.17.52989: psh 1854307757 ack 3177925808
0.562409 172.20.120.17.52988 -> 172.20.120.141.443: psh 4225311614 ack 3314279933
```

**Advanced sniffing example:**

The following commands will report packets on any interface that are traveling between a computer with the host name of “PC1” and a computer with the host name of “PC2”. With verbosity 4 and above, the sniffer trace displays the interface names where traffic enters or leaves the FortiGate unit. To stop the sniffer, type `CTRL+C`.

```
FGT# diagnose sniffer packet any "host <PC1> or host <PC2>" 4
or
FGT# diagnose sniffer packet any "(host <PC1> or host <PC2>) and icmp" 4
```

The following CLI command for a sniffer includes the ARP protocol in the filter which may be useful to troubleshoot a failure in the ARP resolution. For example, PC2 may be down and not responding to the FortiGate ARP requests.

```
FGT# diagnose sniffer packet any "host <PC1> or host <PC2> or arp" 4
```

## Using packet capture

To use packet capture, the FortiGate must have a disk. You can enable the `capture-packet` in the firewall policy.

**To enable packet capture in the CLI:**

```
config firewall policy
   edit <id>
      set capture-packet enable
end
```

**To configure packet capture filters in the GUI:**

Go to *Network* > *Packet Capture*.

When you add a packet capture filter, enter the following information and click *OK*.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Interface** | Select the interface to sniff from the drop-down menu.<br>You must select one interface. You cannot change the interface without deleting the filter and creating a new one, unlike the other fields. |
| **Max Packets to Save** | Enter the number of packets to capture before the filter stops.<br>This number cannot be zero. You can halt the capturing before this number is reached. |
| **Enable Filters** | Select this option to specify filter fields. |
| **Host(s)** | Enter the IP address of one or more hosts.<br>Separate multiple hosts with commas. To enter a range, use a dash without spaces. For example, `172.16.1.5-172.16.1.15`, or enter a subnet. |
| **Port(s)** | Enter one or more ports to capture on the selected interface.<br>Separate multiple ports with commas. To enter a range, use a dash without spaces, for example `88-90`. |
| **VLAN(s)** | Enter one or more VLANs (if any). Separate multiple VLANs with commas. |
| **Protocol** | Enter one or more protocols. Separate multiple protocols with commas. To enter a range, use a dash without spaces. For example, `1-6`, `17`, `21-25`. |
| **Include IPv6 Packets** | Select this option if you are troubleshooting IPv6 networking, or if your network uses IPv6. Otherwise, leave it disabled. |
| **Include Non-IP Packets** | The protocols in the list are all IP based except for ICMP (ping).<br>Use this feature to capture non-IP based packets. Examples of non-IP packets include IPsec, IGMP, ARP, and ICMP. |

### Managing filters

If you select a filter, you have the option to start and stop packet capture in the edit window, or download the captured packets. You can also see the filter status and the number of packets captured.

You can select the filter and start capturing packets. When the filter is running, the number of captured packets increases until it reaches the *Max Packet Count* or you stop it. You cannot download the output file while the filter is running.

#### Packet capture controls

To start, stop, or resume packet capture, use the symbols on the screen. These symbols are the same as those used for audio or video playback. Hover over the symbol to reveal explanatory text. Similarly, to download the *.pcap file, use the download symbol on the screen.

#### Downloading the file

You can download the *.pcap file when the packet capture is complete. You must use a third party application, such as Wireshark, to read *,pcap files. This tool provides you with extensive analytics and the full contents of the packets that were captured.

## Debugging the packet flow

Debug the packet flow when network traffic is not entering and leaving the FortiGate as expected. Debugging the packet flow can only be done in the CLI. Each command configures a part of the debug action. The final commands starts the debug.

#### To trace the packet flow in the CLI:

```
diagnose debug flow trace start
```

#### To follow packet flow by setting a flow filter:

```
diagnose debug flow {filter | filter6} <option>
```

- Enter `filter` if your network uses IPv4.
- Enter `filter6` if your network uses IPv6.

Replace `<option>` with one of the following variables:

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| `addr` | IPv4 or IPv6 address |
| `clear` | clear filter |
| `daddr` | destination IPv4 or IPv6 address |
| `dport` | destination port |
| `negate` | inverse IPv4 or IPv6 filter |
| `port` | port |
| `proto` | protocol number |
| `saddr` | source address |
| `sport` | source port |
| `vd` | index of virtual domain; `-1` matches all |



If FortiGate is connected to FortiAnalyzer or FortiCloud, the diagnose debug flow output will be recorded as event log messages and then sent to the devices. Do not run this command longer than necessary, as it generates a significant amount of data.



FortiASIC NP4 or NP6 interface pairs that offload traffic will change the packet flow. Before debugging any NP4 or NP6 interfaces, disable offloading on those interfaces.

To do this, enter `diagnose npu <interface pair> fastpath disable`, where `interface pair` is `np4`, `np6`, `np4lite`, or `np6lite`.

**To start flow monitoring with a specific number of packets:**

```
diagnose debug flow trace start <N>
```

**To stop flow tracing at any time:**

```
diagnose debug flow trace stop
```

The following example shows the flow trace for a device with an IP address of `203.160.224.97`:

```
diagnose debug enable
diagnose debug flow filter addr 203.160.224.97
diagnose debug flow show function-name enable
diagnose debug flow trace start 100
```

## Sample output: HTTP

To observe the debug flow trace, connect to the website at the following address:

```
https://www.fortinet.com
```

Comment: SYN packet received:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2700 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
192.168.3.221:1487->203.160.224.97:80) from port5."
```

SYN sent and a new session is allocated:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=resolve_ip_tuple line=2799
msg="allocate a new session-00000e90"
```

Lookup for next-hop gateway address:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=vf_ip4_route_input line=1543
msg="find a route: gw-192.168.11.254 via port6"
```

Source NAT, lookup next available port:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=get_new_addr line=1219
msg="find SNAT: IP-192.168.11.59, port-31925"
direction"
```

Matched security policy. Check to see which policy this session matches:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=fw_forward_handler line=317
msg="Allowed by Policy-3: SNAT"
```

Apply source NAT:

```
id=20085 trace_id=209 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1502 msg="SNAT 192.168.3.221->192.168.11.59:31925"
```

SYN ACK received:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2700
msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6, 203.160.224.97:80-
>192.168.11.59:31925) from port6."
```

Found existing session ID. Identified as the reply direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2727
msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90, reply direction"
```

Apply destination NAT to inverse source NAT action:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1516 msg="DNAT 192.168.11.59:31925-
>192.168.3.221:1487"
```

Lookup for next-hop gateway address for reply traffic:

```
id=20085 trace_id=210 func=vf_ip4_route_input line=1543
msg="find a route: gw-192.168.3.221 via port5"
```

ACK received:

```
id=20085 trace_id=211 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2700
msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
192.168.3.221:1487->203.160.224.97:80) from port5."
```

Match existing session in the original direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=211 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast line=2727
msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90, original
direction"
```

Apply source NAT:

```
id=20085 trace_id=211 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1502 msg="SNAT 192.168.3.221->192.168.11.59:31925"
```

Receive data from client:

```
id=20085 trace_id=212 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2700 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
192.168.3.221:1487->203.160.224.97:80) from port5."
```

Match existing session in the original direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=212 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2727 msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90,
original direction"
```

Apply source NAT:

```
id=20085 trace_id=212 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1502 msg="SNAT 192.168.3.221->192.168.11.59:31925"
```

Receive data from server:

```
id=20085 trace_id=213 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2700 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=6,
203.160.224.97:80->192.168.11.59:31925) from port6."
```

Match existing session in reply direction:

```
id=20085 trace_id=213 func=resolve_ip_tuple_fast
line=2727 msg="Find an existing session, id-00000e90,
reply direction"
```

Apply destination NAT to inverse source NAT action:

```
id=20085 trace_id=213 func=__ip_session_run_tuple
line=1516 msg="DNAT 192.168.11.59:31925-
>192.168.3.221:1487"
```

### Sample output: IPsec (policy-based)

```
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="vd-root received a packet(proto=1, 10.72.55.240:1->10.71.55.10:8)
     from internal."
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="allocate a new session-00001cd3"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="find a route: gw-66.236.56.230 via wan1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="Allowed by Policy-2: encrypt"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="enter IPsec tunnel-RemotePhase1"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="encrypted, and send to 15.215.225.22 with source 66.236.56.226"
id=20085 trace_id=1 msg="send to 66.236.56.230 via intf-wan1"
id=20085 trace_id=2 msg="vd-root received a packet (proto=1, 10.72.55.240:1-1071.55.10:8)
     from internal."
id=20085 trace_id=2 msg="Find an existing session, id-00001cd3, original direction"
id=20085 trace_id=2 msg="enter IPsec ="encrypted, and send to 15.215.225.22 with source
     66.236.56.226" tunnel-RemotePhase1"
id=20085 trace_id=2 msgid=20085 trace_id=2 msg="send to 66.236.56.230 via intf-wan1"
```

## Testing a proxy operation

**To monitor proxy operations in the CLI:**

```
diagnose test application <application> <option>
```

**To display a list of available application values:**

```
diagnose test application ?
```

**To display a list of available option values:**

```
diagnose test application <application> ?
```

The `<option>` value will depend on the application value used in the command.

For example, if the application is `http`, the CLI command that displays the `<option>` values is:

```
diagnose test application http ?
```

## Displaying detail Hardware NIC information

Monitoring the hardware NIC is important because interface errors indicate data link or physical layer issues which may impact the performance of the FortiGate.

**To monitor hardware network operations in the CLI:**

```
diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic <interface>
```

### Sample output:

The following is sample output when the `<interface>` is set to `lan`:

```
System_Device_Name lan
Current_HWaddr 00:09:0f:68:35:60
Permanent_HWaddr 00:09:0f:68:35:60
State up
Link up
Speed 100
Duplex full
[……]
Rx_Packets=5685708
Tx_Packets=4107073
Rx_Bytes=617908014
Tx_Bytes=1269751248
Rx_Errors=0
Tx_Errors=0
Rx_Dropped=0
Tx_Dropped=0
[……]
```

**Error descriptions**

The `diagnose hardware deviceinfo nic` command displays a list of error names and values that are related to hardware.

The following table describes possible hardware errors:

| Field | Description |
|---|---|
| Rx_Errors = rx error count | Bad frame was marked as error by PHY |
| Rx_CRC_Errors + Rx_Length_Errors - Rx_Align_Errors | This error is only valid in 10/100M mode |
| Rx_Dropped or Rx_No_Buffer_ Count | Running out of buffer space |
| Rx_Missed_Errors | Equals Rx_FIFO_Errors + CEXTERR (Carrier Extension Error Count); only valid in 1000M mode, which is marked by PHY |
| Tx_Errors = Tx_ Aborted_Errors | ECOL (Excessive Collisions Count); only valid in half-duplex mode |
| Tx_Window_Errors | Late Collisions (LATECOL) Count |

| Field | Description |
|---|---|
| | Late collisions are collisions that occur after 64-byte time into the transmission of the packet while working in 10 to 100 Mb/s data rate and 512-byte time into the transmission of the packet while working in the 1,000 Mb/s data rate. This register only increments if transmits are enabled and the device is in half-duplex mode. |
| Rx_Dropped | See Rx_Errors |
| Tx_Dropped | Not defined |
| Collisions | Total number of collisions experienced by the transmitter; valid in half-duplex mode |
| Rx_Length_Errors | Transmission length error |
| Rx_Over_Errors | Not defined |
| Rx_CRC_Errors | Frame CRC error |
| Rx_Frame_Errors | Same as Rx_Align_Errors<br>This error is only valid in 10/100M mode. |
| Rx_FIFO_Errors | Same as Rx_Missed_Errors - a missed packet count |
| Tx_Aborted_Errors | See Tx_Errors |
| Tx_Carrier_Errors | The PHY should assert the internal carrier sense signal during every transmission. Failure to do so may indicate that the link has failed or the PHY has an incorrect link configuration. This register only increments if transmits are enabled. This register isn't valid in internal SerDes 1 mode (TBI mode for the 82544GC/EI) and is valid only when the Ethernet controller is operating at full duplex. |
| Tx_FIFO_Errors | Not defined |
| Tx_Heartbeat_Errors | Not defined |
| Tx_Window_Errors | See LATECOL |
| Tx_Single_Collision_Frames | Counts the number of times that a successfully transmitted packet encountered a single collision<br>The value increments only if transmits are enabled and the Ethernet controller is in half-duplex mode. |
| Tx_Multiple_Collision_Frames | A Multiple Collision Count which indicates the number of times that a transmit encountered more than one collision, but less than 16. The value increments only if transmits are enabled and the Ethernet controller is in half-duplex mode. |
| Tx_Deferred | Counts defer events.<br>A deferred event occurs when the transmitter cannot immediately send a packet due to:<br>• The medium being busy because another device is transmitting<br>• The IPG timer hasn't expired<br>• Half-duplex deferral events are occurring<br>• XOFF frames are being received<br>• he link is not up. |

| Field | Description |
|---|---|
| | This register only increments if transmits are enabled. This counter does not increment for streaming transmits that are deferred due to TX IPG. |
| Rx_Frame_Too_Longs | The Rx frame is oversized |
| Rx_Frame_Too_Shorts | The Rx frame is too short |
| Rx_Align_Errors | This error is only valid in 10/100M mode |
| Symbol Error Count | Counts the number of symbol errors between reads - SYMERRS.<br>The count increases for every bad symbol that's received, whether or not a packet is currently being received and whether or not the link is up. This register increments only in internal SerDes mode. |

## Performing a traffic trace

Traffic tracing allows you to follow a specific packet stream. This is useful when you want to confirm that packets are using the route you expect them to take on your network.

**To view traffic sessions:**

Use this command to view the characteristics of a traffic session though specific security policies.

```
diagnose sys session
```

**To trace per-packet operations for flow tracing:**

```
diagnose debug flow
```

**To trace per-Ethernet frame:**

```
diagnose sniffer packet
```

**To trace a route from a FortiGate to a destination IP address:**

```
# execute traceroute www.fortinet.com
traceroute to www.fortinet.com (66.171.121.34), 32 hops max, 84 byte packets
1 172.20.120.2 0.637 ms 0.653 ms 0.279 ms
2 209.87.254.221 <static-209-87-254-221.storm.ca> 2.448 ms 2.519 ms 2.458 ms
3 209.87.239.129 <core-2-g0-2.storm.ca> 2.917 ms 2.828 ms 9.324 ms
4 209.87.239.199 <core-3-bdi1739.storm.ca> 13.248 ms 12.401 ms 13.009 ms
5 216.66.41.113 <v502.core1.tor1.he.net> 17.181 ms 12.422 ms 12.268 ms
6 184.105.80.9 <100ge1-2.core1.nyc4.he.net> 21.355 ms 21.518 ms 21.597 ms
7 198.32.118.41 <ny-paix-gni.twgate.net> 83.297 ms 84.416 ms 83.782 ms
8 203.160.228.217 <217-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.579 ms 82.187 ms 82.066 ms
9 203.160.228.229 <229-228-160-203.TWGATE-IP.twgate.net> 82.055 ms 82.455 ms 81.808 ms
10 203.78.181.2 82.262 ms 81.572 ms 82.015 ms
11 203.78.186.70 83.283 ms 83.243 ms 83.293 ms
12 66.171.127.177 84.030 ms 84.229 ms 83.550 ms
13 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 84.023 ms 83.903 ms 84.032 ms
```

```
14 66.171.121.34 <www.fortinet.com> 83.874 ms 84.084 ms 83.810 ms
```

# Using a session table

A session is a communication channel between two devices or applications across the network. Sessions allow FortiOS to inspect and act on a sequential group of packets in a session all at once instead of inspecting each packet individually. Each session has an entry in the session table that includes important information about the session.

You can view FortiGate session tables from the FortiGate GUI or CLI. The most useful troubleshooting data comes from the CLI. The session table in the GUI also provides useful summary information, particularly the current policy number that the session is using.

## When to use a session table

Session tables are useful when verifying open connections. For example, if you have a web browser open to browse the Fortinet website, you would expect a session entry from your computer on port 80 to the IP address for the Fortinet website.

You can also use a session table to investigate why there are too many sessions for FortiOS to process.

### GUI

**To view session information in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*.
2. From the *Metrics* dropdown, select *Sessions*.

## Finding the security policy for a specific connection

Every program and device on your network must have an open communication channel or session to pass information. FortiGate manages these sessions with features such as traffic shaping, antivirus scanning, and blocking known bad websites. Each session will have an entry in the session table.

If a secure web browser session is not working properly, you can check the session table to ensure the session is still active and going to the proper address. The session table can also tell you the security policy number it matches, so you can check what is happening in that policy.

**1. Get the connection information.**

You need to be able to identify the session you want. To do this, you will need:

- The source IP address (usually your computer)
- The destination IP address (if you have it)
- The port number which is determined by the program you are using. Common ports are:
  - Port 80 (HTTP for web browsing)
  - Port 443 (HTTPS for SSL encrypted web browsing)
  - Port 22 (SSH for Secure Shell)
  - Port 25 (SMTP for Mail Transfer)

### 2. Find the session and policy ID

Go to *Security Fabric* > *Physical Topology*. From the *Metrics* dropdown, select *Sessions*.

To find your session, search for your source IP address, destination IP address (if you have it), and port number. The policy ID is listed after the destination information.

### 3. Use filters to find a session

If there are multiple pages of sessions, you can use a filter to hide the sessions you do not need. To filter the sessions in the table, click *Add Filter*, and select an option from the list. You can filter the table by *Destination IP*, *Source IP*, or *Source Port*.

## CLI

The session table output in the CLI is very large. The CLI command supports filters to show only the data you need.

### To view session data in the CLI:

```
diagnose sys session list
```

An entry is placed in the session table for each traffic session passing through a security policy

### To filter session data:

```
diagnose sys session filter <option>
```

The values for `<option>` include the following:

| Value | Definition |
|---|---|
| `clear` | Clear session filter |
| `dintf` | Destination interface |
| `dport` | Destination port |
| `dst` | Destination IP address |
| `duration` | Duration of the session |
| `expire` | Expire |
| `negate` | Inverse filter |
| `nport` | NAT'd source port |
| `nsrc` | NAT'd source ip address |
| `policy` | Policy ID |
| `proto` | Protocol number |
| `proto-state` | Protocol state |
| `session-state1` | Session state1 |

| Value | Definition |
|---|---|
| `session-state2` | Session state2 |
| `sintf` | Source interface |
| `sport` | Source port |
| `src` | Source IP address |
| `vd` | Index of virtual domain, `-1` matches all |

Even though UDP is a sessionless protocol, FortiGate keeps track of the following states:

- When UDP reply does not have a value of 0
- When UDP reply has a value of 1

The following table displays firewall session states from the session table:

| State | Description |
|---|---|
| log | Session is being logged |
| local | Session is originated from or destined for local stack |
| ext | Session is created by a firewall session helper |
| may_dirty | Session is created by a policy<br>For example, the session for `ftp control channel` will have this state but `ftp data channel` won't. This is also seen when NAT is enabled. |
| ndr | Session will be checked by IPS signature |
| nds | Session will be checked by IPS anomaly |
| br | Session is being bridged (TP) mode |

## Examining the firewall session list

The firewall session list displays all open sessions in FortiGate. Examine the list for strange patterns, such as no sessions apart from the internal network, or all sessions are only to one IP address.

When you examine the firewall session list in the CLI, you can use filters to reduce the output.

**To examine the firewall session list in the CLI:**

You can use a filter to limit the sessions displayed by source, destination address, port, or NAT'd address. To use more than one filter, enter a separate line for each value.

The following example filters the session list based on a source address of 10.11.101.112:

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter src 10.11.101.112
FGT# diagnose sys session list
```

The following example filters the session list based on a destination address of 172.20.120.222.

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter dst 172.20.120.222
FGT# diagnose sys session list
```

To clear all sessions corresponding to a filter:

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter dst 172.20.120.222
FGT# diagnose sys session clear
```

### Checking source NAT information

Checking source NAT is important when you are troubleshooting from the remote end of the connection outside the firewall.

**To check the source NAT information in the CLI:**

When you display the session list in the CLI, you can match the NAT'd source address (`nsrc`) and port (`nport`). This is useful when multiple internal IP addresses are NAT'd to a common external-facing source IP address.

```
FGT# diagnose sys session filter nsrc 172.20.120.122
FGT# diagnose sys session filter nport 8888
FGT# diagnose sys session list
```

## Finding object dependencies

You may be prevented from deleting a configuration object when other configuration objects depend on it. You can use the GUI or CLI to identify objects which depend on, or make reference to the configuration you are trying to delete. Additionally, if you have a virtual interface with dependent objects, you will need to find and remove those dependencies before deleting the interface.

**To remove interface object dependencies in the GUI:**

1. Go to *Network* > *Interfaces*. The *Ref.* column displays the number of objects that reference this interface.
2. Select the number in the *Ref .* column for the interface. A window listing the dependencies appears.
3. Use these detailed entries to locate and remove object references to this interface. The trash can icon is enabled after all the object dependencies are removed.
4. Remove the interface by selecting the check box for the interface, and select *Delete*.

**To find object dependencies in the CLI:**

When running multiple VDOMs, use the following command in the global configuration only.

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show <path.object.mkey>
```

The command searches for the named object in both the most recently used global and VDOM configurations.

**Examples**

To verify which objects a security policy with an ID of 1 refers to:

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show firewall.policy.policyid 1
```

To check what is referred to by interface `port1`:

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show system.interface.name port1
```

To show all dependencies for an interface:

```
diagnose sys cmdb refcnt show system.interface.name <interface name>
```

### Sample output:

In this example , the interface has dependent objects, including four address objects, one VIP, and three security policies.

```
entry used by table firewall.address:name '10.98.23.23_host'
entry used by table firewall.address:name 'NAS'
entry used by table firewall.address:name 'all'
entry used by table firewall.address:name 'fortinet.com'
entry used by table firewall.vip:name 'TORRENT_10.0.0.70:6883'
entry used by table firewall.policy:policyid '21'
entry used by table firewall.policy:policyid '14'
entry used by table firewall.policy:policyid '19'
```

## Diagnosing NPU-based interfaces

Some Fortinet products contain network processors, such as NP1, NP2, NP4, and NP6. Offloading requirements will vary depending on the model.

**To view the initial session setup for NPU-based interfaces:**

```
diagnose debug flow
```

- If the session is programmed into the ASIC (fastpath) correctly, the command will not detect the packets that arrive at the CPU.
- If the NPU functionality is disabled, the CPU detects all the packets. However, you should only disable the NPU functionality for troubleshooting purposes.

**To diagnose NPU-based interfaces:**

1. Get the NP4 or NPU ID and port numbers.
   ```
   diagnose npu {np4|npu6}list
   ```
   The output will look like this:
   ```
   ID Model Slot Interface
   0 On-board port1 fabric1 fabric3 fabric5
   1 On-board fabric2 port2 base2 fabric4
   ```
2. Disable the NPU functionality.
   ```
   diagnose npu {np4|npu6}fastpath disable <dev_id>
   ```
   The `dev_id` is the NP4 or NP6 number.
3. Analyze the packets.
   ```
   diagnose npu {np4|npu6}fastpath-sniffer enable port1
   ```



These commands only apply to the newer NP4 and NP6 interfaces.

The output will look like this:

```
NP4 Fast Path Sniffer on port1 enabled
```

This causes traffic on `port1` of the network processor to be sent to the CPU. This means you can perform a standard sniffer trace and use other diagnostic commands, if it is a standard CPU-driven port.

## Identifying the XAUI link used for a specific traffic stream

The `diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash` command takes a 6-tuple input of the traffic stream to identify the NP6 XAUI link that the traffic passes through.

This command is only available on the 38xxD, 39xxD, 34xxE, 36xxE, and 5001E series devices.

### Syntax

```
diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash <interface> <proto> <src_ip> <dst_ip> <src_port> <dst_port>
```

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| `<interface>` | The network interface that the packets are coming from. |
| `<proto>` | The proto number, 6 for TCP or 17 for UDP. |
| `<src_ip>` | The source IP address. |
| `<dst_ip>` | The destination IP address. |
| `<src_port>` | The source port. |
| `<dst_port>` | The destination port. |

### Examples

```
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 80
 NP6_ID: 0, XAUI_LINK: 2
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 200
NP6_ID: 6, XAUI_LINK: 2
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 20
NP6_ID: 1, XAUI_LINK: 2
# diagnose npu np6 xaui-hash port1 6 1.1.1.1 2.2.2.1 4567 23
NP6_ID: 1, XAUI_LINK: 1
```

The `NP6_ID` is the NP index of the model that is being used. It can be found with the `diagnose npu np6 port-list` command.

## Running the TAC report

The Technical Assistance Center (TAC) report runs an exhaustive series of diagnostic commands. Some of the commands are only needed if you are using features, such as HA, VPN tunnels, or a modem. Fortinet support my ask you to use the report output to provide information about the current state of your FortiGate.

Due the amount of output generated, the report may take a few minutes to run. If you are logging CLI output to a file, you can run this command to familiarize yourself with the diagnostic commands.

### To run the TAC report in the CLI:

```
exec tac report
```

# Other commands

You may be asked to provide the following information when you contact Fortinet support.


- ARP table on page 1704
- IP address on page 1704


## ARP table

The ARP table is used to determine the destination MAC addresses of the network nodes, as well as the VLANs and ports from where the nodes are reached.

**To view the ARP cache in the CLI:**

```
get system arp
```

**To view the ARP cache in the system in the CLI:**

```
diagnose ip arp list
```

### Sample output:

```
index=14 ifname=internal 224.0.0.5 01:00:5e:00:00:05 state=00000040 use=72203 confirm=78203
     update=72203 ref=1
index=13 ifname=dmz 192.168.3.100 state=00000020 use=1843 confirm=650179 update=644179 ref=2
     ? VIP
index=13 ifname=dmz 192.168.3.109 02:09:0f:78:69:ff state=00000004 use=71743 confirm=75743
     update=75743 ref=1
index=14 ifname=internal 192.168.11.56 00:1c:23:10:f8:20 state=00000004 use=10532
     confirm=10532 update=12658 ref=4
```

**To remove the ARP cache:**

```
execute clear system arp table
```

**To remove a single ARP entry:**

```
diagnose ip arp delete <interface name> <IP address>
```

**To add static ARP entries:**

```
config system arp-table
```

## IP address

You may want to verify the IP addresses assigned to the FortiGate interfaces are what you expect them to be.

**To verify IP addresses:**

```
diagnose ip address list
```

The output lists the:

- IP address and mask (if available)
- `index` of the interface (a type of ID number)
- `devname` (the interface name)

While physical interface names are set, virtual interface names can vary. A good way to use this command is to list all of the virtual interface names. For `vsys_ha` and `vsys_fgfm`, the IP addresses are the local host, which are virtual interfaces that are used internally.

**Sample output:**

```
# diagnose ip address list
IP=10.31.101.100->10.31.101.100/255.255.255.0 index=3 devname=internal
IP=172.20.120.122->172.20.120.122/255.255.255.0 index=5 devname=wan1
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=8 devname=root
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=11 devname=vsys_ha
IP=127.0.0.1->127.0.0.1/255.0.0.0 index=13 devname=vsys_fgfm
```

# FortiGuard troubleshooting

The FortiGuard service provides updates to AntiVirus (AV), Antispam (AS), Intrusion Protection Services (IPS), Webfiltering (WF), and more. The FortiGuard Distribution System (FDS) consists of a number of servers across the world that provide updates to your FortiGate unit. Problems can occur with the connection to FDS and its configuration on your local FortiGate unit.

Some of the more common troubleshooting methods are listed here, including:


- Troubleshooting process for FortiGuard updates on page 1706
- FortiGuard server settings on page 1707
- FortiGuard server settings on page 1707


## Verifying connectivity to FortiGuard

You can verify FortiGuard connectivity in the GUI and CLI.

**To verify FortiGuard connectivity in the GUI:**

1. Got to *Dashboard* > *Status*.
2. Check the *Licenses* widget. When FortiGate is connected to FortiGuard, a green check mark appears next to the available FortiGuard services.

**To verify FortiGuard connectivity in the CLI:**

```
execute ping service.fortiguard.net
```

```
execute ping update.fortiguard.net
```

**Sample output:**

```
FG100D# execute ping service.fortiguard.net
PING guard.fortinet.net (208.91.112.196): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=0 ttl=51 time=61.0 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=1 ttl=51 time=60.0 ms
```

```
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=2 ttl=51 time=59.6 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=3 ttl=51 time=58.9 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.196: icmp_seq=4 ttl=51 time=59.2 ms

--- guard.fortinet.net ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 58.9/59.7/61.0 ms

FG100D# execute ping update.fortiguard.net
PING fds1.fortinet.com (208.91.112.68): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=0 ttl=53 time=62.0 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=1 ttl=53 time=61.8 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=2 ttl=53 time=61.3 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=3 ttl=53 time=61.9 ms
64 bytes from 208.91.112.68: icmp_seq=4 ttl=53 time=61.8 ms
```

## Troubleshooting process for FortiGuard updates

The following process shows the logical steps you should take when troubleshooting problems with FortiGuard updates:

1. **Does the device have a valid license that includes these services?**
   Each device requires a valid FortiGuard license to access updates for some or all of these services. You can verify the status of the support contract for your devices at the Fortinet Support website.
2. **If the device is part of a high availability (HA) cluster, do all members of the cluster have the same level of support?**
   You can verify the status of the support contract for all of the devices in your HA cluster at the Fortinet Support website.
3. **Are services enabled on the device?**
   To see the FortiGuard information and status for a device in the GUI, go to *System* > *FortiGuard*.
   Use this page to verify the status of each component, and enable each service.
4. **Can the device communicate with FortiGuard servers?**
   Go to *System* > *FortiGuard* in the GUI, and try to update AntiVirus and IPS, or test the availability of Web Filtering and AS default and alternate ports.
5. **Is there proper routing to reach the FortiGuard servers?**
   Ensure there is a static or dynamic route that allows your FortiGate to reach the FortiGuard servers. Usually a generic default route to the internet is enough, but you may need to verify this if your network is complex.
6. **Are there issues with DNS?**
   An easy way to test this is to attempt a traceroute from behind the FortiGate to an external network using the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for a location. If the traceroute FQDN name doesn't resolve, you have general DNS problems.
7. **Is there anything upstream that might be blocking FortiGuard traffic, either on the network or ISP side?**
   Many firewalls block all ports, by default, and ISPs often block ports that are low. There may be a firewall between the FortiGate and the FortiGuard servers that's blocking the traffic. By default, FortiGuard uses port 53. If that port is blocked you need to either open a hole for it or change the port it is using.
8. **Is there an issue with source ports?**
   It is possible that ports that FortiGate uses to contact FortiGuard are being changed before they reach FortiGuard or on the return trip before they reach FortiGate. A possible solution for this is to use a fixed-port at NAT'd firewalls to ensure the port remains the same. You can use packet sniffing to find more information about what's happening with ports.

9. **Are there security policies that include antivirus?**
   If none of the security policies include antivirus, the antivirus database will not be updated. If antivirus is included, only the database type that's used will be updated.

## FortiGuard server settings

Your local FortiGate connects to remote FortiGuard servers to get updates to FortiGuard information, such as new viruses that may have been found or other new threats.

This section provides methods to display FortiGuard server information on your FortiGate, and how to use that information and update it to fix potential problems.

### Displaying the server list

**To get a list of FDS servers FortiGate uses to send web filtering requests:**

```
get webfilter status
```

or

```
diagnose debug rating
```

Rating requests are only sent to the server at the top of the list in normal operation. Each server is probed for Round Trip Time (RTT) every two minutes. Rating may not be enabled on your FortiGate.

Optionally, you can add a refresh rate to the end of the command to determine how often the server list is refreshed.

**Sample output:**

```
Locale       : english
License      : Contract
Expiration   : Thu Oct  9 02:00:00 2011
-=- Server List (Mon Feb 18 12:55:48 2008) -=-
IP            Weight    RTT    Flags    TZ     Packets CurrLost TotalLost
a.b.c.d        0       1       DI      2       1926879 0       11176
10.1.101.1     10      329             1       10263   0       633
10.2.102.2     20      169             0       16105   0       80
10.3.103.3     20      182             0       6741    0       776
10.4.104.4     20      184             0       5249    0       987
10.5.105.5     25      181             0       12072   0       178
```

**Output details**

The server list includes the IP addresses of alternate servers if the first entry cannot be reached. In this example, the IP addresses are not public addresses.

The following flags in `get webfilter status` indicate the server status:

| Flag | Description |
|---|---|
| D | The server was found through the DNS lookup of the hostname.<br>If the hostname returns more than one IP address, all of them are flagged with D and are used first for INIT requests before falling back to the other servers. |

| Flag | Description |
|---|---|
| I | The server to which the last INIT request was sent |
| F | The server hasn't responded to requests and is considered to have failed |
| T | The server is currently being timed |
| S | Rating requests can be sent to the server.<br>The flag is set for a server only in two cases:<br>• The server exists in the servers list received from the (Undefined variable: FortinetVariables.ProductName1) or any other INIT server.<br>• The server list received from the (Undefined variable: FortinetVariables.ProductName1) is empty so the (Undefined variable: FortinetVariables.ProductName1) is the only server that the (Undefined variable: FortinetVariables.ProductName6) knows and it should be used as the rating server. |

### Sorting the server list

The server list is sorted first by weight. The server with the smallest RTT appears at the top of the list, regardless of weight. When a packet is lost (there has been no response in 2 seconds), it is re-sent to the next server in the list. Therefore, the top position in the list is selected based on RTT, while the other positions are based on weight.

### Calculating weight

The weight for each server increases with failed packets and decreases with successful packets. To lower the possibility of using a remote server, the weight isn't allowed to dip below a base weight. The base weight is calculated as the difference in hours between the FortiGate and the server multiplied by 10. The farther away the server is, the higher its base weight is and the lower it appears in the list.

# Additional resources

To learn more about FortiGate and FortiOS, as well information about technical issues, please refer to the following resources:

## Technical documentation

Installation, Administration, and Quick Start Guides, as well as other technical documents, are available online at the Fortinet Document Library

## Fortinet video library

The Fortinet Video Library hosts a collection of video which provide valuable information about Fortinet products.

## Release notes

Issues that arise after the technical documentation has been published will often be listed in the Release Notes. To find these, go to the Fortinet Document Library.

## Knowledge base

The Fortinet Knowledge Base provides access to a variety of articles, white papers, and other documentation that provides technical insight into a range of Fortinet products. The Knowledge Base is available online at: http://kb.fortinet.com

## Fortinet technical discussion forums

An online technical forum allows administrators to contribute to discussions about issues that relate to their Fortinet products. Searching the forum can help an administrator identify if an issue has been experienced by another user. You can access the support forums at: https://forum.fortinet.com/

## Fortinet training services online campus

The Fortinet Training Services Online Campus hosts a collection of tutorials and training materials which you can use to increase your knowledge of Fortinet products. https://www.fortinet.com/training.html

## Fortinet Support

You defined your problem, researched a solution, put together a plan to find the solution, and executed that plan. At this point, if the problem hasn't been solved, it's time to contact Fortinet Support for assistance.



Copyright© 2022 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.